

Table of Contents

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Page</i>
Foreword	Foreword-1
Introduction	Introduction-1
Change Summary	Change Summary-1
Instructions Page	Instructions Page-1
100 General Information	100-1
200 Application Filing Date	200-1
300 Filing and Receipt of Documents	300-1
400 Processing Documents and Fees	400-1
500 Change of Ownership	500-1
600 Attorney, Representative, and Signature	600-1
700 Procedure for Examining Applications	700-1
800 Application Requirements	800-1
900 Use in Commerce	900-1
1000 Applications Under Section 44	1000-1
1100 Intent-to-Use Applications and Requests to Divide	1100-1
1200 Substantive Examination of Applications	1200-1
1300 Service Marks, Collective Marks, and Certification Marks	1300-1
1400 Classification and Identification of Goods and Services	1400-1
1500 Post-Examination Procedures	1500-1
1600 Registration and Post Registration Procedures >.....	1600-1
1700 Petitions, Requests for Reinstatement, and Other Matters Submitted to Director	1700-1
1800 Public Inquiries About Applications and Registrations	1800-1
1900 Madrid Protocol	1900-1
Appendix A Examining Attorneys? Appeal Briefs	Appendix A-1
Appendix B Members of International Trademark Agreements	Appendix B-1
Appendix C Notes of Other Statutes	Appendix C-1
Appendix D Foreign Entity Appendix	Appendix D-1
Appendix E Countries That Have Standard Character Marks or the Equivalent	Appendix E-1
Subject Matter Subject Matter Index	Subject Matter Index-1
Index	

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE (TMEP)

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

January 2017

Foreword

The *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure* (TMEP) may be downloaded free of charge from the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) website at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademark/guides-and-manuals/tmep-archives>.

The Manual is published to provide trademark examining attorneys in the USPTO, trademark applicants, and attorneys and representatives for trademark applicants with a reference work on the practices and procedures relative to prosecution of applications to register marks in the USPTO. The Manual contains guidelines for Examining Attorneys and materials in the nature of information and interpretation, and outlines the procedures which Examining Attorneys are required or authorized to follow in the examination of trademark applications.

Trademark Examining Attorneys will be governed by the applicable statutes, the Trademark Rules of Practice, decisions, and Orders and Notices issued by the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Commissioners, or Deputy Commissioners. Policies stated in this revision supersede any previous policies stated in prior editions, examination guides, or any other statement of Office policy, to the extent that there is any conflict.

Suggestions for improving the form and content of the Manual are always welcome. They should be e-mailed to tmtmep@uspto.gov, or addressed to:

Commissioner for Trademarks
Attention: Editor, Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure
P.O. Box 1451
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451

Catherine P. Cain

Editor

Mary Boney Denison

Commissioner for Trademarks

INTRODUCTION

Constitutional Basis

The authority of Congress to provide for the registration of marks which are used in commerce stems from the power of Congress under the commerce clause of the Constitution of the United States to regulate commerce.

Statutes

Under its authority to regulate commerce, Congress has over the years passed a number of statutes providing for the registration of marks in the USPTO. The provisions of statutes cannot be changed or waived by the USPTO. The statute now in effect is Public Law 489, 79th Congress, approved July 5, 1946, 60 Stat. 427, commonly referred to as the Trademark Act of 1946 or the Lanham Act. The Trademark Act of 1946 (as amended) forms Chapter 22 of Title 15 of the United States Code. In referring to a particular section of the Trademark Act, this Manual often gives the citation of the United States Code, e.g., [15 U.S.C. §1051](#). The text of the current statutes can be downloaded from the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Rules of Practice

Section 2 of Title 35 of the United States Code authorizes the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office to establish regulations, not inconsistent with law, for the conduct of proceedings in the USPTO. The rules which govern the practices and procedures in the USPTO as they relate to the registration of marks are set forth in Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

The trademark rules are a part of the Code of Federal Regulations, which is a codification of Federal regulations under the provisions of The Federal Register Act of 1937 and The Administrative Procedure Act of 1946 and which is published pursuant to 44 U.S.C. §1510. Rules relating to patents, trademarks and copyrights are codified in Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations. The trademark rules constitute Part 2, the rules relating to assignments constitute Part 3, the classification of goods and services constitutes Part 6, the rules relating to filings under the Madrid Protocol constitute Part 7, and the rules relating to the representation of others before the USPTO constitute Parts 10 and 11. The text of the current rules is also available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

In creating numbers for rules, the number of the appropriate Part in Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations is placed first, followed by a decimal point and then the number of the rule, so that, for example, Trademark Rule 2.56 is Rule 56 in Part 2 of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations. In the Code of Federal Regulations itself, and in material published in the Federal Register, the rules are identified by the term "sections." Thus, section 2.56 in 37 C.F.R. (37 CFR §2.56) is Trademark Rule 2.56.

Notices of proposed and final rulemaking are published in the Federal Register and in the *Official Gazette* of the USPTO, and posted on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/>.

The primary function of the rules of practice is to advise the public of the regulations that have been established in accordance with the statutes, which must be followed before the USPTO.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Director's Orders and Notices

From time to time the Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office issues Orders and Notices relating to various specific situations that have arisen in operating the USPTO. Notices, circulars of information, or instructions and examination guides have also been issued by other USPTO officials under authority of the Director. These Orders and Notices are published in the *Official Gazette* of the USPTO, and posted on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>. See notice at [72 Fed. Reg. 72999](#) (Dec. 26, 2007).

Decisions

In addition to the statutory regulations, the actions taken by the examining attorneys in the examination of applications to register marks are to a great extent governed by decisions on prior cases. Applicants dissatisfied with an examining attorney's action may have it reviewed. In general, procedural matters may be reviewed by petition to the Director (see [TMEP §1702](#)) and substantive matters may be reviewed by appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (see [TMEP §1501](#)).

Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure

The *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure* sets forth the guidelines and procedures followed by the examining attorneys at the USPTO. The manual may be downloaded free of charge from the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/>. See notice at [67 Fed. Reg. 18176](#) (April 15, 2002) regarding the dissemination of the manual in electronic format.

First Edition, January 1974

Revision 1, January 1976

Revision 2, January 1977

Revision 3, January 1978

Revision 4, January 1979

Revision 5, December 1982

Revision 6, December 1983 (Incorporating Exam Guide Nos. 1-83 to 31-83)

Revision 7, January 1986 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law prior to January 1986; drawing rules amendment effective Sept. 22, 1986; letter of protest procedures effective April 23, 1986; Exam Guide Nos. 1-83 to 2-86)

Second Edition, May 1993 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to April 1993)

Revision 1, April 1997 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to March 31, 1997)

Revision 1.1, August 1997 (Corrected errors in Rev. 1)

Third Edition, January 2002, issued March 18, 2002 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Jan. 24, 2002)

Revision 1, June 2002, issued June 24, 2002 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to June 24, 2002)

Revision 2, May 2003, issued May 1, 2003 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to April 21, 2003)

Fourth Edition, April 2005, issued April 29, 2005 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to March 25, 2005)

Fifth Edition, September 2007, issued Sept. 30, 2007 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to August 11, 2007)

Sixth Edition, September 2009, issued Oct. 12, 2009 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Sept. 1, 2009)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Revision 1, October 2009, issued October 27, 2009 (Revising §§1202.02(c)(iii), 1206.03, and 1402.15)

Revision 2, May 2010, issued May 21, 2010 (Incorporating amendments to [15 U.S.C. §§1058](#) and [1141k](#) effective March 17, 2010 and signature, representation, and correspondence address rules amendments effective December 28, 2009; revising §§904.03(h), 904.03(i), 1109.15, 1109.15(a), and 1905)

Seventh Edition, October 2010, issued Oct. 15, 2010 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Sept. 1, 2010)

Eighth Edition, October 2011, issued Oct. 15, 2011 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Sept. 1, 2011)

October 2012, issued Oct. 31, 2012 (Incorporating Office practice, amendments to the Trademark Rules, and relevant case law prior to Oct. 1, 2012)

April 2013, issued April 30, 2013 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to April 1, 2013)

October 2013, issued Oct. 30, 2013 (Incorporating Office practice, amendments to the Trademark Rules, and relevant case law reported prior to Oct. 1, 2013)

April 2014, issued April 30, 2014 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to April 1, 2014)

October 2014, issued Oct. 30, 2014 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Oct. 1, 2014)

January 2015, issued Jan. 17, 2015 (Incorporating changes in accordance with final rules issued at 79 FR 63036, 79 FR 74633, and 80 FR 2303)

July 2015, issued July 11, 2015 (Incorporating Office practice, changes in accordance with the final rule issued at 80 FR 33170, and relevant case law reported prior to July 1, 2015)

October 2015, issued Oct. 30, 2015 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Oct. 1, 2015)

April 2016, issued April 30, 2016 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to April 1, 2016)

October 2016, issued Oct. 30, 2016 (Incorporating Office practice and relevant case law reported prior to Oct. 1, 2016)

January 2017, issued Jan. 14, 2017 (Incorporating Office practice, changes in accordance with final rules issued at 81 FR 69950, 81 FR 72694, 81 FR 76867, 81 FR 78042, and 81 FR 89382, and relevant case law reported prior to Jan. 1, 2017)

Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure

References in this Manual to the *Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure* (TBMP) refer to the June 2015 Revision, currently available on the USPTO website at <http://tbmp.uspto.gov/RDMS/detail/manual/TBMP/current/tbmpd1e2.xml#/manual/TBMP/current/tbmpd1e2.xml>. The TBMP sets forth guidelines and practices followed in proceedings held before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

CHANGES: INDEX TO CHANGES IN TMEP JANUARY 2017

Attention is directed to the following changes in the January 2017 TMEP.

SECTION	CHANGE
TMEP	Incorporated changes in accordance with final rules issued at 81 FR 69950, 81 FR 72694, 81 FR 76867, 81 FR 78042, and 81 FR 89382, and relevant precedential decisions reported prior to January 1, 2017.
103	Revised to indicate that documents in TTAB proceedings must be filed electronically.
202.03(a)	Updated rule citations.
202.03(a)(i)	Updated rule citation.
204.03	Clarified procedure when applicant responds, but does not include the required fee.
301	Revised to indicate that documents in TTAB proceedings must be filed electronically
303	Updated text of Rule 2.195.
306	Updated text extract of Rule 2.195.
306.01	Clarified examples of correspondence that may not be filed by fax. Updated rule citation.
405.02(a)	Updated rule citation.
405.03	Updated text of Rule 2.208.
405.06	Updated rule citation.
503.04	Updated address of Assignment Recordation Branch and rule citation.
801.01(a)	Updated TMEP cross reference.
807.09	Deleted paragraph regarding audio files.
816.04	Updated case citation.
818	Updated TMEP cross reference.
819	Updated TEAS Plus processing fee.
819.01(c)	Deleted statements regarding waiving requirement for information pursuant to changes in TEAS Plus application.
820	Updated TEAS RF processing fee
901.03	Added case citation.
904.03(d)	Deleted reference to TEAS filings. Added TMEP cross reference.
904.03(f)	Updated to clarify that electronic files can be attached to all TEAS forms.
904.03(l)	Updated to clarify that electronic files can be attached to all TEAS forms. Added TMEP cross reference.
907	Added case citation. Miscellaneous stylistic edits.
1104.01(b)	Updated rule citation.
1104.10(b)(vii)	Updated rule citation.
1108.02(c)	Updated rule citation.
1109.15(a)	Updated rule citations.
1202.03(f)(i)	Added case citation.
1202.04	Added case citation and revised case citation.
1207.01(d)(iii)	Added case citation.
1208.01(b)	Revised procedure for determining priority for publication or issuance when conflicting applications have the same date of filing and execution.
1209.03(d)	Updated case citation.
1210.02(b)	Updated case citation.

SECTION	CHANGE
1210.02(b)(i)	Updated case citation.
1210.06	Updated case citation.
1210.06(b)	Updated case citation.
1211.01	Added case citation. Deleted case citation. Miscellaneous stylistic edits.
1211.01(a)	Added case citation.
1211.01(a)(v)	Added case citation. Miscellaneous stylistic edit.
1211.01(a)(vi)	Added case citation.
1211.01(b)(vi)	Updated case citation.
1211.02(b)(i)	Updated case citation.
1211.02(b)(iv)	Added case citations.
1211.02(b)(v)	Updated case citation.
1211.02(b)(vi)	Added case citation.
1212.02(c)	Miscellaneous stylistic edits. Updated case citation.
1301.02(f)	Added case citation.
1301.04(e)	Added case citation and clarification regarding ability of mark to serve as source indicator for services and not just for software.
1301.04(f)	Added case citation.
1301.04(f)(ii)	Added case citation.
1301.04(h)(iii)	Added case citation.
1401.02(a)	Updated to include revisions to class headings and explanatory notes pursuant to the 11 th edition of the Nice Classification.
1401.05(a)	Corrected class number in example. Miscellaneous stylistic edits. Added explanation and examples regarding hobby craft kits.
1401.05(b)	Added example.
1401.05(c)	Miscellaneous stylistic edit.
1401.05(e)	Updated to include reference to Nice 11 th edition. Revised TMEP cross reference.
1401.07	Miscellaneous stylistic edits.
1401.09	Moved and renumbered previous section 1401.12.
1401.10	Moved and renumbered previous section 1401.13.
1401.11	Renumbered previous section 1401.09.
1401.11(a)	Renumbered previous section 1401.09(a).
1401.12	Renumbered previous section 1401.10. Updated TMEP cross references.
1401.12(a)	Renumbered previous section 1401.10(a). Added TMEP cross reference.
1401.12(b)	Renumbered previous section 1401.10(b).
1401.12(c)	Renumbered previous section 1401.10(c).
1401.13	Renumbered previous section 1401.11.
1401.13(a)	Renumbered previous section 1401.11(a). Miscellaneous stylistic edits.
1401.13(b)	Renumbered previous section 1401.11(b).
1401.13(c)	Renumbered previous section 1401.11(c).
1401.13(d)	Renumbered previous section 1401.11(d). Miscellaneous stylistic edits. Updated to include information regarding Nice 11 th edition.
1401.13(e)	Renumbered previous section 1401.11(e).

SECTION	CHANGE
1401.14	New section: General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 11th Edition of the Nice Agreement
1401.14(a)	New section: Cosmetic and Toiletry Preparations
1401.14(b)	New section: Household or Kitchen Serving Utensils and Small Hand-operated Kitchen Apparatus for Mincing, Grinding, Pressing, or Crushing
1401.14(c)	New section: Dietetic Food and Beverages Adapted for Medical or Veterinary Use
1401.14(d)	New section: Nut and Plant Milks; Milk Substitutes
1401.14(e)	New section: Security Services in Class 42 and Class 45
1402.01	Clarified example.
1402.01(a)	Miscellaneous stylistic edits.
1402.01(e)	Clarified resources available to examining attorneys.
1402.03(a)	Revised examples.
1402.03(d)	Revised examples.
1402.03(e)	Revised example.
1402.05(a)	Reworded for clarity.
1402.05(b)	Clarified procedure and added examples.
1402.06(a)	Revised examples.
1402.06(b)	Miscellaneous stylistic edit.
1402.07(a)	Clarified procedure for §66(a) applications.
1402.07(b)	Miscellaneous stylistic edit.
1402.07(c)	Revised example.
1402.09	Minor stylistic edit.
1402.11	Minor stylistic edits. Updated TMEP cross reference.
1402.11(a)(ii)	Minor stylistic edit.
1402.11(a)(iii)	Minor stylistic edit.
1402.11(a)(iv)	Revised example.
1402.11(a)(v)	Clarified examples.
1402.11(a)(vi)	Clarified example. Minor stylistic edit.
1402.11(a)(vii)	Revised examples.
1402.11(a)(viii)	Rewording for clarity. Revised example.
1402.11(a)(ix)	Revised examples.
1402.11(a)(xi)	Revised example.
1402.11(a)(xii)	Minor stylistic edit.
1402.11(b)	Updated TMEP cross reference. Minor stylistic edit.
1402.11(b)	Updated TMEP cross reference.
1402.11(d)	Clarified procedures for non-monetary charitable services.
1402.11(e)	Minor stylistic edits. Updated TMEP cross reference.
1402.11(i)	Updated TMEP cross reference.
1402.14	Updated TMEP cross reference.
1403.02(c)	Minor stylistic edit.
1501	Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §2.126.
1501.02(b)	Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §2.142.
1503.01	Updated TBMP cross reference. Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §2.101.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

SECTION	CHANGE
1503.04	Updated TBMP cross reference. Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §2.102.
1503.05	Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §§2.101, 2.102, 2.104, and 2.107.
1504.05	Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §2.142.
1604.06(c)	Updated rule citation.
1604.18(d)	Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §2.145.
1604.19	Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §2.6.
1605.05	Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §2.6.
1606.05(c)	Updated rule citation.
1606.14(d)	Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §2.145.
1607	Added rule citation. Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §2.111.
1613.06(c)	Updated rule citation.
1613.18(d)	Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §2.145.
1613.19	Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §7.6.
1705.09	Updated to incorporate revision to 37 C.F.R. §2.145.
1904.04	Updated to incorporate revisions to 37 C.F.R. §§2.101 and 2.102.
Appendix A	Minor stylistic edits. Added rule citation.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

INSTRUCTIONS REGARDING TMEP January 2017

This January 2017 version replaces the October 2016 version.

Chapter 100 General Information

101	Trademark Statute and Rules
102	United States Patent and Trademark Office Website
103	Trademark Forms
104	Trademark Searching
105	General Information Booklet Concerning Trademarks
106	The Official Gazette
107	Trademark Manuals
108	Status Inquiries
108.01	Internet Information
108.02	Personal Telephone Assistance
108.03	Due Diligence: Duty to Monitor Status
109	Access to Records
109.01	Electronic Image Records
109.02	Paper Files
109.03	Making Copies of Materials in Records
110	Decisions Available to the Public
111	Requests for Copies of Trademark Documents
112	Patent and Trademark Resource Centers

101 Trademark Statute and Rules

The federal registration of trademarks is governed by the Trademark Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) *et seq.* (also known as the Lanham Act), and 37 C.F.R. Parts 2, 3, 6, 7, 10, and 11. The text of the Act and rules can be accessed and downloaded from the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/tac/tmlaw2.pdf>.

102 United States Patent and Trademark Office Website

The USPTO website <http://www.uspto.gov> provides access to a wide variety of information about patents and trademarks, and offers electronic filing of trademark documents.

The Trademark Electronic Business Center on the USPTO website contains all the information needed for the entire registration process. A customer may search the Trademark database for conflicting marks using the Trademark Electronic Search System (“TESS”), file applications and other trademark documents online using the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”), check the status of applications and registrations and view and print images of the contents of trademark application and registration records through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) portal at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. See [TMEP §104](#) regarding TESS, [TMEP §108.01](#) regarding TSDR, [TMEP §109.01](#) regarding electronic image records, and [TMEP §301](#) for further information about electronic filing.

Trademark information available for downloading from the USPTO website includes the trademark statute and rules, *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure*, *Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure*, *Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual*, *Federal Register* notices, *Official Gazette* notices, examination guides, and fee schedules.

Certified or uncertified copies of trademark documents can also be purchased over the Internet. See [TMEP §111](#) for further information.

103 Trademark Forms

Trademark documents can be filed electronically through TEAS, on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/index.jsp>. See [TMEP §301](#) regarding TEAS. Additional forms may be available online at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/forms-index.jsp>, or through the Trademark Assistance Center (“TAC”) (*see* [TMEP §108.02](#)).

Requests for recordation of assignments and other documents affecting title to an application or registration can be filed through the Electronic Trademark Assignment System (“ETAS”) at <http://etas.uspto.gov>.

The Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals (“ESTTA”), at <http://estta.uspto.gov/>, must be used to file requests for extensions of time to oppose, notices of opposition, petitions to cancel, appeals, motions, briefs, notices of change of address, and other documents in Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (“Board”) proceedings .

104 Trademark Searching

X-Search, the USPTO's computerized search system, contains text and images of registered marks, and marks in pending and abandoned applications. X-Search is used by examining attorneys when searching for conflicting marks during examination.

The public may conduct searches free of charge using TESS, on the USPTO website at <http://tmsearch.uspto.gov>. Like X-Search, TESS provides access to text and images of registered marks and marks in pending and abandoned applications. Additional information, including current status, for pending trademark applications and registered trademarks can be obtained by entering the trademark serial number or registration number in the TSDR database. *See* [TMEP §108.01](#). TESS and TSDR are available in Patent and Trademark Resource Centers (“PTRCs”) (*see* [TMEP §112](#)).

The public may use the X-Search system and view the internal Trademark database without charge in the Public Search Facility, which is located on the first floor of the James Madison Building - East Wing, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, and is open from 8:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. The Public Search Facility also contains copies of State emblems and official signs and hallmarks of member countries of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property, which are protected under Article 6 *ter* of the Convention (*see* [TMEP §1205.02](#)). The Public Search Facility does not contain copies of the official insignia of state- and federally recognized Native American tribes. X-Search or TESS can be used to search for these insignia.

If a mark includes a design element, it can be searched by using a design code. To locate the proper design code(s), the public can use the *Design Search Code Manual* on the USPTO website at <http://tess2.uspto.gov/tmdb/dscm/index.htm>.

For some marks, the USPTO has added a pseudo mark to the search data to assist users in identifying relevant marks related to their search term. The “pseudo mark” field, which is not displayed, often contains spellings that are very similar or phonetically equivalent to the word mark. For example, if “4U” appears in the mark, the term “for you” would be added to the pseudo-mark field. This provides an additional search tool for locating marks that contain an alternative or intentionally corrupted spelling for a normal English word. Pseudo mark entries are not displayed or printed in the search results and are not part of the official application or registration.

USPTO personnel cannot conduct trademark searches for the public. A private trademark attorney will obtain a search and provide an opinion on the availability of a proposed mark, for a fee, prior to filing a trademark application. To find the names of private attorneys who handle trademark matters, consult telephone listings or the attorney referral service of a state bar or local bar association (see American Bar Association Lawyer Referral Directory). The USPTO cannot aid in the selection of an attorney, nor can the Trademark Assistance Center provide any legal advice. See [37 C.F.R. §2.11](#).

The public can search the trademark assignment records of the Assignment Recordation Branch on the USPTO website at <http://assignments.uspto.gov/assignments>. Assignment records can also be searched in the Public Search Facility. See [TMEP §503.08](#) for further information about the accessibility of assignment records.

105 General Information Booklet Concerning Trademarks

The booklet entitled *Basic Facts About Trademarks* contains information and instructions for registering a trademark or service mark. The booklet can be accessed or downloaded from the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/>, or may be obtained by calling TAC. See [TMEP §108.02](#) regarding TAC.

106 The *Official Gazette*

The *Official Gazette* (“OG”), issued every Tuesday, is a publication of the USPTO, which is available free of charge on the USPTO website.

Trademark Official Gazette (“TMOG”). The TMOG, posted at <http://www.uspto.gov/news/og/tindex.jsp>, contains an illustration of each mark published for opposition on the Principal Register, marks registered on the Principal Register under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), and marks registered on the Supplemental Register on the date of the particular issue in which the marks appear. Effective July 15, 2003, the USPTO publishes the TMOG only in electronic form. See notice at [68 Fed. Reg. 37803](#) (June 25, 2003).

USPTO Notices. The TMOG does not contain USPTO Notices. Such notices are posted separately in the general information section of the *Official Gazette*, at <http://www.uspto.gov/news/og/index.jsp>. This section includes such general information as notices of changes in rules or Office procedures for both patents and trademarks; notices to parties who cannot be reached by mail; and indices of trademark registrations issued, renewed, cancelled, amended, or corrected on the date of the particular issue in which the marks appear.

Effective January 1, 2008, the USPTO discontinued the separate weekly publication of USPTO notices in paper form. See notice at [72 Fed. Reg. 72999](#) (Dec. 26, 2007).

107 Trademark Manuals

The following manuals may be downloaded free of charge from the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/index.jsp>:

- [Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure](#) (“TMEP”)
- [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) (“TBMP”)
- [Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual](#)

The TMEP may also be purchased from the Government Printing Office (“GPO”) at <http://bookstore.gpo.gov/>. GPO’s general information telephone numbers are (202) 512-1800 and (866) 512-1800.

108 Status Inquiries

108.01 Internet Information

The TSDR database on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> provides detailed information about the status and prosecution history of trademark applications and registrations. The TSDR database is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

The TSDR database is normally updated shortly after our internal databases are updated. However, the TSDR database may not reflect changes in ownership that have been recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch. There are circumstances in which the Trademark database will be updated automatically upon the recordation of a change of ownership. See [TMEP §504](#). In all other cases, the new owner must separately notify the Trademark Operation in writing of the recordation of a document, and request that the Trademark database be updated manually. See [TMEP §§503.01\(a\)](#), [504.01](#), and [505-505.02](#).

Information about documents recorded with the Assignment Recordation Branch can be viewed through Assignments on the Web (AOTW) at <http://assignments.uspto.gov>.

See also [TMEP §109.01](#) regarding public access to electronic images of the contents of trademark application and registration and Board proceeding records.

108.02 Personal Telephone Assistance

If additional information regarding the status of an application or registration is required, callers may telephone TAC at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 and request a status check. TAC also provides general information about the trademark registration process. Telephone assistance is available from 8:30 a.m. to 8:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. Walk-in service is available from 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

The Trademark Assistance Center will gladly answer questions about the application process. However, USPTO employees cannot:

- conduct trademark searches for the public (see [TMEP §104](#));
- comment on the validity of registered marks (see [TMEP §1801](#));
- answer questions as to whether a particular mark or type of mark is eligible for registration;
- offer legal advice or opinions about common-law trademark rights, state registrations, or trademark infringement claims; or
- aid in the selection of a private trademark attorney or search firm (37 C.F.R. §2.11).

See TMEP Chapter 1800 regarding public inquiries about applications and registrations.

108.03 Due Diligence: Duty to Monitor Status

Trademark applicants and registrants should monitor the status of their applications or registrations in cases where a notice or action from the USPTO is expected. Inquiries regarding the status of pending matters should be made during the following time periods:

- (1) During the pendency of an application, an applicant should check the status of the application every six months between the filing date of the application and issuance of a registration; and
- (2) After filing an affidavit of use or excusable nonuse under §8 or §71 of the Trademark Act, or a renewal application under §9 of the Act, a registrant should check the status of the registration every six months until the registrant receives notice that the affidavit or renewal application has been accepted.

Should the status inquiry reveal that a document is lost, that no action has been taken regarding correspondence that was submitted, or that some other problem exists, the applicant or registrant must promptly request corrective action. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)](#). Failure to act diligently and follow up with appropriate action may result in denial of the requested relief. The USPTO may deny petitions to reactivate abandoned applications and cancelled registrations when a party fails to inquire about the status of a pending matter within a reasonable time. See [TMEP §§1705.05](#) and [1714.01\(d\)](#).

Written status inquiries are discouraged, because they can delay processing. Whenever possible, status inquiries should be made through the TSDR database. If additional information regarding the status of an application or registration is required, callers may telephone TAC at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199.

109 Access to Records

18 U.S.C. §2071 Concealment, removal, or mutilation generally.

(a)

Whoever willfully and unlawfully conceals, removes, mutilates, obliterates, or destroys, or attempts to do so, or, with intent to do so takes and carries away any record, proceeding, map, book, paper, document, or other thing, filed or deposited with any clerk or officer of any court of the United States, or in any public office, or with any judicial or public officer of the United States, shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than three years, or both.

(b)

Whoever, having the custody of any such record, proceeding, map, book, document, paper, or other thing, willfully and unlawfully conceals, removes, mutilates, obliterates, falsifies, or destroys the same, shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than three years, or both; and shall forfeit his office and be disqualified from holding any office under the United States. As used in this subsection, the term “office” does not include the office held by any person as a retired officer of the Armed Forces of the United States.

37 CFR §2.27(b)

Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, access to the file of a particular pending application will be permitted prior to publication under §2.80 upon written request.

37 CFR §2.27(d)

Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, the official records of applications and all proceedings relating thereto are available for public inspection and copies of the documents may be furnished upon payment of the fee required by § 2.6.

37 CFR §2.27(e)

Anything ordered to be filed under seal pursuant to a protective order issued or made by any court or by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in any proceeding involving an application or registration shall be kept confidential and shall not be made available for public inspection or copying unless otherwise ordered by the court or the Board, or unless the party protected by the order voluntarily discloses the matter subject thereto. When possible, only confidential portions of filings with the Board shall be filed under seal.

In order to inspect the contents of a trademark application or registration record, it is not necessary to show good cause or to have a power to inspect from the applicant or registrant.

109.01 Electronic Image Records

The public may view and print images of the contents of trademark application and registration records through the TSDR portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. Electronic images of Board proceeding records are also available on the USPTO website at <http://ttabvue.uspto.gov/ttabvue/>. TSDR and TTABVUE are available 24 hours a day, seven days a week, free of charge.

The public may also view and print images of the contents of trademark application and registration records through the Trademark Image Capture and Retrieval System (“TICRS”), available in the Public Search Facility on the USPTO premises. See [TMEP §402](#).

109.02 Paper Files

Effective April 12, 2004, the USPTO no longer creates paper files for all trademark applications or paper copies of certain trademark-related documents that are submitted to the USPTO in electronic format. Furthermore, the USPTO does not generate paper copies of certain trademark documents that the USPTO creates, except for copies that are sent to recipients by mail. See New USPTO Policies Regarding (1) *Generation of Paper Copies of Trademark-Related Documents* and (2) *Public Access to Existing Paper Copies of Trademark-Related Documents* (TMOG Apr. 6, 2004), at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/com/sol/og/2004/week14/pattmcp.htm>. All these documents can be viewed through TICRS and TSDR.

A member of the public may request access to a paper file at the Trademark Assistance Center (TAC), which is located in the James Madison Building - East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, VA, between 8:30 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. The file will usually be available to the requester within a few days.

USPTO personnel must keep a record of all files requested and enter the new location of the file (e.g., charged to non-USPTO personnel) in the Trademark database. The public must inspect the file in the TAC and may make copies of documents in the file in the TAC. No file or related document may be removed from the premises occupied by the USPTO, except as required by the issue process or other official process, unless specifically authorized by the Director. 18 U.S.C. §2071(b). If such authorization is given, the employee having custody will be responsible for complying with the requirements of law.

Paper files for abandoned applications and cancelled and expired registrations are stored in the warehouse for two years after the date of abandonment, cancellation, or expiration, and then destroyed. See notice at 980 TMOG 16, reprinted at 1232 TMOG 625 (March 21, 2000). See [TBMP §120.03](#) regarding the retention schedule for the files of terminated Board proceedings.

See [TMEP §503.08](#) regarding the accessibility of assignment records.

109.03 Making Copies of Materials in Records

The public may print images of the contents of trademark application, registration, and Board proceeding records through TSDR or TTABVUE on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>. See [TMEP §109.01](#).

The public can also print electronic copies of records pertaining to applications or registrations through TESS (see [TMEP §104](#)), and prosecution histories through TSDR (see [TMEP §108.01](#)) on the USPTO website. There is no charge for use of these databases.

The public may also print trademark documents from TICRS, TTABVUE, TSDR, or X-Search in the Public Search Facility on the USPTO premises. There is a fee for printing images of documents in the Public Search Facility. See [TMEP §104](#).

Photocopiers for making copies of paper files are available to the public on the premises of the USPTO for a fee.

See [TMEP §111](#) regarding requests that the USPTO provide copies of trademark documents.

110 Decisions Available to the Public

37 CFR §2.27(c)

Decisions of the Director and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in applications and proceedings relating thereto are published or available for inspection or publication.

Precedential decisions of the Director and the Board are noted as such and published in the United States Patents Quarterly (cited as USPQ or USPQ2d), which is a periodical reporting service of a non-governmental publishing company. The USPTO does not print these decisions in its own publications. Non-precedential decisions of the Director and the Board are not published.

Both precedential and non-precedential decisions are available for viewing, downloading, and printing via TTABVUE.

A weekly summary of final decisions issued by the Board appears on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov> and in each issue of the *Official Gazette*.

See [TMEP §1803](#) regarding decisions that are available under the Freedom of Information Act.

111 Requests for Copies of Trademark Documents

The public may print images of the contents of trademark application, registration, and Board proceeding records through TSDR or TTABVUE on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>. See [TMEP §109.01](#).

The public can also print electronic copies of records pertaining to applications or registrations through TESS (see [TMEP §104](#)), and prosecution histories through TSDR (see [TMEP §108.01](#)) on the USPTO website. There is no charge for use of these databases.

The public may purchase certified or uncertified copies of trademark documents (e.g., application or registration records, trademark title and status reports, etc.). Fee schedules are posted on the USPTO website.

Requests for copies of trademark documents are handled by the Document Services Branch of the Public Records Division of the USPTO.

Copies of trademark documents can be ordered through the USPTO website at <http://ebiz1.uspto.gov/oems25p/index.html>, for delivery by the United States Postal Service. The fee must be paid by credit card, EFT, or deposit account authorization. Requests for copies of trademark documents may also be e-mailed to dsd@uspto.gov, with an authorization to charge the fee to a credit card or deposit account.

Requests for certified or uncertified copies of trademark documents may be mailed to: Mail Stop Document Services, Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, P. O. Box 1450, Alexandria VA 22313-1450. [37 C.F.R. §2.190\(d\)](#).

112 Patent and Trademark Resource Centers

There is a network of PTRCs throughout the United States that provides access to many of the same products and services offered at the USPTO. A list of the PTRCs and their telephone numbers appears on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov> and in each issue of the *Official Gazette*.

Information available free of charge at the PTRCs includes the text of the trademark statute and rules (*see* [TMEP §101](#)); the *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure*; *Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure*; *Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual*; and the Trademark Electronic Search System. Photocopiers are generally provided for a fee.

The scope of PTRC collections, hours of operation, services, and fees (where applicable) may vary from one center to another.

Chapter 200 Application Filing Date

201	What Constitutes Filing Date
201.01	Effective Filing Date Controls for Purposes of Determining Priority for Publication or Issue
201.02	Constructive Use Priority
202	Requirements for Receiving a Filing Date
202.01	Clear Drawing of the Mark
202.02	Listing of Recognizable Goods or Services
202.03	Filing Fee for At Least One Class of Goods or Services
202.03(a)	Fee Payment Refused or Charged Back By Financial Institution
202.03(a)(i)	Processing Fee for Payment Refused or Charged Back By Financial Institution
203	Review for Compliance With Minimum Requirements
204	Defective or Informal Applications
204.01	Filing Date Cancelled if Minimum Filing Requirements not Met
204.02	Resubmission of Applications
204.03	Examining Attorney’s Handling of Applications That Are Erroneously Accorded a Filing Date
205	Filing Date Is Not Normally Changed
206	Effective Filing Date
206.01	Amendment of §1(b) Application from Principal Register to Supplemental Register upon Filing of Allegation of Use
206.02	Application Claiming Priority under §44(d) or §67
206.03	Applications Filed Before November 16, 1989, That Are Amended to the Supplemental Register on or After November 16, 1989
206.04	Examining Attorney’s Action After Conducting New Search When the Effective Filing Date Changes to a Later Date

201 What Constitutes Filing Date

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#) or [§1126](#), the filing date of an application is the date on which all the elements set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §202](#)) are received in the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”).

In a request for an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), the filing date is: (1) the international registration date, if the request for extension of protection to the United States is made in an international application; or (2) the date that the subsequent designation was recorded by the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”), if the request for extension of protection to the United States is made in a subsequent designation. [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.26](#). See [TMEP §§1904 et seq.](#) for further information about §66(a) applications.

Granting a filing date to an application does not necessarily mean that all requirements for registration have been satisfied. It is possible that registration could be refused on a substantive ground. See [TMEP §818](#) for a list of potential grounds of refusal. If registration is not refused on any substantive basis (or if the applicant overcomes any substantive refusals), the applicant must comply with any procedural requirements issued by the examining attorney during examination, in accordance with applicable rules and statutes, in order to obtain a registration.

201.01 Effective Filing Date Controls for Purposes of Determining Priority for Publication or Issue

The filing date of an application (*see* [TMEP §201](#)) is also the effective filing date, *except* where: (1) the applicant is entitled to priority under [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#) or [§1141g](#) (*see* [TMEP §206.02](#)); (2) the applicant amends an intent-to-use application filed under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) to the Supplemental Register (*see* [TMEP §206.01](#)); or (3) the application was filed before November 16, 1989, the applicant had not used the mark in commerce for one year before the application filing date, and the applicant amends to the Supplemental Register on or after November 16, 1989 (*see* [TMEP §206.03](#)). The effective filing date is controlling for purposes of determining priority for publication or issue (*see* [TMEP §1208.01](#)) and constructive use priority (*see* [TMEP §201.02](#)).

201.02 Constructive Use Priority

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1057\(c\)](#) and [1141f\(b\)](#), filing *any* application for registration on the Principal Register, including an intent-to-use application, constitutes constructive use of the mark, provided the application matures into a registration. *See Cent. Garden & Pet Co. v. Doskocil Mfg. Co.*, 108 USPQ2d 1134 (TTAB 2013) . Upon registration, filing affords the applicant nationwide priority over others, except: (1) parties who used the mark before the applicant's filing date; (2) parties who filed in the USPTO before the applicant; or (3) parties who are entitled to an earlier priority filing date based on the filing of a foreign application under [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#) or [§1141g](#) (*see* [TMEP §206.02](#)). *See Zirco Corp. v. Am. Tel. and Tel. Co.*, 21 USPQ2d 1542 (TTAB 1991) ; *Aktieselskabet AF 21. November 2001 v. Fame Jeans Inc.*, 525 F.3d 8, 86 USPQ2d 1527 (D.C. Cir. 2008).

202 Requirements for Receiving a Filing Date

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#), the USPTO will grant a filing date to an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act that is in the English language and contains all of the following:

- (1) The name of the applicant;
- (2) A name and address for correspondence;
- (3) A clear drawing of the mark;
- (4) A listing of the goods or services; and
- (5) The filing fee for at least one class of goods or services.

The filing date requirements apply to both the Principal and the Supplemental Register. *Kraft Group LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837 (TTAB 2009) (use in commerce is not required for receipt of a filing date for an application requesting registration on the Supplemental Register).

If an application does not satisfy all the above requirements, it will not be given a filing date. The USPTO will notify the applicant of the reason(s) why the application was not given a filing date, and refund the application filing fee.

The applicant must provide a physical address to which paper correspondence can be mailed in order to receive a filing date. An e-mail address and authorization to send communications by e-mail cannot be substituted for a physical address. A post office box is acceptable.

Applications that do not meet the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date are referred to as “informal.” See [TMEP §203](#) regarding review for compliance with minimum filing requirements, and [TMEP §§204](#) *et seq.* for information about how the USPTO handles informal applications.

In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#) (i.e., a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States), compliance with the minimum filing requirements of §66(a) of the Act will be determined by the IB prior to sending the application to the USPTO. See TMEP §§ [1904](#) *et seq.* for further information about §66(a) applications.

202.01 Clear Drawing of the Mark

In a §66(a) application, the drawing must meet the requirements of the Madrid Protocol and the *Common Regulations Under the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks and the Protocol Relating to That Agreement*, which are available on the IB’s website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. The IB will determine whether the drawing meets these requirements before sending the application to the USPTO. See [TMEP §§1904](#) *et seq.* for further information about §66(a) applications.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#), a §1 or §44 applicant must submit “a clear drawing of the mark” to receive a filing date, except in applications for registration of sound, scent, and other non-visual marks. A separate drawing page (or digital image of a separate drawing page in an application filed through the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”)) is not mandatory, but is encouraged. See [TMEP §807.09](#) regarding “drawings” in applications for registration of non-visual marks.

A “drawing” is simply a depiction of the mark for which registration is sought. [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#). A drawing that includes multiple elements that do not comprise an identifiable mark, or that consists of wording describing the mark, does not constitute a clear drawing of the mark.

An application that includes two or more drawings displaying materially different marks does not meet the requirement for a “clear drawing of the mark.” Therefore, an application is denied a filing date if it includes two or more drawings displaying materially different marks. See *Humanoids Group v. Rogan*, 375 F.3d 301, 71 USPQ2d 1745 (4th Cir. 2004).

However, if an applicant (1) submits a separate drawing page showing a mark in a paper application, (2) enters a standard character mark in the “Mark Information” field of an application filed through TEAS, or (3) attaches a .jpg file containing a mark to the “Mark Information” field of a TEAS application, and a different mark appears elsewhere in the application, the drawing page or mark shown in the “Mark Information” field on TEAS will control for purposes of determining the nature and elements of the mark. The USPTO will grant a filing date to the application, and disregard any other mark that appears elsewhere in the application. The applicant will not be permitted to amend the mark if the amendment is a material alteration of the mark on the drawing page in a paper application or the “Mark Information” field in a TEAS application. See *In re L.G. Lavorazioni Grafite S.r.l.*, 61 USPQ2d 1063 (Dir USPTO 2001). See [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#) and [TMEP §§807.14](#) *et seq.* regarding material alteration of a mark.

A specimen showing the mark does not satisfy the requirement for a drawing. If the only depiction of the mark is on a specimen (*e.g.*, an advertisement, a photograph of the goods, or the overall packaging), then there is no drawing, and the application will be denied a filing date.

See [TMEP §§807](#) *et seq.* for additional information about the examination of drawings.

See also [TMEP §204.03](#) regarding the examining attorney's handling of applications that are erroneously granted a filing date.

202.02 Listing of Recognizable Goods or Services

The USPTO will deny a filing date to an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act if the application does not identify recognizable goods or services. See [TMEP §1402.02](#) for further information.

202.03 Filing Fee for At Least One Class of Goods or Services

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the applicant must pay the filing fee for at least one class of goods or services before an application can be given a filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(5\)](#). The fee can be paid by credit card, check, money order, electronic funds transfer ("EFT"), or by an authorization to charge a deposit account. [37 C.F.R. §2.207](#). See [TMEP §§405](#) *et seq.* for additional information about fees.

The amount of the trademark application filing fee varies depending on whether the application is filed through TEAS or on paper. An applicant has four choices. The applicant can file:

- A paper application at the highest fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#);
- A regular TEAS application at the lower fee per class set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#);
- A TEAS RF application (*see* [TMEP §820](#)) at the lower fee per class set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#); or
- A TEAS Plus application (*see* [TMEP §819](#)*et seq.*) at the lowest fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#).

See [TMEP §§819](#)*et seq.* regarding TEAS Plus. *See also* notices at [70 Fed. Reg. 2952 \(Jan. 19, 2005\)](#) and [70 Fed. Reg. 38768 \(July 6, 2005\)](#). The current fee schedule is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

The complete fee for at least a single class must be submitted with the application as filed. Partial or piecemeal fee payments are unacceptable and will be returned.

If an application does not include a filing fee for at least a single class, the USPTO will deny a filing date.

In re Buckhead Marketing & Distribution, Inc., 71 USPQ2d 1620 (Dir USPTO 2004); *In re Paulsen*, 35 USPQ2d 1638 (Comm'r Pats. 1995). If a filing date has been granted when the USPTO discovers that the applicant has not paid the filing fee for at least a single class, the filing date will be cancelled. *See* [TMEP §204.01](#).

See [TMEP §§202.03\(a\)](#) and [405.06](#) regarding payments that are refused or charged back by financial institutions, and [TMEP §405.03](#) regarding deposit accounts.

The filing fee for a §66(a) application will be sent to the USPTO by the IB, pursuant to Article 8 of the Madrid Protocol. Generally, the examining attorney should not require additional fees during examination, except where the application is divided due to a change in ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods/services. See [TMEP §810](#) for further information about application filing fees, and [TMEP §§ 1904](#) *et seq.* for further information about §66(a) applications.

202.03(a) Fee Payment Refused or Charged Back By Financial Institution

Where a check submitted as payment of an application filing fee is returned to the USPTO unpaid, or an EFT or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, the application is treated as though the fee had never been paid.

If the original application was accompanied by an authorization to charge fee deficiencies to a deposit account (37 C.F.R. §2.208), then the application filing fee and the processing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#) (see [TMEP §§202.03\(a\)\(i\)](#) and [405.06](#)) are charged to the deposit account, and the original filing date remains unchanged.

However, if the original application was not accompanied by an authorization to charge deficient fees to a deposit account that has sufficient funds to cover the fee, and the applicant has not paid the filing fee for at least one class of goods or services, the filing date is void and will be cancelled. *In re Paulsen*, 35 USPQ2d 1638 (Comm'r Pats. 1995).

In some cases, the applicant will have resubmitted the fee before the USPTO discovers that the payment was refused. In these cases, the USPTO will change the filing date to the date when the fee for a single class of goods or services was resubmitted.

In a multiple-class application, if the fee for at least a single class has been paid, but the payment of the filing fee for additional class(es) is refused, the filing date of the application is not affected. The applicant must: (1) resubmit the fee for the additional class(es), or delete the additional class(es); and (2) pay the processing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). The applicant must pay the processing fee even if the applicant chooses to delete the additional class(es).

See [TMEP §§202.03\(a\)\(i\)](#) and [405.06](#) regarding payments refused by financial institutions, and [TMEP §204.03](#) regarding the examining attorney's handling of applications that are erroneously granted a filing date.

202.03(a)(i) Processing Fee for Payment Refused or Charged Back By Financial Institution

There is a fee for processing any payment refused (including a check returned unpaid) or charged back by a financial institution. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). See [TMEP §405.06](#). However, this is not a filing date requirement. If an applicant resubmits the filing fee without paying the processing fee, the USPTO will give the application a filing date as of the date of resubmission, and the examining attorney will require submission of the processing fee during examination.

203 Review for Compliance With Minimum Requirements

In applications under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), the IB will determine whether the application complies with §66(a) prior to sending the request for extension of protection of an international registration to the USPTO. See [TMEP §§1904](#) *et seq.* for further information about §66(a) applications.

Applications under §1 or §44 of the Act are given a receipt date (see [TMEP §303.01](#)) and then reviewed for compliance with the minimum requirements for granting a filing date (see [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#) and [TMEP §202](#) for a list of these requirements).

If the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#) have been met, the USPTO assigns a filing date as of the date of receipt in the USPTO. See [TMEP §§401](#) *et seq.* regarding the processing of new applications that meet the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date, and [TMEP §§204](#) *et seq.* regarding the processing of applications that do not meet these minimum requirements.

The minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#) apply to all applications under §§1 and 44 of the Act, whether filed electronically or on paper. When an application is filed electronically, the TEAS system will not accept the transmission if the fields corresponding to the minimum filing requirements are not filled in. However, if the fields are filled in with incomplete or inappropriate information, the TEAS system will accept the transmission, but the USPTO will deny the application a filing date upon review for compliance with minimum filing requirements. For example, if the services were identified as “miscellaneous services,” TEAS would accept the transmission, but the USPTO would not give the application a filing date (see [TMEP §§202.02](#) and [1402.02](#)).

204 Defective or Informal Applications

If an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act does not meet the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#) (see [TMEP §202](#)), the application is void. These applications are also referred to as “incomplete” or “informal.”

204.01 Filing Date Cancelled if Minimum Filing Requirements not Met

Applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act are initially assigned a filing date and serial number and then reviewed for compliance with the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#). If the minimum filing requirements have not been met, the USPTO cancels the filing date and serial number, refunds any filing fee submitted, and sends a notice to the applicant explaining why the application is defective.

See [TMEP §204.02](#) regarding the procedures for requesting review of the denial of a filing date by the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

204.02 Resubmission of Applications

The USPTO prefers that all applications be filed through TEAS. However, if the USPTO denies a filing date in a paper application, the applicant may resubmit the original papers or a copy of the original papers, together with the item(s) necessary to correct the defect(s), and a new filing fee. The applicant should cross off the cancelled serial number. *A filing fee for at least a single class of goods or services must be included when the applicant resubmits an application, even if the applicant has not yet received a refund of the fee previously submitted.*

The new filing date will be the date on which a complete application, including all elements required by [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#), is received in the USPTO. Note that applications claiming priority under §44(d) of the Trademark Act must meet all filing date requirements within six months of the filing date of the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#); [TMEP §§806.01\(c\)](#) and [1003.02](#).

If an applicant believes that the USPTO committed an error in denying the application a filing date, the applicant may submit a request to restore the filing date. See [TMEP §1711](#). The USPTO prefers that the applicant file a new application, including the required application filing fee, using TEAS, located at <http://www.uspto.gov>. After the applicant receives a new serial number, the applicant should submit a

request to restore the original filing date. To ensure proper routing and processing, the Office prefers that the request also be filed electronically. In TEAS, the Request to Restore Filing Date form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled "Petition Forms." Alternatively, the request should be faxed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy at 571-273-8950.

The request should: (1) include the new serial number; (2) state the reason(s) why the applicant believes the filing date was denied in error; and (3) include a copy of any Notice of Incomplete Trademark Application received from the USPTO. Although applicants have two (2) months from the issuance date of a Notice of Incomplete Trademark Application to file a request to restore the original filing date ([37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#)), it is recommended that the applicant file the request immediately upon receipt of the new serial number, to expedite processing.

204.03 Examining Attorney's Handling of Applications That Are Erroneously Accorded a Filing Date

Sometimes an application under §1 or §44 that does not meet the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#) for receipt of a filing date is erroneously referred to an examining attorney for examination. In this situation, if the examining attorney discovers the error *before* issuing an action in the case, then the examining attorney should have the application declared informal. The USPTO will cancel the filing date and serial number, refund any filing fee submitted, and send a notice to the applicant explaining why the application is defective. See [TMEP §204.01](#).

If, however, an examining attorney discovers *after* issuing an action that the application as filed did not meet the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date, then the examining attorney must issue a supplemental Office action, refusing registration on the ground that the application was not eligible to receive a filing date. Any outstanding refusals and requirements must be maintained and incorporated into the supplemental Office action. The applicant should be given six months to comply with all filing date requirements. If the applicant fails to qualify for a filing date within the response period, the application is void. If a filing fee was submitted with the original application, the examining attorney must have the filing fee refunded and update the USPTO's automated records to indicate that the application is abandoned.

If the applicant complies with the filing date requirements within six months of the issuance of the examining attorney's Office action, the application will receive a new filing date as of the date on which the applicant satisfied all minimum filing date requirements. In such a case, the examining attorney must conduct a new search of Office records for conflicting marks, and issue another Office action if necessary.

The examining attorney must treat a response that addresses any outstanding refusals and requirements, but does not include the required fee, as an incomplete response, and must issue a notice of incomplete response granting the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response. To issue a notice of incomplete response, the examining attorney must use the "Examiner's Non-Responsive Amendment." The notice must not include a six-month response clause. If the applicant does not respond by submitting the filing fee, the application must be abandoned for incomplete response.

205 Filing Date Is Not Normally Changed

After an application has been given a filing date, the USPTO will normally not vacate the filing date or physically alter the designation of the original filing date in the Trademark database, except where the

application as originally filed was erroneously accorded a filing date (*see* [TMEP §204.03](#)) or where the Office grants restoration of a filing date (*see* [TMEP §§ 204.02](#) and [1711](#)).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, if the application met the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date (*see* [TMEP §202](#)) when originally filed, but during examination it is discovered that the applicant did not have a right to apply on the assigned filing date (e.g., because the applicant did not own the mark), the application is *void*, because a valid application was not created. *See* [TMEP §§803.06](#) and [1201.02\(b\)](#). The USPTO will *not* refund the filing fee in such a case. If, subsequent to the assigned filing date, the applicant became eligible to apply, the applicant may file a new application (including a filing fee).

206 Effective Filing Date

The filing date of an application (*see* [TMEP §201](#)) is also the *effective* filing date, *except* in the situations described in the subsections below. In these situations, the USPTO does not alter the original filing date in its automated records.

206.01 Amendment of §1(b) Application from Principal Register to Supplemental Register upon Filing of Allegation of Use

An applicant relying on a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) is not eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register until the applicant has submitted an acceptable amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(d\)](#) and [2.75\(b\)](#).

If an application is based solely on §1(b), and the applicant files an acceptable amendment to allege use or statement of use *and* an acceptable amendment to the Supplemental Register, the USPTO will consider the filing date of the amendment to allege use or statement of use to be the effective filing date of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\)](#). The examining attorney must conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks. *See* [TMEP §206.04](#) regarding examining attorney's action after conducting a new search.

Amendment of an application from the Supplemental to the Principal Register does not change the effective filing date of an application. *Kraft Group LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837 (TTAB 2009) (filing date did not change when applicant who originally sought registration on the Supplemental Register without alleging use in commerce amended to seek registration on the Principal Register under §1(b)).

See [TMEP §§816.02](#) and [1102.03](#) for additional information about examination of intent-to-use applications on the Supplemental Register.

206.02 Application Claiming Priority under §44(d) or §67

When an applicant is entitled to priority based on a foreign application, the effective filing date is the date on which the foreign application was first filed in the foreign country. [15 U.S.C. §§1126\(d\)\(1\)](#) and [1141g](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#) and [7.27\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§1003.02](#) and [1904.01\(e\)](#).

In an application under §44(d) of the Trademark Act, the priority claim for the United States application must be filed within six months after the filing date of the foreign application. The applicant may submit a priority claim after the filing date of the United States application if: (1) the applicant submits the priority

claim within the six-month priority period ([37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#)); and (2) the applicant was entitled to priority on the filing date of the United States application.

In an application under §66(a) of the Act, the priority claim must be submitted with the international application or subsequent designation filed with the IB within six months after the filing date of the foreign application. The priority claim will be part of the request for extension of protection sent to the USPTO by the IB. In some situations, however, the USPTO may receive a priority claim or a corrected priority claim after receipt of the §66(a) application via a notice of correction from the IB.

If the priority date is included in the original §44(d) or §66(a) application, the examining attorney must determine, while conducting a search of USPTO records for conflicting marks, whether there are any applications for conflicting marks that would be deemed later filed. The examining attorney must also notify the examining attorney assigned to any later-filed application so that the application may be suspended pending disposition of the §44(d) or §66(a) application with the earlier effective filing date.

If the priority claim in a §44(d) or §66(a) application is submitted after the examining attorney has conducted a search of USPTO records for conflicting marks, the examining attorney must conduct a new search to determine whether, in view of the new earlier effective filing date, there are any applications for conflicting marks that would now be deemed later filed. The examining attorney must also notify the examining attorney assigned to any now later-filed application so that the application may be suspended pending disposition of the application with the earlier effective filing date.

See [TMEP §1003.05](#) regarding the procedures when an application filed after a §44(d) application's priority date proceeds to publication or registration because the §44(d) application was not yet filed with the USPTO when the examining attorney searched for conflicting marks. See [TMEP §1904.01\(e\)](#) regarding the procedures when an application filed after a §66(a) application's priority date proceeds to publication or registration because the request for extension of protection for the §66(a) application was not yet of record with the USPTO when the examining attorney searched for conflicting marks.

206.03 Applications Filed Before November 16, 1989, That Are Amended to the Supplemental Register on or After November 16, 1989

In an application filed before November 16, 1989, the date of the amendment to the Supplemental Register becomes the effective filing date of the application if: (1) the applicant had not used the mark in commerce for one year before the application filing date; and (2) the applicant amends to the Supplemental Register on or after November 16, 1989. See [TMEP §816.02](#).

206.04 Examining Attorney's Action After Conducting New Search When the Effective Filing Date Changes to a Later Date

When the effective filing date changes to a later date, the examining attorney must conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks. If the search shows that because of the new, later effective filing date, there is a later-filed conflicting application that now has an earlier filing date, the examining attorney must suspend action of the subject application pending disposition of the other application, if the application is otherwise in condition for suspension. In addition, the examining attorney must notify the examining attorney assigned to the other application of the change in the effective filing date of the subject application, so that the other examining attorney may withdraw the application from suspension and either approve it for publication or take action on any other outstanding issues.

See [TMEP §§206.02](#) regarding the procedures when the effective filing date changes to an earlier date and [TMEP §§1208–1208.02\(f\)](#) regarding conflicting marks in pending applications.

Chapter 300 Filing and Receipt of Documents

301	Electronic Filing
302	Trademark Correspondence and Signature Requirements - In General
302.01	Original Documents Generally Not Required
302.02	Multiple Copies of Documents Should Not Be Filed
302.03	Identifying the Nature of Documents Filed
302.03(a)	Correspondence Pertaining to Trademark Applications
302.03(b)	Correspondence Pertaining to Trademark Registrations
303	Receipt of Documents by the Office
303.01	Date of Receipt
303.02	Acknowledgment of Receipt
303.02(a)	TEAS “Success” Page
303.02(b)	“Mail Room Date” Label Showing Receipt
303.02(c)	Postcard Receipt
303.02(c)(i)	Postage on Return Receipt Postcards
304	Electronic Mail
304.01	Communications Acceptable Via Electronic Mail
304.02	Communications Not Acceptable Via Electronic Mail
304.03	Authorization of Official Correspondence from the USPTO by Electronic Mail
305	Mailing Documents to the Office
305.01	Mailing Addresses
305.02	Certificate of Mailing Procedure
305.02(a)	When Certificate of Mailing Procedure May Not Be Used
305.02(b)	Mailing Requirements
305.02(c)	Location and Form of Certificate
305.02(d)	Wording of Certificate of Mailing
305.02(e)	Effect of Certificate of Mailing
305.02(f)	Correspondence Mailed Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §2.197 but Not Received by Office
305.02(g)	Correspondence Deposited as First-Class Mail Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §2.197 and Returned by the U.S. Postal Service
305.02(h)	Certificate of Mailing Requirements Strictly Enforced
305.03	Priority Mail Express®
305.04	Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service
306	Facsimile Transmission (Fax)
306.01	Documents that May Not Be Filed by Facsimile Transmission
306.02	Fax Machines Designated to Accept Relevant Trademark Documents
306.03	Effect of Filing by Fax
306.04	Procedure for Filing by Fax
306.05	Certificate of Transmission Procedure
306.05(a)	Location and Form of Certificate of Transmission
306.05(b)	Wording of Certificate of Transmission
306.05(c)	Effect of Certificate of Transmission
306.05(d)	Correspondence Transmitted by Fax Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §2.197 but Not Received by Office
306.06	Requirements for Certificate of Transmission Strictly Enforced
307	Hand Delivery
308	Period Ending on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal Holiday
309	Unscheduled Closings of the United States Patent and Trademark Office
310	Computing Period for Response to Office Action or Notice

301 Electronic Filing

The Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”) makes electronic filing available on the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) website, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. TEAS can be used to file all forms related to a domestic application or registration, or for filings under the Madrid Protocol. TEAS offers a group of specific forms that require direct data entry in designated fields, and/or the attachment of a .jpg or .pdf image file. For documents for which a specific TEAS form with dedicated data fields has not yet been developed, TEAS also offers "Global Forms" that allow a filer to attach a .jpg or .pdf image file that contains the complete text for the actual filing.

When a document is filed electronically, either as a specific TEAS form or through the global form approach, the USPTO generally receives it within seconds after filing. TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the document, and may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. From the “Success” page, the filer can click on a link to a PDF receipt that includes a summary of the filed information and general processing information. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt that includes the same information. Electronic filing creates an automatic entry of receipt of this filing into the USPTO’s automated system, which helps to avoid improper abandonment or cancellation.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#), correspondence transmitted electronically using TEAS is considered filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, in Eastern Time, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed electronically.

See [TMEP §§807.05–807.05\(c\)](#) regarding drawings in electronically transmitted applications, and [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#) regarding specimens in electronically transmitted applications.

Requests for recordation of assignments and other documents affecting title to an application or registration can be filed through the Electronic Trademark Assignment System (“ETAS”) on the USPTO website at <http://etas.uspto.gov>.

The Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals (“ESTTA”), at <http://estta.uspto.gov/>, must be used to file requests for extensions of time to oppose, notices of opposition, petitions to cancel, appeals, motions, briefs, notices of change of address, and other documents in Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (“Board”) proceedings.

If a document transmitted through TEAS, ETAS, or ESTTA is due on a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the document will be considered timely if the USPTO receives the transmission on or before the following day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.196](#); [TMEP §308](#).

See [TMEP §819](#) regarding TEAS Plus and [TMEP §820](#) regarding TEAS RF.

302 Trademark Correspondence and Signature Requirements - In General

37 CFR § 2.193 Trademark correspondence and signature requirements.

(a) Signature required. Each piece of correspondence that requires a signature must bear:

(1) A handwritten signature personally signed in permanent ink by the person named as the signatory, or a true copy thereof;

or

(2) An electronic signature that meets the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, personally entered by the person named as the signatory. The Office will accept an electronic signature that meets the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section on correspondence filed on paper, by facsimile transmission (§ 2.195(c)), or through TEAS or ESTTA.

(b) Copy of original signature. If a copy, such as a photocopy or facsimile copy of an original signature is filed, the filer should retain the original as evidence of authenticity. If a question of authenticity arises, the Office may require submission of the original.

(c) Requirements for electronic signature. A person signing a document electronically must:

(1) Personally enter any combination of letters, numbers, spaces and/or punctuation marks that he or she has adopted as a signature, placed between two forward slash (“/”) symbols in the signature block on the electronic submission; or

(2) Sign the document using some other form of electronic signature specified by the Director.

(d) Signatory must be identified. The name of the person who signs a document in connection with a trademark application, registration, or proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board must be set forth in printed or typed form immediately below or adjacent to the signature, or identified elsewhere in the filing (e.g., in a cover letter or other document that accompanies the filing).

(e) Proper person to sign. Documents filed in connection with a trademark application or registration must be signed by a proper person. Unless otherwise specified by law, the following requirements apply:

(1) Verified statement of facts. A verified statement in support of an application for registration, amendment to an application for registration, allegation of use under § 2.76 or § 2.88, request for extension of time to file a statement of use under § 2.89, or an affidavit under section 8, 12(c), 15, or 71 of the Act must satisfy the requirements of § 2.2(n), and be signed by the owner or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner. A person who is properly authorized to verify facts on behalf of an owner is:

(i) A person with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership);

(ii) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or

(iii) An attorney as defined in § 11.1 of this chapter who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the owner.

(2) Responses, amendments to applications, requests for express abandonment, requests for reconsideration of final actions, and requests to divide. Responses to Office actions, amendments to applications, requests for express abandonment, requests for reconsideration of final actions, and requests to divide must be signed by the owner of the application or registration, someone with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g. a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under § 11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with the following guidelines:

(i) If the owner is represented by a practitioner qualified to practice before the Office under § 11.14 of this chapter, the practitioner must sign, except where the owner is required to sign the correspondence; or

(ii) If the owner is not represented by a practitioner qualified to practice under § 11.14 of this chapter, the individual owner or someone with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) must sign. In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign.

(3) Powers of attorney and revocations of powers of attorney. Powers of attorney and revocations of powers of attorney must be signed by the individual applicant, registrant or party to a proceeding pending before the Office, or by someone with legal authority to bind the applicant, registrant, or party (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). In the case of joint applicants, registrants, or parties, all must sign. Once the applicant, registrant or party has designated a qualified practitioner(s), the named practitioner may sign an associate power of attorney appointing another qualified practitioner(s) as an additional person(s) authorized to prosecute the application or registration. If the applicant, registrant, or party revokes the original power of attorney, the revocation discharges any associate power signed by the practitioner whose power has been revoked. If the practitioner who signed an associate power withdraws, the withdrawal discharges any associate power signed by the withdrawing practitioner upon acceptance of the request for withdrawal by the Office.

(4) Petitions to revive under § 2.66. A petition to revive under § 2.66 must be signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts regarding unintentional delay.

(5) Petitions to Director under § 2.146. A petition to the Director under § 2.146 must be signed by the petitioner, someone with legal authority to bind the petitioner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under § 11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with the following guidelines:

(i) If the petitioner is represented by a practitioner qualified to practice before the Office under § 11.14 of this chapter, the practitioner must sign; or

(ii) If the petitioner is not represented by a practitioner authorized to practice before the Office under § 11.14 of this chapter, the individual petitioner or someone with legal authority to bind the petitioner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) must sign. In the case of joint petitioners, all must sign.

(6) Requests for correction, amendment or surrender of registrations. A request for correction, amendment or surrender of a registration must be signed by the owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice before the Office under § 11.14 of this chapter. In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign.

(7) Renewal applications. A renewal application must be signed by the registrant or the registrant's representative.

(8) Designations and revocations of domestic representative. A designation or revocation of a domestic representative must be signed by the applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under § 11.14 of this chapter. In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign.

(9) Requests to change correspondence address in an application or registration. A notice of change of correspondence address in an application or registration must be signed by the applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under § 11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with the following guidelines:

(i) If the applicant or registrant is represented by a practitioner qualified to practice before the Office under § 11.14 of this chapter, the practitioner must sign; or

(ii) If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a practitioner qualified to practice before the Office under § 11.14, the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind the applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) must sign. In the case of joint applicants or joint registrants, all must sign.

(10) Cover letters. A person transmitting paper documents to the Office may sign a cover letter or transmittal letter. The Office neither requires cover letters nor questions the authority of a person who signs a communication that merely transmits paper documents.

(f) Signature as certification. The presentation to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) of any document by any person, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, constitutes a certification under § 11.18(b) of this chapter. Violations of § 11.18(b) of this chapter may jeopardize the validity of the application or registration, and may result in the imposition of sanctions under § 11.18(c) of this chapter. Any practitioner violating § 11.18(b) of this chapter may also be subject to disciplinary action. See § 11.18(d) and § 11.804 of this chapter.

(g) Separate copies for separate files.

(1) Since each file must be complete in itself, a separate copy of every document to be filed in connection with a trademark application, registration, or inter partes proceeding must be furnished for each file to which the document pertains, even though the contents of the documents filed in multiple files may be identical.

(2) Parties should not file duplicate copies of correspondence in a single application, registration, or proceeding file, unless the Office requires the filing of duplicate copies. The Office may dispose of duplicate copies of correspondence.

(h) Separate documents for separate branches of the Office. Since different branches or sections of the Office may consider different matters, each distinct subject, inquiry or order must be contained in a separate document to avoid confusion and delay in answering correspondence.

(i) Certified documents required by statute. When a statute requires that a document be certified, a copy or facsimile transmission of the certification is not acceptable.

The USPTO recommends that all trademark correspondence be filed through TEAS. See [TMEP §301](#). Trademark correspondence may also be sent through the United States Postal Service ("USPS"), delivered by a courier service, or hand carried to the USPTO. Except for documents listed in [TMEP §306.01](#), correspondence may be transmitted by facsimile ("fax"). (Note that an application for registration of a mark may *not* be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(1\), 2.197\(a\)\(2\)](#)). Certain informal communications may be conducted through electronic mail ("e-mail") ([TMEP §304.01](#)).

See [TMEP §§304–304.03](#) regarding e-mail, [TMEP §§305–305.04](#) regarding mailing documents to the USPTO, [TMEP §§306–306.06](#) regarding fax transmission, and [TMEP §307](#) regarding hand delivery.

An applicant, registrant, or attorney may sign an official Trademark communication by personally entering a "symbol," comprising any combination of letters, numbers, spaces, and/or punctuation marks, that he or she has adopted as a signature between two forward slashes (""). See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#) and [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#).

A scanned image of a document with a handwritten signature is also acceptable, as long as the image is attached in .jpg or .pdf format.

The use of an electronic signature under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#) or an “/s/” notation on a communication constitutes a certification under [37 C.F.R. §11.18\(b\)](#), and will be understood to mean, that:

- (1) The correspondence has been read by the applicant, registrant, or attorney;
- (2) The filing of the correspondence is authorized;
- (3) To the best of the signatory’s knowledge, information, and belief, formed after an inquiry reasonable under the circumstances, there is good ground to support the correspondence; and
- (4) The correspondence is not presented for purposes of delay.

The signatory must personally sign the communication. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)\(1\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§611.01\(b\), 611.01\(c\)](#), and [611.02](#).

302.01 Original Documents Generally Not Required

When a party files a copy of a document related to an application or registration, the USPTO will normally not require the party to submit the original document. Copies (e.g., photocopies or fax transmissions) are acceptable unless a document is required by statute to be certified (e.g., a certified copy of a final court order pursuant to 15 U.S.C. §1119). However, the party who filed the copy should retain the original in case questions arise as to the authenticity of the signature on the photocopy or faxed correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(b\)](#).

Original certificates of registration are not required for requests for amendment or correction of a registration under §7 of the Trademark Act, and owners are strongly discouraged from submitting them. [TMEP §§1609.01\(b\), 1609.10](#).

302.02 Multiple Copies of Documents Should Not Be Filed

37 CFR §2.193(g)(2)

Parties should not file duplicate copies of correspondence in a single application, registration, or proceeding file, unless the Office requires the filing of duplicate copies. The Office may dispose of duplicate copies of correspondence.

As a general rule, only one copy of each document should be filed, unless more than one copy is specifically required by statute or rule, or a USPTO employee specifically requests more than one copy.

When filing a document electronically or by fax, a party should *not* send a follow-up copy unless the USPTO specifically requests a follow-up copy. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(g\)\(2\)](#). Submission of duplicate documents can delay processing. *See In re Allegiance Staffing*, 115 USPQ2d 1319, 1323 (TTAB 2015)(discouraging the submission of duplicate filings because “it merely adds to the bulk of the file and makes it more difficult to review the submissions”).

302.03 Identifying the Nature of Documents Filed

302.03(a) Correspondence Pertaining to Trademark Applications

Documents filed through TEAS or ESTTA are automatically transmitted to the appropriate location and entered into the record of the appropriate application or Board proceeding.

For paper documents, to ensure the timely entry into the official record, every piece of correspondence filed in the USPTO pertaining to a trademark application should be identified at the beginning by a heading or caption and by the serial number of the application, the name of the applicant, and the mark to which the document pertains. [37 C.F.R. §2.194\(b\)\(1\)](#). Cover letters and transmittal letters should identify the material that they accompany.

To expedite processing, *all* incoming documents pertaining to an application should include the following identifying data:

- (1) Serial number;
- (2) Filing date;
- (3) Mark;
- (4) A title indicating the nature of the document;
- (5) Law office (identified in the most recent Office action);
- (6) Name of examining attorney identified on the most recent Office action;
- (7) Issuance date of the Office action to which the document is in response, if applicable;
- (8) The name, address (including ZIP code), and telephone number of the applicant or the applicant's attorney; and
- (9) The applicant's or attorney's e-mail address.

To facilitate the matching of responses to Office actions with the correct records, examining attorneys' Office actions issued on paper include peel-off response labels that reference the application serial number, the mark and the assigned law office. If filing a response on paper, the applicant is encouraged to affix this label to the upper right-hand corner of the response.

302.03(b) Correspondence Pertaining to Trademark Registrations

Documents filed through TEAS or ESTTA are automatically transmitted to the appropriate location and entered into the record of the appropriate registration or Board proceeding.

For paper filings, correspondence relating to a registered trademark should identify the registration by specifying the mark, the registrant's name, and the registration number. [37 C.F.R. §2.194\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Paper correspondence filed under [15 U.S.C. §§1057, 1058, 1059](#), and [1141k](#) should be directed to the Post Registration Section of the Office.

Paper petitions to cancel a registered mark should be directed to the Board. [TMEP §1607](#).

Court orders relating to registered trademarks should be sent to the Office of the Solicitor. [TMEP §1610](#).

303 Receipt of Documents by the Office

37 CFR § 2.195 Receipt of trademark correspondence.

(a) Date of receipt and Priority Mail Express® date of deposit. Trademark correspondence received in the Office is given a filing date as of the date of receipt except as follows:

(1) The Office is not open for the filing of correspondence on any day that is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. Except for correspondence transmitted electronically under paragraph (a)(2) of this section or transmitted by facsimile under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, no correspondence is received in the Office on Saturdays, Sundays, or Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

(2) Trademark-related correspondence transmitted electronically will be given a filing date as of the date on which the Office receives the transmission.

(3) Correspondence transmitted by facsimile will be given a filing date as of the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Office unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, in which case the filing date will be the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

(4) Correspondence filed in accordance with § 2.198 will be given a filing date as of the date of deposit as Priority Mail Express® with the United States Postal Service.

(b) Correspondence delivered by hand. Correspondence may be delivered by hand during hours the Office is open to receive correspondence.

(c) Facsimile transmission. Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (d) of this section, correspondence, including authorizations to charge a deposit account, may be transmitted by facsimile. The receipt date accorded to the correspondence will be the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Office, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See § 2.196. To facilitate proper processing, each transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application, registration or proceeding before the Office. The application serial number, registration number, or proceeding number should be entered as a part of the sender's identification on a facsimile cover sheet.

(d) Facsimile transmissions are not permitted and if submitted, will not be accorded a date of receipt, in the following situations:

(1) Applications for registration of marks;

(2) Drawings submitted under § 2.51, § 2.52, § 2.72, or § 2.173;

(3) Correspondence to be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board;

(4) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act; and certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act; and

(5) Madrid-related correspondence submitted under § 7.11, § 7.21, § 7.14, § 7.23, § 7.24, or § 7.31.

(e) Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service.

(1) If the Director designates a postal service interruption or emergency within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 21(a), any person attempting to file correspondence by Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service who was unable to deposit the correspondence with the United States Postal Service due to the interruption or emergency may petition the Director to consider such correspondence as filed on a particular date in the Office.

(2) The petition must:

(i) Be filed promptly after the ending of the designated interruption or emergency;

(ii) Include the original correspondence or a copy of the original correspondence; and

(iii) Include a statement that the correspondence would have been deposited with the United States Postal Service on the requested filing date but for the designated interruption or emergency in Priority Mail Express® service; and that the correspondence attached to the petition is the original correspondence or a true copy of the correspondence originally attempted to be deposited as Priority Mail Express® on the requested filing date.

(3) Paragraphs (e)(1) and (e)(2) of this section do not apply to correspondence that is excluded from the Priority Mail Express® procedure pursuant to § 2.198(a)(1).

303.01 Date of Receipt

Correspondence transmitted through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, in Eastern Time, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#).

For paper correspondence, the date of actual receipt in the USPTO is assigned as the filing date of all correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)](#). However, under [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(a\)\(1\)](#) and [\(3\)](#), no paper correspondence is "received" in the USPTO on Saturdays, Sundays, or Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. See [TMPEP §308](#) regarding response periods that end on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

The filing date of a fax transmission (see [TMPEP §306.06](#) is the date the complete transmission is received in the USPTO, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia,

in which case the filing date is the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(1\), \(3\)](#). However, if the communication is properly filed using the “certificate of transmission” procedure under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), the USPTO looks to the date on the certificate to determine whether the filing is timely. [TMEP § 306.05\(c\)](#).

Similarly, if a document is mailed to the USPTO using the “certificate of mailing” procedure under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) ([TMEP §§305.02–305.02\(h\)](#)), the filing date is the date of receipt in the USPTO, but the USPTO looks to the date on the certificate to determine whether the filing is timely. [TMEP §305.02\(e\)](#).

See [TMEP §1904.01\(b\)](#) regarding the filing date of a request for an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#).

303.02 Acknowledgment of Receipt

303.02(a) TEAS “Success” Page

When a document is filed electronically, the USPTO generally receives it within seconds after filing. TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage, and used as evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the document.

303.02(b) “Mail Room Date” Label Showing Receipt

The USPTO places a bar code label indicating the date of receipt on every application, part of an application, amendment, letter, or other document submitted to the USPTO on paper. The label is referred to as the “Mail Room Date” label, and it establishes the date of receipt (i.e., the filing date) of any document. Before 1998, the USPTO used a stamp, known as the “Office Date Stamp,” to indicate the date of receipt of incoming documents.

303.02(c) Postcard Receipt

For documents filed on paper, a party may obtain a receipt by enclosing a self-addressed, stamped postcard identifying the document. The USPTO will place a label indicating the receipt date on the card and return it to the party who filed the document.

The identifying data on the postcard should be complete and specific. The nature of the document being filed (e.g., application, affidavit, amendment, appeal, petition); the name of the applicant or registrant; the mark; the application filing date or registration date; and the application serial number, registration number, or proceeding number should be included if available. Each specific element of the filing should be listed on the postcard (e.g., written application, drawing page, fee, specimen) so that the postcard can be used as evidence that the element was submitted if the element is lost or disassociated from the record.

The party submitting the postcard is responsible for placing proper postage on the self-addressed postcard, and for ensuring that the proper mailing address appears on the postcard. See [TMEP §303.02\(c\)\(i\)](#) regarding the use of postage meters.

If a postcard with proper postage accompanies application documents that are mailed to the USPTO, a bar code label indicating the serial number assigned to the application will be applied to the postcard.

If the postcard accompanies application documents that are hand delivered, the bar code label will not be applied to the postcard because the application has not yet been serialized. Therefore, if application documents are hand carried, the applicant may submit a second postcard with proper postage so that, upon serialization, the USPTO may send the additional card, with a bar code label indicating the serial number, to the applicant.

When documents for more than one application or registration are filed under a single cover, a return postcard should be attached to each document for which a receipt is desired.

303.02(c)(i) Postage on Return Receipt Postcards

The party submitting a return receipt postcard (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#)) is responsible for placing proper postage on the self-addressed postcard. Proper postage means that it has a stamp(s) in the correct amount or a meter stamp postmark that complies with USPS requirements.

The USPS provides in its Domestic Mail Manual that the date in a meter postmark must be the actual date of deposit, with limited exceptions, and that meter postmarks used to prepay reply postage must *not* show the date. The USPS will not accept for mailing a post card that contains a postage meter date more than ten days old. Thus, a return receipt postcard containing a dated meter postmark may not be delivered by the USPS, because the postcard will be mailed by the Office substantially after the date on which the meter postmark is printed on the card.

Therefore, to ensure the receipt of a confirmation post card, the party filing the postcard should: (1) affix postage stamps to their postcards, or purchase already-stamped post cards from the USPS; or (2) if a postage meter is used, ensure that the meter postmark does not show the date, and follow the instructions in the postage meter license agreement regarding prepay reply postage. *See* notice at 1246 TMOG 42 (May 8, 2001).

304 Electronic Mail

304.01 Communications Acceptable Via Electronic Mail

Applicants and registrants may use e-mail only to conduct informal communications regarding a particular application or registration as an alternative to telephone communications. See TMEP §§ [709.04](#), [709.05](#).

For example, an applicant may submit via e-mail:

- Questions regarding an outstanding Office action that do not constitute a response;
- Authorization to issue an examiner's amendment or priority action (*see* [TMEP §§707.01](#), [708.01](#));
- Objection to an examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §§707](#), [707.02](#));
- Notification of termination of a cancellation proceeding that is the basis for suspension (*see* [TMEP §716.02\(a\)](#));
- Request to arrange a convenient time to speak by telephone.

See TMEP § [304.02](#) regarding communications that are not acceptable via e-mail.

Attachments: As part of an informal communication, if an applicant's or registrant's e-mail contains one or more attachments, the USPTO will only open and view the attachments if they are in .jpg or .pdf format and are legible. The USPTO will not open attachments in any other format.

The examining attorney must ensure that all relevant informal e-mail communications from applicants are entered into the electronic record. See [TMEP §§709.04](#) and [709.05](#) for further information.

304.02 Communications Not Acceptable Via Electronic Mail

E-mail may *not* be used to file applications for registration of marks, responses to Office actions, pre- or post-publication amendments to an application, changes of correspondence address, appointments or revocations of attorneys, attorney withdrawal requests, petitions, documents required by statute to show use of a mark in commerce or to request an extension of time to show such use, and post-registration maintenance documents, proposed amendments, or responses to Post Registration Office actions. These documents may be filed electronically using TEAS. Responses to Office actions sent via e-mail will not be accorded a date of receipt. [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(c\)](#).

Further, e-mail may not be used to request an advisory opinion as to the likelihood of overcoming a refusal or requirement. The examining attorney or Post Registration specialist should advise the applicant to file a formal response for consideration of arguments regarding any refusal or requirement.

See TMEP § [304.01](#) regarding communications that are acceptable via e-mail, § [709.04](#) regarding telephone and e-mail communications, and § [709.05](#) regarding informal communications.

The Board does not accept e-mail communications.

304.03 Authorization of Official Correspondence from the USPTO by Electronic Mail

The USPTO will send official correspondence concerning an application or registration by e-mail only if e-mail communication is authorized by the applicant, registrant, or a practitioner qualified under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) who has been authorized by the applicant or registrant to act on its behalf.

The applicant, registrant, or qualified practitioner may authorize the USPTO to communicate by e-mail by so indicating in the initial application or in any official written communication. The authorization must include the e-mail address to which e-mail is to be sent. If the applicant, registrant, or the applicant's qualified practitioner authorizes the USPTO to send official correspondence by e-mail, one primary e-mail address may be designated, as well as up to four secondary e-mail addresses for duplicate courtesy copies of the correspondence. See [TMEP §403](#) regarding treatment of undeliverable e-mail correspondence.

The USPTO is not required to send Office actions and other official correspondence by e-mail whenever the applicant or registrant authorizes e-mail correspondence. The USPTO may send certain correspondence by e-mail, regular mail, fax, or other appropriate means.

It is the responsibility of the applicant, registrant, or qualified practitioner to notify the USPTO of any changes of e-mail address. [TMEP §609.03](#).

The Office considers any authorization for e-mail communications to end upon the date of registration of a mark. Note, however, that a courtesy e-mail reminder of USPTO maintenance filing deadlines will be sent to all e-mail addresses of record within the Correspondence and Current Owner(s) Information fields, as indicated in Office records. See [TMEP §§1604.02](#) and [1613.02](#).

305 Mailing Documents to the Office

305.01 Mailing Addresses

Documents filed through TEAS are automatically sent to the appropriate location.

For trademark-related documents filed on paper, except for documents sent to the Assignment Recordation Branch for recordation, requests for copies of trademark documents, and certain documents filed under the Madrid Protocol (listed below), all trademark-related correspondence that is mailed to the USPTO should be addressed to:

Commissioner for Trademarks
P.O. Box 1451
Alexandria,, Virginia 22313-1451

The names of individual employees should *not* be placed on the *envelopes* in which official communications are sent to the USPTO. Envelopes may be marked “Attention: Trademark Examining Operation.” Responses to Office actions should include the name of the examining attorney in the heading.

Documents Filed Under the Madrid Protocol

International applications under [37 C.F.R. §7.11](#), subsequent designations under [37 C.F.R. §7.21](#), responses to irregularity notices under [37 C.F.R. §7.14](#), requests to record changes in the International Register under [37 C.F.R. §§7.23](#) and [7.24](#), requests for transformation under [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#), requests to note replacement under [37 C.F.R. §7.28](#), and petitions to the Director to review the actions of the USPTO’s Madrid Processing Unit, when filed by mail, must be mailed to:

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#), [7.4\(b\)](#).

Documents to be Recorded in Assignment Recordation Branch

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends filing requests to record documents through the USPTO website, at <http://etas.uspto.gov>. Documents filed electronically are recorded much faster than their paper counterparts. Unless they are filed together with new applications, paper documents and cover sheets to be recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch should be sent to Mail Stop Assignment Recordation Services, Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, P. O. Box 1450, Alexandria VA 22313-1450. [37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(c\)](#), [3.27](#).

Requests for Copies of Trademark Documents

Copies of trademark documents can be ordered through the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Requests for copies of documents can also be faxed or e-mailed to the USPTO, with an authorization to charge the fee to a credit card or USPTO deposit account. See [TMEP §111](#) for additional information.

All other requests for certified or uncertified copies of trademark documents should be sent to: Mail Stop Document Services, Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, P. O. Box 1450, Alexandria VA 22313-1450. [37 C.F.R. §2.190\(d\)](#).

305.02 Certificate of Mailing Procedure

37 CFR §2.197 Certificate of mailing or transmission.

(a) Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, correspondence required to be filed in the Office within a set period of time will be considered as being timely filed if the procedure described in this section is followed. The actual date of receipt will be used for all other purposes.

(1) Correspondence will be considered as being timely filed if:

(i) The correspondence is mailed or transmitted prior to expiration of the set period of time by being:

(A) Addressed as set out in §2.190 and deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail; or

(B) Transmitted by facsimile to the Office in accordance with §2.195(c); and

(ii) The correspondence includes a certificate for each piece of correspondence stating the date of deposit or transmission. The person signing the certificate should have a reasonable basis to expect that the correspondence would be mailed or transmitted on or before the date indicated.

(2) The procedure described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section does not apply to:

(i) Applications for the registration of marks under 15 U.S.C. 1051 or 1126; and

(ii) Madrid-related correspondence filed under §7.11, §7.21, §7.14, §7.23, §7.24 or §7.31.

(b) In the event that correspondence is considered timely filed by being mailed or transmitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, but not received in the Office, and an application is abandoned, a registration is cancelled or expired, or a proceeding is dismissed, terminated, or decided with prejudice, the correspondence will be considered timely if the party who forwarded such correspondence:

(1) Informs the Office of the previous mailing or transmission of the correspondence within two months after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) Supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed or transmitted correspondence and certificate; and

(3) Includes a statement that attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Director to the previous timely mailing or transmission. If the correspondence was sent by facsimile transmission, a copy of the sending unit's report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement.

(c) The Office may require additional evidence to determine whether the correspondence was timely filed.

In [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), there is a “certificate of mailing or transmission” procedure to avoid lateness due to mail delay for certain trademark correspondence. See [TMEP §305.02\(a\)](#) regarding trademark correspondence excluded from the certificate of mailing or transmission procedure. Under the certificate of mailing or transmission procedure, correspondence is considered to be timely even if received after the due date, if the correspondence was: (1) deposited with the United States Postal Service as first-class mail or transmitted to the USPTO by facsimile transmission before the expiration of the filing period; and (2) accompanied by a certificate attesting to the date of deposit or transmission. [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)](#).

Filers must retain a copy of the correspondence, including the signed and dated certificate. See *In re Sasson Licensing Corp.*, 35 USPQ2d 1510, 1512 (Comm’r Pats. 1995).

See [TMEP §§305.02\(a\)–305.02\(h\)](#) regarding the certificate of mailing procedure, and [TMEP §§306.05–306.05\(d\)](#) regarding the certificate of facsimile transmission procedure.

305.02(a) When Certificate of Mailing Procedure May Not Be Used

The certificate of mailing procedure may be used for all trademark correspondence *except*:

- Applications for registration of marks;
- International applications under [37 C.F.R. §7.11](#);
- Subsequent designations under [37 C.F.R. §7.21](#);

- Responses to notices of irregularity under [37 C.F.R. §7.14](#);
- Requests to record changes of ownership under [37 C.F.R. §7.23](#);
- Requests to record restrictions of the holder's right of disposal, or the release of such restrictions, under [37 C.F.R. §7.24](#); and
- Requests for transformation under [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#).

[37 C.F.R. §§2.197\(a\)\(2\), 7.4\(e\)](#).

305.02(b) Mailing Requirements

The correspondence must be properly addressed (see [TMEP §305.01](#) for mailing addresses), and must be deposited with the U.S. Postal Service (USPS) with sufficient postage as first-class mail. Since first-class mail services of the USPS are not available in foreign countries, the certificate of mailing procedure may not be used for sending mail to the USPTO from a foreign country.

305.02(c) Location and Form of Certificate

The certificate of mailing: (1) must state the date of deposit in the mail, which must be a date within the set filing period (this includes the last day of the period, or the succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia when the last day of the period falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia); and (2) should be signed by a person who has a reasonable basis to expect the correspondence to be deposited in the mail on the date indicated. [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)\(1\)](#). The signature of the certificate must be separate from any signature for the correspondence being deposited.

The best location for the certificate of mailing is at the beginning of the correspondence to which it pertains, typed in its entirety. The certificate of mailing should be separated from contents of the correspondence that are on the same page. Several blank lines between the contents and the certificate will suffice.

If the certificate of mailing does not fit on the correspondence to which it pertains, the certificate may be placed on a separate sheet of paper that is attached securely to the correspondence. The separate sheet must exhibit or bear a complete identification of the nature of the document or fee as well as an identification of the application, registration, and/or proceeding to which the document pertains (including serial number or registration number). The separate sheet may be a cover letter or transmittal letter, with the certificate placed at the bottom of the letter and signed separately from the letter. If there is any doubt concerning the correspondence to which a certificate of mailing on a separate sheet relates, the USPTO will not accept the certificate.

There must be a certificate of mailing for each piece of correspondence. When correspondence for more than one application or registration is mailed in a single envelope, each item of correspondence must have its own certificate of mailing. Similarly, when more than one type of correspondence is submitted in connection with the same application, each item of correspondence must have its own certificate of mailing.

It is suggested that the certificate be signed by the applicant or the party involved in the proceeding, or by the attorney for such person. If someone else signs, it should be a responsible person in a position to know that the mail will be deposited on the date specified.

The USPTO accepts the date of deposit stated in the certificate of mailing on the basis of the statement of personal knowledge. The USPTO does not normally inspect the postmark on the envelope.

305.02(d) Wording of Certificate of Mailing

The following wording is suggested for the certificate of mailing.

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner for Trademarks, P.O. Box 1451, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451 on the date shown below:

(Typed or Printed Name of Person Signing Certificate)

(Signature)

(Date)

305.02(e) Effect of Certificate of Mailing

The filing date assigned to paper correspondence is the date of actual receipt in the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)](#). The USPTO does not retain the envelopes in which material is received or record the date of the postmark.

The date of deposit indicated on the certificate of mailing is used only to determine whether the correspondence was deposited with the USPS within the filing period. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)](#). Therefore, if the correspondence is actually received in the USPTO within the filing period, the certificate of mailing is ignored. If, however, the USPTO receives the correspondence after the filing period has expired, the USPTO looks to see whether a certificate of mailing was included. If no certificate is found, the correspondence is untimely.

When a document received after the expiration of the filing period includes a signed certificate of mailing, and the date of deposit on the certificate is within the filing period, the USPTO considers the correspondence to be timely filed.

If the filing period ends on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the correspondence is considered timely if the date of deposit on the certificate of mailing is the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.196; TMEP §308](#)).

Whenever it is necessary to change the effective filing date of an application (e.g., when an application filed under §1(b) of the Trademark Act is amended to request registration on the Supplemental Register after submission of an allegation of use), the date of actual receipt rather than the date on the certificate is the new effective filing date. See [TMEP §§206–206.04](#) regarding changes in the effective filing date of an application.

305.02(f) Correspondence Mailed Pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) but Not Received by Office

If correspondence filed with a certificate of mailing is not received by (or is lost within) the USPTO, the USPTO will consider the correspondence to be timely based on the date of deposit stated in the certificate of mailing if the party who filed the correspondence:

- (1) informs the USPTO in writing of the previous mailing of the correspondence within two months after becoming aware that the USPTO has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;
- (2) supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed correspondence, including a copy of the signed and dated certificate of mailing (see *In re Sasson Licensing Corp.*, 35 USPQ2d 1510, 1512 (Comm’r Pats. 1995)); and
- (3) includes a statement attesting, based on personal knowledge or to the satisfaction of the Director, to the previous timely mailing. This statement does not have to be verified.

[37 C.F.R. §2.197\(b\)](#).

The two-month time period for notifying the USPTO begins to run from the date that the party who filed the correspondence became aware that the USPTO has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence, unless the USPTO has issued a written action, such as a notice of abandonment or cancellation. In such situations, the issue date of the USPTO written action will serve as the starting point for measuring timeliness. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(d\)](#), [2.197\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §1705.04](#).

The required evidence should be sent to the area in the USPTO where the misplaced or lost document was intended to be filed, e.g., the law office, ITU/Divisional Unit, or Post Registration Section.

If all three criteria listed above cannot be met, the only remedy available is a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) (if appropriate) or a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), which must include a petition fee, and a statement that attests on a personal knowledge basis to the previous timely mailing, along with any additional evidence. See [TMEP §§1702–1708](#) regarding petitions under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), and [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive.

The above procedure does not apply to the filing of an application for registration of a mark, or to the Madrid-related documents listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)\(2\)](#) and [TMEP §305.02\(a\)](#).

The USPTO may require additional evidence relating to the mailing or transmission of correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(c\)](#).

305.02(g) Correspondence Deposited as First-Class Mail Pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) and Returned by the U.S. Postal Service

Correspondence must be deposited with the USPS as first-class mail in compliance with any and all applicable requirements of the USPS to be considered “[d]eposited with the U.S. Postal Service,” within the meaning of [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)\(A\)](#). Therefore, correspondence returned by the USPS as not mailed in compliance

with USPS requirements, including concerning mail weighing more than the USPS maximum permissible weight, is not entitled to any benefit under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#).

305.02(h) Certificate of Mailing Requirements Strictly Enforced

The requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) are strictly enforced, and the USPTO denies petitions to consider a document timely filed as of the date on the certificate if a party fails to comply with these requirements.

A party's inadvertent failure to comply with the requirements of a rule is not considered an extraordinary situation that would warrant waiver of a rule under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) or [37 C.F.R. §2.148](#).

See Honigsbaum v. Lehman, 903 F. Supp. 8, 37 USPQ2d 1799 (D.D.C. 1995) (finding Commissioner did not abuse discretion in refusing to waive requirements of 37 C.F.R. §1.10(c) and grant filing date to patent application, where applicant failed to produce "Express Mail" customer receipt or any other evidence that application was actually deposited with USPS as "Express Mail"), *aff'd mem.*, 95 F.3d 1166 (Fed. Cir. 1996); *In re Sasson Licensing Corp.*, 35 USPQ2d 1510, 1512 (Comm'r Pats. 1995) (noting that failure to retain an executed hard copy of documents filed with the USPTO is not an extraordinary circumstance that would justify waiver of 37 C.F.R. §1.8); *Gustafson v. Strange*, 227 USPQ 174 (Comm'r Pats. 1985) (finding counsel's unawareness of the provisions of 37 C.F.R. §1.8 is not an extraordinary situation warranting waiver of the rule); *In re Chicago Historical Antique Auto. Museum, Inc.*, 197 USPQ 289 (Comm'r Pats. 1978) (finding lateness caused by mailing documents on the last day of the filing period is not an extraordinary situation justifying waiver of the rules, because certificate of mailing procedure under 37 C.F.R. §1.8 was available to petitioner).

305.03 Priority Mail Express®

37 CFR §2.198 Filing of correspondence by Priority Mail Express®.

(a)(1) Except for documents listed in paragraphs (a)(1)(i) through (vii) of this section, any correspondence received by the Office that was delivered by the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service of the United States Postal Service (USPS) will be considered filed with the Office on the date of deposit with the USPS. The Priority Mail Express® procedure does not apply to:

- (i) Applications for registration of marks;
- (ii) Amendments to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act;
- (iii) Statements of use under section 1(d) of the Act;
- (iv) Requests for extension of time to file a statement of use under section 1(d) of the Act;
- (v) Affidavits of continued use under section 8 of the Act;
- (vi) Renewal requests under section 9 of the Act; and
- (vii) Requests to change or correct addresses; and
- (viii) Affidavits of use under section 71 of the Act.

(2) The date of deposit with USPS is shown by the "date accepted" on the Priority Mail Express® label or other official USPS notation. If the USPS deposit date cannot be determined, the correspondence will be accorded the date of receipt in the Office as the filing date.

(b) Correspondence should be deposited directly with an employee of the USPS to ensure that the person depositing the correspondence receives a legible copy of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label with the "date accepted" clearly marked. Persons dealing indirectly with the employees of the USPS (such as by deposit in a Priority Mail Express® drop box) do so at the risk of not receiving a copy of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label with the desired "date accepted" clearly marked. The paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence should also include the Priority Mail Express® mailing label number thereon. *See* paragraphs (c), (d) and (e) of this section.

(c) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service of the USPS, who can show that there is a discrepancy between the filing date accorded by the Office to the correspondence and the date of deposit as shown by the "date accepted" on the Priority Mail Express® mailing

label or other official USPS notation, may petition the Director to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the “date accepted” on the Priority Mail Express® mailing label or other official USPS notation, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed within two months after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date other than the USPS deposit date;

(2) The number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing; and

(3) The petition includes a true copy of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label showing the “date accepted,” and of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit.

(d) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service of the USPS, who can show that the “date accepted” on the Priority Mail Express® mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS was incorrectly entered or omitted by the USPS, may petition the Director to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the date the correspondence is shown to have been deposited with the USPS, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed within two months after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date based upon an incorrect entry by the USPS;

(2) The number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) prior to the original mailing; and

(3) The petition includes a showing that establishes, to the satisfaction of the Director, that the correspondence was deposited in the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service prior to the last scheduled pickup on the requested filing date. Any showing pursuant to this paragraph must be corroborated by evidence from the USPS or evidence that came into being within one business day after the deposit of the correspondence in the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service of the USPS.

(e) If correspondence is properly addressed to the Office pursuant to §2.190 and deposited with sufficient postage in the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service of the USPS, but not received by the Office, the party who mailed the correspondence may petition the Director to consider such correspondence filed in the Office on the USPS deposit date, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed within two months after the person becomes aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) The number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) prior to the original mailing;

(3) The petition includes a copy of the originally deposited paper(s) or fee(s) showing the number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label thereon, a copy of any returned postcard receipt, a copy of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label showing the “date accepted,” a copy of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit, and, if the requested filing date is a date other than the “date accepted” on the Priority Mail Express® mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS, a showing pursuant to paragraph (d)(3) of this section that the correspondence was deposited in the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service prior to the last scheduled pickup on the requested filing date; and

(4) The petition includes a statement that establishes, to the satisfaction of the Director, the original deposit of the correspondence and that the copies of the correspondence, the copy of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label, the copy of any returned postcard receipt, and any official notation entered by the USPS are true copies of the originally mailed correspondence, original Priority Mail Express® mailing label, returned postcard receipt, and official notation entered by the USPS.

(f) The Office may require additional evidence to determine whether the correspondence was deposited as Priority Mail Express® with the USPS on the date in question.

Documents Excluded From [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#)

Trademark Rule 2.198, [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#), provides a procedure for obtaining a filing date as of the date that correspondence is deposited as Priority Mail Express® with the USPS. However, this procedure does **not** apply to the following trademark documents:

- Applications for registration of marks;
- Amendments to allege use under §1(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#);
- Statements of use under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#);
- Requests for extension of time to file a statement of use under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#);
- Affidavits of continued use under §8 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#);

- Renewal applications under §9 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1059](#);
- Requests to change or correct addresses;
- Combined filings under §§8 and 9 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1058](#) and [1059](#);
- Affidavits of use under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#);
- Combined affidavits or declarations under §§8 and 15 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1058](#) and [1065](#);
- Combined affidavits or declarations under §§71 and 15 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1141k](#) and [1065](#);
- Responses to notices of irregularity under [37 C.F.R. §7.14](#);
- Requests for transformation under [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#); and
- Requests to note replacement under §7.28.

[37 C.F.R. §§2.198\(a\)\(1\), 7.4\(b\)\(2\)](#). If the documents listed above are filed by Priority Mail Express®, they will receive a filing date as of the date of receipt in the USPTO and *not* the date of deposit with USPS. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)](#); see [TMEP §303.01](#).

If the documents listed above are filed by Priority Mail Express®, they will receive a filing date as of the date of receipt in the USPTO and *not* the date of deposit with USPS. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §303.01](#).

Lost Documents

If one of the documents listed above is sent by Priority Mail Express® but is lost within the USPTO, and the applicant or registrant presents proof of actual receipt in the form of evidence that a USPTO employee signed for or acknowledged the Priority Mail Express® package (e.g., a Priority Mail Express® mailing label that bears an Office date stamp or label or the signature of a USPTO employee, or evidence from the USPS website showing that the document was actually received in the USPTO), the USPTO will grant the document a filing date as of the *date of actual receipt in the USPTO*. The applicant or registrant must submit a true copy of the document(s) and an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) attesting to the contents of the Priority Mail Express® package. See [TMEP §1711](#) regarding restoration of application filing dates, [TMEP §1712.01](#) regarding reinstatement of abandoned applications, and [TMEP §§1712.02–1712.02\(b\)](#) regarding reinstatement of cancelled or expired registrations.

If a document is sent by Priority Mail Express® but is not received by or is lost within the USPTO, and the applicant does not have proof of actual receipt in the USPTO, the USPTO will not grant a filing date to the document.

Certificate of Mailing Under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) for Documents Sent by Priority Mail Express®

For documents other than applications for registration of marks and the Madrid-related documents listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)\(2\)](#) (see [TMEP §305.02\(a\)](#)), the certificate of mailing procedure of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) may be used for documents sent by Priority Mail Express® as well as documents sent by first-class mail.

Under the certificate of mailing procedure, correspondence is considered to be timely filed even if received after the due date, if the correspondence is deposited with the USPS with sufficient postage as first-class mail before the expiration of the filing period and accompanied by a certificate attesting to the date of deposit.

Correspondence sent by Priority Mail Express® is deemed to meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) for postage as first-class mail, because the postage for Priority Mail Express® exceeds the postage required for first-class mail. However, to use the certificate of mailing procedure for documents mailed by Priority Mail Express®, the filer must place a certificate attesting to the date of deposit and

meeting the requirements of 37 CFR §2.197(a)(1)(ii) on the document prior to mailing. See [TMEP §§305.02–305.02\(h\)](#) for further information about the certificate of mailing procedure.

The following wording is suggested for a certificate of mailing when correspondence is sent by Priority Mail Express®:

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as Priority Mail Express® in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner for Trademarks, P.O. Box 1451, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451 on the date shown below:

(Typed or Printed Name of Person Signing Certificate)

(Signature)

(Date)

Documents Not Excluded From [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#)

The procedures for filing documents by Priority Mail Express® under [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#) may be used for documents *not expressly excluded by [37 C.F.R. §2.198\(a\)](#)*, e.g., documents filed with the Board or the Assignment Recordation Branch of the Office. These documents are entitled to a filing date as of the date of deposit with USPS if the filer meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#). The rule requires: (1) the document must be sent through the Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service of the USPS; (2) it must be deposited prior to the last scheduled pickup on the relevant date; (3) it must be properly addressed in accordance with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.190](#); and (4) the number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label must be placed on the document prior to mailing.

If a document is filed in accordance with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#), but the document is not given a filing date as of the date of deposit as Priority Mail Express®, the filer may request the USPTO to change the filing date of the document, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.198\(c\)](#), [\(d\)](#), or [\(e\)](#). Rule 2.198(c) applies when there is a discrepancy between the filing date assigned by the USPTO and the “date accepted” entered by the USPS on the Priority Mail Express® mailing label; Rule 2.198(d) applies when the “date accepted” is incorrectly entered or omitted by the USPS; and Rule 2.198(e) applies when correspondence deposited with the USPS as Priority Mail Express® is not received by (or is lost within) the USPTO. A petition to change the filing date of a document pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#) must:

- (1) be filed within two months of the issuance date of the action from which relief is requested, or, if there is no “issuance of an action,” within two months of the date that the party who filed the

- correspondence became aware that there was a problem with the USPTO's receipt of the correspondence ([37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(d\)](#), [2.198\(c\)\(1\)](#), [2.198\(d\)\(1\)](#), [2.198\(e\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §1705.04](#));
- (2) include a showing that the number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label was placed on the correspondence prior to the original mailing ([37 C.F.R. §§2.198\(c\)\(2\)](#), [2.198\(d\)\(2\)](#), [2.198\(e\)\(2\)](#));
 - (3) if the filer contends that there is a discrepancy between the filing date assigned by the USPTO and the "date accepted" entered by the USPS, include a true copy of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label with the "date accepted" clearly marked ([37 C.F.R. §§2.198\(c\)\(3\)](#)); [2.198\(d\)\(3\)](#), and [2.198\(e\)\(3\)](#));
 - (4) if the filer contends that the "date accepted" was entered incorrectly or omitted by the USPS, include: (a) a showing that the correspondence was deposited as Priority Mail Express® prior to the last scheduled pickup on the requested filing date; and (b) evidence from the USPS or evidence that came into being *after* deposit and within one business day of the deposit of the correspondence as Priority Mail Express® ([37 C.F.R. §2.198\(d\)\(3\)](#)); and
 - (5) if the correspondence is lost within or never received by the USPTO, include: (a) a true copy of the originally deposited correspondence showing the number of the Priority Mail Express® mailing label; and (b) a statement, signed by the person who deposited the documents as Priority Mail Express® with the USPS, setting forth the date and time of deposit, and stating that the copies of the correspondence and Priority Mail Express® mailing label accompanying the petition are true copies of those originally sent ([37 C.F.R. §§2.198\(e\)\(3\)](#), [2.198\(e\)\(4\)](#)).

When correspondence to which [37 C.F.R. §2.198\(a\)](#) applies is placed in a Priority Mail Express® drop box after the box has been cleared for the last time on a given day, it is considered to have been deposited as of the date of receipt indicated on the Priority Mail Express® mailing label by the USPS employee. *See* Communications with the Patent and Trademark Office, 61 Fed. Reg. 56,439, 56,445 (Nov. 1, 1996).

305.04 Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service

35 U.S.C. 21(a)

The Director may by rule prescribe that any paper or fee required to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office will be considered filed in the Office on the date on which it was deposited with the United States Postal Service or would have been deposited with the United States Postal Service but for postal service interruptions or emergencies designated by the Director.

37 CFR §2.195(e) Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service.

- (1) If the Director designates a postal service interruption or emergency within the meaning of [35 U.S.C. 21\(a\)](#), any person attempting to file correspondence by Priority Mail Express® Post Office to Addressee service who was unable to deposit the correspondence with the United States Postal Service due to the interruption or emergency may petition the Director to consider such correspondence as filed on a particular date in the Office.
 - (2) The petition must:
 - (i) Be filed promptly after the ending of the designated interruption or emergency;
 - (ii) Include the original correspondence or a copy of the original correspondence; and
 - (iii) Include a statement that the correspondence would have been deposited with the United States Postal Service on the requested filing date but for the designated interruption or emergency in Priority Mail Express® service; and that the correspondence attached to the petition is the original correspondence or a true copy of the correspondence originally attempted to be deposited as Priority Mail Express® on the requested filing date.
 - (3) Paragraphs (e)(1) and (e)(2) of this section do not apply to correspondence that is excluded from the Priority Mail Express® procedure pursuant to [§2.198\(a\)\(1\)](#).

Under [35 U.S.C. §21\(a\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(e\)](#), if there is an interruption or emergency in the United States Postal Service, the Director may consider correspondence to have been filed in the Office on a particular date if the correspondence or a copy thereof is: (1) filed promptly after the ending of the designated interruption or emergency; and (2) accompanied by a statement indicating that such correspondence would have been filed on that particular date if it were not for the designated interruption or emergency in the

United States Postal Service. This procedure does not apply to correspondence that is excluded from the Priority Mail Express® procedure pursuant to §2.198(a)(1). [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(e\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §305.03](#) regarding Priority Mail Express®.

306 Facsimile Transmission (Fax)

37 CFR §2.195 (Extract) Receipt of trademark correspondence.

- (a) * * * Trademark correspondence received in the Office is given a filing date as of the date of receipt except as follows: * * *
- (3) Correspondence transmitted by facsimile will be given a filing date as of the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Office unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, in which case the filing date will be the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. * * *
- (c) Facsimile transmission. Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (d) of this section, correspondence, including authorizations to charge a deposit account, may be transmitted by facsimile. The receipt date accorded to the correspondence will be the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Office, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See §2.196. To facilitate proper processing, each transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application, registration or proceeding before the Office. The application serial number, registration number, or proceeding number should be entered as a part of the sender's identification on a facsimile cover sheet.
- (d) Facsimile transmissions are not permitted and if submitted, will not be accorded a date of receipt, in the following situations:
- (1) Applications for registration of marks;
 - (2) Drawings submitted under §2.51, §2.52, §2.72, or §2.173;
 - (3) Correspondence to be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board;
 - (4) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act; and certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act; and
 - (5) Madrid-related correspondence submitted under §7.11, §7.21, §7.14, §7.23, §7.24, or §7.31. * * * * *

The USPTO permits the filing of certain correspondence by fax. See [TMEP §306.03](#) regarding the date of receipt of correspondence that is filed by fax.

A certificate of transmission may be used to establish timely filing in the event that the correspondence is transmitted within the response period but is received in the Office after expiration of the response period, or is not received by or lost within the Office. See [TMEP §§306.05–306.05\(d\)](#) regarding the requirements for the certificate of transmission procedure.

306.01 Documents that May Not Be Filed by Facsimile Transmission

All trademark documents *except those listed below* may be filed by fax, and are eligible for the benefits of the certificate of transmission provided for in [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#).

The following types of trademark correspondence may *not* be filed by fax and, if submitted by fax, will not be given a filing date:

- (1) Applications for registration of marks;
- (2) Drawings submitted under [37 C.F.R. §§2.51, 2.52, 2.72, or 2.173](#);
- (3) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#);
- (4) Certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under 15 U.S.C. §1057(e) (*see* [TMEP §302.01](#));
- (5) Correspondence to be filed with the Board;

- (6) Madrid-related correspondence submitted under [37 C.F.R. §7.11](#), [§7.14](#), [§7.21](#), [§7.23](#), [§7.24](#), or [§7.31](#); and
- (7) Documents that are required by statute to be certified (e.g., certified copies of court orders).

[37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(i\)](#), [2.195\(d\)](#), [7.4\(d\)](#). Applications for registration of marks may be filed through the Trademark Electronic Application System ("TEAS").

When any trademark document specifically excluded from the fax transmission procedure is received in the USPTO by fax, the document will not be accepted. See *Vibe Records, Inc. v. Vibe Media Group LLC*, 88 USPQ2d 1280, 1283 (TTAB 2008) (finding faxed notice of opposition unacceptable and can be given no effect). As a courtesy, the USPTO will attempt to notify senders whenever correspondence that falls within one of these prohibitions is sent to the USPTO by fax.

306.02 Fax Machines Designated to Accept Relevant Trademark Documents

The fax machines that are designated to accept trademark documents are attended between the business hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, excluding Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

Submissions by fax should be transmitted to the location for which they are intended. A USPTO Contacts List, which includes fax numbers, is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>, and appears periodically in the *Official Gazette*. In addition, questions about fax numbers may be directed to the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199.

The USPTO does not formally acknowledge receipt of documents transmitted by fax, but USPTO fax machines will usually confirm to the sending unit that the transmission is complete.

Each fax machine location in the USPTO maintains a log comprising a collection of daily activity sheets recording all fax transmissions received. These logs can be used as evidence of receipt in the USPTO, and may be used to reinstate applications and registrations. The individual activity report that pertains to a particular transmission received in the USPTO is kept with the correspondence.

306.03 Effect of Filing by Fax

The filing date of correspondence received in the USPTO by fax, regardless of whether it contains a certificate of transmission, is the date that the complete transmission is received by a USPTO fax machine, unless the transmission is completed on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. Correspondence for which transmission is completed on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia is given a filing date as of the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(3\)](#).

For example, a 20-minute fax transmission to the USPTO from California starting on a Friday at 8:45 p.m. Pacific Time would be completed at 9:05 p.m. Pacific Time. The complete transmission would be received in the USPTO at approximately 12:05 a.m. Eastern Time on Saturday. The filing date accorded to the correspondence is the date of the following business day, which in this case would be Monday (assuming that Monday is not a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia).

The phrase “complete transmission” means that the transmission was received in its entirety. For example, if page one of a ten-page fax transmission is received in the USPTO at 11:55 p.m. on a Tuesday and page

ten of that transmission is received at 12:05 a.m. Wednesday, the filing date accorded to that correspondence will be the date of that Wednesday (assuming that Wednesday is not a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia).

If the sender wants the correspondence to be considered timely filed as of the date that the transmission began, the correspondence must include a certificate of transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §306.05\(c\)](#) regarding the effect of a certificate of transmission.

306.04 Procedure for Filing by Fax

Each fax transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application, registration, or other proceeding before the Office. The application serial number, registration number, or proceeding number should be entered as a part of the sender's identification on a fax cover sheet. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(c\)](#). Applicants should wait until an application serial number is assigned before filing any document related to a new application by fax. See [37 C.F.R. §2.194\(a\)](#).

It is recommended that each transmission include a cover sheet that, in addition to stating the application serial number, registration number, or proceeding number, specifies the mark, the number of pages being transmitted, and the name, address, fax number, and telephone number of the transmitting party.

Each facsimile-transmitted document must be legible. The preferred size of the document being submitted is 8½ inches by 11 inches, letter size, or A4 paper. Because equipment used by the Office cannot print a document larger than 8½ inches by 11 inches, correspondence should not be transmitted on larger paper.

When correspondence is filed by fax transmission, it is recommended that the sending fax machine generate a report confirming transmission for each transmission session. This report should be retained by the sender, along with the original correspondence, as evidence of content and date of transmission.

Unless specifically requested to do so by the Office, parties should *not* mail follow-up copies of documents transmitted by fax. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(g\)\(2\)](#). This can delay processing.

306.05 Certificate of Transmission Procedure

37 CFR §2.197 Certificate of mailing or transmission.

(a) Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, correspondence required to be filed in the Office within a set period of time will be considered as being timely filed if the procedure described in this section is followed. The actual date of receipt will be used for all other purposes.

(1) Correspondence will be considered as being timely filed if:

(i) The correspondence is mailed or transmitted prior to expiration of the set period of time by being:

- (A) Addressed as set out in §2.190 and deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail; or
- (B) Transmitted by facsimile to the Office in accordance with §2.195(c); and

(ii) The correspondence includes a certificate for each piece of correspondence stating the date of deposit or transmission. The person signing the certificate should have a reasonable basis to expect that the correspondence would be mailed or transmitted on or before the date indicated.

(2) The procedure described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section does not apply to:

- (i) Applications for the registration of marks under 15 U.S.C. 1051 or 1126; and
- (ii) Madrid-related correspondence filed under §7.11, §7.21, §7.14, §7.23, §7.24 or §7.31.

(b) In the event that correspondence is considered timely filed by being mailed or transmitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, but not received in the Office, and an application is abandoned, a registration is cancelled or expired, or a

proceeding is dismissed, terminated, or decided with prejudice, the correspondence will be considered timely if the party who forwarded such correspondence:

- (1) Informs the Office of the previous mailing or transmission of the correspondence within two months after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;
 - (2) Supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed or transmitted correspondence and certificate; and
 - (3) Includes a statement that attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Director to the previous timely mailing or transmission. If the correspondence was sent by facsimile transmission, a copy of the sending unit's report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement.
- (c) The Office may require additional evidence to determine whether the correspondence was timely filed.

Trademark Rule 2.197, [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), provides a certificate of transmission procedure to avoid lateness when correspondence is faxed within the response period but is received in the USPTO after expiration of the response period, or not received, or lost within the USPTO. The certificate of transmission procedure may be used for any correspondence that may be filed by fax. See [TMEP §306.01](#) regarding documents that may not be filed by fax.

Under the certificate of transmission procedure, certain correspondence will be considered to be timely filed even if received after the end of the filing period, if the correspondence is transmitted by fax to the USPTO before the expiration of the filing period and accompanied by a certificate attesting to the date of transmission. The person signing the certificate certifies the expectation that the transmission would be initiated before midnight, local time, on the date specified.

Filers must retain a copy of the correspondence, including the signed and dated certificate. See *In re Sasson Licensing Corp.*, 35 USPQ2d 1510, 1512 (Comm'r Pats. 1995).

See [TMEP §306.05\(d\)](#) regarding the procedure for establishing the timely filing of correspondence that was faxed to the USPTO with a certificate of transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), but was lost or misplaced.

306.05(a) Location and Form of Certificate of Transmission

The certificate of transmission should be clearly labeled as such and should include a reference to the registration number or application serial number, the date of transmission, and the signature of the person attesting that the document is being transmitted on a certain date.

When possible, the certificate should appear on the document being transmitted, rather than on a separate sheet of paper. See 58 Fed. Reg. 54494 (Oct. 22, 1993).

If the certificate of fax transmission is presented on a separate paper, it *must* identify the document and the application or registration to which it relates.

306.05(b) Wording of Certificate of Transmission

The following wording is suggested for the certificate of transmission:

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSMISSION

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being facsimile transmitted to the United States Patent and Trademark Office on the date shown below.

(Typed or Printed Name of Person Signing Certificate)

(Signature)

(Date)

306.05(c) Effect of Certificate of Transmission

As noted in [TMEP §306.03](#), the filing date given to correspondence received by fax transmission is the date that the complete transmission is received by a USPTO fax machine, unless the transmission is completed on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, in which case the filing date is the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

The date of transmission on the certificate is used only to determine whether the correspondence was transmitted to the USPTO within the filing period. Therefore, if the complete transmission is actually received in the USPTO within the filing period, the certificate of transmission is ignored. If the transmission is completed after the expiration of the filing period, the USPTO looks at the correspondence to see if a certificate of transmission was included. If no certificate is found, the correspondence is untimely.

If the correspondence includes a signed certificate of transmission, and the date of transmission on the certificate is within the filing period, the correspondence is considered to be timely.

For example, if a West Coast applicant transmitted correspondence by fax on the last day of the response period, beginning before 9:00 p.m. Pacific Time (midnight Eastern Time) but completed after 9:00 p.m. Pacific Time, the USPTO would give the correspondence a filing date as of the next business day, because that is the date on which the USPTO received the complete transmission. However, if the practitioner affixed a certificate of transmission to the faxed correspondence indicating that the correspondence was being transmitted on the last day of the response period, then the correspondence would be considered timely filed, even though the transmission completed after 9:00 p.m. Pacific Time (midnight Eastern Time) was received in the USPTO the day after the deadline for response.

If the filing period ends on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the correspondence will be considered to be timely if the date of transmission on the certificate is the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.196](#); [TMEP §308](#)).

Whenever it is necessary to change the effective filing date of an application (e.g., when an application filed under §1(b) of the Trademark Act is amended to request registration on the Supplemental rather than the Principal Register after submission of an allegation of use) and the correspondence included a certificate of transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), the date of actual receipt (as stamped or labeled on the relevant correspondence) rather than the date on the certificate is used as the new effective filing date. See [TMEP §§206–206.04](#) as to changes in the effective filing date of an application.

306.05(d) Correspondence Transmitted by Fax Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §2.197 but Not Received by Office

Rule 2.197(b) sets forth procedures for requesting that correspondence be considered timely when the correspondence is filed with a certificate of transmission, but is not received by or is lost within the USPTO. Such correspondence will be considered timely based on the date of transmission set forth on the certificate of transmission, if the party who transmitted the correspondence:

- (1) informs the USPTO in writing of the previous fax transmission of the correspondence within two months after becoming aware that the USPTO has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;
- (2) supplies an additional copy of the previously transmitted correspondence, including a copy of the signed and dated certificate of transmission (*see In re Sasson Licensing Corp.*, 35 USPQ2d 1510, 1512 (Comm’r Pats. 1995)); and
- (3) includes a statement attesting, based on personal knowledge or to the satisfaction of the Director, to the previous timely transmission. A copy of the sending unit’s report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement. The statement does not have to be verified.

The party who transmitted the correspondence must notify the USPTO of the transmission of the correspondence within two months after becoming aware that the USPTO has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(b\)\(1\)](#); *see* [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#). Where no written action is generated that can be used as a starting point for measuring timeliness, the two-month deadline runs from the date that the party who filed the correspondence became aware that there was a problem with the filing date. *See* [TMEP §1705.04](#).

The required evidence should be directed to the area in the USPTO where the misplaced or lost document was intended to be filed, e.g., the law office, ITU/Divisional Unit, or Post Registration Section.

If *all* the above criteria cannot be met, the only remedy available is a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) (if appropriate), or a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), which must include a petition fee, and a statement that attests on a personal knowledge basis to the previous timely transmission, along with any additional evidence. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.66, 2.146](#); [TMEP §§1702–1708](#) regarding petitions under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive, and [TMEP §1712](#) regarding reinstatement of applications and registrations.

The above procedure does *not* apply to submissions that are excluded from the certificate of mailing or transmission procedures under [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(d\)](#) or [§2.197\(a\)\(2\)](#). *See* [TMEP §306.01](#).

The USPTO may require evidence relating to the mailing or transmission of correspondence under [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)](#), to establish an actual date of transmission. [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(c\)](#).

306.06 Requirements for Certificate of Transmission Strictly Enforced

The requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) are strictly enforced, and petitions to consider a document timely filed as of the date on the certificate are denied when a party fails to comply with these requirements. A party's inadvertent failure to comply with the requirements of a rule is not considered an extraordinary situation that would warrant waiver of the rule under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) or [§2.148](#). See [TMEP §305.02\(h\)](#) and cases cited therein.

307 Hand Delivery

Trademark Operation, Madrid Processing Unit, and Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Correspondence may be hand-delivered between 8:30 a.m. and 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except Federal holidays within the District of Columbia, to the following location:

Trademark Assistance Center
James Madison Building - East Wing
Concourse Level Room C 55
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, VA 22314

Trademark examining attorneys *will not* accept documents for filing (either with or without fees).

If the filer wants a receipt, he or she should provide a card, which will be date-labeled and handed back to the person delivering the document. When a card is used for receipt, it should include the applicant's name, the application serial number or registration number, the mark, and the title or a description of the document being filed. The card should also specify the items submitted (e.g., drawing, specimen, fee). See [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#).

Customer Service Window. The USPTO strongly encourages parties who are hand-delivering trademark correspondence to bring it directly to the Trademark Assistance Center at the address listed above. Use of any patent box for trademark-related correspondence is strongly discouraged, and may result in delayed processing. However, the USPTO will accept trademark correspondence delivered to the Customer Service Window located in the Randolph Building, 401 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia 22314. The USPTO will stamp postcard-type receipts to acknowledge the receipt of correspondence filed at the Customer Service Window. The Customer Service Window is open from 8:30 a.m. until 12:00 midnight, Monday through Friday, except Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

See [TMEP §309](#) regarding unscheduled closings of the USPTO.

308 Period Ending on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal Holiday

35 U.S.C. §21(b).

When the day, or the last day, for taking any action or paying any fee in the United States Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding secular or business day.

37 CFR §2.196. Times for taking action: Expiration on Saturday, Sunday or Federal Holiday.

Whenever periods of time are specified in this part in days, calendar days are intended. When the day, or the last day fixed by statute or by regulation under this part for taking any action or paying any fee in the Office falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday.

(See also [37 C.F.R. §2.145\(d\)](#) for time for appeal to court and civil action.)

Any action or fee that is due on a date falling on a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia is considered timely if the action is received, or the fee paid, on the following day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. This applies to all documents, whether filed through TEAS or on paper.

The following days are Federal holidays in the District of Columbia, under 5 U.S.C. §6103:

- New Year's Day, January 1.
- Birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr., the third Monday in January.
- Washington's Birthday, the third Monday in February.
- Memorial Day, the last Monday in May.
- Independence Day, July 4.
- Labor Day, the first Monday in September.
- Columbus Day, the second Monday in October.
- Veterans Day, November 11.
- Thanksgiving Day, the fourth Thursday in November.
- Christmas Day, December 25.
- Inauguration Day (January 20 of each fourth year after 1965), *except* when it falls on a Saturday (see Note below).

As to the observance of holidays that fall on Saturday, 5 U.S.C. §6103 also provides:

(b)(1) *Instead of a holiday that occurs on a Saturday, the Friday immediately before is a legal public holiday...*

NOTE: If Inauguration Day (January 20 of each fourth year after 1965) falls on a Saturday, the preceding Friday is *nota* legal public holiday for purposes of [35 U.S.C. §21\(b\)](#). When Inauguration Day falls on Sunday, the next succeeding day selected for the public observance of the inauguration of the President is a legal public holiday. 5 U.S.C. §6103(c).

309 Unscheduled Closings of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

When the USPTO is officially closed by executive order of the President or by the Office of Personnel Management for an entire day because of some unscheduled event, such as adverse weather conditions, the USPTO will consider that day to be a "Federal holiday within the District of Columbia" under [35 U.S.C. §21\(b\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.2\(d\)](#). Any action or fee due that day is considered timely if the action is taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding business day that the USPTO is open.

However, when the USPTO is open for business during any *part* of a business day between 8:30 a.m. and 5:00 p.m., documents are due on that day even though the USPTO may be officially closed for some period of time during the business day because of an unscheduled event. TEAS, or the procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), may be used, as appropriate, for the filing of documents during unscheduled closings of the USPTO.

310 Computing Period for Response to Office Action or Notice

The deadline for responding to an Office action, notice of allowance, or other notice issued by the USPTO is computed from the date of issuance of the action or notice to the date the response is received in the USPTO. See [TMEP §303.01](#) regarding the date of receipt in the USPTO.

For example, a response to an examining attorney's Office action dated August 31 is due on the following February 28 (or 29 if it is a leap year); a response to an Office action dated February 28 is due on August 28 and not on the last day of August. *Ex parte Messick*, 7 USPQ 57 (Comm'r Pats. 1930).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#), correspondence is considered to be timely filed even if it is received after the expiration of the filing period, if the correspondence was deposited with the USPS as first-class mail or transmitted to the USPTO by facsimile transmission before the expiration of the filing period and accompanied by a certificate attesting to the date of mailing or transmission. See [TMEP §§305.02–305.02\(h\)](#) regarding the certificate of mailing procedure, and [TMEP §§306.05–306.05\(d\)](#) regarding the certificate of transmission procedure.

If a document or fee is due on a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the document or fee is considered timely if it is received on or before the following day that is not a Saturday, Sunday or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [35 U.S.C. §21\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.196](#); [TMEP §308](#).

See [TMEP §309](#) regarding unscheduled closings of the USPTO.

Chapter 400 Processing Documents and Fees

401	Processing New Applications
401.01	Filing Receipts
401.02	Application Serial Numbers
401.03	Data Entry
401.04	Creation of Application Records
402	Electronic Application and Registration Records
402.01	USPTO No Longer Creates Paper Copies of Certain Trademark-Related Documents
403	Correspondence Returned as Undeliverable
404	Documents Not Returnable
405	Fees
405.01	Credit Cards
405.02	Checks
405.02(a)	Personal Checks
405.03	Deposit Accounts
405.04	Refunds
405.05	Electronic Funds Transfer
405.06	Payments Refused or Charged Back by Financial Institutions

401 Processing New Applications

Upon receipt in the USPTO, trademark applications filed under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act are given a date of receipt and reviewed for compliance with the minimum requirements for receipt of a filing date (*see* [TMEP §202](#)). See [TMEP §§201](#) and [1904.01\(b\)](#) regarding the filing date of applications under §66(a) of the Trademark Act.

If an application meets the minimum filing date requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#), it is given a filing date and serial number.

See [TMEP §§204–204.03](#) regarding the processing of applications that are not entitled to a filing date and [TMEP §702.01](#) for information on the order of examination.

401.01 Filing Receipts

TEAS Applications

When an application is filed electronically, the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) generally receives it within seconds after filing, and TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the application filing date, and may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information and general processing information. No paper filing receipt is sent by the USPTO to the applicant.

The applicant or its attorney should immediately review the summary of the filed information for accuracy. If the information in the summary is inconsistent with the information transmitted by applicant, the applicant or attorney should notify the USPTO by sending an e-mail message to TEAS@uspto.gov.

Section 66(a) Applications

For §66(a) applications (i.e., requests for extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States), the USPTO sends a filing receipt to the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §§1904.02\(i\)](#) regarding the correspondence address in §66(a) applications.

The applicant or its attorney should review the information on the filing receipt for accuracy and notify the USPTO in writing of any discrepancy. A request for correction of a filing receipt should be directed to the Commissioner for Trademarks, P.O. Box 1451, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451, or sent via e-mail to TMfilingreceipt@uspto.gov. See [TMEP §1904.13\(b\)](#) regarding corrections to §66(a) applications.

Paper Applications Under §1 or §44

For paper applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, after an application has been given a filing date, a filing receipt is sent to the applicant. The filing receipt identifies the following: (1) the mark; (2) the application serial number, filing date, and register; (3) the type of mark (e.g., trademark or service mark); (4) the statutory basis or bases for filing, if provided at the time of filing; (5) the identification of goods and/or services, and international classes; (6) information about the applicant (and the applicant's attorney, if provided); and (7) the address to be used for correspondence. See [TMEP §201](#) for further information about what constitutes the filing date.

The applicant or attorney should review the information on the filing receipt for accuracy and notify the USPTO in writing of any discrepancy. A request for correction of a filing receipt should be directed to the Commissioner for Trademarks, P.O. Box 1451, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451, or sent via e-mail to TMfilingreceipt@uspto.gov.

An applicant should send a request for correction of a filing receipt *only* if the information on the filing receipt is inconsistent with the information in the application as filed. If the applicant made an error in the application, the applicant should file an amendment rather than a request for correction of the filing receipt.

An electronic form for filing voluntary amendments is available through TEAS. *Note:* A voluntary amendment filed before the application is assigned to an examining attorney is placed in the record for consideration at the time the application is assigned and will not be examined out of order. Moreover, the mere filing of a voluntary amendment does not guarantee that the amendment will be accepted. For example, the examining attorney will not accept a voluntary amendment that materially alters the mark shown on the original drawing, or that expands the scope of the goods and/or services in the original application. See [TMEP §702.01](#) for information on the order of examination, [TMEP §807.14](#) regarding material alteration of a mark, and [TMEP §§1402.07–1402.07\(e\)](#) regarding the scope of the identification of goods and/or services for purposes of amendment.

401.02 Application Serial Numbers

Each application for registration is assigned an eight-digit serial number comprised of a two-digit series code and six additional numbers assigned by order of filing within the series code. To ensure that a communication is correctly routed within the USPTO, applicants must include the entire eight-digit number on all communications related to a particular application.

As a general rule, the serial numbers of applications filed prior to the 1905 - 1920 Acts are preceded by the series code "70."

Applications filed under the 1905 - 1920 Acts (i.e., applications filed through July 4, 1947) were preceded by the series code "71." The last serial number was 526,346.

As of July 5, 1947, applications were filed under the 1946 Act, beginning with number 526,500 and running through number 700,943 (preceded by the series code “71”).

On January 3, 1956, a new series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “72” was started, after a change in record-keeping methods. This series ran through number 467,233, issued on August 31, 1973.

A new series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “73” began with applications filed on September 4, 1973, which was the first day of receipt of mail after the adoption of the international classification of goods and services as of September 1, 1973 (*see* [TMEP §1401.02](#)).

A new series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “74” began with applications filed on November 16, 1989, the date on which the Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988 took effect.

A new series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “75” began with applications filed on October 1, 1995.

A new series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “76” began with applications filed on March 20, 2000.

A series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “77” began September 14, 2006 for applications filed through TEAS on or after that date.

A series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “78” was used for TEAS applications filed prior to September 14, 2006.

A series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “85” began April 1, 2010 for all applications filed through TEAS on or after that date.

A series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “86” began July 1, 2013 for all applications filed through TEAS on or after that date.

A series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “87” began April 13, 2016 for all applications filed through TEAS on or after that date.

Effective November 2, 2003, a series of serial numbers preceded by the series code “79” is used for requests for extension of protection of international registrations to the United States under §66(a) of the Trademark Act.

A range of serial numbers, beginning with number 975,000, is used for applications that are created through the “dividing” of an application (*see* [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#)).

See TMEP §§[1205.01](#) and [1205.02](#) regarding series code “89.”

401.03 Data Entry

For applications filed through TEAS, the data provided by the applicant is loaded directly into the Trademark database.

For applications filed on paper, the application documents are scanned and the data is manually entered into the Trademark database, which is used by USPTO employees to obtain information about the location, status, prosecution history, ownership, and correspondence address for applications and registrations. This information is available to the public through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) database, available on the USPTO’s website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>.

401.04 Creation of Application Records

For TEAS applications, the USPTO maintains an electronic record containing all incoming and outgoing documents. See [TMEP §402](#).

For paper applications, the USPTO scans all incoming documents and creates an electronic record. The USPTO also creates a paper file jacket and places all incoming documents into the file jacket. The examining attorney works from the electronic record, and outgoing communications are put into the electronic record only.

All applications are electronically routed to the law offices.

402 Electronic Application and Registration Records

The USPTO maintains TICRS, an internal database that includes images of the contents of trademark application and registration records. Members of the public who visit the USPTO’s Public Search Facility may use TICRS, free of charge, and can print images of documents from TICRS for a fee.

The public may also view and print images of the contents of trademark application and registration records through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. Electronic images of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board proceeding records are also available on the USPTO website at <http://ttabvue.uspto.gov/ttabvue/>. TSDR and TTABVUE are available 24 hours a day, seven days a week, free of charge.

402.01 USPTO No Longer Creates Paper Copies of Certain Trademark-Related Documents

Effective April 12, 2004, the USPTO no longer creates paper file copies of certain trademark-related documents that are submitted to the USPTO in electronic format. Furthermore, the USPTO does not generate paper copies of certain trademark documents that the USPTO creates, except for copies that are sent to recipients by mail. See New USPTO Policies Regarding (1) Generation of Paper Copies of Trademark-Related Documents and (2) Public Access to Existing Paper Copies of Trademark-Related Documents (TMOG Apr. 6, 2004), at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/com/sol/og/2004/week14/pattmcp.htm>.

All these documents can be viewed through TICRS and TSDR.

The USPTO still provides certified paper copies of all trademark documents, upon request and payment of the appropriate fee. See [TMEP §111](#).

403 Correspondence Returned as Undeliverable

If a paper Office action or notice (e.g., a notice of allowance) is returned to the USPTO because the United States Postal Service has not been able to deliver it, the time for response will not be extended unless the USPTO sent the Office action or notice to the wrong address due to a USPTO error.

If the USPTO sent the Office action or notice to the wrong address due to a USPTO error, the USPTO will reissue the Office action or notice and provide the applicant/registrant with a new response period. A “USPTO error in sending the Office action or notice to the wrong address” means that the USPTO either entered the correspondence address incorrectly or failed to properly enter a notice of change of address filed *before* the date on which the action was issued. The transmittal of correspondence or a response on letterhead bearing a new address is *not* a proper notice of change of address. The applicant or attorney must specifically request that the correspondence address be changed. See [TMEP §§609.02](#) and [609.02\(a\)](#).

If the Office action or notice was sent to the correspondence address of record (see [TMEP §§609–609.04](#) regarding the correspondence address), but was returned as undeliverable, the USPTO will try to obtain the correct address and forward the Office action or notice. However, the time for response will not be extended.

The USPTO scans the returned action and envelope into TIGRS.

If outgoing e-mail to a primary e-mail correspondence address of record is returned as undeliverable, the USPTO will send a paper copy to the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §§304–304.09](#) regarding e-mail communications. This practice may not be followed for undeliverable duplicate courtesy copies of correspondence because the primary address is the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §§609.01](#) and [609.02](#).

See [TMEP §§717–717.02](#) regarding the reissuing of the examining attorney’s Office actions.

404 Documents Not Returnable

37 CFR §2.25 Documents not returnable.

Except as provided in §2.27(e), documents filed in the Office by the applicant or registrant become part of the official record and will not be returned or removed.

Documents filed in the USPTO by the applicant or registrant become part of the official record and will not be returned or removed. [37 C.F.R. §2.25](#). If, for a valid reason, the applicant does not want certain information to become part of a public record, the applicant should consider options such as redacting confidential portions of documents prior to their submission. See [TMEP §§1702](#), [1705–1705.09](#), and [1708](#) regarding filing a petition to the Director to waive the rule regarding removal of documents from the official record.

Documents ordered to be filed under seal pursuant to a protective order issued by a court or by the TTAB, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.27\(e\)](#), are not made part of the record available to the public.

The USPTO will furnish copies of the contents of trademark application, registration, and TTAB proceeding records upon request and payment of the required fee. See [TMEP §111](#).

405 Fees

37 CFR §2.207 Methods of payment.

(a) All payments of money required in trademark cases, including fees for the processing of international trademark applications and registrations that are paid through the Office, shall be made in U.S. dollars and in the form of a cashier’s or certified check, Treasury note, national bank note, or United States Postal Service money order. If sent in any other form, the Office may delay or cancel the credit until collection is made. Checks and money orders must be made payable to the Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office. (Checks made payable to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks will continue to be accepted.) Payments from foreign countries must be payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee

required. Money sent to the Office by mail will be at the risk of the sender, and letters containing money should be registered with the United States Postal Service.

(b) Payments of money required for trademark fees may also be made by credit card, except for replenishing a deposit account. Payment of a fee by credit card must specify the amount to be charged to the credit card and such other information as is necessary to process the charge, and is subject to collection of the fee. The Office will not accept a general authorization to charge fees to a credit card. If credit card information is provided on a form or document other than a form provided by the Office for the payment of fees by credit card, the Office will not be liable if the credit card number becomes public knowledge.

See [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)–\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#) and [TMEP §§810–810.02](#) regarding the fee for filing an application for registration.

See [TMEP §1903.02](#) regarding payment of fees to the IB through the USPTO.

405.01 Credit Cards

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.207](#), the USPTO accepts payment of fees by credit card, subject to actual collection of the fee.

Any payment of a fee by credit card must be in writing. [37 C.F.R. §2.191](#). A form for authorizing charges to a credit card can be accessed through TEAS for all filings for which a filing fee is required. Parties who file on paper can download a Credit Card Payment Form (PTO-2038) from the USPTO's website at <http://www.uspto.gov/>. The USPTO does not put the Credit Card Payment Form in application or registration records.

A party is not required to use the USPTO's Credit Card Payment Form when paying a fee by credit card.

However, if a party provides a credit card charge authorization in another form or document (e.g., in the body of an application, cover letter, response to an Office action, or other correspondence relating to a trademark application or registration), the credit card information becomes part of the public record. See [37 C.F.R. §2.207\(b\)](#).

All credit card authorizations must include: (1) a valid credit card number; (2) a valid expiration date; (3) the name of the cardholder with the cardholder's signature and the date; (4) a billing address, including zip code; (5) a description and purpose of the payment; and (6) a specific payment amount. See [TMEP §§611.01–611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents.

If a Credit Card Payment Form or other document authorizing the USPTO to charge a fee to a credit card does not contain the information necessary to charge the fee to the credit card, the form will be returned and the fee will not be processed. USPTO employees will not accept oral instructions to complete the Credit Card Payment Form or otherwise charge a fee to a credit card.

The USPTO will only accept an authorization to charge a fee in a specific dollar amount to a credit card.

The USPTO currently accepts charges to the following credit cards: AMERICAN EXPRESS®, DISCOVER®, MASTER CARD®, and VISA®.

Any refund of a fee paid by credit card will be by a credit to the credit card account to which the fee was charged. [37 C.F.R. §2.209\(a\)](#).

See notice at 65 Fed. Reg. 33452 (May 24, 2000), 1235 TMOG 38 (June 13, 2000).

See [TMEP §405.06](#) regarding credit card authorizations that are refused or charged back by a financial institution.

405.02 Checks

Trademark Rule 2.207(a), [37 C.F.R. §2.207\(a\)](#), provides that:

All payments of money required in trademark cases, including fees for the processing of international trademark applications and registrations that are paid through the Office, shall be made in U.S. dollars and in the form of a cashier's or certified check, Treasury note, national bank note, or United States Postal Service money order. If sent in any other form, the Office may delay or cancel the credit until collection is made....

405.02(a) Personal Checks

It is the practice of the USPTO to accept, as “conditional” payment of a fee, a signed uncertified check (e.g., a personal check). If an uncertified check clears, then the USPTO considers the fee paid as of the date it received the check.

However, if such a check is returned unpaid, then the fee remains unpaid, and the document that included the returned check is processed as though the fee had been omitted. *See In re Paulsen*, 35 USPQ2d 1638, 1639 (Comm'r Pats. 1995). See [TMEP §405.06](#) for further information about processing checks that are returned unpaid.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#), there is a processing fee for any check returned to the USPTO unpaid.

405.03 Deposit Accounts

37 CFR §2.208

(a) For the convenience of attorneys, and the general public in paying any fees due, in ordering copies of records, or services offered by the Office, deposit accounts may be established in the Office. A minimum deposit of \$1,000 is required for paying any fees due or in ordering any services offered by the Office. The Office will issue a deposit account statement at the end of each month. A remittance must be made promptly upon receipt of the statement to cover the value of items or services charged to the account and thus restore the account to its established normal deposit. An amount sufficient to cover all fees, copies, or services requested must always be on deposit. Charges to accounts with insufficient funds will not be accepted. A service charge (§ 2.6(b)(11)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below \$1,000.

(b) A general authorization to charge all fees, or only certain fees to a deposit account containing sufficient funds may be filed in an individual application, either for the entire pendency of the application or with respect to a particular document filed. An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account will not be considered payment of the fee on the date the authorization to charge the fee is effective as to the particular fee to be charged unless sufficient funds are present in the account to cover the fee.

(c) A deposit account holder may replenish the deposit account by submitting a payment to the Office. A payment to replenish a deposit account must be submitted by one of the methods set forth in paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3), or (c)(4) of this section.

(1) A payment to replenish a deposit account may be submitted by electronic funds transfer through the Federal Reserve Fedwire System, which requires that the following information be provided to the deposit account holder's bank or financial institution:

- (i) Name of the Bank, which is Treas NYC (Treasury New York City);
- (ii) Bank Routing Code, which is 021030004;
- (iii) United States Patent and Trademark Office account number with the Department of the Treasury, which is 13100001; and
- (iv) The deposit account holder's company name and deposit account number.

(2) A payment to replenish a deposit account may be submitted by electronic funds transfer over the Office's Internet Web site (<http://www.uspto.gov>).

(3) A payment to replenish a deposit account may be addressed to: Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Attn: Deposit Accounts, 2051 Jamieson Avenue, Suite 300, Alexandria, Virginia 22314.

A party cannot charge a fee to a deposit account unless he or she has prior authorization to do so. The Office of Finance maintains a list of persons authorized to request transactions by deposit account. The USPTO will not charge a fee to a deposit account unless the person requesting the charge appears on the authorized list or files a proper request to have his or her name added to the authorized list.

An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account must be made in a written document signed and submitted by an authorized person. It cannot be entered by examiner's amendment unless the record contains a written authorization signed and submitted by an authorized person. If there is no written authorization already in the record, the applicant may fax or e-mail the authorization to the examining attorney.

If an applicant submits an authorization to charge a filing fee to a deposit account that has insufficient funds to cover the fee, the applicant has not paid the fee.

If a deposit account has insufficient funds to cover an authorization to charge the initial filing fee for an application for registration, the USPTO will not grant a filing date to the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §204.01](#).

When a deposit account contains insufficient funds to cover a fee that has been authorized, the USPTO notifies the party who filed the authorization of the fee deficiency. If the fee in question is statutory (e.g., the filing fee for a notice of appeal, statement of use, or request for extension of time to file a statement of use), the fee deficiency must be cured before the expiration of the statutory filing period. If the deadline for filing the fee is not set by statute, the party who filed the authorization may cure the fee deficiency within the set period for response to the Office action.

A showing that the deposit account contained sufficient funds on the date on which the authorization was first filed, as opposed to the date on which USPTO personnel attempted to charge the fee, will not cure the fee deficiency. Trademark Rule 2.208(a), [37 C.F.R. §2.208\(a\)](#), clearly requires that sufficient funds to cover all outstanding charge authorizations be on deposit at all times. The funds must be available in the account at the time the authorization is presented for debiting.

See [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(vii\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in amendments to allege use, [TMEP §1108.02\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use, [TMEP §1109.15\(a\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in statements of use, [TMEP §1604.06\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in affidavits under §8 of the Act, and [TMEP §1606.05\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in renewal applications.

405.04 Refunds

37 CFR §2.209

(a) The Director may refund any fee paid by mistake or in excess of that required. A change of purpose after the payment of a fee, such as when a party desires to withdraw a trademark application, appeal or other trademark filing for which a fee was paid, will not entitle a party to a refund of such fee. The Office will not refund amounts of twenty-five dollars or less unless a refund is specifically requested, and will not notify the payor of such amounts. If a party paying a fee or requesting a refund does not provide the banking information necessary for making refunds by electronic funds transfer (31 U.S.C. 3332 and 31 CFR part 208), or instruct the Office that refunds are to be credited to a deposit account, the Director may require such information, or use the banking information on the payment instrument to make a refund. Any refund of a fee paid by credit card will be by a credit to the credit card account to which the fee was charged.

(b) Any request for refund must be filed within two years from the date the fee was paid, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph. If the Office charges a deposit account by an amount other than an amount specifically indicated in an authorization (§2.208(b)), any request for refund based upon such charge must be filed within two years from the date of the deposit account

statement indicating such charge, and include a copy of that deposit account statement. The time periods set forth in this paragraph are not extendable.

Under [35 U.S.C. §42\(d\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.209](#), only money paid by mistake or in excess (when a fee is not required by statute or rule, or is not required in the amount paid) may be refunded. A mere change of purpose after the payment of money does not entitle a party to a refund. For example, if a party deletes a class from an application, or decides that it no longer wishes to go forward with an application or appeal, the party is not entitled to a refund.

If an examining attorney or other USPTO employee erroneously requires a fee, the USPTO will refund the fee submitted in response to the erroneous requirement.

The USPTO will refund the filing fee for an application that is denied a filing date, or a filing fee that is untimely (e.g., the fee for a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use filed after expiration of the statutory filing period). However, after the USPTO has processed an application or other document, the USPTO will not refund the filing fee. The USPTO will not refund an application filing fee when registration is refused, nor will it refund a fee when a timely filed document (such as a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) or affidavit of use or excusable nonuse under 15 U.S.C. §1058) is rejected for failure to meet the requirements of the statute and rules.

Refund requests should be sent to Mail Stop 16, Director of the USPTO, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

When a USPTO employee determines that a refund is appropriate, the employee must submit the request to the TMFinance e-mail box with the information necessary for processing the refund.

405.05 Electronic Funds Transfer

The Electronic Funds Transfer (“EFT”) payment method allows customers to send a payment over the Internet as easily as writing a check. In general, the Automated Clearing House performs EFT transactions through the Federal Reserve system. The customer must establish a User ID and Password. For further information, see <http://www.uspto.gov/teas/payment.htm>.

405.06 Payments Refused or Charged Back by Financial Institutions

If a check is returned unpaid, or an EFT or credit card is refused or charged back by a financial institution, the document that accompanied the payment is processed as though the fee had been omitted. *See In re Paulsen*, 35 USPQ2d 1638, 1639 (Comm’r Pats. 1995). If the document included an authorization to charge deficient fees to a deposit account (37 C.F.R. §2.208) that has sufficient funds to cover the fee, the USPTO charges the fee in question, together with a fee for processing the payment that was refused, to the deposit account.

If the document was not accompanied by an authorization to charge fees to a deposit account, the USPTO notifies the party who filed the document of the fee deficiency in a written action. If the deadline for filing the fee is not set by statute, the fee may be resubmitted within the period set for response to the Office action.

If the fee in question is statutory (e.g., a filing fee for an appeal, statement of use, or request for extension of time to file a statement of use), the fee must be resubmitted before the expiration of the statutory filing period.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#), there is a fee for processing any payment that is refused or charged back by a financial institution. This fee covers the work done by USPTO personnel in processing the payment that is refused or charged back. The requirement for submission of the processing fee is strictly enforced. The USPTO will not approve a pending application for publication or registration, or take any other requested action in an application or registration, until all outstanding fees, including the processing fee, have been paid. Any request for waiver of this processing fee should be referred to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

See [TMEP §§202.03\(a\)](#) and [202.03\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding the processing of an application in which the application filing fee payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(vii\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in amendments to allege use, [TMEP §1108.02\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use, [TMEP §1109.15\(a\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in statements of use, [TMEP §1604.06\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in affidavits under §8 of the Act, and [TMEP §1606.05\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in renewal applications.

Chapter 500 Change of Ownership

501	Assignment of Marks
501.01	Assignability of Marks in Applications and Registrations
501.01(a)	Assignability of Intent-to-Use Applications
501.01(b)	Assignability of Extensions of Protection of International Registrations to the United States
501.02	Assignments Must Be in Writing
501.03	Effect of Failure to Record Assignment
501.04	Foreign Assignee May Designate Domestic Representative
501.05	Assignee Stands in Place of Applicant or Registrant
501.06	Partial Assignments
501.07	Assignment of Extension of Protection of International Registration to the United States
502	Establishing Ownership of Applications or Registrations
502.01	Establishing the Right to Take Action in Application or Registration
502.02	Pending Applications - Issuance of Registration Certificate in Name of Assignee or in Applicant's New Name
502.02(a)	Applications Under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act
502.02(b)	Applications Under §66(a) of the Trademark Act
502.02(c)	Examining Attorney's Action Regarding Assignment
502.03	Issuance of New Certificate to Assignee of Registrant
503	Recording with Assignment Recordation Branch
503.01	Effect of Recording a Document
503.01(a)	Recording May Not Update Ownership Information
503.01(b)	Recording Does Not Update Correspondence Address in Trademark Database
503.01(c)	Recording Is Not a Determination of Validity
503.01(d)	Recording Does Not Constitute Response to Office Action
503.01(e)	Conditional Assignment
503.02	Documents that the Office Will Record
503.03	Requirements for Recording
503.03(a)	Formal Requirements for Documents
503.03(b)	Supporting Documents
503.03(c)	English Language Requirement
503.03(d)	Fee for Recording
503.03(e)	Cover Sheet
503.04	Address for Submitting Documents for Recording
503.05	Recording Procedure and Recordation Date
503.06	Correction of Errors in Cover Sheet or Recorded Document
503.06(a)	Typographical Errors in Cover Sheet
503.06(a)(i)	Typographical Errors in Cover Sheet that Do Not Affect Title to Application or Registration
503.06(a)(ii)	Typographical Errors in Cover Sheet that Do Affect Title to Application or Registration
503.06(b)	Typographical Errors in Recorded Assignment Document
503.06(c)	Assignment, Change of Name, or Other Interest Improperly Filed and Recorded by Another Person Against Owner's Application or Registration
503.06(d)	Owner Must Notify Trademark Operation of Correction
503.06(e)	Recorded Documents Not Removed from Assignment Records
503.06(f)	Petitions to Correct or "Expunge" Assignment Records
503.07	"Indexing" Against Recorded Document Not Permitted
503.08	Accessibility of Assignment Records
503.08(a)	Trademark Assignment Abstracts of Title

- 504 Automatic Updating of Ownership of Trademark Applications and Registrations in Trademark Database**
- 504.01** Circumstances in Which Trademark Database Will Not Be Automatically Updated
- 504.02** Processing Time for Automatic Updating
- 504.03** Correction to Automatic Update - Last Recorded Owner Does Not Have Clear Chain of Title
- 504.04** Automatic Updating Does Not Apply to §66(a) Applications and Registered Extensions of Protection
- 505 Requesting Update of Ownership Information When the Trademark Database Does Not Automatically Update After a Document is Recorded**
- 505.01** Request to Update Ownership Information in Pending Application
- 505.02** Request to Update Ownership Information After Registration

501 Assignment of Marks

501.01 Assignability of Marks in Applications and Registrations

15 U.S.C. §1060(a)

(1) A registered mark or a mark for which an application to register has been filed shall be assignable with the good will of the business in which the mark is used, or with that part of the good will of the business connected with the use of and symbolized by the mark. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, no application to register a mark under section 1(b) shall be assignable prior to the filing of an amendment under section 1(c) to bring the application into conformity with section 1(a) or the filing of the verified statement of use under section 1(d), except for an assignment to a successor to the business of the applicant, or portion thereof, to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing.

(2) In any assignment authorized by this section, it shall not be necessary to include the good will of the business connected with the use of and symbolized by any other mark used in the business or by the name or style under which the business is conducted.

(3) Assignments shall be by instruments in writing duly executed...

37 CFR §3.1 (Extract)

*** Assignment means a transfer by a party of all or part of its right, title and interest in a patent, patent application, registered mark or a mark for which an application to register has been filed.

501.01(a) Assignability of Intent-to-Use Applications

In an application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the applicant cannot assign the application before the applicant files an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)), except to a successor to the applicant's business, or portion of the business to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing. Section 10 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1060](#); [37 C.F.R. §3.16](#).

The primary purpose of this provision is to ensure that a mark may only be assigned along with some business or goodwill, and to prevent “trafficking” in marks.

As a general rule, the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) does not investigate or evaluate the validity of assignments. Therefore, the examining attorney must issue an inquiry concerning the compliance of an assignment with the cited provisions of §10 only if:

- (1) The application itself includes a statement indicating that the assignee is not a successor to the original applicant's business, or portion of the business to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing; or
- (2) All of the following conditions are present:

(a) The assignment is executed before the filing of an allegation of use;

(b) The applicant submits the assignment document for inclusion in the application record in the Trademark database, and not just to the Assignment Recordation Branch; *and*

(c) The assignment document fails to include the relevant language from §10 to the effect that the assignment includes the entire business of the applicant/assignor or the portion of the business to which the mark pertains.

The examining attorney should not require the submission of assignment documents to determine compliance.

If the examining attorney issues an inquiry, the applicant's statement that the assignment was in compliance with the cited provision of §10 is sufficient to resolve the issue. This statement may be entered through an examiner's amendment.

The assignment of an intent-to-use application to someone who is not the successor to the applicant's business before filing an allegation of use renders the application void, and any resulting registration must be cancelled.

Cent. Garden & Pet Co. v. Dorskocil Mfg. Co., 108 USPQ2d 1134, 1146 (TTAB 2013) ; *Clorox Co. v. Chem. Bank*, 40 USPQ2d 1098, 1105-06 (TTAB 1996); *cf. Amazon Techs., Inc. v. Wax*, 95 USPQ2d 1865, 1872 (TTAB 2010) (finding "the assignment from one joint applicant to another, where the assignee joint applicant was and remains an owner of the application is more in the nature of 'relinquishment' of ownership rights by one joint owner than a true 'assignment' to a different legal entity, and, thus, it is not prohibited under §10 of the Trademark Act").

501.01(b) Assignability of Extensions of Protection of International Registrations to the United States

Under §72 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141 l](#), an extension of protection to the United States may be assigned, together with the goodwill associated with the mark, only to a person who is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment in a country that is party to the Madrid Protocol (or in a country that is a member of an intergovernmental organization that is a party to the Madrid Protocol). See [TMEP §501.07](#) for further information about assignment of §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection to the United States, and [TMEP Chapter 1900](#) for further information about the Madrid Protocol.

501.02 Assignments Must Be in Writing

15 U.S.C. §1060(a)(3)

(Extract) Assignments shall be by instruments in writing duly executed. ***

501.03 Effect of Failure to Record Assignment

15 U.S.C. §1060(a)(3)

(Extract)

(3) *** Acknowledgment shall be prima facie evidence of the execution of an assignment, and when the prescribed information reporting the assignment is recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the record shall be prima facie evidence of execution.

(4) An assignment shall be void against any subsequent purchaser for valuable consideration without notice, unless the prescribed information reporting the assignment is recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office within 3 months after the date of the assignment or prior to the subsequent purchase.

See [TMEP §503](#) regarding the recordation of assignments in the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO.

501.04 Foreign Assignee May Designate Domestic Representative

15 U.S.C. §1060(b)

An assignee not domiciled in the United States may designate by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. Such notices or process may be served upon the person so designated by leaving with that person or mailing to that person a copy thereof at the address specified in the last designation so filed. If the person so designated cannot be found at the address given in the last designation, or if the assignee does not designate by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark, such notices or process may be served upon the Director.

37 CFR §3.61

If the assignee of a patent, patent application, trademark application or trademark registration is not domiciled in the United States, the assignee may designate a domestic representative in a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office. The designation should state the name and address of a person residing within the United States on whom may be served process or notice of proceedings affecting the application, patent or registration or rights thereunder.

An assignee not domiciled in the United States may designate, by a document filed with the USPTO, the name and address of a domestic representative. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(e\)](#), [1058\(f\)](#), [1059\(c\)](#), and [1060\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §3.61](#); [TMEP §610](#). The USPTO encourages assignees who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives.

When an assignee designates a domestic representative, the designation should be in a document separate from the assignment document. One copy of the designation of domestic representative should be sent to the Assignment Recordation Branch with the document to be recorded. In addition, the assignee should send a separate copy of the designation to the Trademark Branch of the USPTO (“Trademark Operation”) for each registration or application to which an assignment pertains, so that a copy of the designation can be entered in each official record that is identified in the assignment document. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(g\)](#).

501.05 Assignee Stands in Place of Applicant or Registrant

15 U.S.C. §1127 (Extract)

The terms “applicant” and “registrant” embrace the legal representatives, predecessors, successors and assigns of such applicant or registrant.

37 CFR §3.71(d) Trademarks.

The assignee of a trademark application or registration may prosecute a trademark application, submit documents to maintain a trademark registration, or file papers against a third party in reliance on the assignee's trademark application or registration, to the exclusion of the original applicant or previous assignee. The assignee must establish ownership in compliance with § 3.73(b).

An assignee, like an applicant, must be a natural or juristic person. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) and [TMEP §803](#).

501.06 Partial Assignments

A trademark may be owned by two or more persons (see [TMEP §803.03\(d\)](#)), and a co-owner may assign his or her interest in a mark. Also, a party who is the sole owner of a mark may transfer a portion (e.g. , 50%) of his or her interest in the mark to another party.

A trademark owner may also assign a separate portion of a business, together with the good will and trademarks associated with that portion of the business, but retain rights in the mark for uses pertaining to another part of the business. See *VISA, U.S.A., Inc. v. Birmingham Trust Nat'l Bank*, 696 F.2d 1371, 216 USPQ 649 (Fed. Cir. 1982), cert. denied, 464 U.S. 826, 220 USPQ 385 (1983). Accordingly, one or more trademarks of a company can be validly assigned if the assignor transfers the good will associated with only some of the goods/services on which that mark appears. After a registration has been assigned with respect to only some of the goods/services, both owners must file the necessary renewal applications and affidavits of continued use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [§1141k](#) to maintain the registration. If only one party files, only those goods/services in the registration for which that party owns the mark are continued or renewed. See [TMEP §§1604.11](#) and [TMEP §1613.05](#) regarding affidavits of continued use or excusable nonuse, and [TMEP §§1606](#) and [1614](#) regarding renewal.

A trademark owner may not use an assignment to impose geographic restrictions on a registration. This must be done by way of a concurrent use proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or pursuant to a final determination by a federal court. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1207.04](#) and [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) (“TBMP”) [Chapter 1100](#) regarding concurrent use registration. However, the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO will record an assignment purporting to transfer rights in an unrestricted registration for less than the entire United States, because it is a transfer that may affect title to the registration. As noted in [TMEP §503.01\(c\)](#), the Assignment Recordation Branch does not examine the substance of documents submitted for recording. The act of recording the document is not a determination of the validity or effect of the purported assignment and does not create a concurrent use registration.

A trademark owner who files a partial assignment is strongly encouraged to file a separate request to divide so that the USPTO can more effectively track and administer applications and post registration filings, and ensure that USPTO records accurately reflect current ownership information. In pending applications in which a partial assignment and a request to divide are filed, the ITU/Divisional Unit will process the request to divide and ensure that the USPTO records reflect current ownership information. Because the assignment records of the parent application do not appear in the newly created child application, the ITU staff will place a copy of the Trademark Assignment Abstract of Title for the parent application in the trademark records of the child application. The abstract will be viewable via the Trademark Image Capture Retrieval System (“TICRS”) and the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. The assignment information in the parent application will remain accessible via the Assignment database on the USPTO website at <http://assignments.uspto.gov/assignments>. After the request to divide is processed and the child application is created, any new recordations in the child application will appear in the Assignment database. See [TMEP §1615](#) regarding requests to divide registrations in which ownership has changed with respect to some but not all of the goods/services, and [TMEP §1110](#) regarding request to divide pending applications.

501.07 Assignment of Extension of Protection of International Registration to the United States

15 U.S.C. §1141I Assignment of an Extension of Protection:

An extension of protection may be assigned, together with the goodwill associated with the mark, only to a person who is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment either in a country that is a Contracting Party or in a country that is a member of an intergovernmental organization that is a Contracting Party.

Under §72 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141I](#), an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States may be assigned, together with the goodwill associated with the mark, only to a person who is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment

in a country that is a party to the Madrid Protocol (or in a country that is a member of an intergovernmental organization that is a party to the Madrid Protocol).

Because the extension of protection remains part of the international registration, assignments of extensions of protection to the United States must be recorded at the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”). The IB will notify the USPTO of any changes in ownership, including changes in owner name, recorded in the International Register. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents affecting title) that have been recorded in the International Register, and will automatically update the USPTO’s Trademark database to reflect these changes.

See [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB.

Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to assignments of international registrations or extensions of protection to the United States. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

See [TMEP §§1110.11](#) and [1615.02](#) regarding division of an extension of protection to the United States after ownership of an international registration has changed with respect to some, but not all, of the goods/services.

502 Establishing Ownership of Applications or Registrations

37 CFR §3.73(a) (Extract)

* * * The original applicant is presumed to be the owner of a trademark application or registration, unless there is an assignment.

Section 1 or § 44 Applications. In an application or registration based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#) or [§1126](#), an assignee is not required to record the assignment in order to take an action with respect to an application or registration. However, an assignee must establish ownership in order to take action in an application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)](#); [TMEP §502.01](#). In addition, the assignee must record the assignment (or other document affecting title) with the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO to obtain a certificate of registration in the name of the assignee. [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#); [TMEP §§502.02\(a\)](#) and [502.03](#). Moreover, it is advisable for an applicant or registrant to record the assignment to ensure that it is valid, under §10(a)(4) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1060](#), against subsequent purchasers for valuable consideration without notice. See [TMEP §501.03](#).

Section 66(a) Applications. In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act or a registered extension of protection, the new owner must record the assignment with the IB in order to take an action with respect to an application or registration, or to obtain a certificate of registration in the name of a new owner. [TMEP §§502.01](#), [502.02\(b\)](#), and [502.03](#). See [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding the assignment of extensions of protection of international registrations, and [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB.

502.01 Establishing the Right to Take Action in Application or Registration

37 CFR §3.73(b)

(1) In order to request or take action in a patent or trademark matter, the assignee must establish its ownership of the patent or trademark property of paragraph (a) of this section to the satisfaction of the Director. The establishment of ownership by the assignee may be combined with the paper that requests or takes the action. Ownership is established by submitting to the Office a signed statement identifying the assignee, accompanied by either:

(i) Documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee (e.g., copy of an executed assignment).

For trademark matters only, the documents submitted to establish ownership may be required to be recorded pursuant to §3.11 in

the assignment records of the Office as a condition to permitting the assignee to take action in a matter pending before the Office. For patent matters only, the submission of the documentary evidence must be accompanied by a statement affirming that the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was or concurrently is being submitted for recordation pursuant to §3.11; or

(ii) A statement specifying where documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee is recorded in the assignment records of the Office (e.g., reel and frame number).

(2) The submission establishing ownership must show that the person signing the submission is a person authorized to act on behalf of the assignee by:

(i) Including a statement that the person signing the submission is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee; or

(ii) Being signed by a person having apparent authority to sign on behalf of the assignee, e.g., an officer of the assignee.

Applications and Registrations Based on §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act. In an application or registration based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, when a party other than the owner of record attempts to take an action with respect to an application or registration (e.g., filing a response to an Office action, allegation of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [§1051\(d\)](#), request for an extension of time to file a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#), affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) (“§8 affidavit”), or renewal application under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#) (“§9 renewal application”)), the party must establish ownership of the application or registration. To establish ownership, the new owner must either: (1) record the assignment (or other document affecting title) with the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO, and notify the Trademark Operation that the document has been recorded; or (2) submit other evidence of ownership, in the form of a document transferring ownership from one party to another, or an explanation, in the form of an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), that a valid transfer of legal title has occurred. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)](#). The document(s) must show clear chain of title from the original owner to the party who is taking the action.

See [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#) and [TMEP §§502.02\(a\)](#) and [502.03](#) regarding issuance of a certificate of registration in the name of a new owner.

Section 66(a) Applications and Registered Extensions of Protection . In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act or a registered extension of protection, the new owner must record the assignment with the IB in order to take an action with respect to an application or registration. The new owner does not have the option of submitting documentary evidence of ownership pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#)

The IB will notify the USPTO of any changes in ownership, including changes in owner name, recorded in the International Register. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents affecting title) that have been recorded in the International Register. See [TMEP §501.07](#) for further information about assignment of extensions of protection of international registrations, and [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB. The document(s) must show clear chain of title from the original owner to the party who is taking the action. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)](#).

Part 3 of 37 C.F.R. does not apply to §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

502.02 Pending Applications - Issuance of Registration Certificate in Name of Assignee or in Applicant’s New Name

502.02(a) Applications Under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act

37 CFR §3.85 Issue of registration to assignee.

The certificate of registration may be issued to the assignee of the applicant, or in a new name of the applicant, provided that the party files a written request in the trademark application by the time the application is being prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration, and the appropriate document is recorded in the Office. If the assignment or name change document has not been recorded in the Office, then the written request must state that the document has been filed for recordation. The address of the assignee must be made of record in the application file.

Document Must Be Recorded with Assignment Recordation Branch. In an application under § 1 or § 44 of the Trademark Act, a new owner must record the assignment, change of name, or other document affecting title with the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO to obtain a certificate of registration in the name of the new owner (or in applicant's new name). [37 C.F.R. § 3.85](#). However, the registration will not issue in the name of the new owner, unless the ownership field in the Trademark database is updated to reflect the recorded assignment prior to approval of the mark for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register in an application based on § 1(a) or § 44, [15 U.S.C. § 1051\(a\)](#) or [§ 1126](#), or prior to acceptance of the statement of use in an intent-to-use application based on § 1(b).

Under [37 C.F.R. § 3.85](#), a new owner bears the burden of recording *and* notifying appropriate USPTO personnel of assignments or changes of name to ensure that the registration issues in the name of the new owner, as necessary. However, for some documents recorded on or after November 2, 2003, recording a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch will automatically update ownership in the Trademark database even if the new owner does not notify the Trademark Operation that the document has been recorded.

See [TMEP §§ 504](#) and [504.01](#) regarding the circumstances in which the Trademark database will be automatically updated. Thus, if the recorded document does not meet the criteria for automatic updating set forth in [TMEP §§ 504](#) and [504.01](#), or if there is insufficient time for the Assignment Recordation Branch to process a recently recorded document for automatic updating (*see* [TMEP § 504.02](#)), the new owner must file a written request that the certificate issue in the name of the new owner. The new owner can search the Assignment Recordation Branch's database, i.e., the Electronic Trademark Assignment System ("ETAS"), at USPTO [Assignments on the Web](#) to determine whether the assignment has been recorded, and can check TSDR at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine whether the Trademark database has been updated to reflect the change of ownership. A request that a registration issue in a new name should be directed to the examining attorney, and should state that the appropriate document has been recorded (or filed for recordation) and that the applicant wants the registration to issue in the name of the assignee or the new name of the applicant.

The request should specify the assignee's address and set forth the assignee's citizenship or state of incorporation or organization (for United States assignees), or country of incorporation or organization (for foreign assignees). If the assignee is a domestic partnership or domestic joint venture, the request should set forth the names, legal entities, and national citizenship (or the state or country of organization) of all general partners or active members. See [TMEP § 502.02\(c\)](#) regarding an examining attorney's handling of an application in which the mark has been assigned.

If the applicant states that a request to record a change of ownership has been filed with the Assignment Recordation Branch but is not yet recorded, and the application is in condition to be approved for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must suspend action pending recordation of the document and entry of the information into the Trademark database. See [TMEP § 716](#) regarding suspension.

Clear Chain of Title Required. A request that a registration issue in the name of a new owner will not be granted unless documents recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch show clear chain of title from the original applicant to the new owner. The examining attorney must check the Assignment Recordation Branch's database ("Assignment database") on the USPTO website at [Assignments on the Web](#) to ensure that there is clear chain of title. If the Assignment database shows clear chain of title, the examining attorney must ensure that the Trademark database is updated, if necessary.

Example: ABC Corporation owns Application 1. ABC Corporation files an assignment of the entire interest and goodwill of the business, transferring ownership of Application 1 to DEF Incorporated. DEF Incorporated later files an assignment of the entire interest and goodwill of the business transferring ownership of Application 1 to XYZ Corporation. The Assignment database shows clear chain of title from ABC Corporation to DEF Incorporated to XYZ Corporation.

If the Assignment database does not show clear chain of title, the examining attorney must not update the Trademark database. If it is necessary to issue an Office action regarding other outstanding issues, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that it must record the necessary documents if it wants the registration to issue in the name of the new owner. If it is not otherwise necessary to issue an Office action, the examining attorney should enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the Trademark database cannot be updated because there is no clear chain of title in the new owner. If the applicant does not record the necessary documents to show clear chain of title in the new owner, the registration will issue in the name of the party who has clear chain of title according to the Assignment database. See [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)](#).

Time for Recordation and Filing of Request for Issuance in Name of New Owner. If the new owner wishes to ensure that the registration issues in its name, it must record the assignment before the mark is approved for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register in an application based on §1(a) or §44, or prior to acceptance of a statement of use in an application based on §1(b). The USPTO cannot ensure that a request to issue the certificate in a new name filed after the mark has been approved for publication or registration will be processed in time for the registration to issue in the name of the new owner.

If, before a mark is approved for publication or registration, an applicant has recorded the appropriate document and filed a proper request that the certificate issue in the name of the new owner, but the registration does not issue in the name of the new owner, the USPTO will issue a certificate of correction. See [15 U.S.C. §1057\(g\)](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.174](#), and [TMEP §1609.10\(a\)](#) regarding the procedures for requesting correction of a USPTO error, and [TMEP §502.03](#) regarding issuance of a new certificate of registration to the new owner of a registered mark.

502.02(b) Applications Under §66(a) of the Trademark Act

In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, a new owner must record any assignment, change of name, or other document affecting title with the IB. The document(s) must show clear chain of title from the original owner to the party who is taking the action. See [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding assignment of §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) regarding requests to record changes with the IB. The IB will notify the USPTO when the change of ownership, including change of owner name, is recorded in the International Register. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents affecting title) that have been recorded in the International Register, and will automatically update the “Ownership” field in the Trademark database. A new owner can check TSDR at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine whether the Trademark database has been updated to reflect a change in ownership that has been recorded with the IB.

If the Trademark database has not been updated, before the mark is approved for publication the new owner should file a written request that the registration issue in the name of the new owner. The request that a registration issue in the name of the new owner must be directed to the examining attorney, and must state that the appropriate document has been recorded (or filed for recordation) with the IB, and that the applicant wants the registration to issue in the name of the assignee or the new name of the applicant. The request must specify the assignee’s address, and set forth the assignee’s citizenship or state of incorporation or organization (for United States assignees), or country of incorporation or organization (for foreign assignees).

If the assignee is a domestic partnership or domestic joint venture, the request must set forth the names, legal entities, and national citizenship (or state or country of organization or incorporation) of all general partners. See [TMEP §502.02\(c\)](#) regarding an examining attorney's handling of an application after a mark has been assigned.

If the applicant states that a request to record a change of ownership has been filed with the IB but is not yet recorded, and the application is in condition to be approved for publication, the examining attorney must suspend action pending recordation of the document and entry of the information into the Trademark database. See [TMEP §716](#) regarding suspension.

If, before a mark is approved for publication, an applicant has recorded the appropriate document with the IB and filed a proper request that the certificate issue in the name of the new owner, but the registration does not issue in the name of the new owner, the USPTO will issue a certificate of correction. See [15 U.S.C. §1057\(g\)](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.174](#), and [TMEP §1609.10\(a\)](#) regarding the procedures for requesting correction of a USPTO error.

502.02(c) Examining Attorney's Action Regarding Assignment

If, prior to approval for publication for opposition or registration on the Supplemental Register, or prior to acceptance of a statement of use in an application under §1(b), the applicant advises the examining attorney, or the examining attorney learns through another source, that an assignment has been recorded, the examining attorney must check the Assignment database at [Assignments on the Web](#) to ensure that there is clear chain of title, and must ensure that the Trademark database is updated before approving the mark for publication or registration.

In general, the examining attorney should only issue an Office action questioning whether an assignment has occurred if an entity attempts to take action with respect to the application and USPTO records show ownership in another party. In this situation, the assignee must establish entitlement to take the action, either by recordation of an assignment or submission of proof of the assignment. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)](#); [TMEP §502.01](#).

During initial examination, the examining attorney must not suspend action or delay issuance of a final action to await recordation of a document. However, if the applicant submits a request indicating that the relevant document *has been submitted for recordation* and the application is in condition to be approved for publication for opposition or registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must suspend the application until the document has been recorded and the information regarding the assignment or the change of name has been entered into the Trademark database.

Similarly, during examination of the statement of use in an application under §1(b), the examining attorney must withhold final approval for registration until the relevant document has been recorded and the information regarding the assignment or the applicant's new name has been entered in the Trademark database. If the application is in condition to be approved for publication or registration, the examining attorney must suspend action pending recordation of the document and entry of the information into the Trademark database. See [TMEP §716](#) regarding suspension.

502.03 Issuance of New Certificate to Assignee of Registrant

Registrations Under § 1 and 44 of the Trademark Act . In registrations that issued based on applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the USPTO will issue a new certificate of registration of the mark

for the unexpired part of the registration period in the name of the new owner (or in the registrant's new name), if the new owner/registrator: (1) records the appropriate document (e.g., assignment document, change of name) with the Assignment Recordation Branch; (2) files a written request that a certificate of registration be issued in the new owner's name; *and* (3) pays the required fee ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#) and 3.41). The new owner, someone with legal authority to bind the new owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) ("qualified practitioner") must sign the request for a new certificate. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.171\(a\)](#) and [3.85](#). The recorded document(s) must show clear chain of title from the original registrant to the party requesting issuance of a new certificate. See [TMEP §503.03](#) regarding the requirements for recording.

Upon request and payment of the appropriate fee (*see* [TMEP §111](#)), the Document Services Branch of the USPTO will provide a certified copy of the registration that reflects ownership according to the records shown in the Assignment database. The certified copy will not show any transfer of ownership that has not been recorded with the Assignment Recordation Branch.

See [TMEP §1604.07\(c\)](#) regarding the issuance of a notification of acceptance of a §8 affidavit in the name of the new owner of a registration, and [TMEP §1606.06](#) regarding renewal in the name of the new owner.

Registered Extensions of Protection of International Registrations to the United States. In a registered extension of protection, the new owner must record the assignment, change of name, or other document affecting title with the IB. *See* [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding assignment of registered extensions of protection, and [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) regarding requests to record changes in the International Register. The IB will notify the USPTO when the change of ownership, including a change of owner name, is recorded in the International Register, and the USPTO will record the change in the Assignment database and update the "Ownership" field in the Trademark database. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents affecting title) that have been recorded in the International Register. The recorded document(s) must show clear chain of title from the original owner to the party requesting issuance of a new certificate.

The USPTO will issue a new certificate of registration of the mark for the unexpired part of the registration period in the name of the new owner, if the new owner: (1) records the appropriate document (e.g., assignment document, change of name certificate) with the IB; (2) files a written request with the Assignment Recordation Branch that a certificate of registration be issued in the new owner's name; *and* (3) pays the required fee ([37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#)). The new owner, someone with legal authority to bind the new owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner must sign the request for a new certificate. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(a\)](#).

Upon request and payment of the appropriate fee (*see* [TMEP §111](#)), the Document Services Branch of the USPTO will provide a certified copy of the registration that reflects ownership according to the records shown in the Assignment database. The certified copy will not show any transfer of ownership that has not been recorded with the IB.

Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to assignments of an international registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

503 Recording with Assignment Recordation Branch

503.01 Effect of Recording a Document

37 CFR §3.54 Effect of recording.

The recording of a document pursuant to §3.11 is not a determination by the Office of the validity of the document or the effect that document has on the title to an application, a patent, or a registration. When necessary, the Office will determine what effect a document has, including whether a party has the authority to take an action in a matter pending before the Office.

503.01(a) Recording May Not Update Ownership Information

Recording a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch does not necessarily change or update the ownership of record shown in the Trademark database. There are circumstances in which the Trademark database will be updated automatically upon the recordation of an assignment, change of name, or other document transferring title. See [TMEP §§504](#) and [504.01](#). In all other cases, the new owner must separately notify the Trademark Operation in writing of the recordation of a document, and request that the Trademark database be updated manually. See TMEP §§ [504.01](#) and [505](#). See also [TMEP §§502.02–502.03](#) regarding issuance of a certificate of registration in the name of a new owner.

503.01(b) Recording Does Not Update Correspondence Address in Trademark Database

The USPTO will only communicate with the applicant or the applicant's attorney at the correspondence address listed in the Trademark database. If an assignment document is recorded with the Assignment Recordation Branch and it includes a new correspondence address, the USPTO will not enter the change of correspondence address or update the Trademark database. The mere inclusion of the new correspondence address on documents filed with the Assignment Recordation Branch does not effect a change in the correspondence address in the Trademark database, even if the ownership information is automatically updated. The USPTO will not change the correspondence address unless a separate written request is made to explicitly change the correspondence address. See [TMEP §609.02\(f\)](#) regarding correspondence after recordation of a change of ownership, and [TMEP §504](#) regarding automatic updating of ownership information in the Trademark database after recordation of a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch.

503.01(c) Recording Is Not a Determination of Validity

The Assignment Recordation Branch does not examine the substance of documents submitted for recording. The act of recording a document is a ministerial act, and not a determination of the document's validity or of its effect on title to an application or registration. The USPTO will determine the effect of a document only when an assignee attempts to take an action in connection with an application or registration (e.g., when an assignee files a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#) or a §8 affidavit). [37 C.F.R. §3.54](#).

503.01(d) Recording Does Not Constitute Response to Office Action

Recording a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch does *not* constitute a response to an outstanding Office action.

503.01(e) Conditional Assignment

If an assignment is conditional on a given act or event at the time of its execution, the USPTO will view the submission of the assignment for recordation as an indication that the act or event has occurred. See [37 C.F.R. §3.56](#).

503.02 Documents that the Office Will Record

37 CFR §3.11 Documents which will be recorded.

(a) Assignments of applications, patents, and registrations, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§3.28 and 3.31, will be recorded in the Office. Other documents, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§3.28 and 3.31, affecting title to applications, patents, or registrations, will be recorded as provided in this part or at the discretion of the Director.

(b) Executive Order 9424 of February 18, 1944 (9 FR 1959, 3 CFR 1943-1948 Comp., p. 303) requires the several departments and other executive agencies of the Government, including Government-owned or Government-controlled corporations, to forward promptly to the Director for recording all licenses, assignments, or other interests of the Government in or under patents or patent applications. Assignments and other documents affecting title to patents or patent applications and documents not affecting title to patents or patent applications required by Executive Order 9424 to be filed will be recorded as provided in this part.

The USPTO records assignments of trademark applications and registrations, accompanied by completed cover sheets. The USPTO also records documents that affect title to a trademark application or registration, such as certificates issued by appropriate authorities showing a change of name of a business or a merger of businesses. Although a mere change of name does not constitute a change of legal entity, it is a proper link in the chain of title. Documents of merger are also proper links in the chain of title.

Some instruments that relate to registered marks or to marks in pending applications may be recorded, even though they do not constitute a transfer or change of title to the mark or do not convey the entire title or interest in the business in which the mark is used. Typically, these instruments are license agreements, security agreements, and agreements between parties limiting future extension of use of a mark with regard to the goods/services or other circumstances of use. These instruments are recorded to give third parties notification of equitable interests or other matters relevant to the ownership of a mark.

The USPTO may also record a partial assignment of an interest in a mark. See [TMEP §501.06](#).

In an application under §66 of the Trademark Act or a registered extension of protection, the new owner must record any change of ownership, including a change of owner name, with the IB, who will record the change in the International Register and notify the USPTO accordingly. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents affecting title) that have been recorded in the International Register. See [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB. Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to assignments of §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#). See [TMEP §501.07](#).

503.03 Requirements for Recording

503.03(a) Formal Requirements for Documents

Applications and Registrations Based on §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act. All documents submitted for recording must be accompanied by a cover sheet that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §3.31](#). See [TMEP §503.03\(e\)](#).

To expedite recordation, new owners are encouraged to file requests for recordation electronically through ETAS, on the USPTO website at <http://etas.uspto.gov>. Documents filed electronically are recorded much faster than paper documents. Using ETAS, a party can create and submit a Trademark Assignment Recordation Form Cover Sheet by completing an online form, and attach the supporting legal documentation as an image in tagged image file format (“TIFF”) for submission via the Internet.

See [TMEP §503.03](#) regarding the requirements for recordation.

Section 66(a) Applications and Registered Extensions of Protection. In a §66(a) application or a registered extension of protection, the new owner must record the change of ownership, including a change of owner name, with the IB, who will record the change in the International Register and notify the USPTO accordingly.

See [TMEP §501.07](#). The IB does not require supporting documents. See [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB.

503.03(b) Supporting Documents

To record an assignment document or other document affecting title to a trademark application or registration, a legible cover sheet and one of the following must be submitted:

- (1) A copy of the document;
- (2) A copy of an extract from the document evidencing the effect on title; or
- (3) A statement signed by both the party conveying the interest *and* the party receiving the interest explaining how the conveyance affects title.

[37 C.F.R. §3.25\(a\)](#).

To record a name change, only a legible cover sheet is required. [37 C.F.R. §3.25\(b\)](#).

Documents filed through ETAS must be in TIFF or PDF format. When printed to a paper size of either 21.6 by 27.9 cm (8½ by 11 inches) or 21.0 by 29.7 cm (DIN size A4), a 2.5 cm (one-inch) margin must be present on all sides. [37 C.F.R. §3.25\(c\)\(1\)](#).

All paper documents submitted for recordation must be submitted on white and non-shiny paper that is either 8½ by 11 inches (21.6 by 27.9 cm) or DIN size A4 (21.0 by 29.7 cm) with a one-inch (2.5 cm) margin on all sides in either case. Only one side of each page may be used. Original documents should not be submitted, because the USPTO does not return recorded documents. [37 C.F.R. §3.25\(c\)\(2\)](#).

Documents that do not meet these requirements will not be recorded. [37 C.F.R. §3.51](#). See [TMEP §503.05](#).

503.03(c) English Language Requirement

The USPTO will not record a document that is not in the English language, unless it is accompanied by an English translation that is signed by the translator. [37 C.F.R. §3.26](#).

503.03(d) Fee for Recording

All requests to record documents with the Assignment Recordation Branch must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. A fee is required for *each* application and registration against which a document is recorded, as identified in the cover sheet. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [3.41](#). The fee does not depend on the length of the document.

If the Assignment Recordation Branch determines that materials submitted for recording do not meet the recording requirements, the fee is not refunded.

503.03(e) Cover Sheet

Each document submitted for recording in the Assignment Recordation Branch must be accompanied by a cover sheet that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §3.31](#). Only one set of documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. [37 C.F.R. §3.28](#).

To expedite recordation, new owners are encouraged to file requests for recordation electronically through ETAS, on the USPTO website, at <http://etas.uspto.gov>. Documents filed electronically are recorded much faster than paper documents. Using ETAS, a new owner can create a Trademark Assignment Recordation Form Cover Sheet by completing an online form, and attach the supporting legal documentation as a TIFF image or PDF document for submission via the Internet.

If the new owner files the assignment or name change on paper, the cover sheet must be legible. [37 C.F.R. §3.25\(a\)](#). The USPTO has a trademark cover sheet form that can be downloaded from the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/forms/pto1594.pdf>. Questions regarding cover sheets should be directed to the Assignment Recordation Branch. Contact information is provided on the USPTO website at <http://etas.uspto.gov/>. See notice at 1140 TMOG 65, 69 (July 28, 1992). Use of the USPTO's cover sheet form is preferred, but is not mandatory.

Under [37 C.F.R. §3.31\(a\)](#), a trademark cover sheet must contain the following:

- The name of the party conveying the interest;
- The name and address of the party receiving the interest;
- The entity (e.g., individual, corporation, partnership, etc.) and citizenship of the party receiving the interest (e.g., the citizenship of an individual, the state or country of incorporation or organization of a corporation, etc.). If the party receiving the interest is a domestic partnership or domestic joint venture, the names, entity, and citizenship (or the state or country of organization or incorporation) of all general partners or active members that compose the partnership or joint venture;
- A description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded (e.g., assignment, license, change of name, merger, security agreement);
- Each application serial number or registration number against which the document is to be recorded, if known. If the application serial number is not known, the party seeking to record the document must submit a copy of the application and/or a reproduction of the mark and an estimate of the date that the USPTO received the application;
- The name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the document should be sent;
- The date the document was executed; and
- The signature of the party submitting the document. For a document filed electronically, the person who signs the cover sheet must either: (1) place a symbol comprised of letters, numbers, and/or punctuation marks between forward slash marks (e.g., “/Thomas O’Malley/”) in the signature block on the electronic submission; or (2) sign the cover sheet using another form of electronic signature specified by the Director.

The cover sheet should also include:

- The entity and citizenship of the conveying party (e.g., the citizenship of an individual, state or country of incorporation or organization of a corporation, or names and citizenship of the general partners of a domestic partnership);
- The number of applications and/or registrations identified in the cover sheet;
- The total fee; and
- An identification or description of the mark.

In addition, if the receiving party has designated a domestic representative (see [TMEP §§501.04](#) and [610](#)), the cover sheet should include an indication to this effect.

Documents that are not accompanied by a completed cover sheet will be returned for correction. [37 C.F.R. §3.51](#). Corrected and resubmitted documents will retain the original filing date of the documents so long as they are returned within the time specified in the letter returning them for correction. *Id.*

Separate patent and trademark cover sheets should be submitted for documents that include interests in, or transactions involving, both patents and trademarks. If a cover sheet contains both patent and trademark information, any information contained therein about pending patent applications will become public record upon recordation. [37 C.F.R. §§3.28](#) and [3.31\(b\)](#).

503.04 Address for Submitting Documents for Recording

To expedite recordation, new owners are encouraged to file requests to record documents with the Assignment Recordation Branch electronically through ETAS, on the USPTO website, at <http://etas.uspto.gov>. Paper documents and cover sheets to be recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch should be sent to Mail Stop Assignment Recordation Branch, Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, P. O. Box 1450, Alexandria VA 22313-1450. [37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(c\)](#), [3.27](#).

503.05 Recording Procedure and Recordation Date

Applications and Registrations Under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act. The recording of documents in the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO is governed by 37 C.F.R. Part 3.

To expedite recordation, new owners are encouraged to file requests for recordation electronically through ETAS, on the USPTO website, at <http://etas.uspto.gov>. Using ETAS, a new owner can create and submit a Trademark Assignment Recordation Form Cover Sheet by completing an online form, and attach the supporting legal documentation as a TIFF image or PDF document for submission via the Internet. Documents filed electronically are recorded much faster than paper documents.

The date of recordation is the date that the USPTO receives a document meeting the requirements for recording. *See* [37 C.F.R. §3.51](#). A document that fails to meet the identification requirements in 37 C.F.R. §3.31 will not be recorded. *Id.* Documents not meeting other requirements for recording, e.g., missing a completed cover sheet, will retain the original filing date if the corrected documents are resubmitted within the timeframe specified in the letter returning the documents for correction. *Id.*

The party recording the document should carefully review the document and cover sheet for accuracy and completeness. The USPTO only examines the materials submitted for form, to determine whether the requirements for recording (*see* [TMEP §§503.03\(a\)-503.03\(e\)](#)) have been met.

If the materials submitted meet the requirements for recordation, the Assignment Recordation Branch will record the document and cover sheet. Only the data specified on the cover sheet will be entered in the Assignment database. After recording the document and cover sheet, the USPTO will issue a notice of recordation that reflects the data as recorded in the Assignment database. The party recording the document should carefully review the notice of recordation. *See* [TMEP §§503.06\(a\)-503.06\(f\)](#) regarding correction of errors in a cover sheet or recorded document.

Under [37 C.F.R. §3.51](#), the USPTO will return documents that do not meet the requirements for recording (e.g., documents submitted without a completed cover sheet, the appropriate fee, or an English translation, where applicable) to the sender for correction. The returned documents, stamped with the original date of receipt in the USPTO, will be accompanied by a notice of non-recordation indicating that, if the returned

documents are corrected and resubmitted to the USPTO within a specified period of time, the USPTO will assign the original filing date of the documents as the recordation date. The USPTO will not extend the time period specified in the letter. If the returned documents are corrected and resubmitted *after* the time specified in the letter, the recordation date is the date on which the USPTO receives corrected documents that meet the requirements for recording. The certificate of mailing and transmission procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) and the Priority Mail Express® procedure of [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#) may be used for resubmitting the returned documents, to avoid lateness due to mail delay.

If documents submitted for recording are returned unrecorded by the Assignment Recordation Branch, and the submitter believes that the documents were returned in error, he or she may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP §§1702](#) through [1708](#) regarding petitions.

Applicants and registrants can search the Assignment database at [Assignments on the Web](#) to determine whether an assignment has been recorded.

Section 66(a) Applications and Registered Extensions of Protection. In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act or a registered extension of protection, the IB will notify the USPTO of any changes in ownership, including a change of owner name, recorded in the International Register, and of the date of recordation. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents affecting title) that have been recorded in the International Register. See [TMEP §501.07](#) for further information about assignment of §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection, and [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB.

Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to assignments of an international registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

503.06 Correction of Errors in Cover Sheet or Recorded Document

37 CFR §3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

(a) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to §3.11 will be corrected only if:

- (1) The error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded document to which it pertains, and
- (2) A corrected cover sheet is filed for recordation.

(b) The corrected cover sheet must be accompanied by a copy of the document originally submitted for recording and by the recording fee as set forth in §3.41.

Once a document is recorded with the Assignment Recordation Branch, the Assignment Recordation Branch will not remove the document from the record relating to that application or registration. See [TMEP §503.06\(e\)](#).

During the recording process, the Assignment Recordation Branch will check to see that a trademark cover sheet is complete and record the data exactly as it appears on the cover sheet. Once the document is recorded, the USPTO will issue a notice of recordation.

The party recording the document should carefully review the notice of recordation.

Typographical errors made by the USPTO will be corrected promptly and without charge upon written request directed to the Assignment Recordation Branch. For any other error, the party recording the document is responsible for filing the documents and paying the recordation fees necessary to correct the error, using the procedures set forth in [TMEP §§503.06\(a\)](#) through [503.06\(d\)](#).

In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act or a registered extension of protection, any request to correct an error in a document recorded with the IB must be corrected at the IB. Such a request cannot be sent to the IB through the USPTO. See [TMEP §§1906.01-1906.01\(i\)](#) for information about requests to record changes in the International Register.

503.06(a) Typographical Errors in Cover Sheet

A party may correct typographical errors on a previously recorded cover sheet by submitting the following to the Assignment Recordation Branch: (1) a completed new cover sheet containing the correct information; (2) a copy of the originally recorded assignment document (or other document affecting title); (3) a copy of the previously recorded, original cover sheet containing the erroneous information; and (4) the required fee for each application or registration to be corrected ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6 and 3.41](#)). [37 C.F.R. §3.34](#). See [TMEP §503.03\(e\)](#) for information about the cover sheet. The original cover sheet is required for the Assignment Recordation Branch to identify the nature of the correction. A copy of the original cover sheet may be obtained using [Assignments on the Web](#) on the USPTO website by typing in the reel and frame number of the previously recorded assignment, clicking on the “View Recorded Assignment” icon, and printing a copy of the cover sheet.

If the corrective documents are filed electronically via ETAS, the party filing the correction should check the box titled “Corrective Assignment” in the “Nature of the Conveyance” field and fill in the mandatory fields, which include: (1) identification of the parts of the cover sheet that need to be corrected (i.e., name of receiving party, or trademark application serial number or registration number); (2) the reel and frame number where the original cover sheet is recorded; and (3) identification of the nature of the conveyance that was originally recorded (e.g., assignment of entire interest, security interest, name change, or merger).

If the corrective documents are filed on paper using the form provided by the Assignment Recordation Branch, the party filing the correction should check the box titled “Other” in the section titled “Nature of Conveyance” and, in the space provided, state the following: “Corrective assignment to correct the previously recorded assignment against Property Number ^ (insert trademark application serial number or registration number) recorded at ^ (identify the reel and frame number where the original cover sheet is recorded).”

The Assignment Recordation Branch will compare the new cover sheet containing the corrected information with the original cover sheet and the originally recorded assignment document (or other document affecting title) to determine whether the correction is typographical in nature. If the error is typographical in nature, the Assignment Recordation Branch will record the new cover sheet and correct the Assignment database. If the assignment document (or other document affecting title) cannot be recorded, the Assignment Recordation Branch will issue a notice indicating the reason for non-recording.

If ownership information is incorrect in the USPTO’s Trademark database, see [TMEP §§505–505.02](#) regarding requests to update ownership information in applications and registrations.

503.06(a)(i) Typographical Errors in Cover Sheet that Do Not Affect Title to Application or Registration

If the original cover sheet contains a typographical error that does not affect title to the application or registration against which the original assignment, name change, or other interest is recorded, the Assignment Recordation Branch will correct the Assignment database and permit the recording party to keep the original date of recordation.

503.06(a)(ii) Typographical Errors in Cover Sheet that Do Affect Title to Application or Registration

If the original cover sheet contains a typographical error that affects title to the application or registration against which the assignment, name change, or other interest is recorded, the recording party will not be entitled to keep the original date of recordation. See [TMEP §503.05](#). Rather, the Assignment Recordation Branch will correct its automated records and change the date of recordation to the date on which the corrected cover sheet was received in the USPTO.

503.06(b) Typographical Errors in Recorded Assignment Document

If there is a typographical error in the recorded assignment document (or other document affecting title) rather than in the cover sheet, the party responsible for the erroneous document (e.g., the assignor) must either record a new document with the Assignment Recordation Branch or make corrections to the original document and re-record it. If the assignor is not available to correct an original document or execute a new one, the assignee may submit an affidavit or declaration for recordation in which the assignee identifies the error and requests correction. The affidavit or declaration must: (1) be signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts and (2) identify the current owner of the property and explain why the originally recorded document was erroneous. To record the affidavit or declaration, the assignee must file: (1) a new complete cover sheet; (2) the affidavit or declaration; (3) a copy of the originally recorded document with the corrections thereto initialed and dated by the party signing the affidavit or declaration; and (4) the required fee for each application or registration to be corrected ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [3.41](#)). See *In re Abacab Int'l Computers Ltd.*, 21 USPQ2d 1078 (Comm'r Pats. 1987). See [TMEP §503.03\(e\)](#) for information about the cover sheet.

In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act or a registered extension of protection, any request to correct an error in a document recorded with the IB must be corrected at the IB. Such a request cannot be sent to the IB through the USPTO.

503.06(c) Assignment, Change of Name, or Other Interest Improperly Filed and Recorded by Another Person Against Owner's Application or Registration

When the owner of an application or registration discovers that another party has improperly recorded an assignment, name change, or other interest against the owner's application or registration, the owner should initially contact the party who filed the improper recording and have that party record corrective documents. See [TMEP §503.06\(a\)](#) regarding typographical errors in the cover sheet. If that party files corrective documents, the Assignment Recordation Branch will record the assignment, change of name, or other interest in the correct application or registration, and remove any references to the application or registration in which the improper recording was made. The assignment, change of name, or other interest will remain at the reel and frame number where it was originally recorded, but a search of the assignment records will not associate the improper recording with the owner's property.

If the party who recorded the improper document cannot be located or is unwilling to file corrective documents, the owner must file documents to correct the record. Depending on the nature of the error that resulted in the improper recordation, the owner has two options.

If the existing evidence of record clearly demonstrates that the improper assignment, change of name, or other interest recorded against the owner's application or registration ("owner's property") was the result of a typographical error in identifying the application or registration number (e.g., the party who improperly

filed mistakenly transposed property numbers), and the improper recording was filed by someone who is not the owner and does not have proper chain of title, the owner may submit a request to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy to have any reference of the improper recording removed from the owner's property. The owner must submit the request in writing, detailing the erroneous information and providing the reel and frame number where the document is recorded, and ask that the recording not be associated with the owner's property. The request should be faxed to 571-273-8950. The request will only be granted if the current assignment records show on their face that a typographical error caused the recordation against the wrong property and the error was made by someone other than the owner. The request will not be granted if there is a dispute regarding ownership.

If the record as a whole shows that the application or registration number is consistent with the identified mark and nothing on the face of the recorded document indicates there was an error in identifying the application or registration number, the owner may record corrective documents with the Assignment Recordation Branch. A corrective assignment, name change, or other interest must include: (1) a new complete cover sheet containing the correct owner information; (2) an affidavit or declaration identifying the correct owner, stating why the previously recorded document was not proper, and providing the reel and frame number where the original cover sheet and underlying document is recorded; and (3) the required fee for each application or registration to be corrected ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [3.41](#)). See [TMEP §503.03\(e\)](#) for information about the cover sheet.

The affidavit or declaration must: (1) be signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts; (2) identify the current owner of the application or registration; and (3) state why the document recorded against the application or registration was erroneous, and that the last correct owner or assignee has been and continues to be the owner of the application or registration.

If corrective documents are filed electronically via ETAS, the owner should check the box titled "Corrective Assignment" in the "Nature of the Conveyance" field and fill in the following required information in the fields provided: (1) identification of the parts of the assignment or change of name that need to be corrected (e.g., name of the receiving party, or trademark application serial number or registration number); (2) the reel and frame number where the original cover sheet is recorded; and (3) identification of the nature of the conveyance that was originally recorded (e.g., assignment of entire interest, change of name). The owner should also write the name of the correct owner of the application or registration in both the assignor (name of the conveying party) and assignee (name of the receiving party) fields to make clear that ownership of the application or registration never changed and the chain of title remains in the last correct owner or assignee.

If the corrected documents are filed on paper using the form provided by the Assignment Recordation Branch, the owner should check the box titled "Other" in the section titled "Nature of Conveyance" and, in the space provided, state the following: "Corrective assignment to correct the previously recorded assignment against Property Number ^ (insert trademark application serial number or registration number) recorded at ^ (identify the reel and frame number where the original cover sheet is recorded)." The owner should also write the name of the correct owner of the application or registration in both the assignor (name of the conveying party) and assignee (name of the receiving party) fields to make clear that ownership of the application or registration never changed and the chain of title remains in the last correct owner or assignee.

Whether filed via ETAS or on paper, if all the filing requirements are met in instances where nothing on the face of the recorded document indicates that there was an error in identifying the application or registration number, the Assignment Recordation Branch will record the corrected assignment or change of name in the identified application or registration, but will not remove the improper recording. However, anyone searching and reviewing the assignment records will see the corrective documents, which clarify the chain of title.

In the rare case of a dispute in ownership where one party attempts to appropriate ownership of the application or registration by filing an assignment document (or other document affecting title), the other party's recourse is to record an affidavit or declaration (as explained above) with the Assignment Recordation Branch in support of its position. As noted above, the USPTO's recordation of documents purporting to affect chain of title is a purely ministerial act and is not an Office determination of the document's validity or of its effect on title to an application or registration. See [37 C.F.R. §3.54](#); [TMEP §503.01\(c\)](#).

503.06(d) Owner Must Notify Trademark Operation of Correction

Recording a corrective document with the Assignment Recordation Branch generally does not change or update the information to be corrected in the Trademark database. The owner must also separately notify the Trademark Operation in writing that the corrective document has been recorded and identify the corrected information.

See [TMEP §504.03](#) regarding correction of the Trademark database where it has been automatically updated to show ownership of an application or registration in a party who does not have clear chain of title as evidenced by the Assignment database, and [TMEP §§505-505.02](#) regarding requests to update ownership information.

503.06(e) Recorded Documents Not Removed from Assignment Records

Except in situations where typographical errors have been corrected following the procedures set forth in [TMEP §503.06\(c\)](#), once an assignment or other document is recorded against an application or registration, the Assignment Recordation Branch will not remove the document from the records relating to that application or registration in the Assignment database, even if the assignment or other document is subsequently found to be invalid.

The goal of the USPTO is to maintain a complete history of claimed interests in a mark. Since the act of recording a document is not a determination of the document's validity, maintaining a complete record of claimed interests does not preclude an owner from using a mark, or from establishing its ownership of the mark in a proper forum, such as a federal court. *In re Ratny*, 24 USPQ2d 1713 (Comm'r Pats. 1992).

503.06(f) Petitions to Correct or “Expunge” Assignment Records

To correct an error in a recorded document, the owner of an application or registration should record corrective documents with the Assignment Recordation Branch, in accordance with the procedures outlined in [TMEP §§503.06](#) through [503.06\(d\)](#).

If the Assignment Recordation Branch denies the request to correct the error, the owner may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See TMEP Chapter 1700 regarding petitions.

However, petitions to correct, modify, or “expunge” assignment records are rarely granted. Such petitions are granted only if the petitioner can prove that: (1) the normal corrective procedures outlined in [TMEP §§503.06](#) through [503.06\(d\)](#) will not provide the petitioner with adequate relief; and (2) the integrity of the assignment records will not be affected by granting the petition.

Even if a petition to “expunge” a document is granted with respect to a particular application or registration, the images of the recorded document remain in the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch. The USPTO will delete the links to the application or registration that was the subject of the petition, so that no

information about the recorded document will appear when someone searches for that application or registration number in the Assignment database. However, the image of the document remains at the same reel and frame number, and it will still appear when that reel and frame number is viewed.

503.07 “Indexing” Against Recorded Document Not Permitted

The USPTO does not process requests for “indexing” or “cross-referencing” additional trademark registration numbers or application serial numbers against a document previously recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch.

Therefore, even when an assignment document (or other document affecting title) has already been recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch in connection with a trademark application or registration, a party who wants to record that document against additional applications or registrations must submit the following:

- (1) A copy of the originally recorded assignment document (or other document affecting title), a copy of an extract from the recorded document evidencing the effect on title, or a statement signed by both the party conveying the interest and the party receiving the interest explaining how the conveyance affects title (this may comprise a copy of the previously recorded documents on which the Assignment Recordation Branch has stamped the reel and frame numbers at which they are recorded);
- (2) A completed cover sheet (*see* [TMEP §503.03\(e\)](#)) that includes the number of each additional registration and/or application against which recordation of the assignment document (or other document affecting title) is requested; and
- (3) The appropriate recording fee ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [3.41](#)).

The USPTO will assign a new date of recordation for the additional applications or registrations, update the Assignment database, and create an electronic record of the cover sheet and assignment document (or other document affecting title), which will become part of the official record. *See* 1157 TMOG 12 (Dec. 7, 1993).

503.08 Accessibility of Assignment Records

The Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO maintains separate records for patents and trademarks. [15 U.S.C. §1060\(a\)\(5\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.200\(a\)\(1\)](#).

The public can search the trademark assignment records of the Assignment Recordation Branch on the USPTO website at <http://assignments.uspto.gov/assignments/q?db=tm>.

Assignments of trademark applications and registrations are open to public inspection upon recordation in the Assignment Recordation Branch. *See* [37 C.F.R. §3.31\(b\)](#) and [TMEP §503.03\(e\)](#) regarding the submission of separate cover sheets for documents that include interests in, or transactions involving, both patents and trademarks.

Before 1955, documents were recorded in bound volumes. The location of documents in these volumes is designated by “liber and page,” that is, by the number of the book (liber) and the number of the page in the book. Since 1955, documents have been recorded on microfilm, and are available for immediate inspection in the Trademark Assignment Search Room. The location of these documents is designated by “reel and frame,” that is, by the number of the reel on which they are microfilmed and the number of the frame on the reel.

All assignment records related to pre-1955 trademark records were transferred to the National Archives and Records Administration (“NARA”) in 1990. The USPTO still maintains records of all trademark assignments recorded on or after January 1, 1955.

All trademark assignment records from 1837 to December 31, 1954 are maintained and available for public inspection in the National Archives Research Room located at the Washington National Records Center Building, 4205 Suitland Road, Suitland, Maryland 20746. Assignments recorded before 1837 are maintained at the National Archives and Records Administration, 841 South Pickett Street, Alexandria, Virginia 22304.

Copies of assignment records recorded on or after January 1, 1955 may be ordered from the USPTO upon payment of the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). An order for a copy of an assignment record should identify the reel and frame at which it is recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch. If the correct reel and frame numbers are not identified (e.g., the order identifies the document only by the name of the registrant and the number of the registration, or by the name of the applicant and the serial number of the application), the USPTO will charge an additional fee for the time spent searching for the document.

Requests for copies of pre-1955 trademark assignment records should be directed to NARA. Payment of the fees required by NARA should accompany all requests for copies. [37 C.F.R. §2.200\(a\)\(2\)](#).

503.08(a) Trademark Assignment Abstracts of Title

Members of the public may obtain trademark assignment abstracts of title to particular registrations or applications from the Document Services Branch of the Public Records Division of the USPTO, upon payment of the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See notices at 1140 TMOG 65, 66 (July 28, 1992) and 1165 TMOG 13 (Aug. 2, 1994).

504 Automatic Updating of Ownership of Trademark Applications and Registrations in Trademark Database

Except in the limited circumstances set forth in [TMEP §504.01](#), the USPTO will automatically update the ownership information in the Trademark database of registrations and pending applications when one of the following documents is recorded with the Assignment Recordation Branch:

- Assignment of entire interest and goodwill;
- Nunc Pro Tunc Assignment of entire interest and goodwill;
- Merger;
- Change of Name;
- Merger and Change of Name; or
- Entity Conversion.

In these situations, it is unnecessary for the new owner to notify the Trademark Operation of the change of ownership, or to file a request in a pending application that the certificate of registration issue in the name of the new owner. In all other situations, the new owner must separately notify the Trademark Operation in writing that ownership has changed in order to update the ownership information in the Trademark database.

To ensure that the Trademark database is automatically updated, the party filing the change-of-ownership documents should identify the “Nature of the Conveyance” by checking the “Assignment,” “Nunc Pro Tunc

Assignment,” “Merger,” “Change of Name,” “Merger and Change of Name,” or “Entity Conversion” box in the “Nature of Conveyance” field and should not check the “Other” box.

The Trademark database will show only the last recorded owner, not the complete chain of title. The complete chain of title can be obtained from the Assignment Recordation Branch’s database on the USPTO website at [Assignments on the Web](#). The “Ownership” field in the Trademark database will be automatically updated whether or not the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch show clear chain of title transferring ownership to the last recorded owner. The Trademark database will include the reel and frame number and execution date of the recorded document, as well as a notation to “Check Assignments.” Examining attorneys must check assignment records to ensure that the owner of record in the Trademark database has clear chain of title. If there is no clear chain of title, the ownership information should be changed to the last owner with clear chain of title and a Note to the File should be entered in the record to document the change.

Trademark owners can search the [Assignment database](#) to determine whether an assignment has been recorded and can check TSDR at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine whether the Trademark database has been updated.

Note - Filing Multiple Assignments with the Same Execution Date on the Same Date: When multiple assignments with the same execution date are filed on the same date, the ownership information in the Trademark database will not be automatically updated. See the note in [TMEP §504.01](#) for further information.

Automatic updates to the ownership information will not automatically update the correspondence address in the USPTO records. A separate written request to change the correspondence address must be filed. See [TMEP §503.01\(b\)](#).

504.01 Circumstances in Which Trademark Database Will Not Be Automatically Updated

In the circumstances discussed below, the USPTO will **not** automatically update the Trademark database to show the change in ownership. In these situations, the applicant must separately notify the Trademark Operation in writing that the assignment or other title document has been recorded, and request that the Trademark database be updated to show title in the new owner. [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#); [TMEP §§502.02\(a\)-502.02\(b\)](#) and [502.03](#). See [TMEP §505.01](#) regarding requests to update ownership information in pending applications and [TMEP § 505.02](#) regarding requests to update ownership information after registration.

(1) *Execution Date Conflicts with Previously Recorded Document.* If a previously recorded assignment, merger, change of name, or any other recorded document for the same application or registration has an execution date that is the same as or later than the execution date of the subsequently recorded document, the Trademark database will not be automatically updated. Office personnel will have to review the assignment records and update the database manually. *Note - Filing Multiple Assignments with the Same Execution Date on the Same Date:* When requests to record multiple assignments (or other documents transferring title) with the same execution date are filed on the same date, the ownership information in the Trademark database is not automatically updated. Office personnel must manually update the ownership information after reviewing the entire chain of title to identify the proper owner. This review is done when a written request to update ownership information is filed in accordance with [TMEP §505](#). Therefore, information regarding the proper order of the multiple transfers should be included in the written request to the Trademark Operation so that proper chain of title may be determined and the ownership record updated accordingly in the Trademark database.

(2) *Blackout Period: Ownership of Pending Applications and Registrations Cannot be Updated During Certain Time Periods.* The Trademark database cannot be automatically updated to show a change of ownership in the following circumstances:

(a) For §§1(a) and 44 applications:

Approximately three weeks before the application is scheduled to publish in the Trademark *Official Gazette*; and

Approximately three weeks before the application is scheduled to issue.

(b) For §1(b) applications:

Approximately three weeks before the application is scheduled to publish in the Trademark *Official Gazette*;

Approximately three weeks before the Notice of Allowance is scheduled to issue; and

After the SOU is accepted, approximately three weeks before the registration is scheduled to issue.

In addition, for all applications and registrations, the database cannot be automatically updated if the application or registration is involved in a Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (TTAB) proceeding, or for pending applications, if a notice of extension of time to file an opposition has been filed with the TTAB.

(3) *Maximum Number of Ownership Changes.* The Trademark database will not be automatically updated if the maximum number of ownership changes permitted for the following time periods has been reached:

Prior to publication – up to nine changes of ownership.

Between publication and registration – up to nine additional changes of ownership.

In the situations described above, new owners must file a written request with the Trademark Operation, as set forth in [TMEP §505](#), to have the Trademark database updated or, if there is a TTAB proceeding, the request should be filed with the TTAB. See [TMEP §504](#) regarding the types of assignment documents for which the USPTO will automatically update the ownership information in the Trademark database.

504.02 Processing Time for Automatic Updating

Recording a change of ownership does not simultaneously and automatically update the Trademark database with the new owner information. The process for automatically updating the Trademark database requires that the Assignment Recordation Branch: (1) record the document transferring title in the Assignment database; and (2) extract the trademark assignment information from the Assignment database and send it electronically to the Trademark Operation for automatic updating. The Assignment Recordation Branch will extract trademark assignment information from the Assignment database and transmit it to the Trademark Operation once a week.

To expedite recordation with the Assignment Recordation Branch, new owners are encouraged to file requests for recordation electronically through ETAS on the USPTO website, at <http://etas.uspto.gov>.

If a trademark owner wants the Trademark database updated within a certain time frame, and there is insufficient time for the Assignment Recordation Branch to process a recently recorded title document for automatic updating, the owner should notify the Trademark Operation in writing of the change of ownership. [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#); [TMEP §§502.02\(a\)-502.02\(b\)](#) and [502.03](#). Trademark owners can search the Assignment

Recordation Branch's database at [Assignments on the Web](#) to determine whether an assignment has been recorded, and can check TSDR at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine whether the Trademark database has been updated.

504.03 Correction to Automatic Update - Last Recorded Owner Does Not Have Clear Chain of Title

In the situations set forth in [TMEP §504](#), the Trademark database will be automatically updated to show the last recorded owner regardless of whether the Assignment database shows that the last recorded owner has clear chain of title. If the Trademark database is automatically updated to show ownership of an application or registration in a party who does not have clear chain of title as evidenced by the Assignment database, the owner of the application or registration may file a written request to have the "Ownership" field in the Trademark database corrected. The USPTO will grant a request for correction of the "Ownership" field if:

- (1) The Trademark database was automatically updated to show ownership in a party who does not have clear chain of title according to the Assignment database; *and*
- (2) At the time the Trademark database was automatically updated in the name of the incorrect party, the Assignment database showed clear chain of title in the party requesting correction of the "Ownership" field in the Trademark database.

The correction of the Trademark database will not be automatically reflected in the Assignment database. To correct the assignment records, a party must follow the procedures set forth in [TMEP §§503.06-503.06\(f\)](#) for correcting errors in the Assignment database.

Example: ABC Corporation owns Application No. 1. An assignment of the entire interest and goodwill is filed for recordation, transferring ownership of Application 1 from ZED Corporation to XYZ Corporation. The Assignment Recordation Branch records the assignment and transmits the trademark assignment information to the Trademark Operation. The Trademark database is automatically updated to show XYZ Corporation as the new owner of Application 1. The Trademark Operation will correct its database, upon ABC Corporation's request, because the Assignment database does not show clear chain of title from ABC Corporation to XYZ Corporation, and the Assignment database shows clear chain of title in ABC Corporation.

In all other situations, a party requesting correction of the ownership records of the Trademark Operation must follow the procedures for correcting errors in recorded documents or cover sheets, as set forth in [TMEP §§503.06-503.06\(f\)](#). That is, the party must first file corrective documents with the Assignment Recordation Branch, pay the recordation fees necessary to correct the error, and notify the Trademark Operation in writing that the corrective documents have been recorded.

Prior to registration, a request for correction of the "Ownership" field in the Trademark database should be made in an amendment directed to the examining attorney. If such a request is filed after publication, it will be handled in accordance with standard procedures for processing amendments after publication, as set forth in [TMEP §§1505.01\(a\)-1505.01\(f\)](#). In a §1(b) application, if a request for correction of the "Ownership" field is filed between the issuance of the notice of allowance and the submission of a statement of use, such a request may be entered during this period with the express permission of the Director, after consideration on petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). Alternatively, the request can be made when filing the statement of use or a request for extension of time for filing a statement of use. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.77, 2.146](#); [TMEP §§1107-1107.01](#).

After registration, a request for correction of the "Ownership" field should be submitted in writing to the Post Registration Section in the form of a request for correction under §7(g) of the Trademark Act and

[37 C.F.R. §2.174](#). See [TMEP §505.02](#) regarding proper procedures for requests to update ownership information for registrations.

504.04 Automatic Updating Does Not Apply to §66(a) Applications and Registered Extensions of Protection

The procedures discussed in [TMEP §§504.01](#) through [504.03](#) do not apply to §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States. Changes of ownership, including a change of owner name, of international registrations and requests for extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States must be recorded with the IB. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents of title) that have been recorded in the International Register.

The USPTO's Trademark database will be automatically updated to reflect any change of ownership that is recorded in the International Register. See [TMEP §501.07](#) for further information about assignment of §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection, and [TMEP §§1906.01](#) and [1906.01\(a\)](#) for information about recording changes of ownership of international registrations with the IB.

505 Requesting Update of Ownership Information When the Trademark Database Does Not Automatically Update After a Document is Recorded

As noted in [TMEP §504.01](#), in certain cases, the recordation of a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch does not automatically update the ownership information in the Trademark database. Therefore, the new owner must separately notify the Trademark Operation, or the TTAB if there is a TTAB proceeding, in writing that the change in ownership has been recorded, so that the ownership information is updated in the Trademark database. See [TMEP §505.01](#) regarding the procedures for requesting that ownership information be updated in pending applications, and [TMEP §505.02](#) regarding the procedures for requesting that ownership information be updated after registration.

505.01 Request to Update Ownership Information in Pending Application

Prior to registration, a request to update the ownership information in the Trademark database should be made in writing and directed to the examining attorney. To expedite processing, new owners are encouraged to file the request online using the Trademark Electronic Application System ("TEAS"), available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/>. To notify the Trademark Operation of a request before an application is approved for publication, the request may be submitted using the TEAS form entitled "Voluntary Amendment Not in Response to USPTO Office Action/Letter." If such a request is filed after an application is published for opposition but before the notice of allowance or registration has issued, it may be submitted using the TEAS form entitled "Post-Approval/Publication/Post-Notice of Allowance (NOA) Amendment Form," and will be handled in accordance with standard procedures for processing amendments after publication, as set forth in [TMEP §§1505.01\(a\)-1505.01\(f\)](#). If a proceeding regarding the application has been initiated at the TTAB, the request to update ownership information should be filed with the TTAB.

In a §1(b) application, after issuance of the notice of allowance, if the Trademark database has not been automatically updated, the notification of the change in ownership should be made when filing the statement of use or a request for extension of time for filing a statement of use. See [37 C.F.R. §2.77](#); [TMEP §1107](#). To update the Trademark database prior to submitting these documents, the applicant may file a petition to the Director pursuant to Trademark Rule 2.146 to allow the change to be entered. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.77\(b\), 2.146](#) [TMEP §§1107-1107.01](#).

See TMEP §§ [502.02\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) regarding issuance of a certificate of registration in the name of the new owner.

505.02 Request to Update Ownership Information After Registration

If the new owner does not identify the assignment conveyance document properly (see [TMEP §504](#)), or in the situations described in [TMEP §504.01](#), the Trademark database will not automatically update to show the changes in ownership. To have the Trademark database updated, the new owner must either: (1) file a written request to amend the registration pursuant to §7(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(d\)](#); or (2) include the new owner information when submitting a post registration maintenance filing pursuant to §8 or §9 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [§1059](#).

The TEAS form entitled “Section 7 Request for Amendment or Correction of Registration Certificate” should be used to file the request to update the ownership information in the Trademark database. See [TMEP §502.03](#) regarding issuance of a new certificate in the name of the new owner. Thus, if the new owner of the registration is not taking a post registration action, such as filing a §8 affidavit, and wishes to update the ownership records, the owner must:

- (1) Record the appropriate document (e.g., assignment, change of name) with the Assignment Recordation Branch;
- (2) File a written request that the Trademark database be updated under §7(d), signed by the new owner, someone with legal authority to bind the new owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner; *and*
- (3) Pay the required fee ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#) and 3.41).

[15 U.S.C. §1057\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.171\(a\)](#) and [3.85](#). If a proceeding regarding the application has been initiated at the TTAB, the request to update ownership information should be filed with the TTAB. The USPTO’s Trademark records must show clear chain of title from the original registrant to the new owner. See [TMEP §502.03](#).

Chapter 600 Attorney, Representative, and Signature

601	Owner of Mark May Be Represented by a Qualified Practitioner
601.01	USPTO Cannot Aid in Selection of an Attorney
601.02	Communications with Applicant or Registrant Who Is Represented by an Attorney
602	Persons Authorized to Practice Before USPTO in Trademark Matters
602.01	Attorneys Licensed to Practice in the United States
602.02	Non-Attorneys
602.03	Foreign Attorneys and Agents
602.03(a)	Canadian Attorneys and Agents
602.03(b)	Foreign Attorneys and Agents from Countries Other than Canada
602.03(c)	Documents Filed by Foreign Attorneys and Agents
602.03(d)	Representatives of Holders of International Registrations
602.03(e)	Identification of Foreign Attorney in Original Application
603	Standards of Conduct
604	Recognition as a Representative
604.01	Three Ways To Be Recognized as a Representative
604.02	Duration of Recognition
604.03	Change of Attorney
605	Powers of Attorney
605.01	Requirements for Power of Attorney
605.02	Power of Attorney Relating to More than One Application or Registration
605.03	Associate Powers of Attorney
605.04	Power of Attorney Filed After Registration
606	Revocation of Power of Attorney
607	Withdrawal of Attorney of Record
608	Unauthorized Practice
608.01	Actions by Unauthorized Persons Not Permitted
608.02	Individuals Excluded, Suspended, or Unauthorized to Practice Before the USPTO
609	Correspondence, with Whom Held
609.01	Establishing the Correspondence Address
609.01(a)	Correspondence in §66(a) Applications
609.02	Changing the Correspondence Address
609.02(a)	Request to Change Correspondence Address Presumed
609.02(b)	Requirements for Request to Change Correspondence Address
609.02(c)	Processing Requests to Change the Correspondence Address Before Registration
609.02(d)	Changing the Correspondence Address in Multiple Applications or Registrations
609.02(e)	Changing the Correspondence Address After Registration
609.02(f)	Correspondence After Recordation of Change of Ownership
609.03	Applicant Has Duty to Maintain Current and Accurate Correspondence Address
609.04	Correspondence with Parties Not Domiciled in the United States
610	Designation of Domestic Representative by Parties Not Domiciled in the United States
611	Signature on Correspondence Filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office
611.01	Signature and Certificate
611.01(a)	Signature as Certificate
611.01(b)	Requirements for Signature
611.01(c)	Signature of Documents Filed Electronically
611.02	Signatures by Authorized Parties Required
611.02(a)	TEAS Checkoff Boxes

611.03	Proper Person to Sign
611.03(a)	Verification
611.03(b)	Responses, Amendments to Applications, Requests for Express Abandonment, Requests for Reconsideration of Final Actions, and Requests to Divide
611.03(c)	Powers of Attorney and Revocations of Powers of Attorney
611.03(d)	Petitions to Revive
611.03(e)	Petitions to the Director
611.03(f)	Amendment, Correction, or Surrender of Registration
611.03(g)	Renewal Applications
611.03(h)	Designations and Revocations of Domestic Representative
611.03(i)	Requests to Change Correspondence Address in an Application or Registration
611.04	Examples of Authorized and Potentially Unauthorized Signatories
611.05	Processing Documents Signed by Someone Other Than the Applicant or the Applicant's Designated Attorney
611.05(a)	Notice of Incomplete Response when Authority of Person Signing Response Is Unclear
611.05(b)	Replying to a Notice of Incomplete Response
611.05(c)	Unsatisfactory Response or Failure to Respond
611.06	Guidelines on Persons with Legal Authority to Bind Certain Juristic Entities
611.06(a)	Joint Owners
611.06(b)	Signature by Partnership
611.06(c)	Signature by Joint Venture
611.06(d)	Signature by Corporation
611.06(e)	Signature by Foreign Companies and Corporations
611.06(f)	Signature by Unincorporated Association
611.06(g)	Signature by Limited Liability Company
611.06(h)	Signature by Limited Liability Partnership

NOTE: This chapter sets forth the procedures for recognition of representatives, signature of documents, and establishing and maintaining the correspondence address in pending applications for registration, and documents filed with the Post Registration Section of the Office. For a statement of practice concerning representation of others, signature of documents, and establishing and maintaining the correspondence address in proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ("Board"), parties should refer to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure ("TBMP"), Chapter 100, available on the United States Patent and Trademark Office ("USPTO") website at <http://www.uspto.gov>, or contact the Board at (571) 272-8500.

601 Owner of Mark May Be Represented by a Qualified Practitioner

The owner of a mark may represent himself or herself in prosecuting an application or maintaining a registration, or may be represented by a practitioner authorized under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) to practice in trademark cases ("qualified practitioner"). [37 C.F.R. §§2.11,11.14\(e\)](#). See [TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#).

601.01 USPTO Cannot Aid in Selection of an Attorney

The USPTO cannot aid in the selection of a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.11](#).

If it is apparent that an applicant or registrant is unfamiliar with the procedures for prosecuting an application or maintaining a registration and needs more detailed or technical assistance than the USPTO staff is permitted

to give, the USPTO staff may suggest that it may be desirable to employ an attorney who is familiar with trademark matters. The following is an example of language that may be used in the Office action:

The applicant may wish to hire a trademark attorney because of the technicalities involved in the application. The United States Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of an attorney. [37 C.F.R. §2.11](#).

601.02 Communications with Applicant or Registrant Who Is Represented by an Attorney

37 CFR §2.18(a)(7)

Once the Office has recognized a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter as the representative of an applicant or registrant, the Office will communicate and conduct business only with that practitioner, or with another qualified practitioner from the same firm. The Office will not conduct business directly with the applicant or registrant, or with another practitioner from a different firm, unless the applicant or registrant files a revocation of the power of attorney under §2.19(a), and/or a new power of attorney that meets the requirements of §2.17(c). A written request to change the correspondence address does not revoke a power of attorney.

If an applicant or registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the USPTO will conduct business only with the practitioner, unless that representation is terminated. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#). If the applicant or registrant contacts the USPTO regarding the application or registration, he or she will be advised that the USPTO will only conduct business with the qualified practitioner. USPTO employees may answer general questions about the application or registration record and the procedures for obtaining and maintaining a registration, and are encouraged to refer the applicant or registrant to publicly available information on the USPTO's website. See [TMEP §1805](#) regarding general inquiries from the public.

An applicant or registrant may not authorize an examiner's amendment or change of correspondence address, and the USPTO will not accept responses or amendments signed by the applicant or registrant if there is a qualified practitioner of record. See [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#). See [TMEP §§611–611.06\(h\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed in the USPTO.

An applicant or registrant may revoke the authority of a qualified practitioner to represent the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §2.19\(a\)\(1\)](#). An applicant or registrant who wishes to revoke the power of attorney should be encouraged to file the revocation through the Trademark Electronic Application System ("TEAS"). See [TMEP §606](#) regarding revocation of power of attorney.

See [TMEP §604.03](#) regarding changes of attorney, [TMEP §604.02](#) regarding the duration of recognition as a representative, and [TBMP §§114–114.08](#) regarding representation of parties to proceedings before the Board.

602 Persons Authorized to Practice Before USPTO in Trademark Matters

37 CFR §2.17(a) Authority to practice in trademark cases.

Only an individual qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter may represent an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding before the Office in a trademark case.

37 CFR §11.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent matters.

(a) Attorneys. Any individual who is an attorney as defined in §11.1 may represent others before the Office in trademark and other non-patent matters. An attorney is not required to apply for registration or recognition to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent matters. Registration as a patent practitioner does not itself entitle an individual to practice before the Office in trademark matters.

(b) Non-lawyers. Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent matters, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark matters

under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue practice before the Office in trademark matters. Except as provided in the preceding sentence, registration as a patent agent does not itself entitle an individual to practice before the Office in trademark matters.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall file a written application for reciprocal recognition under paragraph (f) of this section and prove to the satisfaction of the OED Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and is possessed of good moral character and reputation, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark matters, provided: the patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark matters before the Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(d) Recognition of any individual under this section shall not be construed as sanctioning or authorizing the performance of any act regarded in the jurisdiction where performed as the unauthorized practice of law.

(e) No individual other than those specified in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section will be permitted to practice before the Office in trademark matters on behalf of a client. Any individual may appear in a trademark or other non-patent matter in his or her own behalf. Any individual may appear in a trademark matter for:

- (1) A firm of which he or she is a member,
- (2) A partnership of which he or she is a partner, or
- (3) A corporation or association of which he or she is an officer and which he or she is authorized to represent, if such firm, partnership, corporation, or association is a party to a trademark proceeding pending before the Office.

(f) Application for reciprocal recognition. An individual seeking reciprocal recognition under paragraph (c) of this section, in addition to providing evidence satisfying the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section, shall apply in writing to the OED Director for reciprocal recognition, and shall pay the application fee required by §1.21(a)(1)(i) of this subchapter.

An individual qualified to practice under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) may represent an applicant or registrant in trademark matters before the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(a\)](#). Under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#), only the following individuals may represent an applicant or registrant in a trademark case:

An attorney as defined in [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) (i.e., an attorney who is a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States);

A Canadian patent agent who is registered with the USPTO's Office of Enrollment and Discipline ("OED") and in good standing as a patent agent under [37 C.F.R. §11.6\(c\)](#) for the limited purpose of representing parties located in Canada;

A Canadian attorney or agent who has been granted recognition by the Director of Enrollment and Discipline ("OED Director") for the limited purpose of representing parties located in Canada, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(f\)](#); or

An individual who is not an attorney but was recognized to practice before the USPTO in trademark cases prior to January 1, 1957.

See [TMEP §602.03\(a\)](#) regarding Canadian attorneys and agents, and [TBMP §§114–114.08](#) regarding representation of parties to Board proceedings.

602.01 Attorneys Licensed to Practice in the United States

An attorney who is a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States (which includes the District of Columbia and any Commonwealth or territory of the United States) may practice before the USPTO in trademark matters. [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(a\), 11.1](#) (definitions of Attorney and State), [11.14\(a\)](#). No application for recognition to practice before the USPTO is necessary. The USPTO does not give an examination for eligibility or maintain a register of United States attorneys entitled to practice in trademark cases. An attorney meeting the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) who files a power of attorney pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(c\)](#), appears in person, or signs a document on behalf of an applicant or registrant will be accepted as the representative of the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#). A

qualified practitioner may also be recognized as the applicant's representative if the practitioner is identified as the attorney of record in the application, even when the application is signed by the applicant. A telephone call from an attorney does not satisfy the "appearance" requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#).

Only individuals, not law firms, are entitled to be recognized to represent an applicant or registrant. Generally, attorneys who have not specifically been mentioned in a power of attorney may discuss but not conclude business with the USPTO over the telephone. However, if an attorney from the same United States firm as the attorney of record claims to be authorized by the attorney of record to conduct business and approve amendments with respect to a specific application or registration, the USPTO will permit the attorney to conclude business, and will note this fact in any resulting examiner's amendment, priority action, or Office action. See [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#).

602.02 Non-Attorneys

37 CFR §2.17(f) Non-lawyers.

A non-lawyer may not act as a representative except in the limited circumstances set forth in §11.14(b) of this chapter. Before any non-lawyer who meets the requirements of §11.14(b) of this chapter may take action of any kind with respect to an application, registration or proceeding, a written authorization must be filed, signed by the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding, or by someone with legal authority to bind the applicant, registrant, or party (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership).

37 CFR §11.14(b) Non-lawyers.

Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent matters, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark matters under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue practice before the Office in trademark matters. Except as provided in the preceding sentence, registration as a patent agent does not itself entitle an individual to practice before the Office in trademark matters.

Non-attorneys are not permitted to practice except under the limited circumstances specified in [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(b\)](#), set forth above. 5 U.S.C. §§500(b), (d); [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(f\)](#), [11.14\(e\)](#).

See [TMEP §608.01](#) regarding unauthorized practice, and [TMEP §§611–611.06\(h\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed in the USPTO.

602.03 Foreign Attorneys and Agents

37 CFR §11.14(c) Foreigners.

Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall file a written application for reciprocal recognition under paragraph (f) of this section and prove to the satisfaction of the OED Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and is possessed of good moral character and reputation, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark matters, provided: the patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark matters before the Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

37 CFR §11.14 (f) Application for reciprocal recognition.

An individual seeking reciprocal recognition under paragraph (c) of this section, in addition to providing evidence satisfying the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section, shall apply in writing to the OED Director for reciprocal recognition, and shall pay the application fee required by §1.21(a)(1)(i) of this subchapter.

Generally, only an attorney as defined in [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) may represent an applicant or registrant before the USPTO. 5 U.S.C. §§500(b), and (d); [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(a\)](#), [11.14\(a\)](#), [\(e\)](#). In very limited circumstances, Canadian agents or attorneys registered or in good standing before the Canadian Intellectual Property Office

may file an application for reciprocal recognition to represent parties located in Canada. [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(e\), 11.14\(c\), \(f\)](#). See [TMEP §602.03\(a\)](#) regarding Canadian attorneys and agents.

A foreign attorney or agent may be recognized to represent parties located in the country in which the foreign attorney resides and practices, only if:

(1) He or she applies in writing to the OED Director for reciprocal recognition and pays the fee required by 37 C.F.R. §1.21(a)(1)(i);

(2) He or she proves to the satisfaction of the OED Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and is possessed of good moral character and reputation; and

(3) The patent or trademark office of that foreign country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice before the USPTO.

[37 C.F.R. §§11.14\(c\), \(f\)](#). The application for reciprocal recognition must be filed and granted prior to practicing before the USPTO in trademark matters. A foreign attorney or agent may not practice before the USPTO in trademark matters prior to being recognized by the OED Director. Practice before the USPTO in trademark matters includes preparing and prosecuting applications for trademark registration and otherwise representing a party to a proceeding before the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §11.5\(b\)\(2\)](#). The OED Director grants recognition only in the form of a written communication. A foreign attorney or agent not recognized to practice before the USPTO in trademark cases should allow adequate time to file and obtain recognition before representing a party before the USPTO.

Currently, a Canadian attorney or agent who is registered or in good standing with the Canadian Intellectual Property Office is the only foreign attorney or agent who may be recognized as meeting the above criteria. See [TMEP §602.03\(a\)](#) regarding Canadian attorneys and agents.

602.03(a) Canadian Attorneys and Agents

37 CFR §2.17(e) Canadian attorneys and agents.

(1) A Canadian patent agent who is registered and in good standing as a patent agent under §11.6(c) may represent parties located in Canada before the Office in trademark matters.

(2) A Canadian attorney or agent who is registered or in good standing with the Canadian Intellectual Property Office, but not registered as a patent agent under §11.6(c), may represent parties located in Canada if he or she has been authorized to do so by the Director of the Office of Enrollment and Discipline, pursuant to §11.14(f) of this chapter.

A Canadian attorney or agent may represent parties located in Canada only if:

(1) He or she is registered with the USPTO and in good standing as a patent agent under [37 C.F.R. §11.6\(c\)](#); or

(2) He or she files an application for and is granted recognition by the OED Director under [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(c\)](#). To be recognized under [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(c\)](#), an individual must file a written application and pay the fee required by 37 C.F.R. §1.21(a)(1)(i) prior to representing a party before the USPTO. The application must include proof that the individual meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(c\)](#), and must be addressed to the OED Director, Mail Stop OED, Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(f\)](#).

[37 C.F.R. §2.17\(e\)](#).

Once recognized by OED, a Canadian attorney or agent can only represent parties located in Canada. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(e\)\(1\)](#). Thus, he or she cannot represent a party located in the United States or in another

foreign country before the USPTO. For example, he or she cannot represent a Canadian national who resides in California and has access to a mailing address in Canada.

If a Canadian attorney or agent is designated or acts as a representative of a party in a trademark matter, the USPTO staff must verify that the attorney or agent is recognized by OED, even if the individual files a document through TEAS and checks a box indicating that he or she is an authorized Canadian attorney or agent who has been granted recognition by OED. See [TMEP §611.02\(a\)](#) regarding TEAS checkoff boxes. OED maintains a combined list of recognized Canadian trademark attorneys or agents and registered Canadian patent agents, which is available only on the USPTO's internal computer network.

After verifying that the Canadian attorney or agent is recognized by OED, the USPTO staff should enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record. If the individual has not been recognized by OED, the USPTO will treat any document filed by that individual as a document filed by an unauthorized person. See [TMEP §§611.05–611.05\(c\)](#) for information about processing these documents.

If a USPTO employee suspects that an individual who does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§11.6\(c\)](#) or [11.14\(c\)](#) is engaging in widespread unauthorized practice by representing applicants or registrants, he or she should bring the matter to the attention of the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy (“Administrator”).

602.03(b) Foreign Attorneys and Agents from Countries Other than Canada

A foreign attorney or agent who resides and practices in a foreign country other than Canada and who is not a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States may not practice before the USPTO unless he or she establishes that he or she meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#), 5 U.S.C. §§500(b), (d). Any such attorney or agent who attempts to represent a party in a trademark matter should be advised that he or she must file a written application for reciprocal recognition with OED and pay the fee required by 37 C.F.R. §1.21(a)(1)(i); that the application must be filed and granted prior to representing a party before the USPTO; and that the application must include proof that the attorney or agent is in good standing with the foreign patent or trademark office in the country in which the attorney or agent resides, that the attorney or agent is possessed of good moral character and reputation, and that the USPTO Director has recognized that the foreign patent or trademark office provides substantially reciprocal rights to United States attorneys. [37 C.F.R. §§11.14\(c\), \(f\)](#).

602.03(c) Documents Filed by Foreign Attorneys and Agents

A foreign attorney or agent who is not authorized to practice before the USPTO under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) may receive correspondence from the USPTO and transmit it to the applicant or registrant. However, a foreign attorney or agent cannot prepare an application, response, post-registration maintenance document, or other document to be filed in the USPTO, sign responses to Office actions, or authorize issuance of examiner's amendments and priority actions. Preparing a document, authorizing an amendment to an application, and submitting legal arguments in response to a requirement or refusal all constitute examples of representation of a party in a trademark matter. See [37 C.F.R. §11.5\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §608.01](#).

If a foreign attorney or agent who does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(c\)](#) is designated or acts as a representative of a party in a trademark matter, the USPTO will treat any document submitted by the attorney or agent as a document filed by an unauthorized party and follow the procedures in [TMEP §§611.05–611.05\(c\)](#).

602.03(d) Representatives of Holders of International Registrations

In the case of an application under Trademark Act §66(a), [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), or a registered extension of protection, the applicant's appointed representative as communicated from the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization ("IB") is considered the correspondence address of record only. If an individual with an address outside the United States is identified as applicant's appointed representative for purposes of correspondence, the individual will not be recognized by the USPTO as applicant's attorney or qualified practitioner without further clarification of his or her qualifications under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#). See [TMEP §609.01\(a\)](#) regarding correspondence in §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §§611–611.06\(h\)](#) regarding signature on documents filed in the USPTO.

602.03(e) Identification of Foreign Attorney in Original Application

If a new application identifies an attorney or agent with an address outside the United States (e.g., if a foreign address is set forth in the "attorney" section of a TEAS form) and the examining attorney must issue an Office action regarding any refusals and/or requirements, the Office action must include an advisory that unless the individual meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#), he or she is not authorized to practice before the USPTO in trademark matters and may not represent the applicant in the particular trademark application, and that any power of attorney to the individual is void *ab initio*. The Office action should be sent to the correspondence address of record indicated in the original application. If the identified individual can establish that he or she is a qualified attorney (i.e., a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a U.S. state) who has an address outside the United States, he or she is a qualified practitioner under [37 C.F.R. §§11.1, 11.14\(a\),\(c\)](#). If the designated attorney does not establish that he or she is a qualified practitioner, the attorney's name must be removed from the "Attorney" field in the trademark database, and any responses, voluntary amendments, express abandonments, or changes of correspondence signed by the designated attorney must be treated as improperly signed documents. See [TMEP §§602.03\(c\), 611.05–611.05\(c\)](#).

If an Office action is not necessary (i.e., the application is otherwise eligible for approval for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register), the USPTO staff must ensure that the USPTO database does not include the identified individual in the "Attorney" field. In addition, the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File indicating the attorney name has been removed. The correspondence address should remain unchanged.

See [TMEP §609.04](#) regarding correspondence with parties not domiciled in the United States.

603 Standards of Conduct

37 CFR §11.15

Refusal to recognize a practitioner. Any practitioner authorized to appear before the Office may be suspended, excluded, or reprimanded in accordance with the provisions of this Part. Any practitioner who is suspended or excluded under this Part shall not be entitled to practice before the Office in patent, trademark, or other non-patent matters while suspended or excluded.

Part 11 of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations pertains to representation of others before the USPTO.

Part 11 identifies and defines individuals entitled to practice before the USPTO, sets forth a procedure for investigations and disciplinary proceedings, and establishes rules of professional conduct and responsibility.

604 Recognition as a Representative

604.01 Three Ways To Be Recognized as a Representative

37 CFR §2.17(b)

(1) Recognition of practitioner as representative. To be recognized as a representative in a trademark case, a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter may:

- (i) File a power of attorney that meets the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section;
- (ii) Sign a document on behalf of an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding who is not already represented by a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter from a different firm; or
- (iii) Appear in person on behalf of an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding who is not already represented by a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter from a different firm.

(2) Signature as certificate of authorization to represent. When a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter appears in person or signs a document pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Office that he or she is authorized to represent the person or entity on whose behalf he or she acts. The Office may require further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity.

To be recognized as a representative, a qualified practitioner may:

- File a power of attorney signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership);
- Sign a document on behalf of an applicant or registrant who is not already represented by a qualified practitioner from a different firm; or
- Appear in person on behalf of an applicant or registrant who is not already represented by a qualified practitioner from a different firm.

[37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#). A foreign attorney or agent who has not been recognized by the OED Director pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(c\)](#) or registered as a patent agent pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.6\(c\)](#) may not be recognized as a representative.

Generally, as long as no other qualified practitioner from a different firm has been previously appointed, it is not necessary for a qualified practitioner to file a power of attorney or obtain special authorization in a trademark case. A qualified practitioner who appears in person or signs a document on behalf of an applicant or registrant will be accepted as the representative of the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)\(2\)](#). (A qualified practitioner may also be recognized as the applicant's representative if the practitioner is identified as the attorney of record in the application, even when the application is signed by the applicant.). Neither a telephone call nor an e-mail from a qualified practitioner satisfies the "appearance" requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#). However, after issuance of an Office action to a pro se applicant and prior to response, a qualified practitioner may satisfy the appearance requirement by submitting a signed document into the record stating that the practitioner represents the applicant and requesting that the Office records be updated to indicate that he or she is the attorney of record.

An individual not meeting the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#) will not be recognized as a representative, and may not sign responses or authorize amendments to an application. See [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#) regarding signature on such documents.

Once the USPTO has recognized a qualified practitioner as the representative of an applicant or registrant, the USPTO will communicate and conduct business only with that practitioner or with another qualified practitioner from the same United States firm. The USPTO will not conduct business directly with the

applicant or registrant, or with a qualified practitioner from a different firm, unless the applicant or registrant files a new power of attorney or revokes the previous power, or the previously recognized practitioner files a request to withdraw. [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(c\)\(2\), 2.18\(a\)\(7\), 2.19](#). See TMEP §§ [604.02](#) regarding duration of recognition, [605.03](#) regarding associate powers of attorney, [606](#) regarding revocation of power of attorney, and [607](#) regarding withdrawal of attorney of record.

See [TMEP §§609.01](#) and [609.02–609.02\(f\)](#) regarding changing the correspondence address, and [TBMP §§114–114.08](#) regarding representation of parties to Board proceedings.

604.02 Duration of Recognition

37 CFR §2.17(g) Duration of power of attorney.

(1) For purposes of recognition as a representative, the Office considers a power of attorney filed while an application is pending to end when the mark registers, when ownership changes, or when the application is abandoned.

(2) The Office considers a power of attorney filed after registration to end when the mark is cancelled or expired, or when ownership changes. If the power was filed in connection with an affidavit under section 8, 12(c), 15 or 71 of the Trademark Act, renewal application under section 9 of the Act, or request for amendment or correction under section 7 of the Act, the power is deemed to end upon acceptance or final rejection of the filing.

Pending Applications. For purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO considers a power of attorney filed while an application is pending to end when the mark is registered, when ownership changes, or when the application is abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(1\)](#).

Post Registration. For purposes of recognition as a representative by the Post Registration Section of the Office, the USPTO considers a power of attorney filed in connection with an affidavit under [15 U.S.C. §1058, §1062\(c\), §1065, or §1141k](#) (“affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71”), a renewal application under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#) (“§9 renewal application”), or a request for amendment or correction under [15 U.S.C. §1057](#) (“§7 request”) to end upon acceptance or final rejection of the filing. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#). Due to the length of time that may elapse between the filing of these documents (which could be 10 years or more), the USPTO will recognize a qualified practitioner who transmits one of these documents even absent a new power of attorney or revocation of a previous power.

Example 1: A qualified practitioner (Attorney A) transmits an affidavit under §8, and the USPTO issues an Office action in connection with the affidavit. If another qualified practitioner from a different firm (Attorney B) wants to respond to the Office action, Attorney B must file a new power of attorney and/or revocation of the previous power, signed by the registrant or someone with legal authority to bind the registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), before the USPTO will act on the response or correspond with Attorney B.

Example 2: A qualified practitioner (Attorney A) transmits an affidavit under §8, and the USPTO accepts the affidavit. If another qualified practitioner from a different firm (Attorney B) later files a §7 request, the USPTO will recognize and correspond with Attorney B regardless of whether a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power is filed.

Example 3: A qualified practitioner (Attorney A) transmits an affidavit under §8, and the USPTO issues an Office action in connection with the affidavit. If another qualified practitioner from a different firm (Attorney B) wants to file a §7 request before the USPTO accepts or issues a final rejection of the §8 affidavit, Attorney B must file a new power of attorney and/or revocation of the previous power, signed by the registrant or someone with legal authority to bind the registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), before the USPTO will act on the §7 request or correspond with Attorney B.

The USPTO also considers a power of attorney filed after registration to end when the registration is cancelled or expired or when ownership changes. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#). Therefore, the USPTO will not enter a request to withdraw as attorney or revocation of a power of attorney filed in connection with a cancelled or expired registration, unless it is accompanied by a petition to reinstate the registration. See [TMEP §605.04](#) regarding powers of attorney filed after registration.

Change of Ownership. For purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO considers a power of attorney filed in connection with an application or registration to end when ownership changes. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)](#). After a change in ownership has been recorded, if a new qualified practitioner appears on behalf of the new owner, the USPTO will communicate and conduct business with that practitioner even absent a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power. If the previously recognized practitioner appears on behalf of the new owner (which might occur when the new owner is a related company), the USPTO will continue to conduct business and correspond with that practitioner. The previously recognized practitioner does not have to file a new power of attorney signed by the new owner. See [TMEP §609.02\(f\)](#) regarding correspondence after recordation of a change of ownership.

Effect on Attorney and Correspondence Information in USPTO Records. In the situations discussed above, when the USPTO deems a power of attorney to end for purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO will not automatically change the attorney and correspondence address in its Trademark database, because it is possible that the previously recognized practitioner still represents the applicant or registrant and wants to continue receiving correspondence. The USPTO will continue to recognize the previously recognized practitioner if he or she appears or signs a document on behalf of the applicant or registrant. However, if a new qualified practitioner appears in person or signs a document, the Office will recognize the new qualified practitioner pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#), and correspond with him or her, without requiring a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power. See [TMEP §§609.02–609.02\(f\)](#) regarding changes of correspondence address.

These practices also apply where a qualified practitioner is recognized by appearing in person or signing or filing a document on behalf of the party whom he or she represents. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#); [TMEP §604.01](#).

Board Proceedings. See [TBMP §§114–114.08](#) regarding representation of parties to Board proceedings, and [TBMP §§117–117.02](#) regarding correspondence in Board proceedings.

604.03 Change of Attorney

Once the USPTO recognizes a qualified practitioner as the representative of an applicant or registrant, a new qualified practitioner from a different firm is not permitted to represent the applicant or registrant until: (1) the applicant or registrant revokes the previous power of attorney; (2) the applicant or registrant submits a new power of attorney naming the new qualified practitioner; or (3) the previously recognized practitioner files a request to withdraw. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#), [2.19\(b\)](#). Until such action is taken, the new qualified practitioner cannot sign responses to Office actions, authorize issuance of examiner's amendments or priority actions, expressly abandon an application, authorize a change of correspondence address, or otherwise represent the applicant or registrant.

If an applicant or registrant is already represented by a qualified practitioner, and a new qualified practitioner from a different firm wishes to take action with respect to the application or registration, the new practitioner must file a revocation of the previous power of attorney or new power of attorney naming the new qualified practitioner, signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), before the USPTO will accept filings by or correspond with the new practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#). The new practitioner may not sign the revocation of the previous power him or herself. See [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(c\)](#) and [TMEP §605.01](#) regarding requirements for power of attorney, and [TMEP §606](#) regarding revocation of power of attorney.

Absent a revocation or new power, if the new qualified practitioner signs a response, amendment, or request to change the correspondence address, the USPTO will treat this as a document filed by an unauthorized party and follow the procedures in [TMEP §§ 611.05–611.05\(c\)](#).

For purposes of recognition as a representative of an applicant or registrant, the USPTO considers a power of attorney filed while an application is pending to end with respect to a particular application when the mark is registered, when the application is abandoned, or when ownership changes. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(1\)](#).

The USPTO considers a power of attorney filed after registration to end when the registration is cancelled or expired or when ownership changes. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#). If the power is filed in connection with an affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71, a §9 renewal application, or a §7 request, the power is deemed to end upon acceptance or final rejection of the filing. *Id.* [TMEP §604.02](#). In these situations, it is not necessary to file a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power before a new qualified practitioner may take action. See [TMEP §605.04](#) regarding the processing of powers of attorney filed after registration.

See [TBMP §§114–114.08](#) regarding representation of parties to Board proceedings, and [TBMP §§117–117.02](#) regarding correspondence in Board proceedings.

605 Powers of Attorney

605.01 Requirements for Power of Attorney

37 CFR §2.17(c) Requirements for power of attorney.

A power of attorney must:

(1) Designate by name at least one practitioner meeting the requirements of §11.14 of this chapter; and

(2) Be signed by the individual applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding pending before the Office, or by someone with legal authority to bind the applicant, registrant, or party (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). In the case of joint applicants or joint registrants, all must sign. Once the applicant, registrant, or party has designated a practitioner(s) qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter, that practitioner may sign an associate power of attorney appointing another qualified practitioner(s) as an additional person(s) authorized to represent the applicant, registrant, or party. If the applicant, registrant, or party revokes the original power of attorney (§2.19(a)), the revocation discharges any associate power signed by the practitioner whose power has been revoked. If the practitioner who signed an associate power withdraws (§2.19(b)), the withdrawal discharges any associate power signed by the withdrawing practitioner upon acceptance of the request for withdrawal by the Office.

A power of attorney must: (1) designate by name at least one individual qualified practitioner; and (2) be signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(c\), 2.193\(e\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents transmitted electronically.

If a power specifies only the name of a law firm, the USPTO will treat it as a correspondence address rather than a power of attorney. See [TMEP §§609–609.04](#) regarding the correspondence address.

A qualified practitioner cannot sign an original power of attorney on behalf of his or her client. An original power of attorney, other than one associating an additional attorney with an already recognized attorney (see [TMEP §605.03](#)), must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership).

However, the filing of a power of attorney is not mandatory in a trademark case. Thus, if a power of attorney is signed by an improper person (e.g., by the named attorney) and no other qualified practitioner has been previously appointed, the USPTO generally will not require a properly signed power. If the improperly signed power of attorney is accompanied by a document that is signed by a qualified practitioner or includes the name and address of a qualified practitioner, the USPTO may recognize that qualified practitioner under [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#), separate and apart from the improperly signed power. See [TMEP §604.01](#) regarding

the three ways that a qualified practitioner may be recognized as a representative, [TMEP §609.01](#) regarding establishment of the correspondence address in a new application, and [TMEP §609.02\(a\)](#) regarding the limited situations in which the USPTO will change the correspondence address to that of a qualified practitioner absent a written request to change the correspondence address.

Example: If the original application contains the name and address of a qualified practitioner (e.g., the “Attorney” section of a TEAS application contains the name and address of an attorney from a United States firm or a Canadian attorney or agent who has been recognized by the OED Director), and the application includes a power of attorney signed by the named practitioner, the USPTO will disregard the improperly signed power. However, the USPTO will recognize and correspond with the named qualified practitioner, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#).

However, if an applicant or registrant is already represented by a qualified practitioner, and a new qualified practitioner wishes to take action with respect to the application or registration, the new qualified practitioner must file a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power, signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), before the USPTO will accept filings by or correspond with the new qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#). See [TMEP §604.03](#) regarding change of attorney, [TMEP §606](#) regarding revocation of power of attorney, and [TMEP §611.06](#) regarding persons with legal authority to bind juristic entities.

If two or more qualified practitioners are named in a power of attorney and one practitioner changes firms, any of the named practitioners can sign and submit a notice of change of correspondence address setting forth a new address, even if the new address is at a new firm. It is not necessary to submit a new power signed by the applicant or registrant when a named practitioner changes firms. See [TMEP §§609.02–609.02\(f\)](#) regarding changes of correspondence address.

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that powers of attorney be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When powers of attorney are filed through TEAS, the data is automatically entered into the USPTO’s automated records.

605.02 Power of Attorney Relating to More than One Application or Registration

37 CFR §2.17(d) Power of attorney relating to multiple applications or registrations.

(1) The owner of an application or registration may appoint a practitioner(s) qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter to represent the owner for all existing applications or registrations that have the identical owner name and attorney through TEAS.

(2) The owner of an application or registration may file a power of attorney that relates to more than one trademark application or registration, or to all existing and future applications and registrations of that owner, on paper. A person relying on such a power of attorney must:

(i) Include a copy of the previously filed power of attorney; or

(ii) Refer to the power of attorney, specifying the filing date of the previously filed power of attorney; the application serial number (if known), registration number, or inter partes proceeding number for which the original power of attorney was filed; and the name of the person who signed the power of attorney; or, if the application serial number is not known, submit a copy of the application or a copy of the mark, and specify the filing date.

Using TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>, an applicant or registrant may appoint a qualified practitioner to represent the owner for all existing applications or registrations that have the identical owner and qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(d\)\(1\)](#). A power of attorney relating to future applications cannot be filed through TEAS.

An applicant or registrant may file a power of attorney *on paper* that relates to more than one trademark application or registration, or to all existing and future applications and registrations. Someone relying on such a power of attorney must: (1) include a copy of the previously filed power of attorney; or (2) refer to

the previously filed power of attorney, specifying: the filing date of the power; the application serial number (if known), registration number, or inter partes proceeding number for which the original power of attorney was filed; and the name of the party who signed the power of attorney; or, if the application serial number is not known, submit a copy of the application or a copy of the mark, and specify the filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(d\)\(2\)](#). If the applicant or registrant meets these requirements, the USPTO will accept the power of attorney.

605.03 Associate Powers of Attorney

Once the applicant or registrant has designated a qualified practitioner, the practitioner may sign an associate power of attorney, appointing another qualified practitioner -- including one from a different law firm -- as an additional person authorized to represent the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(c\)\(2\)](#). Note, however, that appointment of an associate attorney from a different law firm does not change the correspondence address from that of the practitioner designated by the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#); see TMEP §§609, 609.01-609.02(b).

If the applicant or registrant revokes the original power of attorney, the revocation also discharges any associate power signed by the practitioner whose power has been revoked. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(c\)\(2\)](#).

If the practitioner who signed an associate power withdraws, the withdrawal discharges any associate power signed by the withdrawing practitioner upon acceptance of the request for withdrawal by the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(c\)\(2\)](#).

605.04 Power of Attorney Filed After Registration

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that powers of attorney be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When powers of attorney are filed through TEAS, the data is automatically entered into the USPTO's automated records.

When a new power of attorney is filed *on paper* after registration, the USPTO scans an image of the document into its automated records, but does not change the attorney information unless the registrant concurrently takes a separate action, such as filing an affidavit under §8.

For purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO considers a power of attorney filed while an application is pending to end with registration, when the application is abandoned, or when ownership changes. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(1\)](#). If the power is filed in connection with an affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71, a §9 renewal application, or a §7 request, the power is deemed to end upon acceptance or final rejection of the filing. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#). [TMEP §604.02](#).

See also [TMEP §1612](#) regarding powers of attorney filed after registration, and [TMEP §609.02\(e\)](#) regarding changing the correspondence address after registration.

606 Revocation of Power of Attorney

37 CFR §2.19(a) Revocation.

(1) Authority to represent an applicant, registrant or party to a proceeding before the Office may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a trademark case, upon written notification signed by the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding, or by someone with legal authority to bind the applicant, registrant, or party (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). In the case of joint applicants or joint registrants, all must sign.

(2) When a power of attorney is revoked, the Office will communicate directly with the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding, or with the new attorney or domestic representative if appropriate.

(3) A request to change the correspondence address does not revoke a power of attorney.

(4) A new power of attorney that meets the requirements of §2.17(c) will be treated as a revocation of the previous power.

Once a qualified practitioner has been recognized as the representative of an applicant or registrant, the applicant or registrant may revoke the power of attorney by filing a written revocation. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that revocations of powers of attorney be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Signature. The revocation must be personally signed by the individual applicant or registrant or by someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.19\(a\), 2.193\(e\)\(3\)](#). In-house counsel may not sign a revocation unless he or she also has legal authority to bind the juristic applicant or registrant.

In addition, the current attorney of record may not sign a revocation of power of attorney, revoking his or her own authority to represent the applicant or registrant. Instead, the attorney may sign and file a request to withdraw as attorney of record (*see* [TMEP §607](#)), or file a revocation signed by the applicant or registrant or by someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant.

A new qualified practitioner cannot sign a revocation of the previous power of attorney. A new qualified practitioner may submit a revocation and new appointment of power of attorney through TEAS by e-mailing the text form to the applicant or registrant for electronic signature from within TEAS, or by attaching a .jpg or .pdf image of a handwritten pen-and-ink revocation/appointment signed by the applicant or registrant. See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding electronic signature. A new qualified practitioner should not directly sign the TEAS revocation form.

Effect on Correspondence Address. If the applicant or registrant files a new power of attorney with the revocation of the previous power of attorney, the address in the new power of attorney becomes the correspondence address of record. If the applicant or registrant files a revocation without a new power of attorney, correspondence will be sent either: (1) directly to the applicant or registrant or to the correspondence address designated by the applicant or registrant; or (2) if the revocation is transmitted by a qualified practitioner, to the qualified practitioner who signed the cover letter or action accompanying the revocation. See [TMEP §§609.02, 609.02\(a\)](#).

New Power Treated as Revocation. If the applicant or registrant files a new power of attorney naming a new qualified practitioner as its representative, this will be treated as a revocation of any previous power of attorney, even if the applicant or registrant does not specifically revoke the previous power. [37 C.F.R. §2.19\(a\)\(4\)](#).

Request to Change Correspondence Address Does Not Revoke Power of Attorney. A written request to change the correspondence address does not revoke a power of attorney. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(a\)\(7\), 2.19\(a\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §604.03](#) regarding changes of attorney, and [TMEP §§609.02–609.02\(f\)](#) regarding changes of correspondence address.

Processing Revocations Filed After Registration. For purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO considers a power of attorney to end with registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(1\)](#). If the power is filed in connection with an affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71, a §9 renewal application, or a §7 request, the

power is deemed to end upon acceptance or final rejection of the filing. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#). [TMEP §604.02](#).

After registration, if the registrant files a paper request to revoke a power of attorney appointed before registration, the USPTO scans an image of the revocation into its automated records but does not update the attorney information unless the registrant concurrently takes a separate action such as filing an affidavit under §8. [TMEP §1612](#). When a request to revoke a power of attorney is filed through TEAS after registration, the data is automatically entered into the USPTO's records. [TMEP §§ 605.04, 1612](#).

Board Proceedings. See [TBMP §116.01](#) regarding revocation of authority to represent parties to Board proceedings.

607 Withdrawal of Attorney of Record

Previously set forth in 37 C.F.R. §10.40, the requirements for withdrawing as an attorney are now set forth in [37 C.F.R. §11.116](#). To withdraw from representation of another in trademark matters, the attorney must also comply with the permission and notification requirements set forth in Trademark Rule 2.19(b), [37 C.F.R. §2.19\(b\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §11.116\(c\)](#) (stating that the “practitioner must comply with applicable law requiring notice to or permission of a tribunal when terminating a representation”); see also [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) (defining “tribunal” to include “the Office”).

May Not Prejudice Applicant or Registrant. A qualified practitioner may withdraw from representing an applicant or registrant, but may not withdraw in a way that would prejudice the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §11.116\(b\)](#). *In re Legendary, Inc.*, 26 USPQ2d 1478 (Comm’r Pats. 1992) (denying the attorney’s request to withdraw where the request was filed on the last day of the period for response to an Office action and attorney stated neither that the applicant was given due notice of the attorney’s withdrawal from employment, nor that the attorney had delivered all documents and property in his file concerning the prosecution of the application to the applicant). See [37 C.F.R. §11.116](#) regarding mandatory and permissive withdrawal from representation by an attorney.

Form. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that all requests to withdraw be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. The TEAS form can be used to request withdrawal on any application or registration that is currently active. For registrations, the form requires entry of the original application serial number rather than the registration number. If filed on paper, the request should be titled “Request for Permission to Withdraw as Attorney of Record.”

Requirements for Request. A request to withdraw must include the following:

- (1) A statement of the reason(s) for the request to withdraw;
- (2) The application serial number or registration number; and
- (3) Either of the following;
 - A statement that the practitioner has given due notice to the client that the practitioner is withdrawing from employment and will be filing the necessary documents with the USPTO; that the client was given notice of the withdrawal, at least two months before the expiration of the response period, if applicable; that the practitioner has delivered to the client all documents and property in the practitioner’s file concerning the application or registration to which the client is entitled; and that the practitioner has notified the client of any responses or other filings that may be due, and of

the deadline for the response or filing (*see* [37 C.F.R. §11.116\(d\)](#)). *In re Slack*, 54 USPQ2d 1504 (Comm'r Pats. 2000); or

- If there is more than one qualified practitioner of record, a statement that representation by co-counsel is ongoing.

[37 C.F.R. §2.19\(b\)](#). The request should also include the present mailing address of the practitioner who is withdrawing and the present mailing address of the applicant or registrant.

The requirement for a statement that the client was given notice of the withdrawal at least two months before the expiration of any outstanding response period does not apply where the practitioner states that his or her representation was terminated by the applicant/registrant when less than two months remained in the response period.

The request to withdraw should be filed soon after the practitioner notifies the applicant or registrant of his or her intent to withdraw. [37 C.F.R. §2.19\(b\)](#).

These requirements apply to all requests to withdraw, whether withdrawal is mandatory or permissive. They also apply where a qualified practitioner was recognized by appearing in person or by filing a document on behalf of the party whom he or she represents. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#); [TMEP §604.01](#).

Processing TEAS Requests. Requests to withdraw filed through TEAS are processed electronically, and generally are automatically granted if they meet the requirements listed above.

Processing Paper Requests. For paper filings, a request for permission to withdraw filed before registration will be handled by the appropriate managing attorney, or, if a notice of allowance has issued and the application is awaiting the filing of a statement of use, by the supervisor of the ITU/Divisional Unit. After registration, a paper request for permission to withdraw will be handled by the supervisor of the Post Registration Section.

The managing attorney or supervisor will approve or deny the paper request, notify the applicant or registrant and the practitioner of the approval or denial of the request, and place a copy of this notification in the record.

If the request is approved, the managing attorney or supervisor should ensure that the correspondence address is changed in the USPTO's Trademark database. It is the responsibility of the managing attorneys or supervisors to establish procedures that permit withdrawal requests to be given priority and acted on promptly.

For paper filings, if the practitioner who seeks to withdraw is also the domestic representative, the managing attorney or supervisor should inquire as to whether the practitioner intends to withdraw as domestic representative. This inquiry should be made by telephone or e-mail, if possible. If the practitioner withdraws as domestic representative, the managing attorney or supervisor must ensure that the "Domestic Representative" field in the USPTO's Trademark database is updated.

Requests Filed After Registration. For purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO considers a power of attorney to end with registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(1\)](#). If the power is filed in connection with an affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71, a §9 renewal application, or a §7 request, the power is deemed to end upon acceptance or final rejection of the filing. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#). [TMEP §604.02](#).

After registration, if a practitioner appointed before registration files a *paper* request for permission to withdraw, the USPTO scans an image of the request into its Trademark database but does not update the

attorney information unless the registrant concurrently takes a separate action such as filing an affidavit under §8. [TMEP §1612](#). When a proper request to withdraw is filed through TEAS after registration, the request is automatically granted, and the data is automatically entered into the USPTO's records. [TMEP §§ 605.04, 1612](#).

Requests Filed in Abandoned Application. The USPTO will not process a request for permission to withdraw in an abandoned application. When a qualified practitioner files a request to withdraw in an abandoned application, the USPTO scans an image of the request into TICRS and TSDR but does not update the attorney information in its Trademark database. See [TMEP §1612](#) regarding withdrawal after registration.

Board Proceedings. See [TBMP §§116.02–116.05](#) regarding withdrawal as the representative of a party to a Board proceeding.

608 Unauthorized Practice

608.01 Actions by Unauthorized Persons Not Permitted

37 CFR §11.5(b)(2) Practice before the Office in trademark matters.

Practice before the Office in trademark matters includes, but is not limited to, consulting with or giving advice to a client in contemplation of filing a trademark application or other document with the Office; preparing and prosecuting an application for trademark registration; preparing an amendment which may require written argument to establish the registrability of the mark; and conducting an opposition, cancellation, or concurrent use proceeding; or conducting an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

An individual who is not authorized under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) to practice before the USPTO in trademark cases ([TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#)) is not permitted to represent a party in the prosecution of a trademark application, in the maintenance of a registration, or in a proceeding before the USPTO. 5 U.S.C. §§500(b), (d); [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(a\), 11.14\(a\), \(e\)](#).

An individual who does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) cannot: prepare an application, response, post-registration maintenance document, or other document to be filed in the USPTO; sign amendments, responses to Office actions, petitions to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), requests to change the correspondence address, or letters of express abandonment; authorize issuance of examiner's amendments and priority actions; or otherwise represent an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding in the USPTO.

See [TMEP §§611.03–611.03\(i\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed in the USPTO. Presenting an amendment to an application and submitting legal arguments in response to a refusal are examples of representation of the applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §11.5\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#). However, a non-practitioner employee of a qualified practitioner may work under the supervision of the practitioner to prepare documents for review and signature by and assist the practitioner in trademark matters before the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §11.5\(b\)](#).

When an applicant or registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the USPTO encourages the practice of direct communication with the appointed practitioner. Although paralegals and legal assistants may relay information between the examining attorney and the appointed practitioner, they are not authorized to conduct business before the USPTO. For example, paralegals and legal assistants cannot authorize issuance of examiner's amendments or priority actions, even if only conveying the appointed practitioner's approval by indicating that the appointed practitioner has approved the amendment or action.

Once the USPTO recognizes a qualified practitioner as representing an applicant or registrant, a new qualified practitioner from a different firm is not permitted to represent the applicant or registrant until the applicant

or registrant revokes the power of attorney of the previously recognized practitioner, or the previously recognized practitioner withdraws. [TMEP §604.03](#).

An individual who is not authorized under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) may transmit and receive correspondence. Such an individual may also sign a verification on behalf of an applicant or registrant, if he or she meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (e.g., has firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant or registrant (*see* [TMEP §§611.03\(a\)](#), [804.04](#))).

Any individual, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, who presents a document to the USPTO (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating the document) is subject to [37 C.F.R. §11.18\(b\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(f\)](#); *see* [TMEP §611.01\(a\)](#).

If a USPTO employee suspects that an individual who does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) is engaging in widespread unauthorized practice by representing applicants or registrants, he or she should bring the matter to the attention of the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

See [TMEP §§611–611.06\(h\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed in the USPTO.

608.02 Individuals Excluded, Suspended, or Unauthorized to Practice Before the USPTO

Occasionally, the Director of the USPTO suspends or excludes a particular individual from practice before the USPTO. [35 U.S.C. §32](#); [37 C.F.R. §11.56](#). Notice of the suspension or exclusion is published in the *Official Gazette* and the decision is posted in the FOIA Reading Room <http://des.uspto.gov/Foia/OEDReadingRoom.jsp>. A suspended or excluded individual is not a qualified practitioner and may not practice before the USPTO. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(a\)](#), [11.14](#), [11.58](#); [TMEP §602](#).

In addition, the USPTO may discover that a person who does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) is engaged in the deliberate or widespread unauthorized practice of representing applicants and registrants before the USPTO. In these cases, the Commissioner for Trademarks may exclude the party from participating as a signatory, correspondent, or domestic representative on behalf of others in any trademark matters before the USPTO. *See* [35 U.S.C. §§2, 3\(b\)\(2\)\(A\)](#), [32](#).

When an individual has been suspended or excluded from practice before the USPTO, the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure (“Administrator”) will notify the USPTO staff accordingly. In addition, as appropriate, the USPTO may notify the affected applicants and registrants that:

- (1) The individual is not entitled to practice before the USPTO in trademark matters, and, therefore, may not represent the applicant or registrant;
- (2) Any power of attorney is void *ab initio*;
- (3) The individual may not sign responses to Office actions, authorize examiner’s amendments or priority actions, conduct interviews with USPTO employees or otherwise represent an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding before the Office; and
- (4) All correspondence concerning the application or registration will be sent to the domestic representative if appropriate, or, alternatively, to the applicant or registrant at its address of record.

The USPTO will change the correspondence address to that of the applicant, registrant, or domestic representative, as appropriate.

Generally, if an Office action was sent to the correspondence address of record before the relevant party's suspension or exclusion and the action remains outstanding, the USPTO will not send the applicant or registrant a supplemental action restating the refusals or requirements. See [TMEP §717.02](#) regarding non-receipt of Office actions.

If the examining attorney or Post Registration staff receives a response to an Office action signed by an excluded or suspended practitioner, or a person who appears to be engaged in deliberate or widespread unauthorized practice of law, he or she must prepare a notice of incomplete response, addressed to the applicant or registrant, granting the applicant or registrant 30 days, or to the end of the response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.05 et seq.](#), [712.03](#), and [718.03\(b\)](#) for further information.

USPTO employees must also notify the Administrator of the receipt of a document signed by such a person.

609 Correspondence, with Whom Held

37 CFR §2.18 Correspondence, with whom held.

(a) Establishing the correspondence address. (1) If a written power of attorney that meets the requirements of §2.17 is filed, the Office will send correspondence to the practitioner designated in the power.

(2) If a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter transmits a document(s) on behalf of an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding who is not already represented by another qualified practitioner from a different firm, the Office will send correspondence to the practitioner transmitting the documents.

(3) If an application, registration or proceeding is not being prosecuted by a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter and the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding designates a correspondence address in writing, the Office will send correspondence to the designated address if appropriate.

(4) If an application, registration or proceeding is not being prosecuted by a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter and the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding has not designated a correspondence address in writing, but a domestic representative has been appointed, the Office will send correspondence to the domestic representative if appropriate.

(5) If the application, registration or proceeding is not being prosecuted by a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter, the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding has not designated a correspondence address, and no domestic representative has been appointed, the Office will send correspondence directly to the applicant, registrant, or party to the proceeding.

(6) The Office will send correspondence to only one address in an ex parte matter.

(7) Once the Office has recognized a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter as the representative of an applicant or registrant, the Office will communicate and conduct business only with that practitioner, or with another qualified practitioner from the same firm. The Office will not conduct business directly with the applicant or registrant, or with another practitioner from a different firm, unless the applicant or registrant files a revocation of the power of attorney under §2.19(a), and/or a new power of attorney that meets the requirements of §2.17(c). A written request to change the correspondence address does not revoke a power of attorney.

(b) Changing the correspondence address. (1) If a physical or e-mail correspondence address changes, the applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding must file a written request to change the correspondence address. The request should be promptly filed.

(2) A request to change the correspondence address must be made in writing, signed by the applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant, registrant, or party (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with §2.193(e)(9).

(3) If an applicant or registrant files a new power of attorney that meets the requirements of §2.17(c), the Office will change the correspondence address to that of the practitioner named in the power.

(4) If a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter transmits a document(s) on behalf of an applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding who is not already represented by another qualified practitioner, the Office will construe this as including a request to change the correspondence address to that of the practitioner, and will send correspondence to the practitioner.

(c) Post registration filings under sections 7, 8, 9, 12(c), 15, and 71. (1) Even if there is no new power of attorney or written request to change the correspondence address, the Office will change the correspondence address upon the examination of an affidavit under section 8, 12(c), 15 or 71 of the Trademark Act, renewal application under section 9 of the Act, or request for amendment or correction under section 7 of the Act. If a practitioner qualified under §11.14 of this chapter transmits the affidavit,

renewal application, or section 7 request, the Office will send correspondence to the practitioner. If the owner of the registration is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the Office will send correspondence directly to the owner, or to the domestic representative if appropriate, in accordance with paragraph (a).

(2) Once the Office establishes a correspondence address upon examination of an affidavit, renewal application, or section 7 request, a written request to change the address in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (b)(2) of this section is required to change the address during the pendency of that filing.

See TBMP §§117–117.08 for information about correspondence in Board proceedings.

609.01 Establishing the Correspondence Address

When a trademark application is filed, the USPTO enters into its Trademark database an address (consisting of a name, street address or post office box, city, state and postal code, foreign country (if applicable), and an e-mail address if provided) where correspondence from the USPTO will be sent. This often differs from the applicant's address.

The USPTO may send official communications concerning an application by e-mail only if the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner authorizes e-mail communications. See [TMEP §304.03](#).

The USPTO uses the following guidelines in entering the correspondence address in a new application:

- If the application is transmitted by a qualified practitioner, includes a power of attorney designating a qualified practitioner, or includes the name and address of a qualified practitioner, the USPTO will send correspondence to the practitioner;
- If an application is not being prosecuted by a qualified practitioner, but the applicant designates in writing a correspondence address other than its own address, the USPTO will send correspondence to that address if appropriate;
- If an application is not being prosecuted by a qualified practitioner and the applicant has not designated a correspondence address, but a domestic representative has been appointed, the USPTO will send correspondence to the domestic representative if appropriate; or
- If the application is not being prosecuted by a qualified practitioner, no domestic representative has been appointed, and the applicant has not designated a different address for correspondence, the USPTO will send correspondence directly to the applicant at its address of record.

[37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(a\)–2.18\(a\)\(5\)](#).

The USPTO uses these same guidelines to reestablish the correspondence address when a registrant files an affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71 of the Trademark Act, a §9 renewal application, or a §7 request. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(c\)–2.18\(c\)\(2\)](#). The USPTO will update its Trademark database to indicate the name of the qualified practitioner who filed the affidavit, renewal application, or §7 request. Due to the length of time that may elapse between the filing of these documents (which could be ten years or more), the USPTO will recognize a qualified practitioner who transmits one of these documents even absent a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power. See [TMEP §604.02](#) regarding the duration of recognition as a representative.

The USPTO will not undertake double correspondence with the applicant or registrant and the applicant's or registrant's qualified practitioner, or with more than one qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(6\)](#). However, if the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner authorizes the USPTO to send official communications by e-mail, the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner may designate one primary

e-mail address and up to four secondary e-mail addresses for duplicate courtesy copies of the correspondence. See TMEP §403 regarding treatment of outgoing e-mail correspondence that is returned as undeliverable.

If an application or other document is signed by a qualified practitioner, but the submission does not contain a separate address for that practitioner, the USPTO will correspond with the qualified practitioner in care of the correspondence address of record and direct such correspondence to the practitioner's attention. If an Office action is required, the USPTO will ask the practitioner to either specify his or her address for correspondence or affirmatively state that the USPTO should continue to address correspondence to his or her attention in care of the previously submitted correspondence address. If the practitioner does not respond to the request, the USPTO will continue to send correspondence to the attention of the practitioner at the correspondence address of record.

See [TBMP §§117–117.08](#) for information about correspondence in Board proceedings, [TMEP §609.01\(a\)](#) regarding correspondence in §66(a) applications, [TMEP §609.02–609.02\(f\)](#) for information about changing the correspondence address, and [TMEP §609.04](#) regarding correspondence with parties who are not domiciled in the United States.

609.01(a) Correspondence in §66(a) Applications

The USPTO will send the first Office action in an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act to the IB. The IB will send it to the applicant. The USPTO will send subsequent Office actions directly to the applicant, at the correspondence address set forth in the request for extension of protection to the United States, or to any correspondence address provided in a properly signed request to change the correspondence address. See [TMEP §1904.02\(h\)](#) for further information about Office actions in §66(a) applications.

The USPTO will accept a properly signed notice of change of the correspondence address in a §66(a) application or a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States, and will send correspondence to the new address. However, this will not change the representative designated in the international registration, to which the IB sends correspondence. A request to record a change of the name or address of the representative designated in the international registration must be filed with the IB; it cannot be filed through the USPTO. Forms for changing the name or address of the designated representative are available on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/forms>.

See [TMEP §§1906.01–1906.01\(i\)](#) regarding requests to record changes with the IB, and [TMEP §§602.03–602.03\(e\)](#) regarding foreign attorneys.

609.02 Changing the Correspondence Address

Once the correspondence address is established, the USPTO will generally send correspondence to that address until a written request to change the address is submitted, signed by the practitioner whom the USPTO has recognized, or, if the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(b\)\(2\)](#) and [2.193\(e\)\(9\)–2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(ii\)](#).

The mere transmittal of a response to an Office action bearing a new address does not effect a change in a correspondence address, except when a new owner takes an action in an application or registration (e.g., files a response to an Office action or statement of use) after recordation of a change of ownership, as discussed in [TMEP §609.02\(f\)](#).

The USPTO will not undertake double correspondence with the applicant or registrant and the applicant's or registrant's qualified practitioner, or with more than one qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(6\)](#). However, if the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner authorizes the USPTO to send official communications by e-mail, the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner may designate one primary e-mail address and up to four secondary e-mail addresses for duplicate courtesy copies of the correspondence. See [TMEP §403](#) regarding treatment of outgoing e-mail correspondence that is returned as undeliverable.

A written request to change the correspondence address does not revoke a power of attorney. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#) and [2.19\(a\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §606](#) regarding revocation.

See also [TBMP §§117–117.08](#) for information about correspondence in Board proceedings.

609.02(a) Request to Change Correspondence Address Presumed

The USPTO will construe the following as a written request to change the correspondence address:

- (1) If a qualified practitioner transmits documents on behalf of an applicant or registrant who is not already represented by another qualified practitioner from a different firm, the USPTO will construe this as including a request to change the correspondence address to that of the practitioner (however, the filing of an “associate power of attorney” or similar document does not change the correspondence address); or
- (2) If an applicant or registrant files a properly signed power of attorney (*see* [TMEP §605.01](#)) designating a qualified practitioner, the USPTO will change the correspondence address to that of the practitioner named in the power, even if the applicant or registrant does not file a separate request to change the address.

[37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(b\)\(3\)](#) and [\(4\)](#). In these two situations, the USPTO will change the correspondence address to the address of the new qualified practitioner. In all other situations, a written request to change the correspondence address, signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or the qualified practitioner of record, is required. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(b\)\(2\)](#) and [2.193\(e\)\(9\)–2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §609.02\(b\)](#) regarding the requirements for a written request to change the correspondence address.

See also [TBMP §§117–117.08](#) for information about correspondence in Board proceedings.

609.02(b) Requirements for Request to Change Correspondence Address

A request to change the correspondence address must be in writing. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(b\)\(2\)](#). Once the USPTO recognizes a qualified practitioner as the representative of an applicant or registrant, only that practitioner or another qualified practitioner from the same United States firm may sign a request to change the address, unless the applicant or registrant files a revocation of the previous power and/or a new power of attorney, or the previously recognized practitioner files a request to withdraw. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(3\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(i\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#).

If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the request must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(ii\)](#) and [11.14\(e\)](#); [TMEP §611.02](#).

A request to change the correspondence address cannot be entered by examiner's amendment. See [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(b\)\(2\)](#).

To expedite processing, notices of change of correspondence address (including changes of e-mail correspondence address) should be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov/teas/e-TEAS/index.html>.

The TEAS form can be used to change the correspondence address on any application or registration that is currently active. When a notice is filed through TEAS, the data from the form is inputted directly into the USPTO's Trademark database.

If two or more qualified practitioners are named in a power, any of the named practitioners can sign and submit a notice of change of correspondence address setting forth a new address, even if the new address is at a new firm. See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(i\)](#). It is not necessary to submit a new power signed by the applicant or registrant when a named practitioner(s) changes firms.

See [TBMP §§117–117.08](#) for information about correspondence in Board proceedings.

609.02(c) Processing Requests to Change the Correspondence Address Before Registration

Once the correspondence address is established for a particular application, the USPTO will generally not change it unless there is a written request to do so, signed by the applicant or the qualified practitioner of record. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(a\)\(7\)](#) and [\(b\)\(2\)](#). The mere transmittal of a response to an Office action bearing a new address for an applicant or an applicant's qualified practitioner does not effect a change in a correspondence address. See [TMEP §609.02\(b\)](#) for further information about the requirements for a written request to change the correspondence address, and [TMEP §609.02\(a\)](#) for discussion of situations in which a request to change the correspondence address is presumed.

When the request is filed through TEAS, the data from the form is inputted directly into the USPTO's Trademark database. When a request to change the correspondence address is filed *on paper*, the USPTO manually enters the new correspondence address into its Trademark database and places the request in the application record, but does not send a confirmation or other acknowledgment of the request to change the correspondence address. The applicant may check the TSDR database at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov> to determine whether the change of address has been entered into the USPTO's Trademark database.

The USPTO will not process a request to change the correspondence address in an abandoned application, unless submitted in conjunction with a petition to revive or request for reinstatement. When an applicant files a request to change the correspondence address in an abandoned application, the USPTO simply places the request in the record.

609.02(d) Changing the Correspondence Address in Multiple Applications or Registrations

The TEAS change of correspondence address form can be used to change the correspondence address for more than one application or registration. An applicant or registrant may submit up to 300 application serial numbers at one time. For registered marks, the TEAS form requires entry of the original application serial number rather than the registration number. Requests to change the address for more than 300 applications/registrations cannot be submitted in a single TEAS form.

Global address updates (i.e., requests to change an address in every application or registration in which it appears) will not be accepted.

609.02(e) Changing the Correspondence Address After Registration

As noted in [TMEP §609.01](#), the USPTO reestablishes the correspondence address upon the examination of an affidavit under §8, §12(c), §15, or §71 of the Trademark Act, a §9 renewal application, or a §7 request, even if there is no new power of attorney or request to change the correspondence address. The USPTO will update its Trademark database to indicate the name of the qualified practitioner who filed the affidavit, renewal application, or §7 request, and update the correspondence address to that of the qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(g\)\(2\)](#) and [2.18\(c\)–2.18\(c\)\(2\)](#). If the registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the USPTO will update its Trademark database to indicate the registrant's address as shown in the affidavit, renewal application, or §7 request as the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §604.02](#) regarding the duration of recognition as a representative.

Once the USPTO establishes a correspondence address upon examination of an affidavit, renewal application, or §7 request, a written request to change the address is required to effect a change of address during the pendency of that filing. [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(b\)\(2\)](#) and [\(c\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §604.02](#). See [TMEP §609.02\(b\)](#) regarding the requirements for a written request to change the correspondence address.

Owners of registrations are encouraged to promptly notify the USPTO of any changes of address. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(b\)\(1\)](#). To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that the notice of change of address be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. The TEAS form can be used to change the correspondence address on any registration that is currently active, but requires submission of the original application serial number rather than the registration number. When the notice is filed through TEAS, the data from the form is inputted directly into the USPTO's Trademark database.

The USPTO will not process a request to change the correspondence address in a cancelled or expired registration, unless submitted in conjunction with a petition or request for reinstatement of the registration.

When a registrant files a request to change the correspondence address in a cancelled or expired registration, the USPTO simply places the request in the record.

See [TBMP §§117–117.08](#) for information about correspondence in Board proceedings and [TMEP §604.03](#) regarding change of attorney.

609.02(f) Correspondence After Recordation of Change of Ownership

For purposes of recognition as a representative, the USPTO considers a power of attorney to end when ownership changes. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(g\)\(1\)](#). [TMEP §604.02](#).

Recordation of an assignment (or other document changing title) with the Assignment Services Branch does not automatically update the correspondence address in the USPTO's Trademark database. See [TMEP §503.01\(b\)](#). To ensure that the Trademark database is updated to reflect the correct correspondence address, new owners should file a separate written request with the Trademark Operation to change the address, preferably through TEAS.

If the new owner does not file a separate written request with the Trademark Operation to change the correspondence address, but instead takes an action in connection with an application or registration by filing a properly signed communication (e.g., a response to an Office action or statement of use) bearing a

new correspondence address, the USPTO may update its Trademark database to reflect the address of the new owner or the new owner's qualified practitioner even if the new owner does not specifically request a change of the correspondence address. In this situation, the USPTO will reestablish the correspondence address, using the guidelines set forth in [TMEP §609.01](#). If the new owner is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the correspondence address will be changed to reflect the address of the applicant or registrant, as set forth in the written communication.

If a new qualified practitioner appears in person or signs a document on behalf of the new owner, the USPTO will recognize the new practitioner even absent a new power of attorney or revocation of the previous power, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §604.02](#). However, if the previously recognized qualified practitioner appears on behalf of the new owner (which might occur when the new owner is a related company), the USPTO will continue to conduct business and correspond with that practitioner. The previously recognized practitioner does not have to file a new power of attorney signed by the new owner.

See also [TBMP §§117–117.08](#) regarding correspondence in Board proceedings and [TMEP §§505–505.02](#) regarding requests to update ownership information after recordation of a change of ownership.

609.03 Applicant Has Duty to Maintain Current and Accurate Correspondence Address

The owner of an application or registration has a duty to maintain a current and accurate correspondence address. If the correspondence address changes, the USPTO must be promptly notified in writing, preferably through TEAS. See [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(b\)\(1\)](#). This also applies to e-mail addresses, if the applicant or registrant has authorized the USPTO to send correspondence by e-mail (see [TMEP §304.03](#)).

609.04 Correspondence with Parties Not Domiciled in the United States

If an applicant or registrant has not clearly stated a preferred correspondence address, the USPTO will process correspondence as follows:

- If an applicant or registrant has appointed a qualified practitioner (see [TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#)), the USPTO will send correspondence to that practitioner.
- If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, and the applicant or registrant has appointed a domestic representative, the USPTO will send correspondence to the domestic representative if appropriate, unless the applicant or registrant designates in writing another correspondence address. However, the domestic representative is not authorized to prosecute an application or represent a party in a proceeding before the USPTO, unless the domestic representative is a qualified practitioner who has been recognized by the USPTO as the representative of the applicant or registrant. See [TMEP §610](#) regarding domestic representatives.
- If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner (see [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#)), and the applicant or registrant does not designate a domestic representative, the USPTO will send correspondence directly to the applicant or registrant at its foreign address, unless the applicant or registrant designates in writing another correspondence address. See [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(a\)\(5\)](#).

See [TMEP §609.01\(a\)](#) regarding correspondence in §66(a) applications.

610 Designation of Domestic Representative by Parties Not Domiciled in the United States

37 CFR §2.24 Designation and revocation of domestic representative by foreign applicant.

(a)(1) If an applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the applicant may designate a domestic representative (i.e., a person residing in the United States on whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark may be served) by either:

(i) Setting forth the name and address of the domestic representative in the initial application; or

(ii) Filing a separate designation setting forth the name and address of the domestic representative, signed by the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter.

(2) If the applicant does not file a document designating the name and address of a person residing in the United States on whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark may be served, or if the last person designated cannot be found at the address given in the designation, then notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark may be served on the Director.

(3) The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to represent the applicant unless qualified under §11.14 of this chapter.

(b) A request to change or revoke a designation of domestic representative must be signed by the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter.

37 CFR §2.193(e)(8) Designations and revocations of domestic representative.

A designation or revocation of a domestic representative must be signed by the applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter. In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign.

Designation of Domestic Representative Encouraged. An applicant, registrant, or party to a proceeding before the USPTO who is not domiciled in the United States may file a document designating the name and address of a domestic representative on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(e\), 1058\(f\), 1059\(c\), 1060\(b\), and 1141h\(d\)](#). The USPTO encourages parties who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives, but it is not mandatory. If the applicant, registrant, or party does not designate a domestic representative, the USPTO will not require a designation.

May be Natural or Juristic Person. The person designated as a domestic representative may be a natural person or a juristic person as defined in [15 U.S.C. §1127](#).

Not the Same as Power of Attorney. The designation of a domestic representative is not the same as a power of attorney. The designation serves a different purpose, namely, to provide a contact and address for service of process. The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to practice before the USPTO (e.g., to prepare or prosecute the application, or represent a party in a proceeding before the USPTO). [37 C.F.R. §§2.24\(a\)\(3\)](#) and [11.5\(b\)\(2\)](#). Similarly, a power of attorney does not serve as a designation of a domestic representative, unless the power of attorney specifically states that the attorney is also the domestic representative on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark.

Requirements. A designation of domestic representative must include the name and address of the person designated and a clear statement that the party intends to designate this person as a domestic representative upon whom notices or process affecting the mark may be served. [37 C.F.R. §2.24\(a\)\(1\)](#).

Signature. The designation must be in writing. If set forth in the initial application, a designation of domestic representative may be signed by a person properly authorized to sign the application on behalf of applicant. A person who is properly authorized to sign an application is:

(1) A person with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership);

(2) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant or party; or

(3) An attorney as defined in [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the applicant or party.

[37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\)–2.193\(e\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §804.04](#).

If filed apart from the initial application, the designation must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. In the case of joint applicants or registrants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.24\(b\)](#) and [2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#).

Duration. An appointment of domestic representative remains in effect unless specifically revoked or supplanted by appointment of a new domestic representative.

Revocation. An applicant or registrant may revoke a designation of domestic representative. A revocation must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant, or a qualified practitioner. In the case of joint applicants or registrants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.24\(b\)](#) and [2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#).

Withdrawal. A domestic representative may withdraw, in a written document signed by an individual domestic representative, or by someone legally authorized to bind a juristic domestic representative.

Form. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that designations and revocations of domestic representative be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

See [TMEP §609.04](#) regarding correspondence with parties who are not domiciled in the United States.

611 Signature on Correspondence Filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office

611.01 Signature and Certificate

611.01(a) Signature as Certificate

37 CFR §2.193(f) Signature as certification.

The presentation to the Office (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) of any document by any person, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, constitutes a certification under §11.18(b) of this chapter. Violations of §11.18(b) of this chapter may jeopardize the validity of the application or registration, and may result in the imposition of sanctions under §11.18(c) of this chapter. Any practitioner violating §11.18(b) of this chapter may also be subject to disciplinary action. See §§10.23(c)(15) [old rule] and 11.18(d) of this chapter.

37 CFR §11.18 Signature and certificate for correspondence filed in the Office.

(a) For all documents filed in the Office in patent, trademark, and other non-patent matters, and all documents filed with a hearing officer in a disciplinary proceeding, except for correspondence that is required to be signed by the applicant or party, each piece of correspondence filed by a practitioner in the Office must bear a signature, personally signed or inserted by such practitioner, in compliance with §1.4(d)(1), §1.4(d)(2), or §2.193(a) of this chapter.

(b) By presenting to the Office or hearing officer in a disciplinary proceeding (whether by signing, filing, submitting, or later advocating) any paper, the party presenting such paper, whether a practitioner or non-practitioner, is certifying that—

(1) All statements made therein of the party's own knowledge are true, all statements made therein on information and belief are believed to be true, and all statements made therein are made with the knowledge that whoever, in any matter within the jurisdiction of the Office, knowingly and willfully falsifies, conceals, or covers up by any trick, scheme, or device a material fact, or knowingly and willfully makes any false, fictitious, or fraudulent statements or representations, or knowingly and willfully makes or uses any false writing or document knowing the same to contain any false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement or entry, shall be subject to the penalties set forth under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and any other applicable criminal statute, and violations of the provisions of this section may jeopardize the probative value of the paper; and

(2) To the best of the party's knowledge, information and belief, formed after an inquiry reasonable under the circumstances,

(i) The paper is not being presented for any improper purpose, such as to harass someone or to cause unnecessary delay or needless increase in the cost of any proceeding before the Office;

(ii) The other legal contentions therein are warranted by existing law or by a nonfrivolous argument for the extension, modification, or reversal of existing law or the establishment of new law;

(iii) The allegations and other factual contentions have evidentiary support or, if specifically so identified, are likely to have evidentiary support after a reasonable opportunity for further investigation or discovery; and

(iv) The denials of factual contentions are warranted on the evidence, or if specifically so identified, are reasonably based on a lack of information or belief.

(c) Violations of any of paragraphs (b)(2)(i) through (iv) of this section are, after notice and reasonable opportunity to respond, subject to such sanctions or actions as deemed appropriate by the USPTO Director, which may include, but are not limited to, any combination of—

(1) Striking the offending paper;

(2) Referring a practitioner's conduct to the Director of Enrollment and Discipline for appropriate action;

(3) Precluding a party or practitioner from submitting a paper, or presenting or contesting an issue;

(4) Affecting the weight given to the offending paper; or

(5) Terminating the proceedings in the Office.

(d) Any practitioner violating the provisions of this section may also be subject to disciplinary action.

611.01(b) Requirements for Signature

All correspondence that requires a signature must bear either a handwritten signature personally signed in permanent ink by the person named as the signatory, or an "electronic signature" that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#), personally entered by the signatory. The USPTO will accept a signature that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#) on all correspondence, whether filed on paper, by fax, or through TEAS or the Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals ("ESTTA"). [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding the signature of documents filed electronically.

All documents must be personally signed. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(a\)\(1\)](#) and [\(c\)\(1\)](#). Another person (e.g., paralegal, legal assistant, secretary) may not sign the name of an attorney or other authorized signatory. See *In re Dermahose Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1793 (TTAB 2007); *In re Cowan*, 18 USPQ2d 1407 (Comm'r Pats. 1990).

The name of the person who signs a document must be set forth in printed or typed form immediately below or adjacent to the signature, or identified elsewhere in the filing (e.g., in a cover letter or other document that accompanies the filing). [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(d\)](#). If the signatory's name is not set forth in a document, the USPTO may require that it be stated for the record. This information can be entered through a Note to the File in the record.

Documents must be signed by a proper party. See TMEP §§ [611.02](#) and [611.03–611.03\(i\)](#) for further information.

See [TBMP §106.02](#) regarding signature of documents filed in Board proceedings, and [TBMP §106.03](#) regarding the form of submissions in Board proceedings.

611.01(c) Signature of Documents Filed Electronically

37 CFR §2.193 Trademark correspondence and signature requirements. (Extract)

...

(c) Requirements for electronic signature. A person signing a document electronically must:

(1) Personally enter any combination of letters, numbers, spaces and/or punctuation marks that he or she has adopted as a signature, placed between two forward slash (“/”) symbols in the signature block on the electronic submission; or

(2) Sign the verified statement using some other form of electronic signature specified by the Director.

(d) Signatory must be identified. The name of the person who signs a document in connection with a trademark application, registration, or proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board must be set forth in printed or typed form immediately below or adjacent to the signature, or identified elsewhere in the filing (e.g., in a cover letter or other document that accompanies the filing).

In a document filed in connection with a trademark application, registration, or proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board through TEAS or ESTTA, the party filing the document does not apply a conventional signature. Instead, the filer does one of the following:

(1) The filer enters any combination of letters, numbers, spaces, and/or punctuation marks that the filer has adopted as a signature, placed between two forward slash (“/”) symbols. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#). Examples of acceptable signatures include / *john doe* /, / *drl* /, and / *544-4925* /. The signatory’s name must be set forth beneath the signature. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(d\)](#);

(2) The document is filled out online, printed in text form, and mailed or faxed to the signatory. The signatory signs the printed document in the traditional pen-and-ink manner. The signature portion, along with a declaration, if required, is scanned to create a .jpg or .pdf image file and attached to the document for electronic submission; or

(3) The document is completed online, and e-mailed to the signatory for electronic signature from within TEAS. The signatory signs the document and it is automatically returned via TEAS to the party who requested the signature.

The USPTO will also accept a signature that meets the requirements of paragraph (1) above on documents that are filed on paper. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(a\)\(2\)](#).

All documents must be personally signed. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(a\)\(1\), \(c\)\(1\), 11.18\(a\)](#). The person(s) identified as the signatory must manually enter the elements of the electronic signature. Another person (e.g., paralegal, legal assistant, or secretary) may not sign the name of a qualified practitioner or other authorized signatory.

See In re Dermahose Inc., 82 USPQ2d 1793 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Cowan*, 18 USPQ2d 1407 (Comm’r Pats. 1990). Just as signing the name of another person on paper does not serve as the signature of the person whose name is written, typing the electronic signature of another person is not a valid signature by that person.

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has held that an electronic signature on an electronic transmission through ESTTA pertains to all the attachments to the transmission. *PPG Indus., Inc. v. Guardian Indus. Corp.*, 73 USPQ2d 1926 (TTAB 2005) .

See [TBMP §106.02](#) regarding signature of documents filed in Board proceedings, and [TBMP §106.03](#) regarding the form of submissions in Board proceedings.

611.02 Signatures by Authorized Parties Required

All documents filed in the USPTO must be properly signed. The USPTO staff must review the application or registration record to determine whether the applicant or registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, and must ensure that all documents are properly signed.

Verifications of facts on behalf of an applicant or registrant must be personally signed by someone meeting the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). See TMEP §§ [611.03\(a\)](#) and [804.04](#).

Other documents must be personally signed by the applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or by a qualified practitioner. This includes amendments, responses to Office actions, petitions to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), letters of express abandonment, requests to divide, and requests to change the correspondence address. Generally, if the applicant or registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\), 2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(i\), 2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(i\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#). This applies to both in-house and outside counsel. If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the document must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership).

In the case of joint applicants or registrants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\), 2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(ii\), 2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(ii\)](#), and [11.14\(e\)](#).

See [TMEP §§611.03–611.03\(i\)](#) for guidelines as to the proper person to sign specific documents, [TMEP §§611.06–611.06\(h\)](#) for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of legal entities, and [TMEP §611.04](#) for examples of authorized and potentially unauthorized parties.

611.02(a) TEAS Checkoff Boxes

On some of the TEAS forms, the person signing the response must confirm that he or she is authorized to sign the document by clicking one of three buttons indicating that he or she is: (1) an unrepresented applicant or registrant who has not previously been represented in this matter, or was previously represented by a qualified practitioner who has withdrawn or whose power has been revoked; (2) an attorney who is a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States, and that if the applicant or registrant was previously represented by a different qualified practitioner, the previous power has been revoked, or the previously appointed practitioner has withdrawn; or (3) an authorized Canadian attorney or agent who has been granted recognition by OED, and if the applicant or registrant was previously represented by a different qualified practitioner, the previous power has been revoked, or the previously appointed practitioner has withdrawn. The USPTO will accept these statements unless there is conflicting information in the record or the USPTO is otherwise made aware of conflicting information.

Example: If an attorney lists a foreign address and checks the box indicating that he or she is a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States, the USPTO will accept this statement, as long as there is no conflicting information in the record.

Example: If an attorney indicates that the applicant was previously unrepresented, or that the applicant was previously represented by another attorney who has withdrawn or whose power has been revoked, when, in fact, there is another attorney of record whose power has not been revoked, the USPTO must inquire into the signatory's authority to sign, because there is inconsistent information in the record.

Example: If the signatory identifies himself or herself as an "attorney," but does not check the box confirming that he or she is a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States, the USPTO will inquire into the signatory's authority to sign, because there is inconsistent information in the record.

Example: If the signatory checks the box indicating that he or she is a person with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), but sets forth a title that the USPTO would not normally accept (e.g., accountant, paralegal, or trademark administrator), the USPTO will inquire into the signatory's authority to sign, because there is inconsistent information in the record.

Example: If, instead of checking the “attorney in good standing” box, a United States attorney checks one of the other boxes (i.e., indicating that the applicant is not represented by an attorney, or that the attorney is an authorized Canadian, representing a Canadian applicant), an issue of signatory authority arises, and the USPTO will inquire into the signatory’s authority to sign, because there is inconsistent information in the record.

Exception: If the signatory indicates that he or she is a Canadian attorney or agent who has been granted recognition by OED, the USPTO staff must still check the OED list to verify this information. See [TMEP §602.03\(a\)](#) for further information about Canadian attorneys and agents.

See [TMEP §§611.05\(a\)](#) and [712.03](#) regarding issuance of a notice of incomplete response where there is a question as to a signatory’s authority to sign.

611.03 Proper Person to Sign

This section provides guidelines as to the proper person to sign various documents. Unless otherwise specified by law, the following guidelines should be followed.

611.03(a) Verification

A verification must be sworn to or supported by a declaration signed by the owner of the application or registration or a person properly authorized to verify facts on behalf of the owner. A person who is properly authorized to verify facts on behalf of an owner is:

- A person with legal authority to bind the owner;
- A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or
- A qualified practitioner who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the owner.

See [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\)–2.193\(e\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#). Generally, the Office does not question the authority of the person who signs an affidavit or declaration verifying facts, unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory’s authority to sign. See [TMEP §804.04](#).

The broad definition of a “person properly authorized to sign on behalf of an owner” in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) applies *only* to verifications of facts, such as applications for trademark registration, affidavits under §8 or §71 of the Trademark Act, amendments to allege use under [37 C.F.R. §2.76](#), statements of use under [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#), and declarations in support of substitute specimens or claims of acquired distinctiveness. It does *not* apply to powers of attorney, revocations of powers of attorney, responses to Office actions, amendments to applications, letters of express abandonment, petitions to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), consent agreements, or changes of correspondence address. For example, the “Trademark Administrator” of the applicant, who has firsthand knowledge of the facts alleged in the application, may sign the verified statement in support of the application, but unless he or she has legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., is a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or is a qualified practitioner, he or she may not sign responses to Office actions or agree to examiner’s amendments.

611.03(b) Responses, Amendments to Applications, Requests for Express Abandonment, Requests for Reconsideration of Final Actions, and Requests to Divide

Responses, amendments to applications, requests for express abandonment, requests for reconsideration of final actions, and requests to divide must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with

legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant, or a qualified practitioner, in accordance with the following guidelines:

- If the applicant or registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign, except where the owner is required to sign the correspondence; or
- If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant must sign. In the case of joint applicants or registrants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign.

See [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\)](#), [2.68\(a\)](#), [2.74\(b\)](#), [2.87\(f\)](#), [2.163\(b\)](#), [2.171\(b\)\(1\)](#), [2.184\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(2\)–2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#), [11.14\(e\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#).

See [TMEP §712.01](#) for further guidance as to who may sign a response to an examining attorney's Office action.

611.03(c) Powers of Attorney and Revocations of Powers of Attorney

Powers of attorney and revocations of powers of attorney must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant. In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(c\)\(2\)](#), [2.19\(a\)\(1\)](#), and [2.193\(e\)\(3\)](#). Once the applicant or registrant has designated a qualified practitioner(s), the named practitioner may sign an associate power of attorney appointing another qualified practitioner(s) as an additional person(s) authorized to prosecute the application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(c\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§605.01](#), [605.03](#), and [606](#).

611.03(d) Petitions to Revive

A petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) must be signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts regarding unintentional delay. [37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.66\(c\)\(2\)](#), and [2.193\(e\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §1714.01\(e\)](#). Any response to an Office action accompanying the petition must be signed by a qualified practitioner, or by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) if the applicant is not represented by an authorized practitioner (see [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#)).

611.03(e) Petitions to the Director

A petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) must be signed by the petitioner, someone with legal authority to bind the petitioner, or a qualified practitioner, in accordance with the following guidelines:

- If the petitioner is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign; or
- If the petitioner is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual petitioner or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic petitioner must sign. In the case of joint petitioners, all must sign.

[37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(c\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(5\)–2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(ii\)](#), [11.14\(e\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#); [TMEP §1705.07](#).

611.03(f) Amendment, Correction, or Surrender of Registration

A request for correction or amendment of a registration or a surrender of a registration must be signed by the individual owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner, or a qualified practitioner. In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.171\(a\), 2.173\(b\)\(2\), 2.175\(b\)\(2\), and 2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#).

611.03(g) Renewal Applications

A renewal application must be signed by the registrant or the registrant's representative. [37 C.F.R. §§2.183\(a\) and 2.193\(e\)\(7\)](#). See [TMEP §§1606.06 and 1606.07](#) regarding filing and execution of renewal applications.

611.03(h) Designations and Revocations of Domestic Representative

Designation. An applicant or registrant may designate a domestic representative by either:

- Setting forth the name and address of the domestic representative in the initial application for registration; or
- Filing a separate designation setting forth the name and address of the domestic representative, signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant, or a qualified practitioner. In the case of joint applicants or registrants, all must sign.

[37 C.F.R. §§2.24\(a\)\(1\) and 2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#).

Revocation. A revocation of domestic representative must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant, or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.24\(b\) and 2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#).

See [TMEP §610](#) regarding the designation of a domestic representative by parties not domiciled in the United States.

611.03(i) Requests to Change Correspondence Address in an Application or Registration

A request to change the correspondence address in an application or registration must be signed by the individual applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant, or a qualified practitioner, in accordance with the following guidelines:

- If the applicant or registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign; or
- If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual applicant or registrant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant or registrant must sign. In the case of joint applicants or joint registrants, all must sign.

See [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(b\)\(2\), 2.193\(e\)\(9\)–2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(ii\), 11.14\(e\), and 11.18\(a\)](#); [TMEP §609.02\(b\)](#).

611.04 Examples of Authorized and Potentially Unauthorized Signatories

Set forth below is a list of examples of parties who are authorized and potentially unauthorized to sign responses, petitions to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), amendments, requests for express abandonment, and other documents that must be signed by the applicant or registrant, or by someone with legal authority to bind the applicant or registrant. This list is not exhaustive.

Authorized Parties. In the following situations, a signatory is presumed to be authorized to represent an applicant or registrant:

- Person identifies him/herself as an officer of a pro se applicant or registrant (e.g., “President,” “Vice President,” “Treasurer,” “Secretary”) of a domestic corporation or the equivalent for another type of business entity (e.g., “Partner” for a partnership, “Member” or “Principal” for a Limited Liability Company).
- Person signing for a previously pro se applicant or registrant identifies him/herself as an attorney in good standing of the bar of the highest court of any state in the United States who is practicing abroad (e.g., Mary Smith, member of New York State Bar, with offices in Nassau, Bahamas).
- Person signing for a foreign corporation identifies him/herself as “general counsel” or “in-house counsel” **AND** a “corporate officer” or another corporate officer position (e.g., “Secretary,” “Treasurer,” or “Vice President”).
- Person signing for a previously pro se applicant or registrant identifies him/herself as an attorney with a United States law firm or as “general counsel” or “in-house counsel” of a United States applicant, and thus is recognized as the attorney of record (*see* [TMEP §§604.01](#)).
- Person signing is a different attorney from the same United States-based firm as the current attorney of record.
- Person signing on behalf of a Canadian applicant or registrant is a Canadian trademark attorney or agent whom OED has recognized as qualified to represent parties located in Canada (*see* [TMEP §602.03\(a\)](#)).
- Person signing identifies him/herself as an “officer” of a pro se corporate applicant.

Potentially Unauthorized Parties. In the following situations, a signatory is presumed to be unauthorized to represent an applicant or registrant:

- Person signing provides no title or position (e.g., applicant is Jack Smith, an individual citizen of the United States, and Mary Jones signs the response; or applicant is ABC Corporation, and Bill Miller, President, signs the original application, but Dave Wilson, with no listed title or position, signs the response).
- Person signing appears to be a foreign attorney (e.g., “solicitor” or “barrister” for a foreign entity), or is a foreign law consultant with a law firm in the United States.
- Person signing identifies him/herself as a non-attorney representing applicant or registrant in some other capacity (e.g., accountant, paralegal, trademark administrator, business manager, personal assistant, or legal secretary).
- Person signing provides the address of a foreign firm.
- Person signing in an application or registration owned by a foreign entity identifies him/herself as “attorney for applicant,” “attorney at law,” or similar language, but does not specify an address or firm or otherwise indicate that he or she is a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States (which includes the District of Columbia and any Commonwealth or territory of the United States).
- Person signing identifies him/herself as “attorney-in-fact.”

- Person signing in an application or registration owned by a foreign entity identifies him/herself as “in house counsel” or “general counsel,” with no other indication of officer status or recognition to practice in the United States or before the USPTO per [37 C.F.R. §§11.14\(a\)](#) or [\(c\)](#).
- Person signing identifies him/herself as “representative of,” “agent for,” or “representing” applicant or registrant, with no other explanation.
- Person signing identifies him/herself as an “authorized signatory” but provides no other indication of the nature of the signer’s relationship to applicant or registrant.
- Person signing is a new attorney from a different firm, when the applicant or registrant had previously appointed a qualified practitioner and no new power of attorney or revocation of the previously appointed power has been made of record.

611.05 Processing Documents Signed by Someone Other Than the Applicant or the Applicant’s Designated Attorney

When examining a document filed in connection with a trademark application or registration, the USPTO staff must ensure that all documents are signed by a proper party. See [TMEP §611.02](#).

When it appears that a response to an Office action is signed by an improper party, the USPTO staff must treat the response as incomplete. See [TMEP §611.05\(a\)](#).

When it appears that a document other than a response to an Office action (e.g., a proposed amendment to an application that is not responsive to an Office action, a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), or an express abandonment) is signed by an improper party, the USPTO will notify the applicant or registrant that no action will be taken on the document, unless the applicant or registrant either: (1) establishes the signatory’s authority; or (2) submits a properly signed document.

See [TBMP §106.02](#) for information about signature of documents filed in Board proceedings.

611.05(a) Notice of Incomplete Response when Authority of Person Signing Response Is Unclear

If it appears that a response to an examining attorney’s Office action is signed by an improper party, the examining attorney must treat the response as an incomplete response, and grant the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §718.03\(b\)](#). The applicant must submit a response signed by the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. These same principles and procedures apply to responses to Office actions issued by other USPTO employees (e.g., staff in the Post Registration Section, ITU/Divisional Unit, Madrid Processing Unit, or Office of Petitions).

See also [TMEP §712.03](#).

611.05(b) Replying to a Notice of Incomplete Response

If the person who signed the response is an authorized signer, the person may simply telephone or send an e-mail message to clarify the record, and the USPTO staff will make an appropriate Note to the File in the record, review the previously submitted response, and take the appropriate action.

A proper reply to a notice of incomplete response should state the nature of the relationship of the signer to the applicant or registrant. If the signer has legal authority to bind the applicant or registrant, the person should so state, and should set forth his or her title or position. If the signer is an attorney who may practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(a\)](#), the attorney should identify himself or herself as an attorney and indicate the bar of the U.S. state of which he or she is a member in good standing. If the signer meets the requirements of either [37 C.F.R. §§11.14\(b\)](#) or [\(c\)](#), the person should explain how he or she meets these requirements. For example, a Canadian attorney or agent recognized to practice before the USPTO in trademark cases by OED (see [TMEP §602.03\(a\)](#)) may simply state he or she has received recognition by OED as a Canadian practitioner under §§11.14(c) and (f).

In a pending application, if the person who signed the response is not an authorized signer, and all proposed amendments in the improperly signed response can be resolved by an examiner's amendment, the individual applicant or a person with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) may telephone the examining attorney to authorize such an amendment. Otherwise, when the person who signed the response is not an authorized signer, the applicant must submit a response signed by the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant, or a qualified practitioner. See TMEP §§ [611.03\(b\)](#), [611.06–611.06\(h\)](#), and [712.01](#) regarding the proper party to sign a response to an Office action.

See [TMEP §604.03](#) regarding changes of attorney.

611.05(c) Unsatisfactory Response or Failure to Respond

Pending Applications. In a pending application, if an unsatisfactory response or no response is received to the notice of incomplete response, the USPTO will abandon the application for incomplete response. See [TMEP §718.03\(a\)](#) for procedures for holding an application abandoned for failure to respond completely.

Post Registration. If there is an inadequate response or no response to a notice of incomplete response issued in connection with an affidavit of use or excusable nonuse under §8 or §71, or a §9 renewal application, the USPTO will notify the registrant that the affidavit or renewal application remains unacceptable, and that the registration will be cancelled in due course. In the case of a §7 request, the USPTO will notify the registrant that the request for amendment or correction is abandoned.

611.06 Guidelines on Persons with Legal Authority to Bind Certain Juristic Entities

611.06(a) Joint Owners

Joint owners are individual parties and not a single entity. Where a document must be signed by someone with legal authority to bind joint owners, the document must be signed by all the owners. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.17\(c\)\(2\)](#), [2.19\(a\)\(1\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(3\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(ii\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#), and [2.193\(e\)\(9\)\(ii\)](#).

611.06(b) Signature by Partnership

Where a document must be signed by someone with legal authority to bind a partnership, a general partner must sign. Signature by all the general partners is not necessary. If the partnership comprises general partners who are juristic entities (e.g., the general partners are corporations), someone with legal authority to bind that type of juristic entity must sign.

In appropriate cases, a document filed by a partnership may be signed by an official other than a general partner, if the record contains an explanation or documentation indicating that the person signing the document has legal authority to bind the partnership.

611.06(c) Signature by Joint Venture

Where a document must be signed by someone with legal authority to bind a joint venture, each party to the venture must sign. Although a joint venture has many attributes of a partnership, it is a special partnership, which is very limited in nature and scope. Generally, signature by each party to the joint venture is necessary.

In appropriate cases, a document filed by a joint venture may be signed by a general manager or other official rather than by each of the joint venturers, if the applicant or registrant states that the person who signed has legal authority to bind the joint venture under relevant state law.

611.06(d) Signature by Corporation

Where a document must be signed by someone with legal authority to bind a corporation, a corporate officer must sign. An officer is a person who holds an office established in the articles of incorporation or corporate bylaws.

The usual titles for officers are President, Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Operating Officer, and Chief Financial Officer. In some organizations, the Treasurer is called a Comptroller or Controller, and these terms are acceptable. In Maine and Massachusetts the term “Clerk” identifies an officer of a corporation.

Modifications of these basic titles are acceptable if they include the officer title. Titles such as Vice-President for Sales, Executive Vice-President, Assistant Treasurer, Executive Secretary, and Administrative Secretary are acceptable.

The signature of the “Chairman” or “Chairman of the Board of Directors” is also acceptable, but not the signature of an individual director (e.g., the Vice-Chairman of the Board). The terms “Executive Secretary” and “Administrative Secretary” are acceptable because they include the officer-title “Secretary.”

Some titles are generally *not* accepted because they usually do not identify officers. For instance, a General Manager, or any other type of manager, is usually merely an employee, not an officer.

If the applicant or registrant states that the person who signed the response is authorized to bind the applicant or registrant under the articles of incorporation or bylaws, the USPTO will accept the signature.

A corporation cannot delegate authority to sign to someone who is not a corporate officer. *In re Textron, Inc.*, 183 USPQ 301 (Comm'r Pats. 1974). Therefore, documents purporting to authorize representation, even if signed by officers, will not be accepted as establishing authority of a person who does not have authority to legally bind the corporation under its bylaws or articles of incorporation.

When the applicant or registrant is a corporation, a statement that the signatory is an “officer” or “duly authorized officer” of the corporation is acceptable. However, it is unacceptable to state that the person who signed the verification is an “authorized signatory.”

611.06(e) Signature by Foreign Companies and Corporations

There are significant differences between the legal entities established under the laws of the United States and legal entities established and recognized under the laws of foreign countries, and the titles and duties of officers of foreign corporations and companies often differ from those in the United States. In the case of foreign entities that are in the nature of corporations, the USPTO will accept the signature of a person considered to be equivalent to an officer under the law of the foreign country. Indication of a title identifying the signer as a type of officer – such as “Legal Officer” or “Information Officer” – is also sufficient.

In foreign countries, a person who holds the title “Manager” or “Director” is normally an officer or the equivalent of an officer.

The term “Procurist” is used in a number of countries to indicate an officer. For British companies, the terms “Registrar” and “Confidential Clerk” are the equivalent of officers.

If the applicant or registrant states that the person who signed the response holds a position that is the equivalent of an officer of a United States corporation, the USPTO will accept the signature.

Simply stating that a person has been granted authority to act on behalf of the applicant or registrant is insufficient. Documents purporting to authorize representation, even if signed by officers, will not be accepted as establishing the authority of a person who is not the equivalent of an officer. The applicant or registrant must state that the signatory has authority to legally bind the applicant or registrant under its bylaws or articles of incorporation.

611.06(f) Signature by Unincorporated Association

For organizations that are less formally organized than corporations (e.g., fraternal societies, unions, unincorporated associations, and governmental bodies), the titles for officers are less standardized. These organizations frequently use more individualistic terms for titles than the terms customarily used by corporations, and the officer positions themselves may not be as clearly or as formally provided for as is the case with corporations. Regardless of how unfamiliar the title is or how informal the position seems to be, the USPTO will accept the signature if the applicant or registrant states on the record that the signer has, within the framework of the particular organization, authority equivalent to that of an officer to act on behalf of the organization (i.e., has authority to legally bind the applicant or registrant under its bylaws or articles of formation). Some titles that have been accepted are Director, National Director, National Commander, Permanent Chairman, International Sponsor, Supreme Ruler, Royal Impresario, and Chairman of the Steering Committee.

611.06(g) Signature by Limited Liability Company

A limited liability company (“LLC”) has attributes of both a corporation and a partnership. See [TMEP §803.03\(h\)](#). Generally, a signatory identified as “manager,” “member,” “principal,” or “owner” may be presumed to have the authority to sign on behalf of a domestic or foreign limited liability company. In addition, anyone with a corporate-officer-type title, such as “President” or “Chief Executive Officer,” may sign.

611.06(h) Signature by Limited Liability Partnership

A limited liability partnership (“LLP”) has attributes of both a partnership and a corporation. See [TMEP §803.03\(k\)](#). Laws vary to some extent as to the authority conferred on various partners associated with the limited liability partnership. Generally, all partners are recognized as having general agency authority to bind the partnership in the ordinary course of business. Therefore, anyone identified as a partner may sign.

Many states provide for the filing of a Statement of Partnership Authority which specifically names partners having authority and/or limits the authority of certain individuals. If an individual who is not a named partner of the LLP has been recognized as having authority to bind the LLP, that person may sign, and must indicate his or her position as an individual designated in the LLP’s Statement of Partnership Authority.

Chapter 700 Procedure for Examining Applications

701	Statutory Authority for Examination
702	Order of Work
702.01	Order of Examination
702.02	“Special” Applications
702.03	Related Applications
702.03(a)	Companion Applications
702.03(a)(i)	Companion Applications Not Previously Assigned for the Same or Similar Marks
702.03(a)(ii)	Companion Applications Previously Assigned
702.03(a)(iii)	Companion Registrations
702.03(a)(iv)	Classification and Identification in Companion Applications that Have Registered or Been Published for Opposition
702.03(b)	Conflicting Applications
703	USPTO Does Not Issue Duplicate Registrations
704	Initial Examination
704.01	Initial Examination Must Be Complete
704.02	Examining Attorney’s Search
704.03	Supervisory Examining Attorney May Indicate Action for Non-Signatory Examining Attorney
705	The Examining Attorney’s Letter or Action
705.01	Language in Examining Attorney’s Letter
705.02	Examining Attorneys Should Not Volunteer Statements
705.03	Citation of Conflicting Marks
705.04	Reference to Matter in Printed or Online Publications
705.05	Citation of Decisions and USPTO Publications
705.06	Reviewing and Signing of Letters
705.07	Processing Outgoing Office Actions
705.08	Six-Month Response Clause
706	New Matter Raised by Examining Attorney After First Action
706.01	“Clear Error”
707	Examiner’s Amendment
707.01	Approval of Examiner’s Amendment by Applicant or Applicant’s Attorney
707.02	Examiner’s Amendment Without Prior Authorization by Applicant or Applicant’s Attorney
707.03	Form of the Examiner’s Amendment
708	Priority Action
708.01	Priority Action Defined
708.02	Discussion of Issues and Agreements
708.03	Form of the Priority Action
708.04	Refusal of Registration in Priority Action
708.05	Combined Examiner’s Amendment/Priority Action
709	Interviews
709.01	Personal Interviews
709.02	Persons Who May Represent Applicant in an Interview
709.03	Making Substance of Interview of Record
709.04	Telephone and E-Mail Communications
709.05	Informal Communications
709.06	Interviews Prior to Filing Application
710	Evidence
710.01	Evidence Supporting Refusal or Requirement
710.01(a)	Evidence from Research Database

- 710.01(b) Internet Evidence
- 710.01(c) Record Must Be Complete Prior to Appeal
- 710.02 Search for Evidence Indicating No Refusal or Requirement Necessary
- 710.03 Evidence of Third-Party Registrations
- 711 **Deadline for Response to Office Action**
- 711.01 Time May Run from Previous Action
- 711.02 Supplemental Office Action Resetting Response Period
- 712 **Signature on Response to Office Action**
- 712.01 Persons Who May Sign Response
- 712.02 Unsigned Response
- 712.03 Response Signed by an Unauthorized Person
- 713 **Examination of Amendments and Responses to Office Actions**
- 713.01 Previous Action by Different Examining Attorney
- 713.02 Noting All Outstanding Refusals or Requirements
- 713.03 Response to Applicant's Arguments in Nonfinal Actions
- 714 **Final Action**
- 714.01 Not Permissible on First Action
- 714.02 Not Permissible on Suspension
- 714.03 When Final Action is Appropriate
- 714.04 Form of the Final Action
- 714.05 Delineating New Issues Requiring Issuance of Nonfinal Action
- 714.05(a) Unacceptable Amendment Proposed By Applicant
- 714.05(a)(i) Amendment to Supplemental Register or Submission of Claim of Acquired Distinctiveness
- 714.05(a)(ii) Amendment of Identification of Goods/Services
- 714.05(b) Section 2(d) Refusal Based on Earlier-Filed Application that Has Matured Into Registration
- 714.05(c) Advisory Statement Cannot Serve as Foundation for Final Refusal or Requirement
- 714.05(d) Submission of Consent Agreement or Assertion of Unity of Control in Response to §2(d) Refusal
- 714.05(e) Submission of Substitute Specimen in Response to Refusal for Failure to Show Use of the Mark in Commerce
- 714.05(f) Submission of Substitute Specimen in Response to Refusal for Failure to Show the Applied-For Mark Functioning as a Mark
- 714.06 Applicant's Recourse When Final Action is Premature
- 715 **Action After Issuance of Final Action**
- 715.01 Proper Response to Final Action
- 715.02 Action After Final Action
- 715.03 Request for Reconsideration After Final Action
- 715.03(a) Examining Attorney's Action When No New Issue or No Significantly Different Evidence Is Presented in Request for Reconsideration and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed
- 715.03(a)(i) Request for Reconsideration Resolves All Outstanding Issues and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed
- 715.03(a)(ii) Request for Reconsideration Does Not Resolve All Outstanding Issues and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed
- 715.03(a)(ii)(A) Prior Amendment Withdrawn
- 715.03(a)(ii)(B) Outstanding Refusals and/or Requirements Must Be Continued, Time Remains in Response Period for Applicant to Appeal, and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

715.03(a)(ii)(C)	Outstanding Refusals and/or Requirements May Be Resolved if Applicant Is Given 30 Days or Time Remaining in Response Period to Comply with Issues
715.03(a)(ii)(D)	Outstanding Refusals and/or Requirements Must Be Continued, Time for Appeal Has Expired, and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed – Abandon for Incomplete Response
715.03(a)(ii)(E)	Responses After Final Refusal Signed by Unauthorized Persons, Unsigned Responses, TEAS Responses Consisting Only of a Signature, and TEAS Responses Missing Significant Data or Attachments
715.03(b)	Examining Attorney’s Action When New Issue or New Evidence Is Presented in Request for Reconsideration and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed
715.03(c)	Time for Appeal Runs from Issuance Date of Final Action
715.04	Request for Reconsideration Filed in Conjunction with Notice of Appeal
715.04(a)	Examining Attorney's Action When No New Issue Is Presented in Request for Reconsideration and Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed
715.04(b)	Examining Attorney's Action When New Issue or New Evidence is Presented and Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed
716	Suspension of Action by USPTO
716.01	Form of Suspension Notice
716.02	Circumstances Under Which Action May Be Suspended
716.02(a)	Applicant’s Petition to Cancel Cited Registration
716.02(b)	Submission of Copy of Foreign Registration in §44(d) Application
716.02(c)	Conflicting Marks in Pending Applications
716.02(d)	Inter Partes or Court Proceeding
716.02(e)	Pending Cancellation or Expiration of Cited Registration
716.02(f)	Pending Expiration of “Insurance” Extension Request
716.02(g)	Pending Correction of or Limitation to an International Registration
716.02(h)	Pending Recordation of an Assignment Document
716.02(i)	Pending Registry Agreement with ICANN for Marks Comprised Solely of gTLDs for Domain-Name Registry Operator and Registrar Services
716.03	Applicant’s Arguments Against Suspension
716.04	Suspended Docket Checked
716.05	Inquiry by Examining Attorney Regarding Suspended Application
716.06	Suspension After Final Action
717	Reissuing an Office Action
717.01	Returned Office Action
717.02	Non-Receipt of Office Action
718	Abandonment
718.01	Express Abandonment by Applicant or Applicant’s Attorney
718.02	Failure by Applicant to Take Required Action During Statutory Period
718.02(a)	Partial Abandonment
718.03	Incomplete Response
718.03(a)	Holding of Abandonment for Failure to Respond Completely
718.03(b)	Granting Additional Time to Perfect Response
718.04	Failure to File Statement of Use
718.05	Failure to Perfect Appeal
718.06	Notice of Abandonment for Failure to Respond
718.07	Revival or Reinstatement of Abandoned Application - New Search Required
719	Non-Responsive Communications
720	Fraud Upon the USPTO

701 Statutory Authority for Examination

15 U.S.C. §1062 Publication.

(a) Upon the filing of an application for registration and payment of the prescribed fee, the Director shall refer the application to the examiner in charge of the registration of marks, who shall cause an examination to be made....

(b) If the applicant is found not entitled to registration, the examiner shall advise the applicant thereof and of the reason therefor. The applicant shall have a period of six months in which to reply or amend his application, which shall then be reexamined. This procedure may be repeated until (1) the examiner finally refuses registration of the mark or (2) the applicant fails for a period of six months to reply or amend or appeal, whereupon the application shall be deemed to have been abandoned, unless it can be shown to the satisfaction of the Director that the delay in responding was unintentional, whereupon such time may be extended.

702 Order of Work

702.01 Order of Examination

In general, applications are assigned for examination in the order in which they are received in the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”), unless the application is made “special.” See [TMEP §702.02](#) regarding “special” applications. If a voluntary amendment is filed before the application is assigned for examination, it is placed in the record for consideration at the time the application is assigned to an examining attorney.

Generally, amended applications (i.e., applications that contain a response from the applicant), remands from the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (“Board”), and statements of use are also reviewed in the order in which they are received in the USPTO.

Examining attorneys should act on applications that have been suspended as soon as they are removed from suspension. See [TMEP §§716–716.06](#) regarding suspension.

Examining attorneys should immediately act on inquiries regarding applications approved for publication or issue that are returned to the examining attorney to take action or provide information.

Where appropriate, the managing attorney may direct that a particular case be given special handling.

When an examining attorney resigns, the examining attorney should spend any remaining time in the Office getting his or her amended cases (including statements of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) and appeal briefs), especially those with involved records, ready for final disposition.

702.02 “Special” Applications

While the USPTO normally processes applications in the order in which they are received, there are two procedures whereby an application can be made “special,” so that initial examination will be expedited.

Request to Make Special - Registration Inadvertently Cancelled or Expired Under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), [§1059](#), or [§1141k](#). A new application for registration of a mark that was the subject of a previous registration that was inadvertently cancelled or expired under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), [§1059](#), or [§1141k](#) will be made “special” upon the request of the applicant if the applicant is the prior registrant or the assignee of the prior registrant.

No petition fee is required in this situation. However, *the mark in the new application must be identical to the mark in the cancelled or expired registration, and the goods/services in the new application must be identical to or narrower than the goods/services in the cancelled or expired registration.*

A request to make an application special because a registration was inadvertently cancelled is reviewed in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. The applicant should first file the application via the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”). The applicant should then submit a request to make special that includes the newly assigned serial number and the number of the cancelled registration. To ensure proper routing and processing, the Office prefers that the request also be filed electronically. In TEAS, the Request to Make Special form can be accessed at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

If it is not possible to file the request electronically, it should be faxed to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy at the following fax number: 571-273-0032.

If the request is submitted by mail, it should be submitted *separately* from the application, marked to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

Petition to Make Special. A petition to make “special” is a request to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to advance the initial examination of an application out of its regular order. See [TMEP §§1710–1710.02](#) regarding the petition requirements and filing procedure.

The examining attorney must promptly examine any application that has been made “special.”

702.03 Related Applications

702.03(a) Companion Applications

The term “companion applications” refers to pending applications filed by the same applicant. An application is pending until it registers or abandons. Pending applications include applications that have been approved for publication or for registration on the Supplemental Register, applications in the Intent-to-Use (“ITU”)/Divisional Unit, and revived or reinstated applications.

702.03(a)(i) Companion Applications Not Previously Assigned for the Same or Similar Marks

If an applicant has multiple pending applications, the issues in the applications are likely to be similar. When assigned a new application, an examining attorney will be assigned the companion applications filed within three months of the filing date of the first assigned application. If an applicant files more than ten applications within a three-month period, only the first ten will be assigned to one examining attorney. Examining attorneys are encouraged to assign all unassigned companion applications for the same or similar marks to themselves, even if the applications were filed outside the three-month period.

The assignment of companion applications is done electronically, based upon the owner’s name as set forth in the application. Therefore, the owner’s name should be set forth consistently in all applications.

See [TMEP §702.03\(a\)\(iv\)](#) regarding classification and identification in companion applications that have been published for opposition.

702.03(a)(ii) Companion Applications Previously Assigned

If the Trademark database indicates that a companion application has been assigned to a different examining attorney, the examining attorney should **not** transfer his or her application to the other examining attorney.

However, the examining attorney must review the electronic record of the earlier companion application before taking action in a later companion case, and should act consistently, unless it would be clear error (

see [TMPEP §706.01](#)) to do so. If the examining attorney believes that acting consistently with the prior action(s) would be erroneous, he or she should bring the issue to the attention of the managing attorney or senior attorney.

See [TMPEP §702.03\(a\)\(iv\)](#) regarding classification and identification in companion applications that have been published for opposition.

702.03(a)(iii) Companion Registrations

If the applicant previously filed a companion application that has matured into a registration, the examining attorney should *not* transfer his or her application to the prior examining attorney. Generally, in the later application, the examining attorney should act consistently with the registration, unless it would be clear error (*see* [TMPEP §706.01](#)) to act consistently. However, the USPTO is not bound by the decisions of the examining attorneys who examined the applications for the applicant's previously registered marks, based on different records. Eligibility for registration must be determined on the basis of the facts that exist at the time registration is sought. *See* [TMPEP §1216.01](#) and cases cited therein.

See [TMPEP §702.03\(a\)\(iv\)](#) regarding classification and identification in companion registrations.

702.03(a)(iv) Classification and Identification in Companion Applications that Have Registered or Been Published for Opposition

If a companion application has been published for opposition or has registered, the examining attorney may presume that the classification and identification of goods or services in the companion application or registration are acceptable, unless the identification or classification is clearly wrong. If the examining attorney accepts the classification and identification of goods or services because they were accepted in a companion application or registration, the examining attorney must note the companion application serial number or registration number in a Note to the File.

Sometimes, the classification and identification of goods and/or services in the prior companion application or registration is clearly wrong. For example, identifications and class assignments that were acceptable in the past may no longer be in accord with the current Nice Agreement classification system (*see* [TMPEP §§1401.02–1401.02\(c\)](#)) or with USPTO policy on acceptable identifications, which change periodically.

In these cases, the examining attorney cannot adopt the classification and identification listed in the companion application or registration. *See* [TMPEP §§1402.14, 1904.02\(c\)\(v\)](#).

702.03(b) Conflicting Applications

The term “conflicting applications” refers to two or more pending applications that are filed by different applicants and may ultimately require a refusal of registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), due to a likelihood of confusion between the marks. When assigned a new application, the examining attorney must search the USPTO's automated records to determine whether there are any conflicting applications. If there are conflicting applications, the examining attorney should *not* transfer the conflicting application to the examining attorney who acted on the first conflicting application. Instead, the examining attorney should examine the assigned application and issue an Office action that includes a notice to the applicant that there is a prior-filed application to register a mark that may be likely to cause confusion with the applicant's mark. *See* [TMPEP §§1208–1208.03\(c\)](#). The examining attorney handling the later-filed application should act consistently with the examining attorney who handled the earlier-filed application, unless it would be clear error (*see* [TMPEP §706.01](#)) to act consistently. If necessary, the

examining attorney should review the electronic record of the earlier-filed application before taking an action in the later-filed conflicting application.

703 USPTO Does Not Issue Duplicate Registrations

The USPTO will not issue two or more identical registrations on the same register. If two applications on the same register would result in registrations that are exact duplicates, the USPTO will permit only one application to mature into registration, and will refuse registration in the other application. [37 C.F.R. §2.48](#).

For instance, if two identical applications are filed by an applicant, and the USPTO has not taken action in either application, then the USPTO will refuse registration in both applications. However, if the USPTO has already taken action in one of the applications but not the other, then the USPTO will refuse registration in the second application.

The applicant may overcome the refusal(s) by abandoning one of the applications. If practicable, the USPTO will permit the applicant to choose which application should mature into registration. If one of the applications has matured into registration, the applicant may choose to either surrender the registration and allow the application to proceed to registration, or retain the registration and abandon the application.

Basis. Applications filed under or amended to §1 of the Trademark Act would result in duplicate registrations if the only difference between them is that one is based on use in commerce under §1(a) and the other is based on intent-to-use under §1(b). However, an application filed under §1 and an application filed under §44 that are otherwise identical would not result in duplicate registrations, nor would an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act that is otherwise identical to an application filed under §1 or §44.

Classification Change. Where the international classification of goods/services has changed, a new application for registration of the same mark for the same goods/services in a different class will not result in a duplicate registration. For example, if applicant owns a registration of a mark for legal services in Class 42, and files a new application after January 1, 2007, for registration of the same mark for legal services in Class 45, this is not a duplicate.

Standard Character/Typed Drawing. An application for registration of a mark depicted in standard characters would result in a duplicate registration of an application of the same mark in “typed” format ([see TMEP §807.03\(g\)](#)) for the same goods/services.

Standard Character/Special Form. A standard character drawing and a special form drawing of the same mark would not result in duplicate registrations.

Overlapping Goods/Services. Applications/registrations with identifications that include some of the same goods/services, but also different goods/services, would not result in duplicate registrations.

Color. A drawing in which the entire mark is lined for color ([see TMEP §808.01\(b\)](#)), would result in a duplicate registration of a color drawing of the mark, if the colors are identical. See [TMEP §§807.07–807.07\(g\)](#) regarding color drawings.

If the applicant claims different shades of a color (e.g., purple in one and lavender in the other), any resulting registrations are not duplicates.

Where one application/registration is not completely lined for color (i.e., if the mark on the drawing includes color(s) in addition to unclaimed or unexplained black, white, and/or gray), this would not result in a duplicate

registration of an application seeking registration that includes a claim of the same color(s) in addition to a claim of color for, or an explanation of the presence of, the black/white/gray in the drawing. See [TMEP §§807.07\(d\)–807.07\(d\)\(iii\)](#) regarding drawings that include black/white/gray.

Principal/Supplemental Register. An application for registration of a mark on the Principal Register would not result in a duplicate of an application for registration of the same mark on the Supplemental Register.

Registrations Issued Under Prior Acts. If eligible, marks registered under the Acts of 1881, 1905, and 1920 may also be registered under the Act of 1946 (see §46(b) of the Trademark Act of 1946). Even if the mark and the goods/services in a registration issued under the 1946 Act are identical to the mark and goods/services in a registration issued under a prior Act, the registrations are not considered duplicates. See [TMEP §§ 1601.04, 1601.05, 1602.02, and 1602.03](#) regarding registrations issued under prior Acts.

Section 66(a) Application Based on Different Int'l Registration. A §66(a) application would not result in a duplicate registration of another §66(a) application or registered extension of protection based on a different international registration.

When an application is a duplicate of a registration owned by the applicant, and USPTO records show that the registration is still active, the examining attorney must refuse registration. If the registration is subject to cancellation for failure to file an affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [§1141k](#), or due to expire for failure to file a renewal application under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#) (i.e., because the grace period has passed and no affidavit or renewal application has been filed), and the application is otherwise in condition for approval or final refusal, the examining attorney must suspend the application until the Trademark database is updated to show that the registration is cancelled or expired. See [TMEP §1611](#) for information about how the owner of a registration who has not timely filed a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration or §9 renewal application may expedite the cancellation or expiration of its own registration.

704 Initial Examination

704.01 Initial Examination Must Be Complete

37 CFR §2.61(a)

Applications for registration, including amendments to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, and statements of use under section 1(d) of the Act, will be examined and, if the applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons therefor and of any formal requirements or objections.

The initial examination of an application by the examining attorney must be a *complete* examination. A complete examination includes a search for conflicting marks and an examination of the written application, any voluntary amendment(s) or other documents filed by applicant before an initial Office action is issued, the drawing, and any specimen(s) or foreign registration(s), to determine whether the mark is eligible for the type of registration requested, whether amendment is necessary, and whether all required fees have been paid.

If, on initial examination, the examining attorney finds the mark in an application for registration on the Principal Register to be in condition for publication for opposition, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication. Similarly, if the examining attorney finds the mark in an application for registration on the Supplemental Register to be in condition for registration, the examining attorney will approve the application for registration. The USPTO will send a notice of publication or certificate of registration to the applicant in due course.

If the application is not in condition to be approved for publication or issue, the examining attorney will write, telephone, or e-mail the applicant, as appropriate, informing the applicant of the reason(s) why the mark may not be registered and of the defect(s) that can be corrected or amended to make the application acceptable.

The examining attorney's first Office action must be complete, so the applicant will be advised of all requirements for amendment and all grounds for refusal, with the exception of use-related issues that are considered for the first time in the examination of an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) in an intent-to-use application. See [TMEP §§1102.01](#) and [1202-1202.16\(c\)\(v\)\(B\)](#) regarding use-related issues that may be considered for the first time in the examination of an amendment to allege use or a statement of use. Every effort should be made to avoid piecemeal prosecution, because it prolongs the time needed to dispose of an application. See also [TMEP §706](#) regarding new issues raised by the examining attorney after the first Office action.

Examining attorneys must also clearly explain all refusals and requirements. For example, if the identification of goods/services is indefinite, the examining attorney must explain why the identification is not acceptable and, if possible, suggest an acceptable identification. See [TMEP §§705-705.08](#) for further information about examining attorneys' Office actions.

704.02 Examining Attorney's Search

If the examining attorney finds no conflicting marks, but must write to the applicant about other matters, the examining attorney must inform the applicant that no conflicting marks have been found. This is commonly called the "search clause."

In an application filed under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, if the examining attorney cannot make a proper search or cannot examine the application properly due to a lack of adequate information, the examining attorney must specifically indicate what information is needed, request that it be furnished, and state that further action on the matter will be taken as soon as the information is received. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) and [TMEP §814](#) regarding requirements for additional information.

If some but not all of the goods/services in a §66(a) application are so indefinite that the examining attorney cannot make a proper search, the examining attorney may defer the search in part. The examining attorney must specifically indicate the good/services for which a search has been conducted by listing the goods/services for which no conflicting marks have been found, and, if relevant, issuing a §2(d) refusal that is specifically limited to certain goods/services. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial refusals.

If all the goods/services in a §66(a) application are so indefinite that the examining attorney cannot make a proper search, the examining attorney may defer the search. The examining attorney must issue a full refusal, require the necessary amendments to the goods/services, and state that further action on the merits with respect to likelihood of confusion will be considered as soon as a sufficiently definite identification of goods/services is received.

Before issuing a letter deferring action, the examining attorney should consult with the managing attorney or senior attorney.

704.03 Supervisory Examining Attorney May Indicate Action for Non-Signatory Examining Attorney

When a non-signatory examining attorney examines an application, a supervisory examining attorney must thoroughly review the action. The usual procedure is for the non-signatory examining attorney to explain relevant information to the supervisory examining attorney, discussing any potential refusals or requirements. The supervisory examining attorney may indicate the action to be taken.

705 The Examining Attorney's Letter or Action

If an examining attorney determines that a mark is not entitled to registration, or that amendment is required, the examining attorney will notify the applicant in a written Office action, or by e-mail or telephone communication, which is typically followed by a written action. This constitutes the examining attorney's official action.

Written Office actions may be of a variety of styles, including: (1) an "examiner's amendment" ([see TMEP §§707–707.03](#)), in which the examining attorney formally makes amendments to the application; (2) a "priority action" ([see TMEP §§708–708.05](#)), setting forth and explaining the requirements discussed by telephone with the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or with a practitioner authorized to practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) ("qualified practitioner") designated by the applicant; (3) a letter explaining the bases for refusal(s) or requirement(s); (4) an examiner's amendment combined with a priority action ([see TMEP §708.05](#)); or (5) a suspension notice ([see TMEP §§716–716.06](#)). Office actions may be prepared through the use of standardized form paragraphs, in combination with language written to address the particular facts relevant to the refusal(s) or requirement(s). The examining attorney may send the Office action by regular mail or e-mail (if applicant has authorized e-mail communications). See [TMEP §§304–304.09](#) regarding e-mail.

The USPTO encourages the use of examiner's amendments and priority actions whenever appropriate.

705.01 Language in Examining Attorney's Letter

The examining attorney must indicate the status of the application at the beginning of each letter.

In first actions, this may be done by stating that the examining attorney has reviewed the application and made the determinations that follow, or by using language such as "Upon examination of this application..."

The examining attorney must acknowledge any document received before the first action by identifying the document and the date of its receipt.

In subsequent actions, examining attorneys should begin letters with a sentence such as, "This Office action is in response to applicant's communication filed on [date]." Other documents received, such as supplemental amendments, affidavits, and new drawings, should also be acknowledged.

Refusals to register should be couched in the statutory language of the section of the Trademark Act that is the basis of the refusal, and the examining attorney must cite the appropriate section of the Act. For example, registration of a trademark should not be refused "because it is a surname," but "because it *consists of matter that is primarily merely a surname under §2(e)(4) of the Trademark Act.*"

Registration must be refused only as to the specific register (i.e., Principal or Supplemental) for which registration is requested. However, when refusing registration on the Principal Register, the examining attorney should also state, to the extent possible, whether the record indicates that an amendment to the Supplemental Register or to seek registration on the Principal Register under §2(f) may be appropriate.

The words “capable” and “incapable” should be reserved for addressing an amendment to the Supplemental Register.

Examining attorneys are encouraged to use form paragraphs to accelerate the preparation of Office actions and increase the uniformity of the substance and appearance of these actions. However, examining attorneys should use the form paragraphs only if they apply to a particular situation, and should expand on the form paragraphs when necessary to explain and support the relevant requirements or refusals.

705.02 Examining Attorneys Should Not Volunteer Statements

In Office actions, and e-mail and telephone communications, examining attorneys should not volunteer statements about applicants’ rights that are gratuitous and unnecessary to the examination of the matters presented in applications. The examining attorney’s responsibility is limited to evaluating the registrability of the mark presented in the application. *See In re Am. Physical Fitness Research Inst. Inc.*, 181 USPQ 127, 127–28 (TTAB 1974) . *See also* [TMEP §1801](#).

705.03 Citation of Conflicting Marks

When refusing registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), based on a likelihood of confusion with a previously registered mark, the examining attorney must give the registration number(s) and attach to the Office action a copy of each cited registration, which will become part of the record. The examining attorney should explain the reasons that the mark in each cited registration is a basis for refusal under §2(d).

If an applicant notifies the USPTO that the USPTO failed to attach a cited registration, or that the USPTO attached a registration but did not cite the registration as a bar to registration in the Office action, the USPTO will reissue the Office action citing and attaching the relevant registration(s) and provide the applicant with a new response period.

705.04 Reference to Matter in Printed or Online Publications

When the examining attorney refers to matter in a printed publication, the examining attorney should provide the citation for the publication, and include the relevant material with the Office action. It is not necessary to attach a published legal decision to an Office action. A citation is sufficient. See [TMEP §705.05](#) regarding citation of decisions.

When the examining attorney refers to an online publication, such as an article downloaded from the Internet, the examining attorney should provide any information that would aid a party in locating the document, including the complete URL address of the website, the time and date the search was conducted, and the terms searched. See [TMEP §710.01\(b\)](#) for a discussion of the weight accorded to Internet evidence. See also [TMEP §710.01\(a\)](#) regarding evidence from a research database.

705.05 Citation of Decisions and USPTO Publications

When citing court or administrative decisions, the *United States Patents Quarterly* (USPQ or USPQ2d) citation should be given. If possible, a parallel citation to the United States Reports (U.S.), Federal Reporter (F., F.2d, or F.3d), or Federal Supplement (F. Supp. or F. Supp.2d) should also be given. The court or tribunal (2d Cir., C.C.P.A., Fed. Cir., TTAB, etc.) and the date of the decision should always be given.

When citing to a decision that is published and reported only in LexisNexis® and/or Westlaw®, for which there are no official print versions, the citing party should provide the name of the research service, case name, proceeding name and docket number, database identifier, court name, date, and screen, page, or paragraph numbers, if assigned. When citing to an unpublished decision of the Board, the examining attorney must either provide the Board's [TTABVUE](#) website address and explain how the applicant may locate and view the decision, or append the decision to the Office action.

Non-Precedential Decisions. Prior to December 27, 2006, it was the policy of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that Board opinions not designated as precedential should not be cited and, if cited, were to be disregarded. *Gen. Mills Inc. v. Health Valley Foods*, 24 USPQ2d 1270, 1275 n.9 (TTAB 1992). The Board has changed that policy. In announcing the change, the Board stated that:

[T]he Board will henceforth permit citation to any TTAB disposition as follows:

- The TTAB will continue its current practice of designating all final decisions as either precedential or not precedential. Unless specifically designated as precedential, an order on a motion should be considered not precedential.
- The TTAB will continue its practice of considering precedential decisions as binding upon the TTAB.
- A decision designated as not precedential is not binding upon the TTAB but may be cited for whatever persuasive value it might have.
- Citation to all TTAB decisions should be to the United States Patent Quarterly, if the decision appears therein; otherwise, to a USPTO public electronic database. If a non-precedential decision does not appear in the United States Patent Quarterly or the USPTO's public electronic databases, the citing party should append a copy of the decision to the motion or brief in which the decision is cited.
- Decisions of other tribunals may be cited to the extent allowed and for the purposes permitted by the tribunal that issued the decision.

[Citation of Opinions to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board](#), OG Notice (Jan. 23, 2007).

The examining attorney may cite sections of the *Trademark Manual of Examining Procedure* ("TMEP") or [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) ("TBMP"). The abbreviations "TMEP" and "TBMP" are usually sufficient; however, if the person prosecuting the application appears to be unfamiliar with USPTO practice, the examining attorney should identify the Manuals by their full names in the first citation to the Manuals. It is not necessary to provide a copy of the relevant section(s) of the Manuals.

When the examining attorney cites a Director's order or notice, the examining attorney should provide the title and date of the notice, and the specific issue of the *Official Gazette* in which it may be found.

705.06 Reviewing and Signing of Letters

Examining attorneys must review and sign every Office action using an electronic signature. The signature block should include the name, title, law office, telephone number, and e-mail address of the examining attorney. Thus, the signature block for an Office action issued by an examining attorney should be set forth as follows:

/Examining attorney's full name/
Trademark Examining Attorney
Law Office xxx
(571) xxx-xxxx
_____@uspto.gov

If an examining attorney does not have signatory authority, he or she must sign the action and refer it to an authorized signatory examining attorney, who will review and approve the action. Review by a reviewer should ordinarily be done within two working days after receipt from the non-signatory examining attorney.

705.07 Processing Outgoing Office Actions

A date is placed on all copies of paper Office actions when they are issued. For outgoing e-mail communications, including electronically issued Office actions, the date is applied automatically when the communication is released to the USPTO's electronic mail system.

One copy of the action signed by the examining attorney, along with any supporting evidence and/or copies of registered marks or pending applications cited as a bar to registration, is sent to the Trademark Image Capture and Retrieval System ("TICRS") and is available for review by the public through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval ("TSDR") portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>.

An applicant who authorizes e-mail communication will not receive the actual Office action by e-mail. Instead, upon issuance of the Office action, the USPTO will e-mail a notice to the applicant with a link or web address to access the Office action using TSDR. The Office action will not be attached to the e-mail notice. Upon receipt of the e-mail notice, the applicant may use the link or web address to view and print the actual Office action and any evidentiary attachments.

705.08 Six-Month Response Clause

Generally, the examining attorney's letter or Office action should include a "six-month response clause" notifying the applicant that the applicant must respond to the action within six months of the issuance date to avoid abandonment under [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§711-711.02](#) regarding the deadline for response to an Office action.

The examining attorney must *not* include a six-month response clause in an examiner's amendment (see [TMEP §§707-707.03](#)) or suspension notice (see [TMEP §§716-716.06](#)), or in a situation where the time for response runs from the issuance date of a previous Office action (see [TMEP §§711.01, 715.03\(c\)](#)).

706 New Matter Raised by Examining Attorney After First Action

If in the first Office action an examining attorney inadvertently failed to refuse registration on a clearly applicable ground or to make a necessary requirement, the examining attorney must take appropriate action to correct the inadvertent error in a subsequent action. Examining attorneys should exercise great care to avoid these situations, and should take this step only when the failure to do so would result in clear error (see [TMEP §706.01](#)). After the first action, supervisors (e.g., supervisors reviewing the quality of the examining attorney's work) should not introduce any new reason for refusal that is not clearly justified under the Act or rules.

Since it is unusual to make a new refusal or requirement that could have been raised in the first action, an examining attorney who does make a new refusal or requirement must clearly explain why the refusal or requirement is necessary, and apologize for the delay in raising the issue, if appropriate. See [TMEP §711.02](#) regarding supplemental Office actions.

Sometimes, the examining attorney must issue a new refusal or requirement because the applicant submits information that raises a new issue.

In a §66(a) application, the examining attorney cannot issue a new refusal more than 18 months after the date on which the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization ("IB") forwards the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. Thus, if the examining attorney determines that a new ground of refusal exists, a second Office action raising this new ground may be issued only if time remains in the 18-month period. In such a case, the examining attorney must contact the Madrid Processing Unit ("MPU") upon issuance of the Office action, so that a notification of the new ground of refusal can be sent to the IB. See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

706.01 "Clear Error"

The term "clear error" refers to an administrative internal guideline used by the USPTO to determine whether an examining attorney should issue a refusal or requirement that could or should have been raised in a previous action.

It is the policy of the USPTO to do a complete examination upon initial review of an application by an examining attorney, and to issue all possible refusals and requirements in the first Office action. See [TMEP §704.01](#). The USPTO will not issue a new refusal or requirement that could or should have been made in an earlier Office action unless it is necessary to do so to prevent the issuance of a registration that would violate the Trademark Act or applicable rules. See, e.g., [TMEP §706](#). For example, if evidence is discovered, after publication, that clearly demonstrates the proposed mark is a generic identifier for the goods, registration on either the Principal or Supplemental Register would be in violation of the Trademark Act and the Director will restore jurisdiction to the examining attorney to issue a new refusal of registration. See [TMEP §1504.04](#). See also [TMEP §1109.08](#) regarding the issuance of refusals and requirements during examination of a statement of use that could or should have been issued during initial examination of the application.

The internal "clear error" standard is merely an administrative guideline. It does not confer on an applicant any entitlement to a showing of clear error, nor does it impose a higher standard of proof on the examining attorney than is otherwise required to establish a prima facie case for the refusal or requirement.

Except as provided in [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)\(4\)](#), there is no restriction in the Trademark Act or Trademark Rules of Practice as to the period of time prior to registration when the USPTO may issue a new requirement

or new refusal. The USPTO has a duty to issue valid registrations and has broad authority to correct errors made by examining attorneys and other USPTO employees. *See Last Best Beef LLC v. Dudas*, 506 F.3d 333, 340, 84 USPQ2d 1699, 1704 (4th Cir. 2007) (“[F]ederal agencies, including the USPTO, have broad authority to correct their prior errors.”); *see also BlackLight Power Inc. v. Rogan*, 295 F.3d 1269, 63 USPQ2d 1534 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (affirming that USPTO officials acted within their authority in a reasonable manner when withdrawing a patent from issuance in order to fulfill the USPTO’s mission to issue valid patents, even after Notice of Allowance, payment of the issue fee, and notification of the issue date, and with publication of the drawing and claim in the *Official Gazette*). Thus, if the USPTO discovers that a mistake made during examination would result in issuance of a registration in violation of the Trademark Act or applicable rules, the USPTO must issue any necessary requirements or refusals, even if they could or should have been previously raised.

The question of whether a refusal or requirement was procedurally proper is reviewable on petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). However, “[q]uestions of substance arising during the ex parte prosecution of applications, including, but not limited to, questions arising under sections 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 23 of the Act of 1946, are not considered to be appropriate subject matter for petitions to the Director.” [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(b\)](#). Thus, the Director cannot consider on petition whether the issuance of or failure to issue a substantive refusal was a “clear error.” See [TMEP §1704](#) regarding petitionable subject matter, and [TMEP §1706](#) regarding the standard of review on petition.

On appeal, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will review only the correctness of the underlying substantive refusal of registration. *See In re Jump Designs, LLC*, 80 USPQ2d 1370, 1373–74 (TTAB 2006); *In re Sambado & Son, Inc.*, 45 USPQ2d 1312, 1314–15 (TTAB 1997).

707 Examiner’s Amendment

An examiner’s amendment should be used whenever appropriate to expedite prosecution of an application. An examiner’s amendment is a communication to the applicant in which the examining attorney states that the application has been amended in a specified way. Except in the situations listed in [TMEP §707.02](#), the amendment must be specifically authorized by the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or the applicant’s qualified practitioner. *Cf.* [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\), 2.74\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §707.01](#) regarding the authorization of an examiner’s amendment. Authorization is usually given in a telephone conversation, e-mail communication, or interview between the examining attorney and the applicant or the applicant’s qualified practitioner. See [TMEP §§304–304.09](#) regarding e-mail.

The examining attorney may issue an examiner’s amendment whenever the required amendment does not have to be verified by the applicant. For example, in appropriate circumstances, an examiner’s amendment may be used to amend the identification of goods/services, enter a disclaimer, add the state of incorporation, or amend from the Principal to the Supplemental Register.

The following are examples of amendments that may *not* be made by examiner’s amendment: the dates of use, if verification would be required (*see* [TMEP §903.04](#)); the mark on a special-form drawing (*see* [TMEP §§807.04–807.04\(b\)](#)), if the changes would require the filing of a substitute special form drawing; and amendments that require the submission of substitute specimen(s) (*see* [TMEP §904.05](#)). An application cannot be expressly abandoned by examiner’s amendment (*see* [TMEP §718.01](#)).

An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account cannot be entered by examiner’s amendment, unless the record already contains a written authorization, signed and submitted by someone authorized to charge fees to the account. See [TMEP §405.03](#) regarding deposit accounts.

Examiner's amendments generally are not used when there are statutory refusals. However, if there is a potential statutory refusal, and an amendment will obviate the refusal, the examining attorney may attempt to resolve the issues through an examiner's amendment.

Example: If the applicant could overcome a surname refusal for a mark that is in use in commerce by amending to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and suggest the amendment. If the applicant authorizes the amendment, the examining attorney may issue an examiner's amendment amending the application to the Supplemental Register.

Example: If the mark contains the term "organic" and the applicant could overcome a potential deceptiveness refusal by amending the identification to state that the goods are organic, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and suggest the amendment. If the applicant authorizes the amendment, the examining attorney may issue an examiner's amendment amending the identification.

Example: If the applicant could overcome a likelihood-of-confusion refusal as to several registrations by amending a vague or indefinite identification of goods/services, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and suggest the amendment only if it would obviate the refusals as to all the registrations that would be cited. If the applicant agrees to the proposed amendment clarifying the identification, the examining attorney may issue an examiner's amendment. If the applicant does not agree with the examining attorney's suggested identification and proposes an amendment that would obviate the refusal as to some, but not all, of registrations, the examining attorney may issue a combined examiner's amendment/priority action. See [TMPEP §708.05](#). However, when it is clear from the outset that amending the identification would not obviate the refusal as to one or more of the registrations, the examining attorney must not initiate telephone or e-mail contact, because it is not possible to offer the applicant a specific action to place the application in condition for publication, suspension, or registration.

Example: If the identification is vague or indefinite, the examining attorney may seek authorization to amend the identification by examiner's amendment, even when the amendment would not overcome a potential likelihood-of-confusion refusal. The examining attorney would then issue a notice of suspension. To ensure that the applicant understands that amending the identification will only put the application in condition for suspension, during the telephone or e-mail discussion, the examining attorney must notify the applicant of the prior pending application and the forthcoming suspension. The resulting examiner's amendment should also include this information.

See [TMPEP §708.04](#) regarding priority actions involving statutory refusals.

An examining attorney without partial signatory authority must have proper authorization from the managing attorney, senior attorney, or a reviewing examining attorney before initiating an examiner's amendment.

See [TMPEP §707.03](#) regarding the form of an examiner's amendment.

An applicant should *not* file correspondence confirming an examiner's amendment, because this will delay processing of the application. A written response to an examiner's amendment is not required.

If an applicant wishes to object to the examiner's amendment, this should be done immediately (preferably by telephone or e-mail), so that the objection can be considered before publication or issue. See [TMPEP §1402.07\(e\)](#) regarding an applicant's objection to an examiner's amendment of the identification of goods/services on the ground that the examiner's amendment does not reflect the agreement between the applicant and the examining attorney.

Often an applicant will seek to respond to an outstanding Office action with an amendment or other response by telephone. The examining attorney is encouraged to enter an examiner's amendment if this amendment will immediately place the application in condition for publication for opposition, issuance of a registration, or suspension. See [TMPEP §§716–716.06](#) regarding suspension. However, an applicant does not have an unlimited right to the entry of an examiner's amendment in response to an Office action. If the applicant does not agree to an amendment that the examining attorney believes will immediately place the application

in condition for publication for opposition or issuance of a registration, the applicant must file a complete written response to the outstanding Office action.

See [TMEP §708.05](#) regarding combined examiner's amendment/priority actions.

NOTE: In a §66(a) application, an examiner's amendment may *not* be issued on first action because the IB will not accept such amendments. Examiner's amendments may be issued on second and subsequent actions. See [TMEP §1904.02\(h\)](#) regarding Office actions in §66(a) applications.

707.01 Approval of Examiner's Amendment by Applicant or Applicant's Attorney

Except in the situations set forth in [TMEP §707.02](#) in which an examiner's amendment is permitted without prior authorization by the applicant, an examining attorney may amend an application by examiner's amendment only after securing approval of the amendment from the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant, or the applicant's qualified practitioner by telephone, e-mail, or in person during an interview. Cf. [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\), 2.74\(b\)](#); see TMEP §§ [304.01](#), [304.02](#), [602](#), [709.01–709.05](#).

If the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the examining attorney must communicate directly with the practitioner by phone or e-mail. If a qualified practitioner from the same firm as the qualified practitioner of record claims to be authorized by the practitioner of record to conduct business and approve amendments with respect to a specific application, the examining attorney will permit the practitioner to conduct business, and will note this fact in the examiner's amendment. Paralegals and legal assistants cannot authorize examiner's amendments, even if only conveying the appointed qualified practitioner's approval by indicating that the practitioner has approved the amendment.

If the applicant is pro se, the examining attorney must communicate directly with the individual applicant or with someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). Cf. [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(e\)](#). For joint applicants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, each joint applicant must authorize the examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §§611.06–611.06\(h\)](#) for guidelines on persons who have legal authority to bind various types of applicants.

A non-attorney who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) is *not* entitled to authorize an examiner's amendment, unless he or she has legal authority to bind the applicant.

The broad definition of "person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the [applicant]" in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §§611.03\(a\), 804.04](#)) does not apply to examiner's amendments.

The applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner must actually authorize the examiner's amendment.

The examining attorney may not leave an e-mail or voicemail message for the applicant or the qualified practitioner indicating that an amendment shall be entered if the applicant or practitioner does not respond to the message.

If an examining attorney contacts an applicant and reaches agreement to issue an examiner's amendment, but later determines that an Office action must be issued instead to state a refusal or requirement, the examining attorney should telephone or e-mail the applicant immediately to advise the applicant of the change of position.

Examining attorneys without partial signatory authority must advise applicants that issuance of the examiner's amendment is subject to review by a supervisory attorney.

707.02 Examiner's Amendment Without Prior Authorization by Applicant or Applicant's Attorney

Examining attorneys have the discretion to amend applications by examiner's amendment without prior approval by the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner (sometimes referred to as a "no-call" examiner's amendment) in the following situations:

- (1) In applications under §1 or §44, changes to international classification, either before or after publication (*see Groening v. Mo. Botanical Garden*, 59 USPQ2d 1601, 1603 (Comm'r Pats. 1999));
- (2) Deletion of "TM," "SM," "©," or "®" from the drawing;
- (3) Addition of a description of the mark where an Office action or regular examiner's amendment is otherwise unnecessary *and* one of the following conditions applies:
 - (a) The record already contains an informal indication of what the mark comprises (*see* [TMEP §808.03\(b\)](#)); *Example* - The cover letter accompanying a paper application refers to the mark as a stylized golf ball design. If appropriate, the examining attorney could enter an amendment that "the mark consists of the stylized design of a golf ball." *Example* - The application refers to the mark as a blue, red, and yellow ball and includes an accurate and properly worded color claim listing all colors in the mark, but the color yellow is omitted from the formal description of the colors in the mark (*see* [TMEP §807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#)). The examining attorney may enter an amendment of the formal color description to accurately reflect all colors in the mark;
 - (b) The mark consists only of wording in stylized font, with no color claim and with no design element, and the applicant did not provide the "literal element" of the mark in the appropriate field (*see* [TMEP §808.03\(b\)](#)); or
 - (c) The mark includes no color claim and consists only of wording in combination with underlining or a common geometric shape used as a vehicle for the display of the wording (*see* [TMEP §808.03\(b\)](#)).
- (4) If the examining attorney determines that a description of the mark will not be printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the registration certificate, and it is unnecessary to issue an Office action or a regular examiner's amendment regarding other matters, the examining attorney may enter a Note to the File in the record or issue a "no-call" amendment to that effect. *See* [TMEP § 808.03](#);
- (5) In applications under §1, amendment of the application to enter a standard character claim when the record clearly indicates that the drawing is intended to be in standard character form. *See* [TMEP § 807.03\(g\)](#);
- (6) Correction of obvious misspellings, typographical errors, and redundancies in the identification of goods/services, or in an otherwise accurate and complete description of the mark. *See* [TMEP §§808.03\(a\), 1402.01\(a\)](#); *Example* - The goods are identified as "T-shurtz." The examining attorney may amend to "T-shirts." However, "shurtz" may not be amended to "shirts" without calling the applicant, because "shurtz" (without the "T-" prefix) might also be a misspelling of "shorts."
- (7) When an applicant fails to respond to a refusal or requirement that is expressly limited to only certain goods, services, and/or class(es), the examining attorney may issue an examiner's amendment deleting the goods/services/classes to which the refusal or requirement pertained. Similarly, when an applicant fails to respond to a requirement to amend some terminology in an otherwise acceptable identification of goods/services, the examining attorney may issue an examiner's amendment deleting the unacceptable terminology from the identification. *See* [TMEP §§718.02\(a\), 1402.13](#);
- (8) In applications under §1 or §44, deletion of bracketed material from an entry taken from the USPTO's [Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual](#). Bracketed material sometimes appears in the Manual for informational purposes but should not be included in an identification of goods/services. *See* [TMEP §1402.12](#). If this material is entered in an identification, it will be automatically deleted in all

TEAS applications. In a paper application, the examining attorney may delete the bracketed material with a “no-call” examiner’s amendment;

(9) If, in response to a general or specific inquiry about translation and/or transliteration of non-English wording in the mark, the applicant does not directly state that the term has no meaning in a foreign language but instead responds to the effect that “the mark has only trademark significance,” the examining attorney may enter a statement that “the term has no meaning in a foreign language” into the record. See [TMEP §809.01\(a\)](#);

(10) When an applicant provides a translation statement that has the proper translation but is in a format that is not suitable for printing, the examining attorney may “reformat” the statement, without changing the substance, into a simple, clear statement as to meaning. See [TMEP §809.03](#).

(11) When an application includes foreign wording that is not translated, and a translation of the same foreign wording appears in a prior registration for which the applicant has claimed ownership, and the translation is acceptable to the examining attorney, the examining attorney may enter the identical translation into the record. Note: If the application was filed using the TEAS Plus form and the translation was omitted, the examining attorney may not issue an examiner’s amendment without prior authorization. The examining attorney must take appropriate action requiring the translation and the additional TEAS Plus processing fee. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\), 2.22\(a\)\(16\), \(b\)](#); [TMEP §§ 819.01, 819.01\(m\)](#).

If the examining attorney must contact the applicant or the applicant’s qualified practitioner about other matters, or if the record contains any ambiguity as to the applicant’s intent, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that the above changes have been made.

If the applicant has authorized e-mail communication with the USPTO, the applicant will receive an e-mail notification when an examiner’s amendment is issued. The applicant may then view and/or print the examiner’s amendment from the USPTO website. If the applicant has not authorized e-mail communication with the USPTO, a copy of the examiner’s amendment will be sent to the applicant. Any applicant who disagrees with any of these changes should contact the examining attorney immediately after reviewing or receipt of the examiner’s amendment, preferably by telephone or e-mail.

Note: In a §66(a) application, an examiner’s amendment may not be issued on first action because the IB will not accept such amendments. Examiner’s amendments may be issued on second and subsequent actions. See [TMEP §1904.02\(h\)](#) regarding Office actions in §66(a) applications.

707.03 Form of the Examiner’s Amendment

An examiner’s amendment should include the following information: the name, law office, telephone number, and e-mail address of the examining attorney; the name of the person interviewed; the date of the interview; the actual amendment; and, if applicable, a statement to the effect that the amendment has been authorized by the applicant or the applicant’s qualified practitioner.

The examiner’s amendment must not include a six-month response clause, because a written response by the applicant is not required for an examiner’s amendment.

The examiner’s amendment must include a search clause (see [TMEP §704.02](#)) if it is a first action, or if the applicant has not previously been advised of the results of a search.

The examining attorney must not state in the examiner’s amendment that the application is ready for publication or issue, because some unforeseen circumstance might require that further action be taken in the application.

The examiner's amendment must indicate any refusals or requirements that are withdrawn and/or continued by the examining attorney.

708 Priority Action

708.01 Priority Action Defined

A “priority action” is an Office action that is issued following a telephone conversation, personal interview, or e-mail communication in which the examining attorney and the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or the applicant's qualified practitioner discuss the various issues raised in an application and what actions the applicant must take to put the application in condition for publication or registration. A priority action is generally used when the action requires verification by the applicant. The use of priority actions is encouraged to expedite examination.

A priority action should be issued according to the following procedure: (1) the examining attorney telephones or e-mails the applicant or applicant's qualified practitioner and requests that the applicant take some specific action, explaining the reasons; (2) the applicant or applicant's qualified practitioner specifically discusses the merits of the application with the examining attorney; (3) the examining attorney prepares and signs a priority action that fully discusses all refusals or requirements, includes evidence to support the refusals and/or requirements, and specifically describes what action the applicant may take in order to put the application into condition for publication or registration; and (4) the USPTO sends a copy of the priority action to the applicant.

If the evidence of record supports a statutory refusal of registration, a priority action may be issued only if the examining attorney believes that an amendment or explanation will obviate the refusal. See [TMEP §708.04](#).

See [TMEP §708.03](#) regarding the form of a priority action.

Note: In a §66(a) application, an examining attorney may issue a priority action as a first action. See [TMEP §1904.02\(h\)](#) regarding Office actions in §66(a) applications.

708.02 Discussion of Issues and Agreements

The examining attorney must discuss the issues with the individual applicant, a person with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant, or the applicant's qualified practitioner. The broad definition of “person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the [applicant]” in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §§611.03\(a\)](#), [804.04](#)) does not apply to priority actions.

Only the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant, or a qualified practitioner can agree to a priority action. If the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the examining attorney must speak directly to the practitioner. See [TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#) for guidelines on persons authorized to practice before the USPTO in trademark matters.

If a qualified practitioner from the same firm as the qualified practitioner of record claims to be authorized by the qualified practitioner of record to conduct business and approve amendments with respect to a specific application, the examining attorney will permit the practitioner to authorize issuance of the priority action, and will note this fact in the priority action.

Paralegals and legal assistants cannot authorize issuance of a priority action, even if only conveying the qualified practitioner's approval by indicating that the practitioner has agreed to the priority action.

If the applicant is pro se, the examining attorney must speak directly to the individual applicant or to someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership).

Cf. [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(e\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.06–611.06\(h\)](#) for guidelines on persons who have legal authority to bind various types of applicants.

A non-attorney who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) may not authorize issuance of a priority action, unless he or she also has legal authority to bind the applicant.

During the telephone conversation, e-mail discussion, or other communication, the examining attorney must fully discuss all refusals and requirements relating to the application, and explain the reason(s) for each refusal or requirement. Whenever possible, the examining attorney should suggest appropriate language for amendments. A priority action is *not* appropriate when:

1. the examining attorney leaves a voicemail or e-mail message for the applicant or applicant's qualified practitioner, but the applicant or practitioner does not call back or respond to the message;
2. the examining attorney telephones the applicant or applicant's attorney but the attorney does not have time to discuss the application and requests that the examining attorney send a letter; or
3. the examining attorney e-mails the applicant or applicant's attorney and merely states that there are problems with the application (e.g., indefinite identification, a disclaimer requirement, and clarification of entity type) and that a letter will be sent.

All the issues in the priority action must be discussed on the merits with the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner in a good-faith attempt to resolve any issues and place the application in condition for publication or registration, as appropriate. However, an agreement as to precisely how all issues will be resolved is not necessary.

Example: If the goods are identified as "computer equipment," the examining attorney may seek authorization to amend the identification to list the types of computer equipment. If the applicant or applicant's attorney does not agree to the suggested amendment, the examining attorney may issue a priority action that fully explains the identification requirement. It may also state that "the applicant will submit an acceptable identification of goods that specifies the common commercial names of the types of computer equipment." It is not necessary that there be an agreement that "the applicant will amend the identification of goods to, for example, computer keyboards, computer monitors, and computer printers."

The priority action may state that the applicant will follow one of two alternative courses of action, for example, providing either an amended drawing or a new specimen.

708.03 Form of the Priority Action

The priority action should reference the date of the telephone call, e-mail message, or other communication, and the name and title (where appropriate) of the person who authorized the priority action. See [TMEP §708.02](#) for information about who may authorize issuance of a priority action.

A priority action must include a six-month response clause (*see* [TMEP §705.08](#)) so that it is clear that the applicant must timely respond to the priority action to avoid abandonment of the application.

The priority action must include a search clause (*see* [TMEP §704.02](#)) if it is a first action, or if the applicant has not previously been advised of the results of a search.

The priority action must also: (1) fully discuss all refusals and/or requirements; (2) include sufficient evidence to support all refusals and/or requirements; and (3) specifically describe what action the applicant may take in order to put the application into condition for publication or registration. See [TMEP §708.02](#) regarding discussion of issues on the merits.

The examining attorney should discuss each issue separately, stating the reason for the refusal and/or requirement and/or citing the relevant sections of the statute, rules, and/or TMEP. The essential nature of the refusal or requirement, and any pertinent advisories relating thereto, must be clearly stated in the priority action, and fully supported by appropriate evidence (if applicable), because the action of the USPTO is based exclusively on the written record. [37 C.F.R. §2.191](#).

A priority action may be used for a final or nonfinal refusal or requirement. See [TMEP §708.04](#) regarding refusal of registration in a priority action, and [TMEP §§714–714.06](#) regarding final actions.

708.04 Refusal of Registration in Priority Action

Priority actions are generally used when there are no statutory refusals. However, if there is sufficient evidence to support a statutory refusal, and the examining attorney believes that an amendment or explanation will obviate the refusal, the examining attorney may attempt to resolve the issues through a priority action.

Example : If the applicant could overcome a surname refusal by submitting a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) of the Trademark Act for a mark that has been used in commerce for more than five years, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and discuss the refusal and the requirements for submitting a claim of acquired distinctiveness. See [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#) regarding §2(f). Because the claim of five years of use is generally required to be supported by a properly signed affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), the examining attorney may issue a priority action that fully discusses the refusal, includes sufficient evidence to support the refusal, and reiterates the suggested amendment and requirement.

Example: If the applicant could overcome a likelihood-of-confusion refusal limited to a particular class or classes in a multiple-class application by deleting the class(es), the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and suggest the amendment. If the applicant or applicant's attorney does not authorize an examiner's amendment, the examining attorney may issue a priority action that fully discusses the refusal, includes sufficient evidence to support the refusal, and expressly states that the refusal is limited to only certain class(es). See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).

Example: If the applicant could overcome a likelihood-of-confusion refusal as to several registrations by amending a vague or indefinite identification of goods/services, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and suggest the amendment. If the applicant or applicant's attorney does not authorize an examiner's amendment, the examining attorney may issue a priority action that fully discusses the refusal, includes sufficient evidence to support the refusal, and reiterates the suggested amendment to the identification. However, if amending the identification would obviate the refusal as to fewer than all of the registrations, the examining attorney must not initiate telephone or e-mail communication, and, therefore, may not issue a priority action.

Example: If there are multiple co-pending applications, and a likelihood-of-confusion refusal could be obviated as to some of the applications by amending the identification, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact and suggest the amendment only as to those applications. If the applicant or applicant's attorney does not authorize an examiner's amendment, the examining attorney may issue priority actions that fully discuss the refusal, include sufficient evidence to support the refusal, and reiterate the suggested amendment to the identification. The examining attorney may not issue a priority action for any co-pending applications where an amendment to the identification would not obviate the refusal.

Example: If the applicant could overcome a descriptiveness refusal for a mark that is in use in commerce by amending to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact to discuss the refusal and suggest the amendment. If the applicant's attorney agrees that the mark is descriptive, but needs to consult with the applicant about amending to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney may issue a priority action that fully discusses the refusal, includes sufficient evidence to support the refusal, and offers the option of amending to the Supplemental Register.

Example: If the applicant could overcome a geographically descriptive refusal for a mark that is in use in commerce by amending to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney may initiate telephone or e-mail contact to discuss the refusal and suggest the

amendment. Even if the applicant disagrees as to the merits of the underlying refusal, the examining attorney may issue a priority action that fully discusses the refusal, includes sufficient evidence to support the refusal, and reiterates the option of amending to the Supplemental Register.

In the priority action, the examining attorney must clearly state the basis for the refusal that was discussed, citing the relevant sections of the statute and rules, attaching evidence to support the refusal, and indicating the resolutions agreed upon or the options offered.

If the priority action includes a final refusal, the priority action must clearly indicate that the refusal is FINAL, and should contain any additional supporting evidence necessary for a complete record on appeal. See [TMEP §§714–714.06](#) regarding final actions.

708.05 Combined Examiner’s Amendment/Priority Action

An examining attorney may issue an Office action that combines an examiner’s amendment and priority action, if the requirements for both have been met. The examiner’s-amendment portion reflects the authorized amendments, and the priority-action section addresses the refusals and requirements that remain outstanding and to which the applicant must still respond. An examining attorney may not issue a “no-call” examiner’s amendment/priority action, because the issues in the priority action portion of the action have not been discussed with the applicant or applicant’s qualified practitioner.

The action must include a six-month response clause (*see* [TMEP §705.08](#)) so that it is clear that the applicant must timely respond to the issues raised in the priority action to avoid abandonment of the application. The action must also include the subheadings “Priority Action” and “Examiner’s Amendment” to facilitate processing.

Example: After determining that an application requires a disclaimer and clarification of the entity type and color claim, and that the specimen shows ornamental use of the mark, if the examining attorney obtains authorization from the applicant or applicant’s attorney only to amend the entity type and color claim, a combined examiner’s amendment/priority action may be issued. The examiner’s-amendment section memorializes the amendments to the entity type and color claim. The priority action portion fully addresses the ornamental refusal and disclaimer requirement, includes sufficient evidence to support each, and reiterates the action that would put the application in condition for publication or registration.

Example: If the examining attorney determines that an application lacks the necessary translation statement and that the specimen is unacceptable, and during a discussion of these issues the applicant agrees to entry of a suggested translation statement, but states that she needs to consider what to do about the specimen, the examining attorney may issue a combined examiner’s amendment/priority action. The examiner’s-amendment section memorializes the agreed-upon translation statement. The priority-action portion fully addresses the specimen refusal and includes all actions that would put the application in condition for publication or registration.

Example: If the application contains the “SM” symbol on the drawing, an indefinite identification, and an unclear entity type, the examining attorney may not issue a no-call examiner’s amendment/priority action to delete by examiner’s amendment the “SM” symbol and address by priority action the identification and entity requirements. Since no discussion occurred, the requirements for a priority action have not been met. However, the examining attorney may telephone or e-mail the applicant or applicant’s attorney, discuss the requirements, and issue a combined examiner’s amendment/priority action, if appropriate.

NOTE: In a §66(a) application, an examining attorney may not issue a combined examiner’s amendment/priority action as a first action. See [TMEP §1904.02\(h\)](#) regarding Office actions in §66(a) applications.

709 Interviews

A discussion between the applicant or applicant’s qualified practitioner and the examining attorney in which the applicant presents matters for the examining attorney’s consideration is considered an interview. An

interview can be conducted in person, by telephone, or by e-mail. See [TMEP §§304–304.09](#) regarding e-mail.

The application will not normally be processed out of turn as a result of the interview, and the interview does not extend the deadline for response to an outstanding Office action.

The examining attorney may not discuss inter partes questions with any of the interested parties. See [TMEP §1801](#).

709.01 Personal Interviews

Personal interviews with examining attorneys concerning applications and other matters pending before the USPTO are permissible on any working day and must be in the office of the respective examining attorney, within office hours that the examining attorney may designate.

Personal interviews must be arranged in advance, preferably by fax, e-mail, or telephone. This will ensure that the assigned examining attorney will be available for the interview at the scheduled time and will have an opportunity to review the application record. The unexpected appearance of a qualified practitioner or applicant requesting an interview without any previous notice to the examining attorney is not appropriate.

An interview should be conducted only when it could serve to develop and clarify specific issues and lead to a mutual understanding between the examining attorney and the applicant. Interviews should not extend beyond a reasonable time.

The examining attorney should not hesitate to state that matter presented for consideration during the interview requires further research, if this is the case. Furthermore, the examining attorney may conclude an interview when it appears that no common ground can be reached.

During an interview with a pro se applicant who is not familiar with USPTO procedure, the examining attorney may in his or her discretion make suggestions that will advance the prosecution of the application, but these interviews should not be allowed to become unduly long.

When an agreement is reached during an interview but it is not possible to resolve all issues through an examiner's amendment, the examining attorney should enter a Note to the File in the record concerning the agreement, and request that the applicant incorporate the agreement in its response.

Sometimes, the examining attorney who conducted the interview is transferred, resigns, or retires, and examination of the application is taken over by another examining attorney. If there is an indication in the record that an interview was held, the new examining attorney should endeavor to ascertain whether any agreements were reached during the interview. The new examining attorney should take a position consistent with agreements previously reached, unless doing so would be a clear error (see [TMEP §706.01](#)).

Except in unusual situations, no interview on the merits is permitted after the brief on appeal is filed, or after an application has been forwarded for publication or issue.

709.02 Persons Who May Represent Applicant in an Interview

In general, interviews are not granted to persons who lack proper authority from the applicant. See [TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#) regarding persons who may represent an applicant before the USPTO in a trademark

matter, and [TMEP §§611.06–611.06\(h\)](#) for information on persons with legal authority to bind various types of juristic applicants.

The examining attorney may request proof of a person's authority if there is any reason to suspect that the person is not, in fact, a qualified practitioner who is authorized to represent the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)\(2\)](#).

For an interview with an examining attorney who does not have signatory authority, arrangements should be made for the presence of an examining attorney who does have such authority and who is familiar with the application, so that an authoritative agreement may be reached, if possible, at the time of the interview.

USPTO employees are forbidden to engage in oral or written communication with a disbarred, suspended, or excluded practitioner (*see* [TMEP §608.02](#)), unless the practitioner is the applicant.

Requests for interviews from third parties are inappropriate and should be directed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. *See* [TMEP §1801](#).

709.03 Making Substance of Interview of Record

The substance of an interview must always be made of record in the application, since the action of the USPTO is based exclusively on the written record. [37 C.F.R. §2.191](#). This should be done promptly after the interview while the matters discussed are fresh in the minds of the parties.

If possible, agreements reached in the interview should be incorporated in an examiner's amendment or priority action. Otherwise, to ensure that any agreements reached at an interview will be implemented, and to avoid subsequent misunderstanding, the examining attorney should include, in a Note to the File, a list of the issues discussed and indicate whether any agreement was reached. *See* [TMEP §709.04](#) for further information about Notes to the File.

The applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner may also make the substance of an interview part of the record by incorporating a summary of the interview in the applicant's response to the Office action. If there is any disagreement between the examining attorney and the applicant as to the substance of the interview, the written record governs. [37 C.F.R. §2.191](#).

709.04 Telephone and E-Mail Communications

Examining attorneys should initiate telephone or e-mail communications (i.e., "informal communications") whenever possible to expedite prosecution of an application. Similarly, applicants and qualified practitioners may telephone or e-mail examining attorneys, if they feel that a telephone call or e-mail will advance prosecution of an application. *See* [TMEP §709.05](#) regarding guidelines for informal communications. Therefore, all documents filed in connection with the application should include the telephone number of the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner.

The examining attorney must respond to telephone calls and e-mail messages within a reasonable time, normally the same working day and never later than the next working day.

Generally, the examining attorney who prepared the action, and not the supervisory or reviewing examining attorney, should be the person contacted by telephone or e-mail. However, a non-signatory examining

attorney must secure proper authorization from the managing attorney, senior attorney, or reviewing examining attorney before approving an amendment.

The action of the USPTO is based exclusively on the written record and all relevant communications, including informal communications, must be made part of the record. [37 C.F.R. §2.191](#). Therefore, the examining attorney must use an examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §§707–707.03](#)), or priority action (*see* [TMEP §§708–708.05](#)), upload all relevant e-mail communications, and enter a Note to the File regarding issues discussed by telephone. *See* [TMEP §709.03](#).

Notes to the File must not summarize arguments or legal conclusions. Rather, the Note to the File must merely list the issues discussed and indicate any agreement that may have been reached. If no agreement was reached, that should be noted also.

If an examining attorney does not respond to a telephone or e-mail message within two business days, the applicant may telephone the law office manager or supervisor. Contact information is available on the USPTO website at [http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/Other TM Contact Info.jsp](http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/Other_TM_Contact_Info.jsp).

709.05 Informal Communications

An applicant may conduct informal communications with an examining attorney regarding a particular application by telephone, e-mail (*see* [TMEP §§304.01–304.02](#)), or fax. Informal communications should be conducted only if they serve to develop and clarify specific issues and lead to a mutual understanding between the examining attorney and the applicant. For example, an applicant may telephone or send an e-mail regarding:

- Questions regarding an outstanding Office action that do not constitute a response;
- Authorization to issue an examiner's amendment or priority action (*see* [TMEP §§707.01, 708.01](#));
- Objection to an examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §§ 707, 707.02](#));
- Notification of termination of a cancellation proceeding that is the basis for suspension (*see* [TMEP §716.02\(a\)](#)); or
- A request to arrange a convenient time to speak by telephone.

Informal communications may not be used to request advisory opinions as to the likelihood of overcoming a substantive refusal. The examining attorney should advise the applicant to file a formal response for consideration of arguments regarding any substantive refusal.

If the examining attorney determines that continuing (or prolonged) informal communications by telephone or e-mail will not serve to further develop and clarify specific issues and lead to a mutual understanding between the examining attorney and the applicant, he or she must advise the applicant to file a formal response.

An informal communication does not constitute a response to an outstanding Office action and does not extend the deadline for response.

Relevant e-mail and phone communications must be made part of the record, because the USPTO uses them in decision making, and anything used in decision making must be made of record. [37 C.F.R. §2.191](#). Therefore, the examining attorney must upload all relevant e-mail communications and must enter a Note to the File regarding issues discussed by telephone. *See* [TMEP §709.04](#) for further information about Notes to the File.

The applicant should monitor the status of an application after an informal communication to avoid abandonment. For example, if the applicant expects an examiner's amendment or priority action to be issued and the status does not show that it has been sent, the applicant should promptly contact the examining attorney to inquire. Reviewing the status may be done through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval ("TSDR") database at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>, or by calling the Trademark Assistance Center ("TAC") at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199. See [TMEP §§108.03](#) and [1705.05](#) regarding the duty to monitor the status of an application in cases where a notice or action from the USPTO is expected.

709.06 Interviews Prior to Filing Application

No interviews are permitted before the filing of an application. If a party has general questions about how to file an application, he or she can call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199. See [TMEP §108.02](#).

USPTO employees cannot give advice on trademark law. It is inappropriate for USPTO personnel to give legal advice, to act as a counselor for individuals, or to recommend a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.11](#).

710 Evidence

710.01 Evidence Supporting Refusal or Requirement

In general, the examining attorney must always support his or her action with relevant evidence and ensure that proper citations to the evidence are made in the Office action.

All evidence that the examining attorney relies on in making a requirement or refusal must be placed in the record and copies must be sent to the applicant.

In appropriate cases, the examining attorney may also present evidence that may appear contrary to the USPTO's position, with an appropriate explanation as to why this evidence was not considered controlling.

In some cases, this may foreclose objections from an applicant and present a more complete picture if there is an appeal. *Cf. In re Federated Dep't Stores Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1541, 1542 n.2 (TTAB 1987) (noting that the examining attorney is not obligated to provide every story found in a LexisNexis® search though it may present a more complete picture).

710.01(a) Evidence from Research Database

If evidence is obtained from a research database, the record should include an indication of the specific search that was conducted. The record should indicate the libraries and/or files that were searched and the results. If the examining attorney does not review all of the documents located in a search, the record should indicate the number of documents that were reviewed. The search summary should be made a part of the record and will provide most of this information. Information not indicated on the search summary, such as the number of documents viewed, should be stated in narrative in the Office action. The Office action should include a citation to the research service, indicating the service, the library and the file searched, and the date of the search (e.g., "LEXIS®, News and Business, All News (Sept. 25, 2009)").

When evidence is obtained from a research database, the examining attorney does not have to make all stories of record. It is sufficient to include only a portion of the search results, as long as that portion is a representative sample of what the entire search revealed. *In re Vaughan Furniture Co.*, 24 USPQ2d 1068,

1069 n.2 (TTAB 1992) . See also *In re Federated Dep't Stores Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1541, 1542 n.2 (TTAB 1987).

See [TMEP §710.01\(b\)](#) regarding evidence originating in foreign publications.

710.01(b) Internet Evidence

Articles downloaded from the Internet are admissible as evidence of information available to the general public, and of the way in which a term is being used by the public. However, the weight given to this evidence must be carefully evaluated, because the source may be unknown. See *In re Total Quality Grp. Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1474, 1475–76 (TTAB 1999) ; *Raccioppi v. Apogee Inc.*, 47 USPQ2d 1368, 1370–71 (TTAB 1998). When making Internet evidence part of the record, the examining attorney must both (1) provide complete information as to the date the evidence was published or accessed from the Internet, and its source (e.g. , the complete URL address of the website), and (2) download and attach the evidence to the Office action. See *Safer Inc. v. OMS Invs. Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1031, 1039 (TTAB 2010) . Providing only a website address or hyperlink to Internet materials is insufficient to make such materials of record. *In re Powermat Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d 1789, 1791 (TTAB 2013) ; *In re HSB Solomon Assocs. LLC*, 102 USPQ2d 1269, 1274 (TTAB 2012) . Because of the transitory nature of Internet postings, websites referenced only by address or hyperlinks may be modified or deleted at a later date without notification. See *Safer Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1039. Thus, information identified only by website address or hyperlink would not be available for verification by the applicant to corroborate or refute. See *In re HSB Solomon Assocs. LLC*, 102 USPQ2d at 1274.

A list of Internet search results generally has little probative value, because such a list does not show the context in which the term is used on the listed web pages. *In re Thomas Nelson, Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d 1712, 1715 (TTAB 2011) ; see *In re Bayer AG*, 488 F.3d 960, 967, 82 USPQ2d 1828, 1833 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (deeming Google® search results that provided very little context of the use of ASPIRINA to be “of little value in assessing the consumer public perception of the ASPIRINA mark”); *In re Tea and Sympathy, Inc.*, 88 USPQ2d 1062, 1064 n.3 (TTAB 2008) (finding truncated Google® search results entitled to little probative weight without additional evidence of how the searched term is used); *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021, 1026 (TTAB 2006) (rejecting an applicant’s attempt to show weakness of a term in a mark through citation to a large number of Google® “hits” because the “hits” lacked sufficient context); *In re King Koil Licensing Co.*, 79 USPQ2d 1048, 1050 (TTAB 2006) (noting that web page links “do little to show the context within which a term is used on the web page that could be accessed by the link”); *In re Remacle*, 66 USPQ2d 1222, 1223 n.2 (TTAB 2002) (finding the print-out of Internet search results to be of little probative value due to insufficient text to determine the nature of the information or its relevance); *In re Fitch IBCA Inc.*, 64 USPQ2d 1058, 1060 (TTAB 2002) (noting that “[e]vidence of actual use of a phrase by a website has far greater probative value” than a search summary). The examining attorney should attach copies of the website pages that show how the term is actually used.

As long as it is written in the English language, information originating on foreign websites or in foreign news publications that are accessible to the United States public may be relevant to discern United States consumer impression of a proposed mark. The probative value of such evidence will vary depending upon the context and manner in which the term is used. In *Bayer*, NEXIS® evidence that originated in foreign publications was deemed to be of “some probative value with respect to prospective consumer perception in the United States,” the Court noting “the growing availability and use of the internet as a resource for news, medical research results, and general medical information.” 488 F.3d at 969, 82 USPQ2d at 1835. In *Remacle*, the Board held evidence from a website in Great Britain admissible, noting that:

[I]t is reasonable to assume that professionals in medicine, engineering, computers, telecommunications and many other fields are likely to utilize all available resources, regardless of country of origin or medium. Further, the Internet is a resource that is widely available to these same professionals and to the general public in the United States. Particularly in the case before us, involving sophisticated medical technology, it is reasonable to consider a relevant article from an Internet web site, in English, about medical research in another country, Great Britain in this case, because that research is likely to be of interest worldwide regardless of its country of origin.

66 USPQ2d at 1224 n.5. However, the weight given to such evidence depends upon the context and manner in which the term is used. In *King Koil*, the Board gave only “limited probative value” to the contents of websites of commercial entities outside the United States showing use of the term “breathable” in relation to mattresses and bedding, stating that:

[C]onsumers may visit foreign web sites for informational purposes, even if they are more likely to focus on internet retailers that can easily ship items or make items available for pick up in a store in a location convenient to the purchaser. That would appear especially likely in a case such as this, where the item in question, a mattress, is large and potentially more expensive to ship than a smaller item. Accordingly, while we do not discount entirely the impact of foreign web sites in this case, we find them of much more limited probative value than in the *Remacle* case.

79 USPQ2d at 1050. See also *In re Nieves & Nieves LLC*, 113 USPQ2d 1639, 1642 (TTAB 2015) (finding that articles from non-U.S. publications have some probative value because the case concerns the perception of the relevant consumers, i.e., the general U.S. public, regarding the identity of a celebrity who lives and travels outside of the United States); *In re Cell Therapeutics, Inc.*, 67 USPQ2d 1795, 1797–98 (TTAB 2003) (relying on NEXIS® items from foreign wire services to support a refusal and distinguishing earlier decisions that accorded such evidence little probative value given the sophisticated public and the widespread use of personal computers that increase access to such sources).

With respect to evidence taken from the online Wikipedia® encyclopedia, at www.wikipedia.org, the Board has noted that “[t]here are inherent problems regarding the reliability of Wikipedia entries because Wikipedia is a collaborative website that permits anyone to edit the entries,” and has stated as follows:

[T]he Board will consider evidence taken from Wikipedia so long as the non-offering party has an opportunity to rebut that evidence by submitting other evidence that may call into question the accuracy of the particular Wikipedia information. Our consideration of Wikipedia evidence is with the recognition of the limitations inherent with Wikipedia (e.g., that anyone can edit it and submit intentionally false or erroneous information)....

As a collaborative online encyclopedia, Wikipedia is a secondary source of information or a compilation based on other sources. As recommended by the editors of Wikipedia, the information in a particular article should be corroborated. The better practice with respect to Wikipedia evidence is to corroborate the information with other reliable sources, including Wikipedia’s sources.

In re IP Carrier Consulting Grp., 84 USPQ2d 1028, 1032–33 (TTAB 2007).

Given its inherent limitations, any information obtained from Wikipedia® should be treated as having limited probative value. If the examining attorney relies upon Wikipedia® evidence and makes it of record, then

additional supportive and corroborative evidence from other sources should also be made of record, especially when issuing final actions.

The examining attorney should check applicant's own website for information about the goods/services. See *In re Promo Ink*, 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1303 (TTAB 2006), where the Board rejected applicant's argument that it was improper for the examining attorney to rely on evidence obtained from applicant's website when the application was based on intent to use and no specimens were yet required. According to the Board, "[T]he fact that applicant has filed an intent-to-use application does not limit the examining attorney's evidentiary options, nor does it shield an applicant from producing evidence that it may have in its possession."

Id.; see also *In re Reed Elsevier Props. Inc.*, 482 F.3d 1376, 1379, 82 USPQ2d 1378, 1380 (Fed. Cir. 2007); *In re Ameritox Ltd.*, 101 USPQ2d 1081, 1084–85 (TTAB 2011).

When a document found on the Internet is not the original publication, the examining attorney or Trademark Law Library staff should try to obtain a copy of the originally published document, if practicable.

Electronic-only documents are considered to be original publications, and scanned images are considered to be copies of original publications. Internet Usage Policy Notice, 64 Fed. Reg. 33056, 33063 (June 21, 1999).

See [TBMP §1208.03](#) for further information regarding the use of material obtained through the Internet in ex parte proceedings.

710.01(c) Record Must Be Complete Prior to Appeal

The record in any application should be complete prior to appeal. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(d\)](#). Accordingly, if an examining attorney or applicant attempts to introduce new evidence at the time of the appeal, the new evidence will generally be excluded from the record. [TBMP §1207.01](#); see *In re Fitch IBCA, Inc.*, 64 USPQ2d 1058, 1059 n.2 (TTAB 2002); *In re Trans Cont'l Records, Inc.*, 62 USPQ2d 1541, 1541 n.2 (TTAB 2002). However, the Board may consider evidence submitted after appeal, despite its untimeliness, if the non-offering party: (1) does not object to the evidence; and (2) discusses the evidence or otherwise treats it as being of record. See [TBMP §1207.03](#) and cases cited therein. Therefore, examining attorneys and applicants should: (a) object to the new evidence but not substantively discuss it; (b) object to the new evidence and, while preserving the objection, discuss why it in any event does not support the offeror's position; or (c) consider the new evidence.

Whenever an examining attorney objects to evidence submitted by an applicant, the objection should be raised as soon as possible and continued in the examining attorney's brief, or the Board may consider the objection to be waived. See *In re Broyhill Furniture Indus., Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1511, 1513 n.3 (TTAB 2001).

If the applicant or examining attorney wishes to introduce new evidence at the time of or during appeal, the party seeking to introduce the new evidence may request the Board to suspend the appeal and remand the case. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(d\)](#). See [TBMP §1207.02](#) and [TMEP §1504.05](#) regarding requests for remand.

The Board may take judicial notice of definitions from printed dictionaries that were not made of record prior to appeal, and may do so either sua sponte or upon request of the applicant or examining attorney.

See *In re La Peregrina Ltd.*, 86 USPQ2d 1645, 1647 n.3 (TTAB 2008); *In re Piano Factory Grp., Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1522, 1525 n.6 (TTAB 2006); *In re Canron, Inc.*, 219 USPQ 820, 821 (TTAB 1983); [TBMP §1208.04](#). However, the better practice is to ensure that the relevant material is included in the record prior to appeal. When requesting that the Board take judicial notice of a printed dictionary definition, the examining

attorney must provide sufficient information regarding the source of the definition (e.g., a copy of the title page of the dictionary). *See In re Gregory*, 70 USPQ2d 1792, 1793 (TTAB 2004) (declining to take judicial notice of dictionary definitions submitted with examining attorney's appeal brief, because neither the photocopied pages nor the examining attorney's brief specified the dictionaries from which the copies were made); [TBMP §1208.04](#).

Due to concerns about the reliability of online dictionary definitions that are not also available in printed form, the Board will not take judicial notice of this type of evidence unless the online dictionary is readily available and verifiable. *See In re Jimmy Moore LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1764, 1768 (TTAB2016) (taking judicial notice of definitions from an online dictionary that was also available in printed form, but refusing to take judicial notice of definitions from commercial websites, Wikipedia, and other unidentified online sources); *In re Red Bull GmbH*, 78 USPQ2d 1375, 1378 (TTAB2006) (taking judicial notice of an *Encarta Dictionary* definition, because the dictionary was a widely known reference, readily available in specifically denoted editions via the Internet and CD-ROM and thus was "the electronic equivalent of a print publication," which could be easily verified; refusing to take judicial notice of a definition from [www.wordsmyth.net](#), because the source of the definition was not identified on the submitted website excerpt or by the examining attorney and thus could not be verified); *In re CyberFinancial.Net, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1789, 1791 n.3 (TTAB2002) (taking judicial notice of online dictionary that was also available in printed form); *In re Total Quality Grp., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1474, 1476 (TTAB 1999) (declining to take judicial notice of online dictionary that did not exist in printed format, because the source was unknown and the Board was unsure whether the dictionary was readily available or reliable, stating that the evidence should have been made of record prior to appeal, so applicant would have the opportunity to check the reliability of the evidence and offer rebuttal evidence).

710.02 Search for Evidence Indicating No Refusal or Requirement Necessary

USPTO practice is to indicate the results of a search for evidence when the examining attorney considers an issue and determines that no action will be taken on it. This information is helpful for internal review. A Note to the File should be entered in the record to reflect that a search for evidence was conducted in any case in which the examining attorney determines that a search would be useful for review of the application, but that no further action is required.

The examining attorney should simply note the parameters of the search conducted *without stating any opinions or conclusions*.

For instance, in the case of a search of telephone directories for surnames, the record should indicate only the directories investigated and the number of occurrences of the surname. Or, in the case of a search for the meaning of a term, the record should show the sources checked and whether the term was found.

The Note to the File should *not* provide any of the examining attorney's analysis, opinions, or conclusions regarding the evidence when the examining attorney determines that a refusal or requirement is not appropriate. Nor should the examining attorney place in the record copies of e-mail messages or other communications between the examining attorney and other USPTO personnel concerning the application. And the examining attorney should not refer to, or place copies of, any registration or pending application that was considered in a §2(d) search, unless the examining attorney determines that there is a conflict and issues an Office action based on the application or registration.

710.03 Evidence of Third-Party Registrations

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board does not take judicial notice of registrations, and the submission of a list of registrations does not make these registrations part of the record. *In re 1st USA Realty Prof'ls, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1581, 1583 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Duofold Inc.*, 184 USPQ 638, 640 (TTAB 1974) ; [TBMP §1208.02](#) (“[T]he Board does not take judicial notice of records residing in the Patent and Trademark Office.”). Furthermore, the submission of a copy of a commercial search report is not proper evidence of third-party registrations. *In re Hub Distrib., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 284, 285 (TTAB 1983).

To make registrations of record, copies of the registrations or the complete electronic equivalent (i.e., complete printouts taken from the USPTO’s Trademark database) must be submitted. *In re Ruffin Gaming LLC*, 66 USPQ2d 1924, 1925 n.3 (TTAB 2002) ; *In re Volvo Cars of N. Am. Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d 1455, 1456 n.2 (TTAB 1998) ; *In re Broadway Chicken Inc.*, 38 USPQ2d 1559, 1561 n.6 (TTAB 1996) ; *In re Smith & Mehaffey*, 31 USPQ2d 1531, 1532 n.3 (TTAB 1994) .

If the applicant's response includes improper evidence of third-party registrations, the examining attorney must object to the evidence in the first Office action following the response. Otherwise the Board may consider the objection to be waived. See *In re Houston*, 101 USPQ2d 1534, 1536 (TTAB 2012) (finding that the examining attorney's failure to advise applicant of the insufficiency of the list of registrations when it was proffered during examination constituted a waiver of any objection to consideration of that list); *In re 1st USA Realty Prof'ls*, 84 USPQ2d at 1583 (allowing evidence of a list of third-party registrations because the examining attorney did not advise applicant of the insufficiency of the list while there was still time to correct the mistake) ; *In re Broyhill Furniture Indus., Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1511, 1513 n.3 (TTAB 2001) (finding examining attorney's objection to a listing of third-party registrations waived because it was not raised in the Office action immediately following applicant's response in which applicant’s reliance on the listing as evidence was indicated). If the applicant files an appeal, the examining attorney should continue the objection to the evidence in his or her appeal brief.

Note that third-party applications have no probative value other than as evidence that the applications were filed. *In re Toshiba Med. Sys. Corp.*, 91 USPQ2d 1266, 1270 n.8 (TTAB 2009) ; *In re Fiesta Palms LLC*, 85 USPQ2d 1360, 1366 n.7 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re 1st USA Realty Prof'ls Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1581, 1583 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Phillips-Van Heusen Corp.*, 63 USPQ2d 1047, 1049 n.4 (TTAB 2002) ; [TBMP §1208.02](#).

711 Deadline for Response to Office Action

The statutory period for response to an examining attorney’s Office action is six months from the Office action's date of issuance. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(a\)](#). The examining attorney has no discretion to shorten or extend this period. Thus, the applicant must file a response within six months unless the examining attorney has issued a supplemental action resetting the period for response. See [TMEP §711.02](#) regarding supplemental Office actions.

In a §66(a) application, a response to an Office action must be sent to the USPTO, not the IB, and is due in the USPTO within six months of the date on which the USPTO sends the action to the IB, not the date on which the IB processes the refusal. See TMEP [§1904.02\(h\)](#) for further information about Office actions and responses in §66(a) applications.

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that responses to Office actions be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Filing an amendment to allege use does not stay or extend the deadline for filing a response to an outstanding Office action, appeal to the Board, or petition to the Director. [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(d\)](#); [TMEP §1104](#).

See [TMEP §310](#) for information about computing the response period, [TMEP §§305.02](#) and [306.05](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness, and [TMEP §§718.02](#) and [718.03–718.03\(a\)](#) regarding abandonment for failure to respond or incomplete response to an Office action.

711.01 Time May Run from Previous Action

In most cases, the six-month statutory period to respond to an Office action runs from the issuance date of the Office action. In some situations, the examining attorney's Office action does not re-start the beginning of a statutory response period. For example, a notice that an applicant's response was incomplete (*see* [TMEP §718.03](#)), or a notice that an applicant's request for reconsideration of a final action fails to overcome a refusal or satisfy an outstanding requirement (*see* [TMEP §715.03\(c\)](#)), does not begin a new response period.

In all cases in which the statutory response period runs from the date of a previous Office action, the examining attorney must include a statement to that effect in the Office action, and must omit the six-month response clause.

711.02 Supplemental Office Action Resetting Response Period

Sometimes the examining attorney must issue a supplemental Office action that resets the six-month statutory period for response. If the examining attorney discovers after issuing an action that a refusal or requirement that should have been raised was overlooked, the examining attorney must issue a supplemental Office action addressing the issue and resetting the period for response. *See* [TMEP §706](#). The examining attorney must also issue a supplemental Office action if a new issue arises after the issuance date of a previous Office action (e.g. , during examination of an amendment to allege use).

If the examining attorney issues a supplemental Office action, a new six-month response period will begin running from the issuance date of the supplemental action. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#). In a supplemental Office action, the examining attorney should: (1) indicate that the action is supplemental to and supersedes the previous action; (2) specifically identify all of the outstanding refusals and/or requirements; and (3) include the standard six-month response clause.

In a §66(a) application, the examining attorney cannot issue a new refusal more than 18 months after the date on which the IB forwards the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)](#); [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

See [TMEP §717](#) regarding reissuing of Office actions.

712 Signature on Response to Office Action

A response to an Office action must be personally signed by a qualified practitioner or, if the applicant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer, or a general partner of a partnership). [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#), [11.18\(a\)](#). The examining attorney must review the application record to determine whether the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner (see 37 C.F.R. §11.14), and must ensure that all responses and amendments are properly signed. See [TMEP §§611.03\(b\)](#) and [712.02](#) regarding the proper person to sign, and [TMEP §611.06](#) as to persons who have legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities.

The signatory must personally sign his or her name. See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(a\)](#); [TMEP §611.01\(b\)](#). For electronic signatures on document filed through TEAS, the signatory must personally enter the elements of the electronic signature. See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§611.01\(b\), \(c\)](#).

The name of the person who signs the response should be set forth in printed or typed form immediately below or adjacent to the signature, or identified elsewhere in the filing (e.g., in a cover letter or other document that accompanies the filing). [TMEP §611.01\(b\)](#).

712.01 Persons Who May Sign Response

If an applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must personally sign the response. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\), 11.18\(a\)](#). This applies to both in-house and outside counsel.

If the applicant or registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) must sign the response. [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\), 2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#). In the case of joint applicants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign the response. [37 C.F.R. §2.19\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §611.06](#) for guidelines as to persons who have legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities. A person who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) is *not* entitled to sign responses to Office actions, unless he or she also has legal authority to bind the applicant or is a qualified practitioner.

Example : A corporate manager might have the firsthand knowledge and implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant required to verify facts under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) and still not have legal authority to bind the applicant.

If the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, and the response consists only of a declaration (e.g., if the verification was omitted from the initial application and no other issues were raised in the Office action), the response may be signed by a person authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §804.04](#)), and no separate signature by the practitioner is required.

However, if the response includes a verification and also contains legal arguments or amendments, the response must be signed by the practitioner. See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#).

Similarly, if the applicant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, and the response consists only of a declaration, the response may be signed by a person authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#), and no separate signature by the applicant or someone with legal authority to bind the applicant is required. However, if the response includes a verification and also contains legal arguments or amendments, the response must be signed by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant. [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\), 2.74\(b\), 2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#).

The examining attorney must ensure that the record establishes the authority of the person who signs the response. If a response to an Office action appears to be signed by an unauthorized person (e.g., a foreign attorney who is not authorized to practice before the USPTO or a corporate employee who does not have legal authority to bind the applicant), the examining attorney must treat the response as incomplete and require the applicant to submit a properly signed response. The response cannot be ratified by an examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §§ 608.01, 611.05–611.05\(c\)](#), and [712.03](#) for further information.

See [TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#) regarding persons who are authorized to represent others before the USPTO, and [TMEP §611.04](#) for examples of authorized and potentially unauthorized signatories.

These same principles apply to authorizations of examiner's amendments and priority actions. See TMEP §§ [707.01](#), [708.02](#).

712.02 Unsigned Response

The examining attorney should treat an unsigned response as an incomplete response, and should either call the applicant to obtain permission to enter an examiner's amendment from an authorized party (if appropriate), or issue a notice of incomplete response granting the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §718.03\(b\)](#). To issue a notice of incomplete response, the examining attorney should use the "Examiner's Non-Responsive Amendment" (or, if appropriate, "SU – Examiner's Non-Responsive Amendment") selection for a response to a nonfinal action or the "Examiner's Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30-day Letter" (or, if appropriate, "SU – Examiner's Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30-day Letter") selection if the response is to a final action. In either instance, the notice of incomplete response must not include a six-month response clause.

If the applicant is not represented by a qualified practitioner and the response does not require a signed verification (see [TMEP §§804–804.05](#)), the applicant or a person with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) may either request that the amendment(s) be entered through an examiner's amendment or submit a properly signed copy of the response. If the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, that practitioner must submit the response or request entry of an examiner's amendment. A duplicate of the original response can be submitted through TEAS (using the response to Office action form) or a properly signed copy of the original document can be submitted by fax (unless it is excluded by [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(d\)](#)). In a TEAS Plus or TEAS RF application, the response must be filed through TEAS or the application will lose TEAS Plus or TEAS RF status (see [TMEP §§819.02\(b\)](#), [820.02\(b\)](#)). The examining attorney must defer action on the merits of the response until the applicant files a properly signed response.

The substitute response must be personally signed by a qualified practitioner or, if the applicant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership). [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#); see [TMEP §§611.03\(b\)](#).

If an applicant fails to submit a properly signed response within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney must hold the application abandoned for failure to file a complete response. See [TMEP §718.03](#). In this situation, the applicant cannot file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). The applicant's recourse is to file a petition to the Director to reverse the examining attorney's holding of abandonment under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP §1713.02](#).

712.03 Response Signed by an Unauthorized Person

Notice of Incomplete Response. When it appears that a response to an Office action was signed by an improper party (e.g., a foreign attorney who is not authorized to practice before the USPTO, a corporate employee who does not have legal authority to bind the applicant, or, when the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, someone other than the practitioner or another qualified practitioner from the same firm), the examining attorney must treat the response as incomplete. The examining attorney must issue a notice of incomplete response granting the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response, pursuant to [37 C.F.R.](#)

[§2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§ 611.05\(a\), 718.03\(b\)](#)). The examining attorney must defer action on the merits of the response until a properly signed response is filed.

Applicant's Reply to Notice of Incomplete Response . If the person who signed the response was authorized to sign, the applicant's reply to the notice of incomplete response should state the nature of the relationship of the signer to the applicant. If the signer has legal authority to bind the applicant, the person should so state, and should set forth his or her title or position. If the signer is an attorney authorized to practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(a\)](#), the attorney should identify him or herself as an attorney and indicate the United States state bar of which he or she is a member in good standing. If the signer meets the requirements of either [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(b\)](#) or [\(c\)](#), the person should explain how he or she meets these requirements. See [TMEP §611.05\(b\)](#) for further information.

If the person who signed the response is not an authorized signer, the applicant is unrepresented, and all proposed amendments in the improperly signed response can be resolved by an examiner's amendment, the individual applicant or a person with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant may telephone the examining attorney to authorize such an amendment. If the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, that practitioner must authorize any examiner's amendment. Otherwise, the applicant must submit a response signed by the applicant or someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (*see* [TMEP §§712.01 et seq.](#)), or by a qualified practitioner. This should be done through TEAS (using either the "Response to Office Action" or "Request for Reconsideration after Final Office Action" form, as appropriate), or may be done by fax (unless it is excluded by [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(d\)](#)). In a TEAS Plus or TEAS RF application, the response must be filed through TEAS, or the application will lose TEAS Plus or TEAS RF status (*see* [TMEP §§819.02\(b\), 820.02\(b\)](#)). See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents submitted through TEAS.

When a response is signed by an unauthorized party, it is not acceptable for the applicant to ratify the response through an examiner's amendment.

Unsatisfactory Response or No Response . If no acceptable response is received within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney must hold the application abandoned for failure to file a complete response. See [TMEP §718.03](#). In this situation, the applicant cannot file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). The applicant's recourse is to file a petition to the Director to reverse the examining attorney's holding of abandonment under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP §1713.01](#) regarding the standard of review for reversing an examining attorney's holding of abandonment due to incomplete response.

713 Examination of Amendments and Responses to Office Actions

37 CFR §2.63(a) Repeated non-final refusal or requirement.

After response by the applicant, the examining attorney will review all statutory refusals and/or requirement(s) in light of the response.

(1) If, after review of the applicant's response, the examining attorney issues a non-final action that maintains any previously issued substantive refusal(s) to register or repeats any requirement(s), the applicant may submit a timely response to the action under § 2.62(a).

(2) If, after review of the applicant's response, the examining attorney issues a non-final action that contains no substantive refusals to register, but maintains any requirement(s), the applicant may respond to such repeated requirement(s) by filing a timely petition to the Director for relief from the repeated requirement(s) if the subject matter of the repeated requirement(s) is appropriate for petition to the Director (see § 2.146(b)).

The examining attorney will review all statutory refusals and/or requirements in light of the applicant's response and determine whether the mark may be approved for publication or registration. The examining attorney must carefully consider all arguments, comments, and amendments made or proposed by the applicant.

If the applicant's response has put the application in condition for approval for publication for opposition or registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication or registration, as appropriate.

If the applicant's response has not put the application in condition for publication or registration, the examining attorney will issue an Office action, or telephone or e-mail the applicant, depending on the circumstances.

If the applicant's response neither resolves all of the outstanding issues nor raises any new issues, and the applicant has had an opportunity to reply to all points raised by the examining attorney, the examining attorney's next action should be stated to be final. See [TMEP §§714–714.05\(f\)](#).

If the examining attorney has cited an earlier-filed conflicting application, and the applicant responds by arguing that there is no likelihood of confusion, the examining attorney should suspend the application pending disposition of the conflicting application, if applicant's arguments are not persuasive. See [TMEP §716.02\(c\)](#) regarding suspension pending disposition of an earlier-filed conflicting application, [TMEP §716.03](#) regarding the applicant's request to remove an application from suspension, and [TMEP §§1208–1208.02\(f\)](#) regarding conflicting marks in pending applications.

713.01 Previous Action by Different Examining Attorney

When assigned to act on an application that was previously handled by a different examining attorney, the examining attorney should act consistently with the examining attorney who handled the earlier-filed application, unless it would be clear error (see [TMEP §706.01](#)) to act consistently.

713.02 Noting All Outstanding Refusals or Requirements

Every refusal or requirement made in a prior Office action that is still outstanding must be referenced in any subsequent action, including Notices of Suspension. In addition, when a particular refusal or requirement has been withdrawn, obviated, or satisfied because of applicant's response or otherwise, the examining attorney should notify the applicant in any action that immediately follows.

Noting all outstanding refusals and requirements is done only as a courtesy to prevent any misunderstanding. A refusal or requirement issued in a previous action remains in effect unless the examining attorney specifically indicates that it has been withdrawn, obviated, or satisfied. Thus, if an examining attorney issues an Office action that does not mention an outstanding refusal or requirement that was raised in a previous action, the refusal or requirement may nonetheless be made final in a subsequent action, if the application is otherwise in condition to be made final.

713.03 Response to Applicant's Arguments in Nonfinal Actions

When the applicant submits arguments attempting to overcome a refusal or requirement, the examining attorney must respond to the applicant's arguments. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for an examining attorney's response to an applicant's incomplete response to a partial nonfinal refusal or requirement and [TMEP §§715.03](#) and [715.04](#) for an examining attorney's response to an applicant's arguments in a request for reconsideration after final action.

In response to a refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), the applicant may respond that the cited registration should be cancelled because the registrant has not filed the required maintenance documents.

The examining attorney must not withdraw a refusal of registration under §2(d) until the Trademark database shows that the registration is cancelled or expired. To allow ample time for processing of timely filed post-registration maintenance documents, the USPTO waits until 30 days *after* the expiration of the grace period before updating its records to show that the registration is cancelled or expired.

If the examining attorney determines that 30 days have passed since the expiration of the grace period, but the Trademark database does not indicate that the registration is cancelled or expired, the examining attorney should contact the Supervisor of the Post Registration Section and request that the database be updated to show that the registration is cancelled or expired. See [TMEP §1611](#). If a party other than the examining attorney determines that 30 days have passed since the expiration of the grace period, but the Trademark database does not indicate that the registration is cancelled or expired, the party should contact the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 and request that the database be updated to show that the registration is cancelled or expired.

See [TMEP §716.02\(e\)](#) regarding when suspension is proper for awaiting cancellation/expiration of a cited registration for failure to file required maintenance documents.

714 Final Action

37 CFR §2.63(b) Final refusal or requirement.

Upon review of a response, the examining attorney may state that the refusal(s) to register, or the requirement(s), is final.

(1) If the examining attorney issues a final action that maintains any substantive refusal(s) to register, the applicant may respond by timely filing: (i) a request for reconsideration under paragraph (b)(3) of this section that seeks to overcome any substantive refusal(s) to register, and comply with any outstanding requirement(s), maintained in the final action; or (ii) an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board under §§ 2.141 and 2.142.

(2) If the examining attorney issues a final action that contains no substantive refusals to register, but maintains any requirement(s), the applicant may respond by timely filing: (i) a request for reconsideration under paragraph (b)(3) of this section that seeks to comply with any outstanding requirement(s) maintained in the final action; (ii) an appeal of the requirement(s) to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board under §§ 2.141 and 2.142; or (iii) a petition to the Director under § 2.146 to review the requirement(s), if the subject matter of the requirement(s) is procedural, and therefore appropriate for petition.

(3) Prior to the expiration of the time for filing an appeal or a petition, the applicant may file a request for reconsideration of the final action that seeks to overcome any substantive refusal(s) and/or comply with any outstanding requirement(s). Filing a request for reconsideration does not stay or extend the time for filing an appeal or petition. The Office will enter amendments accompanying requests for reconsideration after final action if the amendments comply with the rules of practice in trademark cases and the Act.

(4) Filing a request for reconsideration that does not result in the withdrawal of all refusals and requirements, without the filing of a timely appeal or petition, will result in abandonment of the application for incomplete response, pursuant to § 2.65(a).

714.01 Not Permissible on First Action

A first action by an examining attorney may not be a final action. An applicant is entitled to at least one opportunity to reply to any refusal(s) or requirement(s) raised by the examining attorney.

714.02 Not Permissible on Suspension

A letter of suspension cannot be made final. See [TMEP §§716–716.06](#) regarding suspension.

714.03 When Final Action is Appropriate

Final action is appropriate when a clear issue has been developed between the examining attorney and the applicant, i.e., the examining attorney has previously raised all outstanding issues and the applicant has had an opportunity to respond to them.

For a second action to be made final, all substantive refusals or requirements must have been made in the first action. No refusal or requirement may be made final, even if it is a repeated refusal or requirement, unless the entire action is made final. Thus, if the examining attorney makes a new refusal or requirement in a second or subsequent action, any previously issued refusals or repeated requirements may not be made final, but instead should be maintained.

In an application with a claim of priority based on §44(d) in which the applicant has indicated an intent to rely on §44(e) as a basis for registration, the examining attorney may not issue a final action until the applicant submits a copy of the foreign registration. When the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal, the examining attorney must suspend action on the application pending receipt of a copy of the foreign registration. The notice of suspension must indicate all outstanding refusals or requirements that will be made final upon receipt of the foreign registration if no new issues are raised. See [TMPEP §§716.02\(b\), 1003.04\(a\), \(b\)](#).

Second actions should be final actions whenever possible. While an applicant is entitled to a full and fair hearing, it is in the public interest that prosecution be limited to as few actions as is consistent with proper examination. Neither the Act nor the rules of practice give an applicant the right to an extended prosecution.

See [TMPEP §§714.05–714.05\(f\)](#) for further discussion of when an examining attorney should issue a nonfinal action rather than a final action, and [TMPEP §714.06](#) regarding final actions that are premature.

714.04 Form of the Final Action

When making an action final, the examining attorney must restate any substantive refusals or requirements that remain outstanding, and must cite the rule(s) and/or statute(s) that provide the basis for these refusals or requirements. The examining attorney should place all evidence in support of his or her refusal in the record at the time the final action is issued.

The final action should include a clear and unequivocal statement that the refusal or requirement is final. When there is more than one ground set out as the basis for the final action, the action may begin or conclude with a paragraph containing wording such as “This action is made FINAL” or “This is a FINAL action,” which covers all grounds.

The final action must also mention any refusals or requirements that have been obviated, withdrawn, or satisfied. See [TMPEP §713.02](#).

The examining attorney must include a statement that the only proper response to a final action is an appeal to the Board (or a petition to the Director, if permitted under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#)), or compliance with the outstanding requirement(s). [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(1\)-\(2\)](#).

A final action must include a six-month response clause (see [TMPEP §705.08](#)) so that it is clear that the applicant must file a timely response to avoid abandonment of the application.

714.05 Delineating New Issues Requiring Issuance of Nonfinal Action

It is sometimes difficult to determine what constitutes a new issue requiring a new nonfinal action, rather than a final action, after receipt of a response. See [TMEP §§714.05\(a\) – 714.05\(f\)](#) regarding the propriety of issuing a final action in specific situations, and [TMEP §§715.03\(b\)](#) and [715.04\(b\)](#) regarding new issues presented in a request for reconsideration of an examining attorney's final action.

In a §66(a) application, the Madrid Processing Unit should be notified if a new issue is raised. See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#). However, the examining attorney cannot issue a new refusal more than 18 months after the date on which the IB forwards the request for an extension of protection to the USPTO. See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

714.05(a) Unacceptable Amendment Proposed By Applicant

If an applicant submits an unacceptable amendment in response to a refusal or requirement issued by the examining attorney, the amendment generally does not raise a new issue.

If the applicant submits an amendment that is not offered in response to a refusal or requirement, and the amendment is not acceptable, the examining attorney generally must issue a new nonfinal action with a six-month response clause, addressing the issues raised by the amendment and continuing all other refusals and requirements. The following are examples of amendments that would require a new nonfinal action:

- (1) Amendments to the drawing, unless the examining attorney had previously required that the drawing be amended or the amendment is acceptable and does not raise other issues;
- (2) Amendments to the drawing that materially alter the mark, if the examining attorney had required a new drawing because the original drawing was of poor quality that could not be reproduced, but had not previously raised the issue of material alteration. See [TMEP § 714.05\(c\)](#) regarding advisory statements;
- (3) Amendments to the Supplemental Register and amendments to assert acquired distinctiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), unless the amendment overcomes an outstanding refusal or requirement or is irrelevant to an outstanding refusal (see [TMEP § 714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#)).

The following are examples of amendments that do not require a new nonfinal action:

- (1) An amendment to disclaim the entire mark, which never raises a new issue because an entire mark may not be disclaimed. See [TMEP § 1213.06](#).
- (2) An amendment withdrawing a prior amendment that was submitted in response to a refusal or requirement made by the examining attorney in an Office action (e.g., an amendment to the Supplemental Register or disclaimer) does not raise a new issue.

Moreover, evidence or amendments that are merely cumulative and are not significantly different from material previously submitted do *not* raise a new issue that requires the examining attorney to issue a nonfinal action. See *In re GTE Educ. Servs.*, 34 USPQ2d 1478, 1480 (Comm'r Pats. 1994) (finding examining attorney properly determined that no new issue had been raised in request for reconsideration of final refusal based on inadequate specimens, because the substitute specimens submitted with the request were deficient for same reason as the original specimens).

714.05(a)(i) Amendment to Supplemental Register or Submission of Claim of Acquired Distinctiveness

If registration is refused under §2(e)(1), §2(e)(2), or §2(e)(4), of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(1\), 1052\(e\)\(2\), 1052\(e\)\(4\)](#), or on grounds pertaining to other non-inherently distinctive subject matter (e.g., product or container configurations (*see* [TMEP §1202.02\(b\)\(i\), \(ii\)](#)), color marks (*see* [TMEP §1202.05\(a\)](#)), or marks that comprise matter that is purely ornamental (*see* [TMEP §1202.03](#))), an amendment to the Supplemental Register or to claim acquired distinctiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#) generally presents a new issue. This is true even if the examining attorney previously issued an advisory statement indicating that the examining attorney believed the mark to be unregistrable on the Supplemental Register or under §2(f).

If the examining attorney determines that the amendment does not overcome the refusal, the examining attorney should issue a new nonfinal refusal of registration with a six-month response clause.

In an application based on §1(b), the applicant may respond to one of the refusals listed above by filing an allegation of use that complies with the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) or [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), together with an amendment to the Supplemental Register or an amendment seeking registration under §2(f). If such an amendment could overcome the refusal, but the allegation of use fails to establish use of the mark in commerce or, in combination with other evidence of record, fails to demonstrate use of the subject matter as a mark, the examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal action refusing registration. *See* [TMEP §904.07\(a\), \(b\)](#). The examining attorney must also advise the applicant as follows:

If the applicant submitted an amendment to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that: (1) the amendment to the Supplemental Register is acceptable; (2) the refusal is moot; and (3) if the applicant amends the application back to §1(b) in response to the new refusal, the amendment to the Supplemental Register must also be withdrawn and the original refusal will be reinstated or made final, as appropriate. *See* [TMEP §816.04](#) regarding responses requesting registration on the Supplemental Register in the alternative. *See* [TMEP §§714.05\(a\), 715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(A\), and 715.04\(a\)](#) regarding withdrawal of a prior amendment submitted in a request for reconsideration.

If the applicant submitted an amendment seeking registration under §2(f), the examining attorney must advise the applicant that: (1) the amendment to §2(f) is acceptable, (2) the refusal is moot, and (3) if the §2(f) amendment is based solely on five years' use and the applicant amends the application back to §1(b) in response to the new refusal, the §2(f) amendment must also be withdrawn and the original refusal will be reinstated or made final, as appropriate. *See* [TMEP §1212.02\(c\)](#) regarding responses seeking registration under §2(f) in the alternative. *See* [TMEP §§714.05\(a\), 715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(A\), and 715.04\(a\)](#) regarding withdrawal of a prior amendment submitted in a request for reconsideration.

However, if the applicant responds to one of the refusals listed above by submitting an amendment to the Supplemental Register, but does not concurrently file an allegation of use that complies with the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) or [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), the examining attorney must refuse registration under §23 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1091](#), on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\); TMEP §1102.03](#). If the applicant responds to the refusal by filing a proper allegation of use, the examining attorney will proceed as noted above.

See [TMEP §816.04](#) regarding refusal of registration after an amendment to the Supplemental Register, [TMEP §1212.02\(h\)](#) regarding refusal of registration after an applicant submits a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), and [TMEP §1212.09\(a\)](#) regarding a §2(f) claim in a §1(b) application based on prior use.

If an amendment to the Supplemental Register or to claim acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) is irrelevant to the outstanding refusal(s), and there are otherwise no new issues, the examining attorney may issue a final action. For example, if registration is refused under Trademark Act §2(a), §2(b), §2(c), §2(d), §2(e)(3), or §2(e)(5), an amendment to the Supplemental Register or a claim of distinctiveness under §2(f) does *not* raise a new issue and does not preclude the examining attorney from issuing a final refusal. *See In re Juleigh Jeans Sportswear, Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1694, 1696 (TTAB 1992) (noting that an amendment to the Supplemental Register in response to a §2(a) refusal does not raise a new issue). Note, however, that if an applicant responds to a functionality refusal under §2(e)(5) by submitting an amendment seeking registration on the Supplemental Register that is not made in the alternative, the associated nondistinctiveness refusal must be withdrawn and the functionality refusal must be maintained and made final, if appropriate, under §23(c). *See In re Heatcon, Inc.*, 116 USPQ2d 1366, 1370 (TTAB 2015) (noting that § 23(c) is the statutory authority governing a functionality refusal on the Supplemental Register); [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(iii\)\(A\)](#).

In a §66(a) application, an amendment to the Supplemental Register does not raise a new issue, because a mark in a §66(a) application is not eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#). Thus, an amendment to the Supplemental Register cannot overcome the refusal.

See TMEP §§ [715.03\(b\)](#) and [715.04\(b\)](#) regarding new issues presented in a request for reconsideration of an examining attorney's final action.

714.05(a)(ii) Amendment of Identification of Goods/Services

If the applicant responds to a nonfinal Office action requiring an amendment to the identification of goods/services, and the examining attorney determines that the identification is still unacceptable, generally the examining attorney must issue a final requirement to amend the identification of goods/services. There are only two exceptions to this rule:

- (1) If the amended identification is broader in scope than the original identification, *and* the prior Office action failed to advise the applicant that amendments broadening the identification are prohibited under [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#), the examining attorney may not issue a final Office action.
- (2) If the amended identification sets forth goods/services in multiple classes, but the applicant has not submitted all the requirements for a multiple-class application (e.g., specimens and fees for all classes), *and* the prior Office action failed to advise the applicant that the missing elements were required, the examining attorney may not issue a final Office action. See [TMEP §§1403–1403.01](#) regarding the requirements for multiple-class applications.

If the examining attorney issues a *nonfinal* action requiring amendment of the identification because it is indefinite, and the applicant responds with an amended identification that is definite, but is otherwise unacceptable (e.g., because it includes a registered trademark or service mark (*see* [TMEP §1402.09](#))), this is not considered a new issue, and the examining attorney must issue a final Office action requiring amendment of the identification.

However, if the examining attorney issues a *final* action requiring amendment of the identification because it is indefinite, and the applicant responds with an amended identification that is definite but is otherwise unacceptable (e.g., because it includes a registered mark), the examining attorney should treat the response as incomplete, and grant the applicant additional time to cure this deficiency, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §718.03\(b\)](#) for further information about granting an applicant additional time to perfect an incomplete response. *Examining attorneys are encouraged to try to resolve these issues by examiner's amendment.*

714.05(b) Section 2(d) Refusal Based on Earlier-Filed Application that Has Matured Into Registration

The examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal action when first refusing registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), as to an earlier-filed application that has registered, even if the applicant had been advised of the existence of the earlier-filed application in a prior Office action. See [TMEP §716.02\(c\)](#) regarding procedure when application is suspended pending the disposition of more than one earlier-filed conflicting application.

In a §66(a) application, a new nonfinal refusal under §2(d) may be issued more than 18 months after the date on which the IB forwards the request for extension of protection to the USPTO, provided that the USPTO had notified the IB of the conflicting application prior to expiration of the 18-month period. See [TMEP §1904.03\(b\)](#).

714.05(c) Advisory Statement Cannot Serve as Foundation for Final Refusal or Requirement

Except as provided in [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(ii\)](#), an advisory statement in an Office action indicating that a refusal or requirement will be issued if specified circumstances arise cannot serve as the foundation for issuing a final requirement or refusal in the next action. To establish the foundation for issuing a final refusal or requirement in the next Office action, an initial requirement or refusal must relate to matter that is of record at the time of the action.

In addition, a mere advisory statement made in an Office action is not subject to appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board by the applicant. *In re Harley* 19 USPQ2d 1755, 1757 (TTAB 2016) (“An advisory statement made by an examining attorney indicating that a refusal or requirement may issue if specified circumstances arise is not a refusal to register, let alone a final refusal to register, and is therefore not subject to appeal.”).

714.05(d) Submission of Consent Agreement or Assertion of Unity of Control in Response to §2(d) Refusal

Consent Agreement. If an applicant files a consent agreement in response to a *nonfinal* refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, and the examining attorney finds the consent agreement insufficient to overcome the refusal, the examining attorney should issue a final refusal, assuming the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal.

If an applicant files an executed consent agreement for the first time in response to a *final* refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, and the examining attorney finds the consent agreement insufficient to overcome the refusal, the examining attorney should issue a *new final* refusal, i.e., an "Examiner's Subsequent Final Refusal," with a six-month response clause. However, the examining attorney should not issue a subsequent final refusal if the applicant merely states that it is negotiating a consent agreement.

Assertion of Unity of Control. If an applicant asserts unity of control (see [TMEP §1201.07](#)) in response to a *nonfinal* refusal under §2(d), and the examining attorney determines that unity of control has not been established, the examining attorney should issue a final refusal, assuming that the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal.

If an applicant asserts unity of control for the first time in response to a *final* refusal under §2(d), and the examining attorney determines that unity of control has not been established, the examining attorney should issue an "Examiner's Subsequent Final Refusal," with a six-month response clause.

714.05(e) Submission of Substitute Specimen in Response to Refusal for Failure to Show Use of the Mark in Commerce

If the applicant responds to an Office action refusing registration by submitting a substitute specimen that does not show use of the mark in commerce for the same or a different "use-in-commerce" reason, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal because the substitute specimen does not present a new issue. See [TMEP §904.07\(b\)](#).

If an applicant submits a substitute specimen in response to a *nonfinal* refusal for failure to show use of the mark in commerce, and unlike in the original specimen, the mark on the substitute specimen now does not agree with the mark on the drawing (see [TMEP §807.12](#)), but the specimen would otherwise be acceptable to show use in commerce in connection with the goods/services, the examining attorney may allow the applicant to amend the drawing if such an amendment would not constitute a material alteration of the mark.

If any remaining issues can be handled by examiner's amendment, and the mark is a standard character mark, the examining attorney may give the applicant the option to amend the drawing by examiner's amendment. If not, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal that also gives the applicant the option to overcome the refusal by submitting a substitute drawing.

If an amendment of the drawing would be a material alteration, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal, assuming the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal, because the substitute specimen does not present a new issue.

See [TMEP §904.07\(a\)](#) for further information about refusal of registration because the specimen does not show the mark used in commerce.

714.05(f) Submission of Substitute Specimen in Response to Refusal for Failure to Show the Applied-For Mark Functioning as a Mark

Because the examining attorney has advised the applicant of the appropriate response options, which may include the general requirements for a substitute specimen, if the applicant responds to a failure-to-function refusal by submitting a specimen that does not show the mark in commerce for a reason such as those set out in [TMEP §904.07\(a\)](#), the examining attorney must issue a final refusal, as no new issue is presented. By contrast, if the applicant responds to the Office action refusing registration by submitting a substitute specimen that reflects failure to function as a mark for a different substantive reason, such as the examples listed in [TMEP §904.07\(b\)](#), the examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal Office action because the substitute specimen presents a new issue.

If an applicant submits a substitute specimen in response to a *nonfinal* refusal for failure to show the applied-for mark functioning as a mark, and unlike in the original specimen, the mark on the substitute specimen now does not agree with the mark on the drawing (see [TMEP §807.12](#)), but the specimen would otherwise be acceptable to identify the goods/services of the applicant and indicate the source of those goods/services, the examining attorney may allow the applicant to amend the drawing if such an amendment would not constitute a material alteration of the mark. If any remaining issues can be handled by examiner's amendment, and the mark is a standard character mark, the examining attorney may give the applicant the

option to amend the drawing by examiner's amendment. If not, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal that also gives the applicant the option to overcome the refusal by submitting a substitute drawing.

If an amendment of the drawing would be a material alteration, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal, assuming the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal, because the substitute specimen does not present a new issue.

See [TMEP §904.07\(b\)](#) for further information about refusal of registration because the specimen does not show the applied-for mark functioning as a mark.

714.06 Applicant's Recourse When Final Action is Premature

If an applicant believes that a refusal to register or a requirement has been made final prematurely, the applicant must raise the issue while the application is still pending before the examining attorney. It is not a ground for appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. [TBMP §1201.02](#). The applicant may raise the matter by filing a request for reconsideration with the examining attorney, or by contacting the managing attorney or senior attorney in the examining attorney's law office. If the examining attorney does not withdraw the final action, the applicant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions.

If, on request for reconsideration, the examining attorney finds the final action to have been premature, the examining attorney should issue a new nonfinal action with a six-month response clause.

715 Action After Issuance of Final Action

715.01 Proper Response to Final Action

An applicant must respond to a final action within six months of the issuance date. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(a\)](#).

An applicant may respond to a final action by timely filing (1) a notice of appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (see [TMEP §§1501–1501.07](#)); (2) a request for reconsideration that seeks to overcome any substantive refusals to register and comply with any outstanding requirements; or (3) a petition to the Director under Trademark Rule 2.146 to review a requirement, if the subject matter of the requirement is procedural and thus appropriate for petition. [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(1\)–\(2\)](#). Filing a request for reconsideration does *not* stay or extend the deadline for filing a notice of appeal or petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §715.03](#).

For an application filed under Section 1(b) in which the applicant has filed a timely "insurance" extension request (i.e., in conjunction with the statement of use or within the same six-month period that the statement of use is filed; see [TMEP §§1108.03–1108.03\(a\)](#), [1109.16\(c\)](#)), when the six-month response period to a final Office action will expire before the expiration of the extension period, the applicant may respond to the final action by requesting suspension until the end of the extension period in order to overcome any substantive refusals and/or comply with any outstanding requirements maintained in the action. See [716.02\(f\)](#), [TMEP §§716.06](#), [1109.16\(d\)](#).

After a final refusal to register on the Principal Register, an amendment requesting registration on the Supplemental Register or registration on the Principal Register under §2(f) of the Trademark Act may be a proper response in some circumstances. See [TMEP §§714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#), [816.04](#), [1212.02\(h\)](#).

715.02 Action After Final Action

Once an action has been properly made final, the examining attorney normally should not change his or her position. However, this does not mean that an applicant's amendment or argument will not be considered after final action. An amendment may be accepted and entered if it places the application in condition for publication or registration, or will put the application in better form for appeal (i.e., reduce the issues on appeal). For example, an amendment requesting registration on the Supplemental Register or on the Principal Register under §2(f) may be a proper response to a final refusal of registration on the Principal Register in some circumstances. See [TMEP §§714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#), [816.04](#), [1212.02\(h\)](#).

The examining attorney should issue an examiner's amendment (see [TMEP §707.707.03](#)) if it will immediately put the application in condition for publication or registration or reduce the issues on appeal.

If the applicant files a response that complies with all outstanding requirements and overcomes all outstanding refusals, the examining attorney should approve the application for publication or registration, as appropriate.

In the rare circumstance where the examining attorney determines that a final refusal should be withdrawn, even though the applicant has not submitted any further amendments or arguments after issuance of the final action, the examining attorney must withdraw the requirement or refusal and approve the application for publication or registration, if it is otherwise in condition for such action. The examining attorney must also promptly attempt to notify the applicant by telephone or e-mail that the requirement or refusal is withdrawn, so that the applicant knows that filing an appeal is unnecessary, and must enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record.

The applicant may file a request for reconsideration of the final action that seeks to overcome any substantive refusals and/or comply with any outstanding requirements within six months of the issuance date of the final action. However, filing a request for reconsideration does *not* stay or extend the time for filing a notice of appeal to the Board or petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(3\)](#).

See [TMEP §716.06](#) regarding suspension after final action.

715.03 Request for Reconsideration After Final Action

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(3\)](#), the applicant may file a request for reconsideration before the deadline for filing an appeal to the Board or petition to the Director.

However, filing a request for reconsideration does *not* stay or extend the deadline for filing a notice of appeal or petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §715.03\(c\)](#). The USPTO cannot extend the statutory deadline for filing an appeal. See [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#). But see [TMEP §1714.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (concerning filing a petition to revive an abandoned application with a notice of appeal when an applicant fails to respond to a final action). Therefore, if an applicant files a request for reconsideration of a final action and wants to preserve the right to appeal if the request is unsuccessful, the applicant must file a notice of appeal (with the fee required by 37 C.F.R. §2.6) before the expiration of the six-month period for response to the final action, or the application will be abandoned. If the request for reconsideration is unsuccessful, and the applicant has not timely filed a notice of appeal, the application will be abandoned for incomplete response after the expiration of the six-month response period.

See [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for information about processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement and [TMEP §§715.04–715.04\(b\)](#) for information about processing a request for reconsideration filed with a notice of appeal.

The examining attorney should construe any document filed after final action that responds to the outstanding refusals or requirements as a request for reconsideration. If the request for reconsideration does not overcome or resolve all outstanding refusals and requirements, the examining attorney must follow the procedures outlined in [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\), \(b\)](#), and [715.04\(a\), \(b\)](#). An Office action issued in connection with those procedures should discuss any new evidence submitted with the request for reconsideration, regardless of whether it is significantly different from evidence previously submitted. If the evidence in the request for reconsideration is significantly different from the evidence currently of record, the examining attorney must issue a new final refusal (i.e., an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal”). See [TMEP §715.03\(b\)](#).

Regardless of whether an applicant submits new evidence with a request for reconsideration, the examining attorney may introduce additional evidence directed to the issue(s) for which reconsideration is sought. [TBMP §1207.04](#); see *In re Davey Prods. Pty Ltd.*, 92 USPQ2d 1198, 1200–01 (TTAB 2009); *In re Giger*, 78 USPQ2d 1405, 1406–07 (TTAB 2006) .

To determine the appropriate action to take upon receipt of a request for reconsideration, the examining attorney must consider whether: (1) the applicant has timely filed a notice of appeal; (2) time remains in the six-month period to respond to the final action; and (3) the request for reconsideration presents a new issue or new evidence significantly different from that previously submitted. See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\), 715.03\(b\)](#), and [715.04–715.04\(b\)](#) for further information as to how examining attorneys should handle requests for reconsideration.

715.03(a) Examining Attorney’s Action When No New Issue or No Significantly Different Evidence Is Presented in Request for Reconsideration and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

If a request for reconsideration presents no new issues or no new evidence significantly different from that previously submitted and the applicant has not filed a notice of appeal, the examining attorney must consider whether to: (1) approve the application for publication or registration; (2) deem the application abandoned in whole or in part for an incomplete response; or (3) issue an Office action. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for information about processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement.

715.03(a)(i) Request for Reconsideration Resolves All Outstanding Issues and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

If the request for reconsideration convinces the examining attorney that a refusal or requirement should be withdrawn, and no other issues remain, the examining attorney may approve the application for publication or registration.

715.03(a)(ii) Request for Reconsideration Does Not Resolve All Outstanding Issues and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

715.03(a)(ii)(A) Prior Amendment Withdrawn

If, in a request for reconsideration that does not overcome or resolve all outstanding issues, the applicant also withdraws a prior amendment submitted in response to a refusal or requirement made by the examining attorney in an Office action (e.g., an amendment to the Supplemental Register or disclaimer), this does not raise a new issue.

715.03(a)(ii)(B) Outstanding Refusals and/or Requirements Must Be Continued, Time Remains in Response Period for Applicant to Appeal, and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

The examining attorney must issue a “Request for Reconsideration Denied – No Appeal Filed – Time Remaining” (or, if appropriate, “SU – Request for Reconsideration Denied – No Appeal Filed – Time Remaining”) action if: (1) the request for reconsideration does not overcome or resolve all outstanding refusal(s) and/or requirement(s); (2) the applicant’s response does not meet the criteria under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) for granting additional time to complete the response, because such issues cannot be resolved with additional time granted; and (3) no notice of appeal has been filed. This action must (1) acknowledge receipt of the request for reconsideration, (2) indicate that the request is denied and explain why it does not overcome or resolve the final refusal(s) and/or requirements, (3) identify the final refusal(s) and/or requirements that are maintained and continued and any that are satisfied or withdrawn, (4) advise the applicant that the time for appeal runs from the issuance date of the final Office action, (5) advise that the applicant has the remainder of the response period to comply with any outstanding refusal(s) and/or requirement(s) and/or to file a notice of appeal to the Board, and (6) omit the six-month response clause. See [TMEP §705.08](#).

Once the examining attorney has issued a “Request for Reconsideration Denied – No Appeal Filed – Time Remaining” (or “SU – Request for Reconsideration Denied – No Appeal Filed – Time Remaining”) action, the examining attorney must abandon the application for incomplete response, using the “Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response” action, if the applicant (1) does not submit within the time remaining a complete response or a request for reconsideration that presents a new issue or new evidence significantly different from that previously provided or (2) fails to respond. The application should be abandoned due to incomplete response, and *not* for failure to respond, because the applicant did in fact respond to the final Office action by filing a request for reconsideration.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for information about processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement.

715.03(a)(ii)(C) Outstanding Refusals and/or Requirements May Be Resolved if Applicant Is Given 30 Days or Time Remaining in Response Period to Comply with Issues

The preferred action is to issue an “Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter” (or, if appropriate, “SU – Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter”) if: (1) the request for reconsideration does not overcome or resolve all outstanding refusal(s) and/or requirement(s); (2) the applicant’s response complies with the criteria in [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) for granting additional time to complete the response, regardless of whether time remains in the response period, because such issues can be resolved with additional time, including where the record indicates that the applicant can place the application in condition for approval for publication or registration by completing the response or all issues can be resolved by examiner’s amendment; and (3) no notice of appeal has been filed. See *In re P.T. Polymindo Permata*, 109 USPQ2d 1256, 1257 (Dir USPTO 2013). See [TMEP § 715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#) regarding responses to final actions that comply with the criteria in [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) (those signed by unauthorized persons, unsigned responses, and TEAS responses consisting only of a signature or missing significant data or attachments).

This Office action must: (1) include an appropriate explanation of the problem with the response; (2) give the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to submit a complete response; and (3) omit the six-month response clause. See [TMEP §§705.08, 718.03\(b\)](#).

If the examining attorney determines that an examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §§707.03](#)) will immediately put the application in condition for publication or registration, the examining attorney should attempt to contact the applicant to obtain authorization to issue an examiner's amendment to resolve the matters that remain outstanding.

Once the examining attorney has issued an “Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter” (or “SU – Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter”) the examining attorney must abandon the application for incomplete response, using the “Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response” action, if the applicant (1) does not submit within the time remaining a complete response or a request for reconsideration that presents a new issue or new evidence significantly different from that previously provided or (2) fails to respond. The application should be abandoned for incomplete response and *not* for failure to respond, because the applicant did in fact respond to the final Office action by filing a request for reconsideration.

Granting additional time to complete a response under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) does not stay or extend the deadline for filing an appeal to the Board (or petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#), if appropriate). *See* [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#). *See* [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for information about processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement.

715.03(a)(ii)(D) Outstanding Refusals and/or Requirements Must Be Continued, Time for Appeal Has Expired, and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed – Abandon for Incomplete Response

If (1) the examining attorney is not persuaded by the request for reconsideration, (2) the applicant's response does not meet the criteria in [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) for granting additional time to complete the response, (3) there is no time remaining in the six-month response period, and (4) no notice of appeal has been filed, the examining attorney must hold the application abandoned due to incomplete response. The examining attorney must deny the request for reconsideration by issuing an “Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response” action. *See* [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for information about processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement.

If the examining attorney denies the request for reconsideration and holds the application abandoned for incomplete response, the applicant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to reverse the examining attorney’s holding of abandonment. However, the Director will reverse the examining attorney’s action on petition only where there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion or, in rare cases, where a petitioner can show that it has substantially complied with the requirements of the statute or rules. *In re P.T. Polymindo Permata* , 109 USPQ2d 1256, 1257 (Dir. USPTO 2013); *In re GTE Educ. Servs.* , 34 USPQ2d 1478, 1479–80 (Comm’r Pats. 1994); *In re Legendary Inc.* , 26 USPQ2d 1478, 1479 (Comm’r Pats. 1992); [TMEP §1713.01](#). The unintentional delay standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does not apply in this situation. *See* [TMEP §§1713.02, 1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#).

715.03(a)(ii)(E) Responses After Final Refusal Signed by Unauthorized Persons, Unsigned Responses, TEAS Responses Consisting Only of a Signature, and TEAS Responses Missing Significant Data or Attachments

If an examining attorney receives a response to a final action signed by an unauthorized person, an unsigned response to a final action, a TEAS response to a final action that consists only of a signature, or a TEAS response to a final action missing significant data or attachments, the examining attorney should not hold the application abandoned for failure to respond completely. The examining attorney must issue an

“Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter” (or, if appropriate, “SU – Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter”) that (1) includes an appropriate explanation of the problem with the response, (2) gives the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to submit a complete response, and (3) omits the six-month response clause. See [TMEP § 705.08](#). Granting additional time to complete a response under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) does not extend the deadline for filing an appeal to the Board (or petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#), if appropriate). See [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#).

Once an examining attorney has issued an “Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter” (or “SU – Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter”), the examining attorney must abandon the application for incomplete response, using the “Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response” action, if the applicant (1) does not submit within the time remaining a complete response or a request for reconsideration that presents a new issue or new evidence significantly different from that previously provided or (2) fails to respond. The application should be abandoned for incomplete response and *not* for failure to respond, because the applicant did in fact respond to the final Office action by filing a request for reconsideration. See [TMEP §718.03\(a\)](#).

715.03(b) Examining Attorney’s Action When New Issue or New Evidence Is Presented in Request for Reconsideration and No Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

If the request for reconsideration includes an amendment that presents a new issue, whether related to the final refusal or not, the examining attorney must issue a nonfinal action with a six-month response clause that addresses the new issue and maintains the final refusal. For example, if the applicant’s request for reconsideration contains a §2(f) claim of acquired distinctiveness in response to a final §2(e)(1) refusal, and the claim fails to place the application in condition for approval, the examining attorney must issue a nonfinal action. See [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). However, if the applicant withdraws a prior amendment submitted in response to a refusal or requirement made by the examining attorney in an Office action (e.g., an amendment to the Supplemental Register or §2(f) claim of acquired distinctiveness submitted in response to a §2(e)(1) refusal or a disclaimer submitted in response to a requirement), this does not raise a new issue. See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#), [715.04\(a\)](#).

Whenever the examining attorney issues a new *nonfinal* action after review of an applicant’s request for reconsideration, the Office action should explain that the applicant must respond to all requirements or refusals within six months of the issuance date of the action, but that the applicant should not file an appeal to the Board because an appeal would be premature under [15 U.S.C. §1070](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.141\(a\)](#). If the applicant’s response to the new nonfinal action does not resolve all outstanding requirements or refusals and put the application in condition for publication or registration, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal” with a six-month response clause. This provides the applicant the opportunity to file an appeal. See [TMEP §715.04\(b\)](#) if a notice of appeal has been filed.

Evidence or amendments that are merely cumulative and are not significantly different from material previously submitted do *not* raise a new issue that requires the examining attorney to issue a new final or nonfinal action. *In re GTE Educ. Servs.*,³⁴ USPQ2d 1478, 1480 (Comm’r Pats. 1994) (finding examining attorney properly determined that no new issue had been raised in request for reconsideration of final refusal based on inadequate specimens, because the substitute specimens submitted with the request were deficient for the same reason as original specimens).

If the request for reconsideration does not raise a new issue, but presents new evidence that is significantly different from evidence previously submitted, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal,” with a six-month response clause. This provides applicant with the opportunity to respond

before filing an appeal. Any response to the subsequent final refusal will be treated as a new request for reconsideration and processed according to the guidelines set forth in [TMEP §§715.03–715.03\(b\)](#).

Example: If an applicant files an executed consent agreement in response to a final refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, and the examining attorney finds the consent agreement insufficient to overcome the refusal, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal.” However, the examining attorney should not issue a subsequent final refusal if the applicant merely states that it is negotiating a consent agreement. See [TMEP §714.05\(d\)](#).

Example: The examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal” if the applicant asserts unity of control (see [TMEP §1201.07](#)) in response to a final refusal under §2(d), and the examining attorney determines that unity of control has not been established. See [TMEP §714.05\(d\)](#).

Submission of new arguments in response to the same refusal or requirement does not raise a new issue that requires the examining attorney to issue a subsequent final or nonfinal action. Generally, if the same refusal or requirement was made before, the examining attorney does not have to issue a subsequent final or nonfinal action.

See [TMEP §§714.05–714.05\(f\)](#) for further information about delineating new issues that require issuance of a nonfinal action.

Sometimes action on an application is suspended after a final refusal has issued. If the grounds for refusal remain operative after the application is removed from suspension and no new issues have been raised, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal,” with a six-month response clause. See [TMEP §716.06](#).

In a §66(a) application, the examining attorney cannot issue a new refusal more than 18 months after the date the IB forwards the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

715.03(c) Time for Appeal Runs from Issuance Date of Final Action

Filing a request for reconsideration does not stay or extend the time for responding to a final refusal. See [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(b\)\(3\), 2.142\(a\)](#). If the examining attorney denies an applicant’s request for reconsideration, the deadline for filing a notice of appeal to the Board (or petition to the Director if permitted by [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#)) runs from the issuance date of the final action. If this deadline has expired and the applicant has not filed a timely appeal or petition, the application will be abandoned due to an incomplete response. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(b\)\(4\), 2.65\(a\)](#). The applicant may not file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), based on unintentional delay. See [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#). The applicant’s recourse is to file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to reverse the examining attorney’s holding of abandonment. However, the Director will reverse the examining attorney’s action on petition only where there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion. See [TMEP §1713.01](#).

715.04 Request for Reconsideration Filed in Conjunction with Notice of Appeal

The Board has jurisdiction over an application upon the filing of a notice of appeal. In response to a request from an applicant, the Board may remand an application to the examining attorney for consideration of specific facts or issues. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(d\)](#). See [TBMP §1209](#) regarding remand during an ex parte appeal, [TBMP §515](#) regarding remand to the examining attorney during an inter partes proceeding, and [TMEP §1504.05](#) regarding requests for remand.

If an applicant files a notice of appeal with a request for reconsideration, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will acknowledge the appeal, suspend further proceedings with respect to the appeal, including the applicant's time to file an appeal brief, and remand the application to the examining attorney for review of the request for reconsideration. [TBMP §1204](#). See [TBMP Chapter 1200](#) and [TMEP §§1501–1501.07](#) for further information about ex parte appeals.

If, upon remand, the examining attorney determines that the outstanding refusal or requirement should be withdrawn, the examining attorney may approve the application for publication or registration. The examining attorney may issue an examiner's amendment if he/she determines that an examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §§707–707.03](#)) will immediately put the application in condition for publication or registration. In these situations, the appeal is moot and no further action is needed after approving the application for publication or registration. If there are remaining unresolved refusals or requirements, the request for reconsideration must be denied. *See* [TMEP §715.04\(a\)](#). In some circumstances, the examining attorney may also issue an examiner's amendment to reduce the issues on appeal. See [TMEP §715.02](#) regarding action after issuance of a final action.

715.04(a) Examining Attorney's Action When No New Issue Is Presented in Request for Reconsideration and Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

If the request for reconsideration does not overcome or resolve the issues on appeal, and no new issue, or no new evidence significantly different from that previously submitted, is presented therein, the examining attorney must issue a “Request for Reconsideration Denied – Return to TTAB” (or, if appropriate, “SU Request for Reconsideration Denied – Return to TTAB”) action that: (1) acknowledges the request for reconsideration; (2) indicates that it is denied and explains why it does not overcome all refusals or satisfy all requirements; (3) identifies the final refusal(s) and/or requirements that are maintained and any that are satisfied or withdrawn; and (4) advises the applicant that the Board will be notified to resume the appeal. An Office action denying reconsideration of the final action must *not* include a six-month response clause.

If, in a request for reconsideration that does not overcome or resolve the issues on appeal, the applicant also withdraws a prior amendment submitted in response to a refusal or requirement made by the examining attorney in an Office action (e.g., an amendment to the Supplemental Register or disclaimer), this does not raise a new issue.

715.04(b) Examining Attorney's Action When New Issue or New Evidence is Presented and Notice of Appeal Has Been Filed

If the request for reconsideration includes an amendment that presents a new issue, the examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal Office action with a six-month response clause that addresses the new issue and maintains the refusals or requirements previously made final. For example, if the applicant's request for reconsideration contains a §2(f) claim of acquired distinctiveness in response to a final §2(e)(1) refusal, and the claim fails to place the application in condition for approval, a nonfinal action may be appropriate. *See* [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#).

Whenever the examining attorney issues a new *nonfinal* action after remand of an application by the Board, the Office action should explain that the applicant must respond to all refusals and/or requirements within six months of the issuance date of the action, but should not file another appeal to the Board. If the applicant's response to the new nonfinal action does not resolve all outstanding refusals and/or requirements and put the application in condition for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner's Subsequent Final Refusal,” with the six-month response clause omitted

from the action. The subsequent final action should also notify the applicant that the appeal will be resumed. When proceedings with respect to the appeal are resumed, the Board will take further appropriate action with regard to any additional ground of refusal. *See Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure*(TBMP) [§1209.01](#).

If the request for reconsideration does not raise a new issue, but presents new evidence that is significantly different from evidence previously submitted by the applicant, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal,” that omits the six-month response clause, specifies which issues are withdrawn and/or which amendments are accepted, and addresses the new evidence. The examining attorney may also introduce additional evidence directed to the new evidence submitted by the applicant. [TBMP §1207.04](#); [TMEP §715.03](#). For example, if an applicant files a consent agreement in response to a final refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, and the examining attorney finds the consent agreement insufficient to overcome the refusal, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal” that discusses applicant’s consent agreement. However, the examining attorney should not issue a subsequent final refusal if the applicant merely states that it is negotiating a consent agreement. *See*[TMEP §714.05\(d\)](#). Further, because a subsequent final action issued after the filing of an appeal does not give the applicant an automatic six-month response period, the subsequent final action must also inform the applicant that the Board will be notified to resume the appeal. When proceedings with respect to the appeal are resumed, any further request for reconsideration of the application must be made via a request for remand, for which good cause must be shown. *See*[TBMP §§1204, 1207.02](#).

Evidence or amendments that are merely cumulative and are not significantly different from material previously submitted do *not* raise a new issue that requires the examining attorney to issue a new nonfinal or subsequent final action. *In re GTE Educ. Servs.*, 34 USPQ2d 1478, 1480 (Comm'r Pats. 1994) (finding examining attorney properly determined that no new issue had been raised in request for reconsideration of final refusal based on inadequate specimens, because the substitute specimens submitted with the request were deficient for the same reason as the original specimens).

Submission of new arguments in response to the final refusal or requirement does not raise a new issue that requires the examining attorney to issue a new nonfinal or subsequent final action.

See [TMEP §§714.05–714.05\(f\)](#) for further information about delineating new issues that require issuance of a nonfinal action.

In a §66(a) application, the examining attorney cannot issue a new refusal more than 18 months after the date the IB forwards the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. *See*[TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

716 Suspension of Action by USPTO

37 CFR §2.67 Suspension of action by the Patent and Trademark Office.

Action by the Patent and Trademark Office may be suspended for a reasonable time for good and sufficient cause. The fact that a proceeding is pending before the Patent and Trademark Office or a court which is relevant to the issue of registrability of the applicant’s mark, or the fact that the basis for registration is, under the provisions of Section 44(e) of the Act, registration of the mark in a foreign country and the foreign application is still pending, will be considered prima facie good and sufficient cause. An applicant’s request for a suspension of action under this section filed within the 6-month response period (*see* §2.62) may be considered responsive to the previous Office action. The first suspension is within the discretion of the Examiner of Trademarks and any subsequent suspension must be approved by the Director.

The term “suspension of action” means suspending action *by the examining attorney*. It does not mean suspending or extending an applicant’s time to respond. The Trademark Act requires that an applicant respond within six months of an examining attorney’s Office action, and the examining attorney has no

discretion to suspend or extend the time for the applicant's response. See [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#). However, an applicant's timely filed request for suspension for good cause may constitute a proper response to an Office action.

When an acceptable ground for suspension is immediately apparent (e.g., prior-filed applications for conflicting marks are pending), the examining attorney will suspend an application only when the application is in condition for approval or final action, except for the matter on which suspension is based. Otherwise, the applicant must request suspension. See [TMEP §716.02](#) regarding the circumstances under which action may be suspended.

716.01 Form of Suspension Notice

In a suspension notice, the examining attorney must specifically state that action is suspended and must omit any reference to a six-month response period. If the application is in condition for a final action but for the matter necessitating suspension, the notice of suspension must clearly indicate which refusals or requirements have been resolved, if any, and which will be made final when the application is removed from suspension. When the application is removed from suspension, the examining attorney must promptly issue a final action, assuming that no new issues have arisen.

716.02 Circumstances Under Which Action May Be Suspended

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.67](#), an examining attorney has the discretion to suspend an application "for good and sufficient cause." The most common reasons for suspension of an application are discussed below.

As a general rule, the USPTO will not suspend an application to give an applicant time to secure a consent agreement.

Any request to stay a deadline for responding to an Office action pending disposition of a petition to the Director should be directed to the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. If such a request is sent to the examining attorney, the examining attorney should forward it to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. The examining attorney should *not* suspend action on an application pending a decision on petition to the Director except upon express permission from the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. See [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(g\)](#); [TMEP §1705.06](#).

716.02(a) Applicant's Petition to Cancel Cited Registration

If the examining attorney refuses registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act in view of the mark in a prior registration, the applicant may file a petition to cancel the registration under [15 U.S.C. §1064](#) and, within a proper response period, inform the examining attorney that the petition to cancel has been filed.

This will constitute a proper response to the §2(d) refusal, and may be done by telephone, if there are no other outstanding issues that require a written response. The examining attorney will then suspend further action until the termination of the cancellation proceeding, if the application is otherwise in condition for approval or final refusal. The applicant should provide the number of the cancellation proceeding, if available; however, if the applicant does not provide the cancellation number, the examining attorney may ascertain it from USPTO records.

The examining attorney should suspend further action only if the applicant states that the cancellation proceeding has already been filed or is being filed concurrently with the response to the Office action.

Although the examining attorney will determine the status of the cancellation proceeding through a routine status check (*see* [TMEP §716.04](#)), the applicant may call or e-mail to advise the examining attorney when the registration has been cancelled, in order to avoid a delay in removing the application from suspension. The examining attorney must not remove the application from suspension and withdraw the §2(d) refusal until the Trademark database shows that the registration is cancelled or expired.

When an application is suspended pending resolution of a cancellation proceeding, it is possible that a settlement agreement filed in the proceeding may be contingent upon the approval of an amendment or acceptance of a consent agreement filed in the suspended application, and the consequent approval of the application for publication. The Board has no jurisdiction over the application that is pending before the examining attorney. Thus, the applicant must file the amendment or consent agreement with the examining attorney, not with the Board. The examining attorney must consider the amendment or agreement and take appropriate action, including approving the application for publication, if appropriate. *See* [TBMP §605.03\(c\)](#).

In rare circumstances, the examining attorney may issue an Office action advising an applicant of a conflicting mark in an earlier-filed application and, during the response period, the mark registers and the applicant files a petition to cancel the registration. Although the applicant may respond to the Office action by informing the examining attorney that the petition to cancel has been filed, the examining attorney may not suspend under these circumstances because the application would not be in condition for final refusal if the registration is not cancelled. The examining attorney must first issue a non-final Office action refusing registration. The applicant may then respond by requesting suspension pending the outcome of the cancellation proceeding.

See [TMEP §716.02\(e\)](#) regarding suspension pending cancellation of a cited registration under §8 or §71 of the Act or expiration of a cited registration for failure to renew under §9 of the Act.

716.02(b) Submission of Copy of Foreign Registration in §44(d) Application

When an applicant who claims the benefit of a prior foreign application under §44(d) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#), is required to submit a copy of a foreign registration, the applicant may respond to the requirement by stating that the foreign application is still pending. The examining attorney should then suspend further action pending receipt of a copy of the foreign registration, if the application is otherwise in condition for approval for publication, allowance for registration on the Supplemental Register, or final action. *See* [TMEP §1003.04\(a\)](#).

If an applicant asserts a claim of priority under §44(d) in addition to another basis, before suspending the application, the examining attorney must inquire whether the applicant wishes to retain §44(e) as a second basis for registration (based on the foreign registration that will issue from the foreign application on which the applicant relied for priority). However, if the application is filed via TEAS and indicates that the applicant is *not* relying on §44(e) as an additional basis for registration and is only asserting §44(d) to receive a priority filing date, the examining attorney will not inquire and will not suspend further action, but must ensure that the Trademark database is updated accordingly. See [TMEP §1003.04\(b\)](#) for further information.

If the applicant responds that it intends to assert a dual basis for registration and the application is otherwise in condition for approval for publication, allowance for registration on the Supplemental Register, or final action, the examining attorney should suspend further action pending receipt of the foreign registration.

During the suspension period, the examining attorney will issue an Office action approximately every six months after suspension to inquire as to the status of the foreign application. If the applicant does not respond to the inquiry, the application will be abandoned. See [TMEP §716.05](#).

The examining attorney may suspend the application pending receipt of the foreign registration only in a §44(d) application before issuance of the Notice of Allowance. In a §44(e) application, the examining attorney will not suspend the application pending submission of the foreign registration, unless the applicant establishes that it cannot obtain a copy of the foreign registration due to extraordinary circumstances (e.g., war or natural disaster). [TMEP §1004.01](#). However, the examining attorney may suspend a §44(e) application pending receipt of proof of renewal of the foreign registration. [TMEP §1004.01\(a\)](#).

716.02(c) Conflicting Marks in Pending Applications

When there are conflicting marks in pending applications, action on the application with the later effective filing date will be suspended (if the application appears to be otherwise in condition for publication or issue or for a final action) until the mark in the conflicting application with the earlier effective filing date is either registered or abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1208–1208.02\(f\)](#) for more information about conflicting marks in pending applications.

If the examining attorney has cited an earlier-filed pending application, the applicant may respond by arguing that there is no likelihood of confusion between the marks. If the examining attorney is not persuaded by the applicant's arguments, the examining attorney should suspend the later-filed application pending disposition of the earlier-filed conflicting application. The suspension notice should include a statement that the applicant's arguments were not persuasive. It is not necessary to address the merits of the applicant's arguments prior to the initial suspension. See [TMEP §716.03](#) regarding the applicant's request to remove an application from suspension.

If the examining attorney discovers that an earlier-filed pending application was abandoned, but that a petition to revive is pending, the examining attorney should suspend the later-filed application pending disposition of the petition to revive. If the petition to revive is granted, the later-filed application will remain suspended until the mark in the earlier-filed application is registered or the earlier-filed application is again abandoned. See [TMEP §§718.07](#) and [1208.01\(d\)](#) for information on conducting a new search for conflicting marks when an abandoned application is revived or reinstated.

When an application is suspended pending the disposition of more than one earlier-filed conflicting application, and one of the conflicting applications matures into registration, the examining attorney will normally not issue a refusal of registration until all the remaining conflicting application(s) are registered or abandoned, in order to avoid issuing piecemeal refusals. However, if deemed appropriate, the examining attorney does have the discretion to issue a refusal of registration under §2(d) in this situation.

Sometimes, the applicant will file an opposition to the registration of the earlier-filed conflicting mark. In this situation, it is possible that a settlement agreement filed in the Board proceeding may be contingent upon the approval of an amendment or acceptance of a consent agreement filed in the suspended application, and the consequent approval of the application for publication. The Board has no jurisdiction over the application that is pending before the examining attorney. Thus, the applicant must file the amendment or consent agreement with the examining attorney, not with the Board. The examining attorney must consider the amendment or agreement and take appropriate action. See [TBMP §605.03\(c\)](#).

716.02(d) Inter Partes or Court Proceeding

If an examining attorney learns of a proceeding pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or a court that may result in a decision that supports a refusal of registration of an applicant's mark, the examining attorney must issue the refusal and give the applicant an opportunity to respond before suspending the application. If the applicant is not a party to the inter partes or court proceeding, the examining attorney must explain why the proceeding is relevant to the registrability of the applicant's mark.

When an applicant requests suspension because a proceeding relevant to the registrability of the applicant's mark is pending before the Board or a court, the applicant must submit a copy of the relevant pleadings, the docket number of the proceeding, and a written explanation of why the proceeding is relevant to the registrability of the mark. Normally, a court proceeding is not considered relevant to the registrability of a mark unless the remedy requested in the proceeding is cancellation, abandonment, or amendment of a relevant application or registration. However, when resolution of the court action requires the court to consider questions of USPTO policy or procedure, the examining attorney should not assume that the court would prefer to decide such questions absent the USPTO's decision in the consideration of an application.

In these instances, action on an application should generally not be suspended. It is important to review the relevant pleadings, including the complaint and answer, before determining whether suspension is appropriate. The Office of the Solicitor may be consulted if there is a question as to whether suspension of the application is appropriate.

A third party who wishes to request suspension of a pending application because a proceeding relevant to the registrability of the mark is pending before a court must do so by filing a letter of protest. See [TMEP §1715–1715.06](#). The litigation must be specifically identified and a copy of the relevant pleadings must be enclosed. The litigation must involve a federally registered mark or prior pending application, and the protestor must allege that there is a likelihood of confusion between this mark and the mark in the application that is the subject of the letter of protest. Normally, a court proceeding is not considered relevant to the registrability of a mark unless the remedy requested in the proceeding is abandonment or amendment of the application that is the subject of the letter of protest. If the letter of protest is granted, the examining attorney is informed that a request for suspension has been received based on an alleged likelihood of confusion with a registered mark or prior pending application that is the subject of pending litigation.

Before an application is suspended, the applicant must respond to all outstanding issues raised in the examining attorney's Office action that are not related to the proceeding. The examining attorney should not suspend the application unless all matters not related to the proceeding are resolved or in condition for final action.

See [TMEP §716.02\(a\)](#) regarding suspension pending disposition of an applicant's petition to cancel a cited registration under [15 U.S.C. §1064](#), [TMEP §716.02\(c\)](#) regarding suspension of later-filed conflicting marks, [TMEP §716.03](#) regarding the applicant's request to remove an application from suspension, and [TBMP §605.03\(c\)](#) regarding filing an amendment or consent agreement in a pending application owned by the plaintiff pursuant to a settlement agreement between the parties in an ex parte proceeding before the Board.

716.02(e) Pending Cancellation or Expiration of Cited Registration

When the owner of a registration submits a timely affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) (“§8 affidavit”) or [§1141k](#) (“§71 affidavit”) or an application for renewal under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#), the USPTO's automated records are updated to indicate receipt of the document and the action taken on the document. To avoid inadvertent cancellation or expiration of a registration due to a delay in entering a timely filed affidavit or renewal application submitted on paper into the Trademark

database, the USPTO waits until 30 days *after* the expiration of the grace period for filing the §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application before updating its records to show that the registration is cancelled or expired.

The USPTO's automated records are updated 30 days after the grace period expires to indicate that a registration is cancelled or expired if:

- (1) No §8 or §71 affidavit has been filed before the end of the six-month grace period following the sixth year after the date of registration (or publication under §12(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#), for §8 affidavits);
- (2) No §8 or §71 affidavit has been filed before the end of the six-month grace period following the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration; or
- (3) No §9 renewal application has been filed before the end of the six-month grace period following the expiration of the previous term of registration.

See [TMEP §§1602–1602.04](#) regarding the duration of a registration, [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the due dates for §8 affidavits, [TMEP §1606.03](#) regarding the due dates for §9 renewal applications, and [TMEP §1613.04](#) regarding the due dates for §71 affidavits.

The examining attorney must confirm the status of the cited registration to ensure that it is still active before issuing any refusal of registration under Trademark Act §2(d) or filing a brief on appeal of a §2(d) refusal.

If the examining attorney is ready to issue a *nonfinal* refusal of registration under §2(d), and the Trademark database shows that the registration is still active, the examining attorney must issue the refusal even if the grace period for filing a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application for the cited registration has passed and the Trademark database does not indicate that the owner has filed a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application. The examining attorney must not suspend the application, but must advise the applicant that the grace period for filing the §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application has passed and that it appears that the registration may be subject to cancellation under §8 or §71 and/or expiration under §9.

If the examining attorney is ready to issue a *final* refusal of registration under §2(d), and the cited registration is in the grace period for filing a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application, the examining attorney must suspend action pending a determination of whether the registrant timely files, and the USPTO accepts, the §8 or §71 affidavit and/or whether the registration is renewed. If the registrant timely files, and the USPTO accepts, the §8 or §71 affidavit and/or the cited registration is renewed, the examining attorney will remove the application from suspension and issue the final refusal.

Similarly, if the examining attorney is ready to issue a denial of a request for reconsideration of a final refusal of registration under §2(d), and the cited registration is in the grace period for filing a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application, the examining attorney must suspend action. If the registrant timely files, and the USPTO accepts, the §8 or §71 affidavit and/or the cited registration is renewed, and the applicant has not filed an appeal, the examining attorney will remove the application from suspension and issue an "Examiner's Subsequent Final Refusal," thereby giving the applicant six months in which to file an appeal. If the applicant filed the request for reconsideration in conjunction with a notice of appeal, the examining attorney will remove the application from suspension and issue a "Request for Reconsideration Denied – Return to TTAB."

If the grace period for filing a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application for the cited registration has passed, and the examining attorney is ready to issue a *final* refusal of registration under §2(d), or a denial

of a request for reconsideration of a final refusal of registration under §2(d), the examining attorney must not issue the action until the USPTO's automated records indicate that the owner has filed the §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application, and the USPTO has accepted the §8 or §71 affidavit or granted renewal. Instead, the examining attorney must suspend action for six months pending final disposition of the cited registration.

If the grace period for filing a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application for the cited registration has passed, and the examining attorney is ready to write an appeal brief, the examining attorney must request a remand so that the application can be suspended pending final disposition of the cited registration. The Board will issue an order suspending the appeal and remanding the case to the examining attorney. If the cited registration is cancelled or expires, the examining attorney must withdraw the §2(d) refusal and notify the applicant that it has been withdrawn. If an appropriate affidavit or renewal application is filed for the cited registration, the examining attorney must notify the Board; the Board will resume proceedings and reset the time for filing the examining attorney's appeal brief. Similarly, if the cited registration is cancelled or expires, but the §2(d) refusal is only one of the issues on appeal, the examining attorney must notify the Board of the status of the cited registration. The Board will resume proceedings and reset the time for filing a brief. See [TBMP §1213](#) regarding the suspension of an ex parte appeal pending cancellation of the cited registration under §8, §9, or §71 of the Act.

The examining attorney cannot withdraw a refusal of registration under §2(d) until the Trademark database shows that the registration is cancelled or expired. If the examining attorney determines that 30 days have passed since the expiration of the grace period, but the Trademark database does not indicate that the registration has been cancelled or expired, the examining attorney should contact the Supervisor of the Post Registration Section and request that the database be updated to show that the registration is cancelled or expired.

See [TMEP §1611](#) for information about how the owner of a registration who has not timely filed a §8 or §71 affidavit or §9 renewal application may expedite the cancellation or expiration of its own registration.

716.02(f) Pending Expiration of “Insurance” Extension Request

When the applicant files a timely “insurance” extension request (i.e., in conjunction with the statement of use or within the same six-month period that the statement of use is filed; see [TMEP §§1108.03–1108.03\(a\), 1109.16\(c\)](#)), there are rare instances when the six-month period for response to a final Office action may expire before the statutory period for filing the statement of use. If the applicant can overcome any grounds for refusal and/or comply with any requirement raised in the final action before expiration of the time for filing the statement of use, but not within the time for responding to the final Office action, the applicant must still file a timely response to the Office action. The response must state that the applicant intends to comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use on or before the expiration of the statutory filing period and request suspension of the application. The examining attorney should then suspend the application for only the amount of time remaining in the statutory period for filing the statement of use. The applicant will then have until the end of the extension period to overcome any grounds for refusal and/or comply with any requirement.

Example: The notice of allowance issues on September 30, 2010 and a statement of use and/or extension request is due on or before March 30, 2011. The applicant files a statement of use on October 15, 2010. On November 5, 2010, the examining attorney issues an Office action regarding the acceptability of the specimen and the applicant responds on November 8, 2010 but does not correct the specimen deficiency. The examining attorney then issues a final Office action on November 29, 2010 regarding

the specimen issue. If the applicant files a timely “insurance” extension request on or before March 30, 2011, this would extend the time to perfect the statement of use to September 30, 2011. However, the applicant must still respond to the final Office action by May 29, 2011 (i.e., within six months of issuance of the final Office action). The response must include a request to suspend the application or the application will be abandoned for failure to respond. The examining attorney would then suspend the application until September 30, 2011, which is the date of expiration of the extension period and the deadline for complying with the statutory requirements for a statement of use.

If the applicant files a response to the final Office action prior to the expiration of the statutory period for filing a statement of use, and the response overcomes the grounds for refusal and/or complies with any requirement, the examining attorney will remove the application from suspension and withdraw the refusal.

If the applicant files a response to the final Office action prior to expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, but the response does not overcome the grounds for refusal and/or comply with any requirement, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal,” thereby reissuing the final refusal, and the applicant will have six months to respond. *See* [TMEP §§716.06, 1109.16\(d\)](#).

716.02(g) Pending Correction of or Limitation to an International Registration

In a §66(a) application, if it appears that there is an error in the classification of the goods/services in the underlying international registration, the applicant may contact the International Bureau (IB) to request correction of or a limitation to the international registration. In such cases, the USPTO will suspend prosecution of the §66(a) application if the applicant requests suspension in a timely response to an Office action requiring amendment of the identification, or any other matter, and supports the suspension request with a copy of the request for correction filed with the IB. *See* [TMEP §1904.02\(c\)\(iv\)](#).

716.02(h) Pending Recordation of an Assignment Document

During initial examination, the examining attorney should not suspend action or delay issuance of a final action to await recordation of a document. However, in an application under §1 or §44, if the applicant states that a request to record a change of ownership has been filed with the Assignment Recordation Branch but is not yet recorded, and the application is in condition to be approved for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney should suspend the application until the document has been recorded and the information regarding the assignment or the change of name has been entered into the Trademark database. In an application under §66(a), if the applicant states that a request to record a change of ownership has been filed with the IB but is not yet recorded, and the application is in condition to be approved for publication, the examining attorney should suspend action pending recordation of the document and entry of the information into the Trademark database. *See* [TMEP §§502.02\(a\)-\(c\)](#).

Similarly, during examination of the statement of use in an application under §1(b), the examining attorney should withhold final approval for registration until the relevant document has been recorded and the information regarding the assignment or the applicant’s new name has been entered in the Trademark database. *See* [TMEP §502.02\(c\)](#).

716.02(i) Pending Registry Agreement with ICANN for Marks Comprised Solely of gTLDs for Domain-Name Registry Operator and Registrar Services

With regard to an application for a mark composed solely of a gTLD for domain-name registry operator and registrar services, the examining attorney may issue an information request under Trademark Rule

2.61(b), [37 C.F.R. 2.61\(b\)](#), that requires the applicant to submit a verified statement indicating whether the applicant has in place, or has applied for, a Registry Agreement with the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (“ICANN”) designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by its mark. If, in response, the applicant indicates that it has a currently pending application before ICANN for a Registry Agreement for the gTLD identified by its mark, and the applicant has otherwise demonstrated that the mark consisting of the gTLD could function as a mark, the examining attorney may suspend the application until the resolution of the applicant’s pending application with ICANN. See [TMEP §§1215.02\(d\) 1215.02\(d\)\(iv\)](#) regarding examination of marks comprised solely of gTLDs for domain-name registry operator and registrar services.

716.03 Applicant’s Arguments Against Suspension

If an examining attorney suspends action on an application, and the applicant believes the suspension is improper, the applicant may file a request to remove the application from suspension. The applicant should state the reasons for the belief that the suspension is improper and attach any relevant evidence.

If persuaded by the request, the examining attorney should remove the application from suspension, resume examination of the application, and take appropriate action.

If not persuaded by the request, the examining attorney must issue a new suspension action *that addresses the applicant’s arguments and explains the reasons why the request is not granted*. The applicant’s recourse is to file a petition to the Director to review the examining attorney’s action continuing the suspension. The Director will reverse the examining attorney’s action only where there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion. See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) for information about petitions.

If an applicant argues preemptively against suspension based on a conflicting mark in a prior-filed application, and the examining attorney finds the arguments unpersuasive, the examining attorney must include a statement to that effect in the suspension notice. The recommended practice is to briefly address the merits of the unpersuasive arguments prior to an initial suspension.

716.04 Suspended Docket Checked

A legal instruments examiner (“LIE”) will review each case in the suspended docket at least every six months to determine whether continued suspension is appropriate. If the LIE determines that the application should remain suspended, he or she should report the suspension check in the Trademark database. If suspension is no longer necessary, the LIE will notify the examining attorney and the examining attorney will take the appropriate action.

716.05 Inquiry by Examining Attorney Regarding Suspended Application

In certain circumstances, if the application has been suspended for six months or more, the examining attorney will issue an Office action inquiring as to the status of the matter on which suspension was based. For example, if action is suspended pending the receipt of a copy of a foreign registration or proof of renewal of a foreign registration, the examining attorney will inquire every six months during the suspension period as to the status of the foreign application or registration. Similarly, for applications that are suspended pending the outcome of a civil action, the examining attorney will inquire every six months as to the status of the proceeding. If the foreign application or the civil action is still pending, a statement by the applicant to this effect is a proper response.

If the applicant does not respond to the suspension inquiry, the application will be abandoned for failure to respond. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that the applicant's response to a suspension inquiry be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/index.jsp>, using the "Response to Suspension Inquiry or Letter of Suspension" form.

The examining attorney should *not* issue any inquiry if the relevant information is available in the USPTO databases, including information regarding the status of a proceeding pending in the USPTO (e.g., an inter partes proceeding).

716.06 Suspension After Final Action

If the examining attorney determines that action on an application should be suspended after issuance of a final refusal, the examining attorney must issue a suspension notice. This may occur, for example, when the applicant files a petition to cancel a cited registration or in the limited circumstance in a Section 1(b) application when the applicant files a timely "insurance" extension request but the six-month response period may expire before the end of the extension period. See [TMEP §§716.02\(a\) and \(f\)](#), [1109.16\(d\)](#). The examining attorney should not "withdraw the finality" of the refusal in order to suspend; however, in the suspension notice, the examining attorney should inform the applicant that the refusal of registration is continued but that it is not necessary to respond to the final refusal until the application is removed from suspension.

If the application is eventually removed from suspension and the grounds for refusal remain operative, the examining attorney should issue an "Examiner's Subsequent Final Refusal," thereby reissuing the final refusal, and the applicant will have six months to respond. It is inappropriate to remove the case from suspension and immediately declare the application abandoned.

717 Reissuing an Office Action

Sometimes, an Office action must be reissued because the action has been returned as undeliverable or because the applicant notifies the USPTO that the applicant did not receive the Office action. In these situations, the USPTO will not extend the deadline for response, unless the Office action was sent to the wrong address due to a USPTO error.

If there was a USPTO error, the USPTO will issue an Office action notifying the applicant that it may view and print the Office action via the TSDR portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. The applicant will be given a new response period.

If there was no USPTO error, the USPTO will issue an Office action notifying the applicant that it may view and print the original Office action via the TSDR portal on the USPTO website, but that the deadline for applicant's response will not be extended.

A "USPTO error in sending the Office action to the wrong address" means that the USPTO either entered the correspondence address incorrectly or failed to enter a proper notice of change of address filed *before* the date on which the action was issued. The transmittal of a response on letterhead bearing a new address is *not* a proper notice of change of address. The applicant must specifically instruct the USPTO to change the correspondence address. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(b\)](#). Applicants and attorneys have a duty to maintain a current and accurate correspondence address. This also applies to e-mail addresses, if the applicant has authorized the USPTO to send correspondence by e-mail. [37 C.F.R. §2.18\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§609.02–609.02\(f\)](#).

See [TMEP §608.02](#) regarding Office actions sent to individuals who are subsequently excluded from practice before the USPTO, [TMEP §717.01](#) regarding Office actions returned as undeliverable, and [TMEP §717.02](#) regarding non-receipt of Office actions.

717.01 Returned Office Action

If an Office action is returned to the USPTO because the United States Postal Service was not able to deliver it, or because an outgoing e-mail communication was undeliverable, USPTO personnel will review the record to determine whether the correspondence address was entered correctly and/or whether the applicant has filed a notice of change of address. See [TMEP §717](#) regarding the reissuance of an Office action sent to the wrong address due to a USPTO error.

If the USPTO is ultimately unsuccessful in delivering or redelivering the Office action, the returned action and envelope will be scanned into the TICRS database. If no communication from the applicant is received within the period for response, the application will be abandoned.

If outgoing e-mail is returned as undeliverable, the USPTO will send a paper copy to the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §304](#) regarding e-mail and [TMEP §403](#) for more information about returned correspondence.

717.02 Non-Receipt of Office Action

If an applicant notifies the USPTO that the applicant did not receive an action, either before or after the expiration of the response period, the examining attorney must check to determine whether the action was sent to the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §§609–609.04](#).

If the Office action was sent to the correspondence address of record, and there is time remaining in the response period, the examining attorney should direct the applicant to view the full record on the TSDR portal on the USPTO website, and advise the applicant that the deadline for response runs from the original issuance date and that a response must be received in the USPTO before this deadline to avoid abandonment.

If the response period has expired, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that the application is abandoned, and that the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive. In either situation, the examining attorney should enter an appropriate Note to the File in the application record.

If there is evidence in the record that the USPTO sent the Office action to the wrong address due to a USPTO error (see [TMEP §717](#)), the USPTO will reissue the action and provide the applicant with a new response period. The examining attorney should first ensure that the correspondence address has been corrected, and then e-mail the internal TM Clerical Support mailbox, stating that the action was sent to the wrong address, and requesting that the action be reissued with a new response period. The deadline for response will run from the new issuance date. If the application had been abandoned, it will be reinstated. See [TMEP §1712.01](#) regarding reinstatement of applications that are abandoned due to USPTO error.

718 Abandonment

An abandoned application is an application for registration that is removed from the USPTO docket of pending applications because of express abandonment or because the applicant failed to take appropriate action within the specified response period.

718.01 Express Abandonment by Applicant or Applicant's Attorney

37 CFR 2.65(b)

An application will be abandoned if an applicant expressly abandons the application pursuant to § 2.68.

37 CFR §2.68 *Express abandonment (withdrawal) of application.*

(a) Written document required. An applicant may expressly abandon an application by filing a written request for abandonment or withdrawal of the application, signed by the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with the requirements of §2.193(e)(2). A request for abandonment or withdrawal may not subsequently be withdrawn.

(b) Rights in the mark not affected. Except as provided in §2.135, the fact that an application has been expressly abandoned shall not affect any rights that the applicant may have in the mark set forth in the abandoned application in any proceeding before the Office.

37 CFR §2.135 *Abandonment of application or mark.*

After the commencement of an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, if the applicant files a written abandonment of the application or of the mark without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the applicant. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative.

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that letters of express abandonment be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Generally, all express abandonments filed via TEAS are processed electronically and the Trademark database is automatically updated to indicate that the application has been expressly abandoned and generates a notice to the applicant that the application is abandoned. However, in the later stages after the application has been approved for publication, the TEAS system will not automatically process an incoming express abandonment, and the express abandonment must be reviewed manually. The USPTO is generally unable to withdraw a mark from publication or issue unless the express abandonment is received and processed at least twenty days before the scheduled publication date or registration issuance date.

Paper letters of express abandonment are reviewed by examining attorneys.

All letters of express abandonment must be signed by the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., an officer of a corporation or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.68\(a\)](#); see [TMEP §§608.01, 611.02](#). The same principles that govern the signature of responses to Office actions (see [TMEP §§712, 712.01](#)) apply to the signature of express abandonments.

For express abandonments filed on paper, the examining attorney must ensure that the letter of express abandonment is signed by a proper party. If the applicant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must personally sign the letter of express abandonment. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\), 11.18\(a\)](#).

If the applicant is pro se, the letter of express abandonment must be personally signed by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\), 11.14\(e\)](#). See [TMEP §611.06](#) for more information about persons who have legal authority to bind various types of juristic applicants, and [TMEP §§611.05–611.05\(b\)](#) and [712.03](#) regarding documents signed by unauthorized parties.

An application cannot be expressly abandoned by examiner's amendment.

When an applicant files a letter of express abandonment on paper that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.68\(a\)](#), the examining attorney should perform a database transaction expressly abandoning the application, effective as of the filing date of the letter of express abandonment, which will generate a letter notifying the applicant that the application is abandoned.

If it is unclear whether a document is a letter of abandonment, the examining attorney should contact the applicant to inquire about his or her intention before abandoning the application.

If an applicant files an express abandonment of an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, and wants to withdraw the abandonment to resume prosecution of the application, the applicant must petition the Director under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#) to waive [37 C.F.R. §2.68\(a\)](#) to permit withdrawal of the express abandonment, within two months of the effective date of abandonment. See [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#). However, such a petition will be granted only in an extraordinary situation, where justice requires, and no other party is injured. See *In re Glaxo Grp. Ltd.*, 33 USPQ2d 1535 (Comm'r Pats. 1993); cf. *Christiane E, LLC v. Int'l Expeditions, Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d 2042 (TTAB 2013).

If the applicant files a written request to abandon the application after the commencement of an opposition proceeding, the request for abandonment must be filed with the Board, and must include the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding. If the applicant files a request for abandonment without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment will be entered against the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.135](#). If an applicant whose application is the subject of an opposition proceeding files an express abandonment of the application after the commencement of the opposition proceeding, but before receipt of the Board's notice of the filing of the opposition, the Board will allow the applicant an opportunity to obtain and submit the written consent of every adverse party or to withdraw the abandonment because an unconsented abandonment, if not withdrawn, may result in entry of judgment against the applicant in the opposition. [TBMP §602.01](#). It is not necessary to obtain consent of a potential opposer during an extension of time to oppose. [TBMP §218](#).

In a §66(a) application, an applicant may file a letter of express abandonment either with the USPTO or with the IB.

718.02 Failure by Applicant to Take Required Action During Statutory Period

15 U.S.C. §1062(b)

If the applicant is found not entitled to registration, the examiner shall advise the applicant thereof and of the reason therefor. The applicant shall have a period of six months in which to reply or amend his application, which shall then be reexamined. This procedure may be repeated until (1) the examiner finally refuses registration of the mark or (2) the applicant fails for a period of six months to reply or amend or appeal, whereupon the application shall be deemed to have been abandoned, unless it can be shown to the satisfaction of the Director that the delay in responding was unintentional, whereupon such time may be extended.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#), an application becomes abandoned if the applicant fails to respond, or fails to respond completely, within the six-month statutory response period. See [TMEP §§718.03–718.03\(b\)](#) regarding incomplete responses. When an applicant is granted additional time to perfect its response under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) ([TMEP §718.03\(b\)](#)), but fails to respond or responds late, the date of abandonment is not affected. It remains the day after the date on which the six-month response period ends, since the grant of additional time to *perfect* a response does not extend the statutory six-month response period.

The examining attorney has no authority to accept a late response. If an applicant files a late response, the examining attorney must immediately send a notice to the applicant stating that the response was untimely; that the application is abandoned; and that the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) if the failure to timely respond was unintentional. See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial abandonment.

718.02(a) Partial Abandonment

General Rule. Trademark Rule 2.65(a)(1), [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(1\)](#), provides that if all refusals and/or requirements are expressly limited to certain goods/services, and the applicant fails to respond, or to respond completely, to an Office action, the application will be abandoned only as to those particular goods/services.

Exception - Requirements for Fees to Cover All Classes in a Multiple-Class Application. If the fees paid in a multiple-class application are sufficient to cover one class but insufficient to cover all the classes, the examining attorney will require that the applicant submit the additional fees or specify the classes to which the original fee(s) should be applied. Under such circumstances, it is not appropriate to give a partial-abandonment advisory. If the applicant does not respond to the Office action, the entire application will be abandoned.

Office Action Must State That Refusal Applies Only to Certain Goods, Services or Classes. If the examining attorney issues a refusal or requirement that applies only to certain goods/services/class(es) in any Office action (i.e., a first or subsequent nonfinal Office action, final action, or denial of a request for reconsideration), this must be expressly stated in the Office action. Partial abandonment applies only if the Office action expressly states that a refusal or requirement is limited to only certain goods/services/class(es). Unless the action includes a **clear and explicit** statement that the refusal or requirement applies to only certain goods/services/class(es), the refusal or requirement will apply to all the goods/services/class(es), and failure to respond to the action will result in abandonment of the entire application.

Incomplete Response to Partial Refusal or Requirement. Partial abandonment may also occur when an applicant fails to file a complete response to a final refusal or final requirement that is expressly limited to only certain goods/services/class(es). If an applicant files an incomplete response to a nonfinal action that is limited to only certain goods/services/class(es), the examining attorney should generally issue an action making all outstanding requirements and refusals final rather than partially abandoning the application. See [TMEP §§718.03–718.03\(b\)](#) regarding incomplete responses. When an examining attorney holds an application abandoned for failure to file a complete response, the applicant's recourse is to file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to reverse the holding. See [TMEP §1713.01](#). If an applicant files an incomplete response to a final action that is limited to only certain goods/services/class(es) and there is time remaining in the response period to file a notice of appeal, the examining attorney must treat it as a request for reconsideration and deny the request, but must wait to issue the partial abandonment until all time to respond has expired. If there is no time remaining to appeal, the examining attorney must issue an examiner's amendment deleting (abandoning) the goods/services/classes to which the refusal or requirement pertained. The examiner's amendment must clearly set forth the changes that will be made to the identification of goods/services. No prior authorization from the applicant or its attorney is needed to issue an examiner's amendment in this situation.

Failure to Respond to Partial Refusal or Requirement. When an applicant fails to respond to a refusal or requirement that is expressly limited to only certain goods/services/class(es), the examining attorney should issue an examiner's amendment deleting (abandoning) the goods/services/classes to which the refusal or requirement pertained. The examiner's amendment should clearly set forth the changes that will be made to the identification of goods/services in the application. No prior authorization from the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner is needed to issue an examiner's amendment in this situation. [TMEP §707.02](#). If the failure to respond to the partial refusal or requirement was unintentional, the applicant may file a petition to the Director to revive the deleted goods/services/classes within two months of the issuance

date of the examiner's amendment. When seeking to revive a portion of an application that was partially abandoned, the applicant must use the Petition to the Director under Trademark Rule 2.146 form if filing the petition electronically. See [TMEP §§1714](#) *et seq.* regarding petitions to revive.

Failure to Perfect Appeal of Partial Refusal or Requirement. Partial abandonment can also occur when a partial refusal or requirement is upheld on appeal, and the applicant fails to perfect an appeal to, or an appeal is dismissed by, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or civil court, or when an applicant withdraws or fails to prosecute an appeal of a partial refusal to the Board. In these situations, the examining attorney should issue an examiner's amendment deleting (abandoning) the goods/services/class(es) to which the appeal pertained. No prior authorization from the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner is needed to issue an examiner's amendment in this situation.

Use of Headings in Office Actions Encouraged. When issuing a partial refusal or requirement, the examining attorney is encouraged to use the heading "Partial Refusal" or "Partial Requirement," so the record is clear that the refusal or requirement applies only to certain goods/services/class(es).

Use of Abandonment Advisory in Office Actions. When issuing a partial refusal or requirement, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that if the applicant does not respond to the Office action within the response period, certain goods/services/class(es) will be deleted from the application (abandoned) and the application will proceed forward with only the remaining goods/services/class(es).

Requirements for Amendment of Identification of Goods/Services. See [TMEP §1402.13](#) regarding an examining attorney's requirement for amendment of an identification of goods/services that includes some terminology that is indefinite and some terminology that is acceptable, and the processing of applications in which an applicant fails to respond to such a requirement.

718.03 Incomplete Response

37 CFR §2.65(a)

An application will be abandoned if an applicant fails to respond to an Office action, or to respond completely, within six months from the date of issuance. A timely petition to the Director pursuant to §§ 2.63(a) and (b) and 2.146 or notice of appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board pursuant to § 2.142, if appropriate, is a response that avoids abandonment. See § 2.63(b)(4).

(1) If all refusals and/or requirements are expressly limited to certain goods and/or services, the application will be abandoned only as to those goods and/or services.

(2) When a timely response by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to advance the examination of the application and is a substantially complete response to the examining attorney's action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with a requirement has been omitted, the examining attorney may grant the applicant thirty days, or to the end of the response period set forth in the action to which the substantially complete response was submitted, whichever is longer, to explain and supply the omission before the examining attorney considers the question of abandonment.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#), an applicant must respond completely to each issue raised in the examining attorney's Office action to avoid abandonment. Generally, a response is incomplete if it:

(1) does not address one or more of the requirements or refusals made in the Office action; (2) is unsigned; (3) is signed by an unauthorized person; or (4) is a response to a final action that does not overcome all refusals or satisfy all requirements, when the response period has expired, and the applicant has not timely filed a notice of appeal. See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\) 715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#).

Exception - TEAS Responses Consisting Only of a Signature or Missing Significant Data or Attachments. Occasionally, the USPTO receives a response to an Office action filed through TEAS that consists only of a signature or is missing significant data or attachments. This is generally due to user error. If

an examining attorney receives a TEAS response to a nonfinal action that consists only of a signature or is missing significant data or attachments, the examining attorney should not issue a notice of incomplete response granting the applicant additional time to complete the response. Instead, the examining attorney must issue a final action, and include sufficient evidence and arguments for all refusals and requirements in preparation for a possible appeal, if the application is in condition for final action. If the application is not in condition for final action (e.g., because a prior pending application has matured into a registration), the examining attorney should issue another nonfinal action, with a six-month response clause, explaining why the response was incomplete, continuing all outstanding refusals and requirements, and addressing any new issues. See [TMEP §715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#) regarding TEAS responses to final actions that consist only of a signature or are missing significant data or attachments.

Unsigned Responses. If a response is unsigned, the examining attorney must obtain a properly signed copy before acting on the merits of the response, regardless of whether the Office action was final or nonfinal.

The examining attorney must issue a notice of incomplete response, granting the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#), [718.03\(b\)](#). The applicant must submit a properly signed copy of the response, or, if all issues raised are proper subject matter for an examiner's amendment, the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or the applicant's previously recognized qualified practitioner may authorize the examining attorney to enter an examiner's amendment. A new qualified practitioner who has not yet appeared may not authorize an examiner's amendment, because a telephone call from a qualified practitioner does not satisfy the "appearance" requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.17\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §604.01](#). If all issues raised are not proper subject matter for an examiner's amendment, the applicant may *not* ratify the unsigned response through an examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §712.02](#). If the applicant fails to submit a properly signed response within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney must hold the application abandoned for failure to file a complete response. See [TMEP §718.03\(a\)](#).

Responses Signed by Unauthorized Persons. If a response is signed by an unauthorized party (e.g., a foreign attorney who is not a member in good standing of the bar of the highest court of a state in the United States, which includes the District of Columbia and any Commonwealth or territory of the United States) or a corporate employee who does not have legal authority to bind the applicant), the examining attorney must obtain a properly signed copy before acting on the merits of the response, regardless of whether the Office action was final or nonfinal. The examining attorney must issue a notice of incomplete response, granting the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#), [718.03\(b\)](#). The applicant must submit a response signed by the individual applicant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (see [TMEP §§611.06](#), [712.01](#)), or by a qualified practitioner (see [TMEP §§602–602.03\(e\)](#)). [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(b\)](#). If a response was signed by an unauthorized party, it is not acceptable for the applicant to ratify the response through an examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §§611.05–611.05\(b\)](#) and [712.03](#) for further information. If the applicant fails to submit a properly signed response within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney must hold the application abandoned for failure to file a complete response. See [TMEP §718.03\(a\)](#) regarding holdings of abandonment for failure to respond completely.

Properly Signed but Incomplete Responses to Nonfinal Actions. When an applicant files an incomplete response to a nonfinal action (i.e., does not address one or more of the requirements or refusals made in the Office action), the examining attorney should not hold the application abandoned. Instead, the examining attorney should generally issue a final action, if the application is in condition for final action. In limited

circumstances, the examining attorney has discretion to issue a notice of incomplete response granting the applicant additional time to complete the response if the response meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §718.03\(b\)](#). If the application is not in condition for final action, and the response does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney should issue another nonfinal action, explaining why the response was incomplete, and continuing all outstanding refusals and requirements.

A written disagreement with the examining attorney's refusal or requirement may be a complete response to a nonfinal action with respect to that refusal or requirement.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for more information about processing an incomplete response to a partial nonfinal refusal or requirement.

Properly Signed but Incomplete Responses to Final Actions. If the applicant files a properly signed but incomplete response that does not meet the criteria in [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) for granting additional time to complete the response, there is no time remaining in the six-month response period, and no notice of appeal has been filed, the examining attorney must hold the application abandoned due to incomplete response. See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#), [718.03\(a\)](#).

See [TMEP § 718.02\(a\)](#) for more information about processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement.

Non-Responsive Communications. An inquiry, a request to extend the response period, or a communication on a matter unrelated to the preceding Office action should be treated as a non-responsive communication, not as an incomplete response. See [TMEP §719](#) for further information.

Failure to Respond to Notice of Incomplete Response. If the examining attorney issues a notice of incomplete response, and the applicant fails to respond or submits an unsatisfactory response to the notice within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney must issue an "Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response" action. See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#), [715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#), [718.03\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §717.02](#) regarding the procedure for handling an applicant's claim that the applicant did not receive the Office action.

718.03(a) Holding of Abandonment for Failure to Respond Completely

Generally, an examining attorney should not hold an application abandoned when an applicant timely files a properly signed but incomplete response to a **nonfinal** action (i.e., the response does not address one or more of the requirements or refusals made in the Office action) or a TEAS response to a nonfinal action consisting of only a signature or missing significant data or attachments. See [TMEP §718.03](#).

The examining attorney may hold an application abandoned after **final** action if (1) the applicant files a properly signed but incomplete response that does not meet the criteria in [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) for granting additional time to comply and the time for responding to the final action has expired (see [TMEP §715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#)) or (2) the applicant fails to respond to a notice of incomplete response within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). In such cases, the examining attorney should issue an "Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response" action stating that the application is abandoned due to an incomplete response and explaining why.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for more information about processing an incomplete response to a partial nonfinal or final refusal or requirement.

The applicant may contact the managing attorney or senior attorney and request review of the examining attorney's action. If the managing attorney or senior attorney believes that the holding of abandonment was improper, he or she will direct the examining attorney to reverse the holding of abandonment. Otherwise, the applicant's recourse is to file a petition requesting that the Director exercise supervisory authority under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) and reverse the holding of abandonment. See [TMEP §1713.01](#).

See [TMEP §715.03\(a\)\(2\)](#) regarding action on an incomplete response to a final action before the response period has expired when no notice of appeal has been filed.

718.03(b) Granting Additional Time to Perfect Response

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney has discretion to grant an applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response if:

- (1) the response was filed within the six-month period;
- (2) the response was a bona fide attempt to advance the examination;
- (3) the response was a substantially complete response to the examining attorney's action; and
- (4) consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement was omitted.

Nonfinal Action : If an applicant's attempt to comply with an examining attorney's nonfinal action is incomplete, the examining attorney generally should issue a "Examiner's Final Refusal" (or, if appropriate, "SU – Examiner's Final Refusal") action when the application is otherwise in condition for final action, and not grant a 30-day extension of time under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding processing an incomplete response to a partial nonfinal refusal or requirement and [TMEP §718.03](#) regarding processing TEAS responses to nonfinal actions that consist only of a signature or are missing significant data or attachments.

Final Action : The discretion to give an applicant extra time to perfect a response under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) should generally be exercised in connection with a response to a final action. See [TMEP §§715.03 715.03\(c\)](#) regarding processing requests for reconsideration after final action and [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding processing an incomplete response to a partial final refusal or requirement. To grant additional time after a response to a final action, the examining attorney must issue an "Examiner's Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter" (or, if appropriate, "SU – Examiner's Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter"). See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(C\), \(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#).

Granting the applicant additional time to complete a response under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#) after final action does not extend the time for filing an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (or a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#)). The applicant must file a notice of appeal (or petition) within six months of the issuance date of the final action. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#); see [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(1\)–\(2\)](#).

Unsigned Response or Response Signed by Unauthorized Person: If the response to a nonfinal or final action is unsigned or signed by an unauthorized person, the examining attorney must issue a notice of incomplete response explaining why the response is incomplete and granting the applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to

perfect the response. To issue a notice after a nonfinal action, the examining attorney must use the “Examiner’s Non-Responsive Amendment” action and omit the six-month response clause. To issue a notice after a final action, the examining attorney must use the “Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter” (or, if appropriate, “SU – Examiner’s Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter”) and omit the six-month response clause. See [TMEP §§715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#) and [718.03](#) regarding processing responses to actions that are not signed or not properly signed.

Failure to Respond or Respond Completely to Notice of Incomplete Response : If the applicant fails to respond to a notice or to complete the response within the time granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#), the examining attorney must issue an “Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response” action. See [TMEP §718.03\(a\)](#). In this situation, the applicant cannot file a petition to revive due to unintentional delay pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). The applicant’s only recourse is to file a petition to the Director to exercise supervisory authority under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) to reverse the examining attorney’s holding of abandonment. However, the Director will reverse an examining attorney’s action on petition only where there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion or, in rare cases, where a petitioner can show that it has substantially complied with the requirements of the statute or rules. See [TMEP §1713.01](#).

If the application is abandoned for failure to file a complete response, but the applicant did not receive the action granting additional time to complete a response, or was unable to respond to the action due to some other extraordinary circumstance, the applicant may file a petition requesting that the Director waive [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(a\)](#) and permit a late response to be submitted under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §1713.02](#).

718.04 Failure to File Statement of Use

Under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(4\)](#), an application under §1(b) of the Act is abandoned if the applicant fails to timely file a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §§2.65\(c\), 2.88\(k\); TMEP §§1108.01, 1109.04](#).

The ITU/Divisional Unit will abandon the application if the applicant fails to file a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance, or within a previously granted extension period. The USPTO will send a computer-generated notice of abandonment to the applicant.

If the failure to timely file the statement of use or extension request was unintentional, the applicant may file a petition to revive under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(4\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#).

718.05 Failure to Perfect Appeal

An application may become abandoned because of withdrawal of, or failure to prosecute, an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. See [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\); TBMP §1203.02\(a\); TMEP §1501](#).

An application may also become abandoned because of failure to perfect an appeal, or dismissal of an appeal, to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or civil court.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial abandonment due to failure to perfect an appeal.

718.06 Notice of Abandonment for Failure to Respond

If no response is received by the USPTO within six months of the issuance date of an Office action, the application is sent to the examining attorney to be abandoned or partially abandoned, as appropriate. The examining attorney must check the record to ensure that there is no response and that the Office action was sent to the correspondence address of record. See [TMEP §717](#) regarding reissuing an Office action that was sent to the wrong address due to a USPTO error. The examining attorney must also check to see whether the Office action contained a partial refusal or requirement. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial abandonment.

An application is considered to be abandoned as of the day after the date on which a response was due, even though the examining attorney performs the Trademark database transaction that reports the abandonment at a later date. The USPTO sends a computer-generated notice of abandonment to the correspondence address listed in the application.

Applications that are abandoned after ex parte appeals or inter partes proceedings are considered abandoned as of the date of the action by the Board that caused the application to abandon (e.g., affirming the examining attorney's refusal or sustaining an opposition). However, the Trademark database transaction reporting the abandonment is not performed until a month after expiration of the period for appeal from the Board's decision.

718.07 Revival or Reinstatement of Abandoned Application - New Search Required

When an application listed as abandoned in the USPTO's Trademark database is revived or reinstated, the examining attorney must conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks. If the new search shows that a later-filed application for a conflicting mark has been approved, or if a §2(d) search for a later-filed application for a conflicting mark was performed when the earlier-filed application was in abandoned status, the examining attorney with the earlier-filed application must inform the examining attorney with the later-filed application that the earlier-filed application has been revived or reinstated so that appropriate action may be taken. If the later-filed application has been published, the examining attorney handling that application should request jurisdiction (*see* [TMEP §1504.04\(a\)](#)) before suspending the application pending disposition of the earlier-filed application. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(c\)](#); [TMEP §1208.02\(c\)](#).

However, if a later-filed conflicting application is registered, the examining attorney must refuse registration of the earlier-filed (revived or reinstated) application under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). In this situation, an applicant may file a petition to cancel the registration under Section 14 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#).

719 Non-Responsive Communications

An inquiry, a request to extend the response period, or a communication on a matter unrelated to the outstanding Office action should be treated as a "non-responsive communication," not as an incomplete response to an outstanding Office action. If the applicant files a non-responsive communication while an Office action is outstanding, the examining attorney should send the applicant a letter (i.e., Examiner's Non-Responsive Amendment) acknowledging receipt of the communication, noting that the communication is non-responsive, and advising the applicant that, to avoid abandonment, a response to the outstanding Office action must be received within six months of the issuance date of the outstanding Office action. If no response to the Office action is received within six months of the issuance date, the application must be abandoned for failure to respond.

720 Fraud Upon the USPTO

If an examining attorney suspects the possibility of fraud upon the USPTO in the ex parte examination of a trademark application, the following procedure must be followed.

- (1) The examining attorney must bring the matter to the attention of the managing attorney.
- (2) If the managing attorney concurs with the examining attorney as to the possibility of fraud upon the USPTO, the managing attorney will bring the matter to the attention of the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure.
- (3) If the Administrator believes that the matter warrants further action, he or she will make an appropriate recommendation to the Commissioner for Trademarks.

Under no circumstances should any USPTO communication pertaining to fraud be made, either orally or in writing, by anyone in the Trademark Examining Operation, except as set forth in paragraphs 1 and 2 above.

These issues may ultimately be referred to the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Chapter 800 Application Requirements

801	Types of Applications
801.01	Single or Combined Application
801.01(a)	Single (Single-Class) Application
801.01(b)	Combined (Multiple-Class) Application
801.02	Principal Register or Supplemental Register
801.02(a)	Act of 1946, Principal Register
801.02(b)	Act of 1946, Supplemental Register
802	Application Form
803	Applicant
803.01	Who May Apply
803.02	Name of Applicant
803.02(a)	Individual
803.02(b)	Partnership, Joint Venture, or Other “Firm”
803.02(c)	Corporation and Association
803.03	Legal Entity of Applicant
803.03(a)	Individual or Sole Proprietorship
803.03(b)	Partnership, Joint Venture, or Other “Firm”
803.03(c)	Corporation, Association, Organization, and Company
803.03(d)	Joint Applicants
803.03(e)	Trusts, Conservatorships, and Estates
803.03(e)(i)	Business Trusts
803.03(f)	Governmental Bodies and Universities
803.03(g)	Banking Institutions
803.03(h)	Limited Liability Companies
803.03(i)	Common Terms Designating Entity of Foreign Applicants
803.03(j)	Federally Recognized Indian Tribe
803.03(k)	Limited Liability Partnerships
803.04	Citizenship of Applicant
803.05	Address of Applicant
803.06	Applicant May Not Be Changed
804	Verification and Signature
804.01	Form and Wording of Verification in §1 or §44 Application
804.01(a)	Verification with Oath
804.01(a)(i)	Verification Made in Foreign Country
804.01(b)	Declaration in Lieu of Oath
804.02	Averments Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application
804.03	Time Between Execution and Filing of Documents - §1 or §44 Application
804.04	Persons Authorized to Sign Verification or Declaration
804.05	Verification of §66(a) Application
805	Identification and Classification of Goods and Services
806	Filing Basis
806.01	Requirements for Establishing a Basis
806.01(a)	Use in Commerce - §1(a)
806.01(b)	Intent-to-Use - §1(b)
806.01(c)	Foreign Priority - §44(d)
806.01(d)	Foreign Registration - §44(e)
806.01(e)	Extension of Protection of International Registration - §66(a)
806.02	Multiple Bases
806.02(a)	Procedure for Asserting More Than One Basis
806.02(b)	Applicant May File Under Both §1(a) and §1(b) in the Same Application

- 806.02(c)** Examination of Specimens of Use in a Multiple-Basis Application
- 806.02(d)** Abandonment of Multiple-Basis Applications
- 806.02(e)** Allegation of Bona Fide Intention to Use Mark in Commerce Required Even if Application Is Based on Both §44 and §1(a)
- 806.02(f)** Section 44(d) Combined With Other Bases
- 806.02(g)** Not Necessary to Repeat Allegation of Bona Fide Intention to Use Mark in Commerce in Multiple-Basis Application
- 806.03** Amendments to Add or Substitute a Basis
- 806.03(a)** When Basis Can be Changed
- 806.03(b)** Applicant May Add or Substitute a §44(d) Basis Only Within Six-Month Priority Period
- 806.03(c)** Amendment From §1(a) to §1(b)
- 806.03(d)** Amendment From §44 to §1(b)
- 806.03(e)** Allegation of Use Required to Amend From §1(b) to §1(a)
- 806.03(f)** Use in Commerce as of Application Filing Date Required to Add or Substitute §1(a) as a Basis in §44 Application
- 806.03(g)** Amendment From §1(b) to §44
- 806.03(h)** Effect of Substitution of Basis on Application Filing Date
- 806.03(i)** Verification of Amendment Required
- 806.03(j)** Petition to Amend Basis After Publication - §1 or §44 Application
- 806.03(j)(i)** Amending the Basis of a §1(b) Application After Publication But Before Issuance of Notice of Allowance
- 806.03(j)(ii)** Amending the Basis of a §1(b) Application Between Issuance of Notice of Allowance and Filing of Statement of Use
- 806.03(j)(iii)** Amending the Basis of a §1(b) Application After Filing of Statement of Use But Before Approval for Registration
- 806.03(k)** Basis May not be Changed in §66(a) Application
- 806.03(l)** §66(a) Basis May not be Added to §1 or §44 Application
- 806.04** Deleting a Basis
- 806.04(a)** Deletion of §1(b) Basis After Publication or Issuance of the Notice of Allowance
- 806.04(b)** Retention of §44(d) Priority Filing Date Without Perfecting §44(e) Basis
- 806.05** Review of Basis Prior to Publication or Issue
- 807** **Drawing**
- 807.01** Drawing Must Show Only One Mark
- 807.02** Drawing Must Be Limited to Mark
- 807.03** Standard Character Drawings
- 807.03(a)** Requirements for Standard Character Drawings
- 807.03(b)** List of Standard Characters
- 807.03(c)** Drawings Containing Both a Standard Character Claim and Designs or Other Elements
- 807.03(d)** Changing From Special Form Elements to Standard Characters, or the Reverse, May be a Material Alteration
- 807.03(e)** Standard Character Drawing and Specimen of Use
- 807.03(f)** Standard Character Drawing and Foreign Registration
- 807.03(g)** Drawings in “Typed” Format With No Standard Character Claim
- 807.03(h)** Drawings Where the Format Is Unclear
- 807.03(i)** Typed Drawings
- 807.04** Special Form Drawings
- 807.04(a)** Characteristics of Special Form Drawings
- 807.04(b)** When Special Form Drawing Is Required

807.05	Electronically Submitted Drawings
807.05(a)	Standard Character Drawings Submitted Electronically
807.05(a)(i)	Long Marks in Standard Character Drawings
807.05(b)	Special Form Drawings Submitted Electronically
807.05(c)	Requirements for Digitized Images
807.06	Paper Drawings
807.06(a)	Type of Paper and Size of Mark
807.06(b)	Long Marks in Standard Character Drawings
807.06(c)	Separate Drawing Page Preferred
807.07	Color in the Mark
807.07(a)	Requirements for Color Drawings
807.07(a)(i)	Color Must Be Claimed as a Feature of the Mark
807.07(a)(ii)	Applicant Must Specify the Location of the Colors Claimed
807.07(b)	Color Drawings Filed Without a Color Claim
807.07(c)	Color Drawings Filed With an Incorrect Color Claim
807.07(d)	Color Drawings that Contain Black, White, or Gray
807.07(d)(i)	Applications Under §1
807.07(d)(ii)	Applications Under §44
807.07(d)(iii)	Applications Under §66(a)
807.07(e)	Black-and-White Drawings and Color Claims
807.07(f)	Black-and-White Drawings that Contain Gray or Black-and-White Drawings with a Mark Description that Refers to Black, White, or Gray
807.07(f)(i)	TEAS, TEAS RF, TEAS Plus, and §66(a) Applications
807.07(f)(ii)	Applications Filed on Paper
807.07(g)	Drawings in Applications Filed Before November 2, 2003
807.08	Broken Lines to Show Placement
807.09	“Drawing” of Sound, Scent, or Non-Visual Mark
807.10	Three-Dimensional Marks
807.11	Marks With Motion
807.12	Mark on Drawing Must Agree with Mark on Specimen or Foreign Registration
807.12(a)	Applications Under §1 of the Trademark Act
807.12(a)(i)	Role of Punctuation in Determining Whether Mark on Drawing Agrees with Mark on Specimen
807.12(a)(ii)	Punctuation on the Drawing but Not on the Specimen
807.12(a)(iii)	Punctuation on the Specimen but Not on the Drawing
807.12(b)	Applications Under §44 of the Trademark Act
807.12(c)	Applications Under §66(a) of the Trademark Act
807.12(d)	Mutilation or Incomplete Representation of Mark
807.12(e)	Compound Word Marks and Telescoped Marks
807.13	Amendment of Mark
807.13(a)	Amendment of Mark in Applications Under §§1 and 44
807.13(b)	Mark in §66(a) Application Cannot be Amended
807.14	Material Alteration of Mark
807.14(a)	Removal or Deletion of Matter from Drawing
807.14(b)	Addition or Deletion of Previously Registered Matter
807.14(c)	Addition or Deletion of Punctuation
807.14(d)	Amendments to Correct “Internal Inconsistencies”
807.14(e)	Amendments to Color Features of Marks
807.14(e)(i)	Black-and-White Drawings
807.14(e)(ii)	Marks that Include Color and Other Elements
807.14(e)(iii)	Color Marks

- 807.14(f) Material Alteration: Case References
- 807.15 Substitute Drawings
- 807.16 Amendment of Drawings by the USPTO
- 807.17 Procedures for Processing Unacceptable Amendments to Drawings
- 807.18 Mark Drawing Code
- 808 **Description of Mark**
- 808.01 Guidelines for Requiring Description
- 808.01(a) Meaning of Term in Mark
- 808.01(b) Lining and Stippling Statements for Drawings
- 808.02 Description Must Be Accurate and Concise
- 808.03 Examination Procedure for Descriptions
- 808.03(a) Accurate and Complete Descriptions
- 808.03(b) No Description in Application
- 808.03(c) Accurate but Incomplete Description in Application or Amendment
- 808.03(c)(i) Accurate but Incomplete Descriptions in Cases Where a Description Is Needed to Clarify the Mark and Must Be Printed
- 808.03(c)(ii) Accurate but Incomplete Descriptions in Cases Where a Description Need Not Be Printed
- 808.03(d) Inaccurate Description in Application or Amendment
- 808.03(e) Amending Descriptions
- 808.03(f) Updating Design Coding
- 808.03(g) Unacceptable Statements in Mark Descriptions
- 809 **Translation and Transliteration of Non-English Wording in Mark**
- 809.01 Examining Applications for Marks Comprising Non-English Wording that Do Not Include an Accurate Translation or Transliteration
- 809.01(a) Inquiry/Applicant's Response Regarding Meaning in a Foreign Language
- 809.01(b) Limited Exceptions to Rules for Translations
- 809.01(b)(i) Foreign Terms Appearing in English Dictionary
- 809.01(b)(ii) Foreign Articles or Prepositions Combined with English Terms
- 809.01(b)(iii) Words from Dead or Obscure Languages
- 809.02 Equivalency in Translation
- 809.03 Printing of Translations and Transliterations
- 810 **Filing Fee**
- 810.01 Collection of Fees for Multiple Classes
- 810.02 Refunds
- 811 **Designation of Domestic Representative**
- 812 **Identification of Prior Registrations of Applicant**
- 812.01 Proving Ownership of Prior Registrations
- 813 **Consent to Register by Particular Living Individual Whose Name or Likeness Appears in the Mark**
- 813.01 Statement Printed in Official Gazette and on Registration Certificate
- 813.01(a) Name or Likeness Is That of a Living Individual
- 813.01(b) Name or Likeness Is Not That of a Living Individual
- 813.01(c) Updating the Trademark Database
- 814 **Requesting Additional Information**
- 815 **Application Filed on Supplemental Register**
- 815.01 Marks Eligible for Principal Register Not Registrable on Supplemental Register
- 815.02 Elements Required
- 815.03 Filing on Supplemental Register Is Not an Admission That the Mark Has Not Acquired Distinctiveness
- 815.04 Basis for Refusal of Registration of Matter That Is Incapable

816	Amending Application to Supplemental Register
816.01	How to Amend
816.02	Effective Filing Date
816.03	Amendment to Different Register
816.04	Amendment After Refusal
816.05	Amendment After Decision on Appeal
817	Preparation of Application for Publication or Registration
818	Application Checklist
819	TEAS Plus
819.01	TEAS Plus Filing Requirements
819.01(a)	Type of Mark
819.01(b)	Applicant's Name and Address
819.01(c)	Applicant's Legal Entity and Citizenship
819.01(d)	Name and Address for Paper Correspondence
819.01(e)	E-mail Address and Authorization for the USPTO to Send Correspondence by E-Mail
819.01(f)	Basis or Bases for Filing
819.01(f)(i)	Section 1(a) - Use in Commerce
819.01(f)(ii)	Section 1(b) - Intent to Use
819.01(f)(iii)	Section 44(e) - Foreign Registration
819.01(f)(iv)	Section 44(d)
819.01(g)	Identification and Classification of Goods/Services
819.01(h)	Filing Fee
819.01(i)	Drawing
819.01(j)	Color Claim
819.01(k)	Description of the Mark
819.01(l)	Verification
819.01(m)	Translation and/or Transliteration
819.01(n)	Multiple-Class Applications
819.01(o)	Consent to Registration of Name or Portrait
819.01(p)	Prior Registration of the Same Mark
819.01(q)	Concurrent Use Applications
819.02	Additional Requirements for a TEAS Plus Application
819.02(a)	Receipt of Communications by E-Mail
819.02(b)	Additional Documents That Must be Filed Through TEAS
819.03	Adding a Class During Examination
819.04	Procedures for Payment of TEAS Plus Processing Fee Per Class
820	TEAS RF (Reduced Fee)
820.01	TEAS RF Filing Requirements
820.02	Additional Requirements for a TEAS RF Application
820.02(a)	Receipt of Communications by E-Mail
820.02(b)	Additional Documents That Must be Filed Through TEAS
820.03	Adding a Class During Examination
820.04	Procedures for Payment of TEAS RF Processing Fee Per Class

801 Types of Applications

The wording “type of application” refers to the kind of application by which registration is requested, e.g., whether the application is a single-class application or a multiple-class application, whether the mark is for

a trademark or a service mark, or whether registration is sought on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register.

See [TMEP Chapter 700](#) regarding the procedure for examining applications in general, and [Chapter 1300](#) regarding the examination of applications for service marks and examination of applications and application requirements for collective and certification marks.

801.01 Single or Combined Application

801.01(a) Single (Single-Class) Application

A single-class application limits the goods or services for which registration is sought to goods or services in only one of the classes in the classification schedules. The application may recite more than one item, if the items recited are all classified in one class. See [TMEP §§1401–1401.14](#) for additional information about classification.

801.01(b) Combined (Multiple-Class) Application

A combined or multiple-class application is an application to register the same mark for goods, services, and/or a collective membership organization in multiple classes in a single application. See [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\), \(b\)](#). In a combined or multiple-class application, an applicant must pay a filing fee for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(2\)](#). The class numbers and corresponding goods or services must be listed separately, from the lowest to the highest number.

See [TMEP §§1403–1403.07](#) for more information regarding combined or multiple-class applications.

801.02 Principal Register or Supplemental Register

801.02(a) Act of 1946, Principal Register

The primary provision for registration in the Trademark Act of 1946 is for registration on the Principal Register (15 U.S.C. §§1051–1072). When a mark has been registered on the Principal Register, the mark is entitled to all the rights provided by the Act. The advantages of owning a registration on the Principal Register include the following:

- Constructive notice to the public of the registrant’s claim of ownership of the mark (15 U.S.C. §1072);
- A legal presumption of the registrant’s ownership of the mark and the registrant’s exclusive right to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services listed in the registration ([15 U.S.C. §§1057\(b\), 1115\(a\)](#));
- A date of constructive use of the mark as of the filing date of the application ([15 U.S.C. §1057\(c\)](#); [TMEP §201.02](#));
- The ability to bring an action concerning the mark in federal court (15 U.S.C. §1121);
- The ability to file the United States registration with the United States Customs Service to prevent importation of infringing foreign goods (15 U.S.C. §1124);
- The registrant’s exclusive right to use a mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services covered by the registration can become “incontestable,” subject to certain statutory defenses ([15 U.S.C. §§1065, 1115\(b\)](#)); and

- The use of the United States registration as a basis to obtain registration in foreign countries.

If the applicant does not specify a register, the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) will presume that the applicant seeks registration on the Principal Register.

801.02(b) Act of 1946, Supplemental Register

Certain marks that are not eligible for registration on the Principal Register, but are capable of distinguishing an applicant’s goods or services, may be registered on the Supplemental Register. Sections 23 through 28 of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. §§1091–1096, provide for registration on the Supplemental Register. This is a continuation of the register provided for in the Act of March 19, 1920. See [15 U.S.C. §1091\(a\)](#). Marks registered on the Supplemental Register are excluded from receiving the advantages of certain sections of the Act of 1946. The excluded sections are listed in §26 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1094](#). See *Otter Prods. LLC v. BaseOneLabs LLC*, 105 USPQ2d 1252, 1256 (TTAB 2012) (finding that while ownership of a registration on the Supplemental Register established opposer’s standing to oppose registration of applicant’s mark, it did not establish that opposer owned a proprietary interest in a mark).

In a paper application, if the applicant seeks registration on the Supplemental Register, the application should state that registration is requested on the Supplemental Register. If no register is specified, the USPTO will presume that the applicant seeks registration on the Principal Register.

See [TMEP §§815–815.04](#) and [816](#) regarding examination procedure relating to the Supplemental Register.

An applicant may not seek registration on both the Principal and the Supplemental Register in the same application. If an applicant requests registration on both the Principal and the Supplemental Register in the same application, the examining attorney must require that the applicant amend to specify only one register, or file a request to divide under [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#).

A mark in an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), based on a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States, cannot be registered on the Supplemental Register. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\), 2.75\(c\)](#).

802 Application Form

The USPTO prefers that applicants filing applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act use the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”), available at <http://www.uspto.gov> (using either a TEAS or TEAS Plus application form), or on the USPTO’s pre-printed scannable form. The applicant may obtain the USPTO’s pre-printed scannable form by calling the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199.

The amount of the trademark application filing fee varies, depending upon whether the application (or the amendment adding classes to an existing application) is filed through TEAS or on paper. See [TMEP §810](#). An applicant has four choices. The applicant can file:

- A paper application at the higher fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#);
- A regular TEAS application at a lower fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#);
- A TEAS RF application (see [TMEP §820](#)) at a lower fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#); or

- A TEAS Plus application (*see* [TMEP §§819–819.04](#)) at the lowest fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#).

The current fee schedule is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Note: TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus applications that are downloaded, printed, and mailed to the USPTO are considered paper applications and are subject to the paper application filing fee.

Trademark applications may not be filed by fax transmission. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(d\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §306.01](#).

The USPTO strongly discourages self-created forms, but will accept them if they meet the requirements for receipt of a filing date set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §202](#)). If a self-created form is used, the application should be on letter size (i.e., 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) by 11 inches (27.9 cm.)) paper, typewritten, double spaced, with margins of at least 1½ inches (3.8 cm.) at the left and top of the pages. The application should be written on only one side of the paper.

The application must be in English. [37 C.F.R. §§2.21\(a\)](#), [2.32\(a\)](#).

The USPTO does not generally require the submission of original documents, so the applicant may file a copy of a signed application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(a\)](#), [\(b\)](#); [TMEP §302.01](#).

See [TMEP §§819–819.04](#) regarding TEAS Plus applications and [§§820 – 820.04](#) regarding TEAS RF applications.

Applications under §66(a) of the Trademark Act are sent to the USPTO electronically by the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”).

803 Applicant

803.01 Who May Apply

An application to register a mark must be filed by the owner of the mark or, in the case of an intent-to-use application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), by the person who is entitled to use the mark in commerce. Normally the owner of a mark is the person who applies the mark to goods that he or she produces, or uses the mark in the sale or advertising of services that he or she performs. See [TMEP §§1201–1201.07\(b\)\(iv\)](#) regarding ownership, and [TMEP §§501](#) and [502–502.03](#) regarding assignment of marks and changes of ownership.

If an applicant is not the owner of (or entitled to use) the mark at the time the application is filed, the application is void and cannot be amended to specify the correct party as the applicant, because the applicant did not have a right that could be assigned. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §803.06](#) and cases cited therein.

Applicants may be natural persons or juristic persons. Juristic persons include corporations, partnerships, joint ventures, unions, associations, and other organizations capable of suing and being sued in a court of law. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). An operating division, or the like, that is merely an organizational unit of a company and not a legal entity that can sue and be sued, may not own or apply to register a mark. See [TMEP §1201.02\(d\)](#).

Nations, states, municipalities, and other related types of bodies operating with governmental authorization may apply to register marks that they own. See *In re Mohawk Air Servs. Inc.*, 196 USPQ 851, 854 (TTAB 1977); *NASA v. Record Chem. Co.*, 185 USPQ 563, 566 (TTAB 1975); *In re U.S. Dep't of the Interior*, 142 USPQ 506, 506 (TTAB 1964).

The question of whether an application can be filed in the name of a minor depends on state law. If the minor can validly enter into binding legal obligations, and can sue or be sued, in the state in which he or she is domiciled, the application may be filed in the name of the minor. Otherwise, the application should be filed in the name of a parent or legal guardian, clearly setting forth his or her status as a parent or legal guardian. An example of the manner in which the applicant should be identified in such cases is:

John Smith, United States citizen, (parent/legal guardian) of Mary Smith.

If the record indicates that the named applicant is a minor, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the person can validly enter into binding legal obligations under the law of the state in which he or she is domiciled. If the minor cannot enter into binding legal obligations, the examining attorney must require correction of the applicant-identifying information in the manner shown above, if necessary.

If a minor comes of age during the prosecution of an application in which his or her parent/legal guardian is identified as the applicant, the application may be amended to change the applicant's name. No assignment is required in such cases. However, the minor must also state his or her citizenship. See also [TMEP Chapter 500](#) regarding assignments, name changes, and issuance of a registration in the name of an assignee or in an applicant's new name.

See also [TMEP §1002](#) regarding eligibility to file an application under §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126](#), and [TMEP §1901](#) regarding eligibility to file a request for an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States under §66(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#).

803.02 Name of Applicant

The name of the applicant should be set out in its correct legal form. For example, a corporate applicant should be identified by the name set forth in the articles of incorporation.

If the applicant's legal name includes the assumed name under which it does business, an assumed name designation should be used to connect the actual name with the assumed name. Assumed name designations include "d.b.a." (doing business as), "a.k.a." (also known as), and "t.a." (trading as). The particular assumed name designation used is optional. Only the abbreviation of the assumed name designation will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. If an applicant gives the assumed name designation in full, the abbreviation will automatically be used for printing purposes.

803.02(a) Individual

If the applicant is an individual person who is doing business under an assumed business name, the individual's name should be set forth, followed by an assumed name designation (e.g., d.b.a., a.k.a., or t.a.) and by the assumed business name.

If an individual indicates that he or she is doing business under a corporate designation (e.g., Corporation, Corp., Incorporated, Inc., Limited, Ltd.), the USPTO will presume that relevant state law permits such a practice. The assumed name will be printed on the registration certificate.

If the application reflects an inconsistency between the owner name and the entity type as to whether a corporation or an individual owns the mark, the examining attorney must require the applicant to clarify the record regarding ownership (e.g., if the name of an individual appears as the applicant, but the entity is listed as a corporation, or if a business is named as the applicant but the entity is listed as an individual). However, in view of the broad definition of a “person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner” in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §§611.03\(a\)](#), [804.04](#)), the fact that the title of the person signing an application refers to a different entity is not in itself considered an inconsistency between owner and entity type that would warrant an inquiry as to who owns the mark.

See [TMEP §803.03\(a\)](#) for information about identifying an individual applicant’s entity type, and [TMEP §§803.06](#) and [1201.02\(c\)](#) regarding USPTO policies regarding correction of an applicant’s name and entity type.

803.02(b) Partnership, Joint Venture, or Other “Firm”

If a partnership, joint venture, or other “firm” has been organized under a particular business name, the application should be filed in that name. If the partnership or firm has not been organized under a business name, the names of the members should be listed as though they composed a company name. If a partnership or joint venture is doing business under an assumed name, this may be indicated, using an assumed name designation. See [TMEP §803.02](#) regarding assumed name designations, and [TMEP §803.03\(b\)](#) for information about identifying a partnership or joint venture as a legal entity.

803.02(c) Corporation and Association

If the applicant is a corporation, the official corporate name must be set out as the applicant’s name. Listing an assumed business name is optional. The name of a division of the applicant should *not* be included in or along with the applicant’s name. If the applicant wishes to indicate in the application that actual use of the mark is being made by a division of the applicant, the applicant may provide a statement that “the applicant, *through its division* [specify name of division], is using the mark in commerce.” This statement should not appear in conjunction with the listing of the applicant’s name, and will not be printed on the registration certificate.

In unusual situations, one corporation may also be doing business under another name, even another corporate name. This sometimes happens, for example, when one corporation buys out another. In the unusual situation where a corporate applicant provides a DBA (“doing business as”) that includes a corporate designation (e.g., Corporation, Corp., Incorporated, Inc., Limited, Ltd.) in addition to its official corporate name, the USPTO will presume that relevant state law permits such a practice. The DBA will be printed on the registration certificate.

Associations should be identified by the full, official name of the association.

See [TMEP §803.03\(c\)](#) for information about identifying a corporation or association as a legal entity.

803.03 Legal Entity of Applicant

Immediately after the applicant’s name, the application should set out the applicant’s form of business, or legal entity, for example, partnership, joint venture, corporation, or association. The words “company” and “firm” are indefinite for purposes of designating a domestic applicant’s legal entity, because those words do not identify a particular type of legal entity in the United States. (However, the word “company” is

acceptable to identify an entity that, under the laws of a foreign country, is equivalent or analogous to a corporation or association in the United States. See [TMEP §803.03\(i\)](#).

Whether the USPTO will accept the identification of an applicant's entity depends on whether that entity is recognized under the laws of applicant's place of domicile.

If other material in the record indicates that the applicant is a different type of entity than is set out in the written application, the examining attorney must ask for an explanation, and require amendment if necessary.

However, in view of the broad definition of a "person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner" in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §§611.03\(a\)](#), [804.04](#)), an explanation is usually not necessary when the person signing a declaration has a title that refers to a different type of entity. See [TMEP §§803.06](#) and [1201.02\(c\)](#) regarding USPTO policies governing correction of an applicant's name.

803.03(a) Individual or Sole Proprietorship

Individual. For an individual, it is not necessary to specify "individual," but it is acceptable to do so. The applicant may state that he or she is doing business under a specified assumed company name. [TMEP §803.02\(a\)](#).

In an application for international registration, if the applicant is a natural person, he or she must indicate his or her name and may include the country of which he or she is a national. *Common Regulations Under the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks and the Protocol Relating to That Agreement* ("Common Regs."), Rules 9(4)(a)(i), 9(4)(b)(i) (2013). The international application does not require this information, but when the information is included, the IB will forward the nationality of the applicant to the USPTO. In a §66(a) application, if the "Nationality of Applicant" field appears in the Trademark Image Capture and Retrieval System ("TICRS") (which is available to the public through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval ("TSDR") portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>), this means that the applicant is an individual rather than a juristic entity, and that applicant's citizenship is the country corresponding to the two-letter code set forth in this field. The list of country codes appears in the MM2 International Registration application form at http://www.wipo.int/export/sites/www/madrid/en/forms/docs/form_mm2.pdf. A separate statement that applicant is an individual will not appear in TICRS, and the "Legal Nature" and "Legal Nature: Place Incorporated" fields will state "Not Provided."

If the "Nationality of Applicant" field appears in TICRS, the examining attorney may enter the relevant information into the Trademark database, or ask the LIE to enter it. No inquiry as to the applicant's entity or citizenship is necessary. If the "Nationality of Applicant" field does not appear in TICRS, the examining attorney must require that the applicant indicate its entity and citizenship. Examining attorneys cannot rely on the "Entitlement Nationality," "Entitlement Establishment," or "Entitlement Domiciled" fields for the applicant's citizenship because these fields merely indicate the basis for the applicant's entitlement to file an application through the Madrid system, not the national citizenship of the individual applicant.

Sole Proprietorship. An applicant may identify itself as a sole proprietorship. If an applicant does so, the applicant must also indicate the state where the sole proprietorship is organized, in addition to the name and national citizenship of the sole proprietor.

If the application specifically identifies the applicant as a sole proprietorship and indicates the state of organization of the sole proprietorship and the name and citizenship of the sole proprietor, the USPTO will accept the characterization of the entity. On the other hand, if the application refers to a sole proprietorship

but lacks some of the necessary information or is ambiguous as to whether the applicant should be identified as a sole proprietorship or as an individual, the examining attorney must require appropriate clarification of the entity type.

A sole proprietorship generally means a business which has only one owner. Therefore, if an application identifies two persons or two different entities as a “sole proprietorship,” this is an ambiguity that requires clarification of the entity type. Note, however, that in California a husband and wife can be classified as a sole proprietorship.

803.03(b) Partnership, Joint Venture, or Other “Firm”

After setting forth the applicant’s name and entity, the application of a partnership or a joint venture should specify the state or country under whose laws the partnership or joint venture is organized. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). In addition, domestic partnerships must set forth the names, legal entities, and national citizenship (for individuals), or state or country of organization (for businesses), of all general partners or active members that compose the partnership or joint venture. [37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\), \(iv\)](#). These requirements apply to both general and limited partnerships. They also apply to a partnership that is a general partner in a larger partnership. Limited partners or silent or inactive partners need not be listed. The following format should be used:

“_____, a (partnership, joint venture) organized under the laws of _____, composed of _____ (name, legal entity, and citizenship of individual partner; or name, legal entity, and state or country of incorporation or organization of juristic partner).”

In the case of a domestic partnership consisting of ten or more general partners, if the partnership agreement provides for the continuing existence of the partnership in the event of the addition or departure of specific partners, the USPTO will require that the applicant provide the names, legal entities, and national citizenship (or the state or country of organization) of the principal partners only. If there are more than ten principal partners, the applicant need list only the first ten principal partners. If there is no class of principal partners, the applicant may list any ten general partners.

Upon the death or dissolution of a partner or other change in the members that compose a domestic partnership, that legal entity ceases to exist and any subsequent arrangement constitutes a new entity, unless the partnership agreement provides for continuation of the partnership in the event of changes in partners. This same principle also applies to joint ventures. See [TMEP Chapter 500](#) regarding changes of ownership.

The rule requiring names and citizenships of general partners seeks to provide relevant information in the record, given the legal effects of partnership status in the United States. Because the USPTO does not track the varying legal effects of partnership status in foreign countries, and the relevance of the additional information has not been established, the same requirement for additional information does not apply to foreign partnerships.

The term “firm” is not an acceptable designation of the applicant’s entity, because it does not have a universally understood meaning. The examining attorney must require a definite term such as “partnership” or “joint venture” when it is necessary to identify these entities.

See [TMEP §803.03\(k\)](#) regarding limited liability partnerships.

803.03(c) Corporation, Association, Organization, and Company

Corporation. In the United States, the term “corporation” is proper for juristic entities incorporated under the laws of the various states or under special federal statutes. In addition to specifying that an applicant is a corporation, the application must specify the applicant’s state (for United States corporations) or country of incorporation (for foreign corporations). It is customary to follow the applicant’s name by the words “a corporation of the state (or country) of . . .” This also applies to a nonprofit or tax-exempt corporation. If no state or country of incorporation, or the incorrect state or country of incorporation, is given for an applicant corporation, this defect may be corrected by amendment. The amendment does not have to be verified. If a corporation exists by virtue of a specific state or federal statute, this should be stated.

Association. “Association” and “nonprofit association” are acceptable terms to identify juristic entities organized under state laws or federal statutes that govern this form of organization. A domestic association must specify the state under whose laws the applicant is organized or exists, and indicate whether the association is incorporated or unincorporated. A foreign association must specify the country under whose laws the applicant is organized or exists and indicate whether the association is incorporated or unincorporated, unless the designation or description “association/associazione” for the country specified by the applicant appears in Appendix D. This also applies to a domestic or foreign nonprofit or tax-exempt association. If an association exists by virtue of a specific state or federal statute, this should be stated. Verification of these statements is not required.

Company. The term “company” is indefinite for describing a United States entity because it does not identify a particular juristic entity, but is acceptable to identify entities organized under the laws of foreign countries that are equivalent or analogous to United States corporations or associations. See [TMEP §803.03\(i\)](#) and [TMEP Appendix D](#) regarding foreign companies.

Organization. “Organization” and “nonprofit organization” are indefinite to identify juristic entities. If an applicant’s entity type is identified as a “nonprofit organization,” the examining attorney must require amendment of the entity, or proof that such a legal entity exists under the appropriate state statute or foreign country law.

803.03(d) Joint Applicants

An application may be filed in the names of joint applicants or joint owners. *Ex parte Pac. Intermountain Express Co.*, 111 USPQ 187, 187 (Comm’r Pats. 1956); *Ex parte Taylor*, 18 USPQ 292, 293 (Comm’r Pats. 1933). The terms “joint applicant(s)” or “joint owner(s)” reflects the relationship of multiple applicants as to a particular mark, but does not identify a particular type of legal entity in the United States. See *Cent. Garden & Pet Co. v. Doskocil Mfg., Co.*, 108 USPQ2d 1134, 1148 n.25 (TTAB 2013). Therefore, the application must name each of the joint applicants, and must set forth the citizenship (or the state or nation of organization for a juristic applicant) of each of the joint applicants. [37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(a\)\(2\), \(3\)](#); [TMEP §§803.02, 803.03](#). The application may also state the joint applicant relationship; however, where an application identifies two or more individuals or entities as the applicant, and separately sets forth the citizenship or state of organization of each, the USPTO will presume that the entity is that of joint applicants, if the record is not otherwise contradictory. If, however, the legal entity is set out as “joint applicant(s)” or “joint owner(s),” the examining attorney must require each applicant to clarify the nature of its legal entity as an individual or juristic person.

An application by joint applicants must be verified by all the applicants, since they are individual parties and not a single entity. However, if only one of the joint applicants signs the verification, the USPTO will

presume that he or she is signing on behalf of all the joint applicants, and will not require an additional verification or declaration, unless there is evidence in the record indicating that the party who signed the application was not in fact authorized to sign on behalf of all the joint applicants under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). This does not apply to a response to an Office action submitted by joint applicants who are not represented by a practitioner authorized under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) to practice in trademark cases (“qualified practitioner”). Such a response must be signed personally by each of the joint applicants. [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\), 2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §611.06\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.03\(a\)](#) and [804.04](#) regarding persons authorized to sign a verification on behalf of an applicant.

Joint applicants are not the same as a joint venture. A joint venture is a single applicant, in the same way that a partnership is a single applicant. See [TMEP §803.03\(b\)](#) regarding joint ventures.

803.03(e) Trusts, Conservatorships, and Estates

If a trust is the owner of a mark in an application, the examining attorney must ensure that the trustee(s) is identified as the applicant. Thus, the examining attorney must require that the trust’s application be captioned as follows:

The Trustees of the XYZ Trust, a California trust, the trustees comprising John Doe, a United States citizen, and the ABC Corporation, a Delaware corporation.

The application must first refer to the trustee(s) as the applicant and indicate the name of the trust, if any. Then the state under whose laws the trust exists must be set forth. Finally, the names and citizenship of the individual trustees must be listed. If there are more than ten individual trustees, the applicant need list only the first ten trustees.

The same format generally applies to conservatorships and estates as follows:

The Conservator of Mary Jones, a New York conservatorship, the conservator comprising James Abel, a United States citizen.

The Executors of the John Smith estate, a New York estate, the executors comprising Mary Smith and James Smith, United States citizens.

803.03(e)(i) Business Trusts

Most states recognize an entity commonly identified as a “business trust,” “Massachusetts trust,” or “common-law trust.” A business trust has attributes of both a corporation and a partnership. Many states have codified laws recognizing and regulating business trusts; other states apply common law. The USPTO will accept the entity designation “business trust,” or any appropriate variation provided for under relevant state law.

The business trust is created under the instructions of the instrument of trust. Generally, the “trustee” has authority equivalent to an officer in a corporation. Laws vary to some extent as to the authority conferred on various individuals associated with the business trust.

The application must first refer to the trustee(s) as the applicant and indicate the name of the trust, if any. The state under whose laws the trust exists, and the names and citizenship (or state or foreign country of

incorporation or organization) of the individual trustees, must also be set forth. Accordingly, the examining attorney must require that the business trust's application be captioned as follows:

The Trustees of the DDT Trust, a California business trust, the trustees comprising Sue Smith, a United States citizen, and the PDQ Corporation, a Delaware corporation.

For the purpose of service of process, the business trust is essentially like a corporation. Therefore, it is not necessary to identify the beneficiaries or equitable owners of the business trust in identifying the entity.

803.03(f) Governmental Bodies and Universities

It is difficult to establish any rigid guidelines for designating the entity of a governmental body. Due to the variety in the form of these entities, the examining attorney must consider each case on an individual basis. The following are just a few examples of acceptable governmental entities:

Department of the Air Force, an agency of the United States.

Maryland State Lottery Agency, an agency of the State of Maryland.
City of Richmond, Virginia, a municipal corporation organized under the laws of the Commonwealth of Virginia.

These examples are not exhaustive of the entity designations that are acceptable.

The structure of educational institutions varies significantly. The following are examples of acceptable university entities:

Board of Regents, University of Texas System, a Texas governing body.

University of New Hampshire, a nonprofit corporation of New Hampshire.
Auburn University, State University, Alabama.

These examples are not exhaustive of the entity designations that are acceptable.

The designations "education institution" and "educational organization" are not acceptable. If the applicant uses either of these designations to identify the entity, the examining attorney must require the applicant to amend the entity designation to a legally recognized juristic entity.

803.03(g) Banking Institutions

The nature of banking institutions is strictly regulated and, thus, there are a limited number of types of banking entities. Some banking institutions are federally chartered while others are organized under state law. The following is a non-exhaustive listing of examples of acceptable descriptions of banking institutions:

First American Bank of Virginia, a Virginia corporation.

Pathway Financial, a federally chartered savings and loan association.

803.03(h) Limited Liability Companies

Most states recognize an entity commonly identified as a “limited liability company” or “LLC.” The entity has attributes of both a corporation and a partnership. Therefore, the USPTO will accept “limited liability company” as an entity designation. The examining attorney may accept appropriate variations of this entity, with proof that the entity exists under the law of the relevant state. For example, some states recognize an entity identified as a “low-profit-limited-liability company” or “L3C,” which combines the features of a for-profit LLC and a nonprofit organization.

If “LLC” or “L3C” appears in the applicant’s name, but the entity is listed as a corporation, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the applicant is a limited liability company or a corporation.

The applicant must indicate the state under whose laws the limited liability company is established. It is not necessary to list the “members” or owners of the limited liability company when identifying the entity.

See [TMEP §611.06\(g\)](#) regarding the proper party to sign a response to an Office action filed by a limited liability company that is not represented by an attorney.

Limited Liability Corporation. A business organization known as a “limited liability corporation” is currently not recognized in any jurisdiction. If an applicant’s entity type is identified as a limited liability corporation, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the applicant is a limited liability company or a corporation. If the applicant believes that it is a limited liability corporation, then the applicant must provide proof that such a legal entity exists under the appropriate state statute.

See [TMEP §803.03\(k\)](#) regarding limited liability partnerships.

803.03(i) Common Terms Designating Entity of Foreign Applicants

In designating the legal entity of foreign applicants, acceptable terminology is not always the same as for United States applicants. The word “corporation” as used in the United States is not necessarily equivalent to juristic entities of foreign countries; the word “company” is sometimes more accurate. If the applicant is from the United Kingdom or another commonwealth country (e.g., Canada or Australia) and the term “company” (or the abbreviation “co.,”) is used, no inquiry is needed. “Limited company” is also acceptable in China and in commonwealth countries. There is a list of commonwealth countries on the commonwealth website at <http://www.thecommonwealth.org/Internal/142227/members/>. In any other case, when the term “company” is used, the examining attorney must clarify what type of entity is applying.

“Limited corporation” is also an acceptable entity designation for a foreign applicant.

The designation Foreign Maritime Entity (FME) is not an acceptable business entity type. A “legal entity” is “[a] body, other than a natural person, that can function legally, sue or be sued, and make decisions through agents.” Black’s Law Dictionary (10th ed. 2014). Here, the capacity to sue or be sued rests with the foreign entity that registers as a FME, as opposed to the FME itself. Therefore, the term FME does not identify a legal entity.

[Appendix D](#) of this manual lists common foreign designations, and their abbreviations, used by various foreign countries to identify legal commercial entities. The appendix also includes a description (Joint Stock Company, Cooperative Society, Trading Partnership, etc.) of the foreign designation and, in some cases, the equivalent United States entity. If a foreign designation, its abbreviation, or a description appears in the

appendix, the examining attorney may accept any of those terms as the entity designation without further inquiry. The applicant may also choose to specify the legal entity by indicating the entity that would be its equivalent in the United States. However, if an applicant identifies itself by a name that includes a foreign entity designation in Appendix D (e.g., “Business SpA”), but provides a characterization of the entity that does not match the description (e.g., General Partnership), the examining attorney must clarify the nature of the applicant’s entity.

If a foreign entity designation, its abbreviation, or its description does not appear in [Appendix D](#), the examining attorney must inquire further into the specific nature of the entity. The examining attorney may request a description of the nature of the foreign entity, if necessary.

The applicant must also specify the foreign country under the laws of which it is organized, but no additional information is required, even if additional information would be required for a United States entity of the same name. For example, it is not necessary to set forth the names and citizenship of the partners of a foreign partnership. The rule requiring names and citizenships of general partners ([37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\)](#)) seeks to provide relevant information in the record, given the legal effects of partnership status in the United States.

Because the USPTO does not track the varying legal effects of partnership status in foreign countries, and the relevance of the additional information has not been established, the same requirement for additional information does not apply to foreign partnerships.

Foreign entities may be organized under either national or provincial laws. However, the TEAS form requires an applicant to specify the state or foreign country under which it is legally organized, but does not permit an applicant to specify a foreign province or geographical region in this field. Therefore, if the applicant is organized under the laws of a foreign province or geographical region, the applicant should select the entity type “Other” (rather than “Corporation,” “Limited Liability Company,” “Partnership,” etc.), which will allow entry within the free-text field provided at “Specify Entity Type” of both the type of entity and the foreign province or geographical region under which it is organized (e.g., enter “corporation of Ontario” in the box labeled “If not listed above, please specify here:”). In the next section, “State or Country Where Legally Organized,” the country (e.g., “Canada”) should then be selected from the pull-down menu.

803.03(j) Federally Recognized Indian Tribe

A federally recognized Indian tribe, organized under the laws of the United States, is an acceptable designation of an applicant’s entity.

803.03(k) Limited Liability Partnerships

Most states recognize an entity commonly identified as a “limited liability partnership” (“LLP”). An LLP is separate and distinct from a limited partnership, and is more closely associated with a limited liability company in that it has attributes of both a corporation and a partnership. Therefore, the USPTO will accept the entity designation “limited liability partnership.” The examining attorney may accept appropriate variations of this entity (e.g., “limited liability limited partnership” or “LLLP”), with proof that the entity exists under the law of the relevant state.

The applicant must indicate the state under whose laws the limited liability partnership is established. It is not necessary to list the partners of the limited liability partnership when identifying the entity.

See [TMEP §611.06\(h\)](#) regarding the proper party to sign a response to an Office action filed by a limited liability partnership that is not represented by a qualified practitioner.

See also [TMEP §803.03\(h\)](#) regarding limited liability companies.

803.04 Citizenship of Applicant

An application for registration must specify the applicant's citizenship or the state or nation under whose laws the applicant is organized. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)](#). If ambiguous terms are used, the examining attorney must require the applicant to clarify the record by setting forth the citizenship with greater specificity. For example, the term "American" is ambiguous because it could refer to a citizen of North, South, or Central America. Therefore, "United States," "United States of America," or "U.S.A." is the appropriate citizenship designation for applicants who are citizens of the United States of America. However, terms such as "Brazilian," "Colombian," and "Welsh" are acceptable citizenship designations because each refers to a specific country.

An individual applicant should set forth the country of which he or she is a citizen. Current citizenship information must be provided; a statement indicating that the applicant has applied for citizenship in any country is not relevant or acceptable. If an individual is not a citizen of any country, a statement to this effect is acceptable.

If an applicant asserts dual citizenship, the applicant must choose which citizenship will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. The USPTO will print only one country of citizenship for each person in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate, and the automated records of the USPTO will indicate only one country of citizenship for each person.

For a corporation, the application must set forth the United States state or foreign country of incorporation. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#).

Foreign entities may be organized under either national or provincial laws. However, the TEAS form requires an applicant to specify the state or foreign country under which it is legally organized, but does not permit an applicant to specify a foreign province or geographical region in this field. Therefore, if the applicant is organized under the laws of a foreign province or geographical region, the applicant should select as the entity type the choice of "Other," which will allow entry within the free-text field provided at "Specify Entity Type" of both the type of entity and the foreign province or geographical region under which it is organized (e.g., "corporation of Ontario"). In the next section, "State or Country Where Legally Organized," the country (e.g., "Canada") should then be selected from the pull-down menu.

For an association, the application must set forth the United States state or foreign country under whose laws the association is organized or incorporated. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); see [TMEP §803.03\(c\)](#).

A partnership or other firm must set forth the United States state or foreign country under the laws of which the partnership is organized. Domestic partnerships must also provide citizenship information for each general partner in the partnership. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\)](#). This requirement also applies to a partnership that is a general partner in a larger partnership. See [TMEP §803.03\(b\)](#) for the proper format for identifying a partnership. Given the varying legal effects of partnership status in foreign countries, the relevance of the name and citizenship information for each partner has not been established. Therefore, for foreign partnerships, it is not necessary to provide the names and citizenship of the partners. See [TMEP §803.03\(i\)](#) for further information about foreign applicant entities.

For joint applicants or a joint venture, the application should set forth the citizenship or United States state or foreign country of organization of each party. Domestic joint ventures must also provide citizenship

information for all active members of the joint venture. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(iv\)](#). See [TMEP §803.03\(b\)](#) for the proper format for identifying a joint venture.

Section 66(a) Applications. In an application for international registration, the international application does not require the applicant to provide the entity and citizenship information. Common Regs, Rules 9(4)(b)(i)–(ii). However, when the information is included, the IB forwards it to the USPTO as part of the §66(a) application.

If the applicant is an individual, that is, a natural person, he or she must indicate his or her name and the country of which he or she is a national. If provided in the §66(a) application, this information appears in the Trademark database in the “Nationality of Applicant/Transferee/Holder” field, and the applicant’s citizenship is the country corresponding to the two-letter code set forth in this field. The list of country codes appears in the MM2 International Registration application form, which can be found at <http://www.wipo.int/pct/en/appguide/>. The examining attorney should enter the entity and citizenship into the Trademark database, or send a request to the LIE to have it entered. A separate statement that applicant is an individual will not appear in TIGRS, and the “Legal Nature” and “Legal Nature: Place Incorporated” fields will state “Not Provided.” No inquiry as to the applicant’s entity or citizenship is necessary. The absence of the “Nationality of Applicant/Transferee/Holder” field means that the applicant is a juristic entity rather than an individual.

If the applicant is a juristic entity, the name, entity, and citizenship of the juristic entity is required. If provided in the §66(a) application, this information appears in the “Legal Nature” and “Legal Nature: Place Incorporated” fields. If these fields state “Not Provided,” the examining attorney must require the applicant to indicate its entity and citizenship.

Regardless of whether the applicant is an individual or a juristic entity, the examining attorney cannot rely on the “Entitlement Nationality,” “Entitlement Establishment,” or “Entitlement Domiciled” fields for the applicant’s citizenship because these fields merely indicate the basis for the applicant’s entitlement to file an application through the Madrid system, not the national citizenship of the applicant.

803.05 Address of Applicant

The written application must specify the applicant’s mailing address. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(4\)](#). Addresses should include the United States Postal Service ZIP code or its equivalent for addresses outside the United States. The applicant’s address may consist of a post office box.

For an individual, the application must set forth either the business address or the residence address.

If the application sets out more than one address, the applicant should designate the address to be included on the registration certificate.

For a partnership or other firm, only the address of the business need be set forth -- not the addresses of the partners or members.

For a corporation or association, the business address should be set forth. If the corporation’s business address is not in its state of incorporation, the applicant should set out the address where the applicant is domiciled.

For joint applicants, the application should include addresses for each party.

The application must also include an address for correspondence concerning the application. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.18, 2.21\(a\)\(2\)](#). This is referred to as the correspondence address. *See* [TMEP §§609–609.04](#).

803.06 Applicant May Not Be Changed

While an application can be amended to correct an inadvertent error in the manner in which an applicant's name is set forth (*see* [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#)), an application cannot be amended to substitute another entity as the applicant. If the application was filed in the name of a party who had no basis for his or her assertion of ownership of (or entitlement to use) the mark as of the filing date, the application is void, and registration must be refused. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(d\)](#); [TMEP §1201.02\(b\)](#). *Huang v. Tzu Wei Chen Food Co.*, 849 F.2d 1458, 1459-60, 7 USPQ2d 1335, 1335-36 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *Great Seats, Ltd. v. Great Seats, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1235, 1239-44 (TTAB 2007) ; *American Forests v. Sanders*, 54 USPQ2d 1860, 1861-63 (TTAB 1999) , *aff'd*, 232 F.3d 907 (Fed. Cir. 2000); *In re Tong Yang Cement Corp.*, 19 USPQ2d 1689, 1691 (TTAB 1991). The USPTO will not refund the application filing fee in such a case.

A void application cannot be cured by amendment or assignment. The true owner may file a new application (with a new filing fee) in its name or, if the applicant who is refused later becomes the owner of the mark, he or she may file a new application (with a new filing fee) at that time.

See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors in identifying the applicant, [TMEP §803.01](#) regarding minor applicants, and [TMEP §1201.02\(e\)](#) and [TMEP Chapter 500](#) regarding the transfer of ownership from the true owner to another party *after* the filing date.

804 Verification and Signature

An application must include a statement that is verified by the applicant or by someone who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(b\), 2.33\(a\), 2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, a signed verification is not required for receipt of an application filing date under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#). If the initial application does not include a proper verified statement, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a verified statement that relates back to the original filing date. See [TMEP §§804.01-804.01\(b\)](#) regarding the form of the oath or declaration, [TMEP §804.02](#) regarding the essential allegations required to verify an application for registration of a trademark or service mark, and [TMEP §804.04](#) regarding persons properly authorized to sign a verification on behalf of an applicant.

In §66(a) applications for a trademark or service mark, the verified statement is part of the international registration on file at the IB. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§804.05, 1904.01\(c\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\), 1304.02\(b\)\(i\), and 1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the verified statement for a §1(a), §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e) basis for a collective or certification mark application, and [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(ii\), 1304.02\(b\)\(ii\), 1306.02\(b\)\(ii\), and 1904.02\(d\)](#) regarding the verified statement for a §66(a) basis for a collective or certification mark application.

804.01 Form and Wording of Verification in §1 or §44 Application

The format of the verification in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act may be: (1) the classical form for verifying, which includes an oath (jurat) (*see* [TMEP §804.01\(a\)](#)); or (2) a declaration

under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) or 28 U.S.C. §1746 instead of an oath (*see* [TMEP §804.01\(b\)](#)). *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.2\(n\)](#).

804.01(a) Verification with Oath

The verification is placed at the end of the application. It should first set forth the venue; followed by the signer's name (or the words "the undersigned"); then the necessary statements ([TMEP §804.02](#)); concluding with the signature. After the signature, there should be the jurat for the officer administering the oath, and an indication of the officer's authority (such as a notarial seal).

The form of the verification depends on the law of the jurisdiction where the document is executed, so variations of the above form are acceptable. If there is a question as to the validity of the verification, the examining attorney must ask the applicant if the verification complies with the laws of the applicant's jurisdiction. *See* [TMEP §804.01\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding verifications made in a foreign country.

If the verification is notarized but does not include the notarial seal, the examining attorney must require a substitute affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the verification is notarized but has not been dated, the applicant must submit either a statement from the notary public attesting to the date of signature and notarization, or a substitute affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

804.01(a)(i) Verification Made in Foreign Country

Verification (with oath) made in a foreign country may be made: (1) before any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States; or (2) before any official authorized to administer oaths in the foreign country.

In those foreign countries that are members of The Hague Convention Abolishing the Requirement of Legalisation for Foreign Public Documents, *opened for signature* Oct. 5, 1961, 33 U.S.T. 883, 527 U.N.T.S. 189, a document verified before a foreign official should bear or have appended to it an apostille (i.e., a certificate issued by an official of the member country).

An apostille must be square shaped with sides at least 9 centimeters long. The following is the prescribed form for an apostille:

<p>APOSTILLE</p> <p>(Convention de La Haye du Oct. 5, 1961)</p> <p>1. Country: _____ This public document</p> <p>2. has been signed by _____</p> <p>3. acting in capacity of _____</p> <p>4. bears the seal/stamp of _____</p> <p>CERTIFIED</p> <p>5. at _____</p> <p>6. the _____</p> <p>7. by _____</p> <p>8. No. _____</p> <p>9. Seal/stamp: _____</p> <p>10. Signature: _____</p>

See 1013 TMOG 3 (Dec. 1, 1981).

If a verification is made before a foreign official in a country that is not a member of the Hague Convention, the foreign official's authority must be proved by a certificate of a diplomatic or consular officer of the United States. [15 U.S.C. §1061](#).

Declarations under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) and 28 U.S.C. §1746 by foreign persons do not have to be made before a United States diplomatic or consular officer, or before a foreign official authorized to administer oaths. A declaration under 28 U.S.C. §1746 that is executed outside the United States must allege that "I declare (or certify, verify, or state) under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct." See [TMEP §804.01\(b\)](#).

See http://www.hcch.net/index_en.php?act=conventions.text&cid=41 for updated information about the Hague Convention Abolishing the Requirement of Legalisation for Foreign Public Documents.

804.01(b) Declaration in Lieu of Oath

Under [35 U.S.C. §25](#), the USPTO is authorized to accept a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) or 28 U.S.C. §1746 instead of an oath. These declarations can be used whenever the Act or rules require that a document be verified or under oath.

When the language of [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) or 28 U.S.C. §1746 is used with a document, the document is said to have been subscribed to (signed) by a written declaration rather than verified by oath (jurat).

When a declaration is used in lieu of an oath, the party must include in place of the oath (jurat) the statement that “all statements made of his/her own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.” The language should be placed at the end of the document.

In addition, the declaration must warn the signatory that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. §1001). [35 U.S.C. §25\(b\)](#). Trademark Rule 2.20 requires that the warning contain the additional language that such statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or submission or any registration resulting therefrom. A declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) should read as follows:

The signatory being warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001, and that such willful false statements and the like may jeopardize the validity of the application or submission or any registration resulting therefrom, declares that all statements made of his/her own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

(Signature)

(Print or Type Name and Position)

(Date)

Instead of using the language of [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), an applicant may use the language of 28 U.S.C. §1746, which provides as follows:

Wherever, under any law of the United States or under any rule, regulation, order, or requirement made pursuant to law, any matter is required or permitted to be supported, evidenced, established, or proved by the sworn declaration, verification, certificate, statement, oath, or affidavit, in writing of the person making the same (other than a deposition, or an oath of office, or an oath required to be taken before a specified official other than a notary public), such matter may, with like force and effect, be supported, evidenced, established, or proved by the unsworn declaration, certificate, verification, or statement, in writing of such person which is subscribed by him, as true under penalty of perjury, and dated, in substantially the following form:

1 If executed outside the United States, its territories, possessions, or commonwealths: “I declare (or certify, verify, or state) under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct. Executed on (date).(Signature)”.

2 If executed within the United States, its territories, possessions, or commonwealths: “I declare (or certify, verify, or state) under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct. Executed on (date).(Signature)”.

NOTE: A declaration under Title 35 of the United States Code, which pertains specifically to the USPTO, is preferred to one under 28 U.S.C. §1746, which is a statute of general application relating to verification on penalty of perjury.

A declaration that does not attest to an awareness of the penalty for perjury is unacceptable. See [35 U.S.C. §25](#); *In re Hoffmann-La Roche Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1539, 1540-41 (Comm’r Pats. 1992) (failure to include a statement attesting to an awareness of the penalty for perjury, which is the very essence of an oath, is not a “minor defect” that can be provisionally accepted under 35 U.S.C. §26), *overruled on other grounds*, *In re Moisture Jamzz Inc.*, 47 USPQ2d 1762, 1764 (Comm’r Pats. 1997); *In re Stromsholmens Mekaniska Verkstad AB*, 228 USPQ 968, 970 (TTAB 1986) .

The signatory must personally sign his or her name. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(a\)](#). It is not acceptable for a person to sign another person’s name to a declaration pursuant to a general power of attorney. See *In re Dermahose Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1793, 1796-97 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Cowan* , 18 USPQ2d 1407, 1409 (Comm’r Pats. 1990). If a TEAS submission is signed electronically, the person(s) identified as the signer(s) must personally enter the elements of the electronic signature. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)\(1\)](#); *In re Dermahose*, 82 USPQ2d at 1795-97. See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed through TEAS.

If a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) or 28 U.S.C. §1746 is not dated, the examining attorney must require the applicant to state the date on which the declaration was signed. This statement does not have to be verified, and may be entered through a Note to the File in the record.

See [TMEP §804.02](#) regarding the essential allegations required to verify an application for registration of a mark.

804.02 Averments Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application

The requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act are set forth in §§1(a)(3), 1(b)(3), and 44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\), 1126](#), and [37 C.F.R. §§2.33](#) and [2.34](#). See *In re Brack*, 114 USPQ2d 1338, 1342 (TTAB 2015) (holding signature and verification of the averments in application is a requirement for establishing a basis). These allegations are required regardless of whether the verification is in the form of an oath ([TMEP §804.01\(a\)](#)) or a declaration ([TMEP §804.01\(b\)](#)). See [TMEP §804.05](#) regarding the requirements for verification of a §66(a) application.

Truth of Facts Recited . Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(B\)](#) and [1051\(b\)\(3\)\(C\)](#), the verification of an application for registration must include an allegation that “to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, the facts recited in the application are accurate.” The language in [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) that “all statements made of [the signatory's] own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true” satisfies this requirement. See [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(1\), \(b\)\(2\)](#).

Use in Commerce . If the filing basis is §1(a), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that the mark was in use in commerce *as of the application filing date*. *Id.*

Bona Fide Intention to Use in Commerce . If the filing basis is §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\), 1126\(d\)\(2\), 1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(2\), \(a\)\(3\)\(i\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce *as of the application filing date* . [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(2\), \(a\)\(3\)\(i\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#).

Ownership or Entitlement to Use . In an application based on §1(a), the verified statement must allege that the applicant *believes the applicant is the owner of the mark* and that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other person, has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of such other person, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(A\), \(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#).

In an application based on §1(b) or §44, the verified statement must allege that the verifier *believes the applicant is entitled to use the mark in commerce* on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the application, and that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other person, has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of such other person, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)\(3\)\(A\), \(b\)\(3\)\(D\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(2\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\), \(e\)](#).

While the correct language for an application filed under §1(b) or §44 is “entitled to use,” if a §1(b) or §44 applicant files a verification stating that the applicant is the owner of the mark, the USPTO will accept the verification, and will not require a substitute verification stating that the applicant is entitled to use the mark.

Concurrent Use . The verification for concurrent use should be modified to indicate an exception; i.e., that no other person *except as specified in the application* has the right to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(f\)](#). See [TMEP §1207.04](#) regarding concurrent use registration.

Related-company use does not require stating an exception, because the statement that no one else has the right to use the mark refers only to adverse users and not to licensed or permitted use. See [TMEP §§1201.03–1201.03\(e\)](#) regarding use by related companies.

Affirmative, Unequivocal Averments Based on Personal Knowledge Required. The verification must include affirmative, unequivocal averments that meet the requirements of the Act and the rules. Statements such as “the undersigned [person signing the declaration] has been informed that the applicant is using [or has a bona fide intention to use] the mark in commerce . . .,” or wording that disavows the substance of the declaration, are unacceptable.

Substitute Verification. If the verified statement does not include all the necessary averments, the examining attorney will require a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\), 1304.02\(b\)\(i\), and 1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for averments required in a verification for a §1 or §44 application for a collective or certification mark.

804.03 Time Between Execution and Filing of Documents - §1 or §44 Application

Documents Must Be Filed Within a Reasonable Time After Execution

All applications and documents must be filed within a reasonable time after their execution. Under [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(c\)](#), if the verified statement supporting an application for registration is not filed within a reasonable

time after it is signed, the USPTO will require the applicant to submit a substitute verification or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) attesting that the mark was in use in commerce as of the application filing date, or that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date.

Re-execution is also required where an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)) or request for extension of time to file a statement of use is not filed within a reasonable time after the date of execution. [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(g\), 2.88\(g\), 2.89\(h\); TMEP §§1104.10\(b\)\(ii\), 1108.02\(b\), 1109.11\(c\)](#).

The USPTO considers one year between execution and filing as reasonable for all applications and all documents. The USPTO will not require a new declaration if the document is filed within one year of execution. If an application, allegation of use, or request for extension of time to file a statement of use is filed more than one year after its execution, the examining attorney will require that the applicant submit re-executed documents, or a statement, verified or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(c\), 2.76\(g\), 2.88\(g\), 2.89\(h\); TMEP §§1104.10\(b\)\(ii\), 1108.02\(b\), 1109.11\(c\)](#).

Documents May Not Be Filed Before They Are Executed

If an applicant files an application that is signed and lists a date of execution that is subsequent to the application filing date, the examining attorney will inquire as to the actual date on which the application was signed. If it is not otherwise necessary to issue an Office action, the examining attorney may attempt to contact the applicant by phone or e-mail to ascertain the date of signature, which may then be entered by examiner's amendment. If the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant, the examining attorney must issue an Office action requiring the applicant to specify the date of signing.

When an application is executed in a foreign country located across the International Date Line, the fact that an application shows a date of execution as of the day after the application filing date is not inconsistent with its having been executed before filing. No inquiry is required in this limited situation.

804.04 Persons Authorized to Sign Verification or Declaration

37 CFR §2.2(n)

The term verified statement, and the terms verify, verified, or verification as used in this part refers to a statement that is sworn to, made under oath or in an affidavit, or supported by a declaration under § 2.20 or 28 U.S.C. 1746, and signed in accordance with the requirements of § 2.193.

37 CFR §2.193(e) Proper person to sign.

Documents filed in connection with a trademark application or registration must be signed by a proper person. Unless otherwise specified by law, the following requirements apply:

- (1) Verified statement of facts. A verified statement in support of an application for registration, amendment to an application for registration, allegation of use under §2.76 or §2.88, request for extension of time to file a statement of use under §2.89, or an affidavit under section 8, 12(c), 15, or 71 of the Act must satisfy the requirements of §2.2(n), and be signed by the owner or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner. A person who is properly authorized to verify facts on behalf of an owner is:
 - (i) A person with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership);
 - (ii) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or

- (iii) An attorney as defined in §11.1 of this chapter who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the owner.

The Trademark Act does not specify the appropriate person to verify facts on behalf of an applicant. The definition of a “person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the [applicant]” is set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). This definition applies to applications for registration, amendments to allege use, statements of use, requests for extensions of time to file statements of use, affidavits of continued use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), affidavits of incontestability under [15 U.S.C. §1065](#), and combined filings under [15 U.S.C. §§1058](#) and [1059](#). [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(n\), 2.33\(a\), 2.76\(b\)\(1\), 2.88\(b\)\(1\), 2.89\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\), 2.161\(b\), 2.167\(a\)](#). It also applies to declarations supporting amendments to dates of use, use of substitute specimens, claims of acquired distinctiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), amendments changing the basis for filing, and requests for amendment or correction of registrations under [15 U.S.C. §1057](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

The USPTO presumes that the verification or declaration is properly signed. Thus, the USPTO does not question the authority of the person who signs a verification unless the record or other evidence calls into question the signatory’s authority to sign. In view of the broad definition of a “person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the [applicant]” in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#), the fact that an application is signed by someone whose title refers to a different entity is not considered an inconsistency that warrants an inquiry as to whether the verification was properly signed.

Example: If an application is filed by “ABC Company, Inc.,” and the verification is signed by an officer of “XYZ Company, Inc.,” the USPTO will presume that XYZ Company, Inc. is a related company and that the signatory is properly authorized to sign on behalf of ABC Company, Inc.

The signatory should set forth his or her name and title, or state the relationship between the applicant and the person who signed the verification.

If the person signing the verification is identified as a different person than the individual named as the applicant, or as representing a different legal entity than the juristic applicant, the USPTO generally will not question whether the proper party is listed as the applicant.

Example: If the applicant is identified as Mary Smith, an individual citizen of the U.S., and the application is signed by John Smith, the USPTO will not question whether the proper party is listed as applicant.

Example: If the applicant is John Smith, an individual citizen of the U.S., and the application is signed by John Smith, President, XYZ, Inc., the USPTO will not question whether the proper party is listed as applicant.

If a qualified practitioner signs a verification on behalf of an applicant, the USPTO will not require a power of attorney or other documentation stating that the practitioner is authorized to sign.

This policy applies to both individual applicants and juristic applicants.

The broad definition of a “person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the [applicant]” in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) applies *only* to a verified statement of facts by the applicant. It does *not* apply to powers of attorney, revocations of powers of attorney, responses to Office actions, requests for express abandonment, or changes to the correspondence address. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\), \(e\)\(3\), \(e\)\(9\)](#).

A non-attorney who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) is *not* necessarily entitled to sign responses to Office actions, or to authorize examiner’s amendments and

priority actions. Preparing a document, authorizing an amendment to an application, and submitting legal arguments in response to an examining attorney's requirement or refusal of registration all constitute examples of representation of the applicant in a trademark matter. See [37 C.F.R. §11.5\(b\)\(2\)](#). Under 5 U.S.C. §500(d) and [37 C.F.R. §11.14\(e\)](#), non-attorneys may not represent a party in a trademark proceeding before the USPTO. See [TMEP §§611.03\(b\)](#), [611.06](#), and [712–712.03](#) regarding signatures on responses to Office actions.

The signatory must personally sign his or her name. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(a\)\(1\)](#), [\(c\)\(1\)](#). It is unacceptable for a person to sign another person's name to a verification pursuant to a general power of attorney. See *In re Cowan*, 18 USPQ2d 1407, 1409 (Comm'r Pats. 1990). In a TEAS submission, the person whose name is affixed to the verification must manually enter the elements of the electronic signature. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)\(1\)](#). The rules do not provide authority for an attorney to sign another person's declaration. *In re Dermahose*, 82 USPQ2d 1793, 1796 (TTAB 2007).

The name of the person who signs a document submitted in connection with an application must be set forth in printed or typed form immediately below or adjacent to the signature, or identified elsewhere in the filing (e.g., in a cover letter or other document that accompanies the filing). [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(d\)](#). If the signatory's name is not set forth in a document, the USPTO may require that it be stated for the record. This information can be entered through a Note to the File.

See [TMEP §804.05](#) regarding verification of §66(a) applications.

804.05 Verification of §66(a) Application

In trademark and service mark applications under §66(a) of the Act, the request for extension of protection to the United States must include a declaration alleging that the applicant/holder has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)\(1\)](#). In addition, the declaration must include a statement that the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant/holder, the signatory believes the applicant/holder to be entitled to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation, and to the best of his/her knowledge and belief no other person, firm, corporation, or association has the right to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. [15 U.S.C. §1141\(f\)\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. 2.33\(e\)\(2\)-\(4\)](#). The declaration must be signed by: (1) a person with legal authority to bind the applicant; (2) a person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant; or (3) a qualified practitioner who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

The verified statement in a §66(a) application for a trademark or service mark is part of the international registration on file at the IB. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)](#). The IB will have established that the international registration includes this declaration before it sends the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. The examining attorney should generally not issue any inquiry regarding the verification of the application. If the applicant needs to file a request for correction of the declaration, the request should be filed with the IB. However, if the applicant voluntarily files a substitute declaration with the USPTO, it will be examined according to the same standards used for examining any other declaration.

See [TMEP §1904.02\(d\)](#) for information regarding the verified statement for a §66(a) application for a collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark.

See also [TMEP §1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for information about declarations in §66(a) applications for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for declarations in §66(a) applications for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for declarations in §66(a) applications for certification marks.

805 Identification and Classification of Goods and Services

An application for a trademark or service mark must include a list of the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant uses or intends to use the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#). See [TMEP §1402](#) for further information about identifying goods and services in a trademark or service mark application.

The applicant should designate the international class number(s) that are appropriate for the identified goods or services, if this information is known. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(7\)](#). See [TMEP §1401](#) for more information about classification in a trademark or service mark application.

See also [TMEP §1303.01](#) for information about identification and classification for collective trademark and collective service mark applications, [TMEP §§1304.02\(c\)–1304.02\(d\)](#) for collective membership mark applications, and [TMEP §1306.02](#) for certification mark applications.

806 Filing Basis

A filing basis is the statutory basis for filing an application for registration of a mark in the United States.

An applicant must specify and meet the requirements of one or more bases in a trademark or service mark application. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(5\)](#). There are five filing bases: (1) use of a mark in commerce under §1(a) of the Trademark Act; (2) bona fide intention to use a mark in commerce under §1(b) of the Act; (3) a claim of priority, based on an earlier-filed foreign application under §44(d) of the Act; (4) ownership of a registration of the mark in the applicant's country of origin under §44(e) of the Act; and (5) extension of protection of an international registration to the United States, under §66(a) of the Act. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)-\(b\), 1126\(d\)-\(e\), 1141f\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)](#).

An applicant is not required to specify the basis for filing to receive a filing date. *Kraft Grp. LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837, 1840 (TTAB 2009). If a §1 or §44 application does not specify a basis, the examining attorney must require in the first Office action that the applicant specify the basis for filing and submit all the elements required for that basis. If the applicant timely responds to the first Office action, but fails to specify a basis for filing, or fails to submit all the elements required for a particular basis, the examining attorney will issue a final Office action, if the application is otherwise in condition for final action.

In a §66(a) application, the basis for filing will have been established in the international registration on file at the IB.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.34](#) and [TMEP §806.01–\(e\)](#) for a list of the requirements for each basis for trademark or service mark applications. See also [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)](#) and [2.45\(a\)\(4\)](#), and [TMEP §§1301.01\(a\)\(i\)-\(v\), 1304.02\(a\)\(i\)-\(v\), and 1306.02\(a\)\(i\)-\(v\)](#), for the requirements for each basis for collective and certification mark applications.

806.01 Requirements for Establishing a Basis

The requirements for establishing a basis for trademark or service mark applications are set forth in [TMEP §§806.01\(a\)–806.01\(e\)](#). If these requirements are not met in the original application, the examining attorney will require the applicant to comply with them in the first Office action.

806.01(a) Use in Commerce - §1(a)

Under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(1\)](#), to establish a basis under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the applicant must:

- (1) Submit a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(C\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the mark was in use in commerce *as of the application filing date* ([37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#));
- (2) Specify the date of the applicant's first use of the mark anywhere on or in connection with the goods or services ([37 C.F.R. §2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §903.01](#));
- (3) Specify the date of the applicant's first use of the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §903.02](#)); and
- (4) Submit one specimen for each class, showing how the applicant uses the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\), 2.56](#); [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)](#)).

The Trademark Act defines “commerce” as commerce which may lawfully be regulated by Congress, and “use in commerce” as the bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); *see* [TMEP §§901–901.04](#).

An applicant may claim both use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act and intent-to-use under §1(b) of the Act as a filing basis in the same application, but may not assert both §1(a) and §1(b) for the identical goods or services in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(b\)](#); [TMEP §806.02\(b\)](#).

An applicant may not claim a §1(a) basis unless the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services covered by the §1(a) basis as of the application filing date. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#); *cf. E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co. v. Sunlyra Int'l, Inc.*, 35 USPQ2d 1787, 1791 (TTAB 1995) .

If the applicant claims use in commerce in addition to another filing basis, but does not specify which goods or services are covered by which basis, the USPTO may defer examination of the specimen(s) until the applicant identifies the goods or services for which use is claimed. [TMEP §806.02\(c\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(i\)-\(a\)\(i\)\(C\), 1304.02\(a\)\(i\)-\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#), and [1306.02\(a\)\(i\)-\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) for the requirements for a §1(a) basis for collective and certification mark applications.

806.01(b) Intent-to-Use - §1(b)

In a trademark or service mark application based on [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\); 2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#). If the verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce *as of the application filing date* . [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\); 2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#).

Prior to registration, the applicant must file an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)) that states that the mark is in use in commerce, and includes dates of use, the filing fee for each class, and one specimen evidencing use of the mark for each class. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76](#) and [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use, and [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#) and [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use.

Once an applicant claims a §1(b) basis for any or all of the goods or services, the applicant may not amend the application to seek registration under §1(a) of the Act for those goods or services unless the applicant files an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(8\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#), [1304.02\(a\)\(ii\)](#), and [1306.02\(a\)\(ii\)](#) for the requirements for a §1(b) basis for collective and certification mark applications.

See also [TMEP Chapter 1100](#) for additional information about intent-to-use applications.

806.01(c) Foreign Priority - §44(d)

Section 44(d) of the Act provides a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, but not a basis for publication or registration. Before the application can be approved for publication, or for registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must establish a basis under §1(a), §1(b), or §44(e) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §1003.03](#). If the applicant claims a §1(b) basis, the applicant must file an allegation of use before the mark can be registered. See [TMEP §806.01\(b\)](#) regarding the requirements for a §1(b) basis.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)](#), the requirements for receipt of a priority filing date for a U.S. trademark or service mark application based on a previously filed foreign application are:

(1) The applicant must file a claim of priority within six months of the filing date of the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#), [2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#);

(2) The applicant must: (a) specify the filing date, serial number, and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or (b) state that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority. [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#); *see also* Paris Convention Article 4(D); and

(3) The applicant must verify that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). This allegation is required even if use in commerce is asserted in the application. [TMEP §806.02\(e\)](#). If the verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce *as of the application filing date*. [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#).

The scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

If an applicant properly claims a §44(d) basis in addition to another basis, the applicant may retain the priority filing date without perfecting the §44(e) basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#). See [TMEP §806.04\(b\)](#) regarding processing an amendment electing not to perfect a §44(e) basis, and [TMEP §806.02\(f\)](#) regarding the examination of applications that claim §44(d) in addition to another basis.

See [TMPEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(iii\)](#), [1304.02\(a\)\(iii\)](#), and [1306.02\(a\)\(iii\)](#) for the requirements for a §44(d) basis for collective and certification mark applications.

See also [TMPEP §§1003–1003.08](#) for further information about §44(d) applications.

806.01(d) Foreign Registration - §44(e)

Under [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)](#), the requirements for establishing a basis for registration of a trademark or service mark under §44(e), relying on a registration granted by the applicant's country of origin, are:

- (1) The applicant must submit a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of the registration in the applicant's country of origin, and, if the foreign registration or other certification is not in English, the applicant must provide a translation of the document. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMPEP §§1004.01](#), [1004.01\(b\)](#);
- (2) The application must include the applicant's verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#). This allegation is required even if use in commerce is asserted in the application. [TMPEP §806.02\(e\)](#). If the verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce *as of the application filing date*. [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#); and
- (3) The applicant's country of origin must either be a party to a convention or treaty relating to trademarks to which the United States is also a party, or extend reciprocal registration rights to nationals of the United States by law. See [TMPEP §§1002–1002.05](#).

If the applicant does not submit a certification or a certified copy of the registration from the country of origin, the applicant must submit a true copy or photocopy of a document that has been issued to the applicant by, or certified by, the intellectual property office in the applicant's country of origin. A photocopy of an entry in the intellectual property office's gazette (or other official publication) or a printout from the intellectual property office's website is not, by itself, sufficient to establish that the mark has been registered in that country and that the registration is in full force and effect. See [TMPEP §1004.01](#).

The scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMPEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

An application may be based on more than one foreign registration. If the applicant amends an application to rely on a different foreign registration, this is not considered a change in basis; however, the application must be republished. [TMPEP §1004.02](#). See [TMPEP §§806.03–806.03\(l\)](#) regarding amendments to add or substitute a basis.

See [TMPEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(iv\)](#), [1304.02\(a\)\(iv\)](#), [1306.02\(a\)\(iv\)-\(a\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#) for a list of the requirements for a §44(e) basis for collective and certification mark applications.

See also [TMPEP §§1004–1004.02](#) for further information about §44(e) applications.

806.01(e) Extension of Protection of International Registration - §66(a)

Section 66(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), provides for a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States. See [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(5\)](#). The request must include a

verified statement alleging that the applicant/holder has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation, which is verified by the applicant for, or holder of, the international registration. [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(a\),\(e\)\(1\), 2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). The verified statement is part of the international registration on file at the IB, for a trademark or service mark application. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)](#). The IB will have established that the international registration includes this declaration before it sends the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. Generally, the examining attorney need not review the international registration to determine whether there is a proper declaration of intent to use, or issue any inquiry regarding the initial verification of the application. However, if the applicant voluntarily files a substitute declaration with the USPTO, it will be examined according to the same standards used for examining any other declaration. See [TMEP §804.05](#).

For a collective mark or certification mark application, the required verified statement is *not* part of the international registration on file at IB; therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(b\)\(2\), 2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(v\), 1303.01\(b\)\(ii\), 1304.02\(a\)\(v\), 1304.02\(b\)\(ii\), 1306.02\(a\)\(v\), and 1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for information regarding the verified statement for collective and certification mark applications based on §66(a).

A §66(a) applicant may not change the basis or claim more than one basis unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c). [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(b\), 2.35\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1904.09](#) regarding the limited circumstances under which a §66(a) application can be transformed into an application under §1 or §44.

Section 66(a) requires transmission of a request for extension of protection by the IB to the USPTO. Such basis may not be added or substituted as a basis in an application originally filed under §1 or §44.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#), Madrid Protocol Article 4(2), and [37 C.F.R. §7.27](#), the §66(a) applicant may claim a right of priority within the meaning of Article 4 of the Paris Convention if:

- (1) The request for extension of protection contains a claim of priority;
- (2) The request for extension of protection specifies the filing date, serial number, and the country of the application that forms the basis for the claim of priority; *and*
- (3) The date of international registration or the date of the recordal of the subsequent designation requesting an extension of protection to the United States is not later than six months after the date of the first regular national filing (within the meaning of Article 4(A)(3) of the Paris Convention) or a subsequent application (within the meaning of Article 4(C)(4) of the Paris Convention).

See Common Regs., Rule 9(4)(a)(iv); *Guide to the International Registration of Marks under the Madrid Agreement and the Madrid Protocol* (2014) (“*Guide to International Registration*”), Para. B.II.07.32.

806.02 Multiple Bases

806.02(a) Procedure for Asserting More Than One Basis

In a §66(a) application, the applicant may not claim more than one basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(b\)](#).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the applicant may claim more than one basis, if the applicant satisfies all requirements for each basis claimed. However, the applicant may not claim both §1(a) and §1(b) for identical goods or services in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(b\)](#). The applicant must

clearly indicate that more than one basis is claimed, and must separately list each basis, followed by the goods, services, or classes to which that basis applies. If some or all of the goods or services are covered by more than one basis, this must be stated. [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(b\)](#), [2.35\(b\)\(6\)](#).

Example: Based on use - SHIRTS AND COATS, in Class 25; Based on intent to use - DRESSES, in Class 25.

The applicant may assert different bases for different classes, and may also assert different bases as to different goods or services within a class.

When a single class has different bases for goods or services within that class, the USPTO uses parentheses to indicate the particular basis for specific goods or services. When entering this information into the Trademark database for goods and services under §1(a) or §1(b), the examining attorney or legal instruments examiner (“LIE”) must refer to “use in commerce” or “intent to use” rather than referring to the statutory citation. However, for goods and services under §44, the statutory citation must be identified.

Example: Class 025: (Based on Use in Commerce) Pants; (Based on Intent to Use) Shirts

Example: Class 025: (Based on 44(e)) Pants

When all bases do not apply to all classes in a multiple-basis, multiple-class application, each class must include a basis notation.

Example:

Class 016: (Based on 44(e)) Greeting cards and postcards

Class 025: (Based on Use in Commerce) Shoes; (Based on Intent to Use) Shirts

Class 041: (Based on 44(e)) Entertainment, namely, live performances by a musical band

The applicant may claim a §44 basis in addition to *either* a §1(a) *or* a §1(b) basis for the same goods or services. When an application has a §44 and §1(b) dual basis for the same goods or services, the §1(b) basis information must always appear after the §44 basis information.

Example: Class 005: (Based on 44(e)) (Based on Intent to Use) Gene therapy products, namely, pharmaceutical preparation vectors for use in gene therapy; (Based on Intent to Use) Pharmaceutical preparations containing nucleic acids for use in the treatment of viral and bacterial infections

806.02(b) Applicant May File Under Both §1(a) and §1(b) in the Same Application

An applicant may rely on both §1(a) and §1(b) of the Trademark Act in the same trademark or service mark application, but not for identical goods or services. [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(b\)](#); [2.86\(c\)](#). However, the applicant may assert a §1(a) basis for some of the goods or services and a §1(b) basis for other goods or services in the same application. This may occur in either a single or multiple-class application. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(b\)](#).

When the applicant asserts both §1(a) and §1(b) as bases for registration in the same application, the USPTO will publish the mark for opposition and then issue a notice of allowance (*see* [TMEP §1106.01](#)) if there is no successful opposition. The goods/services/classes for which a §1(a) basis is asserted will remain in the application pending the filing and approval of a statement of use for the goods/services/classes based on §1(b), unless the applicant files a request to divide. *See* [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#) regarding requests to divide applications. If the applicant fails to timely file a statement of use or request for an extension of time

to file a statement of use in response to a notice of allowance, the entire application will be abandoned, unless the applicant files a request to divide before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use and notifies the examining attorney that the request has been filed. [TMEP §806.02\(d\)](#).

806.02(c) Examination of Specimens of Use in a Multiple-Basis Application

If the applicant claims use in commerce in addition to another basis, but does not specify which goods/services/classes are covered by which basis, the USPTO may defer examination of the specimens until the applicant identifies the goods/services/classes for which use is claimed. A proper examination of specimens requires consideration of the particular goods/services on or in connection with which the mark is used.

806.02(d) Abandonment of Multiple-Basis Applications

If an applicant fails to respond to an Office action or notice of allowance pertaining to only one basis of a multiple-basis application, the failure to respond will result in abandonment of the entire application, unless the applicant files a request to divide under [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#) and notifies the examining attorney that the request has been filed. See [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#) regarding requests to divide applications. If the failure to respond was unintentional, the applicant may file a petition to revive. See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive.

806.02(e) Allegation of Bona Fide Intention to Use Mark in Commerce Required Even if Application Is Based on Both §44 and §1(a)

Any application filed under §44(d) or §44(e) must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce even if §1(a) (use in commerce) is asserted as an additional filing basis. *Cf. In re Paul Wurth S.A.*, 21 USPQ2d 1631, 1633 (Comm’r Pats. 1991).

If an application is based on both §1(b) and §44, it is not necessary to repeat the allegation that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.

806.02(f) Section 44(d) Combined With Other Bases

If an applicant properly claims priority under §44(d), [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#), in addition to a §1 basis, the applicant may elect not to perfect the §44(e) basis (based on the foreign registration that will issue from the application on which the applicant relies for priority) and still retain the priority filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\), \(b\)\(4\)](#). If an applicant who elects not to perfect the §44(e) basis later wishes to add or substitute §44(e) as a basis after the mark has been published for opposition, the applicant must petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); see [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#).

The examining attorney must advise the applicant that it may retain the priority filing date even if it does not perfect the §44(e) basis, and inquire whether the applicant wishes to retain §44(e) as a second basis for registration. See [TMEP §806.04\(b\)](#) regarding the processing of an application in which an applicant elects not to perfect a §44(e) basis, and [TMEP §1003.04\(b\)](#) regarding the procedures to follow when an applicant claims priority under §44(d) in addition to another basis.

806.02(g) Not Necessary to Repeat Allegation of Bona Fide Intention to Use Mark in Commerce in Multiple-Basis Application

If an application is based on both §1(b) and §44, it is not necessary to repeat the allegation that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. Therefore, when an applicant adds or substitutes §1(b) or §44 as a filing basis, it is not necessary to submit a new verification of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce if there is already one in the record with respect to the goods or services covered by the new basis.

806.03 Amendments to Add or Substitute a Basis

806.03(a) When Basis Can be Changed

Section 1 or §44 Application - Before Publication. The applicant may add or substitute a basis before publication, provided that the applicant meets all requirements for the new basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#).

Section 1 or §44 Application - After Publication. In an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, if an applicant wants to add or substitute a basis after a mark has been published for opposition, the applicant must first petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. If the Director grants the petition, and the examining attorney accepts the added or substituted basis, the mark must be republished. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§806.03\(j\)–806.03\(j\)\(iii\)](#) for further information.

Amendment of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board is governed by [37 C.F.R. §2.133\(a\)](#). See [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) (“TBMP”) [§514](#).

Section 66(a) Application . In a §66(a) application, the applicant cannot change the basis, unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(a\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(k\)](#).

806.03(b) Applicant May Add or Substitute a §44(d) Basis Only Within Six-Month Priority Period

An applicant may add or substitute a §44(d) basis only during the six-month priority period following the filing date of the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §806.02\(f\)](#) regarding §44(d) combined with another basis.

806.03(c) Amendment From §1(a) to §1(b)

In an application filed under §1(a), if the §1(a) basis fails, either because the specimens are unacceptable or because the mark was not in use in commerce when the application was filed, the applicant may substitute §1(b) as a basis and the application will retain the original filing date. The USPTO will presume that the applicant had a continuing valid basis unless there is contradictory evidence in the record. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#).

Although there is a presumption of a continuing valid basis, when amending from §1(a) to §1(b) in a trademark or service mark application, the applicant must confirm the presumption by submitting a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, and that the applicant

had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#), and [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for the verified statement for a §1(b) application for collective and certification marks.

If the applicant wishes to substitute §1(b) as a basis after publication of an application filed under §1(a) that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the TTAB, the applicant must petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#). In a multiple-basis application, if a notice of allowance has issued for those goods/services/classes based on §1(b), the petition will not be granted unless a request to divide the application is submitted with the petition. The goods/services/classes to be amended from §1(a) to §1(b) must be divided out in order to process the amendment because republication is required. ([37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#)). The petitioner may include all the goods/services/classes based on §1(a) in the child application or only those to which the amendment to §1(b) applies. If dividing within a class, in addition to the fee for filing a request to divide, an application filing fee is required. See [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#) and [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#) regarding requests to divide applications.

The amendment of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the TTAB is governed by [37 C.F.R. §2.133\(a\)](#).

Note that in a §1(b) application, once an applicant has filed a statement of use, the applicant may not withdraw the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1109.17](#). Thus, an applicant may not amend the basis from §1(a) to §1(b) after a statement of use has been filed. See [TMEP §1104.11](#) regarding withdrawing an amendment to allege use.

See [TMEP §§806.03\(j\)–806.03\(j\)\(iii\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis after publication.

806.03(d) Amendment From §44 to §1(b)

An applicant may amend the basis from §44 to §1(b). The USPTO will presume that the applicant had a continuing valid basis, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record, because the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#). *Karsten Mfg. Corp. v. Editoy AG*, 79 USPQ2d 1783, 1789-90 (TTAB 2006). It is not necessary to submit a new verification of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce if such a verification is already in the record with respect to the goods/services covered by the new basis. See [TMEP §806.03\(i\)](#).

Applicant must clearly indicate whether it wants to: (1) add the §1(b) basis and maintain the §44 basis; or (2) replace the §44 basis with the §1(b) basis.

In a §44(d) application, the applicant may substitute §1(b) as a basis and still retain the priority filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(h\)](#). If the applicant chooses to add the §1(b) basis and maintain the §44 basis, the examining attorney must not approve the mark for publication until the applicant files a copy of the foreign registration. See [TMEP §§806.02\(f\)](#), [1003.04\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis after publication.

806.03(e) Allegation of Use Required to Amend From §1(b) to §1(a)

An applicant who claims a §1(b) basis for any or all of the goods or services may not amend the application to seek registration under §1(a) of the Act for those goods or services, unless the applicant files an allegation

of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(8\)](#). See [TMEP §§1103, 1104–1104.11](#), and [1109–1109.18](#) regarding allegations of use.

806.03(f) Use in Commerce as of Application Filing Date Required to Add or Substitute §1(a) as a Basis in §44 Application

An applicant may add or substitute a basis only if the applicant meets all the requirements for the new basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). Therefore, an applicant may not amend a §44 application to claim a §1(a) basis unless the applicant: (1) verifies that the mark is in use in commerce and was in use in commerce as of the application filing date; (2) provides a specimen, with a verified statement that the specimen was in use in commerce as of the application filing date; and (3) supplies the date of first use anywhere and the date of first use in commerce of the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\), 2.59\(a\), 2.71\(c\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§806.01\(a\), 806.03\(i\), 903.01, 903.02, 903.04, 904.05](#).

If an applicant began using the mark in commerce *after* the application filing date, the applicant may not add or substitute §1(a) as a basis. However, the applicant may add or substitute §1(b) as a basis, and concurrently file an amendment to allege use. See [TMEP §806.03\(d\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis from §44 to §1(b), and [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use.

806.03(g) Amendment From §1(b) to §44

An applicant may amend the basis from §1(b) to §44, if the applicant meets the requirements of §44 as of the filing date of the amendment. It is not necessary to submit a new verification of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce if such verification is already in the record with respect to the goods/services covered by the new basis. See [TMEP §806.03\(i\)](#).

When an applicant adds §44(e) as a basis, the applicant must submit a copy of the foreign registration (and an English translation, if necessary) with the amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §§1004.01, 1004.01\(b\)](#).

The applicant may add a claim of priority under §44(d) only within the six-month priority period following the filing date of the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §806.02\(f\)](#) regarding §44(d) combined with another basis.

If the amendment is filed before publication, the applicant must clearly indicate whether it wants to: (1) add the §44 basis and maintain the §1(b) basis; or (2) replace the §1(b) basis with the §44 basis. If the applicant chooses to add §44 and maintain the §1(b) basis, the application will proceed to publication with a dual basis. See [TMEP §§806.03\(j\)–806.03\(j\)\(iii\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis after publication.

806.03(h) Effect of Substitution of Basis on Application Filing Date

When the applicant substitutes one basis for another, the applicant must meet the requirements for the new basis. The applicant will retain the original filing date, provided that the applicant had a continuing valid basis for registration since the application filing date. Unless there is contradictory evidence in the record, the USPTO will presume that there was a continuing valid basis for registration. See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#); *Kraft Grp. LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837, 1841 (TTAB 2009); *Karsten Mfg. Corp. v. Editoy AG*, 79 USPQ2d 1783, 1789-90 (TTAB 2006).

If the applicant properly asserts a claim of priority under §44(d) during the six-month priority period, the applicant will retain the priority filing date, no matter which basis for registration is ultimately established, provided that the applicant had a continuing valid basis for registration. See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)-\(4\)](#); [TMEP §§806.02\(f\)](#), [1003](#), [1003.04\(b\)](#).

If there is no continuing valid basis, the application is void, and registration will be refused. In this situation, the applicant may not amend the filing date, and the USPTO will not refund the filing fee. See [TMEP §205](#).

806.03(i) Verification of Amendment Required

An applicant who adds or substitutes use in commerce under §1(a) as a basis in a trademark or service mark application must verify that the mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services covered by the §1(a) basis, and that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with these goods/services as of the application filing date. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#), [2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#), and [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for the verification wording for a §1(a) basis for a collective or certification mark application.

An applicant who adds or substitutes §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e) as a basis in a trademark or service mark application must verify that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services covered by the amendment, and that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with these goods/services as of the application filing date, unless a verified statement of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce has already been filed with respect to all the goods/services covered by the new basis. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#), and [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for the verification wording for a §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e) basis for a collective or certification mark application.

Example: If a §44 application originally included a verified statement that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, it is not necessary to repeat this statement if the applicant later adds or substitutes a §1(b) basis for the goods/services covered by the §44 basis.

See [TMEP §804.04](#) regarding persons who may sign a verification on behalf of an applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

806.03(j) Petition to Amend Basis After Publication - §1 or §44 Application

37 CFR §2.35(b)(2)

After publication, an applicant may add or substitute a basis in an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, but only with the express permission of the Director, after consideration on petition.

Republication will be required. The amendment of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Board is governed by §2.133(a).

In an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, if an applicant wants to add or substitute a basis after a mark has been published for opposition, the applicant must petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#). Amendment of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board is governed by [37 C.F.R. §2.133\(a\)](#) (see [TBMP §514](#)).

When granting a petition to amend the basis, the Director will restore jurisdiction to the examining attorney to consider the amendment, *except* in a §1(b) application in which the notice of allowance has issued. See [TMEP §806.03\(j\)\(ii\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis of a §1(b) application after issuance of a notice of allowance and before filing of statement of use.

If the examining attorney accepts the new basis, the mark must be republished to provide notice to third parties who may wish to oppose registration based on issues that arise in connection with the new basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#).

If the examining attorney does not accept the new basis, he or she will issue an Office action using standard examination procedures *except* in a §1(b) application in which a notice of allowance has issued and no statement of use has been filed. See [TMEP §806.03\(j\)\(ii\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis of a §1(b) application after issuance of a notice of allowance and before filing of statement of use.

Any petition to change the basis must be filed before issuance of the registration. To avoid the possible issuance of a registration without consideration of the petition, an applicant should submit the petition no later than six weeks after publication.

The Director will not grant a petition to amend the basis after publication if the amendment could substantially delay prosecution of the application. For example, the Director will deny petitions to amend the basis after publication in the following situations:

- Once the Director has granted a petition to amend the basis after publication, the Director will not thereafter grant a second petition to amend the basis with respect to the same application.
- If an applicant had previously deleted a §1(b) basis after a notice of allowance had issued, the Director will not grant a petition to re-assert §1(b) as a basis for registration. This would require issuance of a new notice of allowance and could result in filing of a statement of use more than 36 months after issuance of the first notice of allowance, which is not permitted under §1(d) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#).

See [TMEP §806.03\(j\)\(i\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis in a §1(b) application between publication and issuance of a notice of allowance, and [TMEP §806.03\(j\)\(ii\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis in a §1(b) application after issuance of a notice of allowance and before filing of statement of use.

Petitions to amend the basis after publication are processed by the Office of Petitions, which is part of the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

806.03(j)(i) Amending the Basis of a §1(b) Application After Publication But Before Issuance of Notice of Allowance

An applicant who wants to add or substitute a §44(e) basis to a §1(b) application after publication must petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#). The applicant must submit a copy of the foreign registration (and an English translation, if necessary) with the petition. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §§ 1004.01, 1004.01\(b\)](#). If the petition is granted, the mark must be republished. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP § 806.03\(j\)](#).

The petition must indicate whether applicant wants to delete or retain the §1(b) basis. The applicant has two options:

- (1) Applicant may request to delete the §1(b) basis and substitute §44(e) if the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis. If the petition is granted, the examining attorney will be instructed to examine the §44(e) basis in accordance with standard examination procedures and to delete the §1(b) basis if the §44(e) basis is accepted. If the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney must ensure that: (a) the §1(b) basis is deleted, (b) the foreign registration information is entered into the Trademark database, and (c) the application is scheduled for republication. If registration of the mark is not successfully opposed, a registration will issue. If the examining attorney does not accept the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney will issue an Office action notifying the applicant of the reason(s). The applicant may elect to withdraw the amendment adding the §44(e) basis and proceed under §1(b) as the sole basis without republication; or
- (2) Applicant may request to add §44(e) and retain the §1(b) basis. If the petition is granted, the examining attorney will be instructed to examine the §44(e) basis in accordance with standard examination procedures. If the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney must ensure that: (a) the foreign registration information is entered into the Trademark database and (b) the application is scheduled for republication with a dual basis. If registration of the mark is not successfully opposed, a notice of allowance will issue. If the examining attorney does not accept the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney will issue an Office action notifying the applicant of the reason(s). The applicant may elect to withdraw the amendment adding the §44(e) basis and proceed under §1(b) as the sole basis without republication.

806.03(j)(ii) Amending the Basis of a §1(b) Application Between Issuance of Notice of Allowance and Filing of Statement of Use

An applicant who wants to add or substitute a §44(e) basis in a §1(b) application after issuance of the notice of allowance and before filing a statement of use must file a “Petition to Change the Filing Basis After Publication,” available at http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/petition_forms.jsp, to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. The applicant must submit a copy of the foreign registration (and an English translation, if necessary) with the petition. See [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §§ 1004.01, 1004.01\(b\)](#). If the petition is granted, the mark must be republished. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#).

The Director will not grant a petition to amend the basis to §44(e) after issuance of the notice of allowance and before the filing of a statement of use if the foreign registration does not include all of the classes covered by the §1(b) basis, unless the applicant concurrently files: (1) a request to divide out the goods/services/classes to which the amendment applies or (2) an amendment deleting the goods/services/classes not covered by the amendment. See [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#) and [TMEP §§1110–1110.11](#) regarding requests to divide. Also, if it is otherwise necessary to amend the identification in the U.S. application to conform to the scope of the identification in the foreign registration, the applicant should submit the amendment with the petition to expedite processing.

The Director will not grant a petition to add §44(e) and retain the §1(b) basis after issuance of the notice of allowance unless a statement of use is filed with the petition.

Therefore, the applicant has three options:

- (1) *Request to delete the §1(b) basis and substitute §44(e)*. The applicant may request to delete the §1(b) basis and substitute §44(e). If the petition is granted, the Office of Petitions will have the notice of allowance cancelled and instruct the examining attorney to examine the §44(e) basis in accordance with standard examination procedures. If the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney must ensure that: (a) the §1(b) basis is deleted; (b) the foreign

registration information is entered into the Trademark database; and (c) the application is scheduled for republication. However, if the record indicates that the foreign registration has expired or will expire within six months, the examining attorney must require proof of renewal. If the applicant states that renewal is pending in the foreign country, the examining attorney must suspend the application pending receipt of proof of renewal. See [TMEP §1004.01\(a\)](#) regarding the status of the foreign registration. If the examining attorney does not accept the new basis, the examining attorney will issue an Office action advising the applicant of the reasons. The applicant cannot re-assert the §1(b) basis.

- (2) *Request to add §44(e) and perfect the §1(b) basis by filing a statement of use.* The applicant may request to add §44(e) and perfect the §1(b) basis by filing a statement of use with the petition. If the petition is granted, the examining attorney will examine the §44(e) basis during examination of the statement of use. If the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis and the statement of use, the examining attorney must ensure that: (a) the foreign registration information is entered into the Trademark database and (b) the application is scheduled for republication with a dual basis. However, if the record indicates that the foreign registration has expired or will expire within six months, the examining attorney must require proof of renewal. If the applicant states that renewal is pending in the foreign country, the examining attorney must suspend the application pending receipt of proof of renewal. See [TMEP §1004.01\(a\)](#) regarding the status of the foreign registration. If the examining attorney does not accept the §44(e) basis or the statement of use, the examining attorney will issue an Office action notifying the applicant of the reason(s). The applicant may elect to withdraw the amendment adding the §44(e) basis and, if the statement of use is acceptable, proceed to registration under §1(a) as the sole basis without republication. If the statement of use is not acceptable, but the §44(e) basis is, the applicant may elect to proceed under §44(e) as the sole basis with republication.
- (3) *Request to substitute §44(e) but retain the §1(b) basis until the §44(e) basis is accepted.* The applicant may request to substitute a §44(e) basis and request that the §1(b) basis be deleted only if the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis. Applicants who request to retain the §1(b) basis pending acceptance of the §44(e) basis must also file a request for extension of time to file a statement of use when due (or a statement of use) or the application will be abandoned. See [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#). If the petition is granted, the examining attorney will be instructed to examine the §44(e) basis in accordance with standard examination procedures. If the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney must ensure that: (a) the notice of allowance is cancelled, (b) the §1(b) basis is deleted, (c) the foreign registration information is entered into the Trademark database, and (d) the application is scheduled for republication. If the examining attorney does not accept the §44(e) basis, or if the foreign registration has expired or will expire within six months, the examining attorney is unable to issue an Office action since the notice of allowance is still pending. Therefore, the examining attorney will attempt to notify the applicant by telephone or e-mail of the reasons why the amendment is unacceptable. The applicant may then (1) agree to delete the §1(b) basis so that the notice of allowance can be cancelled and an examiner's amendment and/or appropriate Office action regarding the requested basis amendment can be issued, (2) withdraw the request to amend the basis to §44(e), or (3) request that the amendment remain pending until a statement of use is filed. The examining attorney must also enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record that states the reason(s) why the amendment is not acceptable. If the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant, no further action will be taken on the amendment until a statement of use is filed or the applicant contacts the examining attorney with a request to delete the §1(b) basis so an Office action can be issued.

See also [37 C.F.R. §2.77](#); [TMEP §§1107–1107.01](#).

806.03(j)(iii) Amending the Basis of a §1(b) Application After Filing of Statement of Use But Before Approval for Registration

An applicant who wants to add or substitute a §44(e) basis after filing a statement of use must petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. The applicant must submit a copy of the foreign registration (and an English translation, if necessary) with the petition. See [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §§ 1004.01, 1004.01\(b\)](#). If the petition is granted, the mark must be republished. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#).

While an applicant may not withdraw the statement of use ([37 C.F.R. §2.88\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1109.17](#)), the applicant may elect not to perfect the use basis and instead substitute §44(e). The statement of use, specimen(s), and any materials submitted with the statement of use will remain part of the record even if the §1(b) basis is deleted. See [37 C.F.R. §2.25](#).

If the examining attorney accepts the §44(e) basis and the applicant is not perfecting the statement of use, the examining attorney must ensure that: (a) the §1(b) basis is deleted, (b) the dates of use are deleted, (c) the foreign registration information is entered into the Trademark database, and (d) the mark is scheduled for republication. If the mark is not successfully opposed, a registration will issue.

If the examining attorney does not accept the §44(e) basis, the examining attorney will issue an Office action notifying the applicant of the reason(s) and address any additional issue(s) that arise during examination of the statement of use. If an Office action has already been issued, the examining attorney must issue a supplemental action, with a new six-month response period, notifying the applicant that the §44 basis is unacceptable. The examining attorney must indicate that the action is supplemental to the previous action and incorporate all outstanding issues by reference to the previous action. The applicant may choose to withdraw the request to amend the §44(e) basis.

Filing a petition to add or substitute a §44(e) basis does not relieve the applicant of the duty to file a response to an outstanding Office action or to take any other action required in an application. See [TMEP §§711–711.02](#) regarding the deadline for response to an Office action. If the applicant has filed a petition to delete the §1(b) basis and substitute §44(e), but the petition has not yet been acted on, the applicant may respond to an outstanding refusal or requirement by informing the examining attorney that a petition has been filed to substitute §44(e). The applicant must also respond to any outstanding issues regarding the statement of use unless the applicant no longer intends to perfect the statement of use.

806.03(k) Basis May not be Changed in §66(a) Application

In a §66(a) application, the applicant may not change the basis, unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§1904.09–1904.09\(b\)](#) regarding transformation.

806.03(l) §66(a) Basis May not be Added to §1 or §44 Application

Section 66(a) requires transmission of a request for extension of protection by the IB to the USPTO. Such basis may not be added or substituted as a basis in an application originally filed under §1 or §44.

806.04 Deleting a Basis

If an applicant claims more than one basis, the applicant may delete a basis at any time, before or after publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). No petition to the Director is required to delete a basis from a multiple-basis application after publication. When the applicant deletes a basis, the applicant must also delete the goods/services/classes covered solely by that basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(7\)](#).

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that a request to delete a §1(b) basis from a multiple-basis application be filed through TEAS, at http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/post_publication.jsp.

806.04(a) Deletion of §1(b) Basis After Publication or Issuance of the Notice of Allowance

If all of the goods/services/classes in an application are based on §1(b) and §44(e), the applicant may file a request to delete the §1(b) basis by amendment at any time, except as set forth below. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#).

No petition to the Director is required to delete a §1(b) basis from a multiple-basis application after publication. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that any request to delete a §1(b) basis be filed through TEAS, at http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/post_publication.jsp, using the “Request to Delete §1(b) Basis, Intent-to-Use” form.

If the application has some goods/services/classes based solely on §1(b) and some goods/services/classes based solely on §1(a) or §44(e), and the applicant wants to delete the §1(b) goods/services/classes after publication or issuance of the notice of allowance, the applicant must submit a post-publication amendment requesting the deletion and that the application proceed to registration for the other goods/services/classes that are not based on §1(b). To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that any request to delete the §1(b) goods/services/classes be filed through TEAS, at http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/post_publication.jsp, using the “Post-Approval/Publication/Post-Notice of Allowance (NOA) Amendment” form. For further information on filing post-publication amendments, see [TMEP §1505](#).

If a notice of allowance has issued, the request must be filed: (1) within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance, (2) within a previously granted extension of time to file a statement of use, or (3) between the filing date of the statement of use and the date on which the examining attorney approves the mark for registration. If filed on paper, the request should be directed to the ITU Unit. The ITU Unit will cancel the notice of allowance, and take the necessary steps to delete the §1(b) basis and schedule the issuance of the registration.

If filed on paper before issuance of the notice of allowance, the request should be faxed to Post Publication Amendments/Corrections at 571-270-9007. The request will be reviewed by paralegal specialists in the Office of Petitions, who will delete the §1(b) basis and schedule the issuance of the registration.

806.04(b) Retention of §44(d) Priority Filing Date Without Perfecting §44(e) Basis

If an applicant properly claims §44(d) in addition to another basis, the applicant may elect not to perfect a §44(e) basis and still retain the §44(d) priority filing date. [37 C.F.R. §§2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#) and [\(4\)](#); [TMEP §§806.01\(c\)](#) and [806.02\(f\)](#).

When a §44(d) applicant elects not to proceed to registration under §44(e), the USPTO does not delete the §44(d) priority claim from the Trademark database. Both the §44(d) priority claim and the other basis will remain in the Trademark database.

Sometimes, a §44(d) applicant who elects not to perfect a §44(e) basis will file an amendment “deleting” the §44 basis. In this situation, the USPTO will presume that the applicant wants to retain the priority claim, unless the applicant specifically states that it wants to delete the priority claim and instead rely on the actual filing date of the application in the United States.

If the applicant is not entitled to priority (e.g., because the United States application was not filed within six months of the foreign filing), the examining attorney must ensure that the priority claim is deleted from the Trademark database, and must conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks.

806.05 Review of Basis Prior to Publication or Issue

If an application claims more than one basis, the examining attorney must ensure that the record clearly and accurately shows which goods are covered by which basis before approving the application for publication for opposition or registration on the Supplemental Register. If there are any errors, the examining attorney must ensure that the Trademark database is corrected.

See [TMEP § 806.02\(a\)](#) for information regarding entering multiple bases in the Trademark database when the applicant asserts different bases for different classes, or different bases as to different goods or services within a class.

807 Drawing

The drawing shows the mark sought to be registered. [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#). An applicant must submit a clear drawing with the original application to receive a filing date in any application for registration of a mark, except in applications for registration of sound, scent, and other non-visual marks. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.21\(a\)\(3\), 2.52\(e\)](#). See also [TMEP §807.09](#) regarding drawings in applications for registration of non-visual marks. Submitting a specimen showing how the mark is or may be used (e.g., the overall packaging, a photograph of the goods, or an advertisement) does not satisfy the requirement for a clear drawing of the mark. See [TMEP §202.01](#).

The drawing is used to reproduce the mark in the *Trademark Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate.

The main purpose of the drawing is to provide notice of the nature of the mark sought to be registered. The drawing of a mark is promptly entered into the automated records of the USPTO and is available to the public through the Trademark Electronic Search System (“TESS”) and the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) database on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. Timely public notification of the filing of applications is important, because granting a filing date to an application potentially establishes a date of constructive use of the mark (see [TMEP §201.02](#)). Therefore, an application under §1 or §44 must include a clear drawing of the mark to receive a filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §202.01](#).

Examining attorneys must require applicants to comply promptly with the drawing rules. Requests to defer drawing corrections until the application is approved for publication or registration must be denied.

There are two forms of drawings: “special form drawings” and “standard character drawings.” See [37 C.F.R. §§2.52\(a\), \(b\)](#). See also [TMEP §§807.03–807.03\(i\)](#) for information about standard character drawings, and [TMEP §§807.04–807.04\(b\)](#) for information about special form drawings. (*Note*: “Typed” drawings are acceptable for applications filed before November 2, 2003. See [TMEP §807.03\(i\)](#).)

For special form marks, generally, the most appropriate drawing of the mark shows an illustrated rendering of the mark. However, a photograph may also be acceptable if it accurately depicts the mark and does not show additional matter that is not part of the mark. For example, a photograph of trade dress is not acceptable if it includes unnecessary background information or informational matter such as net weight or contents. Drawings consisting of either illustrated renderings or photographs of the mark are both subject to the same drawing requirements and must fairly represent the mark.

The mark in the drawing must agree with the mark as used on the specimen in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#); as applied for or registered in a foreign country in an application under §44, [15 U.S.C. §1126](#); or as it appears in the international registration in an application under §66(a), [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(a\)–\(d\)](#); [TMEP §§807.12–807.12\(c\)](#), [1011.01](#).

In a TEAS application, the drawing must be submitted electronically through TEAS, and must meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.52](#) and [2.53](#) (*see* [TMEP §§807.05–807.05\(c\)](#)). In a paper application, the drawing must be submitted on paper and must meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.52](#) and [2.54](#) (*see* [TMEP §§807.06–807.06\(c\)](#)).

807.01 Drawing Must Show Only One Mark

An application must be limited to only one mark. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#). *See In re Int'l Flavors & Fragrances Inc.*, 183 F.3d 1361, 1366, 51 USPQ2d 1513, 1516 (Fed. Cir. 1999)

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#), an applicant must submit “a clear drawing of the mark” to receive a filing date. An application that includes two or more drawings displaying materially different marks does not meet this requirement. Two marks are considered to be materially different if the substitution of one for the other would be a material alteration of the mark, within the meaning of [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#) (*see* [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#)).

Accordingly, if an applicant submits two or more drawing pages, the application is denied a filing date, because the applicant has not met the requirement for a clear drawing of the mark. *See TMEP §202.01* for further information. *See also Humanoids Grp. v. Rogan*, 375 F.3d 301, 307-309, 71 USPQ2d 1745, 1750-1751 (4th Cir. 2004). However, if an applicant submits a separate drawing page in a paper application showing a mark, and a different mark appears in the written application, the application will receive a filing date, and the drawing page will control for purposes of determining what the mark is. The USPTO will disregard the mark in the written application. *In re L.G. Lavorazioni Grafite S.r.l.*, 61 USPQ2d 1063, 1064 (Dir USPTO 2001). Similarly, if an applicant enters a standard character mark, or attaches a digitized image of a mark, in the “Mark” field of a TEAS application, and a different mark appears in another field, the application will receive a filing date, and the mark entered in the “Mark” field will control for purposes of determining what the mark is.

The USPTO will not deny a filing date if the drawing shows spatially separate elements. If the applicant submits an application where the “drawing” is composed of multiple elements on a separate page, multiple elements on a single digitized image, or multiple elements in a separate area of the body of the application, the applicant has met the requirement of [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#) for a clear drawing of the mark. The examining attorney must determine whether the matter presented for registration is a single mark projecting a unitary commercial impression. *See TMEP §807.12(d)* regarding “mutilation” or incomplete representation of the mark.

If the examining attorney determines that spatially separate elements constitute two or more different marks, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§ 1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051 and 1127](#), on the ground that the applicant seeks registration of more than one mark. See *In re Hayes*, 62 USPQ2d 1443, 1445-1446 (TTAB 2002); *In re Elvis Presley Enters., Inc.*, 50 USPQ2d 1632 (TTAB 1999); *In re Walker-Home Petroleum, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 773, 775-776 (TTAB 1985); *In re Jordan Indus., Inc.*, 210 USPQ 158, 159-160 (TTAB 1980); *In re Audi NSU Auto Union AG*, 197 USPQ 649, 650-651 (TTAB 1977); *In re Magic Muffler Serv., Inc.*, 184 USPQ 125, 126 (TTAB 1974); *In re Robertson Photo-Mechanix, Inc.*, 163 USPQ 298, 299 (TTAB 1969). This refusal may apply in any application, regardless of the filing basis.

When registration is refused because the matter presented on the drawing does not constitute a single mark, the application filing fee will not be refunded. The applicant may amend the drawing if the amendment does not materially alter the mark, or may submit arguments that the matter on the drawing does in fact constitute a single mark. See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration, and [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#) regarding deletion of matter from the drawing.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#), even if registration is sought for a three-dimensional mark, the applicant must submit a drawing depicting a single rendition of the mark. See [TMEP §807.10](#). If the applicant submits a drawing that depicts a three-dimensional mark in multiple renditions, the examining attorney will require a substitute drawing depicting the mark in a single rendition. If the applicant believes that its mark cannot be adequately depicted in a single rendition, the applicant may file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) requesting that the rule be waived. See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions.

If the mark is duplicated in some form on the drawing (e.g., a typed word and a stylized display of the same word), this is generally not considered to be two materially different marks, and deletion of one of the marks is permitted.

See [TMEP §§1214–1214.04](#) regarding the refusal of registration of a mark with a “phantom” element on the ground that it includes more than one mark in a single application.

See also *In re Upper Deck Co.*, 59 USPQ2d 1688, 1691 (TTAB 2001) (holding that a hologram used on trading cards in varying shapes, sizes, contents, and positions constitutes more than one “device” as contemplated by §45 of the Trademark Act).

807.02 Drawing Must Be Limited to Mark

The drawing allows the USPTO to properly code and index the mark for search purposes, indicates what the mark is, and provides a means for reproducing the mark in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. Therefore, matter that appears on the specimen that is not part of the mark should not be placed on the drawing. Purely informational matter such as net weight, contents, or business addresses are generally not considered part of the mark.

Quotation marks and hyphens should not be included in the mark on a drawing, unless they are a part of the mark. See [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)\(i\)–807.14\(a\)\(iii\)](#) and [807.14\(c\)](#) regarding the role of punctuation in determining whether the mark on the drawing agrees with the mark on the specimen. The drawing may not include extraneous matter such as the letters “TM,” “SM,” the copyright notice ©, or the federal registration notice ®. See [TMEP §§906–906.04](#) regarding use of the federal registration notice.

See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#) regarding requirements for removal of matter from the drawing.

807.03 Standard Character Drawings

37 CFR §2.52(a) Standard character (typed) drawing.

Applicants who seek to register words, letters, numbers, or any combination thereof without claim to any particular font style, size, or color must submit a standard character drawing that shows the mark in black on a white background. An applicant may submit a standard character drawing if:

- (1) The application includes a statement that the mark is in standard characters and no claim is made to any particular font style, size, or color;
- (2) The mark does not include a design element;
- (3) All letters and words in the mark are depicted in Latin characters;
- (4) All numerals in the mark are depicted in Roman or Arabic numerals; and
- (5) The mark includes only common punctuation or diacritical marks.

Effective November 2, 2003, Trademark Rule 2.52, [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#), was amended to replace the term “typed” drawing with “standard character” drawing. Applicants who seek to register a mark without any claim as to the manner of display must submit a standard character drawing that complies with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#).

807.03(a) Requirements for Standard Character Drawings

A standard character drawing must show the mark in black on a white background. An applicant may submit a standard character drawing if:

- The mark does not include a design element;
- All letters and words in the mark are depicted in Latin characters;
- All numerals in the mark are depicted in Roman or Arabic numerals;
- The mark includes only common punctuation or diacritical marks; and
- No stylization of lettering and/or numbers is claimed in the mark.

[37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#).

If the applicant files an application on paper that includes a standard character claim, the applicant may depict the mark in any font style; may use bold or italicized letters; and may use both uppercase and lowercase letters, all uppercase letters, or all lowercase letters, since no claim is made to any *particular* font style, size, or color. However, the USPTO will convert applicant’s depiction of the mark to a standardized typeface for printing in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. If filing electronically via the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”), the applicant may neither depict the mark in any particular font style nor use bold or italicized letters. TEAS will automatically convert any wording typed into the standard-character field to a standardized typeface.

Superscripts, subscripts, exponents, or other characters that are not in the USPTO’s standard character set (*see* [TMEP §807.03\(b\)](#)) are *not* permitted in standard character drawings. *In re AFG Indus. Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1162, 1163-64 (TTAB 1990) (holding that a special form drawing is required for a drawing featuring a raised numeral). The degree symbol is permitted.

Underlining is not permitted in a standard character drawing.

Standard Character Claim Required. An applicant who submits a standard character drawing must also submit the following standard character claim:

The mark consists of standard characters without claim to any particular font style, size, or color.

This statement will appear in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration.

807.03(b) List of Standard Characters

The USPTO has created a standard character set that lists letters, numerals, punctuation marks, and diacritical marks that may be used in a standard character drawing. The standard character set is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/teas/standardCharacterSet.html>. If the applicant has claimed standard character format and the drawing includes elements that are not in the set, then the examining attorney must treat the drawing as a special form drawing, ensure that the mark drawing code is changed, and require the applicant to delete the standard character claim. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

In a §66(a) application, if the drawing includes elements that are not in the standard character set, the examining attorney must require deletion of the standard character claim even though the international registration indicates that the mark is in standard characters. See the IB's *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.07.44.

807.03(c) Drawings Containing Both a Standard Character Claim and Designs or Other Elements

If the application contains a standard character claim, but the mark includes a design element, color, a claim of a particular style or size of lettering, or other elements such that the mark does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#), then the examining attorney must: (1) treat the drawing as a special form drawing; (2) require that the applicant delete the standard character claim from the record; (3) ensure that the appropriate mark drawing code is entered into the Trademark database; and (4) if appropriate, add design search codes. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes and [TMEP §104](#) regarding design codes.

Similarly, a standard character claim is not acceptable where the characters form shapes or designs, such as emoticons.

807.03(d) Changing From Special Form Elements to Standard Characters, or the Reverse, May be a Material Alteration

A special form drawing containing a design element, color, a claim to a particular style or size of lettering, or other distinctive elements cannot be amended to a standard character drawing, unless the examining attorney determines that the amendment is not material. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#).

Conversely, a standard character drawing cannot be amended to a special form drawing containing a design element, color, or a claim to a distinctive style or size of lettering, unless the examining attorney determines that the amendment is not material. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#). See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

807.03(e) Standard Character Drawing and Specimen of Use

When the applicant submits a standard character drawing, the mark shown in the drawing does not necessarily have to appear in the same font style, size, or color as the mark shown on the specimen of use. However, the examining attorney must review the mark depicted on the specimen to determine whether a standard character claim is appropriate, or whether a special form drawing is required.

If the examining attorney determines that the standard characters are displayed in a distinctive manner that changes the meaning or overall commercial impression of the mark, the examining attorney must process the drawing as a special form drawing, and require the applicant to delete the standard character claim. As with all drawings, the mark on the drawing must be a substantially exact representation of the mark used on the specimen in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §§2.51\(a\) and \(b\)](#); [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#).

The examining attorney may delete the standard character claim by examiner's amendment after obtaining approval from the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner. When deleting a standard character claim, the examining attorney must ensure that the mark drawing code is changed. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

See [TMEP §807.04\(b\)](#) for further information as to when a special form drawing is required.

807.03(f) Standard Character Drawing and Foreign Registration

In a §44 application, if the applicant claims standard characters, the examining attorney must ensure that the foreign registration also claims standard characters. See [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(c\)](#); [TMEP §807.12\(b\)](#).

If the foreign registration certificate does not indicate that the mark is in standard characters (or the equivalent), the examining attorney must inquire whether the foreign registration includes a claim that the mark is in standard characters (or the legal equivalent). The applicant must either submit an affirmative statement that the foreign registration includes a claim that the mark is in standard characters (or the legal equivalent), or delete the standard character claim in the United States application. A statement that the foreign registration includes a claim that the mark is in standard characters may be entered in the record through a Note to the File if there are no other outstanding issues.

[Appendix E](#) of this manual lists countries that register marks in standard characters or the equivalent. For countries on this list, if all letters and words in the mark are in block capital or capital and lowercase Latin characters, all numerals are Roman or Arabic numerals, the mark includes only common punctuation or diacritical marks, and no stylization of lettering and/or numbers is claimed, the examining attorney need not inquire whether the registered mark in the foreign registration is in standard characters or the equivalent, unless the applicant has indicated that the mark is *not* standard characters or the equivalent. If the applicant has indicated that the mark is *not* in standard characters or the equivalent, but the foreign registration is from a country on the list and the mark meets the standards set forth above, the examining attorney must inquire about the discrepancy. In response to the inquiry, the applicant must either amend the application to claim standard characters, or confirm that the mark is not in standard characters or the equivalent. If a particular country is not on this list, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the mark in the foreign registration is for a mark in standard characters or the equivalent.

The examining attorney may delete the standard character claim by examiner's amendment after obtaining approval from the applicant or applicant's qualified practitioner. When deleting a standard character claim,

the examining attorney must ensure that the mark drawing code is changed. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

807.03(g) Drawings in “Typed” Format With No Standard Character Claim

Section 1 Applications. If the application does not include a standard character claim, but the mark is shown in a format that would have been considered “typed” prior to November 2, 2003 (i.e., the mark is shown in capital letters, or the mark is specified as “typed” in the body of the application, on a separate drawing page, or on a cover letter filed with the application), the drawing will initially be coded and entered into the automated records of the USPTO as a special form drawing. However, the examining attorney must treat the drawing of the mark as a standard character drawing and ensure that a standard character claim is entered into the record.

If the application is ready to be published for opposition, the examining attorney must enter the standard character claim by a no-call examiner’s amendment. In this situation, no prior authorization from the applicant is required to add a claim by an examiner’s amendment. See [TMEP §707.02](#). If an Office action is necessary, it must include a requirement that the applicant submit a standard character claim.

Once the applicant submits a standard character statement, the examining attorney must ensure that the mark drawing code is changed to 4 (see [TMEP §807.18](#)).

Section 44 Applications. In a §44 application, the applicant cannot claim standard characters unless the foreign registration also claims standard characters. See [TMEP §807.03\(f\)](#).

Section 66(a) Applications. In a §66(a) application, if the application does not include a standard character claim but the mark is shown in what appears to be standard character format, see [TMEP §807.03\(h\)](#).

807.03(h) Drawings Where the Format Is Unclear

Section 1 Applications. When it is unclear from the record whether the submitted drawing was intended to be a standard character drawing, the examining attorney must contact the applicant for clarification. For example, clarification is needed if the font style used in the mark on the drawing does not match the font style used on the specimen and there is no standard character claim in the application, or if the applicant files a paper application in which the mark is printed or written by hand. If the mark is intended to be in standard characters, then the examining attorney must require that the applicant amend the application to include the standard character claim. This may be done by examiner’s amendment. Once the applicant submits this statement, the examining attorney must ensure that the mark drawing code is changed to 4 (see [TMEP §807.18](#)).

Section 44 Applications. In a §44 application, the applicant cannot claim standard characters unless the foreign registration also claims standard characters. See [TMEP §807.03\(f\)](#).

Section 66(a) Applications. A §66(a) application will normally indicate whether there is a standard character claim in the underlying international registration. The international registration will include such a claim if the basic application and/or registration that forms the basis of the international registration also includes such a claim. However, due to differences in requirements for standard character claims in the different countries where basic applications are filed and basic registrations issued, there may be times when the mark in the international registration and corresponding U.S. §66(a) application does not include a standard character claim even though the mark appears to be in standard characters.

In such cases, the applicant may assert a standard character claim in a §66(a) application if the mark drawing complies with the USPTO's requirements for a standard character drawing under [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#), and the mark in the basic application and/or registration that forms the basis for the international registration is the legal equivalent of a standard character mark under the laws of the country of the basic application and/or registration. Although a mark in a §66(a) application may generally not be amended, submitting a standard character claim under these circumstances is not considered an amendment of the mark. [TMEP §§807.13\(b\), 1904.02\(j\), \(k\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.52\(a\), 7.25\(a\)](#).

To assert a standard character claim under these circumstances, the applicant must submit (1) an affirmative statement that, under the laws of the country of the basic application and/or registration, the basic application and/or registration includes, and thus the international registration includes, the legal equivalent of a standard character claim, and (2) a standard character claim (i.e., The mark consists of standard characters without claim to any particular font style, size, or color.) (*see* [TMEP §807.03\(a\)](#)). If the basic application and/or registration does not indicate that the mark is in standard characters (or the legal equivalent), the mark in the international registration and the corresponding drawing in the §66(a) application will be considered in special form and any U.S. registration that issues will be limited to the particular appearance and text style shown in the drawing.

If an Office action is otherwise necessary, an examining attorney may provide an advisory to the §66(a) applicant that the drawing of the mark meets the requirements for a standard character drawing under [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#), but there is no standard character claim in the U.S. application. This advisory should include an explanation that a standard character claim may be added to the U.S. application if, under the laws of the country of the basic application and/or registration, the basic application and/or registration includes the legal equivalent of a standard character claim.

The applicant may not add a standard character claim unless the mark in the §66(a) application meets the U. S. requirements for a standard character drawing in [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§807.03\(a\), \(b\)](#)).

Alternatively, if the international registration indicates that the mark is in standard characters, but the drawing includes elements that are not in the USPTO's standard character set (*see* [TMEP §807.03\(b\)](#)), the examining attorney must require deletion of the standard character claim even though the international registration indicates that the mark is in standard characters. *See* the IB's *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.07.44.

The *Guide to International Registration* provides that if an Office “considers that the mark is not in standard characters, it may issue a refusal, for example, on the ground that the international registration covers two marks (one in standard characters and one in special characters) or that it is simply not clear for what [mark] protection is sought.” Para. B.II.07.45. *See* [TMEP §807.01](#) regarding multiple marks and [§§1214–1214.04](#) regarding phantom marks.

807.03(i) Typed Drawings

Prior to November 2, 2003, “standard character” drawings were known as “typed” drawings. The mark on a typed drawing had to be typed entirely in capital letters. A typed mark is the legal equivalent of a standard character mark.

807.04 Special Form Drawings

37 CFR §2.52(b) (Extract) Special form drawing.

Applicants who seek to register a mark that includes a two or three-dimensional design; color; and/or words, letters, or numbers or the combination thereof in a particular font style or size must submit a special form drawing. The drawing should show the mark in black on a white background, unless the mark includes color.

* * * * *

807.04(a) Characteristics of Special Form Drawings

A “special form drawing” is a drawing that presents a mark comprised, in whole or in part, of special characteristics such as elements of design or color, style(s) of lettering, or unusual form(s) of punctuation.

All special form drawings must be of a quality that will reproduce satisfactorily for scanning into the Trademark database. If the drawing is not of a quality that will reproduce satisfactorily for scanning and printing in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration, the examining attorney must require a new drawing. If there is any doubt as to whether the drawing is acceptable, the examining attorney should contact the Office of Trademark Quality Review.

Pasted material, taped material, and correction fluid are not acceptable because they do not reproduce satisfactorily.

See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

807.04(b) When Special Form Drawing Is Required

A special form drawing is required if words, letters, or numerals are presented in a distinctive form that engenders an uncommon or “special” commercial impression that would be altered or lost were registration to issue based on a standard character drawing. *In re Morton Norwich Prods., Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1023, 1023 (TTAB 1983) (holding LABID not registrable without a special form drawing because the specimen showed the letter “a” in smaller lettering with a diacritical accent that set off the “BID” portion of the mark, when the word “BID” had an accepted meaning as applied to drug prescriptions, i.e., “twice a day”); *see In re United Servs. Life Ins. Co.*, 181 USPQ 655, 656 (TTAB 1973) (holding FOR LIFE INSURANCE SEE US not registrable without a special form drawing because the specimen showed the “US” portion of the mark in significantly larger lettering and underlined, suggesting a double entendre because “US” could stand for applicant’s name “United Services” or for the pronoun “us”); *In re Dartmouth Mktg. Co.*, 154 USPQ 557, 558 (TTAB 1967) (finding LUNCHEON TIME presented “in an uncommon manner to the extent that a prospective purchaser’s initial impression of the mark might well be other than that which applicant may intend to convey by the well understood term ‘luncheon time’”).

A special form drawing is required for marks that contain superscripts, subscripts, exponents, or other characters that are not in the USPTO’s standard character set. *In re AFG Indus. Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1162, 1164 (TTAB 1990) (requiring special form drawing for raised numeral). See [TMEP §807.03\(b\)](#) regarding the USPTO’s standard character set.

The USPTO encourages the use of standard character drawings. As a general rule, an applicant may submit a standard character drawing when a word, letter, numeral, or combination thereof creates a distinct commercial impression apart from any stylization or design element appearing on the specimen. If a mark remains the same in essence and is recognizable regardless of the form or manner of display that is presented, displaying the mark in standard character format affords a quick and efficient way of showing the essence of the mark. *In re wTe Corp.*, 87 USPQ2d 1536, 1539-40 (TTAB 2008) (reversing refusal on the ground that the standard character mark on the drawing was not a substantially exact representation of the mark as

actually used, finding that SPECTRAMET creates a distinct commercial impression apart from any stylization or design element appearing on the specimens, on which the letter “C” was displayed with an arrow design); *see In re Oroweat Baking Co.*, 171 USPQ 168 (TTAB 1971) (holding requirement for special form drawing to register OROWEAT displayed with wheat designs in the letter “O” improper); *In re Elec. Reps. Ass’n*, 150 USPQ 476 (TTAB 1966) (finding special form drawing not required when acronym ERA makes an impression apart from the electron design).

When an application is for a mark in standard characters, the examining attorney must consider the manner in which the mark is used on the specimen, and decide whether the mark includes an essential element or feature that cannot be produced by the use of standard characters. See [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#) regarding agreement between the mark on the drawing and the mark used on the specimen.

If the examining attorney determines that the mark in a standard character drawing should have been presented in special form, the applicant may submit a special form drawing if the amendment would not result in a material alteration of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#). If a standard character drawing is amended to a special form drawing, the examining attorney must ensure that the mark drawing code is changed. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

807.05 Electronically Submitted Drawings

The drawing in a TEAS application must meet the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §§2.52–2.53.

The USPTO has waived the requirement of [37 C.F.R. §2.53\(c\)](#) that drawings have a length and width of no less than 250 pixels and no more than 944 pixels. See [69 Fed. Reg. 59809](#) (Oct. 6, 2004). However, applicants are encouraged to continue to submit drawings with a length and width of no less than 250 pixels and no more than 944 pixels.

807.05(a) Standard Character Drawings Submitted Electronically

If an applicant is filing a standard character drawing, the applicant must enter the mark in the appropriate data field. The applicant must also submit a standard character claim, which is automatically generated once the applicant selects the standard character option. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)\(1\)](#).

When an application for a standard character mark is filed through TEAS, the characters entered in the appropriate data field in the TEAS application or TEAS response form are automatically checked against the USPTO’s standard character set. See [TMEP §807.03\(b\)](#) regarding the standard character set.

If all the characters in the mark are in the standard character set, the USPTO will create a digitized image that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.53\(c\)](#), and automatically generate the standard character statement.

The application record will indicate that standard characters have been claimed and that the USPTO has created the image. The examining attorney need not check the standard character mark against the standard character set during examination.

807.05(a)(i) Long Marks in Standard Character Drawings

As noted in [TMEP §807.05\(a\)](#), when an applicant files an application for a standard character mark through TEAS, the applicant must enter the mark in the appropriate data field.

A single line can consist of no more than 26 characters, including spaces. If the applicant enters a mark that exceeds 26 characters into the standard character word mark field, the USPTO's automated system will break the mark, so that it fits into the *Official Gazette*. After 26 characters, the mark will automatically continue onto the next line. The online TEAS instructions provide further information about breaks in long standard character marks. If a standard character mark exceeds 26 characters, and the applicant has a preference as to where the mark will be broken, the applicant should use the special form option, and attach a digitized image of the mark that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.53\(c\)](#) to the "Mark" field on the electronic application. See [TMEP §807.05\(c\)](#) regarding the requirements for digitized images. If the applicant selects the special form option, the applicant may not include a standard character claim.

807.05(b) Special Form Drawings Submitted Electronically

If the mark is in special form, the applicant must attach a digitized image of the mark that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.53\(c\)](#) to the "Mark" field on the electronic application. See [TMEP §807.05\(c\)](#) regarding the requirements for digitized images.

807.05(c) Requirements for Digitized Images

The mark image must be in .jpg format, and should be scanned at no less than 300 dots per inch and no more than 350 dots per inch, to produce the highest quality image. All lines must be clean, sharp, and solid, must not be fine or crowded, and must produce a high-quality image. 37 C.F.R. §2.53(c). It is recommended that mark images have a length of no less than 250 pixels and no more than 944 pixels, and a width of no less than 250 pixels and no more than 944 pixels.

Mark images should have little or no white space appearing around the design of the mark. If scanning from a paper image of the mark, it may be necessary to cut out the mark and scan it with little or no surrounding white space. Failure to do this may cause the mark to appear very small in the USPTO's automated records, such that it may be difficult to recognize all words or design features of the mark. To ensure that there is a clear image of the mark in the automated records of the USPTO, examining attorneys and LIEs should view the mark on the Publication Review program available on the USPTO's internal computer network. If the mark is not clear, the examining attorney must require a new drawing that meets the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §§2.52–2.54.

When color is not claimed as a feature of the mark, the image must be depicted only in black and white. When scanning an image, the applicant should confirm that the settings on the scanner are set to create a black-and-white image file, not a color image file.

Mark images may not include extraneous matter such as the symbols TM or SM, or the registration notice ®. The image should be limited to the mark. See [TMEP §807.02](#).

807.06 Paper Drawings

37 CFR §2.52(d) Paper drawings.

A paper drawing must meet the requirements of §2.54.

37 CFR §2.54 Requirements for drawings submitted on paper.

The drawing must meet the requirements of §2.52. In addition, in a paper submission, the drawing should:

- (a) Be on non-shiny white paper that is separate from the application;

(b) Be on paper that is 8 to 8.5 inches (20.3 to 21.6 cm.) wide and 11 to 11.69 inches (27.9 to 29.7 cm.) long. One of the shorter sides of the sheet should be regarded as its top edge. The image must be no larger than 3.15 inches (8 cm) high by 3.15 inches (8 cm) wide;

(c) Include the caption “DRAWING PAGE” at the top of the drawing beginning one inch (2.5 cm.) from the top edge; and

(d) Depict the mark in black ink, or in color if color is claimed as a feature of the mark.

(e) Drawings must be typed or made with a pen or by a process that will provide high definition when copied. A photolithographic, printer’s proof copy, or other high quality reproduction of the mark may be used. All lines must be clean, sharp and solid, and must not be fine or crowded.

Paper drawings may be filed by mail or hand delivery. Drawings may *not* be submitted by facsimile transmission. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(d\)\(2\)](#).

The drawing must meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.52, 2.54](#).

807.06(a) Type of Paper and Size of Mark

Size of Mark . The mark on the drawing should be no larger than 3.15 inches high by 3.15 inches wide (8 cm high by 8 cm wide). [37 C.F.R. §2.54\(b\)](#).

The USPTO will create a digitized image of all drawings submitted on paper. The examining attorney must view the mark on the Publication Review program, available on the USPTO’s internal computer network.

If the display of the mark appears to be clear and accurate, the examining attorney will presume that the drawing meets the size requirements of the rule.

Type of Paper and Recommended Format. The drawing should:

- Be on non-shiny white paper that is separate from the application;
- Be on paper that is 8 to 8.5 inches (20.3 to 21.6 cm.) wide and 11 to 11.69 inches (27.9 to 29.7 cm.) long. One of the shorter sides of the sheet should be regarded as its top edge;
- Include the caption “DRAWING PAGE” at the top of the drawing beginning one inch (2.5 cm.) from the top edge; and
- Depict the mark in black ink, or in color if color is claimed as a feature of the mark.

[37 C.F.R. §2.54\(a\)–\(d\)](#).

The drawing must be typed or made with ink or by a process that will provide high definition when scanned. A photolithographic, printer’s proof copy, or other high-quality reproduction of the mark may be used. All lines must be clean, sharp, and solid, and must not be fine or crowded. [37 C.F.R. §2.54\(e\)](#).

807.06(b) Long Marks in Standard Character Drawings

Because all standard character drawings are stored in USPTO systems as an image, a standard character drawing must meet the 3.15 inch (8 cm) by 3.15 inch (8 cm) requirement of [37 C.F.R. §2.54\(b\)](#). If the mark is too long to meet this requirement, applicant must submit an image on which the mark is broken in an appropriate place. It is suggested that the applicant use 14-point type to ensure that the mark will be legible in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration.

If an applicant submits an image on which the mark exceeds the size requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.54\(b\)](#), the USPTO will reduce the image so that it will meet these requirements. See [TMEP §807.06\(a\)](#). This could cause the mark to appear very small. To ensure that the mark will be legible in the *Official Gazette* and

on the certificate of registration, the examining attorney should view the mark on the Publication Review program available on the USPTO's internal computer network. If the mark is not legible, the examining attorney must require a new drawing that meets the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §§2.52–2.54.

807.06(c) Separate Drawing Page Preferred

The USPTO recommends that an applicant submit a drawing of the mark on a separate page from the written application. [37 C.F.R. §2.54\(a\)](#). However, a separate drawing page is not mandatory. Instead of a drawing page, an applicant may include a drawing of the mark embedded in the application, in either the heading or the body of the application.

If the applicant identifies a separate page as a drawing (e.g., by labeling it as a drawing, or providing a heading with the applicant's name, address and the subject goods/services), this will be the only drawing considered.

A mark depicted on the specimen, in the foreign registration, or in the international registration will not be considered a drawing.

If there is no separate drawing page, the examining attorney must review the application to determine what the mark is. If an embedded drawing meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.51–2.52, 2.54](#), the examining attorney should accept it and not require a substitute drawing.

Effective October 30, 1999, a separate drawing page is considered part of the written application, not a separate element. Dates of use, disclaimers, descriptions of the mark, identifications of goods/services, and other information that appears on the drawing are also considered part of the written application. This applies to substitute drawings as well as original drawings. If there is an inconsistency between the information on the drawing page and the information in the body of the application, the examining attorney must require clarification.

If an applicant submits a separate drawing page showing a mark, and a different mark appears in the written application, the drawing page controls for purposes of determining what the mark is. See [TMEP §807.01](#).

807.07 Color in the Mark

37 CFR §2.52(b)(1) Marks that include color.

If the mark includes color, the drawing must show the mark in color, and the applicant must name the color(s), describe where the color(s) appear on the mark, and submit a claim that the color(s) is a feature of the mark.

If the applicant wishes to register the mark in color, the applicant must submit a color drawing and meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(g\)](#) regarding the requirements for color drawings. If the applicant does not claim color as a feature of the mark, the applicant must submit a black-and-white drawing.

Generally, if the applicant has not made a color claim, the description of the mark should not mention color(s), because reference to color in the description of a non-color mark creates a misleading impression. [TMEP §808.02](#). However, in some cases, it may be appropriate to submit a black-and-white drawing and a description of the mark that refers to black, white, and/or gray, if the applicant states that color is not claimed as a feature of the mark. This occurs where the black, white, and/or gray is used as a means to indicate areas that are not part of the mark, such as background or transparent areas; to depict a certain aspect

of the mark that is not a feature of the mark, such as broken- or dotted-line outlining to show placement of the mark; to represent shading or stippling; or to depict depth or three-dimensional shape. See [TMEP §§807.07\(f\)–807.07\(f\)\(ii\)](#) regarding applications with black-and-white drawings and mark descriptions that refer to black, white, or gray with no corresponding color claim, [TMEP §§807.07\(d\)–807.07\(d\)\(iii\)](#) regarding color drawings that contain black, white, or gray, and [TMEP §807.07\(e\)](#) regarding black-and-white drawings and color claims.

See [TMEP §§1202.05–1202.05\(i\)](#) regarding the registration of marks that consist solely of one or more colors used on particular objects.

807.07(a) Requirements for Color Drawings

For applications filed on or after November 2, 2003, the USPTO does not accept black-and-white drawings with a color claim, or drawings that show color by use of lining patterns. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#).

If the mark includes color, the drawing must show the mark in color. In addition, the application must include: (1) a claim that the color(s) is/are a feature of the mark; and (2) a color location statement in the “Description of the Mark” field naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appear(s) on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). A color drawing will not publish without both of these statements. See [TMEP §807.07\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding the color claim, and [TMEP §807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the color location statement.

807.07(a)(i) Color Must Be Claimed as a Feature of the Mark

If an applicant submits a color drawing, or a description of the mark that indicates the use of color on the mark, the applicant must claim color as a feature of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). If the color claim is incorrect, incomplete, or inconsistent with the color(s) shown on the drawing, the color claim must be corrected to conform to the color(s) depicted on the drawing. If the color claim or mark description references changeable colors, the examining attorney must require an amended mark description that deletes the reference to the color in the mark varying or being changeable and restricts the description to only those colors shown on the drawing. See [TMEP §807.01](#). Alternatively, the applicant may amend to a black-and-white drawing, if the amendment would not constitute a material alteration. A properly worded color claim would read as follows:

The color(s) *<name the color(s)>* is/are claimed as a feature of the mark.

The color claim must include the generic name of the color(s) claimed. It is usually not necessary to indicate shades of a color, but the examining attorney has the discretion to require that the applicant do so, if necessary to accurately describe the mark. The color claim may also include a reference to a commercial color identification system. The USPTO does not endorse or recommend any one commercial color identification system.

In an application filed on or after November 2, 2003, an applicant cannot file a color drawing with a statement that “no claim is made to color” or “color is not a feature of the mark.” If this occurs, the examining attorney must require the applicant to claim color as a feature of the mark. The applicant may not substitute a black-and-white drawing, unless the examining attorney determines that color is non-material.

807.07(a)(ii) Applicant Must Specify the Location of the Colors Claimed

If an applicant submits a color drawing, in addition to claiming the color(s), the applicant must include a separate statement specifying where the color(s) appear(s) on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). This statement is often referred to as a “color location statement.” In a TEAS application, the color location statement should be set forth in the “Description of the Mark” field. A properly worded color location statement would read as follows:

The mark consists of <specify the color(s) and literal or design element(s) on which the color(s) appear, e.g., a red bird sitting on a green leaf>.

If the color location statement is incorrect, incomplete, or inconsistent with the color(s) shown on the drawing, the color location statement must be corrected to conform to the color(s) depicted on the drawing. If the statement references changeable colors, the examining attorney must require an amended mark description that deletes the reference to the color in the mark varying or being changeable and restricts the description to only those colors shown on the drawing. *See* [TMEP §807.01](#). However, if the record contains an accurate and properly worded color claim listing all the colors, and an informal description of where the colors appear, but one of the colors is omitted from the formal description of the colors in the mark, the examining attorney may enter an amendment of the color description that accurately reflects the location of all colors in the mark without prior approval by the applicant or the applicant’s qualified practitioner. *See* [TMEP §707.02](#).

Example – A TEAS applicant includes a statement in the “Miscellaneous” field that refers to the mark as a blue, red, and yellow ball and includes an accurate and properly worded color claim listing all colors in the mark, but omits the color yellow from the description of the mark. The examining attorney may enter an amendment of the description to accurately reflect all colors in the mark.

The color location statement must include the generic name of the color claimed. The statement may also include a reference to a commercial color identification system. The USPTO does not endorse or recommend any one commercial color identification system.

It is usually not necessary to indicate shades of a color, but the examining attorney has the discretion to require that the applicant indicate shades of a color, if necessary to accurately describe the mark.

See [TMEP §1202.05\(e\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirement for a written explanation of a mark consisting solely of color.

807.07(b) Color Drawings Filed Without a Color Claim

If the applicant submits a color drawing but does not include a color claim in the written application, and if the color is a material element of the mark, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a claim that color(s) is/are a feature of the mark, and a separate color location statement in the “Description of the Mark” field naming the color(s) and specifying where the color(s) appear(s) on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

In an application under §1, if the examining attorney determines that color is a non-material element of the drawing, the applicant may be given the option of submitting a black-and-white drawing.

In an application under §44, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(c\)](#); [TMEP §807.12\(b\)](#). If a §44 application is based on a

foreign registration that depicts the mark in color, but no claim of color is made in the registration document, the examining attorney must inquire whether the foreign registration includes the color(s) shown as claimed features of the mark. The applicant must either: (1) submit an affirmative statement that color is a feature of the mark, and comply with the United States requirements for drawings in color; or (2) submit a statement that although the mark is registered in its country of origin featuring a color depiction of the mark, no claim of color is made in that registration. If the examining attorney determines that color is a non-material element of the drawing, the applicant may be given the option of submitting a black-and-white drawing. See [TMEP §§807.12\(b\), 1011.01, 1011.03](#).

In an application under §66(a), the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the international registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(d\)](#); [TMEP §807.12\(c\)](#). The IB will include a reproduction that is identical to the reproduction in the international registration when it forwards the request for extension of protection of the international registration to the United States. The mark in a §66(a) application cannot be amended. [TMEP §807.13\(b\)](#).

Generally, when a mark is depicted in color, the §66(a) application will contain a claim of the colors featured in the mark. However, because some countries accept color drawings of marks that do not include a color claim, there may be cases where no claim of color has been made in the international registration, but the reproduction of the mark contains color. In these cases, the examining attorney should require the applicant to submit either: (1) a claim of the color(s) featured in the mark and a separate statement in the “Description of the Mark” field describing where the color(s) appear(s) in the mark; or (2) a statement that no claim of color is made with respect to the international registration, and a black-and-white reproduction of the same mark depicted in the international registration to comply with United States drawing requirements. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)](#).

807.07(c) Color Drawings Filed With an Incorrect Color Claim

When the color shown on the drawing page in a paper application, or on the digitized image of the drawing in a TEAS application, is inconsistent with the color claimed in the written application (e.g., the mark is shown in blue on the drawing, but the color claimed is orange), the drawing controls. The color claim may be corrected to conform to the drawing. The drawing may not be corrected to conform to the color claim, unless the examining attorney determines that the amendment is non-material.

807.07(d) Color Drawings that Contain Black, White, or Gray

When color is claimed as a feature of the mark, the applicant must submit a color claim that identifies each color and a separate color location statement describing where each color appears in the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#). The applicant must claim all colors shown in the mark; the applicant cannot claim color for some elements of the mark and not others. See *id.* For example, when the drawing includes solid black lettering as well as elements in other colors, the applicant must claim the color black as a feature of the mark and include reference to the black lettering in the color location statement. The applicant may not state that solid black lettering represents all colors, or that it represents the particular color of the label, product, packaging, advertisement, website, or other specimen on which the mark appears at any given time.

If color is claimed as a feature of the mark, the drawing may include black, white, and/or gray used in two ways: (1) as claimed features of the mark; and/or (2) as a means to depict a certain aspect of the mark *that is not a feature of the mark*, such as broken- or dotted-line outlining to show placement of the mark on a product or package; to represent shading or stippling; to depict depth or three-dimensional shape; or to

indicate areas that are not part of the mark, such as background or transparent areas. See [TMEP §§807.08, 808.01\(b\)](#).

The terms “background” and “transparent areas” refer to the white or black portions of the drawing which are not part of the mark, but appear or will appear in the particular color of the label, product, packaging, advertisement, website, or other acceptable specimen on which the mark is or will be displayed. The applicant may not claim that the background or transparent areas represent all colors or that they represent the particular color of the label, product, packaging, advertisement, website, or other specimen on which the mark appears at any given time.

If the applicant claims color as a feature of the mark, the examining attorney must require the applicant to:

- state that the color(s) black, white, and/or gray (and all other colors in the drawing) are claimed as a feature of the mark, and describe where the color(s) appear(s) on the mark; or
- if appropriate, state that the black, white, and/or gray in the drawing represents background, outlining, shading, and/or transparent areas and is not part of the mark.

These statement(s) may be submitted in either a written amendment to the application or by an examiner's amendment. The examining attorney must ensure that the statement(s) is entered into the Trademark database. The statement(s) will be printed on the registration certificate.

The only exception to the requirement to claim or explain any black, white, and/or gray shown on the drawing is that, if the background of the drawing is white and it is clear that the white background is not part of the mark, no explanation of the white background is required. For example, if the drawing depicts the letters “ABC” in solid blue on a white background, or depicts a solid purple and green flower on a white background, no statement about the white background is required. On the other hand, if the shape of each of the letters “ABC” is outlined in blue with an enclosed white interior, or if the purple and green flower is enclosed in a green or black rectangle, square, or circle with a white interior, the applicant must explain the purpose of the interior white areas on the drawing.

807.07(d)(i) Applications Under §1

If the drawing includes black, white, gray tones, gray shading, and/or gray stippling, and also includes other colors (e.g., red, turquoise, and beige), and the color claim does not include the black/white/gray, the examining attorney must require the applicant to either: (1) add the black/white/gray to the color claim and to the color location statement; or (2) if appropriate, add a statement that “The <black/white/gray> in the drawing represents background, outlining, shading, and/or transparent areas and is not part of the mark.”

Drawing must match the specimen of use . The drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods/services, as shown by the specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(a\)–\(b\)](#); see [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(a\)\(1\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#).

For example, if the drawing shows a red flower and the letters XYZ in the color black, the specimen must show the mark in the same colors. If the specimen depicts the lettering in a color other than solid black (e.g., green), the applicant must: (1) submit an amended drawing that depicts the lettering in the color shown on the specimen, if the amendment would not materially alter the mark; and (2) amend the color claim and the color location statement to match the new drawing, e.g., replace the word “black” with the word “green.” Alternatively, the applicant may submit a substitute specimen showing use of the mark in the colors depicted on the drawing, or, if deleting the colors from the drawing would not materially alter the mark, the applicant

may delete the color claim and substitute a black-and-white drawing for the color drawing. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#).

807.07(d)(ii) Applications Under §44

If the applicant claims any color as a feature of the mark in the foreign registration, the applicant must claim the same color(s) in the United States application. If the foreign registration includes a color claim and also includes black, white, and/or gray that is not claimed as a feature of the mark, the applicant must state that the black/white/gray in the drawing represents background, outlining, shading, and/or transparent areas and is not part of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.51\(c\), 2.72\(c\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§807.12\(b\), 1011.01](#).

In applications under §44, the drawing of the mark, including any color claim, must match the mark in the foreign registration. See [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(c\)](#). An applicant under §44 who is claiming color in the United States application must state for the record that the foreign registration includes a claim of color, unless the foreign registration clearly indicates that color is a feature of the registered mark. The statement that the foreign registration includes a claim of color will not be printed on the United States registration certificate.

807.07(d)(iii) Applications Under §66(a)

If the applicant claims color as a feature of the mark, and the drawing also includes black, white, and/or gray that is not mentioned in the international registration color claim, the applicant must either: (1) claim the black/white/gray as color(s) in the United States application and describe the location of the black/white/gray; or (2) state that the black/white/gray on the drawing represents background, outlining, shading, and/or transparent areas and is not part of the mark.

807.07(e) Black-and-White Drawings and Color Claims

If an applicant submits a black-and-white drawing that is lined for color (see [TMEP §808.01\(b\)](#)), or if the applicant submits a black-and-white drawing with an application that includes a color claim, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a color drawing, a claim that color(s) is a feature of the mark, and a separate statement naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appears on the mark.

See [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#). If, however, the examining attorney determines that the color is a non-material element of the drawing, the applicant may instead be given the option of submitting a black-and-white drawing that is not lined for color, or deleting the color claim in the written application, whichever is applicable.

If an applicant submits a black-and-white drawing that is not lined for color, and there is no color claim in the written application, generally the applicant cannot substitute a color drawing and claim color, unless the examining attorney determines that the color is a non-material element of the drawing.

807.07(f) Black-and-White Drawings that Contain Gray or Black-and-White Drawings with a Mark Description that Refers to Black, White, or Gray

807.07(f)(i) TEAS, TEAS RF, TEAS Plus, and §66(a) Applications

If the applicant submits a black-and-white drawing that contains gray or stippling that produces gray tones, and the application states that color is not claimed as a feature of the mark, no further inquiry is required. Similarly, if an applicant submits a black-and-white drawing and a description of the mark that references

black, white, and/or gray, and the applicant states that color is not claimed as a feature of the mark, no further inquiry is required and no change to the description of the mark is required.

The word “No” in the “Color Mark” field on a TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus application, or in the “Mark in Color” field on a §66(a) application, is sufficient to indicate that color is not claimed as a feature of the mark, even if the application contains the notation “grayscale” in reference to the drawing.

When a mark contains stippling, it is generally not necessary to require a statement that the stippling represents shading or is a feature of the mark, unless the examining attorney believes such a statement is necessary to accurately describe the mark. See [TMEP §808.01\(b\)](#) regarding stippling statements.

807.07(f)(ii) Applications Filed on Paper

If the applicant submits a black-and-white drawing on paper and the application is silent about whether color is claimed as a feature of the mark, the presence of any gray in the drawing creates an ambiguity as to whether black, white, and/or gray are claimed as a feature of the mark. Similarly, if an applicant submits a black-and-white drawing on paper and the application is silent about whether color is claimed as a feature of the mark, the inclusion of a description of the mark that refers to black/white/gray creates an ambiguity as to whether black/white/gray is claimed as a feature of the mark. In these cases, the examining attorney must require that the applicant submit one of the following:

- (1) A statement that the mark is not in color. The applicant may submit the statement, or the examining attorney may obtain the information in a telephone interview or e-mail exchange with the applicant or the applicant’s qualified practitioner, and enter a Note to the File in the record that the mark is not in color; or
- (2) A statement that the color(s) black, white, and/or gray is a feature of the mark, and a separate statement naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appear(s) on the mark.

807.07(g) Drawings in Applications Filed Before November 2, 2003

Prior to November 2, 2003, the USPTO did not accept color drawings. An applicant who wanted to show color in a mark was required to submit a black-and-white drawing, with a statement describing the color(s) and where they appeared on the mark. Alternatively, the applicant could use a color lining system that previously appeared in [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#) but was deleted from the rule effective October 30, 1999. See [64 Fed. Reg. 48900](#), 48903 (Sept. 8, 1999) and 1226 TMOG 103, 106 (Sept. 28, 1999).

In applications filed prior to November 2, 2003, it was presumed that color was claimed as a feature of the mark, unless the applicant specifically stated that no claim was made to color, or that color was not claimed as a feature of the mark.

For applications filed before November 2, 2003, unless the application included a statement that color was not claimed as a feature of the mark (or that no claim was made to color), the applicant may voluntarily submit a color drawing under the current rules, with the requisite color claim and a separate description of the color(s) in the mark.

A registrant may substitute a color drawing for a black-and-white drawing in a registration where color is claimed, by filing a §7 request to amend the registration certificate. The request must include: (1) a color drawing; (2) a color claim; (3) a description of where the color(s) appear(s) in the mark; and (4) the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See [TMEP §1609.02\(e\)](#).

807.08 Broken Lines to Show Placement

37 CFR §2.52(b)(4) Broken lines to show placement.

If necessary to adequately depict the commercial impression of the mark, the applicant may be required to submit a drawing that shows the placement of the mark by surrounding the mark with a proportionately accurate broken-line representation of the particular goods, packaging, or advertising on which the mark appears. The applicant must also use broken lines to show any other matter not claimed as part of the mark. For any drawing using broken lines to indicate placement of the mark, or matter not claimed as part of the mark, the applicant must describe the mark and explain the purpose of the broken lines.

Occasionally, the position of the mark on the goods, packaging, or a label may be a feature of the mark. If necessary to adequately depict the commercial impression of the mark, the examining attorney may require the applicant to submit a drawing that shows the placement of the mark by surrounding the mark with a proportionately accurate broken- or dotted-line representation of the particular goods, packaging, or advertising on which the mark appears. The applicant must also use broken or dotted lines to show any other matter not claimed as part of the mark. For any drawing using broken or dotted lines to indicate placement of the mark, or matter not claimed as part of the mark, the applicant must include a written description of the mark and explain the purpose of the broken or dotted lines, for example, by indicating that the matter shown by the broken or dotted lines is not a part of the mark and that it serves only to show the position of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#).

The drawing should clearly define the matter the applicant claims as its mark. See *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 208 USPQ 89 (C.C.P.A. 1980); *In re Famous Foods, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 177 (TTAB 1983).

See [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(i\)](#) regarding drawings of three-dimensional trade dress marks.

Because the matter depicted in broken or dotted lines is not part of the mark, it should not be considered in determining likelihood of confusion. See *In re Homeland Vinyl Prods, Inc.*, 81 USPQ2d 1378 (TTAB 2006). See [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(i\)](#) regarding drawings in trade dress applications.

807.09 “Drawing” of Sound, Scent, or Non-Visual Mark

37 CFR §2.52(e) Sound, scent, and non-visual marks.

An applicant is not required to submit a drawing if the mark consists only of a sound, a scent, or other completely non-visual matter. For these types of marks, the applicant must submit a detailed description of the mark.

The applicant is not required to submit a drawing if the mark consists solely of a sound (e.g., music or words and music), a scent, or other completely non-visual matter. In a paper application, the applicant should clearly indicate in the application that the mark is a “NON-VISUAL MARK.” If the applicant is submitting a TEAS application for a sound mark, the applicant should select “Sound Mark” as the mark type. If the applicant is submitting a TEAS application for a scent mark, the applicant should indicate that the mark type is “Standard Character” and should type “Scent Mark” in the “Standard Character” field. The USPTO will enter the proper mark drawing code when the application is processed. Non-visual marks are coded under mark drawing code 6 in the automated search system. See [TMEP §807.18](#) regarding mark drawing codes.

If the applicant selects “Sound Mark” as the mark type in a TEAS application, the applicant will be required to indicate whether it is attaching an audio file. The applicant should submit an audio reproduction of any sound mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). The purpose of this reproduction is to supplement and clarify the description of the mark. The reproduction should contain only the mark itself; it is not meant to be a specimen.

The reproduction must be in an electronic file in .wav, .wmv, .wma, .mp3, .mpg, or .avi format and should not exceed 5 MB in size because TEAS cannot accommodate larger files.

For paper filings, reproductions of sound marks must be submitted on compact discs (“CDs”), digital video discs (“DVDs”), videotapes, or audiotapes. *See id.* The applicant should clearly and explicitly indicate that the reproduction of the mark contained on the disc or tape is meant to supplement the mark description and that it should be placed in the paper file jacket and not be discarded.

If the mark is a composite comprising both visual and non-visual matter, the applicant must submit a drawing depicting the visual matter, and include a description of the non-visual matter in the “Description of the Mark” field.

The applicant must also submit a detailed description of the mark for all non-visual marks. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(e\)](#). If the mark comprises music or words set to music, the applicant should generally submit the musical score sheet music to supplement or clarify the description of the mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). In a TEAS application or response, the musical score sheet music should be attached as a .jpg or .pdf file in the “Additional Statements” section of the form, under “Miscellaneous Statements.”

See [TMEP §904.03\(f\)](#) and [1202.15](#) regarding specimens for sound marks, and [TMEP §904.03\(m\)](#) regarding specimens for scent and flavor marks.

807.10 Three-Dimensional Marks

37 CFR §2.52(b)(2) Three dimensional marks.

If the mark has three-dimensional features, the drawing must depict a single rendition of the mark, and the applicant must indicate that the mark is three-dimensional.

If the mark is three-dimensional, the drawing should present a single rendition of the mark in three dimensions. *See In re Schaefer Marine, Inc.*, 223 USPQ 170, 171 n.1 (TTAB 1984). The applicant must include a description of the mark indicating that the mark is three-dimensional.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#), the applicant is required to submit a drawing that depicts a single rendition of the mark. *See* [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(iv\)](#). If the applicant believes that its mark cannot be adequately depicted in a single rendition, the applicant may file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) requesting that the rule be waived. *See* [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions, and [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding information required in descriptions for trade dress marks comprising product design or product packaging, or trade dress for services.

807.11 Marks With Motion

37 CFR §2.52(b)(3) Motion marks.

If the mark has motion, the drawing may depict a single point in the movement, or the drawing may depict up to five freeze frames showing various points in the movement, whichever best depicts the commercial impression of the mark. The applicant must also describe the mark.

If the mark includes motion (i.e., a repetitive motion of short duration) as a feature, the applicant may submit a drawing that depicts a single point in the movement, or the applicant may submit a square drawing that contains up to five freeze frames showing various points in the movement, whichever best depicts the commercial impression of the mark. The applicant must also submit a detailed written description of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(3\)](#).

See [TMEP §904.03\(l\)](#) regarding specimens for motion marks.

807.12 Mark on Drawing Must Agree with Mark on Specimen or Foreign Registration

37 CFR §2.51 Drawing required.

(a) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods and/or services.

(b) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used on or in connection with the goods and/or services specified in the application, and once an amendment to allege use under §2.76 or a statement of use under §2.88 has been filed, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods and/or services.

(c) In an application under section 44 of the Act, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the applicant's country of origin.

(d) In an application under section 66(a) of the Act, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the international registration.

807.12(a) Applications Under §1 of the Trademark Act

For applications under §1 of the Trademark Act, the drawing must always be compared to the specimen of record to determine whether they match. See [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(a\)–\(b\)](#). The first step is to analyze whether the mark in the drawing is a substantially exact representation of the mark shown on the specimen.

In an application filed under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods/services, as shown by the specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(a\)](#); see [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(a\)\(1\)](#).

In an application filed under §1(b) of the Act, the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used on or in connection with the goods/services *and* as actually used, as shown by the specimen filed with the amendment to allege use or statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(b\)](#); see [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)\(1\)](#).

If the mark in the drawing is not a substantially exact representation of the mark shown in the specimen, the second step is to determine whether an amendment of the drawing to agree with the mark shown on the specimen would be a material alteration of the mark in the original drawing. If the answer is “no,” the applicant must submit either an amended drawing or a substitute specimen. If the answer is “yes,” the applicant must submit a substitute specimen and no amendment of the drawing is allowed. See [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(a\)–\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) for information about material alteration.

Extraneous matter shown on the specimen that is not part of the mark (e.g., the symbols “TM” or “SM,” the registration notice ®, the copyright notice ©, or informational matter such as net weight or contents) may not be shown on the drawing. See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#) regarding deletion of non-distinctive matter.

See [TMEP §1214.02](#) regarding the agreement of the mark on the drawing with the mark on the specimen in an application that seeks registration of a mark with a “phantom” or changeable element, and [TMEP §1215.02\(c\)](#) regarding the agreement of the mark on the drawing with the mark on the specimen in an application that seeks registration of a domain name mark.

807.12(a)(i) Role of Punctuation in Determining Whether Mark on Drawing Agrees with Mark on Specimen

In assessing discrepancies in punctuation between the mark on the drawing and the mark shown on the specimen, the general rules are that:

- (1) Extraneous, non-distinctive punctuation that appears on the specimen may be omitted from the mark on the drawing, because an acceptable specimen may contain additional matter used with the mark on the drawing, so long as the mark on the drawing makes a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from the other matter. See [TMEP §807.12\(d\)](#) and cases cited therein regarding “mutilation” of the mark.
- (2) Punctuation in the mark on the drawing must also appear on the specimen because a mark sought to be registered under §1 must be “used in commerce,” and if the punctuation on the drawing does not appear on the specimen, the mark on the drawing is not used in commerce.

See [TMEP §1215.08\(c\)](#) regarding the addition or deletion of a “.” in marks for domain name registry or registration services.

807.12(a)(ii) Punctuation on the Drawing but Not on the Specimen

If a drawing contains punctuation, the elements of punctuation are presumed to be part of the mark. Thus, if there is punctuation in the mark on the drawing, the punctuation must also appear on the specimen or the drawing is not considered to be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used in commerce. If deletion of the punctuation from the drawing does not alter the commercial impression, the drawing may be amended to match the specimen. If deletion of the punctuation changes the commercial impression, i.e., constitutes a material alteration, the applicant must submit a substitute specimen to match the original drawing. See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

For example, if the mark on the drawing is “ALL THE KING’S MEN,” and the mark on the specimen is ALL THE KING’S MEN, the mark on the drawing is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as used in commerce. Since the deletion of the quotation marks from the drawing would not change the commercial impression of the mark, the drawing may be amended to match the specimen. The applicant has the option to either: (1) amend the drawing to delete the punctuation; or (2) submit a new specimen showing use of the mark with the punctuation.

However, if the mark on the drawing is GOT MILK?, and the mark on the specimen is GOT MILK, the deletion of the punctuation from the drawing would constitute a material alteration because it changes the commercial impression from a question to a statement. Therefore, the drawing may not be amended and the applicant must submit a substitute specimen that includes punctuation in order for the drawing to be a substantially exact representation. *See id.*

807.12(a)(iii) Punctuation on the Specimen but Not on the Drawing

Generally, extraneous, non-distinctive punctuation marks that appear on the specimen may be omitted from the drawing, if the matter on the drawing makes an impression separate and apart from the punctuation marks that appear on the specimen. See [TMEP §807.12\(d\)](#). For example, if the mark on the drawing is HOME RUN, and the mark on the specimen is “HOME RUN,” the drawing is considered a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the specimen. The quotation marks on the specimen are

nondistinctive and do not change the commercial impression of the mark, so it is unnecessary to amend the drawing or require a substitute specimen.

However, in rare instances, the punctuation marks on the specimen result in a mark with a different commercial impression than the mark shown on the drawing. For example, if the mark on the specimen is PREGNANT?, and the mark on the drawing is PREGNANT, the mark on the drawing is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as actually used. The question mark on the specimen transforms the word PREGNANT from a mere statement to a question, and, therefore, changes the commercial impression of the mark. Moreover, the drawing cannot be amended to add the punctuation because it would result in a material alteration. Therefore, the applicant must submit a new specimen showing the mark without the punctuation. *In re Guitar Straps Online LLC*, 103 USPQ2d 1745, 1751-52 (TTAB 2012) (finding the mark GOT STRAPS on the drawing not a substantially exact representation of the mark GOT STRAPS? on the specimen). See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#).

807.12(b) Applications Under §44 of the Trademark Act

In a §44 application, the drawing of the mark must be “a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the applicant’s country of origin.” [37 C.F.R. §§2.51\(c\), 2.72\(c\)\(1\)](#). The standard for determining whether the mark in the drawing agrees with the mark in the foreign registration is stricter than the standard used to determine whether a specimen supports use of a mark in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §1011.01](#).

The drawing in the United States application must display the entire mark as registered in the foreign country. The applicant may not limit the mark to part of the mark shown in the foreign registration, even if it creates a separate and distinct commercial impression.

Exception: Non-material informational matter that appears on the foreign registration, such as net weight or contents, or the federal registration notice, may be omitted or deleted from the drawing.

When the mark on the drawing does not agree with the mark on the foreign registration, the applicant cannot amend the drawing of the mark if the amendment would materially alter the mark on the original drawing. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\), 1011.01](#).

If the United States application has a black-and-white drawing, and color appears in the foreign registration, or color is claimed or described as a feature of the mark in the foreign registration, the mark in the United States drawing does not agree with the mark in the foreign registration. In general, the black-and-white drawing in the United States application should be amended to agree with the color mark in the foreign registration, unless the proposed amendment would be a material alteration.

If the United States application has a color drawing, the same colors must be part of the mark in the foreign registration. Whether the drawing in the United States application can be amended depends upon whether the amendment would be a material alteration of the mark. If the United States application has a color drawing but the drawing in the foreign registration is in black and white with no color claim, the applicant must either: (1) amend the drawing in the United States application to a black-and-white drawing, if the amendment would not be a material alteration; or (2) delete the §44 basis and proceed under §1.

See [TMEP §1214.02](#) regarding the agreement of the mark on the drawing with the mark on the foreign registration in an application that seeks registration of a mark with a “phantom” or changeable element.

807.12(c) Applications Under §66(a) of the Trademark Act

In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, the drawing of the mark must be "a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the international registration." [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(d\)](#). The IB will include a reproduction that is identical to the reproduction in the international registration when it forwards the request for extension of protection of the international registration to the United States. It is, therefore, unnecessary for the examining attorney to compare the drawing in the §66(a) application with the reproduction in the international registration. See [TMEP §§1904–1904.15](#) for further information about §66(a) applications.

The mark in a §66(a) application cannot be amended. [TMEP §§807.13\(b\), 1904.02\(j\)](#).

Exception: Non-material informational matter that appears on the international registration, such as net weight or contents, or the federal registration notice, may be omitted or deleted from the drawing.

Because the drawing requirements in other countries often differ from those in the United States, an ambiguity may arise when the international registration contains no color claim, but the reproduction of the mark in the international registration is in color. In such cases, the §66(a) applicant must either: (1) make a color claim to clarify that the depicted color(s) is a feature of the mark and submit a description of the location of the color(s); or (2) submit a black-and-white reproduction of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)-\(1\)](#). This is not considered to be an amendment of the mark, but rather a clarification of the ambiguity.

If the USPTO receives a notification of correction to a mark in the International Register from the IB, the examining attorney must conduct a new search of the mark as corrected and, if appropriate, issue a provisional refusal of the request for extension of protection as corrected on all applicable grounds. The USPTO must notify the IB of the provisional refusal within 18 months of notification of the correction. See [TMEP §1904.03\(f\)](#) regarding notifications of corrections to the International Register. If the reproduction of the corrected mark features color, the applicant will be required to comply with the requirements for a color drawing. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); see [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

807.12(d) Mutilation or Incomplete Representation of Mark

In an application under §1 of the Trademark Act, the mark on the drawing must be a complete mark, as evidenced by the specimen. When the representation on a drawing does not constitute a complete mark, it is sometimes referred to as a "mutilation" of the mark. This term indicates that essential and integral subject matter is missing from the drawing. An incomplete mark may not be registered. See *In re Chem. Dynamics Inc.*, 839 F.2d 1569, 5 USPQ2d 1828 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *In re Miller Sports Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1059 (TTAB 1999) ; *In re Boyd Coffee Co.*, 25 USPQ2d 2052 (TTAB 1993); *In re Semans*, 193 USPQ 727 (TTAB 1976).

However, in a §1 application, an applicant has some latitude in selecting the mark it wants to register. The mere fact that two or more elements form a composite mark does not necessarily mean that those elements are inseparable for registration purposes. An applicant may apply to register any element of a composite mark if that element presents, or will present, a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from any other matter with which the mark is or will be used on the specimen.

In a §44 application, the standard is stricter. [TMEP §1011.01](#). The drawing in the United States application must display the entire mark as registered in the country of origin. The applicant may not register part of the mark in the foreign registration, even if it creates a distinct commercial impression.

In any application, if registration is refused on the ground that the mark on the drawing does not agree with the mark as shown on the specimen or foreign registration, the applicant may not amend the drawing if the amendment would materially alter the mark on the original drawing. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#), [1011.01](#).

This issue will not arise in a §66(a) application, because the IB includes a reproduction that is identical to the reproduction in the international registration when it forwards the request for extension of protection of the international registration to the United States. The mark in a §66(a) application cannot be amended. [TMEP §807.13\(b\)](#).

In the following cases, an element of a composite mark was found **not** to present a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from any other matter with which the mark was or would be used on the specimen: *Chem. Dynamics*, 839 F.2d at 1569, 5 USPQ2d at 1828 (registration of design of medicine dropper and droplet properly refused, where the proposed mark is actually used as an integral part of a unified mark that includes a design of a watering can, and does not create a separate commercial impression); *In re Lorillard Licensing Co.*, 99 USPQ2d 1312 (TTAB 2011) (finding that the drawing was not a substantially exact representation of the proposed mark, an orange-and-green color combination for the packaging of cigarettes, as appearing on the specimen); *In re Pharmavite LLC*, 91 USPQ2d 1778 (TTAB 2009) (mark comprised of the design of two bottles properly refused, finding that it does not create a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from the mark shown on the specimen and further that it is not a substantially exact representation of the mark shown on the specimen); *In re Yale Sportswear Corp.*, 88 USPQ2d 1121 (TTAB 2008) (refusing registration of the mark UPPER 90, finding that it does not form a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from the degree symbol that appears on the specimen); *Miller Sports*, 51 USPQ2d at 1059 (mark comprising the letter “M” and skater design properly refused, where the “M” portion of applicant’s “Miller” logo is so merged in presentation with remainder of logo that it does not create a separate commercial impression); *Boyd Coffee*, 25 USPQ2d at 2052 (mark comprising cup and saucer design properly refused as mutilation of mark actually used, which includes the cup and saucer design as well as a sunburst design, since the cup and saucer design does not create a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from the sunburst design); *In re Sperouleas*, 227 USPQ 166 (TTAB 1985) (torch design unregistrable apart from wording SOCRATES DELIGHT that appears on specimen, where the words are not only prominent but are also physically merged with the design, such that the design does not make a separate commercial impression); *In re Volante Int’l Holdings*, 196 USPQ 188 (TTAB 1977) (mark consisting of a design of a double-headed girl, a dragon, and a tree is not a substantially exact representation of the mark actually used, which incorporates the visually inseparable and intertwined term “VIRGIN”); *In re Library Rest., Inc.*, 194 USPQ 446 (TTAB 1977) (the words “THE LIBRARY” are so intimately related in appearance to other elements of the mark actually used that it is not possible to conclude that the pictorial features by themselves create a separate commercial impression); *Semans*, 193 USPQ at 727 (the mark KRAZY, displayed on the specimen on the same line and in the same script as the expression “MIXED-UP,” does not in itself function as a registrable trademark apart from the unitary phrase “KRAZY MIXED-UP”); *In re Mango Records*, 189 USPQ 126 (TTAB 1975) (the typed mark MANGO is so uniquely juxtaposed with the pictorial elements of the composite that it is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the specimen and does not show the mark in the unique manner used thereon).

An element of a proposed mark was found to create a separate commercial impression in the following cases: *In re Servel, Inc.*, 181 F.2d 192, 85 USPQ 257 (C.C.P.A. 1950) (refusal to register the mark SERVEL as a mutilation of “SERVEL INKLINGS” reversed, where the specimen displays an insignia between the words “SERVEL” and “INKLINGS,” and “INKLINGS” is printed in a large and different kind of type); *In re Frankish Enters. Ltd.*, 113 USPQ2d 1964, 1974 (TTAB 2015) (finding three-dimensional design of monster truck body creates a commercial impression as an indication of origin separate and apart from wording and additional markings displayed on truck body as part of the specimen); *In re Royal BodyCare*

Inc., 83 USPQ2d 1564 (TTAB 2007) (reversing refusal to register NANOCEUTICAL, finding that the term is actually used in a manner that creates a commercial impression separate and apart from the house mark or trade name “RBC’s”); *In re Big Pig, Inc.*, 81 USPQ2d 1436 (TTAB 2006) (PSYCHO creates a separate commercial impression apart from additional wording and background design that appears on the specimen, where the word “PSYCHO” is displayed in a different color, type style and size, such that it stands out); *In re 1175856 Ontario Ltd.*, 81 USPQ2d 1446 (TTAB 2006) (refusal to register WSI and globe design reversed, since the letters “WSI” and globe design create a separate commercial impression apart from a curved design element that appears on the specimen); *In re Raychem Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d 1399, 1400 (TTAB 1989) (reversing the refusal to register TINEL-LOCK as mutilation of mark “TRO6AI-TINEL-LOCK-RING,” noting that part or stock number does not usually function as a source identifier, and the “fact that hyphens connect both the part number and the generic term to the mark does not, under the circumstances presented in this case, create a unitary expression such that ‘TINEL-LOCK’ has no significance by itself as a trademark.”); *In re Nat’l Inst. for Auto. Serv. Excellence*, 218 USPQ 744, 745 (TTAB 1983) (design of meshed gears “is distinctive in nature” and “creates a commercial impression separate and apart from the words superimposed thereon”); *In re Schechter Bros. Modular Corp.*, 182 USPQ 694 (TTAB 1974) (where specimens show mark consisting in part of “RAINAIRE” together with its shadow image, it is not a mutilation of mark to delete shadow image from drawing since “RAINAIRE” creates the essential impression); *In re Emco, Inc.*, 158 USPQ 622 (TTAB 1968) (reversing the refusal and concluding that the law and the record supported applicant’s position that RESPONER is registrable without addition of the surname “MEYER”).

See [TMEP §807.14\(c\)](#) regarding the effect of the addition or deletion of punctuation on the commercial impression of the mark.

807.12(e) Compound Word Marks and Telescoped Marks

Like any other drawing, a drawing of a compound word mark or telescoped mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears on the specimen in a §1 application or on the foreign registration in a §44 application.

A compound word mark is comprised of two or more distinct words, or words and syllables, that are represented as one word (e.g., BOOKCHOICE, PROSHOT, MAXIMACHINE, PULSAIR). Often, each word or syllable in a compound word mark is displayed or highlighted by: (1) capitalizing the first letter of each word or syllable (e.g., TimeMaster); or (2) presenting the words or syllables in a different color, script, or size (e.g., RIBtype).

If the drawing depicts the mark as a compound word mark, but the specimen shows the mark as two separate words, or vice versa, the examining attorney must determine whether the mark on the drawing is a substantially exact representation of the mark on the specimen and/or whether an amendment of the drawing would be a material alteration of the mark. *See In re Innovative Cos.*, 88 USPQ2d 1095 (TTAB2008) (FREEDOMSTONE not a substantially exact representation of FREEDOM STONE, but amendment of FREEDOMSTONE to FREEDOM STONE not deemed a material alteration). For example, if the drawing depicts the mark as BOOKCHOICE, but the specimen shows it as BOOK CHOICE, the mark on the drawing is not a substantially exact representation of the mark on the specimen. An amendment of the drawing would not be a material alteration. However, depending upon the nature of the goods/services, a disclaimer might be required. Note that a specimen showing the mark as BookChoice would be a substantially exact representation.

A telescoped mark is comprised of two or more words that share letters (e.g., SUPERINSE). A telescoped word must be presented as a unitary term with the letters shared. The telescoped element may not be

represented as two words, because the shared letter is an aspect of the commercial impression, (e.g., SUPERINSE, not SUPE RINSE or SUPER RINSE).

See [TMEP §§1213.05\(a\)–1213.05\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding disclaimers in telescoped and compound word marks.

807.13 Amendment of Mark

37 CFR §2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.

(a) In an application based on use in commerce under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

- (1) The specimens originally filed, or substitute specimens filed under §2.59(a), support the proposed amendment; and
- (2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

(b) In an application based on a bona fide intention to use a mark in commerce under section 1(b) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

- (1) The specimens filed with an amendment to allege use or statement of use, or substitute specimens filed under §2.59(b), support the proposed amendment; and
- (2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

(c) In an application based on a claim of priority under section 44(d) of the Act, or on a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the foreign applicant under section 44(e) of the Act, the applicant may amend the description or drawing of the mark only if:

- (1) The description or drawing of the mark in the foreign registration certificate supports the amendment; and
- (2) The proposed amendment does not materially alter the mark. The Office will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application.

807.13(a) Amendment of Mark in Applications Under §§1 and 44

Section 1(a) Application . The mark in an application under §1(a) of the Trademark Act can be amended if the specimen supports the amendment and the amendment does not materially alter the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)](#) and [1301.04–1301.04\(d\)](#) regarding specimens, and [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

Section 1(b) Application . The mark in an application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act can be amended if the specimen filed with an amendment to allege use or statement of use supports the amendment, and the amendment does not materially alter the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)](#) and [1301.04–1301.04\(d\)](#) regarding specimens, [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use, [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use, and [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

Section 44 Application . The mark in an application under §44 of the Trademark Act can be amended if the mark in the foreign registration certificate supports the amendment, and the amendment does not materially alter the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §1011.01](#) regarding the requirement that the mark on the drawing in a §44 application be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the foreign registration certificate, and [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

807.13(b) Mark in §66(a) Application Cannot be Amended

The Madrid Protocol and the Common Regs. do not permit amendment of the mark in an international registration. If the holder of the international registration wants to change the mark in any way, even slightly, the holder must file a new international application. The IB's *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.72.02, provides as follows:

[T]here is no provision for a mark that is recorded in the International Register to be amended in any way, either on renewal or at any other time. If the holder wishes to protect the mark in a form which differs, even slightly, from the mark as recorded, he must file a new international application. This is true even if the mark has been allowed to be changed in the basic application, the registration resulting from the basic application or the basic registration, as the case may be

Accordingly, because an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act is part of the international registration, [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#) makes no provision for amendment of the mark in a §66(a) application, and the USPTO will not permit any such amendments. [TMEP §1904.02\(j\)](#); *see* 68 Fed. Reg. 55748, 55756 (Sept. 26, 2003).

Exceptions: Non-material informational matter that appears on the international registration, such as net weight or contents, or the federal registration notice, may be omitted or deleted from the drawing. Additionally, in limited circumstances, a standard character claim may be added to a §66(a) application. See [TMEP §807.03\(h\)](#).

However, the applicant must comply with U. S. requirements regarding drawings and descriptions of the mark. [TMEP §1904.02\(k\)](#).

Similarly, after registration, a registrant generally cannot amend under §7 of the Trademark Act a mark in a registered extension of protection, except to add a standard character claim if the registered mark complies with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)\(1\)–\(5\)](#). [TMEP §1609.02](#). See [TMEP §1609.01\(a\)](#) regarding additional, limited amendments permitted in a registered extension of protection.

See [TMEP §§1904.03\(f\)](#) and [1904.14](#) regarding notifications of corrections in the International Register with respect to pending §66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection.

807.14 Material Alteration of Mark

Trademark Rule 2.72, [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#), prohibits any amendment of the mark in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act that materially alters the mark on the drawing filed with the original application.

The test for determining whether an amendment is a material alteration is as follows:

The *modified* mark must contain what is the essence of the original mark, and the new form must create the impression of being essentially the same mark. The general test of whether an alteration is material is whether the mark would have to be republished after the alteration in order to fairly present the mark for purposes of opposition. If one mark is sufficiently different from another mark as to require republication, it would be tantamount to a new mark appropriate for a new application.

In re Hacot-Colombier, 105 F.3d 616, 620, 41 USPQ2d 1523, 1526 (Fed. Cir. 1997), quoting *Visa Int'l Serv. Ass'n v. Life-Code Sys., Inc.*, 220 USPQ 740,743-44 (TTAB 1983). This test applies to both an

amendment of the description of a mark and an amendment of the mark on a drawing. *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 1352-54, 61 USPQ2d 1121, 1123-24 (Fed. Cir. 2001).

Although the test refers to republication, it also applies to amendments to marks proposed before publication. Material alteration is the standard used for evaluating amendments to marks in all phases of prosecution, i.e., before publication, after publication, and after registration. See [TMPEP §§1609.02–1609.02\(g\)](#) regarding amendment of registered marks.

As a general rule, the addition of any element that would require a further search will constitute a material alteration. *In re Pierce Foods Corp.*, 230 USPQ 307, 308-09 (TTAB 1986). However, while the question of whether a new search would be required is a factor to be considered in deciding whether an amendment would materially alter a mark, it is not necessarily the determining factor. *In re Who? Vision Sys., Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1211, 1218-19 (TTAB 2000) ; *In re Vienna Sausage Mfg. Co.*, 16 USPQ2d 2044, 2047 (TTAB 1990).

Each case must be decided on its own facts, and these general rules are subject to exceptions. The controlling question is always whether the old and new forms of the mark create essentially the same commercial impression. See *Jack Wolfskin Ausrüstung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d 1363, 1370, 116 USPQ2d 1129, 1133-34 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (holding minor adjustment to the font and alterations to the design element of registered mark insufficient to change the commercial impression created by the mark).

See [TMPEP §807.14\(a\)](#) regarding amendments to delete matter from a drawing, [TMPEP §807.14\(b\)](#) regarding the addition or deletion of previously registered matter, [TMPEP §807.14\(c\)](#) regarding the addition or deletion of punctuation, [TMPEP §§1202.02–1202.02\(f\)\(ii\)](#) regarding registration of trade dress marks, [TMPEP §§1202.02\(c\)\(i\)–1202.02\(c\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding drawings in trade dress applications, and [TMPEP §§1215.08–1215.08\(b\)](#) regarding material alteration in marks comprised, in whole or in part, of domain names.

807.14(a) Removal or Deletion of Matter from Drawing

An applicant may request deletions from the mark on the drawing, and the examining attorney may approve the request if he or she believes the deletions are appropriate and would not materially alter the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#).

Deletion of matter from the mark can result in a material alteration. *In re Dillard Dep't Stores, Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1052 (Comm'r Pats. 1993) (proposed deletion of highly stylized display features of mark IN•VEST•MENTS held to be a material alteration of a registered mark). However, nondistinctive matter may be deleted, if it does not constitute a material alteration. For example, the deletion of the generic name of the goods or services would not generally be considered a material alteration, unless it was so integrated into the mark that the deletion would alter the commercial impression. In some circumstances, nondistinctive matter may be deleted if the overall commercial impression is not altered. Also, deletions of matter determined to be unregistrable under §§2(a) or 2(b) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(a\) or \(b\)](#), are sometimes permissible. See [TMPEP §§1203–1203.03\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding refusal under §2(a) of matter that is immoral, scandalous, disparaging, or creates false suggestion of connection, and [TMPEP §§1204–1204.05](#) regarding refusal under §2(b) of marks that comprise flag, coat of arms, or other insignia of the United States, of any state or municipality, or of any foreign nation.

If a specimen shows that matter included on a drawing is not part of the mark, the examining attorney may require that such matter be deleted from the mark on the drawing, if the deletion would not materially alter the mark. See *In re Sazerac Co.*, 136 USPQ 607 (TTAB 1963) and cases cited therein.

The symbols “TM,” “SM,” and the registration notice ® must be deleted from the drawing.

Informational matter, such as net weight and volume statements, lists of contents, addresses, and similar matter, should also be deleted from the mark, unless it is truly part of a composite mark and the removal of this matter would alter the overall commercial impression. If unregistrable matter, including informational matter and the name of the goods, is incorporated in a composite mark in such a way that its removal would change the commercial impression of the mark or make it unlikely to be recognized, the matter may remain on the drawing and be disclaimed. See [TMEP §1213.03\(b\)](#) regarding disclaimer of such matter. However, this type of matter rarely is part of a composite mark.

Functional matter that is part of an otherwise registrable three-dimensional trade dress mark may also be removed or deleted from the drawing by depicting that matter in broken or dotted lines. Since functionality is an absolute bar to registration on the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register, features of a trade dress mark that are deemed functional under trademark law are never capable of acquiring trademark significance and are not registrable. Therefore, such removal or deletion of the functional features generally will not be considered a material alteration of the mark, regardless of the filing basis of the application. See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)–\(a\)\(viii\)](#) regarding functionality, and [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) regarding functional matter on drawings in trade dress applications.

See [TMEP §807.14\(b\)](#) regarding addition or deletion of previously registered matter.

807.14(b) Addition or Deletion of Previously Registered Matter

Addition. An amendment adding an element that the applicant has previously registered for the same goods or services may be permitted. The rationale is that “[t]he addition of applicant’s well-known registered mark to the mark sought to be registered . . . is not a material change which would require republication of the mark.” *Florasynth Labs., Inc. v. Mülhens*, 122 USPQ 284, 284 (Comm’r Pats. 1959) (addition of applicant’s previously registered mark 4711 to the mark ELAN held not a material alteration). However, the addition of matter that the applicant has previously registered for *different* goods or services is not permissible. *In re Hacot-Colombier*, 105 F.3d 616, 620, 41 USPQ2d 1523, 1526 (Fed. Cir. 1997); *In re Nationwide Indus. Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1882, 1886 (TTAB 1988). An amendment adding previously registered matter is also unacceptable if it substantially alters the original mark. *In re John LaBatt Ltd.*, 26 USPQ2d 1077, 1078 (Comm’r Pats. 1992) (“Here, the applicant does not seek to merely add an element from one registration to another. Rather, the applicant seeks to eliminate its original mark, and substitute another. The exception to the material alteration rule clearly does not encompass cases where the original mark disappears.”).

Deletion. The question of whether a proposed amendment to *delete* previously registered matter from a mark is a material alteration should be determined without regard to whether the matter to be deleted is the subject of an existing registration.

807.14(c) Addition or Deletion of Punctuation

Punctuation, such as quotation marks, hyphens, periods, commas, and exclamation marks, generally does not significantly alter the commercial impression of the mark. See, *e.g.*, *In re Litehouse, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d

1471, 1474 (TTAB 2007) and cases cited therein (finding the mark CAESAR!CAESAR! to be merely descriptive and noting that “neither the mere repetition of the word CAESAR . . . nor the presence of the exclamation points in the mark, nor both of these features combined, suffices to negate the mere descriptiveness of the mark as a whole”); *see also* *In re Promo Ink*, 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1305 (TTAB 2006) (finding the mark PARTY AT A DISCOUNT! to be merely descriptive, specifically noting that “[t]his punctuation mark does not significantly change the commercial impression of the mark. It would simply emphasize the descriptive nature of the mark to prospective purchasers . . .”).

However, in rare cases, punctuation may be incorporated into a mark in such a way that the commercial impression of the mark would be changed by the addition or deletion of such punctuation. *See In re Guitar Straps Online LLC*, 103 USPQ2d 1745, 1748 (TTAB 2012) (finding “the proposed addition of a question mark to the mark ‘GOT STRAPS’ constitutes a material alteration because it changes the commercial impression of the original mark from a declaratory statement to an interrogative phrase”); *Richards-Wilcox Mfg. Co.*, 181 USPQ 735 (Comm’r Pats. 1974), *overruled on other grounds*, *In re Umax Data Sys., Inc.*, 40 USPQ2d 1539 (Comm’r Pats. 1996) (proposed change of FYE[R-W]ALL and design to FYER-WALL in block letters denied as material alteration, in part, because brackets changed commercial impression of mark as the initial letters of applicant’s name, “R” and “W,” were no longer emphasized). For example, unlike most cases where the addition of an exclamation point does not affect the commercial impression of a mark, the addition of an exclamation point to the mark MOVE IT transforms the words from a mere command to relocate an object to an exclamatory statement with more than one meaning – MOVE IT! – often used to order a person out of the way, and, therefore, changes the commercial impression of the mark.

Some other examples, though not exhaustive, are:

- the addition or deletion of a question mark, which changes a statement into a question or vice versa (*see In re Guitar Straps Online*, 103 USPQ2d at 1748);
- the addition or deletion of spaces between the syllables of a term, which may change the commercial impression created by the separate syllables or the unitary word; and
- the addition or deletion of a period before the term “.com,” which can change wording to or from a website address.

See also [TMEP §807.12\(a\)\(i\)–\(iii\)](#) regarding the role of punctuation in determining whether the mark on the drawing agrees with the mark on the specimen.

807.14(d) Amendments to Correct “Internal Inconsistencies”

The USPTO will determine whether a proposed amendment materially alters a mark by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark filed with the original application. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#), [\(c\)\(2\)](#).

Prior to October 30, 1999, in certain limited circumstances, the USPTO would accept an amendment that corrected an “internal inconsistency” in an application as originally filed, without regard to the issue of material alteration. Because [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)](#), [\(c\)](#), and [\(d\)](#) did not expressly prohibit an amendment that materially altered the mark on the original drawing, the USPTO would accept an amendment to correct an “internal inconsistency,” even if the amendment materially altered the mark on the original drawing. An application was considered “internally inconsistent” if the mark on the original drawing did not agree with the mark on the specimen in an application based on use, or with the mark on the foreign registration in an application based on §44 of the Act. *See In re ECCS Inc.*, 94 F.3d 1578, 1581, 39 USPQ2d 2001, 2004 (Fed. Cir. 1996); *In re Dekra e.V.*, 44 USPQ2d 1693, 1695-96 (TTAB 1997).

Effective October 30, 1999, [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#) was amended to prohibit amendments that materially alter the mark on the drawing filed with the original application. Furthermore, [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#) was amended to state that the “drawing depicts the mark sought to be registered.” Accordingly, the USPTO no longer accepts amendments to cure “internal inconsistencies,” if these amendments materially alter the mark on the original drawing. See *In re Who? Vision Sys., Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1211, 1217 (TTAB 2000) ; 57 USPQ2d 1211, 1217 (TTAB 2000); see also *In re Tetrafluor Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1160, 1162 (Comm'r Pats. 1990) (finding examining attorney properly refused to accept amendment to “correct a typographical error” that materially altered mark on original drawing page).

If a paper application includes a separate drawing page showing a mark, and a different mark appears in the written application, the drawing controls for purposes of determining what the mark is. *In re L.G. Lavorazioni Grafite S.r.l.*, 61 USPQ2d 1063, 1064 (Dir USPTO 2001); see [TMEP §§202.01, 807.01](#). Similarly, if an applicant enters a standard character mark, or attaches a digitized image of a mark, in the “Mark” field on a TEAS application, and a different mark appears in another field, the mark entered in the “Mark” field will control for purposes of determining what the mark is. The applicant may not amend the mark if the amendment is a material alteration of the mark on the drawing.

For example, if the applicant submits a drawing page showing the word mark “ABC and design,” the applicant may not amend the application to delete the wording “and design,” and add a design feature to the letters “ABC.” However, the applicant may amend the drawing to “ABC.” See *In re Meditech Int’l Corp.*, 25 USPQ2d 1159, 1160 (TTAB 1990) (finding mark comprised of a design of a blue star to be a material alteration of the typed words “DESIGN OF A BLUE STAR”).

807.14(e) Amendments to Color Features of Marks

If a proposed amendment to a color feature of a mark does not change the commercial impression of the mark, the amendment is unlikely to have an adverse impact on public notice. In such cases, the mark need not be republished, and the proposed amendment would not be deemed a material alteration.

Whenever a proposed color amendment is refused as a material alteration, the examining attorney must clearly explain why the proposed amendment changes the meaning or overall impression of the mark, or impacts the likelihood of confusion analysis.

807.14(e)(i) Black-and-White Drawings

The amendment of a black-and-white special form drawing to one claiming a color(s) as a feature of the mark generally does not constitute a material alteration.

If a mark is initially depicted in a black-and-white special form drawing in which no color is claimed, the drawing is presumed to contemplate the use of the mark in any color, without limitation. See, e.g., *In re Data Packaging Corp.*, 453 F.2d 1300, 1302, 172 USPQ 396, 397 (C.C.P.A. 1972). The amendment of the black-and-white drawing to one claiming a particular color as a feature of the mark is, therefore, a restriction or limitation of the applicant’s rights.

807.14(e)(ii) Marks that Include Color and Other Elements

The extent to which color contributes to the commercial impression created by a mark is often determined by the type of mark in question (i.e., word mark, design mark, or trade dress). In some cases, color may play only an incidental or insignificant part in creating the commercial impression of a mark, such as the

color lettering of a word mark. In other cases, color is the only feature of the mark that creates a commercial impression, such as where the mark consists only of color(s) applied to goods or their packaging, or to articles used in the sale or advertising services.

Word Marks

In general, the addition, deletion, or amendment of color lettering in a word mark does not result in a material alteration of the mark.

Word marks may appear as stylized marks in color lettering. With the possible exception of generic wording, as discussed below, the literal portions of word marks are likely to be the dominant portions that create the greatest commercial impression. See *Inter-State Oil Co. v. Questor Corp.*, 209 USPQ 583, 586 (TTAB 1980). In most cases, the color in the lettering is unlikely to have a significant impact on the commercial impression created by the mark.

Exception – Generic Terms. Generic terms are incapable of functioning as marks denoting source, and are not registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register. However, if the generic wording appears in color lettering, the color portion may be capable of functioning as a source indicator. See, e.g., *Courtenay Commc'ns Corp., v. Hall*, 334 F.3d 210, 216, 67 USPQ2d 1210, 1214 (2nd Cir. 2003) and cases cited therein (“There are many examples of legally protected marks that combine generic words with distinctive lettering, coloring, or other design elements.”). With respect to such generic word marks, the color element of the wording is likely to be the more dominant portion in creating the commercial impression of the mark. Therefore, in cases where the entire literal portion is generic, a proposed amendment to the color portion of the word mark generally would be a material alteration.

Design Marks

In general, the addition, deletion, or amendment of color features in a design mark does not result in a material alteration of the mark.

In a color design mark, the design portion is likely to be the most dominant portion of the mark in creating a commercial impression. Although the color portion is part of the mark, it only appears in the context of the design and is not a separable element. The color portion is, therefore, less likely than the design portion to play a significant role in likelihood of confusion or trademark selection considerations. For example, the fact that two different designs, such as a red hat design and a red boat design, may appear in identical colors is unlikely to result in a finding of likelihood of confusion. In contrast, if two boat designs are identical in stylization, it is likely that the designs would be held to be confusingly similar regardless of any differences in their respective colors.

Exception - Color Impacts the Meaning or Significance of the Mark. An amendment that causes the mark to have a new meaning or significance in the context of the goods or services is likely to be a material alteration. For example, the amendment of a blue colored drop for “spring water,” which looks like a rain drop, to a red drop, which looks like blood, would likely be a material alteration because the change in the color of the drop has altered the meaning or commercial impression of the mark. An amendment of a rainbow design, consisting of an arc with a spectrum of colors, to a black or solid-colored arc, would be a material alteration, regardless of the goods or services, because the amended mark is just an arc and is no longer identifiable as a rainbow.

Exception – Color is the Dominant Portion of the Mark. Generally, if the color portion to be amended constitutes the dominant or most significant part of the entire mark, it becomes more likely that the proposed color amendment is a material alteration. For example, if the design mark consists solely of a common geometric shape, the color element is likely to be the dominant element of the mark. As a result, amending the color of a common geometric shape is likely to be a material alteration.

Another factor to consider in assessing the dominance of the color element of the mark is the size or prominence of the color design or graphic element to be amended in proportion to the rest of the mark. For example, if it is clear that the mark consists of the overall color scheme of a product's trade dress, such as the product package or container, an amendment to a particular color element that is small or insignificant in proportion to the entire mark is unlikely to be a material alteration. Conversely, an amendment to a color element that is large in proportion to the entire mark, or is a dominant element of the overall color scheme, is more likely to be a material alteration. For example, if a mark consists solely of the color scheme or pattern of a package or container that is equally divided into two colors, amending one or both colors is more likely to be a material alteration.

807.14(e)(iii) Color Marks

The amendment of any color in a color mark is a prohibited material alteration.

Color marks are marks that consist solely of one or more colors used on particular objects or substances as a source identifier (as opposed to marks that include color in addition to other elements). See [TMPEP §1202.05–1202.05\(i\)](#). Color marks generally appear in a drawing with the outline or configuration of the goods on which they appear to show the placement of the color mark. However, the shape or configuration of the goods is not part of the mark. The mark is comprised solely of the color as applied to the object or substance, in the manner depicted and described, so that changing or amending the color of the mark would always change the entire commercial impression created by the mark.

An amendment of the mark to show the same color on a different object is also generally a material alteration (e.g., an amendment of a drawing of a blue hammer to a blue saw). A color takes on the characteristics of the object to which it is applied, and the commercial impression of a color may change depending on the object to which it is applied. See *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 1353, 61 USPQ2d 1121, 1124 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (“[A] word mark retains its same appearance when used on different objects, but color is not immediately distinguishable as a service mark when used in similar circumstances.”); *In re Hayes*, 62 USPQ2d 1443, 1445 (TTAB 2002) ; [TMPEP §1202.05\(c\)](#).

See [TMPEP §807.07\(e\)](#) regarding black-and-white drawings in an application that includes a color claim, and [TMPEP §807.07\(c\)](#) regarding incorrect color claims.

807.14(f) Material Alteration: Case References

Proposed amendments to marks were found to be material alterations in the following decisions: *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 61 USPQ2d 1121 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (finding amendment describing a mark as the color blue applied to an unlimited variety of objects to be a material alteration of the mark on the original drawing, which depicted the color blue applied to a building); *In re Hacot-Colombier*, 105 F.3d 616, 41 USPQ2d 1523 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (finding proposed addition of house mark to conform to mark on foreign registration to be a material alteration of the mark on the drawing filed with original application); *In re Guitar Straps Online, LLC*, 103 USPQ2d 1745 (TTAB 2012) (finding proposed amendment from “GOT STRAPS” to “GOT STRAPS?” to be a material alteration); *In re Who? Vision Sys., Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1211

(TTAB 2000) (finding proposed amendment from “TACILESENSE” to “TACTILESENSE” to be a material alteration); *In re Meditech Int’l Corp.*, 25 USPQ2d 1159, 1160 (TTAB 1990) (“A drawing consisting of a single blue star, as well as a drawing consisting of a number of blue stars, would both be considered material alterations vis-à-vis a drawing consisting of the typed words DESIGN OF A BLUE STAR.”); *In re Vienna Sausage Mfg. Co.*, 16 USPQ2d 2044 (TTAB 1990) (finding addition of wording “MR. SEYMOUR” to design mark to be a material alteration); *In re The Wine Soc’y of Am., Inc.*, 12 USPQ2d 1139 (TTAB 1989) (finding proposed amendment to replace typed drawing of “THE WINE SOCIETY OF AMERICA” with a special form drawing including those words with a crown design and a banner design bearing the words “IN VINO VERITAS” to be a material alteration); *In re Nationwide Indus., Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1882 (TTAB 1988) (finding addition of house mark “SNAP” to product mark “RUST BUSTER” to be a material alteration); *In re Pierce Foods Corp.*, 230 USPQ 307 (TTAB 1986) (finding addition of house mark “PIERCE” to “CHIK’N BAKE” to be a material alteration).

Proposed amendments to marks were found *not* to constitute a material alteration in the following cases: *Jack Wolfskin Ausrüstung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d 1363, 1370, 116 USPQ2d 1129, 1133-34 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (holding minor adjustment to the font and alterations to the design element of registered mark insufficient to change the commercial impression created by the mark); *In re Innovative Cos., LLC*, 88 USPQ2d 1095 (TTAB 2008) (finding amendment from “FREEDOMSTONE” to “FREEDOM STONE” not to be a material alteration); *Paris Glove of Can., Ltd. v. SBC/Sporto Corp.*, 84 USPQ2d 1856, 1862 (TTAB 2007) (finding “AQUASTOP” depicted on one line in semicircular form not to be a material alteration of “AQUA STOP” depicted on two lines in rectangular form; the Board explained that “the commercial impression of the mark is dependent upon the literal terms AQUA STOP and not on the rectangular, semicircular or linear forms of display”); *In re Finlay Fine Jewelry Corp.*, 41 USPQ2d 1152 (TTAB 1996) (finding “NEW YORK JEWELRY OUTLET” not to be a material alteration of “NY JEWELRY OUTLET”); *In re Larios, S.A.*, 35 USPQ2d 1214 (TTAB 1995) (finding “VINO DE MALAGA LARIOS” and design not to be a material alteration of “GRAN VINO MALAGA LARIOS” with similar design); *Visa Int’l Serv. Ass’n v. Life-Code Sys., Inc.*, 220 USPQ 740 (TTAB 1983) (finding amendment inverting the design portion of the mark not to be a material alteration).

807.15 Substitute Drawings

When requiring a substitute drawing, the examining attorney must inform the applicant of the specific reason for rejecting the existing drawing and explain what type of amendment is needed to comply with the rules.

If the examining attorney requires a change in the drawing, the applicant must submit a substitute drawing, except in the limited circumstances discussed in [TMEP §807.16](#) in which the USPTO will amend or correct a drawing. The USPTO will not return the original drawing to the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.25](#).

If the examining attorney requires correction of a standard character drawing, the applicant may select “Standard Characters” in the Mark Information section of the TEAS Response to Office Action form and enter the proposed amended mark. If the required change is to a special-form drawing, the applicant may select “Special Form” in the Mark Information section of the TEAS Response to Office Action form and attach a digitized image of the substitute drawing to the form or submit a separate drawing page if the response is filed on paper. The USPTO will accept a substitute drawing embedded in a paper response to an Office action if the substitute drawing meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.51](#) and [2.52](#).

When the applicant voluntarily submits a substitute drawing, the examining attorney must determine whether the substitute drawing is acceptable. See [TMEP §807.17](#) regarding the procedures for processing unacceptable amendments to drawings.

When a substitute drawing is submitted and accepted, the original drawing is replaced by the substitute drawing. The examining attorney must ensure that the automated records of the USPTO reflect the amended mark, and have the Trademark database corrected, if necessary. The original drawing remains in the record.

The examining attorney must also ensure that the mark drawing code is changed, if necessary. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

807.16 Amendment of Drawings by the USPTO

If the examining attorney requires correction of a standard character drawing, the applicant may submit a substitute drawing (*see* [TMEP §807.15](#)), or may request that the USPTO amend the drawing. If only a minor correction to a standard character drawing (such as deletion of the letters “TM”) is required, the examining attorney may correct the drawing on his or her own initiative, or may require the applicant to submit a substitute drawing.

When correcting a standard character drawing, the examining attorney must create a new drawing page, and have the new drawing page scanned. The examining attorney must also ensure that the “Word Mark” field in the Trademark database is corrected.

When the correction involves a special form drawing, the examining attorney will delete matter from the drawing only if the matter to be deleted is sufficiently separate from the matter that is to remain. If the matter to be deleted is not sufficiently separate from the matter that is to remain, the applicant must submit a substitute drawing. If the examining attorney deletes matter from the drawing, the examining attorney must ensure that the corrected drawing is scanned, and that it appears in the Trademark database, before the mark is approved for publication or registration.

The examining attorney must also ensure that the mark drawing code is changed, if necessary. See [TMEP §807.18](#) concerning mark drawing codes.

807.17 Procedures for Processing Unacceptable Amendments to Drawings

If an applicant submits an amendment to the drawing and the examining attorney determines that the amendment is unacceptable, the examining attorney must issue an Office action refusing to accept the amendment and advising the applicant that the amendment will not be entered, and that the previous drawing remains the operative drawing. If the unacceptable amended drawing has been entered into the automated records of the USPTO, the examining attorney must ensure that the automated records are modified to reflect that the previous drawing is operative.

The applicant must respond to the Office action to avoid abandonment. If the applicant submits arguments in support of acceptance of the amendment and the examining attorney determines that the amendment is still unacceptable, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal of the amendment, if the application is otherwise in condition for final action.

807.18 Mark Drawing Code

Standard Character Drawings. Standard character drawings are coded in the USPTO’s automated system as mark drawing code 4. Prior to November 2, 2003, typed drawings (*see* [TMEP §807.03\(i\)](#)) were coded as mark drawing code 1. Mark drawing code 1 is not available for applications filed on or after November

2, 2003. Applications that were filed before November 2, 2003, may be amended to mark drawing code 1, if appropriate for that drawing. Only mark drawing code 4 should be used for standard character drawings.

Special Form Drawings. Marks comprising only a design are coded as mark drawing code 2; marks comprising words plus a design are coded as mark drawing code 3; and marks comprising stylized letters and/or numerals with no design feature are coded as mark drawing code 5. All marks consisting of words, numerals, and/or diacritical symbols for which no standard character claim ([see TMEP §807.03\(a\)](#)) has been submitted are coded as mark drawing code 5.

Non-Visual Marks. “Drawings” of non-visual marks ([see TMEP §807.09](#)) are coded as mark drawing code 6.

808 Description of Mark

37 CFR §2.37

A description of the mark must be included if the mark is not in standard characters. In an application where the mark is in standard characters, a description may be included and must be included if required by the trademark examining attorney.

37 CFR §2.52(b)(5) Description of mark.

A description of the mark must be included.

808.01 Guidelines for Requiring Description

For applications filed on or after May 13, 2008, a description of the mark is required for any mark not in standard characters.

Therefore, the examining attorney must require a description of the mark if:

- the applicant is claiming a particular font style, size, or color of words, letters, or numbers;
- the mark contains a design element;
- the mark includes non-Latin characters;
- the mark includes non-Roman or non-Arabic numerals;
- the mark includes uncommon punctuation or diacritical marks;
- the mark is three-dimensional, or a configuration of the goods or packaging ([see TMEP §§807.10, 1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#));
- the drawing includes broken lines to show position or placement or to indicate a portion of the product or packaging that is not part of the mark ([see TMEP §§807.08, 1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#));
- the mark includes color ([see TMEP §§807.07\(a\), 1202.05\(e\)](#));
- the mark includes motion ([see TMEP §807.11](#));
- the mark is a sound, scent, or other non-visual mark ([see TMEP §807.09](#));
- the mark appears in standard characters, but an element of the mark is unclear or ambiguous; or
- the mark consists of characters from the standard character set ([see TMEP §807.03\(b\)](#)), but the characters are displayed in a manner that affects the meaning or significantly contributes to the overall commercial impression of the mark, such as using standard characters that create emoticons ([see TMEP §807.03\(c\)](#)).

See [37 C.F.R. §§2.37, 2.52](#).

808.01(a) Meaning of Term in Mark

A statement that a term has no meaning in the relevant industry should *not* be entered as a description of the mark, nor should it be printed. If such a statement is entered as a description of the mark, the examining attorney must ensure that the statement is deleted from the “Description of the Mark” field in the Trademark database and enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record. The document containing the information deleted from the Trademark database will remain of record for informational purposes. See [TMEP §808.03](#) regarding printing of descriptions of the mark.

See [TMEP §§809–809.03](#) regarding translation and transliteration of non-English wording and non-Latin characters.

808.01(b) Lining and Stippling Statements for Drawings

Current Practice . For applications filed on or after November 2, 2003, the USPTO does not accept black-and-white drawings lined for color. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §807.07\(a\)](#). Thus, the examining attorney should not require the applicant to enter a statement that the lining or stippling represents shading or is a feature of the mark, unless the examining attorney believes such a statement is necessary to accurately describe the mark.

See [TMEP §§808.03](#) *et seq.* and [817](#) regarding printing of lining and stippling statements and other descriptions of the mark.

Previous Practice . Prior to October 30, 1999, an applicant who wanted to show color in a mark was required to use the USPTO’s color lining system. The color lining system required applicants to line their drawings using certain patterns designated for certain colors, and to provide a color lining statement describing where the colors appeared. The color lining system was deleted from the rule effective October 30, 1999; however, during a transitional period between October 30, 1999 and November 2, 2003, the USPTO continued to accept drawings that showed color by using this lining system. See [64 Fed. Reg. 48900](#), 48903 (Sept. 8, 1999), 1226 TMOG 103, 106 (Sept. 28, 1999). When an applicant submitted a drawing that included lining that was a feature of the mark and was not intended to indicate color, the applicant was required to submit a statement to that effect, so the record would be clear as to what applicant was claiming as the mark. Similarly, when an applicant submitted a drawing that included stippling for shading purposes, the applicant was required to submit a statement to that effect.

808.02 Description Must Be Accurate and Concise

If a description of a mark is placed in the record, the description should state clearly and accurately what the mark comprises, and should not create a misleading impression by either positive statement or omission. Statements regarding how a mark is used (e.g., that the mark is not used in a particular color) are not appropriate and, if submitted, must not be printed on the registration certificate. See [TMEP § 808.03\(g\)](#).

The description should describe all *significant* aspects of the mark, including both literal elements and design elements. Insignificant features need not be included in a description.

When a mark includes a large number of elements, they are not all necessarily *significant* . For example, background design elements can sometimes be considered insignificant if they do not change the overall commercial impression of the mark. In addition, it may be unnecessary to describe the placement of repetitive literal or design elements within a mark, as long as the description generally characterizes them and explains

that the elements are repeated. Similarly, when a mark contains a substantial number of design elements, it may only be necessary to generally state in the description those elements that capture the essence of the mark. Please note that because of the requirement to describe where colors appear in the mark, marks that include color will generally have a more detailed description. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding requirements for color drawings.

If a mark contains both wording and design features, the description should describe both aspects of the mark in order to be complete. The rare exception is for wording that is (1) not significant to the mark; and (2) would not be searched (e.g., purely informational matter such as product weight, lists of contents, and business addresses). The better – but not mandatory – practice with descriptions of non-standard character marks that include wording is to indicate that the wording is “in stylized font.”

Generally, if the applicant has not made a color claim, the description of the mark should not mention color, because a reference to color in the description of a non-colored mark creates a misleading impression. See [TMEP §§807.07–807.07\(g\)](#) regarding color. However, in some cases, it may be appropriate to submit a black-and-white drawing and a description of the mark that refers to black, white, and/or gray if the applicant states that color is not claimed as a feature of the mark. See [TMEP §§807.07\(f\)–807.07\(f\)\(ii\)](#) regarding applications that include mark descriptions that refer to black, white, or gray when there is no corresponding color claim.

If a trademark or service mark that is registered to an entity other than the applicant is used in the description of the mark, the examining attorney must require that it be deleted and that generic wording be substituted. Generally, it is inappropriate to use a registered mark in a description, because the mark indicates origin in only one party and cannot be used to describe a mark used in connection with goods or services that originate in a party other than the registrant. *Cf. Camloc Fastener Corp. v. Grant*, 119 USPQ 264, 265, n.1 (TTAB 1958) (noting that if applicant prevailed in opposition proceeding, it would be required to delete registered mark from the identification of goods set forth in the application). This prohibition against use of third-party registered marks in descriptions includes the use of registered trademarks that designate type fonts, such as ARIAL (U.S. Registration No. 2270853) or TIMES NEW ROMAN (U.S. Registration No. 1340165). The use of these type-font designations in a description is not critical to an understanding of the mark, and therefore unnecessary for an accurate and complete description. However, registered marks designating commercial color identification systems, such as PANTONE (e.g., U.S. Registration No. 1003494), may appear in connection with a color identifier in the description of the mark, because greater precision in identifying the color may be critical in accurately describing the mark and such third-party use is an intended use of commercial color-identification-system terminology.

A description cannot be used to restrict the likely public perception of a mark. A mark’s meaning is based on the impression actually created by the mark in the minds of consumers, not on the impression that the applicant states the mark is intended to convey. However, an examining attorney may defer to the applicant’s phrasing of a description, so long as the description is accurate and complete. For example, if an element in a mark could reasonably be characterized in more than one way, the examining attorney should accept the applicant’s selection of one characterization over the other in the description.

The following are examples of descriptions containing an appropriate level of detail:



The mark consists of a group of children holding hands.

Note: The description would be incomplete if it merely stated that the mark consisted of children; however, it is not necessary to describe the individual details of each child.



The mark consists of a red background; the stylized word “HOSPITAL” in white letters outlined in black with the letter “S” in the form of a dollar sign and letter “L” in the form of a cast; a man with red hair in a green gown with an orange and silver stethoscope and silver headband mirror; man wearing a blue cap, gown and mask with silver scissors; silver medical tree with white, pink, and gold intravenous pouch, fluid and tube; gray and gold crutch; nurse with yellow hair wearing pink clothing and brown clip board; orange and black scale with an orange man wearing purple pants and orange robe; nurse with yellow hair and white clothing pushing a wheelchair with a man in green clothing with white cast and gold cane; white and blue bed pan; yellow and black buildings and white signs with stylized words “EMERGENCY HOSPITAL” in black, and green vegetation; white and pink emergency vehicle with purple tires; a green air tank, orange

stretcher, green golf club bag with white balls and pink clubs; nurse with yellow hair and blue clothing holding a white syringe with pink fluid; and an orange man dressed in blue with a white and red thermometer.

Note: This level of detail is necessary because the description must incorporate the color location statement (*see* [TMEP §807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#)).



The mark consists of the stylized word “HOSPITAL” with the letter “S” in the form of a dollar sign and letter “L” in the form of a cast surrounded by a border containing a variety of images relating to a hospital including highly stylized images of doctors, nurses, patients, hospital equipment, an ambulance and building design containing the wording “EMERGENCY HOSPITAL”.

Note: Since the mark is not in color, it is not necessary to describe every element of the mark. Instead, due to the large number of elements in the mark, it is only necessary to describe the wording in the mark and generally characterize the background elements.



The mark consists of a group of stylized people each in the shape of a lowercase letter "E" and a fanciful dog also in the shape of a lowercase letter "E".

Note: The description would be incomplete if it did not indicate that the figures are in the shape of a lowercase letter "E"; however, it is not necessary to describe the individual details or placement of each figure.

The mark consists of the stylized wording "BETSTONE" on a background design.

Note: The description would be incomplete if it did not indicate that the mark consists of more than wording; however, it is not necessary to specifically identify a nondescript common geometric carrier.



The mark consists of Chinese characters and the stylized wording “M ITCHELL”.

Note: It is not necessary to include in the description of the mark the translation or transliteration of the Chinese characters. Though these elements would be searched, they are provided in the translation/transliteration statement.



The mark consists of an oval design with the stylized wording “OUTWIT OUTPLAY” and “OUTLAST”, the design of a stylized jungle containing a gorilla, elephants, and snakes and the stylized wording “SURVIVOR GABON EARTH’S LAST EDEN” within the oval.

Note: The description would be incomplete if it did not describe both the wording and design elements of the mark; however, it is not necessary to describe the placement of the elements within the oval.

See [TMEP §808.03](#) regarding the examination procedure for descriptions.

808.03 Examination Procedure for Descriptions

After having determined that a description of the mark is required because the mark is not in standard characters, the examining attorney must then consider whether the description should be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. **Accurate and complete descriptions may always be printed.** In other situations, the decision to print – and to modify the description so that it is appropriate

for printing – depends on whether, in view of the nature or drawing of the particular mark in question, a description is necessary to clarify the mark for the public.

For example, a description must *always* be printed if:

- (1) The mark is three-dimensional, or a configuration of the goods or packaging (*see* [TMEP §§807.10, 1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#));
- (2) The drawing includes broken lines to show position or placement or to indicate a portion of the product or packaging that is not part of the mark (*see* [TMEP §§807.08, 1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#));
- (3) The mark includes color (*see* [TMEP §§807.07\(a\), 1202.05\(e\)](#));
- (4) The mark includes motion (*see* [TMEP §807.11](#)); or
- (5) The mark is a sound, scent, or other non-visual mark (*see* [TMEP §807.09](#)).
- (6) The mark consists of a repeating pattern (*see* [TMEP §1202.09\(b\)](#)).

In rare instances, a description must be printed when the mark consists of characters from the standard character set, but the characters are displayed in a manner that affects the meaning or significantly contributes to the overall commercial impression of the mark, for example, emoticons such as :) or :(. Note that a standard character claim is not acceptable where the characters form shapes or designs, such as emoticons ([TMEP §807.03\(c\)](#)).

If the examining attorney determines that a description provided by the applicant will not be printed, notice to the applicant is not required. The examining attorney must either enter a Note to the File in the record stating that the description should not be printed or issue an examiner’s amendment stating that the description will not be printed. Generally, the examining attorney may use either option, but a Note to the File should be used where the examining attorney will issue an Office action regarding other matters. An examiner’s amendment without the prior approval of the applicant (*see* [TMEP §707.02](#)) may be used where it is unnecessary to issue an Office action or a regular examiner’s amendment regarding other matters.

The examining attorney must then either: (1) delete the mark description from the “Description” field in the relevant Trademark database; or (2) send the examiner’s amendment or an e-mail instruction (where only a Note to the File was entered) to the LIE for appropriate action.

The foregoing procedures ensure that a description not intended for printing will not be printed. They further ensure that at the publication review stage, the Note to the File or examiner’s amendment reflects the determination not to print.

The following sections explain how to handle various scenarios relating to the description requirement.

808.03(a) Accurate and Complete Descriptions

If the application contains an accurate and complete description of the mark, no further action regarding the description is necessary and it will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration.

Obvious misspellings, typographical errors, and redundancies in an otherwise accurate and complete description may be corrected by examiner’s amendment without the prior approval of the applicant (*see* [TMEP §707.02](#)).

The following are examples of accurate and complete descriptions:

The image shows the word "SUSHI" repeated twice, one above the other. The letters are thick, black, and have a slightly irregular, hand-drawn appearance. The "S" and "H" are particularly prominent.

The mark consists of the words “SUSHI SUSHI” represented in stylized font.

Note: If an application containing this mark was submitted without a description, the description could be added by examiner’s amendment without the prior approval of the applicant (*see* [TMEP §§707.02, 808.03\(b\)](#)).



The mark consists of the wording “HEIDI.COM” in stylized font appearing below a stylized design of a girl's head.



The mark consists of the word “LULU” in stylized font having a backwards second “L” adjacent to an abstract symbol of a sun and the word “COMPANY” in stylized font positioned underneath the second “U” and the sun.

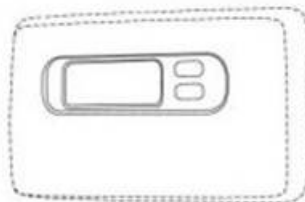


The mark consists of an image of a building with a window with four panes with the words “JUST SMILES” in a large, stylized font with lines above the dot in the letter “I” representing shine or glow and the words “DENTISTRY FOR FAMILIES ON THE GO” in smaller, block-letter font.



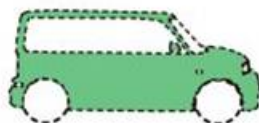
The mark consists of a series of circles stylistically representing a group of bubbles, such series being located on the handle of a water bottle. The outline of the bottle depicted in broken lines in the drawing is intended to show the placement of the mark when used and is not part of the mark.

Note: Any mark whose drawing includes broken lines must have a printed description.



The mark consists of the three-dimensional configuration of a recessed window portion of a thermostat. The portion of the thermostat that comprises the mark is shown in solid lines in the drawing. The matter shown in broken lines in the drawing is not part of the mark. The dotted lines merely show the position of the mark in the configuration of the goods.

Note: Any mark whose drawing includes broken lines must have a printed description.



The mark consists of the color kelly green applied to the vehicles used in performing pest-control services. The matter shown in broken lines serves to show the placement of the mark on the vehicle and is not part of the mark.

Note: Any mark whose drawing includes broken lines must have a printed description.

808.03(b) No Description in Application

If the description is not submitted with the initial application, the examining attorney must ensure that a description is included in the record. Applications that include vague statements such as “the mark contains wording and a design,” “the mark contains a miscellaneous design,” and “the mark consists of words” should be treated as the equivalent of accurate but incomplete descriptions (*see* [TMEP § 808.03\(c\)](#)).

For TEAS applications for marks that consist only of wording in stylized font, with no design element, the applicant’s completion of the “Literal Element” field may be accepted for purposes of compliance with the rule, even if an unacceptably vague statement or no information is entered in the “Description of the Mark” field. In these cases, where the description need not be printed, the “Literal Element” information need not be copied into the “Description of the Mark” field in the relevant Trademark database.

Likewise, for §66(a) applications for marks that consist only of wording in stylized font, with no design element, the applicant’s completion of the “Textual Elements of Mark” field may be accepted for purposes of compliance with the rule. In these cases, where the description need not be printed, the “Textual Elements of Mark” information need not be copied into the “Description” field in the relevant Trademark database.

Similarly, in any application for a mark that includes color, the applicant’s provision of a color location statement (either in the original application or in response to a requirement) may be accepted for purposes of compliance with the rule. For TEAS applications, a color location statement provided in the initial application will automatically appear in the “Description” field in the relevant Trademark database and must remain there for printing. For paper applications, the color location statement is placed in the “Description” field in the relevant Trademark database and must remain there for printing.

Where an Office action or regular examiner's amendment is otherwise unnecessary, in the following situations the examining attorney may enter a description by examiner's amendment without the prior approval of the applicant (as with any examiner's amendment, the examining attorney is thereby providing the applicant with notice and an opportunity to disagree):

- The mark consists only of wording in stylized font, with no color claim and with no design element (note that an examiner's amendment would only be necessary where the applicant also failed to provide the "Literal Element," which can serve as a description for this type of mark);
- The mark includes no color claim and consists only of wording in combination with underlining or a common geometric shape used as a vehicle for the display of the wording; or
- The record already contains an informal indication of what the mark comprises, such as where the cover letter of a paper application refers to the mark as "a stylized golf ball design."

See [TMEP §707.02](#).

The following are examples of descriptions that may be entered by examiner's amendment without prior approval of the applicant:



The mark consists of the stylized wording "GROB" within a rectangle.



The mark consists of the stylized wording "LIGHTYEAR ALLIANCE" with a curved line to the right of the wording.



The mark consists of the stylized wording “GSC PARTNERS” with a curved line between “GSC” and “PARTNERS”.



The mark consists of the stylized letters “P” “A” “C” “T” each within a shaded circle and the stylized wording “PURE ADVANCED COSMETIC TECHNOLOGY” underneath.



The mark consists of the stylized wording “H BLOCK” within a square with a horizontal line between “H” and “BLOCK”.



The mark consists of the stylized wording “REECE & NICHOLS” with the ampersand within a square.

In the foregoing examples, a description is necessary to comply with the requirements of the rule, but need not be printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the registration certificate. In such cases, the “no-call” examiner’s amendment should neither be sent to the LIE nor entered for printing by the examining attorney. Where printing of the description is unnecessary, the examiner’s amendment must indicate that the description will not be printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the registration certificate. This indication in the examiner’s amendment ensures that at the publication review stage, the description is not mistakenly entered for printing.

On the other hand, where an Office action or examiner’s amendment regarding other matters is necessary, a description should be required in the Office action or entered by examiner’s amendment. If a response to an Office action requiring the description fails to include a description but resolves all other issues, and one of the special situations set out above applies, the examining attorney may do a “no-call” examiner’s amendment at that time. If all other issues have not been resolved, the requirement for a description must be maintained or made final, as appropriate.

For marks that include a design element of any kind that are not covered by the special situations set out above, the examining attorney must either issue a requirement for the description, or enter a description by examiner’s amendment, *with* the prior approval of the applicant. Once a description of the mark is received in response to an Office action or through an examiner’s amendment, the examining attorney must follow the procedures set forth in [TMEP §§808.03\(a\)](#) and [808.03\(c\)–808.03\(d\)](#) (i.e., determine whether the description is accurate and complete, accurate and incomplete, or inaccurate, and proceed accordingly).

808.03(c) Accurate but Incomplete Description in Application or Amendment

If the description accurately describes some elements of the proposed mark but does not describe other elements, the USPTO will *require amendment to complete the description only if the description will be printed* in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration.

808.03(c)(i) Accurate but Incomplete Descriptions in Cases Where a Description Is Needed to Clarify the Mark and Must Be Printed

If the examining attorney determines that a description must be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate because it is necessary to clarify the proposed mark, the examining attorney needs to ensure that the description accurately addresses *all* significant elements of the mark. If the description is incomplete, the examining attorney must require amendment to ensure that the description is complete and accurate. The amendment may be done by examiner’s amendment, with the prior approval of the applicant.

The following is an example of an accurate but incomplete description where a corrected description must be printed:



The mark consists of a hot dog in a bun with face, hands and feet wearing a grass skirt and grass hat.

Note: This description is incomplete because it does not reference the two beach umbrellas and palm trees behind the hot dog. It must be completed and printed because it is necessary to clarify the mark.

808.03(c)(ii) Accurate but Incomplete Descriptions in Cases Where a Description Need Not Be Printed

Alternatively, if the examining attorney determines that the description need not be printed, the examining attorney need not require the applicant to amend or withdraw an incomplete or inartfully worded description, so long as the description does not misdescribe those elements of the mark addressed in the description. In such a case, although the incomplete description remains part of the application record, it must not be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. The examining attorney must follow the procedure described in [TMEP §808.03](#) for descriptions provided by the applicant that need not be printed.

The following are examples of accurate but incomplete descriptions where a description need not be printed:



The mark consists of a dog design.

Note: This description is incomplete because it does not include the wording in the mark. Unless it is amended to be complete, the description must not be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration because it is not necessary to clarify the proposed mark.



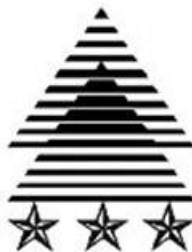
The mark consists of the word “SUSHI” represented in stylized font.

Note: This description is incomplete because it does not include the second “SUSHI”. Unless it is amended to be complete, the description must not be printed.

808.03(d) Inaccurate Description in Application or Amendment

If the examining attorney determines that the description misdescribes some element of the mark, such that the description is inconsistent with the mark shown on the drawing, *the examining attorney must require the applicant to amend the description, even if the description will not be printed.* An inaccurate description must be corrected to accurately reflect the mark regardless of whether the description will be printed. The amendment of the description may be done by examiner’s amendment, with the prior approval of the applicant.

The following are examples of inaccurate descriptions:



The mark consists of two overlapping triangles with two stars positioned below.

Note: This description is inaccurate because there are three stars in the mark.



The mark consists of the design of a single grape leaf with an attached vine in front of a full moon design.

Note: This description is inaccurate because the mark contains a crescent moon design.



The mark consists of the stylized wording "FLORIDA'S FOOD SERVICE" to the left of a stylized chef design.

Note: This description is inaccurate because the term "FLORIDA" includes an "S" in the description. The change in the spelling of "FLORIDA" would not be considered an obvious misspelling because it is unclear whether the applicant intended for the mark to include the "S". Either the mark or the description must be amended.



The mark consists of the stylized wording “FLOODS FOR LESS” with a pool of water under the wording.

Note: This description is inaccurate because the mark includes the numeral “4” rather than the word “FOR”.

C³ Reduct

The mark consists of the stylized wording “C THREE REDUCT”.

Note: This description is inaccurate because the mark includes the superscript number “3” following the letter “C” rather than the word “THREE”. A proper description could refer to the numeral as “3” or “CUBED”.

808.03(e) Amending Descriptions

Generally, amending the description of the mark is liberally permitted, so long as the drawing supports the description. In rare cases where the amendment of the description constitutes a material alteration of the mark on the drawing or of the description filed with the original application, amendment will not be permitted. See [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 61 USPQ2d 1121 (Fed. Cir. 2001). See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

808.03(f) Updating Design Coding

Particularly when a description is not included in the initial application, the examining attorney must ensure that the design coding is updated in accordance with the description, where appropriate and necessary. The examining attorney must ensure the design coding of all significant elements of the mark, specifically those that the examining attorney used in conducting a search. The examining attorney may update the “Design Code” field by making the appropriate entries in the Trademark database or by sending an e-mail message to the internal TM Design Code Correct mailbox that contains instructions regarding the changes to be made.

If additional codes beyond those searched have been coded for a particular design, deleting the extra codes is unnecessary.

808.03(g) Unacceptable Statements in Mark Descriptions

A statement that purports to limit a mark by excluding color(s) or other features that do not appear in a mark is not appropriate for inclusion in a description of a mark. Statements regarding any purported “exclusion” usually feature a limitation on the mark, often in an attempt to satisfy third parties that have infringement concerns. In some cases, the applicant has a written agreement with a potential opposer that addresses this issue. However, descriptions are solely to be used to describe the mark shown in the drawing and are not to be used to describe how the mark does not and will not appear. See [TMEP §808.02](#).

Although these additional restrictive statements are uncommon, when they do appear the facts are generally as follows. The mark features a design and color is not claimed as a feature of the mark. The description of

the mark is amended by the applicant to include a reference to a color or colors that the mark will not comprise. This type of statement is inappropriate and must be deleted from the description. For example, the following type of statement must not be included in a description of a mark: “The application and any registration resulting from the application exclude the color purple within or as part of the (design element) in the mark.”

Thus, when the applicant has not made a color claim, the description of the mark must not mention color(s), because reference to color in the description of a non-color mark creates a misleading impression. [TMEP §§807.07, 808.02](#).

Accordingly, the description may not be used to state any limitations as to how a mark does not and will not appear. Any such statements must be deleted from the description if it is determined that the description needs to be printed. [TMEP §§808.02, 808.03](#). Although applicants may include such restrictive statements in the application record, they are not appropriate for the registration certificate. If it is determined that the description does not need to be printed, the description does not need to be amended to delete the restrictive statement unless some part of the description is inaccurate, in which case the restrictive statement must be deleted. [TMEP §808.03\(d\)](#).

809 Translation and Transliteration of Non-English Wording in Mark

An application to register a mark that includes non-English wording must include an English translation of that wording. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(9\)](#). This requirement also applies to compound word marks comprised of two or more distinct words (or words and syllables) that are represented as one word, in which one or more of the words in the mark appears to be non-English wording that would clearly be perceived as a distinct word(s) within the compound. For example, if the mark is GRINÇANTCOMPUTERS, the commercial impression is that the mark is comprised of the words GRINÇANT and COMPUTERS. In such a case, the application must include a translation of the French word GRINÇANT, which means “creaking” in English. If, however, the combination either suggests a single word or conveys a commercial impression other than a mark comprised of two separate words, no translation of the non-English portion should be required. Thus, if the mark is FELIZCITY, the commercial impression is that the mark is a play on the word “felicity” and no translation of the term “feliz” (which means “happy” in English) is required. See [TMEP §809.01](#) regarding the procedure for examining applications for marks with non-English wording that do not include an accurate translation.

Similarly, an application for a mark that comprises non-Latin characters must include a transliteration of those characters, and either an English translation or a statement that this portion of the mark has no meaning in English. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(10\)](#). A transliteration is the phonetic spelling, in corresponding Latin characters, of the word(s) in the mark that are in non-Latin characters. Examples of statements translating and transliterating a word in non-Latin characters are as follows:

The non-Latin characters in the mark transliterate to Asahi and this means “Rising Sun” in English.

or

The non-Latin characters in the mark transliterate to Weidamei and this has no meaning in a foreign language.

If an application for a mark comprising non-English wording or non-Latin characters does not include an accurate translation and/or transliteration, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a statement of translation/transliteration. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(9\)–\(10\)](#).

When an application or certificate of registration includes a translation, both the non-English wording and the English translation will appear in the records of the USPTO. See [TMEP §809.03](#) regarding the printing of the translation/transliteration statement in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate.

In a TEAS Plus application, if the mark includes non-English wording, the initial application must include an English translation of that wording. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(16\)](#). If the mark includes non-Latin characters, the application must include a transliteration of those characters. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(17\)](#). If the applicant does not meet these requirements, the applicant must pay a processing fee per class to have the application examined as a regular TEAS application. See [TMEP §819.01\(m\)](#) for further information on translation and transliteration statements in TEAS Plus applications.

See [TMEP §809.01\(b\)](#) regarding the limited exceptions to the requirement to provide a translation of foreign wording in the mark.

809.01 Examining Applications for Marks Comprising Non-English Wording that Do Not Include an Accurate Translation or Transliteration

In order to properly examine applications with non-English wording, the translation and transliteration of the non-English wording must be determined prior to performing a search of the mark. This is critical because the foreign equivalent of an English term may be regarded in the same way as the English term for purposes of determining descriptiveness, requiring disclaimer, and citing marks under §2(d) of the Act (*see, e.g.,* [TMEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(vi\), 1209.03\(g\)](#)).

Therefore, if there is no translation and/or transliteration in the initial application, the examining attorney should ascertain the meaning of non-English wording before searching the mark.

The examining attorney may obtain the meaning of non-English wording through sources such as foreign language dictionaries and search engines. The examining attorney may also consult the Trademark Librarian or the Translations Branch, as appropriate.

If research by the examining attorney, the Trademark Library, and/or the Translations Branch indicates that the term has no meaning or no clear and exact equivalent in a foreign language, although no inquiry regarding the meaning in a foreign language is necessary, the examining attorney has the discretion under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) to make such an inquiry. If no inquiry is made, the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the term has no meaning in a foreign language. In such cases, a statement regarding meaning must not be entered for printing in the *Official Gazette*. See [TMEP §809.01\(a\)](#) regarding when an inquiry is made.

If the examining attorney determines the meaning of the non-English term(s), he or she must search the terms as they appear in the application, the transliterated terms, and the English translation(s) for the terms, as applicable. The examining attorney must also require (under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#)) that an accurate translation be made of record by the applicant using the researched translation or other accurate translation provided by applicant. If the applicant disputes a translation obtained through online resources, the examining attorney should supplement the record with evidence from the Trademark Librarian and/or the Translations Branch.

If the translation is provided or supplemented after the examining attorney has conducted a search for conflicting marks, the examining attorney must conduct a new search of the transliterated terms and/or the English translation(s) for the terms, as applicable.

809.01(a) Inquiry/Applicant's Response Regarding Meaning in a Foreign Language

If it is necessary to make a separate inquiry regarding the meaning of non-English wording, the examining attorney should provide the applicant with the correct format for a translation or transliteration statement. See [TMEP §809.03](#). If a general inquiry is made regarding meaning under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) (i.e., whether the term has significance in the relevant trade, any geographical significance, or any meaning in a foreign language), the applicant's response may not be in the correct format for the translation or transliteration statement. When an applicant's response to an inquiry regarding the meaning of non-English wording includes statements that are not related to the translation or transliteration of such wording, the examining attorney must ensure that only statements regarding the translation or transliteration are entered in the relevant Trademark database using the appropriate format for printing on any registration certificate that may issue. See [TMEP §809.03](#).

Similarly, if the applicant responds to an inquiry regarding non-English wording that "the mark has only trademark significance," or in some similar manner, the examining attorney must not enter the statement in that form in the Trademark database. Instead, the examining attorney must ensure that the statement is reformatted appropriately, to reflect that the wording has no meaning, in the relevant Trademark database for printing. See [TMEP §809.03](#). It is not necessary to issue an examiner's amendment in such cases.

809.01(b) Limited Exceptions to Rules for Translations

There are three limited exceptions to the general rule requiring that all foreign wording be translated. See [TMEP §§809.01\(b\)\(i\)–809.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

809.01(b)(i) Foreign Terms Appearing in English Dictionary

It is generally unnecessary to provide a translation of a foreign term if the term appears in an English dictionary (e.g., croissant, fiesta or flambé). However, if a term that appears in the English dictionary appears in a mark as part of a foreign idiomatic phrase or other unitary expression, a translation of the idiomatic phrase or unitary expression is required. It would be illogical to break the phrase into its individual word elements and to translate only the individual words that do not appear in the English dictionary. Such a translation would serve no useful purpose because it would not convey the true commercial impression of the phrase.

Example: If the mark included the phrase "la fiesta grande," an appropriate translation would be "the great celebration" or possibly "the great fiesta." It would be inappropriate to translate only "la" and "grande." The ultimate goal is to provide a translation that reflects the true meaning of the non-English wording in the mark and the commercial impression made by the entire phrase. See [TMEP §809.02](#) regarding equivalency in translation.

809.01(b)(ii) Foreign Articles or Prepositions Combined with English Terms

It is generally unnecessary to provide a translation of foreign articles or prepositions, such as "de," "le," "la," or "il," when combined with English terms, because their meaning is generally understood and, in this context, they are being used to convey an impression different from their foreign meaning. For example, in the mark "LE CASE," it is unnecessary to translate "LE."

809.01(b)(iii) Words from Dead or Obscure Languages

It is generally not necessary to translate words from dead or obscure languages. Cf. *Gen. Cigar Co. v. G.D.M. Inc.*, 988 F. Supp. 647, 660-61, 45 USPQ2d 1481, 1491-92 (S.D.N.Y. 1997) (finding applicant had

no obligation to disclose that the term COHIBA for cigars means “tobacco” in the language of the Taino Indians in the Dominican Republic, because cigar smokers in the United States would not be aware of such a meaning). See [TMEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)](#) and [1209.03\(g\)](#) regarding the applicability of the doctrine of foreign equivalents to words from dead or obscure languages. The determination of whether a language is “dead” must be made on a case by case basis, based upon the meaning that the term would have to the relevant purchasing public.

Example: Latin is generally considered a dead language. However, if there is evidence that a Latin term is still in use by the relevant purchasing public (e.g., if the term appears in news articles), then a Latin term is not considered dead. The same analysis should be applied to other uncommon languages.

809.02 Equivalency in Translation

The translation that should be relied upon in examination is the English meaning that has significance in the United States as the equivalent of the meaning in the non-English language. The following are examples of equivalency in translation:

- (1) “Chat Noir” - The exact equivalent in English is “black cat,” and this translation would undoubtedly be recognized by the purchasing public in this country. *Ex parte Odol-Werke Wien Gesellschaft M.B.H.*, 111 USPQ 286 (Comm’r Pats. 1956) (affirming the refusal to register the mark “Chat Noir” because the words “Black Cat” were already registered for related goods).
- (2) “Mais Oui” - The English equivalent of the phrase “mais oui” is “why, certainly,” or “why, of course,” and not the literal translation “but yes.” *In re Societe Des Parfums Schiaparelli, S.A.*, 122 USPQ 349 (TTAB 1959). A satisfactory translation must be some normal English expression that will be the equivalent in meaning of the term “mais oui” in French.
- (3) “Schwarzkopf” - The term can be literally translated as “black head,” but, even to German-speaking persons, the primary significance of “Schwarzkopf” is most likely that of a surname. When the primary significance of a non-English term is as a surname, the term should not be translated. See [TMEP §1211](#) regarding surnames.

If any question arises as to the proper translation of a mark, the examining attorney may consult the Trademark Library or Translations Branch of the USPTO. The determination of the appropriate translation often requires consideration of the meaning in relation to the goods and/or services. See [TMEP §1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)](#) regarding the use of the doctrine of foreign equivalents in determining likelihood of confusion under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), [TMEP §1209.03\(g\)](#) regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents in determining questions of descriptiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), and [TMEP §1211.01\(a\)\(vii\)](#) regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents in determining whether a term is primarily merely a surname under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(4\)](#).

809.03 Printing of Translations and Transliterations

Generally, non-English wording in a mark must be translated into English and the translation (and transliteration, if applicable) must be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. See [TMEP §§809.01–809.01\(a\)](#) regarding when a statement that a term has no meaning in a foreign language should be printed.

Sometimes, translations that are not precise, or that give a variety of meanings, are placed in the record. While all possible translations, and discussions relative to meaning, are useful for informational purposes, not all such matter is appropriate for printing in the *Official Gazette* or on the certificate of registration. Only a translation that is the clear and exact equivalent (*see* [TMEP §809.02](#)) should be printed. This

normally means only one translation, because the existence of a variety of alternative translations, or the necessity of including explanatory context, usually indicates lack of a clearly recognized equivalent meaning.

If an applicant submits a translation that is too verbose or vague to be appropriate for printing, the examining attorney must require a clear, concise translation. The transliteration of non-Latin characters, if any, must be included in the statement to be printed. If necessary, the examining attorney should rewrite the statement via an examiner's amendment and ensure that the Trademark database is updated accordingly.

Example: The translation statement contains the proper translation, but the statement is not suitable for printing because it is too wordy. If the examining attorney is only "reformatting" the applicant's statement without changing the substance, the examining attorney should rewrite the translation statement into a simple, clear statement as to meaning, issue a "no-call" examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §707.02](#)), and ensure that the Trademark database is updated accordingly.

Example: The translation statement is vague or is otherwise in need of clarification in order for the statement to be clear and concise. The examining attorney should contact the applicant and suggest a simple, clear statement. If the applicant agrees to amend the translation statement as suggested, the examining attorney should issue a regular examiner's amendment, and ensure that the Trademark database is updated accordingly. If the applicant and examining attorney cannot agree on wording, the examining attorney must issue an Office action to resolve the issue.

One of the following statement formats should be used, as appropriate:

The English translation of the word " _____ " in the mark is " _____ "

The English translation of the _____ word " _____ " in the mark is " _____ "

The English translation of " _____ " is " _____ "

The wording " _____ " has no meaning in a foreign language

The non-Latin characters in the mark transliterate to " _____ " and this means " _____ " in English

The _____ characters in the mark transliterate to " _____ " and this means " _____ " in English

The non-Latin characters in the mark transliterate to " _____ " and this has no meaning in a foreign language

All information in the "Translation" and "Transliteration" fields in the application record will automatically be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. Accordingly, the examining attorney must ensure that the translation or transliteration is entered into the Trademark database. When an examining attorney determines that a translation should not be printed because it is unnecessary, the examining attorney must ensure that the translation is deleted from the Trademark database, and enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the translation has been deleted. The document containing the information deleted from the Trademark database will remain of record for informational purposes. See [TMEP §817](#) regarding preparation of an application for publication or registration.

810 Filing Fee

An application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act must include a filing fee for each class of goods or services. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(1\), 1051\(b\)\(1\), and 1126](#).

The required filing fee for at least one class of goods or services must be received before an application can be given a filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(5\)](#).

The amount of the trademark application filing fee varies, depending upon whether the application (or the amendment adding classes to an existing application) is filed through TEAS or on paper. An applicant has four choices. The applicant can file:

- A paper application at the highest fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#);
- A regular TEAS application at the lower fee per class set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#);
- A TEAS RF application (*see* [TMEP §820](#)) at the lower fee per class set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#); or
- A TEAS Plus application (*see* [TMEP §§819–819.04](#)) at the lowest fee per class, set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#).

See 70 Fed. Reg. 2952 (Jan. 19, 2005); 70 Fed. Reg. 38768 (July 6, 2005); 79 Fed. Reg. 74633 (Dec. 16, 2014). The current fee schedule is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Note: TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus applications that are downloaded, printed, and mailed to the USPTO are considered paper applications and are subject to the paper application filing fee.

An applicant who amends an application to add classes is entitled to the lower fee if the applicant files the amendment through TEAS (either as a voluntary amendment or a response to an examining attorney's Office action), or through an examiner's amendment. The applicant must pay the higher fee if the applicant files an amendment adding class(es) on paper. *See* [TMEP §§1403.02\(c\)](#) and [1403.06](#) for further information about fees in multiple-class applications.

See also [TMEP §§405–405.06](#) regarding payment of fees to the USPTO, and [TMEP §§202.03\(a\)](#) and [202.03\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding the processing of applications in which a check submitted as the application filing fee is returned unpaid, or an electronic funds transfer or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution.

The filing fee for a §66(a) application will be sent to the USPTO by the IB, pursuant to the provisions of the Madrid Protocol and the Common Regulations. The examining attorney must not require additional fees during examination.

810.01 Collection of Fees for Multiple Classes

A filing fee is required for each class in a multiple-class application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#). The USPTO has established the following policy to ensure the collection of application filing fees from all applicants on an equitable basis.

In an application under §1 or §44, if the applicant has specifically authorized the USPTO to charge any additional fees to a deposit account, the examining attorney should ask the LIE to charge the fees, and proceed with examination of the application on the merits. If the applicant has not provided a specific authorization to charge an account, the examining attorney should attempt to contact the applicant to secure a written authorization to charge fees to a credit card or deposit account by fax or e-mail.

An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account must be made in a written document signed and submitted by an authorized person. It cannot be entered by examiner's amendment unless the record already contains a written authorization, signed and submitted by someone who is authorized to charge fees to the account. *See* [TMEP §405.03](#) regarding deposit accounts.

If the examining attorney is able to secure a written authorization to charge fees to a credit card or deposit account, the examining attorney should have the LIE charge the necessary fees to the credit card or deposit account and proceed with examination. See [TMEP §§810, 1403.02\(c\)](#), and [1403.06](#) regarding the amount of the fee for adding classes to an application.

If an authorization to charge fees has not been provided and the examining attorney is unable to secure one, the examining attorney must issue a written Office action noting the deficiency and requiring either payment of the fees or deletion of classes. This policy applies to any application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act in which the applicant specifically delineates more than one class and the applicant has paid the fee(s) for less than all the classes. The delineation may be by indicating class numbers or any other means demonstrating a clear intention to seek registration in multiple classes.

In limited circumstances, the examining attorney may advise the applicant that action on the merits of the application is deferred pending receipt of the applicant's response to the Office action requiring payment of missing fees or deletion of classes. In most cases, the examining attorney should simply act on the merits of the application and require the additional fees. For example, it would be inappropriate to defer action in a pro se application or in other cases where the applicant has in good faith attempted to pay the appropriate fees. Before issuing a letter deferring action until additional fees are paid, the examining attorney must consult with the managing attorney or senior attorney.

The filing fee for a §66(a) application will be sent to the USPTO by the IB, pursuant to the provisions of the Madrid Protocol and the Common Regulations. The examining attorney must not require additional fees during examination. The classification in a §66(a) application may not be changed and additional classes may not be added. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1401.03\(d\)](#) for further information regarding classification in a §66(a) application.

810.02 Refunds

Only money paid by mistake or in excess (when a fee is not required by the statute or rules, or is not required in the amount paid) may be refunded. A mere change of purpose after the payment of money does not entitle a party to a refund. For example, if an applicant deletes a class from an application, or withdraws an application, the applicant is not entitled to a refund. [37 C.F.R. §2.209\(a\)](#).

The filing fee for an application that is denied a filing date will be refunded. After an application has been given a filing date and processed, the filing fee will normally not be returned. However, if an examining attorney erroneously requires a fee, the USPTO will refund any fee submitted in response to the erroneous requirement.

If the examining attorney determines that an applicant is entitled to a refund, he or she must submit the request to the TMSFinance@uspto.gov e-mail box with the information necessary for processing the refund.

If the examining attorney is uncertain as to whether a refund is appropriate, he or she should discuss the situation with the managing attorney or senior attorney.

See [TMEP §405.04](#) for additional information about processing refunds.

811 Designation of Domestic Representative

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(e\)](#) and [1141h\(d\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.24](#), an applicant not domiciled in the United States may file a document designating the name and address of a person residing in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. See [TMEP §610](#) for further information. The USPTO encourages applicants who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that designations of domestic representative be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

812 Identification of Prior Registrations of Applicant

37 CFR §2.36

Identification of prior registrations. Prior registrations of the same or similar marks owned by the applicant should be identified in the application if the owner(s) last listed in Office records of the prior registrations differs from the owner(s) listed in the application.

Trademark Rule 2.36, [37 C.F.R. §2.36](#), states that prior registrations of the same or similar marks owned by the applicant should be identified in the application if the owner listed in the application differs from the owner last listed in the Office's records for such prior registrations. The rule does not precisely define when an applicant should claim ownership of prior registration(s), and the examining attorney may exercise discretion in invoking the rule. The main purpose of the rule is to provide the examining attorney with information necessary for proper examination. The information does not have to be given in any specific form. The applicant's claim of ownership of prior registrations will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate.

Normally, identification of a registration is necessary because the registration would, if not owned by the applicant, be a basis for refusal under §2(d) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). Occasionally, it is desirable to ask an applicant to identify a particular registration as being owned by the applicant merely to provide relevant information.

It is not necessary to assert ownership of expired or cancelled registrations. If the applicant wants to include a reference to a cancelled or expired registration, the applicant should indicate that the applicant owns the *mark* disclosed in the cancelled or expired registration, because technically one does not "own" a registration that is not in force and effect. Claims of ownership of pending applications, expired or cancelled registrations, and registrations that are unrelated to an application will not be printed.

Before approving an application that includes a claim of ownership of prior registrations for publication or registration, the examining attorney must ensure that the registrations are active. If a registration is not active, the claim of ownership should not be printed.

All information in the "Prior Registration" field in the application record in the Trademark database will automatically be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. Accordingly, when an examining attorney determines that a claim of ownership of a prior registration should not be printed (e.g., because the registration is no longer active or is irrelevant to the registrability of the mark in the subject application), the examining attorney must ensure that the claim of ownership is deleted from the Trademark database, and enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the claim has been deleted. The document containing the information deleted from the Trademark database will remain of record for informational purposes. See [TMEP §817](#) regarding preparation of an application for publication or issuance.

If the applicant owns numerous prior registrations for the same or similar marks, in which the owner(s) last listed in the Office's records differs from the owner(s) listed in the application, the applicant should identify

all such prior registrations in the application. If the applicant lists numerous prior registrations, the database will only show three registration numbers and will indicate “and others” as to any additional registration numbers. Therefore, the examining attorney must ensure that the claim of ownership identifies the two or three most relevant registration numbers.

In a TEAS Plus application, if the applicant owns one or more registrations for the *same* mark, and the last listed owner(s) of the prior registration(s) differs from the owner of the application, the initial application must include a claim of ownership of the registration(s). If this information is not included in the initial application, the applicant must pay a processing fee per class to have the application examined as a regular TEAS application. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(19\)](#). See [TMEP §819.01\(p\)](#) for further information.

812.01 Proving Ownership of Prior Registrations

If an applicant includes a claim of ownership of a prior registration, or a pending application, in the application as filed, the examining attorney must accept the claim without further proof of ownership and must not cite the registration for likelihood of confusion under §2(d) of the Act or advise the applicant that there may be a conflict with the earlier-filed application.

Generally, the applicant has the burden of proving ownership of a registration. The USPTO’s automated search system may not reflect the recordation of changes of ownership in the Assignment Recordation Branch. See [TMEP §§502–502.03](#). If the applicant does not assert ownership of a pertinent registration in the application when it is filed, but the Trademark database indicates that an assignment was filed as to the registration, the examining attorney must check the database of the USPTO’s Assignment Recordation Branch to determine whether information contained in the database supports ownership of the registration in the applicant’s name. If records in the Assignment Recordation Branch’s database indicate that the registration is owned by the applicant, the examining attorney must not cite the registration for likelihood of confusion.

However, if an applicant does not assert ownership of a pertinent registration in an application when it is filed, and the USPTO’s records do not indicate that it is owned by the applicant, the registration must be cited against the current application under §2(d). If so, the applicant must do one of the following to verify its ownership claim of the cited registration: (1) state for the record that the documents have been recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch for a registration based on an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, or with the IB for a §66(a) registration; (2) submit copies of documents evidencing the chain of title; or (3) submit a statement, supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), that the applicant is the owner of the cited registration. This also applies to pending conflicting applications that are cited as a potential bar to registration.

A refusal under §2(d) cannot be overcome by a claim of ownership of a registration made by the applicant in another registration file when the USPTO’s records do not indicate that the registration is owned by the applicant.

813 Consent to Register by Particular Living Individual Whose Name or Likeness Appears in the Mark

When a name, portrait, or signature in a mark identifies a particular living individual, or a deceased president of the United States during the life of his widow, the mark can be registered only with the written consent of the individual, or of the president’s widow, respectively. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(c\)](#). The requirement for consent also applies to the registration of a pseudonym, stage name, or nickname, if there is evidence that

the name identifies a specific living individual who is publicly connected with the goods or services, is generally known, or is well known in the field relating to the relevant goods or services. See [TMEP §§1206–1206.05](#) concerning refusal of registration under §2(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(c\)](#), when a mark in an application comprises the name, portrait, or signature of a living individual whose consent to register such name or likeness is not of record.

See [TMEP §1206.03](#) for information about when the examining attorney must inquire as to whether a name or likeness identifies a particular living individual.

Consent may be presumed where the individual whose name or likeness appears in the mark personally signs the application. See [TMEP §1206.04\(b\)](#) for further information.

If a consent to register is already part of the record in the file of a valid registration for a mark comprised in whole or in part of the same name, portrait, or signature for the same goods or services, the applicant may satisfy the requirement for a consent statement by claiming ownership of the registration and advising the examining attorney that the consent is of record therein. See [TMEP §1206.04\(c\)](#) for further information.

If a mark comprises the name or likeness of a living individual and consent to register is of record or is presumed from signature of the application, a statement that the mark identifies a living individual whose consent is of record must be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. See [TMEP §§813.01\(a\), 1206.04\(b\)](#). If a name or likeness that could *reasonably* be perceived as that of a living individual is not that of a specific living individual, a statement to that effect is printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. See [TMEP §813.01\(b\)](#).

In a TEAS Plus application, if the mark includes an individual's name or portrait, the initial application must include either: (1) a statement that identifies the living individual whose name or likeness the mark comprises, and written consent of the individual; or (2) a statement that the name or portrait does not identify a living individual. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(18\)](#). If this statement does not appear in the initial application, the applicant must pay a processing fee per class to have the application examined as a regular TEAS application. See [TMEP §819.01\(o\)](#) for further information.

See [TMEP §§813.01\(b\)](#) and [1206.05](#) regarding statements that a name or likeness that could reasonably be perceived as that of a living individual is *not* that of a specific living individual.

813.01 Statement Printed in Official Gazette and on Registration Certificate

813.01(a) Name or Likeness Is That of a Living Individual

If a mark comprises the name or likeness of a living individual and consent to register is of record, a statement to that effect must be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. The following are examples of acceptable statements:

- The name, portrait, and/or signature shown in the mark identifies a living individual whose consent to register is made of record;
- The name shown in the mark identifies a living individual whose consent is of record;
- The name "JOHN SMITH" identifies a living individual whose consent is of record;
- The likeness (or "portrait") in the mark identifies a living individual whose consent is of record;
- The portrait or likeness shown in the mark identifies John Smith, whose consent to register is made of record;

The signature shown in the mark identifies a living individual whose consent is of record;
The signature shown in the mark identifies “JOHN SMITH”, a living individual whose consent is of record; or
The name, portrait, and/or signature shown in the mark identifies John Smith, whose consent to register is made of record.

Only matter that actually appears in the mark should appear in capital letters within quotation marks.

Where the mark comprises a portrait, first name, pseudonym, nickname, surname of an individual who is well known in the field relating to the goods or services (see [TMEP §1206.03](#)), surname preceded by initials (e.g., “J.C. Jones”), or title of a living individual, the record must clearly identify the actual name of the individual and indicate that the name shown in the mark identifies that individual. A legible signature on the consent statement may in itself be sufficient to identify the individual’s name. If the actual name is unclear, the examining attorney must issue an inquiry. The name may be entered by examiner’s amendment, if appropriate.

Where the mark comprises the name or likeness of a living individual whose consent is of record, the consent statement must always be printed, even if the name that appears in the mark is that of the applicant. The statement must also be printed if consent is presumed from signature of the application ([TMEP §1206.04\(b\)](#)), or if consent is of record in a valid registration owned by the applicant ([TMEP §1206.04\(c\)](#)).

Where consent is presumed from signature ([TMEP §1206.04\(b\)](#)), the examining attorney must ensure that the required statement is entered in the Trademark database. The examining attorney must also enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the statement must be printed. No prior approval by the applicant or the applicant’s qualified practitioner is required.

The examining attorney must ensure that the Trademark database is updated, if necessary. See [TMEP §813.01\(c\)](#).

813.01(b) Name or Likeness Is Not That of a Living Individual

If a name or likeness that could reasonably be perceived as that of a living individual is *not* that of a specific living individual, a statement to that effect must be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. The statement should read as follows:

The name “_____” does not identify a living individual;
The likeness (or “portrait”) in the mark does not identify a living individual; or
The name(s), portrait(s), and/or signature(s) shown in the mark does not identify a particular living individual.

The applicant should explain any additional relevant circumstances. For example, if the matter identifies a certain character in literature or a deceased historical person, then a statement of these facts in the record may be helpful, but this information will not be printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the registration certificate.

No statement should be printed unless the name or portrait might *reasonably* be perceived as that of a specific living individual. This is true even if the applicant submits an unsolicited statement that a particular name or portrait does not identify a living individual.

Generally, if the name or likeness is such that an inquiry would have been required as to whether it identifies a living individual (*see* [TMEP §1206.03](#)), and the applicant states that the mark does not identify a living individual, then the statement that the name or likeness does not identify a living individual should be printed.

The examining attorney must ensure that the Trademark database is updated, if necessary. *See* [TMEP §813.01\(c\)](#).

If the applicant owns a valid registration for a mark comprised in whole or in part of the same name, portrait, or signature for any goods or services, and the record for the registration contains a statement that the name or likeness is *not* that of a living individual, the applicant should claim ownership of the registration and advise the examining attorney that the statement is of record therein. The examining attorney may then enter the same statement in the record for the application, even if the applicant does not resubmit or reference the statement. It is not necessary to issue an inquiry in this situation.

813.01(c) Updating the Trademark Database

All statements in the Trademark database as to whether a mark comprises the name, portrait, or signature of a living individual whose consent is of record will automatically be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. Accordingly, when an examining attorney determines that such a statement should be printed, the examining attorney must ensure that the statement is entered into the Trademark database. Where consent is presumed from signature ([TMEP §1206.04\(b\)](#)), the examining attorney must also enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the statement must be printed.

When an examining attorney determines that such a statement should *not* be printed, the examining attorney must ensure that the statement is deleted from the Trademark database. The examining attorney must also enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the statement has been deleted. The document containing the information deleted from the Trademark database will remain of record for informational purposes. *See* [TMEP §817](#) regarding preparation of an application for publication or registration.

814 Requesting Additional Information

Sometimes, it is necessary for the examining attorney to request such additional information from an applicant as may be "reasonably necessary" to examine the application properly, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). This rule is designed to encourage high-quality, efficient examination and recognizes that an applicant is often in the best position to provide the facts and information that the USPTO needs to properly examine an application and assess registrability of the applicant's mark. If an information request is phrased clearly and focused on obtaining the information most relevant to evaluate a particular ground of refusal or requirement, examination is more efficient and refusals (or allowances) of registration based on insufficient facts and information can be avoided. *Cf. Star Fruits S.N.C. v. United States*, 393 F.3d 1277, 1284, 73 USPQ2d 1409, 1414 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (discussing Patent Rule 1.105(a)(1), which is the equivalent of Trademark Rule 2.61(b)).

The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has determined that the wording "reasonably necessary" should be interpreted broadly, and applies to information that is "relevant to" registrability or "reasonably calculated" to lead to such relevant information. *Id.* at 1282-85, 73 USPQ2d at 1413-15. A question is considered "relevant" if an examining attorney has a legitimate reason for asking for the information and if the information is pertinent to the examining attorney's legal inquiry. *Id.* at 1284-85, 73 USPQ2d at 1415.

An examining attorney should ask questions designed to obtain specific information that is factual in nature under Rule 2.61(b). The examining attorney may also request literature, exhibits, affidavits or declarations, and general information concerning circumstances surrounding the mark, as well as, if applicable, its use or intended use. Requests for information that is not public knowledge, but is within the knowledge of the applicant or available to the applicant, are particularly appropriate. The examining attorney must explain why the information is needed, if the reason is not obvious.

The applicant has a duty to participate in the examination process by responding directly and completely to each request for information. *See Star Fruits*, 393 F.3d at 1284-1285; 73 USPQ2d at 1415 (“So long as there is some legitimate reason for seeking the information . . . the applicant has a duty to respond.”) If the applicant wants to provide information from its website in response to the examining attorney’s request for information, the applicant must attach the relevant information to its response. It is not sufficient to provide only the applicant’s website address. In addition, a mere statement that information about the goods or services is available on the applicant’s website is an inappropriate response to the examining attorney’s request for information, and insufficient to make the relevant information of record. *In re Planalytics, Inc.*, 70 USPQ2d 1453, 1457 (TTAB 2004) .

If applicant does not believe that it has relevant information, applicant should submit a statement to this effect. *Id.* at n.2.

If the applicant does not comply with the examining attorney’s request for information, the requirement should be repeated and, if appropriate, made final. An applicant’s failure to respond to an information requirement is itself grounds for refusal. *See In re Harley*, 119 USPQ2d 1755, 1758 (TTAB 2016) (affirming refusal of registration because applicant’s appeal brief failed to address the relevant refusals, including a refusal based on noncompliance with a requirement for information); *In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644, 1651 (TTAB 2013) (“Failure to comply with a request for information is grounds for refusal,” where applicant provided equivocal responses to the examining attorney’s questions and did not address this issue in its brief); *In re DTI P’ship LLP*, 67 USPQ2d 1699 (TTAB) 2003 (deeming §2(e)(1) refusal moot, since failure to comply with requirement for information is sufficient basis, in itself, for refusal); *In re SPX Corp.*, 63 USPQ2d 1592 (TTAB 2002) (finding registration properly refused where applicant ignored request for information); *In re Page*, 51 USPQ2d 1660 (TTAB 1999) (finding intent-to-use applicant’s failure to comply with requirement for information as to the intended use of the mark constituted grounds for refusal); *In re Babies Beat Inc.*, 13 USPQ2d 1729, 1731 (TTAB 1990) (finding registration properly refused where applicant failed to comply with examining attorney’s request for copies of patent applications and other patent information); *In re Air Prods. & Chems., Inc.*, 192 USPQ 157, 158 (TTAB 1976) (“[Trademark Rule 2.61(b)] has the effect of law.”)

An applicant’s failure to respond to an information requirement also can result in an adverse evidentiary inference being drawn regarding the issue to which the information requirement was directed. *See In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d at 1651 (noting because applicant had failed to comply with the examining attorney’s information requirement, “to the extent there is any ambiguity regarding the origin and certification of applicant’s goods we address both [merely descriptive and deceptively misdescriptive] refusals in the alternative based on the presumption that had applicant directly and fully responded to the examining attorney’s inquiries, the responses would have been unfavorable.”); *In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1917, 1919 (TTAB 2008) (making factual presumptions unfavorable to the applicant in considering alternative statutory refusals under §§2(e)(2) and 2(e)(3), in view of the applicant’s failure to comply with the examining attorney’s requirement for information as to the geographic origin of the goods).

If the requested information is confidential, or if, for a valid reason, the applicant does not want to have the information become part of a public record, the applicant should consider redacting such portions of documents

prior to their submission. Documents filed in the USPTO by the applicant become part of the official record and will not be returned or removed. [37 C.F.R. §2.25](#); [TMEP §404](#). Placing confidential information in the record is not required. Sometimes a written explanation or summary will suffice.

815 Application Filed on Supplemental Register

Sections 23 through 28 of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. §§1091–1096, provide for registration on the Supplemental Register. Certain marks that are not eligible for registration on the Principal Register, but are capable of distinguishing an applicant’s goods or services, may be registered on the Supplemental Register.

Marks registered on the Supplemental Register are excluded from receiving the advantages of certain sections of the Act of 1946. The excluded sections are listed in [15 U.S.C. §1094](#). See [TMEP §801.02\(b\)](#).

If the applicant seeks registration on the Supplemental Register, the application should state that registration is requested on the Supplemental Register. If no register is specified, the USPTO will presume that the applicant seeks registration on the Principal Register.

A mark in an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), based on a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States, cannot be registered on the Supplemental Register. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\)](#) and [2.75\(c\)](#).

Upon approval of the mark for registration, the record will indicate that the mark has been “Allowed for Supplemental Registration” rather than that the mark has been approved for publication. Marks on the Supplemental Register are not published for opposition, but are issued as registered marks on the date that they are printed in the *Official Gazette*.

Applications on the Supplemental Register are not subject to opposition under [15 U.S.C. §1063](#), but are subject to cancellation under [15 U.S.C. §1064](#). [15 U.S.C. §1092](#).

See [TMEP §§816–816.05](#) regarding amendments to the Supplemental Register.

815.01 Marks Eligible for Principal Register Not Registrable on Supplemental Register

A mark that is clearly eligible for the Principal Register may not be registered on the Supplemental Register. *Nazon v. Ghiorse*, 119 USPQ2d 1178, 1182 (TTAB 2016); see *In re U.S. Catheter & Instrument Corp.*, 158 USPQ 53, 53 (TTAB 1968); *In re Hunt*, 132 USPQ 564, 565 (TTAB 1962). An application requesting registration on the Supplemental Register must be amended to the Principal Register, or refused registration, if the mark is registrable on the Principal Register. *Daggett & Ramsdell, Inc. v. I. Posner, Inc.*, 115 USPQ 96 (Comm’r Pats. 1957).

See [TMEP §§816–816.05](#) regarding amendments to the Supplemental Register.

815.02 Elements Required

An application requesting registration on the Supplemental Register should state that the applicant requests registration on the Supplemental Register. If no register is specified, the USPTO will assume that the applicant is requesting registration on the Principal Register.

In an application under §1(b), the mark must be in lawful use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/classes before the mark can register. [15 U.S.C. §1091\(a\)](#). Under [37 C.F.R. §2.47\(d\)](#), an

intent-to-use applicant is not eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register until the applicant has filed an acceptable allegation of use. When the applicant amends to the Supplemental Register after filing an acceptable allegation of use, the effective filing date of the application is the date on which the applicant filed the allegation of use, i.e., the date on which the applicant met the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) for an amendment to allege use (see [TMEP §1104.01](#)), or [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#) for a statement of use (see [TMEP §1109.01](#)). [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\)](#). See also [TMEP §§816.02](#) and [1102.03](#) regarding intent-to-use applications and the Supplemental Register.

If an applicant submits a §1(b) application requesting registration on the Supplemental Register for which no acceptable allegation of use has been filed, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §23 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1091](#), on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce. The examining attorney will withdraw the refusal if the applicant submits an acceptable allegation of use.

If the application is based solely on §44, the applicant may seek registration on the Supplemental Register without alleging use in commerce or use anywhere in the world. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.47\(b\)](#); [TMEP §1009](#). However, the §44 application for a trademark or service mark must include the required verified statement of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. See [15 U.S.C. §§1126\(d\), \(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\), 1304.02\(b\)\(i\), and 1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the required verified statement for a collective or certification mark application based on §44.

815.03 Filing on Supplemental Register Is Not an Admission That the Mark Has Not Acquired Distinctiveness

Under [15 U.S.C. §1095](#), registration of a mark on the Supplemental Register does not constitute an admission that the mark has not acquired distinctiveness.

815.04 Basis for Refusal of Registration of Matter That Is Incapable

When the examining attorney refuses registration on the Supplemental Register on the ground that the proposed mark is incapable of distinguishing the applicant's goods or services, the examining attorney must cite §§23(c) and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\), 1127](#), as a basis for refusal. See *In re Controls Corp. of Am.*, 46 USPQ2d 1308, 1309 n.2 (TTAB 1998).

816 Amending Application to Supplemental Register

816.01 How to Amend

If an application meets the requirements noted in [TMEP §815.02](#), the application may be amended by requesting that the words "Principal Register" be changed to "Supplemental Register," or that "the application is amended to the Supplemental Register."

An application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act cannot be amended to the Supplemental Register. Trademark Act §68(a)(4), [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\)](#) and [2.75\(c\)](#).

816.02 Effective Filing Date

Intent-to-Use Applications

As noted in [TMEP §815.02](#), an intent-to-use applicant may file an amendment to the Supplemental Register only after the applicant has begun using the mark and filed an acceptable allegation of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.47\(d\)](#). In such a case, if the application is based *solely* on §1(b), the effective filing date of the application is the filing date of the allegation of use, i.e., the date on which the applicant met the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) for an amendment to allege use (*see* [TMEP §1104.01](#)), or [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#) for a statement of use (*see* [TMEP §1109.01](#)). [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\)](#); [TMEP §1102.03](#). When the applicant files an allegation of use that complies with the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) or [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#) and an amendment to the Supplemental Register in response to a refusal, the examining attorney must follow the procedures outlined in [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#).

Amendment of an application from the Supplemental to the Principal Register does not change the effective filing date of an application. *Kraft Grp. LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837 (TTAB 2009) (holding that the filing date did not change when an applicant who originally sought registration on the Supplemental Register, without alleging use in commerce, amended to seek registration on the Principal Register under §1(b)).

Applications Filed Before November 16, 1989

Prior to November 16, 1989, one year's lawful use of the mark in commerce was required to apply for registration on the Supplemental Register. Effective November 16, 1989, an applicant may apply for registration on the Supplemental Register at any time after commencing use of the mark in commerce.

An applicant may amend a pending application to request registration on the Supplemental Register at any time after use of the mark has commenced. The date of the amendment to the Supplemental Register becomes the effective filing date of the application if: (1) the applicant had not used the mark in commerce for one year before the application filing date; and (2) the applicant amends to the Supplemental Register on or after November 16, 1989.

See also [TMEP §§206–206.04](#) regarding effective filing date.

816.03 Amendment to Different Register

Although there is no restriction on the number of times an applicant may amend from one register to another, one amendment is usually sufficient, and subsequent amendments should be avoided except for unusual circumstances.

816.04 Amendment After Refusal

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the applicant may amend to the Supplemental Register after a refusal to register on the Principal Register, including a final refusal. If the final refusal was under §2(e)(1), §2(e)(2), or §2(e)(4) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), [1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), [1052\(e\)\(4\)](#), or on grounds pertaining to other non-inherently distinctive subject matter, amendment to the Supplemental Register is procedurally an acceptable response. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.75](#). When the applicant files an allegation of use that complies with the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) or [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#) and an amendment to the Supplemental Register in response to a refusal, the examining attorney must follow the procedures outlined in [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#).

An amendment to the Supplemental Register after refusal presents a new issue requiring consideration by the examining attorney, unless the amendment is irrelevant to the outstanding refusal. If the examining attorney determines that the proposed mark is incapable of identifying and distinguishing the applicant's

goods or services, the examining attorney must issue a nonfinal refusal of registration on the Supplemental Register, under §§23 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1091, 1127](#). See [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#).

The applicant may respond by arguing the merits of the examining attorney's refusal of registration on the Principal Register and, in the alternative, request registration on the Supplemental Register. An applicant may not, however, state that it "reserves the right" to amend to the Supplemental Register if the refusal is not withdrawn or is affirmed on appeal. *In re Integrated Embedded*, 120 USPQ2d 1504, 1511(TTAB2016) (Board stating the "[a]pplicant cannot 'reserve a right' that does not exist"). If the examining attorney is not persuaded to withdraw the refusal, but would accept the amendment, the applicant must be given the option of registration on the Supplemental Register or going forward with the appeal on the underlying refusal. This should be done by telephone or e-mail, with a Note to the File in the record indicating the applicant's decision, wherever possible. If the applicant wants to appeal, or if the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must issue a written action continuing the underlying refusal and noting that the amendment to the Supplemental Register is deemed acceptable and will not be an issue on appeal.

Similarly, the applicant may seek registration on the Principal Register based on acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), and, in the alternative, on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1212.02\(c\)](#).

An applicant may not seek registration of a mark on both the Principal and Supplemental Registers in the same application. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1091](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.46, 2.47](#). Therefore, if an applicant responds to a refusal or requirement by expressly amending to the Supplemental Register as to only certain goods/services/classes, the examining attorney will not accept the request to amend unless it is also accompanied by a request to divide. See [TMEP §§801.02\(b\), 1110-1110.10](#).

A mark in an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act cannot be amended to the Supplemental Register. Trademark Act §68(a)(4), [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\), 2.75\(c\)](#).

816.05 Amendment After Decision on Appeal

An applicant may not amend to the Supplemental Register after the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has affirmed a refusal of registration on the Principal Register. After having elected one of the remedies available for contesting the basis for the refusal, namely, appeal rather than amendment to the Supplemental Register, and having pursued the remedy to a conclusion, the applicant may not return to its previous position and pursue another remedy for the same refusal anew. In the following cases, the USPTO refused to grant petitions to reopen prosecution and return jurisdiction to the examining attorney to consider an amendment to the Supplemental Register after decision on appeal: *Ex parte Simoniz Co.*, 161 USPQ 365 (Comm'r Pats. 1969); *Ex parte Helene Curtis Indus., Inc.*, 134 USPQ 73 (Comm'r Pats. 1962); *Ex parte Sightmaster Corp.*, 95 USPQ 43 (Comm'r Pats. 1951). See also [TMEP §1501.06](#) and cases cited therein.

The applicant may file a new application requesting registration on the Supplemental Register.

817 Preparation of Application for Publication or Registration

When an application is ready to be approved for publication or registration, the examining attorney must carefully review the application record to ensure the accuracy of the information contained therein and to ensure that all information that must be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration has been properly entered into the Trademark database. The type of information that must be printed includes:

- (1) Disclaimer statements ([TMEP §§1213–1213.11](#));
- (2) Notations of acquired distinctiveness, i.e., “2(f)” or “2(f) in part as to . . .,” as appropriate ([TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#));
- (3) Lining and/or stippling statements, if necessary ([TMEP §808.01\(b\)](#));
- (4) Consent to register a name or portrait and/or statements that a name or portrait does or does not identify a living individual ([TMEP §§813.01–813.01\(c\)](#));
- (5) Translations of non-English wording and transliterations of non-Latin characters in the mark, or statements that the non-English wording or transliterated term has no meaning in English ([TMEP §§809.01\(a\), 809.03](#));
- (6) Ownership of related United States registrations ([TMEP §812](#));
- (7) Description of mark statements ([TMEP §§808–808.03\(g\)](#));
- (8) Dates of use of the mark in another form ([TMEP §903.07](#)); and
- (9) Color claims and color location statements ([TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#)).

All statements in the Trademark database relating to the above-listed items will automatically be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate. Therefore, examining attorneys must ensure that information that must *not* be printed (e.g., claims of ownership of unrelated or cancelled United States registrations, statements such as disclaimers that have been amended and are no longer valid, or unnecessary §2(f) statements) is deleted from the Trademark database. The documents containing the information deleted from the Trademark database will remain of record for informational purposes. It is not necessary to notify the applicant that the information will not be printed. If an applicant provides information by phone that does not need to be printed (e.g., a statement that a particular term has no meaning in the relevant industry), the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File in the record detailing the information that will not be entered into the database.

In addition, the examining attorney must check to ensure the accuracy of the following critical data elements:

- (1) The mark;
- (2) The register for which application is made;
- (3) The identification of goods and/or services;
- (4) International classification;
- (5) Filing date;
- (6) Dates of use for each class, if applicable;
- (7) Foreign application and registration data, if applicable;
- (8) Whether §1(b) of the Act is a basis for registration;
- (9) In a multiple-basis application, which goods are covered by which basis; and
- (10) In concurrent use cases, information as to the proposed geographic limitation.

If any of the above items are not accurately entered into the Trademark database, the examining attorney must ensure that the necessary correction(s) are made.

If there has been an assignment, the examining attorney must check the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO to ensure that there is a clear chain of title, and ensure that the change of ownership is entered into the Trademark database, if necessary. See [TMEP §§502.02\(a\)](#) and [502.02\(c\)](#).

818 Application Checklist

This section may be used to determine whether materials submitted as a trademark or service mark application are complete, and to ensure that appropriate requirements and refusals are made. See [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#) and

[TMEP §202](#) regarding the elements that must be received before the USPTO will grant a filing date to an application.

An application for trademark or service mark registration must include the following:

- (1) a clear drawing of the mark ([37 C.F.R. §§2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#), [2.51–2.54](#); [TMEP §§202.01](#), [807–807.18](#));
- (2) a verified statement signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.33](#); [TMEP §§804–804.05](#));
- (3) a written application that includes the following:
 - (a) the date on which the application was signed ([37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §804.03](#));
 - (b) the applicant's name, and DBA designation if appropriate ([37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §§803.02–803.02\(c\)](#));
 - (c) the applicant's legal entity ([TMEP §§803.03–803.03\(k\)](#));
 - (d) the country of which the applicant is a citizen, or the state or country of incorporation or organization of a juristic applicant ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)–\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §803.04](#));
 - (e) if the applicant is a domestic partnership or domestic joint venture, the names and citizenship (or state or country of incorporation or organization) of the general partners or active members of the joint venture ([37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\)](#), [\(iv\)](#); [TMEP §§803.03\(b\)](#), [803.04](#));
 - (f) the applicant's domicile and post office address ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §803.05](#));
 - (g) a statement that the applicant is using the mark in commerce in a §1(a) application, or has a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce in an application under §1(b) or §44 ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(C\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1126\(d\)\(2\)](#), [\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#));
 - (h) an identification of the goods/services ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §§1402–1402.15](#));
 - (i) the class(es) of the goods/services, if known to the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(7\)](#); [TMEP §§1401–1401.14](#));
 - (j) the dates when the mark was first used and first used in commerce with the goods/services in each class, in an application under §1(a) ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#), [\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §§903–903.08](#));
 - (k) if the applicant claims priority under §44(d), a claim of the benefit of the applicant's first-filed foreign application in a treaty country within the preceding six months, specifying the filing date, country, and serial number of such application ([15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §§1003–1003.08](#));
 - (l) a basis for filing ([37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(a\)\(5\)](#), [2.34](#); [TMEP §§806–806.05](#));
 - (m) an averment by the person making the verification that he or she believes the applicant to be the owner of the mark sought to be registered in an application under §1(a), or to be entitled to use the mark in commerce in a §1(b) or §44 application ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(A\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)\(A\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §804.02](#));
 - (n) an averment that the mark is in use in commerce in a §1(a) application ([37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#); [TMEP §901](#));
 - (o) an averment that, to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other person, firm, corporation, or association has the right to use such mark in commerce either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods of the other person, to cause

confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)\(D\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §804.02](#));

(p) a description of the mark, if the mark is not in standard characters ([37 C.F.R. §§2.37](#), [2.52\(b\)\(5\)](#); [TMEP §§808–808.03\(g\)](#));

(q) if the mark includes color, a color claim naming the colors that are a feature of the mark, and a separate statement describing where the color(s) appear on the mark. ([37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#));

(r) a translation of non-English wording and transliteration of non-Latin characters in the mark, if any ([TMEP §§809–809.03](#));

(s) a statement that identifies any living individual whose name or likeness the mark comprises and indicates that his or her consent is of record, or a statement that the name or portrait does not identify a living individual, if appropriate ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§813.01–813.01\(c\)](#));

(t) a claim of the applicant's ownership of prior registrations of the same or similar marks, if any, if the owner(s) last listed in the USPTO's records for such prior registration(s) differs from the owner(s) listed in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.36](#); [TMEP §812](#)); and

(u) if the applicant seeks to register the mark in standard characters, a statement that "The mark consists of standard characters without claim to any particular font style, size, or color" ([TMEP §807.03\(a\)](#));

(4) a designation of a domestic representative is encouraged, if the applicant is not domiciled in the United States ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.24](#); [TMEP §610](#));

(5) a filing fee for each class of goods/services ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(1\)](#), [\(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§810–810.02](#));

(6) in a §44(e) application, a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of the registration in the applicant's country of origin, and a translation of the foreign registration if it is not in English ([15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §§1004.01–1004.01\(b\)](#)); and

(7) in a §1(a) application, one specimen for each class ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#), [2.56\(a\)](#), [2.86\(a\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)](#)).

See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#) and [1052\(d\)](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.99](#), and [TMEP §1207.04–\(d\)\(i\)](#) regarding requirements for applications for concurrent use registration.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.44](#) and [TMEP §§1303.01–1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the requirements for collective trademark and collective service mark applications; [37 C.F.R. §2.44](#) and [TMEP §§1304.02–1304.02\(d\)](#) regarding collective membership mark applications, and [37 C.F.R. §2.45](#) and [TMEP §§1306.02–1306.02\(d\)](#) regarding certification mark applications.

The following are substantive grounds for refusal. Registration may be refused on the ground that:

(1) The applicant is not the owner of the mark ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §1201](#));

(2) The subject matter for which registration is sought does not function as a mark ([15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), [1127](#)) because, for example, the proposed mark:

(a) is used solely as a trade name ([TMEP §1202.01](#));

(b) is functional, i.e., consists of a utilitarian design feature of the goods or their packaging ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#); [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)–1202.02\(a\)\(viii\)](#));

(c) is a nondistinctive configuration of the goods or their packaging ([TMEP §§1202.02\(b\)–1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#));

(d) is mere ornamentation ([TMEP §§1202.03–1202.03\(g\)](#));

- (e) is the generic name for the goods or services ([TMEP §§1209.01\(c\)–1209.01\(c\)\(iii\)](#)); or
- (f) is the title of a single creative work or the name of an author or performing artist ([TMEP §§1202.08–1202.08\(f\)](#), [1202.09–1202.09\(b\)](#));
- (3) The proposed mark comprises immoral or scandalous matter ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#); [TMEP §1203.01](#));
- (4) The proposed mark is deceptive ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1203.02–1203.02\(g\)](#));
- (5) The proposed mark comprises matter that may disparage or falsely suggest a connection with persons, institutions, beliefs, or national symbols, or bring them into contempt or disrepute ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1203.03–1203.03\(c\)\(iii\)](#));
- (6) The proposed mark comprises the flag, coat of arms, or other insignia of the United States or any State, municipality, or foreign nation ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#); [TMEP §§1204–1204.05](#));
- (7) The applicant’s use of the mark is or would be unlawful because it is prohibited by statute ([TMEP §§1205–1205.02](#));
- (8) The proposed mark comprises a name, portrait, or signature identifying a particular living individual without the individual’s written consent, or the name, portrait, or signature of a deceased president of the United States during his widow’s life, without written consent of the widow ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§1206–1206.05](#));
- (9) The proposed mark so resembles a previously registered mark as to be likely, when used with the applicant’s goods and/or services, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#); [TMEP §§1207–1207.04\(g\)\(i\)](#));
- (10) The proposed mark is merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive of the applicant’s goods and/or services ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§1209–1209.04](#));
- (11) The proposed mark is primarily geographically descriptive of the applicant’s goods and/or services ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1210.01\(a\)](#));
- (12) The proposed mark is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of the applicant’s goods and/or services ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §1210.01\(b\)](#));
- (13) The proposed mark is primarily merely a surname ([15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §§1211–1211.02\(b\)\(vii\)](#)); or
- (14) The proposed mark merely identifies a character in a creative work ([TMEP §1202.10](#)).

An applicant may submit a claim and proof of distinctiveness of the mark or a portion of the mark, under §2(f). *See* [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#); [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#).

A mark that is capable of distinguishing the applicant's goods or services may be registrable on the Supplemental Register, in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. *See* [15 U.S.C §§1091–1096](#); [TMEP §§815–815.04](#).

The examining attorney will require a disclaimer of an unregistrable component of an otherwise registrable mark. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1056](#); [TMEP §§1213–1213.11](#).

819 TEAS Plus

TEAS Plus permits an applicant who files an application for registration of a trademark or service mark based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#) or [§1126](#), to pay a reduced filing fee of \$225 per class, if the applicant:

- (1) Files a complete application, using the USPTO's TEAS Plus form, available at <http://www.uspto.gov>;
- (2) Agrees to file certain communications regarding the application, such as responses to Office actions, through TEAS; and
- (3) Agrees to receive communications concerning the application by e-mail.

The requirements that must be met at the time of filing are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§819.01–819.01\(q\)](#)), and the requirements that must be met during the pendency of the application are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(b\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§819.02–819.02\(b\)](#)). If an applicant files a TEAS Plus application but does not meet these requirements, the applicant will be required to pay an additional TEAS Plus processing fee of \$125 per class. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#). *See* [TMEP §819.04](#).

819.01 TEAS Plus Filing Requirements

To be eligible for the reduced fee, a TEAS Plus application must request registration of a trademark or service mark on the Principal Register, and must include the following at the time of filing:

- *Applicant's Name and Address*;
- *Applicant's Legal Entity and Citizenship* (or state or country of incorporation of a juristic applicant);
- *Paper Correspondence Address*. A name and address for paper correspondence;
- *E-mail Correspondence Address and Authorization*. An e-mail correspondence address and authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence to the applicant by e-mail;
- *Filing Basis or Bases* . One or more bases for filing, and all requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.34](#) for each basis;
- *Identification and Classification of Goods/Services*. A correctly classified and definite identification of goods/services taken directly from the USPTO's *Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual* ("USPTO ID Manual"), available through the TEAS Plus form;
- *Filing Fee*. A filing fee per class for all classes listed in the application;
- *Signed Verification*. A verified statement, dated and signed by a properly authorized person;
- *Drawing*. A clear drawing of the mark comprising either: (1) a claim of standard characters and the mark, typed in the appropriate TEAS Plus field; or (2) a digitized image of a mark in special form. If the mark includes color, the digitized image must show the mark in color;
- *Color Claim and Description of Color(s)*. If the mark includes color, a claim that the color(s) is a feature of the mark; and a statement in the "Description of the Mark" field naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appears on the mark;
- *Description of Mark*. If the mark is not in standard characters, a description of the mark;
- *Prior Registrations for Same Mark*. If the applicant owns one or more registrations for the same mark, and the last listed owner(s) of the prior registration(s) differs from the owner of the application, a claim of ownership of the registration(s), identified by the U.S. registration number(s);
- *Translation*. If the mark includes foreign wording, a translation of that wording;
- *Transliteration of Non-Latin Characters*. If the mark includes non-Latin characters, a transliteration of those characters;
- *Consent to Registration of Name or Portrait*. If the mark includes an individual's name or portrait, either: (1) a statement that identifies the living individual whose name or likeness the mark comprises, and written consent of the individual; or (2) a statement that the name or portrait does not identify a living individual;
- *Concurrent Use* . If the application is a concurrent use application, the application must meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.42](#);
- *Multiple-Class Applications* . If the application contains goods/services in more than one class, the application must meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.86](#); and

- *Section 44 Applications.* In a §44 application, the scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign application or registration.

[37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)](#).

As long as the applicant has made a reasonable attempt to supply the required information in the initial application, the applicant has met the TEAS Plus filing requirements and generally will not lose TEAS Plus status if the information is later amended, either in response to an examining attorney's requirement or on the applicant's initiative, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §819.01\(a\)–\(q\)](#) for further guidance as to when the additional fee will be required in particular situations.

If an applicant files a TEAS Plus application but does not meet these requirements, the examining attorney must issue an Office action requiring the applicant to pay the additional TEAS Plus processing fee. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.22\(c\)](#). If a required field is filled with irrelevant or clearly inappropriate information, the required element will be considered omitted (e.g., if the notation “???” is entered as the translation in a mark that includes foreign wording).

When an application loses TEAS Plus status, the application will be examined as a regular TEAS application. The application will retain its original filing date, assuming that the initial application met the minimum filing requirements required of all applications, which are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#). The examining attorney must perform the proper transaction to change the application status in the USPTO's automated systems.

819.01(a) Type of Mark

TEAS Plus is available only to applicants seeking registration of a trademark or service mark on the Principal Register under §1 and/or §44 of the Trademark Act. Applications for certification marks, collective marks, and collective membership marks and applications for registration on the Supplemental Register cannot be filed using TEAS Plus. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(d\)](#).

The additional fee will be required if the mark in a TEAS Plus application is amended to a collective, collective membership, or certification mark.

No additional fee will be required if the application is amended from the Principal to the Supplemental Register, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

TEAS Plus does not apply to applications filed under §66(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), because they cannot be filed through TEAS.

819.01(b) Applicant's Name and Address

The application must include the applicant's name and address. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(1\)](#). The additional fee will be required if this information is omitted. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.22\(c\)](#).

If the application includes this information, no additional fee will be required if the application is amended to clarify the information or to correct an inadvertent error, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

819.01(c) Applicant's Legal Entity and Citizenship

The application must include the applicant's legal entity. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(2\)](#). The application must also set forth the citizenship of an individual applicant, or the state or country of incorporation or organization of a juristic applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(3\)](#). The additional fee will be required if this information is omitted. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(c\)](#).

If the application includes this information, no additional fee will be required if the application is amended to clarify the information or correct an inadvertent error, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

Trademark Rule 2.22(a)(4) requires that where the applicant is a partnership, the application must include the names and citizenship of the applicant's general partners. *Note* : The requirement for the names and citizenship of the general partners applies only to domestic partnerships. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §803.04](#).

819.01(d) Name and Address for Paper Correspondence

The application must include a name and address to which the USPTO can send paper correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(5\)](#). The additional fee will be required if this information is omitted. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(c\)](#). The application must also include an e-mail address and an authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence by e-mail. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §819.01\(e\)](#). The USPTO will send most official correspondence to the applicant by e-mail, but a paper correspondence address is also required.

If the application includes this information, the applicant will not lose TEAS Plus status if the application is amended to clarify the information or to correct an inadvertent error, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

819.01(e) E-mail Address and Authorization for the USPTO to Send Correspondence by E-Mail

The application must include an e-mail address and an authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence by e-mail. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(6\)](#). TEAS Plus will not accept transmission of an application that does not include this information.

If the application includes an e-mail address and an authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence by e-mail, no additional fee will be required if the e-mail address is amended to correct an inadvertent error in the address prior to correspondence from the USPTO being returned as undeliverable, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment, or if the applicant changes the e-mail address via TEAS (*see* [TMEP §609.02\(b\)](#)).

The additional fee will be required if the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner files a change of correspondence address, and the correspondence address change does not authorize e-mail correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(b\)\(2\), \(c\)](#); [TMEP §819.02\(a\)](#). The applicant cannot avoid paying the fee by subsequently agreeing to authorize e-mail correspondence.

819.01(f) Basis or Bases for Filing

The application must include at least one basis for filing under §1 and/or §44 of the Act that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.34](#). If more than one basis is set forth, the applicant must comply with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.34](#) for each asserted basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(7\)](#). Otherwise, applicant will lose TEAS Plus status and will be required to pay the TEAS Plus processing fee.

In a multiple-basis application, if the applicant fails to comply with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.34](#) for one of the bases claimed in the initial application, the applicant cannot avoid paying the TEAS Plus processing fee by deleting the relevant basis.

819.01(f)(i) Section 1(a) - Use in Commerce

The requirements for establishing a §1(a) basis are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(1\)](#). See also [TMEP §806.01\(a\)](#).

Specimen(s). The application must include one specimen showing how the applicant uses the mark in commerce for each class of goods/services. TEAS Plus will not accept transmission of a §1(a) application that does not include an attachment in the “Specimen” field. As long as the specimen depicts the mark, no additional fee will be required if registration is refused because the specimen is unacceptable.

An additional fee will be required if the mark on the specimen is materially different from the mark on the drawing. If the marks on the specimen and the drawing are materially different, the applicant has, in effect, failed to submit a specimen showing use of the mark sought to be registered. However, no additional fee will be required if the difference between the mark on the specimen and the mark on the drawing is not material.

Example: The mark on the drawing is ZZZ, and the mark on the specimen is ZEBRAMAX. Amending the drawing to match the specimen would materially alter the mark on the drawing, so the applicant, in effect, has failed to submit a specimen showing use of the mark on the drawing. As a result, the applicant loses TEAS Plus status and the examining attorney will require the additional fee.

Example: The mark on the drawing is ZEBRAMAXX, and the mark on the specimen is ZEBRAMAX. The mark on the drawing is not a substantially exact representation of the mark on the specimen, but the difference between the marks is not material, so the applicant may amend the drawing, or submit a substitute specimen showing use of the mark on the drawing, without paying the additional fee.

Verified Statement of Use in Commerce. The application must include a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services listed in the application. The TEAS Plus form will always include this statement when the applicant asserts a §1(a) basis. See [TMEP §819.01\(l\)](#) regarding verification.

Dates of Use. The application must include a date of first use of the mark anywhere and a date of first use of the mark in commerce for each class of goods/services. When the applicant indicates that it is filing under §1(a), the TEAS Plus form brings up free-text fields in which applicant must type the date of first use anywhere and date of first use in commerce. TEAS Plus will not accept the transmission unless these fields are completed in the appropriate format (MM/DD/YYYY). The applicant will not lose TEAS Plus status if the dates are later amended, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS.

819.01(f)(ii) Section 1(b) - Intent to Use

A §1(b) application must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services listed in the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#). The TEAS Plus form will always include this statement when the applicant asserts a §1(b) basis. See [TMEP §819.01\(i\)](#) regarding verification.

819.01(f)(iii) Section 44(e) - Foreign Registration

The requirements for establishing a §44(e) basis are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)](#). See also [TMEP §806.01\(d\)](#). The application must include a digitized image of a copy, a certification, or a certified copy of a registration in the applicant's country of origin showing that the mark has been registered in that country, and that the registration is in full force and effect. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). If the foreign registration is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation. *Id.*

The following are examples of situations where an additional fee will be required:

- *Foreign Registration Omitted* . TEAS Plus will not accept transmission of a §44(e) application that does not include an attachment in the "Foreign Registration" field. The additional fee will be required if the applicant attaches inappropriate material, such as a copy of the drawing or of the foreign application . [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(c\)](#).
- *Translation of Foreign Registration Omitted* . [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(7\), 2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). The additional fee will be required if the foreign registration is not in the English language and the applicant does not include a translation.
- *Mark Not on Foreign Registration* . [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(7\), 2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). The additional fee will be required if the mark shown in the drawing does not appear on the foreign registration.
- *Material Alteration* . [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(7\), 2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). The additional fee will be required if the mark on the drawing is a material alteration of the mark on the foreign registration. However, no additional fee will be required if the difference between the mark on the foreign registration and the mark on the drawing is not material.

Example: The mark on the drawing is HI-TECH, and the mark on the foreign registration is HI-TECH! The mark on the drawing is unacceptable because it is not a substantially exact representation of the mark on the foreign registration, but the difference between the marks is not material, so the applicant may amend the drawing to match the foreign registration without paying the additional fee.

Example: The mark on the drawing is HI-TECH, and the mark on the foreign registration is TECHNIQUES. Amending the drawing to match the foreign registration would materially alter the mark on the drawing. The applicant loses TEAS Plus status and must pay the additional fee.

- *Goods/Services Exceed Scope of Foreign Registration* . The additional fee will be required if the examining attorney determines that the goods/services for which registration is sought under §44(e) in the U.S. application exceed the scope of those in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(8\)](#).

Foreign Registration Due to Expire - No Fee Required . No additional fee will be required if the foreign registration will expire before the U.S. registration will issue, and the applicant does not submit evidence in the initial application that the foreign registration will be in effect when the U.S. registration issues. Prior to registration, however, the applicant will be required to submit a digitized image of a copy, a certification, or a certified copy from the country of origin to establish that the foreign registration has been renewed. See [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\)](#).

Bona Fide Intention to Use the Mark in Commerce . The application must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services listed in the application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\), 2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#). The TEAS Plus form will always include this statement when the applicant asserts a §44(e) basis. See [TMEP §819.01\(l\)](#) regarding verification.

819.01(f)(iv) Section 44(d)

The requirements for establishing a filing basis under §44(d) are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)](#). See also [TMEP §806.01\(c\)](#).

Claim of Priority Filed Within Six Months of Foreign Filing . The additional fee will be required if the claim of priority is not filed through TEAS within six months of the filing date of the foreign application. The applicant can submit the priority claim after the filing date of the U.S. application, as long as the priority claim is filed within six months after the foreign filing. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(7\), 2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#).

First Filed Application . The applicant must: (a) specify the filing date and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or (b) state that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority. The additional fee will be required if applicant does not meet this requirement. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(7\), 2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#).

Goods/Services Exceed Scope of Foreign Registration . The additional fee will be required if the examining attorney determines that the goods/services for which registration is sought under §44 in the U.S. application exceed the scope of those in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(8\)](#).

Serial Number of Foreign Application Omitted - No Fee Required. No additional fee is required if a §44(d) filing basis is asserted and the applicant fails to specify the serial number of the foreign application in the initial application, because some applicants will not yet know the serial number of the foreign application at the time of filing in the United States. However, the serial number must be provided before the application can be approved for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#).

Bona Fide Intention to Use the Mark in Commerce . The application must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services listed in the application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\), 2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). The TEAS Plus form will always include this statement when the applicant asserts a §44(d) basis. See [TMEP §819.01\(l\)](#) regarding verification.

819.01(g) Identification and Classification of Goods/Services

USPTO ID Manual . The application must include correctly classified goods and/or services, with an identification of goods/services taken directly from the USPTO ID Manual, available through the TEAS Plus form. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(8\)](#). The TEAS Plus form will automatically provide the correct class for goods/services selected from the USPTO ID Manual, and it will not permit the applicant to edit the “Classification” field.

To enter an identification of goods/services, the TEAS Plus form will instruct the applicant to enter search terms appropriate for the desired goods/services within the identified field on the TEAS Plus form. The TEAS Plus system will then retrieve relevant entries from the USPTO ID Manual, and the applicant must select one or more of the entries.

Amendment of Identification. No additional fee is required if the identification of goods/services is acceptable and correctly classified as filed, but is later amended, either in response to a requirement or on the applicant's initiative. This is true even if the amendment is unacceptable.

Example : The goods are identified in the application as "pants" and "shirts," and the applicant files a voluntary amendment to "pants, shirts and dresses." The examining attorney will refuse the amended identification because "dresses" is beyond the scope of the original identification ([37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#)), but no additional fee will be required.

Fill-in-the-Blank Element. Some USPTO ID Manual entries require the applicant to complete parenthetical information (e.g., "specify the function of the programs"). The display of such entries will include a free-text field so the applicant can type the necessary information, following the instructions within the listing. If an applicant attempts to use such a listing without completing the required information, TEAS Plus will generate an error message.

No additional fee is required if the identification of goods/services has a fill-in-the-blank element, and the applicant inserts information that is a reasonable attempt to supply the required information in accordance with the instructions, but requires amendment because the inserted information: (1) sets forth goods/services in another class (e.g., headgear, namely, football helmets (headgear that is clothing is in Class 25, helmets are in Class 9)); (2) is indefinite (e.g., maternity clothing, namely, sportswear); or (3) is inaccurate (*see* [TMEP §1402.05](#)).

However, an additional fee is required if the applicant leaves the fill-in-the-blank element empty, inserts information that is clearly inappropriate for the selected identification, or inserts additional goods/services that are unrelated to the selected identification. For example, an additional fee is required if the goods/services in the original application are identified as follows:

- "processed meat, namely, *laptop computers*;"
- "bicycle parts, namely, *bicycle parts*;"
- "cutlery, namely forks, knives, and *rain jackets for dogs*;" or
- "sound recordings featuring music, *and sunglasses*."

In these situations, the applicant has, in effect, failed to submit an identification from the USPTO ID Manual. The additional fee is required even if the applicant deletes the unacceptable terminology.

Classification. Trademark Rule 2.22(a)(8) indicates that if the applicant classified the goods/services in the wrong class in the initial application, the applicant will lose TEAS Plus status and will be required to pay the additional fee for all classes in the application. However, this is unlikely to occur, because the TEAS Plus form will automatically provide the correct class for goods/services selected from the USPTO ID Manual in the TEAS Plus form, and it will not permit the applicant to edit the "Classification" field. No additional fee is required if the identification is acceptable and correctly classified as filed, but is amended during examination to add or substitute another class (e.g., amendment from "headwear" in Class 25 to "protective helmets for sports" in Class 9; or amendment from "footwear" in Class 25 to "orthopedic footwear" in Class 10), as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §819.03](#) regarding the addition of classes to a TEAS Plus application.

Section 44 - Goods/Services Exceed Scope of Foreign Registration . In a §44 application, the additional fee is required if the examining attorney determines that the goods/services for which registration is sought under §44 in the U.S. application exceed the scope of those in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(8\)](#).

819.01(h) Filing Fee

The application must include a filing fee for each class of goods/services as required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(10\)](#). TEAS Plus will not accept transmission of an application that does not include a fee for each class.

See [TMEP §819.03](#) regarding the fee for adding a class during examination.

819.01(i) Drawing

The application must include a clear drawing of the mark comprising either: (1) a claim of standard characters and the mark, typed in the appropriate TEAS Plus field; or (2) a digitized image of a mark in special form. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(12\)](#). TEAS Plus requires the applicant to indicate whether the mark is stylized or in standard characters, and will not accept the transmission unless the applicant selects one of these options.

If the applicant claims standard characters, TEAS Plus will not accept transmission unless something has been typed in the appropriate field. The TEAS Plus system will generate a digitized image of the standard character mark and attach it to the application.

A “clear drawing of the mark” is the same standard used in [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#), which sets forth the requirements for receipt of an application filing date. Thus, if the TEAS Plus application does not include a clear drawing of the mark, the application will be denied a filing date, in accordance with standard procedures for processing informal applications (*see* [TMEP §§202–202.03](#) and [204–204.03](#)). If the application meets the requirement for a clear drawing of the mark, the applicant will not lose TEAS Plus status if the examining attorney requires amendment of the drawing because it does not meet all the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §§2.51–2.53.

Marks That Include Color . If the mark includes color, the drawing must show the mark in color, or the applicant will lose TEAS Plus status. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(12\)](#). The application must also include a color claim and a statement in the “Description of the Mark” field naming the color(s) and describing where they appear on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(14\)](#) and [2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). *See* [TMEP §819.01\(j\)](#).

See [TMEP §§807.03–807.03\(i\)](#) for further information about standard character drawings, and [TMEP §807.05\(c\)](#) for the requirements for digitized images.

819.01(j) Color Claim

As noted above, if the mark includes color, the drawing must show the mark in color. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(12\)](#).

In addition, the application must include: (1) a claim that the color(s) is a feature of the mark; and (2) a statement in the “Description of the Mark” field naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appear on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(14\)](#) and [2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). The TEAS Plus form includes a checkbox in the “Color(s) Claimed” field to indicate whether the mark is in color. When the applicant checks this box, the applicant must name the colors claimed in the text field below the checkbox in the same “Color(s) Claimed” field. The applicant must then enter the color location statement in a separate “Description of the Mark” field.

As long as the initial application has a color drawing and applicant makes a reasonable attempt to identify the colors claimed in either the “Color(s) Claimed” field or the “Description of the Mark” field, no additional fee is required if the application is amended to clarify the information or to correct an inadvertent error, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner’s amendment. For example, applicant

will not lose TEAS Plus status if the list of colors claimed is incomplete, or if the mark description does not identify the location of the colors claimed. However, the additional fee is required if the applicant fails to identify any colors.

See [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–807.07\(a\)\(ii\)](#) for further information about color claims.

819.01(k) Description of the Mark

If the mark is not in standard characters, the application must include a description of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(15\)](#) and [2.37](#). The applicant must enter the description in the “Description of the Mark” field of the TEAS Plus application.

TEAS Plus will not accept transmission of an application that does not include either: (1) a standard character claim; or (2) a description of the mark. If the applicant makes a good faith effort to describe the mark, no additional fee is required if the description is later amended, either in response to an examining attorney’s requirement or on applicant’s initiative, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner’s amendment. However, the additional fee is required if the applicant enters completely inappropriate information in the “Description of the Mark” field.

If the mark includes color, the “Description of the Mark” field must include a statement naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appear on the mark. See [TMEP §819.01\(j\)](#) regarding color claims.

See [TMEP §§808–808.03\(g\)](#) for further information about descriptions of the mark.

819.01(l) Verification

The application must include a verified statement that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.33](#), dated and signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant pursuant to §2.193(e)(1). [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(11\)](#). If the application includes a signed verification, no additional fee is required if a substitute verification is later submitted, as long as it is submitted through TEAS.

To provide a signature, the applicant has the option of: (1) entering any combination of letters, numbers, spaces, and/or punctuation marks that the filer has adopted as a signature, placed between two forward slash (“/”) symbols in the TEAS Plus form ([37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)\(1\)](#)); (2) signing the verified statement in the traditional pen-and-ink manner, and attaching an image file of the signed document to the TEAS Plus form; or (3) completing the application online and e-mailing it to the signatory for electronic signature and automatic return via TEAS to the party who requested the signature. See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#). If the applicant elects to attach a verified statement with a pen-and-ink signature, the additional fee will be required if the attachment:

- fails to include a signature; or
- does not display the text of the verification and declaration (i.e., only displays a signature).

819.01(m) Translation and/or Transliteration

If the mark includes non-English wording, the application must include an English translation of that wording. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(16\)](#), [2.32\(a\)\(9\)](#). If the mark includes non-Latin characters, the application must include a transliteration of those characters. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(17\)](#), [2.32\(a\)\(10\)](#). Note that the TEAS Plus form

does not prompt the applicant to enter a translation or transliteration, even if either or both would be required.

If a translation and/or transliteration is omitted, the examining attorney will issue an Office action requiring the additional fee. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(c\)](#). If the initial application includes a translation and/or transliteration, no additional fee is required if the translation/transliteration is later amended, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment. However, the additional fee will be required if the translation or transliteration comprises inappropriate material, such as the notation "???"

819.01(n) Multiple-Class Applications

If the application contains goods/services in more than one class, the application must meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.86](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(9\)](#). That is, the application must include:

- (1) An identification of goods/services in each class taken directly from the USPTO ID Manual, available through the TEAS Plus form. [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(8\), 2.86\(a\)\(1\)](#); *see* [TMEP §819.01\(g\)](#);
- (2) An application filing fee for each class. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\), 2.86\(a\)\(2\)](#). TEAS Plus will not accept transmission of an application that does not include a filing fee for each class; and
- (3) Either (a) dates of use and one specimen for each class, in an application under §1(a) of the Trademark Act; or (b) a statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods/services specified in each class, in an application under §1(b) or §44 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\)](#).

For more information regarding a multiple-class application, see [TMEP §§1403-1403.06](#).

819.01(o) Consent to Registration of Name or Portrait

If the mark includes a name or portrait that could reasonably be perceived as the name or portrait of a particular living individual (*see* [TMEP §§813–813.01\(c\), 1206–1206.05](#)), the application must include either: (1) a statement that identifies the living individual whose name or likeness the mark comprises and written consent of the individual; or (2) a statement that the name or portrait does not identify a living individual. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(18\)](#).

The additional fee is required if the mark includes an individual's name or portrait, and these statements are omitted. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(c\)](#).

Exception: If the applicant fails to include a consent to use a name or portrait that appears in the mark, but the individual's consent can be presumed because the individual named or shown in the mark personally signed the application (*see* [TMEP §1206.04\(b\)](#)), the applicant will not lose TEAS Plus status.

If consent is of record in a valid registration owned by applicant, the applicant may satisfy the requirement for a consent statement by claiming ownership of the existing registration. *See* [TMEP §1206.04\(c\)](#).

If the initial application includes a statement regarding the name or likeness of an individual, no additional fee is required if the statement is later amended, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

The additional fee is required only where it is clear that the name or likeness could reasonably be perceived as that of a living individual. The fee must be charged if the mark comprises a portrait, or of a first and last name. If the mark comprises a title, such as Mrs. Smith, a surname, or a first name only, the examining attorney must consider whether the name is that of a particular living individual (*see* [TMEP §1206.03](#)), but must not require the additional fee.

Example: The mark is STEVEN JONES, and the application is silent as to whether this name identifies a living individual. The examining attorney must: (1) inquire whether the name or likeness is that of a specific living individual and advise the applicant that, if so, the individual's written consent to register the name must be submitted; and (2) require the additional TEAS Plus processing fee.

Example: The mark is DOCTOR JONES, and the application is silent as to whether this name identifies a living individual. If there is evidence that the name identifies an individual who is generally known or well known in the field relating to the relevant goods or services (*see* [TMEP §§1206.02, 1206.03](#)), the examining attorney must issue an inquiry and require the individual's written consent to register the name, but must not require the additional TEAS Plus processing fee. If there is no evidence that the individual is generally known or well known in the relevant field, the examining attorney should not inquire or require the additional fee.

Example: The mark is STEVEN, and the application is silent as to whether this name identifies a living individual. If there is no evidence that the individual is generally known or well known in the relevant field, the examining attorney should not inquire or require the additional fee. If there is evidence that the first name identifies an individual who is generally known or well known in the relevant field, the examining attorney must issue an inquiry and require the individual's written consent to register the name, but must not require the additional TEAS Plus processing fee.

See [TMEP §1206.03](#) for further information as to when the examining attorney must issue an inquiry as to whether a name or likeness is that of a particular living individual, and [TMEP §1206.02](#) regarding the connection between the individual and the relevant goods or services.

819.01(p) Prior Registration of the Same Mark

If the applicant owns one or more registrations for the *same* (i.e., identical) mark as of the application filing date, and the last listed owner(s) of the prior registration(s) differs from the owner of the application, the application must include a claim of ownership of the prior registration(s), identified by the United States registration number(s). [37 C.F.R. §§2.22\(a\)\(19\), 2.36](#). *See* [TMEP §812](#). The TEAS Plus form accepts the entry of up to three registration numbers. If the applicant owns more than three registrations for the same mark for which the last listed owner(s) of the prior registration(s) differs from the owner of the application, the TEAS Plus applicant may check the box "and others" after entering the numbers for the three claimed registrations.

The additional fee is required if a claim of ownership of registration(s) for the *same* mark, for which the last listed owner(s) of the prior registration(s) differs from the owner of the application, is omitted and the failure to claim the prior registration(s) would result in the issuance of a refusal under §2(d), [15 U.S.C §1052\(d\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.22\(c\)](#). If the initial application includes an ownership claim for the same mark, the application will not lose TEAS Plus status if the claim is later amended, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

No additional fee is required if a list of claimed registrations for the same mark is incomplete (e.g., applicant owns three registrations for the same mark and only claims two of them), but the examining attorney may require a claim of ownership of additional registrations for the same mark during examination.

No additional fee is required if an applicant fails to claim ownership of a registration(s) for a *similar* mark (e.g., mark in application is ABC and applicant fails to claim ownership of a registration for ABC WEB

BUILDERS). However, the examining attorney will require a claim of ownership of similar marks during examination, where appropriate.

819.01(q) Concurrent Use Applications

If the applicant seeks concurrent use registration, the application must comply with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.42](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(20\)](#). That is, the applicant must, to the extent of the applicant's knowledge, set forth the information required in [TMEP §1207.04\(d\)\(i\)](#).

If the elements for a concurrent use application are omitted, the examining attorney will issue an Office action requiring the additional fee. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.22\(c\)](#). If the initial application includes a concurrent use claim with the proper elements, the application will not lose TEAS Plus status if an element is later amended, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment.

See [TMEP §1207.04\(d\)\(i\)](#) for more information about the requirements for a trademark or service mark concurrent use application.

819.02 Additional Requirements for a TEAS Plus Application

819.02(a) Receipt of Communications by E-Mail

Trademark Rule 2.22(a)(6), [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(6\)](#), requires that the application as filed include an e-mail address for correspondence and an authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence concerning the application to the applicant by e-mail. Trademark Rule 2.22(b)(2), [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(b\)\(2\)](#), requires that the applicant maintain a valid e-mail correspondence address, and continue to receive correspondence by e-mail throughout the pendency of the application.

The additional fee will be required if the TEAS Plus applicant (or the applicant's qualified practitioner) files a change of correspondence address, and the correspondence address change does not authorize e-mail correspondence, or if the applicant has a change in e-mail address, but does not notify the USPTO of the new e-mail address, thereby causing correspondence from the USPTO to be undeliverable. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.22\(c\)](#). The applicant cannot avoid paying the fee by subsequently agreeing to authorize e-mail correspondence.

When issuing a nonfinal action on a TEAS Plus application, the examining attorney will include a reminder that the applicant must maintain a valid e-mail correspondence address, and continue to accept correspondence from the USPTO via e-mail throughout the examination process in order to avoid the additional fee. If the applicant files a request to change the correspondence address that does not authorize e-mail correspondence, the requirement for payment of the additional fee will be made final, assuming that the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal.

819.02(b) Additional Documents That Must be Filed Through TEAS

In addition to the filing requirements set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.22](#) (*see* [TMEP §§819.01–819.01\(q\)](#)), to maintain TEAS Plus status, the applicant must file the following documents through TEAS:

- Responses to Office actions (except notices of appeal);
- Requests for reconsideration of final Office actions;

- Requests to change the correspondence address and/or owner's address;
- Appointment and/or revocation of power of attorney;
- Appointment and/or revocation of domestic representative;
- Voluntary amendments;
- Amendments to allege use under §1(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#);
- Statements of use under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#);
- Requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#); and
- Requests to delete a §1(b) basis in a multiple-basis application.

[37 C.F.R. §2.22\(b\)\(1\)](#). The additional fee(s) for each class of goods/services will be required if the applicant files any of these documents on paper. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.22\(c\)](#).

When issuing a nonfinal action on a TEAS Plus application, the examining attorney will require that the applicant either: (1) respond through TEAS (or by examiner's amendment, if appropriate); or (2) if responding on paper, include the additional TEAS Plus processing fee with the response. If the applicant files a paper response without the required fee, the requirement for payment of the fee will be made final, assuming that the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal. See [TMEP §§714–714.06](#) regarding procedures for issuing a final refusal.

If a Notice of Allowance has issued and the applicant files a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use on paper, or any other document that is required to be filed electronically between issuance of the Notice of Allowance and filing of the statement of use, the ITU Unit staff will send a letter requiring payment of the additional fee. If the applicant fails to submit the fee, the examining attorney will require payment of the fee during examination of the statement of use.

819.03 Adding a Class During Examination

Amendments to classification are rare in TEAS Plus applications, since the identification of goods/services is taken from the USPTO ID Manual, and the TEAS Plus form does not permit the applicant to edit the "Classification" field. In the rare case where the TEAS Plus applicant amends the application to add a product or service that is within the scope of the original identification of goods/services, but is in a different class, the fee for the additional class is the reduced TEAS Plus fee, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §1403.02\(c\)](#).

Example: The applicant selects the identification "hair shampoo" in Class 3. The applicant later adds "dandruff shampoo" in Class 5, which is within the scope of the original identification. The applicant will pay the reduced TEAS Plus fee, as long as the applicant has not lost TEAS Plus status for some other reason.

If the applicant adds a class after losing TEAS Plus status, the applicant must pay the regular TEAS fee if the fee is paid through TEAS or by examiner's amendment, or the paper fee if the class is added by a paper amendment.

819.04 Procedures for Payment of TEAS Plus Processing Fee Per Class

A TEAS Plus applicant must pay a processing fee per class to have the application examined as a regular TEAS application if: (1) the initial application does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)](#); (2) the applicant files one of the documents listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(b\)\(1\)](#) on paper; or (3) the applicant files a notice of change of correspondence address that does not authorize e-mail correspondence. [37 C.F.R.](#)

[§§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.22\(b\)\(2\)](#), [\(c\)](#). The application will retain its original filing date, assuming the initial application met the minimum filing requirements that are mandatory for all applications under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#).

Processing Fee Must Be Paid for All Active Classes. If the applicant loses TEAS Plus status, the applicant must pay the TEAS Plus processing fee per class *for all classes that are in the application at the time the examining attorney issues the Office action requiring the TEAS Plus processing fee.*

Example: The original application is for two classes. The applicant loses TEAS Plus status because in the original application, the applicant failed to include a transliteration of the Chinese characters in the mark. The first Office action includes: (1) a requirement for a transliteration; (2) a requirement for the additional fee for two classes; and (3) a refusal of registration as to one class under §2(d) of the Trademark Act. If the applicant responds by submitting a transliteration and deleting the class that was refused, the applicant must pay the processing fee for two classes, because there were two classes in the application when the Office action requiring the processing fee was issued.

Example: The original application is for two classes. One of the items in the identification has a fill-in-the-blank element and requires amendment. The first Office action includes: (1) a requirement to amend the identification of goods/services; and (2) a refusal of registration because the mark is merely descriptive of the goods. The applicant responds through TEAS by deleting a class and submitting evidence that the mark has acquired distinctiveness. The examining attorney issues another refusal. If the applicant responds on paper, the applicant is only required to pay the processing fee for one class, because the applicant deleted the second class before the applicant lost TEAS Plus status.

Examiner's Amendment. If all remaining issues can be handled through a telephone or e-mail conversation with the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner, and a deposit account is used to pay the fee or an authorization to charge the fee to a credit card is submitted by fax, the fee may be collected by examiner's amendment. However, a fee cannot be charged to a deposit account by examiner's amendment unless the record contains a written authorization, signed by someone who is authorized to charge fees to the account. If there is no written authorization in the record, the applicant may submit the authorization by fax or e-mail. See [TMEP §405.03](#) regarding deposit accounts.

Combined Examiner's Amendment/Priority Action. If all of the issues except payment of the processing fee are resolved by a telephone or e-mail conversation with the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner, the examining attorney may issue a combined Examiner's Amendment/Priority Action ([TMEP §708.05](#)) to enter the amendment(s) and require payment of the TEAS Plus processing fee.

No Partial Refusal. If the applicant loses TEAS Plus status, the requirement for the TEAS Plus processing fee applies to the entire application, so an Office action requiring the processing fee can never be a partial refusal.

Paying the Processing Fee Through TEAS. To pay the TEAS Plus processing fee through TEAS, the applicant may use the TEAS Response to Office Action form or the TEAS Voluntary Amendment Not in Response to USPTO Office Action/Letter form. Also, if the requirement for the processing fee is issued in the first action, TEAS will not allow the applicant to use the TEAS ROA form to pay the fee until 48-72 hours after the Office action is entered into the Trademark database.

820 TEAS RF (Reduced Fee)

TEAS RF permits an applicant who files an application for registration of a trademark, service mark, certification mark, collective membership mark, or collective trademark based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#) or [§1126](#), to pay a reduced filing fee of \$275 per class, if the applicant:

- (1) Files an application, using the USPTO's TEAS RF application, available at <http://www.uspto.gov>;
- (2) Agrees to file certain communications regarding the application, such as responses to Office actions, through TEAS; and
- (3) Agrees to receive communications concerning the application by e-mail.

The requirements that must be met at the time of filing are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.23\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §820.01](#)) and the requirements that must be met during the pendency of the application are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.23\(b\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§820.02 – 820.02\(b\)](#)). If an applicant files a TEAS RF application but does not meet these requirements, the applicant will be required to pay an additional TEAS RF processing fee of \$125 per class. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#). *See* [TMEP §820.04](#).

820.01 TEAS RF Filing Requirements

To be eligible for the reduced fee, the TEAS RF application *must* include an e-mail correspondence address and authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence to the applicant by e-mail. [37 C.F.R. §2.23\(a\)](#).

If the application includes an e-mail address and an authorization for the USPTO to send correspondence by e-mail, no additional fee will be required if the e-mail address is amended to correct an inadvertent error in the address prior to correspondence from the Office being returned as undeliverable, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment, or if the applicant changes the e-mail address via TEAS (*see* [TMEP §609.02\(b\)](#)).

820.02 Additional Requirements for a TEAS RF Application

820.02(a) Receipt of Communications by E-Mail

Trademark Rule 2.23(b)(2), [37 C.F.R. §2.23\(b\)\(2\)](#), requires that the applicant maintain a valid e-mail correspondence address and continue to receive correspondence by e-mail throughout the pendency of the application.

If the TEAS RF applicant (or the applicant's qualified practitioner) files a change of correspondence address, and the correspondence address change does not authorize e-mail correspondence, or if the applicant has a change in e-mail address, but does not notify the USPTO of the new e-mail address, thereby causing correspondence from the USPTO to be undeliverable, the applicant will be required to pay an additional processing fee. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#) and [2.23\(c\)](#). The applicant cannot avoid paying the fee by subsequently agreeing to authorize e-mail correspondence.

When issuing a nonfinal action on a TEAS RF application, the examining attorney will include a reminder that the applicant must maintain a valid e-mail correspondence address and continue to accept correspondence from the USPTO via e-mail throughout the examination process in order to avoid the additional fee. If the applicant files a request to change the correspondence address that does not authorize e-mail correspondence, the requirement for payment of the additional fee will be made final, assuming that the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal.

820.02(b) Additional Documents That Must be Filed Through TEAS

To maintain TEAS RF status, the applicant must also file the following documents through TEAS:

Responses to Office actions (except notices of appeal);
Requests for reconsideration of final Office actions;
Requests to change the correspondence address and/or owner's address;
Appointment and/or revocation of power of attorney;
Appointment and/or revocation of domestic representative;
Voluntary amendments;
Amendments to allege use under §1(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#);
Statements of use under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#);
Requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#); and
Requests to delete a §1(b) basis in a multiple-basis application.

[37 C.F.R. §2.23\(b\)\(1\)](#). The additional fee(s) for each class of goods/services will be required if the applicant files any of these documents on paper. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#) and [2.23\(c\)](#).

When issuing a nonfinal action on a TEAS RF application, the examining attorney will require that the applicant either: (1) respond through TEAS (or by examiner's amendment, if appropriate); or (2) if responding on paper, include the additional TEAS RF processing fee with the response. If the applicant files a paper response without the required fee, the requirement for payment of the fee will be made final, assuming that the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal. See [TMEP §§714–714.06](#) regarding procedures for issuing a final refusal.

If a Notice of Allowance has issued and the applicant files a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use on paper, or any other document that is required to be filed electronically between issuance of the Notice of Allowance and filing of the statement of use, the ITU Unit staff will send a letter requiring payment of the additional fee. If the applicant fails to submit the fee, the examining attorney will require payment of the fee during examination of the statement of use.

820.03 Adding a Class During Examination

The fee to add a class to a TEAS RF application during examination is the reduced TEAS RF fee, as long as the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment and the applicant has not lost TEAS RF status for some other reason. See [TMEP §1403.02\(c\)](#).

If the applicant adds a class after losing TEAS RF status, the applicant must pay the regular TEAS fee if the fee is paid through TEAS or by examiner's amendment, or the paper fee if the class is added by a paper amendment.

820.04 Procedures for Payment of TEAS RF Processing Fee Per Class

A TEAS RF applicant must pay a processing fee per class if: (1) the initial application does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.23\(a\)](#); (2) the applicant files one of the documents listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.23\(b\)\(1\)](#) on paper; or (3) the applicant files a notice of change of correspondence address that does not authorize e-mail correspondence. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.23\(b\)\(2\)](#), [\(c\)](#). The application will retain its original filing date, assuming the initial application met the minimum filing requirements that are mandatory for all applications under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#). It will subsequently be examined as a regular TEAS application.

Processing Fee Must Be Paid for All Active Classes. If the applicant loses TEAS RF status, the applicant must pay the TEAS RF processing fee per class *for all classes that are in the application at the time the examining attorney issues the Office action requiring the TEAS RF processing fee.*

Example: The original application is for two classes. Prior to assignment of the application to an examining attorney, the applicant files an unacceptable amendment to the mark via paper correspondence. In addition to addressing the unacceptable amendment, the first Office action will include a requirement for the processing fee for the original two classes and any additional classes that might be added, provided such classes are within the scope of the original identification.

Examiner's Amendment. If all remaining issues can be handled through a telephone or e-mail conversation with the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner, and a deposit account is used to pay the fee or an authorization to charge the fee to a credit card is submitted by fax, the fee may be collected by examiner's amendment. However, a fee cannot be charged to a deposit account by examiner's amendment unless the record contains a written authorization, signed by someone who is authorized to charge fees to the account. If there is no written authorization in the record, the applicant may submit the authorization by fax or e-mail. See [TMEP §405.03](#) regarding deposit accounts.

Combined Examiner's Amendment/Priority Action. If all of the issues except payment of the processing fee are resolved by a telephone or e-mail conversation with the applicant or the applicant's qualified practitioner, the examining attorney may issue a combined Examiner's Amendment/Priority Action ([TMEP §708.05](#)) to enter the amendment(s) and require payment of the TEAS RF processing fee.

No Partial Refusal. If the applicant loses TEAS RF status, the requirement for the TEAS RF processing fee applies to the entire application, so an Office action requiring the processing fee can never be a partial refusal.

Paying the Processing Fee Through TEAS. To pay the TEAS RF processing fee through TEAS, the applicant may use the TEAS Response to Office Action ("ROA") form or the TEAS Voluntary Amendment Not in Response to USPTO Office Action/Letter form. If the requirement for the processing fee is issued in the first action, TEAS will not allow the applicant to use the TEAS ROA form to pay the fee until 48-72 hours after the Office action is entered into the Trademark database.

Chapter 900 Use in Commerce

901	Use in Commerce
901.01	Definitions
901.02	Bona Fide Use in the Ordinary Course of Trade
901.03	Commerce That May Be Lawfully Regulated By Congress
901.04	Inquiry Regarding Use in Commerce
902	Allegations of Use for §1(b) Applications
903	Dates of Use
903.01	Date of First Use Anywhere
903.02	Date of First Use in Commerce
903.03	Relation Between the Two Dates of Use
903.04	Amending Dates of Use
903.05	First Use by Predecessor or Related Company
903.06	Indefinite Dates of Use
903.06(a)	Apparent Discrepancies Between Dates of Use and Date of Execution
903.07	Dates of Use in Another Form
903.08	More than One Item of Goods or Services
904	Specimens
904.01	Number of Specimens
904.01(a)	More than One Item Specified in a Class
904.01(b)	Combined or Multiple-Class Applications
904.02	Physical Form of Specimens
904.02(a)	Electronically Filed Specimens
904.02(b)	Paper-Filed Specimens
904.02(c)	Additional Requirements
904.02(c)(i)	Other Materials Required for Examination
904.02(c)(ii)	Specimens for Marks Comprising Color
904.02(c)(iii)	Specimens for Marks Used on Publications
904.03	Material Appropriate as Specimens for Trademarks
904.03(a)	Labels and Tags
904.03(b)	Stampings
904.03(c)	Commercial Packaging
904.03(d)	Electronic and Digital Media Attachments to Paper Filings
904.03(e)	Specimens for Trademarks Identifying Computer Programs, Movies, and Videos, or Audio Recordings
904.03(f)	Specimens for Sound Marks
904.03(g)	Displays Associated with Goods
904.03(h)	Catalogs
904.03(i)	Electronic Displays
904.03(i)(A)	Picture or Description of the Goods
904.03(i)(B)	Show the Mark in Association with the Goods
904.03(i)(B)(1)	Prominence of Mark
904.03(i)(B)(2)	Placement of Mark and Proximity to the Goods
904.03(i)(C)	Ordering Information
904.03(i)(C)(1)	“Shopping Cart” and “Shopping Bag” Buttons and Links
904.03(i)(C)(2)	Telephone Numbers and E-mail Addresses
904.03(i)(C)(3)	“Contact Us,” “Customize,” or “Configure” Buttons and Links
904.03(i)(D)	Beta Websites
904.03(j)	Manuals
904.03(k)	Specimens for Marks that are Impracticable to Place on Goods, Packaging, or Displays
904.03(l)	Specimens for Motion Marks

904.03(m)	Specimens for Scent and Flavor Marks
904.04	Material Not Appropriate as Specimens for Trademarks
904.04(a)	Drawing or “Picture” of the Mark; Digitally Created Specimen
904.04(b)	Advertising Material
904.04(c)	Package Inserts
904.05	Affidavit Supporting Substitute Specimens
904.06	Translation of Matter on Specimens
904.07	Requirements for Substitute Specimens and Statutory Refusals
904.07(a)	Whether the Specimen Shows the Mark Used in Commerce
904.07(a)(i)	Action After Submission of Substitute Specimen
904.07(b)	Whether the Specimen Shows the Applied-for Mark Functioning as a Mark
904.07(b)(i)	Action After Submission of Substitute Specimen
905	Method of Use
906	Federal Registration Notice
906.01	Foreign Countries That Use Registration Symbol ®
906.02	Improper Use of Registration Symbol
906.03	Informing Applicant of Apparent Improper Use
906.04	Fraud
907	Compliance with Other Statutes

901 Use in Commerce

In a trademark or service mark application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), the mark must be in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods and services listed in the application as of the application filing date. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). The application must include a statement that the mark is in use in commerce, verified in an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.32\(a\)\(5\), 2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). See [TMEP §§804 et seq.](#) regarding verification.

In a trademark or service mark application based on “intent-to-use” under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the applicant typically begins use in commerce after the filing date. The application must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application as of the application filing date. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(k\)\(1\), 2.32\(a\)\(5\), 2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#). Prior to registration, the applicant must use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services specified in the application and file an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.72, 2.88; TMEP §902](#).

A §1 applicant must use the mark in commerce even if the applicant asserts §44(d) or §44(e), [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)-\(e\)](#), as a second basis for filing. See [TMEP §§806.02 et seq.](#) regarding filing of more than one basis.

Applicants relying *solely* on a foreign registration as the basis for registration under §44(e) of the Trademark Act are not required to assert actual use of the mark prior to registration in the United States. [TMEP §1009](#). See *Crocker Nat'l Bank v. Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce*, 223 USPQ 909 (TTAB 1984). However, to retain a valid registration, the registrant must file an affidavit or declaration of use of the mark in commerce under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) at the appropriate times, and establish use in commerce or excusable nonuse. See [TMEP §§1604 et seq.](#) regarding the affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse.

Similarly, applicants requesting an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States under §66(a) of the Trademark Act are not required to assert actual use of the mark prior to registration in the United States. However, to retain a valid registration, the registrant must file an affidavit or declaration of use of the mark in commerce under [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#) at the appropriate times, and establish use in commerce or excusable nonuse. See [37 C.F.R. §7.37](#); [TMEP §1613](#).

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)](#) for use in commerce in a collective trademark or collective service mark application, [TMEP § 1304.02\(a\)\(i\)](#) for use in commerce in a collective membership mark application, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)](#) for use in commerce in a certification mark application.

901.01 Definitions

The power of the federal government to register marks comes from the commerce clause of the Constitution. Section 1 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#), permits application for registration of “a trademark used in commerce” ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#)) or of a trademark that a person has a bona fide intention to use in commerce ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#)).

Section 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines “commerce” as “all commerce which may lawfully be regulated by Congress.” Section 45 defines “use in commerce” as follows:

The term “use in commerce” means the bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade, and not made merely to reserve a right in a mark. For purposes of this Act, a mark shall be deemed to be in use in commerce--

(1) on goods when—

(A) it is placed in any manner on the goods or their containers or the displays associated therewith or on the tags or labels affixed thereto, or if the nature of the goods makes such placement impracticable, then on documents associated with the goods or their sale, and

(B) the goods are sold or transported in commerce, and

(2) on services when it is used or displayed in the sale or advertising of services and the services are rendered in commerce, or the services are rendered in more than one State or in the United States and a foreign country and the person rendering the services is engaged in commerce in connection with the services.

901.02 Bona Fide Use in the Ordinary Course of Trade

The definition of use in commerce ([TMEP §901.01](#)) was amended by the Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988 (TLRA), Public Law 100-667, 102 Stat. 3935, to add the phrase “the bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade, and not made merely to reserve a right in a mark.” The primary purpose of the amendment was to eliminate the practice of “token use,” or use made solely to reserve rights in a mark.

The legislative history of the TLRA makes it clear that the meaning of “use in the ordinary course of trade” will vary from one industry to another. The report of the House Judiciary Committee stated that:

While use made merely to reserve a right in a mark will not meet this standard, the Committee recognizes that “the ordinary course of trade” varies from industry to industry. Thus, for example, it might be in the ordinary course of trade for an industry that sells expensive or seasonal products to make infrequent sales. Similarly, a pharmaceutical company that markets a drug to treat a rare disease will make

correspondingly few sales in the ordinary course of its trade; the company's shipment to clinical investigators during the Federal approval process will also be in its ordinary course of trade....

H.R. Rep. No. 1028, 100th Cong. 2d Sess. 15 (1988).

The report of the Senate Judiciary Committee stated:

The committee intends that the revised definition of "use in commerce" be interpreted flexibly so as to encompass various genuine, but less traditional, trademark uses, such as those made in test markets, infrequent sales of large or expensive items, or ongoing shipments of a new drug to clinical investigators by a company awaiting FDA approval....

S. Rep. No. 515, 100th Cong. 2d Sess. 44-45 (1988). *See also Paramount Pictures Corp. v. White*, 31 USPQ2d 1768, 1774 n.8 (TTAB 1994), *aff'd*, 108 F.3d 1392 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (Table).

Therefore, some factors to consider when determining compliance with the statutory requirement for a "bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade" are: (1) the amount of use; (2) the nature or quality of the transaction; and (3) what is typical use within a particular industry. *See Automedx Inc. v. Artivent Corp.*, 95 USPQ2d 1976 (TTAB 2010) (finding sales of demonstration models of portable medical ventilators to military constituted bona fide use of mark in commerce); *see also Clorox Co. v. Salazar*, 108 USPQ2d 1083, 1086 (TTAB 2013) (finding that applicant had not made bona fide use of its mark in commerce, as applicant had not sold or transported goods bearing the mark in commerce as of the application filing date).

901.03 Commerce That May Be Lawfully Regulated By Congress

The scope of federal trademark jurisdiction is commerce that may be regulated by the U.S. Congress. 15 U.S.C. §1127; *see Christian Faith Fellowship Church v. Adidas AG*, 841 F.3d 986, 120 USPQ2d 1640, 1642 (Fed. Cir. 2016) The types of commerce encompassed in this definition are interstate, territorial, and between the United States and a foreign country.

"Territorial commerce" is commerce within a territory of the United States (e.g., Guam, Puerto Rico, American Samoa, or the U.S. Virgin Islands) or between the United States and a territory of the United States.

Intrastate use of a mark may qualify as use in commerce within the meaning of the Act if the intrastate use is of a type that would, taken in the aggregate, have a direct effect on interstate commerce. *See Christian Faith Fellowship Church*, 841 F.3d at ___, 120 USPQ2d at 1645; (finding intrastate sale of two hats to out-of-state customer was "use in commerce" because such a transaction is "quintessentially economic" and, "taken in the aggregate, would cause a substantial effect on interstate commerce"); *Larry Harmon Pictures Corp. v. Williams Rest. Corp.*, 929 F.2d 662, 18 USPQ2d 1292 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (mark used to identify restaurant services rendered at a single-location restaurant serving interstate travelers is in "use in commerce"); *In re Silenus Wines, Inc.*, 557 F.2d 806, 194 USPQ 261 (C.C.P.A. 1977) (intrastate sale of imported wines by importer constitutes "use in commerce," where goods bearing labels supplied by applicant were shipped to applicant in United States); *In re Gastown, Inc.*, 326 F.2d 780, 140 USPQ 216 (C.C.P.A. 1964) (automotive service station located in one state was rendering services "in commerce" because services were available to customers travelling interstate on federal highways); *U.S. Shoe Corp. v. J. Riggs West, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1020 (TTAB 1984) (billiard parlor services satisfy the "use in commerce" requirements, where the record showed that applicant's billiard parlor services were advertised in both Kansas and New

York); *In re G.J. Sherrard Co.*, 150 USPQ 311 (TTAB 1966) (hotel located in only one state has valid use of its service mark in commerce because it has out-of-state guests, has offices in many states, and advertises in national magazines); *In re Federated Dep't Stores, Inc.*, 137 USPQ 670 (TTAB 1963) (mark used to identify retail department store services located in one state was in use in commerce, where the mark was used on credit cards issued to out-of-state residents, and on catalogs and advertisements shipped to out-of-state customers).

In some cases, services such as restaurant and hotel services have been deemed to be rendered in commerce because they are activities that have been found to be within the scope of the 1964 Civil Rights Act, which, like the Trademark Act, is predicated on the commerce clause. See *In re Ponderosa Motor Inns, Inc.*, 156 USPQ 474 (TTAB 1968); *In re Smith Oil Corp.*, 156 USPQ 62 (TTAB 1967).

The term “foreign” is not acceptable to specify the type of commerce in which a mark is used, because it does not clearly indicate that the mark is in use in a type of commerce that the U.S. Congress can lawfully regulate. Unless the “foreign commerce” involves the United States, Congress does not have the power to regulate it. Use of a mark in a foreign country does not give rise to rights in the United States if the goods or services are not sold or rendered in the United States. *Linville v. Rivard*, 41 USPQ2d 1731 (TTAB 1996), *aff'd*, 133 F.3d 1446, 45 USPQ2d 1374 (Fed. Cir. 1998); *Aktieselskabet af 21.November 2001 v. Fame Jeans Inc.*, 77 USPQ2d 1861 (TTAB 2006); *Buti v. Impresa Perosa S.R.L.*, 139 F.3d 98, 45 USPQ2d 1985 (2d Cir. 1998); *Mother's Rests. Inc. v. Mother's Bakery, Inc.*, 498 F. Supp. 847, 210 USPQ 207 (W.D.N.Y. 1980); see also *Honda Motor Co., v. Winkelmann*, 90 USPQ2d 1660 (TTAB 2009) (“[T]he evidence that applicant relies upon through its foreign registrations and Internet printouts does not demonstrate trademark use for the claimed goods. Further, these documents do not show that applicant has an intent to use the mark in the United States.”)

Offering services via the Internet has been held to constitute use in commerce, since the services are available to a national and international audience who must use interstate telephone lines to access a website. See *Planned Parenthood Fed'n of Am., Inc. v. Bucci*, 42 USPQ2d 1430 (S.D.N.Y. 1997), *aff'd*, 152 F.3d 920 (2d Cir. 1998) (Table).

An applicant is not required to specify the type of commerce in which the mark is used. The USPTO presumes that an applicant who states that the mark is in use in commerce is stating that the mark is in use in a type of commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record. See [TMEP §901.04](#) regarding the circumstances where an examining attorney should inquire as to whether the mark is in use in commerce that can be regulated by the U.S. Congress.

901.04 Inquiry Regarding Use in Commerce

It is the responsibility of the applicant and the applicant's attorney to determine whether an assertion of use in commerce is supported by the relevant facts. The validity of an applicant's assertion of use in commerce generally does not arise in ex parte examination. The examining attorney will normally accept the applicant's verified claim of use in commerce without investigation into whether the use referred to constitutes “use in commerce.”

An applicant is not required to specify the type of commerce in which the mark is used. See [TMEP §901.03](#). However, if the applicant specifically states that the mark is in use in commerce that cannot be regulated by the U.S. Congress, the applicant has not met the statutory requirement for a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce, and a specification of the date of first use in commerce, as defined in §45 of the Trademark Act. Accordingly, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that it appears that the mark is not in use in a type of commerce that can be regulated by the U.S. Congress and must require that

the applicant either submit a verified statement that “the mark is in use in commerce that can be regulated by the U.S. Congress,” or amend the basis of the application to a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce under §1(b) of the Act, if permitted by [37 C.F.R. §2.35](#). See [TMEP §806.03\(c\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis from §1(a) to §1(b).

If the application record contains evidence or information indicating that the mark may not be in use in commerce that “may lawfully be regulated by Congress,” the examining attorney must ask the applicant whether there is use in commerce that may lawfully be regulated by the U.S. Congress and require a satisfactory explanation or showing of such use. The examining attorney may also require additional information or evidence concerning the use of the mark to permit full consideration of the issue. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §814](#).

902 Allegations of Use for §1(b) Applications

Section 1(b) of the Trademark Act permits the filing of an application to register a trademark or service mark on the basis of the applicant’s bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for the identified goods or services. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.2\(l\), 2.32\(a\)\(5\), 2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#). Before a registration will issue, however, the mark must be in actual use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services specified in the application and file an allegation of use of the mark in commerce (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)) that states that the mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services, includes dates of use for each class, and includes one specimen evidencing such use for each class.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.76](#) and [TMEP §§1104](#) *et seq.* regarding amendments to allege use, and [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#) and [TMEP §§1109](#) *et seq.* regarding statements of use.

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding an applicant’s bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for a collective trademark or collective service mark application, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding an applicant’s bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for a collective membership mark application, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding an applicant’s bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for a certification mark application.

903 Dates of Use

When asserting use of a mark in commerce in a trademark or service mark application, an applicant must specify the date of first use anywhere and the date of first use in commerce, either in an original application under §1(a) of the Trademark Act (see [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)-\(iii\)](#)), or in an allegation of use in an application under §1(b) (see [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(iii\), 2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#)). The dates of use must be verified, i.e., supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)-\(iii\), 2.71\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§804](#) *et seq.* regarding verification.

An applicant filing under §1(b) is not required to state dates of use in the original application, but must include dates of use in an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(iii\), 2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#).

A §1(b) applicant may assert dates of use that are earlier than the filing date of the application in an amendment to allege use or statement of use.

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective trademarks or collective service marks, [TMEP § 1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) regarding dates of use for certification marks.

903.01 Date of First Use Anywhere

In a trademark or service mark application, the date of first use anywhere is the date when the goods were first sold or transported, or the services were first rendered, under the mark, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of “use” within the definition of “abandonment of mark”). For every applicant, whether foreign or domestic, the date of first use of a mark is the date of the first use anywhere, in the United States or elsewhere, regardless of whether the nature of the use was local or national, intrastate or interstate, or of another type.

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective trademarks or collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) regarding dates of use for certification marks.

903.02 Date of First Use in Commerce

In a trademark or service mark application, the date of first use in commerce is the date when the goods were first sold or transported, or the services were first rendered, under the mark in a type of commerce that may be lawfully regulated by the U.S. Congress, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade.

See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). See [TMEP §901.01](#) for definitions of “commerce” and “use in commerce,” and [TMEP §901.03](#) regarding types of commerce.

In a §1(a) application, the applicant may not specify a date of use that is later than the filing date of the application. If an applicant who filed under §1(a) did not use the mark in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the basis to §1(b). See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

Neither a date of first use nor a date of first use in commerce is required to receive a filing date in an application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act. If the application does not include a date of first use and/or a date of first use in commerce, the examining attorney must require that the applicant specify the date of first use and/or date of first use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)-\(iii\)](#). The dates must be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)-\(iii\), 2.71\(c\)](#).

An applicant may not file an application on the basis of use of a mark in commerce if such use has been discontinued.

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective trademarks or collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) regarding dates of use for certification marks.

903.03 Relation Between the Two Dates of Use

The application or allegation of use must specify both the date of first use anywhere and the date of first use in commerce. If the date of first use anywhere was also in a type of commerce that may be regulated

by the U.S. Congress (*see* [TMEP §901.03](#), the date of first use and the date of first use in commerce will be the same date.

The date of first use anywhere will always be either earlier than or the same as the date of first use in commerce. If the date of first use anywhere specified in an application or allegation of use is later than the date of first use in commerce, the examining attorney must require clarification. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

The requirement that an applicant specify the date of first use anywhere as well as the date of first use in commerce applies to all applicants, including foreign applicants, in applications filed under §1(a) or §1(b) of the Act. *In re Sevi S.p.A.*, 1 USPQ2d 1671, 1671 (TTAB 1986).

903.04 Amending Dates of Use

Any change to the dates of use must be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#). The affidavit or declaration must be signed by someone properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). *See* [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#). In addition, because a §1(a)-based application must properly allege *current* use of the mark, an applicant must attest to dates of use that are on or before the date such application was signed; an applicant may not allege use that has not yet occurred. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#). Likewise, the dates of use specified in an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) must be on or before the date the allegation of use was signed. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#), [2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#); *see also* [TMEP §903.06\(a\)](#) (noting that, when a date of first use would be interpreted under [TMEP §903.06](#) as later than the date on which the application or allegation of use was signed, the USPTO will presume that the date of first use is the date on which applicant signed the application or allegation of use).

In an application under §1(a), the applicant may amend the dates of use to adopt a date of use that is earlier than the date originally stated or later than the date originally stated, but on or before the application filing date. The applicant may not amend to specify a date of use that is later than the filing date of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(1\)](#). If an applicant who filed under §1(a) did not use the mark in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the basis to §1(b). *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). *See* [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

Example 1: Section 1(a) application filing date: March 9, 2015
First use anywhere: March 6, 2015
First use in commerce: March 6, 2015
Signature date: March 5, 2015

This sequence requires amendment because although the specified dates of use in this example are prior to the filing date, they are after the signature date.

If the specified dates of use in this example are correct, the applicant must resubmit the alleged use dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect, but the correct dates of use are on or before the application filing date, the applicant must provide the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect and the mark was not in use in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the filing basis to §1(b), if the applicant can

satisfy the requirements for the new basis. If the filing basis is amended to §1(b), a registration may not issue until the applicant files an allegation of use. [TMEP §1103](#).

If the signature date is incorrect in this example and the application was signed on or after the dates of use, the applicant may resolve the discrepancy by specifying the correct signature date.

Example 2: Section 1(a) application filing date: March 9, 2015

First use anywhere: March 12, 2015

First use in commerce: March 12, 2015

Signature date: March 9, 2015

This sequence requires amendment because the specified dates of use in this example are after both the filing date and the signature date.

If the mark in this example was in use in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant must amend the dates of use to specify the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the mark in this example was not in use in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the filing basis to “intent to use” under §1(b), if the applicant can satisfy the requirements for the new basis. If the filing basis is amended to §1(b), a registration may not issue until the applicant files an allegation of use. [TMEP §1103](#).

In an application under §1(b), after the applicant files an amendment to allege use, the applicant may not subsequently amend the dates of use to recite dates of use that are later than the filing of the amendment to allege use. If a §1(b) applicant did not use the mark in commerce before the filing date of the amendment to allege use, the applicant may withdraw the amendment to allege use before the application is approved for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(f\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1104.10\(b\)\(iv\), 1104.11](#).

Example 1: Amendment to allege use filed on March 9, 2015

First use anywhere: March 6, 2015

First use in commerce: March 6, 2015

Signature date: March 5, 2015

The sequence requires amendment because although the specified dates of use in this example are prior to the date on which the amendment to allege use was filed, they are after the signature date.

If the specified dates of use in this example are correct, the applicant must resubmit the alleged use dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect, but the correct dates of use are on or before the dates on which the amendment to allege use was filed, the applicant must provide the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect and the mark was not in use in commerce on or before the date on which the amendment to allege use was filed, the applicant may request to withdraw the amendment to allege use. If the amendment to allege use is withdrawn, registration may not be granted until the applicant subsequently files an acceptable allegation of use. [TMEP §1103](#).

If the date of the signature in this example is incorrect and the amendment to allege use was signed on or after the dates of use, the applicant may resolve the discrepancy by specifying the correct signature date.

Example 2: Amendment to allege use filed on March 9, 2015

First use anywhere: March 12, 2015

First use in commerce: March 12, 2015

Signature date: March 9, 2015

This sequence requires amendment because the specified dates of use in this example are after the dates on which the amendment to allege use was signed and filed.

If the mark in this example was in use in commerce on or before the date on which the amendment to allege use was filed, applicant must amend the dates of use to specify the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the mark in this example was not in use in commerce on or before the date on which the amendment to allege use was filed, the applicant may request to withdraw the amendment to allege use. If the amendment to allege use is withdrawn, registration may not be granted until the applicant subsequently files an acceptable allegation of use. [TMEP §1103](#).

In an application under §1(b), after the applicant files a statement of use, the applicant may not amend the dates of use to dates that are later than the expiration of the statutory deadline for filing a statement of use (i.e., the amended dates must be within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance or before the expiration of an extension of time for filing a statement of use). [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(2\)](#). If the mark in a §1(b) application was not in use in commerce before the expiration of the deadline for filing a statement of use, the application will be abandoned; the applicant may *not* withdraw the statement of use or otherwise amend the application back to intent to use under §1(b). [37 C.F.R. §§2.88\(f\), \(k\)](#); [TMEP §1109.17](#).

Example 1: Statement of use filed on March 9, 2015

First use anywhere: March 6, 2015

First use in commerce: March 6, 2015

Signature date: March 5, 2015

Statutory deadline for filing statement of use: May 15, 2015

This sequence requires amendment because although the specified dates of use in this example are prior to the date on which the statement use was filed and prior to the statutory deadline for filing a statement of use, they are after the signature date.

If the specified dates of use in this example are correct, the applicant must resubmit the alleged use dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect, but the correct dates of use are prior to the expiration of the deadline for filing a statement of use, the applicant must provide the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect and the mark was not in use in commerce before the expiration of the time allowed for filing a statement of use, the application will be abandoned. The applicant may not withdraw the statement of use or amend the application back to intent to use under §1(b) (i.e., based on a bona fide intent to use the mark).

Example 2: Statement of use filed on March 9, 2015

First use anywhere: March 12, 2015

First use in commerce: March 12, 2015

Signature date: March 9, 2015

Statutory deadline for filing statement of use: May 15, 2015

This sequence requires amendment because although the specified dates of use in this example are prior to the statutory deadline for filing a statement of use, they are after the date on which the statement of use was signed and filed.

If the specified dates of use in this example are correct, the applicant must resubmit the alleged use dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect, but the correct dates of use are prior to the expiration of the deadline for filing a statement of use, the applicant must provide the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect and the mark was not in use in commerce before the expiration of the time allowed for filing a statement of use, the application will be abandoned. The applicant may not withdraw the statement of use or amend the application back to intent to use under §1(b) (i.e., based on a bona fide intent to use the mark).

Example 3: Statement of use filed on March 9, 2015
First use anywhere: March 12, 2015
First use in commerce: March 12, 2015
Signature date: March 9, 2015
Statutory deadline for filing statement of use: March 10, 2015

This sequence requires amendment because the specified dates of use are after the date on which the statement of use was signed and filed, and after the statutory deadline for filing a statement of use.

If the specified dates of use in this example are incorrect and the mark was in use in commerce before the expiration of the time allowed for filing a statement of use, the applicant must amend the dates of use to specify the correct dates, verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

If the mark in this example was not in use in commerce before the expiration of the time allowed for filing a statement of use, the application will be abandoned. The applicant may not withdraw the statement of use or amend the application back to intent to use under §1(b) (i.e., based on a bona fide intent to use the mark).

A §1(a) multiple-class application must include dates of use for each class. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\); TMEP §1403.01](#). If a single-class application containing dates of use is amended to a multiple-class application, the dates-of-use clause must be amended to reflect dates of use for each class. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\); TMEP §1403.01](#). If a single-class application is amended to a multiple-class application, but the applicant does not set forth dates of use for the added classes, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the dates of use apply to all classes and require an amendment, if appropriate. A supporting affidavit or declaration is not necessary if the dates of use in the original application or in an earlier-filed allegation of use apply to all classes.

A supporting affidavit or declaration is required for any *change* to the dates of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#). However, if the applicant has properly verified the date of first use in commerce and, for whatever reason, seeks to amend the date of first use anywhere to the same date as the date of first use in commerce, a verified statement is not required if the originally specified date of first use anywhere is *earlier* than the date of first use in commerce. This is not considered a *change* to the dates of use, because the applicant has already sworn to a date of first use in commerce that necessarily requires, and logically includes, use of the mark “anywhere.” Thus, the applicant has, in fact, already verified in its original application or allegation of use

that the date of first use of the mark anywhere is at least as early as the date of first use of the mark in commerce. Such an amendment may be entered by examiner's amendment.

When the date of first use anywhere is *later* than the date of first use in commerce, an unverified amendment is inappropriate because the validity of the verification is called into question by the impossibility of first use anywhere being later than the first use in commerce.

Example 1: First use anywhere: March 6, 1985
First use in commerce: February 10, 1985

An amendment of the date of first use anywhere to February 10, 1985, must be verified, because the validity of the date of first use in commerce is called into question by the fact that the applicant has specified a later date of first use anywhere.

Example 2: First use anywhere: March 6, 1985
First use in commerce: April 10, 1985

An unverified amendment of the date of first use anywhere to April 10, 1985, is acceptable, because first use in commerce logically includes use anywhere.

Example 3: First use anywhere: March 1985
First use in commerce: March 10, 1985

An unverified amendment of the date of first use anywhere to March 10, 1985, is acceptable because the information in the record is not contradictory on its face. There is only an apparent contradiction resulting from the way in which the USPTO construes the information when an applicant provides only the month and year (i.e., as indicating the last day of the month - see [TMEP §903.06](#) regarding indefinite dates of use).

This policy is not applicable to the converse. That is, an amendment to the date of first use in commerce to conform to the date of first use anywhere is a *change* (because first use anywhere does not necessarily include first use in commerce) and must be verified with an affidavit or signed declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

903.05 First Use by Predecessor or Related Company

If the first use anywhere or the first use in commerce was by a predecessor in title to the applicant, or by a related company of the applicant (see [15 U.S.C. §§1055](#), 1127), and the use inures to the benefit of the applicant, the dates of first use may specify that the use on this date was by the applicant's predecessor in title, or by a related company of the applicant, as the case may be. See [37 C.F.R. §2.38\(a\)](#). It is generally not necessary to give the name of the predecessor in title or the related company.

See [TMEP §§1201.03–1201.03\(e\)](#) regarding current use by a party other than the applicant.

903.06 Indefinite Dates of Use

In specifying the dates of first use, the applicant should provide dates that are as definite as possible.

The only date that will be recognized for USPTO proceedings is the latest definite date specified by the applicant. However, the applicant may use indefinite terms in describing dates if the applicant considers it necessary due to uncertainty as to the particular date. Although terms such as “at least as early as,” “prior

to,” “before,” “on or about,” and “in” are acceptable for the record, these terms are not printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the certificate of registration.

When a month and year are given without a specified day, the date presumed for purposes of examination is the last day of the month. When only a year is given, the date presumed for purposes of examination is the last day of the year. Some examples are as follows:

- “Prior to January 1, 1955” is treated as December 31, 1954.
- “Before February 1961” is treated as January 31, 1961.
- “On or about June 18, 1987” is treated as June 18, 1987.
- “1990” is treated as December 31, 1990.
- “In November 1991” is treated as November 30, 1991.
- “In the 1920s” is treated as December 31, 1929.

When an applicant alleges only a year prefaced by vague or ambiguous language such as “in the Spring of,” the USPTO will construe the date as the last day of that year, unless the applicant amends to specify a particular date or a particular month of the specified year.

When an applicant’s date of first use in commerce is more specific than its date of first use anywhere, the above presumption can result in an unacceptable dates-of-use clause in which the date of first use in commerce precedes the date of first use anywhere. For example:

First use anywhere: 1991

First use in commerce: January 15, 1991

Usual presumption of first use anywhere: December 31, 1991 (which results in a logical inconsistency).

Therefore, when the above presumption would be applicable, and the result is a date of first use in commerce that precedes the date of first use anywhere, the examining attorney must contact the applicant by telephone or e-mail, if appropriate, for authorization to amend the date of first use anywhere to the same date as the date of the first use in commerce. This may be done by examiner’s amendment.

Indefinite phraseology of the type described above is not considered to be misleading, because it does give notice that, when called upon to do so, the applicant may undertake to prove a date earlier than the one stated.

The presumed dates discussed above are *not* entered into the automated records of the USPTO, or printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the certificate of registration. Instead, only the information provided by the applicant is printed. Thus, if the applicant states that the mark was first used “at least as early as January of 1994,” the date printed is “1/0/1994.” If applicant states that the mark was first used “sometime in 1965,” the date printed is “0/0/1965.”

In an inter partes proceeding, a date of use must be established by appropriate evidence. A date of use set forth in an application or registration owned by applicant or registrant is not evidence on behalf of that applicant or registrant. [37 C.F.R. §2.122\(b\)\(2\)](#); *Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure*(“TBMP”) [§704.04](#).

See [TMEP §903.06\(a\)](#) regarding apparent discrepancies between dates of use and execution dates.

903.06(a) Apparent Discrepancies Between Dates of Use and Date of Execution

Because an application based on §1(a) or an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) must properly allege current use of the mark, an applicant must attest to dates of use in the application or allegation of use that are on or before the date the application or allegation of use was signed; an applicant may not allege use that has not yet occurred. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(b\)\(1\), 2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\), 2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §§903.04, 1109.09\(a\)](#).

If an application, or an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d), specifies a date of first use only by the year, or by the month and the year, and the date would otherwise be interpreted under [TMEP §903.06](#) as later than the date on which the application or allegation of use was *signed*, the USPTO will presume that the date of first use is the date on which applicant signed the application or allegation of use. For example:

Filing date: January 15, 2015

Signature date: December 27, 2014

First use anywhere: 2014

Presumption of first use anywhere under §903.06: December 31, 2014

Amendment to clarify first use date is not required: Although the presumed date of first use under [TMEP § 903.06](#) (December 31, 2014) is later than the signature date (December 27, 2014), it is not later than the filing date (January 15, 2015). Thus, under [TMEP § 903.06\(a\)](#), the examining attorney may presume that the use date is the same as the date of signature.

However, if the date of first use would be interpreted under [TMEP § 903.06](#) as later than the *filing date* of the application or allegation of use, then amendment of the date of use to an earlier date, supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), is still required. For example:

Filing date: January 15, 2015

Signature date: December 27, 2014

First use anywhere: 2015

Presumption of first use anywhere under §903.06: December 31, 2015

Amendment to clarify first use date is required: The presumed date of first use under [TMEP § 903.06](#) (December 31, 2015) is later than the filing date (January 15, 2015). Thus, under [TMEP § 903.06\(a\)](#), the examining attorney may not presume that the use date is the date of signature and must require an amendment to indicate the date of use more specifically.

If an application or allegation of use specifies the date of signature only by the year, or by the month and the year, and the date would be interpreted under [TMEP §903.06](#) as later than the date(s) of first use, the USPTO will presume that the date of signature was on or after the date of first use.

903.07 Dates of Use in Another Form

If the mark in the application is a composite mark, the applicant may specify dates of first use of a separable element of the composite mark. These dates will be printed on the certificate of registration for general information. However, the applicant must also specify the dates of first use of the entire composite mark for which registration is being sought.

903.08 More than One Item of Goods or Services

If more than one item of goods or services is specified in a particular class, the date of first use anywhere and date of first use in commerce do not have to pertain to every item in the class. It might be that the mark, although in use on all of the items at the time the application or allegation of use was filed, was first used on various items on differing dates, so that it would be cumbersome to designate the dates for all items individually. See *Sunshine Biscuits, Inc. v. Berke Bakeries, Inc.*, 106 USPQ 222 (PTO 1955); *Ex parte Wayne Pump Co.*, 88 USPQ 437 (PTO 1951).

There must be at least one item in a class to which the specified dates pertain. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(v\)](#), [2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#). Where the dates of use do not pertain to all items, the applicant should designate the particular item(s) to which they do pertain.

Where the dates of use do not pertain to every item in the class, and the identification of goods or services is amended to delete the item(s) to which the dates of use pertain, the applicant must amend the dates-of-use clause to specify the dates that apply to an item that remains in the identification. See [TMEP §903.04](#) regarding amendments to dates of use.

If more than one item of goods or services is specified in a particular class, the USPTO will presume that the dates of use apply to all the goods or services, unless the applicant states otherwise.

Where more than one date is specified for a particular class, the earliest date will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and, if a registration issues, on the certificate of registration. The *Official Gazette* and registration certificate will not indicate which item is specified.

See [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding dates of use for collective membership marks.

904 Specimens

Specimens are required because they show the manner in which the mark is seen by the public. Specimens also provide supporting evidence of facts recited in the application.

A trademark or service mark application for registration under §1(a) of the Trademark Act must include one specimen for each class, showing use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#), [2.56\(a\)](#). If an application under §1(a) is filed without a specimen, the examining attorney must issue an Office action requiring the applicant to submit one specimen for each class, with an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) stating that the specimen was in use in commerce at least as early as the filing date of the application.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#). The Office action must also indicate registration is refused under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act because the applicant has not provided evidence of use of the mark in commerce. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(1\)](#), [1127](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#), [2.56\(a\)](#).

In examining a specimen filed with an application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#), or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), the examining attorney must refuse registration if the specimen indicates that the goods have not been “sold or transported in commerce.” [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). For example, a webpage for placing pre-sale orders for goods that are not yet available does not show use of the mark in commerce in connection with the goods, even if it otherwise meets the requirements for an acceptable display associated with the goods. See *Richardson-Vicks, Inc. v. Franklin Mint Corp.*, 216 USPQ 989, 991-92 (TTAB 1982) (finding that the goods to be identified by the mark must

be in existence at the time of a sale); *cf.* *Aycock Eng'g, Inc. v. Airflite, Inc.*, 560 F.3d 1350, 1360, 90 USPQ2d 1301, 1308 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (holding that actual use of the mark in commerce in connection with an existing service is required and that mere preparations to use a mark sometime in the future does not constitute use in commerce); *In re Port Auth. of N.Y.*, 3 USPQ2d 1453, 1455 (TTAB 1987) (finding advertising and promoting telecommunications services before the services were available insufficient to support registration); *In re Cedar Point, Inc.*, 220 USPQ 533, 535-37 (TTAB 1983) (holding that advertising of a marine entertainment park, which was not yet open, was not a valid basis for registration); *In re Nationwide Mut. Ins. Co.*, 124 USPQ 465 (TTAB 1960) (holding that stickers placed on policies, bills, and letters announcing prospective name change is mere adoption, not service mark use). See [TMEP §1301.03](#) regarding use of a service mark in commerce. The Office action must indicate that registration is refused under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act because the applicant has not provided evidence of use of the mark in commerce for the identified goods. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(1\), 1127](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\), 2.56\(a\)](#).

In an application for registration under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, no specimen is required at the time the application is filed. However, before a registration will issue, the applicant must file an allegation of use that includes one specimen for each class, showing use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or in the sale or advertising of the services. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.56\(a\), 2.76\(b\)\(2\), 2.88\(b\)\(2\)](#).

No specimen showing use of the mark in commerce is required in an application based solely on §44 or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1126\(d\)-\(e\), 1141f\(a\)](#). While a §44 or §66(a) applicant must assert a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce, the applicant is not required to assert actual use in commerce prior to registration. *Crocker Nat'l Bank v. Canadian Imperial Bank of Com.*, 223 USPQ 909 (TTAB 1984); [TMEP §§1009, 1904.01\(d\)](#).

If the nature of a specimen is unclear, the applicant must explain what it is and how it is used.

A photocopy or reproduction of the drawing is not an acceptable specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(c\)](#).

Specimens of value should not be filed.

Interested parties, including potential opposers, may view and print images of the specimens in an application or registration file through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval ("TSDR") portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. The USPTO does not permit specimens to be removed from the record.

Furthermore, once filed, specimens remain part of the record and will not be returned to the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.25](#). This ensures that there is a complete record of the submissions made by the applicant. See [64 Fed. Reg. 48900](#), 48901 (Sept. 8, 1999), 1226 TMOG 103 (Sept. 28, 1999); see also [TMEP §404](#).

For information regarding specimens for collective trademarks and collective service marks, see [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); for collective membership marks, see [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); and for certification marks, see [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\), 1306.04\(c\)-\(d\)](#).

904.01 Number of Specimens

One specimen for each class is required in an application for registration under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, or in an allegation of use in an application under §1(b). If a single specimen supports multiple classes, the applicant should indicate which classes are supported by the specimen. The examining attorney need not require multiple copies of the specimen. The examining attorney should enter a Note to the File in the record indicating which class(es) the specimen supports.

904.01(a) More than One Item Specified in a Class

Generally, if more than one item of goods, or more than one service, is specified in one class in an application, it is usually not necessary to have a specimen for each product or service. When the range of items is wide or contains unrelated articles, the examining attorney may request additional specimen(s) under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

If the goods are a “full line of pharmaceuticals,” however, the examining attorney must require the applicant to provide evidence that it uses the mark in connection with pharmaceuticals to treat diseases or health problems in all chapters in the World Health Organization (“WHO”) International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §1402.03](#) regarding broad identifications, [TMEP §1402.03\(b\)](#) regarding house marks, and [TMEP §1402.03\(c\)](#) regarding marks for “a full line of” a genre of products.

904.01(b) Combined or Multiple-Class Applications

A combined or multiple-class application is a request to register the same mark for goods, services, and/or a collective membership organization in multiple classes in a single application. See [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\),\(b\)](#). In a multiple-class application filed under §1(a), an applicant must provide one specimen of the mark supporting each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#). If a single specimen supports multiple classes, the applicant should indicate which classes are supported by the specimen. The examining attorney need not require multiple copies of the specimen. The examining attorney should enter a Note to the File in the record indicating which classes the specimen supports.

See [TMEP §§1403-1403.06](#) regarding the requirements for and examination of multiple-class applications.

904.02 Physical Form of Specimens

904.02(a) Electronically Filed Specimens

In an electronically filed application, allegation of use, affidavit of use under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [§1141k](#) of the Trademark Act (“§8 affidavit” or “§71 affidavit”), or response to an Office action, the specimen(s) must be in .jpg or .pdf format. [37 C.F.R. §§2.56\(d\)\(4\), 2.161\(g\), 7.37\(g\)](#). If the nature of the specimen is unclear, the applicant should describe what it is and how it is used. See [TMEP §904.03\(d\)](#) regarding electronic and digital media attachments and [§904.03\(f\)](#) regarding specimens for sound marks.

Sometimes, although the application indicates that a specimen is included, the specimen is not visible in the record due to a technical problem that occurred during submission of the application. In this situation, the examining attorney should first send an e-mail to the TEAS mailbox to ask whether the problem can be fixed by uploading the file again. If it cannot, the examining attorney must request that the applicant submit: (1) the same specimen (or a true copy) that was attached to the original TEAS submission; and (2) a statement by the person who transmitted the original TEAS submission that the specimen being submitted is a true copy of the specimen originally filed through TEAS. This statement does not have to be verified. Alternatively, the applicant may submit a different specimen from that initially filed, together with an affidavit or declaration of use of the substitute specimen. See [TMEP §904.05](#) regarding the requirements for an affidavit or declaration supporting use of substitute specimens.

The USPTO prefers that the specimen, whether a true copy of the original or a substitute, be submitted electronically via the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”). In TEAS, the Response to Office Action form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled “Response Forms” at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

904.02(b) Paper-Filed Specimens

In a paper-filed application, allegation of use, affidavit of use under §8 or §71 of the Trademark Act, or response to Office action, the specimen(s) must be flat and no larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(1\)](#). The USPTO may create a photocopy or facsimile for the official record and destroy the original.

When the applicant cannot supply an actual specimen meeting these size requirements due to the nature or manner of use of the mark, the application, allegation of use, affidavit of use, or response must include a facsimile, such as a photograph, photocopy, or other acceptable reproduction, that is a suitable size and clearly shows how the mark is used in commerce.

Facsimiles or photographs of actual specimens are preferred. Facsimiles should show the whole article to which the mark is applied, or enough of the article so that the nature of the article can be identified. The mark and all other pertinent written matter on the article should be clear and legible. For example, product photographs appearing on folders or brochures that show the trademark on the applicant's goods are acceptable facsimiles. It is permissible to show the complete article in one photograph and the written matter in another, so that the written matter will be legible, or to show different views of an article either in a single photograph or in separate photographs.

A photocopy or reproduction of the drawing is not an acceptable specimen or facsimile. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(c\)](#).

If color is a feature of the mark, the applicant should submit facsimiles made by color photography, or by any process that reproduces in color. See [TMEP §904.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#).

If an applicant submits a specimen that exceeds the size requirements (a “bulky specimen”), the USPTO will create a facsimile of the specimen that meets the size requirements of the rule and destroy the original specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(2\)](#). If the copy of the specimen created by the USPTO does not adequately depict the mark, the examining attorney will require a substitute specimen that meets the size requirements of the rule and an affidavit or declaration verifying the use of the substitute specimen. See [TMEP §904.05](#) regarding affidavits supporting substitute specimens.

If necessary, the examining attorney may require one actual specimen for examination purposes, under [37 C.F.R. §§2.56\(a\)](#) and [2.61\(b\)](#).

904.02(c) Additional Requirements

904.02(c)(i) Other Materials Required for Examination

During examination, an examining attorney also has the discretion to request additional materials, under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), if necessary for proper examination of the mark. [TMEP §814](#). For example, if the mark is a configuration of the goods or of the container for the goods, the examining attorney may require one actual product or container. Or the examining attorney might require a complete copy of a publication

in order to determine whether a mark is merely descriptive of the goods. See [TMEP §904.02\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding marks used on publications.

In specific cases, such as when an applicant submits additional materials in response to a requirement made by the examining attorney, and the materials do not meet the size parameters identified above, the USPTO may create facsimiles of these materials to be entered into the record and destroy the originals. However, the examining attorney should encourage the applicant to submit a photograph of the specimen(s) or evidence for the record.

904.02(c)(ii) Specimens for Marks Comprising Color

If color is a feature of the mark, or if the mark consists solely of color, the specimen must show use of the color. [37 C.F.R. §2.51](#); [TMEP §807.12](#). *Note:* In an application filed on or after November 2, 2003, if an applicant submits a color drawing, or a description of the mark that indicates the use of color on the mark, the applicant must claim color as a feature of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §807.07\(a\)\(i\)](#).

If the applicant submits a specimen that is not in color or not in the appropriate color, the examining attorney will require the applicant to file a substitute specimen that shows use of the appropriate color(s). See [TMEP §904.05](#) regarding substitute specimens.

See also [TMEP §1202.05\(f\)](#) regarding specimens showing use of marks that consist *solely* of color.

904.02(c)(iii) Specimens for Marks Used on Publications

An application for registration of a mark for publications is treated the same as any other application with respect to specimen requirements. The USPTO does not require a complete copy of the publication or a title page in every case. However, the examining attorney may require a copy of the publication under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) if he or she believes it is necessary for proper examination. For example, a copy of the publication might be necessary to determine whether a mark is merely descriptive of the goods.

904.03 Material Appropriate as Specimens for Trademarks

For a trademark application under §1(a), allegation of use in an application under §1(b), or affidavit of use under §8 or §71 of the Trademark Act, the specimen must show the mark as used on or in connection with the goods in commerce. A trademark specimen should be a label, tag, or container for the goods, or a display associated with the goods. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(1\)](#). A photocopy or other reproduction of a specimen of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods is acceptable. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(c\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1301.04 et seq.](#) regarding service mark specimens, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding collective membership mark specimens, [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding collective trademark and collective service mark specimens, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding certification mark specimens.

904.03(a) Labels and Tags

In most cases, if a trademark is applied to the goods or the containers for the goods by means of labels, a label is an acceptable specimen. However, if a mark is merely informational or incapable of functioning as a mark for some other reason, it would not be seen as an indicator of source, and registration must be refused even if the specimen of record shows what would otherwise be acceptable trademark use, including use on tags or labels. See [TMEP §1202.04](#).

Shipping or mailing labels may be accepted if they are affixed to the goods or to the containers for the goods and if proper trademark usage is shown. *In re A.S. Beck Shoe Corp.*, 161 USPQ 168 (TTAB 1969); *Elec. Commc'ns, Inc. v. Elec. Components for Indus. Co.*, 443 F.2d 487, 170 USPQ 118 (8th Cir. 1971). They are not acceptable if the mark as shown is merely used as a trade name and not as a trademark. An example of this is the use of the term solely as a return address. *In re Supply Guys, Inc.*, 86 USPQ2d 1488 (TTAB 2008); *Bookbinder's Sea Food House, Inc. v. Bookbinder's Rest., Inc.*, 118 USPQ 318 (Comm'r Pats. 1958); *I. & B. Cohen Bomzon & Co. v. Biltmore Indus., Inc.*, 22 USPQ 257 (Comm'r Pats. 1934). See [TMEP §1202.01](#) regarding trade name refusals.

In connection with labels whose appearance suggests that they are only for temporary use, the examining attorney may consider it necessary to make further inquiry as to how the specimen is used, under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), in order to properly examine the application. A response to the inquiry may include an additional specimen(s) if labels of a more permanent nature have by that time been adopted. However, nothing prohibits the registration of a mark in an application that contains only “temporary” specimens, provided that the specimens were actually used in commerce. *See In re Chica*, 84 USPQ2d 1845 (TTAB 2007) (specimen deemed unacceptable not because it was temporary but because it comprised a mere drawing of the goods with an illustration of how the mark may be displayed and not an actual specimen that applicant used in commerce).

904.03(b) Stampings

Stamping a trademark on the goods, on the container, or on tags or labels attached to the goods or containers, is a proper method of trademark affixation. *See In re Crucible Steel Co. of Am.*, 150 USPQ 757 (TTAB 1966). The trademark may be imprinted in the body of the goods, as with metal stamping; it may be applied by a rubber stamp; or it may be inked on by using a stencil or template.

When a trademark is used in this manner, photographs or facsimiles showing the actual stamping or stenciling are acceptable as specimens.

When the specimen consists of a stamp on paper, the applicant must explain the nature of the specimen and how it is used.

904.03(c) Commercial Packaging

The terminology “applied to the containers for the goods” means applied to any type of commercial packaging that is normal for the particular goods as they move in trade. Thus, a showing of the trademark on the normal commercial package for the particular goods is an acceptable specimen. *In re Brown Jordan Co.*, 219 USPQ 375 (TTAB 1983) (holding that stamping the mark after purchase of the goods, on a tag attached to the goods that are later transported in commerce, is sufficient use). For example, gasoline pumps are normal containers or “packaging” for gasoline.

A specimen showing use of the trademark on a vehicle in which the goods are marketed to the relevant purchasers may constitute use of the mark on a container for the goods, if this is the normal mode of use of a mark for the particular goods. *In re E.A. Miller & Sons Packing Co.*, 225 USPQ 592 (TTAB 1985). *But see In re Lyndale Farm*, 186 F.2d 723, 88 USPQ 377 (C.C.P.A. 1951).

904.03(d) Electronic and Digital Media Attachments to Paper Filings

In the absence of alternative specimens, the USPTO will accept specimens consisting of compact discs (“CDs”), digital video discs (“DVDs”), videotapes, and audiotapes. See [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(3\)](#). Equipment for viewing or listening to these materials is available at the USPTO.

Compact discs, DVDs, audiotapes, and videotapes may contain files in .jpg, .pdf, .wav, .wmv, .wma, .mp3, .mpg, or .avi format. The USPTO is unable to review files in any other format. The USPTO prefers that the applicant submit small files of less than two minutes in duration. Only one specimen should be included on each tape or disc; however, in a multiple-class application, the applicant may include more than one specimen on the same disc or tape. If the nature of the specimen is unclear, the applicant should explain what it is and how it is used.

See [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#) regarding electronically filed specimens, [TMEP §904.03\(f\)](#) regarding specimens for sound marks, and [TMEP §904.03\(l\)](#) regarding specimens for motion marks. See also [37 C.F.R. §§2.56\(d\)\(1\)](#) and [\(d\)\(2\)](#) and [TMEP §904.02\(b\)](#) regarding the size requirements for specimens attached to paper filings, and the procedures for handling specimens that exceed these requirements.

904.03(e) Specimens for Trademarks Identifying Computer Programs, Movies, and Videos, or Audio Recordings

The computer program, video, and movie industries have adopted the practice of applying trademarks that are visible only when the goods, that is, programs or movies, are displayed on a screen (e.g., on the first several frames of a movie).

An acceptable specimen might be a photograph or printout of a display screen projecting the identifying trademark for a computer program, or a photograph of a frame(s) of a movie or video bearing the mark. It is not necessary that purchasers see the mark prior to purchasing the goods, as long as the mark is applied to the goods or their containers, or to a display associated with the goods, and the goods are sold or transported in commerce. *In re Brown Jordan Co.*, 219 USPQ 375 (TTAB 1983) (holding that stamping the mark after purchase of the goods, on a tag attached to the goods that are later transported in commerce, is sufficient use).

For downloadable computer software, an applicant may submit a specimen that shows use of the mark on an Internet website. Such a specimen is acceptable only if it creates an association between the mark and software and provides sufficient information to enable the user to download or purchase the software from the website. See *In re Azteca Sys., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1955 (TTAB 2012). If the website simply advertises the software without providing a way to download, purchase, or order it, the specimen is unacceptable.

See *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1727 (TTAB 2004); see also *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1224 (TTAB 2007). See [TMEP §904.03\(i\)](#) regarding electronic displays as specimens for trademarks.

Similarly, a specimen for audio recordings in Class 9 that shows use of the mark on an internet website must include a “download” or similar link to put the consumer on notice that the identified goods are available for download. Absent such a link or the equivalent thereof, the specimen on its face fails to show use of the mark in commerce for the goods. *In re Rogowski*, 104 USPQ2d 2012, 2014-15 (TTAB 2012).

Specimens for software may also indicate that the software is a “beta” version. This term is commonly used in the software field to identify a preliminary version of a product. Although some beta products may not be made available to consumers, others are. Thus, the appearance of this term on a specimen for software

does not, by itself, necessarily mean that the relevant goods are not in actual use in commerce or that the specimen is unacceptable. However, if examination of the specimen indicates that the beta version is not in actual use in commerce, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act because the applicant has not provided evidence of use of the applied-for mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#). See [TMEP §1301.03\(a\)](#) regarding service mark specimens containing the term “beta.”

904.03(f) Specimens for Sound Marks

To show that a sound mark actually identifies and distinguishes the goods/services/collective membership organization and indicates their source, an applicant must submit a specimen that contains a sufficient portion of the audio or video content to show how the mark is used on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization.

For paper filings, specimens for sound marks must be submitted on CDs, DVDs, videotapes, or audiotapes. See [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §904.03\(d\)](#).

For TEAS applications under §1(a), as well as response, statement of use/amendment to allege use, petition, and registration maintenance/renewal forms, the specimen can be attached to the TEAS form and must be an electronic file in .wav, .wmv, .wma, .mp3, .mpg, or .avi format. Audio files should not exceed 5 MB in size, and video files should not exceed 30 MB, because TEAS cannot accommodate larger files.

See [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#) regarding specimens filed electronically. See also [TMEP §807.09](#) and [TMEP §1202.15](#) regarding sound marks.

904.03(g) Displays Associated with Goods

A display must be associated directly with the goods offered for sale. It must bear the trademark prominently. However, it is not necessary that the display be in close proximity to the goods. See *In re Marriott Corp.*, 459 F.2d 525, 173 USPQ 799 (C.C.P.A. 1972); *Lands' End Inc. v. Manbeck*, 797 F. Supp. 511, 24 USPQ2d 1314 (E.D. Va. 1992).

Displays associated with the goods essentially comprise point-of-sale material such as banners, shelf-talkers, window displays, menus, and similar devices.

These items must be designed to catch the attention of purchasers and prospective purchasers as an inducement to make a sale. Further, the display must prominently display the mark in question and associate it with, or relate it to, the goods. See *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220 (TTAB 2007); *In re Morganroth*, 208 USPQ 284 (TTAB 1980) (purported mark was so obfuscated on the specimen that it was not likely to make any impression on the reader). The display must be related to the sale of the goods such that an association of the two is inevitable. See *In re Bright of Am., Inc.*, 205 USPQ 63 (TTAB 1979), and cases cited therein; see also *In re ITT Rayonier Inc.*, 208 USPQ 86 (TTAB 1980); cf. *In re Shipley Co.*, 230 USPQ 691 (TTAB 1986); *In re Jones*, 216 USPQ 328 (TTAB 1982).

Folders, brochures, or other materials that describe goods and their characteristics or serve as advertising literature are not per se “displays.” See *In re Schiapparelli Searle*, 26 USPQ2d 1520 (TTAB 1993); *In re Drilco Indus. Inc.*, 15 USPQ2d 1671 (TTAB 1990). In order to rely on such materials as specimens, an applicant must submit evidence of point-of-sale presentation. Such evidence must consist of more than an applicant's statement that copies of the material were distributed at sales presentations or tradeshow. A mere statement that advertising and promotional materials are used in connection with sales presentations

is not sufficient, in and of itself, to transform advertising and promotional materials into displays used in association with the goods. *Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1224 (“Applicant’s declaration lacks sufficient detail to transform the web page from advertising into a display used in association with the goods. For example, there is no discussion regarding how the applicant used the web page at sales presentations to make an association between the mark and the products or whether consumers, in fact, associated the mark with the products. The use of advertising material in connection with the sales of a product does not ipso facto make it a display used in association with the goods sufficient to support technical trademark use for registration.”); *see also In re Anpath Grp., Inc.*, 95 USPQ2d 1377 (TTAB 2010) (holding that pamphlet and flyer listing the URL of applicant’s website and/or a telephone number for contacting sales representatives does not create the same point-of-sale situation as a detailed catalogue, a detailed web page, or a situation where there is the option of placing an order based upon detailed information from the specimen); *In re Ancha Elecs. Inc.*, 1 USPQ2d 1318 (TTAB 1986) ; (holding that a photograph showing an informational flyer or leaflet clearly depicting the mark and presented on the goods at a trade show exhibit was an acceptable display associated with the goods); *In re Columbia Chase Corp.*, 215 USPQ 478 (TTAB 1982) (holding that folders and brochures describing goods and their characteristics or serving as advertising literature are not displays, and the appearance of marks and product photographs in such literature does not per se amount to use of a mark on displays without evidence of point-of-sale presentation).

An infomercial was held to be a display associated with the goods, where the goods were shown either immediately before or immediately after the trademark was displayed, and the information on how to order the goods was given within a reasonable time after the goods were shown. The Board found that the infomercial created an association between the trademark and the goods, and the test for constituting a display associated with the goods was, therefore, satisfied. *In re Hydron Techs., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1531 (TTAB 1999) .

Displays associated with the goods also exist in an electronic or online environment in the form of web pages. These “electronic displays” perform the same function as traditional displays and must meet the same standards for an acceptable specimen as traditional displays. *See In re Sones*, 590 F.3d 1282, 1288, 93 USPQ2d 1118, 1123 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1727 (TTAB 2004) . See [TMEP §904.03\(i\)](#) regarding electronic displays.

904.03(h) Catalogs

In appropriate cases, catalogs are acceptable specimens of trademark use. *See Lands’ End Inc. v. Manbeck*, 797 F. Supp. 511, 24 USPQ2d 1314 (E.D. Va. 1992). In that case, the applicant had applied to register “KETCH” for purses. The specimen was a catalog page that included a picture of the goods and, below the picture, the mark and a description of the goods. The Court stated, “The alleged trademark ‘KETCH’ appears prominently in large bold lettering on the display of purses in the Lands’ End specimen in a manner which closely associates the term with the purses.” 24 USPQ2d at 1315.

The Court determined that the catalog was not mere advertising and that it met the relevant criteria for displays associated with the goods. The Court evaluated the catalog specimen as follows:

A customer can identify a listing and make a decision to purchase by filling out the sales form and sending it in or by calling in a purchase by phone. A customer can easily associate the product with the word “KETCH” in the display The point of sale nature of this display, when combined with the prominent display of the alleged mark with the product, leads this court to conclude that this mark constitutes a display associated with the goods.

24 USPQ2d at 1316.

Accordingly, examining attorneys may accept any catalog or similar specimen as a display associated with the goods, provided that it: (1) includes a picture or a sufficient textual description of the relevant goods; (2) shows the mark in association with the goods; *and* (3) includes the information necessary to order the goods (e.g., an order form or a phone number, mailing address, or e-mail address for placing orders).

However, the inclusion of a phone number, Internet address, and/or mailing address merely as part of corporate contact information on an advertisement describing the product is not in itself sufficient to meet the criteria for a display associated with the goods. There must be an offer to accept orders or instructions on how to place an order. *See In re MediaShare Corp.*, 43 USPQ2d 1304,1306 (TTAB 1997) (finding applicant's fact sheet brochure, which included an address and phone number but omitted any information as to product price and how to order applicant's software, was merely advertising material). It is not necessary that the specimen list the price of the goods.

904.03(i) Electronic Displays

A web page that displays a product can constitute a “display associated with the goods” if it:

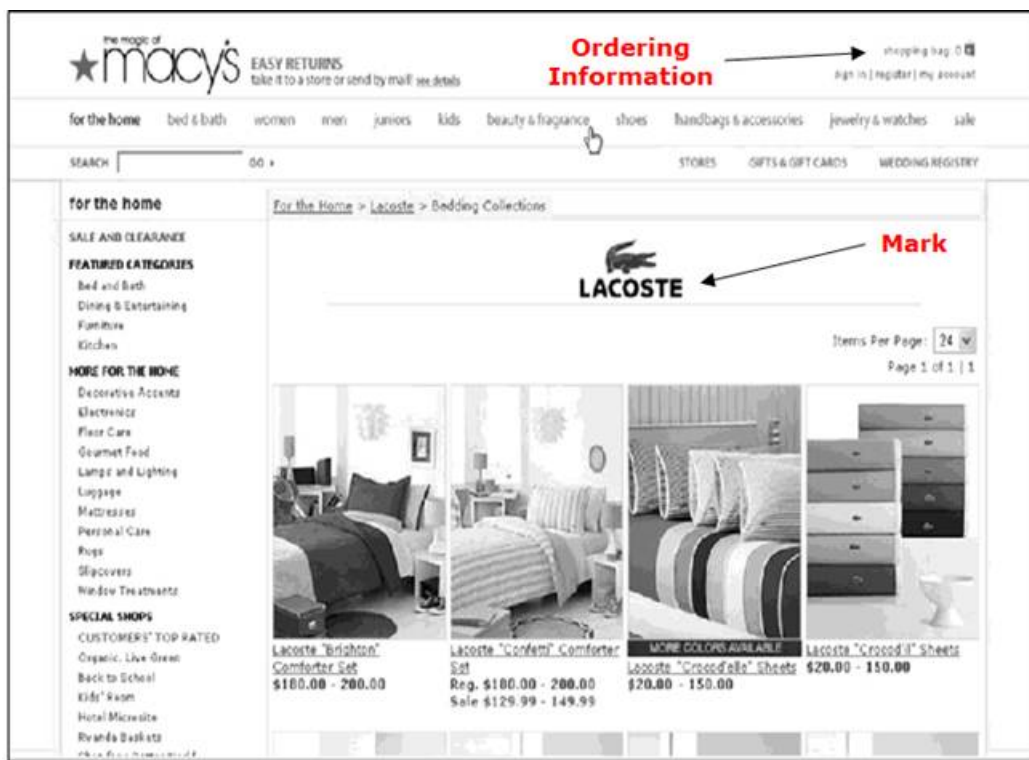
- (1) contains a picture or textual description of the identified goods;
- (2) shows the mark in association with the goods; and
- (3) provides a means for ordering the identified goods.

See In re Sones, 590 F.3d 1282, 1288, 93 USPQ2d 1118, 1123 (Fed Cir. 2009); *In re Azteca Sys., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1955, 1957-58 (TTAB 2012) ; *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1727 (TTAB 2004) ; *Lands' End v. Manbeck*, 797 F. Supp. 511, 514, 24 USPQ2d 1314, 1316 (E.D. Va. 1992).

The mark must also be displayed on the web page in a manner in which customers will recognize it as a mark. *See In re Morganroth*, 208 USPQ 284, 287-88 (TTAB 1980) ; *see also In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1223 (TTAB 2007) (finding that CONDOMTOY CONDOM was not displayed so prominently on web page specimen that consumers would recognize it as a trademark for condoms). See [TMEP §1202.04](#) regarding matter that is merely informational in nature.

Generally, a web page will display the trademark in association with a picture of the goods. However, in *Sones*, the Federal Circuit held that although a visual depiction of the goods “is an important consideration in determining whether a submitted specimen sufficiently associates a mark with the source of the goods,” a picture of the goods on the web page is not mandatory. *In re Sones*. at 1288, 93 USPQ2d at 1123. A textual description may suffice where “the actual features or inherent characteristics of the goods are recognizable from the textual description, given that the more standard the product is, the less comprehensive the textual description need be.” *Id.* at 1289, 93 USPQ2d at 1124.

An applicant need not describe a web-page specimen as a “display” for it to qualify as an acceptable display specimen, nor must the web page come from an applicant's own website. A web page from a third-party website may be acceptable as a display if the mark is sufficiently associated with the applicant's goods. *See In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1221, 1223-24 (finding the specimen unacceptable not because it was a web page from a third-party website, but because it neither showed the mark in association with the goods nor provided a means for ordering the goods). For instance, a manufacturer of bed linens may rely on a third-party retail vendor's web page when the web page shows a picture of the bed linens in association with the mark and provides a means for ordering them, as shown in Example 1.



Example 1: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: LACOSTE

Goods: Coverlets, duvet covers, duvets, bed blankets, bed linen, bed sheets, pillow cases, bath linen, washing mitts

The mark is placed below the website navigation tabs and is prominently displayed.

The mark is physically close to the goods and is repeated in the links located under each product, indicating a direct association with the goods.

No other marks appear to be used in connection with the goods apart from the alligator design and the product style names, all of which are associated with the goods.

Product information is provided in the form of pictures and descriptions of the goods along with prices.

There is a "shopping bag" at the top of the web page to enable direct ordering.

Even if the web page did not include the larger LACOSTE mark, the LACOSTE marks depicted under the photographs of the goods (e.g., Lacoste "Brighton" Comforter Set or Lacoste "Confetti" Comforter Set) would be acceptable to show trademark use for the goods.

If the proposed mark were “Macy’s” (as it appears in the upper-left corner), the web page would not be acceptable for goods because of the closer proximity and association of the other marks with the goods (i.e., the LACOSTE and alligator).

Similarly, a web page from a third-party, social-media website may also be accepted provided the web page satisfies the elements of a display specimen.

However, while a web page display associated with the goods is an acceptable specimen for goods, mere advertising material is not. *In re Anpath Grp.*, 95 USPQ2d 1377, 1380 (TTAB 2010); *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1375, 1379 (TTAB 2010); *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1224; *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d at 1727; *In re MediaShare Corp.*, 43 USPQ2d 1304, 1307 (TTAB 1997). Acceptable web-page displays are not merely advertising, but instead serve as point-of-sale displays, because the website on which the web page appears is, in effect, an electronic retail store, and the web page is a shelf-talker or banner which encourages the consumer to buy the product and provides the information necessary to do so. A consumer using the link on the web page to purchase the goods is the equivalent of a consumer seeing a shelf-talker and taking the item to the cashier in a store to purchase it. *See In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d at 1727. The web page is, thus, a point-of-sale display by which an actual sale is made.

A point-of-sale display is “‘calculated to consummate a sale’”; that is, it includes the information necessary for the consumer to decide to purchase the goods, and it appears in a setting that allows the consumer to immediately buy the goods. *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1379 (quoting *In re Bright of Am., Inc.*, 205 USPQ 63, 71 (TTAB 1979)); *In re Anpath Grp.*, 95 USPQ2d at 1382; *In re MediaShare Corp.*, 43 USPQ2d at 1305; *Lands’ End Inc.*, 797 F. Supp. at 514, 24 USPQ2d at 1316. An advertisement, however, merely describes or touts the benefits of the goods, influences people to buy them, or informs the public about the goods and the company that provides them. *In re Anpath Grp.*, 95 USPQ2d at 1381-82; *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1379. It does not offer a way to directly purchase the goods, because it either does not contain an offer to accept orders for the goods or does not provide special instructions for placing orders for the goods. *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1380; *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1224.

Therefore, a web page that merely provides information about the goods, but does not provide a means of ordering them, is viewed as promotional material, which is not acceptable to show trademark use on goods.

See In re Genitope Corp., 78 USPQ2d 1819, 1822 (TTAB 2006) (“[T]he company name, address and phone number that appears at the end of the web page indicates only location information about applicant; it does not constitute a means to order goods through the mail or by telephone, in the way that a catalog sales form provides a means for one to fill out a sales form or call in a purchase by phone.”). Merely providing a link to the websites of online distributors is not sufficient. There must be a means of ordering the goods directly from the applicant’s web page, such as a telephone number for placing orders or an online ordering process. *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1380; *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1224.

When a web-page specimen appears to be merely advertising, statements by the applicant that the specimen is used in connection with the sale of the goods, without evidence or a detailed explanation of the manner of use, will not suffice to establish that the specimen is a display associated with the goods. *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1224 (finding that applicant’s mere statement in a signed declaration that copies of the web page were distributed at sales presentation lacked sufficient detail to transform the web page from an advertisement into a display associated with the goods).

Whether a web-page display qualifies as an acceptable specimen is a question of fact, based on the evidence of record. *In re Azteca Sys., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d at 1957 (citing *Lands’ End*, 797 F. Supp. at 514, 24 USPQ2d

at 1316); *In re Hydron Techs. Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1531, 1533 (TTAB 1999). The presentation on the web page of the picture or description of the goods, the manner of the mark's use in association with those goods, and the nature of the ordering information affect the specimen's acceptability. Thus, a specimen that describes or displays a picture of the goods, shows the mark, and provides ordering information may nonetheless be unacceptable because it fails to demonstrate an association between the mark and the goods. Sometimes, a single fact or piece of evidence may be dispositive. Often, however, a combination of facts and evidence of record may be required to establish the acceptability of the specimen. If ordering information is not readily discernible from the submitted web page, the applicant may provide multiple, sequential web pages as part of the specimen to clarify the ordering process on the website.

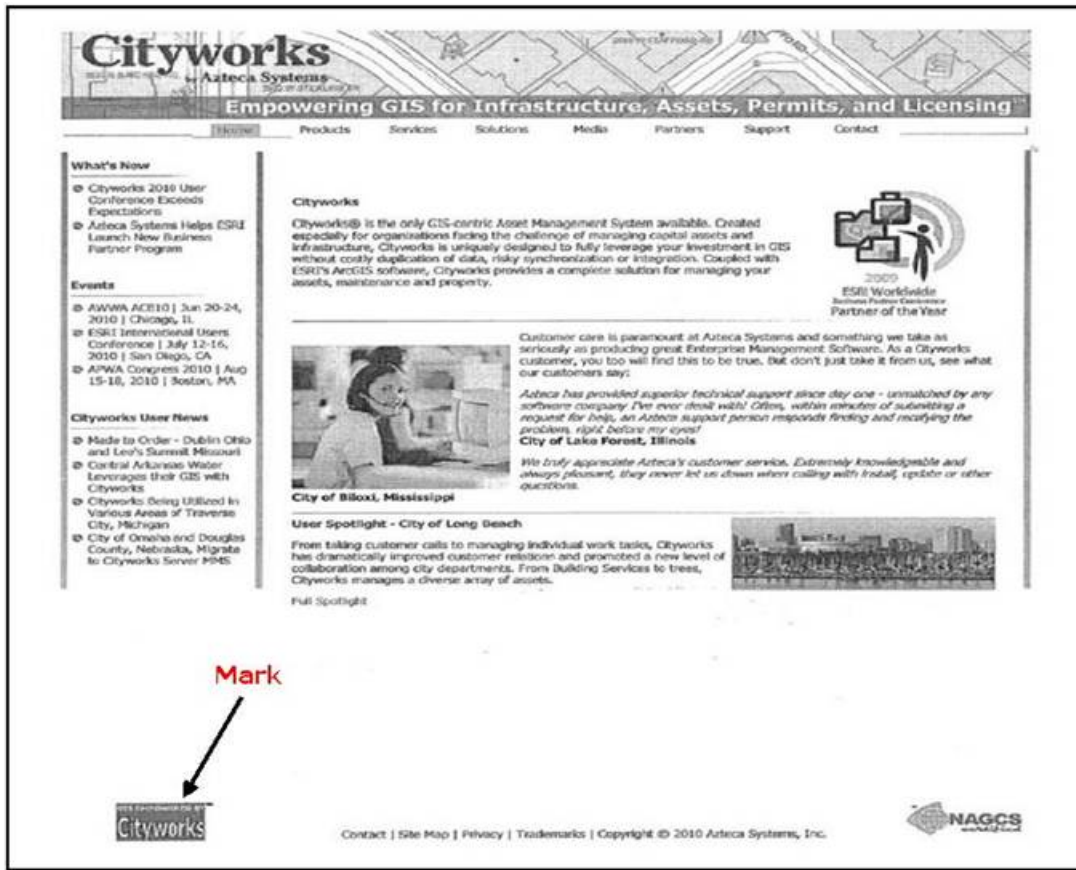
See [TMEP §904.03\(i\)\(A\)–\(i\)\(C\)\(3\)](#) for further discussion of the various factors for assessing whether a web-page display is an acceptable specimen.

904.03(i)(A) Picture or Description of the Goods

In order for a display to be associated with the goods, something on the web page must show or describe the goods for the consumer, that is, a picture or description of the goods. See *In re Sones*, 590 F.3d 1282, 1288-89, 93 USPQ2d 1118, 1123-24 (Fed. Cir. 2009). A description will suffice if “the actual features or inherent characteristics of the goods are recognizable from the textual description.” *Id.* at 1289, 93 USPQ2d at 1124. The level of detail required depends on the type of goods at issue. *Id.* Standard products (e.g., television sets, baseball gloves, or pet food) typically will not require a comprehensive description for the consumer to know what the goods are. Complicated or sophisticated products (e.g., computer products, medical devices, or industrial machinery) may require a more detailed description, in the absence of a picture of the goods.

904.03(i)(B) Show the Mark in Association with the Goods

A web-page display specimen “must in some way evince that the mark is ‘associated’ with the goods and serves as an indicator of source.” *In re Sones*, 590 F.3d 1282, 1288, 93 USPQ2d 1118, 1123 (Fed. Cir. 2009). Assessing the “mark-goods” association on a web page involves many variables, including the prominence and placement of the mark, the content and layout of the web page, and the overall impression the web page creates. Web-page content and layout may sometimes distract consumers and prevent them from making the necessary connection between the mark and the identified goods. *In re Azteca Sys., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1955, 1958 (TTAB 2012). Factors such as the proximity of the mark to the goods, the presence of other marks, intervening text between the mark and the goods, and the inclusion of other material that is unrelated or marginally related to the identified goods, tend to disrupt purchasers from making the mark-goods association, as shown in Example 2. *Id.*



Example 2: Applied-for mark is not associated with the goods.

Mark: GIS EMPOWERED BY CITYWORKS

Goods: Computer software for management of public works and utilities assets

The applied-for mark is distant from the description of the software, and is separated from the description by more than fifteen lines of text concerning marginally related topics;
 Due to the appearance of a number of other marks on the web page, it is unclear whether any particular mark is associated and used in connection with the identified goods;
 The left sidebar includes links to articles and news about applicant’s business and is not limited to the software goods.

The following features of a specimen particularly influence the mark-goods association analysis.

904.03(i)(B)(1) Prominence of Mark

When determining whether a web-page display specimen shows the mark in association with the identified goods, the examining attorney may consider the prominence of the mark. *See In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1223 (TTAB 2007) (“Another factor in the analysis of whether a specimen is an acceptable display used in association with the goods is whether the mark is displayed in a such a way that the customer can easily associate the mark with the goods.” (citing 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1223 (TTAB 2007) (“Another factor in the analysis of whether a specimen is an acceptable display used in association with the goods is whether the mark is displayed in a such a way that the customer can easily associate the mark with the goods.” (citing *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1728 (TTAB 2004)).

The more prominently an applied-for mark appears on a web page, the more likely the mark will be perceived as a trademark. A mark may appear more prominent when the specimen:

- presents the mark in larger font size or different stylization or color than the surrounding text;
- places the mark at the beginning of a line or sentence;
- positions the mark next to a picture or description of the goods; or
- uses the “TM” designation with the applied-for mark (however, the designation alone does not transform a mark into a trademark if other considerations indicate it does not function as a trademark).

Compare In re Quantum Foods, Inc., 94 USPQ2d 1375, 1378 (TTAB 2010) (describing an applied-for mark as “prominently displayed” on the specimen when the mark appeared by itself above pictures relating to applicant’s goods in relatively large font and in a different color than some of the other text on the page), *with In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1223 (finding the applied-for mark not so prominently displayed that customers would easily associate the mark with the goods, because it was buried in the middle of text describing the goods and, while the mark was shown in bold font, so was other matter). *See In re Sones*, 590 F.3d 1282, 1289, 93 USPQ2d 1118, 1124 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (“Though not dispositive, the ‘use of the designation “TM” . . . lends a degree of visual prominence to the term.” (quoting *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d at 1729)); *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1378-79 (concluding that applicant’s specimen did not show use of the applied-for mark as a trademark for the goods, despite the mark’s “TM” designation); *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220 at 1224, n.4 (“The mere use of a superscript ‘tm’ cannot transform a nontrademark term into a trademark.” (citing *In re Brass-Craft Mfg. Co.*, 49 USPQ2d 1849, 1853 (TTAB 1998)).

These factors are not dispositive, and the web page as a whole must be assessed to determine whether the applied-for mark functions as a trademark for the identified goods. Alternatively, a mark may appear less prominent and less likely to be perceived as a trademark if it is:

- shown in the same font size, stylization, or color as the surrounding text;
- buried in a sentence; or
- encompassed within descriptive text such that the commercial impression of the mark is that of a descriptive term for the goods and not as a trademark.

See In re Osterberg, 83 USPQ2d at 1223.

904.03(i)(B)(2) Placement of Mark and Proximity to the Goods

Appearance in Website and E-mail Addresses. When a mark appears in the computer browser area as part of the URL, Internet address, or domain name of the website that houses the web page, consumers generally do not recognize this as trademark use. Instead, this use merely identifies the Internet location of the website where business is conducted and goods or services are offered. *See, e.g., In re Roberts*, 87 USPQ2d 1474, 1479-80 (TTAB 2008) (concluding that the mark IRESTMYCASE, which appeared as part of a website address, www.irestmymcase.com, on applicant’s specimens, merely served as a contact address to reach the applicant and failed to function as a service mark for applicant’s services); *In re Supply Guys, Inc.*, 86 USPQ2d 1488, 1493 (TTAB 2008) (“[A]pplicant’s use of the term LEADING EDGE TONERS as part of the internet address, www.leadingedgetoners.com, . . . identifies the website where applicant conducts its retail sales services. Obviously, a website can be used for multiple purposes and the simple fact that a term is used as part of the internet address does not mean that it is a trademark for the goods sold on the website.”); *In re Eilberg*, 49 USPQ2d 1955, 1956 (TTAB 1998) (finding that the mark WWW.EILBERG.COM, when displayed in relatively small and subdued typeface below other contact information on applicant’s letterhead, merely indicated the Internet location of applicant’s website rather than functioning as a service mark for applicant’s legal services). Similarly, the use of the mark embedded in an e-mail address would be viewed as part of the website address where applicant may be contacted, rather than as a trademark.

Placement in a Location Typical for a Retail-Store Service Mark. A mark may be displayed at the top of a web page, separated from the relevant goods by the website navigation tabs, which may direct consumers to information about the goods, the applicant, and the website. Since it is customary for retailers to place their store marks in this location, such use of the applied-for mark is likely be recognized as an online retail-store service mark, as shown in Example 3.



Example 3: Mark is associated with the services, but the specimen would not be acceptable as evidence of use of the mark as a trademark for the goods shown.

Mark: MACYS.COM

Services: Electronic retail department-store services

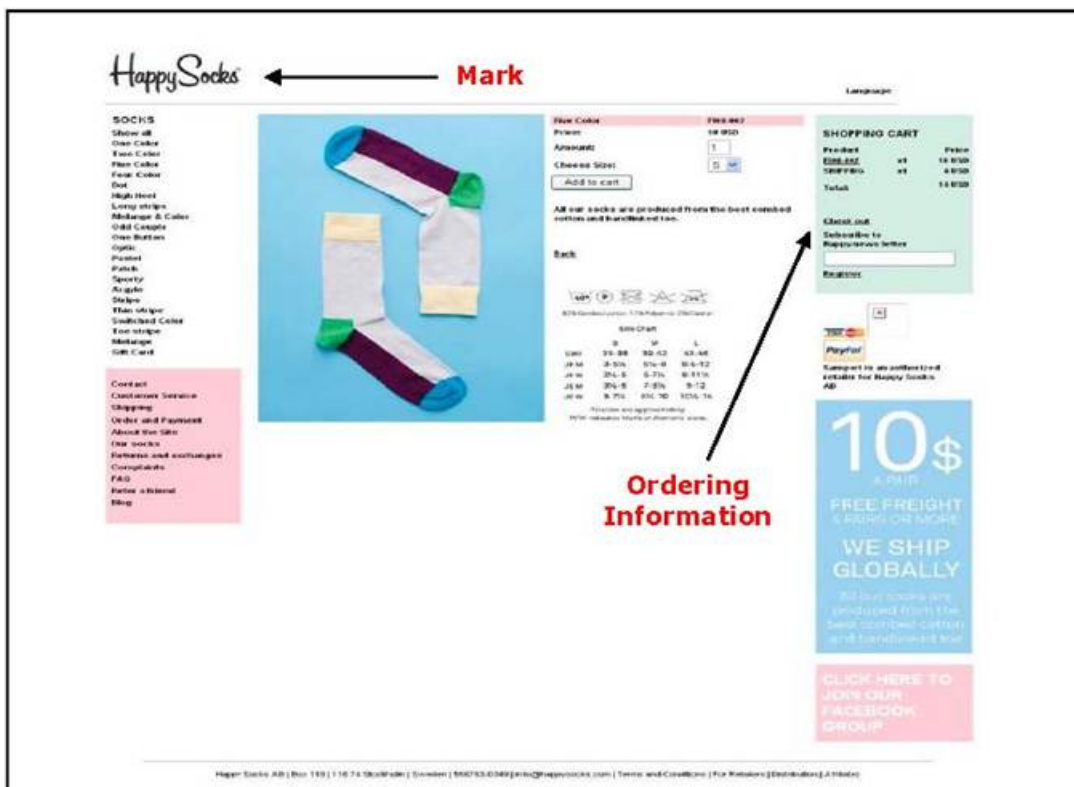
The web page is not acceptable as evidence of use of the mark as a trademark for the goods shown because the mark is serving only as a service mark for retail store services featuring the goods of others (e.g., “Cuisinart” or “Polo by Ralph Lauren”).

The mark is located in the upper-left corner where retail service marks usually appear and is adjacent to the greeting “Welcome to macys.com.”

Other trademarks for various goods appear on the web page, such as “Cuisinart,” “Club Room,” “Charter Club,” and “Polo by Ralph Lauren,” which appear to be more directly associated with the goods.

Retail store services indicia appear, such as “departments” on the right and “expresscheckout sign-in,” “bridal registry,” and “want a card? get one here” on the left.

The mark may also include wording (e.g., “market,” “store,” or “depot”) that indicates use as a service mark. Nevertheless, a mark appearing in a location where service marks normally appear may qualify as a trademark if the web page demonstrates an association between the applied-for mark and the identified goods, and otherwise meets the elements of an acceptable display specimen, as shown in Example 4. *See In re Supply Guys, Inc.*, 86 USPQ2d at 1495-96 (noting that “a mark may serve both as a trademark and service mark” and that one “must look to the perception of the ordinary customer to determine whether the term functions as a trademark”).



Example 4: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: HAPPY SOCKS

Goods: Clothes, namely, socks

The mark is shown prominently in the upper-left corner of the web page, is followed by the “TM” designation, is placed in close proximity to the goods, and appears to be the only mark on the web page associated with the goods.

The reference to “our socks” under “Add to cart” button reinforces trademark use of the mark because it conveys that the socks sold on the web page are produced by HAPPY SOCKS.

The web page contains sufficient product details to make the decision to purchase the goods, including picture and description; size, color, and quantity options; price; and material content of the goods. The ordering information is in the form of an “Add to cart” button adjacent to the picture and description of goods.

Furthermore, if a mark appears on a web page in a location where trademarks normally are not placed, a “substantially larger and more prominent” placement of the mark thereon could result in acceptable trademark use, when the only products on the web page are the identified goods, the placement of the mark is such that the mark-goods association is evident, and the web page otherwise meets the elements of an acceptable display specimen. *See* Examples 5 and 6.

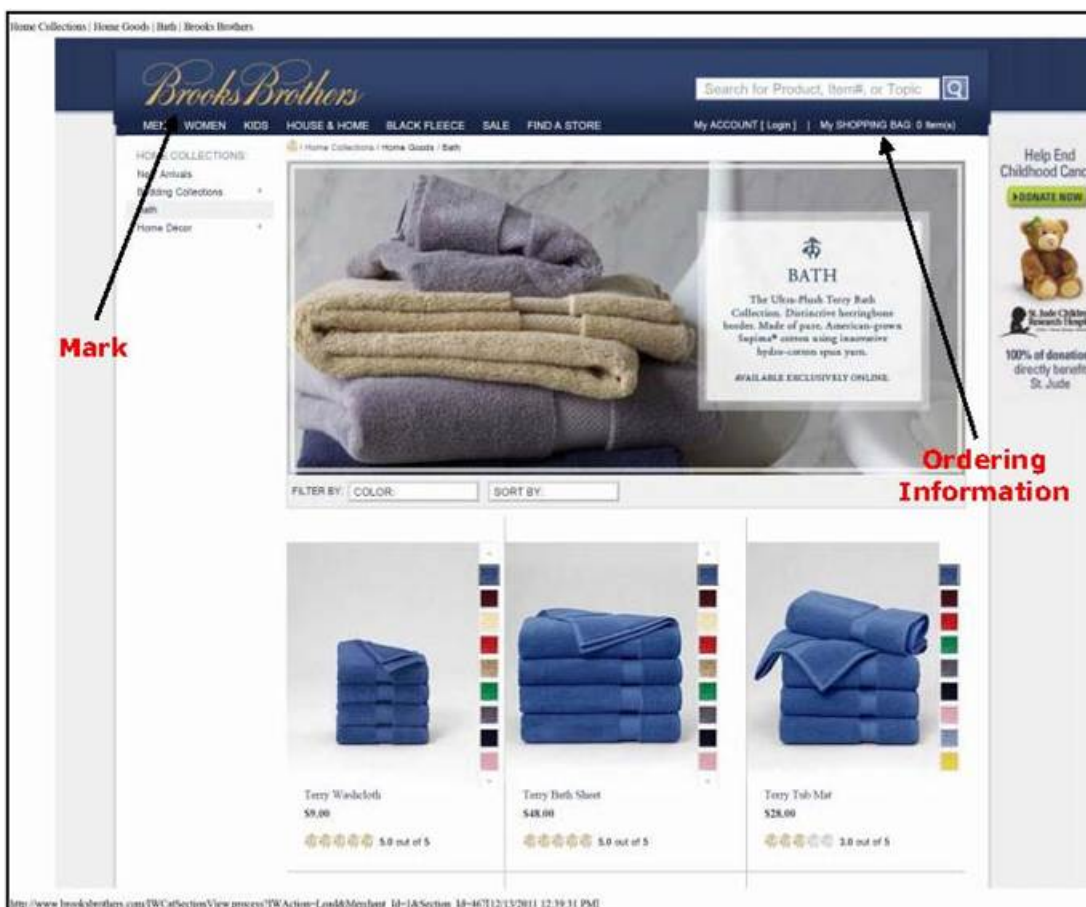


Example 5: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: COLE HAAN

Goods: Eyeglasses, sunglasses, cases for spectacles and sunglasses

The mark is located in the upper-left corner of the web page and is prominently displayed. The mark is somewhat physically distant from the goods, but it appears to be the only mark on the web page associated with the goods, and the only products shown are the identified goods. Although the menu on the left, under “COLLECTIONS,” does include other marks, these marks do not appear to be used in connection with the goods (i.e., the other marks are not placed directly next to the pictures and descriptions of the goods) and the menu simply appears to inform consumers that they may also purchase from other brand-name “collections” on the website. Ordering information in the form of a “SHOPPING BAG” is included near the top of the web page. The mark may also function as a service mark for retail store services since the menu on the left of the web page contains various categories of goods sold in the store, identifies other brand names carried by the store, and provides a “STORES” link on the bottom for locating physical stores.



Example 6: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: BROOKS BROTHERS

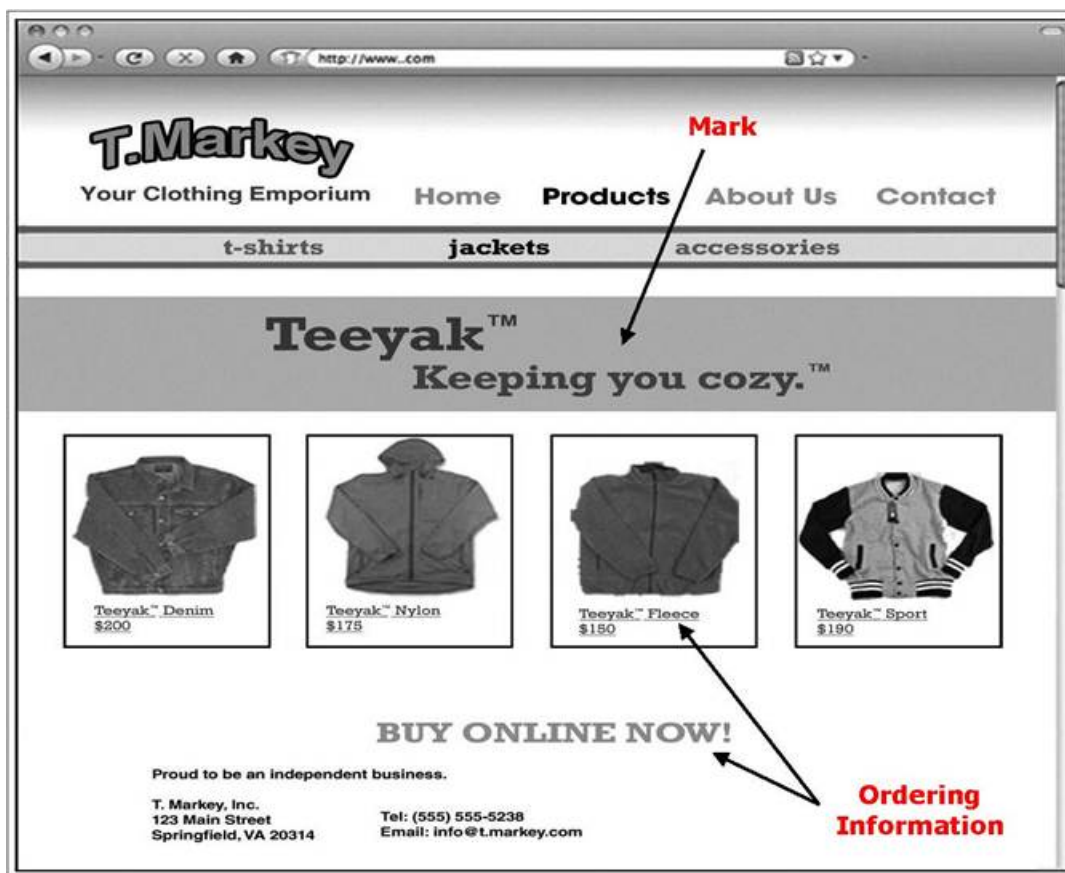
Goods: Bed sheets, dust ruffles, duvet covers, pillow cases, pillow shams, bed shams, bed spreads, towels, and wash cloths

The mark is displayed prominently in large font and placed above the pictures of the goods. No other marks appear to be used in connection with the identified goods apart from the sheep design placed near the goods, which is also associated with the goods. The web page contains pictures and descriptions of the goods, size and color selections, and price information.

The web page would also be an acceptable specimen if the mark were for retail store services because the mark is located where retail service marks are typically placed and the “FIND A STORE” tab indicates the presence of physical stores, thus reinforcing service mark usage.

Displayed in or Near Corporate Contact Information. A mark that appears on a web page only in conjunction with the corporate address, telephone number, and website and e-mail addresses, and/or is placed on the web page near boilerplate and standard information about the applicant or the website (e.g., “Home” and “About Us” links, legal notices, or technical requirements of the website) is less likely to be seen as a trademark and more likely to be perceived as a trade name under which the applicant conducts business. See *In re Walker Process Equip. Inc.*, 233 F.2d 329, 331-32, 110 USPQ 41, 43 (C.C.P.A. 1956) (indicating that the placement of the applied-for mark WALKER PROCESS EQUIPMENT INC. above wording denoting applicant’s location suggested that the mark was not used as a trademark, but as a trade name)..., 233 F.2d 329, 331-32, 110 USPQ 41, 43 (C.C.P.A. 1956) (indicating that the placement of the applied-for mark WALKER PROCESS EQUIPMENT INC. above wording denoting applicant’s location suggested that the mark was not used as a trademark, but as a trade name).

Presence of Other Marks. In some instances, the appearance of more than one mark (whether word or design marks) on the web page may distract consumers and make it less likely that they will perceive an association between the applied-for mark and the relevant goods. See *In re Azteca Sys., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1955, 1958 (TTAB 2012) . The placement of each mark, particularly the applied-for mark, in relation to the identified goods may affect whether it is associated with the goods and functions as a trademark (see Example 7) or, instead, serves as a service mark or trade name.



Example 7: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: KEEPING YOU COZY.

Goods: Jackets

The mark is placed below the website navigation tabs and is prominently displayed in large font followed by the “TM” designation.

The mark is physically close to the goods and would be perceived to be associated with them.

The web page features product information in the form of pictures and descriptions of the goods along with prices.

The links under each product combined with the “BUY ONLINE NOW!” instruction indicate that direct ordering is possible.

If the proposed mark were “T. Markey Your Clothing Emporium” (as it appears in the upper-left corner), the web page would not be acceptable for goods because it is located where service marks are commonly placed and seems to function as a retail store service mark, there is other matter separating the mark from the goods, and there are other marks placed closer to the goods and better associated with the goods.

The nature of the wording and design elements of each mark on the specimen and the appearance of the same or similar elements in the various marks may also influence whether the applied-for mark would be perceived as a trademark for the relevant goods, as in Example 8.



Example 8: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: T.MARKEY YOUR CLOTHING EMPORIUM

Goods: Shirts

The mark is located on the top of the web page and is prominently displayed.

Although the mark is placed above the website navigation tabs and appears in conjunction with a slogan that refers to retail store services (i.e., “Your Clothing Emporium”), the mark still appears to be associated with the goods because the goods are shown immediately below the navigation tabs and the identified goods are the only products displayed.

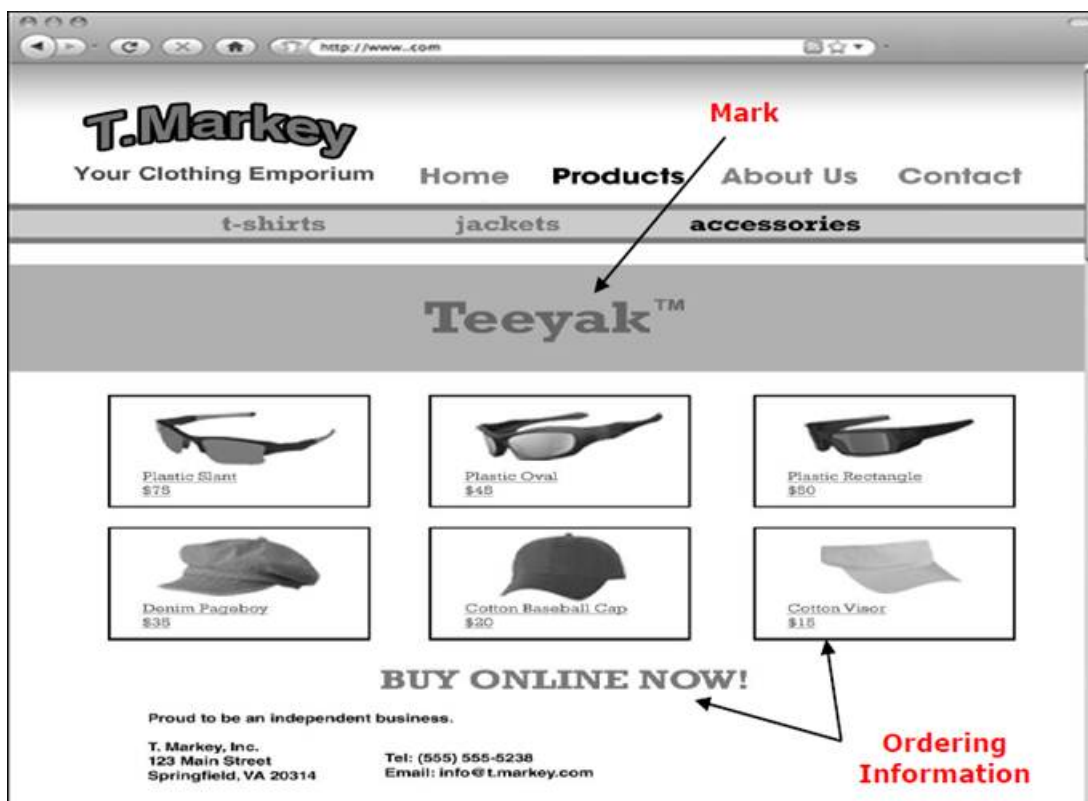
Another mark appears to be used in connection with the goods (i.e., “Let T.Markey Bundle You Up.” and design). However, multiple marks may function as a source indicator for the same goods. Here, both marks contain the same term “T.Markey,” suggesting the marks indicate the same source, and both are placed near and in association with the goods.

The web page provides product information in the form of pictures and descriptions of the goods, prices, and size options.

The telephone number is an acceptable means of ordering, even though it is not accompanied with special ordering instructions, because there is sufficient product information to make the decision to purchase the goods and the telephone number is prominently displayed and positioned in close proximity to the product information, implying that the goods may be ordered by calling the telephone

number. If the telephone number had been listed near or as part of applicant's address, it would not be sufficient ordering information since it would be perceived as part of the corporate contact information and not as a means for purchasing the goods.

Association is more likely when the applied-for mark is physically near the goods and no other marks appear to be used in connection with the goods, as in Example 9.



Example 9: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: TEEYAK

Goods: Sunglasses and hats

The mark appears below the website navigation tabs and is prominently displayed in large font followed by the "TM" designation.

The mark is physically close to the goods and is directly associated with them.

Although another mark (i.e., "T. Markey Your Clothing Emporium") appears on the web page, it seems to function as a retail store service mark since it is located where service marks are commonly

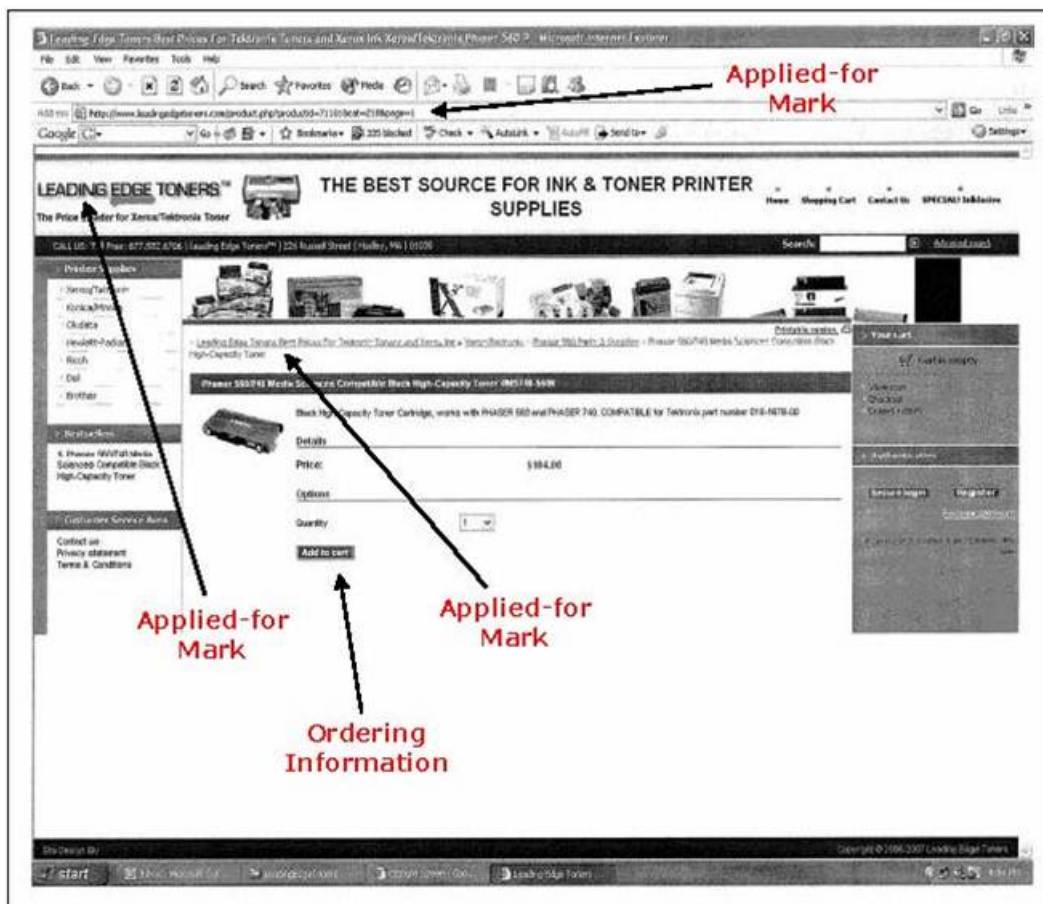
placed, there is other matter separating the mark from the goods, and there is another mark placed closer to the goods and better associated with them.

Product information is provided in the form of pictures and descriptions of the goods along with prices.

The links under each product combined with the “BUY ONLINE NOW!” instruction indicate that direct ordering is possible.

In the absence of links and the “BUY ONLINE NOW!” instruction, the telephone number would not be acceptable ordering information because it appears to be part of corporate contact information provided to obtain information about the product or the company and not intended as a means of placing or accepting orders.

Association becomes less likely if other marks are used in connection with the goods and appear to be trademarks for those goods, as in Example 10.



Example 10: Applied-for mark does not function as a trademark.

Mark: LEADING EDGE TONERS

Goods: Numerous goods including toner, toner cartridges, ink sticks, components for laser toner cartridges, and printer parts

Use of the applied-for mark in the URL identifies the website where applicant's retail services are conducted and does not show trademark use.

The applied-for mark functions as a service mark for retail store or distributorship services, rather than as a trademark, because it appears in the upper-left corner of the web page where service marks normally appear and there are other marks that appear to be used in connection with the goods.

The use of the applied-for mark in phrases containing third-party trademarks that are used to identify goods of third parties (e.g., "Leading Edge Toners Best Prices for Tektronix Toners" or "The Price Leader for Xerox/Tektronix Toner.") does not constitute trademark use and, instead, signifies that the applicant is a retail store or distributorship that sells the goods of others.

904.03(i)(C) Ordering Information

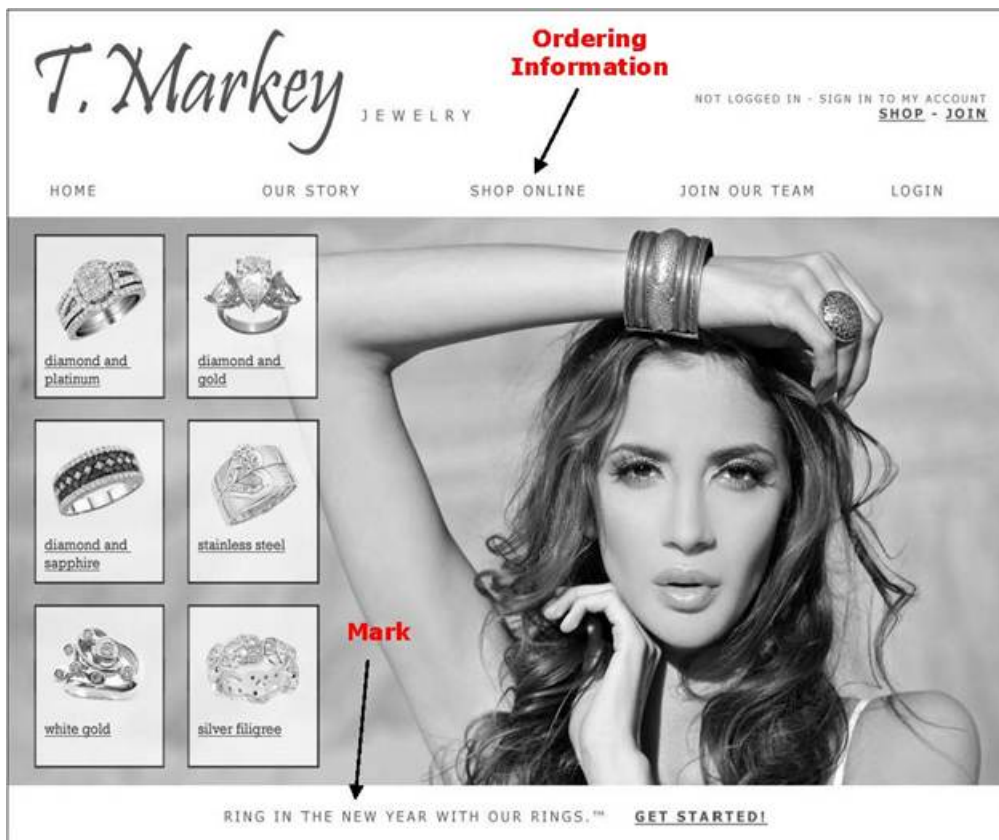
A point-of-sale web-page display must provide a means of ordering the goods, either directly from the web page itself (e.g., web page contains a "shop online" button or link) or from information gleaned from the web page (e.g., web page lists a telephone number designated for ordering). *See In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1375, 1378-79 (TTAB 2010); *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1224 (TTAB 2007) . If the web page offers no way to purchase the goods, the web page is merely an advertisement and not a display associated with the goods. *See In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1378-80; *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1224; *In re Genitope Corp.*, 78 USPQ2d 1819, 1822 (TTAB 2006).

Indicators of the ability to buy the goods via the web page may include:

- a sales order form to place an order, an online process to accept an order, such as "shopping cart" functionality, or special instructions on how to order;
- information on minimum quantities;
- indication of methods of payment;
- information about shipment of the goods; and/or
- means of contacting the applicant to place an order.

See In re Anpath Grp., 95 USPQ2d 1377, 1381 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1379.

Determining the sufficiency of ordering information is a nuanced analysis requiring an examination of the web page content and layout in terms of the level of detail provided about both the goods and the means for ordering them. The more specific and clear the means of immediately and directly ordering the goods on the web page (e.g., "shopping cart" or "Call 1-800-xxx-xxxx to Order Now"), the less detailed the information about the product features and specifications needs to be (e.g., price, size, color, or style), as shown in Example 11.



Example 11: Mark is associated with the goods, goods are pictured and described, and ordering information is provided.

Mark: RING IN THE NEW YEAR WITH OUR RINGS

Goods: Rings

The mark is placed on the bottom of the web page and is followed by the “TM” designation. The mark is close to the picture of the goods and contains the term “RINGS” which references the goods.

The “SHOP ONLINE” tab and the “SHOP” link indicate direct ordering via the web page.

Web page is also acceptable for goods if the proposed mark were “T.Markey Jewelry” (in upper-left corner) because it is located close to the picture of the goods and both the proposed mark and the “T.Markey Jewelry” mark indicate common origin since it can be inferred that the wording “OUR RINGS” in the proposed mark refers to rings by T.Markey Jewelry.

Conversely, the more detailed the product information is on the web page, the less detailed the ordering information needs to be (e.g., providing a telephone number without specifically stating that it be used to

place orders). See Example 8 at [TMEP §904.03\(i\)\(B\)\(2\)](#). Although pricing information is normally associated with ordering goods, the presence or absence of pricing on its own is not determinative of whether the web page provides sufficient ordering information. Compare *In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1728-29 (TTAB 2004) (concluding that a web-page specimen used in connection with applicant's computer hardware, which provided information about the goods but did not show the price of the goods, met the requirements for a display associated with the goods), and [TMEP §904.03\(h\)](#) (indicating that it is not necessary for a catalog specimen to list the price of the goods in order to meet the criteria for a display associated with the goods), with *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1379 (listing pricing information as information normally associated with ordering goods and noting the absence of pricing or other ordering information on the applicant's web page specimen to purchase the goods), and *In re MediaShare Corp.*, 43 USPQ2d 1304, 1305 (TTAB 1997) (concluding that applicant's specimen was merely advertising material because it lacked the price of the goods and other information normally associated with ordering goods). If the goods can be ordered via the information contained on the web page, then, presumably, the price will be presented at some point before the order is completed.

See [TMEP §§904.03\(i\)\(C\)\(1\)-904.03\(i\)\(C\)\(3\)](#) for a discussion of the common features of websites and the issues to consider when determining whether these features constitute sufficient means of ordering the goods.

904.03(i)(C)(1) “Shopping Cart” and “Shopping Bag” Buttons and Links

Frequently used methods of ordering goods online include buttons and links identified as “shopping cart,” “shopping bag,” “add to cart,” and “buy” that permit a consumer to directly purchase the goods. See Example 3 at [TMEP §904.03\(i\)\(B\)\(2\)](#). The presence of these features conveys the web page's point-of-sale character. For intangible goods, such as downloadable computer software programs, buttons and links for downloading, buying, or ordering goods should be considered sufficient ordering information. See [TMEP §904.03\(e\)](#).

“Where to buy” buttons and links are usually unacceptable since they typically provide only contact information for the retailers, wholesalers, or distributors of the goods instead of functioning as a means of directly ordering the goods, as shown in Example 12. See *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1224 (TTAB 2007) (finding a “Where to Buy” link insufficient ordering information since the record contained no information about what the link included and applicant's explanation in the appeal brief indicated that the link provided consumers a list of distributors and their websites from whom goods may be purchased).



Example 12: Web page specimen is not acceptable because, among other things, it lacks ordering information.

Mark: CONDOMTOY CONDOM

Goods: Condoms

The web page provides no means of ordering goods. While there is a "Where to Buy" button at the top, the record does not contain the underlying page the button would lead consumers to. While the applicant explained in the appeal brief that the link connects shoppers with distributors of the goods, the TTAB found this to be insufficient because consumers were not able to immediately and directly purchase the goods.

The applied-for mark is not associated with the goods because (1) the packaging for the goods shown on the web page shows the trademark "Inspiral" and not the applied-for mark, (2) the applied-for mark is not prominently displayed since it is buried in text and is not the first word of a sentence, and (3) while the applied-for mark is shown in bold font, the web page contains other descriptive terms that also appear in bold font.

The applicant submitted a declaration that lacked sufficient detail or explanation of how the web page is used at the point of sale.

904.03(i)(C)(2) Telephone Numbers and E-mail Addresses

In most cases, telephone numbers and e-mail addresses alone will not transform mere advertising into point-of-sale displays even though it is common to sell products on-line or over the telephone. *See In re Anpath Grp.*, 95 USPQ2d 1377, 1382 (TTAB 2010). However, they may suffice if accompanied by special instructions for placing or accepting orders, such as “call now to buy” or “e-mail your order.” If no ordering instructions appear, telephone numbers and e-mail addresses may be sufficient if: (1) the web page contains enough product and ordering information to enable the consumer to buy the goods (e.g., the web page shows the goods; offers size, color, or quantity selections; price; identifies credit card payment options; or states shipping methods); (2) the record contains an explanation or evidence that clearly supports the conclusion that the telephone number or e-mail address can be used for ordering, rather than merely for obtaining information about the goods or the ordering process; or (3) the telephone number or e-mail address is prominently placed close to the goods, indicating it as a means of ordering (see Example 8). *See In re Valenite Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1346, 1349 (TTAB 2007); *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1224 (indicating that applicant’s web-page specimen might have met the ordering information requirement for a point-of-purchase display if the web page had contained a telephone number or online process for ordering the goods, or if the record otherwise showed that “a purchase [could] be made directly from the webpage or from information provided in the webpage”).

However, even where a web page provides sufficient product information for the consumer to make the decision to purchase the goods, a telephone number or e-mail address may not show the requisite means of ordering if it only appears with applicant’s corporate contact information, as shown in Example 13. *See In re Genitope Corp.*, 78 USPQ2d 1819, 1822 (TTAB 2006) (concluding that the company name, address, and phone number appearing at the end of applicant’s web page “indicate[d] only location information about applicant; it [did] not constitute a means to order goods through the mail or by telephone, in the way that a catalog sales form provides a means for one to fill out a sales form or call in a purchase by phone”).



Example 13: Web-page specimen is not acceptable because it lacks ordering information.

Mark: Design of “fingerprint man”

Goods: Biopharmaceutical preparations used to treat cancer in humans, namely, individualized cancer treatments prepared specifically for each individual patient from whom tumor tissue has been received.

The web page provides no actual means of ordering goods since it states that the study is closed to patient registration and provides a link to “click here for more information” about the product instead of to order the product, and the page to which the link leads is not of record.

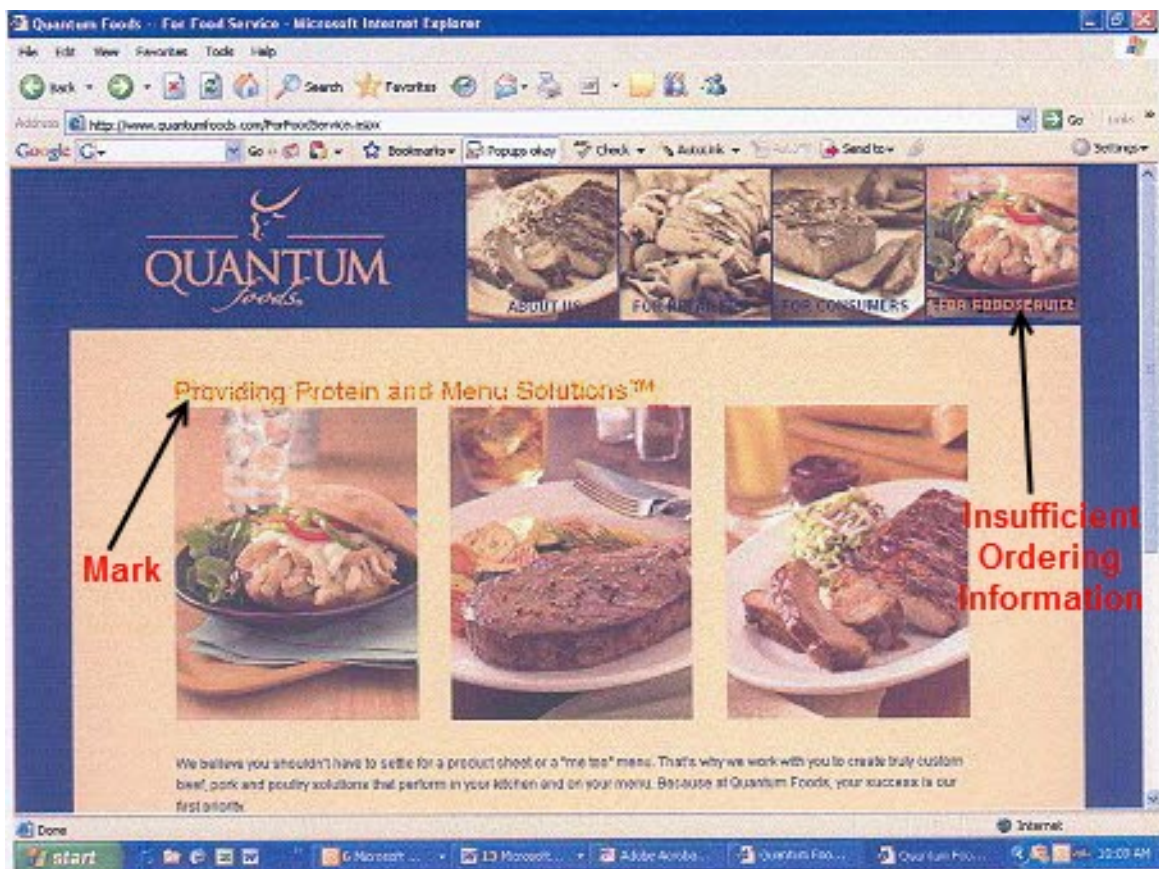
The company name, address, and telephone number at the bottom is only information about applicant’s location and not a means of ordering goods.

By contrast, an e-mail address may be an acceptable means of ordering if the address itself indicates that orders may be placed or are accepted via e-mail (e.g., order@t.markey.com).

The rare case of specialized industrial goods or similarly complex or sophisticated goods for which technical assistance is required in selecting the product or determining the product specifications may present a special situation as to a telephone number showing the requisite ability to order. In such a special situation, the telephone number would suffice if product information is available on the web page or website and the evidentiary record adequately explains the specialized nature of the goods, the industry practice for ordering them, and the need to consult with sales staff over the telephone to place customized orders. In the case *In re Valenite Inc.*, the Board found a web page containing a link to an online catalog, along with a toll-free number and links to customer service and technical support, to be an acceptable specimen, where the goods (industrial tools) were specialized industrial goods, and the record contained declaration evidence that purchase of the goods requires careful calculation and technical knowledge, and that the phone numbers were in fact used to order the goods. *In re Valenite Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d at 1349-50 (“[A]pplicant’s website, in addition to showing pictures of the goods, provides an on-line catalog, technical information apparently intended to further the prospective purchaser’s determination of which particular product to consider, an online calculator and both a link to, and phone number for, customer service representatives. Therefore, applicant’s website provides the prospective purchaser with sufficient information that the customer can select a product and call customer service to confirm the correctness of the selection and place an order.”); *cf. In re U.S. Tsubaki, Inc.*, 109 USPQ2d 2002, 2007 (TTAB 2014) (stating that “where it is asserted that the nature of the goods and the consumers . . . require more involved means for ordering products, it is critical that the examining attorney be provided with detailed information about the means for ordering goods, and that such information be corroborated by sufficient evidentiary support.”). The *Valenite* decision should not be interpreted as a broad-reaching change in USPTO practice regarding the determination of whether a website page constitutes a display associated with the goods. If it appears that the web page merely provides information about the goods, but does not provide a means of ordering the goods directly from the applicant’s web page, it should be viewed as promotional material and a refusal should be issued. *Id.* at 2009 (finding that specimens did not contain adequate information for making a decision to purchase the goods and placing an order and, therefore, were advertisements). Given the narrow range of scenarios to which this decision applies, examining attorneys generally should avoid suggesting reliance on *Valenite* to overcome a specimen refusal.

904.03(i)(C)(3) “Contact Us,” “Customize,” or “Configure” Buttons and Links

“Contact Us” buttons and links usually are not acceptable because they generally do not enable direct ordering of the goods. These buttons and links typically route consumers to a different web page that offers only an invitation to obtain more information about the goods, or about the retailers, wholesalers, or distributors who actually sell the goods, as shown in Example 14. *See, e.g., In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1375, 1379 (TTAB 2010) (noting that the “contact us” link on applicant’s web-page specimen did not take customers to an order form, but instead routed to a web page with applicant’s e-mail address and telephone number); *cf. In re Genitope Corp.*, 78 USPQ2d 1819, 1822 (TTAB 2006) (stating that the web page did not provide a link to order the goods or explain how to order them, where the web page contained a link for “click here for more information” and provided links for “Patient Backgrounder” and “Patient Resources” for “more information on personalized immunotherapy and our products”).



Example 14: Web-page specimen is not acceptable because it lacks ordering information.

Mark: PROVIDING PROTEIN AND MENU SOLUTIONS

Goods: Processed meats, beef, pork, poultry and seafood sold in portions; fully cooked entrees consisting primarily of meat, beef, pork, poultry or seafood

The web page provides no means of ordering goods (e.g., no sales form, pricing, offers to accept orders, special instructions for ordering, or opportunity and means to order online) and the minimal product information makes it unclear what the goods are.

The TTAB found insufficient applicant's claims that placing the cursor over "FOODSERVICE" reveals a drop-down menu from which the "contact us" link is selected, which brings up a web page containing an e-mail address and telephone number for applicant's customer service department for ordering the goods.

Simply providing a "contact us" link does not convert advertising into a display and, in fact, the "contact us" link here does not even enable ordering, but only leads to applicant's contact information. While the "Contact Us" web page was rejected as untimely, the TTAB stated that, although it may

ultimately result in a sale, the “Contact Us” web page “appears to be no more calculated to do so than any corporate contact e-mail address or phone number that would result in the call or e-mail being referred to the sales office.” *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1375, 1377 n.2 (TTAB 2010) .

By analogy, a seller’s contact information that often appears in advertisements does not provide a sufficient means of ordering, in contrast to a telephone number on a sales form designated to accept orders. *In re Genitope Corp.*, 78 USPQ2d at 1822.

Similarly, “Customize” and “Configure” buttons and links that allow customers to configure the goods generally are insufficient by themselves, since such features only enable personalization and not necessarily purchase of the goods. For these buttons and links to be deemed adequate means of ordering, the record must contain evidence that they permit customers to actually buy the goods. *See In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1727 (TTAB 2004) (finding that a “Customize It” link was sufficient ordering means when the information on the website clearly indicated that the goods could be bought online via the link).

904.03(i)(D) Beta Websites

In some cases a specimen may consist of an excerpt from a website labeled as “beta.” This term is commonly used to describe a preliminary version of a product or service. Although some beta websites may not be accessible to consumers, others are. Thus, the use of this term in connection with an apparently functioning website shown in a specimen does not, by itself, necessarily mean that the relevant goods or services shown on the website are not in actual use in commerce or that the specimen is unacceptable. However, if examination of the specimen indicates that the beta version is not in actual use in commerce, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act because applicant has not provided evidence of use of the applied-for mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#). See [TMEP §1301.03\(a\)](#) regarding service mark specimens containing the term “beta.”

904.03(j) Manuals

If printed matter included with the goods functions as a part of the goods, such as a manual that is part of a kit for assembling the product, then placement of the mark on that printed matter does show use on the goods. *In re Ultraflight Inc.*, 221 USPQ 903, 906 (TTAB 1984) (“We believe the instruction manual is as much a part of applicant’s goods as are the various parts that are used to build the gliders. Application of the mark to the manual of assembly instructions, then, must be considered affixation to the goods.”).

904.03(k) Specimens for Marks that are Impracticable to Place on Goods, Packaging, or Displays

The USPTO may accept another document related to the goods or the sale of the goods when it is impracticable to place the mark on the goods, packaging, or displays associated with the goods. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of “use in commerce”); [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(1\)](#). This provision is not intended as a general alternative to submitting labels, tags, containers, or displays associated with the goods; it applies *only* to situations when the nature of the goods makes use on these items impracticable. For example, in rare circumstances it may be impracticable to place the mark on the goods or packaging for the goods if the goods are natural gas, grain that is sold in bulk, or chemicals that are transported only in tanker cars. In such instances, an acceptable specimen might be an invoice, a bill of lading, or a shipping document that shows the mark for the goods.

A mere assertion of impracticability does not suffice to establish that traditional trademark use is impracticable. Rather, the record must indicate that the goods are, in fact, of such a nature. In *In re Settec, Inc.*, 80 USPQ2d 1185 (TTAB 2006), the applicant asserted that placing the mark on the goods or on displays associated with the goods in the traditional manner was impracticable because the purpose of the goods was to provide digital media copy protection to media content providers, and placing the mark on the final product available to the ultimate end-user would impair the value of the goods, because the end-user would thereby be armed with an additional piece of the encryption puzzle. The Board rejected this contention, finding that there were a variety of ways in which applicant could use its mark in the traditional manner without making it available to the end-user.

904.03(l) Specimens for Motion Marks

To show that a motion mark actually identifies and distinguishes the goods/services and indicates their source, an applicant must submit a specimen that depicts the motion sufficiently to show how the mark is used on or in connection with the goods/services, and that matches the required description of the mark.

Although the drawing for a motion mark may depict a single point in the movement, or up to five freeze frames showing various points in the movement, an acceptable specimen should show the entire repetitive motion in order to depict the commercial impression conveyed by the mark (e.g., a video clip, a series of still photos, or a series of screen shots).

For TEAS applications under § 1(a), as well as response, statement of use/amendment to allege use, petition, and registration maintenance/renewal forms, the specimen can be attached to the TEAS form and must be an electronic file in .wav, .wmv, .wma, .mp3, .mpg, or .avi format. Audio files should not exceed 5 MB in size and video files should not exceed 30 MB because TEAS cannot accommodate larger files.

See [TMPEP §807.11](#) regarding drawings for motion marks and [TMPEP §904.02\(a\)](#) regarding specimens filed electronically.

904.03(m) Specimens for Scent and Flavor Marks

To show that the specimen for a scent or flavor mark actually identifies and distinguishes the goods and indicates their source, an applicant must submit a specimen that contains the scent or flavor and that matches the required description of the scent or flavor. In most cases, the specimen will consist of the actual goods themselves because the examining attorney must be able to smell or taste the scent or flavor in order to determine whether the specimen shows use of the mark in connection with the goods. When submitting such a specimen, the applicant should clearly indicate on the specimen itself that it is a specimen for a scent or flavor mark application so that the USPTO will properly route the actual specimen to the examining attorney.

A “scratch and sniff” sticker for a scent mark is an acceptable specimen, provided that it is part of the packaging for the goods or is used in such a manner as to identify the goods and indicate their source.

See also [TMPEP §§807.09](#) and [1202.13](#) regarding scent and flavor marks.

904.04 Material Not Appropriate as Specimens for Trademarks

904.04(a) Drawing or “Picture” of the Mark; Digitally Created Specimen

A photocopy of the drawing required by 37 C.F.R. §2.51 is not a proper specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(c\)](#). Similarly, the specimen may not be a “picture” of the mark, such as an artist’s drawing, a printer’s proof, a computer graphic that merely illustrates what the mark looks like, or an image of the goods or advertising matter for services that has been digitally created or altered to include the mark. Such items do not show actual use of the mark on or in connection with the goods or services in commerce and registration must be refused under Sections 1 and 45 of the Act. [15 U.S.C §§1051](#) and [1127](#). See *In re Chica*, 84 USPQ2d 1845, 1848 (TTAB 2007) (holding that “a mere drawing of the goods with an illustration of how the mark may be displayed” was not an acceptable specimen because it did not show actual use in commerce); *In re The Signal Cos.*, 228 USPQ 956, 957-58 n.4 (TTAB 1986) (noting that a printer’s proof of an advertisement would not be an acceptable specimen because it does not show actual use in commerce). See [TMEP §904.07\(a\)](#) for further discussion of “use-in-commerce” refusals.

904.04(b) Advertising Material

Advertising material is generally not acceptable as a specimen for goods. Any material whose function is merely to tell the prospective purchaser about the goods, or to promote the sale of the goods, is unacceptable to support trademark use. Similarly, informational inserts are generally not acceptable to show trademark use. See *In re MediaShare Corp.*, 43 USPQ2d 1304 (TTAB 1997); *In re Schiapparelli Searle*, 26 USPQ2d 1520 (TTAB 1993); *In re Drilco Indus. Inc.*, 15 USPQ2d 1671 (TTAB 1990); *In re ITT Rayonier Inc.*, 208 USPQ 86 (TTAB 1980); *In re Bright of Am., Inc.*, 205 USPQ 63 (TTAB 1979). However, an instruction sheet may be an acceptable specimen. See *In re Ultraflight Inc.*, 221 USPQ 903 (TTAB 1984). See [TMEP §904.03\(j\)](#) regarding manuals and [TMEP §904.04\(c\)](#) regarding package inserts.

The following types of items are generally considered advertising, and unless they comprise point-of-sale material, are not acceptable as specimens of use on goods: advertising circulars and brochures; price lists; announcements; press releases; listings in trade directories; business cards; and online advertising banners appearing on search-engine results pages or in social media. Moreover, material used by the applicant to conduct its internal business is unacceptable as a specimen of use on goods. These materials include all documents whose sole function is to carry out the applicant’s business dealings, such as invoices, bill heads, waybills, warranties, and business stationery. See *In re Chicago Rawhide Mfg. Co.*, 455 F.2d 563, 173 USPQ 8 (C.C.P.A. 1972); *In re Bright of Am.*, 205 USPQ at 65; *Upco Co. v. Speed Crete of La., Inc.*, 154 USPQ 555 (TTAB 1967); *Dynacolor Corp. v. Beckman & Whitley, Inc.*, 134 USPQ 410 (TTAB 1962); *Pendleton Woolen Mills v. Eloesser-Heynemann Co.*, 133 USPQ 211 (TTAB 1962); *Varian Assocs. v. IMAC Corp.*, 160 USPQ 283 (N.D. Ill. 1968); *Boss Co. v. Homemaker Rugs, Inc.*, 117 USPQ 255 (N.D. Ill. 1958).

Material that would otherwise be considered mere advertising may be acceptable as a specimen of use for goods if it includes a photograph of the applied-for mark appearing on the goods or on packaging for the goods. See [TMEP §§904.02\(b\)](#), [904.03](#), [904.03\(b\)](#), [904.03\(c\)](#).

As to display of trademarks on company uniforms, see *In re McDonald’s Corp.*, 199 USPQ 702 (TTAB 1978); *Toro Mfg. Corp. v. John B. Stetson Co.*, 161 USPQ 749 (TTAB 1969).

Bags and other packaging materials bearing the name of a retail store and used by the store merely for packaging items of sold merchandise are not acceptable to show trademark use of the store name for the

products sold by the store (e.g., bags at cash register). When used in this manner, the name merely identifies the store. See *In re The Pa. Fashion Factory, Inc.*, 198 USPQ 568 (TTAB 1978), *aff'd*, 588 F.2d 1343, 200 USPQ 140 (C.C.P.A. 1978).

904.04(c) Package Inserts

If material inserted in a package with the goods is merely advertising material, then it is not acceptable as a specimen of use on or in connection with the goods. Material that is only advertising does not necessarily cease to be advertising because it is placed inside a package.

Package inserts such as invoices, announcements, order forms, bills of lading, leaflets, brochures, printed advertising material, circulars, press releases, and the like are not acceptable specimens to show use on goods. See *In re Bright of Am., Inc.*, 205 USPQ 63 (TTAB 1979).

904.05 Affidavit Supporting Substitute Specimens

If the examining attorney determines that the specimen is not acceptable, the examining attorney will require the applicant to submit a substitute specimen. Generally, when submitting a substitute specimen, the applicant must include an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) verifying that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce at least as early as the filing date of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#). Similarly, when submitting an additional specimen in support of a multiple-class application that is not identical to the specimen originally filed, the applicant must include an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) verifying that the new specimen was in use in commerce as of the pertinent date indicated in this section. See C.F.R. §§2.59, 2.86(a)(3), (b)(3). The affidavit or declaration must be signed by someone properly authorized to verify facts on behalf of the applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#).

In an application under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the affidavit or declaration must state that the substitute or additional specimen was in use in commerce at least as early as the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#). If the applicant cannot provide an acceptable substitute specimen, supported by an affidavit or declaration of use in commerce as of the filing date of the application, the applicant may amend the basis to §1(b). See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

In an application under §1(b) of the Act, an applicant who files a substitute or additional specimen after an amendment to allege use under §1(c) of the Act must include an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) stating that the substitute or additional specimen was in use in commerce prior to filing the amendment to allege use. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(b\)\(1\)](#). An applicant who files a substitute specimen after a statement of use under §1(d) of the Act must verify that the substitute or additional specimen was in use in commerce before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use (i.e., within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance or before the expiration of an extension of time for filing a statement of use). [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(b\)\(2\)](#).

If the dates of use change as the result of the submission of new specimen(s), the applicant must file an amendment of the dates of use, supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#); [TMEP §903.04](#).

In some situations, however, an affidavit or declaration of use of substitute specimens is not necessary. For instance, if the specimen originally filed is cut from a larger object, it is not necessary to provide an affidavit or declaration when a sample (or a photograph) of the complete object is submitted to corroborate the original

specimen. In these circumstances, the additional specimen is supplemental, and the examining attorney may consider the original specimens to have been satisfactory.

904.06 Translation of Matter on Specimens

If there is matter printed on a specimen that is not in English and that is necessary to permit proper examination, the examining attorney must either include a translation of this matter in the record or require that the applicant submit a translation of this matter. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). If the examining attorney determines that an English translation is necessary, he or she should limit the requirement in an appropriate manner to avoid placing an unnecessary burden on the applicant.

904.07 Requirements for Substitute Specimens and Statutory Refusals

904.07(a) Whether the Specimen Shows the Mark Used in Commerce

A §1(a) application for registration or an allegation of use submitted in a §1(b) application for a trademark or service mark must include one specimen per class, showing the applied-for mark in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(1\), \(c\), \(d\)\(1\), 1127](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\), 2.56\(a\)-\(b\)\(2\), 2.76\(b\)\(2\), 2.88\(b\)\(2\)](#). Initially, the examining attorney must review the specimen to determine whether the applied-for mark appears on the specimen, the specimen shows use for the specific goods/services identified, and the specimen otherwise shows the applied-for mark in “use in commerce.”

The following non-exhaustive list reflects examples of “use-in-commerce” problems that may be raised on initial review of specimens:

- No specimen is submitted;
- The applied-for mark does not appear on the specimen;
- The specimen does not show use of the applied-for mark on or in connection with any of the relevant goods or in the sale or advertising of the services;
- The specimen is a printer’s proof of an advertisement for services;
- The specimen is a digitally created or altered image of the goods;
- The specimen is altered/mutilated/unprintable or illegible;
- The specimen is merely advertising material for goods;
- The specimen is merely a picture or drawing of the mark;
- The specimen is a photocopy of the drawing;
- The specimen is an electronic display associated with the goods (e.g., an online catalog, or web page display for goods), and fails to include ordering information or pricing;
- The specimen is a non-electronic point of sale display and fails to show use of the mark as a “display associated with the goods.”

In an Office action addressing such specimen issues, the examining attorney must indicate that registration is refused because the applicant has not provided evidence of use of the applied-for mark in commerce. The statutory bases for refusal are §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#). The examining attorney must also require the applicant to submit a substitute specimen and, if necessary, a supporting affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.59](#). If the refusal is made because the specimen is altered, mutilated, or illegible, the applicant may respond by submitting a true, unaltered copy of the originally submitted specimen that is clear and readable, with a statement by the person who transmitted it that it is a true copy of the specimen that was originally submitted. [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#); see [TMEP §904.02\(b\)](#).

This specimen refusal, based on an applicant's not providing the required evidence of use of the applied-for mark in commerce, also applies to specimens for collective and certification mark applications. A §1(a) application for registration or an allegation of use for a collective or certification mark must include one specimen per class, showing the applied-for mark in use in commerce on or in connection with an applicant's member's or authorized user's goods or in the sale or advertising of the services by an applicant's member or authorized user, for a collective trademark, collective service mark, or certification mark specimen, or to indicate membership in a collective membership organization, for a collective membership mark specimen. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(1\), \(c\), \(d\)\(1\), 1054, 1127](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\), 2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(E\), 2.56\(a\), \(b\)\(3\)-\(b\)\(5\), 2.76\(b\)\(2\), 2.88\(b\)\(2\)](#). If the specimen submitted does not show the applied-for mark in use in commerce, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the applicant has not provided evidence of use of the applied-for mark in commerce. The statutory bases for refusal are §§1, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#). The examining attorney must also require the applicant to submit a substitute specimen and, if necessary, a supporting affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.59](#). If the refusal is made because the specimen is altered, mutilated, or illegible, the applicant may respond by submitting a true, unaltered copy of the originally submitted specimen that is clear and readable, with a statement by the person who transmitted it that it is a true copy of the specimen that was originally submitted. [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#); *see* [TMEP §904.02\(b\)](#).

For more information regarding specimens for collective trademarks and collective service marks see [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#), for collective membership marks see [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#), and for certification marks see [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\), 1306.04\(c\)-\(d\)](#).

904.07(a)(i) Action After Submission of Substitute Specimen

If the applicant responds to the Office action refusing registration by submitting a substitute specimen that does not show use of the mark in commerce for the same or a different "use-in-commerce" reason, such as the examples listed above, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal because the substitute specimen does not present a new issue. For example, if the original specimen was a photocopy of the drawing, and the applicant submits, in a response to the refusal, a substitute specimen that comprises advertising for its goods, this does not present a new issue. However, if the applicant responds to the refusal by submitting a substitute specimen that fails to show the applied-for mark functioning as a trademark or service mark (e.g., shows the mark is merely ornamental), this presents a new issue that requires issuance of a new nonfinal Office action. *See* [TMEP §904.07\(b\)](#) for a contrasting list of substantive reasons, relating to failure to function as a mark, that might present a new issue. Therefore, the examining attorney must issue a new refusal as to the substitute specimen, and must maintain the prior refusal as to the original specimen and indicate that the substitute specimen did not obviate the initial refusal.

If the applicant responds to the "use-in-commerce" refusal by submitting a substitute specimen, and unlike in the original specimen, the mark on the substitute specimen now does not agree with the mark on the drawing (*see* [TMEP §807.12](#)), but the specimen would otherwise be acceptable to show use in commerce, the examining attorney may allow the applicant to amend the drawing if such an amendment would not constitute a material alteration of the mark. If any remaining issues can be handled by examiner's amendment, and the mark is a standard character mark, the examining attorney may give the applicant the option to amend the drawing by examiner's amendment. If not, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal that also gives the applicant the option to overcome the refusal by submitting a substitute drawing.

If an amendment of the drawing would be a material alteration, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal (assuming the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal) because the substitute specimen does not present a new issue.

See [TMEP §714.05](#) regarding new issues requiring issuance of nonfinal action.

904.07(b) Whether the Specimen Shows the Applied-for Mark Functioning as a Mark

In a §1(a) application for registration or an allegation of use submitted in a §1(b) application for a trademark or service mark, the examining attorney must also evaluate the specimen to determine whether the applied-for mark is used in a way that shows that: (1) the applied-for mark identifies the goods/services of the applicant and distinguishes them from the goods/services of others; and (2) the applied-for mark indicates the source of those goods/services. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). If use on the specimen fails in either regard, the record lacks the requisite evidence that the applied-for mark functions as a mark. The following non-exhaustive list reflects examples where review of the specimen would indicate a failure to function as a mark:

- Applied-for mark is used solely as a trade name (see [TMEP §1202.01](#))
- Applied-for mark is mere ornamentation (see [TMEP §1202.03](#));
- Applied-for mark is merely informational matter (see [TMEP §§1202.04, 1301.02\(a\)](#));
- Applied-for mark identifies the name or pseudonym of a performing artist or author (see [TMEP §1202.09\(a\)](#));
- Applied-for mark identifies the title of a single creative work (see [TMEP §1202.08](#));
- Applied-for mark identifies a model number or grade designation (see [TMEP §1202.16](#));
- Applied-for mark is merely a background design or shape that does not create a commercial impression separable from the entire mark (see [TMEP §1202.11](#));
- Applied-for mark identifies a process, system, or method (see [TMEP §1301.02\(e\)](#));
- Applied-for mark is used to refer to activities that are not considered “services” (see [TMEP §§1301.01 et seq.](#));
- Applied-for mark is used solely as a domain name (see [TMEP §1215.02](#));
- Applied-for mark is used solely to identify a character (see [TMEP §1301.02\(b\)](#)).

If the deficiency in a specimen amounts to failure to demonstrate use of the applied-for mark as a trademark and/or service mark, the examining attorney must issue a "failure-to-function" refusal of registration on the ground that the applied-for mark does not function as a trademark or service mark, in addition to advising the applicant of the appropriate response options, which may include requiring the applicant to submit a substitute specimen. The statutory bases for refusal are §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1127](#), for trademarks, or §§1, 2, 3, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#), for service marks. See *In re Osmotica Holdings Corp.*, 95 USPQ2d 1666 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Supply Guys, Inc.*, 86 USPQ2d 1488 (TTAB 2008); *In re wTe Corp.*, 87 USPQ2d 1536 (TTAB 2008) ; *In re DSM Pharms., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d 1623 (TTAB 2008). Generally, when initially refusing registration on the ground that the subject matter does not function as a trademark or service mark, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that the refusal will be reconsidered if the applicant submits a substitute specimen showing proper use of the applied-for mark as a trademark or service mark and, if necessary, a supporting affidavit or declaration. See [TMEP §904.05](#) regarding affidavits supporting new specimens. However, in instances where the nature of the mark, such as with informational marks, indicates that consumers would never perceive the mark as source indicating, regardless of the manner of use, no such advisory need be given.

This “failure-to-function” specimen refusal also applies to specimens for collective and certification mark applications. If the deficiency in a specimen amounts to failure to demonstrate use of the applied-for mark as a collective or certification mark, the examining attorney must issue a “failure-to-function” refusal of registration on the ground that the applied-for mark does not function as a collective or certification mark and advise the applicant of the appropriate response options, which may include requiring the applicant to

submit a substitute specimen. The statutory bases for refusal are §§1, 2, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#). See *In re Int'l Inst. of Valuers*, 223 USPQ 350 (TTAB 1984) ; *In re Mountain Fuel Supply Co.*, 154 USPQ 384 (TTAB 1967) ; *Ex parte Van Winkle*, 117 USPQ 450 (Comm'r Pats. 1958). Generally, when initially refusing registration on the ground that the subject matter does not function as a collective or certification mark, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that the refusal will be reconsidered if the applicant submits a substitute specimen showing proper use of the applied-for mark as a collective or certification mark and, if necessary, a supporting affidavit or declaration. See [TMEP §904.05](#) regarding affidavits supporting new specimens. However, in instances where the nature of the mark, such as with informational marks, indicates that consumers would never perceive the mark as source indicating, regardless of the manner of use, no such advisory need be given.

For additional specimen refusals for collective and certification marks and more information regarding whether the specimen shows the applied-for mark functioning as a collective or certification mark, see [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) for collective trademark and collective service mark specimens, see [TMEP §1304.03\(b\)](#) for collective membership mark specimens, and see [TMEP §1306.04\(c\)-\(d\)](#) for certification mark specimens.

904.07(b)(i) Action After Submission of Substitute Specimen

Because the examining attorney has advised the applicant of the appropriate response options, which may include the general requirements for a substitute specimen, if the applicant responds to the failure-to-function refusal by submitting a specimen that does not show the mark in use in commerce for a reason such as those set out in [TMEP §904.07\(a\)](#), the examining attorney must issue a final refusal, as no new issue is presented. For example, if the original specimen was refused as ornamental and the substitute specimen does not show the applied-for mark, the examining attorney may issue a final refusal. By contrast, if the applicant responds to the Office action refusing registration by submitting a substitute specimen that reflects failure to function as a mark for a different substantive reason, such as the examples listed in [TMEP §904.07\(b\)](#), the examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal Office action because the substitute specimen presents a new issue. For example, if the original specimen shows the mark used merely as a domain name, and the applicant submits a substitute specimen that shows the mark used in an ornamental manner, this presents a new issue. Therefore, the examining attorney must issue a new refusal as to the substitute specimen, and must maintain the prior failure-to-function refusal as to the original specimen and indicate that the substitute specimen did not obviate the initial refusal. If the applicant responds to the refusal by submitting a substitute specimen that fails to show the applied-for mark functioning as a trademark or service mark for the same reason as the original specimen (e.g., the original specimen was refused as ornamental and the substitute specimen also reflects ornamental use), this does not present a new issue and the examining attorney must issue a final Office action.

If the applicant responds to the failure-to-function refusal by submitting a substitute specimen, and unlike in the original specimen, the mark on the substitute specimen now does not agree with the mark on the drawing (see [TMEP §807.12](#)), but the specimen would otherwise be acceptable to identify the goods/services of the applicant and indicate the source of those goods/services, the examining attorney may allow the applicant to amend the drawing if such an amendment would not constitute a material alteration of the mark.

If any remaining issues can be handled by examiner's amendment, and the mark is a standard character mark, the examining attorney may give the applicant the option to amend the drawing by examiner's amendment. If not, the examining attorney should issue a final refusal that also gives the applicant the option to overcome the refusal by submitting a substitute drawing.

If an amendment of the drawing would be a material alteration, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal (assuming the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal), because the substitute specimen does not present a new issue. See [TMEP §714.05](#).

See [TMEP §714.05](#) regarding new issues requiring issuance of nonfinal action, [§§1202](#) *et seq.* regarding matter that does not function as a trademark, and [TMEP §§1301.02](#) *et seq.* regarding matter that does not function as a service mark.

905 Method of Use

The applicant is not required to specify the method or intended method of use of a mark. However, the examining attorney has the discretion under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) to inquire as to the method or intended method of use of the mark if this information is needed to properly examine the application. See [TMEP §814](#); see also *In re Page*, 51 USPQ2d 1660, 1665 (TTAB 1999).

906 Federal Registration Notice

The owner of a mark registered in the United States Patent and Trademark Office may give notice that the mark is registered by displaying with the mark the words “Registered in United States Patent and Trademark Office,” the abbreviation “Reg. U.S. Pat. & Tm. Off.,” or the letter R enclosed within a circle, ®. [15 U.S.C. §1111](#).

The registration symbol should be used only on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization listed in the registration.

The federal registration symbol may not be used with marks that are not actually registered in the USPTO. Even if an application is pending, the registration symbol may not be used until the mark is registered.

Registration in a state of the United States does not entitle a person to use the federal registration notice. *Du-Dad Lure Co. v. Creme Lure Co.*, 143 USPQ 358 (TTAB 1964) .

A party may use terms such as “trademark,” “trademark applied for,” “TM” and “SM” regardless of whether a mark is registered. These are not official or statutory symbols of federal registration.

906.01 Foreign Countries That Use Registration Symbol ®

In addition to the United States, several countries recognize use of the symbol ® to designate registration. When a foreign applicant’s use of the symbol on the specimens is based on a registration in a foreign country, the use is appropriate.

The following foreign countries use the ® symbol to indicate that a mark is registered in their country:

- Belgium
- China (People’s Republic)
- Costa Rica
- Denmark
- Ecuador
- Germany

- Guatemala
- Hungary
- Luxembourg
- Netherlands
- Nicaragua
- Poland
- Sweden

906.02 Improper Use of Registration Symbol

Improper use of the federal registration symbol that is deliberate and intended to deceive or mislead the public is fraud. *See* [TMEP §906.04](#). However, misunderstandings about use of federal registration symbols are more frequent than occurrences of actual fraudulent intent. Common reasons for improper use of the federal registration symbol that do not indicate fraud are:

- Mistake as to the requirements for giving notice (confusion often occurs between notice of *trademark* registration, which may not be given until after registration, and notice of claim of *copyright*, which must be given before publication by placing the notice © on material when it is first published);
- Inadvertence in not giving instructions (or adequate instructions) to the printer, or misunderstanding or voluntary action by the printer;
- The mistaken belief that registration in a state or foreign country gives a right to use the registration symbol (*see Brown Shoe Co. v. Robbins*, 90 USPQ2d 1752 (TTAB 2009) ; *Du-Dad Lure Co. v. Creme Lure Co.*, 143 USPQ 358 (TTAB 1964));
- Registration of a portion of the mark (*see Coca-Cola Co. v. Victor Syrup Corp.*, 218 F.2d 596, 104 USPQ 275 (C.C.P.A. 1954));
- Registration of the mark for other goods (*see Duffy-Mott Co. v. Cumberland Packing Co.*, 424 F.2d 1095, 165 USPQ 422 (C.C.P.A. 1970) , *aff'd* 154 USPQ 498 (TTAB 1967); *Meditron Co. v. Meditronic, Inc.*, 137 USPQ 157 (TTAB 1963));
- A recently expired or cancelled registration of the subject mark (*see Rieser Co. v. Munsingwear, Inc.*, 128 USPQ 452 (TTAB 1961));
- Another mark to which the symbol relates on the same label (*see S.C. Johnson & Son, Inc. v. Gold Seal Co.*, 90 USPQ 373 (Comm'r Pats. 1951)).

See also Sauquoit Paper Co. v. Weistock, 46 F.2d 586, 8 USPQ 349 (C.C.P.A. 1931); *Dunleavy Co. v. Koepfel Metal Furniture Corp.*, 134 USPQ 450 (TTAB 1962) , *aff'd*, 328 F.2d 939, 140 USPQ 582 (C.C.P.A. 1964); *Radiant Mfg. Corp. v. Da-Lite Screen Co.*, 128 USPQ 132 (TTAB 1961) ; *Tobacco By-Products & Chem. Corp. v. Smith*, 106 USPQ 293 (Comm'r Pats. 1955), *modified* 243 F.2d 188, 113 USPQ 339 (C.C.P.A. 1957).

906.03 Informing Applicant of Apparent Improper Use

If a specimen in an application shows the federal registration symbol used with the mark that is the subject of the application, or with any portion of this mark, the examining attorney must determine from USPTO records whether or not such matter is registered. If it is not, and if the symbol does not appear to indicate registration in a foreign country (*see* [TMEP §906.01](#)), the examining attorney must point out to the applicant that the records of the USPTO do not show that the mark with which the symbol is used on the specimens is registered, and that the registration symbol may not be used until a mark is registered in the USPTO. The examining attorney should not require any explanation or comment from the applicant concerning the use of the symbol in relation to the mark.

906.04 Fraud

Improper use of the federal registration symbol, ®, that is deliberate and intends to deceive or mislead the public or the USPTO is fraud. *See Copelands' Enters. Inc. v. CNV Inc.*, 945 F.2d 1563, 20 USPQ2d 1295 (Fed. Cir. 1991); *Wells Fargo & Co. v. Lundeen & Assocs.*, 20 USPQ2d 1156 (TTAB 1991) .

The examining attorney may not issue a refusal of registration based on fraud. If it appears to the examining attorney that fraud on the USPTO has been committed, the examining attorney must follow the procedures outlined in [TMEP §720](#).

907 Compliance with Other Statutes

37 CFR §2.69 Compliance with other laws.

When the sale or transportation of any product for which registration of a trademark is sought is regulated under an Act of Congress, the Patent and Trademark Office may make appropriate inquiry as to compliance with such Act for the sole purpose of determining lawfulness of the commerce recited in the application.

Use of a mark in commerce must be lawful use to be the basis for federal registration of the mark. *Gray v. Daffy Dan's Bargaintown* , 823 F.2d 522, 526, 3 USPQ2d 1306, 1308 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.69](#); *In re Midwest Tennis & Track Co.*, 29 USPQ2d 1386, 1386 n.2 (TTAB 1993) ; *In re Stellar Int'l, Inc.*, 159 USPQ 48, 50-51 (TTAB 1968) . Thus, the goods or services to which the mark is applied, and the mark itself, must comply with all applicable federal laws. *See In re Pepcom Indus., Inc.*, 192 USPQ 400, 401 (TTAB 1976) (“In order for [an] application to have a valid basis that could properly result in a registration, the use of the mark [has] to be lawful, i.e., the sale or shipment of the product under the mark [has] to comply with all applicable laws and regulations. If this test is not met, the use of the mark fails to create any rights that can be recognized by a Federal registration.”). In addition, “the fact that the provision of a product or service may be lawful within a state is irrelevant to the question of federal registration when it is unlawful under federal law.” *In re Brown*, 119 USPQ2d 1350, 1351 (TTAB2016) .

Generally, the USPTO presumes that an applicant’s use of the mark in commerce is lawful. Thus, registration will not be refused based on the absence of lawful use in commerce unless “either (1) a violation of federal law is indicated by the application record or other evidence, such as when a court or a federal agency responsible for overseeing activity in which the applicant is involved, and which activity is relevant to its application, has issued a finding of noncompliance under the relevant statute or regulation, or (2) when the applicant's application-relevant activities involve a *per se* violation of a federal law." *In re Brown*, 119 USPQ2d at 1351; *see also Kellogg Co. v. New Generation Foods Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 2045, 2047 (TTAB 1988) .

If the record in an application based on Trademark Act Section 1(a) indicates that the mark itself or the identified goods or services violate federal law, registration must be refused under Trademark Act Sections 1 and 45, based on the absence of lawful use of the mark in commerce. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.69](#); *In re Stellar Int'l, Inc.*, 159 USPQ 48, 50-51 (TTAB 1968) .

For applications based on Trademark Act Section 1(b), 44, or 66(a), if the record indicates that the mark or the identified goods or services are unlawful, actual lawful use in commerce is not possible. *See In re JJ206, LLC*, 120 USPQ2d 1568, 1569 (TTAB 2016); *John W. Carson Found. v. Toilets.com, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1942, 1948 (TTAB 2010). Thus, a refusal under Trademark Act Sections 1 and 45 is also appropriate for these non-use-based applications, because the applicant does not have a bona fide intent to lawfully use the mark in commerce. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#); *In re JJ206, LLC*, 120 USPQ2d at 1569; *John W. Carson Found.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1948.

Under Trademark Rules 2.61(b) and 2.69, [37 C.F.R. §§2.61\(b\)](#) and [2.69](#), examining attorneys may require additional information about the goods or services and inquire about compliance with federal laws to support a refusal or otherwise facilitate proper examination. See [TMEP §814](#). Before issuing an inquiry or refusal pertaining to the lawfulness of goods or services, examining attorneys must obtain approval from their managing attorney or senior attorney, who may seek additional guidance from the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure.

For the purpose of determining whether to issue an inquiry or refusal, the USPTO will not regard apparent technical violations, such as labeling irregularities on specimens, as violations. For example, if a package fails to show all required labeling information, the examining attorney should not take any action. Likewise, the USPTO does not routinely solicit information regarding label approval under the Federal Alcohol Administration Act or similar acts. However, if the record indicates that the mark itself or the goods or services violate federal law, an inquiry or refusal must be made. For example, evidence indicating that the identified goods or services involve the sale or transportation of a controlled substance or drug paraphernalia in violation of the Controlled Substances Act (“CSA”), 21 U.S.C. §§801-971, would be a basis for issuing an inquiry or refusal. *See In re JJ206, LLC*, 120 USPQ2d at 1569-70; *In re Brown*, 119 USPQ2d at 1351-53. Subject to certain limited statutory exceptions, the CSA makes it unlawful to manufacture, distribute, or dispense a controlled substance; possess a Schedule I controlled substance; or sell, offer for sale, or use any facility of interstate commerce to transport drug paraphernalia. *See* 21 U.S.C. §§ 812(b)(1)(B), 841(a)(1), 844(a), 863. Note that, regardless of state law, marijuana and its psychoactive component, THC, remain Schedule I controlled substances under federal law and are subject to the CSA’s prohibitions. 21 C.F.R. §1308.11; *see* U.S. Const. Art. VI. Cl. 2; *Gonzales v. Raich*, 545 U.S. 1, 27, 29 (2005); *United States v. Oakland Cannabis Buyers’ Coop.*, 532 U.S. 483, 491 (2001); *In re JJ206, LLC*, 120 USPQ2d at 1571; *In re Brown*, 119 USPQ2d at 1352.

When refusing registration, the examining attorney must indicate the particular law that is violated by the mark or the identified goods or services.

If, in response to a requirement for information or a refusal, the applicant indicates that the relevant goods or services comply with federal law, but there is extrinsic evidence indicating that the goods or services do not, in fact, comply with federal law, the examining attorney must refuse registration (or maintain the prior refusal), citing the relevant extrinsic evidence.

See [TMEP §1205](#) regarding refusal of registration of matter that is protected by a statute or convention.

Chapter 1000 Applications Under Section 44

1001	Section 44 Applications - General
1002	Eligible Applicants Under §44
1002.01	Eligible Applicants Under §44(e)
1002.02	Eligible Applicants Under §44(d)
1002.03	Establishing Entitlement Under a Treaty
1002.04	Establishing Country of Origin
1002.05	United States Applicants
1003	Section 44(d) - Priority Filing Date Based on a Foreign Application
1003.01	The “First-Filed” Requirement
1003.02	Priority Claim Must Be Filed Within Six Months of Foreign Filing
1003.03	Basis for Registration Required
1003.04	Suspension Awaiting a Foreign Registration
1003.04(a)	Applications Based Solely on Section 44
1003.04(b)	Multiple-Basis Applications
1003.04(c)	Periodic Inquiries Issued as to Status of Foreign Application
1003.05	Section 44(d) and Priority for Publication
1003.06	Applicants May File Under both §§44(d) and 44(e)
1003.07	Application May Be Based on More than One Foreign Application
1003.08	Abandonment of the Foreign Application
1004	Applications Based on Foreign Registrations Under §44(e)
1004.01	Copy of Foreign Registration Required
1004.01(a)	Status of the Foreign Registration
1004.01(b)	Translation of the Foreign Registration or Renewal Document
1004.02	Application May Be Based on More than One Foreign Registration
1005	Ownership of the Foreign Application or Registration
1006	Assignment of §44 Applications
1007	Standards for Registration Under Section 44
1008	Bona Fide Intention to Use the Mark in Commerce
1009	Allegation of Use and Specimen of Use Not Required Prior to Registration
1010	Proof of Acquired Distinctiveness in §44 Applications
1011	Drawings
1011.01	Substantially Exact Representation of Mark in Foreign Registration
1011.02	One Mark Per Application
1011.03	Amendment of Drawing
1011.04	Drawings and Descriptions of Three-Dimensional and Non-Visual Marks
1012	Identification of Goods and Services
1013	Designation of Domestic Representative by Applicants Not Domiciled in the United States
1014	Section 44 Applications for the Supplemental Register
1015	Section 44 Registration Independent of Underlying Foreign Registration
1016	International Registration As Basis for §44 Application

1001 Section 44 Applications - General

The United States has assumed certain obligations from agreements adopted at the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property of 1883 and subsequent revisions to these agreements. The United States is also a member of the Inter-American Convention for Trademarks and Commercial Protection (also known as the “Pan-American Convention”), the Buenos Aires Convention for the Protection of Trade Marks and Commercial Names, the World Trade Organization, and certain other treaties and agreements. See [TMEP](#)

[§1002.03](#) and [Appendix B](#) of this Manual for additional information about treaties and international agreements.

Section 44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126](#), implements these agreements. Section 44 applications fall into two basic categories: (1) United States applications relying on foreign applications to secure a priority filing date in the United States under §44(d); and (2) United States applications relying on ownership of foreign registrations as a basis for registration in the United States under §44(e). See [TMEP §§1003](#) *et seq.* regarding §44(d), and [TMEP §§1004](#) *et seq.* regarding §44(e).

Section 44(d) of the Act provides only a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, *not* a basis for publication or registration. See [TMEP §1003.03](#).

An applicant may file an application based solely on §44, or may claim §44 in addition to §1(a) or §1(b) as a filing basis. An applicant who claims more than one basis must comply with all application requirements for each basis asserted. [37 C.F.R. §2.34](#). See [TMEP §§806.02–806.02\(g\)](#) regarding multiple-basis applications and [§§806.03\(j\)-806.03\(j\)\(iii\)](#) regarding amending the basis after publication.

In an application based solely on §44, the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, but use in commerce is not required prior to registration. [TMEP §1009](#).

In limited circumstances, applicants domiciled in the United States may be entitled to file under §44, if they meet the requirements of the Act. See [TMEP §1002.05](#).

See [TMEP Chapter 1900](#) regarding international registration under the Madrid Protocol.

1002 Eligible Applicants Under §44

1002.01 Eligible Applicants Under §44(e)

To be eligible for registration under §44(e), an applicant must meet the following requirements:

- (1) The applicant's country of origin must be a party to a treaty or agreement with the United States that provides for registration based on ownership of a foreign registration, or must extend reciprocal registration rights to nationals of the United States ([15 U.S.C. §1126\(b\)](#)); and
- (2) The applicant must be the owner of a valid registration *in the applicant's country of origin* ([15 U.S.C. §1126\(c\)](#), [\(e\)](#)).

See [TMEP §1002.04](#) regarding the applicant's country of origin, and [TMEP §1002.03](#) and [Appendix B](#) for information about how to determine whether a particular country is a party to a treaty or agreement, or provides reciprocal registration rights to United States nationals.

If an applicant does not meet the requirements listed above, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §44(e). See *SARL Corexco v. Webid Consulting Ltd.*, 110 USPQ2d 1587, 1590-91 (TTAB 2014). The applicant may amend the application to claim §1(a) or §1(b) as a basis. See [TMEP §§806.03](#) *et seq.* regarding amendment of the basis.

An applicant domiciled in the United States cannot obtain registration under §44(e) unless the applicant is the owner of a registration from an eligible country other than the United States and the applicant can establish that the foreign country is the applicant's country of origin. See [TMEP §1002.05](#).

See [TMEP §§1004](#) *et seq.* for additional information about the requirements for registration under §44(e).

1002.02 Eligible Applicants Under §44(d)

To be eligible for a priority filing date under §44(d), an applicant must meet the following requirements:

- (1) The applicant's country of origin must be a party to an international treaty or agreement with the United States that provides a right of priority, or must extend reciprocal rights to priority to United States nationals; and
- (2) The foreign application that is the basis for the priority claim must be filed in a country that either is a party to a treaty or agreement with the United States that provides a right of priority, or extends reciprocal rights to priority to United States nationals.

[15 U.S.C. §§1126\(b\), \(d\)](#).

See [TMEP §1002.04](#) regarding the applicant's country of origin, and [TMEP §1002.03](#) and [Appendix B](#) for information about how to determine whether a particular country is a party to an international treaty or agreement that provides a right of priority to U.S. nationals.

If an applicant does not meet the requirements listed above, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that it is not entitled to priority. If the applicant has not claimed another filing basis, the examining attorney must require the applicant to claim and perfect an acceptable basis before the application can be approved for publication or registration on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1003.03](#) regarding registration basis for §44 applications and [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendment of the basis. The examining attorney must ensure that the priority claim is deleted from the Trademark database and conduct a new search of the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office ("USPTO") for conflicting marks.

To obtain a priority filing date under §44(d), the foreign application does *not* have to be filed in the applicant's country of origin. However, to obtain registration under §44(e) based on the foreign registration that will issue from the application on which the applicant relies for priority, the applicant must establish that the country in which the application was filed is its country of origin. [TMEP §1002.01](#). Therefore, if the applicant files a §44(d) priority claim based on an application from a treaty country other than the country in which the applicant is domiciled, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that in order to rely on the registration issuing from the identified foreign application as its basis for registration, the applicant will be required to establish that the country where the foreign application was filed is its country of origin.

It is important to keep in mind that while §44(d) provides a basis for filing and a priority filing date, it does not provide a basis for publication or registration. A party who files under §44(d) must establish a basis for registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §1003.03](#). For example, a French corporation may rely on a first-filed application in Canada for its priority claim under §44(d), regardless of whether Canada is the applicant's country of origin. However, before the mark can be published for opposition in the United States, the French corporation must do one of the following: (1) establish Canada as its country of origin and rely on the prospective Canadian registration as its basis for registration in the United States (see [TMEP §§1002.01, 1002.04](#)); (2) assert use in commerce under §1(a) and/or a bona fide intention to use in commerce

under §1(b) as its basis for publication in the United States; or (3) rely on a registration from France as its basis for registration in the United States.

An applicant domiciled or organized in the United States may claim priority under §44(d) based on ownership of an application *in a treaty country other than the United States*. See [TMEP §1002.05](#).

See [TMEP §§1003](#) *et seq.* for additional information about the requirements for obtaining a priority filing date under §44.

1002.03 Establishing Entitlement Under a Treaty

In a §44 application, the examining attorney must confirm that: (1) both the applicant's country of origin and the country where the applicant has filed the application or obtained registration are parties to a treaty or agreement with the United States (or that they extend reciprocal rights to U.S. nationals by law); *and* (2) the specific benefit that the applicant is claiming under §44 (i.e., the right to a priority filing date under §44(d) and/or the right to registration under §44(e)) is provided for under the treaty or agreement. See [TMEP §§1002.01](#), [1002.02](#).

To determine whether a particular country has a treaty with the United States that provides for the benefit that the applicant is claiming under §44, examining attorneys should consult [Appendix B](#) of this manual.

Appendix B lists the members of the Paris Convention, Inter-American Convention, Buenos Aires Convention, World Trade Organization, European Union ("EU"), and certain countries entitled to reciprocal treatment under other international agreements, as well as websites where examining attorneys can obtain updated information about these treaties or agreements.

Some EU member states maintain special relationships with overseas countries and territories (OCTs), which include Anguilla, Bermuda, the British Virgin Islands, the Cayman Islands, the Falkland Islands, Gibraltar, Montserrat, and the Turks and Caicos Islands. Generally, these OCTs are not parties to a relevant treaty or agreement with the United States, nor do they extend reciprocal rights to U.S. nationals by law, as required by Trademark Act Section 44. Therefore, if the applicant's country of origin, or the country that issued the foreign registration, is one of these OCTs, the application is not entitled to priority under §44(d) or registration under §44(e). See [15 U.S.C §1126\(b\), \(d\), \(e\)](#); [TMEP §§1002.01](#), [1002.02](#). Note, however, that there is an exception allowing a United Kingdom territory to rely on a United Kingdom registration if the territory has an address in the United Kingdom or in the Isle of Man. For more information about OCTs, see https://ec.europa.eu/europeaid/regions/octs_en.

In a §44 application or an amendment adding or substituting §44 as a basis, an eligible applicant may rely on an application filed in or registration issued by certain common offices of several states. A "common office of several states" refers to an entity serving as the issuing office for trademark registrations for an established group of countries. Examples include the Benelux Trademark Office, servicing Belgium, The Netherlands, and Luxembourg; and the African Intellectual Property Organization ("OAPI"), which issues registrations covering all member states (i.e., Benin, Burkina-Faso, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Congo, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Ivory Coast, Mali, Mauritania, Niger, Senegal, and Togo).

An applicant may also claim the benefits of §44 based on an application for or registration of a Community Trade Mark, if the applicant has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment in a country or state that is a member of the EU, formerly known as the European Community (EC) or European Economic Community (EEC). See Appendix B for a list of these countries.

If an eligible applicant filed an application or obtained a registration in a country that is a member of the Paris Convention, Inter-American Convention, World Trade Organization, or European Union, the applicant can claim the benefits of either §44(d) or §44(e), if the applicant meets the requirements of those sections. An eligible applicant may also file under *either* §44(e) or §44(d) based on an application filed or registration obtained in Taiwan. On the other hand, if the applicant filed an application or obtained a registration in a country that is a member of the Buenos Aires Convention, the applicant may seek registration under §44(e), but may *not* obtain a priority filing date under §44(d). See [Appendix B](#) for additional information.

In the case of agreements not covered in [Appendix B](#), an applicant can establish its eligibility for the benefits of §44 by providing evidence of statutes or agreements establishing reciprocity between the United States and the relevant country. Examining attorneys may also consult sources such as *Trademarks Throughout the World* (Anne-Laure Covin, 5th ed. 2008) and *World Trademark Law and Practice* (Ethan Horwitz, 2d ed. 2008), available to USPTO employees in the Trademark Law Library, for information about the trademark laws of foreign countries. Additional resources are listed in Appendix B.

See [TMEP §1002.01](#) for information about how the examining attorney should handle an application in which the applicant is not entitled to registration under §44(e), and [TMEP §1002.02](#) for information about how the examining attorney should handle an application in which the applicant is not entitled to priority under §44(d).

1002.04 Establishing Country of Origin

To obtain registration under §44(e), the applicant must be the owner of a valid registration from the applicant's country of origin. *Kallamni v. Khan*, 101 USPQ2d 1864 (TTAB 2012) (finding that registrant's shipment of product did not create a bona fide and effective commercial establishment in the European Union, that registrant had not established the European Union as his country of origin, and therefore registrant's European Union registration could not serve as a basis for registration under §44(e)); [TMEP §1002.01](#). To obtain a priority filing date under §44(d), the applicant's country of origin must be a treaty country, but the foreign application that is the basis for the priority claim does not have to be filed in the applicant's country of origin. [TMEP §1002.02](#). An applicant domiciled or organized in the United States may be entitled to registration under §44(e) if the applicant can also claim a country of origin other than the United States. See [TMEP §1002.05](#).

Section §44(c) of the Trademark Act defines the applicant's country of origin as "the country in which he has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment, or if he has not such an establishment, the country in which he is domiciled, or if he has not a domicile in any of the countries described in paragraph (b) of this section, the country of which he is a national." Under this definition, an applicant can have more than one country of origin.

If a §44 applicant is domiciled or incorporated in the country claimed, the examining attorney should presume that the country is the applicant's country of origin, and should not issue any inquiry about the applicant's country of origin.

If a §44(d) applicant is not currently domiciled, incorporated, or organized in a treaty country, the examining attorney must require the applicant to establish that it was domiciled, incorporated, or organized, or had a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment, in a treaty country during the six-month priority period beginning at the date of filing of the foreign application. See [TMEP §1002.02](#).

If a §44(e) applicant is not currently domiciled, incorporated, or organized in the country that issued the foreign registration, the examining attorney must require the applicant to establish that the country was its country of origin as of the date of issuance of the foreign registration. In this context, applicant is to be construed broadly, as defined in [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), to embrace the legal representatives, predecessors, successors, and assigns of the original owner of the foreign application or registration. Thus, an applicant for registration in the United States who is the assignee of a foreign registration, but cannot establish that the country which issued the registration was its country of origin as of the date of the conveyance or is its country of origin as of the date of the filing of the U.S. application, may still claim the benefit of registration under §44(e). In such a case, the requirement that the "applicant" be the owner of a valid registration from its country of origin was perfected by applicant's predecessor in interest. However, under such circumstances, the applicant must establish that it is otherwise entitled to the benefits of Section 44(b), i.e., the applicant's country of origin must be a party to a treaty or agreement with the United States that provides for registration based on ownership of a foreign registration or must extend reciprocal registration rights to nationals of the United States. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(b\)](#).

Generally, a written statement by the applicant or the applicant's attorney that the applicant has had a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the relevant country during the six-month priority period beginning at the date of filing of the foreign application (for §44(d) applicants), or as of the date of issuance of the foreign registration (for §44(e) applicants), will be sufficient to establish that the country is the applicant's country of origin. This statement does not have to be verified. If a §44(d) applicant establishes its country of origin by submitting this statement, and later perfects its §44 basis by submitting a foreign registration issued by the same country, it is not necessary to require another statement as to the foreign registration.

If the application is otherwise eligible for approval for publication, or in condition to be allowed for registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney may attempt to contact the applicant by telephone or e-mail to obtain the statement. If the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant by telephone or e-mail, he or she must issue an Office action. If the applicant responds by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must issue an examiner's amendment to enter the statement into the record.

If any evidence in the record contradicts the applicant's assertion that it has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the relevant country, the examining attorney should require the applicant to set forth the specific circumstances which establish that the applicant maintains a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the country. Relevant factors include the presence of production facilities, business offices, and personnel.

The presence of an applicant's wholly owned subsidiary in a country does not, by itself, establish country of origin. *See In re Aktiebolaget Electrolux*, 182 USPQ 255 (TTAB 1974). The fact that the applicant is wholly owned by a foreign company does not establish country of origin. *See Karsten Mfg. Corp. v. Editoy AG*, 79 USPQ2d 1783 (TTAB 2006).

The sale of goods or services outside the United States through related companies or licensees does not create a bona fide commercial establishment and thus does not establish country of origin. *Id.*; *see also Ex parte Blum*, 138 USPQ 316 (Comm'r Pats. 1963) (country of origin cannot be established by relying on contractual relationships with a licensee in another country).

The United States, by definition, is not a country that has a treaty with the United States. Therefore, the term "country of origin" in §44(b) and (c) means a country other than the United States. *In re Fisons Ltd.*, 197 USPQ 888 (TTAB 1978); *see* [TMEP §1002.05](#).

See [TMEP §1002.01](#) for information about how the examining attorney should handle an application in which the applicant is not entitled to registration under §44(e), and [TMEP §§1002.02](#) and [1003.01](#) for information about how the examining attorney should handle an application in which the applicant is not entitled to priority under §44(d).

1002.05 United States Applicants

Section 44(b) of the Trademark Act provides that, “Any person whose country of origin is a party to any convention or treaty relating to trademarks, trade or commercial names, or the repression of unfair competition, to which the United States is also a party, or extends reciprocal rights to nationals of the United States by law, shall be entitled to the benefits of this section”

Section 44(i) of the Act provides that “[c]itizens or residents of the United States shall have the same benefits as are granted by this section to persons granted by this section to persons described in subsection [44](b)” However, §44(i) does not provide an independent basis for a U.S. applicant to register a mark under §44(e). See *In re Pony Int’l Inc.*, 1 USPQ2d 1076 (Comm’r Pats. 1986).

The United States, by definition, is not a country that has a treaty with the United States. Therefore, the term “country of origin” in §44(b) means some country other than the United States, and the term “person” in §44(b) means a person who can claim a country of origin other than the United States. See *In re Fisons Ltd.*, 197 USPQ 888 (TTAB 1978) .

An applicant domiciled in the United States may claim priority under §44(d) based on ownership of an application in a treaty country *other than the United States*, even if the other country is not the applicant’s country of origin. See *In re ETA Sys. Inc.*, 2 USPQ2d 1367 (TTAB 1987) ; *In re Int’l Barrier Corp.*, 231 USPQ 310 (TTAB 1986) ; [TMEP §1002.02](#).

However, an applicant domiciled in the United States may not obtain registration under §44(e) unless the applicant is the owner of a registration from an eligible country other than the United States *and* the applicant can establish that the foreign country is the applicant’s country of origin. See *Karsten Mfg. Corp. v. Editoy*, 79 USPQ2d 1783 (TTAB 2006) ; *In re Int’l Barrier Corp.*, *supra*; *In re Fisons*, *supra*; [TMEP §1002.01](#).

For example, a Texas corporation may assert a priority claim under §44(d) based on ownership of an application in Mexico, regardless of whether Mexico is its country of origin. However, this applicant must also assert a valid basis for registration (see [TMEP §1003.03](#)). The applicant may do so by asserting use in commerce under §1(a) and/or a bona fide intention to use in commerce under §1(b) as its basis for publication. The applicant cannot obtain registration in the United States under §44(e) unless the applicant establishes that Mexico is one of its countries of origin.

See [TMEP §1002.04](#) regarding the applicant’s country of origin, and [TMEP §1002.03](#) and [Appendix B](#) for information about how to determine whether a particular country is a party to an international treaty or agreement that provides for priority and/or registration based on ownership of a foreign registration.

See also [TMEP §1002.01](#) for information about how the examining attorney should handle an application in which the applicant is not entitled to registration under §44(e), and [TMEP §§1002.02](#) and [1003.01](#) for information about how the examining attorney should handle an application in which the applicant is not entitled to priority under §44(d).

1003 Section 44(d) - Priority Filing Date Based on a Foreign Application

Section 44(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#), provides for a priority filing date to eligible applicants (*see* [TMEP §1002.02](#)) who have filed an application in a treaty country as defined by §44(b) (*see* [TMEP §1002.03](#)). If an eligible applicant files the U.S. application claiming §44(d) priority within six months of filing the first application to register the mark in a treaty country, the filing date of the first-filed foreign application is the effective filing date of the U.S. application.

The requirements for receipt of a priority filing date under §44(d) for a trademark or service mark application are:

(1) The eligible applicant must file a claim of priority within six months of the filing date of the first-filed foreign application. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\), 2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#); [TMEP §§1003.01](#) and [1003.02](#).

(2) The applicant must: (a) specify the filing date and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or (b) state that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#).

(3) The applicant must provide a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). If the verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#).

(4) Both the non-United States applicant's country of origin and the country where the foreign application is filed must be a party to an international treaty or agreement with the United States that provides a right of priority, or must extend reciprocal rights to priority to U.S. nationals. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(b\), \(d\)](#); [TMEP §§1002.02, 1002.03, 1002.04](#).

(5) The scope of the identification covered by the §44 basis may not exceed the scope of the identification in the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

(6) The applicant must specify the serial number of the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); Paris Convention Article 4(D)(5).

For requirements for the receipt of a priority filing date under §44(d) for collective and certification marks, see [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(iii\)](#) for collective trademark or collective service mark applications, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(iii\)](#) for collective membership mark applications, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(iii\)](#) for certification mark applications.

If the applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the applicant may designate a domestic representative, that is, a person residing in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(e\)](#); [TMEP §610](#). This can be done through the Trademark Electronic Application System ("TEAS"), at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

The priority filing date also constitutes a constructive date of first use in the United States under [15 U.S.C. §1057\(c\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §201.02](#)), if the application matures into a registration. *See SCM Corp. v. Langis Foods Ltd.*, 539 F.2d 196, 190 USPQ 288 (D.C. Cir. 1976). Therefore, the priority date cannot be later than the filing date of the U.S. application.

Section 44(d) of the Trademark Act provides only a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, *not* a basis for publication or registration. *See* [TMEP §1003.03](#).

In a §44(d) application, both the actual date the application was received in the USPTO and the priority date will appear in the Trademark database.

1003.01 The “First-Filed” Requirement

The application relied upon under §44(d) must be the applicant’s first application filed in any treaty country for the same mark and for the same goods or services. The USPTO will presume that the application identified as the basis for the priority claim was the first filed, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record (e.g., in the application itself or submitted via a Letter of Protest that has been accepted; see [TMEP §1715.01](#) regarding appropriate subjects to be raised in a letter of protest). If the first-filed application was withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of without having any rights outstanding, and did not serve as a basis for claiming a right of priority, the §44(d) priority claim may be based upon a subsequently filed application in the same foreign country or common office of several states. Generally, a written explanation by the applicant or the applicant’s attorney that the first-filed application was withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of without having any rights outstanding, and did not serve as a basis for claiming a right of priority, will be sufficient.

The requirement for the same goods or services means that the identification may not exceed the scope of the identification in the foreign application and must be different from the identification covered by any previous application or registration for the mark in a treaty country. See [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#). Thus, for example, if evidence in the record indicates that an applicant who owns a French registration for “coats, hats, and ties” subsequently files an EU trademark application with the European Union Intellectual Property Office for “coats, hats, ties, and shoes,” and then files a U.S. application within six months seeking a priority filing date for “coats, hats, ties, and shoes” based on the EU trademark application, the §44(d) priority claim would be valid only as to “shoes” because the EU trademark application was not the first filed in a treaty country for “coats, hats, and ties.” Note, however, that if the foreign application that formed the basis for the French registration was itself filed within six months of the filing date of the U.S. application, the French application may serve as a basis for priority for the “coats, hats, and ties” in the U.S. A single U.S. application may claim priority for different goods and services on the basis of different foreign applications for the same mark as long as all foreign applications claimed were the first-filed for the identified goods/services and were filed no earlier than six months prior to the U.S. application filing date.

If the examining attorney determines that the application relied on was not the first filed in any treaty country as to some or all of the goods/services, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that it is not entitled to priority as to the relevant goods/services. If the applicant has not claimed another filing basis, the examining attorney must require the applicant to claim and perfect a basis for any goods/services not entitled to priority before the application can be approved for publication or for registration on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1003.03](#) regarding registration basis for §44 applications and [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendment of the basis.

If the applicant is not entitled to priority as to any goods/services, the examining attorney must ensure that the priority claim is deleted from the Trademark database. If the applicant is entitled to priority as to some, but not all, of the goods/services, the examining attorney must ensure that the identification in the Trademark database indicates those goods/services that have priority. See [TMEP §806.02\(a\)](#). The examining attorney must also conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks as to any goods/services not entitled to priority.

1003.02 Priority Claim Must Be Filed Within Six Months of Foreign Filing

An applicant must file a claim of priority within six months *after* the filing date of the foreign application. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\), 2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#); Paris Convention Article 4(C)(3). The applicant can submit the priority claim after the filing date of the U.S. application, as long as the claim of priority is submitted within six months of the foreign filing and the claimed priority date is earlier than the filing date of the U.S. application.

Example: If an eligible applicant files in France on December 6, 2011, and in the United States on January 12, 2012, the applicant can add a priority claim to the United States application on or before June 6, 2012, if the applicant meets the requirements of §44(d). The applicant cannot add a priority claim to the U.S. application after June 6, 2012.

If an applicant claims priority under §44(d), but does not specify the filing date of the foreign application, the examining attorney must require that the applicant specify the date of the foreign filing.

If the applicant submits a claim of priority more than six months after the date of the foreign filing, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that it is not entitled to priority. See [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\), 2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#). If the applicant has not claimed another filing basis, the examining attorney must require the applicant to claim and perfect an acceptable basis before the application can be approved for publication or for registration on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1003.03](#) regarding registration basis for §44 applications and [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendment of the basis. The examining attorney should ensure that the priority claim is deleted from the Trademark database, and should conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks.

If the priority period ends on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the priority claim may be filed no later than the following day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. Paris Convention Article 4(C)(3); [35 U.S.C. §21\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.196](#).

1003.03 Basis for Registration Required

Section 44(d) of the Act provides a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, but not a basis for publication or registration. Before an application may be approved for publication, or allowed for registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must establish a basis for registration under §1(a), §1(b), or §44(e) of the Act. See [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)](#). See [TMEP §1002.02](#) regarding applications that are entitled to a priority filing date under §44(d), but are not entitled to registration under §44(e) because the foreign application was filed in a treaty country that is not the applicant's country of origin.

An applicant may claim more than one basis for registration (i.e., §44(e) in addition to §1(a) or §1(b)). If the applicant claims a §1(b) basis, the applicant must file an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)) before the mark can be registered. See [TMEP §806.01\(b\)](#) regarding the requirements for a §1(b) basis and [TMEP §§1004-1004.02](#) regarding the requirements for registration under §44(e).

A §44(d) applicant may not assert a basis under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, based on an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(b\), 2.35\(a\)](#).

1003.04 Suspension Awaiting a Foreign Registration

1003.04(a) Applications Based Solely on Section 44

In a §44(d) application filed via TEAS, the applicant is asked to specifically indicate that it does not intend to rely on §44(e) as a basis for registration, but wishes only to assert a valid claim of priority. If the applicant does not do so, an intent to rely on §44(e) is presumed and, when filed, the application will include a statement that the applicant intends to rely on §44(e) as a basis for registration.

If, on initial examination of the application, there are no refusals, requirements, or prior pending applications, the examining attorney will suspend action on the application pending receipt of the foreign registration. The suspension notice must include a search clause (*see* [TMPEP §704.02](#)).

If, on initial examination, the examining attorney issues any refusals or other requirements, the Office action must also include a requirement that the applicant submit the foreign registration when it becomes available. Depending upon the applicant's response, the examining attorney will take appropriate action to place the application in condition for approval for publication, allowance for registration on the Supplemental Register, or final action on all other issues, and will then suspend further action pending receipt of the foreign registration. In the notice of suspension, the examining attorney must reference any continued refusals or requirements. See [TMPEP §716.01](#).

If, on initial examination, the only other issue is a prior pending application, the examining attorney will suspend action on the application pending receipt of the foreign registration and resolution of the prior pending application. The suspension notice must include a search clause (see [TMPEP §704.02](#)). If the foreign registration is submitted while the prior pending application is pending, the application will be re-suspended and the suspension letter will state that the foreign registration has been received but will not be examined until the prior pending application either abandons or registers. If the prior pending application abandons before the applicant submits the foreign registration, the examining attorney will re-suspend the application pending receipt of the foreign registration. The suspension letter must state that the prior pending application has abandoned and no longer poses a potential bar to registration. However, if the prior pending application registers before the foreign registration is submitted, the examining attorney will issue a non-final Office action with a §2(d) refusal and a requirement that the applicant submit the foreign registration when it becomes available. If the applicant responds, but the foreign registration cannot yet be provided, the application will be re-suspended. The suspension notice must indicate whether the §2(d) refusal is continued or withdrawn. See [TMPEP §716.01](#).

If the TEAS application indicates that the applicant is not relying on §44(e) and no other basis for registration is claimed, the examining attorney must inquire since the application lacks a basis for registration. If, on initial examination, there are no refusals or requirements that would otherwise necessitate issuance of an Office action, this inquiry may be made via telephone or e-mail, if e-mail communication is authorized. The following actions should be taken based on the applicant's response to the inquiry:

If the applicant responds that it intends to rely on §44(e) as the basis, the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File in the record and suspend the application pending receipt of the foreign registration. The suspension letter must include a search clause. See [TMPEP §§704.02, 1003.04\(a\)](#). If the applicant responds that it intends to rely solely on §1(b) as the basis, the examining attorney must issue an examiner's amendment so specifying.

If the applicant responds that it intends to rely solely on §1(a) and the application does not include a specimen, dates of use, and/or the proper declaration, the examining attorney must issue a priority action specifying what actions the applicant must take. See [TMEP §708.01](#).

If, however, there are other refusals or requirements, or the applicant cannot be reached by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must issue an Office action that includes the inquiry regarding whether the applicant intends to rely on §44(e) as a registration basis and note that, if so, the foreign registration is required when it becomes available.

If a §44(d) application filed on paper is silent as to whether the applicant intends to rely on §44(e), the USPTO will presume that the applicant intends to rely on §44(e) as a basis for registration and follow the same procedures as for TEAS applications.

1003.04(b) Multiple-Basis Applications

If an applicant properly claims §44(d) as a basis for receipt of a priority filing date and asserts §1 as a second basis, the applicant may elect not to perfect the §44 basis and still retain the priority filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)-\(4\)](#). If the application is filed via TEAS and indicates that the applicant is relying on §44(e) as a basis for registration, the examining attorney must follow the procedures in [TMEP §1003.04\(a\)](#) with respect to the §44(e) basis. If the application indicates that the applicant is not relying on §44(e) as an additional basis for registration and is only asserting §44(d) to receive a priority filing date, the examining attorney must ensure that the Trademark database is updated accordingly. See [TMEP §§806.02\(f\)](#) and [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#) regarding the addition or substitution of a §44(e) a basis after a mark has been published for opposition.

When an application filed on paper is silent as to whether the applicant intends to rely on §44(e) as an additional basis for registration, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the applicant intends to rely on the §44(e) basis. If, on initial examination, there are no refusals or requirements that would otherwise necessitate issuance of an Office action, this inquiry may be made via telephone or e-mail, if e-mail communication is authorized. If the applicant intends to perfect the §44 basis, the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File in the record and suspend the application pending receipt of the foreign registration.

If the applicant does not wish to perfect the §44 basis, the examining attorney must issue an examiner's amendment to this effect. If the applicant cannot be reached by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File in the record indicating the unsuccessful attempt to contact the applicant and suspend action on the application pending receipt of the foreign registration. The suspension notice must include a search clause (see [TMEP §704.02](#)).

If the application was filed on paper and it is necessary to issue an Office action regarding any refusals or requirements, including a prior pending application, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the applicant intends to perfect §44 as a second basis for registration and note that, if so, the foreign registration is required when it becomes available. If the response indicates that the applicant is *not* relying on §44(e) as an additional basis for registration, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication or allowance on the Supplemental Register, or will issue a final action, as appropriate. If the response indicates that the applicant intends to rely on §44(e) as a second basis, or fails to indicate whether the applicant intends to perfect the §44 basis, the examining attorney will suspend further action pending submission of the foreign registration and, if appropriate, resolution of the prior pending application. In the notice of suspension, the examining attorney must reference any refusals or requirements that are continued. See [TMEP §716.01](#).

See [TMEP §1003.04\(a\)](#) with respect to suspension procedures when there is a prior pending application.

1003.04(c) Periodic Inquiries Issued as to Status of Foreign Application

Examining attorneys must issue inquiries as to the status of the foreign application in applications that have been suspended for more than six months. See [TMEP §716.05](#). If the applicant does not respond to this inquiry within six months of the issuance date, the application will be abandoned for failure to respond to an Office action.

If the applicant is unable to furnish a copy of the foreign registration before the expiration of time to respond to the inquiry, the applicant should advise the examining attorney of this fact. This may be done by telephone or e-mail.

If the applicant states that the foreign registration has not yet issued, the examining attorney will issue a new notice of suspension.

If the applicant states that the foreign registration has issued, but fails to send a copy, the examining attorney must issue an Office action requiring a copy. See [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#).

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that the applicant's response to a suspension inquiry be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>, using the Response to Suspension Inquiry or Letter of Suspension form.

1003.05 Section 44(d) and Priority for Publication

To determine priority for publication under [37 C.F.R. §2.83](#), an application filed in the United States under §44(d) will be treated as if it were filed in the United States on the same date as the filing in the foreign country. The §44(d) application will receive priority over any application filed after the §44(d) applicant's priority filing date that might otherwise be a possible bar to registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act due to a likelihood of confusion. See [TMEP §§1208](#) *et seq.* regarding conflicting marks in pending applications.

In some cases, another U.S. application filed after the §44(d) applicant's priority date may proceed to publication or registration because the §44(d) applicant had not yet filed in the United States when the examining attorney searched USPTO records for conflicting marks. If the USPTO learns that a §44(d) application is entitled to priority over another pending application before the other mark registers, the USPTO will take appropriate action to give the §44(d) application the priority to which it is entitled. The §44(d) applicant may bring the priority-date issue to the USPTO's attention by submitting a letter of protest in the other pending application. See [TMEP §1715](#) regarding letters of protest.

If an examining attorney discovers a conflicting application entitled to priority under §44(d) after taking action in a case, the examining attorney must issue a supplemental action correcting the situation. If the mark has been published, the examining attorney must request jurisdiction before issuing the action, unless a notice of allowance has issued. See [TMEP §§1504.01](#) and [1504.04\(a\)](#) regarding the examining attorney's jurisdiction.

However, if the conflicting mark has already registered, the USPTO does not act to cancel the registration *sua sponte*. The §44(d) applicant may seek to cancel the registration by filing a petition for cancellation with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

1003.06 Applicants May File Under both §§44(d) and 44(e)

In some cases, a §44 applicant may have already received, before filing in the USPTO, a foreign registration as a result of the same foreign application upon which the applicant relies for priority under §44(d). This may occur in countries that do not examine applications prior to registration. In this situation, the applicant may file under both §44(d) and §44(e).

An applicant may also claim priority under §44(d) based upon a foreign application, and proceed to registration under §44(e) based upon a different foreign registration. Both foreign countries must be parties to a treaty or agreement with the United States and the foreign registration must be from a country of origin of the applicant. If the applicant amends an application to rely on a different foreign registration, this is not considered a change in basis, but may require republication. See [TMEP §1004.02](#).

1003.07 Application May Be Based on More than One Foreign Application

An applicant may file an application in the United States based on more than one foreign application for different goods or services, or for different classes, if the applicant meets the requirements of §44(d) with respect to each foreign application on which the U.S. application is based. The applicant must specify which goods or services, or which classes, are covered by which foreign application. The mark in each foreign application must be the same mark for which registration is sought in the U.S. application.

1003.08 Abandonment of the Foreign Application

If the foreign application relied on under §44(d) is abandoned during the prosecution of the U.S. application, the applicant may amend the application to rely on another basis. See [TMEP §806.03](#). If the applicant met the requirements of §44(d) on the filing date of the U.S. application, the applicant will retain the priority filing date even if the foreign application is abandoned. See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(4\)](#).

In this situation, the USPTO will presume that the applicant had a continuing valid basis, because the applicant had at least a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record. See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(h\)](#).

1004 Applications Based on Foreign Registrations Under §44(e)

If an eligible applicant (see [TMEP §1002.01](#)) owns a valid registration from the applicant's country of origin, the applicant may base its U.S. application on that foreign registration under §44(e).

A §44(e) application for a trademark or service mark must meet the following requirements:

- (1) The applicant must be the owner of a valid registration in the applicant's country of origin. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(c\), \(e\)](#). See [TMEP §1002.01](#) and [§1002.04](#) regarding country of origin.
- (2) The applicant's country of origin must be a party to a treaty or agreement with the United States that provides for registration based on ownership of a foreign registration, or must extend reciprocal registration rights to nationals of the United States. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(b\)](#); see [TMEP §§1002.03, 1002.04, 1002.05](#).
- (3) The applicant must submit a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of the registration in the applicant's country of origin. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §1004.01](#).

- (4) The applicant must provide a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#). If the verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#).
- (5) The scope of the identification covered by the §44(e) basis may not exceed the scope of the identification in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

For the requirements under §44(e) for collective and certification marks, see [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(iv\)](#) for collective trademark or collective service mark applications, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(iv\)](#) for collective membership mark applications, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(iv\)](#) for certification mark applications.

If the applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the applicant is encouraged to designate a domestic representative, i.e., a person residing in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(e\)](#); [TMEP §610](#). This can be done through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

An applicant may not file an application under §44(e), or amend an application to add or substitute a §44(e) basis, before the registration in the applicant's country of origin has issued. An applicant can file under §44(d) within six months after the filing date of an application in the applicant's country of origin (*see* [TMEP §§1003 et seq.](#)). However, once this six-month priority period has passed, an applicant cannot file an application in the United States based on a pending foreign application.

1004.01 Copy of Foreign Registration Required

Section 44(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#), requires “a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of the registration in the country of origin of the applicant.” If a copy of the foreign registration is not included with the application as filed, the examining attorney must require submission of a copy of the foreign registration in the first Office action. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). The copy must show the name of the owner, the mark, and the goods or services for which the mark is registered.

If the applicant submits a copy of the foreign registration, it must be a copy of a document that has been issued to the applicant by or certified by the intellectual property office in the applicant's country of origin. A photocopy of the intellectual property office's publications or a printout from the intellectual property office's website is not sufficient to establish that the mark has been registered in that country and that the registration is in full force and effect, unless accompanied by a certification from the issuing office.

An English translation of a registration from the country of origin by itself is not an acceptable “copy” of the foreign registration. A certification or copy of the registration as issued by the intellectual property office of the country of origin is required, along with an English translation. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1004.01\(b\)](#) regarding translation of foreign registrations.

If an applicant files more than one application in the United States based on the same foreign registration, the applicant must file a copy of the foreign registration (and its English translation, if applicable), in each of the U.S. applications. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(g\)](#).

In a §44(e) application, the examining attorney will not suspend the application pending submission of a copy of the foreign registration, unless the applicant establishes that it cannot obtain a copy of the foreign registration due to extraordinary circumstances (e.g., war or natural disaster). However, the examining

attorney may suspend the application pending receipt of proof of renewal of the foreign registration (*see* [TMEP §1004.01\(a\)](#)).

1004.01(a) Status of the Foreign Registration

The foreign registration must be in force at the time the United States issues the registration based on that foreign registration. *In re Societe D'Exploitation de la Marque Le Fouquet's*, 67 USPQ2d 1784 (TTAB 2003) ; *Marie Claire Album S.A. v. Kruger GmbH & Co. KG*, 29 USPQ2d 1792 (TTAB 1993) ; *Fioravanti v. Fioravanti Corrado S.R.L.* , 230 USPQ 36 (TTAB 1986). [Appendix B](#) of this manual lists the terms of registration in various foreign countries.

If the record indicates that the foreign registration has expired or will expire before the U.S. registration will issue, the examining attorney must require that an applicant submit a certificate of renewal or other certification from the intellectual property office of the foreign country, or a copy of the foreign registration that shows that the foreign registration has been renewed and will be in force at the time the registration issues in the United States, along with an English translation. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(iii\)](#). See [TMEP §1004.01\(b\)](#) regarding translation of foreign registrations and renewal documents. A photocopy of the intellectual property office's publications or a printout from the intellectual property office's website is not sufficient to establish that the registration has been renewed in that country and is in full force and effect, unless accompanied by a certification from the issuing office. Currently, the only exception is for renewals of Singapore registrations. As of January 1, 2009, Singapore ceased issuing certificates confirming that a registration has been renewed. Therefore, a printout from the Singapore intellectual property office website showing the extended expiration date of the foreign registration is acceptable as proof of renewal.

Generally, the examining attorney must require proof of renewal if it appears that the foreign registration will expire within six months after the date of approval for publication. If the applicant states that renewal is pending in the foreign country, the examining attorney should suspend the application pending receipt of proof of renewal.

If an applicant submits a certified copy or certification of the foreign registration that is certified by the foreign government agency who issued the foreign registration, the examining attorney should inquire concerning renewal only if the certified copy of the foreign registration indicates that the registration will expire *after* the date on which the foreign government agency issued the certified copy or certification of the foreign registration. For example, if a certified copy of a foreign registration was issued by the trademark agency in the foreign country on January 5, 2009, and the certified copy indicates that the registration expired on June 1, 2008, no inquiry is necessary. The USPTO presumes that the foreign country would not have issued a certified copy of the registration unless the registration had been renewed. This applies *only* to a certified copy or certification issued *by the foreign trademark agency*. If the copy of the registration is not certified by the foreign trademark agency, and the record indicates that the foreign registration will expire before the U.S. registration will issue, the examining attorney must require that the applicant submit a copy of the foreign registration showing that the registration has been renewed.

If the examining attorney determines that the foreign registration is not in force, the examining attorney will refuse registration under §44(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#). The applicant may amend the application to claim another basis. See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

For information about recent changes in the term of registration in a foreign country, examining attorneys may consult resources such as *Trademarks Throughout the World* (Anne-Laure Covin, 5th ed. 2008) and *World Trademark Law and Practice* (Ethan Horwitz, 2d ed. 2008), available to USPTO employees in the Trademark Law Library. Additional resources are listed in [Appendix B](#).

1004.01(b) Translation of the Foreign Registration or Renewal Document

If the foreign registration, certificate of renewal, or other certification of renewal from the intellectual property office of the foreign country is not in English, the applicant must provide a translation. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)-\(iii\)](#). The translator should sign the translation, but does not have to swear to the translation.

1004.02 Application May Be Based on More than One Foreign Registration

A U.S. application may be based on more than one foreign registration. The applicant must meet all requirements of the Trademark Act and rules for each foreign registration upon which the U.S. application is based, and must specify which goods/services are covered by which foreign registration.

If a §44 applicant amends an application to rely on a different foreign registration after publication, this is not considered a change in basis. However, if the amendment is acceptable, the application must be republished. See [TMEP §1505.03\(a\)](#) regarding post-publication amendments that require republication.

1005 Ownership of the Foreign Application or Registration

Section 44 Claimed in Original Application

If an applicant claims §44 as the filing basis in the original U.S. application, or if the applicant omits the basis from the original U.S. application and subsequently claims §44 as the basis, the applicant must be the owner of the foreign application or registration on the filing date of the U.S. application. See *In re De Luxe, N.V.*, 990 F.2d 607, 26 USPQ2d 1475 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *SARL Corexco v. Webid Consulting Ltd.*, 110 USPQ2d 1587 (TTAB 2014); *In re Tong Yang Cement Corp.*, 19 USPQ2d 1689 (TTAB 1991).

Generally, the applicant is not required to submit a copy of the foreign application to receive a priority filing date. See [TMEP §1003](#). However, if other evidence in the record calls into question the applicant's ownership of the foreign application on the filing date of the U.S. application, the examining attorney must require the applicant to establish its ownership of the foreign application on the date of filing in the United States. For example, if the U.S. application includes a priority claim under §44(d), and the applicant then attempts to perfect its §44 filing basis by submitting a foreign registration showing a different owner name from that of the U.S. applicant, this difference raises a question as to the applicant's ownership of the underlying foreign application. Therefore, the examining attorney must issue a request for information under §2.61(b), requiring the applicant to establish its ownership of the foreign application on the date of filing in the United States, and advise the applicant that if it did not own the foreign application on the filing date of the U.S. application, the applicant is not entitled to priority and the claim will be deleted. The examining attorney must also refuse registration under §44(e) because the record indicates that the applicant is not the owner of a valid registration in the applicant's country of origin. See [15 U.S.C. §1126\(c\)](#), [\(e\)](#); [TMEP §1002.01](#). If the applicant provides proof that it was the owner of the foreign application on the date of filing in the United States, the application will retain the priority filing date. However, the applicant must additionally satisfy the requirements for registration under §44(e).

Proof of ownership must show the applicant for registration in the United States as the owner of the foreign application or registration as of the date of filing in the United States and may consist, for example, of a copy of an assignment document, a statement from the agency administering the trademark register in the foreign country establishing that the applicant was the owner of the foreign application or registration as of the U.S. application filing date, or a printout from the intellectual property office's website. Note that while a website printout may suffice for purposes of establishing ownership, for purposes of proof of the status

of a foreign registration, a printout generally is not acceptable. See [TMEP §§1004.01, 1004.01\(a\)](#). If the transfer of ownership took place before the U.S. application filing date, the §44 basis will be considered valid.

If a §44(d) applicant was not the owner of the foreign application on the U.S. application filing date, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that it is not entitled to priority, ensure that the priority claim is deleted from the Trademark database, and conduct a new search of the USPTO's records for conflicting marks. [TMEP §1002.02](#).

If a §44(e) applicant was not the owner of the foreign registration on the U.S. application filing date, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §44(e). The applicant may amend the application to claim §1(a) or §1(b) as a basis. See [TMEP §§806.03–806.03\(l\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis.

Section 44 Added to or Substituted for Valid Section 1 Basis

If an application is properly filed based on §1(a) or §1(b), and the applicant later amends the application to add or substitute §44 as a basis, the applicant must be the owner of the foreign application or registration as of the filing date of the amendment adding or substituting a §44 claim of priority or basis for registration.

See *SARL Corexco v. Webid Consulting Ltd.*, 110 USPQ2d 1587, 1590-91 (TTAB 2014). Note that the applicant may amend to add a claim of priority under §44(d) only within the six-month priority period following the filing date of the foreign application. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to change the basis.

If the applicant owned the foreign application or registration on the filing date of the amendment, but did not own the foreign application or registration on the filing date of the U.S. application, the applicant will retain the original filing date in the United States, as long as there was a continuing valid basis since the application filing date. See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(h\)](#).

If the applicant was not the owner of the foreign application on the filing date of an amendment adding a §44(d) priority date, the examining attorney must advise the applicant that it is not entitled to priority and ensure that the priority claim is not entered into the Trademark database. [TMEP §1002.02](#).

If the applicant was not the owner of the foreign registration on the filing date of the amendment adding or substituting a §44(e) basis, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §44(e). The applicant may amend the application to reassert or claim §1(a) or §1(b) as the basis.

See [TMEP §§806.03–806.03\(l\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis and [TMEP §1006](#) regarding assignment of §44 applications.

1006 Assignment of §44 Applications

A §44 applicant may assign the foreign application or registration and/or the U.S. application from the original applicant to another party.

Assignee Must Be Eligible for the Benefits of §44

To continue to claim the benefits of §44 after such an assignment, the assignee of the U.S. application must be eligible for the benefits of §44. *Karsten Mfg. Corp. v. Editoy*, 79 USPQ2d 1783 (TTAB 2006); *Nestle Co., Inc. v. Grenadier Chocolate Co.*, 212 USPQ 214 (TTAB 1981) ; *In re Fisons Ltd.*, 197 USPQ 888

(TTAB 1978) . See [TMEP §1002.01](#) regarding applicants eligible for registration under §44(e) and [TMEP §1002.02](#) regarding applicants eligible for a priority filing date under §44(d).

To be eligible for registration under §44(e), the assignee must establish that the country that issued the relevant registration is the assignee's country of origin. [TMEP §§1002.01, 1002.04](#). See also [TMEP §1004](#) regarding the requirements for registration under §44(e).

To be eligible for a priority filing date under §44(d), any non-United States assignee must establish that the assignee's country of origin is a party to an international treaty or agreement with the United States that provides a right of priority, or extends reciprocal rights of priority to U.S. nationals. See [TMEP §§1002.02, 1002.03, 1002.04](#); see also [TMEP §1003](#).

In an application based solely on §44, if the assignee is not entitled to registration under §44(e), the examining attorney must refuse registration under that basis. The applicant may amend the application to claim §1(a) or §1(b) as a basis. In *Karsten, supra*, the Board held that the assignment of a properly filed §44 application to a party who is not eligible to claim the benefits of §44 does not render the application void, as long as there is a continuing valid basis for registration. See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendment of the basis.

In a §44(d) application, if the assignee is not eligible for a priority filing date (i.e., a non-United States applicant whose country of origin is not a party to any convention or treaty as outlined in §44(b)), the examining attorney must advise the assignee that it is not entitled to priority, ensure that the priority claim is deleted from the Trademark database, and conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks. [TMEP §1002.02](#).

Assignee Does Not Have To Be the Owner of the Underlying Foreign Application or Registration

The Trademark Act requires that an applicant own the underlying application or registration at the time of filing in the United States (or as of the filing date of the amendment adding or substituting §44 as a basis, for an application originally based on §1(a) or §1(b), and later amended to add or substitute §44 as a basis).

[TMEP §1005](#). However, if the applicant was the owner of the foreign application or registration on the filing date of the U.S. application (or amendment adding or substituting §44 as a basis), the applicant may assign the U.S. application to another party without assigning the underlying foreign application or registration to that party. See *In re De Luxe N.V.*, 990 F.2d 607, 26 USPQ2d 1475 (Fed. Cir. 1993). Therefore, examining attorneys should not require proof of assignment of the underlying foreign application or registration when an applicant assigns the U.S. application.

Designation of Domestic Representative Encouraged

If the U.S. application is assigned to a party who is not domiciled in the United States, the assignee may file an appointment of a domestic representative with the assignment of the U.S. application. [15 U.S.C. §1060\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §3.61](#); see [TMEP §610](#). The USPTO encourages parties who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives. This can be done through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

1007 Standards for Registration Under Section 44

Although §44 exempts eligible applicants from the use requirements of §1 of the Trademark Act, §44 applicants must meet all other requirements for registration set forth in the Trademark Act and relevant rules. Registration in a foreign country does not automatically ensure eligibility for registration in the United States. *In re Rath*, 402 F.3d 1207, 1214, 74 USPQ2d 1174, 1179 (Fed. Cir. 2005) ("[I]t is impossible to

read section 44(e) to require the registration of foreign marks that fail to meet United States requirements for eligibility. Section 44 applications are subject to the section 2 bars to registration"); *In re Mastic Inc.*, 829 F.2d 1114, 4 USPQ2d 1292 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 225 USPQ 652 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *Order Sons of Italy in Am. v. Marofa S.A.*, 38 USPQ2d 1602 (TTAB 1996).

The foreign registration that is the basis for the U.S. application may include disclaimers or may be on a secondary register, equivalent to the Supplemental Register. The U.S. application will be reviewed according to the standards for registrability in the United States, and the examining attorney will not require a disclaimer, amendment to the Supplemental Register, or any other amendment unless it is required under U.S. law and USPTO policy.

1008 Bona Fide Intention to Use the Mark in Commerce

A trademark or service mark application filed under §44(d) or §44(e) on either the Principal or the Supplemental Register must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §1101](#) for additional information about this requirement. If the verified statement is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#).

The allegation of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce is required even if use in commerce is asserted in the application. See *In re Paul Wurth, S.A.*, 21 USPQ2d 1631 (Comm'r Pats. 1991); see also *In re Unisearch Ltd.*, 21 USPQ2d 1559 (Comm'r Pats. 1991) (requirement for verified statement of bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce held not contrary to Paris Convention). This applies similarly to the verified bona fide intent statements required for collective or certification mark applications where use is also asserted.

For the verified statement required in applications filed under §44(d) or §44(e) for collective and certification marks, see [TMEP §1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#) for collective trademark or service mark applications, [TMEP §1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for collective membership mark applications, and [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for certification mark applications.

1009 Allegation of Use and Specimen of Use Not Required Prior to Registration

Although §44 applicants must assert a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, §44 applicants are not required to allege use or provide specimens or dates of use prior to registration on either the Principal or Supplemental Register in an application based solely on §44. *Crocker Nat'l Bank v. Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce*, 223 USPQ 909 (TTAB 1984) . However, if a §44 applicant wishes to assert use in commerce under §1(a) or a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce under §1(b) as an additional basis, then the applicant must comply with *all* applicable requirements related to the second basis asserted.

If the applicant provides specimens gratuitously in a §44 application, the examining attorney may refer to the specimens to determine issues unrelated to use, such as whether the mark is merely descriptive.

When the §44 application, as submitted, raises questions concerning the registrability of the mark, the examining attorney may request an explanation, information, literature, or other materials to assist in consideration of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §814](#).

1010 Proof of Acquired Distinctiveness in §44 Applications

A §44 applicant may assert that a mark has acquired distinctiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#) if the applicant establishes that the mark has become distinctive of applicant's goods or services *in commerce* in the same manner that any other applicant must. See [37 C.F.R. §2.41](#). For these purposes, the applicant may not rely on use other than use in commerce that may be regulated by the U.S. Congress, that is, the applicant may not rely on use solely in a foreign country or between two foreign countries. See [TMEP §1212.08](#) and cases cited therein for further information about claims of acquired distinctiveness in §44 applications. See also [TMEP §1212](#) for general information regarding the three basic types of evidence that may be used to establish acquired distinctiveness for trademarks, service marks, collective marks, and certification marks.

1011 Drawings

Applicants filing under §44 must comply with the drawing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.51](#) through 2.54. See [TMEP §§807](#) *et seq.* regarding drawings.

1011.01 Substantially Exact Representation of Mark in Foreign Registration

The drawing of the mark must be “a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the applicant.” [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(c\)](#); [TMEP §807.12\(b\)](#).

The “substantially exact representation” standard is construed narrowly. Only slight, inconsequential variations between the mark in the U.S. application and the mark shown in the foreign registration are permitted. *In re Hacot-Colombier*, 105 F.3d 616, 618, 41 USPQ2d 1523, 1525 (Fed. Cir. 1997); *In re Larios S.A.*, 35 USPQ2d 1214, 1216 (TTAB 1995) ; *United Rum Merchants Ltd. v. Distillers Corp. (S.A.) Ltd.*, 9 USPQ2d 1481, 1484 (TTAB 1988). For example, non-material informational matter such as net weight or contents may be deleted. Beyond such limited exceptions, however, any difference between the mark on the drawing and the mark in the foreign registration requires the examining attorney to refuse registration. *In re Hacot-Colombier*, 105 F.3d at 619, 41 USPQ2d at 1525.

The standard for determining whether the mark in the drawing agrees with the mark in the foreign registration is stricter than the standard used to determine whether specimens support use of a mark in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act. In *United Rum Merchants*, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board reasoned that a stricter standard is appropriate in §44 cases because §44 applications represent an exception to the use requirements of the Act, and that this exception should be construed narrowly to ensure that a foreign applicant cannot obtain a registration in the United States of matter that could not have been registered in the foreign country. *United Rum Merchants Ltd. v. Distillers Corp. (S.A.) Ltd.*, 9 USPQ2d at 1483-84.

If the mark in the foreign registration is in standard characters, the mark in the U.S. application must also be in standard characters. If the foreign registration certificate does not indicate that the mark is in standard characters (or the legal equivalent), the examining attorney must inquire whether the foreign registration includes a claim that the mark is in standard characters. The applicant must either submit an affirmative statement that the foreign registration includes a claim that the mark is in standard characters (or the legal equivalent), or delete the standard character claim in the U.S. application. See [TMEP §807.03\(f\)](#) for further information. See also Appendix E, which lists countries that register marks in standard characters or the equivalent.

Likewise, if the mark in the foreign registration is in special form, the drawing of the mark in the U.S. application must appear in the same special form. If the mark in the foreign registration shows color, the applicant must submit a color photocopy of the foreign registration. All claims of color made in the foreign registration must also be made in the U.S. application. The applicant must also comply with all requirements for a color drawing of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#) and [TMEP §§807.07](#) *et seq.* regarding the requirements for claiming color.

If the foreign registration is not issued in color, the examining attorney may require evidence to establish that a colored mark in a U.S. application is a substantially exact representation of the mark in the foreign registration. For example, the examining attorney may require evidence of the foreign country's procedure for designating color when the foreign registration does not reflect the colors shown in the U.S. application.

If a §44 application is based on a foreign registration that depicts the mark in color, but no claim of color is made in the registration document, the examining attorney must inquire whether the foreign registration includes a claim of color(s) as a feature of the mark. The applicant must either: (1) submit an affirmative statement that color is claimed as a feature of the mark in the foreign registration; or (2) submit a statement that although the mark is registered in its country of origin featuring a color depiction of the mark, no claim of color is made in that registration. If the examining attorney determines that the color is a non-material element of the drawing, the applicant may be given the option of submitting a black-and-white drawing. See [TMEP §807.07\(b\)](#).

The mark on the drawing in the U.S. application may not be a translation or transliteration of the mark in the foreign registration.

If the U.S. application is based on both a foreign registration and use in commerce, the mark on the drawing in the U.S. application must not only be a substantially exact representation of the mark in the foreign registration, but also may not differ in a material way from the mark shown on the specimen(s) of record. See [TMEP §§807.12\(b\)](#), [807.14](#) *et seq.*

1011.02 One Mark Per Application

If the foreign application or registration covers a series of distinct marks, the applicant must file separate applications in the United States to register each of the marks the applicant wishes to register in the United States. For example, some countries permit registration of several versions of a mark in a single application. In the United States, separate applications are required. The drawing in the U.S. application must show only one mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#); [TMEP §807.01](#).

1011.03 Amendment of Drawing

Section 44 applicants often try to amend the mark in the U.S. application to overcome an objection that the mark in the drawing does not agree with the mark in the foreign registration. Amendments to drawings in §44 applications are governed by [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(c\)](#). An applicant cannot amend the drawing in the U.S. application to conform to the mark in the foreign registration if the amendment would result in a material alteration of the mark on the drawing submitted with the original application in the United States. *In re Hacot-Colombier*, 105 F.3d 616, 41 USPQ2d 1523 (Fed. Cir. 1997); *In re Wine Soc'y of Am. Inc.*, 12 USPQ2d 1139 (TTAB 1989). Thus, when a §44 applicant proposes to amend its drawing, the examining attorney must consider: (1) whether the proposed amendment of the drawing would result in a material alteration of the mark on the original drawing; *and* (2) whether the proposed amendment would result in a mark that is a substantially exact representation of the mark in the foreign registration. In *In re Larios S.A.*,

35 USPQ2d 1214, 1216 (TTAB 1995), the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board held that the mark “GRAN VINO MALAGA LARIOS” and design on the drawing originally filed with the U.S. application was not a substantially exact representation of the mark “VINO DE MALAGA LARIOS” with a similar design in the foreign registration; however, the Board found that amendment of the drawing to conform to the foreign registration was *not* a material alteration within the meaning of [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#). The Board noted that “[t]he material alteration test . . . is not quite as rigorous as the substantially exact representation standard and thus allows for a bit more leeway or flexibility with respect to . . . amendment of the drawing . . .” *In re Larios S.A.*, 35 USPQ2d at 1217. See [TMEP §§807.14](#) *et seq.* regarding material alteration.

1011.04 Drawings and Descriptions of Three-Dimensional and Non-Visual Marks

If the foreign application or registration depicts several views of a three-dimensional mark, the examining attorney must require the applicant to comply with [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#), and submit an acceptable drawing that depicts a single rendition of the mark. See generally [TMEP §§807](#) *et seq.* regarding drawings. In the alternative, the applicant may petition the Director, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#), to waive the requirement and accept a drawing featuring multiple views of the mark. See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions to the Director.

In all such cases, the applicant must indicate that the mark is three-dimensional. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §807.10](#). If necessary to adequately depict the commercial impression of the mark, the applicant may be required to submit a drawing that shows the placement of the mark by surrounding the mark with a proportionately accurate broken-line representation of the particular goods, packaging, or advertising on which the mark appears. The applicant must also use broken lines to show matter not claimed as part of the mark. For any drawing using broken lines to indicate placement of the mark, or matter not claimed as part of the mark, the applicant must include a written description of the mark and explain the purpose of the broken lines, e.g., by indicating that the matter shown by the broken lines is not a part of the mark and that it serves only to show the position of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §807.08](#).

With respect to sound, scent, and other non-visual marks, an applicant is not required to submit a drawing, but must submit a detailed description of the mark. [TMEP §807.09](#). If the foreign registration includes a drawing, such as a musical staff depicting the notes of which a sound mark is comprised, the U.S. application need not include such a drawing. As the drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark in the foreign registration, and the description of the mark defines the mark sought to be registered in a non-visual mark, the description of the mark in the U.S. application must be substantially comparable to any description of the mark in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §§2.51\(c\)](#), [2.52\(e\)](#).

1012 Identification of Goods and Services

The identification of goods and services in a §44 application must comply with the same standards that govern other applications. See [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#) for more information about the identification of goods or services in a §44 application. See also [TMEP §1304.02\(c\)](#) for information regarding the identification in a collective membership mark application and [TMEP §1306.02\(c\)](#) regarding the identification in a certification mark application.

If the U.S. application is based on §44, the identification of goods and services covered by the §44 basis may not exceed the scope of the goods and services identified in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); *see Marmark Ltd. v. Nutrexpa S.A.*, 12 USPQ2d 1843 (TTAB 1989) ; *In re Löwenbräu München*, 175 USPQ 178 (TTAB 1972) .

1013 Designation of Domestic Representative by Applicants Not Domiciled in the United States

An applicant not domiciled in the United States may file a document designating the name and address of a person residing in the United States upon whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark may be served. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.24](#); [TMEP §610](#). The USPTO encourages parties who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives. This can be done through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

1014 Section 44 Applications for the Supplemental Register

A §44 applicant may apply to register a mark on the Supplemental Register, and a §44 applicant may amend an application from the Principal Register to the Supplemental Register without filing any allegation of use.

It is not necessary to change the application filing date after an amendment to the Supplemental Register in a §44 application. See [TMEP §1008](#) regarding the requirement for an allegation of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce in a §44 application.

1015 Section 44 Registration Independent of Underlying Foreign Registration

Once issued, the U.S. registration issuing from a §44 application exists independent of the underlying foreign registration and is subject to all provisions of the Trademark Act that apply to all other registrations, such as affidavits of use, renewals, amendments under [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#), assignments, and similar matters. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(f\)](#); see *Imperial Tobacco Ltd. v. Philip Morris, Inc.*, 899 F.2d 1575, 14 USPQ2d 1390 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *Exxon Corp. v. Oxon Italia S.p.A.*, 219 USPQ 907 (TTAB 1982); *Reynolds Televator Corp. v. Pfeffer*, 173 USPQ 437 (TTAB 1972).

1016 International Registration As Basis for §44 Application

An international registration issued by the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization ("IB") can be the basis for a §44(e) application only if the international registration shows that there is an extension of protection of the international registration to applicant's country of origin. See [TMEP Chapter 1900](#) regarding international registration. A request for an extension of protection of the international registration to applicant's country of origin is not sufficient.

An applicant should submit a copy of the registration (or certificate of extension of protection) issued by the national trademark office in the applicant's country of origin. See [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#). If the applicant's country of origin does not issue registrations or certificates of extension of protection, the applicant may submit a copy of the international registration, showing that protection of the international registration has been extended to applicant's country of origin. A copy of a request for an extension of protection of the international registration to applicant's country of origin is not sufficient.

If the grant of protection, registration, or certificate of extension issued by the designated trademark office of the applicant's country of origin does not specify goods/services for which protection has been granted, the applicant should submit both an extract of the International Register issued by WIPO that lists the goods/services of the international registration and the document issued by the designated trademark office to establish the scope of protection of the §44(e) application. A user-generated printout from the WIPO database is not sufficient.

If the applicant is not domiciled or incorporated in the relevant country, the examining attorney must require the applicant to establish that the country is its country of origin. See [TMEP §1002.04](#).

The applicant must meet all the requirements of the Trademark Act and the Trademark Rules of Practice for §44(e) applications. The requirements for §66(a) applications are not applicable.

The identification of goods/services covered by the §44(e) basis may not exceed the scope of the goods/services identified in the registered extension of protection in the applicant's country of origin. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §1012](#).

An extension of protection of an international registration may not be the basis for a §44(d) application, because neither the international application nor the request for extension of protection is the first application filed in a treaty country for the same mark for the same goods or services. [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)-\(B\)](#); [TMEP §1003.01](#). The basic application or basic registration upon which the international registration is based was likely the first-filed application.

If an applicant wants to base a §44(e) application on the basic registration that was the basis for the international registration, the applicant must submit a copy of the basic registration issued by the Office of Origin, i.e., the country or intergovernmental organization who issued the registration which provided the basis for the international registration (see [TMEP §1901](#) regarding the Office of Origin). The applicant cannot submit the international registration, because an international registration does not provide protection in the territory of the Contracting Party whose office is the Office of Origin. Madrid Protocol Article 3 *bis*.

Chapter 1100 Intent-to-Use Applications and Requests to Divide

1101	Bona Fide Intention To Use the Mark In Commerce
1102	Initial Examination of Intent-to-Use Applications
1102.01	Substantive Refusals
1102.02	Drawings
1102.03	Intent-to-Use Applications and the Supplemental Register
1102.04	Claims of Acquired Distinctiveness under §2(f)
1103	Allegations of Use
1104	Amendment to Allege Use Under §1(c) of the Act
1104.01	Minimum Filing Requirements for an Amendment to Allege Use
1104.01(a)	Review by Legal Instruments Examiner for Compliance with Minimum Filing Requirements
1104.01(b)	Processing an Amendment to Allege Use that Does Not Meet Minimum Filing Requirements
1104.01(c)	Processing Defective Amendment to Allege Use Filed with Other Amendments
1104.02	Form of Amendment to Allege Use
1104.03	Time for Filing Amendment to Allege Use
1104.03(a)	Use on All Goods/Services Required Before Filing
1104.03(b)	The “Blackout Period”
1104.03(c)	Processing Amendment to Allege Use Filed During the Blackout Period
1104.04	Processing Timely Amendment to Allege Use Located After Publication
1104.05	Amendment to Allege Use Filed in Conjunction with Application
1104.06	Processing Amendment to Allege Use Received Before Application Is Assigned to an Examining Attorney
1104.07	Amendments to Allege Use and Ex Parte Appeals
1104.08	Requirements for a Complete Amendment to Allege Use
1104.09	Acceptance of Amendment to Allege Use that Meets Minimum Filing Requirements by Examining Attorney
1104.10	Examination of Amendment to Allege Use on the Merits for Compliance with Statutory Requirements
1104.10(a)	Issuance of Office Action Related to Amendment to Allege Use
1104.10(b)	Common Examination Issues Related to Amendments to Allege Use
1104.10(b)(i)	Ownership
1104.10(b)(ii)	Verification and Date of Execution
1104.10(b)(iii)	Identification of Goods/Services
1104.10(b)(iii)(A)	Identification of Nature of Collective Membership Organization
1104.10(b)(iv)	Use in Commerce and Dates of Use
1104.10(b)(v)	Specimen
1104.10(b)(vi)	Drawing
1104.10(b)(vii)	Fees
1104.11	Amendment and Withdrawal of Amendment to Allege Use
1105	Publication of Intent-to-Use Applications for Opposition
1106	Notice of Allowance
1106.01	Issuance of the Notice of Allowance
1106.02	Action by Examining Attorney After Issuance of the Notice of Allowance
1106.03	Cancellation of Notice of Allowance
1106.04	Correction of Errors in Notice of Allowance
1107	Amendment After Issuance of the Notice of Allowance and Before Filing of the Statement of Use

- 1107.01** Examination of Amendment Filed After the Notice of Allowance Issues but Before a Statement of Use Is Filed
- 1108** **Requests for Extensions of Time to File the Statement of Use**
- 1108.01** Time for Filing Requests for Extensions of Time to File the Statement of Use
- 1108.02** Requirements for Request for an Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use
- 1108.02(a)** Ownership
- 1108.02(b)** Verification
- 1108.02(c)** Filing Fees
- 1108.02(d)** Identification of Goods/Services
- 1108.02(d)(1)** Identification of Collective Membership Organization
- 1108.02(e)** Bona Fide Intention to Use the Mark in Commerce
- 1108.02(f)** Good Cause Required for Extensions Beyond the First Six-Month Extension – Trademarks and Service Marks
- 1108.02(g)** Good Cause Required for Extensions Beyond the First Six-Month Extension – Collective Marks
- 1108.02(h)** Good Cause Required for Extensions Beyond the First Six-Month Extension – Certification Marks
- 1108.03** Only One Extension Request May Be Filed with or After a Statement of Use – “Insurance” Extension Request
- 1108.03(a)** Processing Extension Request Filed After Statement of Use Has Been Referred to Examining Attorney
- 1108.04** Recourse After Denial of Extension Request
- 1108.05** Petitions from Denial of Request for an Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use
- 1109** **Statement of Use Under §1(d) of the Trademark Act**
- 1109.01** Minimum Filing Requirements for a Statement of Use
- 1109.02** Review for Compliance with Minimum Filing Requirements
- 1109.02(a)** Petition to Review Refusal Based on Noncompliance with Minimum Filing Requirements
- 1109.03** Use on All Goods/Services Required Before Filing
- 1109.04** Time for Filing Statement of Use
- 1109.05** Form of Statement of Use
- 1109.06** Requirements for a Complete Statement of Use
- 1109.07** Examination of the Statement of Use — In General
- 1109.08** Examination of the Statement of Use – New Requirements and Refusals
- 1109.09** Use in Commerce
- 1109.09(a)** Dates of Use
- 1109.09(b)** Specimens
- 1109.10** Ownership
- 1109.11** Verification and Execution
- 1109.11(a)** Authority of Signatory
- 1109.11(b)** Verification of Essential Elements
- 1109.11(c)** Date of Execution
- 1109.11(d)** Signature of Electronically Transmitted Statement of Use
- 1109.12** Drawing
- 1109.13** Identification of Goods/Services in Statement of Use
- 1109.14** Classification
- 1109.15** Filing Fees
- 1109.15(a)** Processing Deficient Fees
- 1109.16** Correcting Defects in Statement of Use
- 1109.16(a)** Statutory Requirements that Must Be Met Within Statutory Filing Period

- 1109.16(b) Issuance of Examining Attorney’s Office Action Holding that a Statement of Use Does Not Meet the Statutory Requirements
- 1109.16(c) Requesting an Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use for the Purpose of Compliance with Statutory Filing Requirements
- 1109.16(d) Response to Office Action Required Within Six Months of Issuance Date Regardless of Expiration Date of Period for Filing the Statement of Use
- 1109.16(e) Applicant’s Recourse After Refusal of Registration
- 1109.17 Withdrawal of the Statement of Use Prohibited
- 1109.18 Approval of the Statement of Use
- 1110 **Request to Divide an Application**
- 1110.01 Application May Be Divided
- 1110.02 Fees for Filing Request to Divide
- 1110.03 Time for Filing Request to Divide
- 1110.04 Form and Processing of Request to Divide
- 1110.05 Outstanding Time Periods Apply to Newly Created Applications
- 1110.06 Signature of Request to Divide
- 1110.07 Dividing an Application when Statement of Use Is Due
- 1110.08 Dividing an Application when Response to Office Action Is Due
- 1110.09 Dividing an Application Subject to a Proceeding at Trademark Trial and Appeal Board
- 1110.10 Dividing a §44 Application
- 1110.11 Dividing a §66(a) Application
- 1110.11(a) Dividing a §66(a) Application After Change of Ownership with Respect to Some but Not All of the Goods/Services
- 1110.12 Division of Registrations

1101 Bona Fide Intention To Use the Mark In Commerce

Trademarks and Service Marks

Section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), provides that an applicant may file a trademark or service mark application based on a bona fide intention to use a mark in commerce “under circumstances showing the good faith of such person.”

A verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce must be included in intent-to-use (“ITU”) applications under §1(b), and in applications under §§44 and 66(a). [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1126\(d\)\(2\)](#), [1126\(e\)](#), [1141f\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.33\(e\)\(1\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §§804.02](#) and [1008](#) regarding the requirements for a verified statement in §§1(b) and 44 applications, and [§1904.01\(c\)](#) regarding the requirement for a declaration of the applicant’s bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce in a §66(a) application.

If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that the applicant had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#), [2.34\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §§804–804.05](#) regarding verifications.

A verified statement of the applicant’s continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce must also be included in a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.89\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §§1108.02](#), [1108.02\(e\)](#).

Reasonable variations in the wording of the statement may be acceptable. For example, the applicant may state that it has “a bona fide intention to use in commerce the mark on or in connection with . . .,” or may use the words “good faith” instead of “bona fide.” *In re B.E.L.-Tronics Ltd.*, 24 USPQ2d 1397, 1400 (Comm’r Pats. 1992). However, the wording “in commerce” is required and cannot be varied. *In re Custom Techs Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1712 (Comm’r Pats. 1991); *In re B.E.L.-Tronics*, 24 USPQ2d at 1400

See [TMEP §1008](#) regarding the requirement for an allegation of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce in an application filed under §44 of the Trademark Act.

The USPTO will *not* evaluate the good faith of an applicant in the ex parte examination of applications. Generally, the applicant’s sworn statement of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce will be sufficient evidence of good faith in the ex parte context. Consideration of issues related to good faith may arise in an inter partes proceeding, but the USPTO will not make an inquiry in an ex parte proceeding unless evidence of record clearly indicates that the applicant does not have a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. *See, e.g., M.Z. Berger & Co. v. Swatch AG*, 787 F.3d 1368, 114 USPQ2d 1892 (Fed. Cir. 2015).

Collective Marks and Certification Marks

For an application of a collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark filed under Section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the verified statement must specify that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce because use of these types of marks is by someone other than the actual owner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#).

A verified statement of the applicant’s bona fide intention and entitlement to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce must be included in intent-to-use (“ITU”) applications under §1(b), and in applications under §§44 and 66(a). [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#); [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)-\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)-\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)-\(b\)\(ii\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1126\(d\)\(2\)](#), [1126\(e\)](#), [1141f\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§804.02](#) and [1008](#) regarding the requirements for a verified statement in §§1(b) and 44 applications, and § [1904.01\(c\)](#) regarding the requirement for a declaration of the applicant’s bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce in a §66(a) application.

If the verification is not filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that, as of the application filing date, the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding verifications.

A verified statement of the applicant’s continued bona fide intention, and entitlement, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce must also be included in a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.89\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §1108.02](#).

1102 Initial Examination of Intent-to-Use Applications

In an intent-to-use application, the examining attorney will potentially examine the application twice: first, when the trademark or service mark application is initially filed based on a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) (or is initially filed based on the applicant’s bona fide intention, and entitlement, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, for a collective or

certification mark application), and second, when the applicant files an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)). See [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use, and [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use. After receipt of the application, the examining attorney will initially examine the application to determine whether the mark is eligible for registration but for the lack of evidence of use. If the mark is determined to be eligible, the mark will be approved for publication and then published for opposition. If the applicant has not submitted an amendment to allege use before approval for publication, and the application is not successfully opposed, the USPTO will issue a notice of allowance. [15 U.S.C. §1063\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.81\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§1106–1106.04](#) regarding notice of allowance. In such a case, the applicant must submit a statement of use. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#).

An intent-to-use application is subject to the same requirements and examination procedures as other applications, except as specifically noted. The examining attorney must raise all possible refusals and requirements in initial examination.

1102.01 Substantive Refusals

To the fullest extent possible, the examining attorney will examine an intent-to-use application for registrability under Trademark Act §§1, 2(a), 2(b), 2(c), 2(d), and 2(e), [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1052\(a\), \(b\), \(c\), \(d\), and \(e\)](#), according to the same procedures and standards that apply to any other application. That is, the examining attorney must make all appropriate refusals and/or requirements with respect to issues such as ownership, deceptiveness, likelihood of confusion, mere descriptiveness, geographic significance, and surname significance. *In re Bacardi & Co.*, 48 USPQ2d 1031, 1035 (TTAB 1997) ; *In re Am. Psychological Ass'n*, 39 USPQ2d 1467, 1469 (Comm'r Pats. 1996).

The examining attorney should not issue a requirement or refusal under these sections during examination of the statement of use if the issue could or should have been raised during initial examination, unless the failure to issue the refusal or requirement would be a clear error. See [TMEP §§706.01, 1109.08](#).

Where a significant length of time has elapsed since the initial examination, a mark may have become descriptive or even generic with respect to the goods/services. In such a case, since the evidence of the descriptive or generic use would not have been available during initial examination, the requirement or refusal must be issued during second examination.

The examining attorney should investigate all possible issues regarding registrability through all available sources. If appropriate, the examining attorney may require that the applicant provide literature or an explanation concerning the intended manner of use of the mark, or the meaning of the mark in relation to the goods/services, under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §814](#); *In re DTI P'ship LLP*, 67 USPQ2d 1699, 1701 (TTAB 2003) ; *In re Page*, 51 USPQ2d 1660, 1665 (TTAB 1999).

The examining attorney should also search applicant's website to see if it provides information about the goods/services. See *In re Promo Ink*, 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1303 (TTAB 2006) (rejecting applicant's argument that it was improper for the examining attorney to rely on evidence obtained from applicant's website when the application was based on intent to use and no specimens were yet required, and stating that "[t]he fact that applicant has filed an intent-to-use application does not limit the examining attorney's evidentiary options, nor does it shield an applicant from producing evidence that it may have in its possession."); [TMEP §710.01\(b\)](#).

While the examining attorney must examine and act on all possible issues in the initial examination of the application, requirements or refusals specifically tied to use of the mark (e.g., ornamentation) should generally be addressed after the applicant submits an allegation of use *and* a specimen showing use of the mark in commerce. See [TMEP §§1202–1202.17\(e\)\(vi\)](#) regarding use as a mark. However, an examining attorney may review a §1(b) application for which no allegation of use and specimen have been submitted, and believe it likely that a refusal of registration on the ground that the subject matter does not function as a mark may be made after an allegation of use is submitted. In that instance, this potential refusal should be brought to the applicant's attention in the first action issued by the USPTO. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from later refusing registration on this basis.

1102.02 Drawings

The examination of the drawing during initial examination, before submission of an allegation of use and specimen, will focus primarily on the form of the drawing and compliance with [37 C.F.R. §§2.52](#), [2.53](#), and [2.54](#). Intent-to-use applicants must comply with all formal requirements related to drawings, whether in standard characters or in special form. See [TMEP §§807–807.18](#). See [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(vi\)](#) regarding examination of the drawing after submission of an amendment to allege use, and [TMEP §1109.12](#) regarding examination of the drawing after submission of a statement of use. The applicant may not amend the mark in a drawing if the amendment constitutes a material alteration of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)\(2\)](#).

1102.03 Intent-to-Use Applications and the Supplemental Register

A mark in an intent-to-use application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) is not eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register until the applicant has submitted an acceptable allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)](#) and [\(c\)](#), or a statement of use that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.88\(b\)](#) and [\(c\)](#)). [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(d\)](#), [2.75\(b\)](#).

If an intent-to-use applicant requests registration on the Supplemental Register before filing an acceptable allegation of use, the examining attorney will refuse registration under §23 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1091](#), on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\)](#); [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). If an application is based on intent-to-use in addition to another basis, registration of the entire application will be refused on the Supplemental Register unless the applicant either deletes the §1(b) basis or files a request to divide. See [TMEP §§1110–1110.12](#) regarding requests to divide. The examining attorney will withdraw the refusal if the applicant submits an acceptable allegation of use.

If an application is based solely on §1(b), and the applicant files an acceptable amendment to allege use or statement of use *and* an acceptable amendment to the Supplemental Register, the USPTO will consider the filing date of the amendment to allege use or statement of use to be the effective filing date of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\)](#); [TMEP §206.01](#). The filing date of an amendment to allege use is the date on which the applicant meets the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#), and the filing date of a statement of use is the date on which the applicant meets the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#). Due to the change in the effective filing date, the examining attorney must conduct a new search of USPTO records for conflicting marks. In this situation, the USPTO does not alter the original filing date in its automated records. [TMEP §206](#). If the new search shows that a later-filed conflicting application now has an earlier filing date (based on the change in the effective filing date of the subject application), the examining attorney must suspend action on the subject application pending disposition of the other application, if the application is otherwise in condition for suspension. See [TMEP §§1208–1208.03\(c\)](#) regarding the procedures for handling conflicting marks in pending applications.

Amendment of an application from the Supplemental to the Principal Register does not change the effective filing date of an application. *Kraft Grp. LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837, 1840 (TTAB 2009) (stating the filing date did not change when applicant, who originally sought registration on the Supplemental Register without alleging use in commerce, amended to seek registration on the Principal Register under §1(b), because use in commerce is not required for receipt of a filing date on the Supplemental Register).

When the applicant files an amendment to allege use that complies with the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) together with an amendment to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must follow the procedures outlined in [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#).

See [TMEP §§815–816.05](#) for additional information about the Supplemental Register.

1102.04 Claims of Acquired Distinctiveness under §2(f)

See [TMEP §§1212.09–1212.09\(b\)](#) regarding claims of distinctiveness under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), in intent-to-use applications.

1103 Allegations of Use

While §1(b) of the Trademark Act provides for *filing* a trademark or service mark application based on the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce (or the applicant's bona fide intention, and entitlement, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, for a collective or certification mark application), registration may not be granted until the applicant files an acceptable allegation of use. The allegation of use must include verified dates of first use (*see* [TMEP §§903–903.08](#)), and a specimen of use for each class (*see* [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)](#), [1301.04–1301.04\(d\)](#)).

An allegation of use may be filed as either an amendment to allege use or a statement of use. The principal difference between the amendment to allege use and the statement of use is the *time* of filing. The amendment to allege use may be filed after the application filing date but before approval of the mark for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(a\)](#); [TMEP §1104.03](#). If the applicant does not file an acceptable amendment to allege use during initial examination, or if an amendment to allege use is filed and withdrawn, and the USPTO issues a notice of allowance under [15 U.S.C. §1063\(b\)\(2\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§1106–1106.04](#)), the applicant must file a statement of use within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance, or within an extension of time granted for filing of the statement of use. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use.

The applicant may *not* file the allegation of use during the period after approval of the mark for publication and before issuance of the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(a\)](#), [2.88\(a\)](#); [TMEP §1104.03](#). This period is known as the “blackout period.” *See* [TMEP §1104.03\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1104.02](#) and [1109.05](#) regarding the form for filing allegations of use.

1104 Amendment to Allege Use Under §1(c) of the Act

As previously stated, an intent-to-use applicant under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) must file either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) before issuance of the registration. This section pertains only to amendments to allege use. Statements of use are discussed in [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#).

An amendment to allege use is treated as a non-responsive filing. Therefore, filing an amendment to allege use does not relieve the applicant of the duty to file a response to an outstanding Office action or to take any other action required in the case, including filing a notice of appeal to the Board or a petition to the Director. See [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1104.07](#) regarding the filing of an amendment to allege use in conjunction with an appeal. Therefore, the applicant must file a separate response to any outstanding Office action. Failure to respond to an outstanding Office action will result in abandonment of the application. See [TMEP §718.06](#) regarding notice of abandonment for failure to respond.

1104.01 Minimum Filing Requirements for an Amendment to Allege Use

The amendment to allege use must include the following minimum elements before it will be referred to the examining attorney for examination on the merits:

- (1) the prescribed fee for at least one class;
- (2) one specimen of the mark as used in commerce; and
- (3) a verification or declaration signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant that the mark is in use in commerce.

[37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#).

An amendment to allege use that omits the allegation of use in commerce, but asserts a verified date of first use in commerce, may be accepted as substantially in compliance with the minimum filing requirement of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) for a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce. Cf. *In re Carnicon Dev. Co.*, 34 USPQ2d 1541, 1543 (Comm’r Pats. 1992) (holding that the petitioner’s verified date of first use in commerce and the statement that the mark was used in advertising combined to substantially comply with the “the mark is in use in commerce” requirement for purposes of filing a statement of use); *In re Conservation Tech. Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1079, 1080 (Comm’r Pats. 1992) (finding, for purposes of the requirement that the statement of use state that “the mark is in use in commerce,” the wording “in use in commerce at least since” satisfied the requirement based on the term “since,” defined as “from a definite past time until now”). The examining attorney will require an allegation that the “mark is in use in commerce” during examination.

See [TMEP §1104.08](#) regarding the requirements for a complete amendment to allege use.

1104.01(a) Review by Legal Instruments Examiner for Compliance with Minimum Filing Requirements

A legal instruments examiner (“LIE”) will conduct a preliminary review of an amendment to allege use to determine whether it is timely and complies with the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#). If so, the LIE will refer the amendment to allege use to the examining attorney for examination on the merits.

With respect to the requirement that the amendment to allege use include a verification or declaration signed by the applicant, or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant, that the mark is in use in commerce, the LIE will review the document only to determine whether it bears a signed verification stating that the mark is in use in commerce. The examining attorney will determine whether the amendment to allege use was filed by the owner. See [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(i\)](#).

See [TMEP §1104.01\(b\)](#) regarding processing an amendment to allege use that does not meet minimum filing requirements, and [TMEP §1104.03\(c\)](#) regarding processing an untimely amendment to allege use.

1104.01(b) Processing an Amendment to Allege Use that Does Not Meet Minimum Filing Requirements

If an amendment to allege use is timely, but does not comply with the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) (see [TMEP §1104.01](#)), the LIE will advise the applicant in writing of the deficiency. The applicant may correct the deficiency, provided the applicant does so before the mark is approved for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(d\)](#). If an acceptable amendment to correct the deficiency is not filed before the mark is approved for publication, the amendment to allege use will not be referred to the examining attorney and will not be examined on the merits. *Id.*

If the filing fee for at least a single class is omitted or is deficient (e.g., if the fee is charged to a deposit account with insufficient funds, an electronic funds transfer (“EFT”) or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, or a check is returned unpaid), the LIE will advise the applicant that the applicant must repay the fee before the mark is approved for publication, or the amendment to allege use will not be examined. In addition, when an EFT or credit card is refused or a check is returned unpaid, the applicant must pay the processing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). This processing fee must be paid even if the applicant withdraws the amendment to allege use. See [TMEP §405.06](#) regarding payments that are refused.

If the amendment to allege use does not include a specimen, the LIE will advise the applicant that the applicant must submit a specimen, supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) stating that the specimen is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services (or stating that the specimen is in use in commerce in connection with the collective membership organization, for collective membership marks), before the mark is approved for publication, or the USPTO will not examine the amendment to allege use.

If the amendment to allege use is not signed, the LIE will notify the applicant of the deficiency and advise that the applicant must submit a properly signed amendment to allege use before the mark is approved for publication, or the USPTO will not examine the amendment to allege use.

An amendment to allege use that does not meet the minimum filing requirements will remain in the record. If the applicant does not correct all deficiencies before approval of the mark for publication, the examining attorney will not examine the amendment to allege use. In such a case, if the applicant has submitted the fee, the fee will not be refunded and cannot be applied to a later-filed statement of use. If the mark is published for opposition and a notice of allowance issues, the applicant must file a statement of use or request for extension of time to file a statement of use within six months of the date of issuance to avoid abandonment of the application.

If the applicant wishes to establish that the amendment to allege use as filed met the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#), the applicant must file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). In addition to the petition fee ([37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(15\)](#)), the petition should include a copy of the amendment to allege use and specimen, and any evidence establishing that the amendment to allege use as filed met the minimum filing requirements. See [Chapter 1700](#) for additional information about petitions. If the petition is granted, the amendment to allege use will be considered filed on the date it was originally received in the USPTO.

See [TMEP §1104.03\(c\)](#) regarding processing an untimely amendment to allege use.

1104.01(c) Processing Defective Amendment to Allege Use Filed with Other Amendments

After the LIE has taken appropriate action on a defective amendment to allege use (*see* [TMEP §1104.01\(b\)](#)), the LIE will process any other amendments filed with the amendment to allege use and refer the application to the assigned examining attorney for appropriate action on those other amendments.

If the amendment to allege use did not meet the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#), the examining attorney will act on any other amendments in the application without considering the amendment to allege use. The examining attorney should issue requirements or refusals according to standard examination procedure without considering the amendment to allege use. Any specimen submitted becomes part of the record and may be relied on in relation to issues other than use.

If the examining attorney determines that the LIE erred in holding that the amendment to allege use did not meet the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#), the examining attorney should advise the applicant by telephone or e-mail that the amendment to allege use will be examined on the merits and to disregard the LIE's action, and should enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record.

1104.02 Form of Amendment to Allege Use

To expedite processing, and ensure that the legal requirements are satisfied, the USPTO recommends that an applicant file an amendment to allege use using the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”) at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Alternatively, the owner may call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed paper form (“Trademark/Service Mark Allegation of Use”) that may be used to file either a statement of use or an amendment to allege use for a trademark or service mark. The applicant may mail, fax, or hand-deliver the completed form to the USPTO. If the form is faxed, it must be accompanied by an authorization to charge the filing fee to a credit card or deposit account. The credit card authorization form is available at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/forms/2038.pdf>. If the amendment to allege use is filed through TEAS, payment must be made by credit card, deposit account, or EFT. Paper forms may be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center (“TAC”), at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

If the applicant does not file the amendment to allege use electronically or use the pre-printed paper form designed by the USPTO, the applicant should submit the amendment to allege use in a document separate from other amendments, with the caption “Amendment to Allege Use” appearing at the top of the first page of the document. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)\(6\)](#). However, this format is not mandatory. The USPTO will accept and enter any document that includes an amendment to allege use, if it meets the minimum filing requirements set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#), regardless of whether it is properly titled or includes other amendments.

See [TMEP §1104.01](#) regarding the minimum filing requirements that must be met before an amendment to allege use can be referred to an examining attorney for examination, and [TMEP §1104.08](#) regarding the requirements for a complete amendment to allege use.

1104.03 Time for Filing Amendment to Allege Use

An applicant may file an amendment to allege use at any time between the application filing date and the date the examining attorney approves the mark for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(a\)\(1\)](#).

An amendment to allege use may be filed after commencement of an ex parte appeal. See [TMEP §1104.07](#).

An applicant may not file either an amendment to allege use or a statement of use between the date the examining attorney approves the mark for publication and the date of issuance of the notice of allowance. This period, during which no allegation of use may be filed, is known as the “blackout period.” See [TMEP §1104.03\(b\)](#).

1104.03(a) Use on All Goods/Services Required Before Filing

An applicant may not file an amendment to allege use until the mark has been in use in commerce on or in connection with *all* goods/services for which the applicant seeks registration under §1(b), unless the applicant files a request to divide. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(a\)\(2\)\(i\)](#). If the applicant files an amendment to allege use before using the mark on or in connection with all the goods/services, but does not file a request to divide, the examining attorney will require the applicant to: (1) withdraw the amendment to allege use (see [TMEP §1104.11](#)); (2) delete from the application the goods/services not covered by the amendment to allege use (see [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(iii\)](#)); or (3) file a request to divide out the goods/services that are not yet in use (see [TMEP §§1110–1110.12](#)).

1104.03(b) The “Blackout Period”

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(a\)\(1\)](#), the USPTO will not review an amendment to allege use filed after the date that the application is approved for publication by the examining attorney. Under [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(1\)](#), the USPTO will not review a statement of use filed before the date of issuance of the notice of allowance.

These two rules combine to create a time period when neither an amendment to allege use nor a statement of use may be filed. This period is known as the “blackout period.” Any statement of use or amendment to allege use filed during this period will be deemed untimely and the fee refunded. *In re Sovran Fin. Corp.*, 25 USPQ2d 1537 (Comm’r Pats. 1991). See [TMEP §1104.03\(c\)](#) regarding processing amendments to allege use filed during the blackout period.

Intent-to-use applicants under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) are encouraged to check the TSDR database on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine the status of the application before filing an amendment to allege use.

If a review of the prosecution history of the application shows that the application has been approved for publication and a notice of allowance has not issued or was cancelled, the blackout period is in effect and an amendment to allege use should not be filed. The applicant should instead wait until the notice of allowance issues and then file a statement of use.

1104.03(c) Processing Amendment to Allege Use Filed During the Blackout Period

If an applicant files an amendment to allege use during the blackout period, the USPTO will notify the applicant that the amendment to allege use is untimely and will not be reviewed, and refund the filing fee. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(a\)\(1\)](#).

The examining attorney must not cancel an approval of or withdraw an application from publication to process an untimely amendment to allege use. Furthermore, the examining attorney must not suspend an application or take any other similar action to extend the time for filing an amendment to allege use.

The USPTO will not process an untimely amendment to allege use as a statement of use. However, the applicant may resubmit an untimely amendment to allege use as a statement of use after the notice of allowance issues.

1104.04 Processing Timely Amendment to Allege Use Located After Publication

If an amendment to allege use is timely (*see* [TMEP §1104.03](#)) and complies with the minimum filing requirements so that it may be examined on the merits (*see* [TMEP §1104.01](#)), but the mark was published for opposition before the amendment to allege use was examined, the USPTO will proceed as follows.

The examining attorney will contact the applicant or the applicant's attorney by telephone or e-mail, and give the applicant the opportunity to withdraw the amendment to allege use. The examining attorney should advise the applicant that the application will be withdrawn from publication if the amendment to allege use is not withdrawn. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(f\)](#) and [TMEP §1104.11](#) regarding withdrawal of amendment to allege use.

Amendment to Allege Use Withdrawn

If the applicant withdraws the amendment to allege use, the examining attorney should advise applicant that a notice of allowance will issue if the application is not successfully opposed, and that the applicant must file a statement of use, or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, within six months after the issuance of the notice of allowance. The examining attorney should advise applicant that, instead of filing a statement of use, the applicant may file a written request that the USPTO treat the amendment to allege use as a statement of use. Such a request *must be filed within six months after the issuance of the notice of allowance*, and should be faxed to the ITU/Divisional Unit at (571) 273-9550. The examining attorney should enter a Note to the File in the record reflecting the substance of the communication with the applicant. The filing date of the statement of use will be the date of receipt of the applicant's written request to treat the amendment to allege use as a statement of use. See [TMEP §1104.11](#) regarding withdrawal of an amendment to allege use prior to publication.

The applicant has the option of receiving a refund of the filing fee for the amendment to allege use, or applying the fee toward the statement of use. If the applicant requests a refund, the examining attorney should ask an LIE to arrange for the refund.

Because §1(d)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#), explicitly requires that a statement of use be filed within six months *after* the issuance date of the notice of allowance, the USPTO cannot process the amendment to allege use as a statement of use unless the applicant files a written request within six months after the issuance date of the notice of allowance. If the applicant does not file a statement of use, a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, or a written request to treat the amendment to allege use as a statement of use within six months after the issuance of the notice of allowance, the application will be abandoned, even if the amendment to allege use is still in the record and the filing fee for the amendment to allege use has not been refunded.

Amendment to Allege Use Not Withdrawn

If the applicant does not withdraw the amendment to allege use, and no notice of allowance has issued, the examining attorney must withdraw the application from publication. If the notice of allowance has issued, the examining attorney must ask the ITU/Divisional Unit to cancel the notice of allowance. The examining attorney should enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record, and then examine the amendment to

allege use. If the amendment to allege use can be approved, and does not raise any issues that require the examining attorney to issue an Office action requiring a response, the examining attorney should approve the amendment to allege use. The mark must then be republished.

If examination of the amendment to allege use raises issues that would require the examining attorney to issue requirements or refusals in an Office action, the examining attorney should request jurisdiction for the purpose of issuing the relevant requirements or refusals. [See TMEP §1504.04\(a\)](#). The proposed Office action setting forth the relevant requirements or refusals must accompany the request for jurisdiction. If the applicant ultimately complies with all requirements and overcomes all refusals, the amendment to allege use will be approved. The mark must then be republished.

Applications that are the Subject of an Opposition

If a notice of opposition has been filed when a timely amendment to allege use is associated with the application, the Board will usually suspend the opposition proceeding and remand the application to the examining attorney for examination of the amendment to allege use. The examining attorney should follow the procedures explained above, except that no request for jurisdiction is necessary. Once the amendment to allege use is ultimately approved or withdrawn, the application should be referred back to the Board for appropriate action. [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) (“TBMP”) [§219](#).

Applications that are the Subject of an Extension of Time to Oppose

If the application is under an extension of time to file an opposition when the amendment to allege use is associated with the application, the potential opposer must continue to file further request(s) for extension(s) of time to oppose, or file a notice of opposition, if it wishes to preserve its right to oppose if the amendment to allege use is withdrawn by the applicant or approved by the examining attorney. [TBMP §219](#). The Board will not suspend the potential opposer’s time to file a notice of opposition. *See* notice at 68 Fed. Reg. 55748, 55760 (Sept. 26, 2003).

1104.05 Amendment to Allege Use Filed in Conjunction with Application

If an applicant files an intent-to-use application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), and, at the same time, files an amendment to allege use asserting dates of use before the filing date of the application, the applicant will be required to comply with all requirements related to the amendment to allege use, including the payment of the required fees for all classes.

1104.06 Processing Amendment to Allege Use Received Before Application Is Assigned to an Examining Attorney

If an amendment to allege use is received before an application has been assigned to an examining attorney, the LIE will review the amendment to allege use to determine whether it complies with the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)](#) and will take appropriate action. *See* [TMEP §§1104.01–1104.01\(c\)](#).

If the amendment to allege use complies with the minimum filing requirements, it will be placed in the record and examined on the merits when the application is assigned to an examining attorney. If it does not, the LIE will advise the applicant in writing of the deficiency and advise the applicant that it must correct the deficiency before the mark is approved for publication, or the amendment to allege use will not be examined on the merits. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(d\)](#).

1104.07 Amendments to Allege Use and Ex Parte Appeals

An amendment to allege use may be filed together with a notice of appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or it may be filed while an appeal is pending.

Once the appeal is filed, the Board has jurisdiction over the application. If the applicant files the amendment to allege use *with* the notice of appeal, the Board will institute the appeal, suspend action on the appeal, and remand the case to the examining attorney to examine the amendment to allege use. When the applicant files the amendment to allege use *after* commencement of the appeal, the Board may, in its discretion, suspend action on the appeal and remand the application to the examining attorney for consideration of the amendment to allege use, or it may continue action on the appeal, thus deferring examination of the amendment to allege use until after disposition of the appeal.

If the Board remands the application, the examining attorney should continue examination according to standard examining procedures until final resolution of any new issues that arise in the examination of the amendment to allege use. If all issues are resolved or made the subject of a final action, the examining attorney should refer the application back to the Board for resumption of the appeal. [TBMP §1206.01](#).

If the examining attorney withdraws the refusal or requirement that is the subject of the appeal, he or she should advise the applicant or the applicant's attorney by telephone or e-mail, and enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record.

1104.08 Requirements for a Complete Amendment to Allege Use

Trademarks and Service Marks

The requirements for a *complete* amendment to allege use are:

- (1) a verified statement that the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark and that the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the dates of first use of the mark anywhere and first use of the mark in commerce, and setting forth or incorporating by reference those goods/services specified in the application on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;
- (2) one specimen per class of the mark as used in commerce that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.56](#); and
- (3) the prescribed fee for each class (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)](#).

Collective Marks

The requirements for a complete amendment to allege use are:

- (1) a verified statement that: the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark; the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the dates of first use of the mark anywhere and first use of the mark in commerce, and setting forth or incorporating by reference the goods/services/nature of the collective membership organization specified in the application on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;

- (2) one specimen per class of the mark as used in commerce that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.56](#);
- (3) the prescribed fee for each class (see [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)](#)); and
- (4) a statement specifying the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark by the members ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)](#).

Certification Marks

The requirements for a complete amendment to allege use are:

- (1) a verified statement that: the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark; the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the dates of first use of the mark anywhere and first use of the mark in commerce, and setting forth or incorporating by reference those goods/services specified in the application on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;
- (2) one specimen per class of the mark as used in commerce that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.56](#);
- (3) the prescribed fee for each class (see [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)](#));
- (4) a statement specifying what the applicant is certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#));
- (5) a copy of the certification standards governing use of the certification mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(b\)](#)); and
- (6) a statement that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)](#).

1104.09 Acceptance of Amendment to Allege Use that Meets Minimum Filing Requirements by Examining Attorney

At the outset, the examining attorney must accept the submission of the amendment to allege use if it is timely filed and meets the minimum filing requirements, *unless* (1) USPTO records show title in a party other than the party filing the amendment to allege use or (2) the applicant specifies an intention to retain goods/services not yet in use (or an intention to retain the collective membership mark not yet in use) and fails to file a request to divide. See [TMEP §§1104.01, 1104.03–1104.03\(c\), 1104.10\(b\)\(i\), 1104.10\(b\)\(ii\)](#). Acceptance of the amendment to allege use does *not* signify that all the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)](#) for a complete amendment to allege use have been met and the application is in condition for approval for publication.

The examining attorney's acceptance of the amendment to allege use ensures that (1) a computer-generated notice issues advising the applicant that the amendment to allege use has been accepted and forwarded to the examining attorney for substantive review and (2) the basis of the application is changed from §1(b) to §1(a). Thus, even if the amendment to allege use raises issues related to, for example, the dates of use, inconsistencies between the mark on the drawing and the mark on the specimen, ornamentation, or

descriptiveness, the examining attorney must accept it before issuing an Office action that addresses the relevant refusals or requirements.

See [TMPEP §§1104.10–1104.10\(b\)\(vii\)](#) regarding examination of an amendment to allege use for compliance with statutory requirements.

1104.10 Examination of Amendment to Allege Use on the Merits for Compliance with Statutory Requirements

After accepting an amendment to allege use that meets the requirements discussed above (*see* [TMPEP §§1104.01, 1104.03–1104.03\(c\), 1104.09](#)), the examining attorney will then examine it on the merits to determine compliance with all statutory requirements (e.g., valid ownership, acceptable specimen, and fees for all classes). If all statutory requirements are met, no further action with regard to the amendment to allege use is necessary.

1104.10(a) Issuance of Office Action Related to Amendment to Allege Use

If, after examination on the merits, the examining attorney determines that the amendment to allege use necessitates any refusals or requirements, an Office action must be issued. Before issuing the Office action, the examining attorney must accept the amendment to allege use. *See* [TMPEP §1104.09](#). If the amendment to allege use was filed before the application was assigned to the examining attorney, the Office action must address all refusals or requirements related to both the application and the amendment to allege use. If the amendment to allege use is referred to an examining attorney after issuance of an Office action, the examining attorney must accept it, if appropriate, and issue a supplemental Office action that supersedes any outstanding action, incorporates all outstanding refusals and/or requirements, and provides a new six-month response period.

Generally, the Office action must be nonfinal, because the issues arising from examination of the amendment to allege use would be raised for the first time. In rare cases, an issue arising from examination of the amendment to allege use will already have been raised. For example, if the examining attorney issued a final refusal of registration in a §1(a) application because the specimen failed to show use of the mark in commerce or failed to demonstrate use as a mark, the applicant may amend the application to seek registration under §1(b). If the applicant subsequently submits an amendment to allege use that includes the same specimen (or a different specimen that is deficient for the same reason), no new issue is raised because the requirement to submit a specimen showing acceptable use of the mark in commerce has already been raised. *Cf. In re GTE Educ. Servs.*, 34 USPQ2d 1478, 1480 (Comm'r Pats. 1994) (holding that examining attorney properly determined that no new issue had been raised in request for reconsideration of final refusal based on inadequate specimens, where the substitute specimens submitted with the request were deficient for the same reason as the original specimens).

If the application is suspended at the time the amendment to allege use is referred for examination, the examining attorney must accept and review it. If no further action on the amendment to allege use is required because all statutory requirements are satisfied, the application must be resuspended. If the amendment to allege use does not meet all statutory requirements, the examining attorney must remove the application from suspension and issue a nonfinal Office action that maintains and continues any requirements and refusals that were operative at the time of the suspension.

If the amendment to allege use is referred for examination at the same time as a response to an outstanding Office action, or when a response is awaiting review, the examining attorney must accept it and review both

the response and the amendment to allege use. If the amendment to allege use does not meet all statutory requirements, the examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal Office action that includes all refusals and/or requirements related to the amendment to allege use and maintains and continues all refusals and/or requirements not overcome or satisfied by the response. If the amendment to allege use meets all statutory requirements, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal regarding all refusals and/or requirements not overcome or satisfied by the response, or approve the mark for publication if all refusals and/or requirements have been overcome or satisfied.

See [TMPEP §§1104.01–1104.01\(c\)](#) regarding the minimum filing requirements for an amendment to allege use, [TMPEP §§1104.03–1104.03\(c\)](#) regarding the time for filing an amendment to allege use, [TMPEP §1104.07](#) regarding an amendment to allege use filed with a notice of appeal or after commencement of an appeal, [TMPEP §1104.09](#) regarding acceptance of an amendment to allege use that meets minimum filing requirements, and [TMPEP §§1104.10–1104.10\(b\)\(vii\)](#) regarding examination of an amendment to allege use on the merits.

1104.10(b) Common Examination Issues Related to Amendments to Allege Use

The following sections represent the most common issues to be considered during examination of an amendment to allege use. These sections do not exhaust all possible grounds for issuing a refusal or making a requirement. Moreover, any amendments filed with an amendment to allege use that do not pertain to use of the proposed mark (e.g., changes to the identification of goods/services or drawing), must be separately considered and examined according to standard examination procedures.

1104.10(b)(i) Ownership

The examining attorney must confirm that the proper party has filed the amendment to allege use. Only the applicant or a valid assignee under §10 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1060](#), may file an amendment to allege use. If USPTO records show title in a party other than the party filing the amendment to allege use, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the amendment to allege was not filed by the owner of record. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). In such cases, the examining attorney must withhold acceptance of the amendment to allege use until the party who filed the amendment to allege use establishes ownership. If the party filing the amendment to allege use was not the owner of the mark at the time of filing, the true owner may file a substitute amendment to allege use (including the filing fee for each class) on or before the date the application is approved for publication.

If the party filing the amendment to allege use was the owner at the time of filing, the party may submit evidence to establish chain of title within the response period specified in the Office action. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§3.71\(d\)](#), [3.73\(b\)](#). To establish ownership, the party who filed the amendment to allege use must either: (1) record an assignment or other document of title with the Assignment Recordation Branch, and include a statement in the response to the Office action that the document has been recorded; or (2) submit other evidence of ownership, in the form of a document transferring ownership from one party to another or an explanation, in the form of an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), that a valid transfer of legal title has occurred. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)](#). *See* [TMPEP §502.01](#) regarding establishing the right to take action in an application or registration.

If an amendment to allege use is filed by the owner of the mark, but there is a minor error in the manner in which the name of the owner is identified, the mistake may be corrected by amendment. *See* [TMPEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors in how the applicant is identified.

See [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#) and [TMEP §502.02\(a\)](#) regarding the issuance of a registration certificate in the name of the new owner, and [TMEP §502.02\(c\)](#) regarding an examining attorney's handling of an application after the mark has been assigned.

1104.10(b)(ii) Verification and Date of Execution

The verification must be signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) and [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#) as to who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of an applicant. Generally, the USPTO will not question the authority of the person who signs a verification unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory's authority to sign.

If the amendment to allege use is not filed within one year after it is signed, the examining attorney must require a substitute or supplemental verification or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) stating that, for a trademark or service mark, the mark is in use in commerce, or, for a collective or certification mark, the mark is in use in commerce and the applicant is exercising legitimate control over such use. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(g\)](#); [TMEP §804.03](#).

See [TMEP §§611–611.06\(h\)](#) regarding signature on correspondence filed in the USPTO.

1104.10(b)(iii) Identification of Goods/Services

The examining attorney must examine the identification of goods/services in an amendment to allege use to ensure that it conforms to the goods/services specified in the application. The applicant may delete, limit, or clarify the goods/services, but may not add to or expand the identification. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#). The amendment to allege use must specify *all* the goods/services for which the applicant seeks registration under §1(a), by listing or incorporating by reference the goods/services on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#). To incorporate the goods/services by reference, the applicant may state that the mark is in use on “those goods/services identified in the application” or “those goods/services identified in the application except . . . [followed by an identification of the goods/services to be deleted].”

If goods/services identified in the application are omitted from the amendment to allege use and it is not accompanied by a request to divide, the omitted goods/services must be deleted from the application and the amendment to allege use accepted. However, if an amendment to allege use is submitted for only some of the goods/services and the applicant specifies an intention to retain the goods/services not yet in use, the amendment to allege use may not be accepted until a request to divide the goods/services that are not in use is filed. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1104.03\(a\)](#).

If the amendment to allege use includes an amended identification of goods/services, to determine whether the amended identification is acceptable and within the scope of the previous identification, the amended identification must be examined in relation to the last acceptable identification of record. [TMEP §1402.07\(d\)](#), [\(e\)](#). When the amended goods/services exceed the scope of a previous acceptable identification, the amended goods/services must be refused. If both an amendment to allege use and a response to an outstanding Office action are received and the two filings contain different amendments to the identification of goods/services, this creates an ambiguity that must be clarified by the applicant.

If the applicant lists *all* the goods/services identified in the application in the section of a pre-printed amendment to allege use paper form designated for the identification of goods/services that are not in use

(the effect of which is a representation that the mark was not used in connection with any goods/services), the USPTO will not presume that the applicant has expressed an intention to delete these goods/services, and the examining attorney must inquire as to the discrepancy.

1104.10(b)(iii)(A) Identification of Nature of Collective Membership Organization

The examining attorney must ensure that the identification of the nature of the collective membership organization in an amendment to allege use conforms to that specified in an application for a collective membership mark. The applicant may delete, limit, or clarify the description of the collective membership organization, but may not add to or expand the identification. See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1304.02\(c\)](#) regarding identifications in applications for collective membership marks.

1104.10(b)(iv) Use in Commerce and Dates of Use

An amendment to allege use must include a verified statement that “the mark is in use in commerce,” and must specify the dates of first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)-\(iii\)](#). The date of first use in commerce may not be earlier than the date of first use anywhere. [TMEP §903.03](#). In addition, the dates of use may not be after the date the amendment to allege use was signed, because *current* use of the mark must be properly alleged; an applicant may not allege use that has not yet occurred. See [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#); see also [TMEP §§903.04](#) (regarding amending dates of use) [903.06\(a\)](#) (regarding discrepancies between dates of use and date of execution).

The applicant may amend the dates of use if the amendment is supported with an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#). The applicant may not amend the dates of use to recite dates of use that are subsequent to the filing of the amendment to allege use. However, the applicant may withdraw the amendment to allege use. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(f\)](#).

The requirement for a verified statement that “the mark is in use in commerce” is a minimum filing requirement that must be satisfied before the amendment to allege use may be examined on the merits. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §§1104.01–1104.01\(c\)](#) regarding amendments to allege use that do not meet minimum filing requirements.

See [TMEP §903](#) regarding dates of use for a trademark or service mark application. See [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#), [1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#), and [1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) regarding dates of use for a collective or certification mark application.

1104.10(b)(v) Specimen

An amendment to allege use must include a specimen for each class. The examining attorney must review the specimen for compliance with all relevant requirements. See [TMEP §§904.03–904.03\(m\)](#) regarding material that is appropriate as a trademark specimen, [TMEP §§1301.04](#) *et seq.* regarding material that is appropriate as a service mark specimen, and [TMEP §§1202–1202.17\(e\)\(vi\)](#) and [1301.02–1301.02\(f\)](#) regarding use as a trademark or service mark. See [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#), [1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#), and [1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding material appropriate as a collective or certification mark specimen.

If the applicant submits a substitute specimen in conjunction with an amendment to allege use, the applicant must verify that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services (or to indicate membership in the collective organization, for a collective membership mark) prior to filing the amendment to allege use. Similarly, if the applicant submits an additional specimen in support of a

multiple-class application that is not identical to the specimen originally filed, the applicant must verify that the new specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services (or to indicate membership in the collective organization) prior to filing the amendment to allege use. See [TMEP §904.05](#) regarding affidavit supporting substitute specimens.

If, in fact, the mark was first used on dates other than those asserted in the amendment to allege use, the dates of use must be corrected. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§903.04](#) and [1104.10\(b\)\(iv\)](#) regarding amendment of the dates of use.

If the amendment to allege use is filed through TEAS, the specimen must be a digitized image in .jpg or .pdf format. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(4\)](#). See [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#) for additional information about electronically filed specimens.

1104.10(b)(vi) Drawing

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(b\)](#), the drawing in an intent-to-use application must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used *and* as actually used, as shown on the specimen filed with the amendment to allege use. An applicant may not amend the mark in the original drawing if the amendment constitutes a material alteration of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#). The same standards that apply to use applications in determining whether the specimens supports use of the mark and whether an amendment to the drawing can be permitted also apply to amendments to allege use.

Therefore, if the mark in the drawing filed with the original application is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the specimen filed with the amendment to allege use, the examining attorney must require: (1) *either* submission of a new specimen or an amendment of the mark in the drawing to agree with the mark shown on the specimen, if such an amendment would not be a material alteration of the mark as shown in the original drawing; or (2) submission of a new specimen, if amendment of the mark would be a material alteration of the mark as shown in the original drawing. See [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

1104.10(b)(vii) Fees

While the payment of the fee for at least one class is enough to meet the minimum filing requirements for an amendment to allege use ([37 C.F.R. §2.76\(c\)\(1\)](#)), the examining attorney must require payment of fees to cover *all* classes identified in the application before approving the amendment to allege use. The applicant may amend the identification to delete class(es).

If class(es) that do not broaden the scope of the identification are added to the application after the filing of the amendment to allege use, the examining attorney must require payment of the fee(s) for filing the amendment to allege use in the added class(es), in addition to the fee(s) required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#) for adding class(es) to the application. See [TMEP §1402.06](#) regarding amendments to the identification, [§1402.07](#) regarding the scope of the identification for purposes of amendment, and [§1403.02\(c\)](#) regarding the amount of the fee(s) for adding class(es) to an application.

If the applicant submits a filing fee that is deficient (e.g., if the fee is charged to a deposit account with insufficient funds, a check is returned unpaid, or an EFT or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution), the examining attorney must require repayment of the fee before approving the amendment to allege use. In addition, when an EFT or credit card is refused, or a check is returned unpaid, the examining attorney must require a processing fee under [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). This processing fee must

be paid even if the applicant withdraws the amendment to allege use or deletes a class(es). See [TMEP §405.06](#) regarding payments that are refused.

1104.11 Amendment and Withdrawal of Amendment to Allege Use

The applicant may amend the amendment to allege use to correct deficiencies or errors, to overcome a refusal, or to comply with a requirement.

The applicant may withdraw the amendment to allege use at any time before approval of the mark for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.76\(f\)](#). The USPTO will *not* refund the fee for filing an amendment to allege use that is withdrawn (except as provided in [TMEP §1104.04](#)) and the fee cannot be applied toward another allegation of use filed after the amendment to allege use is withdrawn. The applicant may authorize the withdrawal via an examiner's amendment. To process the withdrawal, if the amendment to allege use is timely and meets the minimum filing requirements, it must first be accepted before it may be withdrawn. See [TMEP §§1104.01–1104.01\(c\)](#) regarding minimum filing requirements for amendment to allege use, [TMEP §§1104.03–1104.03\(c\)](#) regarding time for filing an amendment to allege use, and [TMEP §1104.09](#) regarding acceptance of amendment to allege use that meets minimum filing requirements. See [TMEP §1109.17](#) regarding the prohibition against withdrawing a statement of use.

The withdrawn amendment to allege use, specimen(s), and any other materials filed with the amendment to allege use will remain part of the record. If, prior to publication, the applicant wishes to reassert use and amend the application to §1(a) after withdrawing an amendment to allege use, the applicant may not rely on the amendment to allege use that was withdrawn. Because the applicant expressly withdrew the prior amendment to allege use, it must file a new amendment to allege use in order to amend the basis to use in commerce.

If the applicant wishes to request withdrawal of an amendment to allege use during an *ex parte* appeal, the applicant should direct the request to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

If the applicant withdraws the amendment to allege use, the application will be processed as an intent-to-use application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), subject to publication and issuance of a notice of allowance. After the notice of allowance issues, the applicant must file a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) for information on statements of use.

If the amendment to allege use is withdrawn, the examining attorney will withdraw any requirements or refusals specifically related to use of the mark, such as objections related to the form of the verified statement itself, the agreement of the mark as used on the specimens with the mark shown on the drawing, or the use of the applied-for designation evidenced by the specimen. The examining attorney should also withdraw any requirement or refusal related to the execution of the amendment to allege use.

The examining attorney should maintain any requirement or refusal arising from the amendment to allege use not specifically related to the dates of use or use of the mark, such as refusals under [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), [1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), [1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), or [1052\(e\)\(4\)](#). The amendment to allege use, specimen(s), and any materials submitted with the amendment to allege use may be relied on to support refusals or requirements under these sections. Furthermore, if the amendment to allege use contains an amendment to the identification and the amended identification is acceptable and within the scope of the previous identification, the amended identification remains of record and replaces all previous identifications. [TMEP §§1104.10\(b\)\(iii\)](#), [1402.07\(e\)](#).

1105 Publication of Intent-to-Use Applications for Opposition

If an amendment to allege use has been submitted and accepted, the intent-to-use application is processed as a use application. If the examining attorney determines that the mark is entitled to registration, the examining attorney will approve the mark for publication and the mark will be published for opposition. If the application is not successfully opposed, the mark will register and the USPTO will issue a certificate of registration. [15 U.S.C. §1063\(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.81\(a\)](#).

If no amendment to allege use has been accepted for an intent-to-use application, and the examining attorney determines that the mark is entitled to registration but for the submission of an allegation of use, the examining attorney will approve the mark for publication and the mark will be published for opposition. If the application is not successfully opposed, the USPTO will issue a notice of allowance. [15 U.S.C. §1063\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.81\(b\)](#).

1106 Notice of Allowance

1106.01 Issuance of the Notice of Allowance

Section 13(b)(2) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1063\(b\)\(2\)](#), provides for issuance of a notice of allowance if a §1(b) application is published for opposition and is not successfully opposed. The notice of allowance in an intent-to-use application will issue about eight weeks after the date the mark was published. The USPTO does not publish any notification in the *Official Gazette* that a notice of allowance has been issued. The notice of allowance is a key document because its issue date establishes the due date for filing a statement of use. See [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(1\)](#).

The accuracy of the information stated on the notice of allowance is important. If there are any errors in the notice of allowance, or if the applicant believes that the notice of allowance issued in error (e.g., because an amendment to allege use was previously approved by the USPTO or the filing basis of the application should not be designated as intent-to-use under §1(b)), the applicant should notify the ITU/Divisional Unit immediately, preferably by fax or telephone. See [TMEP §1106.04](#). Telephone and fax numbers may be found on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

If an applicant asserts other bases for registration in addition to §1(b), the USPTO will publish the mark for opposition and will issue a notice of allowance if there is no successful opposition. The identification of goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization specified for all the bases will remain in the application pending the filing and approval of a statement of use for the goods/services/collective membership organization based on §1(b), unless the applicant files a request to divide, a request to delete the §1(b) goods/services/collective membership organization, or a request to delete the §1(b) basis when there is an additional basis for registration. See [TMEP §806.04\(a\)](#) regarding the deletion of a §1(b) basis after issuance of a notice of allowance, [TMEP §1107](#) regarding amendments after notice of allowance, and [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#) regarding requests to divide.

If the applicant fails to timely file a statement of use or a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use in response to a notice of allowance, the entire application will be abandoned unless, before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, the applicant files a request to divide, a request to delete the §1(b) goods/services/collective membership organization, or a request to delete the §1(b) basis when there is an additional basis for registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\), \(k\)](#); [TMEP §806.02\(d\)](#). For example, if all the goods/services are based on both §44(e) and §1(b), the failure to file a timely statement of use or extension request will result in the abandonment of the entire application. In such case, the applicant may

file a petition to revive if the delay in filing the statement of use, extension request, or request to delete the §1(b) basis was unintentional. See [TMEP §§1714, 1714.01, 1714.01\(b\)–\(g\)](#).

1106.02 Action by Examining Attorney After Issuance of the Notice of Allowance

If, after issuance of the notice of allowance but before submission of the statement of use, the USPTO determines that a clear error (see [TMEP §706.01](#)) was made in approving the mark for publication, the USPTO will cancel the notice of allowance and return the application to examination. The examining attorney will issue an appropriate Office action that includes the relevant requirement or refusal and informs the applicant of the cancellation of the notice of allowance. See [TMEP §1106.03](#) regarding cancellation of the notice of allowance.

After the notice of allowance issues, the examining attorney has jurisdiction to act in the case. [37 C.F.R. §2.84\(a\)](#). Therefore, the examining attorney does not have to request jurisdiction to take an action, as would be required after publication but before the notice of allowance issues. See *id.* However, after a notice of allowance issues, the examining attorney should not make a refusal or requirement that could or should have been made during initial examination of the application unless the initial failure to make the refusal or requirement was a clear error. If the examining attorney determines that he or she must make a refusal or requirement after issuance of the notice of allowance that could or should have been made during initial examination, the examining attorney must consult with his/her managing attorney or senior attorney before taking the action. This must be done whether the action is to be taken before, during, or after examination of the statement of use, and regardless of whether the notice of allowance is cancelled. This applies to any refusal that arguably could or should have been made during initial examination, such as most refusals under §2(d) or §2(e)(1) of the Act.

Neither the Trademark Act nor the Trademark Rules of Practice restrict the USPTO from issuing a new requirement or new refusal at any time prior to registration. The USPTO has a duty to issue valid registrations and has broad authority to correct errors made by examining attorneys and other USPTO employees. See *Last Best Beef LLC v. Dudas*, 506 F.3d 333, 340, 84 USPQ2d 1699, 1704 (4th Cir. 2007) (“[F]ederal agencies, including the USPTO, have broad authority to correct their prior errors.”); see also *BlackLight Power Inc. v. Rogan*, 295 F.3d 1269, 63 USPQ2d 1534 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (concluding that USPTO officials acted within their authority to withdraw a patent from issuance in order to fulfill the USPTO’s mission to issue valid patents, even after issuance of a Notice of Allowance, payment of the issue fee and notification of the issue date, and with publication of the drawing and claim in the *Official Gazette*).

Thus, if the USPTO discovers that a mistake was made during initial examination that would result in issuance of a registration in violation of the Trademark Act or applicable rules, the USPTO must issue any necessary requirements or refusals, even if they could or should have been raised during initial examination.

See [TMEP §1109.08](#) regarding the issuance of refusals and requirements during examination of a statement of use.

1106.03 Cancellation of Notice of Allowance

If the USPTO cancels the notice of allowance before the filing or examination of the statement of use, the USPTO will refund any fees paid in conjunction with a statement of use or request(s) for extension(s) of time to file a statement of use, except where: (1) the applicant files a request to delete the §1(b) basis from a multiple-basis application (see [TMEP §806.04\(a\)](#)); or (2) the notice of allowance is cancelled as a result

of an amendment to the filing basis after publication, pursuant to a petition to the Director (*see* [TMEP §806.03\(j\)\(ii\)](#)).

Cancellation of the notice of allowance is done by the ITU/Divisional Unit of the USPTO. To request that a notice of allowance be cancelled, a USPTO employee must send an e-mail request to the ITU/Divisional Unit's internal mailbox with a clear statement of the reason why the notice of allowance is being cancelled. The ITU staff will enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record, stating who requested the cancellation and why. When the notice of allowance is cancelled, the examining attorney must inform the applicant that this has been done.

When the notice of allowance is cancelled and reexamination is required, the application is returned to the examining attorney. The examining attorney does not have to request jurisdiction to issue an Office action.

If an Office action issues and the applicant subsequently overcomes all refusals and complies with any requirements made in the Office action, the examining attorney must approve the mark for republication.

If the application is returned to initial examination, any statement of use previously submitted will remain in the record but will not be examined unless it is resubmitted with the required fee as an amendment to allege use or statement of use at the appropriate time.

If the applicant files a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use after the notice of allowance has been cancelled, the ITU/Divisional Unit will inform the applicant in writing that the statement of use or extension request is untimely, and will refund the filing fee.

1106.04 Correction of Errors in Notice of Allowance

When the applicant receives a notice of allowance, the applicant should check the accuracy of the information.

If there are any errors in the notice of allowance, the applicant should notify the ITU/Divisional Unit of the USPTO immediately, preferably by fax or telephone. Telephone and fax numbers may be found on the USPTO website at www.uspto.gov.

Correction of USPTO Error

If an error in the notice of allowance was the result of a USPTO error (e.g., entering data incorrectly or failing to enter a timely filed amendment), the USPTO will determine whether the change requires republication. If necessary, the ITU staff will contact the examining attorney by e-mail to approve the change and determine whether republication is required.

If the change may be made without republication, the ITU staff will make the correction and issue a corrected notice of allowance. *The USPTO will not issue a new notice of allowance or extend the time for filing a statement of use.*

If republication is required, and no action by the examining attorney that requires a response is necessary, the ITU staff will make the correction, cancel the notice of allowance, and refund any fees paid for filing a statement of use or request(s) for extension of time to file a statement of use. The application will then be scheduled for republication. If the application is not successfully opposed, the USPTO will issue a new notice of allowance.

If the examining attorney must issue an Office action that requires a response as a result of the requested correction, the ITU staff will cancel the notice of allowance, refund any fees paid for filing a statement of

use or request(s) for extension of time to file a statement of use, and forward the application to the examining attorney for further action.

Correction of Applicant's Error

If an error in the notice of allowance is the result of an applicant's error (e.g., providing incorrect information in the application or in an amendment to the application), the applicant must file a written amendment, which will be processed like any other amendment filed after issuance of the notice of allowance and before filing of the statement of use. See [TMEP §1107](#).

1107 Amendment After Issuance of the Notice of Allowance and Before Filing of the Statement of Use

Generally, the only amendments that may be entered in an application between the issuance of the notice of allowance and the submission of a statement of use are: (1) the deletion of specified goods or services, or the entire description of the nature of the collective membership organization, from the identification; (2) the deletion of a basis in a multiple-basis application; and (3) changes of attorney and changes of address. See [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(a\)](#).

The "deletion of specified goods or services, or the entire description of the nature of the collective membership organization," within the meaning of [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(a\)\(1\)](#), means the elimination of an existing entry in an identification in its entirety. Deletion is distinct from other types of amendments to modify or limit an identification, such as amendments to limit the goods/services as to types, channels of trade or classes of purchasers, or to restrict an existing item in scope by the introduction of some qualifying language, or the substitution of specific terms for more general terms.

Although [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(a\)\(2\)](#) permits the deletion of a basis in a multiple-basis application after issuance of the notice of allowance, an applicant cannot delete a §1(b) basis if the only other basis is §44(d). Section 44(d) of the Trademark Act provides only a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, not a basis for publication or registration. See [TMEP §1003.03](#). In such situations, the applicant may request deletion of the §1(b) basis only by filing a petition to allow consideration of an amendment to a §44(e) filing basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#). The request must be filed as a "Petition to Change the Filing Basis After Publication" and the Office encourages such submissions be filed on the appropriate TEAS form. See [TMEP 806.03\(j\)\(ii\)](#).

The USPTO will enter other amendments during this period only with the express permission of the Director, after consideration on petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). If the Director determines that the amendment requires review by the examining attorney, the petition will be denied and the amendment may be resubmitted with the statement of use in order for the applicant to preserve its right to review. [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(b\)](#). [TMEP §1107.01](#). The petition must be accompanied by the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions.

The filing of an amendment after issuance of the notice of allowance does not extend the deadline for filing a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use.

See [TMEP §1106.04](#) regarding correction of errors in a notice of allowance, [TMEP §806.04\(a\)](#) regarding the deletion of a §1(b) basis after issuance of a notice of allowance, and [TMEP §806.03\(j\)\(ii\)](#) regarding amendments to add or substitute a basis between issuance of the notice of allowance and filing the statement of use.

1107.01 Examination of Amendment Filed After the Notice of Allowance Issues but Before a Statement of Use Is Filed

As noted in [TMEP §1107](#), an applicant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to permit an amendment to be entered (other than an amendment deleting a basis or deleting specified goods/services) during the period between the issuance of a notice of allowance and the filing of a statement of use. If the Director determines that the amendment requires review by the examining attorney, the petition will be denied and the amendment may be resubmitted with the statement of use in order for the applicant to preserve its right to review. [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(b\)](#).

The granting of a petition to enter an amendment between issuance of the notice of allowance and filing of the statement of use does not extend the deadline for filing a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use. Regardless of whether an applicant has received a response to a proposed amendment, the applicant must file its extension request or statement of use when it becomes due. The extension request or statement of use may refer to the proposed amendment.

1108 Requests for Extensions of Time to File the Statement of Use

Section 1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), requires that a statement of use be filed within six months after the issuance of the notice of allowance, or before the expiration of a previously granted extension of time to file a statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(1\)](#). If the mark is not in use in commerce before the expiration of the six-month period following the issuance of the notice of allowance, the applicant must file a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use within the six-month period to avoid abandonment of the application. See [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#).

The first six-month extension may be requested without a showing of good cause. Up to four additional six-month extensions may be requested; each must include a showing of good cause. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(c\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#). Thus, the total time available for filing the statement of use may not be extended beyond thirty-six months from the issuance date of the notice of allowance. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#).

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the applicant file the extension request through TEAS at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Alternatively, an applicant may call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed paper form for a trademark or service mark. The applicant may mail, fax, or hand-deliver the completed form to the USPTO. If the form is faxed, it must be accompanied by an authorization to charge the filing fee to a credit card or deposit account. The credit card authorization form is available at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/forms/2038.pdf>. If the extension request is filed through TEAS, payment must be made by credit card, deposit account, or EFT.

Paper forms may be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center (“TAC”), at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, 22314. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

Extension requests are processed by the ITU/Divisional Unit of the USPTO.

1108.01 Time for Filing Requests for Extensions of Time to File the Statement of Use

Under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), the applicant must file an extension request within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance, or before the expiration of a previously granted extension; otherwise the application is abandoned. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.65\(c\), 2.88\(k\), 2.89\(a\)–\(b\)](#).

Extensions of time are granted in six-month increments. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)–\(c\)](#). Only one extension request may be filed in each six-month extension period that has been granted. *See id.* The first extension request must be filed within six months of the date the notice of allowance issued. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)](#). The second and subsequent extension requests must be filed before the expiration of the previously granted extension period. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(b\)](#). The total time available for filing the statement of use may not be extended beyond thirty-six months from the issuance date of the notice of allowance. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(d\)\(1\)–1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#). If a statement of use is not filed by the end of thirty-six months, the application will be abandoned and cannot be revived. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(k\)](#).

One extension request may be filed with or after a statement of use is filed (sometimes called an “insurance” extension request), if there is time remaining in the existing six-month period during which the statement of use was filed. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)](#). Granting the extension request may not extend the time for filing the statement of use more than thirty-six months beyond the issuance of the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1108.03](#) regarding filing an “insurance” extension request.

An applicant will receive the full benefit of each extension period before a subsequent extension period will begin to run. The six-month period following the issuance of the notice of allowance, or any subsequent six-month extension period, will not be cut short by the grant of an extension request. No extension will be granted for more than six months. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\), \(c\)](#).

Example : The following table presents an example of the complete timeline for filing five extension requests that meet the requirements of [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#).

Document	Issue/Filing Date	Period Covered
Notice of allowance	Issued June 7, 2010	Through December 7, 2010 (1 st 6 months provided by statute)
First extension request	File from June 8, 2010 through December 7, 2010	Through June 7, 2011
Second extension request	File from December 8, 2010 through June 7, 2011	Through December 7, 2011
Third extension request	File from June 8, 2011 through December 7, 2011	Through June 7, 2012
Fourth extension request	File from December 8, 2011 through June 7, 2012	Through December 7, 2012
Fifth and last extension request	File from June 8, 2012 through December 7, 2012	Through June 7, 2013
Statement of use	File from December 7, 2012 through June 7, 2013	N/A

The USPTO will notify the applicant of the grant or denial of an extension request, and of the reasons for a denial. However, failure to notify the applicant of the grant or denial of an extension request before the

expiration of the requested extension does not relieve the applicant of the duty to file a statement of use or further extension request. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(g\)](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#), an extension request filed through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission (Eastern Time), regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. When an extension request is filed electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the extension request, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

A paper extension request is considered timely if it is received in the USPTO by the due date or mailed or transmitted by the due date with a certificate of mailing or facsimile transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#). See [TMEP §§305.02–305.02\(h\)](#) and [§§306.05–306.05\(d\)](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness.

1108.02 Requirements for Request for an Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use

First Extension Request

The first request for an extension of time to file a statement of use must include: (1) a written extension request from the applicant, before expiration of the six-month period following issuance of the notice of allowance; (2) the prescribed fee for each class; and (3) a verified statement signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant ([TMEP §804](#)) that, for a trademark or service mark, the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, for a collective or certification mark, the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, and specify the relevant goods/services/collective membership organization identified in the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)](#).

Second and Subsequent Extension Requests

A second or subsequent extension request must be submitted before expiration of a previously granted extension of time and must include: (1) a written extension request from the applicant; (2) the prescribed fee for each class; (3) a verified statement signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant that, for a trademark or service mark, the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, for a collective or certification mark, the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, and specify the relevant goods/services/collective membership organization identified in the notice of allowance; and (4) a showing of good cause, as required by [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(d\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(b\)](#). Extensions of time under [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(b\)](#) (i.e., second and subsequent extension requests) are granted in six-month increments and may not aggregate more than 24 months. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(c\)](#).

1108.02(a) Ownership

The party filing the extension request must be the owner of the application, i.e., the person or entity who is entitled to use or exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark, at the time of filing. See [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.89\(a\)\(3\)](#), [2.89\(b\)\(3\)](#). If the party filing the extension request is not the owner of record, the request should include either a statement that the assignment or other document of title is recorded (or filed for recordation) in the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO, or other evidence

that the party filing the extension request is the owner of the application in accordance with [37 C.F.R. §§3.71\(d\)](#) and [3.73\(b\)](#). (*Note*: An application under §1(b) cannot be assigned before the applicant files an allegation of use, except to a successor to the applicant's business, or portion of the business to which the mark pertains. See [TMEP §501.01\(a\)](#).)

If the extension request is filed by someone other than the owner of record and does not include the necessary evidence of ownership, the ITU staff will issue an Office action denying the request. If the party who filed the extension request was the owner at the time of filing, the applicant may submit evidence to establish the chain of title after expiration of the statutory filing period, within the time provided in the Office action advising the applicant of the denial.

To establish ownership, the new owner must either: (1) record an assignment or other document of title with the Assignment Recordation Branch, *and* state in the response to the Office action that the document has been recorded; or (2) submit other evidence of ownership, in the form of a document transferring ownership from one party to another or an explanation, supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) that a valid transfer of legal title has occurred. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §502.01](#). The USPTO recommends that requests to record documents with the Assignment Recordation Branch be filed through Electronic Trademark Assignment System ("ETAS") at <http://etas.uspto.gov>.

If an extension request is filed by the owner, but there is a minor error in the manner in which the name of the owner is set out, the mistake may be corrected by amendment. See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors.

If the party who filed the extension request was not the owner at the time of filing, the true owner may not file a substitute extension request unless there is time remaining in the statutory period for filing the extension request. *Cf. In re Colombo Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1530, 1531 (Comm'r Pats. 1994) (indicating that a statement of use filed by the wrong party cannot be corrected with a properly signed verification unless it is submitted within the statutory period for filing the statement of use). See [TMEP §1108.05](#) for applicant's recourse if an extension request is denied.

If the applicant notifies the ITU/Divisional Unit during the processing of an extension request that an assignment or other document of title has been recorded, and there is a clear chain of title, the ITU staff will update the owner of record in the Trademark database. See [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#) and [TMEP §502.02\(a\)](#) regarding the issuance of a registration certificate in the name of a new owner, and [TMEP §504](#) regarding the circumstances in which the "Ownership" field in the Trademark database will be automatically updated after recordation of a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch, even if the new owner does not notify the Trademark Operation that the document has been recorded.

1108.02(b) Verification

The extension request must be verified by someone properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) and [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#) regarding persons properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant. If the extension request is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, a properly signed substitute verification must be submitted before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §§2.89\(a\)\(3\)](#), [2.89\(b\)\(3\)](#). Generally, the USPTO will not question the authority of the person who signs a verification unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory's authority to sign.

If the extension request is not filed within one year after it is signed, the USPTO may require a substitute verification or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to

use the mark in commerce, for a trademark or service mark, or that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, for a collective or certification mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(h\)](#); *see* [TMEP §804.03](#).

See [TMEP §611](#) regarding signature on correspondence filed with the USPTO.

1108.02(c) Filing Fees

A filing fee sufficient to cover at least one class must be submitted within the statutory time for filing the extension request, or the request will be denied. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(2\)](#). In a multiple-class application, if the applicant files a fee sufficient to pay for at least one class, but insufficient to cover all the classes, the ITU staff will issue a notice of fee deficiency allowing the applicant thirty days to remit the amount by which the fee is deficient or specify the class(es) to be abandoned. If the USPTO does not receive a timely response to a fee deficiency letter, the USPTO will apply the fees paid beginning with the lowest-numbered class(es) in ascending order, and will delete from the application the remaining class(es) not covered by the submitted fees. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(2\)](#).

If the filing fee for at least a single class is omitted or is deficient (e.g., if the fee is charged to a deposit account with insufficient funds, an EFT or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, or a check is returned unpaid), the fee for at least one class must be submitted before the expiration of the statutory filing period. See [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(2\)](#). If the extension request was not accompanied by an authorization to charge deficient fee(s) to a deposit account (37 C.F.R. §2.208) that has sufficient funds to cover the fee, and the applicant does not resubmit the fee before expiration of the statutory deadline, the extension request will be denied and the application will be abandoned. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(2\)](#). In addition, when an EFT or credit card is refused or a check is returned unpaid, the applicant must pay the processing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). See [TMEP §405.06](#) regarding payments that are refused.

1108.02(d) Identification of Goods/Services

In an extension request, the applicant must identify or reference the goods/services on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#). The goods/services identified in the extension request must conform to those identified in the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(f\)](#). If the applicant wants to delete goods/services from the application, the applicant should clearly specify those goods/services to be deleted.

The applicant may incorporate by reference the goods/services listed in the notice of allowance. See [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(f\)](#). This is advisable where applicant intends to retain all the goods/services identified in the notice of allowance, to avoid the possibility that goods/services may be inadvertently omitted. Thus, the applicant may specify all the goods/services in the notice of allowance by referring to “those goods/services identified in the notice of allowance” or “those goods/services identified in the notice of allowance except . . . [followed by a listing of the goods/services to be deleted].” *Id.*

If the applicant lists the goods/services with specificity in the extension request, and omits any goods/services that were listed in the notice of allowance, the USPTO will presume these goods/services to be deleted. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(f\)](#). The applicant may not thereafter request that the goods/services be reinserted in the application. *Id.* In this situation, the applicant cannot file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), claiming unintentional delay in filing an extension request for the omitted goods/services.

If an applicant files an extension request on a pre-printed paper form provided by the USPTO and fails to check either of the boxes available for identifying the goods/services on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, the ITU staff will assume that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods/services identified in the notice of allowance, and will grant the extension request, if it meets all other requirements of [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#). *In re Omega-3 Mktg., Inc.*, 35 USPQ2d 1158, 1159 (Comm'r Pats. 1994).

If the applicant lists goods/services to be deleted and the result would be to delete *all* of the goods/services in the notice of allowance, or if the applicant fails to identify or incorporate by reference *any* goods/services, the USPTO will presume this was a clerical error. Applicant will be allowed to correct the mistake. The ITU staff will issue a letter noting that no goods/services were specified or incorporated by reference in the extension request, and granting applicant thirty days in which to submit a verified statement clarifying the goods/services. However, if by mistake the applicant lists goods/services to be deleted and removal does not result in the deletion of all goods/services, the goods/services specifically listed will be deleted and may not later be reinserted.

See [TMEP §1107](#) regarding amendments to the identification of goods/services filed between the issuance of the notice of allowance and the filing date of the statement of use.

1108.02(d)(1) Identification of Collective Membership Organization

In an extension request for a collective membership mark, the applicant must, in lieu of goods or services, instead identify or reference the nature of the collective membership organization in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#). The collective membership organization identified in the extension request must conform to the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(f\)](#).

If an applicant files an extension request on a pre-printed paper form provided by the USPTO and fails to check either of the boxes available for identifying the goods/services on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, the ITU staff will assume that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and entitlement, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods/services/collective membership organization identified in the notice of allowance, and will grant the extension request, if it meets all other requirements of [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#). *In re Omega-3 Mktg., Inc.*, 35 USPQ2d 1158, 1159 (Comm'r Pats. 1994).

1108.02(e) Bona Fide Intention to Use the Mark in Commerce

Trademarks and Service Marks

A request for an extension of time to file a statement of use must include a verified statement that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services identified in the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#). The USPTO will accept an allegation of actual use in commerce as meeting the requirement for an allegation of bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce in an extension request. *In re Vitamin Beverage Corp.*, 37 USPQ2d 1537, 1539 (Comm'r Pats. 1995).

This is a statutory requirement that must be satisfied before expiration of the statutory period for filing the extension request. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); *In re Custom Techs., Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1712 (Comm'r Pats. 1991).

See [TMEP §1101](#) for additional information about the requirement for an allegation of the applicant's bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.

Collective Marks and Certification Marks

For a collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark filed under Section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use must include a verified statement that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce because use of these types of marks is by someone other than the actual owner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#). The USPTO will accept an allegation of actual use in commerce as meeting this requirement. *Cf. In re Vitamin Beverage Corp.*, 37 USPQ2d 1537, 1539 (Comm'r Pats. 1995).

This is a statutory requirement that must be satisfied before expiration of the statutory period for filing the extension request. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); *cf. In re Custom Techs., Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1712 (Comm'r Pats. 1991).

See [TMEP §1101](#) for additional information about the requirement for an allegation that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce.

1108.02(f) Good Cause Required for Extensions Beyond the First Six-Month Extension –Trademarks and Service Marks

No showing of good cause is required in a first request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, but each subsequent extension request must include a showing of good cause. See [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#), [\(d\)](#). A showing of good cause for a trademark or service mark must include a statement of the applicant's ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with each of the goods/services covered by the extension request. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(d\)](#). Efforts to use the mark in commerce may include product or service research or development, market research, manufacturing activities, promotional activities, steps to acquire distributors, steps to obtain required governmental approval, or other similar activities, such as efforts to secure funding. *Id.* In the alternative, a satisfactory explanation for the failure to make such efforts may be submitted. *Id.* Examples of activities that would not be acceptable to show good cause include physical illness or disability and lack of staff and resources due to economic downturn.

A mere assertion that the applicant is engaged in ongoing efforts is not sufficient; the efforts must be specified.

In re Comdial Corp., 32 USPQ2d 1863, 1864 (Comm'r Pats. 1993). However, the USPTO will not require a detailed explanation or evidence in a showing of good cause. The statement concerning good cause should refer to the types of activities listed in the rule or other similar types of activities. For example, the applicant may simply state that the applicant is engaged in manufacturing and promotional activities.

The applicant may also satisfy the requirement for a showing of good cause by asserting that the applicant believes it has made valid use of the mark in commerce and (1) is in the process of preparing a statement of use but may need additional time to file it, or (2) is concurrently filing a statement of use but is requesting

the extension of time to file a statement of use in case the USPTO finds the original statement of use to be fatally defective. However, such a statement will be accepted only once as a statement of the applicant's ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce. Repetition of these same allegations in a subsequent extension request is not, without more, deemed to be a statement of the applicant's *ongoing* efforts, as required by [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(d\)](#). *In re SPARC Int'l Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1479, 1480 (Comm'r Pats. 1993). If these allegations are repeated, the extension request will be denied.

If an extension request does not include a showing of good cause, or if the showing of good cause in an extension request is deemed insufficient, the ITU staff will issue an Office action denying the extension request but granting the applicant thirty days to overcome the denial by submitting a verified showing of good cause (or a substitute extension request that includes a showing of good cause). This showing may be submitted even if the statutory period for filing the statement of use has expired.

See TMEP §1108.02(g) for information regarding good cause in an extension request for a collective mark and TMEP §1108.02(h) for information regarding good cause in an extension request for a certification mark.

1108.02(g) Good Cause Required for Extensions Beyond the First Six-Month Extension – Collective Marks

No showing of good cause is required in a first request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, but each subsequent extension request must include a showing of good cause. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#), [\(d\)](#). A showing of good cause for a collective trademark, collective service mark, or collective membership mark must include a statement of ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce by members on or in connection with each of the relevant goods/services/collective membership organization covered by the extension request. Efforts to use the mark in commerce may include the development of standards, steps taken to acquire members such as marketing or promotional activities targeted to potential members, training members regarding standards, and other similar activities. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(d\)\(2\)](#). In the alternative, a satisfactory explanation for the failure to make such efforts may be submitted. *Id.*

If an extension request does not include a showing of good cause, or if the showing of good cause in an extension request is deemed insufficient, the ITU staff will issue an Office action denying the extension request but granting the applicant thirty days to overcome the denial by submitting a verified showing of good cause (or a substitute extension request that includes a showing of good cause). This showing may be submitted even if the statutory period for filing the statement of use has expired.

See [TMEP §1108.02\(f\)](#) for general information regarding good cause in an extension request and [TMEP §1108.02\(h\)](#) for information regarding good cause in an extension request for a certification mark.

1108.02(h) Good Cause Required for Extensions Beyond the First Six-Month Extension – Certification Marks

No showing of good cause is required in a first request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, but each subsequent extension request must include a showing of good cause. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(a\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#), [\(d\)](#). A showing of good cause for a certification mark must include a statement of ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce by authorized users on or in connection with each of the relevant goods or services covered by the extension request. Efforts to use the mark in commerce may include the development of certification standards, steps taken to obtain governmental approval or

acquire authorized users, marketing and promoting the recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant, training authorized users regarding the standards, or other similar activities. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(d\)\(3\)](#). In the alternative, a satisfactory explanation for the failure to make such efforts may be submitted. *Id.*

If an extension request does not include a showing of good cause, or if the showing of good cause in an extension request is deemed insufficient, the ITU staff will issue an Office action denying the extension request but granting the applicant thirty days to overcome the denial by submitting a verified showing of good cause (or a substitute extension request that includes a showing of good cause). This showing may be submitted even if the statutory period for filing the statement of use has expired.

See [TMEP §1108.02\(f\)](#) for general information regarding good cause in an extension request for a trademark or service mark and [TMEP §1108.02\(g\)](#) for information regarding good cause in an extension request for a collective mark.

1108.03 Only One Extension Request May Be Filed with or After a Statement of Use – “Insurance” Extension Request

An applicant may file a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use with a statement of use, or after filing the statement of use if there is time remaining in the existing six-month period in which the statement of use was filed, provided that granting the extension request would not extend the time for filing the statement of use more than thirty-six months beyond the issuance of the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#). *The applicant may not request any further extensions of time after this request. Id.*

The purpose of such an extension request, also called an “insurance” extension request, is to secure additional time to correct any deficiency in the statement of use that must be corrected before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. See [TMEP §1109.16\(a\)](#) regarding the deficiencies that must be cured before expiration of the statutory filing period, such as specimen issues. Consider the following examples:

Example: If the notice of allowance was issued February 6, 2009, and the applicant files a statement of use on August 6, 2009 (but does not file an “insurance” extension request), the applicant has until August 6, 2009 to cure any deficiency that must be corrected before the expiration of the statutory period for filing the statement of use. After August 6, 2009, it is too late to file an “insurance” extension request, because no time remains in the existing six-month period in which the statement of use was filed.

Example: If the notice of allowance was issued February 6, 2009, the applicant could file a statement of use, together with an “insurance” extension request, on or before August 6, 2009. If the extension request were granted, this would give the applicant until February 6, 2010 to cure any deficiency that must be corrected before the expiration of the statutory filing period. No further extension request may be filed.

Example: If the notice of allowance was issued February 6, 2009, and the applicant filed a statement of use on February 7, 2009, the applicant could file an “insurance” extension request within the time remaining in the existing six-month period in which the statement of use was filed, i.e., on or before August 6, 2009. If the request were granted, this would give the applicant until February 6, 2010 to cure any deficiency that must be corrected before the expiration of the statutory filing period. No further extension request may be filed.

Example: If the notice of allowance was issued February 6, 2009, and the applicant files a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use on August 6, 2009, the applicant has until February 6, 2010 to file a statement of use or a second extension request. If the applicant files a statement of use, together with an “insurance” extension request, on or before February 6, 2010, and the extension request is granted, the applicant would have until August 6, 2010 to cure any deficiency that must be corrected before the expiration of the statutory filing period. No further extension request may be filed.

An “insurance” extension request filed with or after a statement of use must meet all relevant requirements, including payment of the applicable fee. If the request is not the first request for an extension of time, and thus a showing of good cause is required, the applicant may satisfy the requirement for a showing of good cause by asserting that the applicant believes that valid use of the mark in commerce has been made, as evidenced by the statement of use, but that if the statement of use is found to be fatally defective, the applicant will need additional time to correct defects or file a substitute statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1108.02\(f\)](#).

The filing fee for the “insurance” extension request will not be refunded, even if the extension is not needed to perfect the statement of use.

In a multiple-class application, the “insurance” extension request must cover all the classes stated in the notice of allowance. If the applicant intends to submit an “insurance” extension request for less than all the classes, the applicant must either (1) identify in the extension request the classes being deleted or (2) submit a request to divide for those classes that will retain the §1(b) filing basis and a separate extension request for those classes. A request to divide may be filed electronically using TEAS. See [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#) regarding a request to divide an application and [TMEP §1110.07](#) regarding dividing an application when the statement of use is due. If the applicant does not comply with these requirements, the ITU staff will contact the applicant to clarify the deficiencies and process the “insurance” extension request accordingly. If the ITU staff issues a letter regarding the deficiencies and the applicant fails to respond within the time permitted, the “insurance” extension request will not be processed.

If the applicant files an “insurance” extension request in conjunction with a statement of use, and the applicant submits fees sufficient for one but not both filings, the USPTO will apply the fees as follows: (1) if there is enough money to cover the extension request, the USPTO will apply the fees to the extension request to avoid abandonment of the application; or (2) if there is enough money to cover the statement of use, but not enough to cover the extension request, the USPTO will apply the fees to the statement of use. See [TMEP §1110.07](#) regarding the application of fees when an applicant submits a request to divide along with an extension request and statement of use.

If an applicant files an “insurance” extension request with a statement of use and the extension request is defective, the ITU staff will deny the request and advise the applicant of the reason for denial. If the statement of use meets the minimum requirements for examination on the merits, the ITU staff will then forward the application to the examining attorney. If there is time remaining in the current period for filing a statement of use, the applicant may file a substitute extension request.

See [TMEP §1108.03\(a\)](#) regarding the processing of an extension request after a statement of use has been referred to an examining attorney.

1108.03(a) Processing Extension Request Filed After Statement of Use Has Been Referred to Examining Attorney

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#), an applicant may file a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use after filing a statement of use if: (1) there is time remaining in the existing six-month period in which the statement of use was filed; (2) no extension request was filed together with the statement of use; and (3) granting the extension would not extend the time for filing the statement of use more than thirty-six months beyond the issuance of the notice of allowance. See [TMEP §1108.03](#).

When an extension request is filed after the statement of use has been referred to the examining attorney, the request will be referred to the examining attorney. The USPTO will not examine the extension request unless the applicant needs the extension to perfect the statement of use.

If the examining attorney issues a requirement or refusal based on the statement of use, the examining attorney should note in the Office action that the extension request is being referred to the ITU/Divisional Unit for processing of the extension request. The filing of such an extension request is not in itself a proper response to an outstanding Office action, and does *not* extend the time for responding to an outstanding Office action. See [TMEP §1109.16\(c\), \(d\)](#). If the examining attorney does not issue a requirement or refusal based on the statement of use, the USPTO will not take formal action on the extension request.

The USPTO will not refund the filing fee for the extension request, even if the extension is not needed to perfect the statement of use.

1108.04 Recourse After Denial of Extension Request

If an extension request is denied, the applicant will be notified of the reason(s) for the denial.

To avoid abandonment of the application, the applicant must meet the minimum requirements for filing the extension request on or before the deadline for filing a statement of use.

If the USPTO denies the extension request because the applicant failed to meet minimum filing requirements on or before the statutory deadline, and there is time remaining in the applicant's existing period for filing the statement of use, the applicant may file the statement of use and/or a substitute extension request.

Otherwise, the applicant's only recourse after denial of the extension request is a petition under [37 C.F.R. §§2.89\(g\)](#) and [2.146](#), or a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), if appropriate. See [TMEP §1108.05](#) regarding petitions that may be filed after the denial of an extension request.

For a trademark or service mark, the minimum filing requirements for an extension request that must be satisfied before expiration of the statutory deadline are: (1) a verified statement, signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant, that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce; (2) an identification of the goods/services on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce; and (3) payment of the prescribed fee for at least one class of goods or services. *In re El Taurino Rest., Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1220, 1222 (Comm'r Pats. 1996).

For a collective mark or certification mark, the minimum filing requirements for an extension request that must be satisfied before expiration of the statutory deadline are: (1) a verified statement, signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant, that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; (2) an identification of the goods/services/collective membership organization on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and (3) payment of the prescribed fee for at least one class of goods or services. *Cf. In re El Taurino Rest., Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1220, 1222 (Comm'r Pats. 1996).

1108.05 Petitions from Denial of Request for an Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use

If an extension request is denied, and there is no time remaining in the statutory filing period, the application is abandoned. Applicant's recourse is as follows:

- *Petition to Revive Under 37 C.F.R. §2.66*. If the applicant unintentionally failed to comply with the minimum filing requirements (see [TMEP §1108.04](#) for a list of these requirements), the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), within two months of the issuance date of the denial of the extension request, and must include the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive.
- *Request for Reinstatement*. If the applicant has proof that shows on its face that the extension request met the minimum requirements when filed, the applicant may request reinstatement within two months of the issuance date of the denial of the extension request. For example, if the extension request is denied due to the omission of a fee, and the applicant has proof that shows on its face that the fee was included, the applicant may request reinstatement. No fee is required for the reinstatement request. The request should be directed to the ITU/Divisional Unit. See [TMEP §1712.01](#) regarding the types of evidence that support reinstatement.
- *Petition Under 37 C.F.R. §2.146*. The applicant may file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) if the applicant believes that the ITU staff's denial of an extension request was improper (e.g., if applicant contends that the extension request actually met the requirements of [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#), but was improperly denied). [37 C.F.R. §§2.89\(g\), 2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#). For example, the applicant might file a petition claiming that the denial was improper if the ITU staff denied an extension request because the applicant's showing of good cause was insufficient, but applicant believes that the showing was sufficient. The applicant must file the petition within two months of the issuance date of the denial of the extension request, and must include the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(c\), \(d\)](#). See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions.

Filing a petition or request for reinstatement does not stay the time for filing a statement of use or further extension request. See [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(g\)](#). However, if the applicant fails to file a statement of use or further request(s) for extension(s) of time to file a statement of use during the pendency of a petition, the applicant will be given an opportunity to perfect the petition by paying the fee(s) for each missed extension request and filing the last extension request, or statement of use, that should have been filed. *In re Moisture Jamzz, Inc.*, 47 USPQ2d 1762, 1763-64 (Comm'r Pats. 1997).

If a petition is granted, the term of the requested six-month extension will run from the date of the expiration of the previously existing six-month period for filing a statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(g\)](#).

No petition or request for reinstatement will be granted if it would extend the deadline for filing a statement of use beyond thirty-six months after the issuance of the notice of allowance. See [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#).

1109 Statement of Use Under §1(d) of the Trademark Act

As noted in [TMEP §1103](#), an intent-to-use applicant must file an allegation of use in order to obtain a registration. This section discusses statements of use only. See [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), a statement of use must be filed within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance, or within a previously granted extension of time to file a statement of use.

1109.01 Minimum Filing Requirements for a Statement of Use

The statement of use must meet the following minimum filing requirements before it may be referred to an examining attorney for examination on the merits:

- (1) the prescribed fee for at least one class;
- (2) one specimen of the mark as used in commerce; and
- (3) a verification or declaration signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant stating that the mark is in use in commerce.

[37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#).

A statement of use that omits the allegation of use in commerce, but asserts a verified date of first use in commerce, may be accepted as substantially in compliance with the minimum filing requirement of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)\(3\)](#) for a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce. *In re Carnicon Dev. Co.*, 34 USPQ2d 1541, 1543 (Comm’r Pats. 1992); *see In re Conservation Tech. Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1079, 1080 (Comm’r Pats. 1992). In such case, the examining attorney will require a verified allegation that the “mark is in use in commerce” during examination. *See* [TMEP §1109.09](#).

See [TMEP §1109.02](#) regarding review of the statement of use for compliance with minimum filing requirements, and [TMEP §1109.06](#) regarding the requirements for a complete statement of use.

1109.02 Review for Compliance with Minimum Filing Requirements

Statements of use are reviewed by the ITU/Divisional Unit to determine whether they are timely and in compliance with the minimum filing requirements listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#). If the statement of use is untimely, either because it is premature or late, the ITU staff will notify the applicant in writing that the statement of use cannot be considered because it is untimely, and refund the filing fee.

If the statement of use is timely, but does not comply with one or more of the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), the ITU staff will notify the applicant in writing of the defect and advise the applicant that the USPTO will not examine the statement of use on the merits unless the applicant corrects the defect before expiration of the deadline for filing a statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(d\)](#).

If the statement of use is filed by someone other than the owner of record, the ITU staff will issue an Office action granting the applicant thirty days in which to submit evidence to establish chain of title. See [TMEP §1109.10](#) for further information regarding ownership issues.

If the applicant does not correct the deficiency before the expiration of the statutory deadline, the application will be abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(k\)](#). In such a case, the USPTO will *not* refund the filing fee.

The applicant may not withdraw the statement of use and return the application to the previous status of awaiting filing of the statement of use, even if the statement of use fails to meet the minimum filing requirements. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1109.17](#). However, in limited circumstances, an applicant may file an “insurance” extension request with or after the filing of a statement of use, if there is time remaining in the existing six-month period in which the statement of use was filed, to gain more time to comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§1108.03 and 1109.16\(c\)](#) for further information.

1109.02(a) Petition to Review Refusal Based on Noncompliance with Minimum Filing Requirements

If the ITU staff determines that a statement of use does not meet the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), and there is no time remaining in the statutory filing period, the applicant's recourse is as follows:

- *Petition to Revive Under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#)*. If the applicant unintentionally failed to comply with the minimum filing requirements, the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) within two months of the issuance date of the notice of abandonment. See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#) regarding petitions to revive.
- *Request for Reinstatement*. If the applicant has *proof that shows on its face* that the statement of use met the minimum requirements when filed, the applicant may request reinstatement, within two months of the issuance date of the notice of abandonment. For example, if the statement of use is rejected due to the omission of a specimen or fee, and the applicant has proof that shows on its face that the missing element was included, the applicant may request reinstatement. No fee is required. The request should be directed to the ITU/Divisional Unit. See [TMEP §1712.01](#) regarding the types of evidence that support reinstatement.
- *Petition Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#)*. If the applicant contends that the statement of use met the minimum requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#) when filed but was improperly denied by the ITU staff, and the applicant does *not* have proof that shows *on its face* that the statement of use was complete when filed (see [TMEP §1712.01](#)), the applicant may file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#), asking the Director to review the action of the ITU staff. The petition must be filed within two months of the issuance date of the notice of abandonment, and must include the petition fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#), proof in the form of an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), and any available evidence showing that the statement of use was complete when filed. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(c\)](#), [\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1705.03](#) regarding proof of facts on petition.

No petition or request for reinstatement will be granted if it would extend the deadline for filing a statement of use beyond thirty-six months after the issuance of the notice of allowance. See [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(2\)](#).

1109.03 Use on All Goods/Services Required Before Filing

The applicant may file a statement of use only when the mark has been in use in commerce on or in connection with *all* the goods/services specified in the notice of allowance, unless the applicant files a request to divide for those goods/services not yet in use in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§1110–1110.11\(a\)](#) regarding requests to divide.

If the applicant files a statement of use for some of the goods/services identified in the notice of allowance, and a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use for other goods/services that are identified in the notice of allowance, but does not file a request to divide, the ITU/Divisional Unit will issue an Office action granting the applicant additional time to either: (1) file a request to divide, or (2) file an amendment to delete from the application the goods/services that are not in use. If the applicant met the minimum requirements for filing the statement of use and extension request before expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, the applicant may file the request to divide after expiration of the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use. If the applicant does not file an acceptable request to divide within the time specified in the Office action, the goods/services that are not covered by the statement of use will be deleted from the application.

See [TMEP §1109.13](#) regarding examination of a statement of use that omits, but does not expressly delete, some of the goods/services identified in the notice of allowance.

1109.04 Time for Filing Statement of Use

The statement of use must be filed within six months after the issuance date of the notice of allowance or within a previously granted extension of time for filing a statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(1\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)-\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §§1108–1108.05](#) regarding extension requests.

If the applicant does not timely file a statement of use within this time period, the application is abandoned. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(k\)](#). If the failure to timely file a statement of use is unintentional, the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). *See* [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#).

A statement of use filed through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#).

A statement of use filed on paper is considered timely if it is received in the USPTO by the due date or mailed or transmitted by the due date with a certificate of mailing or facsimile transmission in accordance with [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#). See [TMEP §§305.02](#) and [306.05](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness.

Any statement of use filed after the examining attorney approves the mark for publication but before the issuance of the notice of allowance is untimely and will not be considered. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(1\)](#). The USPTO will refund the filing fee. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1104.03\(b\), \(c\)](#).

1109.05 Form of Statement of Use

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the statement of use be filed through TEAS at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When a statement of use is filed electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the document, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

Alternatively, the applicant may call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed paper form (“Trademark/Service Mark Allegation of Use”). The completed form may be mailed, faxed, or hand-delivered to the USPTO. If the form is faxed, it must be accompanied by an authorization to charge the filing fee to a credit card or deposit account. The credit card authorization form is available at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/forms/2038.pdf>. If a statement of use is filed through TEAS, payment must be made by credit card, deposit account, or EFT. Paper forms may be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center (“TAC”), at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

If the applicant does not file electronically or use the USPTO’s pre-printed paper form, the statement of use should be captioned as a “Statement of Use.” [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(6\)](#). However, this format is not mandatory.

The USPTO will accept and enter a document that meets the minimum filing requirements set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), regardless of whether it is properly titled.

1109.06 Requirements for a Complete Statement of Use

Trademarks and Service Marks

A *complete* statement of use must include the following elements:

- (1) a verified statement that the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark and that the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the dates of first use of the mark anywhere and first use of the mark in commerce, and setting forth or incorporating by reference those goods/services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;
- (2) one specimen per class of the mark as used in commerce that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.56](#); and
- (3) the prescribed fee for each class (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#).

Collective Marks

A complete statement of use must include the following elements:

- (1) a verified statement that: the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark; the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the dates of first use of the mark anywhere and first use of the mark in commerce, and setting forth or incorporating by reference those goods/services/collective membership organization specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;
- (2) one specimen per class of the mark as used in commerce that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.56](#);
- (3) the prescribed fee for each class (see [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)](#)); and
- (4) a statement specifying the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark by the members ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#).

Certification Marks

A complete statement of use must include the following elements:

- (1) a verified statement that: the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark; the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the dates of first use of the mark anywhere and first use of the mark in commerce, and setting forth or incorporating by reference those goods/services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;
- (2) one specimen per class of the mark as used in commerce that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.56](#);
- (3) the prescribed fee for each class (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)](#));
- (4) a statement specifying what the applicant is certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#));

- (5) a copy of the certification standards governing use of the certification mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(b\)](#)); and
- (6) a statement that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods/services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods/services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#).

1109.07 Examination of the Statement of Use — In General

If the statement of use is timely and complies with the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), the ITU staff will refer it to the examining attorney for examination on the merits. If available, the same examining attorney who initially examined the application will examine the statement of use. Examination of the statement of use is sometimes referred to as “second examination.”

The examining attorney will review the statement of use to confirm that it meets the requirements of the Act and the rules. See [TMEP §1109.06](#) for the requirements for a complete statement of use.

The examining attorney will examine the specimen to confirm that it shows appropriate use as a mark on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization specified in the statement of use (see [TMEP §§1202–1202.17\(e\)\(vi\)](#) regarding use of subject matter as a trademark, [TMEP §§1301.02–1301.02\(f\)](#) regarding use of matter as a service mark, and [TMEP §1306.04\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding use of matter as a certification mark). The examining attorney will also determine whether the mark shown on the drawing is a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the specimen (see [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#), [1109.12](#)).

If the applicant has complied with the statutory requirements for a statement of use before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, the applicant may amend or correct the statement of use during examination. See [TMEP §1109.16\(a\)–\(d\)](#) regarding compliance with statutory requirements before the expiration of the time for filing the statement of use.

If the examining attorney finds the statement of use acceptable, the USPTO will notify the applicant that the statement of use is approved. See [TMEP §1109.18](#) regarding approval of the statement of use. The USPTO will then issue the registration and publish notice of the registration in the *Official Gazette*. The application is not subject to opposition again.

See [TMEP §1109.15](#) regarding statements of use filed on paper for multiple-class applications and [TMEP §§1109.16–1109.16\(d\)](#) regarding the issuance of Office actions and correction of defects in a statement of use.

1109.08 Examination of the Statement of Use – New Requirements and Refusals

Generally, in examining the statement of use, the USPTO will issue only requirements or refusals concerning matters related to the statement of use. The examining attorney should not make a requirement or refusal concerning matters that could or should have been raised during initial examination, unless the failure to do so in initial examination constitutes a “clear error;” i.e., would result in issuance of a registration in violation of the Act or applicable rules. See [TMEP §706.01](#) regarding “clear error.”

If the examining attorney determines that he or she must make a refusal or requirement that could or should have been made during initial examination of the application, the examining attorney must consult the managing or senior attorney before taking action. This applies to any refusal that arguably could or should have been made during initial examination, such as most refusals under §2(d) or §2(e)(1) of the Act.

The examining attorney must act on all new issues arising in the examination of the statement of use. For example:

- The examining attorney must issue a refusal if the specimen fails to show use of the designation as a mark. See [TMEP §§1202–1202.17\(e\)\(vi\)](#) and [1301.02–1301.02\(f\)](#) regarding use as a mark.
- The examining attorney must issue an appropriate refusal or requirement if there is evidence that the mark has become descriptive or generic as applied to the goods/services during the time that has elapsed since initial examination.

Generally, the USPTO will not conduct a search for conflicting marks or issue any refusals under §2(d) of the Act during examination of the statement of use. However, if the examining attorney determines that, based on use on the specimen, for example, a second search is necessary, the examining attorney will conduct a second search and take any action that is appropriate.

1109.09 Use in Commerce

A verified statement that “the mark is in use in commerce” is a minimum requirement that must be satisfied before the expiration of the statutory period for filing the statement of use. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)\(3\)](#). If the examining attorney determines, before taking an action in connection with the statement of use, that the verified statement of use in commerce was omitted as of the filing date, the examining attorney should refer the application to the ITU/Divisional Unit for appropriate action.

An application that omits the allegation of use in commerce, but asserts a verified date of first use in commerce, is considered to be substantially in compliance with the minimum filing requirements under [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)\(3\)](#). *In re Carnicon Dev. Co.*, 34 USPQ2d 1541 (Comm’r Pats. 1992); *see also In re Conservation Tech. Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1079 (Comm’r Pats. 1992). Thus, if the applicant files a statement of use containing a verified date of first use *in commerce* on or before the expiration of the period for filing the statement of use, the applicant has met the minimum filing requirements. The examining attorney must require a verified statement that the “mark is in use in commerce” before approving the statement of use. This statement may be filed after expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, within the period for response to the examining attorney’s Office action.

An applicant is not required to specify the method of use or the type of commerce in which a mark is used. [TMEP §§901.03, 905](#).

1109.09(a) Dates of Use

The statement of use must include the dates of first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization specified in the notice of allowance. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#). The date of first use in commerce may not be earlier than the date of first use anywhere. [TMEP §903.03](#). In addition, the dates of use may not be after the date the statement of use was signed, because *current* use of the mark must be properly alleged; an applicant may not allege use that has not yet occurred. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#); *see also* [TMEP](#)

[§§903.04](#) (regarding amending dates of use), [903.06\(a\)](#) (regarding discrepancies between dates of use and date of execution).

Where the applicant claims a §1(a) filing basis for some of the goods/services and/or the collective membership organization and a §1(b) filing basis for other goods/services and/or the collective membership organization, the statement of use must include dates of use for the §1(b) goods/services/collective membership organization covered by the notice of allowance. See [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §903.08](#) regarding applications in which more than one date is specified for a particular class.

Setting forth the dates of use is not a minimum filing requirement that must be met before the application will be referred to the examining attorney. If the dates of use are omitted from the statement of use, but the statement that “the mark is in use in commerce” is included, the dates may be supplied after the expiration of the statutory period for filing the statement of use. The applicant may also amend or correct the dates of use after the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, if the applicant meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(2\)](#). Any amendment to the dates of use must be verified. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#).

The applicant must state dates of use for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#). The dates of first use for each class must apply to at least one item in the class but do not have to apply to more than one item. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#). However, the applicant must have used the mark in commerce on all items listed in the notice of allowance before filing the statement of use, unless the applicant files a request to divide. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1109.03](#). See [TMEP §1110.07](#) regarding the division of an application in which a statement of use is due.

While the dates of use may be supplied after expiration of the statutory filing period, valid use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods/services/collective membership organization in the application must be made before the expiration of the statutory filing period. See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(2\)](#). If the applicant attempts to amend the dates of use to state a date of first use in commerce that is later than the time permitted for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the mark was not in use within the time permitted, and also inform the applicant that the application is deemed abandoned. When refusing registration on this ground, the examining attorney must issue a regular Office action with a six-month response clause. See [TMEP §1109.16\(b\)](#).

1109.09(b) Specimens

The examining attorney must examine the specimens to confirm that they show use of the subject matter as a mark on or in connection with the goods/services identified in the statement of use. See [TMEP §§1202–1202.17\(e\)\(vi\)](#) regarding use of subject matter as a trademark, and [TMEP §§1301.02–1301.02\(f\)](#) regarding use of matter as a service mark. The examining attorney must also determine whether the mark as used on the specimens is a substantially exact representation of the mark on the drawing. See [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#), [1109.12](#). The examining attorney must issue requirements and refusals, as appropriate, based on the examination of the specimens, subject to the same standards that govern the examination of specimens in a §1(a) application. [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)](#).

The submission of at least one specimen with a statement of use is a minimum filing requirement. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(e\)\(2\)](#); *In re Campbell*, 33 USPQ2d 1055 (Comm’r Pats. 1993). If the examining attorney determines, before taking an action regarding the statement of use, that no specimen was submitted with the statement of use, the examining attorney should refer the application to the ITU/Divisional Unit for appropriate action.

In a multiple-class application, the applicant must submit one specimen for each class of goods/services in the statement of use before the statement of use may be approved. [37 C.F.R. §§2.86\(b\), 2.88\(b\)\(2\)](#). However, only one specimen for one class is needed to comply with the minimum filing requirements. If at least one specimen is filed within the time permitted for filing the statement of use, the applicant may submit specimen(s) for the other class(es) after the expiration of the statutory filing period, if the applicant verifies that the additional specimen(s) was in use in commerce before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(b\)](#).

If the applicant files at least one specimen with the statement of use, but the specimen is unacceptable, the applicant may provide a substitute specimen after the expiration of the time permitted for filing the statement of use, provided that the applicant verifies that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(b\)](#). If the applicant does not provide an acceptable specimen that was in use in commerce before the expiration of the deadline, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the applicant failed to make use of the mark within the time permitted, and inform the applicant that the application is deemed abandoned. The examining attorney must issue a regular Office action with a six-month response clause. [TMEP §1109.16\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §1108.03](#) regarding the filing of an “insurance” request for an extension of time to file a statement of use in order to gain additional time to make proper use of the mark.

If the dates of first use change as a result of the submission of a new specimen, the applicant must amend the dates of use in the statement of use. The amendment must be supported by an affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#); [TMEP §1109.09\(a\)](#).

If the statement of use is filed electronically using TEAS, the applicant must submit a digitized image of the specimen in .jpg or .pdf format. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(4\)](#). See [TMEP §904.02\(a\)](#) for additional information about electronically filed specimens.

1109.10 Ownership

Review by the ITU/Divisional Unit

Section 1(d)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#), requires that “the applicant shall file ... a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce ...” within six months of the notice of allowance, or within a previously granted extension of time to file a statement of use. The party filing the statement of use must be the owner of the mark at the time of filing. This is a statutory requirement that must be satisfied before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. *In re Colombo, Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1530 (Comm’r Pats. 1994).

If the party who files a statement of use was the owner of the mark at the time of filing, evidence to establish ownership may be provided after expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. However, if the party who files a statement of use was not the owner of the mark at the time of filing, and no time remains in the statutory period for filing the statement of use, the application is abandoned.

The question of whether the statement of use was filed by the owner is determined by the ITU/Divisional Unit. If a statement of use is filed by someone other than the owner of record, the ITU staff will issue an Office action granting the applicant thirty days in which to submit evidence to establish chain of title. If the party who filed the statement of use was the owner at the time of filing, evidence to establish ownership may be provided after expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. See [37 C.F.R. §§3.71\(d\), 3.73\(b\)](#). To establish ownership, the new owner must either: (1) record an assignment or other document

of title with the Assignment Recordation Branch, and include a statement in the response to the Office action that the document has been recorded; or (2) submit other evidence of ownership, in the form of a document transferring ownership from one party to another, or an explanation, supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), that a valid transfer of legal title occurred prior to filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §502.01](#).

If the applicant does not establish that the party who filed the statement of use was the owner of the application at the time of filing, the ITU/Divisional Unit will abandon the application. The true owner may then file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), accompanied by either a substitute statement of use or request for extension of time to file a statement of use, provided that granting the petition would not extend the period for filing the statement of use beyond thirty-six months after the issuance date of the notice of allowance. See [TMEP §1714.01\(b\)](#) regarding the requirements for petitions to revive.

If a statement of use is filed by the owner of the mark, but there is a minor error in the manner in which the name of the owner is set out, the mistake may be corrected by amendment. See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors.

Review by Examining Attorney

If an examining attorney determines, *before* taking an action in connection with the statement of use, that the statement of use was filed by someone other than the owner of record, the examining attorney should return the statement of use to the ITU/Divisional Unit for appropriate action.

If the examining attorney determines, *after* taking an action regarding the statement of use, that the statement of use was filed by someone other than the owner of record, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit evidence to establish chain of title, as discussed above. If the party who filed the statement of use was not the owner of the mark at the time of filing, and no time remains in the statutory period for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney must refuse registration because no acceptable statement of use was filed within the time permitted, and inform the applicant that the application is deemed abandoned. When refusing registration on this ground, the examining attorney must issue a regular Office action with a six-month response clause. See [TMEP §1109.16\(b\)](#).

1109.11 Verification and Execution

The requirement that a statement of use include a signed verification or declaration is a minimum filing requirement. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(e\)\(3\)](#); *In re Kinsman*, 33 USPQ2d 1057 (Comm'r Pats. 1993).

If, before taking an action in connection with the statement of use, the examining attorney determines that the statement of use does not include a signed verification or declaration, the examining attorney should return the application to the ITU/Divisional Unit for appropriate action.

1109.11(a) Authority of Signatory

A statement of use must include a statement that is signed and verified by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)](#). Anyone who can verify the initial application may verify the statement of use. Generally, if the statement of use is filed by the owner of the mark, the USPTO will not question the authority of the person who signs a verification unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory's authority to sign. See [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#).

1109.11(b) Verification of Essential Elements

The examining attorney must review the verified statement of use to confirm that it conforms to the requirements of the Act and the rules. The verified statement must include an allegation that the applicant believes it is the owner of the mark, and a verification of the dates of use and identification of the goods/services. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §1109.10](#) regarding ownership, [TMEP §1109.09\(a\)](#) regarding dates of use, and [TMEP §1109.13](#) regarding the identification of goods/services.

The averment of ownership is an essential element of the verification. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(i\)](#). If it is omitted, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a verified statement that the applicant is the owner of the mark. This statement may be submitted after expiration of the time for filing the statement of use.

1109.11(c) Date of Execution

If the statement of use was executed before the stated dates of use, the examining attorney must require that the statement be re-executed. See [TMEP §903.06\(a\)](#) regarding apparent discrepancies between dates of use and execution dates, and [TMEP §§903.04](#) and [1109.09\(a\)](#) regarding amendment of the dates of use.

If the statement of use is filed more than one year after the date of execution, the examining attorney will require a substitute verification or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) stating that the mark is still in use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(k\)](#); [TMEP §804.03](#).

1109.11(d) Signature of Electronically Transmitted Statement of Use

See [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed through TEAS.

1109.12 Drawing

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(b\)](#), the drawing in an intent-to-use application must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used *and* as actually used upon filing the allegation of use. An applicant may not amend the mark in a drawing if the amendment is a material alteration of the mark on the drawing originally submitted with the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §§807.13\(a\), 807.14–807.14\(f\)](#). Also, the mark in the drawing must agree with the mark as used on the specimen(s). [TMEP §§807.12\(a\)–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#). The same standards that apply to §1(a) applications for determining whether a specimen supports use of the mark and whether an amendment to the mark may be permitted also apply in the examination of the statement of use.

Therefore, if the mark in the drawing filed with the application is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the specimen, the examining attorney must require: (1) *either* submission of a new specimen *or* an amendment of the mark in the drawing, if the amendment of the mark would not be a material alteration of the mark on the original drawing; or (2) submission of a new specimen, if the amendment of the mark would be a material alteration of the mark on the original drawing. [37 C.F.R. §2.72\(b\)\(2\)](#).

1109.13 Identification of Goods/Services in Statement of Use

The statement of use must either list or incorporate by reference the goods/services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#). The goods/services specified in the statement of use must conform to the

goods/services identified in the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(i\)\(1\)](#). To incorporate the goods/services by reference, the applicant may state that the mark is in use on “those goods/services identified in the notice of allowance” or “those goods/services identified in the notice of allowance except ... [followed by an identification of the goods/services to be deleted].” If the applicant omits any goods/services that were listed in the notice of allowance, the ITU/Divisional Unit will delete these goods/services from the application.

The applicant may not thereafter reinsert the deleted goods/services. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(i\)\(2\)](#). In this situation, the applicant cannot file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), claiming unintentional delay in filing a statement of use for the omitted goods/services.

If the applicant fails to identify or incorporate by reference any goods or services, or if the applicant lists all the goods/services in the section of a pre-printed paper form designated for the identification of goods that are not in use, the Office will permit applicant to correct the mistake. The ITU staff will issue a letter noting that no goods or services were specified or incorporated by reference in the statement of use, and granting the applicant thirty days in which to submit a verified statement clarifying the goods/services.

1109.14 Classification

If the mark published in the wrong class of the goods/services, the examining attorney must ensure that the classification is corrected. This may be done in an examiner’s amendment without prior approval by the applicant (*see* [TMEP §707.02](#)). Republication is not required.

If class(es) are added to the application after the filing of the statement of use, the examining attorney must require payment of the fee(s) for filing the statement of use for the added class(es), in addition to the fee(s) required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#) for adding a class(es) to the application. [TMEP §1403.02\(c\)](#).

1109.15 Filing Fees

Payment of the filing fee for at least a single class is a minimum filing requirement. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.88\(b\)\(3\), \(e\)\(i\)](#); *In re L.R. Sport Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1533 (Comm’r Pats. 1992).

In a multiple-class application, if the applicant files a statement of use electronically, TEAS will require payment of the fees for all classes. However, if the applicant files a statement of use for a multiple-class application on paper and includes the fee for only one class of goods/services, the ITU staff will issue an Office action granting the applicant 30 days in which to submit the missing fees to cover *all* classes or specify the class(es) to be abandoned. The additional fees may be paid after the time for filing the statement of use has expired, within the period for response to the Office action. If the applicant does not submit the fees or specify the classes to be abandoned within the set time period, the USPTO will apply the fees paid to the lowest-numbered class(es) in ascending order, and will delete the goods/services in the higher-numbered class(es) from the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(3\)](#).

If an applicant files a statement of use and a request to divide the application at the same time, and the fees submitted are sufficient for one but not both, the fees will be applied first to the statement of use, and the applicant will be notified of the deficiency. *See* [TMEP §§1110.02](#) and [1110.07](#) for further information about filing fees for requests to divide.

If the applicant files an “insurance” extension request in conjunction with a statement of use (*see* [TMEP §1108.03](#)), and the applicant submits fees sufficient for one but not both, the USPTO will apply the fees as follows: (1) if there is enough money to cover the extension request, the USPTO will apply the fees to the extension request to avoid abandonment of the application; or (2) if there is enough money to cover the

statement of use, but not enough to cover the extension request, the USPTO will apply the fees to the statement of use.

See [TMEP §1109.15\(a\)](#) regarding returned checks, EFT and credit card payments that are refused by financial institutions, and fees charged to deposit accounts with insufficient funds.

1109.15(a) Processing Deficient Fees

If the filing fee for at least a single class is deficient (e.g., if the fee is charged to a deposit account with insufficient funds, an EFT or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, or a check is returned unpaid), the fee for at least one class of goods/services must be repaid before the expiration of the statutory filing period, or the application will be abandoned.

If a check is returned unpaid or an EFT or credit card payment is refused, and the statement of use was accompanied by an authorization to charge deficient fee(s) to a deposit account (37 C.F.R. §2.208) that has sufficient funds to cover the fee, the USPTO will charge the filing fee for the statement of use and the fee for processing the returned check or refused payment ([37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#)) to the deposit account.

If the examining attorney determines, *before* taking an action regarding the statement of use, that the filing fee for at least a single class of goods or services has not been paid, the examining attorney should e-mail the ITU/Divisional Unit and request that the SOU Processing Complete status be withdrawn and that the ITU staff notify the applicant in writing of the defect. See [TMEP §1109.15](#).

If the examining attorney determines, *after* taking an action regarding the statement of use, that the filing fee for at least a single class of goods or services has not been paid, and there is time remaining in the statutory period for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney will issue an Office action refusing registration on the ground that the filing fee for the statement of use was not paid and will require the applicant to submit the filing fee on or before the statutory deadline. If the fee was not paid because a check was returned unpaid, or an EFT or credit card was refused, the examining attorney will also require submission of the processing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). The processing fee may be paid after expiration of the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use.

If the fee for at least a single class has not been paid, and there is no time remaining in the statutory period for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney will issue an Office action refusing registration and stating that the application is abandoned because a proper statement of use was not filed within the time required by statute. [37 C.F.R. §§2.88\(e\)\(1\), \(h\)](#). In such a case, the examining attorney must issue a regular Office action, with a six-month response clause. If the applicant does not establish within the six-month response period that the fee for at least a single class of goods/services was paid prior to the expiration of the statutory filing period, the application will be abandoned.

If the fee for at least a single class is paid before expiration of the statutory deadline, but the fee(s) for additional class(es) are deficient, the examining attorney will issue an Office action requiring the applicant to submit the missing fees to cover *all* class(es) or specify the class(es) to be abandoned. The additional fees may be paid after the time for filing the statement of use has expired, within the six-month period for response to the examining attorney's Office action. If the applicant does not submit the fees or specify the classes to be abandoned within the set time period, the USPTO will apply the fees paid to the lowest-numbered class(es) in ascending order, and will delete the goods/services in the higher-numbered class(es) from the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)\(3\)](#).

If the statement of use has been approved and the mark is registered when the Office learns that the fee for the statement of use was deficient, the USPTO will cancel the registration as inadvertently issued, because the statutory requirements for registration have not been met. If the fee for at least a single class of goods/services was not paid before the expiration of the statutory filing period, the application will be abandoned. If the fee for at least a single class of goods/services was timely paid, but the fees for additional class(es) have not been paid, the USPTO will restore the application to pendency and refer it to the examining attorney for appropriate action.

See [TMEP §405.06](#) regarding payments that are refused.

1109.16 Correcting Defects in Statement of Use

The applicant must comply with the statutory requirements for filing a statement of use ([37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#)) before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use (i.e., within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance or before the expiration of an extension of time for filing a statement of use).

Other defects may be cured after the expiration of the statutory filing period, within the period for response to the Office action notifying the applicant of the defect. See [TMEP §1109.16\(a\)](#) regarding defects that must be cured before the expiration of the statutory filing period.

1109.16(a) Statutory Requirements that Must Be Met Within Statutory Filing Period

The applicant must comply with the statutory requirements for filing a statement of use ([37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#)) before expiration of the period for filing the statement of use (i.e., within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance or before the expiration of an extension of time for filing a statement of use). Thus, the following deficiencies must be cured before expiration of the statutory filing period:

- (1) *Specimens and Dates of Use in Commerce* . The applicant must make valid use of the mark in commerce and must provide one specimen that was in use before the expiration of the time permitted for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(b\)\(2\)](#). If the applicant does not provide an acceptable specimen that was in use in commerce before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the applicant failed to make use within the time permitted. See [TMEP §1109.09\(b\)](#). The examining attorney must refuse registration on the same grounds if the applicant attempts to amend the dates of use to state a date of first use in commerce that is later than the time permitted for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1109.09\(a\)](#).
- (2) *Filing by Owner*. The party filing the statement of use must be the owner of the mark at the time of filing. If the party who filed the statement of use was not the owner at the time of filing the statement of use, the applicant may not provide a substitute statement of use (or the equivalent) in the name of the true owner after the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use. *In re Colombo, Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1530 (Comm'r Pats. 1994). Therefore, if the party filing the statement of use was not the owner of the mark at the time of filing, and no time remains in the statutory period for filing the statement of use, the application will be abandoned for failure to file a statement of use. See [TMEP §1109.10](#) for further information.
- (3) *Verification* . The statement of use must be verified by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). If the statement of use is unsigned or signed by the wrong party, a substitute verification must be filed before the expiration of the statutory period for filing the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(e\)\(3\)](#). Generally, however, the USPTO does not question the authority of the person who verifies a statement of use. See [TMEP §1109.11\(a\)](#).

- (4) *Filing Fee for At Least a Single Class.* Payment of the filing fee for at least a single class is a statutory requirement that must be satisfied before the expiration of the statutory period for filing the statement of use. See [TMEP §§1109.15, 1109.15\(a\)](#).

When refusing registration on the above grounds, the examining attorney must issue a regular Office action with a six-month response clause. This gives the applicant six months to establish that it met the statutory requirements on or before the expiration of the time for filing the statement of use. See [TMEP §1109.16\(b\)](#).

1109.16(b) Issuance of Examining Attorney’s Office Action Holding that a Statement of Use Does Not Meet the Statutory Requirements

When the examining attorney determines that the applicant did not meet the statutory requirements within the period for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney must issue an Office action refusing registration on the ground that the applicant did not file a statement of use that meets the requirements of [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)\(1\)](#). If there is time remaining in the statutory filing period, the Office action should state that the deficiency must be cured before the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use.

If there is no time remaining in the statutory filing period, the examining attorney must issue an Office action with a six-month response clause, stating that the application will be abandoned for failure to timely file a statement of use that meets the requirements of §1(d)(1) of the Act. Even though the statutory filing period has expired, the Office action must include a six-month response clause. This gives the applicant six months to establish that it met the statutory requirements on or before the expiration of the time for filing the statement of use.

If the applicant fails to respond to the Office action, the application will be abandoned for failure to respond.

If the applicant responds to the Office action, but does not establish that the requirements for filing a statement of use had been satisfied *as of the expiration of the deadline for filing the statement of use*, the examining attorney will make the refusal of registration final. If the applicant does not respond, the application will be abandoned for failure to respond to the final refusal.

See [TMEP §1109.16\(e\)](#) regarding the applicant’s recourse after an examining attorney’s refusal of registration on the ground that the applicant did not comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use within the statutory filing period.

1109.16(c) Requesting an Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use for the Purpose of Compliance with Statutory Filing Requirements

In limited circumstances, an applicant may file a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use after filing a statement of use, in order to gain more time to comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use (sometimes called an “insurance” extension request). An applicant may file an extension request after filing a statement of use only if: (1) there is time remaining in the existing six-month period in which the statement of use was filed; (2) no extension request was filed together with the statement of use; *and* (3) granting the extension would not extend the time for filing the statement of use more than thirty-six months beyond the issuance of the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(e\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §1108.03](#) regarding the time periods and requirements for filing an “insurance” extension request, and [TMEP §1108.03\(a\)](#) regarding the procedures for processing such a request.

The filing of an “insurance” extension request is not in itself a proper response to an Office action, and does not extend the six-month period for response to the Office action. See [TMEP §1109.16\(d\)](#).

Example: Assume that a notice of allowance issues July 3, 2009, the applicant files a statement of use on July 22, 2009, and the examining attorney issues an Office action requiring substitute specimens on August 6, 2009. The applicant may file an “insurance” extension request on or before January 3, 2010, which would give the applicant until July 3, 2010 to make proper use of the mark. However, the applicant must file a response to the Office action on or before February 6, 2010. See [TMEP §1109.16\(d\)](#) for information about responding to an Office action in this situation.

1109.16(d) Response to Office Action Required Within Six Months of Issuance Date Regardless of Expiration Date of Period for Filing the Statement of Use

In limited circumstances, when the applicant files a timely “insurance” extension request in conjunction with or after filing a statement of use (see [TMEP §§1108.03–1108.03\(a\)](#), [1109.16\(c\)](#)) and the examining attorney has issued an Office action, the six-month period for response to the Office action will expire before the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use. To avoid abandonment, the applicant must respond within six months of the issuance date of the Office action, regardless of the expiration date of the time for filing the statement of use.

If the time for filing the statement of use expires after the time for responding to a **nonfinal** Office action, and the applicant believes that it can cure a deficiency raised in the Office action before expiration of the time for filing the statement of use, the applicant should timely respond to the Office action, stating in the response that it intends to comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use on or before the expiration of the statutory filing period.

If the applicant files such a response, the examining attorney must *not* suspend the application. Instead, the examining attorney must make final any outstanding refusal or requirement. The applicant will then have six months from the issuance date of the final Office action to cure statutory deficiencies. Of course, applicant still must comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use before the expiration date of the deadline for filing the statement of use.

Example: If the deadline for filing the statement of use expires on July 3, 2009, and the examining attorney issues a final Office action requiring substitute specimens on March 4, 2009, the applicant has until September 4, 2009 to file the substitute specimens, but the applicant must verify that the specimens were in use in commerce on or before July 3, 2009.

If the applicant files a proper response to the final Office action within six months of the date of issuance, *and* complies with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use before the expiration of the period for filing the statement of use, the examining attorney will withdraw the refusal based on non-compliance with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use.

If the time for filing the statement of use expires after the time for responding to a **final** Office action, and the applicant can overcome any grounds for refusal or comply with any requirement raised in the final action before expiration of the time for filing the statement of use, but not within the time for responding to the final Office action, the applicant must still file a timely response to the Office action. The response must state that the applicant intends to comply with the statutory requirements for filing the statement of use on or before the expiration of the statutory filing period and request suspension of the application. The examining attorney will then suspend the application for only the amount of time remaining in the statutory period for filing the statement of use. The applicant will then have until the end of the extension period to overcome any grounds for refusal or comply with any requirement.

Example: The notice of allowance issues on September 30, 2010 and a statement of use and/or extension request is due on or before March 30, 2011. The applicant files a statement of use on October 15, 2010. On November 5, 2010, the examining attorney issues an Office action regarding the acceptability of

the specimen and the applicant responds on November 8, 2010 but does not correct the specimen deficiency. The examining attorney then issues a final Office action on November 29, 2010 regarding the specimen issue. If the applicant files a timely “insurance” extension request on or before March 30, 2011, this would extend the time to perfect the statement of use to September 30, 2011. However, the applicant must still respond to the final Office action by May 29, 2011 (i.e., within six months of issuance of the final Office action). The response must include a request to suspend the application or the application will be abandoned for failure to respond. The examining attorney would then suspend the application until September 30, 2011, which is the date of expiration of the extension period and the deadline for complying with the statutory requirements for a statement of use.

If the applicant files a response to the final Office action prior to the expiration of the statutory period for filing a statement of use, and the response overcomes the grounds for refusal and/or complies with any requirement, the examining attorney will remove the application from suspension and withdraw the refusal.

If the applicant files a response to the final Office action prior to expiration of the statutory period for filing the statement of use, but the response does not overcome the grounds for refusal and/or comply with any requirement, the examining attorney must issue an “Examiner’s Subsequent Final Refusal,” thereby reissuing the final refusal, and the applicant will have six months to respond. See [TMEP §716.06](#).

1109.16(e) Applicant’s Recourse After Refusal of Registration

If the applicant unintentionally fails to meet the minimum requirements for *filing* a statement of use within the time permitted, as set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(e\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §1109.01](#)), the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). However, if the applicant met the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(e\)](#), but the examining attorney refuses registration on the ground that the applicant failed to satisfy the statutory requirements for a *complete* statement of use on or before the statutory deadline (e.g., because the specimen is unacceptable or the dates of use are subsequent to the deadline for filing the statement of use), the applicant cannot overcome the refusal by filing a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#). The applicant’s only recourse is to appeal the examining attorney’s refusal of registration to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#) and [TMEP §1109.16\(a\)](#) regarding the statutory requirements that must be met within the statutory period for filing the statement of use (i.e., within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance or before the expiration of an extension of time for filing a statement of use).

1109.17 Withdrawal of the Statement of Use Prohibited

Once an applicant has filed a statement of use, the applicant may not withdraw the statement of use, even if the USPTO determines that the statement of use does not comply with the minimum filing requirements. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(g\)](#); *In re Informix Software, Inc.*, 32 USPQ2d 1861 (Comm’r Pats. 1993). Thus, an applicant may not amend the basis from §1(a) to §1(b) after a statement of use has been filed.

See [TMEP §1109.16\(e\)](#) regarding the applicant’s recourse after an examining attorney’s refusal of registration on the ground that applicant did not meet the statutory requirements for filing a statement of use before the expiration of the statutory deadline.

1109.18 Approval of the Statement of Use

Approval of the statement of use indicates that the mark is eligible for registration. If the examining attorney determines that the application is in condition for registration, the examining attorney will approve the mark for registration under §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#). Before approving the mark for registration, the examining attorney must ensure that the information contained in the record is accurate, that all amendments filed by the applicant have been examined, that material that should be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the registration certificate has been properly entered into the Trademark database, and that material that should not be printed has been deleted from the Trademark database. See [TMEP §817](#) regarding preparation of an application for publication or registration. If an assignment has been recorded, the examining attorney should ensure that the ownership information in the Trademark database is updated to reflect the true owner of record. See [TMEP §502.02\(c\)](#). The examining attorney must also perform the appropriate transaction to ensure that the computer-generated notice of approval of the statement of use is issued.

If the applicant filed an amendment to the Supplemental Register with or after filing a statement of use, and the application is otherwise in condition to be approved for registration, the examining attorney must approve the statement of use and approve the application for registration on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1102.03](#) regarding the examination of intent-to-use applications for registration on the Supplemental Register.

1110 Request to Divide an Application

37 CFR §2.87 Dividing an application.

(a) Application may be divided. An application may be divided into two or more separate applications upon the payment of a fee for each new application created and submission by the applicant of a request in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) Fee. In the case of a request to divide out one or more entire classes from an application, only the fee for dividing an application as set forth in §2.6(a)(19) will be required. However, in the case of a request to divide out some, but not all, of the goods or services in a class, the applicant must submit the application filing fee as set forth in §2.6(a)(1) for each new separate application to be created by the division, in addition to the fee for dividing an application.

(c) Time for filing. (1) A request to divide an application may be filed at any time between the application filing date and the date on which the trademark examining attorney approves the mark for publication; or during an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, upon motion granted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, a request to divide may also be filed with a statement of use under §2.88 or at any time between the filing of a statement of use and the date on which the trademark examining attorney approves the mark for registration.

(3) In a multiple-basis application, a request to divide out goods or services having a particular basis may also be filed during the period between the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act and the filing of a statement of use under §2.88.

(d) Form. A request to divide an application should be made in a separate document from any other amendment or response in the application. The title "Request to Divide Application" should appear at the top of the first page of the document.

(e) Outstanding time periods apply to newly created applications. Any time period for action by the applicant which is outstanding in the original application at the time of the division will apply to each separate new application created by the division, except as follows:

(1) If an Office action pertaining to less than all the classes in a multiple-class application is outstanding, and the applicant files a request to divide out the goods, services, and/or class(es) to which the Office action does not pertain before the response deadline, a response to the Office action is not due in the new (child) application(s) created by the division of the application;

(2) If an Office action pertaining to less than all the bases in a multiple-basis application is outstanding, and the applicant files a request to divide out the goods/services having the basis or bases to which the Office action does not pertain before the response deadline, a response to the Office action is not due in the new (child) application(s) created by the division of the application; or

(3) In a multiple-basis application in which a notice of allowance has issued, if the applicant files a request to divide out the goods/services having the basis or bases to which the notice of allowance does not pertain before the deadline for filing the statement of use, the new (child) applications created by the division are not affected by the notice of allowance.

(f) Signature. The request to divide must be signed by the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner who meets the requirements of §11.14, in accordance with the requirements of §2.193(e)(2).

(g) Section 66(a) applications - change of ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods or services. (1) When the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization notifies the Office that an international registration has been divided as the result of a change of ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods or services, the Office will construe the International Bureau's notice as a request to divide. The Office will record the partial change of ownership in the Assignment Services Branch, and divide out the assigned goods/services from the original (parent) application. The Office will create a new (child) application serial number, and enter the information about the new application in its automated records.

(2) To obtain a certificate of registration in the name of the new owner for the goods/services that have been divided out, the new owner must pay the fee(s) for the request to divide, as required by §2.6 and paragraph (b) of this section. The examining attorney will issue an Office action in the child application requiring the new owner to pay the required fee(s). If the owner of the child application fails to respond, the child application will be abandoned. It is not necessary for the new owner to file a separate request to divide.

(3) The Office will not divide a section 66(a) application based upon a change of ownership unless the International Bureau notifies the Office that the international registration has been divided.

1110.01 Application May Be Divided

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(a\)](#), an applicant may divide the application into two or more separate applications upon payment of the applicable fees. When dividing an application, the applicant preserves the filing date for all the goods/services covered by the application. See [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(b\)](#) and [TMEP §1110.02](#) regarding the fees for a request to divide.

An applicant may request division of an application for any reason. For example, in an intent-to-use application, the applicant may wish to proceed to publication or registration with the goods/services on or in connection with which the applicant has used the mark in commerce and retain an active intent-to-use application for any remaining goods/services.

The applicant *must* file a request to divide if the applicant files an amendment to allege use before making use on all the goods/services for which applicant seeks registration under §1(b), or a statement of use before making use on all the goods/services specified in the notice of allowance for which applicant seeks registration. [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(c\), 2.88\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§1104.03\(a\), 1109.03](#).

1110.02 Fees for Filing Request to Divide

Request to Divide Out One or More Entire Classes . With a request to divide out one or more entire classes from an application, only the fee for dividing the application (“divisional fee”), as set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(19\)](#), is required. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(b\)](#). A divisional fee is required for each new (child) application created by the division of the original (parent) application. No separate application filing fee is required for any new applications created.

Request to Divide Out Some, But Not All, of the Goods/Services in a Single Class . A request to divide out some, but not all, of the goods/services in a single class must be accompanied by both: (1) the divisional fee for each new (child) application created by the division of the original (parent) application ([37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(19\)](#)); and (2) an application filing fee for each new separate application created by the division, as set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(b\)](#). The amount of the new application filing fee depends on the method used to file the original application and request to divide, as follows:

- If the original application was filed through TEAS RF or TEAS Plus and the request to divide is filed through TEAS, then the new application filing fee is the same as the TEAS RF or TEAS Plus application filing fee ([37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#), [\(iv\)](#));
- If the original application was not filed through TEAS RF or TEAS Plus, and the request to divide is filed through TEAS, then the new application filing fee is the same as the TEAS application filing fee ([37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#));
- If the request to divide is filed on paper, then the new application filing fee is the same as the fee for filing an application on paper ([37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#)), regardless of how the original application was filed.

The current fee schedule is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

If the request to divide does not include the required fee(s), the ITU/Divisional Unit will notify the applicant in writing of the deficiency and grant the applicant time to submit the required fees. The applicant must submit the fee(s) within the time permitted, or the request to divide will be considered abandoned and the application will not be divided. If the applicant does not submit the necessary fees, the ITU/Divisional Unit will notify the applicant that the request to divide is considered abandoned.

See [TMEP §1110.07](#) regarding the application of fees when an applicant files a request to divide in conjunction with a statement of use and/or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, but submits insufficient fees.

1110.03 Time for Filing Request to Divide

An applicant may file a request to divide at any time between the filing of the application and the date the examining attorney approves the mark for publication; or during an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, upon motion granted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(c\)\(1\)](#).

A request to divide a §1(b) application may also be filed with a statement of use, or at any time between the filing of a statement of use and the date the examining attorney approves the mark for registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(c\)\(2\)](#).

In a *multiple-basis* application, a request to divide out goods/services having a particular basis may also be filed during the period between the issuance of the notice of allowance and the filing of the statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(c\)\(3\)](#).

If the USPTO receives a request to divide at any other time, the USPTO will deny the request, and refund any fees submitted with the request.

1110.04 Form and Processing of Request to Divide

A request to divide can be filed either on paper or through TEAS.

In TEAS, the applicant can file a request to divide directly as part of the TEAS “Allegation of Use” form, but only when the request to divide is limited to the creation of only one child application. If the applicant wishes to create more than one child application, or if the request to divide is being made in a context other than an “Allegation of Use” scenario, the applicant can still file electronically by doing the following: (1) choose the “Miscellaneous Forms” offering within TEAS, and (2) select therein the “Request to Divide

Application” choice from the list of forms. A “Request to Divide Registration” offering is also available in the “Registration Maintenance/Renewal/Correction Forms” category.

A paper request to divide should be made in a separate document from any other amendment or response in the application. The title “Request to Divide Application” should appear at the top of the first page of the document. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(d\)](#).

All requests to divide must be immediately referred to the ITU/Divisional Unit for processing, unless the application is the subject of a proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. See [TMEP §1110.09](#) regarding requests to divide applications that are the subject of a proceeding at the Board.

In pending applications in which a request to divide is filed, the ITU/Divisional Unit will process the request to divide and ensure that the USPTO records reflect current ownership information. Because the assignment records of the parent application do not appear in the newly created child application, the ITU staff will place a copy of the Trademark Assignment Abstract of Title for the parent application in the trademark records of the child application. The abstract will be viewable via the Trademark Image Capture Retrieval System (“TICRS”) and the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>. The assignment information in the parent application will remain accessible via the assignment database on the USPTO website at <http://assignments.uspto.gov/assignments>. After the request to divide is processed and the child application is created, any new recordations in the child application will appear in the assignment database. See [TMEP §501.06](#) regarding partial assignments.

1110.05 Outstanding Time Periods Apply to Newly Created Applications

Any outstanding deadline in effect at the time an application is divided applies not only to the original application, but also to each separate new application created by the division of the application, **except** in the following circumstances:

- (1) If an Office action pertaining to less than all the classes in a multiple-class application is outstanding, and the applicant files a request to divide out the goods, services, and/or class(es) to which the Office action does not pertain before the response deadline, a response to the Office action is not due in the new (child) application(s) created by the division of the application;
- (2) If an Office action pertaining to less than all the bases in a multiple-basis application is outstanding, and the applicant files a request to divide out the goods/services having the basis or bases to which the Office action does not pertain before the response deadline, a response to the Office action is not due in the new (child) application(s) created by the division of the application; or
- (3) In a multiple-basis application in which a notice of allowance has issued, if the applicant files a request to divide out the goods/services having the basis or bases to which the notice of allowance does not pertain before the deadline for filing the statement of use, the new (child) application(s) created by the division is/are not affected by the notice of allowance.

[37 C.F.R. §2.87\(e\)](#).

1110.06 Signature of Request to Divide

A request to divide must be signed by the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner who meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) (“qualified practitioner”). [37 C.F.R. §§2.87\(f\), 2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#). The ITU/Divisional Unit must ensure that the request to divide is signed by a proper party. If the applicant is represented by a qualified

practitioner, the practitioner must sign the request to divide. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\), 11.18\(a\)](#). If the applicant is pro se, the request must be signed by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\), 11.14\(e\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.06\(a\)–611.06\(h\)](#) for more information about persons who have legal authority to bind various types of entities who are not represented by an attorney, and [TMEP §§611.05–611.05\(c\)](#) regarding processing documents signed by someone other than the applicant or the applicant's designated qualified practitioner.

1110.07 Dividing an Application when Statement of Use Is Due

Filing a request to divide does not extend the deadline for filing a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use.

Any outstanding deadline in effect at the time the application is divided applies not only to the original application, but also to each new application created by the division of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(e\)](#). Therefore, if a notice of allowance has issued and a statement of use is due, a statement of use, or request for extension of time to file a statement of use, is due in each separate new application created by the division, unless the following exception applies:

- In a multiple-basis application, if the applicant files a request to divide out the goods/services having the basis or bases to which the notice of allowance does not pertain before the deadline for filing the statement of use, the new (child) application(s) created by the division are not affected by the notice of allowance. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(e\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §1110.05](#).

A request to divide *must* be filed if the applicant files a statement of use before making use of the mark in commerce on all the goods/services specified in the notice of allowance as based on §1(b), unless the applicant deletes the goods/services that are not in use. [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#); [TMEP §1109.03](#).

Requests to divide are given priority in processing over any other document, with one exception: if the applicant submits a request for extension of time to file a statement of use that covers all the goods/services in the application at the same time as or before the request to divide, *and* the extension request applies to the resulting applications, the extension request will be processed first. This provides the applicant with an extension that applies to all resulting applications without requiring additional fees for extension requests.

When the applicant files a request to divide goods/services that are in use from goods/services that are not yet in use, the USPTO puts the goods/services in use in the newly created (child) application, and retains the goods/services not in use in the original (parent) application. More child applications may later be created from the parent application.

When the applicant files a request to divide goods/services based solely on §44(e) from goods/services that are not yet in use, the USPTO puts the goods/services that are based solely on §44 in a newly created (child) application, and retains the goods/services not in use in the original (parent) application.

If the applicant submits a request to divide along with a statement of use and a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, and the fees are insufficient to cover all three, the fees will be applied first to the extension request (if there is enough to cover the extension request), second to the statement of use, and last to the request to divide. See [TMEP §1108.02\(c\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in extension requests, [TMEP §1109.15\(a\)](#) regarding fee deficiencies in statements of use, and [TMEP §1110.02](#) regarding fee deficiencies in requests to divide.

1110.08 Dividing an Application when Response to Office Action Is Due

Filing a request to divide is not a proper response to an Office action and does not relieve an applicant of the duty to respond to any outstanding Office action or to take any other required action.

Any outstanding deadline in effect at the time the application is divided applies not only to the original application, but also to each new application created by the division of the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(e\)](#).

Therefore, if a response to an Office action is due, the response is due in each separate new application created by the division of the application, unless one of the following exceptions applies:

- (1) If the Office action pertains to less than all the classes in a multiple-class application, and the applicant files a request to divide out the goods, services, or class(es) to which the Office action does not pertain before the response deadline, a response to the Office action is not due in the new (child) application(s) created by the division of the application.
- (2) If the Office action pertains to less than all the bases in a multiple-basis application, and the applicant files a request to divide out the goods/services having the basis or bases to which the Office action does not pertain before the response deadline, a response to the Office action is not due in the new (child) application(s) created by the division of the application.

[37 C.F.R. §2.87\(e\)\(1\)-\(2\)](#).

If the applicant files a request to divide goods/services that are subject to a refusal from goods/services that are not subject to a refusal, the USPTO puts the goods/services that are *not* subject to refusal in the new (child) application, and retains the goods/services that *are* subject to refusal in the original (parent) application. More child applications may later be created from the parent application.

When a request to divide is filed with a response to an Office action, the response should be entered first, and then the request to divide should be referred to the ITU/Divisional Unit. The ITU/Divisional Unit will process the request and then return the application to regular processing. See [TMEP §1110.04](#) regarding the form and processing of requests to divide.

1110.09 Dividing an Application Subject to a Proceeding at Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

A request to divide may be filed during an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, upon motion granted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(c\)](#). When an application is the subject of a proceeding before the Board, any request to divide must first be referred to the Board for appropriate action. If the Board determines that the request to divide should be granted, the Board will refer the request to the ITU/Divisional Unit with instructions for dividing the application. The ITU/Divisional Unit will process the request and then return the application to regular processing. See [TBMP §516](#).

See [TBMP §1205.02–1205.02\(b\)](#) regarding the filing of a request to divide filed with or after an appeal.

1110.10 Dividing a §44 Application

When the applicant divides an application that includes a claim of priority under §44(d), the separate new (child) application(s) created through the division retain the priority filing date, provided that each new

application meets the requirements of §44(d). This is true even if the applicant does not ultimately perfect a §44(e) basis. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.35\(b\)\(3\)-\(4\)](#); [TMEP §§806.01\(c\), 806.02\(f\)](#).

In an application in which the same goods/services have both a §44(e) and §1(b) basis, and a notice of allowance has issued, the applicant, before the deadline for filing a statement of use, may file a request to divide out the goods/services under the §44(e) basis, and also request that the same goods/services remain in the parent application under §1(b).

When an applicant requests division of an application that includes a copy of a foreign registration, the applicant does not have to provide additional copies for each new application created by the division.

1110.11 Dividing a §66(a) Application

If ownership of an international registration changes for some but not all of the goods/services, the USPTO will not divide a §66(a) application unless the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization ("IB") notifies the USPTO that the international registration has been divided. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(g\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §1110.11\(a\)](#) for further information about division of a §66(a) application after a partial change of ownership.

In all other situations, a §66(a) applicant may divide a §66(a) application into two or more separate applications, if applicant meets all the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#). See [TMEP §§1110.02 – 1110.06](#) for further requirements for filing a request to divide.

1110.11(a) Dividing a §66(a) Application After Change of Ownership with Respect to Some but Not All of the Goods/Services

When ownership of an international registration changes for some but not all of the goods/services for all designated Contracting Parties, the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization ("IB") will create a separate new international registration for the goods/services that have been transferred, and notify the USPTO accordingly. See the IB's *Guide to the International Registration of Marks under the Madrid Agreement and the Madrid Protocol* (2009), Para. B.II.67.01.

When the IB notifies the USPTO of the division of an international registration resulting from a change of ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods/services, the USPTO will construe the IB's notice as a request to divide. The USPTO will record the partial change of ownership in the Assignment Recordation Branch, and divide out the assigned goods/services from the original (parent) application. The USPTO will create a new (child) application serial number, and enter the information about the new application in its automated records. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(g\)\(1\)](#).

To obtain a certificate of registration in the name of the new owner for the goods/services that have been divided out, the new owner must pay the required fee(s) for the request to divide. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6, 2.87\(b\), 2.87\(g\)\(2\)](#). The application will be forwarded to the examining attorney to issue an Office action in the new (child) application requiring the new owner to pay the required fees. See [TMEP §1110.02](#) regarding the amount of the fee(s) for a request to divide. If the owner of the child application fails to respond, the child application will be abandoned. The USPTO will not approve the child application for publication or registration until the new owner pays the required divisional fees. It is not necessary for the new owner to file a separate request to divide.

The USPTO will not divide a §66(a) application based upon a change of ownership, unless the IB notifies the USPTO that the international registration has been divided. [37 C.F.R. §2.87\(g\)\(3\)](#).

See [TMEP §1615.02](#) regarding division of registered extensions of protection of international registrations, and [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding assignment of extensions of protection.

1110.12 Division of Registrations

See [TMEP §§1615–1615.02](#) regarding division of registrations.

Chapter 1200 Substantive Examination of Applications

1201	Ownership of Mark
1201.01	Claim of Ownership May Be Based on Use By Related Companies
1201.02	Identifying the Applicant in the Application
1201.02(a)	Identifying the Applicant Properly
1201.02(b)	Application Void if Wrong Party Identified as the Applicant
1201.02(c)	Correcting Errors in How the Applicant Is Identified
1201.02(d)	Operating Divisions
1201.02(e)	Changes in Ownership After Application Is Filed
1201.03	Use by Related Companies
1201.03(a)	No Explanation of Use of Mark by Related Companies or Applicant's Control Over Use of Mark by Related Companies Required
1201.03(b)	Wholly Owned Related Companies
1201.03(c)	Common Stockholders, Directors, or Officers
1201.03(d)	Sister Corporations
1201.03(e)	License and Franchise Situations
1201.04	Inquiry Regarding Parties Named on Specimens or Elsewhere in Record
1201.05	Acceptable Claim of Ownership Based on Applicant's Own Use
1201.06	Special Situations Pertaining to Ownership
1201.06(a)	Applicant Is Merely Distributor or Importer
1201.06(b)	Goods Manufactured in a Country Other than Where Applicant Is Located
1201.07	Related Companies and Likelihood of Confusion
1201.07(a)	"Single Source" – "Unity of Control"
1201.07(b)	Appropriate Action with Respect to Assertion of Unity of Control
1201.07(b)(i)	When Either Applicant or Registrant Owns All of the Other Entity
1201.07(b)(ii)	Joint Ownership or Ownership of Substantially All of the Other Entity
1201.07(b)(iii)	When the Record Does Not Support a Presumption of Unity of Control
1201.07(b)(iv)	When the Record Contradicts an Assertion of Unity of Control
1202	Use of Subject Matter as Trademark
1202.01	Refusal of Matter Used Solely as a Trade Name
1202.02	Registration of Trade Dress
1202.02(a)	Functionality of Trade Dress
1202.02(a)(i)	Statutory Basis for Functionality Refusal
1202.02(a)(ii)	Purpose of Functionality Doctrine
1202.02(a)(iii)	Background and Definitions
1202.02(a)(iii)(A)	Functionality
1202.02(a)(iii)(B)	"De Jure" and "De Facto" Functionality
1202.02(a)(iv)	Burden of Proof in Functionality Determinations
1202.02(a)(v)	Evidence and Considerations Regarding Functionality Determinations
1202.02(a)(v)(A)	Utility Patents and Design Patents
1202.02(a)(v)(B)	Advertising, Promotional, or Explanatory Material in Functionality Determinations
1202.02(a)(v)(C)	Availability of Alternative Designs in Functionality Determinations
1202.02(a)(v)(D)	Ease or Economy of Manufacture in Functionality Determinations
1202.02(a)(vi)	Aesthetic Functionality
1202.02(a)(vii)	Functionality and Service Marks
1202.02(a)(viii)	Functionality and Non-Traditional Marks
1202.02(b)	Distinctiveness of Trade Dress
1202.02(b)(i)	Distinctiveness and Product Design Trade Dress
1202.02(b)(ii)	Distinctiveness and Product Packaging Trade Dress
1202.02(c)	Drawings, Descriptions, and Disclaimers in Trade Dress Applications
1202.02(c)(i)	Drawings of Trade Dress Marks

1202.02(c)(i)(A)	Functional Matter
1202.02(c)(i)(B)	Nondistinctive Matter
1202.02(c)(i)(C)	Drawings in §44 and §66(a) Applications
1202.02(c)(ii)	Descriptions of Trade Dress Marks Required
1202.02(c)(iii)	Disclaimers of Unregistrable Elements of Trade Dress Marks
1202.02(c)(iii)(A)	Functional Matter
1202.02(c)(iii)(B)	Nondistinctive Matter
1202.02(c)(iv)	Three-Dimensional Marks
1202.02(d)	Trade Dress in §1(b) Applications
1202.02(e)	Trade Dress in §44 and §66(a) Applications
1202.02(f)	Identification of Goods/Services in Trade Dress Applications
1202.02(f)(i)	Product Design
1202.02(f)(ii)	Product Packaging
1202.03	Refusal on Basis of Ornamentation
1202.03(a)	Commercial Impression
1202.03(b)	Practices of the Trade
1202.03(c)	“Secondary Source”
1202.03(d)	Evidence of Distinctiveness
1202.03(e)	Ornamentation with Respect to §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications
1202.03(f)	Ornamentation: Case References
1202.03(f)(i)	Slogans or Words Used on the Goods
1202.03(f)(ii)	Designs Used on the Goods
1202.03(f)(iii)	Trade Dress on the Containers for the Goods
1202.03(g)	Ornamentation Cases and Acquired Distinctiveness
1202.04	Informational Matter
1202.05	Color as a Mark
1202.05(a)	Color Marks Never Inherently Distinctive
1202.05(b)	Functional Color Marks Not Registrable
1202.05(c)	Color as a Separable Element
1202.05(d)	Drawings of Color Marks Required
1202.05(d)(i)	Drawings of Color Marks in Trademark Applications
1202.05(d)(ii)	Drawings of Color Marks in Service Mark Applications
1202.05(d)(iii)	Amendment of Drawings of Color Marks
1202.05(d)(iv)	Drawings for Marks Including Both Color and Words or Design
1202.05(e)	Written Descriptions of Color Marks
1202.05(f)	Specimens for Color Marks
1202.05(g)	Special Considerations for Service Mark Applications
1202.05(h)	Color Marks in §1(b) Applications
1202.05(i)	Color Marks in §44 or §66(a) Applications
1202.06	Goods in Trade
1202.06(a)	Goods Must Have Utility to Others
1202.06(b)	Registration Must Be Refused if Trademark Not Used on Goods in Trade
1202.06(c)	Goods in Trade in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications
1202.07	Marks That Identify Columns or Sections of Publications
1202.07(a)	Marks That Identify Columns or Sections of Printed Publications
1202.07(a)(i)	Syndicated Columns and Sections
1202.07(a)(ii)	Non-Syndicated Columns and Sections
1202.07(a)(iii)	Marks That Identify Columns and Sections of Printed Publications in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications
1202.07(b)	Marks That Identify Columns and Sections of Online Publications
1202.08	Title of a Single Creative Work

1202.08(a)	What Constitutes a Single Creative Work
1202.08(b)	What Does Not Constitute a Single Creative Work
1202.08(c)	Complete Title of the Work – Evidence of a Series
1202.08(d)	Portion of a Title of the Work
1202.08(d)(i)	Mark Must Create a Separate Commercial Impression
1202.08(d)(ii)	Establishing a Series When the Mark is a Portion of the Title
1202.08(d)(iii)	Evidence that the Portion of the Title is Promoted or Recognized as a Mark
1202.08(e)	Identification of Goods/Services
1202.08(f)	Title of a Single Work in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications
1202.09	Names of Artists and Authors
1202.09(a)	Names and Pseudonyms of Authors and Performing Artists
1202.09(a)(i)	Author or Performer’s Name – Evidence of a Series
1202.09(a)(ii)	Evidence that the Name is a Source Identifier
1202.09(a)(ii)(A)	Promotion and Recognition of the Name
1202.09(a)(ii)(B)	Control over the Nature and Quality of the Goods
1202.09(a)(iii)	Names of Authors and Performing Artists in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications
1202.09(b)	Names of Artists Used on Original Works of Art
1202.10	Names and Designs of Characters in Creative Works
1202.10(a)	Names and Designs of Characters in Creative Works in §1(b), §44, or §66(a) Applications
1202.11	Background Designs and Shapes
1202.12	Varietal and Cultivar Names (Examination of Applications for Seeds and Plants)
1202.13	Scent, Fragrance, or Flavor
1202.14	Holograms
1202.15	Sound Marks
1202.16	Model or Grade Designations
1202.16(a)	Examination of Marks with Model and Grade Designations
1202.16(b)	Identifying Model and Grade Designations in Marks
1202.16(b)(i)	Model Designations
1202.16(b)(i)(A)	Stylization of Display
1202.16(b)(i)(B)	Size of Proposed Mark
1202.16(b)(i)(C)	Physical Location
1202.16(b)(ii)	Grade Designations
1202.16(c)	Procedures for Handling Marks with Model and Grade Designations
1202.16(c)(i)	Evidentiary Considerations when Issuing Model or Grade Designation Refusals
1202.16(c)(i)(A)	Model Designations
1202.16(c)(i)(B)	Grade Designations
1202.16(c)(ii)	Entire Mark Consists of Model or Grade Designation in §1(a) Applications
1202.16(c)(iii)	Composite Mark with Model or Grade Designation in §1(a) Applications
1202.16(c)(iii)(A)	Model or Grade Designations with Arbitrary and/or Suggestive Matter
1202.16(c)(iii)(B)	Model or Grade Designations with Descriptive, Generic, and/or Informational Matter
1202.16(c)(iv)	Drawing and Specimen Agreement Issues in §1(a) Applications
1202.16(c)(v)	Model or Grade Designation in §1(b), §44, or §66(a) Applications
1202.16(c)(v)(A)	Model Designations
1202.16(c)(v)(B)	Grade Designations
1202.17	Universal Symbols in Marks
1202.17(a)	Relevance of Universal Symbols to Examination
1202.17(b)	Reviewing Marks Containing Symbols

1202.17(b)(i)	Identifying Universal Symbols in Marks
1202.17(b)(ii)	Marks Displaying an Unusual Depiction of a Universal Symbol
1202.17(b)(iii)	Marks Displaying an Accurate Depiction of a Universal Symbol
1202.17(c)	Failure to Function
1202.17(c)(i)	Determining Whether a Universal Symbol Functions as a Source Indicator
1202.17(c)(i)(A)	Informational Universal Symbols
1202.17(c)(i)(B)	Ornamental Universal Symbols
1202.17(c)(ii)	Mark Consists Entirely of a Universal Symbol that Fails to Function
1202.17(c)(ii)(A)	Applications Based on Sections 1(b), 44, or 66(a)
1202.17(c)(ii)(B)	Applicant's Response to Refusal
1202.17(c)(iii)	Mark Includes a Universal Symbol that Fails to Function
1202.17(d)	Other Relevant Refusals
1202.17(d)(i)	Merely Descriptive
1202.17(d)(ii)	Deceptive or Deceptively Misdescriptive
1202.17(e)	Universal Symbols Commonly Appearing in Marks
1202.17(e)(i)	Awareness Ribbon Symbols
1202.17(e)(ii)	Recycling Symbol
1202.17(e)(iii)	Caduceus, Rod of Asclepius, and Prescription Symbol
1202.17(e)(iv)	Religious Symbols
1202.17(e)(v)	Currency Symbols
1202.17(e)(vi)	Universal Prohibition Symbol
1202.18	Hashtag Marks
1202.18(a)	Disclaiming HASHTAG or Hash Symbol
1202.18(b)	Marks Consisting Solely of HASHTAG or Hash Symbol
1202.19	Repeating-Pattern Marks
1202.19(a)	Drawing Requirements for Repeating-Pattern Marks
1202.19(a)(i)	Mark Used on a Single Item
1202.19(a)(ii)	Mark Used in a Similar Manner on Similar Items
1202.19(a)(iii)	Mark Used in Various Ways or on Various Items Swatch-Type Drawings
1202.19(a)(iv)	Drawings for Service Marks
1202.19(b)	Mark Descriptions for Repeating-Pattern Marks
1202.19(c)	Material Alteration of Repeating-Pattern Marks
1202.19(c)(i)	Amending the Drawing to Depict a Different Object
1202.19(c)(ii)	Amending a Swatch-Type Drawing to Show an Object and Vice Versa
1202.19(c)(iii)	Amending the Drawing to Depict a Different Placement of the Repeating Pattern
1202.19(c)(iv)	Amending Descriptions of Repeating-Pattern Marks
1202.19(c)(v)	Amendments in Applications Based on Section 44 or Section 66(a)
1202.19(d)	Specimens for Repeating-Pattern Marks
1202.19(e)	Failure-to-Function Refusal – Mark Not Inherently Distinctive
1202.19(e)(i)	Inherent Distinctiveness Determination
1202.19(e)(i)(A)	Common or Widely Used Pattern
1202.19(e)(i)(B)	Pattern Creates a Distinct Commercial Impression Apart from Other Matter
1202.19(e)(i)(C)	Nature of Elements in the Repeating Pattern
1202.19(e)(i)(D)	Industry Practice
1202.19(e)(i)(E)	Type of Product
1202.19(e)(ii)	Statutory Basis for Refusal
1202.19(e)(iii)	Response Options
1202.19(f)	Failure-to-Function Refusal – Inconsistent Goods or Services
1202.19(f)(i)	Statutory Basis for Refusal

1202.19(f)(ii)	Response Options
1202.19(g)	Refusal – Application Seeks Registration of More than One Mark
1202.19(g)(i)	Statutory Basis for Refusal
1202.19(g)(ii)	Response Options
1202.19(h)	Refusals in Applications Based on Section 1(b), Section 44, or Section 66(a)
1202.19(i)	Functional Repeating Patterns
1202.19(j)	Random Patterns
1202.19(k)	Examples of Repeating-Pattern Marks
1203	Refusal on Basis of Immoral or Scandalous Matter; Deceptive Matter; Matter which May Disparage, Falsely Suggest a Connection, or Bring into Contempt or Disrepute
1203.01	Immoral or Scandalous Matter
1203.02	Deceptive Matter
1203.02(a)	Types of Deceptive Marks
1203.02(b)	Elements of a §2(a) Deceptiveness Refusal
1203.02(c)	Distinction between Marks Comprising Deceptive Matter (§2(a)) and Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks (§2(e)(1))
1203.02(d)	Determining Materiality
1203.02(d)(i)	Objective Criteria
1203.02(d)(ii)	Mere Personal Preference
1203.02(e)	Procedures for Issuing §2(a) Deceptive Refusals
1203.02(e)(i)	When the Mark is Clearly Misdescriptive
1203.02(e)(ii)	When It is Not Clear Whether the Mark is Misdescriptive
1203.02(f)	Responding to a §2(a) Deceptiveness Refusal
1203.02(f)(i)	Amending the Identification of Goods or Services
1203.02(f)(ii)	Other Arguments
1203.02(g)	Deceptive Matter: Case References
1203.03	Matter That May Disparage, Falsely Suggest a Connection, or Bring into Contempt or Disrepute
1203.03(a)	Definitions
1203.03(a)(i)	“Persons”
1203.03(a)(ii)	“Institutions”
1203.03(a)(iii)	“National Symbols”
1203.03(b)	Disparagement, Bringing into Contempt, and Bringing into Disrepute
1203.03(b)(i)	Elements of a §2(a) Disparagement Refusal
1203.03(b)(ii)	Disparagement, Bringing into Contempt, and Bringing into Disrepute: Case References
1203.03(c)	False Suggestion of a Connection
1203.03(c)(i)	Elements of a §2(a) False Suggestion of a Connection Refusal
1203.03(c)(ii)	Government Agencies and Instrumentalities
1203.03(c)(iii)	False Suggestion of a Connection: Case References
1204	Refusal on Basis of Flag, Coat of Arms, or Other Insignia of United States, State or Municipality, or Foreign Nation
1204.01	Flags and Simulations of Flags
1204.01(a)	Flags and Simulations of Flags are Refused
1204.01(b)	Stylized Flag Designs are not Refused under §2(b)
1204.01(c)	Case Law Interpreting "Simulation of Flag"
1204.01(d)	Description of the Mark
1204.01(e)	Flags Not Presently Used as National Flags
1204.02	Government Insignia
1204.02(a)	Designs that are Insignia Under §2(b) Must Be Refused

1204.02(b)	Examples of Insignia That Should Be Refused
1204.02(c)	Examples of Designs That Should Not Be Refused
1204.02(d)	Case Law Interpreting Insignia Under §2(b)
1204.03	Other Refusals May be Appropriate
1204.04	Responding to §2(b) Refusal
1204.04(a)	Absolute Bar to Registration
1204.04(b)	Deletion of §2(b) Matter
1204.04(b)(i)	Examples of Matter That May and May Not Be Deleted
1204.05	Resources
1205	Refusal on Basis of Matter Protected by Statute or Convention
1205.01	Statutory Protection
1205.01(a)	Examination Procedures for Marks Comprising a Red Crystal or Red Crescent on a White Background, or the Phrases “Red Crescent” or “Third Protocol Emblem”
1205.01(a)(i)	First Use After December 8, 2005
1205.01(a)(ii)	First Use On or Before December 8, 2005 – Grandfather Clause
1205.01(a)(iii)	Date of First Use Not Specified
1205.01(a)(iv)	Applicable Refusals
1205.01(a)(v)	Amendments to Disclaim, Delete, or Amend the Unregistrable Symbol or Designation
1205.01(a)(vi)	Parties Authorized to use the Red Crescent and Third Protocol Emblem
1205.01(b)	Examination Procedures for Marks Comprising Matter Related to the United States Olympic Committee or the Olympics
1205.01(b)(i)	Nature of the Mark
1205.01(b)(ii)	Issuing Other Substantive Refusals
1205.01(b)(iii)	Amendments to Disclaim, Delete, or Amend the Unregistrable Wording or Symbol
1205.01(b)(iv)	Consent to Register
1205.01(b)(v)	First Use On or After September 21, 1950
1205.01(b)(vi)	First Use Before September 21, 1950 – Grandfather Clause
1205.01(b)(vii)	Date of First Use Not Specified
1205.01(b)(viii)	Geographic-Reference Exception
1205.01(c)	Examination Procedures for Marks Containing Greek Red Cross or the Phrases “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross”
1205.01(c)(i)	Date of First Use is Before or After June 25, 1948
1205.01(c)(ii)	Date of First Use Not Specified
1205.01(c)(iii)	Applicable Refusals
1205.01(c)(iv)	Amendments to Disclaim, Delete, or Amend the Unregistrable Symbol or Designation
1205.01(d)	Examination Procedures for Marks Containing the Swiss Confederation Coat of Arms or Flag
1205.01(d)(i)	Refusal Under Sections 1 and 45: Swiss Coat of Arms Not in Lawful Use
1205.01(d)(i)(A)	When a Refusal Under Sections 1 and 45 Must Be Issued
1205.01(d)(i)(B)	When an Advisory Should Be Provided
1205.01(d)(i)(C)	When a Refusal Under Sections 1 and 45 Should Not Be Issued
1205.01(d)(i)(D)	Applicant’s Response to Refusal
1205.01(d)(i)(E)	Refusals Based on Extrinsic Evidence
1205.01(d)(ii)	Refusal Under Section 2(b): Swiss Flag or Swiss Coat of Arms
1205.01(d)(ii)(A)	When a Refusal Under Section 2(b) Must Be Issued
1205.01(d)(ii)(B)	When an Advisory Should Be Provided
1205.01(d)(ii)(C)	When a Refusal Under Section 2(b) Should Not Be Issued

1205.01(d)(ii)(D)	Applicant’s Response to Refusal
1205.01(d)(iii)	Other Refusals
1205.01(d)(iv)	Examples
1205.02	Article 6ter of the Paris Convention
1205.03	Native American Tribal Insignia
1206	Refusal on Basis of Name, Portrait, or Signature of Particular Living Individual or Deceased U.S. President Without Consent
1206.01	Name, Portrait, or Signature of Particular Living Individual
1206.02	Connection With Goods or Services
1206.03	When Inquiry is Required
1206.04	Consent of Individual or President’s Widow
1206.04(a)	Consent Statement Must Be Written Consent to Registration
1206.04(b)	Consent May Be Presumed From Signature of Application
1206.04(c)	New Consent Not Required if Consent is of Record in Valid Registration Owned by Applicant
1206.04(d)	Implicit Consent
1206.05	Names and Likenesses That Do Not Identify a Particular Living Individual
1207	Refusal on Basis of Likelihood of Confusion, Mistake, or Deception
1207.01	Likelihood of Confusion
1207.01(a)	Relatedness of the Goods or Services
1207.01(a)(i)	Goods or Services Need Not Be Identical
1207.01(a)(ii)	Establishing Relatedness of Goods to Services
1207.01(a)(ii)(A)	Food and Beverage Products Versus Restaurant Services
1207.01(a)(iii)	Reliance on Identification of Goods/Services in Registration and Application
1207.01(a)(iv)	No “Per Se” Rule
1207.01(a)(v)	Expansion-of-Trade Doctrine
1207.01(a)(vi)	Evidence Showing Relatedness of Goods or Services
1207.01(b)	Similarity of the Marks
1207.01(b)(i)	Word Marks
1207.01(b)(ii)	Similarity In Appearance
1207.01(b)(iii)	Comparing Marks That Contain Additional Matter
1207.01(b)(iv)	Similarity in Sound – Phonetic Equivalents
1207.01(b)(v)	Similarity in Meaning
1207.01(b)(vi)	Doctrine of Foreign Equivalents
1207.01(b)(vi)(A)	Background
1207.01(b)(vi)(B)	When an Ordinary American Purchaser Would “Stop and Translate”
1207.01(b)(vi)(C)	Likelihood of Confusion Factors Still Apply When Assessing Whether Marks are Confusingly Similar
1207.01(b)(vii)	Transposition of Terms
1207.01(b)(viii)	Marks Consisting of Multiple Words
1207.01(b)(ix)	Weak or Descriptive Marks
1207.01(b)(x)	Parody Marks
1207.01(b)(xi)	Color Marks
1207.01(c)	Design Marks
1207.01(c)(i)	Legal Equivalents – Comparison of Words and Their Equivalent Designs
1207.01(c)(ii)	Composite Marks Consisting of Both Words and Designs
1207.01(c)(iii)	Comparison of Standard Character Marks and Special Form Marks
1207.01(c)(iv)	Matter Depicted in Broken Lines
1207.01(d)	Miscellaneous Considerations
1207.01(d)(i)	Doubt Resolved in Favor of Registrant

1207.01(d)(ii)	Absence of Actual Confusion
1207.01(d)(iii)	Third-Party Registrations and Evidence of Third-Party Use
1207.01(d)(iv)	Collateral Attack on Registration Improper in Ex Parte Proceeding
1207.01(d)(v)	Classification of Goods/Services
1207.01(d)(vi)	Prior Decisions of Examining Attorneys
1207.01(d)(vii)	Sophisticated Purchasers
1207.01(d)(viii)	Consent Agreements
1207.01(d)(ix)	Fame of the Prior Registered Mark
1207.01(d)(x)	Conflicting Marks Owned by Different Parties
1207.01(d)(xi)	Family of Marks
1207.01(d)(xii)	Pharmaceuticals or Medicinal Products
1207.02	Marks That Are Likely to Deceive
1207.03	Marks Previously Used in United States but Not Registered
1207.04	Concurrent Use Registration
1207.04(a)	Concurrent Use – In General
1207.04(b)	Filing Basis of Application Seeking Concurrent Use Registration
1207.04(c)	Criteria for Requesting Concurrent Use Registration
1207.04(d)	Requirements for All Concurrent Use Applications
1207.04(d)(i)	Concurrent Use Application for a Trademark or Service Mark
1207.04(d)(ii)	Concurrent Use Application for a Collective or Certification Mark
1207.04(e)	Applications Subject to Concurrent Use Proceeding Before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board
1207.04(e)(i)	Preparing the Record for Publication
1207.04(f)	Application for Concurrent Use Registration Pursuant to Court Decree
1207.04(f)(i)	Preparing the Record for Publication
1207.04(g)	Application for Concurrent Use Registration Based on Final Board Decision in Prior Concurrent Use Proceeding
1207.04(g)(i)	Preparing the Record for Publication
1208	Conflicting Marks in Pending Applications
1208.01	Priority for Publication or Issue Based on Effective Filing Date
1208.01(a)	What Constitutes Conflict Between Pending Applications
1208.01(b)	What Constitutes Effective Filing Date
1208.01(c)	Change in Effective Filing Date During Examination
1208.01(d)	Examination of Conflicting Marks After Reinstatement or Revival
1208.02	Conflicting Applications Examination Procedure
1208.02(a)	Examination of Application with Earliest Effective Filing Date
1208.02(b)	Action on Later-Filed Application: Giving Notice of the Earlier Application or Applications
1208.02(c)	Suspension of Later-Filed Application
1208.02(d)	Action on Later-Filed Application upon Disposition of the Earlier Application or Applications
1208.02(e)	Applicant's Argument on Issues of Conflict
1208.02(f)	Conflicting Mark Mistakenly Published or Approved for Issuance on the Supplemental Register
1208.03	Procedure Relating to Possibility of Interference
1208.03(a)	Procedures on Request for Interference
1208.03(b)	Decision on Request for Interference
1208.03(c)	Procedure When Interference Is to be Declared
1209	Refusal on Basis of Descriptiveness
1209.01	Distinctiveness/Descriptiveness Continuum
1209.01(a)	Fanciful, Arbitrary, and Suggestive Marks

1209.01(b)	Merely Descriptive Marks
1209.01(c)	Generic Terms
1209.01(c)(i)	Test
1209.01(c)(ii)	Terminology
1209.01(c)(iii)	Generic Matter: Case References
1209.02	Procedure for Descriptiveness and/or Genericness Refusal
1209.02(a)	Descriptive Marks – Advisory Statement That Mark Appears to Be Generic
1209.02(a)(i)	Amendment to Supplemental Register in Response to Office Action
1209.02(a)(ii)	Assertion of §2(f) in Response to Office Action
1209.02(b)	Descriptive and Possibly Generic Marks – Assertion of §2(f) in Application
1209.03	Considerations Relevant to Determination of Descriptiveness or Genericness
1209.03(a)	Third-Party Registrations
1209.03(b)	No Dictionary Listing
1209.03(c)	First or Only User
1209.03(d)	Combined Terms
1209.03(e)	More Than One Meaning
1209.03(f)	Picture or Illustration
1209.03(g)	Foreign Equivalents
1209.03(h)	Acronyms
1209.03(i)	Intended Users
1209.03(j)	Phonetic Equivalent
1209.03(k)	Laudatory Terms
1209.03(l)	Telephone Numbers
1209.03(m)	Domain Names
1209.03(n)	“America” or “American”
1209.03(o)	“National,” “International,” “Global,” and “Worldwide”
1209.03(p)	Function or Purpose
1209.03(q)	Source or Provider of Goods or Services
1209.03(r)	Retail Store and Distributorship Services
1209.03(s)	Slogans
1209.03(t)	Repetition of Descriptive or Generic Term
1209.03(u)	Punctuation
1209.03(v)	Key Aspect of Goods or Services
1209.03(w)	Stylization
1209.04	Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks
1210	Refusal on Basis of Geographic Significance
1210.01	Elements
1210.01(a)	Geographically Descriptive Marks – Test
1210.01(b)	Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks – Test
1210.01(c)	Geographically Deceptive Marks – Test
1210.02	Primarily Geographic Significance
1210.02(a)	Geographic Locations
1210.02(b)	Primary Significance
1210.02(b)(i)	Other Meanings
1210.02(b)(i)(A)	Surname Significance
1210.02(b)(ii)	More Than One Geographic Location With Same Name
1210.02(b)(iii)	Non-Geographic Characteristics of Goods or Services
1210.02(b)(iv)	“America” or “American” and Similar Terms in Marks
1210.02(c)	Geographic Terms Combined With Additional Matter
1210.02(c)(i)	Two Geographic Terms Combined
1210.02(c)(ii)	Geographic Terms Combined With Descriptive or Generic Matter

- 1210.02(c)(iii) Arbitrary, Fanciful, or Suggestive Composites
- 1210.03 Geographic Origin of the Goods or Services
- 1210.04 Goods/Place or Services/Place Association
 - 1210.04(a) Establishing Goods/Place Association
 - 1210.04(b) Establishing Services/Place Association
 - 1210.04(c) Obscure or Remote Geographic Marks
 - 1210.04(d) Arbitrary Use of Geographic Terms
- 1210.05 Geographically Deceptive Marks
 - 1210.05(a) Basis for Refusal
 - 1210.05(b) Elements of a §2(e)(3) Refusal
 - 1210.05(c) Determining Materiality
 - 1210.05(c)(i) Materiality In Cases Involving Goods
 - 1210.05(c)(ii) Materiality In Cases Involving Services
 - 1210.05(d) Procedures for Issuing Geographically Deceptive Refusals
 - 1210.05(d)(i) Neither Applicant Nor Goods/Services Come from the Place Named
 - 1210.05(d)(ii) It is Not Clear Whether the Goods/Services Originate From the Place Named
- 1210.05(e) Geographically Deceptive Matter: Case References
- 1210.06 Procedure for Examining Geographic Composite Marks
 - 1210.06(a) Marks That Include Primarily Geographically Descriptive Terms Combined With Additional Matter
 - 1210.06(b) Marks That Include Primarily Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive and Deceptive Terms Combined With Additional Matter
- 1210.07 Supplemental Register and §2(f)
 - 1210.07(a) Registrability of Geographic Terms on the Supplemental Register
 - 1210.07(b) Registrability of Geographic Terms under §2(f)
- 1210.08 Geographical Indications Used on Wines and Spirits
 - 1210.08(a) Geographical Indications Used on Wines and Spirits That Do Not Originate in the Named Place
 - 1210.08(b) Geographical Indications Used on Wines and Spirits That Originate in the Named Place
 - 1210.08(c) Geographical Indications That Are Generic for Wines and Spirits
- 1210.09 Geographic Certification Marks
- 1210.10 Doctrine of Foreign Equivalents
- 1211 **Refusal on Basis of Surname**
 - 1211.01 “Primarily Merely a Surname”
 - 1211.01(a) Non-Surname Significance
 - 1211.01(a)(i) Ordinary Language Meaning
 - 1211.01(a)(ii) Phonetic Equivalent of Term with Ordinary Language Meaning
 - 1211.01(a)(iii) Geographical Significance
 - 1211.01(a)(iv) Historical Place or Person
 - 1211.01(a)(v) Rare Surnames
 - 1211.01(a)(vi) “Structure and Pronunciation” of a Surname
 - 1211.01(a)(vii) Doctrine of Foreign Equivalents
 - 1211.01(b) Surname Combined with Additional Matter
 - 1211.01(b)(i) Double Surnames
 - 1211.01(b)(ii) Stylization or Design Elements
 - 1211.01(b)(iii) Surname Combined with Initials
 - 1211.01(b)(iv) Surname Combined with Title
 - 1211.01(b)(v) Surname in Plural or Possessive Form
 - 1211.01(b)(vi) Surname Combined with Wording

1211.01(b)(vii)	Surname Combined with Domain Name
1211.01(b)(viii)	Surname Combined with Legal or Familial Entity Designation
1211.02	Evidence Relating to Surname Refusal
1211.02(a)	Evidentiary Burden – Generally
1211.02(b)	Evidentiary Considerations
1211.02(b)(i)	Telephone Directory Listings
1211.02(b)(ii)	LexisNexis® Research Database Evidence
1211.02(b)(iii)	U.S. Census Database Evidence
1211.02(b)(iv)	Surname of Person Associated with Applicant
1211.02(b)(v)	Specimens Confirming Surname Significance of Term
1211.02(b)(vi)	Negative Dictionary Evidence
1211.02(b)(vii)	Evidence of Fame of a Mark
1212	Acquired Distinctiveness or Secondary Meaning
1212.01	General Evidentiary Matters
1212.02	General Procedural Matters
1212.02(a)	Situations in Which a Claim of Distinctiveness Under §2(f) Is Appropriate
1212.02(b)	Section 2(f) Claim Is, for Procedural Purposes, a Concession that Matter Is Not Inherently Distinctive
1212.02(c)	Claiming §2(f) Distinctiveness in the Alternative
1212.02(d)	Unnecessary §2(f) Claims
1212.02(e)	Disclaimers in Applications Claiming Distinctiveness under §2(f)
1212.02(f)	Section 2(f) Claim in Part
1212.02(f)(i)	Standards for Establishing Acquired Distinctiveness for Claims of §2(f) in Part
1212.02(f)(ii)	Appropriate/Inappropriate Situations for Claiming §2(f) in Part
1212.02(f)(ii)(A)	Appropriate Situations for Claiming §2(f) in Part
1212.02(f)(ii)(B)	Inappropriate Situations for Claiming §2(f) in Part
1212.02(g)	Examining Attorney’s Role in Suggesting §2(f) or Appropriate Kind/Amount of Evidence
1212.02(h)	Nonfinal and Final Refusals
1212.02(i)	Section 2(f) Claim with Respect to Incapable Matter
1212.02(j)	Section 2(f) Claim Restricted to Particular Goods/Services/Classes
1212.03	Evidence of Distinctiveness under §2(f)
1212.04	Prior Registrations as Proof of Distinctiveness
1212.04(a)	Sufficiency of Claim Vis-à-Vis Nature of the Mark
1212.04(b)	“Same Mark”
1212.04(c)	Goods or Services Must be “Sufficiently Similar”
1212.04(d)	Registration Must Be in Full Force and Effect and on Principal Register or under Act of 1905
1212.04(e)	Form of §2(f) Claim Based on Ownership of Prior Registrations
1212.05	Five Years of Use as Proof of Distinctiveness
1212.05(a)	Sufficiency of Claim Vis-à-Vis Nature of the Mark
1212.05(b)	“Substantially Exclusive and Continuous”
1212.05(c)	Use “as a Mark”
1212.05(d)	Form of the Proof of Five Years’ Use
1212.06	Establishing Distinctiveness by Actual Evidence
1212.06(a)	Long Use of the Mark in Commerce
1212.06(b)	Advertising Expenditures
1212.06(c)	Affidavits or Declarations Asserting Recognition of Mark as Source Indicator
1212.06(d)	Survey Evidence, Market Research and Consumer Reaction Studies

- 1212.06(e) Miscellaneous Considerations Regarding Evidence Submitted to Establish Distinctiveness
 - 1212.06(e)(i) First or Only User
 - 1212.06(e)(ii) State Trademark Registrations
 - 1212.06(e)(iii) Design Patent
 - 1212.06(e)(iv) Acquiescence to Demands of Competitors
- 1212.07 Form of Application Asserting Distinctiveness
- 1212.08 Section 44 and §66(a) Applications and Distinctiveness
- 1212.09 Section 1(b) Applications and Distinctiveness
 - 1212.09(a) Section 2(f) Claim Requires Prior Use
 - 1212.09(b) Claim of §2(f) “in Part” in §1(b) Applications
- 1212.10 Printing §2(f) Notations, §2(f) in Part Notations, and Limitation Statements
- 1213 **Disclaimer of Elements in Marks**
 - 1213.01 History of Disclaimer Practice
 - 1213.01(a) Discretion in Requiring Disclaimer
 - 1213.01(b) Refusal to Register Because of Failure to Disclaim
 - 1213.01(c) Voluntary Disclaimer of Registrable or Unregistrable Matter
 - 1213.01(d) Disclaimer Offered in the Alternative
 - 1213.02 “Composite” Marks
 - 1213.03 Disclaimer of Unregistrable Components of Marks
 - 1213.03(a) “Unregistrable Components” in General
 - 1213.03(b) Generic Matter and Matter That Does Not Function as a Mark
 - 1213.03(c) Pictorial Representations of Descriptive Matter
 - 1213.03(d) Entity Designations
 - 1213.04 Trade Names
 - 1213.05 Unitary Marks
 - 1213.05(a) Compound Word Marks
 - 1213.05(a)(i) Telescoped Words
 - 1213.05(a)(ii) Compound Words Formed with Hyphen or Other Punctuation
 - 1213.05(b) Unitary Phrases
 - 1213.05(b)(i) Slogans
 - 1213.05(b)(ii) Grammar and Punctuation
 - 1213.05(b)(ii)(A) Verbs
 - 1213.05(b)(ii)(B) Prepositional Phrases
 - 1213.05(b)(ii)(C) Punctuation
 - 1213.05(b)(ii)(D) Possessives
 - 1213.05(b)(iii) Other Considerations
 - 1213.05(b)(iv) Unregistrable Unitary Phrases or Slogans
 - 1213.05(c) Double Entendre
 - 1213.05(d) Incongruity
 - 1213.05(e) Sound Patterns
 - 1213.05(f) Display of Mark
 - 1213.05(g) Marks with Design Elements Replacing Letters
 - 1213.05(g)(i) Marks with a Distinctive Design Replacing a Letter in Descriptive or Generic Wording
 - 1213.05(g)(ii) Marks with Merely Descriptive or Primarily Geographically Descriptive Designs Replacing Letters within Descriptive or Primarily Geographically Descriptive Wording
 - 1213.05(g)(iii) Marks with Accurate Pictorial Representations Replacing Letters in Merely Descriptive and Primarily Geographically Descriptive Marks

1213.05(g)(iv)	Unitary Marks with Design Elements Replacing Letters in Descriptive or Generic Wording
1213.05(h)	Unitary Marks: Case References
1213.06	Entire Mark May Not Be Disclaimed
1213.07	Removal Rather Than Disclaimer
1213.08	Form of Disclaimers
1213.08(a)	Wording of Disclaimer
1213.08(a)(i)	Standardized Printing Format for Disclaimer
1213.08(a)(ii)	Unacceptable Wording for Disclaimer
1213.08(a)(iii)	Unacceptable Statements in Disclaimers
1213.08(b)	Disclaimer of Unregistrable Matter in Its Entirety
1213.08(c)	Disclaimer of Misspelled Words
1213.08(d)	Disclaimer of Non-English Words
1213.09	Mark of Another May Not Be Registered with Disclaimer
1213.10	Disclaimer in Relation to Likelihood of Confusion
1213.11	Acquiring Rights in Disclaimed Matter
1214	“Phantom” Elements in Marks
1214.01	Single Application May Seek Registration of Only One Mark
1214.02	Agreement of Mark on Drawing with Mark on Specimens or Foreign Registration
1214.03	“Phantom Marks” in §1(b) Applications
1214.04	“Phantom Marks” in §44 and §66(a) Applications
1215	Marks Composed, in Whole or in Part, of Domain Names
1215.01	Background
1215.02	Use as a Mark
1215.02(a)	Use Applications
1215.02(b)	Advertising One’s Own Products or Services on the Internet is not a Service
1215.02(c)	Agreement of Mark on Drawing with Mark on Specimens of Use
1215.02(d)	Marks Comprised Solely of gTLDs for Domain-Name Registry Operator and Registrar Services
1215.02(d)(i)	Prior Registration(s) of the Same Mark for Goods or Services in the Same Field of Use
1215.02(d)(ii)	Additional Proof that the Mark Used as a gTLD Will Be Perceived as a Mark
1215.02(d)(iii)	Registry Agreement/ICANN Contract
1215.02(d)(iv)	Legitimate Service for the Benefit of Others
1215.02(e)	Section 1(b) Applications
1215.02(f)	Section 44 and §66(a) Applications
1215.03	Surnames
1215.04	Descriptiveness
1215.05	Generic Refusals
1215.06	Marks Containing Geographical Matter
1215.07	Disclaimers
1215.08	Material Alteration
1215.08(a)	Adding or Deleting TLDs in Domain Name Marks
1215.08(b)	Adding or Deleting gTLDs in Other Marks
1215.08(c)	Adding or Deleting “.” in Marks for Domain Name Registry Operator or Registrar Services
1215.09	Likelihood of Confusion
1215.10	Marks Containing the Phonetic Equivalent of a Generic Top-Level Domain
1216	Effect of Applicant’s Prior Registrations
1216.01	Decisions Involving Prior Registrations Not Controlling

1216.02 Effect of “Incontestability” in Ex Parte Examination
1217 **Res Judicata, Collateral Estoppel, and Stare Decisis**

1201 Ownership of Mark

Under §1(a)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(1\)](#), a trademark or service mark application based on use in commerce must be filed by the owner of the mark. A §1(a) application must include a verified statement that the applicant believes the applicant is the owner of the mark sought to be registered. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(A\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#). An application that is not filed by the owner is void. *See* [TMEP §1201.02\(b\)](#).

A trademark or service mark application under §1(b) or §44 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\), 1126](#), must be filed by a party who is entitled to use the mark in commerce, and must include a verified statement that the applicant is entitled to use the mark in commerce and that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce as of the application filing date. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(A\)-\(B\), 1126\(d\)\(2\), 1126\(e\); 37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(2\)](#). When the person designated as the applicant is not the person with a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, the application is void. *See* [TMEP §1201.02\(b\)](#).

In a §1(b) application, before the mark can be registered, the applicant must file an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§1104-1104.11](#)) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§1109-1109.18](#)) which states that the applicant is the owner of the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\); 37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(i\), 2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(i\)](#).

In a §44 application, the applicant must be the owner of the foreign application or registration on which the U.S. application is based as of the filing date of the U.S. application. *See* [TMEP §1005](#).

An application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act (i.e., a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States under the Madrid Protocol), must be filed by the holder of the international registration. [15 U.S.C. §1141e\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.25](#). The application must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1141\(f\)\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)\(1\)](#). The verified statement in a §66(a) application for a trademark or service mark is part of the international registration on file at the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”). The IB will have established that the international registration includes this verified statement before it sends the request for extension of protection to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”). *See* [TMEP §804.05](#). The request for extension of protection remains part of the international registration, and ownership is determined by the IB. *See* [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding assignment of §66(a) applications.

The provisions discussed above also apply to collective and certification marks with the caveat that the owner of such marks does not use the mark or have a bona fide intention to do so, but rather exercises control over its use by members/authorized users or has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise such control over the use by members/authorized users. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1053, 1054](#); [TMEP §§1303.02\(a\), 1304.03\(a\), 1306.01\(a\)](#).

1201.01 Claim of Ownership May Be Based on Use By Related Companies

In an application under §1 of the Trademark Act, an applicant may base its claim of ownership of a trademark or a service mark on:

- (1) its own exclusive use of the mark;

- (2) use of the mark solely by a related company whose use inures to the applicant's benefit (*see* [TMEP §§1201.03–1201.03\(e\)](#)); or
- (3) use of the mark both by the applicant and by a related company whose use inures to the applicant's benefit (*see* [TMEP §1201.05](#)).

Where the mark is used by a related company, the owner is the party who controls the nature and quality of the goods sold or services rendered under the mark. The owner is the only proper party to apply for registration. [15 U.S.C. §1051](#). See [TMEP §§1201.03–1201.03\(e\)](#) for additional information about use by related companies.

The examining attorney should accept the applicant's statement regarding ownership of the mark unless it is clearly contradicted by information in the record. *In re L. A. Police Revolver & Athletic Club, Inc.*, 69 USPQ2d 1630 (TTAB 2003) .

The USPTO does not inquire about the relationship between the applicant and other parties named on the specimen or elsewhere in the record, except when the reference to another party clearly contradicts the applicant's verified statement that it is the owner of the mark or entitled to use the mark. Moreover, where the application states that use of the mark is by a related company or companies, the examining attorney should not require any explanation of how the applicant controls such use.

The provisions discussed above also apply to service marks, collective marks, and certification marks, except that, by definition, collective and certification marks are not used by the owner of the mark, but are used by others under the control of the owner. See [15 U.S.C. §§1053, 1054](#); [TMEP §§1303.02\(a\), 1304.03\(a\), 1306.01\(a\)](#). In addition, an application for registration of a collective mark must specify the nature of the applicant's control over use of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#).

See [TMEP §1201.04](#) for information about when an examining attorney should issue an inquiry or refusal with respect to ownership.

1201.02 Identifying the Applicant in the Application

1201.02(a) Identifying the Applicant Properly

The applicant may be any person or entity capable of suing and being sued in a court of law. See [TMEP §§803-803.03\(k\)](#) for the appropriate format for identifying the applicant and setting forth the relevant legal entity.

1201.02(b) Application Void if Wrong Party Identified as the Applicant

An application must be filed by the party who is the owner of (or is entitled to use) the mark as of the application filing date. See [TMEP §1201](#).

An application based on use in commerce under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#) must be filed by the party who owns the mark on the application filing date. If the applicant does not own the mark on the application filing date, the application is *void*. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(d\)](#); *see Huang v. Tzu Wei Chen Food Co.*, 849 F.2d 1458, 7 USPQ2d 1335 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *Conolty v. Conolty O'Connor NYC LLC*, 111 USPQ2d 1302, 1309 (TTAB 2014) ; *Great Seats, Ltd. v. Great Seats, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1235, 1244 (TTAB 2007) .

If the record indicates that the applicant is not the owner of the mark, the examining attorney should refuse registration on that ground. The statutory basis for this refusal is §1 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#), and, where related company issues are relevant, §§5 and 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1055](#), [1127](#). The examining attorney should not have the filing date cancelled or refund the application filing fee.

In an application under §1(b) or §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), [§1126](#), the applicant must be entitled to use the mark in commerce on the application filing date, and the application must include a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(A\)](#), [1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1126\(d\)\(2\)](#), [1126\(e\)](#). When the person designated as the applicant was not the person with a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce at the time the application was filed, the application is void. *Am. Forests v. Sanders*, 54 USPQ2d 1860, 1864 (TTAB 1999) , *aff'd*, 232 F.3d 907 (Fed. Cir. 2000) (holding an intent-to-use application filed by an individual void, where the entity that had a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on the application filing date was a partnership composed of the individual applicant and her husband). However, the examining attorney will not inquire into the bona fides, or good faith, of an applicant's asserted intention to use a mark in commerce during ex parte examination, unless there is evidence in the record clearly indicating that the applicant does not have a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. See [TMEP §1101](#).

When an application is filed in the name of the wrong party, this defect cannot be cured by amendment or assignment. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(d\)](#); [TMEP §803.06](#). However, if the application was filed by the owner, but there was a mistake in the manner in which the applicant's name was set forth in the application, this may be corrected. See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors.

See [TMEP §1201](#) regarding ownership of a §66(a) application.

1201.02(c) Correcting Errors in How the Applicant Is Identified

If the party applying to register the mark is, in fact, the owner of the mark, but there is a mistake in the manner in which the name of the applicant is set out in the application, the mistake may be corrected by amendment. *U.S. Pioneer Elec. Corp. v. Evans Mktg., Inc.* , 183 USPQ 613 (Comm'r Pats. 1974). However, the application may *not* be amended to designate another entity as the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(d\)](#); [TMEP §803.06](#). An application filed in the name of the wrong party is void and cannot be corrected by amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(d\)](#); see *Huang v. Tzu Wei Chen Food Co.*, 849 F.2d 1458, 7 USPQ2d 1335 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *Great Seats, Ltd. v. Great Seats, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1235, 1244 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Tong Yang Cement Corp.*, 19 USPQ2d 1689 (TTAB 1991).

Correctable Errors. The following are examples of correctable errors in identifying the applicant:

- (1) *Trade Name Set Forth as Applicant.* If the applicant identifies itself by a name under which it does business, which is not a legal entity, then amendment to state the applicant's correct legal name is permitted. Cf. *In re Atl. Blue Print Co.*, 19 USPQ2d 1078 (Comm'r Pats 1990) (finding that Post Registration staff erred in refusing to allow amendment of affidavit under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) to show registrant's corporate name rather than registrant's trade name).
- (2) *Operating Division Identified as Applicant.* If the applicant mistakenly names an operating division, which by definition is not a legal entity, as the owner, then the applicant's name may be amended. See [TMEP §1201.02\(d\)](#).
- (3) *Minor Clerical Error.* Minor clerical errors such as the mistaken addition or omission of "The" or "Inc." in the applicant's name may be corrected by amendment, as long as this does not result in a

change of entity. However, change of a significant portion of the applicant's name is not considered a minor clerical error.

- (4) *Inconsistency in Original Application as to Owner Name or Entity.* If the original application reflects an inconsistency between the owner name and the entity type, for example, an individual and a corporation are each identified as the owner in different places in the application, the application may be amended to clarify the inconsistency.

Example: Inconsistency Between Owner Section and Entity Section of TEAS Form: If the information in the "owner section" of a TEAS application form is inconsistent with the information in the "entity section" of the form, the inconsistency can be corrected, for example, if an individual is identified as the owner and a corporation is listed as the entity, the application may be amended to indicate the proper applicant name/entity.

Signature of Verification by Different Entity Does Not Create Inconsistency. In view of the broad definition of a "person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the [applicant]" in [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#)), if the person signing an application refers to a different entity, the USPTO will presume that the person signing is an authorized signatory who meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#), and will not issue an inquiry regarding the inconsistency or question the signatory's authority to sign. If the applicant later requests correction to identify the party who signed the verification as the owner, the USPTO will not allow the amendment. For example, if the application is filed in the name of "John Jones, individual U.S. citizen," the verification is signed by "John Jones, President of ABC Corporation," and the applicant later proposes to amend the application to show ABC Corporation as the owner, the USPTO will not allow the amendment, because there was no inconsistency in the original application as to the owner name/entity.

- (5) *Change of Name.* If the owner of a mark legally changed its name before filing an application, but mistakenly lists its former name on the application, the error may be corrected, because the correct party filed, but merely identified itself incorrectly. *In re Techsonic Indus., Inc.*, 216 USPQ 619 (TTAB 1982).
- (6) *Partners Doing Business as Partnership.* If an applicant has been identified as "A and B, doing business as The AB Company, a partnership," and the true owner is a partnership organized under the name The AB Company and composed of A and B, the applicant's name should be amended to "The AB Company, a partnership composed of A and B."
- (7) *Non-Existent Entity.* If the party listed as the applicant did not exist on the application filing date, the application may be amended to correct the applicant's name. *See Accu Pers. Inc. v. Accustaff Inc.*, 38 USPQ2d 1443 (TTAB 1996) (holding application not void ab initio where corporation named as applicant technically did not exist on filing date, since four companies who later merged acted as a single commercial enterprise when filing the application); *Argo & Co. v. Springer*, 198 USPQ 626, 635 (TTAB 1978) (holding that application may be amended to name three individuals as joint applicants in place of an originally named corporate applicant which was never legally incorporated, because the individuals and non-existent corporation were found to be the same, single commercial enterprise); *Pioneer Elec.*, 183 USPQ 613 (holding that applicant's name may be corrected where the application was mistakenly filed in the name of a fictitious and non-existent party).

Example 1: If the applicant is identified as ABC Company, a Delaware partnership, and the true owner is ABC LLC, a Delaware limited liability company, the application may be amended to correct the applicant's name and entity if the applicant states on the record that "ABC Company, a Delaware partnership, did not exist as a legal entity on the application filing date."

Example 2: If an applicant is identified as "ABC Corporation, formerly known as XYZ, Inc.," and the correct entity is "XYZ, Inc.," the applicant's name may be amended to "XYZ, Inc." as long as "ABC Corporation, formerly known as XYZ, Inc." was not a different *existing* legal entity. *Cf. Custom Computer Serv. Inc. v. Paychex Prop. Inc.*, 337 F.3d 1334, 1337, 67 USPQ2d 1638, 1640 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (holding that the term "mistake," within the context of the rule regarding the misidentification of the person in whose name an extension of time to file an opposition was requested, means a mistake in the form of the potential opposer's name or its entity type and does not encompass the recitation of a different existing legal entity that is not in privity with the party that should have been named).

To correct an obvious mistake of this nature, a verification or declaration is not normally necessary.

Non-Correctable Errors. The following are examples of non-correctable errors in identifying the applicant:

- (1) *President of Corporation Files as Individual.* If the president of a corporation is identified as the owner of the mark when in fact the corporation owns the mark, and there is no inconsistency in the original application between the owner name and the entity type (such as a reference to a corporation in the entity section of the application), the application is void as filed because the applicant is not the owner of the mark.
- (2) *Predecessor in Interest.* If an application is filed in the name of entity A, when the mark was assigned to entity B before the application filing date, the application is void as filed because the applicant was not the owner of the mark at the time of filing. *Cf. Huang*, 849 F.2d at 1458, 7 USPQ2d at 1335 (holding as void an application filed by an individual two days after ownership of the mark was transferred to a newly formed corporation).
- (3) *Joint Venturer Files.* If the application is filed in the name of a joint venturer when the mark is owned by the joint venture, and there is no inconsistency in the original application between the owner name and the entity type (such as a reference to a joint venture in the entity section of the application), the applicant's name cannot be amended. *Tong Yang Cement*, 19 USPQ2d at 1689.
- (4) *Sister Corporation.* If an application is filed in the name of corporation A and a sister corporation (corporation B) owns the mark, the application is void as filed, because the applicant is not the owner of the mark. *Great Seats*, 84 USPQ2d at 1244 (holding §1(a) application void where the sole use and advertising of the mark was made by a sister corporation who shared the same president, controlling shareholder, and premises as the applicant).
- (5) *Parent/Subsidiary.* If an application is filed in the name of corporation A, a wholly owned subsidiary, and the parent corporation (corporation B) owns the mark, the application is void as filed because the applicant is not the owner of the mark. See [TMEP §1201.03\(b\)](#) regarding wholly owned related companies.

1201.02(d) Operating Divisions

An operating division that is not a legal entity that can sue and be sued does not have standing to own a mark or to file an application to register a mark. The application must be filed in the name of the company of which the division is a part. *In re Cambridge Digital Sys.*, 1 USPQ2d 1659, 1660 n.1 (TTAB 1986) . An operating division's use is considered to be use by the applicant and not use by a related company; therefore, reference to related-company use is permissible but not necessary.

1201.02(e) Changes in Ownership After Application Is Filed

See [TMEP Chapter 500](#) regarding changes of ownership and changes of name subsequent to filing an application for registration, and [TMEP §§502.02–502.02\(b\)](#) regarding the procedure for requesting that a certificate of registration be issued in the name of an assignee or in an applicant's new name.

1201.03 Use by Related Companies

Section 5 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1055](#), states, in part, as follows:

Where a registered mark or a mark sought to be registered is or may be used legitimately by related companies, such use shall inure to the benefit of the registrant or applicant for registration, and such

use shall not affect the validity of such mark or of its registration, provided such mark is not used in such manner as to deceive the public.

Section 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines “related company” as follows:

The term “related company” means any person whose use of a mark is controlled by the owner of the mark with respect to the nature and quality of the goods or services on or in connection with which the mark is used.

Thus, §5 of the Act permits applicants to rely on use of the mark by related companies. Either a natural person or a juristic person may be a related company. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#).

The essence of related-company use is the control exercised over the nature and quality of the goods or services on or in connection with which the mark is used. *Noble House Home Furnishings, LLC v. Floorco Enters., LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1413, 1421 (TTAB 2016). When a mark is used by a related company, use of the mark inures to the benefit of the party who controls the nature and quality of the goods or services. *Id.* This party is the owner of the mark and, therefore, the only party who may apply to register the mark. *Smith Int’l. Inc. v. Olin Corp.*, 209 USPQ 1033, 1044 (TTAB 1981).

Reliance on related-company use requires, *inter alia*, that the related company use the mark in connection with the same goods or services recited in the application. *In re Admark, Inc.*, 214 USPQ 302, 303 (TTAB 1982) (finding that related-company use was not at issue where the applicant sought registration of a mark for advertising-agency services and the purported related company used the mark for retail-store services).

A related company is different from a successor in interest who is in privity with the predecessor in interest for purposes of determining the right to register. *Wells Cargo, Inc. v. Wells Cargo, Inc.*, 197 USPQ 569, 570 (TTAB 1977), *aff’d*, 606 F.2d 961, 203 USPQ 564 (C.C.P.A. 1979).

See [TMEP §1201.03\(b\)](#) regarding wholly owned related companies, [§1201.03\(c\)](#) regarding corporations with common stockholders, directors, or officers, [§1201.03\(d\)](#) regarding sister corporations, and [§1201.03\(e\)](#) regarding license and franchise situations.

1201.03(a) No Explanation of Use of Mark by Related Companies or Applicant’s Control Over Use of Mark by Related Companies Required

The USPTO does not require an application to specify if the applied-for mark is not being used by the applicant but is being used by one or more related companies whose use inures to the benefit of the applicant under §5 of the Act. Moreover, where the application states that use of the mark is by a related company or companies, the USPTO does not require an explanation of how the applicant controls the use of the mark.

Additionally, the USPTO does not inquire about the relationship between the applicant and other parties named on the specimen or elsewhere in the record, except when the reference to another party clearly contradicts the applicant’s verified statement that it is the owner of the mark or entitled to use the mark. See [TMEP §1201.04](#). In such cases, the USPTO may require such details concerning the nature of the relationship and such proofs as may be necessary and appropriate for the purpose of showing that the use by related companies inures to the benefit of the applicant and does not affect the validity of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.38\(b\)](#).

1201.03(b) Wholly Owned Related Companies

Frequently, related companies comprise parent and wholly owned subsidiary corporations. Either a parent corporation or a subsidiary corporation may be the proper applicant, depending on the facts concerning ownership of the mark. The USPTO will consider the filing of the application in the name of either the parent or the subsidiary to be the expression of the intention of the parties as to ownership in accord with the arrangements between them. However, once the application has been filed in the name of either the parent or the wholly owned subsidiary, the USPTO will not permit an amendment of the applicant's name to specify the other party as the owner. The applicant's name can be changed only by assignment.

Furthermore, once an application has been filed in the name of either the parent or the wholly owned subsidiary, the USPTO will not consider documents (e.g., statements of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) or affidavits of continued use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#)) filed in the name of the other party to have been filed by the owner. See *In re Media Cent. IP Corp.*, 65 USPQ2d 1637 (Dir USPTO 2002) (holding §8 affidavit filed in the name of a subsidiary and predecessor in interest of the current owner unacceptable); *In re ACE III Commc'ns, Inc.*, 62 USPQ2d 1049 (Dir USPTO 2001) (holding §8 affidavit unacceptable where the owner of the registration was a corporation, and the affidavit was filed in the name of an individual who asserted that she was the owner of the corporation).

Either an individual or a juristic entity may own a mark that is used by a wholly owned related company. *In re Hand*, 231 USPQ 487 (TTAB 1986) .

1201.03(c) Common Stockholders, Directors, or Officers

Corporations are not "related companies" within the meaning of §5 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1055](#), merely because they have the same stockholders, directors, or officers, or because they occupy the same premises. *Great Seats, Ltd. v. Great Seats, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1235, 1243 (TTAB 2007) (holding that the fact that both the applicant corporation and the corporate user of the mark have the same president and controlling stockholder, and share the same premises, does not make them related companies); *In re Raven Marine, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 68, 69 (TTAB 1983) (holding statement that both the applicant corporation and the corporate user of the mark have the same principal stockholder and officer insufficient to show that the user is a related company).

If an individual applicant is not the sole owner of the corporation that is using the mark, the question of whether the corporation is a "related company" depends on whether the applicant maintains control over the nature and quality of the goods or services such that use of the mark inures to the applicant's benefit. A formal written licensing agreement between the parties is not necessary, nor is its existence sufficient to establish ownership rights. The critical question is whether the applicant sufficiently controls the nature and quality of the goods or services with which the mark is used. See *Pneutek, Inc. v. Scherr*, 211 USPQ 824, 833 (TTAB 1981) (holding that the applicant, an individual, exercised sufficient control over the nature and quality of the goods sold under the mark by the licensee that the license agreement vested ownership of the mark in the applicant).

Similarly, where an individual applicant is not the sole owner of the corporation that is using the mark, the fact that the individual applicant is a stockholder, director, or officer in the corporation is insufficient in itself to establish that the corporation is a related company. The question depends on whether the applicant maintains control over the nature and quality of the goods or services.

See [TMEP §1201.03\(b\)](#) regarding use by wholly owned related companies.

1201.03(d) Sister Corporations

The fact that two sister corporations are controlled by a single parent corporation does not mean that they are related companies. Where two corporations are wholly owned subsidiaries of a common parent, use by one sister corporation is not considered to inure to the benefit of the other, unless the applicant sister corporation exercises appropriate control over the nature and quality of the goods or services on or in connection with which the mark is used. *Great Seats, Ltd. v. Great Seats, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1235, 1242 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Pharmacia Inc.*, 2 USPQ2d 1883, 1884 (TTAB 1987) ; *Greyhound Corp. v. Armour Life Ins. Co.*, 214 USPQ 473, 475 (TTAB 1982) .

See [TMEP §1201.03\(b\)](#) regarding use by wholly owned related companies.

1201.03(e) License and Franchise Situations

The USPTO accepts applications by parties who claim to be owners of marks through use by controlled licensees, pursuant to a contract or agreement. *Pneutek, Inc. v. Scherr*, 211 USPQ 824, 833 (TTAB 1981).

A controlled licensing agreement may be recognized whether oral or in writing. *In re Raven Marine, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 68, 69 (TTAB 1983) .

If the application indicates that use of the mark is pursuant to a license or franchise agreement, and the record contains nothing that contradicts the assertion of ownership by the applicant (i.e., the licensor or franchisor), the examining attorney will not inquire about the relationship between the applicant and the related company (i.e., the licensee or franchisee).

Ownership rights in a trademark or service mark may be acquired and maintained through the use of the mark by a controlled licensee even when the only use of the mark has been made, and is being made, by the licensee. *Turner v. HMH Publ'g Co.*, 380 F.2d 224, 229, 154 USPQ 330, 334 (5th Cir. 1967), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 1006, 156 USPQ 720 (1967); *Cent. Fid. Banks, Inc. v. First Bankers Corp. of Fla.*, 225 USPQ 438, 440 (TTAB 1984) (holding that use of the mark by petitioner's affiliated banks considered to inure to the benefit of petitioner bank holding company, even though the bank holding company could not legally render banking services and, thus, could not use the mark).

Joint applicants enjoy rights of ownership to the same extent as any other "person" who has a proprietary interest in a mark. Therefore, joint applicants may license others to use a mark and, by exercising sufficient control and supervision of the nature and quality of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, the joint applicants/licensors may claim the benefits of the use by the related company/licensee. *In re Diamond Walnut Growers, Inc. and Sunsweet Growers Inc.*, 204 USPQ 507, 510 (TTAB 1979) .

Stores that are operating under franchise agreements from another party are considered "related companies" of that party, and use of the mark by the franchisee/store inures to the benefit of the franchisor. *Mr. Rooter Corp. v. Morris*, 188 USPQ 392, 394 (E.D. La. 1975); *Southland Corp. v. Schubert*, 297 F. Supp. 477, 160 USPQ 375, 381 (C.D. Cal. 1968).

In all franchise and license situations, the key to ownership is the nature and extent of the control by the applicant over the goods or services to which the mark is applied. A trademark owner who fails to exercise sufficient control over licensees or franchisees may be found to have abandoned its rights in the mark.

See Hurricane Fence Co. v. A-1 Hurricane Fence Co., 468 F. Supp. 975, 986; 208 USPQ 314, 325 (S.D. Ala. 1979).

In general, where the application states that a mark is used by a licensee or franchisee, the USPTO does not require an explanation of how the applicant controls the use.

1201.04 Inquiry Regarding Parties Named on Specimens or Elsewhere in Record

The USPTO does not inquire about the relationship between the applicant and other parties named on the specimen or elsewhere in the record, except when the reference to another party clearly contradicts the applicant's verified statement that it is the owner of the mark or entitled to use the mark.

The examining attorney should inquire about another party if the record specifically states that another party is the owner of the mark, or if the record specifically identifies the applicant in a manner that contradicts the claim of ownership, for example, as a licensee. In these circumstances, registration should be refused under §1 of the Trademark Act, on the ground that the applicant is not the owner of the mark. Similarly, when the record indicates that the applicant is a United States distributor, importer, or other distributing agent for a foreign manufacturer, the examining attorney should require the applicant to establish its ownership rights in the United States in accordance with [TMEP §1201.06\(a\)](#).

Where the specimen of use indicates that the goods are manufactured in a country other than the applicant's home country, the examining attorney normally should not inquire whether the mark is used by a foreign manufacturer. See [TMEP §1201.06\(b\)](#). Also, where the application states that use of the mark is by related companies, an explanation of how the applicant controls use of the mark by the related companies is not required. See [TMEP §1201.03\(a\)](#).

1201.05 Acceptable Claim of Ownership Based on Applicant's Own Use

An applicant's claim of ownership of a mark may be based on the applicant's own use of the mark, even though there is also use by a related company. The applicant is the owner by virtue of the applicant's own use, and the application does not have to refer to use by a related company.

An applicant may claim ownership of a mark when the mark is applied on the applicant's instruction. For example, if the applicant contracts with another party to have goods produced for the applicant and instructs the party to place the mark on the goods, that is considered the equivalent of the applicant itself placing the mark on its own goods and reference to related-company use is not necessary.

1201.06 Special Situations Pertaining to Ownership

1201.06(a) Applicant Is Merely Distributor or Importer

A distributor, importer, or other distributing agent of the goods of a manufacturer or producer does not acquire a right of ownership in the manufacturer's or producer's mark merely because it moves the goods in trade. See *In re Bee Pollen from Eng. Ltd.*, 219 USPQ 163 (TTAB 1983); *Audioson Vertriebs - GmbH v. Kirksaeter Audiosonics, Inc.*, 196 USPQ 453 (TTAB 1977); *Jean D'Albret v. Henkel-Khasana G.m.b.H.*, 185 USPQ 317 (TTAB 1975); *In re Lettmann*, 183 USPQ 369 (TTAB 1974); *Bakker v. Steel Nurse of America Inc.*, 176 USPQ 447 (TTAB 1972). A party that merely distributes goods bearing the mark of a manufacturer or producer is neither the owner nor a related-company user of the mark.

If the applicant merely distributes or imports goods for the owner of the mark, registration must be refused under §1 of the Trademark Act, *except* in the following situations:

(1) If a parent and wholly owned subsidiary relationship exists between the distributor and the manufacturer, then the applicant's statement that such a relationship exists disposes of an ownership issue. *See* [TMEP §1201.03\(b\)](#).

(2) If an applicant is the United States importer or distribution agent for a foreign manufacturer, then the applicant can register the foreign manufacturer's mark in the United States, if the applicant submits one of the following:

(a) written consent from the owner of the mark to registration in the applicant's name, or

(b) written agreement or acknowledgment between the parties that the importer or distributor is the owner of the mark in the United States, or

(c) an assignment (or true copy) to the applicant of the owner's rights in the mark as to the United States together with the business and good will appurtenant thereto.

See In re Pharmacia Inc., 2 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 1987) ; *In re Geo. J. Ball, Inc.*, 153 USPQ 426 (TTAB 1967).

1201.06(b) Goods Manufactured in a Country Other than Where Applicant Is Located

Where a specimen indicates that the goods are manufactured in a country other than the applicant's home country, the examining attorney normally should not inquire whether the mark is used by a foreign manufacturer. If, however, information in the record clearly contradicts the applicant's verified claim of ownership (e.g., a statement in the record that the mark is owned by the foreign manufacturer and that the applicant is only an importer or distributor), then registration must be refused under §1, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#), unless registration in the United States by the applicant is supported by the applicant's submission of one of the documents listed in [TMEP §1201.06\(a\)](#).

1201.07 Related Companies and Likelihood of Confusion

1201.07(a) "Single Source" – "Unity of Control"

Section 2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), requires that the examining attorney refuse registration when an applicant's mark, as applied to the specified goods or services, so resembles a registered mark as to be likely to cause confusion. In general, registration of confusingly similar marks to separate legal entities is barred by §2(d). *See* [TMEP §§1207–1207.01\(d\)\(xi\)](#). However, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has held that, where the applicant is related in ownership to a company that owns a registered mark that would otherwise give rise to a likelihood of confusion, the examining attorney must consider whether, in view of all the circumstances, use of the mark by the applicant is likely to confuse the public about the source of the applicant's goods because of the resemblance of the applicant's mark to the mark of the other company. The Court stated that:

The question is whether, despite the similarity of the marks and the goods on which they are used, the public is likely to be confused about the source of the hair straightening products carrying the trademark "WELLASTRATE." In other words, is the public likely to believe that the source of the product is Wella U.S. rather than the German company or the Wella organization.

In re Wella A.G., 787 F.2d 1549, 1552, 229 USPQ 274, 276 (Fed. Cir. 1986); *cf. In re Wacker Neuson SE*, 97 USPQ2d 1408 (TTAB 2010) (finding that the record made clear that the parties were related and that the goods and services were provided by the applicant).

The *Wella* Court remanded the case to the Board for consideration of the likelihood of confusion issue. In ruling on that issue, the Board concluded that there was no likelihood of confusion, stating as follows:

[A] determination must be made as to whether there exists a likelihood of confusion as to *source*, that is, whether purchasers would believe that particular goods or services emanate from a single source, when in fact those goods or services emanate from more than a single source. Clearly, the Court views the concept of “source” as encompassing more than “legal entity.” Thus, in this case, we are required to determine whether Wella A.G. and Wella U.S. are the same source or different sources....

The existence of a related company relationship between Wella U.S. and Wella A.G. is not, in itself, a basis for finding that any “WELLA” product emanating from either of the two companies emanates from the same source. Besides the existence of a legal relationship, there must also be a unity of control over the use of the trademarks. “Control” and “source” are inextricably linked. If, notwithstanding the legal relationship between entities, each entity exclusively controls the nature and quality of the goods to which it applies one or more of the various “WELLA” trademarks, the two entities are in fact separate sources. Wella A.G. has made of record a declaration of the executive vice president of Wella U.S., which declaration states that Wella A.G. owns substantially all the outstanding stock of Wella U.S. and “thus controls the activities and operations of Wella U.S., including the selection, adoption and use of the trademarks.” While the declaration contains no details of how this control is exercised, the declaration is sufficient, absent contradictory evidence in the record, to establish that control over the use of all the “WELLA” trademarks in the United States resides in a single source.

In re Wella A.G., 5 USPQ2d 1359, 1361 (TTAB 1987) (emphasis in original), *rev'd on other grounds*, 858 F.2d 725, 8 USPQ2d 1365 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

Therefore, in some limited circumstances, the close relationship between related companies will obviate any likelihood of confusion in the public mind because the related companies constitute a single source. See [TMEP §§1201.07\(b\)-1201.07\(b\)\(iv\)](#) for further information.

1201.07(b) Appropriate Action with Respect to Assertion of Unity of Control

First, it is important to note that analysis under *Wella* is not triggered until an applicant affirmatively asserts that a §2(d) refusal is inappropriate because the applicant and the registrant, though separate legal entities, constitute a single source, or the applicant raises an equivalent argument. Examining attorneys should issue §2(d) refusals in any case where an analysis of the marks and the goods or services of the respective parties indicates a bar to registration under §2(d). The examining attorney should not attempt to analyze the relationship between an applicant and registrant until an applicant, in some form, relies on the nature of the relationship to obviate a refusal under §2(d).

Once an applicant has made this assertion, the question is whether the specific relationship is such that the two entities constitute a “single source,” so that there is no likelihood of confusion. The following guidelines may assist the examining attorney in resolving questions of likelihood of confusion when the marks are owned by related companies and the applicant asserts unity of control. (In many of these situations, the applicant may choose to attempt to overcome the §2(d) refusal by submitting a consent agreement or other conventional evidence to establish no likelihood of confusion. See [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)](#). Another way to overcome a §2(d) refusal is to assign all relevant registrations to the same party.)

1201.07(b)(i) When Either Applicant or Registrant Owns All of the Other Entity

If the applicant or the applicant's attorney represents that *either* the applicant or the registrant owns *all* of the other entity, and there is no contradictory evidence, then the examining attorney should conclude that there is unity of control, a single source, and no likelihood of confusion. This would apply to an individual who owns all the stock of a corporation, and to a corporation and a wholly owned subsidiary or a subsidiary of a wholly owned subsidiary. In this circumstance, additional representations or declarations should generally *not* be required, absent contradictory evidence.

1201.07(b)(ii) Joint Ownership or Ownership of Substantially All of the Other Entity

Either Applicant or Registrant Owns Substantially All of the Other Entity. In *Wella*, the applicant provided a declaration stating that the applicant owned *substantially all* of the stock of the registrant and that the applicant thus controlled the activities of the registrant, including the selection, adoption, and use of trademarks. *In re Wella A.G.*, 5 USPQ2d 1359, 1361 (TTAB 1987), rev'd on other grounds, 858 F.2d 725, 8 USPQ2d 1365 (Fed. Cir. 1988). The Board concluded that this declaration alone, absent contradictory evidence, established unity of control, a single source, and no likelihood of confusion. *Id.* Therefore, if *either* the applicant or the registrant owns substantially all of the other entity and asserts control over the activities of the other entity, including its trademarks, and there is no contradictory evidence, the examining attorney should conclude that unity of control is present, that the entities constitute a single source, and that there is no likelihood of confusion under §2(d). In such a case, the applicant should generally provide these assertions in the form of an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

Joint Ownership. The examining attorney may also accept an applicant's assertion of unity of control when the applicant is shown in USPTO records as a joint owner of the cited registration, or the owner of the registration is listed as a joint owner of the application, and the applicant submits a written statement asserting control over the use of the mark by virtue of joint ownership, if there is no contradictory evidence.

1201.07(b)(iii) When the Record Does Not Support a Presumption of Unity of Control

If neither the applicant nor the registrant owns all or substantially all of the other entity, and USPTO records do not show their joint ownership of the application or cited registration (*see* [TMEP §1201.07\(b\)\(ii\)](#)), the applicant bears a more substantial burden to establish that unity of control is present. For instance, if both the applicant and the registrant are wholly owned by a third common parent, the applicant would have to provide detailed evidence to establish how one sister corporation controlled the trademark activities of the other to establish unity of control to support the contention that the sister corporations constitute a single source. *See In re Pharmacia Inc.*, 2 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 1987); *Greyhound Corp. v. Armour Life Ins. Co.*, 214 USPQ 473 (TTAB 1982). Likewise, where an applicant and registrant have certain stockholders, directors, or officers in common, the applicant must demonstrate with detailed evidence or explanation how those relationships establish unity of control. *See Pneutek, Inc. v. Scherr*, 211 USPQ 824 (TTAB 1981). The applicant's evidence or explanation should generally be supported by an affidavit or a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

1201.07(b)(iv) When the Record Contradicts an Assertion of Unity of Control

In contrast to those circumstances where the relationship between the parties may support a presumption of unity of control or at least afford an applicant the opportunity to demonstrate unity of control, some relationships, by their very nature, contradict any claim that unity of control is present. For instance, if the relationship between the parties is that of licensor and licensee, unity of control will ordinarily not be present.

The licensing relationship suggests ownership in one party and control by that one party over only the use of a specific mark or marks, but not over the operations or activities of the licensee generally. Thus, there is no unity of control and no basis for concluding that the two parties form a single source. Precisely because unity of control is absent, a licensing agreement is necessary. The licensing agreement enables the licensor/owner to control specific activities to protect its interests as the sole source or sponsor of the goods or services provided under the mark. Therefore, in these situations, it is most unlikely that an applicant could establish unity of control to overcome a §2(d) refusal.

1202 Use of Subject Matter as Trademark

In an application under §1 of the Act, the examining attorney must determine whether the subject matter for which registration is sought is used as a trademark by reviewing all evidence (e.g., the specimen and any promotional material) of record in the application. *See In re Safariland Hunting Corp.*, 24 USPQ2d 1380, 1381 (TTAB 1992) (examining attorney should look primarily to the specimen to determine whether a designation would be perceived as a source indicator, but may also consider other evidence, if there is other evidence of record).

Not everything that a party adopts and uses with the intent that it function as a trademark necessarily achieves this goal or is legally capable of doing so, and not everything that is recognized or associated with a party is necessarily a registrable trademark. As the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals observed in *In re The Standard Oil Co.*, 275 F.2d 945, 947, 125 USPQ 227, 229 (C.C.P.A. 1960) :

The Trademark Act is not an act to register words but to register trademarks. Before there can be registrability, there must be a trademark (or a service mark) and, unless words have been so used, they cannot qualify for registration. Words are not registrable *merely* because they do not happen to be descriptive of the goods or services with which they are associated.

Sections 1 and 2 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1052](#), require that the subject matter presented for registration be a “trademark.” Section 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines that term as follows:

The term “trademark” includes any word, name, symbol, or device, or any combination thereof—

- (1) used by a person, or
- (2) which a person has a bona fide intention to use in commerce and applies to register on the principal register established by this Act,

- (1) used by a person, or
- (2) which a person has a bona fide intention to use in commerce and applies to register on the principal register established by this Act,

to identify and distinguish his or her goods, including a unique product, from those manufactured or sold by others and to indicate the source of the goods, even if that source is unknown.

Thus, §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), provide the statutory basis for refusal to register on the Principal Register subject matter that, due to its inherent nature or the manner in which it is used, does not function as a mark to identify and distinguish the applicant’s goods. The statutory basis for refusal of registration on the Supplemental Register of matter that does not function as a trademark is §§23(c) and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\)](#), [1127](#).

When the examining attorney refuses registration on the ground that the subject matter is not used as a trademark, the examining attorney must explain the specific reason for the conclusion that the subject matter is not used as a trademark. See [TMEP §§1202.01–1202.19](#) for a discussion of situations in which it may be appropriate, depending on the circumstances, for the examining attorney to refuse registration on the ground that the proposed mark does not function as a trademark, e.g., [TMEP §§1202.01](#) (trade names), [1202.02\(a\)–1202.02\(a\)\(viii\)](#) (functionality), [1202.03–1202.03\(g\)](#) (ornamentation), [1202.04](#) (informational matter), [1202.05–1202.05\(i\)](#) (color marks), [1202.06–1202.06\(c\)](#) (goods in trade), [1202.07–1202.07\(b\)](#) (columns or sections of publications), [1202.08–1202.08\(f\)](#) (title of single creative work), [1202.09–1202.09\(b\)](#) (names of artists and authors), [1202.11](#) (background designs and shapes), [1202.12](#) (varietal and cultivar names), [1202.16](#) (model or grade designations), [1202.17](#) (universal symbols), [1202.18](#) (hashtags), and [1202.19](#) (repeating patterns).

The presence of the letters “SM” or “TM” cannot transform an otherwise unregistrable designation into a registrable mark. *In re Remington Prods. Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1714, 1715 (TTAB 1987) ; *In re Anchor Hocking Corp.*, 223 USPQ 85, 88 (TTAB 1984) ; *In re Minnetonka, Inc.*, 212 USPQ 772, 779 n.12 (TTAB 1981) .

The issue of whether a designation functions as a mark usually is tied to the use of the mark, as evidenced by the specimen. Therefore, unless the drawing and description of the mark are dispositive of the failure to function without the need to consider a specimen, generally, no refusal on this basis will be issued in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), until the applicant has submitted a specimen(s) with an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)). However, in a §1(b) application for which no specimen has been submitted, if the examining attorney anticipates that a refusal will be made on the ground that the matter presented for registration does not function as a mark, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant’s attention in the first Office action. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis.

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for the examining attorney to issue a failure to function refusal where the mark on its face, as shown on the drawing and described in the description, reflects a failure to function. See *In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal in a §66(a) application).

See [TMEP §§1301.02–1301.02\(f\)](#) regarding use of subject matter as a service mark; [TMEP §§1302-1305](#) regarding use of subject matter as a collective mark; and [TMEP §§1306-1306.06\(c\)](#) regarding use of subject matter as a certification mark.

1202.01 Refusal of Matter Used Solely as a Trade Name

The name of a business or company is a trade name. The Trademark Act distinguishes trade names from trademarks and service marks by definition. While a trademark is used to identify and distinguish the trademark owner’s goods from those manufactured or sold by others and to indicate the source of the goods, “trade name” and “commercial name” are defined in §45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), as follows:

The terms “trade name” and “commercial name” mean any name used by a person to identify his or her business or vocation.

The Trademark Act does not provide for registration of trade names. *See In re Letica Corp.*, 226 USPQ 276, 277 (TTAB 1985) (“[T]here was a clear intention by the Congress to draw a line between indicia which perform only trade name functions and indicia which perform or also perform the function of trademarks or service marks.”).

If the examining attorney determines that matter for which registration is requested is merely a trade name, registration must be refused both on the Principal Register and on the Supplemental Register. The statutory basis for refusal of trademark registration on the ground that the matter is used merely as a trade name is §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), and, in the case of matter sought to be registered for services, §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#).

A designation may function as both a trade name and a trademark or service mark. *See In re Walker Process Equip. Inc.*, 233 F.2d 329, 332, 110 USPQ 41, 43 (C.C.P.A. 1956), *aff'g* 102 USPQ 443 (Comm’r Pats. 1954).

If subject matter presented for registration in an application is a trade name or part of a trade name, the examining attorney must determine whether it is also used as a trademark or service mark, by examining the specimen and other evidence of record in the application file. *See In re Diamond Hill Farms*, 32 USPQ2d 1383, 1384 (TTAB 1994) (holding that DIAMOND HILL FARMS, as used on containers for goods, is a trade name that identifies applicant as a business entity rather than a mark that identifies applicant’s goods and distinguishes them from those of others).

Whether matter that is a trade name (or a portion thereof) also performs the function of a trademark depends on the manner of its use and the probable impact of the use on customers. *See In re Supply Guys, Inc.*, 86 USPQ2d 1488, 1491 (TTAB 2008) (finding that the use of trade name in “Ship From” section of Federal Express label where it serves as a return address does not demonstrate trademark use as the term appears where customers would look for the name of the party shipping the package); *In re Unclaimed Salvage & Freight Co.*, 192 USPQ 165, 168 (TTAB 1976) (“It is our opinion that the foregoing material reflects use by applicant of the notation ‘UNCLAIMED SALVAGE & FREIGHT CO.’ merely as a commercial, business, or trade name serving to identify applicant as a viable business entity; and that this is or would be the general and likely impact of such use upon the average person encountering this material under normal circumstances and conditions surrounding the distribution thereof.”); *In re Lytle Eng'g & Mfg. Co.*, 125 USPQ 308 (TTAB 1960) (“‘LYTLE’ is applied to the container for applicant’s goods in a style of lettering distinctly different from the other portion of the trade name and is of such nature and prominence that it creates a separate and independent impression.”).

The presence of an entity designator in a name sought to be registered and the proximity of an address are both factors to be considered in determining whether a proposed mark is merely a trade name. *In re Univar Corp.*, 20 USPQ2d 1865, 1869 (TTAB 1991) (“[T]he mark ‘UNIVAR’ independently projects a separate commercial impression, due to its presentation in a distinctively bolder, larger and different type of lettering and, in some instances, its additional use in a contrasting color, and thus does more than merely convey information about a corporate relationship.”); *see also Book Craft, Inc. v. BookCrafters USA, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 724, 727 (TTAB 1984) (“That the invoices ... plainly show ... service mark use is apparent from the fact that, not only do the words ‘BookCrafters, Inc.’ appear in larger letters and a different style of print than the address, but they are accompanied by a design feature (the circularly enclosed ends of two books).”).

A determination of whether matter serves solely as a trade name rather than as a mark requires consideration of the way the mark is used, as evidenced by the specimen(s). Therefore, no refusal on that ground will be issued in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) of use in conjunction with an allegation of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#).

1202.02 Registration of Trade Dress

Trade dress constitutes a “symbol” or “device” within the meaning of §2 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052](#). *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 209-210, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1065-66 (2000). Trade dress originally included only the packaging or “dressing” of a product, but in recent years has been expanded to encompass the design of a product. It is usually defined as the “total image and overall appearance” of a product, or the totality of the elements, and “may include features such as size, shape, color or color combinations, texture, graphics.” *Two Pesos, Inc. v. Taco Cabana, Inc.*, 505 U.S. 763, 764 n.1, 23 USPQ2d 1081, 1082 n.1 (1992).

Thus, trade dress includes the design of a product (i.e., the product shape or configuration), the packaging in which a product is sold (i.e., the “dressing” of a product), the color of a product or of the packaging in which a product is sold, and the flavor of a product. *Wal-Mart*, 529 U.S. at 205, 54 USPQ2d at 1065 (design of children’s outfits constitutes product design); *Two Pesos*, 505 U.S. at 763, 23 USPQ2d at 1081 (interior of a restaurant is akin to product packaging); *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 34 USPQ2d 1161 (1995) (color alone may be protectible); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639 (TTAB 2006) (flavor is analogous to product design and may be protectible unless it is functional). However, this is not an exhaustive list, because “almost anything at all that is capable of carrying meaning” may be used as a “symbol” or “device” and constitute trade dress that identifies the source or origin of a product. *Qualitex*, 514 U.S. at 162, 34 USPQ2d at 1162. When it is difficult to determine whether the proposed mark is product packaging or product design, such “ambiguous” trade dress is treated as product design. *Wal-Mart*, 529 U.S. at 215, 54 USPQ2d at 1066. Trade dress marks may be used in connection with goods and services.

In some cases, the nature of a potential trade dress mark may not be readily apparent. A determination of whether the mark constitutes trade dress must be informed by the application content, including the drawing, the description of the mark, the identification of goods or services, and the specimen, if any. If it remains unclear whether the proposed mark constitutes trade dress, the examining attorney may call or e-mail the applicant to clarify the nature of the mark, or issue an Office action requiring information regarding the nature of the mark, as well as any other necessary clarifications, such as a clear drawing and an accurate description of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). The applicant’s response would then confirm whether the proposed mark is trade dress.

When an applicant applies to register a product design, product packaging, color, or other trade dress for goods or services, the examining attorney must separately consider two substantive issues: (1) functionality; and (2) distinctiveness. See *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg.Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 28-29, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1004-1005 (2001); *Two Pesos*, 505 U.S. at 775, 23 USPQ2d at 1086; *In re Morton-Norwich Prods., Inc.*, 671 F.2d 1332, 1343, 213 USPQ 9, 17 (C.C.P.A. 1982) . See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)–1202.02\(a\)\(viii\)](#) regarding functionality and [1202.02\(b\)–1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) and [1212–1212.10](#) regarding distinctiveness. In many cases, a refusal of registration may be necessary on both grounds. In any application where a product design is refused because it is functional, registration must also be refused on the ground that the proposed mark is nondistinctive because product design is never inherently distinctive. However, since product packaging may be inherently distinctive, in an application where product packaging is refused as functional, registration should also be refused on the ground that the proposed mark is nondistinctive. Even if it is ultimately determined that the product packaging is not functional, the alternative basis for refusal may stand.

If a proposed trade dress mark is ultimately determined to be functional, claims and evidence that the mark has acquired distinctiveness or secondary meaning are irrelevant and registration will be refused. *TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 33, 58 USPQ2d at 1007.

With respect to the functionality and distinctiveness issues in the specific context of color as a mark, see [TMEP §1202.05\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#).

1202.02(a) Functionality of Trade Dress

In general terms, trade dress is functional, and cannot serve as a trademark, if a feature of that trade dress is "essential to the use or purpose of the article or if it affects the cost or quality of the article." *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 165, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1163-64 (1995) (quoting *Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc.*, 456 U.S. 844, 850, n.10, 214 USPQ 1, 4, n.10 (1982)).

1202.02(a)(i) Statutory Basis for Functionality Refusal

Before October 30, 1998, there was no specific statutory reference to functionality as a ground for refusal, and functionality refusals were thus issued as failure-to-function refusals under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#).

Effective October 30, 1998, the Technical Corrections to Trademark Act of 1946, Pub. L. No. 105-330, §201, 112 Stat. 3064, 3069, amended the Trademark Act to expressly prohibit registration on either the Principal or Supplemental Register of functional matter:

- Section 2(e)(5) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#), prohibits registration on the Principal Register of "matter that, as a whole, is functional."
- Section 2(f) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), provides that matter that, as a whole, is functional may not be registered even on a showing that it has become distinctive.
- Section 23(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1091\(c\)](#), provides that a mark that, as a whole, is functional may not be registered on the Supplemental Register.
- Section 14(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064\(3\)](#), lists functionality as a ground that can be raised in a cancellation proceeding more than five years after the date of registration.
- Section 33(b)(8) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1115\(b\)\(8\)](#), lists functionality as a statutory defense to infringement in a suit involving an incontestable registration.

These amendments codified case law and the longstanding USPTO practice of refusing registration of functional matter.

1202.02(a)(ii) Purpose of Functionality Doctrine

The functionality doctrine, which prohibits registration of functional product features, is intended to encourage legitimate competition by maintaining a proper balance between trademark law and patent law. As the Supreme Court explained, in *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 164-165, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1163 (1995):

The functionality doctrine prevents trademark law, which seeks to promote competition by protecting a firm's reputation, from instead inhibiting legitimate competition by allowing a producer to control a useful product feature. It is the province of patent law, not trademark law, to encourage invention by granting inventors a monopoly over new product designs or functions for a limited time, 35 U.S.C. Sections 154, 173, after which competitors are free to use the innovation. If a product's functional features could be used as trademarks, however, a monopoly over such features could be obtained

without regard to whether they qualify as patents and could be extended forever (because trademarks may be renewed in perpetuity).

In other words, the functionality doctrine ensures that protection for utilitarian product features be properly sought through a limited-duration utility patent, and not through the potentially unlimited protection of a trademark registration. Upon expiration of a utility patent, the invention covered by the patent enters the public domain, and the functional features disclosed in the patent may then be copied by others – thus encouraging advances in product design and manufacture. In *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 34-35, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1007 (2001), the Supreme Court reiterated this rationale, also noting that the functionality doctrine is not affected by evidence of acquired distinctiveness.

Thus, even when the evidence establishes that consumers have come to associate a functional product feature with a single source, trademark protection will not be granted in light of the public policy reasons stated. *Id.*

1202.02(a)(iii) Background and Definitions

1202.02(a)(iii)(A) Functionality

Functional matter cannot be protected as a trademark. [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(5\)](#) and [\(f\)](#), [1064\(3\)](#), [1091\(c\)](#), and [1115\(b\)](#). A feature is functional as a matter of law if it is “essential to the use or purpose of the article or if it affects the cost or quality of the article.” *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 33, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001); *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 165, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1163-64 (1995); *Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc.*, 456 U.S. 844, 850, n.10, 214 USPQ 1, 4, n.10 (1982).

While some courts had developed a definition of functionality that focused solely on “competitive need” – thus finding a particular product feature functional only if competitors needed to copy that design in order to compete effectively – the Supreme Court held that this “was incorrect as a comprehensive definition” of functionality. *TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 33, 58 USPQ2d at 1006. The Court emphasized that where a product feature meets the traditional functionality definition – that is, it is essential to the use or purpose of the product or affects its cost or quality – then the feature is functional, regardless of the availability to competitors of other alternatives. *Id.*; *see also Valu Eng'g, Inc. v. Rexnord Corp.*, 278 F.3d 1268, 1276, 61 USPQ2d 1422, 1427 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (“Rather, we conclude that the [*TrafFix*] Court merely noted that once a product feature is found functional based on other considerations there is no need to consider the availability of alternative designs, because the feature cannot be given trade dress protection merely because there are alternative designs available” (footnote omitted).)

However, since the preservation of competition is an important policy underlying the functionality doctrine, competitive need, although not determinative, remains a significant consideration in functionality determinations. *Id.* at 1278, 1428.

The determination that a proposed mark is functional constitutes, for public policy reasons, an absolute bar to registration on either the Principal or the Supplemental Register, regardless of evidence showing that the proposed mark has acquired distinctiveness. *See TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 29-33, 58 USPQ2d at 1005-1007; *see also In re Controls Corp. of Am.*, 46 USPQ2d 1308, 1312 (TTAB 1998) (rejecting applicant’s claim that “registration on the Supplemental Register of a de jure functional configuration is permissible if the design is ‘capable’ of distinguishing applicant’s goods”). Thus, if an applicant responds to a functionality refusal under §2(e)(5), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#), by submitting an amendment seeking registration on the Supplemental

Register that is not made in the alternative, such an amendment does not introduce a new issue warranting a nonfinal Office action. See [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). Instead, the functionality refusal must be maintained and made final, if appropriate, under §§23(c) and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\), 1127](#), as that is the statutory authority governing a functionality refusal on the Supplemental Register. Additionally, for functionality refusals, the associated nondistinctiveness refusal must be withdrawn. See *In re Heatcon, Inc.*, 116 USPQ2d 1366, 1370 (TTAB 2015) .

See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)\(v\)–1202.02\(a\)\(v\)\(D\)](#) regarding evidentiary considerations pertaining to functionality refusals.

1202.02(a)(iii)(B) “De Jure” and “De Facto” Functionality

Prior to 2002, the USPTO used the terms “ *de facto*” and “ *de jure*” in assessing whether “subject matter” (usually a product feature or the configuration of the goods) presented for registration was functional. This distinction originated with the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals’ decision in *In re Morton-Norwich Prods., Inc.*, 671 F.2d 1332, 213 USPQ 9 (C.C.P.A. 1982) , which was discussed by the Federal Circuit in *Valu Eng'g, Inc. v. Rexnord Corp.*, 278 F.3d 1268, 1274, 61 USPQ2d 1422, 1425 (Fed. Cir. 2002):

Our decisions distinguish *de facto* functional features, which may be entitled to trademark protection, from *de jure* functional features, which are not. ‘In essence, *de facto* functional means that the design of a product has a function, i.e., a bottle of any design holds fluid.’ *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 1484, 222 USPQ 1, 3 (Fed. Cir. 1984). *De facto* functionality does not necessarily defeat registrability. *Morton-Norwich*, 671 F.2d at 1337, 213 USPQ at 13 (A design that is *de facto* functional, i.e., ‘functional’ in the lay sense ... may be legally recognized as an indication of source.’). *De jure* functionality means that the product has a particular shape ‘because it works better in this shape.’ *Smith*, 734 F.2d at 1484, 222 USPQ at 3.

However, in three Supreme Court decisions involving functionality – *Traffix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 58 USPQ2d 1001 (2001), *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 54 USPQ2d 1065 (2000), and *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 34 USPQ2d 1161 (1995) – the Court did not use the “ *de facto/de jure*” distinction. Nor were these terms used when the Trademark Act was amended to expressly prohibit registration of matter that is “functional.” Technical Corrections to Trademark Act of 1946, Pub. L. No. 105-330, §201, 112 Stat. 3064, 3069 (1998). Accordingly, in general, examining attorneys no longer make this distinction in Office actions that refuse registration based on functionality.

De facto functionality is not a ground for refusal. *In re Ennco Display Sys. Inc.*, 56 USPQ2d 1279, 1282 (TTAB 2000) ; *In re Parkway Mach. Corp.*, 52 USPQ2d 1628, 1631 n.4 (TTAB 1999) .

1202.02(a)(iv) Burden of Proof in Functionality Determinations

The examining attorney must establish a prima facie case that the proposed trade dress mark sought to be registered is functional in order to make and maintain the §2(e)(5) functionality refusal. See *In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.* , 675 F.3d 1368, 1374, 102 USPQ2d 1372, 1376 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *Textron, Inc. v. U.S. Int'l Trade Comm'n*, 753 F.2d 1019, 1025, 224 USPQ 625, 629 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 1484, 222 USPQ 1, 3 (Fed. Cir. 1984). To do so, the examining attorney must not only examine the application content (i.e., the drawing, the description of the mark, the identification of goods or services, and the specimen, if any), but also conduct independent research to obtain evidentiary support for the refusal. In applications where there is reason to believe that the proposed mark may be functional, but the evidence is lacking to issue the §2(e)(5) refusal in the first Office action, a request for information

pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) must be issued to obtain information from the applicant so that an informed decision about the validity of the functionality refusal can be made.

The burden then shifts to the applicant to present “competent evidence” to rebut the examining attorney’s prima facie case of functionality. See *In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d at 1374, 102 USPQ2d at 1374; *Textron, Inc. v. U.S. Int’l Trade Comm’n*, 753 F.2d at 1025, 224 USPQ at 629; *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d at 1484, 222 USPQ at 3; *In re Bio-Medicus Inc.*, 31 USPQ2d 1254, 1257 n.5 (TTAB 1993). The “competent evidence” standard requires proof by preponderant evidence. *In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d at 1374, 102 USPQ2d at 1377.

The functionality determination is a question of fact, and depends on the totality of the evidence presented in each particular case. *In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d at 1372, 102 USPQ2d at 1375; *Valu Eng’g, Inc. v. Rexnord Corp.*, 278 F.3d 1268, 1273, 61 USPQ2d 1422, 1424 (Fed. Cir. 2002); *In re Udor U.S.A., Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d 1978, 1979 (TTAB 2009) ; *In re Caterpillar Inc.*, 43 USPQ2d 1335, 1338 (TTAB 1997) . While there is no set amount of evidence that an examining attorney must present to establish a prima facie case of functionality, it is clear that there must be evidentiary support for the refusal in the record. See, e.g., *In re Morton-Norwich Prods., Inc.*, 671 F.2d 1332, 1342, 213 USPQ 9, 16-17 (C.C.P.A. 1982) (admonishing both the examining attorney and the Board for failing to support the functionality determination with even “one iota of evidence”).

If the design sought to be registered as a mark is the subject of a utility patent that discloses the feature’s utilitarian advantages, the applicant bears an especially “heavy burden of showing that the feature is not functional” and “overcoming the strong evidentiary inference of functionality.” *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 30, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1005 (2001); *Udor U.S.A., Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d at 1979-80; see [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(v\)\(A\)](#).

1202.02(a)(v) Evidence and Considerations Regarding Functionality Determinations

A determination of functionality normally involves consideration of one or more of the following factors, commonly known as the “*Morton-Norwich* factors”:

- (1) the existence of a utility patent that discloses the utilitarian advantages of the design sought to be registered;
- (2) advertising by the applicant that touts the utilitarian advantages of the design;
- (3) facts pertaining to the availability of alternative designs; and
- (4) facts pertaining to whether the design results from a comparatively simple or inexpensive method of manufacture.

In re Becton, Dickinson & Co., 675 F.3d 1368, 1374-75, 102 USPQ2d 1372, 1377 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Morton-Norwich Prods., Inc.*, 671 F.2d 1332, 1340-1341, 213 USPQ 9, 15-16 (C.C.P.A. 1982) .

Since relevant technical information is often more readily available to an applicant, the applicant will often be the source of most of the evidence relied upon by the examining attorney in establishing a prima facie case of functionality in an ex parte case. *In re Teledyne Indus. Inc.* , 696 F.2d 968, 971, 217 USPQ 9, 11 (Fed. Cir. 1982); *In re Witco Corp.*, 14 USPQ2d 1557, 1560 (TTAB 1989) . Therefore, in an application for a trade dress mark, when there is reason to believe that the proposed mark may be functional, the examining attorney must perform a search for evidence to support the *Morton-Norwich* factors. In applications where there is reason to believe that the proposed mark may be functional, the first Office action must include a request for information under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), requiring the applicant to provide information

necessary to permit an informed determination concerning the functionality of the proposed mark. *See In re Babies Beat Inc.*, 13 USPQ2d 1729, 1731 (TTAB 1990) (finding that registration is properly refused where applicant failed to comply with examining attorney's request for copies of patent applications and other patent information). Such a request should be issued for most product design marks.

Accordingly, the examining attorney's request for information should pertain to the *Morton-Norwich* factors and: (1) ask the applicant to provide copies of any patent(s) or any pending or abandoned patent application(s); (2) ask the applicant to provide any available advertising, promotional, or explanatory material concerning the goods/services, particularly any material specifically related to the features embodied in the proposed mark; (3) inquire of the applicant whether alternative designs are available; and (4) inquire whether the features sought to be registered make the product easier or cheaper to manufacture. The examining attorney should examine the specimen(s) for information relevant to the *Morton-Norwich* factors, and conduct independent research of applicant's and competitors' websites, industry practice and standards, and legal databases such as LexisNexis®. The examining attorney may also consult USPTO patent records.

It is not necessary to consider all the *Morton-Norwich* factors in every case. The Supreme Court held that “[w]here the design is functional under the *Inwood* formulation there is no need to proceed further to consider if there is a competitive necessity for the feature.” *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 33, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001). *see also In re Loggerhead Tools, LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1429, 1434 (TTAB 2016) (finding that the first two *Morton-Norwich* factors established that applicant's applied-for mark is functional, before considering the remaining factors). Moreover, there is no requirement that all four of the *Morton-Norwich* factors weigh in favor of functionality to support a refusal. *See Valu Eng'g, Inc. v. Rexnord Corp.*, 278 F.3d 1268, 1276, 61 USPQ2d 1422, 1427 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (“once a product feature is found functional based on other considerations there is no need to consider the availability of alternative designs”); *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d 1042 (TTAB 2013) (finding the flavor peppermint functional for nitroglycerin lingual spray based on evidence that peppermint oil, which imparts a flavor of peppermint, can improve the effectiveness of sublingual nitroglycerin spray); *In re Udor U.S.A., Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d 1978 (TTAB 2009) (affirming the functionality refusal of “a round disk head on a sprayer nozzle” where the third and fourth factors showed that applicant's competitors manufactured and marketed spray nozzles with similar features, the shape was preferred in the industry, and it appeared efficient, economical, and advantageous, even though applicant's utility patent and advertising did not weigh in favor of functionality); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639 (TTAB 2006) (holding orange flavor for pharmaceuticals to be functional based on applicant's touting of the utilitarian advantages of the flavor and the lack of evidence of acceptable alternatives, even though the mark was not the subject of a patent or patent application and there was no evidence that the flavor affected the cost of the product); *In re Gibson Guitar Corp.*, 61 USPQ2d 1948 (TTAB 2001) (finding that since there was no utility patent, and no evidence that applicant's guitar configuration resulted from a simpler or cheaper method of manufacture, these factors did not weigh in Board's decision).

Evidence that the proposed mark is the subject of a utility patent that discloses the utilitarian advantages of the configuration at issue can be sufficient in itself to support a functionality refusal. *TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 33, 58 USPQ2d at 1007 (“There is no need, furthermore, to engage ... in speculation about other design possibilities”); *In re Howard Leight Indus., LLC*, 80 USPQ2d 1507, 1515 (TTAB 2006) (“[W]e find that applicant's expired utility patent, which specifically discloses and claims the utilitarian advantages of applicant's earplug configuration and which clearly shows that the shape at issue ‘affects the . . . quality of the device,’ is a sufficient basis in itself for finding that the configuration is functional, given the strong weight to be accorded such patent evidence under *TrafFix*.”). See [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(v\)\(A\)](#) for further discussion of utility patents.

It is important that the functionality inquiry focus on the utility of the feature or combination of features claimed as protectable trade dress. *Morton-Norwich*, 671 F.2d at 1338, 213 USPQ at 13. Generally, dissecting the design into its individual features and analyzing the utility of each separate feature does not establish that the overall design is functional. See [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#); *Teledyne*, 696 F.2d at 971, 217 USPQ at 11. However, it is sometimes helpful to analyze the design from the standpoint of its various features. See *Elmer v. ICC Fabricating Inc.*, 67 F.3d 1571, 1579-80, 36 USPQ2d 1417, 1422-23 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (rejecting the argument that the combination of individually functional features in the configuration resulted in an overall nonfunctional product design); *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 1484, 222 USPQ 1, 2 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (affirming the functionality determination, where the Board had initially considered the six individual features of the design, and then had concluded that the design as a whole was functional); *In re Controls Corp. of Am.*, 46 USPQ2d 1308, 1312 (TTAB 1998) (finding the entire configuration at issue functional because it consisted of several individual features, each of which was functional in nature).

Where the evidence shows that the overall design is functional, the inclusion of a few arbitrary or otherwise nonfunctional features in the design will not change the result. See *In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d at 1374, 102 USPQ2d at 1376; *Textron, Inc. v. U.S. Int'l Trade Comm'n*, 753 F.2d 1019, 1025, 224 USPQ 625, 628-29 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re Vico Prods. Mfg. Co.*, 229 USPQ 364, 368 (TTAB 1985) .

In the limited circumstances where a proposed trade dress mark is not functional overall, but contains insignificant elements that are functional, the examining attorney must issue a requirement for an amended drawing and allow applicant to remove or delete the functional elements from the drawing or depict them in broken or dotted lines to indicate that they are not features of the mark. See [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(i\)](#) regarding drawings in trade dress applications.

The question of whether a product feature is “functional” should not be confused with whether that product feature performs a “function” (i.e., it is *de facto* functional) or “fails to function” as a trademark. See [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#) regarding *de facto* functionality. Usually, most objects perform a function, for example, a bottle holds liquid and a lamp provides light. However, only certain configurations that allow an object to work better are functional under §2(e)(5). As the *Morton-Norwich* court noted, "it is the 'utilitarian' design of a 'utilitarian' object with which we are concerned." 671 F.2d at 1338, 213 USPQ at 14. Similarly, a product feature that is deemed not functional under §2(e)(5) may lack distinctiveness such that it fails to function as a trademark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §§1202.02\(b\)–1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for distinctiveness of trade dress.

1202.02(a)(v)(A) Utility Patents and Design Patents

Utility Patents

Utility patents cover the invention or discovery of a new and useful process, machine, article of manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof. 35 U.S.C. §101.

In *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 29-30, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1005 (2001), the Supreme Court resolved a circuit split regarding the proper weight to be afforded a utility patent in the functionality determination, stating:

A utility patent is strong evidence that the features therein claimed are functional. If trade dress protection is sought for those features the strong evidence of functionality based on the previous patent adds great weight to the statutory presumption that features are deemed functional until proved otherwise by the party seeking trade dress protection. Where the expired patent claimed the features in question, one

who seeks to establish trade dress protection must carry the heavy burden of showing that the feature is not functional, for instance by showing that it is merely an ornamental, incidental, or arbitrary aspect of the device.

See In re Becton, Dickinson & Co., 675 F.3d 1368, 1375, 102 USPQ2d 1372, 1377 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (utility patent supported functionality of closure cap for blood-collection tubes); *In re Bose Corp.*, 772 F.2d 866, 227 USPQ 1 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (shape of loudspeaker system enclosure found functional, per patent disclosure containing evidence of functionality); *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622 (TTAB 2009) (patent evidence supported bicycle wheel configuration was functional); *In re Udor U.S.A., Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d 1978 (TTAB 2009)(functionality of spray nozzle head not supported by patent claims); *In re Visual Commc'ns Co.*, 51 USPQ2d 1141 (TTAB 1999) (patent disclosed functionality of light-emitting diode housings); *In re Edward Ski Prods., Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 2001 (TTAB 1999) (ski mask found functional based on patent evidence); *In re Caterpillar Inc.*, 43 USPQ2d 1335 (TTAB 1997) (patent disclosures supported functionality of elevated sprocket configuration).

The Court in *TrafFix* went on to hold that where the evidence includes a utility patent that claims the product features at issue, it is unnecessary to consider evidence relating to the availability of alternative designs:

There is no need, furthermore, to engage, as did the Court of Appeals, in speculation about other design possibilities, such as using three or four springs which might serve the same purpose. Here, the functionality of the spring design means that competitors need not explore whether other spring juxtapositions might be used. The dual-spring design is not an arbitrary flourish in the configuration of MDI's product; it is the reason the device works. Other designs need not be attempted.

TrafFix, 532 U.S. at 33-34, 58 USPQ2d at 1007 (citation omitted).

Therefore, when presented with facts similar to those in *TrafFix* (i.e., where there is a utility patent establishing the utilitarian nature of the product design at issue), the examining attorney may properly issue a final functionality refusal based primarily on the utility patent. *In re Howard Leight Indus., LLC*, 80 USPQ2d 1507, 1515 (TTAB 2006). Where functionality appears to be an issue, in the first Office action, the examining attorney should ask the applicant to provide copies of any active, pending, or expired patent(s), and any pending or abandoned patent application(s). [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); *see Valu Eng'g, Inc. v. Rexnord Corp.*, 278 F.3d 1268, 1279, 61 USPQ2d 1422, 1429 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (“We agree with the Board that an abandoned patent application should be considered under the first *Morton-Norwich* factor, because an applied-for utility patent that never issued has evidentiary significance for the statements and claims made in the patent application concerning the utilitarian advantages, just as an issued patent has evidentiary significance.”).

It is not necessary that the utility patent be owned by the applicant; a third-party utility patent is also relevant to the functionality determination, if the patent claims the features in the product design sought to be registered. *See AS Holdings, Inc. v. H & C Milcor, Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1829, 1834-35 (TTAB 2013); *In re Mars, Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d 1859, 1861 (TTAB 2013); *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d at 1627; *In re Am. Nat'l Can Co.*, 41 USPQ2d 1841, 1843 (TTAB 1997); *In re Virshup*, 42 USPQ2d 1403, 1405 (TTAB 1997); *In re Cabot Corp.*, 15 USPQ2d 1224 (TTAB 1990). In addition, a third-party patent may include other evidence directly related to the functionality of a proposed mark. In *Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, the applicant sought to register the flavor of peppermint for use in connection with pharmaceutical preparations of nitroglycerin in the form of a lingual spray. The examining attorney made of record a third-party patent that described the results of two studies demonstrating that peppermint oil had therapeutic properties in the applicant's field of goods. *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d 1042, 1046-48 (TTAB 2013). Therefore,

the examining attorney may also consult patent databases, including the USPTO's patent records, to see if utility patents owned by applicant's competitors disclose the functional advantages of the product design that the applicant seeks to register.

It is important to read the patent to determine whether the patent actually claims the features presented in the proposed mark. If it does, the utility patent is strong evidence that the particular product features claimed as trade dress are functional. If it does not, or if the features are referenced in the patent, but only as arbitrary or incidental features, then the probative value of the patent as evidence of functionality is substantially diminished or negated entirely. *TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 34, 58 USPQ2d at 1007 (noting that where a manufacturer seeks to protect arbitrary, incidental, or ornamental features of a product found in the patent claims, such as arbitrary curves in the legs or an ornamental pattern painted on the springs, functionality will not be established if the manufacturer can prove that those aspects do not serve a purpose within the terms of utility patent); *In re Udor U.S.A., Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d 1978, 80-82 (TTAB 2009) (finding that where the patent's language and a detailed comparison between the identified features of the patent drawing with the visible features of the trademark drawing established that the patent claims involved components neither shown nor described in the trademark design, the utility patent did not support a finding of functionality); *see also Black & Decker Inc. v. Hoover Serv. Ctr.*, 886 F.2d 1285, 12 USPQ2d 1250 (Fed. Cir. 1989) (lower court's reliance on and misinterpretation of a patent not in evidence as support for a finding of functionality was clear error); *In re Zippo Mfg. Co.*, 50 USPQ2d 1852 (TTAB 1999) (configuration of cigarette lighter not functional since patent covered slightly different exterior features and claimed internal mechanism); *In re Weber-Stephen Prods. Co.*, 3 USPQ2d 1659 (TTAB 1987) (patent evidence did not show utilitarian advantages of barbeque grill design sought to be registered). Where a utility patent claims more than what is sought to be registered, this fact does not establish the nonfunctionality of the product design, if the patent shows that the feature claimed as a trademark is an essential or integral part of the invention and has utilitarian advantages. *Cf. TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 31, 58 USPQ2d at 1006-07 (nothing in the applied-for dual-spring traffic sign design pointed to arbitrary features).

The examining attorney should consider both the numbered claims and the disclosures in the written description, drawings, and abstract of the patent. In *Leight*, the Board found functionality based on both the claims and the disclosure. The Board rejected the applicant's argument that the examining attorney erred in looking to the claims made in applicant's patent, noting that the Supreme Court in *TrafFix* repeatedly referred to a patent's claims as evidence of functionality. *Leight*, 80 USPQ2d at 1510-11. The examining attorney should also consider other evidence described in a patent that is relevant to the functionality of the mark at issue. *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d at 1046-47; *see also In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d 1368, 1375, 102 USPQ2d 1372, 1377 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (“[S]tatements in a patent's specification illuminating the purpose served by a design may constitute equally strong evidence of functionality.”); *In re Loggerhead Tools, LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1429, 1431-32 (TTAB 2016) (indicating that evidence of functionality in a patent is not limited to language in the claims themselves).

Statements regarding utilitarian advantages of the design made in the course of the prosecution of the patent application can also be very strong evidence of functionality. *TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 32, 58 USPQ2d at 1006 (“These statements [regarding specific functional advantages of the product design] made in the patent applications and in the course of procuring the patents demonstrate the functionality of the design. MDI does not assert that any of these representations are mistaken or inaccurate, and this is further strong evidence of the functionality of the dual-spring design.”); *M-5 Steel Mfg., Inc. v. O'Hagin's Inc.*, 61 USPQ2d 1086, 1096 (TTAB 2001) .

The fact that the proposed mark is *not* the subject of a utility patent does not establish that a feature of the proposed mark is nonfunctional. *TrafFix*, 532 U.S. at 32, 35, 58 USPQ2d at 1006-07; *In re Gibson Guitar Corp.*, 61 USPQ2d 1948, 1950 n.3, (TTAB 2001) .

Design Patents

Design patents cover the invention of a new, original, and ornamental design for an article of manufacture. 35 U.S.C. §171. A design patent is a factor that weighs against a finding of functionality, because design patents by definition protect only ornamental and nonfunctional features. However, ownership of a design patent does not in itself establish that a product feature is nonfunctional, and can be outweighed by other evidence supporting the functionality determination. *See In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d at 1375, 102 USPQ2d at 1377; *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 1485, 222 USPQ 1, 3 (Fed. Cir. 1984); *Caterpillar*, 43 USPQ2d at 1339; *Am. Nat'l Can Co.*, 41 USPQ2d at 1843; *In re Witco Corp.*, 14 USPQ2d 1557, 1559 (TTAB 1989); *see also In re Loggerhead Tools, LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1429, 1432-33 (TTAB 2016) (“absent identity between the design patent and proposed mark . . . , similar design patents lack sufficient evidentiary value” to overcome other evidence showing that the proposed mark was functional, especially in view of a utility patent that disclosed the utilitarian advantages of the claimed feature) (citing *Becton, Dickinson*, 375 F. 3d at 1375, 102 USPQ2d at 1377).

1202.02(a)(v)(B) Advertising, Promotional, or Explanatory Material in Functionality Determinations

The applicant’s own advertising touting the utilitarian aspects of its product design or product packaging is often strong evidence supporting a functionality refusal. *See, e.g., In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d 1368, 1375-76, 102 USPQ2d 1372, 1377-78 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Loggerhead Tools, LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1429, 1433 (TTAB 2016); *AS Holdings, Inc. v. H & C Milcor, Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1829 (TTAB 2013); *Kistner Concrete Prods., Inc. v. Contech Arch Techs., Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d 1912 (TTAB 2011); *Mag Instrument, Inc. v. Brinkmann Corp.*, 96 USPQ2d 1701 (TTAB 2010); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639 (TTAB 2006); *In re Gibson Guitar Corp.*, 61 USPQ2d 1948 (TTAB 2001); *M-5 Steel Mfg., Inc. v. O’Hagin’s Inc.*, 61 USPQ2d 1086 (TTAB 2001); *In re Visual Commc’ns Co.*, 51 USPQ2d 1141 (TTAB 1999); *In re Edward Ski Prods., Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 2001 (TTAB 1999); *In re Caterpillar Inc.*, 43 USPQ2d 1335 (TTAB 1997); *In re Bio-Medicus Inc.*, 31 USPQ2d 1254 (TTAB 1993); *In re Witco Corp.*, 14 USPQ2d 1557 (TTAB 1989).

An applicant will often assert that statements in its promotional materials touting the utilitarian advantages of the product feature are mere “puffery” and, thus, entitled to little weight in the functionality analysis. However, where the advertising statements clearly emphasize specific utilitarian features of the design claimed as a mark, the Board will reject such assertions of “puffing.” *See, e.g., Gibson Guitar*, 61 USPQ2d at 1951; *Goodyear Tire and Rubber Co. v. Interco Tire Corp.*, 49 USPQ2d 1705, 1716-17 (TTAB 1998); *Bio-Medicus*, 31 USPQ2d at 1260 (TTAB 1993); *Witco*, 14 USPQ2d at 1559-61 (TTAB 1989).

In *Gibson Guitar*, the Board found the design of a guitar body to be functional, noting that applicant’s literature clearly indicated that the shape of applicant’s guitar produced a better musical sound. Applicant’s advertisements stated that “[t]his unique body shape creates a sound which is much more balanced and less ‘muddy’ than other ordinary dreadnought acoustics.” 61 USPQ2d at 1951.

Where functionality appears to be an issue, in the first Office action, the examining attorney must ask the applicant to provide any available advertising, promotional, or explanatory material concerning the goods/services, particularly any material specifically related to the features embodied in the proposed mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). The examining attorney should also examine the specimen(s), and check to see if the applicant has a website on which the product is advertised or described.

In addition, examining attorney may check the websites of applicant's competitors for evidence of functionality. *See In re Van Valkenburgh*, 97 USPQ2d 1757, 1762-63, (TTAB 2011) ; *Gibson Guitar*, 61 USPQ2d at 1951. Industry and trade publications and computer databases may also be consulted to determine whether others offer similar designs and features or have written about the applicant's design and its functional features or characteristics. In *Gibson Guitar*, the record included an advertisement obtained from the website of a competitor whose guitar appeared to be identical in shape to applicant's configuration, touting the acoustical advantages of the shape of the guitar. 61 USPQ2d at 1951.

1202.02(a)(v)(C) Availability of Alternative Designs in Functionality Determinations

An applicant attempting to rebut a prima facie case of functionality will often submit evidence of alternative designs to demonstrate that there is no "competitive need" in the industry for the applicant's particular product design. *See* [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(iii\)\(A\)](#). In order to be probative, the alternative design evidence must pertain to the same category of goods as the applicant's goods. *See, e.g., In re Zippo Mfg. Co.*, 50 USPQ2d 1852, 1854 (TTAB 1999) ; *In re EBSCO Indus. Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1917, 1920 (TTAB 1997) .

However, in *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 58 USPQ2d 1001 (2001), the Supreme Court clearly indicated that if the record shows that a design is essential to the use or purpose of a product, or if it affects the cost or quality of the product, it is unnecessary to consider whether there is a competitive need for the product feature. The Court explained:

[W]e have said "in general terms, a product feature is functional, and cannot serve as a trademark, if it is essential to the use or purpose of the article or if it affects the cost or quality of the article." Expanding upon the meaning of this phrase, we have observed that a functional feature is one the "exclusive use of [which] would put competitors at a significant non-reputation-related disadvantage." The Court of Appeals in the instant case seemed to interpret this language to mean that a necessary test for functionality is "whether the particular product configuration is a competitive necessity." . . . This was incorrect as a comprehensive definition. As explained in *Qualitex, supra*, and *Inwood, supra*, a feature is also functional when it is essential to the use or purpose of the device or when it affects the cost or quality of the device . . . *Where the design is functional under the Inwood formulation there is no need to proceed further to consider if there is a competitive necessity for the feature.*

* * *

There is no need, furthermore, to engage, as did the Court of Appeals, in speculation about other design possibilities, such as using three or four springs which might serve the same purpose. Here, the functionality of the spring design means that competitors need not explore whether other spring juxtapositions might be used. The dual-spring design is not an arbitrary flourish in the configuration of MDI's product; it is the reason the device works. Other designs need not be attempted (emphasis added).

TrafFix, 532 U.S. at 32-34, 58 USPQ2d at 1006-1007 (citations and additional internal quotations omitted); *see also In re Becton, Dickinson & Co.*, 675 F.3d 1368, 1376, 102 USPQ2d 1372, 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (quoting *Valu Eng'g Inc. v. Rexnord Corp.*, 278 F.3d 1268, 1276, 61 USPQ2d 1422, 1427 (Fed. Cir. 2002)) ("[I]f functionality is found based on other considerations, there is 'no need to consider the availability of alternative designs, because the feature cannot be given trade dress protection merely because there are alternative designs available.'").

Nonetheless, since the preservation of competition is an important policy underlying the functionality doctrine, competitive need generally remains an important factor in a functionality determination. *See Valu*

Eng'g, Inc., 278 F.3d at 1277, 61 USPQ2d at 1428 (“[I]n determining ‘functionality,’ the Board must assess the effect registration of a mark would have on competition.”).

Accordingly, the examining attorney should request information about alternative designs in the initial Office action, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), i.e., inquire whether alternative designs are available for the feature embodied in the proposed mark and whether the alternatives are more costly to produce.

Where the evidence indicates that the applicant’s configuration is the best or one of a few superior designs available, this evidence will strongly support a finding of functionality. *See, e.g., In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622, 1636 (TTAB 2009) (“[T]he question is not whether there are alternative designs that perform the same basic function, but whether the available designs work ‘equally well.’”) (citation omitted); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639, 1645-46 (TTAB 2006) (concluding that, since the record showed that orange flavor is one of the most popular flavors for medicine, it cannot be said that there are true or significant number of alternatives); *In re Gibson Guitar Corp.*, 61 USPQ2d 1948, 1951 (TTAB 2001) (finding that applicant had not shown there were alternative guitar shapes that could produce the same sound as applicant’s configuration, and noting that the record contained an advertisement obtained from the website of a competitor, whose guitar appeared to be identical in shape to applicant’s configuration, which stated that the shape of the guitar produces a better sound).

A configuration of a product or its packaging that embodies a superior design feature and provides a competitive advantage to the user is functional. In *N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d at 1648-49, the Board found that by masking the unpleasant taste of the medicinal ingredients in pharmaceuticals, “flavor performs a utilitarian function that cannot be monopolized without hindering competition in the pharmaceutical trade. To allow registration of ‘an orange flavor’ as a trademark would give applicant potentially perpetual protection for this flavor, resulting in hindrance of competition.”

Functionality may be established by a single competitively significant application in the recited identification of goods, even if there is no anticompetitive effect in other areas of use, since competitors in that single area could be adversely affected. *Valu Eng'g*, 278 F.3d at 1278, 61 USPQ2d at 1428 (“[I]f the Board identifies *any* competitively significant single use in the recited identification of goods for which the mark as a whole is functional, the Board should deny registration.”).

If evidence shows the existence of a number of functionally equivalent alternative designs that work “equally well,” such that competitors do not need applicant’s design to compete effectively, this factor may not support functionality. *Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d at 1636, citing *Valu Eng'g*, 278 F.3d at 1276, 61 USPQ2d at 1427. However, once deemed functional under other *Morton-Norwich* factors, the claimed trade dress cannot be registered merely because there are functionally equivalent alternative designs. *Valu Eng'g*, 278 F.3d at 1276, 61 USPQ2d at 1427. Existence of comparable alternative designs does not transform a functional design into a nonfunctional design. *Id.*

1202.02(a)(v)(D) Ease or Economy of Manufacture in Functionality Determinations

A product feature is functional if it is essential to the use or purpose of the product *or if it affects the cost or quality of the product*. *Inwood Laboratories, Inc. v. Ives Laboratories, Inc.*, 456 U.S. 844, 850 n.10, 214 USPQ 1, 4 n.10 (1982) (emphasis added). Therefore, a showing that a product design or product packaging results from a comparatively simple or inexpensive method of manufacture will support a finding that the claimed trade dress is functional.

In many cases, there is little or no evidence pertaining to this factor. However, the examining attorney should still ask the applicant for information, under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), as to whether the subject design makes the product simpler or less costly to manufacture, since evidence on this issue weighs strongly in favor of a finding of functionality. *See, e.g., TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 32, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001); *In re Virshup*, 42 USPQ2d 1403, 1407 (TTAB 1997). Statements pertaining to the cost or ease of manufacture may sometimes also be found in informational or advertising materials. *See M-5 Steel Mfg., Inc. v. O'Hagin's Inc.*, 61 USPQ2d 1086, 1097 (TTAB 2001) (statements in promotional material that applicant's design results in reduced installation costs found to be evidence of the functionality of applicant's configurations of metal ventilating ducts and vents for tile or concrete roofs).

While evidence showing that a product feature results from a comparatively simple or inexpensive method of manufacture supports a finding that the design is functional, the opposite is not necessarily the case. That is, assertions by the applicant that its design is more expensive or more difficult to make, or that the design does not affect the cost, will not establish that the configuration is not functional. *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622, 1637 (TTAB 2009) (“Even at a higher manufacturing cost, applicant would have a competitive advantage for what is essentially, as claimed in the patents, a superior quality wheel.”); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639, 1646 (TTAB 2006). Designs that work better or serve a more useful purpose may, indeed, be more expensive and difficult to produce.

1202.02(a)(vi) Aesthetic Functionality

“Aesthetic functionality” refers to situations where the feature may not provide a truly utilitarian advantage in terms of product performance, but provides other competitive advantages. For example, in *Brunswick Corp. v. British Seagull Ltd.*, 35 F.3d 1527, 1531, 1533, 32 USPQ2d 1120, 1122, 1124 (Fed. Cir. 1994), *cert. denied*, 514 U.S. 1050 (1995), the Federal Circuit affirmed the Board's determination that the color black for outboard motors was functional because, while it had no utilitarian effect on the mechanical working of the engines, it nevertheless provided other identifiable competitive advantages, i.e., ease of coordination with a variety of boat colors and reduction in the apparent size of the engines.

The concept of “aesthetic functionality” (as opposed to “utilitarian functionality”) has for many years been the subject of much confusion. While the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals (the predecessor to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit) appeared to reject the doctrine of aesthetic functionality in *In re DC Comics, Inc.*, 689 F.2d 1042, 1047-1050, 215 USPQ 394, 399-401 (C.C.P.A. 1982), the Supreme Court later referred to aesthetic functionality as a valid legal concept in *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 33, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001). The confusion regarding aesthetic functionality stems in part from widespread misuse of the term “aesthetic functionality” in cases involving ornamentation issues, with some courts having mistakenly expanded the category of “functional” marks to include matter that is solely ornamental, essentially on the theory that such matter serves an “aesthetic function” or “ornamentation function.” It is this incorrect use of the term “aesthetic functionality” in connection with ornamentation cases that was rejected by the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals. *See In re DC Comics, Inc.*, 689 F.2d 1042, 1047-1050, 215 USPQ 394, 397, 399-401 (C.C.P.A. 1982) (majority opinion and Rich, J., concurring) (holding, in a case involving features of toy dolls, that the Board had improperly “intermingled the concepts of utilitarian functionality and what has been termed ‘aesthetic functionality;’” and rejecting the concept of aesthetic functionality where it is used as a substitute for “the more traditional source identification principles of trademark law,” such as the ornamentation and functionality doctrines).

Where the issue presented is whether the proposed mark is ornamental in nature, it is improper to refer to “aesthetic functionality,” because the doctrine of “functionality” is inapplicable to such cases. The proper refusal is that the matter is ornamental and, thus, does not function as a mark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the

Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#). See [TMEP §§1202.03-1202.03\(g\)](#) regarding ornamentation.

The Supreme Court’s use of the term “aesthetic functionality” in the *TrafFix* case appears limited to cases where the issue is one of actual functionality, but where the nature of the proposed mark makes it difficult to evaluate the functionality issue from a purely utilitarian standpoint. This is the case with color marks and product features that enhance the attractiveness of the product. The color or feature does not normally give the product a truly utilitarian advantage (in terms of making the product actually perform better), but may still be found to be functional because it provides other real and significant competitive advantages and, thus, should remain in the public domain. See *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 165, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1163-1164 (1995) (stating that a product color might be considered functional if its exclusive use “would put competitors at a significant non-reputation-related disadvantage,” even where the color was not functional in the utilitarian sense).

In *M-5 Steel Mfg., Inc. v. O’Hagin’s Inc.*, 61 USPQ2d 1086, 1096 (TTAB 2001), the Board considered the proper use of the aesthetic functionality doctrine in connection with product designs for metal ventilating ducts and vents for tile or concrete roofs:

This case seems to involve elements of both utilitarian and aesthetic functionality. Here, for example, there is evidence of utility in applicant’s patent application, as well as statements touting the superiority of applicant’s design in applicant’s promotional literature, and statements that applicant’s design results in reduced costs of installation. On the other hand, there is no question that applicant’s roof designs which match the appearance of surrounding roof tiles are more pleasing in appearance because the venting tiles in each case are unobtrusive.

Citing extensively from the *TrafFix*, *Qualitex*, and *Brunswick* cases, the Board concluded that the product designs were functional for a combination of utilitarian and aesthetic reasons. *Id.* at 1097.

Note that this type of functionality determination – while employed in connection with a normally “aesthetic” feature such as color – is a proper use of the functionality doctrine, necessitating a §2(e)(5) refusal where the evidence establishes that a color or other matter at issue provides identifiable competitive advantages and, thus, should remain in the public domain. In *In re Florists’ Transworld Delivery Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d 1784 (TTAB 2013), for example, the record included evidence reflecting that, in the floral industry, color has significance and communicates particular messages (e.g., elegance, bereavement, Halloween), which extend to floral packaging. The Board found, therefore, that the examining attorney had demonstrated a competitive need for others in the industry to use black in connection with floral arrangements and packaging therefor and concluded that the proposed mark was functional under §2(e)(5). This is the opposite of an ornamentation refusal, where the matter at issue serves no identifiable purpose other than that of pure decoration.

Generally speaking, examining attorneys should exercise caution in the use of the term “aesthetic functionality,” in light of the confusion that historically has surrounded this issue. In most situations, reference to aesthetic functionality will be unnecessary, since a determination that the matter sought to be registered is purely ornamental in nature will result in an ornamentation refusal under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, and a determination that the matter sought to be registered is functional will result in a functionality refusal under §2(e)(5). Use of the term “aesthetic functionality” may be appropriate in limited circumstances where the proposed mark presents issues similar to those involved in the *Florists’ Transworld Delivery*, *M-5 Steel*, and *Brunswick* cases discussed above – i.e., where the issue is one of true functionality under §2(e)(5), but where the nature of the mark makes the functionality determination turn on evidence of particular

competitive advantages that are not necessarily categorized as “utilitarian” in nature. Any such use of the term “aesthetic functionality” should be closely tied to a discussion of specific competitive advantages resulting from use of the proposed mark at issue, so that it is clear that the refusal is properly based on the functionality doctrine and not on an incorrect use of “aesthetic functionality” to mean ornamentation.

See [TMEP §§1202.05](#) and [1202.05\(b\)](#) for additional discussion and case references regarding the functionality issue in connection with color marks.

1202.02(a)(vii) Functionality and Service Marks

Although rare in the context of service mark applications, examining attorneys are not foreclosed from refusing registration based on functionality. In *Duramax Marine, LLC v. R.W. Fernstrum & Co.*, 80 USPQ2d 1780, 1793 (TTAB 2006), the Board held that a two-dimensional design of a marine heat exchanger (commonly known as a “keel cooler”), was not functional for “manufacture of marine heat exchangers to the order and specification of others.” It found “a significant difference between an application to register trade dress in the nature of product design as a mark for the product itself ... and an application to register a two-dimensional drawing that may look very much like such a product, but is used on labels, catalogs, brochures, and in various other ways as a mark for services;” and stated that “[t]he inquiry regarding functionality may need to be decidedly different” in cases involving a service mark.

The record showed that the keel cooler depicted in the proposed mark was “identical, or nearly so” to the depiction of a keel cooler in applicant’s expired patent; that opposer and at least one other party had been marketing keel coolers very similar to the proposed mark; and that the design sought to be registered appeared in applicant’s catalog of pre-manufactured keel coolers. *Id.* at 1786. The Board framed the question at issue as “whether any manufacturer of the formerly patented item should be free to utilize, in advertising its goods for sale, a realistic depiction of the item,” and stated that:

[W]e must balance against opposer’s argument for the extension of existing case law on functionality [to] what is shown by the record to be long use of the keel cooler depiction by applicant in the manner of a logo. Further, opposer has not discussed whether, when custom manufacturing services are involved, we should still apply the *TrafFix* test for functionality (a three-dimensional product design is functional if it is “essential to the use or purpose of the product or if it affects the cost or quality of the product”) to the product that results from purchasing the services, or whether the test should be adapted and focus on whether use of the two-dimensional design to be registered is essential to anyone who would provide the same service, or would, if unavailable, affect the cost or quality of the service.

Id. at 1794, citing *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 58 USPQ2d 1001 (2001).

The Board held that opposer had failed to justify an extension of existing law to cover the circumstances of this case, but stated that its decision “does not foreclose the extension of *TrafFix* to service marks if circumstances in a future case warrant such an extension.” *Duramax*, 80 USPQ2d at 1794.

1202.02(a)(viii) Functionality and Non-Traditional Marks

In addition to product design and product packaging, the functionality doctrine has been applied to other non-traditional proposed marks, such as sound, color, and flavor, and the same *Morton-Norwich* analysis, discussed above, applies to these marks. See, e.g., *Brunswick Corp. v. British Seagull Ltd.*, 35 F.3d 1527, 1532, 32 USPQ2d 1120, 1123 (Fed. Cir. 1994), *cert. denied*, 514 U.S. 1050 (1995) (finding the color black for outboard motors functional because it provided competitive advantages such as ease of coordination

with a variety of boat colors and reduction in the apparent size of the engines); *In re Florists' Transworld Delivery Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d 1784, 1791 (TTAB 2013) (finding the color black for floral packaging functional because there was a competitive need for others in the industry to use black in connection with floral arrangements and flowers in order to communicate a desired sentiment or occasion such as elegance, bereavement, or Halloween); *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d 1042 (TTAB 2013) (finding the flavor peppermint functional for nitroglycerin lingual spray based on evidence that peppermint oil, which imparts a flavor of peppermint, can improve the effectiveness of sublingual nitroglycerin spray); *In re Vertex Grp. LLC*, 89 USPQ2d 1694, 1700 (TTAB 2009) (affirming the refusal to register an alarm sound emitted by personal security alarms in the normal course of operation without showing of acquired distinctiveness); *Saint-Gobain Corp. v. 3M Co.*, 90 USPQ2d 1425, 1447 (TTAB 2007) (deep purple shade for coated abrasives held functional, the Board finding that coated abrasive manufacturers have a competitive need to use various shades of purple, including applicant's shade, and that "[i]n the field of coated abrasives, color serves a myriad of functions, including color coding, and the need to color code lends support for the basic finding that color, including purple, is functional in the field of coated abrasives having paper or cloth backing."); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639, 1645-46 (TTAB 2006) (finding the flavor orange functional for pharmaceuticals where the evidence showed the flavor served to mask the otherwise unpleasant taste of the medicine flavor); *see also Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 165, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1163-1164 (1995) (stating that a product color might be considered functional if its exclusive use "would put competitors at a significant non-reputation-related disadvantage," even where the color was not functional in the utilitarian sense); [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)\(vi\)](#) and [1202.05\(b\)](#) (regarding aesthetic functionality and color marks).

Examining attorneys should also consider the functionality doctrine in relation to other types of non-traditional marks, such as scent. For example, an application to register scent for an air freshener or an application to register the sound of a ring tone for downloadable ring tones must be refused as functional, as the proposed marks are essential to the use or purpose of the goods. *Cf. Vertex*, 89 USPQ2d at 1703 (finding that the "ability of applicant's [security alarms] to emit a loud, pulsing sound is essential to their use or purpose" because the evidence showed that use of a loud sound as an alarm is important and that alternating sound pulses and silence is a "more effective way to use sound as an alarm than is a steady sound").

1202.02(b) Distinctiveness of Trade Dress

Regardless of whether a proposed trade dress mark is refused as functional under §2(e)(5), the examining attorney must also examine the mark for distinctiveness. Trade dress that is not inherently distinctive and that has not acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) must be refused registration. The statutory basis for the refusal of registration on the Principal Register on the ground that the trade dress is nondistinctive is §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), for trademark applications, or §§1, 2, 3, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#), for service mark applications.

In *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 215, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1069 (2000), the Supreme Court distinguished between two types of trade dress – product design and product packaging. If the trade dress falls within the category of product "design," it can never be inherently distinctive. *Id.* at 212, 54 USPQ at 1068 ("It seems to us that design, like color, is not inherently distinctive."). Moreover, the Court held that in close cases in which it is difficult to determine whether the trade dress at issue is product packaging or product design, "courts should err on the side of caution and classify ambiguous trade dress as product design, thereby requiring secondary meaning." *Id.* at 215, 54 USPQ2d at 1070; *see In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 78 USPQ2d 1395 (Fed. Cir. 2006). (*Note*: If the trade dress is functional, it cannot be registered despite acquired distinctiveness. *Traffix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 33, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1007 (2001)).

A claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) will not overcome a functionality refusal, but may overcome a nondistinctiveness refusal. For example, if the examining attorney issues a refusal on the basis that a product packaging mark is functional and, in the alternative, is nondistinctive, and the applicant asserts acquired distinctiveness in response, the examining attorney must maintain the previously issued functionality refusal, if appropriate, and determine whether the applicant's evidence would be sufficient to overcome the nondistinctiveness refusal, if the functionality refusal is ultimately reversed.

If the examining attorney fails to separately address the sufficiency of the applicant's evidence of acquired distinctiveness, this may be treated as a concession that the evidence would be sufficient to establish distinctiveness, if the mark is ultimately found not to be functional. See *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622, 1625 (TTAB 2009) (holding that an examining attorney had "effectively conceded that, assuming the mark is not functional, applicant's evidence is sufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness," where the examining attorney rejected the applicant's §2(f) claim on the ground that applicant's bicycle wheel configuration was functional and thus unregistrable even under §2(f), but did not specifically address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence or the question of whether the mark would be registrable under §2(f), if it were ultimately found to be nonfunctional). See [TMEP §§1209.02\(a\)\(ii\)](#) and [1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding assertion of acquired distinctiveness in response to an Office action and claiming acquired distinctiveness with respect to incapable matter.

1202.02(b)(i) Distinctiveness and Product Design Trade Dress

A mark that consists of product design trade dress is never inherently distinctive and is not registrable on the Principal Register unless the applicant establishes that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 213-216, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1069-70 (2000). Therefore, as a matter of law, product design cannot be considered inherently distinctive and cannot be registered without a showing of secondary meaning. *Id.* at 213-14, 54 USPQ2d at 1069. The Supreme Court noted that product design almost invariably serves purposes other than source identification, and that "[c]onsumers are aware . . . that, almost invariably, even the most unusual of product designs -- such as a cocktail shaker shaped like a penguin -- is intended not to identify the source, but to render the product itself more useful or appealing." *Id.*

In applications seeking registration of marks comprising product design, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the proposed mark is not inherently distinctive unless the applicant claims that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) and provides sufficient evidence to show that the mark has acquired distinctiveness. The ground for the refusal is that the proposed mark consists of nondistinctive product design, and, thus, does not function as a mark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#). Because product design cannot be inherently distinctive as a matter of law, per *Wal-Mart*, if the applicant has not claimed acquired distinctiveness, supporting evidence for the refusal is unnecessary. 529 U.S. at 213-216, 54 USPQ2d at 1069-70. If the product design is not functional, the mark may be registered on the Supplemental Register, or, if the applicant shows that the product design has acquired distinctiveness, on the Principal Register under §2(f). See [TMEP §§815-816.05](#) regarding the Supplemental Register, [1202.02\(a\)-1202.02\(a\)\(viii\)](#) regarding functionality, [1202.02\(b\)-1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding distinctiveness, and [1212-1212.10](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness. A refusal on the ground that the entire proposed mark is not inherently distinctive generally is not appropriate if the mark includes additional distinctive matter beyond just the product design, such as words and/or images. In such situations, the applicant may be required to disclaim or claim acquired distinctiveness in part as to any non-inherently distinctive elements.

For applications based on §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the examining attorney must issue the nondistinctiveness refusal for a product design mark even if the applicant has not filed an allegation

of use. See [TMEP §1202.02\(d\)](#) regarding trade dress in intent-to-use applications. For applications based on §44 or §66(a), even though the applicant does not need to show use in commerce, the same standards regarding product design apply and the examining attorney must issue the nondistinctiveness refusal, assuming acquired distinctiveness has not been established. See [TMEP §1010](#) regarding §44 applications and [TMEP §1212.08](#) regarding distinctiveness in §44 or §66(a) applications.

In distinguishing between product packaging and product design trade dress, *Wal-Mart* instructs that, in “close cases,” courts should classify the trade dress as product design and, thus, require proof of secondary meaning. 529 U.S. at 215, 54 USPQ2d at 1070. In addition, product design can consist of design features that are incorporated in the product and need not implicate the entire product. *See id.* at 207, 213, 54 USPQ2d at 1066, 1069 (a “cocktail shaker shaped like a penguin” is product design, as is “a line of spring/summer one-piece seersucker outfits decorated with appliqués of hearts, flowers, fruits, and the like”); *In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 961, 78 USPQ2d 1395, 1398 (Fed. Cir. 2006) (holding the mark to be product design trade dress where the mark was for clothing and consisted of a label with the words “FLASH DARE!” in a V-shaped background and cut-out areas located on each side of the label with the cut-out areas consisting of a hole in a garment and a flap attached to the garment with a closure device).

Applicants face a heavy burden in establishing distinctiveness in an application to register trade dress. *Stuart Spector Designs, Ltd. v. Fender Musical Instruments Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1549 (TTAB 2009) ; *see also Duraco Prods., Inc. v. Joy Plastic Enters., Ltd.*, 40 F.3d 1431, 1453, 32 USPQ2d 1724, 1742 (3d Cir. 1994) (“secondary meaning in a product configuration case will generally not be easy to establish”). A mere statement of five years’ use is generally not sufficient. *See, e.g., In re Ennco Display Sys. Inc.*, 56 USPQ2d 1279, 1284, 1286 (TTAB 2000) (noting the statutory language regarding acquired distinctiveness “is permissive, and the weight to be accorded [evidence of five years of substantially exclusive use] depends on the facts and circumstances of the particular case,” and finding evidence of seven to seventeen years of use insufficient to support a claim of acquired distinctiveness). Generalized sales and advertising figures by themselves will usually be insufficient proof of secondary meaning where the promotional material does not use the design alone but instead with other marks. *See In re Soccer Sport Supply Co.*, 507 F.2d 1400, 184 USPQ 345, 348 (CCPA 1975) (advertising displaying the design at issue along with word marks lacked the “nexus” that would tie together use of the design and the public’s perception of the design as an indicator of source); *In re Mogen David Wine Corp.*, 372 F.2d 539, 152 USPQ 593, 595 (CCPA 1967) (where a container design appeared with a word mark, any alleged association of the design with the company “was predicated upon the impression imparted by the [word] mark ... rather than by any distinctive characteristic of the container per se.”). Furthermore, a product design may become generic and thus incapable of functioning as an indicator of source because it is basic or common in an industry or is a mere refinement of a product design commonly used for the relevant goods. *See Stuart Spector Designs*, 94 USPQ2d at 1555 (noting that a design may be deemed incapable where it is, “at a minimum, so common in the industry that it cannot be said to identify a particular source.”). These common or basic shapes are not registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), or on the Supplemental Register under §23(c), [15 U.S.C. §1091\(c\)](#). For these incapable product designs, registration on the Principal Register must be refused on the ground that the proposed mark fails to function as a mark, citing Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45 for trademarks, and §§1, 2, 3, and 45 for service marks. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#). The ground for refusal on the Supplemental Register is that the mark is incapable of functioning as a mark under §§ 23(c) and 45. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\), 1127](#).

See [TMEP §1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness with respect to incapable matter.

1202.02(b)(ii) Distinctiveness and Product Packaging Trade Dress

Product packaging trade dress may be inherently distinctive. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 212-13, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068 (2000) (“The attribution of inherent distinctiveness to certain . . . product packaging derives from the fact that the very purpose of . . . encasing [a product] in a distinctive packaging, is most often to identify the source of the product”). Therefore, in applications seeking registration of marks comprising product packaging, the examining attorney must assess inherent distinctiveness. If it is lacking, registration must be refused on the Principal Register on the ground that the proposed mark is nondistinctive trade dress under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), for trademark applications, or under §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#), for service mark applications.

In *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 215, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1069 (2000), the Supreme Court discussed the distinction between the trade dress at issue in *Two Pesos, Inc. v. Taco Cabana, Inc.*, 505 U.S. 763, 23 USPQ2d 1081 (1992), and the product design trade dress (designs for children’s clothing) under consideration in *Wal-Mart*:

Two Pesos unquestionably establishes the legal principle that trade dress can be inherently distinctive, but it does not establish that *product-design* trade dress can be. *Two Pesos* is inapposite to our holding here because the trade dress at issue, the decor of a restaurant, seems to us not to constitute product design. It was either product packaging – which, as we have discussed, normally *is* taken by the consumer to indicate origin – or else some *tertium quid* that is akin to product packaging (citation omitted).

The examining attorney should be mindful of the Supreme Court’s admonishment that where there are close cases, trade dress should be classified as product design for which secondary meaning is always required. *Id.* at 215, 54 USPQ2d at 1070.

“[A] mark is inherently distinctive if ‘[its] intrinsic nature serves to identify a particular source.’” *Id.* at 210, 54 USPQ2d at 1068 (citing *Two Pesos, Inc. v. Taco Cabana, Inc.*, 505 U.S. 763, 768, 23 USPQ2d 1081, 1083 (1992)). The test for determining inherent distinctiveness set forth in *Seabrook Foods, Inc. v. Bar-Well Foods, Ltd.*, 568 F.2d 1342, 1344, 196 USPQ 289, 291 (C.C.P.A. 1977), although not applicable to product design trade dress, is still viable in the examination of product packaging trade dress. The examining attorney should consider the following *Seabrook* factors – whether the proposed mark is:

- (1) a “common” basic shape or design;
- (2) unique or unusual in a particular field;
- (3) a mere refinement of a commonly adopted and well-known form of ornamentation for a particular class of goods viewed by the public as a dress or ornamentation for the goods; or
- (4) capable of creating a commercial impression distinct from the accompanying words.

Id.; see also *In re Chippendales USA, Inc.*, 622 F.3d 1346, 1351, 96 USPQ2d 1681, 1684 (Fed. Cir. 2010) (stating that an abbreviated tuxedo costume consisting of wrist cuffs and a bowtie collar without a shirt “constitute[d] ‘trade dress’ because it was part of the ‘packaging’” for exotic dancing services); *Tone Bros., Inc. v. Sysco Corp.*, 28 F.3d 1192, 1205-07, 31 USPQ2d 1321, 1330-32 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (citing *Seabrook*) (reversing lower court’s summary judgment finding that the shape and appearance of the spice container at issue was not inherently distinctive); *In re Frankish Enters. Ltd.*, 113 USPQ2d 1964, 1973 (TTAB 2015) (finding three-dimensional monster truck design, used in connection with monster truck exhibition services, to be analogous to product packaging for the services and unique in the monster truck field); *In re Mars*,

Inc., 105 USPQ2d 1859, 1869-71 (TTAB 2013) (finding applicant's packaging configuration for pet food, resembling many cans used in the pet food field, to be a common basic shape, even though it was inverted, and a mere refinement of existing trade dress within the field); *In re Chevron Intellectual Prop. Grp. LLC*, 96 USPQ2d 2026, 2029 (TTAB 2010) (affirming that applicant's "'three-dimensional, six-sided beveled shape' [pole spanner design used to promote services] is a mere refinement of a commonly used form of a gasoline pump ornamentation rather than an inherently distinctive service mark for automobile service station services."); *In re Brouwerij Bosteels*, 96 USPQ2d 1414, 1421-22 (TTAB 2010) (finding that product packaging trade dress in the nature of a beer glass and stand with wording and scrollwork would be perceived as a mere refinement of a commonly known glass and stand rather than an inherently distinctive indicator of source for the goods); *In re File*, 48 USPQ2d 1363, 1367 (TTAB 1998) (stating that novel tubular lights used in connection with bowling alley services would be perceived by customers as "simply a refinement of the commonplace decorative or ornamental lighting . . . and would not be inherently regarded as a source indicator."); *In re J. Kinderman & Sons Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d 1253, 1255 (TTAB 1998) ("while the designs [of packaging for electric lights for Christmas trees that] applicant seeks to register may be unique in the sense that we have no evidence that anyone else is using designs which are identical to them, they are nonetheless not inherently distinctive."); *In re Hudson News Co.*, 39 USPQ2d 1915, 1923 (TTAB 1996) , aff'd per curiam, 114 F.3d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 1997) ("[f]or the 'blue motif' of a retail store to be registrable on the Principal Register without resort to Section 2(f), the trade dress would have to be immediately recognizable as a distinctive way of identifying the source of the store services."); *Yankee Candle Co. v. Bridgewater Candle Co., LLC*, 259 F.3d 25, 42-45, 59 USPQ2d 1720, 1730-32 (1st Cir. 2001) (finding trade dress for common elements of candle labels to be nondistinctive product packaging for which insufficient evidence of acquired distinctiveness had been shown).

Any one of the *Seabrook* factors, by itself, may be determinative as to whether the mark is inherently distinctive. See *Chippendales*, 622 F.3d at 1355, 96 USPQ2d at 1687; *Chevron*, 96 USPQ2d at 2028.

Where the proposed product packaging trade dress is not inherently distinctive, based on the analysis of the *Seabrook* factors and supporting evidence, and acquired distinctiveness has not been established, registration must be refused. *Chippendales*, 622 F.3d at 1351-52, 96 USPQ2d at 1684. The examining attorney must establish a prima facie case that the product packaging is not inherently distinctive. *Id.* at 1350, 96 USPQ2d at 1684. To meet this burden, the examining attorney must, at a minimum, set forth a "'reasonable predicate' for [the] position of no inherent distinctiveness," for example, by introducing evidence regarding the first *Seabrook* factor that competitors use similar basic shapes and designs. *In re Pacer Tech.*, 338 F.3d 1348, 1352, 67 USPQ2d 1629, 1632 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (finding evidence of design patents showing other adhesive container cap designs sufficient to establish prima facie case that applicant's adhesive container cap was not inherently distinctive). The USPTO is an agency of limited resources, and as such, it cannot be expected to shoulder the burden of conducting market research. *Id.*

For applications based on §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), unless the drawing, the description of the mark, and the examining attorney's search results are dispositive of the lack of distinctiveness without the need to consider a specimen, applications for product packaging trade dress generally will not be refused registration on the ground of nondistinctiveness until the applicant has filed an allegation of use. See [TMEP §1202.02\(d\)](#). For §44 and §66(a) applications, for which no allegation of use is required, a nondistinctiveness refusal may be issued, if appropriate, based on a review of the drawing, the description of the mark, and any evidence obtained from the examining attorney's search results. See [TMEP §1202.02\(e\)](#).

Regardless of the basis for filing, if a proposed product packaging mark is inherently distinctive, it may be registered on the Principal Register. See *In re Procter & Gamble Co.*, 105 USPQ2d 1119, 1123, 1126 (TTAB 2012) (finding the overall shape of a container with a cap, and the shape of the cap by itself, inherently distinctive for mouthwash); *In re Creative Beauty Innovations, Inc.*, 56 USPQ2d 1203, 1208 (TTAB 2000)

(bottle configuration found inherently distinctive); *In re Fre-Mar Indus., Inc.*, 158 USPQ 364, 367 (TTAB 1968) (“[A]lthough the particular shape is a commonplace one for flashlights, it is nevertheless so unique and arbitrary as a container in the tire repair field that it may be inherently distinctive and, therefore, by reason of its shape alone, serve to identify applicant’s goods and distinguish them from like goods of others.”); *In re Int’l Playtex Corp.*, 153 USPQ 377, 378 (TTAB 1967) (container configuration having the appearance of an ice cream cone found inherently distinctive packaging for baby pants).

If a proposed product packaging mark is *not* inherently distinctive, the mark may be registered on either the Principal Register under §2(f), upon proof that the mark has acquired distinctiveness or secondary meaning, or on the Supplemental Register. Secondary meaning is acquired when the public views the primary significance of the product packaging as identifying the source of the product rather than the product itself. *Wal-Mart*, 529 U.S. at 211, 54 USPQ2d at 1068. Whether five years’ use is sufficient depends on the degree to which the mark’s elements are unique or common in the field. This is determined by comparing the specific features comprising the mark with the evidence of competitors’ use of similar features for the identified goods or services. The more unique or unusual the features, the more likely that five years’ use may suffice, but the more common or basic the features, the less likely that five years’ use would suffice. See [TMEP §1212](#) regarding claiming acquired distinctiveness and [TMEP §1212.05](#) regarding claiming five years of use as proof of distinctiveness.

In the following cases, the applicant’s evidence was found to be sufficient to support a claim of acquired distinctiveness: *In re World’s Finest Chocolate, Inc.*, 474 F.2d 1012, 1015, 177 USPQ 205, 207 (C.C.P.A. 1973) (package design found to identify applicant’s candy bars and distinguish them from those of others); *Ex parte Haig & Haig Ltd.*, 118 USPQ 229, 230 (Comm’r Pats. 1958) (“[The decree] recited that because of the original, distinctive and peculiar appearance of the ‘Pinched Decanter’ the brand of whiskey in such bottles had come to be known and recognized by the public, by dealers and by consumers; and that the whiskey contained in such bottles had come to be identified with the ‘Pinched Decanter’ in the minds of the public generally.”).

See [TMEP §§1212-1212.10](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness and [815-816.05](#) regarding the Supplemental Register. In *In re Usher, S.A.*, 219 USPQ 920, 921 (TTAB 1983), the evidence of secondary meaning was insufficient (holding that the configuration of a package for mint candies was not functional but the package design was not shown to possess secondary meaning). See also *Brouwerij Bosteels*, 96 USPQ2d at 1424 (evidence of acquired distinctiveness for product packaging trade dress in the nature of a beer glass and stand was insufficient).

In certain cases, product packaging may be incapable of functioning as an indicator of source. “[T]rade dress that cannot serve as an indicator of source is generic and unprotectable.” *Sunrise Jewelry Mfg. Corp. v. Fred S.A.*, 175 F.3d 1322, 1326, 50 USPQ2d 1532, 1535 (Fed. Cir. 1999). For example, packaging that is common or basic in an industry or that is a mere refinement of packaging commonly used on the relevant goods will not be perceived as indicating source and is not registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register. See *Stuart Spector Designs, Ltd. v. Fender Musical Instruments Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1549, 1555 (TTAB 2009) (noting that a product design may be deemed incapable where it is, “at a minimum, so common in the industry that it cannot be said to identify a particular source.”); see also *Nora Beverages Inc. v. Perrier Grp. of Am. Inc.*, 269 F.3d 114, 120, 60 USPQ2d 1038, 1041 (2d Cir. 2001) (affirming the district court’s finding that the water bottle manufactured and sold by Nora was generic because “it was used, with minor variations, throughout the entire market of similar products”); *Paddington Corp. v. Attiki Imps. & Distribs., Inc.*, 996 F.2d 577, 583-84, 27 USP2d 1189, 1193 (2d Cir. 1993) (stating that “where it is the custom of an industry to package products in a particular manner, a trade dress in that style would be generic and therefore not inherently distinctive,” such as packaging lime-flavored soda in green twelve-ounce cans, a practice that is so common in the soft drink industry).

The ground for refusal on the Principal Register is that the proposed mark fails to function as a mark under Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45, for trademarks, and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, for service marks. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#). The ground for refusal on the Supplemental Register is that the mark is incapable of functioning as a mark under §§23(c) and 45. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\)](#), and [1127](#).

See [TMEP §815.04](#) regarding refusal of incapable matter and [TMEP §1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness with respect to incapable matter.

1202.02(c) Drawings, Descriptions, and Disclaimers in Trade Dress Applications

Applicants often submit drawings and descriptions of marks depicting trade dress and containing matter that is: (1) not part of the mark; (2) functional; (3) nondistinctive and capable; (4) nondistinctive and incapable; (5) inherently distinctive; or (6) a combination of these factors. To ensure proper examination, the drawing and description of such a mark must accurately depict the mark the applicant intends to register. For example, both the drawing and the description of the mark must clearly indicate those portions that are claimed as part of the mark and those that are not.

If the drawing does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#), the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a substitute drawing and a substitute description of the mark. The examining attorney may require the applicant to provide additional information, such as pictures of the goods, samples, or other relevant materials pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), to assist in assessing the accuracy and completeness of the drawing and in crafting a comprehensive description of the mark.

1202.02(c)(i) Drawings of Trade Dress Marks

Drawings of three-dimensional product design and product packaging trade dress marks may not contain elements that are not part of the mark (i.e., matter that is functional or incapable of trademark significance). If the mark comprises only a portion of product design or product packaging, solid lines must be used on the drawing to show the elements of the product design or product packaging that are claimed as part of the mark, and broken or dotted lines must be used to indicate the portions that are not claimed as part of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); *see In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 844, 208 USPQ 89, 91 (C.C.P.A. 1980) (affirming the functionality of a circular-shaped container for the goods and the requirement for an amended drawing to either delete the representation of the container from the drawing or show it in dotted lines); [TMEP §807.08](#).

Since elements on the drawing shown in broken or dotted lines are not part of the mark, they are generally excluded from the examining attorney's consideration during any §2(d) (likelihood of confusion) analysis. *See In re Homeland Vinyl Prods., Inc.*, 81 USPQ2d 1378, 1382 (TTAB 2006) .

In rare instances where it is impractical to render certain elements of a mark in dotted or broken lines - for example, if those elements are proportionally so small as to render dotted lines illegible - or if dotted lines would result in an unclear depiction of the mark, the applicant may use solid lines. However, the applicant must insert a statement in the description of the mark identifying these elements and declaring that these elements are not part of the mark and that they serve only to show the position of the mark on the goods, as appropriate.

Usually, a drawing of a trade dress mark is depicted in a three-dimensional manner that gives the appearance of height, width, and depth to the mark. Generally, the drawing shows an illustrated rendering of the product design or product packaging, but a photograph of the product design or product packaging is also acceptable.

Drawings consisting of either illustrated renderings or photographs of the proposed trade dress will both be subject to the same drawing requirements and must fairly represent the mark (e.g., the drawing shows matter not claimed as part of the mark in broken or dotted lines and it does not contain extraneous, purely informational matter such as net weight, contents, or business addresses).

If the nature of the mark remains unclear from the record, an examining attorney may clarify whether the mark is three-dimensional trade dress by calling or e-mailing the applicant, or issuing an Office action containing requirements about the nature of the mark under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), for a clear drawing, or for a revised description. Where appropriate, any relevant trade-dress-related refusals (e.g., mark is functional, mark is not inherently distinctive) may also be included in the Office action.

In cases where the drawing depicts a two-dimensional mark that could be interpreted as three-dimensional in nature and the record is unclear, the examining attorney may suggest that the applicant clarify that the mark is two-dimensional in the mark description. See [TMEP §808.02](#). If the mark is two-dimensional in nature, the mark should not be characterized as three-dimensional (e.g., that the mark “ *appears* three-dimensional”).

If the applicant is required to submit an amended drawing, the mark description must also be amended accordingly. See [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding description requirements for trade dress marks.

1202.02(c)(i)(A) Functional Matter

Functional elements of a trade dress mark are never capable of acquiring trademark significance and are unregistrable, much like informational matter. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#); *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 34 USPQ2d 1161 (1995). Therefore, to show that they are not part of the mark, functional elements must be depicted in broken or dotted lines on the drawing to show the position or placement of the claimed portion of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 844, 208 USPQ 89, 91 (C.C.P.A. 1980); *In re Famous Foods, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 177, 177 (TTAB 1983). A requirement to amend the drawing to depict functional matter in broken or dotted lines is permitted and generally does not constitute material alteration of the mark, regardless of the filing basis. See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#). Such an amendment is permissible even in an application under §66(a) because it is not considered an amendment to the mark itself, but rather a change in the manner in which the mark is depicted on the drawing, in order to comply with United States drawing requirements, where functional elements are not considered part of the mark. See [TMEP §807.14](#) regarding material alteration and [TMEP §§1904.02\(j\)-\(k\)](#) regarding drawings in §66(a) applications.

A functionality refusal must issue in cases where the trade dress mark is overall functional. The statutory basis for the refusal is §2(e)(5) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#). When a trade dress mark is not overall functional, but contains minor or insignificant elements that are functional, the examining attorney must require an amended drawing showing the functional elements in broken or dotted lines rather than in solid lines. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); *Water Gremlin*, 635 F.2d at 844, 208 USPQ at 91; *Famous Foods*, 217 USPQ at 177. The Office action must explain that, because the mark includes functional elements, an amended drawing is required showing the functional elements in broken or dotted lines, and a corresponding amended mark description is required indicating the functional elements depicted in broken or dotted lines are not claimed as part of the mark. The applicant must provide the amended drawing regardless of whether the remaining portions of the mark are determined to be registrable. See [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(v\)](#) regarding evidence and considerations regarding functionality determinations and [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding descriptions of trade dress marks.

Functional matter cannot be disclaimed. *See Water Gremlin*, 635 F.2d at 844, 208 USPQ at 91 (“The examiner’s requirement to delete the [functional] design (or show it in dotted lines) was entirely in order.”); *Famous Foods*, 217 USPQ at 177 (stating that functional “[f]eatures which are not being claimed as part of applicant’s asserted [trade dress] mark should be shown in dotted lines”). A disclaimer states that the applicant does not claim exclusive rights to matter in the mark apart from the mark as a whole and allows the applicant to maintain rights in the disclaimed matter as part of its own mark. Therefore, with respect to three-dimensional trade dress marks, elements that are functional, or intended to show position or placement only, must be shown in broken or dotted lines on the drawing. See [TMPEP §1202.02\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding disclaiming unregistrable portions of trade dress marks.

1202.02(c)(i)(B) Nondistinctive Matter

Nonfunctional elements of a product design or product packaging trade dress mark that are inherently distinctive, that have acquired distinctiveness, or that are capable but for which acquired distinctiveness has not yet been established, may appear in solid lines on the drawing as part of the mark. Nonfunctional, nondistinctive elements that are capable of trademark significance but for which acquired distinctiveness has not been established must be disclaimed. A disclaimer is appropriate because, while these elements are not source indicators, they may still remain part of the mark. *See* [15 U.S.C §§1051-1052](#), [1056\(a\)](#), [1127](#). The disclaimer must be provided regardless of whether the remaining portions of the mark are determined to be registrable.

Occasionally, a trade dress mark may include elements that are nonfunctional, yet incapable of trademark significance, such as a common or basic shape of a product itself or the packaging in which a product is sold. These elements must be depicted in broken or dotted lines on the drawing because such elements cannot be considered part of the mark. *Cf. Traffix Devices v. Mktg. Displays*, 532 U.S. 23, 32, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001) (noting that functional features of product design cannot serve as trademarks); *In re Famous Foods, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 177, 177 (TTAB 1983) (noting that functional features of product packaging should be shown in dotted lines). Usually, amendments of drawings to depict incapable elements in broken or dotted lines do not materially alter the mark because the incapable elements are, by definition, not source indicating. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 844, 208 USPQ 89, 91 (C.C.P.A. 1980). Therefore, the examining attorney must issue a requirement for an amended drawing that depicts the incapable elements in broken or dotted lines, and a corresponding amended mark description to reflect that the incapable elements shown in broken or dotted lines are not claimed as part of the mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#). The applicant must provide the amended drawing regardless of whether the remaining portions of the mark are determined to be registrable.

See [TMPEP §807.14](#) regarding material alteration, [TMPEP §1202.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding descriptions of trade dress marks, [TMPEP §1011.03](#) regarding amendment of marks in §44 applications, and [TMPEP §§1904.02\(j\)-\(k\)](#) regarding amendment of marks in §66(a) applications.

1202.02(c)(i)(C) Drawings in §44 and §66(a) Applications

For trade dress marks in §44 and §66(a) applications, an amendment of the drawing to depict functional or incapable matter in broken or dotted lines is permitted and generally not a material alteration of the mark. *See* [TMPEP §§807.08](#) and [1904.02\(k\)](#). Although the mark in a §44 or §66(a) application cannot be amended, a change in the manner in which the mark is depicted may be permitted, in order to comply with the United States drawing requirements. *See* [TMPEP §1011.03](#) regarding amendment of marks in §44 applications and [§1904.02\(j\)-\(k\)](#) regarding amendment of marks in §66(a) applications. For instance, since functional matter is not considered source indicating and is never part of the mark, displaying it in broken or dotted lines shows placement of the functional matter in relation to the registrable portions of the mark.

Similarly, in §44 or §66(a) applications, amendments to delete extraneous matter from photographs, or amendments of drawings from photographs to illustrated renderings showing elements of the mark in dotted or broken lines, will be accepted and will not be considered a material alteration of the mark.

1202.02(c)(ii) Descriptions of Trade Dress Marks Required

An application for a trade dress mark must include an accurate description of the mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.37](#). If an acceptable statement describing the mark is not in the record, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a description to clarify what the applicant seeks to register. The description must adequately describe the mark, with unnecessary matter kept to a minimum. The description must clearly indicate that the mark is “three-dimensional” and constitutes “product design” or “configuration” of the goods themselves or product “packaging” or a “container” in which the goods are sold, or that the trade dress is for services offered (e.g., interior of a restaurant, exterior of a retail establishment, or point-of-sale-display such as a costume used in connection with the services).

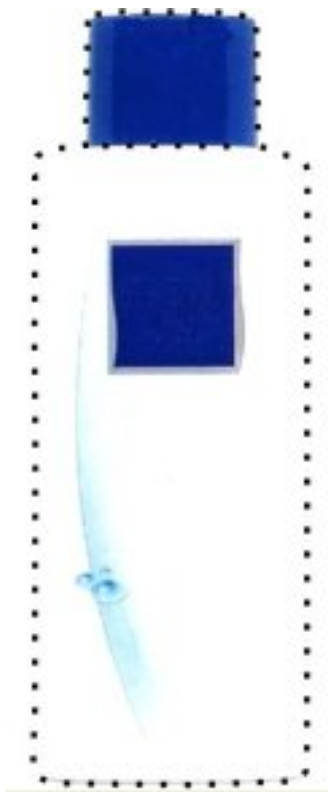
If applicable, the description must specify which elements on the drawing constitute the mark and are claimed as part of the mark and which are not. The description of the mark must make clear what any broken or dotted lines represent and include a statement that the matter shown in broken or dotted lines is not claimed as part of the mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMPEP §§808-808.03\(f\)](#). This information must be included in the description. Statements only in a response to an Office action or elsewhere in the record are insufficient. The description must also avoid use of disclaimer-type language, such as “no claim is made to the ...,” because of the different legal significance of using broken lines versus submitting a disclaimer. *See* [TMPEP §1202.02\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding disclaimers of unregistrable elements of trade dress marks.

In cases where the drawing depicts a two-dimensional mark that could be interpreted as three-dimensional in nature, an applicant may clarify that the mark is two-dimensional in the mark description. *See* [TMPEP §808.02](#). If the mark is two-dimensional in nature, the applicant should not characterize the mark as three-dimensional (e.g., that the mark “ *appears* three-dimensional”).

During the prosecution of a trade dress application, if the applicant is required to submit an amended drawing (e.g., showing broken or dotted lines to depict functional matter, to indicate nondistinctive and incapable matter, or to depict matter otherwise not claimed as part of the mark), the examining attorney must also require a corresponding amended description.

Examples of acceptable language for this purpose are: “The broken lines depicting [describe elements] indicate placement of the mark on the goods and are not part of the mark” or “The dotted lines outlining [the goods] are intended to show the position of the mark on the goods and are not part of the mark.”

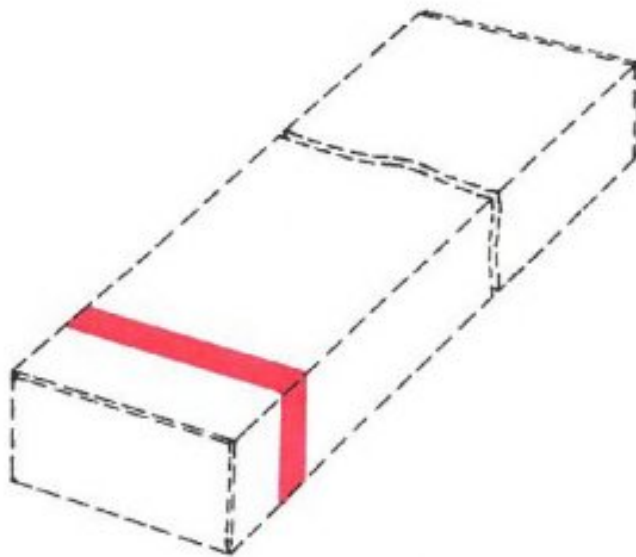
For example, for the mark below,



an appropriate description (and color claim) of the mark could read:

The colors white, blue, light blue, and silver are claimed as a feature of the mark. The mark consists of the color blue applied to the cap of the container of the goods, a white background applied to the rest of the container, a blue rectangle with a silver border, a light blue curving band, and three light blue droplets. The dotted lines outlining the container and its cap indicate placement of the mark on the goods and are not part of the mark.

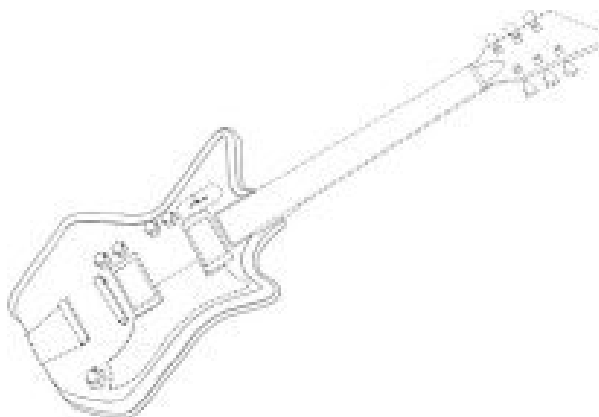
For the mark below,



an appropriate description (and color claim) of the mark would read:

The color red is claimed as a feature of the mark. The mark consists of a single transverse red stripe applied adjacent to one end of the three-dimensional elongated packaging for the goods. The dotted outline of the packaging is intended to show the position of the mark and is not part of the mark.

And for the mark below,



an appropriate description of the mark would read:

The mark consists of a three-dimensional configuration of a stringed musical instrument body. The neck, peghead, and other instrument parts shown in broken lines serve to show positioning of the mark and form no part of the mark.

The examining attorney must ensure that the description statement has been entered into the Trademark database, so that it will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. See [TMEP §817](#).

See [TMEP §§1202.05\(d\)\(i\) and \(d\)\(ii\)](#) regarding drawings in applications for color marks consisting solely of one or more colors.

1202.02(c)(iii) Disclaimers of Unregistrable Elements of Trade Dress Marks

A disclaimer states that the applicant does not claim exclusive rights to matter in the mark apart from the mark as a whole. [TMEP §1213](#). The applicant maintains rights in the disclaimed matter only as part of its mark. Thus, except in the rare case when a trade dress mark is unitary, unregistrable elements must be either depicted in broken or dotted lines on the drawing or disclaimed, as appropriate. Specifically, elements that are functional or otherwise incapable of trademark significance must be depicted in broken or dotted lines on the drawing. Elements that are nonfunctional but capable of acquiring trademark significance, but for which acquired distinctiveness has not been established, must be disclaimed. See [TMEP §§1202.02\(c\)\(iii\)\(A\)–\(B\)](#) regarding functional and nondistinctive matter that cannot be disclaimed.

Trade dress marks generally are not considered unitary, as each of the elements normally creates a separate commercial impression. As stated in the Federal Circuit decision *In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 963, 78 USPQ2d 1395, 1400 (Fed. Cir. 2006), “trade dress, by its nature, contains distinct elements and is characterized as the combination of various elements to create an overall impression.” Although each element is combined with others to form one composite mark, each element retains its separate commercial impression such that the mark as a whole is typically not unitary. Therefore, when a mark contains a combination of trade dress and word/design elements, each element should be examined separately for distinctiveness, except in the rare instance where it is shown that the mark as a whole is unitary. If only one element is inherently distinctive, this is not enough to transform the entire mark into an inherently distinctive, unitary mark. See [TMEP §§1213.05-1213.05\(h\)](#) –regarding unitary marks.

1202.02(c)(iii)(A) Functional Matter

Since functional elements of a trade dress mark are unregistrable as a matter of law and cannot form part of the mark, a disclaimer is not an appropriate means of addressing functional matter in a trade dress mark. See *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 844, 208 USPQ 89, 91 (C.C.P.A. 1980) (“The examiner's requirement to delete the [functional] design (or show it in dotted lines) was entirely in order.”); *In re Famous Foods, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 177, 177 (TTAB 1983) (stating that functional “[f]eatures which are not being claimed as part of applicant's asserted [trade dress] mark should be shown in dotted lines”). Instead, if the mark is not overall functional, an amendment of the drawing must be required to depict any minor or insignificant functional elements in broken or dotted lines. *Id.*; see [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(i\)](#). However, if the mark is overall functional, registration must be refused under §2(e)(5) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(5\)](#).

1202.02(c)(iii)(B) Nondistinctive Matter

Sometimes, a trade dress mark, as a whole, is registrable but contains elements that are nondistinctive but capable. See [TMEP §1202.02\(c\)\(i\)\(B\)](#). In this situation, if acquired distinctiveness has not been established, the capable elements must be disclaimed because, while they are not source indicators, they are still part of the mark. See 15 U.S.C. §§1051-1052, [1056\(a\)](#), [1127](#). The disclaimer must be provided regardless of whether the remaining portions of the mark are determined to be registrable. However, where the nondistinctive elements are incapable of acquiring distinctiveness, for example, common or basic shapes of product design or product packaging, such elements are not part of the mark and, therefore, must be depicted in broken or dotted lines rather than disclaimed. See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); *cf. Traffix Devices v. Mktg. Displays*, 532 U.S. 23, 32, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001) (noting that functional features of product design cannot serve as trademarks); *In re Famous Foods, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 177, 177 (TTAB 1983) (noting that functional features of product packaging should be shown in dotted lines).

See [TMEP §1212.02\(e\)](#) regarding disclaimers of unregistrable components in applications to register marks on the Principal Register under §2(f), [TMEP §1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness with respect to incapable matter, and [TMEP §§1213.03–1213.03\(d\)](#) regarding disclaimers of unregistrable components of marks. See also *In re Creative Goldsmiths of Wash., Inc.*, 229 USPQ 766, 768 (TTAB 1986) (“[I]t is within the discretion of an Examining Attorney to require the disclaimer of an unregistrable component (such as a common descriptive, or generic, name) of a composite mark sought to be registered on the Principal Register under the provisions of Section 2(f).”).

Regarding disclaimers of unregistrable components in applications to register marks on the Supplemental Register, see *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 845 n.6, 208 USPQ 89, 91 n.6 (C.C.P.A. 1980) (“Section 6 is equally applicable to the Supplemental Register.”); *In re Wella Corp.*, 565 F.2d 143, 144, 196 USPQ 7, 8 (C.C.P.A. 1977) (mark comprising stylized lettering of BALSAM, with disclaimer of “BALSAM,” found registrable on Supplemental Register for hair conditioner and hair shampoo); *In re Carolyn’s Candies, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 356, 360 (TTAB 1980) (“Section 6 of the Trademark Act of 1946, which provides for the disclaimer of ‘unregistrable matter’, does not limit the disclaimer practice to marks upon the Principal Register.”).

1202.02(c)(iv) Three-Dimensional Marks

In an application to register a mark with three-dimensional features, the applicant must submit a drawing that depicts the mark in a single rendition. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §807.10](#). To accurately reflect the exact nature of the mark, the mark description must state that the mark is three-dimensional in nature. This three-dimensional feature of the mark must be shown in the supporting specimens of use, in order for the drawing to comprise a substantially exact representation of the mark as actually used. Conversely, a specimen depicting a three-dimensional representation of a mark would not be acceptable to show use for a mark that is described or depicted as a two-dimensional mark. If the applicant believes it cannot adequately display its mark in a single rendition, it may petition the Director to waive the requirement and accept a drawing featuring multiple views of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#).

1202.02(d) Trade Dress in §1(b) Applications

Distinctiveness and Product Design

A product design trade dress mark can never be inherently distinctive and is registrable only upon a showing of secondary meaning. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 212, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068

(2000); *In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 962, 78 USPQ2d 1395, 1399 (Fed. Cir. 2006); [TMEP §1202.02\(b\)\(i\)](#). See TMEP §§ [1202.02\(b\)](#) and [1202.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding distinctiveness of product design trade dress. Therefore, if the mark is comprised of a product design, the examining attorney will refuse registration on the Principal Register on the ground that the proposed mark consists of a nondistinctive product design under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act. [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#). The examining attorney must make this refusal even in an intent-to-use application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) for which no allegation of use has been filed.

Distinctiveness and Product Packaging

If the mark comprises product packaging trade dress for goods or services, the examining attorney must determine whether the mark is inherently distinctive. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 212-13, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068-69 (2000); *Two Pesos, Inc. v. Taco Cabana, Inc.*, 505 U.S. 763, 773-75, 23 USPQ2d 1081, 1085-86 (1992). See TMEP §§ [1202.02\(b\)](#) and [1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding distinctiveness of product packaging trade dress. This usually requires consideration of the context in which the mark is used and the impression it would make on purchasers. Generally, no refusal based on lack of inherent distinctiveness will be issued in an intent-to-use application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) with an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#). However, if appropriate, the examining attorney has discretion to issue this refusal before a specimen is submitted. See *In re Mars, Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d 1859 (TTAB 2013).

Functionality

To determine whether a proposed product design or product packaging trade dress mark is functional, the examining attorney must consider how the asserted mark is used. Generally, in a §1(b) application, the examining attorney will not issue a refusal on the ground that the mark is functional until the applicant has filed an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#).

In a §1(b) application for which no specimen has been submitted, if the examining attorney's research indicates that a refusal based on functionality or nondistinctive trade dress will be made, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant's attention in the first Office action. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis. If the functional nature of the mark is clearly apparent from the drawing, description of the mark, and research conducted by the examining attorney, without the need to await consideration of the specimen, a refusal based on functionality or nondistinctive trade dress may issue prior to the filing of the allegation of use. See *In re Mars, Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d 1859.

1202.02(e) Trade Dress in §44 and §66(a) Applications

Distinctiveness and Product Design

A product design trade dress mark can never be inherently distinctive and is registrable only upon a showing of secondary meaning. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 212-213, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068-1069 (2000); *In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 962, 78 USPQ2d 1395, 1399 (Fed. Cir. 2006); [TMEP §1202.02\(b\)\(i\)](#). See TMEP §§ [1202.02\(b\)](#) and [1202.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding distinctiveness of product design trade dress. Therefore, if the proposed mark is comprised of a product design, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the Principal Register on the ground that the proposed mark consists of a nondistinctive product design under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act. [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#).

Distinctiveness and Product Packaging

If the mark comprises product packaging trade dress for goods or services, the examining attorney must determine whether the mark is inherently distinctive. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 212-13, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068-69 (2000); *Two Pesos, Inc. v. Taco Cabana, Inc.*, 505 U.S. 763, 773-75, 23 USPQ2d 1081, 1085-86 (1992). See TMEP §§ [1202.02\(b\)](#) and [1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding distinctiveness of product packaging trade dress. Because a specimen of use is not required prior to registration in these cases, it is appropriate for the examining attorney to issue the refusal where the mark on its face, as shown on the drawing and described in the description of the mark, reflects a lack of distinctiveness. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal in a §66(a) application despite the lack of a specimen).

Functionality

If the application itself (i.e., the drawing, the description of the mark, and identification of goods/services) and/or the evidence uncovered during an independent search support that the proposed mark is functional, the examining attorney must issue a refusal of registration on the Principal Register under §2(e)(5). See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)–1202.02\(a\)\(viii\)](#) regarding functionality.

1202.02(f) Identification of Goods/Services in Trade Dress Applications

1202.02(f)(i) Product Design

Trade dress includes the three-dimensional design or configuration of the product itself. In such cases, the drawing usually depicts the item listed in the identification of goods (e.g., the drawing shows a three-dimensional design of a guitar and the goods are “guitars”). However, sometimes the identification of goods/services in a product-design application includes different or unrelated products or services that are, on their face, inconsistent with the product design depicted on the drawing (e.g., the drawing shows a three-dimensional design of a guitar and the identification includes “drums and pianos” or “retail music stores”). This presents an issue of “inconsistent goods.” In rare cases, slight variations are acceptable if the products have a “consistent overall look” such that the changes do not alter the distinctive characteristics and the trade dress conveys a “single and continuing” commercial impression. *Cf. Rose Art Indus., Inc. v. Swanson*, 235 F.3d 165, 173, 57 USPQ2d 1125, 1131 (3d Cir. 2000) (quoting *Rose Art Indus., Inc. v. Raymond Geddes & Co.*, 31 F. Supp. 2d 367, 373, 49 USPQ2d 1180, 1184 (D.N.J. 1998), *rev’d on other grounds sub nom. Rose Art Indus., Inc. v. Swanson*, 235 F.3d 165, 57 USPQ2d 1125 (3d Cir. 2000)) (stating that trade dress protection for a series or line of products or packaging depends on them having a consistent overall look and remanding for proper application of the standard); *The Walt Disney Co. v. GoodTimes Home Video Corp.*, 830 F. Supp. 762, 766, 29 USPQ2d 1047, 1050 (S.D.N.Y. 1993) (setting forth the “consistent overall look” standard and applying it to a claim of protection for a line of packaging trade dress). For example, the drawing of a three-dimensional design of a guitar might reasonably reflect the consistent overall look of both guitars and ukuleles, which can share a very similar shape and appearance.

Section 1(a) Applications: Where the identification of goods/services, the description of the mark, or other evidence of record indicate that not all of the goods/services in the identification are represented in the three-dimensional mark depicted on the drawing, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the mark fails to function as a mark for the inconsistent goods/services. The statutory bases for the refusal are §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#) for trademarks and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), for service marks.

The examining attorney must specify the inconsistent goods/services subject to refusal and request evidence and/or additional specimens to substantiate use of the mark in connection with the inconsistent goods/services. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). The applicant may overcome the refusal by providing (1) additional specimens showing the inconsistent goods in the shape of the design depicted on the drawing or (2) sufficient evidence that the three-dimensional product design or configuration mark functions as a source indicator in connection with the inconsistent goods/services listed in the identification. The applicant may also delete the inconsistent goods/services.

The examining attorney must also examine the drawing and the specimen to determine whether the specific three-dimensional product design mark depicted on the drawing is a substantially exact representation of the mark shown on the specimen. [TMEP §807.12\(a\)](#).

Section 1(b) Applications: In a §1(b) application for which no specimen has been submitted, if the examining attorney anticipates that the applicant may not be able to show proper trademark use of the product design mark for the inconsistent goods/services, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant's attention in the first action issued by the USPTO. This advisory is given strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding the possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration after submission of the use allegation. When the record indicates that the product design would not be perceived as a mark for the inconsistent goods/services, the examining attorney may make the failure to function as a mark refusal prior to the filing of the allegation of use.

When an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#), or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), is submitted in connection with a §1(b) application, the examining attorney should follow the procedures discussed above for product-design trade dress in §1(a) applications.

Section 44 and Section 66(a) Applications: A specimen is not required in a §44 or §66(a) application to show use of the proposed mark in commerce in connection with the identified goods/services. However, since these applications are otherwise examined under the same standards as applications under §1, it is appropriate for the examining attorney to refuse registration on the ground that the mark fails to function as a mark for the inconsistent goods/services where the drawing, the description of the mark, the identification of goods/services, or other evidence indicates that the identification includes goods/services that are, on their face, inconsistent with the specific three-dimensional product design depicted on the drawing (e.g., a three-dimensional toy car product design for "toy boats"). The statutory bases for the refusal are §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), for trademarks and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#), for service marks. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal, which is otherwise typically specimen based, in a §66(a) application). The examining attorney must also request evidence to substantiate that the proposed mark could function as a source indicator in connection with the inconsistent goods/services. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). This is not a requirement for specimens. To overcome the refusal, the applicant must provide evidence showing that the three-dimensional product design or configuration mark functions as a source indicator in connection with the inconsistent goods/services listed in the identification. Absent such a showing, the identification of goods/services must be amended to delete the inconsistent goods/services.

1202.02(f)(ii) Product Packaging

The three-dimensional packaging or wrapping in which a product is sold also constitutes trade dress. While a product-design drawing typically depicts the shape or configuration of the product listed in the identification of goods, product packaging can be in any shape or form that serves as packaging for the listed goods. For

example, if the drawing depicts a three-dimensional computer mouse, the description of the mark states that the trade dress is product *packaging*, and the identified goods are “cosmetics and hair brushes,” it is conceivable that the goods could be sold in packaging shaped like a computer mouse, and it does not mean that the goods themselves must be in the shape of a computer mouse. However, where the drawing depicts a three-dimensional computer mouse, the description of the mark states that the trade dress is product *design or configuration*, the identified goods are “cosmetics and hair brushes,” and the goods are not in the shape of a computer mouse, this presents a potential issue of “inconsistent goods.” See [TMEP §1202.02\(f\)\(i\)](#).

In most cases, the specific three-dimensional product packaging depicted on the drawing houses the product being sold (e.g., the drawing shows a three-dimensional bottle and the goods are “wine”). However, in rare cases, the identification of goods may include products (or services) that appear, on their face, to be inconsistent with the type of packaging design depicted on the drawing (e.g., a drawing showing a three-dimensional bottle design for “automobiles” or other “inconsistent goods” that are not likely to be sold in bottles). In such cases, where the drawing, the description of the mark, the specimen, or any other evidence of record does not support that the three-dimensional product packaging depicted on the drawing would serve as packaging for the goods, the applicant must provide sufficient evidence that the proposed trade dress serves as the actual shape of the packaging for the inconsistent goods or has a “consistent overall look” across all the goods listed in the identification. Cf. *Rose Art Indus., Inc. v. Swanson*, 235 F.3d 165, 173, 57 USPQ2d 1125, 1131 (3d Cir. 2000) (quoting *Rose Art Indus., Inc. v. Raymond Geddes & Co.*, 31 F. Supp. 2d 367, 373, 49 USPQ2d 1180, 1184 (D.N.J. 1998), *rev’d on other grounds sub nom. Rose Art Indus., Inc. v. Swanson*, 235 F.3d 165, 57 USPQ2d 1125 (3d Cir. 2000)) (stating that trade dress protection for a series or line of products or packaging depends on them having a consistent overall look and remanding for proper application of the standard); *The Walt Disney Co. v. GoodTimes Home Video Corp.*, 830 F. Supp. 762, 766, 29 USPQ2d 1047, 1050 (S.D.N.Y. 1993) (setting forth the “consistent overall look” standard and applying it to a claim of protection for a line of packaging trade dress). In this situation, the same analysis, refusal, and requirements that apply to product design also apply to product packaging. See [TMEP §1202.02\(f\)\(i\)](#).

1202.03 Refusal on Basis of Ornamentation

Subject matter that is merely a decorative feature does not identify and distinguish the applicant’s goods and, thus, does not function as a trademark. A decorative feature may include words, designs, slogans, or trade dress. This matter should be refused registration because it is merely ornamentation and, therefore, does not function as a trademark, as required by §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052](#), and [1127](#).

Generally, the ornamentation refusal applies only to trademarks, not to service marks. See [TMEP §§1301.02–1301.02\(f\)](#) regarding matter that does not function as a service mark.

Matter that serves primarily as a source indicator, either inherently or as a result of acquired distinctiveness, and that is only incidentally ornamental or decorative, can be registered as a trademark. *In re Paramount Pictures Corp.*, 213 USPQ 1111, 1114 (TTAB 1982).

With regard to registrability, ornamental matter may be categorized along a continuum ranging from ornamental matter that is registrable on the Principal Register, to purely ornamental matter that is incapable of trademark significance and unregistrable under any circumstances, as follows:

- (1) Ornamental matter that serves as an identifier of a “secondary source” is registrable on the Principal Register. For example, ornamental matter on a T-shirt (e.g., the designation “NEW YORK

UNIVERSITY”) can convey to the purchasing public the “secondary source” of the T-shirt (rather than the manufacturing source). Thus, even where the T-shirt is distributed by a party other than that identified by the designation, sponsorship or authorization by the identified party is indicated. See [TMEP §1202.03\(c\)](#).

- (2) Ornamental matter that is neither inherently distinctive nor a secondary source indicator may be registered on the Principal Register under §2(f), if the applicant establishes that the subject matter has acquired distinctiveness as a mark in relation to the goods. See [TMEP §1202.03\(d\)](#).
- (3) Ornamental matter that is neither inherently distinctive nor an indicator of secondary source, and has not acquired distinctiveness, but is capable of attaining trademark significance, may be registered on the Supplemental Register in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act.
- (4) Some matter is determined to be purely ornamental and, thus, incapable of trademark significance and unregistrable on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1202.03\(a\)](#).

The examining attorney should consider the following factors to determine whether ornamental matter can be registered: (1) the commercial impression of the proposed mark; (2) the relevant practices of the trade; (3) secondary source, if applicable; and (4) evidence of distinctiveness. These factors are discussed in the following sections.

1202.03(a) Commercial Impression

The examining attorney must determine whether the overall commercial impression of the proposed mark is that of a trademark. Matter that is purely ornamental or decorative does not function as a trademark and is unregistrable on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register.

The significance of the proposed mark is a factor to consider when determining whether ornamental matter serves a trademark function. Common expressions and symbols (e.g., the peace symbol, “smiley face,” or the phrase “Have a Nice Day”) are normally not perceived as marks.

The examining attorney must also consider the size, location, and dominance of the proposed mark, as applied to the goods, to determine whether ornamental matter serves a trademark function. *In re Hulting*, 107 USPQ2d 1175, 1177-79 (TTAB 2013); *In re Lululemon Athletica Can. Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d 1684, 1687 (TTAB 2013) (quoting *In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156 (TTAB 2008)); *In re Dimitri’s Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 1666, 1667 (TTAB 1988); *In re Astro-Gods Inc.*, 223 USPQ 621, 623 (TTAB 1984). A small, neat, and discrete word or design feature (e.g., small design of animal over pocket or breast portion of shirt) may be likely to create the commercial impression of a trademark, whereas a larger rendition of the same matter emblazoned across the front of a garment (or a tote bag, or the like) may be perceived merely as a decorative or ornamental feature of the goods. However, a small, neat, and discrete word or design feature will not necessarily be perceived as a mark in all cases. Moreover, the size of the mark on clothing is only one consideration in determining the registrability of a mark. *In re Lululemon Athletica Can. Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d at 1689.

1202.03(b) Practices of the Trade

In determining whether a proposed mark is inherently distinctive, factors to be considered include whether the subject matter is unique or unusual in a particular field, as opposed to a mere refinement of a commonly adopted and well-known form of ornamentation for a particular class of goods that would be viewed by the public as a dress or ornamentation for the goods. See, e.g., *In re General Tire & Rubber Co.*, 404 F.2d 1396, 1398, 160 USPQ 415, 417 (C.C.P.A. 1969) (affirming the ornamentation refusal of a mark comprising three

narrow white concentric rings of approximately equal width applied to the outer surface of a dark sidewall tire; mark was a refinement of the practice, which consumers were familiar with, of whitewalls as decoration on tires); *In re Chung, Jeanne & Kim Co.*, 226 USPQ 938, 941-42 (TTAB 1985) (finding that stripe design applied to sides of sport shoes was mere refinement of the common and well-known form of ornamentation in the field of sports shoes).

Even if a proposed mark is not inherently distinctive, it may be registered on the Principal Register if it has become distinctive of the applicant's goods in commerce. See [TMEP §1202.03\(d\)](#). The practices of the trade may be relevant in assessing the applicant's burden of proving that the proposed mark has become distinctive. Typically, more evidence is required if the proposed mark is a type of ornamental matter used so frequently in the relevant industry that consumers would be less apt to discern a source-indicating significance from its use. See *Anchor Hocking Glass Corp. v. Corning Glass Works*, 162 USPQ 288, 292-99 (TTAB 1969) (extensive evidence of record supported that cornflower design was recognized as a trademark for coffee percolators, culinary vessels, and utensils). Cf. *In re Villeroy & Boch S.A.R.L.*, 5 USPQ2d 1451, 1454 (TTAB 1987) (affirming refusal to register design of morning glories and leaves for tableware, the Board noting that the design "has not been shown to be other than another decorative pattern without trademark significance....").

If the applicant cannot show that the proposed mark has acquired distinctiveness, the mark in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act may be registered on the Supplemental Register if it is capable of distinguishing the applicant's goods or services. [15 U.S.C. §1091](#). The practices of the trade may be relevant in determining whether a proposed mark is capable of distinguishing the goods or services. If the practices of the trade suggest that certain matter performs the function of a trademark by signifying to purchasers and prospective purchasers the goods of a particular entity and distinguishing them from the goods of others, the matter is assumed to be capable of distinguishing the applicant's goods and, therefore, may be registered on the Supplemental Register. See *In re Todd Co.*, 290 F.2d 597, 599-600, 129 USPQ 408, 410 (C.C.P.A. 1961) (holding that repeating pattern of green lines, used to cover the entire back surface of safety paper products (e.g., checks), was registrable on the Supplemental Register for safety paper products, where the record showed that it had long been the practice in the industry to use distinctive overall surface designs to indicate origin of the products).

1202.03(c) "Secondary Source"

To show that a proposed mark that is used on the goods in a decorative or ornamental manner also serves a source-indicating function, the applicant may submit evidence that the proposed mark would be recognized as a mark through its use with goods or services other than those being refused as ornamental. To show secondary source, the applicant may show: (1) ownership of a U.S. registration on the Principal Register of the same mark for other goods or services based on use in commerce under §1 of the Trademark Act; (2) ownership of a U.S. registration on the Principal Register of the same mark for other goods or services based on a foreign registration under §44(e) or §66(a) of the Trademark Act for which an affidavit or declaration of use in commerce under §8 or §71 has been accepted; (3) non-ornamental use of the mark in commerce on other goods or services; or (4) ownership of a pending use-based application for the same mark, used in a non-ornamental manner, for other goods or services. Ownership of an intent-to-use application for which no allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#), has been filed is not sufficient to show secondary source. If the applicant establishes that the proposed mark serves as an identifier of secondary source, the matter is registrable on the Principal Register.

In *In re Paramount Pictures Corp.*, 213 USPQ 1111, 1112 (TTAB 1982), the Board held that MORK & MINDY was registrable for decals because the applicant had a television series of that name and had previously registered MORK & MINDY for various goods and services, and found that the *primary*

significance of the term MORK & MINDY to a prospective purchaser of decals was to indicate the television series and the principal characters of the television series. The Board held that the case was controlled by its decision in *In re Olin Corp.*, 181 USPQ 182 (TTAB 1973) (stylized “O” design registrable for T-shirts, where applicant had previously registered the “O” design for skis), in which that Board had stated:

It is a matter of common knowledge that T-shirts are “ornamented” with various insignia ... or ... various sayings such as “Swallow Your Leader.” In that sense what is sought to be registered could be construed to be ornamental. If such ornamentation is without any meaning other than as mere ornamentation it is apparent that the ornamentation could not and would not serve as an indicia of source. Thus, to use our own example, “Swallow Your Leader” probably would not be considered as an indication of source.

Id. at 182.

In *Paramount*, the Board stated that “[t]he ‘ornamentation’ of a T-shirt can be of a special nature which is [sic] inherently tells the purchasing public the source of the T-shirt, not the source of manufacture but the secondary source.” 213 USPQ at 1112. Applying the test set forth in *Olin*, the Board found that “the paired names ‘MORK & MINDY’, while certainly part of the ornamentation of the decal, also indicate source or origin in the proprietor of the Mork & Mindy television series in the same sense as the stylized ‘O’ in *Olin*.” *Id.* at 1113. The Board noted that “while purchasers may be accustomed to seeing characters’ names and images as part of the ornamentation of decals, T-shirts and the like, they are also accustomed to seeing characters’ names and images used as trademarks to indicate source of origin.” *Id.* at 1114.

See also In re Watkins Glen Int’l, Inc., 227 USPQ 727, 729 (TTAB 1985) (reversing the refusal and finding stylized checkered flag design registrable for patches and clothing items, where applicant had previously registered WATKINS GLEN and checkered flag design (with “WATKINS GLEN” disclaimed) for services); *In re Expo ‘74*, 189 USPQ 48, 50 (TTAB 1975) (reversing the refusal and holding EXPO ‘74 registrable for handkerchiefs and T-shirts, since applicant, organizer of the 1974 World’s Fair, had previously registered EXPO ‘74 for other goods and services).

A series of ornamental uses of the proposed mark on various items will not establish that the proposed mark functions as an indicator of secondary source; use as a trademark for the other goods or services must be shown. *See In re Astro-Gods Inc.*, 223 USPQ 621 (TTAB 1984) (affirming the refusal to register ASTRO GODS and design for T-shirts, despite applicant’s ornamental use of the proposed mark on other goods and appearance of applicant’s trade name “Astro Gods Inc.” on the T-shirt as part of a copyright notice).

1202.03(d) Evidence of Distinctiveness

As noted above, even if a proposed mark is not inherently distinctive, it may nevertheless be registered on the Principal Register under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), if it becomes distinctive of the applicant’s goods in commerce. See [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness.

Generally, evidence of five years’ use alone is not sufficient to show acquired distinctiveness of a mark that is mere ornamentation. Concrete evidence that the proposed mark is perceived as a mark for the relevant goods or services is required to establish distinctiveness. *See In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 227 USPQ 417 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

1202.03(e) Ornamentation with Respect to §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications

Generally, the issue of ornamentation is tied to the use of the proposed mark as evidenced by the specimen. Therefore, unless the ornamental nature of the mark is clearly apparent from the drawing and description of the mark, no ornamentation refusal will be issued in an intent-to-use application until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) of use with an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#).

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for the examining attorney to issue an ornamentation refusal where the proposed mark on its face, as shown on the drawing and described in the description, reflects a failure to function. *In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal in a §66(a) application for a mark comprising pocket-stitching design for clothing).

1202.03(f) Ornamentation: Case References

The following cases show the various ways in which ornamental matter was found not to function as a mark.

1202.03(f)(i) Slogans or Words Used on the Goods

Slogans or phrases used on items such as t-shirts and sweatshirts, jewelry, and ceramic plates have been refused registration as ornamentation that purchasers will perceive as conveying a message rather than indicating the source of the goods. *See D.C. One Wholesaler, Inc. v. Chien*, 120 USPQ2d 1710, 1716 (TTAB 2016) (finding that customers purchase products with the phrase I DC specifically because they are ornamented with the phrase in an informational manner and that, given the phrase's "significance as an expression of enthusiasm, it does not create the commercial impression of a source indicator, even when displayed on a hangtag or label"); *In re Hulting*, 107 USPQ2d 1175, 1181 (TTAB 2013) (finding that proposed mark NO MORE RINOS! conveys a political slogan devoid of source-identifying significance); *In re Pro-Line Corp.*, 28 USPQ2d 1141 (TTAB 1993) (BLACKER THE COLLEGE SWEETER THE KNOWLEDGE primarily ornamental slogan that is not likely to be perceived as source indicator); *In re Dimitri's Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 1666 (TTAB 1988) (SUMO, as used in connection with stylized representations of sumo wrestlers on applicant's T-shirts and baseball-style caps, serves merely as an ornamental feature of applicant's goods); *In re Original Red Plate Co.*, 223 USPQ 836 (TTAB 1984) (YOU ARE SPECIAL TODAY for ceramic plates found to be without any source-indicating significance); *In re Astro-Gods Inc.*, 223 USPQ 621, 624 (TTAB 1984) ("[T]he designation 'ASTRO GODS' and design is not likely to be perceived as anything other than part of the thematic whole of the ornamentation of applicant's shirts."); *Damn I'm Good Inc. v. Sakowitz, Inc.*, 514 F. Supp. 1357, 212 USPQ 684 (S.D.N.Y. 1981) (DAMN I'M GOOD, inscribed in large letters on bracelets and used on hang tags affixed to the goods, found to be without any source-indicating significance).

See also [TMEP §1202.04](#) regarding informational matter.

1202.03(f)(ii) Designs Used on the Goods

See In re General Tire & Rubber Co., 404 F.2d 1396, 160 USPQ 415 (C.C.P.A. 1969) (three narrow white concentric rings of approximately equal width applied to the outer surface of a dark sidewall tire considered just a refinement of a general ornamental concept rather than a trademark); *In re David Crystal, Inc.*, 296 F.2d 771, 132 USPQ 1 (C.C.P.A. 1961) (two parallel colored bands at the top of the sock, the upper band red, and the lower band blue, for men's ribbed socks held merely ornamental absent convincing evidence

that the purchasing public recognized the design as a trademark); *In re Sunburst Prods., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1843 (TTAB 1999) (combination of matching color of watch bezel and watch band and contrasting colors of watch case and watch bezel for sports watches found to be nothing more than a mere refinement of a common or basic color scheme for sports watches and, therefore, would not immediately be recognized or perceived as a source indicator); *In re Villeroy & Boch S.A.R.L.*, 5 USPQ2d 1451 (TTAB 1987) (floral pattern design of morning glories and leaves for tableware not distinctive and not shown to be other than decorative pattern without trademark significance).

1202.03(f)(iii) Trade Dress on the Containers for the Goods

See *In re J. Kinderman & Sons Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d 1253 (TTAB 1998) (design of container for Christmas decorations that resembles a wrapped Christmas gift not inherently distinctive); *In re F.C.F. Inc.*, 30 USPQ2d 1825 (TTAB 1994) (rose design used on cosmetics packaging is essentially ornamental or decorative background and does not function as mark); *In re Petersen Mfg. Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 2032 (TTAB 1987) (design representing the rear panel of a container for hand tools held unregistrable as merely ornamental, notwithstanding §2(f) claim).

1202.03(g) Ornamentation Cases and Acquired Distinctiveness

In the following cases, subject matter sought to be registered was found to have acquired distinctiveness as a trademark: *In re Jockey Int'l, Inc.*, 192 USPQ 579 (TTAB 1976) (inverted Y design used on underwear found to have acquired distinctiveness, where evidence showed extensive use on packaging and in advertising in a manner calculated to draw the attention of prospective purchasers to the design and for them to look at the design as a badge of origin); *Anchor Hocking Glass Corp. v. Corning Glass Works*, 162 USPQ 288 (TTAB 1969) (blue cornflower design for coffee percolators, culinary vessels, and utensils found to have acquired distinctiveness, where evidence showed extensive and prominent use of the design in advertising, use of the design on pins and aprons worn by sales promotion representatives in the course of their duties, and surveys and statements of purchasers indicating that they recognized the design as indicating origin in applicant).

1202.04 Informational Matter

Slogans and other terms that are merely informational in nature, or common laudatory phrases or statements that would ordinarily be used in business or in the particular trade or industry, are not registrable. See *D.C. One Wholesaler, Inc. v. Chien*, 120 USPQ2d 1710, 1716 (TTAB 2016) (finding that I DC does not create the commercial impression of a source indicator because it would be perceived as informational); *In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644, 1655 (TTAB 2013) (finding AOP merely informational and not source-identifying for wine as it informs consumers of a certification process); *In re T.S. Designs, Inc.*, 95 USPQ2d 1669 (TTAB 2010) (holding CLOTHING FACTS merely an informational phrase and not a source identifier based on the likely consumer perception of the phrase used on a clothing label in connection with manufacturing information reminiscent of the "Nutrition Facts" label required for food products by the United States Food and Drug Administration); *In re Aerospace Optics, Inc.*, 78 USPQ2d 1861 (TTAB 2006) (holding SPECTRUM fails to function as a mark for illuminated pushbutton switches, where the mark is used in a manner that merely informs potential purchasers of the multiple color feature of the goods, and the coloring and font in which the mark is displayed are not sufficient to imbue the term with source-identifying significance or to set it apart from other informational wording); *In re Volvo Cars of N. Am., Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d 1455 (TTAB 1998) (holding DRIVE SAFELY merely an informational phrase or slogan that would be perceived as an everyday, commonplace safety admonition that does not function as mark); *In re Manco Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1938, 1942 (TTAB 1992) (holding THINK GREEN and design for

weatherstripping and paper products “merely an informational slogan devoid of trademark significance”); *In re Remington Prods., Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1714 (TTAB 1987) (holding PROUDLY MADE IN USA, for electric shavers, merely an informational slogan that is incapable of functioning as a mark, notwithstanding use of letters “TM” in connection with prominent display of slogan on packages for the goods and claim of acquired distinctiveness); *In re Tilcon Warren, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 86 (TTAB 1984) (holding WATCH THAT CHILD for construction material merely informational and not registrable notwithstanding long use); *In re Schwauss*, 217 USPQ 361, 362 (TTAB 1983) (finding FRAGILE for labels and bumper stickers merely informational and devoid of any source-identifying function).

The critical inquiry in determining whether a slogan or term functions as a trademark or service mark is how the proposed mark would be perceived by the relevant public. *D.C. One Wholesaler, Inc.* 120 USPQ 2d at 1713 (TTAB 2016) (citing *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.* 96 USPQ 2d 1227, 1229-30 (TTAB 2010)); see *In re Phoseon Technology Inc.*, 103 USPQ2d 1822, 1827 (TTAB 2012) (noting the critical inquiry in determining whether a mark, as used on the specimen, functions as a trademark is the “commercial impression it makes on the relevant public (e.g., whether the term sought to be registered would be perceived as a mark identifying the source of the goods or merely as an informational phrase.”). The more commonly a phrase is used in everyday parlance, the less likely the public will use it to identify only one source and the less likely the phrase will be recognized by purchasers as a trademark or service mark. *In re Eagle Crest*, 96 USPQ2d at 1229-30 (noting that “[a]s a matter of competitive policy, it should be close to impossible for one competitor to achieve exclusive rights’ in common phrases or slogans.” (quoting J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition* §7.23 (4th ed. 2010))). Because the function of a trademark is to identify a single commercial source for particular goods or services, if consumers are accustomed to seeing a slogan used in connection with goods/services from many different sources, it is likely that consumers would not view the slogan as a source identifier for such goods/services. *Id.* at 1230.

Use of the TM notation in and of itself does not make an otherwise unregistrable term a trademark. *In re Volvo Cars*, 46 USPQ2d at 1461.

A slogan can function as a trademark if it is not merely descriptive and/or merely informational. See, e.g., *Roux Labs., Inc. v. Clairol Inc.*, 427 F.2d 823, 166 USPQ 34 (C.C.P.A. 1970) (affirming the Board’s dismissal of an opposition to the registration of HAIR COLOR SO NATURAL ONLY HER HAIRDRESSER KNOWS FOR SURE for hair coloring preparation since the evidence showed the slogan functioned as a mark); *In re The Hallicrafters Co.*, 153 USPQ 376 (TTAB 1967) (reversing the refusal to register where QUALITY THROUGH CRAFTSMANSHIP for radio equipment functioned as a mark). See [TMEP §1202.03\(f\)\(i\)](#) regarding ornamental slogans used on goods.

The statutory basis for refusal of trademark registration on the ground that the matter is merely informational is §§ 1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), and, in the case of matter sought to be registered for services, §§ 1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#). The applicant cannot overcome a refusal of trademark registration issued on the ground that the matter is merely informational by attempting to amend the application to seek registration on the Supplemental Register or pursuant to §2(f). See *In re Eagle Crest*, 96 USPQ2d at 1229 (noting that “[s]logans and other terms that are considered to be merely informational in nature, or to be common laudatory phrases or statements that would ordinarily be used in business or in the particular trade or industry, are not registrable”). In support of the refusal, the examining attorney must provide evidence that the mark is a slogan or term incapable of being perceived as a trademark or service mark. This support may include evidence of decorative or informational use by other manufacturers on goods of a similar nature and evidence that the term or slogan is frequently used by parties in connection with the sale of their goods or services. See *D.C. One Wholesaler, Inc.*, 120 USPQ at 1716 (noting that “the marketplace is awash in products that display the term I DC as a prominent ornamental feature of such goods, in such a way that the display itself is an important component

of the product and customers purchase the product precisely because it is ornamented with a display of the term in an informational manner, not associated with a particular source”); *In re Eagle Crest*, 96 USPQ at 1230 (noting because consumers would be accustomed to seeing the phrase ONCE A MARINE, ALWAYS A MARINE “displayed on clothing items from many different sources, they could not view the slogan as a trademark indicating source of the clothing only in applicant”); *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ 76, 78 (TTAB 1984) (finding the relatively common merchandising slogan WHY PAY MORE! does not function as a mark which identifies and distinguishes applicant’s services from others).

If a slogan or term comprises a mark that is merely informational, then by its very nature it would not be seen as an indicator of source. Accordingly, registration must be refused even if the specimen of record shows what would otherwise be acceptable trademark or service mark use. *D.C. One Wholesaler, Inc.*, 120 USPQ at 1716 (“Because the nature of the phrase [I DC] will be perceived as informational, and also because the ubiquity of the phrase . . . on apparel and other souvenirs of many makers has given it a significance as an expression of enthusiasm, it does not create the commercial impression of a source indicator, even when displayed on a hangtag or label.”). Similarly, if there is sufficient evidence to indicate that consumers are accustomed to seeing a slogan or term used in connection with the relevant goods/services from many different sources, registration should be refused in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) applications because the slogan or term would not be perceived as a mark. *See In re Eagle Crest*, 96 USPQ2d at 1230 (holding that because the function of a trademark is to identify a single commercial source for particular goods/services, if consumers are accustomed to seeing a slogan used in connection with goods/services from many different sources, it is likely that consumers would not view the slogan as a source identifier for such goods/services).

See [TMEP §§1202.17\(c\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) regarding informational universal symbols and [1301.02\(a\)](#) regarding informational matter that does not function as a service mark.

1202.05 Color as a Mark

Color marks are marks that consist *solely* of one or more colors used on particular objects. For marks used in connection with goods, color may be used on the entire surface of the goods, on a portion of the goods, or on all or part of the packaging for the goods. For example, a color trademark might consist of purple used on a salad bowl, pink used on the handle of a shovel, or a blue background and a pink circle used on all or part of a product package. *See Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 34 USPQ2d 1161 (1995) (green-gold used on dry cleaning press pads held to be a protectible trademark where the color had acquired secondary meaning); *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 227 USPQ 417 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (the color pink as applied to fibrous glass residential insulation registrable where the evidence showed the color had acquired secondary meaning). Similarly, service marks may consist of color used on all or part of materials used in the advertising and rendering of the services.

The registrability of a color mark depends on the manner in which the proposed mark is used. *Owens-Corning*, 774 F.2d at 1120, 227 USPQ at 419. A color(s) takes on the characteristics of the object or surface to which it is applied, and the commercial impression of a color will change accordingly. *See In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 1353, 61 USPQ2d 1121, 1124 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (“a word mark retains its same appearance when used on different objects, but color is not immediately distinguishable as a service mark when used in similar circumstances”).

Color marks are never inherently distinctive, and cannot be registered on the Principal Register without a showing of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 211-12, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068 (2000). See [TMEP §1202.05\(a\)](#) and cases cited therein.

Color, whether a single overall color or multiple colors applied in a specific and arbitrary fashion, is usually perceived as an ornamental feature of the goods or services. *Owens-Corning*, 774 F.2d at 1124, 227 USPQ at 422; *In re Hudson News Co.*, 39 USPQ2d 1915, 1923 (TTAB 1996), *aff'd per curiam*, 114 F.3d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (“blue motif” used in retail stores would likely be perceived by prospective purchasers as “nothing more than interior decoration” that “could be found in any number of retail establishments. Undoubtedly such features are usually perceived as interior decoration or ornamentation.”). However, color can function as a mark if it is used in the manner of a trademark or service mark and if it is perceived by the purchasing public to identify and distinguish the goods or services on or in connection with which it is used and to indicate their source. The United States Supreme Court has held that color alone may, sometimes, meet the basic legal requirements for a trademark. When it does, there is no rule that prevents color from serving as a mark. *Qualitex*, 514 U.S. at 161, 34 USPQ2d at 1162. If a color is not functional and is shown to have acquired distinctiveness on or in connection with the applicant’s goods or services, it is registrable as a mark.

Functional color marks are not registrable. See [TMEP §1202.05\(b\)](#) and cases cited therein.

1202.05(a) Color Marks Never Inherently Distinctive

Color marks are never inherently distinctive. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 211-12, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068 (2000) (citing *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 162-63, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1162-63 (1995)); *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 1353, 61 USPQ2d 1121, 1124 (Fed. Cir. 2001). *In re Hodgdon Powder Co.*, 119 USPQ2d 1254, 1255 (TTAB 2016). Therefore, the examining attorney must refuse to register a color mark on the Principal Register, unless the applicant establishes that the proposed mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). The examining attorney must issue this refusal in *all* color mark applications where acquired distinctiveness has not been shown, regardless of the filing basis of the application. The ground for refusal is that the color is not inherently distinctive and, thus, does not function as a trademark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), or does not function as a service mark under §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#).

If the proposed color mark is not functional, it may be registrable on the Principal Register if it is shown to have acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). See *In re Hodgdon Powder Co.*, 119 USPQ2d at 1255-59. If it is not distinctive, it is registrable only on the Supplemental Register. See *In re Hudson News Co.*, 39 USPQ2d 1915, 1923 (TTAB 1996), *aff'd per curiam*, 114 F.3d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (“blue motif” applied to retail store services not registrable on Principal Register without resort to Section 2(f)); *Edward Weck Inc. v. IM Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1142, 1145 (TTAB 1990) (the color green, as uniformly applied to medical instruments, not barred from registration on the basis of functionality; however, evidence failed to establish the color had become distinctive of the goods); *In re Deere & Co.*, 7 USPQ2d 1401, 1403-04 (TTAB 1988) (the colors green and yellow, as applied to the body and wheels of machines, respectively, not barred from registration on the basis of functionality; evidence established the colors had become distinctive of the goods).

The burden of proving that a color mark has acquired distinctiveness is substantial. See *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 227 USPQ 417 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (the color pink, as uniformly applied to fibrous glass residential insulation, shown to have acquired distinctiveness); *In re Lorillard Licensing Co.*, 99 USPQ2d 1312 (TTAB 2011) (finding the evidence insufficient to demonstrate that the applied-for mark, “namely, any orange text appearing on a green background,” had achieved acquired distinctiveness); *In re Benetton Grp. S.p.A.*, 48 USPQ2d 1214 (TTAB 1998) (evidence insufficient to establish that green rectangular background design had acquired distinctiveness as applied to clothing and footwear); *In re American Home Prods. Corp.*, 226 USPQ 327 (TTAB 1985) (tri-colored, three-dimensional, circular-shaped design found to have become distinctive of analgesic and muscle relaxant tablets); *In re Star Pharms., Inc.*, 225 USPQ

209 (TTAB 1985) (evidence found insufficient to establish that two-colored drug capsules and multi-colored seeds or granules contained therein had become distinctive of methyltestosterone). A mere statement of long use is not sufficient. *See, e.g., Benetton*, 48 USPQ2d at 1216-17 (despite long use, record devoid of any evidence that the green rectangular background design has been used, promoted, or advertised as a mark). The applicant must demonstrate that the color has acquired source-indicating significance in the minds of consumers.

As noted above, the commercial impression of a color may change depending on the object to which it is applied. Therefore, evidence submitted to demonstrate acquired distinctiveness of a color may show consumer recognition with respect to certain objects, but not for other objects. *See Thrifty*, 274 F.3d at 1353, 61 USPQ2d at 1124. *Cf. Qualitex*, 514 U.S. at 163, 34 USPQ2d at 1162-63 (“The imaginary word ‘Suntost,’ or the words ‘Suntost Marmalade,’ on a jar of orange jam immediately would signal a brand or a product ‘source’; the jam’s orange color does not do so. But, over time, customers may come to treat a particular color on a product or its packaging (say, a color that in context seems unusual, such as pink on a firm’s insulating material or red on the head of a large industrial bolt) as signifying a brand. And, if so, that color would have come to identify and distinguish the goods -- *i. e.*, ‘to indicate’ their ‘source...’”).

1202.05(b) Functional Color Marks Not Registrable

A color mark is not registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f), or the Supplemental Register, if the color is functional. *See Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 165-66, 34 USPQ2d 1161 (1995); *Brunswick Corp. v. British Seagull Ltd.*, 35 F.3d 1527, 32 USPQ2d 1120 (Fed. Cir. 1994), *cert. denied*, 514 U.S. 1050 (1995); *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 227 USPQ 417 (Fed. Cir. 1985). A color may be functional if it yields a utilitarian or functional advantage, for example, yellow or orange for safety signs. *Brunswick*, 35 F.3d 1527, 32 USPQ2d 1120 (holding the color black functional for outboard motors because, while the color did not provide utilitarian advantages in terms of making the engines work better, it nevertheless provided recognizable competitive advantages in terms of being compatible with a wide variety of boat colors and making the engines appear smaller); *In re Florists’ Transworld Delivery Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d 1784, 1791 (TTAB 2013) (finding the color black for floral packaging functional because there was a competitive need for others in the industry to use black in connection with floral arrangements and flowers to communicate a desired sentiment or occasion, such as elegance, bereavement, or Halloween); *Saint-Gobain Corp. v. 3M Co.*, 90 USPQ2d 1425, 1446-47 (TTAB 2007) (deep purple shade for coated abrasives held functional, the Board finding that opposer had established a prima facie case that coated abrasive manufacturers have a competitive need to be able to use various shades of purple, include applicant’s shade, which applicant had failed to rebut; and that “[i]n the field of coated abrasives, color serves a myriad of functions, including color coding, and the need to color code lends support for the basic finding that color, including purple, is functional in the field of coated abrasives having paper or cloth backing.”); *In re Ferris Corp.*, 59 USPQ2d 1587 (TTAB 2000) (color pink used on surgical wound dressings is functional because the actual color of the goods closely resembles Caucasian human skin); *In re Orange Commc’ns, Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1036 (TTAB 1996) (colors yellow and orange held to be functional for public telephones and telephone booths, since they are more visible under all lighting conditions in the event of an emergency); *In re Howard S. Leight & Assocs.*, 39 USPQ2d 1058 (TTAB 1996) (color coral held to be functional for earplugs, because it is more visible during safety checks). A color may also be functional if it is more economical to manufacture or use. For example, a color may be a natural by-product of the manufacturing process for the goods. In such a case, appropriation of the color by a single party would place others at a competitive disadvantage by requiring them to alter the manufacturing process.

See also In re Pollak Steel Co., 314 F.2d 566, 136 USPQ 651 (C.C.P.A. 1963) (reflective color on fence found to be functional); *Kasco Corp. v. Southern Saw Serv. Inc.*, 27 USPQ2d 1501 (TTAB 1993) (color green used as wrapper for saw blades is functional when the color is one of the six colors used in a

color-coding system to identify the type of blade); *R.L. Winston Rod Co. v. Sage Mfg. Co.*, 838 F. Supp. 1396, 29 USPQ2d 1779 (D. Mont. 1993) (color green used on graphite fishing rods found to be functional); *Russell Harrington Cutlery Inc. v. Zivi Hercules Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1965 (D. Mass. 1992) (color white used on cutlery handles found to be functional).

The doctrine of “aesthetic functionality” may apply in some cases where the evidence indicates that the color at issue provides specific competitive advantages that, while not necessarily categorized as purely “utilitarian” in nature, nevertheless dictate that the color remain in the public domain. *Brunswick*, 35 F.3d at 1533, 32 USPQ2d at 1124; *In re Florists’ Transworld Delivery Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d at 1787-88. See also *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 33, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (2001) (Supreme Court discussed aesthetic functionality, distinguishing *Qualitex*, 514 US 159, 34 USPQ2d 1161, as a case where “aesthetic functionality was the central question...”). See [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(vi\)](#).

1202.05(c) Color as a Separable Element

As with all trademarks and service marks, a color mark may contain only those elements that make a separable commercial impression. See [TMEP §807.12\(d\)](#). Accordingly, an applicant may not seek to register the color of the wording or design apart from the words or designs themselves if the color does not create a separate commercial impression. However, the applicant may register the color of the background material on which the words or design appear apart from the words or design. See [TMEP §1202.11](#) regarding background designs and shapes.

The commercial impression of a color may change depending on the object to which it is applied. *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 61 USPQ2d 1121 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *In re Hayes*, 62 USPQ2d 1443 (TTAB 2002). Granting an application for registration of color in the abstract, without considering the manner or context in which the color is used, would be contrary to law and public policy, because it would result in an unlimited number of marks being claimed in a single application. Cf. *In re Int’l Flavors & Fragrances Inc.*, 183 F.3d 1361, 1368, 51 USPQ2d 1513, 1517-18 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (mark with changeable or “phantom” element unregistrable because it would “encompass too many combinations and permutations to make a thorough and effective search possible” and, therefore, would not provide adequate notice to the public); *In re Upper Deck Co.*, 59 USPQ2d 1688, 1691 (TTAB 2001) (hologram of varying shapes, sizes, content, and positions used on trading cards constitutes more than one “device,” as contemplated by §45 of the Trademark Act). Only one mark can be registered in a single application. [TMEP §807.01](#).

1202.05(d) Drawings of Color Marks Required

All marks, other than sound and scent marks, require a drawing. [TMEP §807](#). An application for a color mark that is filed without a drawing will be denied a filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(3\)](#). Similarly, an application for a color mark with a proposed drawing page that states “no drawing,” or sets forth only a written description of the mark, will be denied a filing date. The drawing provides notice of the nature of the mark sought to be registered. Only marks that are not capable of representation in a drawing, such as sound or scent marks, are excluded from the requirement for a drawing. Color marks are visual and should be depicted in color drawings, accompanied by: (1) a color claim naming the color(s) that are a feature of the mark; and (2) a separate statement naming the color(s) and describing where the color(s) appear and how they are used on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). See TMEP §§ [807.07–807.07\(g\)](#) for color mark drawings and [808–808.03\(f\)](#) for description of the mark.

1202.05(d)(i) Drawings of Color Marks in Trademark Applications

In most cases, the proposed color mark drawing will consist of a representation of the product or product package. The drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used, or intended to be used, on the goods. [37 C.F.R. §2.51](#). A depiction of the object on which the color is used is needed to meet this requirement.

The object depicted on the drawing should appear in broken or dotted lines. The broken or dotted lines inform the viewer where and how color is used on the product or product package, while at the same time making it clear that the shape of the product, or the shape of the product package, is not claimed as part of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §807.08](#). In the absence of a broken-line drawing, the USPTO will assume that the proposed mark is a composite mark consisting of the product shape, or the product package shape, in a particular color.

Color used on multiple goods

If the proposed color mark is used on multiple goods, the drawing required will depend on the nature of the goods. The drawing of the mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used, or intended to be used, on the goods. [37 C.F.R. §2.51](#). A drawing consisting of a depiction of only one of the goods will be accepted if the goods, or the portions of the goods on which the color appears, are similar in form and function so that a depiction of only one of the goods is still a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on all of the goods. For example, if the mark is the color purple used on refrigerators and freezers, a drawing of a purple freezer shown in broken lines (with a description of the mark claiming the color purple and indicating that it is used on the freezer) would be sufficient. Or, if the mark is the color pink used on the handles of rakes, shovels, and hoes, a drawing of any of those items depicted in dotted lines (with a description of the mark claiming the color pink and stating that the handle is pink) would be sufficient. Or, if the mark consists of product packaging for various food items that is always blue with a pink circle, a drawing of any one of the packages shown in dotted lines (with a description of the mark claiming the colors blue and pink and describing the location of the colors on the packaging) would be sufficient.

If the proposed color mark is used on multiple goods that are dissimilar or unrelated, or if color is used in different ways on different goods, so that a depiction of one of the goods is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on all of the goods (e.g., the color purple used on microscopes and vending machines), a separate application must be submitted for each item.

Color used on liquids or powders

Sometimes a color mark consists of color(s) used on liquids or powders. For example, the mark might consist of fuchsia body oil or red, white, and blue granular washing machine detergent. In these cases, the nature of the drawing will depend on the manner of use of the liquid or powder. If the liquid or powder is visible through the product package, the drawing should consist of the shape of the product package shown in broken or dotted lines, with the description of the mark identifying the color(s) of the liquid or powder.

1202.05(d)(ii) Drawings of Color Marks in Service Mark Applications

It is difficult to anticipate all of the issues that may arise when examining a proposed color mark for services because there are a myriad of ways that color can be used in connection with services. However, the following general guidelines will be used to determine the sufficiency of drawings in these cases:

- The purpose of a drawing is to provide notice to the public of the nature of the mark. As with color used on goods, a color service mark does not consist of color in the abstract. Rather, the mark consists of color used in a particular manner, and the context in which the color is used is critical to provide notice of the nature of the mark sought to be registered. Therefore, as with color marks used on goods, a drawing, supplemented with a written description of the mark, is required.
- The drawing must display the manner in which the mark is used in connection with the services. As with any application, only one mark can be registered in a single application. [TMEP §807.01](#). The mark depicted on the drawing, as used on the specimen, must make a separate and distinct commercial impression in order to be considered one mark. See *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 61 USPQ2d 1121 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *In re Chem. Dynamics Inc.*, 839 F.2d 1569, 5 USPQ2d 1828 (Fed. Cir. 1988). See [TMEP §1202.05\(c\)](#) regarding color as a separable element.
- If color is used in a variety of ways, but in a setting that makes a single commercial impression, such as a retail outlet with various color features, a broken-line drawing of the setting must be submitted, with a detailed description of the mark claiming the color(s) and describing the location of the color(s).
- If an applicant who seeks to register a single color as a service mark used on a variety of items not viewed simultaneously by purchasers, e.g., stationery, uniforms, pens, signs, shuttle buses, store awning, and walls of the store, submits a drawing that displays the mark as a solid-colored square with a dotted peripheral outline, the application will receive a filing date. However, the examining attorney will generally require the applicant to submit a single amended drawing showing how the mark is used in connection with the services. The applicant must also submit a detailed description of the mark identifying the color and describing its placement. *Thrifty*, 274 F.3d at 1353, 61 USPQ2d at 1124. See [TMEP §1202.05\(c\)](#) regarding color as a separable element.
- The commercial impression of a color may change depending on the object on which it is applied. See *Thrifty*, 274 F.3d at 1353, 61 USPQ2d at 1124.

1202.05(d)(iii) Amendment of Drawings of Color Marks

Because color marks are comprised solely of the color as applied to the product or product package, in the manner depicted on the drawing and explained in the description of the mark, amending the color of the proposed mark will always change the commercial impression of the mark. Thus, the amendment of any color in a color mark is a prohibited material alteration. Similarly, the amendment of the color mark to show the same color on a different object is also, generally, a material alteration, e.g., an amendment of a drawing of a blue hammer to a blue saw is a material alteration.

1202.05(d)(iv) Drawings for Marks Including Both Color and Words or Design

Sometimes, a product or advertisement for a service will include both color and words or a design. For example, the surface of a toaster might be green, with the letters “ABC” and a design displayed on the toaster. In this situation, the applicant must decide whether to seek registration for the color green used on toasters, the letters “ABC” with or without the design, the design alone, or some combination of these elements. If applicant only seeks registration for the use of the color, no word or design elements should appear on the drawing.

1202.05(e) Written Descriptions of Color Marks

The drawing of a proposed color mark must be supplemented with: (1) a claim that the color(s) is a feature of the mark; and (2) a statement in the “Description of the Mark” field naming the color(s) and describing

where the color(s) appear(s) and how they are used on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). See TMEP §§ [807.07–807.07\(g\)](#) for color mark drawings and [808–808.03\(f\)](#) for description of the mark.

The description of the mark must be clear and specific, use ordinary language, and identify the mark as consisting of the particular color as applied to the goods or services. If the color is applied only to a portion of the goods, the description must indicate the specific portion. Similarly, if the mark includes gradations of color, the description should so indicate. If the applicant is claiming a shade of color, the shade must be described in ordinary language, for example, “maroon,” “turquoise,” “navy blue,” “reddish orange.” This is required even if the applicant also describes the color using a commercial coloring system.

The applicant may not amend the description of the mark if the amendment is a material alteration of the mark on the drawing filed with the original application. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#). See *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 61 USPQ2d 1121 (Fed. Cir. 2001). Cf. *In re Hacot-Colombier*, 105 F.3d 616, 41 USPQ2d 1523 (Fed. Cir. 1997). See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

The description of a color mark must be limited to a single mark, because only one mark can be registered in a single application. See *In re Int'l Flavors & Fragrances Inc.*, 183 F.3d 1361, 51 USPQ2d 1513 (Fed. Cir. 1999); *In re Hayes*, 62 USPQ2d 1443 (TTAB 2002). See TMEP §§ [807.01](#) regarding drawing must be limited to a single mark and [1202.05\(c\)](#) regarding color as a separable element.

1202.05(f) Specimens for Color Marks

An application under §1 of the Trademark Act must be supported by a specimen that shows use of the proposed mark depicted on the drawing. Therefore, an applicant who applies to register a color mark must submit a specimen showing use of the color, either with a §1(a) application or with an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)), in a §1(b) application. If a black-and-white specimen is submitted, the examining attorney will require a substitute specimen displaying the proposed color mark. See [TMEP §904.02\(c\)\(ii\)](#).

See TMEP §§ [904.03–904.07\(b\)](#) regarding trademark specimens and [1301.04–1301.04\(d\)](#) regarding service mark specimens.

1202.05(g) Special Considerations for Service Mark Applications

Although the applicant in *In re Thrifty, Inc.*, 274 F.3d 1349, 61 USPQ2d 1121 (Fed. Cir. 2001), argued that it applied for the color blue *per se* as a service mark, the Court determined that the drawing controlled, such that the application was for the color blue applied to a building. Although the Court did not reach the issue of color *per se* as a service mark, the Court acknowledged the special evidentiary problem associated with showing acquired distinctiveness in this context. *Id.* at 1353, 61 USPQ2d at 1124 (“[E]vidence submitted to demonstrate acquired distinctiveness of a color may show consumer recognition with respect to certain objects (e.g., blue vehicle rental centers), but not for other objects (e.g., blue rental cars).”). Accordingly, any claim to color *per se* must be specific as to use and include evidence of acquired distinctiveness for each claimed use.

1202.05(h) Color Marks in §1(b) Applications

A color mark can never be inherently distinctive. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 211-12, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068 (2000) (citing *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 162-63, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1162-63 (1995)); [TMEP §1202.05\(a\)](#). Therefore, the examining attorney must refuse to

register a color mark on the Principal Register unless the applicant establishes that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). The ground for refusal is that the color is not inherently distinctive and, thus, does not function as a trademark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), or does not function as a service mark under §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#).

The issue of whether the proposed color mark is functional requires consideration of the manner in which the mark is used. Generally, no refusal on these grounds will be issued in a §1(b) application until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) of use with an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)). See TMEP §§ [1102.01, 1202.02\(d\), 1202.03\(e\)](#), and [1202.05\(b\)](#). The specimen(s) provide a better record upon which to determine the registrability of the mark. In appropriate cases, the examining attorney will bring the potential refusal to the applicant's attention in the initial Office action. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis.

1202.05(i) Color Marks in §44 or §66(a) Applications

A color mark can never be inherently distinctive. *Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. v. Samara Bros.*, 529 U.S. 205, 211-12, 54 USPQ2d 1065, 1068 (2000) (citing *Qualitex Co. v. Jacobson Prods. Co.*, 514 U.S. 159, 162-63, 34 USPQ2d 1161, 1162-63 (1995)); [TMEP §1202.05\(a\)](#). Therefore, the examining attorney must refuse to register a proposed color mark on the Principal Register unless the applicant establishes that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). The ground for refusal is that the color is not inherently distinctive and, thus, does not function as a trademark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), or does not function as a service mark under §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#).

If the record indicates that the proposed mark is functional, the examining attorney should issue a refusal of registration on the Principal Register under §2(f), or on the Supplemental Register. See TMEP §§ [1202.02\(e\), 1202.03\(e\)](#), and [1202.05\(b\)](#). *NOTE: A mark in a §66(a) application cannot be registered on the Supplemental Register under any circumstances. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\) and 2.75\(c\)](#).*

1202.06 Goods in Trade

Section 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines a “trademark” as a “word, name, symbol, or device, or any combination thereof” that is used or intended to be used in commerce “to *identify and distinguish his or her goods* (emphasis added).” Before rights in a term as a trademark can be established, the subject matter to which the term is applied must be “goods in trade.” Incidental items that an applicant uses in conducting its business (such as letterhead, invoices, reports, boxes, and business forms), as opposed to items sold or transported in commerce for use by others, are not “goods in trade.” See *In re Shareholders Data Corp.*, 495 F.2d 1360, 181 USPQ 722 (C.C.P.A. 1974) (finding that reports are not goods in trade, where applicant is not engaged in the sale of reports, but solely in furnishing financial reporting services, and reports are merely conduit through which services are rendered); *In re Thomas White Int'l, Ltd.*, 106 USPQ2d 1158, 1162-63 (TTAB 2013) (finding that applicant's annual report does not constitute a “good in trade,” but rather “is a common and necessary adjunct to the rendering of applicant's investment management and research services, that is, it is one of the means through which it provides investment services”); *In re Ameritox Ltd.*, 101 USPQ2d 1081, 1085 (TTAB 2011) (finding no evidence that applicant was engaged in selling printed reports apart from its laboratory testing services and that the reports were part and parcel of the services); *In re MGA Entm't, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1743 (TTAB 2007) (stating that

applicant's trapezoidal cardboard boxes for toys, games, and playthings held to be merely point of sale containers for applicant's primary goods and not separate goods in trade, where there was no evidence that applicant is a manufacturer of boxes or that applicant is engaged in selling boxes as commodities in trade); *In re Compute-Her-Look, Inc.*, 176 USPQ 445 (TTAB 1972) (finding that reports and printouts not goods in trade, where they are merely the means by which the results of a beauty analysis service is transmitted and have no viable existence separate and apart from the service); *Ex parte Bank of Am. Nat'l Trust and Sav. Ass'n*, 118 USPQ 165 (Comm'r Pats. 1958) (mark not registrable for passbooks, checks, and other printed forms, where forms are used only as "necessary 'tools' in the performance of [banking services], and [applicant] is not engaged either in printing or selling forms as commodities in trade.").

The determination of whether an applicant's identified goods comprise independent goods in trade, or are merely incidental to the applicant's services, is a factual determination to be made on a case-by-case basis. *In re Thomas White Int'l, Ltd.* 106 USPQ2d at 1161 (citing *Lens.com, Inc. v. 1-800 Contacts, Inc.*, 686 F.3d 1376, 1381-82, 103 USPQ2d 1672, 1676 (Fed. Cir. 2012)). Factors to consider include “whether [applicant's good]: (1) is simply the conduit or necessary tool useful only to obtain applicant's services; (2) is so inextricably tied to and associated with the service as to have no viable existence apart therefrom; and (3) is neither sold separately from nor has any independent value apart from the services.” *In re Thomas White Int'l, Ltd.*, 106 USPQ2d at 1162 (citing *Lens.com, Inc. v. 1-800 Contacts, Inc.*, 686 F.3d at 1382, 103 USPQ2d at 1676). None of these factors is dispositive. *Lens.com, Inc. v. 1-800 Contacts, Inc.*, 686 F.3d at 1382, 103 USPQ2d at 1676.

1202.06(a) Goods Must Have Utility to Others

Affixing a mark to an item that is transported in commerce does not in and of itself establish that the mark is used on “goods.” While a formal sale is not always necessary, items sold or transported in commerce are not “goods in trade” unless they have utility to others as the type of product named in the trademark application.

Example: Holiday greeting cards sent by a law firm to its clients are not “goods,” where applicant is merely sending its own cards through the mail as a holiday greeting, and the cards are not suitable for use by the recipients as a greeting card.

See Gay Toys, Inc. v. McDonald's Corp., 585 F.2d 1067, 199 USPQ 722 (C.C.P.A. 1978) (plaster mockup of toy truck not goods in trade where there is no evidence the mockup is actually used as a toy); *Paramount Pictures Corp. v. White*, 31 USPQ2d 1768 (TTAB 1994), *aff'd*, 108 F.3d 1392 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (mark not registrable for games, where purported games are advertising flyers used to promote applicant's services and have no real utilitarian function or purpose as games); *In re Douglas Aircraft Co.*, 123 USPQ 271 (TTAB 1959) (books, pamphlets, and brochures that serve only to explain and advertise the goods in which applicant deals are not “goods”). *Cf. In re Snap-On Tools Corp.*, 159 USPQ 254 (TTAB 1968) (ball point pens used to promote applicant's tools are goods in trade, where they have a utilitarian function and purpose, and have been sold to applicant's franchised dealers and transported in commerce under mark); *In re United Merchants & Mfrs., Inc.*, 154 USPQ 625 (TTAB 1967) (calendar used to promote applicant's plastic film constitutes goods in trade, where calendar has a utilitarian function and purpose in and of itself, and has been regularly distributed in commerce for several years).

In *In re MGA Entm't, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1743, 1746 (TTAB 2007), the Board rejected applicant's argument that trapezoidal cardboard boxes for toys, games, playthings, puzzles, and laptop play units have use beyond holding the goods at the point of sale, in that the laptop play-unit box functions as an ongoing carrying case for the unit, and the puzzle box may be used to store puzzle pieces when not in use. Finding the boxes to be merely point-of-sale containers for the primary goods and not separate goods in trade, the Board stated that “the mere fact that original boxes or packaging may be used to store products does not infuse such boxes

or packaging with additional utility such that they constitute goods in trade,” and that there is neither any indication that the laptop computer boxes are labeled as a carrying case nor any evidence that applicant promotes the boxes as carrying cases or that children actually use them as carrying cases.

1202.06(b) Registration Must Be Refused if Trademark Not Used on Goods in Trade

If the specimen, identification of goods, or other evidence in the record indicate that the applicant uses the proposed mark only on items incidental to conducting its own business, as opposed to items intended to be used by others, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the Principal Register under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), on the ground that the proposed mark is not used on “goods in trade.”

If a mark is not used on “goods in trade,” it is not registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), or on the Supplemental Register.

If some but not all of the items listed in the identification of goods are found not to be “goods in trade,” it is not necessary to refuse registration of the entire application, but the examining attorney must require that these items be deleted from the identification of goods before approving the mark for publication or registration.

1202.06(c) Goods in Trade in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications

In an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the question of whether a proposed mark is used on goods in trade usually does not arise until the applicant files an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)) because this issue is based on the manner in which the mark is used. However, if the identification of goods in a §1(b) application includes items that do not appear to be goods in trade, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant’s attention in the first Office action. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis. If the record indicates that the mark will not be used on goods in trade, without the need to await consideration of the specimen(s), the examining attorney may issue the refusal prior to the filing of the allegation of use.

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for the examining attorney to issue a refusal based on the lack of use on goods in trade where the record clearly indicates that the mark will not be used on goods in trade. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal, which is otherwise typically specimen-based, in a §66(a) application).

1202.07 Marks That Identify Columns or Sections of Publications

1202.07(a) Marks That Identify Columns or Sections of Printed Publications

A column, section, or supplement of a printed publication is normally not considered to be separate “goods” or “goods in trade,” unless it is sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication separate and apart from the larger publication in which it appears. *In re Broad. Publ'ns*, 135 USPQ 374 (TTAB 1962) ; *Ex parte Meredith Publ'g*, 109 USPQ 426 (Comm’r Pats. 1956). This is true even of a removable or separable “pullout” section of a newspaper or other publication. In *Meredith*, the issue was analyzed as follows:

The basic question is whether or not, under the circumstances of use, the section title is a name adopted and used by the publisher to identify his goods and distinguish them from those of others. The “goods” actually are magazines-not sections of magazines. When the magazine is purchased, the purchaser receives the sections whether he wants them or not, and it is doubtful that magazine readers *ordinarily* purchase a magazine merely to receive a section of it, or think of a magazine merely in terms of a section title. Sections of magazines are not in and of themselves articles of commerce other than as a part of an integrated whole; and we must therefore be concerned with whether a section title actually identifies and distinguishes, and if so, what it distinguishes. Under these circumstances it becomes necessary to ask: Was the mark adopted to identify a section of applicant’s magazine and distinguish it from sections of other publishers’ magazines, or was it adopted to distinguish one section of applicant’s magazine from the other sections of its magazine? *Ordinarily*, it is the latter (emphasis in original).

109 USPQ at 426.

The examining attorney may accept the statement of the applicant or applicant’s attorney that the column is syndicated. It is not necessary to set this forth in the identification of goods.

1202.07(a)(i) Syndicated Columns and Sections

Columns or sections that are separately sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication do constitute goods in trade. A mark that identifies a column or section that is separately syndicated or offered for syndication is registrable on the Principal Register without resort to §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), if registration is not barred by other sections of the Act.

1202.07(a)(ii) Non-Syndicated Columns and Sections

A column or section of a printed publication that is not separately sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication is not, in and of itself, considered to be separate goods in trade. Therefore, where the specimen, identification of goods, or other evidence in the record indicates that the mark identifies a column or section of a printed publication that is not separately sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication, the examining attorney should refuse registration on the Principal Register under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act; [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052](#), and [1127](#), on the ground that the mark is not used on separate goods in trade.

Marks that identify non-syndicated columns or sections of printed publications are registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), if the column or section is shown to have acquired separate recognition and distinctiveness. An applicant who seeks registration on the Principal Register bears the burden of establishing, through evidence of promotion, long use, advertising expenditures, and breadth of distribution or sales figures, that the public has come to recognize the proposed mark as an indicator of source.

The evidence of acquired distinctiveness must show that the column or section title is used and promoted to distinguish applicant’s column or section from the columns or sections of other publishers’ publications, rather than merely to distinguish applicant’s column or section from other columns or sections of applicant’s publication. *Metro Publ'g v. San Jose Mercury News*, 987 F.2d 637, 25 USPQ2d 2049 (9th Cir. 1993); *In re Broad. Publ'ns*, 135 USPQ 374 (TTAB 1962).

The amount of evidence needed to establish distinctiveness must be evaluated by the examining attorney on a case-by-case basis, in light of the type of column or section. If the mark identifies a removable or pull-out section, a lesser degree of evidence might be required to establish distinctiveness. Of course, the

amount of evidence needed to establish distinctiveness in any particular case will also vary depending on the strength or weakness of the mark. See [TMEP §§1212–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#) regarding evidence of distinctiveness.

Marks that identify non-syndicated columns or sections of printed publications, but have not yet acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) of the Act, are registrable on the Supplemental Register in applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, if registration is not barred by other sections of the Act. *Ex parte Meredith Publ'g*, 109 USPQ 426 (Comm'r Pats. 1956).

1202.07(a)(iii) Marks That Identify Columns and Sections of Printed Publications in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications

Since a refusal to register a mark that identifies a column or section of a printed publication is based on whether the column or section is separately sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication, the issue ordinarily does not arise in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), until the applicant has filed an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)). However, if the identification of goods suggests that the mark is intended to be used to identify a column or section of a printed publication that is not separately sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication, the potential refusal on the ground that the proposed mark is not used on separate goods in trade should be brought to the applicant's attention in the first Office action. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant prior to the filing of the allegation of use, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis. In cases where the record indicates that the mark will identify a column or section of a printed publication that is not separately sold or syndicated, the examining attorney may make the refusal prior to the filing of the allegation of use.

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for the examining attorney to refuse registration because the mark is not used on goods in trade where the record indicates that the mark will identify a column or section of a printed publication that is not separately sold, syndicated, or offered for syndication. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal, which is otherwise typically specimen-based, in a §66(a) application).

1202.07(b) Marks That Identify Columns and Sections of Online Publications

An online publication is considered a service rather than a product. Therefore, refusal of registration on the ground that the proposed mark is not used on goods in trade is inappropriate. Unlike a printed column or section, an online column or section can be accessed directly and can exist independent of any single publication. *See Ludden v. Metro Weekly*, 8 F. Supp. 2d 7, 14, 47 USPQ2d 1087, 1093 (D.D.C. 1998). Therefore, a mark that identifies an online column or section is registrable on the Principal Register without resort to §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), if registration is not barred by other sections of the Act.

1202.08 Title of a Single Creative Work

The title, or a portion of a title, of a single creative work must be refused registration under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), unless the title has been used on a series of creative works. The title of a single creative work is not registrable on either the Principal or Supplemental Register. *Herbko Int'l, Inc. v. Kappa Books, Inc.*, 308 F.3d 1156, 1162, 64 USPQ2d 1375, 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2002) ("the title of a single book cannot serve as a source identifier"); *In re Cooper*, 254 F.2d 611, 615-16,

117 USPQ 396, 400 (C.C.P.A. 1958) , *cert. denied*, 358 U.S. 840, 119 USPQ 501 (1958) ("A book title ... identifies a specific literary work ... and is not associated in the public mind with the publisher, printer or bookseller...."); *In re Posthuma*, 45 USPQ2d 2011 (TTAB 1998) (holding the title of a live theater production unregistrable); *In re Hal Leonard Publ'g Corp.*, 15 USPQ2d 1574 (TTAB 1990) (holding INSTANT KEYBOARD, as used on music instruction books, unregistrable as the title of a single work); *In re Appleby*, 159 USPQ 126 (TTAB 1968) (holding the title of single phonograph record, as distinguished from a series, does not function as mark).

As noted in *In re Cooper*, there is a compelling reason why the name or title of a book cannot be a trademark, which stems from copyright law. Unlike a copyright that has a limited term, a trademark can endure for as long as the trademark is used. Therefore, once copyright protection ends, and the work falls in the public domain, others must have the right to call the work by its name. *G. & C. Merriam Co. v. Syndicate Publ'g Co.*, 237 U.S. 618, 622 (1915); *In re Cooper*, 254 F.2d at 616, 117 USPQ at 400; *Mattel Inc. v. Brainy Baby Co.*, 101 USPQ2d 1140, 1144 (TTAB 2011). Moreover, if the work sought to be registered is not copyrighted, the public may copy it at once and would be as clearly entitled to call it by its name. *In re Cooper*, 254 F.2d at 616, 117 USPQ at 400.

See [TMEP §1301.02\(d\)](#) regarding the titles of radio and television programs.

1202.08(a) What Constitutes a Single Creative Work

Single creative works include works in which the content does not change, whether that work is in printed, recorded, or electronic form. Materials such as books, sound recordings, downloadable songs, downloadable ring tones, videocassettes, DVDs, audio CDs, and films are usually single creative works. Creative works that are serialized, i.e., the mark identifies the entire work but the work is issued in sections or chapters, are still considered single creative works. A theatrical performance is also a single creative work, because the content of the play, musical, opera, or similar production does not significantly change from one performance to another. *In re Posthuma*, 45 USPQ2d 2011, 2014 (TTAB 1998) . A cornerstone was considered a single creative work in an application for registration of FREEDOM STONE for "building stones used as landmarks or cornerstones," where the record showed that the proposed mark would identify only one building stone used as a landmark or cornerstone, to serve as the cornerstone for the Freedom Tower that is to be erected at the World Trade Center site in New York City. *In re Innovative Cos., LLC.*, 88 USPQ2d 1095, 1102 (TTAB 2008) .

1202.08(b) What Does Not Constitute a Single Creative Work

Generally, any creative work will not be considered a single creative work if evidence exists that it is part of a series (e.g., the work is labeled "volume 1," "part 1," or "book 1") or is a type of work in which the content changes with each issue or performance. For example, single creative works do not include periodically issued publications, such as magazines, newsletters, comic books, comic strips, guide books, and printed classroom materials, because the content of these works changes with each issue.

A book with a second or subsequent edition in which the content changes *significantly* is not regarded as a single creative work. For example, a statement on the jacket cover that a cookbook is a "new and revised" version would indicate that it includes significant revisions. However, a new edition issued to correct typographical errors or that makes only minor changes is not considered to be a new work. Live performances by musical bands, television and radio series, and educational seminars are presumed to change with each presentation and, therefore, are not single creative works.

Computer software, computer games, coloring books, and activity books are not treated as single creative works.

The examining attorney must determine whether changes in content are significant based on any evidence in the application or record. The examining attorney may conduct additional research using the applicant's website, Internet search engines, or Nexis® databases (and enter a Note to the File in the record, if appropriate). In addition, the examining attorney may issue a request for information under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

1202.08(c) Complete Title of the Work – Evidence of a Series

The name of a series of books or other creative works may be registrable if it serves to identify and distinguish the source of the goods. An applicant must submit evidence that the title is used on at least two different creative works. *In re Arnold*, 105 USPQ2d 1953, 1956 (TTAB 2013) . A series is not established when only the format of the work is changed, that is, the same title used on a printed version of a book and a recorded version does not establish a series. *See Mattel Inc. v. Brainy Baby Co.*, 101 USPQ2d 1140, 1143 (TTAB 2011) (finding that a program recorded on both a VHS tape and a DVD were the same creative work, and that the addition of minor enhancements in the DVD did not transform this single work into a series). Likewise, use of the title on unabridged and abridged versions of the same work, or on collateral goods such as posters, mugs, bags, or t-shirts does not establish a series. Similarly, minimal variations of the same theatrical performance do not create a series. *See In re Posthuma*, 45 USPQ2d 2011, 2014 (TTAB 1998) .

For example, if an application for the mark HOW TO RETIRE EARLY for “books” is refused because the specimen shows the mark used on a single creative work, the applicant may submit copies of other book covers showing use of the mark HOW TO RETIRE EARLY and any additional evidence to establish that the book is published each year with different content. It is not necessary to show that the mark was used on the other works in the series prior to the filing date of the application or the allegation of use. However, evidence that the applicant intends to use the mark on a series is insufficient.

1202.08(d) Portion of a Title of the Work

A portion of the title of any single creative work is registrable only if the applicant can show that the portion of the title meets the following criteria:

- (1) It creates a separate commercial impression apart from the complete title;
- (2) It is used on series of works; and
- (3) It is promoted or recognized as a mark for the series.

1202.08(d)(i) Mark Must Create a Separate Commercial Impression

When registration is sought for a portion of a title, the mark must be used as a separable element on the specimen. The examining attorney should consider the size, type font, color, and any separation between the mark and the rest of the title when making this determination. *In re Scholastic Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1774, 1777 (TTAB 1992) (“[T]he words THE MAGIC SCHOOL BUS are prominently displayed on the books' covers, and are in a larger, bolder style of type and different color from the remainder of each title. Moreover, the words appear on a separate line above the remainder of each title.”). If the portion of the title sought to be registered is not separable, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the mark is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears on the specimen. *See* [TMEP §807.12\(d\)](#).

1202.08(d)(ii) Establishing a Series When the Mark is a Portion of the Title

An applicant may establish that the portion of the title of a creative work is used on a series by submitting more than one book cover or CD cover with the mark used in all the titles. For example, if the mark on the drawing is “THE LITTLE ENGINE” and on the book it appears as “THE LITTLE ENGINE THAT WENT TO THE FAIR,” registration should be refused because the mark is a portion of a title of a single work. *See In re Nat’l Council Books, Inc.*, 121 USPQ 198, 199 (TTAB 1959) (finding “NATIONAL” to be a portion of the title “NATIONAL GARDEN BOOK”). To establish use on a series, the applicant may submit additional book covers showing use of, e.g., “THE LITTLE ENGINE GOES TO SCHOOL,” and “THE LITTLE ENGINE AND THE BIG RED CABOOSE.”

1202.08(d)(iii) Evidence that the Portion of the Title is Promoted or Recognized as a Mark

When a mark is used merely as a *portion of the title* of a creative work, the applicant has a heavier burden in establishing that the portion for which registration is sought serves as a trademark for the goods. *The mere use of the same words in more than one book title is insufficient to establish the words as a mark for a series.* The applicant must show that the public perceives the portion sought to be registered as a mark for the series. *In re Scholastic Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1774, 1777 (TTAB 1992) (holding THE MAGIC SCHOOL BUS used as a portion of the book titles in “THE MAGIC SCHOOL BUS AT THE WATERWORKS” and “THE MAGIC SCHOOL BUS INSIDE THE EARTH,” functions as a mark for a series, because the record contained evidence of repeated use of the designation displayed prominently on book covers, as well as evidence that applicant promoted THE MAGIC SCHOOL BUS as a series title, that others used the designation in book reviews to refer to a series of books, and that purchasers recognized the designation as indicating the source of a series of books).

1202.08(e) Identification of Goods/Services

Identification Need Not Reflect Use on a Series. The identification of goods/services need not reflect that the applicant is using the title on a series of works (either written or recorded). It is sufficient that the record contains the evidence of a series.

Creative Works in a List of Goods or Services. A refusal of registration on the ground that the mark merely identifies the title of a single creative work can be made regardless of whether the creative work is the sole item in the identification of goods/services or is listed with other items. If the record contains information, or if the examining attorney learns from another source, that the mark identifies the title of a single creative work, the examining attorney must issue a partial refusal as to the relevant goods/services. A partial refusal is a refusal that applies only to certain goods/services, or to certain classes. *See* [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).

Example: An application for “newspapers, books in the field of finance, pencils, and coloring books” would be partially refused if the examining attorney determined, either from the application or from another source, that the mark identified the title of the “books in the field of finance.” The use of the same mark on other non-creative matter such as the pencils and coloring books does not overcome the refusal.

1202.08(f) Title of a Single Work in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications

The issue of whether a proposed mark is the title of a single creative work usually is tied to use of the mark, as evidenced by the specimen. Therefore, generally, no refusal will be issued in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), until the applicant has submitted a specimen with an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#).

However, in a §1(b) application for which no specimen has been submitted, if the examining attorney anticipates that a refusal will be made on the ground that the proposed mark is the title of a single creative work, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant's attention in the first action issued by the USPTO. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis. In cases where the record indicates that the mark constitutes the title of a single work, the examining attorney may make the refusal prior to the filing of the allegation of use.

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for examining attorneys to issue the refusal where the record indicates that the mark will identify the title of a single work. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal, which is otherwise typically specimen based, in a §66(a) application).

1202.09 Names of Artists and Authors

1202.09(a) Names and Pseudonyms of Authors and Performing Artists

Any mark consisting of the name of an author used on a written work, or the name of a performing artist on a sound recording, must be refused registration under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), if the mark is used solely to identify the writer or the artist. *See In re Polar Music Int'l AB*, 714 F.2d 1567, 1572, 221 USPQ 315, 318 (Fed. Cir. 1983); *In re Arnold*, 105 USPQ2d 1953, 1957-60 (TTAB 2013) ; *In re First Draft, Inc.* 76 USPQ2d 1183, 1190 (TTAB 2005) ; *In re Peter Spierer*, 225 USPQ 693, 695 (TTAB 1985) . Written works include books or columns, and may be presented in print, recorded, or electronic form. Likewise, sound recordings may be presented in recorded or electronic form.

However, the name of the author or performer may be registered if:

- (1) It is used on a series of written or recorded works; and
- (2) The application contains sufficient evidence that the name identifies the source of the series and not merely the writer of the written work or the name of the performing artist.

In re Arnold, 105 USPQ2d at 1958.

If the applicant cannot show a series, or can show that there is a series but cannot show that the name identifies the source of the series, the mark may be registered on the Supplemental Register in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. These types of marks may not be registered on the Principal Register under §2(f).

See also [TMEP §1301.02\(b\)](#) regarding personal names as service marks.

1202.09(a)(i) Author or Performer's Name – Evidence of a Series

In an application seeking registration of an author's or performer's name, the applicant must provide evidence that the mark appears on at least two different works. Such evidence could include copies of multiple book covers or multiple CD covers that show the name sought to be registered. *See In re Polar Music Int'l AB*, 714 F.2d 1567, 1572, 221 USPQ 315, 318 (Fed. Cir. 1983). A showing of the same work available in different media, i.e., the same work in both printed and/or recorded or downloadable format, does not establish a series.

The identification of goods need not reflect that the applicant is using the name on a series of works (either written or recorded). It is sufficient that the record contains the evidence of a series.

1202.09(a)(ii) Evidence that the Name is a Source Identifier

The use of the author's or performer's name on a series of works does not, in itself, establish that the name functions as a mark. The record must also show that the name serves as more than a designation of the writer or performer, i.e. , that it also serves to identify the source of the series. *See In re Arnold*, 105 USPQ2d 1953, 1959-60 (TTAB 2013) (holding BLATANCY fails to function as a mark because it merely identifies the name of a performer featured on applicant's musical recordings, and finding the evidence relating to control over the mark and the nature and quality of the goods conflicting and of uncertain meaning); *In re First Draft*, 76 USPQ2d 1183, 1191 (TTAB 2005) (holding pseudonym FERN MICHAELS identifies only the author and does not function as a mark to identify and distinguish a series of fictional books because the "evidence of promotion" was "indirect and rather scant," despite applicant's showing that the name had been used as an author's name for 30 years; that 67 separate books had been published under the name, and approximately 6 million copies had been sold; that the book jackets listed the titles of other works by Fern Michaels and promoted her as a bestselling author; that the author had been inducted into the New Jersey Literary Hall of Fame; and that there was a www.fernmichaels.com website); *In re Chicago Reader Inc.*, 12 USPQ2d 1079, 1080 (TTAB 1989) (holding CECIL ADAMS, used on the specimen as a byline and as part of the author's address appearing at the end of a column, merely identifies the author and does not function as a trademark for a newspaper column).

A showing that the name functions as a source identifier may be made by submitting evidence of either: (1) promotion and recognition of the name as a source indicator for the series (*see* [TMEP §1202.09\(a\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#)); or (2) the author's or performer's control over the name and quality of his or her works in the series (*see* [TMEP §1202.09\(a\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#)). *In re Arnold*, 105 USPQ2d at 1958.

1202.09(a)(ii)(A) Promotion and Recognition of the Name

To show that the name of an author or performing artist has been promoted and is recognized as indicating the source of a series of written works, the applicant could submit copies of advertising that promotes the name as the source of a series, copies of third-party reviews showing others' use of the name to refer to a series of works, or evidence showing the name used on a website associated with the series of works. *See In re First Draft*, 76 USPQ2d 1183, 1191 (TTAB 2005) , citing *In re Scholastic Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1774, 1777 (TTAB 1992) (holding THE MAGIC SCHOOL BUS functions as a mark for a series of books, where the record contained evidence of use of the designation displayed prominently on many different book covers, as well as evidence that applicant promoted the term as a series title, that others used the designation in book reviews to refer to a series of books, and that purchasers recognized the designation as indicating the source of a series of books).

1202.09(a)(ii)(B) Control over the Nature and Quality of the Goods

Alternatively, an applicant may show that the name of an author or performing artist functions as a source indicator by submitting documentary evidence that the author/performer controls the quality of his or her distributed works and controls the use of his or her name. Such evidence would include license agreements and other documentary or contractual evidence. *See In re Polar Music Int'l AB*, 714 F.2d 1567, 1572, 221 USPQ 315, 318 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (holding the name of the musical group ABBA functions as a mark for sound recordings where a license agreement showed that the owner of the mark, ABBA, controlled the

quality of the goods, and other contractual evidence showed that the owner also controlled the use of the name of the group).

In *In re First Draft*, 76 USPQ2d 1183, 1191 (TTAB 2005), the Board found that the applicant failed to meet the *Polar Music* test, noting that:

[W]e have neither any evidence bearing on [the question of applicant’s control over the quality of the goods] nor even any representations by counsel regarding such matters. This is in stark contrast to *Polar Music*, wherein there was detailed information and documentary (i.e., contractual) evidence regarding the relationship between the performing group ABBA and its “corporate entity,” as well as evidence of the control such corporation maintained in dealings with a manufacturer and seller of its recordings in the United States.

If the applicant maintains control over the quality of the goods because the goods are published or recorded directly under the applicant’s control, the applicant may submit a verified statement that “the applicant publishes or produces the goods and controls their quality.” *In re Arnold*, 105 USPQ2d 1953, 1958 (TTAB 2013).

1202.09(a)(iii) Names of Authors and Performing Artists in §1(b), §44, and §66(a) Applications

The issue of whether a proposed mark identifies only an author or performing artist is usually tied to use of the mark, as evidenced by the specimen. Therefore, generally, no refusal will be issued in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) with an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#).

In a §1(b) application for which no specimen has been submitted, if the examining attorney anticipates that a refusal will be made on the ground that the proposed mark identifies only an author or performing artist, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant’s attention in the first action issued by the USPTO. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis. In cases where the record indicates that the mark identifies only an author or performing artist, the examining attorney may make the refusal prior to the filing of the allegation of use.

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for examining attorneys to issue the refusal where the record, even without a specimen, reflects that the proposed mark identifies only an author or performing artist. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal, which is otherwise typically specimen based, in a §66(a) application).

1202.09(b) Names of Artists Used on Original Works of Art

An artist’s name or pseudonym affixed to an original work of art may be registered on the Principal Register without a showing that the name identifies a series. Original works of art includes paintings, murals, sculptures, statues, jewelry, and like works that the artist personally creates. In *In re Wood*, 217 USPQ 1345, 1350 (TTAB 1983), the Board held that the pseudonym YSABELLA affixed to an original work of art functioned as a mark. The Board has expressly limited this holding to cases involving original works of art, stating in *Wood* that “[I]est we be accused of painting with too broad a brush, we hold only that an artist’s name affixed to an original work of art may be registered as a mark and that here applicant’s name, as evidenced

by some of the specimens of record [the signature of the artist on a work of art], functions as a trademark for the goods set forth in the application.” In *In re First Draft*, 76 USPQ2d 1183, 1190 (TTAB 2005), the Board again stated that “ *Wood* is limited in its application to cases involving original works of art and there is nothing to indicate that the panel deciding that case considered novels to be encompassed by the phrase original works of art.”

1202.10 Names and Designs of Characters in Creative Works

Marks that merely identify a character in a creative work, *whether used in a series or in a single work*, are not registrable. In *re Scholastic Inc.*, 223 USPQ 431, 431 (TTAB 1984) (holding THE LITTLES, used in the title of each book in a series of children's books, does not function as a mark where it merely identifies the main characters in the books). Cf. *In re Caserta*, 46 USPQ2d 1088, 1090-91 (TTAB 1998) (holding FURR-BALL FURCANIA, used as the principal character in a single children's book, does not function as a mark even though the character's name appeared on the cover and every page of the story); *In re Frederick Warne & Co.*, 218 USPQ 345, 347-48 (TTAB 1983) (holding an illustration of a frog used on the cover of a single book served only to depict the main character in the book and did not function as a trademark).

To overcome a refusal of registration on the ground that the proposed mark merely identifies a character in a creative work, the applicant may submit evidence that the character name does not merely identify the character in the work. For example, the applicant may submit evidence showing use of the character name as a mark on the spine of the book, or on displays associated with the goods, in a manner that would be perceived as a mark.

A refusal of registration on the ground that the mark merely identifies a character in a creative work can be made regardless of whether the creative work is the sole item in the identification of goods/services or is listed with other items. If the record contains information or if the examining attorney learns from another source that the mark identifies a character in a creative work and there are multiple items in the identification, the examining attorney should issue a partial refusal as to the relevant goods/services. A partial refusal is a refusal that applies only to certain goods/services, or to certain classes. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).

Example: An application for “children’s books, pencils, and coloring books” would be partially refused if the examining attorney determined, either from the application or from another source, that the mark identified a character in the children's books. The use of the same mark on other non-creative matter such as the pencils and coloring books does not overcome the refusal.

1202.10(a) Names and Designs of Characters in Creative Works in §1(b), §44, or §66(a) Applications

The issue of whether a proposed mark identifies only the name or design of a particular character is tied to use of the mark, as evidenced by the specimen. Therefore, unless the record, even without a specimen, reflects that the proposed mark identifies only the name or design of a character, generally no refusal will be issued in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) with an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [\(d\)](#). However, in a §1(b) application for which no specimen has been submitted, if the examining attorney anticipates that a refusal will be made on the ground that the proposed mark identifies only a particular character, the potential refusal should be brought to the applicant’s attention in the first action issued by the USPTO. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant before the allegation of use is filed, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis. In cases where the record indicates that the mark identifies only the name or design of a character, the examining attorney may make the refusal prior to the filing of the allegation of use.

In an application under §44 or §66(a), where a specimen of use is not required prior to registration, it is appropriate for examining attorneys to issue the refusal where the record indicates that the mark will identify only the name or design of a particular character. *Cf. In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (noting the propriety of and affirming an ornamentation refusal, which is otherwise typically specimen-based, in a §66(a) application).

See [TMEP §1301.02\(b\)](#) regarding names of characters or personal names as service marks.

1202.11 Background Designs and Shapes

Common geometric shapes and background designs that are not sufficiently distinctive to create a commercial impression separate from the word and/or design marks with which they are used, are not regarded as indicators of origin absent evidence of distinctiveness of the design alone. *See In re Benetton Group S.p.A.*, 48 USPQ2d 1214, 1215-16 (TTAB 1998) ; *In re Anton/Bauer, Inc.*, 7 USPQ2d 1380, 1381 (TTAB 1988) ; *In re Wendy's Int'l, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 884, 885 (TTAB 1985) ; *In re Haggard Co.*, 217 USPQ 81, 83-84 (TTAB 1982) . As stated in *In re Chem. Dynamics, Inc.*, 839 F.2d 1569, 1570, 5 USPQ2d 1828, 1829 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (citations omitted), “[a] background design which is always used in connection with word marks must create a commercial impression on buyers separate and apart from the word marks for the design to be protectible as a separate mark.’ In deciding whether the design background of a word mark may be separately registered, the essential question is whether or not the background material is or is not inherently distinctive.... If the background portion is inherently distinctive, no proof of secondary meaning need be introduced; if not, such proof is essential.”

An applicant may respond to a refusal to register an application for a common geometric shape or background design by submitting evidence that the subject matter has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). The examining attorney should scrutinize any submission that asserts distinctiveness solely on the basis of a statement of substantially exclusive and continuous use for five years to determine whether it truly establishes that the subject matter is perceived as a trademark by the purchasing public. The examining attorney may continue to refuse registration if he or she believes that the applicant’s assertion does not establish that the matter is perceived as a trademark. The applicant may submit additional evidence to establish distinctiveness. *See* [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#).

In the following cases, the evidence of distinctiveness was insufficient: *Benetton*, 48 USPQ2d at 1217 (holding green rectangular background design not inherently distinctive; evidence of acquired distinctiveness insufficient); *Anton/Bauer*, 7 USPQ2d at 1383 (holding parallelogram designs used as background for word marks not inherently distinctive; evidence of record insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness pursuant to §2(f)); *In re Kerr-McGee Corp.*, 190 USPQ 204, 207 (TTAB 1976) (affirming refusals to register escutcheon design used as a frame or border for words, under §2(f)).

In the following cases, the evidence of distinctiveness was sufficient: *In re Schenectady Varnish Co.*, 280 F.2d 169, 171, 126 USPQ 395, 397 (C.C.P.A. 1960) (finding evidence of record sufficient to show acquired distinctiveness of the design alone as a trademark for synthetic resins where use of applicant’s design of a cloud and a lightning flash was always used as a background for the word “SCHENECTADY”); *In re Raytheon Co.*, 202 USPQ 317, 319-20 (TTAB 1979) (finding light-colored oval within black rectangular carrier not inherently distinctive; evidence of record sufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness).

1202.12 Varietal and Cultivar Names (Examination of Applications for Seeds and Plants)

Varietal or cultivar names are designations given to cultivated varieties or subspecies of live plants or agricultural seeds. They amount to the generic name of the plant or seed by which such variety is known to the U.S. consumer. *See, e.g., In re Pennington Seed Co.*, 466 F.3d 1053, 80 USPQ2d 1758, 1761-62 (Fed. Cir. 2006). These names can consist of a numeric or alphanumeric code or can be a “fancy” (arbitrary) name. The terms “varietal” and “cultivar” may have slight semantic differences but pose indistinguishable issues and are treated identically for trademark purposes.

Subspecies are types of a particular species of plant or seed that are members of a particular genus. For example, all maple trees are in the genus *Acer*. The sugar maple species is known as *Acer saccharum*, while the red maple species is called *Acer rubrum*. In turn, these species have been subdivided into various cultivated varieties that are developed commercially and given varietal or cultivar names that are known to U.S. consumers.

A varietal or cultivar name is used in a plant patent to identify the variety. Thus, even if the name was originally arbitrary, it “describe[s] to the public a [plant] of a particular sort, not a [plant] from a particular [source].” *Dixie Rose Nursery v. Coe*, 131 F.2d 446, 447, 55 USPQ 315, 316 (D.C. Cir. 1942). It is against public policy for any one supplier to retain exclusivity in a patented variety of plant, or the name of a variety, once its patent expires. *Id.*; *accord Pennington Seed*, 80 USPQ2d at 1762.

Market realities and lack of laws concerning the registration of varietal and cultivar names have created a number of problems in this area. Some varietal names are not attractive or easy to remember by the public. As a result, many arbitrary terms are used as varietal names. Problems arise when trademark registration is sought for varietal names, when arbitrary varietal names are thought of as being trademarks by the public, and when terms intended as trademarks by plant breeders become generic through public use. These problems make this a difficult area for the examining attorney in terms of gathering credible evidence and knowing when to make refusals.

Whenever an application is filed to register a mark containing wording for live plants, agricultural seeds, fresh fruits, or fresh vegetables, a search using Internet search engines does not by itself suffice to assess whether the mark is a varietal or cultivar. The examining attorney must submit a request to the Trademark Law Library to undertake an independent investigation of any evidence that would support a refusal to register, using sources of evidence that are appropriate for the particular goods specified in the application (e.g., laboratories and repositories of the United States Department of Agriculture, plant patent information from the USPTO, a variety name search of plants certified under the Plant Variety Protection Act listed at www.ars-grin.gov/npgs/searchgrin.html). Before any mark for live plants, agricultural seeds, fresh fruits, or fresh vegetables is approved for publication, a Note to the File must be added to the record indicating “Law Library varietal search.” In addition, the examining attorney also may inquire of the applicant whether the term has ever been used as a varietal name, and whether such name has been used in connection with a plant patent, a utility patent, or a certificate for plant-variety protection. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

If the examining attorney determines that wording sought to be registered as a mark for live plants, agricultural seeds, fresh fruits, or fresh vegetables comprises a varietal or cultivar name, then the examining attorney must refuse registration, or require a disclaimer, on the ground that the matter is the varietal name of the goods and does not function as a trademark under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#). *See Pennington Seed*, 80 USPQ2d at 1761-62 (upholding the USPTO’s long-standing precedent and policy of treating varietal names as generic, and affirming refusal to register REBEL for grass seed because it is the varietal name for the grass seed as evidenced by its designation as the varietal name in applicant’s plant variety protection certificate); *Dixie Rose Nursery*, 55 USPQ at 316 (holding TEXAS

CENTENNIAL, although originally arbitrary, has become the varietal name for a type of rose; *In re Hilltop Orchards & Nurseries, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 1034, 1035 (TTAB 1979) (affirming the refusal to register COMMANDER YORK for apple trees because it is the varietal name for the trees as evidenced by use in applicant's catalogue); *In re Farmer Seed & Nursery Co.*, 137 USPQ 231, 231-32 (TTAB 1963) (upholding the refusal to register CHIEF BEMIDJI as a trademark because it is the varietal name for a strawberry plant and noting that large expenditures of money does not elevate the term to a trademark; *In re Cohn Bodger & Sons Co.*, 122 USPQ 345, 346 (TTAB 1959) (holding BLUE LUSTRE merely a varietal name for petunia seeds as evidenced by applicant's catalogs).

Likewise, if the mark identifies the prominent portion of a varietal name, it must be refused. *In re Delta & Pine Land Co.*, 26 USPQ2d 1157 (TTAB 1993) (affirming the refusal to register DELTAPINE, which was a portion of the varietal names Deltapine 50, Deltapine 20, Deltapine 105 and Deltapine 506).

1202.13 Scent, Fragrance, or Flavor

Scent. The scent of a product may be registrable if it is used in a nonfunctional manner. See *In re Clarke*, 17 USPQ2d 1238, 1239-40 (TTAB 1990) (holding that the scent of plumeria blossoms functioned as a mark for "sewing thread and embroidery yarn"). Scents that serve a utilitarian purpose, such as the scent of perfume or an air freshener, are functional and not registrable. See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)-1202.02\(a\)\(viii\)](#) regarding functionality. When a scent is not functional, it may be registered on the Principal Register under §2(f), or on the Supplemental Register if appropriate. The amount of evidence required to establish that a scent or fragrance functions as a mark is substantial. See *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d 1042, 1052 (TTAB 2013) (finding that peppermint scent mark for "pharmaceutical formulations of nitroglycerin" failed to function as a mark and noting the insufficiency of applicant's evidence of acquired distinctiveness in light of evidence that the use of peppermint scent by others in the relevant marketplace (i.e., pharmaceuticals) tends to show that such scents are more likely to be perceived as attributes of ingestible products than as indicators of source)); cf. *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 227 USPQ 417 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (requiring concrete evidence that the mark is perceived as a mark to establish distinctiveness).

Flavor. Just as with a scent or fragrance, a flavor can never be inherently distinctive because it is generally seen as a characteristic of the goods. *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d at 1048 (finding that peppermint flavor mark for "pharmaceutical formulations of nitroglycerin" failed to function as a mark); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d 1639 (TTAB 2006) (affirming refusal to register "an orange flavor" for "pharmaceuticals for human use, namely, antidepressants in quick-dissolving tablets and pills," on the grounds that the proposed mark was functional under §2(e)(5) and failed to function as a mark within the meaning of §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act). The Board has observed that it is unclear how a flavor could function as a source indicator because flavor or taste generally performs a utilitarian function and consumers generally have no access to a product's flavor or taste prior to purchase. *Id.* at 1650-51. Thus, an application to register a flavor "requires a substantial showing of acquired distinctiveness." *In re Pohl-Boskamp GmbH & Co.*, 106 USPQ2d at 1051-52 (noting the insufficiency of applicant's evidence of acquired distinctiveness in light of evidence that the use of peppermint flavor by others in the relevant marketplace tends to show that such flavors are more likely to be perceived as attributes of ingestible products than as indicators of source); *In re N.V. Organon*, 79 USPQ2d at 1650.

See [TMEP §807.09](#) regarding the requirements for submitting applications for non-visual marks.

1202.14 Holograms

A hologram used in varying forms does not function as a mark in the absence of evidence that consumers would perceive it as a trademark. See *In re Upper Deck Co.*, 59 USPQ2d 1688, 1692-93 (TTAB 2001), where the Board held that a hologram used on trading cards in varying shapes, sizes, and positions did not function as a mark, because the record showed that other companies used holograms on trading cards and other products as anti-counterfeiting devices, and there was no evidence that the public would perceive applicant's hologram as an indicator of source. The Board noted that "the common use of holograms for non-trademark purposes means that consumers would be less likely to perceive applicant's uses of holograms as trademarks." 59 USPQ2d at 1693.

Therefore, in the absence of evidence of consumer recognition as a mark, the examining attorney should refuse registration on the ground that the hologram does not function as a mark, under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#).

Generally, if a hologram has two or more views, the examining attorney should also refuse registration under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#), on the ground that the application seeks registration of more than one mark. *In re Upper Deck*, 59 USPQ2d at 1690-91. See [TMEP §807.01](#).

1202.15 Sound Marks

A sound mark identifies and distinguishes a product or service through audio rather than visual means. Sound marks function as source indicators when they "assume a definitive shape or arrangement" and "create in the hearer's mind an association of the sound" with a good or service. *In re Gen. Electric Broad. Co.*, 199 USPQ 560, 563 (TTAB 1978). Thus, sounds may be registered on the Principal Register when they are "arbitrary, unique or distinctive and can be used in a manner so as to attach to the mind of the listener and be awakened on later hearing in a way that would indicate for the listener that a particular product or service was coming from a particular, even if anonymous, source." *In re Vertex Grp. LLC*, 89 USPQ2d 1694, 1700 (TTAB 2009). Examples of sound marks include: (1) a series of tones or musical notes, with or without words; and (2) wording accompanied by music.

There is, however, a difference between unique, different, or distinctive sounds and those that resemble or imitate "commonplace" sounds or those to which listeners have been exposed under different circumstances, which must be shown to have acquired distinctiveness. *Gen. Electric Broad.* 199 USPQ at 563 (TTAB 1978). Examples of "commonplace" sound marks include goods that make the sound in their normal course of operation (e.g., alarm clocks, appliances that include audible alarms or signals, telephones, and personal security alarms). Therefore, sound marks for goods that make the sound in their normal course of operation can be registered only on a showing of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). *In re Powermat Inc.*, 105 USPQ2d 1789, 1793 (TTAB 2013) (finding battery chargers that emit "chirp" sounds slightly increasing and decreasing in pitch not inherently distinctive, and applicant's advertising only relevant in a showing of acquired distinctiveness); *Nextel Commc'ns, Inc. v. Motorola, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1393 (TTAB 2009) (holding cellular telephones that emit a "chirp" sound fall into the category of goods that make the sound in their normal course of operation); *Vertex*, 89 USPQ2d at 1700, 1702 (holding personal security alarm clock products that emit a sound pulse fall into the category of goods that make sound in the normal course of operation).

See [TMEP §807.09](#) regarding the requirements for submitting applications for sound marks and [§904.03\(f\)](#) regarding specimens for sound marks.

1202.16 Model or Grade Designations

Model designations appear in connection with a wide variety of products, such as retaining rings, hand tools, and pens, to identify a specific style, type, or design of a product within a particular line of goods. See *In re Petersen Mfg. Co.*, 229 USPQ 466 (TTAB 1986) (noting that the following alphanumeric designations served as model numbers on the specimens, but finding the evidence of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) sufficient for registration: 18R for a C clamp; 6LN for a locking plier with elongated jaw; 9LN for a locking plier with elongated jaw; 7CR for a locking plier with curved jaw; 6R for a C clamp; 20R for a chain clamp; 10CR for a locking plier with curved jaw; 7R for a locking plier with straight jaw; 10WR for a locking plier with wire cutter; 7WR for a locking plier with wire cutter; 5WR for a locking plier with wire cutter; RR for a locking specialty tool, namely, a pinch-off tool; 10R for a locking plier with straight jaw; 9R for a locking specialty tool, namely, a welding clamp; 8R for locking specialty tools, namely, metal clamping tools; and 11R for a C clamp); *In re Waldes Kohinoor, Inc.*, 124 USPQ 471 (TTAB 1960) (holding that 5131, 5000, and 5100 for retaining rings functioned only to differentiate one type of the applicant's retaining rings from its other types and did not function as a trademark to distinguish the applicant's goods from those of others); *Ex parte Esterbrook Pen Co.*, 109 USPQ 368 (Comm'r Pats. 1956) (holding that 2668 for pen points did not function as a mark because it was merely a style number for a particular pen point used to differentiate one pen point from other points in the product line).

Model designations also are commonly used to distinguish between different types of automobile parts within a single product line. See *In re Dana Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d 1748 (TTAB 1989) (holding that the following alphanumeric designations used in connection with vehicle parts functioned only as part numbers and not as trademarks: 5-469X; 5-438X; 5-510X; 5-515X; 5-407X; 5-279X; and 5-281X). In addition, model designations may serve the purpose of providing users with product compatibility information between goods and parts, accessories, and/or fittings for the goods. See *In re Otis Eng'g Corp.*, 218 USPQ 959, 960 (TTAB 1983) (noting that the fact that various pieces of applicant's "X" equipment for oil wells are compatible with each other tends to support the position that "X" is a style or model designation, but finding that the specimens, advertising brochures, and affidavits when considered together demonstrate that "X" also functions as a trademark). They also facilitate ordering and tracking of goods. *Id.* (noting that the use of the same designation on various goods that work together would enable purchasers to order compatible equipment).

Grade designations are used to denote that a product has a certain level of quality within a defined range. They may also indicate that a product has a certain classification, size, weight, type, degree, or mode of manufacturing. Mere grade designations are often used by competitors within an industry, or by the general public, and do not indicate origin from a single source because their principal function is to provide information about the product to a consumer. See 1 Anne Gilson LaLonde, *Gilson on Trademarks* §2.03(4)(a) (Matthew Bender 2011). (Note: the use of a grade designation in the context of a certification mark is not discussed herein.)

For example, the fuel industry utilizes grade designations in the form of particular numbers to delineate different octane ratings of fuel. See *In re Union Oil Co.*, 33 USPQ 43 (C.C.P.A. 1937) (affirming the decision of the Commissioner of Patents refusing to register 76 for gasoline because the term functioned merely as a grade or quality mark to indicate either the octane rating or the Baume gravity rating and did not indicate origin). Grade designations have also been used to signify the composition or strength of various types of steel. See *Jones & Laughlin Steel Corp. v. Armco Steel Corp.*, 139 USPQ 132 (TTAB 1963) (holding that the terms 17-4PH and 17-7PH originally served only as a grade designation for stainless steel based on the composition of chromium and nickel, but finding the evidence of secondary meaning sufficient for registration). The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) assigns grades in connection with butter to delineate between different quality levels based on flavor, aroma, and texture. See Agric. Mktg. Serv., U.S. Dept' of Agric., *How to Buy Butter* (Feb. 1995),

<http://www.ams.usda.gov/AMSV1.0/getfile?dDocName=STELDEV3002487>. The USDA also assigns grades to other food products, such as eggs, meat, and poultry. See Agric. Mktg. Serv., U.S. Dep't of Agric., *Egg - Grading Manual* (July 2000), <http://www.ams.usda.gov/AMSV1.0/getfile?dDocName=STELDEV3004502>; *Inspection & Grading of Meat and Poultry: What Are the Differences?*, U.S. Dep't of Agric. (Aug. 22, 2008), http://www.fsis.usda.gov/Fact_Sheets/Inspection_&_Grading/index.asp.

1202.16(a) Examination of Marks with Model and Grade Designations

A trademark comprises a word, name, symbol, device, or combination thereof that is used to identify the goods of an applicant, to distinguish them from the goods of others, and to indicate the source of the goods. Trademark Act §§1-2, 45, 15 U.S.C. §§1051-1052, [1127](#); see [TMEP §1202](#). Similar to a trademark, a model or grade designation is generally comprised of numbers or letters, or a combination thereof. However, the manner of use, and resulting commercial impression imparted by the matter, differentiate a mere model or grade designation from that of a trademark (or a dual-purpose mark that is both a model or grade designation and a trademark). While letters, numbers, or alphanumeric matter may serve as both a trademark and a model or grade designation, matter used merely as a model or grade designation serves only to differentiate between different products within a product line or delineate levels of quality, and does not indicate source. See *Eastman Kodak Co. v. Bell & Howell Document Mgmt. Prods. Co.*, 994 F.2d 1569, 1576, 26 USPQ2d 1912, 1919 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *Neapco Inc. v. Dana Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d 1746, 1748 (TTAB 1989); 1 Anne Gilson LaLonde, *Gilson on Trademarks* §2.03(4)(a) (Matthew Bender 2011); J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition* §11.36 (4th ed. 2011).

Even though a model or grade designation seems “arbitrary” in the sense that the combination of letters, numbers, or both does not immediately describe the goods, it often does not function as a trademark. See Gilson LaLonde, *supra*, §2.03(4)(a). Where the model or grade designation fails to distinguish the applicant’s goods from those of others or to identify the applicant as the source, the proposed mark must be refused registration on the Principal Register under §§1, 2, and 45 for failure to function as a trademark. 15 U.S.C. §§1051-1052, [1127](#). However, if the mark both identifies a model or grade designation and serves as a trademark, no failure-to-function refusal should issue. See *Ex parte Eastman Kodak Co.*, 55 USPQ 361, 362 (Comm’r Pats. 1942) (“The fundamental question is not whether or not the mark as used by applicant serves to indicate grade or quality but rather whether it is or is not so used that purchasers and the public will recognize the mark as indicating the source of origin of the goods.”).

In addition, the examining attorney must also consider whether the proposed mark is merely descriptive, or even generic. Trademark Act §2(e)(1), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#). Grade designations often become synonymous with (and thus merely descriptive of) a classification, value, size, weight, type, degree, mode of manufacturing, or level of quality of the goods. And, more infrequently, model designations can be used in a merely descriptive manner. See *Textron, Inc. v. Omark Indus., Inc.*, 208 USPQ 524, 527-28 (TTAB 1980) (holding that model numbers which have been used in the same manner by competitors for indicating the size of the saw chains as to pitch and gauge are merely descriptive and not registrable).

1202.16(b) Identifying Model and Grade Designations in Marks

1202.16(b)(i) Model Designations

Determining whether a proposed mark is used merely as a model designation is a question of fact. See *In re Petersen Mfg. Co.*, 229 USPQ 466 (TTAB 1986) (finding that purchasers recognized the designations as trademarks in addition to functioning as model designations based on the ex parte record presented). The

factual finding focuses on whether the proposed mark, as used on the specimen (and any other evidence of record), also identifies the applicant as the source of the goods or distinguishes the applicant's goods from the goods of others. Extrinsic evidence may also aid in determining whether the proposed mark functions as a source indicator. The following three considerations comprise guidelines for determining whether a proposed mark, as used on a specimen, serves merely as a model designation or whether it also functions as a source indicator.

1202.16(b)(i)(A) Stylization of Display

The stylization of display refers to the visual presentation or “look” of a proposed mark on the specimen, and takes into consideration such elements as font style and color as well as design features. In some cases, the stylization creates an impression separate and apart from that of a model designation, thereby making the designation more likely to be perceived as a trademark. In analyzing stylization of display, the examining attorney should consider whether the font or stylization of lettering in the proposed mark is unusual or relatively ordinary, and should also consider the degree of stylization. Where the stylization is minimal, the proposed mark may be more likely to be perceived as *merely* a model designation.

1202.16(b)(i)(B) Size of Proposed Mark

Size refers to the relative dimension of the proposed mark. If the proposed mark appears large in relation to any other matter, it may immediately catch the eye and make the proposed mark the focal point on the specimen. Therefore, the proposed mark would be less likely to be perceived as a mere model designation. If the proposed mark is smaller than the other matter surrounding it, however, consumers would be more likely to perceive it as merely a model designation.

1202.16(b)(i)(C) Physical Location

The physical location refers to the actual position of the proposed mark on a specimen. Although there is no prescribed location on a specimen where the proposed mark must be placed to qualify as a trademark, the physical location of matter on a specimen suggests how the mark would be perceived by consumers and whether such matter serves as a trademark or is merely a model designation. The display of a proposed mark in a prominent location on the goods themselves, or on the packaging or label, is a factor that may contribute to finding that it serves as a trademark. A proposed mark that appears in close proximity to generic or informational matter (such as the common or class name for the goods, net weight, bar code, or country of origin) is less likely to be perceived as a mark because it will be viewed together with the generic or informational matter as merely conveying information about the model of a particular product line.

1202.16(b)(ii) Grade Designations

A grade designation often indicates a standard that is common to producers or manufacturers within an industry. Determining whether a proposed mark is used *merely* as a grade designation is a question of fact. *See In re Flintkote Co.*, 132 USPQ 295, 296 (TTAB 1961) (citing *Kiekhäfer Corp. v. Willys-Overland Motors, Inc.*, 111 USPQ 105 (C.C.P.A. 1956)); J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition* §11.36 (4th ed. 2011). Thus, the examining attorney must supplement consideration of the application content (i.e., the drawing, the description of the mark, the identification of goods or services, and the specimen, if any), with independent research of the applicant's and competitors' websites, the Internet, and databases such as LexisNexis® to determine how the designation is used in the industry. Such research will assist in determining whether the proposed mark is used by others to convey a specific characteristic of the goods (such as value, size, type, degree, or level of quality) and, as such, has a publicly

recognized meaning. For example, if the evidence shows that A, B, C, and D, or 1, 2, 3, and 4, are commonly used in an industry to represent a hierarchy of quality, a mark consisting of such a letter or number likely would not indicate source in any one producer or manufacturer. *See Shaw Stocking Co. v. Mack*, 12 F. 707, 711 (C.C.N.D.N.Y. 1882) (“It is very clear that no manufacturer would have the right exclusively to appropriate the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, or the letters A, B, C, and D, to distinguish the first, second, third and fourth quality of his goods, respectively. Why? Because the general signification and common use of these letters and figures are such, that no man is permitted to assign a personal and private meaning to that which has by long usage and universal acceptance acquired a public and generic meaning.”); 1 Anne Gilson LaLonde, *Gilson on Trademarks* §2.03(4)(a) (Matthew Bender 2011).

Where extrinsic evidence shows that matter in the proposed mark is used by competitors or members of the public to convey the same type of designation of quality, the resulting commercial impression is merely that of a grade designation with no source-identifying capability. The examining attorney should also analyze the specimen using the same considerations for model designations (i.e., stylization of display on the specimen, size of matter on the specimen, physical location on the specimen) to bolster a refusal based on a failure to function as a mark. A lack of extrinsic evidence of usage of the proposed mark as a grade designation does not necessarily foreclose a refusal, where the nature of applicant’s use and the same considerations for model designations (i.e., stylization of display on the specimen, size of matter on the specimen, physical location on the specimen) indicate a grade designation.

1202.16(c) Procedures for Handling Marks with Model and Grade Designations

1202.16(c)(i) Evidentiary Considerations when Issuing Model or Grade Designation Refusals

1202.16(c)(i)(A) Model Designations

To support a refusal to register a model designation for failure to function as a mark, the examining attorney must use the applicant’s specimen, along with any other relevant evidence in the application, such as the identification of goods and mark description. If available, the examining attorney should also provide additional evidence that shows that the proposed mark would be perceived merely as a model designation, such as consumers referring to the applicant’s proposed mark as a model or part number when ordering the goods. Evidence that other manufacturers use similar numbering systems to identify model numbers for their goods may be submitted to show that consumers are familiar with the use of alphanumeric designations as model numbers and are consequently less likely to perceive the applicant’s use of the mark as source indicating.

1202.16(c)(i)(B) Grade Designations

A refusal or requirement (such as a disclaimer requirement) on the basis that a mark comprises or includes a grade designation must be supported by relevant evidence. Where extrinsic evidence is available to show that a proposed grade designation is used by competitors within an industry and/or members of the public to convey the same meaning, the examining attorney must attach the evidence to the Office action and explain its relevance to the refusal. For example, evidence demonstrating that other manufacturers use the same or similar grading systems to identify quality levels of their own goods may be submitted with an explanation that such evidence shows that the proposed mark does not indicate origin from a single source. If no extrinsic evidence is available, the examining attorney must use the applicant’s specimen, along with any other relevant evidence of record, to support a grade designation refusal for failure to function as a mark. In such situations, the examining attorney must also issue a request for relevant information (such as fact

sheets, instruction manuals, and/or advertisements depicting the applicant's use of the proposed mark, and evidence of any industry use of this designation or similar designations) pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

1202.16(c)(ii) Entire Mark Consists of Model or Grade Designation in §1(a) Applications

If the evidence shows that a proposed mark consists entirely of a mere model or grade designation, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the Principal Register under §§1, 2, and 45 because the proposed mark does not function as a trademark to identify and distinguish the applicant's goods from those of others and indicate the source of the goods. 15 U.S.C. §§1051-1052, [1127](#).

For such refusals, where appropriate, the examining attorney should advise the applicant of the various response options: (1) submitting a substitute specimen that shows the proposed mark being used as a trademark for the identified goods; (2) claiming acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) with actual evidence of distinctiveness that establishes recognition of the proposed mark as a trademark for the goods; or (3) amending the application to seek registration on the Supplemental Register. *See* Trademark Act §23, [15 U.S.C. §1091](#); *In re Petersen Mfg. Co.*, 229 USPQ 466, 468 (TTAB 1986) (finding letter-number combinations registrable under §2(f) for locking hand tools and stating, "there is no question that such model designations can, through use and promotion, be perceived as marks indicating origin in addition to functioning as model designations."); [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#); [TMEP §904.05](#).

For marks comprising grade designations, the examining attorney must determine whether to make an additional refusal on the grounds that the mark is also merely descriptive of the goods. Trademark Act §2(e)(1), [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(1\)](#). Grade designations can often become synonymous with (and thus merely descriptive of) a classification, value, size, weight, type, degree, mode of manufacturing, or level of quality of the goods. Grade designations that are also the generic name of the goods are not eligible for registration on the Principal Register under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register because they are not capable of indicating the source of the goods and must remain available to identify the relevant characteristic possessed by goods meeting such criteria. In such cases, if the applicant responds by amending the application to seek registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must issue a generic refusal under §23. In the rare situation where the applicant is the sole user of a grade designation and where the mark appears capable, the applicant should be provided with the same response options identified above for applicable model designations.

1202.16(c)(iii) Composite Mark with Model or Grade Designation in §1(a) Applications

Composite marks may comprise matter that is used as a model or grade designation in addition to other wording and/or design features. Such marks must be evaluated as a whole to determine whether they are registrable.

1202.16(c)(iii)(A) Model or Grade Designations with Arbitrary and/or Suggestive Matter

Terms used as model or grade designations that are combined with arbitrary and/or suggestive matter are generally not refused registration under Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45, if the additional matter imparts trademark significance to the mark as a whole. Generally, no disclaimer of a portion that is a model designation need be required (unless there is evidence of descriptive or generic usage) because the composite mark creates a single unitary commercial impression and there is no need to preserve the availability of the applicant's model designation for others. However, the portion of a mark that is a grade designation must generally be disclaimed in cases where there is evidence of descriptive or generic use, to clarify the availability

of the grade designation for use by others in the industry. Standard USPTO disclaimer practices would apply in such cases, including considerations of unitariness. See [TMPEP §§1213-1213.08\(d\)](#).

1202.16(c)(iii)(B) Model or Grade Designations with Descriptive, Generic, and/or Informational Matter

Terms used merely as model or grade designations that are combined with descriptive, generic, and/or informational matter are generally refused registration under Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45 because this type of additional matter does not diminish the mark's model or grade designation significance. In most instances involving model designations, claims of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) and amendments to the Supplemental Register may be permissible. Additionally, in rare cases where there is no evidence of generic usage for grade designations, claims of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) and amendments to the Supplemental Register may be permissible. In such cases, the examiner must consider standard USPTO disclaimer practice to determine whether a disclaimer of the generic and/or informational matter may be necessary. See [TMPEP §§1213-1213.08\(d\)](#).

1202.16(c)(iv) Drawing and Specimen Agreement Issues in §1(a) Applications

Occasionally, the specimen will show a possible model or grade designation that is not included on the drawing and thus, the mark on the drawing and specimen will appear to disagree. See [TMPEP §807.12\(d\)](#). When it is unclear whether the additional matter is a model or grade designation, the examining attorney must require the applicant to clarify whether this matter is part of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMPEP §814](#). If the matter is not part of the mark and is merely used as a model or grade designation, the applicant may avoid an agreement issue by submitting the following: (1) a statement that the matter is merely a model or grade designation and (2) evidence showing use of the proposed mark with other similar notations or evidence clearly showing that the matter is merely a model or grade designation. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); *In re Raychem Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d 1399, 1400 (TTAB 1989) (holding the mark TINEL-LOCK on the drawing to agree with the wording TR06AI-TINEL-LOCK-RING appearing on the specimen where the notation TR06AI was merely a part or stock number, as supported by a submitted brochure that explained that each letter and number in the notation represented a specific type, size, and feature of the part, and the term RING was generic for the goods); *In re Sansui Elec. Co.*, 194 USPQ 202, 203 (TTAB 1977) (holding the marks "QSE" and "QSD" on the drawing to agree with the wording "QSE-4" and "QSD-4" appearing on the specimens, where the notation "4" was merely a model number and the additional specimens showed use of the mark with various changing model numbers used to designate successive generations of equipment). In the alternative, the applicant may provide a substitute specimen showing the proposed mark depicted on the drawing. See [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#); [TMPEP §904.05](#). In cases where the record clearly indicates that the notation on the specimen is a model or grade designation, no inquiry is needed. See *In re Raychem Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d at 1400.

1202.16(c)(v) Model or Grade Designation in §1(b), §44, or §66(a) Applications

1202.16(c)(v)(A) Model Designations

In §1(b), 44, or 66(a) applications, marks that appear to be merely model designations (either wholly comprising the mark or used with descriptive/generic/informational matter) may be refused registration for failure to function as a mark only where the drawing and mark description are dispositive of the mark's failure to function, or the record clearly and unequivocally indicates that the entire mark identifies only a model designation. Cf. *In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1156-57 (TTAB 2008) (affirming an ornamentation refusal in a §66(a) application despite the lack of a specimen since the mark was decorative

or ornamental on its face as depicted on the drawing page and described in the application). For those rare cases where a refusal issues in a §66(a) application, the examining attorney must not offer an amendment to the Supplemental Register. Applications filed under §66(a) are not eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register. [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\), 2.75\(c\)](#); [TMEP §816.01](#); see also [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#). Otherwise, because of the lack of specimen of use, a failure-to-function refusal is inappropriate.

If upon initial examination of a §1(b) application, an examining attorney must issue an Office action for other reasons, and the proposed mark appears to be used or intended to be used merely as a model designation, the examining attorney should include a model designation failure-to-function advisory as a courtesy to the applicant. See [TMEP §1102.01](#). Regardless of whether an examining attorney issues an initial advisory before the applicant files an allegation of use, the examining attorney must issue a refusal based on failure to function as a mark after the allegation of use is filed, if supported by the evidence of record. *Id.*

1202.16(c)(v)(B) Grade Designations

The examining attorney must refuse registration based on a failure to function as a mark for a mark merely comprising a grade designation (or a grade designation with descriptive/generic/informational matter) in a §1(b), 44, or 66(a) application where the evidence shows the mark is used in the industry or by the public in such a way as to clearly and unequivocally show use merely to identify a specific quality or feature of the goods. For more information about evidence, see [TMEP §1202.16\(c\)\(i\)\(B\)](#). If the examining attorney can find no extrinsic evidence of such use, the procedures outlined for model designations in [TMEP §1202.16\(c\)\(v\)\(A\)](#) must be followed.

1202.17 Universal Symbols in Marks

The term “universal symbol” refers to a design, icon, or image that is commonly used in an informational manner and conveys a widely recognized or readily understood meaning when displayed in its relevant context. See *Webster’s New World College Dictionary* 1356 (3rd ed. 1997) (defining “symbol” as “something that stands for, represents, or suggests another thing; esp., an object used to represent something abstract”); *id.* at 1460 (defining “universal” as “used, intended to be used, or understood by all”). Universal symbols are typically available for use by anyone to quickly provide notice of a particular condition or to indicate a characteristic of an object or area. Thus, they appear in a variety of places, such as on road signs, near dangerous machinery, on medical apparatus, in hazardous locations, on product warning labels, or on materials connected with recycling activities. Usually, the context in which a universal symbol appears is crucial in determining the symbol’s significance.

Matter that is specifically protected by statute or registered as a mark should not be considered to be a universal symbol. See [TMEP §1205](#). For example, certain symbols that have a widely recognized meaning, such as the Red Cross, are subject to specific statutory protections restricting their use and may be refused under various provisions of the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §1205.01](#).

The following are examples of common universal symbols:



The recycling symbol typically designates materials that are recyclable or recycled, but may also indicate that goods or services involve recycling or are otherwise environmentally friendly. *See, e.g.*, About.com, *Recycling Symbols Made Easy*, http://greenliving.about.com/od/recyclingwaste/tp/recycling_symbols.htm (accessed Aug. 24, 2012).



The international radiation symbol indicates proximity to a source of radiation or radioactive materials. *See, e.g.*, U.S. Dept. of Health & Human Servs., *Examples of Radiation Signs and Symbols for Work Areas, Buildings, Transportation of Cargo*, <http://www.remm.nlm.gov/radsign.htm> (accessed Aug. 24, 2012).



The biohazard symbol indicates the presence of pathogens or other matter that is potentially harmful or poses a health risk. *See, e.g.*, Graphic Products, *Biohazard Signs*, <http://www.graphicproducts.com/sign-printers/biohazard-signs.html> (accessed Aug. 24, 2012).



The universal prohibition symbol, which usually appears superimposed over another image or wording, is a visual representation of “no,” “not,” or “prohibited.” *See, e.g.*, Free Signage.com, *Prohibition Signs*, http://www.freesignage.com/prohibited_signs.php (accessed Aug. 24, 2012).

1202.17(a) Relevance of Universal Symbols to Examination

Universal symbols may appear as one element of a mark, or they may form an entire mark. The informational aspect of these symbols is often at odds with the functions of trademarks and service marks: to identify and distinguish one’s goods or services and indicate their source. Specifically, a universal symbol may fail to function as a mark because it only imparts information, conveys an informational message, or provides ornamentation. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#); TMEP §§ [1202, 1202.03, 1202.04](#). In addition, a universal symbol may merely describe a feature, quality, function, purpose, or characteristic of goods or services. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#); TMEP §§ [1209, 1209.01\(b\)](#). If a universal symbol in a mark creates a false impression about a characteristic or quality of an applicant’s goods or services, the mark may be deceptive or deceptively misdescriptive. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(a\), 1052\(e\)\(1\)](#); TMEP §§ [1203.02–1203.02\(g\)](#),

[1209.04](#). As explained in [TMEP §1202.17\(b\)](#), however, registration of a universal symbol may be permissible in some instances.

1202.17(b) Reviewing Marks Containing Symbols

For each application, the examining attorney must determine whether the mark contains a universal symbol. Some universal symbols, such as the recycling symbol, are immediately identifiable. Others may not be, and applications for marks containing a symbol do not always identify the symbol, explain its significance, or indicate whether it is shown in a stylized or unusual form.

1202.17(b)(i) Identifying Universal Symbols in Marks

If a mark includes or consists of a symbol (or an unfamiliar symbol-like element), the examining attorney should review the application for any information the applicant may have provided about the symbol and ensure that an accurate description is included in the record. *See* TMEP §§ [808.03](#), [808.03\(b\)](#), [808.03\(d\)](#). The examining attorney may also use the mark's assigned design codes to determine the name of the symbol and to search the Trademark database for applications and registrations that describe the symbol. *See* [TMEP §104](#). If the design codes assigned to the mark do not accurately reflect the significant elements of the mark, the examining attorney should ensure that the design codes are updated so that the correct codes are listed. *See* [TMEP §808.03\(f\)](#). After identifying the symbol, the examining attorney may find additional information about it by using Internet search engines or symbol reference websites.

Even without the name of the symbol, the examining attorney may be able to find information about it by entering a textual description of it in an Internet search engine. For instance, one could find information about the recycling symbol, even without knowing the name of the symbol, by using the following textual description in a search engine query: "green curved arrows triangle." Additionally, the examining attorney could consult a symbol reference website that provides a means of searching based on a symbol's graphical characteristics. *See* Symbols.com, *Graphic Index*, <http://www.symbols.com/graphic-index/> (accessed Aug. 24, 2012).

In addition, the Trademark Law Library holds a number of reference books about symbols and their meaning, and its librarians are available to assist USPTO personnel in researching questions regarding the identity, significance, and use of symbols. Furthermore, under Trademark Rule 2.61(b), the examining attorney may require the applicant to provide additional information about an unfamiliar symbol in a mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

The examining attorney's research may show that a symbol (or symbol-like element) in a mark is not a universal symbol. However, other symbols, symbol-like elements, and designs that are not universal symbols may nonetheless be perceived only as informational matter and thus fail to function as marks. In these instances, the examining attorney need not take any further action with respect to the universal symbol analysis, but should ensure that the application record contains a mark description that accurately describes the significant elements of the mark. TMEP §§ [808.01](#), [808.02](#), [808.03\(b\)](#). The examining attorney should otherwise review the application according to standard USPTO practice and determine whether it complies with all applicable trademark statutes and rules.

1202.17(b)(ii) Marks Displaying an Unusual Depiction of a Universal Symbol

If the mark contains a universal symbol, the examining attorney must determine whether the mark displays the symbol in the usual manner or otherwise features an accurate depiction of the symbol. This may be done

by comparing the symbol in the mark with any accurate depictions of the symbol the examining attorney finds while researching the symbol.

Generally, a universal symbol in a mark should be considered registrable matter if it is highly stylized, if it incorporates elements that are not usually in the symbol, or if it is integrated with other matter in the mark, and, as a result, a distinctive commercial impression separate and apart from the symbol's usual significance is created or a source-indicating unitary whole is formed. *Cf. In re LRC Prods. Ltd.*, 223 USPQ 1250, 1252 (TTAB 1984) (noting that “where designs or representations were more realistic and where the design left no doubt about the depiction of a central feature or characteristic of the goods or services,” the Board has found that such designs and representations are merely descriptive); [TMEP §1213.03\(c\)](#) (“No disclaimer of highly stylized pictorial representations of descriptive matter should be required[,] because the design element creates a distinct commercial impression.”); [TMEP §1213.05\(f\)](#) (“The visual presentation of a mark may be such that the words and/or designs form a unitary whole. In such a case, disclaimer of individual nondistinctive elements is unnecessary.”); [TMEP §1213.05\(g\)\(iv\)](#) (“If literal and design elements in a mark are so merged together that they cannot be divided or regarded as separable elements, these elements may be considered unitary.”). However, displaying an accurately depicted universal symbol as a replacement for a letter in a mark's literal element normally will not change the symbol's usual impression (or create a unitary whole), nor will minor alterations to the symbol, such as slight stylizations or nondistinctive changes to color scheme or proportions. *Cf. TMEP §§1213.03(c), 1213.05(g).*

1202.17(b)(iii) Marks Displaying an Accurate Depiction of a Universal Symbol

If the mark displays the universal symbol in the usual manner, or otherwise features an accurate depiction of the symbol, the examining attorney must determine whether, in view of the identified goods or services, it is necessary to issue a refusal or disclaimer requirement based on failure to function, mere descriptiveness, deceptive misdescriptiveness, or deceptiveness grounds. See [TMEP §§ 1202.17\(c\)\(i\), 1202.17\(d\)\(i\)-\(d\)\(ii\)](#).

1202.17(c) Failure to Function

The USPTO will not register a mark unless it functions as a mark. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#); *In re Bose Corp.*, 192 USPQ 213, 215 (C.C.P.A. 1976) (“Before there can be registration, there must be a trademark”); *In re Int'l Spike, Inc.*, 196 USPQ 447, 449 (TTAB 1977) (“Registration presupposes the existence of a trademark to be registered.”); [TMEP §1202](#). That is, the mark must serve as an indicator of the source of the goods or services, identifying and distinguishing them from those of others. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); [TMEP §1202](#). Not every designation that a party places on goods or packaging, or uses in connection with services, necessarily performs these source-indicating functions, regardless of the party's intentions when adopting the designation. *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d 1227, 1229 (TTAB 2010); *In re Vertex Grp., LLC*, 89 USPQ2d 1694, 1701 (TTAB 2009) (“As is the case with any trademark, mere intent that a word, name, symbol or device function as a trademark or service mark is not enough in and of itself.”). Some designations can never serve as a source indicator. See *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d at 1229; *Am. Velcro, Inc. v. Charles Mayer Studios, Inc.*, 177 USPQ 149, 154 (TTAB 1973) .

1202.17(c)(i) Determining Whether a Universal Symbol Functions as a Source Indicator

The determination as to whether a universal symbol in a mark functions as a source indicator involves considering the significance of the symbol, the nature of the symbol's use in the relevant marketplace, and the impression created when the mark is used in connection with the identified goods or services. See *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ 1227, 1229 (TTAB 2010) (noting that, to determine how a designation would be perceived by the relevant public, the Board “look[s] to the specimens and other evidence of record showing

how the designation is actually used in the marketplace”); *In re Aerospace Optics, Inc.*, 78 USPQ2d 1861, 1862 (TTAB 2006) (“A critical element in determining whether matter sought to be registered is a trademark is the impression the matter makes on the relevant public. Thus . . . the critical inquiry is whether the asserted mark would be perceived as a source indicator. . . .”); *In re Volvo Cars of N. Am. Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d 1455, 1459 (TTAB 1998) (“In order to assess the commercial impact created by the designation . . . we look to the specimens and other materials which show how the mark is actually used in the marketplace.”).

Relevant evidence of a symbol’s significance and usual manner of use includes the resources referenced in [TMPEP §1202.17\(b\)\(i\)](#), any other competent materials indicating the meaning of the symbol, and Internet excerpts or trade matter showing the symbol being used in a particular field or context, or in connection with the relevant goods or services.

Weighing these considerations in view of the available facts and evidence may lead the examining attorney to the conclusion that the mark does not serve as a source indicator, but instead fails to function because it (1) imparts information about the goods or services, (2) conveys an informational message (though not necessarily about the goods or services themselves), or (3) serves only as ornamentation on the goods or services. See [TMPEP §§1202.17\(c\)\(i\)\(A\)-\(c\)\(i\)\(B\)](#).

1202.17(c)(i)(A) Informational Universal Symbols

Universal Symbols that Impart Information About the Goods or Services

Merely informational matter is not registrable as a trademark or service mark. See [TMPEP §1202.04](#). When a universal symbol in a mark is used in its usual context or field, or with relevant goods or services, it will likely impart its generally recognized meaning and thus perform only an informational function, rather than serve to identify any single source of the goods or services. Cf. *In re Schwauss*, 217 USPQ 361 (TTAB 1983) (holding mark consisting of FRAGILE in a “jarred or broken” stylization failed to function as a trademark for labels and bumper stickers). For instance, because the biohazard symbol commonly appears on items to indicate the presence of hazardous materials, the symbol is unlikely to function as a trademark on goods such as containers for disposing of medical waste. See, e.g., *Graphic Products, Biohazard Signs*, <http://www.graphicproducts.com/sign-printers/biohazard-signs.html> (accessed Aug. 24, 2012).

In these circumstances, the symbol’s position, prominence, and surrounding context on the specimen of use will not be as significant in the analysis, because the symbol will function only as informational matter regardless of its manner of use on the specimen. Cf. *In re Volvo Cars of N. Am. Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d at 1460-61 (affirming refusal to register DRIVE SAFELY because “to grant exclusive rights to applicant in this ordinary and commonly used safety admonition would interfere with the rights of others in the automobile industry to freely use the familiar phrase . . . to promote safe driving and/or that purchasers can drive safely in their make of automobiles. . . .”); *In re Schwauss*, 217 USPQ at 362 (“[T]o allow registration [of stylized word FRAGILE for labels and bumper stickers] would achieve the absurd result of hampering others in their use of the common word ‘fragile’ on any label designed to be placed on any other object to indicate the fragility of said object.”). Nonetheless, the examining attorney should analyze how the mark (and the symbol in it) is used on the specimen because it may lend further support to the failure-to-function refusal.

Sometimes a symbol is applied to goods or services outside the symbol’s normal context and the symbol could therefore serve a source-indicating function. Thus, the biohazard symbol could function as a service mark for live musical-performance services, for example, because the symbol would not provide any relevant information about the services, even when encountered by someone who knows what the symbol usually means.

Universal Symbols that Convey an Informational Message

Even if a mark does not directly impart information about goods or services, it may nonetheless fail to function if it conveys an informational message to others. *See In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d 1227, 1230-31 (TTAB 2010). For example, common phrases and slogans that are frequently displayed by many different parties on various goods are not likely to be viewed as source indicators, even if the matter is being used in a non-ornamental manner. *See id.* Instead, such goods would likely be purchased for the message the phrase or slogan conveys. *See id.* at 1230. See [TMEP §1202.04](#) regarding informational matter.

Likewise, when certain commonly used universal symbols appear on goods such as clothing, fashion accessories, and household items, they would likely be perceived as conveying an informational message and the goods featuring these symbols would likely be purchased for that reason. For example, evidence may show that when the recycling symbol appears on the upper-left chest area of a t-shirt, those encountering the shirt are likely to assume that it indicates support for recycling or environmental causes in general. Or evidence may support the conclusion that a peace symbol used on t-shirts or stickers likely will not function as mark, because even if it is not ornamental and does not necessarily provide any particular information about the goods themselves, it is informational in the sense that it conveys a message of supporting peace.

The examining attorney may support a failure-to-function refusal in these cases by providing evidence that indicates the widely recognized meaning of the symbol, establishes that the symbol is commonly used to convey particular information, and shows that the symbol commonly appears on the goods at issue or analogous goods. *See id.* Factors such as the symbol's position and prominence on the goods, as shown by the specimen of use, may also support the determination that the matter will be perceived only as conveying a message. *See id.* at 1230-31. As with any other substantive refusal, the amount, type, and nature of the evidence required to support a failure-to-function refusal will vary depending on the facts of the particular application.

Although this issue is more likely to arise when universal symbols are displayed on goods, it is also possible for a universal symbol to convey an informational message when used in connection with services.

1202.17(c)(i)(B) Ornamental Universal Symbols

Matter that serves only as an ornamental feature of goods does not identify and distinguish the goods and, thus, does not function as a trademark. [TMEP §1202.03](#). Like any other design element, universal symbols may be used ornamentally on goods such as clothing, jewelry, fashion accessories, and household items. In these instances, the symbol's position, prominence, and surrounding context on the specimen are particularly significant in determining whether the matter serves as ornamentation. For more information on the relevant considerations, see [TMEP §§1202.03–1202.03\(d\)](#).

The examining attorney should not suggest the usual response options for an ornamental refusal (i.e., showing secondary source, claiming acquired distinctiveness, or amending to the Supplemental Register) unless the mark is capable of serving as a trademark and does not also fail to function because it imparts information or conveys an informational message. *See* [TMEP §1202.03](#).

1202.17(c)(ii) Mark Consists Entirely of a Universal Symbol that Fails to Function

If a mark consists entirely of a universal symbol and the examining attorney determines that the universal symbol fails to function as a source indicator for the identified goods, the examining attorney must issue a refusal under Trademark Act Sections 1, 2, and 45. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1127](#); *see In re Aerospace*

Optics, Inc., 78 USPQ2d 1861, 1863 (TTAB 2006) (“It is well established that the refusal of failure to function is properly based on Sections 1, 2 and 45 of the Act.”). For service marks, the refusal is based on Trademark Act Sections 1, 2, 3, and 45. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#). For applications seeking registration on the Supplemental Register, the statutory basis for the failure-to-function refusal is Trademark Act Sections 23 and 45. [15 U.S.C. §§1091, 1127](#); see [TMEP §1202](#).

When issuing a failure-to-function refusal, the examining attorney must explain the particular reasons the mark does not function as a trademark or service mark and provide sufficient evidence in support of the explanation. See *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d 1227, 1232 (TTAB 2010) (finding that the examining attorney had “shown prima facie that the slogan [ONCE A MARINE, ALWAYS A MARINE] would be perceived solely as informational matter rather than as a trademark and applicant [had] submitted no evidence to rebut that showing”); TMEP §§ [1202, 1301.02\(a\)](#). See TMEP §§ [1202.17\(b\)\(i\)](#) and [1202.17\(c\)\(i\)](#) for further discussion of evidence.

1202.17(c)(ii)(A) Applications Based on Sections 1(b), 44, or 66(a)

Generally, the failure-to-function refusal is a specimen-based refusal. [TMEP §1202](#). However, the examining attorney may issue a failure-to-function refusal for applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) if information in the application record or other available evidence is dispositive of the failure of the relevant matter to function as a mark. See [TMEP §1202](#); cf. *In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1157 (TTAB 2008) (noting that, with respect to §66(a) applications, “it is appropriate for examining attorneys to issue an ornamentation refusal if the mark is decorative or ornamental on its face as depicted on the drawing page and described in the description of the mark”).

If the examining attorney is otherwise issuing an Office action and anticipates refusing a mark in a §1(b) application on failure-to-function grounds once the applicant submits a specimen with an allegation of use, the examining attorney should advise the applicant of the potential refusal. If possible, this should be done in the initial Office action. However, failure to provide an advisory does not preclude an examining attorney from later refusing registration. See [TMEP §1202](#).

1202.17(c)(ii)(B) Applicant’s Response to Refusal

If a mark fails to function because it consists of a universal symbol that is informational or that conveys an informational message, the examining attorney should not suggest that the applicant respond by claiming acquired distinctiveness or amending the application to seek registration on the Supplemental Register. The relevant issue is not whether the mark is distinctive, but, instead, whether the matter in question even functions as a mark. See *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ 76, 79 (TTAB 1984) (agreeing with the examining attorney that “evidence of distinctiveness under Section 2(f) of the Act is irrelevant to the issue of whether the subject phrase [at issue] functions as a technical service mark”). Therefore, neither a claim of acquired distinctiveness under Trademark Act Section 2(f) nor an amendment to the Supplemental Register is a proper response to the refusal. See *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ at 79. Furthermore, allowing registration in these instances, either on the Principal Register under Section 2(f) or on the Supplemental Register, would inhibit others from using merely informational matter that should be freely available to use. See TMEP §1202.04; cf. *In re Volvo Cars of N. Am. Inc.*, 46 USPQ2d at 1460-61 (Affirming refusal to register DRIVE SAFELY because “to grant exclusive rights to applicant in this ordinary and commonly used safety admonition would interfere with the rights of others in the automobile industry to freely use the familiar phrase . . . to promote safe driving and/or that purchasers can drive safely in their make of automobiles. . . .”); *In re Schwauss*, 217 USPQ at 362 (“[T]o allow registration [of stylized word FRAGILE for labels and bumper stickers] would achieve the absurd result of hampering others in their use of the common word ‘fragile’ on any label designed to be placed on any other object to indicate the fragility of said object.”).

In addition, the examining attorney should not suggest that the applicant submit a substitute specimen or amend to an intent-to-use filing basis in these cases. If the mark is informational or conveys an informational message, the applicant likely will be unable to provide a specimen showing proper trademark or service mark use. The applicant may amend the application to an intent-to-use basis, but it likely will only temporarily overcome the refusal, given that a specimen showing proper trademark or service mark use is required before a registration may issue. See [TMEP §1103](#). The examining attorney must review any substitute specimen submitted to confirm that refusal remains warranted.

Finally, if a mark consisting of a universal symbol fails to function only because it is used in an ornamental manner on the specimen, and it is possible that the mark could function if used in a trademark manner, then all of the response options discussed immediately above should be suggested by the examining attorney, if otherwise appropriate.

1202.17(c)(iii) Mark Includes a Universal Symbol that Fails to Function

If a universal symbol fails to function as a source indicator because it is informational or conveys an informational message, and it appears along with other non-source-indicating matter, the examining attorney must issue a failure-to-function refusal. See [TMEP §1202.17\(c\)\(ii\)](#).

If a universal symbol fails to function as a source indicator because it is informational or conveys an informational message, and it appears in a non-unitary manner with other registrable matter that is arbitrary, fanciful, suggestive, or otherwise source-indicating, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the universal symbol. See Trademark Act Section 6(a), [15 U.S.C. §1056\(a\)](#); TMEP §§ [1213](#), [1213.01\(b\)](#), [1213.02](#), [1213.03\(a\)](#). The examining attorney should not suggest that the applicant claim acquired distinctiveness in part as to the symbol. See [TMEP §1202.17\(c\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#).

An applicant may also delete a purely informational universal symbol that appears along with other registrable matter, provided the symbol is separable from the other matter and the deletion does not materially alter the commercial impression of the mark. See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#).

1202.17(d) Other Relevant Refusals

The examining attorney should also consider the following potential grounds for refusal when reviewing a mark featuring a universal symbol. In addition to those discussed below, the examining attorney should determine whether there is a sufficient basis for any other relevant refusals (e.g., a §2(d) refusal).

1202.17(d)(i) Merely Descriptive

Often, when the examining attorney has determined that a universal symbol fails to function because it only provides information about the goods or services, the available evidence will also support a refusal (or a disclaimer requirement) under Trademark Act §2(e)(1), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), based on mere descriptiveness.

If a mark consists of a merely descriptive universal symbol and other descriptive, generic, or otherwise non-source-indicating matter, then the mark is merely descriptive in its entirety and the examining attorney must issue a refusal under §2(e)(1). If a mark consists of a merely descriptive universal symbol, along with other arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive matter, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the universal symbol unless the composite mark creates a unitary commercial impression. See Trademark Act §6(a), [15 U.S.C. §1056\(a\)](#); TMEP §§ [1213](#), [1213.01\(b\)](#), [1213.02](#), [1213.03\(a\)](#).

When both a §2(e)(1) and a failure-to-function refusal are issued, the examining attorney should not suggest that the applicant claim acquired distinctiveness or amend to the Supplemental Register. For more information, see [TMEP §1202.17\(c\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#).

1202.17(d)(ii) Deceptive or Deceptively Misdescriptive

The inclusion of a universal symbol in a mark may lead consumers to believe the goods or services have a particular characteristic or quality. For instance, evidence may show that a mark featuring the recycling symbol would lead to a perception that the goods to which the mark is applied are recyclable or are made of recycled materials.

If the relevant goods or services do not have the relevant characteristic or quality, then the mark may be deceptive under Trademark Act Section 2(a) or deceptively misdescriptive under Section 2(e)(1). In those instances, the examining attorney should follow the same procedures as would apply to any deceptive or deceptively misdescriptive mark. For more information, see TMEP §§ [1203.02–1203.02\(g\)](#) and [1209.04](#).

1202.17(e) Universal Symbols Commonly Appearing in Marks

The universal symbols discussed below frequently appear in applied-for marks. Some of these symbols are so widely used and well known that they will have only non-trademark significance when used with almost any good or service in any context or field. Others will fail to function as source indicators only when used with particular goods or services. Nonetheless, all of these symbols could function as source indicators if they are displayed in the mark in a way that creates a distinct commercial impression or forms a source-indicating unitary whole. *See* [TMEP §1202.17\(b\)\(ii\)](#). Like any design element, all of these symbols may be used in an ornamental manner on goods and, if so, should be refused accordingly. Finally, depending on the particular facts and available evidence, other grounds for refusal may apply to marks containing these symbols (e.g., Section 2(e)(1), Section 2(d), Section 2(a)).

1202.17(e)(i) Awareness Ribbon Symbols



The awareness ribbon symbol is a representation of a ribbon intended to signify and promote awareness of a particular cause. The specific cause represented depends on the color or color scheme displayed. *See, e.g.*, *Support Store, Cause Awareness By Color*, <http://www.bumperstickermagnet.com/cause-awareness-by-color.html> (accessed Aug. 24, 2012). For example, the pink awareness ribbon is commonly associated with awareness of breast cancer and related causes. *See id.* Yellow ribbons are frequently used to indicate support of the armed forces. *See id.* And red ribbons are typically associated with awareness of HIV/AIDS or heart disease. *See id.*

Due to the widespread use of the awareness ribbon in various colors to indicate support for, or raise awareness of, a cause, the awareness ribbon shape by itself will not function as a source indicator. However, the examining attorney must evaluate an awareness ribbon symbol in a mark as a whole, including the color,

color scheme, pattern, or other matter inside of the ribbon, to determine whether it functions as a source indicator.

Some awareness ribbons have become so widely used and well known that they are unlikely to function as a mark when used in connection with almost any goods or services. These include ribbons in pink, yellow, red, and possibly others. The pink awareness ribbon, for example, has become the universal symbol of breast cancer awareness. This symbol appears in connection with the charity activities of numerous organizations and is used on a wide variety of products, including clothing, jewelry, sports equipment, and household items. Often, when it is used, it has informational or ornamental characteristics, or both. Thus, it is more likely that consumers, upon encountering the pink ribbon symbol on a product, would view it as informational or decorative regardless of the particular context or use. For instance, evidence may support the conclusion that, when a pink ribbon is displayed on the packaging for a household appliance, the ribbon would likely be viewed as indicating that the product has some connection to a breast cancer-related cause (e.g., some portion of the proceeds from the sale of the appliance would go towards breast cancer research). Or evidence may establish that the pink ribbon symbol displayed on a shirt would be viewed as conveying the message that the wearer is a supporter of breast cancer survivors or breast cancer causes in general. Even when an awareness ribbon symbol features a particular color, color scheme, or pattern that is not commonly used or widely recognized, the examining attorney should evaluate whether the symbol is inherently distinctive.

The actions an examining attorney will take when examining a mark featuring an awareness ribbon symbol depend on which of the following categories the awareness ribbon symbol falls under:

Category 1: The awareness ribbon symbol is not displayed in the mark in a way that creates a distinct commercial impression or forms a source-indicating unitary whole. The color, color scheme, pattern, or other matter inside the awareness ribbon shape is not inherently distinctive and the evidence shows that the symbol's use by various parties in that color, color scheme, or pattern is so widespread, and its meaning so widely understood, that it will likely be perceived as only providing information or conveying an informational message when used in connection with the goods or services.

This type of awareness ribbon symbol fails to function as a mark and the examining attorney must refuse registration if the symbol forms the entire mark or appears with only other non-source-indicating matter, or disclaim the symbol if it appears with registrable matter.

Awareness ribbon symbols in this category are incapable of functioning as a mark. Thus, if the mark consists entirely of this type of symbol, claiming acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) or amending the application to seek registration on the Supplemental Register will not overcome the refusal. Likewise, a claim of acquired distinctiveness in part will not obviate a disclaimer requirement.

Awareness ribbon symbols that do not contain inherently distinctive matter inside the ribbon, and are displayed in black and white, or gray scale, because they appear in non-color mark drawings, are incapable of functioning as a mark and would be subject to the same procedures set forth above.

Examples:



Pink ribbon



Yellow Ribbon



Black-and-White or Gray Scale Ribbon

Category 2: The awareness ribbon symbol is not displayed in the mark in a way that creates a distinct commercial impression or forms a source-indicating unitary whole. The color, color scheme, pattern, or other matter inside the awareness ribbon shape is not inherently distinctive, but there is no evidence that the awareness ribbon symbol shown in the mark is widely used by various parties or that its meaning is widely understood.

In these cases, the symbol is not inherently distinctive and fails to function as a mark because, given the widespread use of awareness ribbons in various colors and patterns generally, the symbol will not be perceived as a source indicator. Thus, the examining attorney must refuse registration if the symbol forms the entire mark (or appears with other non-source-indicating matter), or require a disclaimer of the symbol if the symbol appears with registrable matter. However, the applicant may overcome the refusal by showing acquired distinctiveness based on *actual evidence* establishing recognition of the proposed mark as a source indicator, or by amending the application to seek registration on the Supplemental Register. For awareness

ribbon symbols in this category, evidence of five years' use usually will not be sufficient to show that the mark has acquired distinctiveness. See [TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#) for information on establishing acquired distinctiveness by actual evidence. A disclaimer requirement may be obviated by claiming acquired distinctiveness in part as to the symbol based on actual evidence.

Examples:



for "promoting public awareness of domestic violence, sexual assault and child abuse"



for "surgery; and medical services, namely, treatment of breast disease"

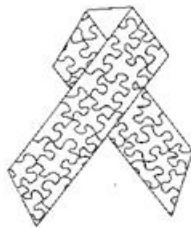
Category 3: The matter inside the awareness ribbon shape in the mark is inherently distinctive or otherwise registrable (e.g., non-descriptive/non-informational wording, registrable design elements) and there is no evidence that the awareness ribbon shown in the mark is widely used by various parties or that its meaning is widely understood.

No refusal (or disclaimer) is necessary, as long as the awareness ribbon is not used ornamentally on the specimen, because the ribbon shape and the matter within it create a registrable unitary whole.

Examples:



for “charitable fund raising, namely, raising funds for breast cancer research and treatment”



for “educational services, namely, conducting conferences, workshops, seminars, classes, and meetings in the field of autism and advocacy on behalf of autistic children and adults”

1202.17(e)(ii) Recycling Symbol



The recycling symbol typically appears on materials to indicate that they are recyclable or made from recycled matter. *See, e.g.*, About.com, *Recycling Symbols Made Easy*, http://greenliving.about.com/od/recyclingwaste/tp/recycling_symbols.htm (accessed Aug. 24, 2012). However, the symbol is also used in connection with a wide assortment of goods and services in a variety of fields to indicate that the goods or services involve recycling or are otherwise environmentally friendly. *See id.*

Because of the widespread use of the symbol and the resulting general recognition of the symbol’s significance, the symbol is not likely to function as a source indicator. Instead, the evidence will show consumers are likely to view it as merely providing information about the goods or services, in which case

a failure-to-function refusal is appropriate. Even when the symbol is displayed on clothing and fashion accessories in a manner that would normally be considered trademark use, evidence will likely show the mark will be perceived as conveying an informational message (e.g., that the wearer supports recycling or environmental awareness). See *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d 1227, 1230 (TTAB 2010) (holding that consumers would not view the “old and familiar” slogan ONCE A MARINE, ALWAYS A MARINE as a trademark indicating the source of the applicant’s clothing because they would be accustomed to seeing it displayed on clothing from many different sources, and noting that “[i]t is clear that clothing imprinted with this slogan would be purchased by consumers for the message it conveys”). The symbol will usually also have descriptive significance as applied to the relevant goods or services.

1202.17(e)(iii) Caduceus, Rod of Asclepius, and Prescription Symbol



R_x

The caduceus and the Rod of Asclepius are commonly used to indicate that goods or services are medical in nature or otherwise relate to the medical profession. See *Webster’s New World College Dictionary* 195 (3rd ed. 1997) (defining “caduceus” as “the staff of an ancient herald; esp., the winged staff with two serpents coiled about it . . . an emblematic staff like this with either one or two serpents, used as a symbol of the medical profession”); THEFREEDICTIONARY.COM, search of “Rod of Asclepius,” <http://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/Rod+of+Asclepius> (Aug. 24, 2012) (citing *Segen’s Medical Dictionary*) (defining “Rod of Asclepius” as “[t]he ‘correct’ symbol of medicine, which is a knarled [sic] wooden staff with a single encircling snake”). The prescription symbol is frequently used in connection

with prescription drugs or medicated goods, or with services relating to these items. *See Webster's New World College Dictionary* 1178 (3rd ed. 1997) (defining “Rx” as “symbol for PRESCRIPTION”). For any marks containing these symbols, the examining attorney should review the specimen, the relevant evidence, and the goods/services to determine if the mark functions as a source indicator or instead is merely informational. In those instances that the mark fails to function, there is likely also a valid basis for finding the symbol descriptive.

1202.17(e)(iv) Religious Symbols



Religious symbols, such as the Latin cross and the Star of David, may be informational or have descriptive significance when used on a variety of goods and services. For example, evidence may support the conclusion that, as used in connection with media such as books or videos, the Star of David is likely to be perceived as providing information about or describing the media's content. Or evidence may show that a Latin cross used in an advertisement for services is likely to be viewed as conveying an informational message (i.e., indicating an affiliation with Christianity). Note that a mark containing a Greek cross (i.e., an upright equilateral cross) may be subject to other refusals. *See* [TMEP §1205.01](#).

1202.17(e)(v) Currency Symbols



When used with financial services, such as currency exchange or banking, evidence will show currency symbols, such as the dollar sign or the euro symbol, will likely be informational and merely descriptive.

However, when used in connection with other types of goods or services, the evidence may show these symbols to be arbitrary or suggestive and otherwise function as a mark.

1202.17(e)(vi) Universal Prohibition Symbol



The universal prohibition symbol, which usually appears superimposed over another image or wording, is a visual representation of “no,” “not,” or “prohibited.” *See, e.g.*, Free Signage.com, *Prohibition Signs*, http://www.freesignage.com/prohibited_signs.php (accessed Aug. 24, 2012). When the prohibition symbol is superimposed over other matter, the design as a whole is unitary; thus, no disclaimer of the prohibition symbol apart from the other matter is necessary. However, the examining attorney must consider whether evidence supports the conclusion that the design as a whole (i.e., the symbol and the image it is superimposed over) fails to function as a mark or is merely descriptive (or both) and thus must be refused or disclaimed.

1202.18 Hashtag Marks

A “hashtag” is a form of metadata consisting of a word or phrase prefixed with the symbol “#” (e.g., #chicago, #sewing, and #supremecourtdecisions). Hashtags are often used on social-networking sites to identify or facilitate a search for a keyword or topic of interest. *See* Dictionary.com, search of “hashtag,” <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/hashtag> (June 19, 2013) (citing *Random House Dictionary*).

A mark consisting of or containing the hash symbol (#) or the term HASHTAG is registrable as a trademark or service mark only if it functions as an identifier of the source of the applicant’s goods or services. *See* [TMEP §1202](#) regarding the determination of whether a mark functions as a mark.

When examining a proposed mark containing the hash symbol, careful consideration should be given to the overall context of the mark, the placement of the hash symbol in the mark, the identified goods and services, and the specimen of use, if available. If the hash symbol immediately precedes numbers in a mark (#29 JONES, THE #1 APP, # TWELVE, etc.), or is used merely as the pound or number symbol in a mark (e.g., ICHIBAN#), such marks should not necessarily be construed as hashtag marks. This determination should be made on a case-by-case basis.

Generally, the hash symbol and the wording HASHTAG do not provide any source-indicating function because they merely facilitate categorization and searching within online social media (i.e., social-media participants are directed to search a particular subject by typing, e.g., “hashtag ABC,” where ABC is the subject). *Cf. In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 1301, 1304, 91 USPQ2d 1532, 1533, 1535 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (finding that the addition of a generic top-level-domain to an otherwise unregistrable mark does not typically add any source-identifying significance); *Interactive Prods. Corp. v. a2z Mobile Office Solutions, Inc.*, 326 F.3d 687, 691, 66 USPQ2d 1321, 1327-28 (6th Cir. 2003) (finding that the post-domain path of a URL does not typically signify source).

Therefore, the addition of the term HASHTAG or the hash symbol (#) to an otherwise unregistrable mark typically will not render it registrable. *Cf. TMEP §807.14(c)* (“Punctuation, such as quotation marks, hyphens, periods, commas, and exclamation marks, generally does not significantly alter the commercial

impression of the mark.”); [TMEP §1209.03\(m\)](#) (addition of generic top-level domain name to otherwise unregistrable matter typically cannot render it registrable). Accordingly, if a mark consists of the hash symbol or the term HASHTAG combined with wording that is merely descriptive or generic for the goods or services, the entire mark must be refused as merely descriptive or generic.

Example:

#SKATER for skateboarding equipment is merely descriptive

1202.18(a) Disclaiming HASHTAG or Hash Symbol

A mark may be registrable with a disclaimer of the wording HASHTAG or the hash symbol in cases where they are separable from other registrable matter. Therefore, if a mark consists of the hash symbol or the term HASHTAG combined with wording that is distinctive for the goods or services, the hash symbol or the term HASHTAG should be disclaimed.

Examples:

#INGENUITY for business consultation services is registrable with a disclaimer of the hash symbol
TMARKEY #SKATER for skateboarding equipment is registrable with a disclaimer of “# SKATER”

Cf. [TMEP §1215.07](#) for further information and analogous examples.

When a mark containing the hash symbol or the term HASHTAG is unitary with other arbitrary or suggestive wording in the mark, (e.g., #SLUGGERTIME for clothing, #DADCHAT for counseling services, and HASHTAGWALKING for entertainment services), no descriptive or generic refusal or disclaimer is required. However, such marks must still be evaluated to confirm that they function as source indicators for the goods or services. If the specimen shows the hash symbol or the term HASHTAG in a proposed mark as merely a tag used to reference or organize keywords or topics of information to facilitate searching a topic, the relevant public will not view the hash symbol or the term HASHTAG in the mark as identifying the source of the goods or services. In such cases, registration must be refused under Trademark Act Sections 1, 2, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1127](#), for trademarks, and Trademark Act Sections 1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051-1053, 1127](#), for service marks. Cf. *In re Roberts*, 87 USPQ2d 1474 (TTAB 2008); *In re Eilberg*, 49 USPQ2d 1955 (TTAB 1998) ; [TMEP §1215.02\(a\)](#).

For example, if the proposed mark #SEWFUN for instruction in the field of sewing appears on a specimen comprising a screenshot of a social networking site used merely to organize users’ comments about sewing classes applicant offers, the mark must be refused registration for failure to function as a service mark.

1202.18(b) Marks Consisting Solely of HASHTAG or Hash Symbol

Sometimes, marks that consist solely of variants of the term HASHTAG or the hash symbol may function as a mark, such as when the mark will be used in connection with goods or services that do not relate to social networking. In these cases, the symbol and term HASHTAG may not create the commercial impression of being a metadata tag since they do not immediately precede other wording, and may be considered suggestive or arbitrary, depending on the associated goods and services (e.g., HASHTAG for use in connection with liquor or THE HASHTAG for providing office facilities).

1202.19 Repeating-Pattern Marks

A repeating-pattern mark is a mark composed of a single repeated element or a repeated combination of designs, numbers, letters, or other characters, forming a pattern that is displayed on the surface of goods, on product packaging, or on materials associated with the advertising or provision of services. The pattern may appear over the entire surface or on just a portion of the relevant item.

Repeating-pattern marks are often applied to clothing and fashion accessories, but they also appear on other goods, including furniture, bedding, dinnerware, luggage, paper products, and cleaning implements. In addition, these marks frequently appear on packaging for a variety of goods and have been registered for use in connection with services such as retail stores and travel agencies. For examples of repeating-pattern marks, see [TMEP §1202.19\(k\)](#).

In a repeating-pattern mark, the repetition of the mark's elements is a feature of the mark, which must be appropriately specified in the application. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(a\)](#), [\(b\)](#). The fact that the specimen shows the mark depicted in the drawing being used in a repetitive fashion on the relevant items is not, by itself, a sufficient basis for treating the mark as a repeating-pattern mark. That is, despite what is shown in the specimen, the applicant might not be seeking a registration in which repetition is a feature of the mark. Accordingly, there also must be some indication in the mark description or on the drawing to indicate that the mark consists of a repeating pattern.

If the nature of the mark is ambiguous, the examining attorney must seek clarification from the applicant through a Trademark Rule 2.61(b) requirement for information, or by telephone or e-mail communication, as appropriate. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §814](#). Any clarification obtained through informal communication should be recorded in a Note to the File or in a subsequent Office action or examiner's amendment. See [TMEP §709.05](#).

A repeating pattern that is unique when used in connection with the relevant goods or services may be inherently distinctive. See [TMEP §1202.19\(e\)\(i\)\(A\)](#). However, because of the ornamental and typically nondistinctive nature of repeating patterns, consumers often do not perceive these patterns as source indicators, in which case they may not be registered on the Principal Register without proof of acquired distinctiveness. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(e\)–\(e\)\(iii\)](#).

1202.19(a) Drawing Requirements for Repeating-Pattern Marks

The drawing for a repeating-pattern mark must be a substantially exact representation of the mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.51](#); [TMEP §§807.12–807.12\(d\)](#). The impression created by a repeating pattern may change depending on a number of factors, including the nature of the pattern and the item it appears on, the particular placement of the pattern on the item, and the size and scale of the elements in the pattern as applied. Thus, in most cases, to accurately depict the mark, a drawing showing the particular manner of display and placement of the repeating pattern is necessary. A swatch-type drawing—one that does not show the particular placement of the mark but instead consists of a sample of the repeating pattern displayed within a square, rectangle, or other geometric shape—is acceptable only under certain circumstances. See [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#) for additional information on swatch-type drawings.

1202.19(a)(i) Mark Used on a Single Item

The drawing for a repeating-pattern mark applied in a particular manner to a single item must depict the pattern as it appears on the item. Thus, if the pattern appears only on a portion of the item, the drawing must

show the pattern's placement on that portion. If the pattern appears over the entire surface of the item, the drawing must depict the pattern accordingly. The shape of the item must appear in broken lines to indicate that it is not claimed as part of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §807.08](#). If the drawing shows the item in solid lines, the USPTO will interpret the drawing as indicating that the proposed mark is a composite mark consisting of both the repeating pattern and the shape of the item to which it is applied. *Cf.* [TMEP §1202.05\(d\)\(i\)](#).

If it is unclear what portions of the drawing are claimed as part of the mark, the examining attorney must seek clarification from the applicant through a Trademark Rule 2.61(b) requirement for information, or by telephone or e-mail communication, as appropriate. *See* [37 C.F.R. 2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §§709.05, 814](#). Based on that clarification, the examining attorney must also require the appropriate amendments to the drawing and mark description.

See [TMEP §§1202.19\(f\)–\(f\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the relevant examination procedures when an application identifies goods that are inconsistent with the depiction of the mark in the drawing.

1202.19(a)(ii) Mark Used in a Similar Manner on Similar Items

If the repeating pattern will be applied to multiple goods, a drawing showing the pattern's placement on one of the goods is appropriate if all of the identified goods are similar in form and function, and the mark will appear in a similar manner on all of the goods. Under these circumstances, a depiction of one of the goods may be considered a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on all of the goods. For example, if a repeating pattern is used in a similar manner on similarly shaped purses of various sizes, a drawing showing the repeating pattern on one version of the purses (shown in broken lines) would be acceptable. Another example is a repeating-pattern mark that is applied in the same manner to the handles of forks, spoons, and knives. In that case, a drawing that depicts the mark on one of the items (shown in broken lines) would be acceptable.

Likewise, if the repeating-pattern mark will appear in a similar manner on various sizes of similarly shaped product packaging, then a drawing showing the mark appearing on one version of the packaging depicted in broken lines is acceptable.

1202.19(a)(iii) Mark Used in Various Ways or on Various Items Swatch-Type Drawings

Sometimes an applicant uses, or intends to use, a repeating-pattern mark in various ways on the same or similar items, or in similar or different ways on a variety of items. In those circumstances, a drawing depicting the mark appearing on a particular item will not accurately depict the mark and the nature of its use.

Previously, to address this issue, applicants have submitted swatch-type drawings, which do not show a particular placement of the mark, but instead consist of a sample of the repeating pattern within a square, rectangle, or other geometric shape. These swatch-type drawings usually will not adequately depict the nature of the mark for which registration is sought, because the impression created by a repeating pattern may change depending on the nature of the pattern, the type of item on which the pattern appears, the particular placement of the pattern on that item, and the size and scale of the elements in the pattern as applied. Accordingly, these swatch-type drawings could encompass multiple versions of the mark, each of which may convey a different commercial impression. Therefore, such swatch-type drawings are usually not appropriate for repeating-pattern marks, and examining attorneys generally should not accept them.

However, a swatch-type drawing is acceptable if the applicant shows with sufficient evidence that (1) the applied-for mark is actually used, or will be used, in various ways or on a variety of different items, but (2) it will nonetheless be perceived as a source indicator and create the same commercial impression across all uses.

The evidence of variable use need not show every use of the repeated pattern on the relevant items, but it should provide a reasonable basis for concluding that the use of the mark in connection with the identified goods or services is so varied that a single depiction of the mark on a particular item would not accurately reflect the nature of the mark. For applications not based on use in commerce, the evidence should indicate the applicant's intention to use the mark in various ways or on a variety of different items. This may include declarations, marketing materials, and other similar matter.

The evidence as to the commercial impression must be substantial and must establish that the pattern will be perceived as a source indicator and create the same commercial impression in the minds of consumers. Relevant evidence may include consumer declarations; advertisements or other materials showing various instances of the pattern being used together in one place (e.g., a single advertisement that shows the pattern being used in various ways on various goods, but nonetheless projecting the same commercial impression); sales figures relevant to the various items featuring the pattern; and any other evidence of the applicant's efforts to promote the various uses of the repeating pattern as a single source indicator for the relevant goods or services, including "look-for"-type evidence. Although the evidence listed above is similar to evidence that would be submitted in support of an acquired-distinctiveness claim, here the examining attorney's determination is focused not on whether the mark has acquired distinctiveness but on whether the use or intended use of the mark, and the likely consumer perception of it, satisfy the specified conditions for acceptance of a swatch-type drawing.

Even if these conditions are satisfied, an examining attorney must also consider the applied-for mark's distinctiveness. For example, to support a swatch-type drawing for such varied goods as "business card cases; coin purses; cosmetic cases sold empty; dog collars; cog leashes; handbags; luggage tags; overnight bags; pet clothing; umbrellas; wallets; and wristlet bags" the applicant might submit some or all the following: a statement that the mark had been used for more than 10 years on hangtags, packaging, promotional materials, and across various product categories; evidence showing that it is a common practice in the industry for fashion brands to develop signature patterns; examples of pattern designs in the industry that have become well-recognized as source indicators; news articles and website excerpts touting the mark in connection with the applicant; examples of the mark in use on packaging, shopping bags, hangtags, and promotional materials; examples of various products featuring the mark; a declaration indicating substantial sales of products, packaging, or hangtags featuring the mark, as well as significant marketing expenditures relating to promotion of products featuring the repeating pattern. While this kind of evidence might be submitted to support a claim of acquired distinctiveness, it is also the kind of evidence that may support the submission of a swatch-type drawing, because it shows that the repeating-pattern mark is used in various ways on a variety of items and that the repeating pattern would be perceived as a source indicator and create in the minds of consumers the same commercial impression across that pattern's various uses.

If the applicant has submitted a swatch-type drawing but the evidence of record does not establish that a swatch-type drawing is appropriate, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the application seeks registration of more than one mark. See [TMEP §§ 1202.19\(g\)-\(g\)\(ii\)](#).

1202.19(a)(iv) Drawings for Service Marks

Repeating-pattern marks are used as service marks in a variety of ways. For instance, a repeating-pattern mark could be displayed on a retail store's façade, on a customer loyalty card, on advertising materials, or on shopping bags.

If a repeating pattern appears on elements in a service setting in a manner that makes a single commercial impression, such as a pattern that is displayed on the various architectural features or other fixtures of a retail outlet, a drawing of the setting should be submitted, along with a detailed description of the mark that specifies the location and manner of use of the repeating pattern. *Cf.* [TMEP §1202.05\(d\)\(ii\)](#) (“If color is used in a variety of ways, but in a setting that makes a single commercial impression, such as a retail outlet with various color features, a broken-line drawing of the setting must be submitted, with a detailed description of the mark claiming the color(s) and describing the location of the color(s).”)

The drawing must depict in broken lines those elements of the environment that display the repeating pattern but are not claimed as a feature of the mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §807.08](#).

Otherwise, if the mark is used on a particular item, or is used in a similar manner on multiple items that are similar in form and function, and can thus be adequately represented by a depiction of a single item, a drawing consisting of the mark appearing on a single item is appropriate. *See* [TMEP §§1202.19\(a\)\(i\)–\(ii\)](#).

The conditions for accepting a swatch-type drawing for repeating-pattern marks used in connection with services are the same as those explained in [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#).

1202.19(b) Mark Descriptions for Repeating-Pattern Marks

The mark description must accurately describe the mark. *See* [TMEP §808.02](#). Thus, the description for a repeating-pattern mark must indicate that the mark consists of a pattern. Although the description must identify the various elements of the pattern, it is not necessary to describe their exact placement within the pattern; it is sufficient for the description to generally characterize the elements and indicate that they are repeated. *See id.*

In addition, the description must specify how the pattern will appear on the relevant items. Thus, if the pattern is applied only to a portion of the relevant goods, packaging, or other items, the description must specify that portion. If the pattern is repeated over the entire surface of the relevant items, the description must so indicate. And, if the pattern is displayed in various ways on the relevant items (*see* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#)), then the mark description must include wording to that effect. For example, in the latter instance, the following description would be acceptable: “The mark consists of a repeating pattern of stars and circles used on various portions of the product packaging for the identified goods.”

The mark description must also describe any portions of the mark that are shown in broken lines and thus are not claimed as a feature of the mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §807.08](#). For repeating patterns featuring color, the application must include an appropriate color claim and the description must indicate where the claimed colors appear. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#).

The mark description for a repeating-pattern mark must always be printed on the registration certificate. *See* [TMEP §808.03](#).

1202.19(c) Material Alteration of Repeating-Pattern Marks

1202.19(c)(i) Amending the Drawing to Depict a Different Object

Generally, when the original drawing depicts the repeating pattern appearing on a particular object, amending the drawing to show the pattern appearing on a significantly different object will be considered a material alteration. Thus, if the original drawing shows the repeating pattern appearing on the outer surface of a purse, for example, it may not be amended to show the mark appearing on the handle of a walking cane.

However, if the mark will appear in a similar manner on similar items, so that a depiction of only one of the items is a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on all of the items, the applicant may amend the drawing from a depiction of one of the items to a depiction of another of the items, assuming the shape of the items is not claimed as a feature of the mark and the specimen of use or foreign registration certificate supports the amendment. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); [TMEP §807.13](#). For instance, it would not be a material alteration to amend a drawing that shows the pattern appearing on the handle of a spoon shown in broken lines to show the pattern on the handle of a fork shown in broken lines. However, any item depicted in the drawing must be consistent with the identification of goods or services. *See* [TMEP §1202.19\(f\)](#).

1202.19(c)(ii) Amending a Swatch-Type Drawing to Show an Object and Vice Versa

When the original drawing is a swatch-type drawing showing the elements of the pattern within a square, rectangle, or other generic geometric shape (*see* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#)), the drawing may be amended to show the pattern appearing on a particular item, if necessary and otherwise appropriate. *See* [TMEP §807.13](#). However, amending from a drawing showing the pattern on a particular object to a swatch-type drawing usually will be a material alteration, especially when the elements comprising the pattern are nondistinctive.

1202.19(c)(iii) Amending the Drawing to Depict a Different Placement of the Repeating Pattern

When the original drawing shows the repeating pattern displayed in a particular manner on an object, amending the drawing to show the pattern being displayed in a significantly different manner on the same object may be a material alteration. For instance, a drawing that shows the repeating pattern on the outer bill of a cap may not be amended to show the pattern on the inner lining of the cap. However, a minor change to the placement of a repeating pattern on an object should not be considered a material alteration.

1202.19(c)(iv) Amending Descriptions of Repeating-Pattern Marks

An applicant may not amend a mark description if the amendment would describe a materially different mark than what was depicted in the original drawing. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); *In re Thrifty Inc.* 274 F.3d 1349, 1353, 61 USPQ2d 1121, 1124 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (finding applicant's proposed amendment to the mark description was a material alteration of the drawing because the "multiple impressions created by the wide variety of objects sought to be covered under the proposed description differ significantly from the original mark of a color placed on a building").

For applications in which the original drawing is a swatch-type drawing (*see* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#)) and the original mark description indicates that the pattern is used a variety of ways, an applicant may amend the mark description to indicate that the pattern appears in a particular manner on a particular item, in accordance with a corresponding drawing amendment. These amendments are not considered material

alterations. In these instances, the applicant may also be required to amend the identification of goods or services to delete any items that are inconsistent with the drawing. See [TMEP §1202.19\(f\)](#).

1202.19(c)(v) Amendments in Applications Based on Section 44 or Section 66(a)

For applications based on Section 44 or Section 66(a), any amendments must conform to the rules and procedures governing these types of applications. *See, e.g.*, [TMEP §§1011.01](#) (“substantially exact representation standard” for drawings in §44-based applications), [1011.03](#) (amendment of drawings in §44-based applications), [1904.02\(j\)](#) (amendment of marks in §66(a)-based applications), [1904.02\(k\)](#) (drawings and descriptions in §66(a)-based applications).

1202.19(d) Specimens for Repeating-Pattern Marks

As with other types of marks, the specimen of use for a repeating-pattern mark must show use of the mark as depicted in the drawing and described in the mark description. See TMEP §§ [904](#), [904.07\(a\)](#), [1301.04\(g\)\(i\)](#).

When a repeating pattern is applied to a single item, and the drawing thus depicts the repeating pattern on that item (*see* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(i\)](#)), the specimen should show the pattern displayed on the same item or a substantially similar item. In addition, the placement of the pattern on the object in the specimen should be consistent with the placement as depicted in the drawing and specified in the description.

When a repeating pattern is applied in the same manner to similar items and thus a drawing depicting one of the items is appropriate (*see* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(ii\)](#)), the specimen of use need not show the item depicted in the drawing, assuming the shape of the item in the drawing is not claimed as a feature of the mark. However, the object shown in the specimen must be sufficiently similar to the item in the drawing, such that the drawing is a substantially exact representation of the mark as actually used. *See* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(ii\)](#). In addition, if the mark is applied to goods, the good shown in the specimen must be encompassed by the identification of goods. Thus, if the identified goods are spoons, forks, and knives, and the drawing shows the repeating pattern appearing on the handle of a spoon shown in broken lines, a specimen showing the same pattern in the same manner on the handle of a fork would be acceptable. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(f\)–\(f\)\(ii\)](#) for a discussion of the relevant examination procedures when the identified goods or services are inconsistent with the drawing.

When the drawing is a swatch-type drawing, and the examining attorney has determined that the drawing is appropriate (*see* [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#)), a specimen showing the pattern appearing on a particular object should be considered to match the drawing if the overall commercial impression created by the pattern is the same.

The fact that the specimen shows the mark depicted in the drawing being used in a repetitive fashion on the relevant items is not, by itself, a sufficient basis for treating the applied-for mark as a repeating-pattern mark. There must be some indication in the mark description or drawing to indicate that the mark consists of a repeating pattern.

If necessary, examining attorneys may require additional specimens to determine whether the applied-for mark functions as a trademark or service mark for all of the identified goods or services. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §904.01\(a\)](#). For example, additional specimens may be necessary when the identified goods include items that are significantly different from the goods shown in the originally submitted specimen, such that it is not clear how the mark is used on all of the goods.

1202.19(e) Failure-to-Function Refusal – Mark Not Inherently Distinctive

The USPTO will not register an applied-for mark unless it functions as a mark. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#); *In re Bose Corp.*, 192 USPQ 213, 215 (C.C.P.A. 1976) (“Before there can be registration, there must be a trademark”); *In re Int’l Spike, Inc.*, 196 USPQ 447, 449 (TTAB 1977) (“Registration presupposes the existence of a trademark to be registered.”); [TMEP §1202](#). That is, the mark must serve as an indicator of the source of the goods or services, identifying and distinguishing them from those of others. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); [TMEP §1202](#).

The examining attorney must determine whether a repeating-pattern mark functions as a trademark or service mark by reviewing the available evidence, including the specimen and any other materials of record. See *In re Safariland Hunting Corp.*, 24 USPQ2d 1380, 1381 (TTAB 1992) (“Since the specimens of record show how the applied-for mark is actually used in commerce, we must primarily look to the specimens to see if the designation would be perceived as a source indicator. However, we may also consider other evidence bearing on the question of what impact applicant’s use is likely to have on purchasers and potential purchasers.”).

Not every designation that a party places on goods or packaging, or uses in connection with services, is an inherently distinctive source indicator, regardless of the party’s intentions when adopting the designation. *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d 1227, 1229 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Vertex Grp., LLC*, 89 USPQ2d 1694, 1701 (TTAB 2009) (“As is the case with any trademark, mere intent that a word, name, symbol or device function as a trademark or service mark is not enough in and of itself.”). Some designations are not capable of serving as a source indicator. See *In re Eagle Crest, Inc.*, 96 USPQ2d at 1229; *Am. Velcro, Inc. v. Charles Mayer Studios, Inc.*, 177 USPQ 149, 154 (TTAB 1973) .

1202.19(e)(i) Inherent Distinctiveness Determination

Because repeating patterns frequently serve an ornamental function in various contexts, they are often not inherently distinctive when applied to goods, packaging, or materials associated with services. Instead, consumers may perceive these patterns as nothing more than ornamentation or background matter serving no source-indicating function. Thus, determining whether a repeating-pattern mark is inherently distinctive and functions as a source indicator involves considering the impression created when the mark is used in connection with the identified goods or services. See *In re Aerospace Optics, Inc.*, 78 USPQ2d 1861, 1862 (TTAB 2006) (“A critical element in determining whether matter sought to be registered is a trademark is the impression the matter makes on the relevant public. Thus . . . the critical inquiry is whether the asserted mark would be perceived as a source indicator. . . . To be a mark, the term must be used in a manner calculated to project to purchasers or potential purchasers a single source or origin for the goods. . . . We determine whether this has been achieved by examining the specimens of use along with any other relevant material submitted by applicant during prosecution of the application.”).

Relevant considerations when determining inherent distinctiveness include those discussed below.

1202.19(e)(i)(A) Common or Widely Used Pattern

Evidence showing that the repeating pattern in the applied-for mark is similar to, or a mere refinement or variation of, a common pattern or a pattern that is widely used on the relevant items, may support the conclusion that the applied-for mark is not inherently distinctive. See *Seabrook Foods, Inc. v. Bar-Well Foods, Ltd.*, 568 F.2d 1342, 1344, 196 USPQ 289, 291 (C.C.P.A. 1977) .

On the other hand, if the nature of the repeating pattern is unique or unusual as applied to the relevant items, a finding of inherent distinctiveness may be appropriate. *See Seabrook Foods, Inc.*, 568 F.2d at 1344, 196 USPQ at 291.

However, the mere fact that the applicant is the only user of the particular repeating pattern is not dispositive as to the inherent distinctiveness of a mark featuring that pattern. *See In re E S Robbins Corp.*, 30 USPQ2d 1540, 1543 (TTAB 1992) (“If the concept of inherent distinctiveness was defined as meaning simply ‘one and only,’ then one could obtain a registration for a design which, while ‘unique’ in this sense, differed only slightly from the designs of other competing products and/or containers.”). The examining attorney must weigh this factor together with any other relevant factors.

1202.19(e)(i)(B) Pattern Creates a Distinct Commercial Impression Apart from Other Matter

The examining attorney should consider whether the pattern creates a commercial impression distinct from any wording or other matter that may also appear on the relevant items. *See Seabrook Foods, Inc. v. Bar-Well Foods, Ltd.*, 568 F.2d 1342, 1344, 196 USPQ 289, 291 (C.C.P.A. 1977). If so, this weighs in favor of finding the pattern inherently distinctive.

1202.19(e)(i)(C) Nature of Elements in the Repeating Pattern

If a repeating-pattern mark contains an element, such as arbitrary wording, which would be perceived as a source indicator if it were to appear by itself, then the relevant consumers may be more likely to perceive the repeating pattern as a source indicator.

1202.19(e)(i)(D) Industry Practice

Purchasers are unlikely to view a repeating-pattern mark as an indicator of source if the relevant industry practice is to use repeating patterns in an ornamental fashion with the relevant goods or services. However, if, because of common industry practice, consumers have come to view repeating patterns on the surface of the relevant goods, packaging, or other materials as an indicator of source, and the applied-for mark is more than common background matter, then a finding that the mark is inherently distinctive may be appropriate.

1202.19(e)(i)(E) Type of Product

The type of item the mark is applied to affects whether consumers perceive the repeating pattern as a mark rather than merely as ornamental or other nondistinctive matter. For example, when repeating patterns appear on items such as clothing, curtains, pillows, bedding, carpet, furniture, and stationery, the patterns are likely to be perceived as decoration because those types of goods are typically purchased or used, at least in part, for their aesthetic appeal. On the other hand, if the type of item the mark is applied to does not usually feature decorative matter, or is not usually purchased or used for its decorative features, like power tools, industrial machinery, or surgical equipment, a repeating pattern may be more likely to be perceived as a source indicator.

1202.19(e)(ii) Statutory Basis for Refusal

When the applicant has sought registration of a repeating-pattern mark on the Principal Register without claiming acquired distinctiveness, and the examining attorney determines that the mark is not inherently distinctive, registration must be refused on the ground that the mark fails to function as a source indicator, citing Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45 for trademarks, and §§1, 2, 3, and 45 for service marks. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), [1127](#). The examining attorney must explain the specific reasons for the refusal and

provide relevant supporting evidence. *See* [TMEP §1202](#). The stated reason for refusal will usually be that the applied-for mark is merely ornamental as used on or in connection with the goods or services. However, in some instances, the applied-for repeating-pattern mark may be simply nondistinctive, serving neither an ornamental nor a source-indicating purpose. In either case, the same statutory bases apply.

If registration is sought on the Supplemental Register, but the examining attorney determines that the mark is incapable of serving as a source indicator, registration must be refused on that ground under Trademark Act §§23 and 45. [15 U.S.C. §§1091, 1127](#).

1202.19(e)(iii) Response Options

If an applied-for mark is capable of serving as a source indicator, the applicant may respond to the refusal by submitting a substitute specimen showing use of the mark as a trademark or service mark, amending to the Supplemental Register, or claiming acquired distinctiveness under Trademark Act Section 2(f), if otherwise appropriate. For repeating-pattern marks that are capable of serving as source indicators but are not inherently distinctive, evidence of five years' use, by itself, is insufficient to show acquired distinctiveness.

See [TMEP §1212.05\(a\)](#). That is, actual evidence showing that consumers have come to recognize the applied-for mark as a source indicator will be required to establish acquired distinctiveness. *See id.*

Furthermore, for repeating-pattern marks used on goods, any showing of acquired distinctiveness must be made with respect to all of the identified goods for which the examining attorney has determined the mark is not inherently distinctive. For repeating-pattern marks used in connection with services, the evidence of acquired distinctiveness must establish that the mark, as used on all of the relevant items, has come to be perceived as a source indicator for the identified services.

See [TMEP §816](#) regarding amendment to the Supplemental Register and [TMEP §§1212-1212.10](#) regarding claims of acquired distinctiveness.

The applicant may also submit evidence of secondary source to establish that a repeating-pattern mark primarily serves a source-indicating function rather than merely serving as ornamentation. As discussed in [TMEP §1202.03\(c\)](#), there are a number of acceptable types of evidence for showing secondary source, such as proof of ownership of a use-based U.S. registration on the Principal Register for the same mark covering other goods or services. However, evidence of a series of ornamental uses of a repeating-pattern mark on various items will not establish that the proposed mark functions as an indicator of secondary source; use as a trademark or service mark for the other goods or services must be shown. [TMEP §1202.03\(c\)](#); *see also In re Astro-Gods Inc.*, 223 USPQ 621, 622-24 (TTAB 1984) .

1202.19(f) Failure-to-Function Refusal – Inconsistent Goods or Services

When the drawing shows the repeating pattern appearing on an item, the examining attorney must determine whether all of the identified goods or services are consistent with the item depicted, such that the mark shown accurately reflects how the mark appears on all of the identified goods and services and could actually serve as a source indicator for them.

For example, in an application that depicts the mark as a repeating pattern appearing on the bill of a baseball cap shown in broken lines, the cap is not part of the mark, but the drawing nonetheless limits the mark to the particular manner of use shown. Thus, if the application identifies the goods as baseball caps, shoes, eyeglasses, and purses, the identified baseball caps are consistent with the drawing, but the identified shoes, eyeglasses, and purses are not, because the mark obviously cannot be applied to those goods in the manner

depicted in the drawing. If, on the other hand, the drawing depicts a repeating pattern applied to the handle of a hand rake, any other similar type of implement with a handle that is listed in the identification of goods should be considered to be consistent with the drawing.

If the drawing shows the repeating-pattern mark appearing on packaging for goods, the identified goods should be considered consistent with the drawing if they could be sold in the packaging shown. For instance, if the packaging shown is a bottle, then goods that are not normally packaged in a bottle should be considered inconsistent with the nature of the mark as depicted in the drawing, assuming there is no evidence that the applicant's goods actually are packaged in that manner.

The fact that an application identifies services, but contains a drawing showing the mark applied to a particular object, does not necessarily raise an issue of inconsistency. Marks of this nature may function as source indicators for services. For example, a repeating pattern applied in a particular manner to the exterior of an airplane could be perceived as a source indicator for airline transportation services. However, if the application identifies both goods and services, the examining attorney must consider whether the mark shown in the drawing could actually function as both a trademark for the identified goods and a service mark for the identified services.

The determination of whether all of the identified goods or services are consistent with the drawing is distinct from the determination of whether the drawing agrees with the specimen of record. *See* [TMEP §1202.19\(d\)](#). Thus, if the application contains specimens showing that the drawing is not a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the goods or packaging, or in connection with the services, the examining attorney must also issue any applicable requirement or refusal on that basis. *See* [TMEP §807.12\(a\)](#).

1202.19(f)(i) Statutory Basis for Refusal

If the examining attorney determines that any of the identified goods or services are inconsistent with the drawing, the examining attorney must refuse registration as to those goods or services on the ground that the mark, as depicted in the drawing, fails to function as a mark for them. *Cf.* [TMEP §§1202.02\(f\)\(i\), 1202.02\(f\)\(ii\)](#). The statutory bases for the refusal are Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45 for trademarks, and §§1, 2, 3, and 45 for service marks. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#).

1202.19(f)(ii) Response Options

The applicant may overcome the refusal by deleting the inconsistent goods or services, or by submitting evidence that the mark, as depicted in the drawing, does in fact function as a mark for the relevant goods or services. In most instances, the applicant will be unable to overcome the refusal by amending the drawing to cover all of the identified goods or services because it will be impossible to do so using a single depiction of the mark and the necessary changes are likely to result in a material alteration of the mark on the original drawing. *See* [TMEP §1202.19\(c\)](#). In addition, dividing out the inconsistent goods or services typically is not an appropriate response option in these cases because the drawing in the child application would need to depict an essentially different mark, which would also be a material alteration of the mark in the original drawing.

1202.19(g) Refusal – Application Seeks Registration of More than One Mark

As explained in [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#), a swatch-type drawing is acceptable only if the applicant has submitted sufficient evidence to establish that the mark is applied to various items but that these various uses of the repeating pattern nonetheless create the same commercial impression.

1202.19(g)(i) Statutory Basis for Refusal

In the absence of the evidentiary showing discussed in [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#), a swatch-type drawing is deemed to encompass numerous versions of the mark, each of which may create a different commercial impression, and thus the examining attorney must refuse registration under Trademark Act Sections 1 and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#), on the ground that the application seeks registration of more than one mark. See *In re Int'l Flavors & Fragrances Inc.*, 183 F.3d 1361, 1366, 51 USPQ2d 1513, 1516 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (“[U]nder the Lanham Act and the rules promulgated thereunder, a trademark application may only seek to register a *single* mark.”); [TMEP §1214.01](#); cf. *In re Hayes*, 62 USPQ2d 1443, 1445 (TTAB 2002) (noting that a trademark application may only seek to register a single mark and affirming refusal of registration on the basis that applicant’s mark description described more than one mark); *In re The Upper Deck Co.*, 59 USPQ2d 1688, 1689-91 (TTAB 2001) (affirming refusal to register a mark described as “a hologram device which is applied to . . . trading cards” because the mark could encompass many different holograms having various shapes, sizes, and contents, and thus the application sought to register more than a single mark); *In re Elvis Presley Enters.*, 50 USPQ2d 1632, 1633-34 (TTAB 1999) (affirming refusal to register a mark described as “the likeness and image of Elvis Presley” because the drawing failed to convey a substantially exact representation of the mark and, given that the mark could encompass numerous likenesses of Elvis, the application sought to register more than a single mark).

1202.19(g)(ii) Response Options

In response to this refusal, the applicant may amend the swatch-type drawing to depict the mark on a particular item; amend the mark description to describe the placement of the mark on that item; and, if necessary, amend the identification to delete any goods or services that are inconsistent with the drawing (see [TMEP §1202.19\(f\)](#)).

1202.19(h) Refusals in Applications Based on Section 1(b), Section 44, or Section 66(a)

The refusals discussed in [TMEP §§1202.19\(e\)–\(g\)\(ii\)](#) may also apply to applications based on Trademark Act §1(b), §44, or §66(a) if the information in the application or any other available evidence indicates that the applied-for mark fails to function as a trademark or service mark; that the identification includes goods or services that are inconsistent with the mark as depicted in the drawing; or that the application seeks registration of more than one mark. See [TMEP §1202](#); cf. *In re Right-On Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1152, 1157 (TTAB 2008) (noting that, with respect to §66(a) applications, “it is appropriate for examining attorneys to issue an ornamentation refusal if the mark is decorative or ornamental on its face as depicted on the drawing page and described in the description of the mark”); [TMEP §1202.02\(f\)\(i\)](#).

For §1(b) applications, if the examining attorney anticipates issuing a failure-to-function refusal once an allegation of use is filed, the examining attorney should advise the applicant of the potential refusal if otherwise issuing an Office action. See [TMEP §1202](#). However, failure to provide an advisory does not preclude the examining attorney from subsequently issuing a refusal. See *id.*

With respect to applications based on §44 or §66(a), examining attorneys must adhere to the relevant rules and procedures governing these types of applications, including those pertaining to drawing amendments and acceptable response options. See, e.g., [TMEP §§801.02\(b\)](#) (Supplemental Register not an option for §66(a) requests for extension of protection), [1010](#) (proof of acquired distinctiveness in §44-based applications), [1011.01](#) (“substantially exact representation standard” for drawings in §44-based applications), [1011.03](#) (amendment of drawings in §44-based applications), [1904.02\(g\)](#) (time period for issuing a refusal of a

§66(a)-based application), [1904.02\(j\)](#) (amendment of marks in §66(a)-based applications), [1904.02\(k\)](#) (drawings and descriptions in §66(a)-based applications).

1202.19(i) Functional Repeating Patterns

It is possible, although rare, that a repeating pattern applied to the surface of an item will serve a functional purpose. This could be a utilitarian function, which is essential to the use of the item or affects the cost or quality of the item, or an aesthetic function, which does not have a truly utilitarian function in terms of the item's use or performance, but nonetheless provides a real and significant competitive advantage. See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)\(iii\)\(A\)](#), [1202.02\(a\)\(vi\)](#). For example, a repeating pattern could function as camouflage for a product that requires concealment (utilitarian functionality). Or a repeating pattern could make a product more aesthetically desirable, beyond mere ornamentation, by allowing the product to be visually coordinated with a variety of other related items (aesthetic functionality). See *Brunswick Corp. v. British Seagull Ltd.*, 35 F.3d 1527, 1531-1533, 32 USPQ2d 1120, 1122-1124 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (affirming TTAB's determination that the color black on the surface of outboard motors is functional because, while it has no utilitarian effect on the mechanical purpose of the engines, it does provide other identifiable competitive advantages, including compatibility with a wide variety of boat colors and reduction in the perceived size of the engines). If the available evidence supports the conclusion that a repeating-pattern mark is functional, the examining attorney must refuse registration accordingly. See [TMEP §§1202.02\(a\)-\(a\)\(viii\)](#) regarding functionality and the procedures for refusing registration.

1202.19(j) Random Patterns

The foregoing guidance on repeating patterns also generally applies to marks consisting of random or fractal patterns, that is, patterns in which the relevant elements are not repeated in a set or easily recognized way. However, examining attorneys must carefully review the drawing, mark description, and specimen of use for this type of mark to ensure not only that the application accurately depicts and describes the mark, but also that the mark creates the impression of a single mark.

1202.19(k) Examples of Repeating-Pattern Marks

Registered Repeating-Pattern Marks

Example 1

U.S. Registration No. 3826587 (Supplemental Register)



Mark



Specimen

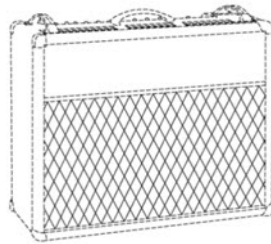
Mark Description: “The mark consists of a repeating pattern of hexagonal shapes printed or stitched on the inner lining of shoe uppers. The matter shown in broken or dotted lines is not part of the mark and serves only to show the position or placement of the mark on the goods.”

Goods: Shoes, in International Class 25.

Note: Although the shape of the shoe in the drawing differs slightly from the shape of the shoe in the specimen, the drawing is a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the goods.

Example 2

U.S. Registration No. 3679828 (Principal Register – §2(f))



Mark



Specimen

Mark Description: “The mark consists of a repetitive diamond pattern on the cloth speaker grill of a musical instrument amplifier. The dotted lines shown on the drawing are for purposes of positioning only and do not comprise a feature of the mark.”

Goods: Musical instrument amplifiers, in International Class 9.

Note: The application for this mark included a large amount of evidence to establish that the mark had acquired distinctiveness as a source indicator, including samples of marketing materials, excerpts from publications, and numerous consumer declarations.

Example 3

U.S. Registration No. 3342382 (Principal Register - Cancelled)



Mark



Specimen

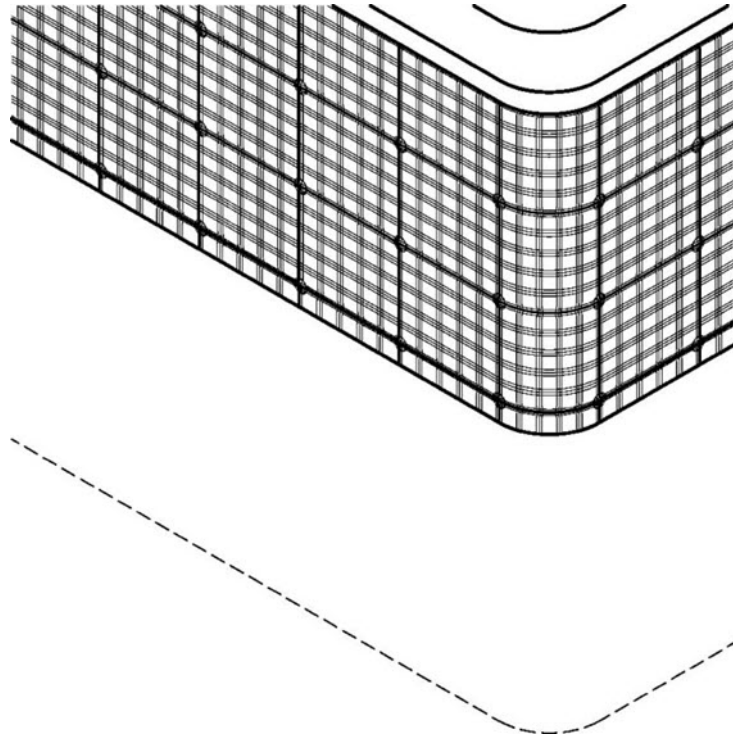
Mark Description: “The mark consists of a repeating pattern of ‘AV’ on the face of a watch.”

Goods: Watches, in International Class 14.

Note: The drawing shows the outline of the watch in broken lines, but the mark description does not specify the meaning of the broken lines. As indicated in [TMEP §§807.08](#) and 1202.19(b), descriptions of marks containing broken lines must indicate the significance of the lines.

Example 4

U.S. Registration No. 4100365 (Supplemental Register)



Mark

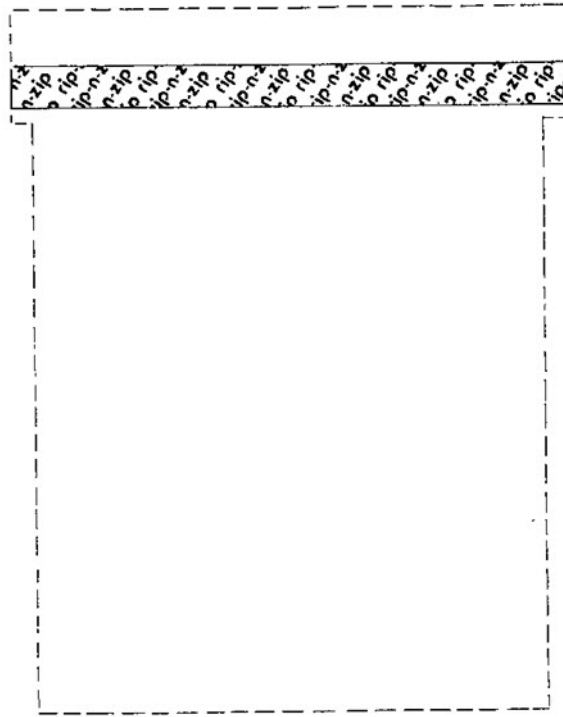
Mark Description: “The mark consists of a plaid design located on and covering the entire perimeter of the side border of a mattress, the plaid design comprising a repeat pattern no larger than approximately 1 to 1.6 inches in both its horizontal and vertical dimensions. The matter shown in dotted lines is not part of the mark but merely serves to show the placement of the mark on the goods.”

Goods: Mattresses, in International Class 20.

Note: Although the entire shape in the drawing here is not depicted in broken lines, as indicated in [TMEP §§807.08](#) and [1202.19\(a\)\(i\)](#), broken lines must be used to indicate the shape of an item depicted in a drawing if the shape is not claimed as part of the mark.

Example 5

U.S. Registration No. 1251171 (Principal Register)



Mark

Mark Description: “The mark consists of a design showing the words ‘Rip-N-Zip’ repeated in a diagonal pattern along a strip extending across the upper portion of the multiwall bags.”

Goods: Reclosable Multiwall Bags, in International Class 22.

Note: The drawing shows the outline of the goods in broken lines, but the mark description does not specify the meaning of the broken lines. As indicated in [TMEP §§807.08](#) and [1202.19\(a\)\(i\)](#), marks containing broken lines must indicate the significance of the lines (e.g., that they indicate matter that is not part of the mark).

Example 6

U.S. Registration No. 2963354 (Principal Register)



Mark



Specimen

Goods: Perfumery; cosmetics, in International Class 3.

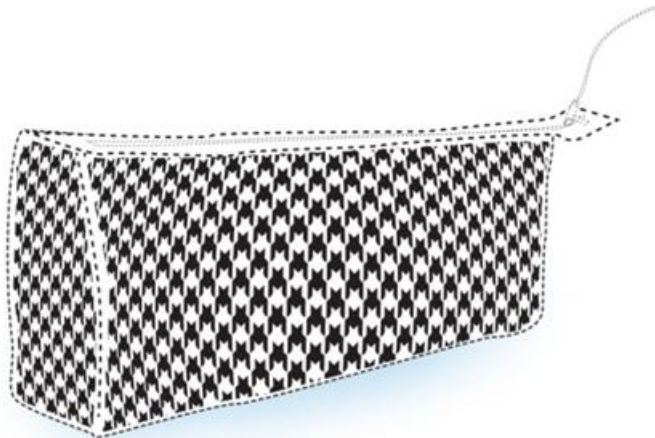
Note: Here, the repeating pattern is not a common, widely used pattern, but is instead composed of a stylized depiction of the wording DIOR. Furthermore, the pattern is placed only on part of the goods, in a place

where a trademark might appear. Although a repeated pattern often produces an ornamental effect, the repeated element here is distinctive and could serve as a source indicator if presented in a single instance, rather than being repeated. Accordingly, the mark is, as used on the goods, inherently distinctive. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(e\)\(i\)–\(e\)\(i\)\(E\)](#).

Although this registration does not include a mark description, under [TMEP §§808.02](#) and [1202.19\(b\)](#), a mark description for a repeating-pattern mark must accurately describe the elements that appear in the mark and indicate that they are repeated. In addition, to use a swatch-type drawing like the one shown here, the applicant must satisfy the requirements described in [TMEP §1202.19\(a\)\(iii\)](#). Otherwise, a drawing showing placement on the relevant item is required. See [TMEP §1202.19\(g\)\(ii\)](#).

Making Inherent Distinctiveness and Inconsistent Goods/Services Determinations

The following mock example is provided to illustrate concepts involved in determining whether a mark is inherently distinctive and whether the identified goods or services are consistent with the drawing. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(e\)\(i\)–\(e\)\(i\)\(E\)](#) and [1202.19\(f\)](#) for additional information.



Mark

Mark Description: The mark consists of a repeated houndstooth pattern applied to the entire exterior surface of the side and end panels of a handbag. The matter shown in broken lines is not part of the mark and serves only to show the placement of the mark on the goods.

Goods: Handbags; purses; walking canes, in International Class 18.

Note: Although source-indicating matter is often displayed in a repetitive manner on the surface of handbags and purses, here the mark consists of a common pattern, houndstooth, which is widely used on clothing,

fashion accessories, household items, and many other goods. There is nothing unusual or distinctive about the manner in which this common pattern is displayed or placed, and thus the pattern will likely be perceived as purely ornamental. Therefore, the mark is not inherently distinctive and does not function as a source indicator for the goods. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(e\)\(i\)–\(e\)\(i\)\(E\)](#).

In addition, some of the identified goods are inconsistent with the drawing. While the handbag shown in the drawing is not part of the mark, the drawing nonetheless limits the mark to the particular manner of use shown. The mark could be applied in the manner shown to handbags and purses, but not to walking canes. Therefore, it is appropriate to refuse registration of the mark as to “walking canes” on the ground that the mark, as depicted in the drawing, fails to function as a mark for those goods. See [TMEP §§1202.19\(f\)–\(f\)\(ii\)](#).

While the pattern shown in this mock example is not distinctive as depicted in the drawing, it is possible for a commonly used pattern to be inherently distinctive, or to otherwise acquire distinctiveness, if it is used in an unusual manner on the goods, such as when the pattern appears in a unique way on a particular portion of the goods.

1203 Refusal on Basis of Immoral or Scandalous Matter; Deceptive Matter; Matter which May Disparage, Falsely Suggest a Connection, or Bring into Contempt or Disrepute

15 U.S.C. §1052 (Extract)

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it—

(a) Consists of or comprises immoral, deceptive, or scandalous matter; or matter which may disparage or falsely suggest a connection with persons, living or dead, institutions, beliefs, or national symbols, or bring them into contempt, or disrepute; or a geographical indication which, when used on or in connection with wines or spirits, identifies a place other than the origin of the goods and is first used on or in connection with wines or spirits by the applicant on or after one year after the date on which the WTO Agreement (as defined in section 2(9) of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act) enters into force with respect to the United States.

The provisions of [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#) apply to both the Principal Register and the Supplemental Register.

1203.01 Immoral or Scandalous Matter

Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), is an absolute bar to the registration of immoral or scandalous matter on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register.

Although the words “immoral” and “scandalous” may have somewhat different connotations, case law has included immoral matter in the same category as scandalous matter. See *In re McGinley*, 660 F.2d 481, 484 n.6, 211 USPQ 668, 673 n.6 (C.C.P.A. 1981), *aff’d* 206 USPQ 753 (TTAB 1979) (“Because of our holding, *infra*, that appellant’s mark is ‘scandalous,’ it is unnecessary to consider whether appellant’s mark is ‘immoral.’ We note the dearth of reported trademark decisions in which the term ‘immoral’ has been directly applied.”)

The prohibition against the registration of marks that consist of or comprise immoral or scandalous matter was originally enacted as §5(a) of the Trademark Act of 1905, and was reenacted as part of §2(a) of the Act of 1946. There is little legislative history concerning the intent of Congress with regard to the provision; therefore, the term “scandalous” is interpreted by looking to “its ordinary and common meaning.” *In re Riverbank Canning Co.*, 95 F.2d 327, 328, 37 USPQ 268, 269 (C.C.P.A. 1938). The Court has noted,

however, that the word “comprises” meant “includes” at the time of the statute’s enactment in 1905, and thus Congress extended the prohibition not only to marks that consist of scandalous matter, but also to marks that include scandalous matter. *In re Fox*, 702 F.3d 633, 638, 105 USPQ2d 1247, 1250 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (holding scandalous a mark for rooster-shaped chocolate lollipops where, in the context of the goods, “a substantial composite of the general public perceives” a scandalous meaning, even though the mark had a non-scandalous meaning in relation to the goods as well). Moreover, there is no requirement in §2(a) that a mark’s vulgar meaning be the only relevant meaning, or even the most relevant meaning. *Id.* Thus, an examining attorney need only prove the existence of one vulgar meaning to justify a §2(a) refusal. *Id.* This may be established by referring to court decisions, decisions of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board and dictionary definitions. *McGinley*, 660 F.2d at 485, 211 USPQ at 673.

In affirming a refusal to register a mark as scandalous under §2(a), the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals noted dictionary entries that defined “scandalous” as, *inter alia*, shocking to the sense of propriety, offensive to the conscience or moral feelings or calling out for condemnation. *McGinley*, 660 F.2d at 486, 211 USPQ at 673 (holding scandalous a mark comprising a photograph of a nude, reclining man and woman, kissing and embracing, for a “newsletter devoted to social and interpersonal relationship topics” and for “social club services”). The statutory language “scandalous” has also been considered to encompass matter that is “vulgar,” defined as “lacking in taste, indelicate, morally crude.” *In re Runsdorf*, 171 USPQ 443, 444 (TTAB 1971).

The meaning imparted by a mark must be determined in the context of the current attitudes of the day. *See In re Mavety Media Grp. Ltd.*, 33 F.3d 1367, 31 USPQ2d 1923 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (finding the evidence insufficient to establish that BLACK TAIL, used on adult entertainment magazines, comprises scandalous matter; noting that there were both vulgar and non-vulgar definitions of “tail,” and that the record was devoid of evidence demonstrating which of these definitions a substantial composite of the general public would choose in the context of the relevant marketplace); *In re Michalko*, 110 USPQ2d 1949, 1953 (TTAB 2014) (finding the evidence sufficient to establish that ASSHOLE remains vulgar and offensive under modern standards of usage); *In re Old Glory Condom Corp.*, 26 USPQ2d 1216 (TTAB 1993) (holding not scandalous OLD GLORY CONDOM CORP and design comprising the representation of a condom decorated with stars and stripes in a manner to suggest the American flag); *In re Thomas Labs., Inc.*, 189 USPQ 50, 52 (TTAB 1975) (“[I]t is imperative that fullest consideration be given to the moral values and conduct which contemporary society has deemed to be appropriate and acceptable.”)

The determination of whether a mark is scandalous must be made in the context of the relevant marketplace for the goods or services identified in the application, and must be ascertained from the standpoint of not necessarily a majority, but a “substantial composite of the general public.” As long as a substantial composite of the general public would perceive the mark, in context, to have a vulgar meaning, “the mark as a whole ‘consists of or comprises . . . scandalous matter’” under §2(a). *In re Fox*, 702 F.3d at 638, 105 USPQ2d at 1250 (quoting [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#) (emphasis added); *In re Boulevard Entm’t, Inc.*, 334 F.3d 1336, 1340, 67 USPQ2d 1475, 1477 (Fed. Cir. 2003); *McGinley*, 660 F.2d at 485, 211 USPQ at 673 (“[T]he Lanham Act does not require, under the rubric of ‘scandalous,’ any inquiry into the specific goods or services not shown in the application itself.”); *In re Star Belly Stitcher, Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 2059 (TTAB 2013) (finding the evidence sufficient to establish prima facie that the term “aw shit” is scandalous or vulgar to the conscience of a substantial composite of the general public); *In re Luxuria s.r.o.*, 100 USPQ2d 1146 (TTAB 2011) (finding a mark consisting of a bottle in the shape of a hand with middle finger extended upwards comprised matter that would be considered vulgar by a substantial composite of the general public); *In re Wilcher Corp.*, 40 USPQ2d 1929 (TTAB 1996) (holding scandalous a mark for restaurant and bar services consisting of words DICK HEADS positioned directly underneath caricature of a human head composed primarily of graphic and readily recognizable representation of male genitalia, as it would be considered offensive by a substantial portion of the public); *Greyhound Corp. v. Both Worlds Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1635, 1639 (TTAB

1988) (holding scandalous a graphic design of a dog defecating, as applied to polo shirts and T-shirts, given the broad potential audience that may view applicant's mark in sales establishments and "virtually all public places"); *In re Hepperle*, 175 USPQ 512 (TTAB 1972) (holding ACAPULCO GOLD not scandalous when used as a mark for suntan lotion even though the words might be a reference to marijuana).

Therefore, to support a refusal on the ground that a proposed mark is immoral or scandalous, the examining attorney must provide evidence that a substantial portion of the general public would consider the mark to be scandalous in the context of contemporary attitudes and the relevant marketplace. *Mavety Media*, 33 F.3d at 1371-72, 31 USPQ2d at 1925-26. This evidence could include dictionary definitions, newspaper articles, and magazine articles. The examining attorney should not rely solely on an earlier decision holding a term to be scandalous in support of a refusal. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has held that an earlier decision is insufficient to warrant the same finding in a future case. *In re Red Bull GmbH*, 78 USPQ2d 1375 (TTAB 2006) (rejecting examining attorney's argument that the Board's 1981 decision in *In re Tinseltown, Inc.*, 212 USPQ 863 (TTAB 1981) finding BULLSHIT to be scandalous is sufficient to warrant the same finding in a later case). Rather, the facts underlying the earlier decision must be looked at to determine, first, whether it has any relevance to the present case, and, if so, whether that earlier finding is equally applicable today, for example, by looking at other evidence such as recent dictionary definitions. *Red Bull*, 78 USPQ2d at 1381.

Dictionary definitions alone may be sufficient to establish that a proposed mark comprises scandalous matter, where multiple dictionaries, including at least one standard dictionary, all indicate that a word is vulgar, and the applicant's use of the word is limited to the vulgar meaning of the word. *Boulevard Entm't*, 334 F.3d at 1341, 67 USPQ2d at 1478 (holding 1-800-JACK-OFF and JACK OFF scandalous, where all dictionary definitions of "jack-off" were considered vulgar); *In re Manwin/RK Collateral Trust*, 111 USPQ2d 1311, 1314 (TTAB 2014) (finding dictionary definitions alone sufficient to make prima facie showing that mark MOMSBANGTEENS comprises vulgar matter); *In re Star Belly Stitcher*, 107 USPQ2d 2059 at 2062 (stating that dictionary evidence showed that the terms "shit" and "aw shit" are vulgar terms); *Boston Red Sox Baseball Club Ltd. P'ship v. Sherman*, 88 USPQ2d 1581 (TTAB 2008) (sustaining an opposition and finding that SEX ROD was immoral and scandalous under §2(a) based on dictionary definitions designating the term "ROD" as being vulgar, and applicant's admission that SEX ROD had a sexual connotation); *Red Bull*, 78 USPQ2d at 1381-82 (finding multiple dictionary definitions indicating BULLSHIT is "obscene," "vulgar," "usually vulgar," "vulgar slang," or "rude slang" constitute a prima facie showing that the term is offensive to the conscience of a substantial composite of the general public).

"Whether applicant intended the mark to be humorous, or even whether some people would actually find it to be humorous, is immaterial." *In re Luxuria, s.r.o.*, 100 USPQ2d at 1149 (quoting *Boston Red Sox Baseball Club*, 88 USPQ2d at 1588). A refusal is proper if the evidence shows that "the term would be perceived and understood as vulgar by a substantial portion of the purchasing public." *Id.*; see also *Fox*, 702 F.3d at 634, 105 USPQ2d at 1248 ("a mark that creates a double entendre falls within the proscription of §1052(a) where, as here, one of its meanings is clearly vulgar"); *In re Star Belly Stitcher*, 107 USPQ2d at 2063 ("[T]here is no requirement in Section 2(a) that a mark's vulgar meaning must be the only relevant meaning, or even the most relevant meaning.").

It has been noted that the threshold is lower for what can be described as "scandalous" than for "obscene." Refusal to register immoral or scandalous matter has been found not to abridge First Amendment rights, because no conduct is proscribed and no tangible form of expression is suppressed. Also, the term "scandalous" has been held sufficiently precise to satisfy due process requirements under the Fifth Amendment. *McGinley*, 660 F.2d at 484-85, 211 USPQ at 672.

The prohibition in §2(a) of the Act against the registration of scandalous matter pertains only to *marks* that are scandalous. The authority of the Act does not extend to goods that may be scandalous. *See In re Madsen*, 180 USPQ 334, 335 (TTAB 1973) (holding WEEK-END SEX for magazines not scandalous and observing that whether the magazine contents may be pornographic was not an issue before the Board).

The examining attorney may look to the specimen(s) or other aspects of the record for confirmation that a substantial composite of the general public would perceive the mark to be vulgar in the context of the goods or services at issue. *See McGinley*, 660 F.2d at 482 n.3, 211 USPQ at 670 n.3 (referring to excerpts from appellant's newsletters pertaining to the sexual connotation of the subject matter).

To ensure consistency in examination with respect to immoral or scandalous matter, when an examining attorney believes, for whatever reason, that a mark may be considered to comprise such matter, the examining attorney must consult with his or her supervisor.

1203.02 Deceptive Matter

Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), is an absolute bar to the registration of deceptive matter on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register. Neither a disclaimer of the deceptive matter nor a claim that it has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) can obviate a refusal under §2(a) on the ground that the mark consists of or comprises deceptive matter. *See Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass'n v. Nat'l Hearing Aid Society*, 224 USPQ 798, 808 (TTAB 1984) ; *In re Charles S. Loeb Pipes, Inc.*, 190 USPQ 238, 241 (TTAB 1975).

1203.02(a) Types of Deceptive Marks

A deceptive mark may be comprised of: (1) a single deceptive term; (2) a deceptive term embedded in a composite mark that includes additional non-deceptive wording and/or design elements (*see In re White Jasmine LLC*, 106 USPQ2d 1385, 1391 (TTAB 2013)); (3) a term or a portion of a term that alludes to a deceptive quality, characteristic, function, composition, or use (*see Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass'n v. Nat'l Hearing Aid Society*, 224 USPQ 798, 808 (TTAB 1984)); (4) the phonetic equivalent of a deceptive term (*see In re Organik Technologies, Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1690, 1694 (TTAB 1997) ; *Tanners' Council of Am., Inc. v. Samsonite Corp.*, 204 USPQ 150, 154 (TTAB 1979); or (5) the foreign equivalent of any of the above (*see, e.g., Palm Bay Imps., v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondee En 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696 (Fed. Cir. 2005). Although there is no published Board or Federal Circuit decision regarding whether a mark consisting solely of a design can be deceptive, if there is evidence to support such a refusal, it should be issued.

Deceptive marks may include marks that falsely describe the material content of a product (*see In re Intex Plastics Corp.*, 215 USPQ 1045, 1048 (TTAB 1982)) and marks that are geographically deceptive (*see Stabilisierungsfonds fur Wein v. Peter Meyer Winery GmbH*, 9 USPQ2d 1073, 1076 (TTAB 1988) ; *In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53, 57 (TTAB 1983), *recon. denied*, 223 USPQ 191 (TTAB 1984)). See [TMEP §§1210.05-1210.06\(b\)](#) regarding geographically deceptive marks.

However, marks containing a term identifying a material, ingredient, or feature should not be refused registration under §2(a) if the mark in its entirety would not be perceived as indicating that the goods contained that material or ingredient. For example, the mark COPY CALF was found not deceptive for wallets and billfolds of synthetic and plastic material made to simulate leather, because it was an obvious play on the expression "copy cat" and suggested to purchasers that the goods were imitations of items made of calf skin. *See A. F. Gallun & Sons Corp. v. Aristocrat Leather Prods., Inc.*, 135 USPQ 459, 460 (TTAB

1962). Note, however, the difference with such marks as TEXHYDE and SOFTHIDE, which were held deceptive as applied to synthetic fabric and imitation leather material, respectively. See *Intex Plastics*, 215 USPQ at 1048; *Tanners' Council of Am.*, 204 USPQ at 154-55.

In addition, formatives and other grammatical variations of a term may not necessarily be deceptive in relation to the relevant goods. For example, “silky” is defined, *inter alia*, as “resembling silk.” See *The American Heritage® Dictionary of the English Language: Fourth Ed.* 2000. Thus, a mark containing the term SILKY would not be considered deceptive (but might be unregistrable under §2(e)(1)). Dictionary definitions of such terms should be carefully reviewed to determine the significance the term would have to prospective purchasers. For example, although the term GOLD would be considered deceptive for jewelry not made of gold, the term GOLDEN would not be deceptive.

1203.02(b) Elements of a §2(a) Deceptiveness Refusal

The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has articulated the following test for whether a mark consists of or comprises deceptive matter:

- (1) Is the term misdescriptive of the character, quality, function, composition or use of the goods?
- (2) If so, are prospective purchasers likely to believe that the misdescription actually describes the goods?
- (3) If so, is the misdescription likely to affect a significant portion of the relevant consumers’ decision to purchase?

In re Spirits Int’l, N.V., 563 F.3d 1347, 90 USPQ2d 1489 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *In re Budge Mfg. Co.*, 857 F.2d 773, 775, 8 USPQ2d 1259, 1260 (Fed. Cir. 1988), *aff’g* 8 USPQ2d 1790 (TTAB 1987).

1203.02(c) Distinction between Marks Comprising Deceptive Matter (§2(a)) and Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks (§2(e)(1))

If the first two inquiries set forth by the Federal Circuit in *In re Budge Mfg. Co.*, 857 F.2d 773, 775, 8 USPQ2d 1259, 1260 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (i.e., whether a mark is misdescriptive of the goods/services and whether prospective purchasers are likely to believe the misdescription) are answered affirmatively, the mark is deceptively misdescriptive of the goods/services under §2(e)(1). See [TMEP §1209.04](#) regarding deceptively misdescriptive marks.

The third inquiry, whether the misdescription is likely to affect the decision to purchase, distinguishes marks that are deceptive under §2(a) from marks that are deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1). To be deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1), the misdescription must concern a feature that would be relevant to the decision to purchase the goods or use the services. See *In re Hinton*, 116 USPQ2d 1051, 1055 (TTAB 2015); *In re Shniberg*, 79 USPQ2d 1309, 1311 (TTAB 2006) (“[T]he misdescription must concern a feature that would be relevant to a purchasing decision.”). If the misdescription is more than simply a relevant factor that may be considered in purchasing decisions, but is a material factor, the mark would be deceptive under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#). See *In re White Jasmine LLC*, 106 USPQ2d 1385 (TTAB 2013); *In re Shniberg*, 79 USPQ2d at 1313-14. See [TMEP §1209.04](#) regarding establishing deceptive misdescriptiveness and [TMEP §1203.02\(d\)](#) regarding determining materiality.

If it is difficult to determine whether misdescriptive matter would materially affect a decision to purchase, the examining attorney should refuse registration under both §§2(a) and 2(e)(1). See, e.g., *Gold Seal Co. v. Weeks*, 129 F. Supp. 928, 105 USPQ 407 (D.D.C. 1955), *aff’d sub nom. S. C. Johnson & Son, Inc. v.*

Gold Seal Co., 230 F.2d 832, 108 USPQ 400 (D.C. Cir. 1956) (per curiam), *cert. denied*, 352 U.S. 829, 111 USPQ 467 (1956), *superseded by statute on other grounds as stated in Aktieselskabet AF 21. November 2001 v. Fame Jeans Inc.*, 525 F.3d 8, 86 USPQ2d 1527, 1532 (D.C. Cir. 2008). See also *R. Neumann & Co. v. Overseas Shipments, Inc.*, 326 F.2d 786, 140 USPQ 276 (C.C.P.A. 1964), and *Stabilisierungsfonds für Wein v. Peter Meyer Winery GmbH*, 9 USPQ2d 1073 (TTAB 1988), in which third parties filed oppositions based on both statutory sections. See [TMPEP §1203.02\(e\)](#) regarding procedures for issuing deceptiveness refusals under §2(a).

Marks that are deceptive under §2(a) are unregistrable on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register, whereas marks that are deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1) may be registrable on the Principal Register with a showing of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), or on the Supplemental Register, if appropriate.

See [TMPEP §1210.05\(d\)](#) regarding the distinction between marks comprising deceptive matter under §2(a) and matter that is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3).

1203.02(d) Determining Materiality

To establish a prima facie case of deceptiveness, the examining attorney must provide sufficient evidence that the misdescriptive quality or characteristic would be a material factor in the purchasing decision of a significant portion of the relevant consumers. To do so, the examining attorney must provide evidence that the misdescriptive quality or characteristic would make the product or service more appealing or desirable to prospective purchasers. *In re White Jasmine LLC*, 106 USPQ2d 1385, 1392 (TTAB 2013) (citing *In re Juleigh Jeans Sportswear Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1694, 1698-99 (TTAB 1992)). A product or service is usually more desirable because of objective standards or criteria that provide an objective inducement to purchase the goods and/or services beyond that of mere personal preference.

1203.02(d)(i) Objective Criteria

In assessing whether a misdescription would affect the decision to purchase, the following are examples (not a comprehensive list) of the type of objective criteria that should be used to analyze whether a term is a material factor. The evidence may often point to more than one characteristic, thereby strengthening the examining attorney's prima facie case. For example, the evidence may show that goods deemed "organic" because they are produced in compliance with objective criteria can also be more costly, provide health benefits, and satisfy a social policy of reducing the impact on the environment by utilizing chemical-free growing practices. The evidence also must suffice to indicate that the misdescriptive quality or characteristic would affect the purchasing decision of a significant portion of the relevant consumers. *In re Spirits Int'l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1353, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1493 (Fed. Cir. 2009). Generally, evidence of the objective inducement to purchase supports a presumption that a significant portion of the relevant consumers would likely be deceived.

Superior Quality - The evidence must support a finding that goods or services that contain or feature the misdescriptive term are superior in quality to similar goods and/or services that do not. For example, silk can be shown to be a more luxurious and expensive material because of the difficulty in making silk, its unique feel, and its breathability. Similarly, cedar wood can be shown to have superior durability and resistance to decay.

Enhanced Performance or Function - The evidence must support a finding that goods possessing the characteristic or feature at issue are superior to those that do not. For example, certain wood species are

naturally resistant to termite attack or may be more durable than others. There might also be evidence of an increasing interest in reducing the potential leaching of chemicals from treated wood into the environment.

Difference in Price - Evidence of a price differential between items that do and those that do not possess the feature or characteristic described by the misdescriptive term may be enough to support a §2(a) refusal, depending upon the nature of the goods or services. It is also important to remember that because a difference in price is relative to the goods and/or services in a particular industry, a particular term may be deceptive for goods and services that are not typically thought of as luxury items.

Health Benefit - The evidence must establish a belief that the feature or characteristic provides a health benefit.

Religious Practice or Social Policy - The evidence must show that the religious practice or social policy has definable recognized criteria for compliance in order to support a finding of deceptiveness when the criteria are not adhered to by the applicant. For example, a body of Jewish law deals with what foods can and cannot be eaten and how those foods must be prepared and eaten. The term “kosher” refers to food prepared in accordance with these standards as well as to the selling or serving of such food. *See The American Heritage® Dictionary of the English Language: Fourth Ed.* 2000. Another example is the term “vegan,” which is defined as someone who eats plant products only and who uses no products derived from animals, such as fur or leather. *Id.*

The evidence necessary to establish deceptiveness can come from the same sources used to show that the term is misdescriptive. Internet searches that combine the deceptive term with terms such as “desirable,” “superior,” “premium,” “better quality,” “sought after,” “more expensive,” or “established standards” may be useful in seeking evidence to support the second and third prongs of the test.

Applicant’s own advertising - in the form of specimens, brochures, web pages, press releases, or product and service information sheets - may provide the best evidence of deceptiveness. Moreover, the examining attorney should make of record any instances where the applicant attempts to benefit from the potentially deceptive term and where the advertising includes false assertions related to the deceptive wording. Although not a requirement for a deceptive refusal, proof of an actual intent to deceive may be considered strong evidence of deceptiveness.

1203.02(d)(ii) Mere Personal Preference

The types of objective criteria discussed above can be contrasted with mere personal preferences for which the requisite evidentiary support generally cannot be found to establish materiality. For example, SPEARMINT for gum, LAVENDER for dish soap, and BLUE for bicycles refer to flavor, scent, and color features that, in those contexts, most likely reflect mere personal preferences which would not be considered material for purposes of a deceptiveness refusal.

Similarly, personal preferences regarding types of cuisine served at restaurants (e.g. , SEAFOOD or PIZZA) generally do not establish materiality absent evidence that the type of cuisine meets some objective criteria more in line with those listed above, such as for VEGAN or KOSHER.

Whether the requisite evidentiary support can be found to establish that the use of such terms in connection with goods/services that do not contain or feature the characteristic is deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1) must be determined on a case-by-case basis.

1203.02(e) Procedures for Issuing §2(a) Deceptive Refusals

1203.02(e)(i) When the Mark is Clearly Misdescriptive

If there is evidence in the record clearly indicating that the mark or a term(s) in the mark is misdescriptive (e.g., the specimen or language in the identification indicates that the goods/services do not have the relevant feature or characteristic), the examining attorney must determine whether the misdescription is believable and material and do the following:

- If the misdescription would not be believable, no refusal under either §2(a) or §2(e)(1) should be made. If the application is otherwise in condition for publication, approve the mark for publication. Otherwise, issue an Office action containing all other relevant refusals and/or requirements.
- If the misdescription would be believable, but would not be material, issue a refusal under §2(e)(1) as deceptively misdescriptive (or disclaimer requirement if appropriate, i.e., if the term at issue is not part of a unitary expression), with supporting evidence, and all other relevant refusals and/or requirements.
- If the misdescription would be believable and material, issue a deceptiveness refusal under §2(a) with supporting evidence, an alternative refusal under §2(e)(1) as deceptively misdescriptive (or disclaimer requirement if appropriate), and all other relevant refusals and/or requirements.

1203.02(e)(ii) When It is Not Clear Whether the Mark is Misdescriptive

When a mark comprises or contains descriptive wording, but it is not clear whether the goods/services possess the relevant feature or characteristic, the examining attorney must first determine whether such feature or characteristic would be believable and material to the decision to purchase.

If the potential misdescription would not be believable, no refusal under either §2(a) or §2(e)(1) should be made. If the application is otherwise in condition for publication, the examining attorney should approve the mark for publication. Otherwise, the examining attorney should issue an Office action containing all other relevant refusals and/or requirements.

If the goods possess the relevant feature or characteristic and the feature or characteristic referenced by the mark would be believable and material, the identification must include the feature or characteristic in order to resolve the ambiguity between the mark and the identification of goods/services. The identification must be amended even if the record indicates elsewhere that the goods/services contain the feature or characteristic. Therefore, if the application could otherwise be put in condition for approval for publication by an examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §707](#)), to expedite prosecution, the examining attorney should:

- Attempt to contact the applicant to obtain authorization for a disclaimer, if appropriate (i.e., if the term at issue is not part of a unitary expression), and an amendment to the identification to include the feature or characteristic (if believable and material), and for any other amendments that would put the application in condition for approval for publication.
- If the applicant states that the goods/services do not possess the feature or characteristic, the examining attorney must so indicate in a Note to the File entered in the record, and must then issue a refusal under §2(e)(1) as deceptively misdescriptive (if believable but not material), or disclaimer requirement if appropriate, or a refusal under §2(a) as deceptive (if believable and material) and an alternative refusal under §2(e)(1), or disclaimer requirement if appropriate, as deceptively misdescriptive, and make all other relevant requirements.

- To ensure the completeness of the record in the event of an appeal, any Office action issued must also include an information request under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), asking whether the goods/services possess the feature or characteristic.

If the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant or cannot obtain authorization for an examiner's amendment, or if an Office action is otherwise necessary to make substantive refusals or requirements that cannot be satisfied by examiner's amendment, the examining attorney must:

- Issue a refusal under §2(e)(1) as descriptive (or a requirement for a disclaimer, if appropriate, i.e., if the term at issue is not part of a unitary expression), based on the presumption that the goods/services possess the feature or characteristic; and
- Issue a requirement that the applicant amend the identification to include the feature or characteristic (if believable and material); and
- Issue an information request under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), asking whether the goods/services possess the feature or characteristic; and
- Issue any other relevant refusals and/or requirements.

If the applicant responds that the goods/services possess the feature or characteristic or amends the identification to include the feature or characteristic, the examining attorney must issue a final Office action, assuming that the application is otherwise in condition for final action, as to the descriptiveness refusal (or disclaimer requirement, if not provided), identification requirement (if applicable and not amended), and any other relevant refusals and/or requirements, as appropriate.

If the applicant responds that the goods/services do not possess the feature or characteristic, the examining attorney must withdraw the §2(e)(1) descriptiveness refusal (or disclaimer requirement), as well as the identification requirement (if applicable), and issue a subsequent nonfinal Office action dependent on whether the misdescription would be believable and material:

If the misdescription would be believable but not material, the examining attorney must issue a refusal under §2(e)(1) as deceptively misdescriptive (or disclaimer requirement if appropriate), with supporting evidence, and maintain all other relevant refusals and/or requirements.

If the misdescription would be believable and material, the examining attorney must issue a descriptiveness refusal under §2(a) with supporting evidence, an alternative refusal under §2(e)(1) as deceptively misdescriptive (or disclaimer requirement if appropriate), and maintain all other relevant refusals and/or requirements.

If the applicant does not respond to the information request and does not amend the identification to include the feature or characteristic, the examining attorney must:

Issue a subsequent nonfinal Office action maintaining the descriptiveness refusal (or disclaimer requirement, if not provided), based on the presumption that the goods/services possess the feature or characteristic, as well as the identification requirement (if applicable), information request, and any other relevant refusals and/or requirements raised in the initial Office action, as appropriate; and

If the misdescription would be believable and material, issue an alternative refusal under §2(a) as deceptive, based on the presumption that the goods/services do not possess the relevant feature or characteristic, and supported by evidence; and

Issue an alternative refusal under §2(e)(1) as deceptively misdescriptive, or disclaimer requirement if appropriate, based on the presumption that the goods/services do not possess the relevant feature or characteristic.

See, e.g., *In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644 (TTAB 2013) (holding AOP deceptively, deceptively misdescriptive, or, alternatively, merely descriptive for wine, after the applicant failed to fully respond to the examining attorney's inquiries regarding the origin and certification of applicant's goods); *In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1917 (TTAB 2008) (holding NORMANDIE CAMEMBERB primarily geographically descriptive or, in the alternative, primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for cheese; the applicant failed to respond to a [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) information request as to the origin of the goods).

1203.02(f) Responding to a §2(a) Deceptiveness Refusal

1203.02(f)(i) Amending the Identification of Goods or Services

Generally, an applicant may avoid or overcome a deceptiveness refusal by amending the identification of goods or services, if accurate, to include the potentially deceptive term. For deceptiveness refusals based on the material composition of the goods, if the applicant amends the identification to include the potentially deceptive term, the USPTO will rely on the presumption that the goods contain a sufficient amount of the material to obviate deceptiveness; there is no requirement to substantiate the amount or percentage of the material or feature in the goods. Thus, the applicant may amend "ties" to "silk ties," "milk and cheese" to "organic milk and cheese," and "jewelry" to "gold jewelry" or to "jewelry made in whole or significant part of gold."

The Office construes the wording "made in significant part of" as indicating that the goods contain a sufficient amount of the named ingredient/material composition to meet the standard for use of the term in the relevant industry. In the case of "coats made in significant part of leather," such wording would be construed to mean that the "coats" contain a sufficient amount of leather to be called "leather coats" in the relevant industry. However, the wording "coats made in part of leather" is not acceptable because, although the goods may contain some leather, it may not be an amount sufficient for the goods to be called "leather coats" in the relevant industry.

Note, however, that amending the identification to exclude goods made from the named ingredient or material composition will not avoid or overcome a deceptiveness refusal.

Amending an identification of services to add "featuring" or "including" a material term (e.g., "restaurants featuring organic cuisine" and "retail furniture stores including leather furniture") generally is sufficient to obviate deceptiveness. For example, as long as the identification indicates that the restaurant provides organic cuisine, or the furniture store sells leather furniture, there is no deception even if other types of food or furniture are also available.

1203.02(f)(ii) Other Arguments

Applicants may attempt to overcome a §2(a) refusal by providing evidence that applicant's advertising, or other means, would make consumers aware of the misdescription. Neither evidence regarding advertising, labeling, or extent of use, nor information found on the specimens, can negate the misdescriptiveness with regard to use of the mark in relation to the goods or services. In addition, an applicant's anecdotal or past practices and "explanatory statements in advertising or on labels which purchasers may or may not note and

which may or may not always be provided” are of little value in the deceptiveness analysis. See *In re Budge Mfg. Co.*, 857 F.2d 773, 775-76, 8 USPQ2d 1259, 1261 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

However, in some cases, the applicant may be able to provide credible evidence that consumers would not expect goods sold under a certain mark to actually consist of or contain the feature or characteristic named in the mark. See, e.g., *In re Robert Simmons, Inc.*, 192 USPQ 331 (TTAB 1976) (holding that WHITE SABLE is not deceptive on artist's paint brushes).

The argument that there is no deception because consumers will immediately discern the true nature of the goods and/or services when they encounter them is not persuasive. Deception can attach prior to seeing or encountering the goods or services, for example, based on advertising over the radio or Internet or via word of mouth. See *In re ALP of S. Beach, Inc.*, 79 USPQ2d 1009, 1014 (TTAB 2006).

As noted above, marks that are deceptive under §2(a) are never registrable on either the Principal Register, even under §2(f) or the Supplemental Register. However, applicants may present evidence of a similar nature to what is often submitted for acquired distinctiveness, such as declarations regarding how the mark is perceived by consumers, as rebuttal evidence to the prima facie case, in an effort to overcome one or all of the prongs of the §2(a) test. See *In re Woolrich Woolen Mills Inc.*, 13 USPQ2d 1235, 1238 (TTAB 1989). Note that merely relying on the length of use, without providing other information or evidence, would never be sufficient to overcome a §2(a) refusal. Moreover, priority of use cannot overcome a deceptiveness refusal. *In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644, 1650 n.6 (TTAB 2013).

The fact that only those knowledgeable in the relevant trade, and not average purchasers, would be deceived does not preclude a finding that a mark comprises deceptive matter. *In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 223 USPQ 191, 192 (TTAB 1984).

1203.02(g) Deceptive Matter: Case References

In the following cases, proposed marks were determined to be deceptive, under §2(a): *In re Budge Mfg. Co.*, 857 F.2d 773, 8 USPQ2d 1259 (Fed. Cir. 1988), *aff'd* 8 USPQ2d 1790 (TTAB 1987) (holding LOVEE LAMB deceptive for seat covers not made of lambskin); *In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644 (TTAB 2013) (holding AOP deceptive for wine, where the term is used by members of the European Union to designate a particular quality and geographical origin of wine, when applicant is not the entity that administers the designation and the goods do not necessarily originate in Europe); *In re White Jasmine LLC*, 106 USPQ2d 1385 (TTAB 2013) (holding the term WHITE in the proposed mark WHITE JASMINE deceptive for tea that did not include white tea, where the evidence established that consumers perceive that white tea has desirable health benefits); *In re E5 LLC*, 103 USPQ2d 1578 (TTAB 2012) (holding a mark consisting of the alpha symbol and letters “CU” deceptive for dietary supplements not containing copper, a common ingredient in dietary supplements, which evidence showed is referred to as CU); *In re ALP of S. Beach Inc.*, 79 USPQ2d 1009 (TTAB 2006) (CAFETERIA (stylized) held deceptive as used in connection with “restaurants providing full service to sit-down patrons, excluding cafeteria-style restaurants”); *In re Phillips-Van Heusen Corp.*, 63 USPQ2d 1047 (TTAB 2002) (holding SUPER SILK deceptive for “clothing, namely dress shirts and sport shirts made of silk-like fabric”); *In re Organik Technologies, Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1690 (TTAB 1997) (holding ORGANIK deceptive for clothing and textiles made from cotton that is neither from an organically grown plant nor free of chemical processing or treatment, notwithstanding applicant’s assertions that the goods are manufactured by a process that avoids the use of chemical bleaches, because the identification of goods was broad enough to include textiles and clothing manufactured with chemical processes or dyes); *In re Juleigh Jeans Sportswear Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1694 (TTAB 1992) (holding LONDON LONDON deceptive for clothing having no connection with London); *In re Perry Mfg. Co.*, 12 USPQ2d 1751 (TTAB 1989) (holding PERRY NEW YORK and design of New York City skyline deceptive for

clothing originating in North Carolina, in view of the renown of New York City in the apparel industry); *Stabilisierungsfonds fur Wein v. Peter Meyer Winery GmbH*, 9 USPQ2d 1073, 1075 (TTAB 1988) (holding GOLDENER TROPFEN deceptive for wines, in view of evidence of the international renown of the Goldtropfchen vineyard of West Germany, the Board finding that the purchasing public would be likely to think, mistakenly, that applicant's wines were produced from grapes grown there in accordance with German wine laws and regulations); *Bureau Nat'l Interprofessionnel Du Cognac v. Int'l Better Drinks Corp.*, 6 USPQ2d 1610, 1616 (TTAB 1988) (holding COLAGNAC deceptive for cola-flavored liqueur containing Spanish brandy, the Board concluding that purchasers were likely to believe that applicant's goods contained COGNAC brandy); *In re Shapely, Inc.*, 231 USPQ 72 (TTAB 1986) (holding SILKEASE deceptive as applied to clothing not made of silk); *In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53 (TTAB 1983), *recon. denied*, 223 USPQ 191 (TTAB 1984) (holding BAHIA deceptive as applied to cigars having no connection with the Bahia province of Brazil, the record indicating that tobacco and cigars are important products in the Bahia region); *Evans Prods. Co. v. Boise Cascade Corp.*, 218 USPQ 160 (TTAB 1983) (holding CEDAR RIDGE deceptive for embossed hardboard siding not made of cedar); *In re Intex Plastics Corp.*, 215 USPQ 1045 (TTAB 1982) (holding TEXHYDE deceptive as applied to synthetic fabric for use in the manufacture of furniture, upholstery, luggage, and the like); *Tanners' Council of Am., Inc. v. Samsonite Corp.*, 204 USPQ 150 (TTAB 1979) (holding SOFTHIDE deceptive for imitation leather material); *In re Salem China Co.*, 157 USPQ 600 (TTAB 1968) (holding AMERICAN LIMOGES, used on dinnerware that was neither made in Limoges, France, nor made from Limoges clay, deceptive because of the association of Limoges with fine quality china); *Co. of Cutlers of Hallamshire in the Cnty. of York v. Regent-Sheffield, Ltd.*, 155 USPQ 597 (TTAB 1967) (holding SHEFFIELD, used on cutlery not made in Sheffield, England, deceptive because of the renowned status of Sheffield in relation to cutlery); *In re U.S. Plywood Corp.*, 138 USPQ 403 (TTAB 1963) (holding IVORY WOOD, for lumber and timber products, deceptive since the goods were not made of ivorywood nor did they contain an ivorywood pattern).

Marks were found not to be deceptive in the following cases: *Philip Morris Inc. v. Reemtsma Cigarettenfabriken GmbH*, 14 USPQ2d 1487 (TTAB 1990) (holding PARK AVENUE neither deceptive nor geographically deceptively misdescriptive as applied to applicant's cigarettes and smoking tobacco, the Board finding no goods/place association between Park Avenue in New York City, on which opposer's world headquarters was located, and tobacco products); *In re Woolrich Woolen Mills Inc.*, 13 USPQ2d 1235 (TTAB 1989) (holding WOOLRICH for clothing not made of wool not to be deceptive under §2(a)); *In re Fortune Star Prods. Corp.*, 217 USPQ 277 (TTAB 1982) (holding NIPPON, for radios, televisions, and the like, not deceptive in relation to the goods because, although the applicant was an American firm, the goods were actually made in Japan); *In re Sweden Freezer Mfg. Co.*, 159 USPQ 246 (TTAB 1968) (holding SWEDEN and design, for which registration was sought under §2(f) for external artificial kidney units, not deceptive, the Board finding the case to be in the category "where a geographical trademark may involve a degree of untruth but the deception may be perfectly innocent, harmless or negligible"); *A. F. Gallun & Sons Corp. v. Aristocrat Leather Prods., Inc.*, 135 USPQ 459 (TTAB 1962) (holding COPY CALF, for wallets and billfolds of synthetic and plastic material made to simulate leather, not deceptive, the Board noting that the mark, as an obvious play on the expression "copy cat," suggested to purchasers that the goods were imitations of items made of calf skin).

1203.03 Matter That May Disparage, Falsely Suggest a Connection, or Bring into Contempt or Disrepute

Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), bars the registration on either the Principal or the Supplemental Register of a designation that consists of or comprises matter which, with regard to persons, institutions, beliefs, or national symbols, does any of the following: (1) disparages them; (2) falsely suggests a connection with them; (3) brings them into contempt; or (4) brings them into disrepute.

Section 2(a) is distinctly different from §2(d), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), for which the relevant test is likelihood of confusion. In *Univ. of Notre Dame du Lac v. J.C. Gourmet Food Imps. Co.*, 703 F.2d 1372, 1375-76, 217 USPQ 505, 508-09 (Fed. Cir. 1983), *aff'g* 213 USPQ 594 (TTAB 1982), the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit noted as follows:

A reading of the legislative history with respect to what became §2(a) shows that the drafters were concerned with protecting the name of an individual or institution which was not a technical “trademark” or “trade name” upon which an objection could be made under §2(d)....

Although not articulated as such, it appears that the drafters sought by §2(a) to embrace concepts of the right to privacy, an area of the law then in an embryonic state (footnote omitted). Our review of case law discloses that the elements of a claim of invasion of one’s privacy have emerged as distinctly different from those of trademark or trade name infringement. There may be no likelihood of such confusion as to the source of goods even under a theory of “sponsorship” or “endorsement,” and, nevertheless, one’s right of privacy, or the related right of publicity, may be violated.

The right to privacy protects a party’s control over the use of its identity or “persona.” A party acquires a protectible interest in a name or equivalent designation under §2(a) where the name or designation is unmistakably associated with, and points uniquely to, that party’s personality or “persona.” A party’s interest in a name or designation does not depend upon adoption and use as a technical trademark or trade name.

Univ. of Notre Dame du Lac, 703 F.2d at 1375-77, 217 USPQ at 508-09; *Buffett v. Chi-Chi’s, Inc.*, 226 USPQ 428, 429 (TTAB 1985). Section 2(a) protection is intended to prevent the unauthorized use of the persona of a person or institution and not to protect the public. *In re MC MC S.r.l.*, 88 USPQ2d 1378, 1380 (TTAB 2008) (quoting *Bridgestone/Firestone Research Inc. v. Auto. Club De L’Quest De La France*, 245 F.3d 1359, 58 USPQ2d 1460 (Fed. Cir. 2001)).

Moreover, a mark does not have to comprise a person’s full or correct name to be unregistrable; a nickname or other designation by which a person is known by the public may be unregistrable under this provision of the Act. *Buffett*, 226 USPQ at 430 (finding evidence of record “sufficient to raise a genuine issue of material fact as to whether the term ‘MARGARITAVILLE’ is so uniquely and unmistakably associated with opposer as to constitute opposer’s name or identity such that when applicant’s mark is used in connection with its [restaurant] services, a connection with opposer would be assumed”).

See [TMEP §§1203.03\(b\)–1203.03\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding disparagement, bringing into contempt, and bringing into disrepute, and [TMEP §§1203.03\(c\)–1203.03\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding false suggestion of a connection.

See Carson v. Here’s Johnny Portable Toilets, Inc., 698 F.2d 831, 218 USPQ 1 (6th Cir. 1983), concerning the various forms of identity which have been protected under the rights of privacy and publicity.

1203.03(a) Definitions

1203.03(a)(i) “Persons”

Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), protects, *inter alia*, “persons, living or dead.”

Section 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines “person” and “juristic person” as follows:

The term “person” and any other word or term used to designate the applicant or other entitled to a benefit or privilege or rendered liable under the provisions of this Act includes a juristic person as well

as a natural person. The term “juristic person” includes a firm, corporation, union, association, or other organization capable of suing and being sued in a court of law.

The term “persons” in §2(a) refers to real persons, not fictitious characters. With respect to natural persons, they may be living or dead. However, §2(a) may not be applicable with regard to a deceased person when there is no longer anyone entitled to assert a proprietary right or right of privacy. *Lucien Piccard Watch Corp. v. Since 1868 Crescent Corp.*, 314 F. Supp. 329, 165 USPQ 459 (S.D.N.Y. 1970) (holding DA VINCI not to falsely suggest a connection with the deceased artist Leonardo Da Vinci); *In re MC MC S.r.l.*, 88 USPQ2d 1378 (TTAB 2008) (holding MARIA CALLAS did not falsely suggest a connection with deceased opera singer Maria Callas). See [TMEP §1203.03\(c\)\(i\)](#) regarding elements of a §2(a) false suggestion of a connection refusal.

In the case of a mark comprising the name of a deceased natural person, the “right to the use of a designation which points uniquely to his or her persona may not be protected under Section 2(a) after his or her death unless heirs or other successors are entitled to assert that right.... In order to possess rights, such person, or someone to whom those rights have been transferred, must exist.” *In re MC MC S.r.l.*, 88 USPQ2d at 1380 (quoting *In re Wielinski*, 49 USPQ2d 1754, 1758 (TTAB 1998) (*overruled on other grounds by In re WNBA Enter., LLC*, 70 USPQ2d 1153 (TTAB 2003)); see *In re Jackson Int'l Trading Co. Kurt D. Bruhl GmbH & Co. KG*, 103 USPQ2d 1417, 1421 (TTAB 2012) . A key consideration is “whether or not there is someone (this may be a natural person, estate, or juristic entity) with rights in the name.” *Id.* Any doubt regarding the existence of heirs or successors with such rights must be resolved in favor of the applicant. *In re MC MC S.r.l.*, 88 USPQ2d at 1381.

In addition to natural persons, §2(a) includes juristic persons, that is, legally created entities such as firms, corporations, unions, associations, or any other organizations capable of suing and being sued in a court of law. See *Morehouse Mfg. Corp. v. J. Strickland & Co.*, 407 F.2d 881, 160 USPQ 715 (C.C.P.A. 1969); *Popular Merch. Co. v. “21” Club, Inc.*, 343 F.2d 1011, 145 USPQ 203 (C.C.P.A. 1965); *John Walker & Sons, Ltd. v. Am. Tobacco Co.*, 110 USPQ 249 (Comm’r Pats. 1956); *Copacabana, Inc. v. Breslauer*, 101 USPQ 467 (Comm’r Pats. 1954). Juristic persons do not have to be well known to be protected from the registration of a mark that falsely suggests a connection with or disparages them, or brings them into contempt or disrepute. See generally *Gavel Club v. Toastmasters Int’l*, 127 USPQ 88, 94 (TTAB 1960) (noting that §2(a) protection is not limited to large, well known, or nationally recognized institutions).

A juristic person’s rights under §2(a) are extinguished when the juristic person ceases to exist. *In re Wielinski*, 49 USPQ2d at 1758 (*overruled on other grounds, In re WNBA Enter., LLC*, 70 USPQ2d 1153 (TTAB 2003)).

Section 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), also defines “person” to include the United States and its agencies and instrumentalities, as well as any state:

The term “person” also includes the United States, any agency or instrumentality thereof, or any individual, firm, or corporation acting for the United States and with the authorization and consent of the United States. The United States, any agency or instrumentality thereof, and any individual, firm, or corporation acting for the United States and with the authorization and consent of the United States, shall be subject to the provisions of this Act in the same manner and to the same extent as any nongovernmental entity.

The term “person” also includes any State, any instrumentality of a State, and any officer or employee of a State or instrumentality of a State acting in his or her official capacity. Any State, and any such instrumentality, officer, or employee, shall be subject to the provisions of this Act in the same manner and to the same extent as any non-governmental entity.

It is well settled that the United States government is a “person” within the meaning of §2(a). [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); *FBI v. Societe: “M.Brill & Co.”*, 172 USPQ 310, 313 (TTAB 1971). Therefore, the common names of, and acronyms for, United States government agencies and instrumentalities are considered persons. See *In re Peter S. Herrick P.A.*, 91 USPQ2d 1505, 1506-08 (TTAB 2009) (stating the statutory definition of “person” includes the United States and any agency or instrumentality thereof and concluding that “[t]he only entity the name ‘U.S. Customs Service’ could possibly identify is the government agency” formerly known as the United States Customs Service and now known as United States Customs and Border Protection); *NASA v. Record Chem. Co.*, 185 USPQ 563, 566 (TTAB 1975) (finding the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) is a juristic person); *FBI*, 172 USPQ at 313 (noting the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) is a juristic person).

1203.03(a)(ii) “Institutions”

The term “institution” has been broadly construed. See *In re Shinnecock Smoke Shop*, 571 F.3d 1171, 91 USPQ2d 1218, 1219 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (“[T]he ordinary meaning of ‘institution’ suggests the term is broad enough to include a self-governing Indian nation,” quoting *Black’s Law Dictionary* 813, 1133 (8th ed. 2004), which defines “institution” as “[a]n established organization,” and defines “organization” as a “body of persons ... formed for a common purpose”); *In re White*, 73 USPQ2d 1713, 1718 (TTAB 2004) (“each federally recognized Apache tribe is necessarily either a juristic person or an institution”); *In re Urbano*, 51 USPQ2d 1776, 1779 (TTAB 1999) (“[T]he entire organization which comprises the Olympic Games, as a whole, qualifies as an ‘institution’ within the meaning of Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act.

In addition to qualifying as a person, United States government agencies and instrumentalities, as identified by their common names and acronyms therefor, also may be considered institutions within the meaning of §2(a). See *In re Peter S. Herrick P.A.*, 91 USPQ2d 1505, 1506 (TTAB 2009) (“Institutions, as used in Section 2(a), include government agencies.”); *In re Cotter & Co.*, 228 USPQ 202, 204-05 (TTAB 1985) (finding the United States Military Academy is an institution and West Point or Westpoint “has come to be solely associated with and points uniquely to the United States Military Academy”). The common names of, and acronyms and terms for, United States government programs may also be considered institutions, depending on the evidence of record. See *In re N. Am. Free Trade Ass’n*, 43 USPQ2d 1282, 1285-86 (TTAB 1997) (finding that the “NAFTA is an institution, in the same way that the United Nations is an institution,” the Board noted that the “legislative history ... indicates that the reference to an ‘institution’ in Section 2(a) was designed to have an expansive scope.”); *NASA v. Record Chem. Co.*, 185 USPQ 563, 565 (TTAB 1975) (finding NASA’s Apollo space program is an institution).

Institutions do not have to be large, well known, or “national” to be protected from the registration of a mark that falsely suggests a connection with or disparages them, or brings them into contempt or disrepute. *Gavel Club v. Toastmasters Int’l*, 127 USPQ 88, 94 (TTAB 1960).

While the §2(a) prohibition against the registration of matter that may disparage or falsely suggest a connection with institutions, or bring them into contempt or disrepute, may not be applicable to a particular designation, many names, acronyms, titles, terms, and symbols are protected by other statutes or rules. See [TMEP § 1205.01](#) and [Appendix C](#) (setting forth a nonexhaustive list of United States statutes protecting designations of certain government agencies and instrumentalities).

1203.03(a)(iii) “National Symbols”

A “national symbol” is subject matter of unique and special significance that, because of its meaning, appearance, and/or sound, immediately suggests or refers to the country for which it stands. *In re Consol. Foods Corp.*, 187 USPQ 63, 64 (TTAB 1975) (noting national symbols include the bald eagle, Statue of Liberty, designation “Uncle Sam” and the unique human representation thereof, the heraldry and shield designs used in governmental offices, and certain uses of the letters “U.S.”). National symbols include the symbols of foreign countries as well as those of the United States. *In re Anti-Communist World Freedom Cong., Inc.*, 161 USPQ 304, 305 (TTAB 1969) .

“National symbols” cannot be equated with the “insignia” of nations, which are prohibited from registration under §2(b). As noted in *Liberty Mut. Ins. Co. v. Liberty Ins. Co. of Texas*, 185 F. Supp. 895, 908, 127 USPQ 312, 323 (E.D. Ark. 1960):

The Act ... does not put national symbols on a par with the flag, coat of arms, or other insignia of the United States, which may not in any event be made the subject matter of a trade or service mark. With regard to national symbols the statute provides merely that they shall not be disparaged or held up to contempt or disrepute, and shall not be used as falsely to suggest a connection between the holder of the mark and the symbol.

See [TMEP §1204](#) regarding insignia.

Trademark Act Section 2(a) does not prohibit registration of marks comprising national symbols; it only prohibits registration of matter that may disparage national symbols, falsely suggest a connection with them, or hold them up to contempt or disrepute. *Liberty Mut. Ins. Co.* , 185 F. Supp. at 908, 127 USPQ at 323 (finding marks comprising portion of the Statue of Liberty not to disparage, bring into contempt or disrepute, or falsely suggest a connection with the Statue of Liberty or the United States government, the Court “[a]ssuming without deciding” that the statue is a national symbol).

Designations have been held to be national symbols within the meaning of §2(a) in the following cases: *In re Anti-Communist World Freedom Cong.*, 161 USPQ 304 (holding a representation of a hammer and sickle to be a national symbol of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U.S.S.R.)); *In re Nat'l Collection & Credit Control, Inc.*, 152 USPQ 200, 201 n.2 (TTAB 1966) (“The American or bald eagle with wings extended is a well-known national symbol or emblem of the United States”).

Designations have been held not to be national symbols in the following cases: *In re Consol. Foods Corp.*, 187 USPQ 63 (TTAB 1975) (holding OSS, the acronym for the Office of Strategic Services, not to constitute a national symbol); *W. H. Snyder & Sons, Inc. v. Ladd*, 227 F. Supp. 185, 140 USPQ 647 (D.D.C. 1964) (holding HOUSE OF WINDSOR not to be a national symbol of England, but merely the name of its present reigning family); *NASA v. Bully Hill Vineyards, Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1671 (TTAB 1987) (holding SPACE SHUTTLE not to constitute a national symbol on the evidence of record, the Board also finding “shuttle” to be a generic term for a space vehicle or system); *Jacobs v. Int'l Multifoods Corp.*, 211 USPQ 165, 170-71 (TTAB 1981) , *aff'd on other grounds*, 668 F.2d 1234, 212 USPQ 641 (C.C.P.A. 1982) (“[H]istorical events such as the ‘BOSTON TEA PARTY’ ..., although undoubtedly associated with the American heritage, do not take on that unique and special significance of a ‘national symbol’ designed to be equated with and associated with a particular country.”); *In re Mohawk Air Serv. Inc.*, 196 USPQ 851, 854 (TTAB 1977) (stating MOHAWK is not immediately suggestive of the United States and, therefore, not a national symbol); *In re Gen. Mills, Inc.*, 169 USPQ 244 (TTAB 1971) (finding UNION JACK, which applicant was using on packages of frozen fish marked “English cut cod” and in its restaurant near representations of the British

national flag, did not suggest a particular country, the Board noting that it could consider only the matter for which registration was sought).

The name of a country is not a national symbol within the meaning of §2(a) of the Trademark Act, *In re Sweden Freezer Mfg. Co.*, 159 USPQ 246, 248-49 (TTAB 1968), nor does use of the name of a country as a mark, by itself, amount to deception, disparagement, or a “false connection” under §2(a). *In re Fortune Star Prods. Corp.*, 217 USPQ 277, 277 (TTAB 1982) .

The common names of, and acronyms for, government agencies and instrumentalities are not considered to be national symbols. *In re Consol. Foods*, 187 USPQ at 64 (OSS, acronym for the Office of Strategic Services, held not to be a national symbol, but merely to designate a particular (and long defunct) government agency, the Board contrasting national symbols with names and acronyms of government agencies: “National symbols’ ... are more enduring in time, ... and immediately conjure up the image of the country as a whole. Symbols of a country take on a special meaning and significance and are not so numerous as to dilute the special meaning and significance that each has.”)

While the prohibition of §2(a) against the registration of matter that may disparage or falsely suggest a connection with national symbols, or bring them into contempt or disrepute, may not be applicable to a particular designation, many names, acronyms, titles, terms, and symbols are protected by other statutes or rules. See [TMEP §1205.01](#) and [Appendix C](#).

1203.03(b) Disparagement, Bringing into Contempt, and Bringing into Disrepute

Section 2(a) prohibits the registration of a mark that consists of or comprises matter that may disparage, or bring into contempt or disrepute, persons, institutions, beliefs, or national symbols. See [TMEP §1203.03\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding persons, [TMEP §1203.03\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding institutions, and [TMEP §1203.03\(a\)\(iii\)](#) regarding national symbols.

In sustaining an opposition on this ground, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board stated as follows:

Disparagement is essentially a violation of one’s right of privacy – the right to be “let alone” from contempt or ridicule. See, *Carson v. Here’s Johnny Portable Toilets, Inc.*, 698 F.2d 831, 218 USPQ 1 (6th Cir. 1983). It has been defined as the publication of a statement which the publisher intends to be understood, or which the recipient reasonably should understand, as tending “to cast doubt upon the quality of another’s land, chattels, or intangible things.” Restatement (Second) of Torts §629 (1977).

Greyhound Corp. v. Both Worlds Inc., 6 USPQ2d 1635, 1639 (TTAB 1988) .

1203.03(b)(i) Elements of a §2(a) Disparagement Refusal

The Board applies one of two substantive tests in determining whether a proposed mark is disparaging. The test depends on the nature of the interest disparaged by the mark, that is, whether the interest is commercial or non-commercial (e.g., religious, ethnic, personal reputation, or national interest). Compare *In re Geller*, 751 F.3d 1355, 110 USPQ2d 1867 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (finding mark would be disparaging to a substantial composite of American Muslims), with *Greyhound Corp. v. Both Worlds Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1635 (TTAB 1988) (finding design of defecating dog disparaged a corporation that was strongly identified with a similar-looking running dog design mark).

In an ex parte case involving disparagement of a non-commercial interest, the following two-part test applies in determining whether a proposed mark is disparaging:

- (1) What is the likely meaning of the matter in question, taking into account not only dictionary definitions, but also the relationship of the matter to the other elements in the mark, the nature of the goods or services, and the manner in which the mark is used in the marketplace in connection with the goods or services; and
- (2) If that meaning is found to refer to identifiable persons, institutions, beliefs or national symbols, whether that meaning may be disparaging to a substantial composite of the referenced group.

See In re Geller, 751 F.3d at 1358, 110 USPQ2d at 1869; *In re Tam*, 108 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2013), cert. filed, No. 15-1293 (Apr. 20, 2016); *In re Lebanese Arak Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1215, 217 (TTAB 2010); *In re Squaw Valley Dev. Co.*, 80 USPQ2d 1264, 1267 (TTAB 2006) ; *Order Sons of Italy in Am. v. Memphis Mafia, Inc.*, 52 USPQ2d 1364, 1368 (TTAB 1999) ; *Harjo v. Pro-Football Inc.*, 50 USPQ2d 1705, 1740-41 (TTAB 1999) , *rev'd on other grounds*, 284 F. Supp. 2d 96, 68 USPQ2d 1225 (D.D.C. 2003).

In such cases, the examining attorney must make a prima facie showing that a substantial composite, although not necessarily a majority, of the referenced group would find the proposed mark, as used on or in connection with the relevant goods or services, to be disparaging in the context of contemporary attitudes. *See In re Geller* 751 F.3d at 1362, 110 USPQ2d at 1872; *In re Tam*, 108 USPQ2d at 1310; *Lebanese Arak*, 94 USPQ2d at 1218 (citing *In re Heeb Media LLC*, 89 USPQ2d 1071, 1074 (TTAB 2008)). In *Lebanese Arak*, the Board clarified that when the application of a mark to a product would offend the sensibilities of an ethnic or religious group, the proper ground for refusal is not under the clause of §2(a) that prohibits registration of matter that is “immoral” or “scandalous,” but under the clause that prohibits registration of matter that “may disparage” the affected person, belief, institution, or symbol, or may bring them into contempt or disrepute. 94 USPQ2d at 1217. Moreover, when religious beliefs or tenets are involved, the proper focus is on the group of persons that adhere to those beliefs or tenets. *Id.* The fact that an applicant may be a member of that group or has good intentions underlying its use of a term does not obviate the fact that a substantial composite of the referenced group would find the term objectionable. *In re Tam*, 108 USPQ2d at 1312 (citing *Heeb Media*, 89 USPQ2d at 1077). The prima facie showing shifts the burden to applicant for rebuttal. *Squaw Valley*, 80 USPQ2d at 1271.

In the more rare situation where disparagement relates to a commercial interest, such as disparaging a particular business or trademark owner, the following two-part test applies in determining whether a proposed mark is disparaging:

- (1) Whether the communication reasonably would be understood as referring to the commercial entity; and
- (2) Whether the communication is disparaging, that is, would be considered offensive or objectionable by a reasonable person of ordinary sensibilities.

See Greyhound Corp. v. Both Worlds Inc., 6 USPQ2d at 1639.

The question of disparagement must be considered in relation to the goods or services identified in the application and the manner of use in the marketplace. The mere fact that a term has several meanings, even when many may be innocuous, does not foreclose the possibility that the term is disparaging. *In re Tam*, 108 USPQ2d at 1310. In *Squaw Valley*, the terms SQUAW and SQUAW ONE were found to be disparaging when used in connection with clothing in Class 25 and retail store services in the field of sporting goods and equipment and clothing in Class 35, because the likely meaning of “Squaw” is an American Indian

woman or wife, and the examining attorney's evidence established prima facie that a substantial composite of Native Americans would consider the term to be offensive. 80 USPQ2d at 1276-77, 1279. However, these terms were found not to be disparaging when used in connection with ski-related equipment in Class 28, because the likely meaning of "Squaw" in relation to these goods was deemed to be applicant's Squaw Valley ski resort. *Id* at 1282.

1203.03(b)(ii) Disparagement, Bringing into Contempt, and Bringing into Disrepute: Case References

Disparagement was found in the following cases: *In re Tam*, 108 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2013), *cert. filed*, No. 15-1293 (Apr. 20, 2016) (finding THE SLANTS for live performances by a musical band to be disparaging to a substantial composite of people of Asian descent); *In re Lebanese Arak Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1215 (TTAB 2010) (finding KHORAN for wines to be disparaging because the public, in general, and Muslim Americans, in particular, would regard the mark as referring to the holy text of Islam, and given that Islamic authorities view alcohol as a prohibited substance, Muslims would find KHORAN used for wine as disparaging to themselves, their religion, and their beliefs); *In re Heeb Media LLC*, 89 USPQ2d 1071 (TTAB 2008) (finding HEEB for clothing and entertainment services to be disparaging since HEEB means a Jewish person, dictionary definitions unanimously support the derogatory nature of HEEB, evidence of record supports that a substantial composite of the referenced group, i.e., the Jewish community, will perceive HEEB as disparaging, and HEEB has no other meaning in relation to clothing or entertainment services); *Boston Red Sox Baseball Club Ltd. P'ship v. Sherman*, 88 USPQ2d 1581 (TTAB 2008) (finding SEX ROD to be disparaging because it is sexually vulgar and offensive and the public will associate it with opposer's mark RED SOX); *In re Squaw Valley Dev. Co.*, 80 USPQ2d 1264 (TTAB 2006) (finding SQUAW and SQUAW ONE to be disparaging when used in connection with clothing in Class 25 and retail store services in the field of sporting goods and equipment and clothing in Class 35, because the likely meaning of "Squaw" in relation to these goods or services is an American Indian woman or wife, and the examining attorney's evidence established prima facie that a substantial composite of Native Americans would consider the term to be offensive; however, these terms were found not to be disparaging when used in connection with ski-related equipment in Class 28, because the likely meaning of "Squaw" in relation to these goods was deemed to be applicant's Squaw Valley ski resort); *Greyhound Corp. v. Both Worlds Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1635, 1639-40 (TTAB 1988) (finding design of dog defecating, for clothing, to disparage, and bring into contempt or disrepute, opposer's running dog symbol, the Board finding the evidence of record "sufficient to show prima facie that this design [the running dog symbol] is, in effect, an alter ego of opposer which points uniquely and unmistakably to opposer's persona."); *In re Anti-Communist World Freedom Cong., Inc.*, 161 USPQ 304 (TTAB 1969) (holding design of an "X" superimposed over a hammer and sickle to disparage, and hold in contempt and disrepute, a national symbol of the U.S.S.R.).

Disparagement was not found in the following cases: *Boswell v. Mavety Media Grp. Ltd.*, 52 USPQ2d 1600 (TTAB 1999) (finding BLACK TAIL used on adult entertainment magazines, not to be disparaging of women in general, or African-American women in particular, nor to bring those groups into contempt or disrepute); *Order Sons of Italy in Am. v. Memphis Mafia Inc.*, 52 USPQ2d 1364 (TTAB 1999) (finding THE MEMPHIS MAFIA for entertainment services not to be matter that disparages Italian-Americans or bring them into contempt or disrepute); *In re In Over Our Heads Inc.*, 16 USPQ2d 1653, 1654 (TTAB 1990) (finding MOONIES and design incorporating a "buttocks caricature," for dolls whose pants can be dropped, not to be disparaging matter that is unregistrable under §2(a), the Board finding that the mark "would, when used on a doll, most likely be perceived as indicating that the doll 'moons,' and would not be perceived as referencing members of The Unification Church.").

1203.03(c) False Suggestion of a Connection

Section 2(a) prohibits the registration of a mark that consists of or comprises matter that may falsely suggest a connection with persons, institutions, beliefs, or national symbols. See [TMEP §1203.03\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding persons, [TMEP §1203.03\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding institutions, [TMEP §1203.03\(a\)\(iii\)](#) regarding national symbols, and [TMEP §1203.03](#) for information about the legislative history of §2(a).

1203.03(c)(i) Elements of a §2(a) False Suggestion of a Connection Refusal

To establish that a proposed mark falsely suggests a connection with a person or an institution, it must be shown that:

- 1 the mark is the same as, or a close approximation of, the name or identity previously used by another person or institution;
- 2 the mark would be recognized as such, in that it points uniquely and unmistakably to that person or institution;
- 3 the person or institution named by the mark is not connected with the activities performed by the applicant under the mark; and
- 4 the fame or reputation of the person or institution is such that, when the mark is used with the applicant's goods or services, a connection with the person or institution would be presumed.

In re Pedersen, 109 USPQ 2d 1185, 1188-89 (TTAB 2013) ; *In re Jackson Int'l Trading Co. Kurt D. Bruhl GmbH & Co. KG*, 103 USPQ2d 1417, 1419 (TTAB 2012) ; *In re Peter S. Herrick, P.A.*, 91 USPQ2d 1505, 1507 (TTAB 2009) ; *In re MC MC S.r.l.*, 88 USPQ2d 1378, 1379 (TTAB 2008); *Ass'n Pour La Def. et la Promotion de L'Oeuvre de Marc Chagall dite Comite Marc Chagall v. Bondarchuk*, 82 USPQ2d 1838, 1842 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re White*, 80 USPQ2d 1654, 1658 (TTAB 2006); *In re White*, 73 USPQ2d 1713, 1718 (TTAB 2004) ; *In re Nuclear Research Corp.*, 16 USPQ2d 1316, 1317 (TTAB 1990) ; *Buffett v. Chi-Chi's, Inc.*, 226 USPQ 428, 429 (TTAB 1985) ; *In re Cotter & Co.*, 228 USPQ 202, 204 (TTAB 1985) ; *see also Univ. of Notre Dame du Lac v. J.C. Gourmet Food Imps. Co.*, 703 F.2d 1372, 1375-77, 217 USPQ 505, 508-10 (Fed. Cir. 1983) (providing foundational principles for the current four-part test used to determine the existence of a false connection).

With regard to the first element, “[a] nickname or an informal reference, even one created by the public, can qualify as an entity's ‘identity,’ thereby giving rise to a protectable interest.” *Bos. Athletic Ass'n v. Velocity, LLC*, 117 USPQ2d 1492, 1496 (TTAB2015). In addition, the fact that a term identifies both a particular group of people and the language spoken by some of the members of the group is not evidence that it fails to identify the group. *In re Pedersen*, 109 USPQ 2d at 1190 (rejecting applicant's argument that because the term LAKOTA identifies a language, it does not approximate the name or identity of a people or institution).

The requirement that the proposed mark would be recognized as pointing uniquely and unmistakably to the person or institution does not mean that the term itself must be unique. Rather, the question is whether, as used on the goods or services in question, consumers would view the mark as pointing uniquely to petitioner, or whether they would perceive it to have a different meaning. *Hornby v. TJX Cos., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d 1411, 1427 (TTAB 2008) (in granting the petition to cancel registration of the mark TWIGGY, Board found that, at the time of registration in 2000, the mark TWIGGY on children's clothing would be recognized as pointing uniquely and unmistakably to petitioner, who was recognized as a famous British model, and that consumers would presume an association with petitioner). In addition, unassociated third-party use of a term does not in and of itself establish that that the term does not point uniquely or unmistakably to a particular people or

institution. *In re Pedersen*, 109 USPQ2d at 1196 (finding consumer exposure to third-party use of LAKOTA on products and services unrelated to applicant's insufficient to show that applicant's use of LAKOTA does not point uniquely to the Lakota people); *Hornby v. TJX Cos.*, 87 USPQ2d at 1427 (finding evidence of third-party registrations showing registration of the term "TWIGGY" for goods unrelated to children's clothing to have "no probative value").

A connection with an entity is established when the record establishes a specific endorsement, sponsorship, or the like of the particular goods and services, whether written or implied. *In re White*, 80 USPQ2d 1654, 1660-61 (TTAB 2006). In *In re Sloppy Joe's Int'l Inc.*, 43 USPQ2d 1350, 1353-54 (TTAB 1997), the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board held that Ernest Hemingway's friendship with the original owner of applicant's bar, his frequenting the bar, and his use of the back room as an office did not establish the kind of "connection" that entitled applicant to register a mark consisting in part of a portrait of Hemingway. Rather, a commercial connection, such as an ownership interest or commercial endorsement or sponsorship of applicant's services would be necessary to entitle the applicant to registration. *Id.*

If it is unclear whether the person or institution is connected with the goods sold or services performed by the applicant, the examining attorney must make an explicit inquiry under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). If the examining attorney independently confirms that the person or institution is connected with the goods sold or services performed by the applicant, a Note to the File must be entered in the record to reflect that no further action is required as to the issue of false suggestion of a connection. See [TMEP §710.02](#).

A refusal on this basis requires, by implication, that the person or institution with which a connection is falsely suggested must be the prior user. *In re Nuclear Research*, 16 USPQ2d at 1317; *In re Mohawk Air Servs. Inc.*, 196 USPQ 851, 854-55 (TTAB 1977). However, it is not necessary that the prior user ever commercially exploit the name as a trademark or in a manner analogous to trademark use. *In re Pedersen*, 109 USPQ2d at 1193. A false suggestion of a connection may be found when the party's right to control the use of its identity is violated, even if there is no juristic entity having the authority to authorize use of the mark. *Id.*

Intent to identify a party or trade on its goodwill is not a required element of a §2(a) claim of false suggestion of an association with such party. *S & L Acquisition Co. v. Helene Arpels, Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 1221, 1224 (TTAB 1987); *Consol. Natural Gas Co. v. CNG Fuel Sys., Ltd.*, 228 USPQ 752, 754 (TTAB 1985). However, evidence of such an intent could be highly persuasive that the public would make the intended false association. *Univ. of Notre Dame du Lac*, 703 F.2d at 1377, 217 USPQ at 509, *aff'd* 213 USPQ 594 (TTAB 1982).

1203.03(c)(ii) Government Agencies and Instrumentalities

Registration of matter that may falsely suggest a connection with a United States government agency or instrumentality is prohibited under §2(a). See [TMEP §1203.03\(c\)\(i\)](#) (setting out the four-element test). Some names, acronyms, titles, terms, and symbols of United States government agencies or instrumentalities are also protected by separate statute. See [TMEP §1205.01](#) for information about statutorily protected matter and [Appendix C](#) for a nonexhaustive list of United States statutes protecting designations of certain government agencies and instrumentalities. However, if the mark references a United States government agency or instrumentality in such a manner that a connection with it would not be presumed, a refusal may not be necessary. Instead, a disclaimer may be required, if appropriate. See below for a discussion of situations in which a disclaimer is applicable.

Registration must be refused if the nature of the mark and the nature of the goods or services is such that a United States government agency or instrumentality would be presumed to be the source or sponsorship of

the applicant's goods or services. *In re Peter S. Herrick, P.A.*, 91 USPQ2d 1505, 1507-08 (TTAB 2009) (finding "U.S. CUSTOMS SERVICE" is a close approximation of the former name of the government agency, United States Customs Service, which is now known as the United States Customs and Border Protection but which is still referred to as the U.S. Customs Service by the public and the agency itself, that the seal design in the proposed mark is nearly identical to the seal used by the former United States Customs Service, that the only meaning the "U.S. Customs Service" has is to identify the government agency, and that a connection between applicant's attorney services and the activities performed by the United States Customs and Border Protection would be presumed); *In re Nat'l Intelligence Acad.*, 190 USPQ 570, 572 (TTAB 1976) (stating NATIONAL INTELLIGENCE ACADEMY, for educational and instructional services in intelligence gathering for law enforcement officers, falsely suggests a connection with the United States government since intelligence gathering is a known function of a number of government agencies and "[a] normal outgrowth and development of such activities would be the training of officers in intelligence gathering"); *In re Teasdale Packing Co.*, 137 USPQ 482 (TTAB 1963) (holding U. S. AQUA and design unregistrable under §2(a) on the ground that purchasers of applicant's canned drinking water would be misled into assuming approval or sponsorship by the United States government in view of the nature of the mark, including a red, white, and blue shield design, and the nature of the goods, the Board noting a program for stocking emergency supplies of water in fallout shelters and the setting of standards for drinking water by United States government agencies).

The record must include evidence showing that the designation in the mark refers to the agency or instrumentality and that the goods or services are such that a connection with that agency or instrumentality would be presumed, particularly when it is not readily apparent that the wording or acronym in the mark refers to the agency or instrumentality. *Compare In re Mohawk Air Serv. Inc.*, 196 USPQ 851, 855 (TTAB 1977) (holding MOHAWK 298, for airplanes, to not falsely suggest a connection with the U.S. Army and the Army's use of the term "Mohawk" to identify one of its airplanes, since there was no evidence of record that the Army continuously used the term since 1958, that the public was aware of such use, or that the public would associate "Mohawk" named airplanes with the U.S. Army), *with In re U.S. Bicentennial Soc'y*, 197 USPQ 905, 906-07 (TTAB 1978) (holding U.S. BICENTENNIAL SOCIETY, for ceremonial swords, to falsely suggest a connection with the American Revolution Bicentennial Commission and the United States government, based on applicant's claims in the specimen of record and the fact that "swords have historically been presented by grateful sovereigns and governments to persons who have been honored by such gifts and that ceremonial swords are on display in the museum at Mt. Vernon").

Furthermore, the question of the registrability of a mark under §2(a) "is determined in each case by the nature of the goods or services in connection with which the mark is used and the impact of such use on the purchasers of goods or services of this type." *NASA v. Record Chemical Co. Inc.*, 185 USPQ 563, 568 (TTAB 1975). Thus, the identified goods or services must be scrutinized in the context of the current marketplace to determine whether they are of the type to be offered by United States government agencies and instrumentalities. For instance, if the evidence supports a finding that it is commonplace for government agencies to sell or license the sale of consumer merchandise featuring agency names or acronyms, such as clothing, toys, key chains, and calendars, a false connection with a government agency would be presumed if that agency name or acronym is used in connection with those goods and, therefore, the mark should be refused registration under §2(a).

The examining attorney may contact the Trademark Law Library regarding resource materials relating to government agencies and instrumentalities. The examining attorney may also require the applicant to provide additional information about the mark and/or the goods or services, under Trademark Rule 2.61(b). [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

Disclaiming the name of, or acronym for, the United States government agency or instrumentality to which the mark refers generally will not overcome the §2(a) refusal. See [TMEP §1213.03\(a\)](#) regarding unregistrable components of marks. If the applicant is the government agency or instrumentality referenced in the mark, no disclaimer of the name or acronym of the agency or instrumentality is necessary because the agency or instrumentality retains the rights to its name or acronym, unless specifically prohibited by statute. A disclaimer of the relevant portion of the mark is required when (i) the applicant is not the government agency or instrumentality referenced in the mark, (ii) the nature of the goods or services is such that the government agency name or acronym is used in a descriptive manner to describe the identified goods or services, and (iii) the mark does not otherwise establish a false connection with the named government agency or instrumentality. For example, the wording “homeland security” in a mark may refer to the United States government agency responsible for handling terrorist threats on American soil or it may be used descriptively to describe actions taken to protect against terrorist attacks. The appropriateness of disclaiming “homeland security” will depend on examination of the mark as a whole in the context of the goods or services of record.

The §2(a) false connection of a suggestion refusal and the procedures stated above also apply to marks containing names of, and acronyms and terms for, United States government programs (e.g., Medicare), military projects (e.g., BigDog), and quasi-government organizations (e.g., Smithsonian Institution), even if such programs, projects, and organizations are not protected by separate statute.

1203.03(c)(iii) False Suggestion of a Connection: Case References

False suggestion of a connection was found in the following cases: *In re Shinnecock Smoke Shop*, 571 F.3d 1171, 91 USPQ2d 1218 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (holding SHINNECOCK BRAND FULL FLAVOR and SHINNECOCK BRAND LIGHTS, both for cigarettes, falsely suggest a connection with the Shinnecock Indian Nation); *In re Sauer*, 27 USPQ2d 1073 (TTAB 1993) , *aff'd per curiam*, 26 F.3d 140 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (finding registration of BO BALL for oblong shaped leather ball with white stitching properly refused under §2(a), since use of “Bo” would be recognized by purchasers as reference to football and baseball player Bo Jackson, and there was no connection between Jackson and applicant); *In re Jackson Int'l Trading Co. Kurt D. Bruhl GmbH & Co. KG*, 103 USPQ2d 1417 (TTAB 2012) (affirming §2(a) refusal to register the mark BENNY GOODMAN COLLECTION THE FINEST QUALITY (stylized) for fragrance and cosmetics because the mark falsely suggests a connection with the deceased musician Benny Goodman; the record showed that Benny Goodman’s estate has a business representative that grants people the use of his name and/or persona); *In re Peter S. Herrick, P.A.*, 91 USPQ2d 1505 (TTAB 2009) (Board affirmed §2(a) refusal, finding U.S. CUSTOMS SERVICE and seal design for attorney services falsely suggests a connection with the government agency formerly known as the United States Customs Service and now known as the United States Customs and Border Protection); *Hornby v. TJX Cos., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d 1411 (TTAB 2008) (affirming refusal of registration of TWIGGY for children’s clothing, on the ground that it would falsely suggest a connection with the internationally known British model and actress who was a major celebrity in the late 1960s, finding that she retained a sufficient degree of fame or reputation that a connection would still be presumed by consumers seeing the mark TWIGGY on children’s clothing as of the date on which respondent’s registration issued in 2000); *Association Pour La Def. et la Promotion de L'Oeuvre de Marc Chagall dite Comite Marc Chagall v. Bondarchuk*, 82 USPQ2d 1838 (TTAB 2007) (granting petition to cancel registration of MARC CHAGALL for vodka because the totality of the evidence of record established a false suggestion of a connection with the painter Marc Chagall); *In re White*, 80 USPQ2d 1654 (TTAB 2006) (affirming refusal of MOHAWK for cigarettes under §2(a), on the ground that it would falsely suggest a connection with the federally recognized tribe the St. Regis Band of Mohawk Indians of New York); *In re White*, 73 USPQ2d 1713 (TTAB 2004) (holding APACHE, for cigarettes, falsely suggests a connection with the nine federally recognized Apache tribes); *In re Urbano*, 51 USPQ2d 1776 (TTAB 1999) (holding SYDNEY 2000, used for advertising and business services and communication services, falsely suggests connection with Olympic Games, since general public would recognize phrase as referring unambiguously

to Olympic Games to be held in Sydney, Australia, in 2000; entire organization that comprises Olympic games qualifies as “institution.”); *In re N. Am. Free Trade Ass’n*, 43 USPQ2d 1282 (TTAB 1997) (holding NAFTA, used on “promotion of trade and investment” services, falsely suggests connection with North American Free Trade Agreement; NAFTA qualifies as institution because it encompasses treaty, supplemental agreements, and various commissions, committees and offices created by those documents); *In re Sloppy Joe’s Int’l Inc.*, 43 USPQ2d 1350 (TTAB 1997) (holding use of mark SLOPPY JOE’S, with design that includes portrait of Ernest Hemingway, falsely suggests connection with deceased writer); *Bd. of Tr. of Univ. of Alabama v. BAMA-Werke Curt Baumann*, 231 USPQ 408 (TTAB 1986) (granting petition to cancel registration of BAMA, for shoes, slippers, stockings, socks, and insoles, and finding that the evidence of record indicated that BAMA points uniquely to the University of Alabama and thus falsely suggests a connection with the University); *In re Cotter & Co.*, 228 USPQ 202 (TTAB 1985) (holding WESTPOINT, for shotguns and rifles, to falsely suggest a connection with an institution, the United States Military Academy); *Buffett v. Chi-Chi’s, Inc.*, 226 USPQ 428 (TTAB 1985) (denying applicant’s motion for summary judgment since evidence of record supported an association of MARGARITAVILLE with the public persona of opposer Jimmy Buffett); *In re U.S. Bicentennial Soc’y*, 197 USPQ 905 (TTAB 1978) (holding U.S. BICENTENNIAL SOCIETY, for ceremonial swords, to falsely suggest a connection with the American Revolution Bicentennial Commission and the United States government); *In re Nat’l Intelligence Acad.*, 190 USPQ 570 (TTAB 1976) (holding NATIONAL INTELLIGENCE ACADEMY, for educational and instructional services in intelligence gathering for law enforcement officers, to falsely suggest a connection with the United States government); *In re Nat’l Collection & Credit Control*, 152 USPQ 200 (TTAB 1966) (holding the word “national” along with an outline representation of the United States or a representation of an eagle used for collection and credit services falsely suggests a connection with United States government).

False suggestion of a connection was not found in the following cases: *Univ. of Notre Dame du Lac v. J.C. Gourmet Food Imps. Co.*, 703 F.2d 1372, 1377, 217 USPQ 505, 509 (Fed. Cir. 1983), *aff’d* 213 USPQ 594 (TTAB 1982) (holding NOTRE DAME and design, for cheese, not to falsely suggest a connection with the University of Notre Dame. “As the Board noted, ‘Notre Dame’ is not a name solely associated with the University. It serves to identify a famous and sacred religious figure and is used in the names of churches dedicated to Notre Dame, such as the Cathedral of Notre Dame in Paris, France. Thus it cannot be said that the only ‘person’ which the name possibly identifies is the University and that the mere use of NOTRE DAME by another appropriates its identity.”); *Bos. Athletic Ass’n v. Velocity, LLC*, 117 USPQ2d 1492, 1496-99 (TTAB 2016) (finding applicant’s use of MARATHON MONDAY on clothing does not falsely suggest a connection with opposer because the evidence did not establish that MARATHON MONDAY is perceived by the relevant public as a close approximation of the name or identity of opposer, and frequent and various third-party uses of MARATHON MONDAY indicated that the term does not point uniquely and unmistakably to opposer); *In re MC MC S.r.l.*, 88 USPQ2d 1378, 1381 (TTAB 2008) (reversing §2(a) refusal of MARIA CALLAS for jewelry and other goods, because the record contained contradictory evidence as to the existence of anyone currently possessing rights in the name “Maria Callas,” and resolving doubt in favor of applicant “removes the possibility that we might be denying registration to an applicant based on non-existent rights,” and because a person or entity claiming rights in a name or persona has recourse since §2(a) is not time barred); *In re Los Angeles Police Revolver & Athletic Club, Inc.*, 69 USPQ2d 1630 (TTAB 2004) (holding slogan TO PROTECT AND TO SERVE, used by applicant Los Angeles Police Revolver and Athletic Club, Inc., does not *falsely* suggest a connection with the Los Angeles Police Department, where evidence showed an actual longstanding commercial connection, publicly acknowledged and endorsed by both parties); *Internet Inc. v. Corp. for Nat’l Research Initiatives*, 38 USPQ2d 1435 (TTAB 1996) (holding cancellation petitioners failed to state claim for relief where they have not alleged, and cannot reasonably allege, that the term INTERNET points uniquely and unmistakably to their own identity or persona); *Ritz Hotel Ltd. v. Ritz Closet Seat Corp.*, 17 USPQ2d 1466, 1471 (TTAB 1990) (holding RIT-Z in stylized form, for toilet seats, not to falsely suggest a connection with opposer, the Board observing that

there was “no evidence of record directed to showing a connection of applicant’s mark with opposer corporation, The Ritz Hotel Limited”); *In re Nuclear Research Corp.*, 16 USPQ2d 1316 (TTAB 1990) (holding NRC and design, for radiation and chemical agent monitors, electronic testers, and nuclear gauges, not to falsely suggest a connection with the U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission in view of applicant’s use of NRC long prior to the inception of that agency); *NASA v. Bully Hill Vineyards, Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1671, 1676 (TTAB 1987) (dismissing opposition to the registration of SPACE SHUTTLE for wines and finding “shuttle” to be a generic term for a space vehicle or system. “Where a name claimed to be appropriated does not point uniquely and unmistakably to that party’s personality or ‘persona,’ there can be no false suggestion.”); *In re Mohawk Air Serv. Inc.*, 196 USPQ 851 (TTAB 1977) (holding MOHAWK 298 to not falsely suggest a connection with the U.S. Army and the Army’s use of the term “Mohawk” to identify one of its airplanes, since there was no evidence of record that the Army continuously used that term since 1958, that the public is aware of such use, or that the public would associate “Mohawk” named airplanes with the Army); *NASA v. Record Chem. Co. Inc.*, 185 USPQ 563 (TTAB 1975) (dismissing opposition to registrations of APOLLO 8 for moth preventatives and mothproofing agent-air freshener because, while NASA is a juristic person and prior user of the terms APOLLO and APOLLO 8 for its space missions, it is unlikely that the average purchaser of applicant’s goods would assume NASA to be source or sponsorship of the goods or mistakenly believe that the goods are of NASA space exploration technology); *FBI v. Societe: “M.Bril & Co.”*, 172 USPQ 310 (TTAB 1971) (dismissing opposition to registration of FBI FABRICATION BRIL INTERNATIONAL for clothing since it is unreasonable that the public would assume applicant’s goods originate with, are sponsored or endorsed by, or associated with the Federal Bureau of Investigation, finding that “FBI” represents “Fabrication Bril International” and purchasers will see the entire composite mark on the goods and not just “FBI,” and noting that both the United States government and the Federal Bureau of Investigation are juristic persons); *In re Horwitt*, 125 USPQ 145, 146 (TTAB 1960) (holding U. S. HEALTH CLUB registrable for vitamin tablets. “Considering both the nature of the mark and the goods, it is concluded that the purchasing public would not be likely to mistakenly assume that the United States Government is operating a health club, that it is distributing vitamins, or that it has approved applicant’s goods.”); *Lucien Piccard Watch Corp. v. Since 1868 Crescent Corp.*, 314 F. Supp. 329, 165 USPQ 459 (S.D.N.Y. 1970) (holding DA VINCI not to falsely suggest a connection with the deceased artist Leonardo Da Vinci).

1204 Refusal on Basis of Flag, Coat of Arms, or Other Insignia of United States, State or Municipality, or Foreign Nation

15 U.S.C. §1052 (Extract)

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it ... (b) Consists of or comprises the flag or coat of arms or other insignia of the United States, or of any State or municipality, or of any foreign nation, or any simulation thereof.

Section 2(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#), bars the registration on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register of marks that consist of or comprise (whether consisting solely of, or having incorporated in them) the flag, coat of arms, or other insignia of the United States, of any state or municipality of the United States, or of any foreign nation. *See Ceccato v. Manifattura Lane Gaetano Marzotto & Figli, S.p.A.*, 32 USPQ2d 1192, 1196 (TTAB 1994) (noting that “it would appear that the reference to ‘municipality’ in the Statute is to a municipality in the United States, and that prohibition of registration with respect to foreign coats of arms, etc., is to those of the countries themselves, rather than to those of the states or municipalities of the foreign countries”). Moreover, registration of all such official insignia is barred regardless of the identity of the applicant, that is, the statutory prohibition allows no exception even when the applicant is a government entity seeking to register its own flag, coat of arms, or other insignia. *In re City of Houston*, 731 F.3d 1326, 108 USPQ2d 1226 (Fed. Cir. 2013).

Section 2(b) also bars the registration of marks that consist of or comprise any simulation of such symbols. “Simulation” refers to “something that gives the appearance or effect or has the characteristics of an original item.” Whether a mark comprises a simulation must be determined from a visual comparison of the proposed mark vis-à-vis replicas of the flag, coat of arms, or other insignia in question. *In re Waltham Watch Co.*, 179 USPQ 59, 60 (TTAB 1973) . Focus must be on the general recollection of the flag or insignia by purchasers, “without a careful analysis and side-by-side comparison.” *In re Advance Indus. Sec., Inc.*, 194 USPQ 344, 346 (TTAB 1977) .

The incorporation in a mark of individual or distorted features that are merely suggestive of flags, coats of arms, or other insignia does not bar registration under §2(b). *See Knorr-Nahrmittel A.G. v. Havland Int’l, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 827, 833 (TTAB 1980) (holding flag designs incorporated in the proposed mark NOR-KING and design not recognizable as the flags of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, the Board finding that “[a]ll that the record reflects is that the mark contains a representation of certain flags, but not the flag or flags of any particular nation”); *Advance Indus. Sec.*, 194 USPQ at 346 (finding proposed mark comprising a gold and brown triangular shield design with the words “ADVANCE SECURITY” predominately displayed in the upper central portion of the mark “creates an overall commercial impression distinctly different from the Coat of Arms”); *Waltham Watch Co.*, 179 USPQ at 60 (finding mark comprising wording with the design of a globe and flags not to be a simulation of the flags of Switzerland and Great Britain, the Board stating that “although the flags depicted in applicant’s mark incorporate common elements of flag designs such as horizontal or vertical lines, crosses or stars, they are readily distinguishable from any of the flags of the nations alluded to by the examiner.”).

Section 2(b) differs from the provision of §2(a) regarding national symbols (*see* [TMEP §1203.03\(b\)](#)) in that §2(b) requires no additional element, such as disparagement or a false suggestion of a connection, to preclude registration.

1204.01 Flags and Simulations of Flags

1204.01(a) Flags and Simulations of Flags are Refused

Registration must be refused under §2(b) if the design sought to be registered includes a true representation of the flag of the United States, any state, municipality, or foreign nation, or is a simulation thereof. A refusal must be issued if the design would be perceived by the public as a flag, regardless of whether other matter appears with or on the flag. The examining attorney should consider the following factors, in regard to both color drawings and black-and-white drawings, to determine whether the design is perceived as a flag: (1) color; (2) presentation of the mark; (3) words or other designs on the drawing; and (4) use of the mark on the specimen(s).

Generally, a refusal should be made where a black-and-white drawing contains unmistakable features of the flag, contains features of the flag along with indicia of a nation, or is shown on the specimen in the appropriate colors of that national flag. For example, merely amending a "red, white, and blue" American flag to a black-and-white American flag will not overcome a §2(b) refusal. However, black-and-white drawings of flags that consist only of common geometric shapes should not be refused unless there are other indicia of the country on the drawing or on the specimens. For example, a black-and-white drawing showing three horizontal rectangles would not be refused as the Italian or French flag unless there is something else on the drawing or on the specimen that supports the refusal.

Examples of Situations Where Registration Should Be Refused. The following are examples of situations where registration should be refused, because all significant features of the flag are present or a simulation of the flag is used with state or national indicia:





The wording "That's Italian" emphasizes that the banner design is a simulation of a flag.



**SWISS
GUARD**

This design is refused because the word SWISS emphasizes that the design is intended to be a simulation of the Swiss flag.



This black-and-white mark is refused because the word Texas emphasizes that the design is intended to be the state flag of Texas.

See [TMPEP §§1205.01\(d\)-1205.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#) regarding procedures for marks containing the Swiss Confederation coat of arms or flag.

1204.01(b) Stylized Flag Designs are not Refused under §2(b)

Marks containing elements of flags in a stylized or incomplete form are not refused under §2(b). The mere presence of some significant elements of flags, such as stars and stripes (U.S. flag) or a maple leaf (Canadian flag), does not necessarily warrant a refusal.

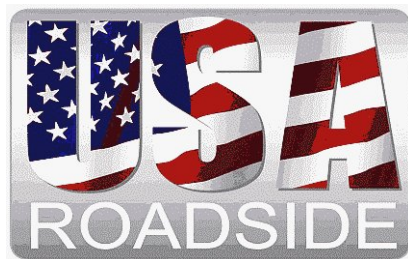
If the flag design fits one of the following scenarios, the examining attorney should not refuse registration under §2(b):

- The flag design is used to form a letter, number, or design.

- The flag is substantially obscured by words or designs.
- The design is not in a shape normally seen in flags.
- The flag design appears in a color different from that normally used in the national flag.
- A significant feature is missing or changed.

Examples. The following are examples of stylized designs that are registrable under §2(b):

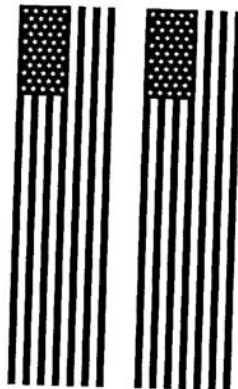
Flag Forms Another Design, Number, or Letter - No §2(b) Refusal



Flag Is Substantially Obscured By Other Matter - No §2(b) Refusal



Flag Design Is Not In the Normal Flag Shape - No §2(b) Refusal

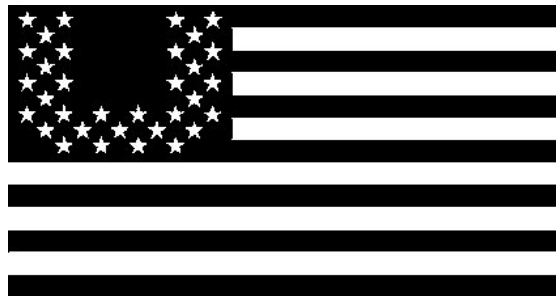


Significant Feature of the Flag Is In a Different Color - No §2(b) Refusal



NOTE: Stripes in flag are red, white, and green.

Significant Feature Is Changed - No §2(b) Refusal



1204.01(c) Case Law Interpreting "Simulation of Flag"

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board found that no simulation of a flag existed in the following cases: *In re Am. Red Magen David for Israel*, 222 USPQ 266, 267 (TTAB 1984) ("As to the State of Israel, it is noted that the flag of that nation consists essentially of a light blue Star of David on a white background. In the absence of any evidence that the State of Israel is identified by a six-pointed star in any other color, we conclude that only a light blue six-pointed star would be recognized as the insignia thereof."); *In re Health Maint. Orgs., Inc.*, 188 USPQ 473 (TTAB 1975) (holding dark cross, with legs of equal length, having a caduceus symmetrically imposed thereon sufficiently distinctive from Greek red cross and flag of Swiss Confederation).

1204.01(d) Description of the Mark

The description of the mark should make it clear that the design is a stylized version of the national flag, if accurate. For example, a statement that "the mark consists of the stylized American flag" or "the mark consists of the stylized American flag in the shape of the letters USA" are acceptable descriptions.

1204.01(e) Flags Not Presently Used as National Flags

Flags of former countries, states, or municipalities are not refused under §2(b). For example, the flags of now non-existent countries such as the German Democratic Republic (East Germany) or Yugoslavia are not refused. However, former flags of existing countries, states, or municipalities are refused under §2(b). For example, the original flag of the United States representing the 13 colonies should be refused.

1204.02 Government Insignia

1204.02(a) Designs that are Insignia Under §2(b) Must Be Refused

Flags and coats of arms are specific designs formally adopted to serve as emblems of governmental authority. The wording "other insignia" should not be interpreted broadly, but should be considered to include only those emblems and devices that also represent governmental authority and that are of the same general class and character as flags and coats of arms.

The following are insignia of the United States for purposes of §2(b):

- Great Seal of the United States
- Presidential Seal
- Seals of Government Agencies

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has construed the statutory language as follows:

[T]he wording "or other insignia of the United States" must be restricted in its application to insignia of the same general class as "the flag or coats of arms" of the United States. Since both the flag and coat or [sic] arms are emblems of national authority it seems evident that other insignia of national authority such as the Great Seal of the United States, the Presidential Seal, and seals of government departments would be equally prohibited registration under Section 2(b). On the other hand, it appears equally evident that department insignia which are merely used to identify a service or facility of the Government are not insignia of national authority and that they therefore do not fall within the general prohibitions of this section of the Statute.

In re U.S. Dep't of the Interior, 142 USPQ 506, 507 (TTAB 1964) (finding logo comprising the words "NATIONAL PARK SERVICE" and "Department of the Interior," with depiction of trees, mountains, and a buffalo, surrounded by an arrowhead design, not to be an insignia of the United States). The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board reaffirmed this interpretation in *In re Peter S. Herrick, P.A.*, 91 USPQ2d 1505 (TTAB 2009), by affirming the §2(b) refusal since applicant's seal design was virtually identical to the seal used by the United States Department of the Treasury.

1204.02(b) Examples of Insignia That Should Be Refused

Examples: The following are examples of insignia that should be refused under §2(b):

Great Seal of the United States



Seal of The President of The United States



The Official Seal of a Government Agency



1204.02(c) Examples of Designs That Should Not Be Refused

Designs that do not rise to the level of being "emblems of national authority" should not be refused. The following are examples of designs that are not barred from registration under §2(b):

Designs That Identify Governmental Departments - No §2(b) Refusal





Monuments, Statues, Buildings - No §2(b) Refusal





Objects Used By The Government - No §2(b) Refusal





Words or Initials that Identify People or Departments in The Government - No §2(b) Refusal

- U.S. Park Ranger
- U.S. Department of Transportation
- DOD - Department of Defense

1204.02(d) Case Law Interpreting Insignia Under §2(b)

The following cases provide examples of matter that was held *not* to be government insignia under §2(b):

- (1) *Department insignia that shows a service or facility of a federal department* are not refused registration under §2(b). *See In re United States Dep't of the Interior*, 142 USPQ 506, 507 (TTAB 1964) (finding insignia of the National Park Service registrable).
- (2) *Monuments, statues, or buildings associated with the United States such as the White House, Washington Monument, and Statue of Liberty*, are not refused registration under §2(b). *See Liberty Mut. Ins. Co. v. Liberty Ins. Co. of Texas*, 185 F. Supp. 895, 908, 127 USPQ 312, 323 (E.D. Ark. 1960) ("That the Statue of Liberty is not a part of the 'insignia of the United States' is too clear to require discussion.").
- (3) *Designs of objects used by the U.S. government* are not refused registration under §2(b). *See In re Brumberger Co., Inc.*, 200 USPQ 475 (TTAB 1978) (finding representation of the U.S. mailbox was not to be an insignia of the United States. However, the Board affirmed a refusal to register the mark under §2(a) because of a false connection with the United States Postal Service).
- (4) *Initials or words that identify people or departments of a government agency*. Letters that merely identify people and things associated with a particular agency or department of the United States government, instead of representing the authority of the government or the nation as a whole, are generally not considered to be "insignia of the United States" within the meaning of §2(b). *See U.S. Navy v. United States Mfg. Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 1254 (TTAB 1987) (finding USMC, the initials of the Marine Corps, which is part of the Navy, which itself is within the Department of Defense, cannot be construed as an "other insignia of the United States" under §2(b) of the Lanham Act). Note: As a result of the enactment of Public Law 98 525 on October 19, 1984, the initials, seal, and emblem of the United States Marine Corps are "deemed to be insignia of the United States," under 10 U.S.C.

§7881, pertaining to unauthorized use of Marine Corps insignia. However, “USMC” was not so protected when the applicant began using its stylized version of those letters as a mark. In view of the provision in Public Law 98-525 that the amendments adding Chapter 663 (10 U.S.C. §7881) shall not affect rights that vested before the date of its enactment, the majority of the Board found that enactment of the law did not adversely affect the mark’s registrability, stating that “opposer has not shown that applicant’s mark was an insignia of the United States prior to the law making it one, or that the law effectively bars registration to applicant.” *Id.* at 1260.

1204.03 Other Refusals May be Appropriate

Marks that are not barred by §2(b) may be refused if prohibited by other sections of the Trademark Act. For example, a design may not be an insignia under §2(b) but may be refused under §2(a). *See, e.g., In re Brumberger Co., Inc.*, 200 USPQ 475 (TTAB 1978) (finding representation of the U.S. mailbox was not an insignia under §2(b) but was properly refused under §2(a) because it falsely suggested a connection with the United States Postal Service). Likewise, §2(d) may be a bar to registering a stylized flag that is not prohibited under §2(b).

See also [TMEP §1205.01](#) and [TMEP Appendix C](#) regarding subject matter that is protected by statute.

1204.04 Responding to §2(b) Refusal

1204.04(a) Absolute Bar to Registration

Because §2(b) provides an absolute bar to registration, a disclaimer of the prohibited flag or insignia or an amendment to seek registration under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register will not overcome a refusal.

The statute does not list any exceptions that would allow for countries, states, or municipalities to register their own flags or insignia. Applications for marks that contain flags, coats of arms, or government insignia, even if filed by the relevant state, country, or municipality, must be refused.

1204.04(b) Deletion of §2(b) Matter

Section 1 Applications. The deletion of the unregistrable §2(b) matter, which no party can have trademark rights in, will not be considered a material alteration if the matter is separable from the other elements in the mark, e.g., if the flag design is spatially separated from other matter in the mark or is used as a background for other words or designs. If the flag is deleted from the drawing, the specimen that shows the flag is still acceptable. The examining attorney must ensure that the design search codes are corrected whenever a change is made to the drawing.

No deletion is allowed if the flag design is integrated into the overall mark in such a way that deletion would significantly change the commercial impression of the mark.

An amendment to the drawing showing the outline of the flag design absent the interior material is not permitted. Amending the mark from a national, state, or municipal flag to a blank flag changes the commercial impression of how the mark is used, or intended to be used, in commerce.

Section 44 Applications. Amendments to the drawing to delete §2(b) matter are not permitted because the drawing must be a substantially exact representation of the mark as registered in the foreign country. [TMPEP §1011.01](#).

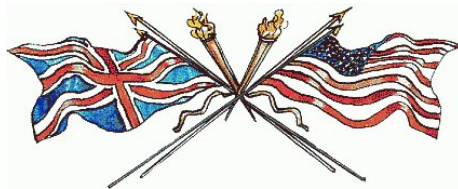
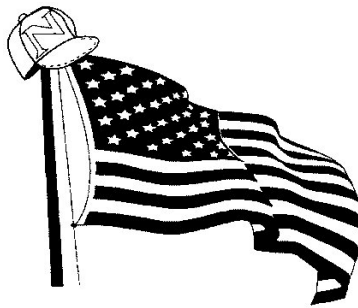
Section 66(a) Applications. Amendments to the drawing to delete the §2(b) matter are not permitted because the Madrid Protocol does not permit the amendment of a mark in an international registration. [TMPEP §807.13\(b\)](#).

1204.04(b)(i) Examples of Matter That May and May Not Be Deleted

The Flag Design May Be Deleted If It Is A Separable Element:



The Flag May Not Be Deleted If It Is Integrated Into the Overall Design:



1204.05 Resources

Internet Evidence

Many useful websites present images of national and state flags, government insignia, and coats of arms:

Flags of Foreign Nations:

- <http://www.crwflags.com/fotw/flags/>
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gallery_of_sovereign_state_flags
- <http://www.wave.net/upg/immigration/flags.html>

United States, State, and Territory Flags:

- <http://www.law.ou.edu/hist/flags/>
- <http://www.50states.com/flag/>

Insignia:

- Great Seal of the United States <http://www.greatseal.com/>
- Seal of the President of the United States
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seal_of_the_President_of_the_United_States
- Seals of Government departments - see specific agency website

Coat of Arms - Gallery of Coats of Arms:

- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coat_of_arms

Non Registration Data: X-Search and TESS

The "89" series code (i.e., serial numbers beginning with the digits "89") includes designations protected by federal statute or regulation, designations submitted to the USPTO from the IB pursuant to Article 6 *ter* of the Paris Convention, and official insignia of federally and state-recognized Native American tribes. These submissions are sometimes referred to as "non-registrations." See [TMEP §§1205.01 1205.03](#).

1205 Refusal on Basis of Matter Protected by Statute or Convention

1205.01 Statutory Protection

Various federal statutes and regulations prohibit or restrict the use of certain words, names, symbols, terms, initials, marks, emblems, seals, insignia, badges, decorations, medals, and characters adopted by the United States government, including any agency or instrumentality thereof, or particular national and international organizations. These designations are reserved for the specific purposes prescribed in the relevant statute and must be free for use in the prescribed manner. See [Appendix C](#) for a nonexhaustive list of United States statutes protecting designations of certain government agencies and instrumentalities.

For example, Congress has created statutes that grant exclusive rights to use certain designations to federally created private corporations and organizations. Violation of some of these statutes may be a criminal offense, *e.g.*, 18 U.S.C. §§705 (regarding badges, medals, emblems, or other insignia of veterans' organizations); 707 (4-H Club); 711 ("Smokey Bear"); and 711a ("Woodsy Owl" and slogan, "Give a Hoot, Don't Pollute"). Other statutes provide for civil enforcement, *e.g.*, 36 U.S.C. §§153104 (National Society of the Daughters of the American Revolution); 30905 (Boy Scouts); 80305 (Girl Scouts); 130506 (Little League); and 21904 (The American National Theater and Academy).

If the USPTO is made aware of a federal statute or regulation that prohibits or restricts the use of certain words, names, symbols, terms, initials, marks, emblems, seals, insignia, badges, decorations, medals, and characters, they are entered into the USPTO search records to assist USPTO examining attorneys. These designations are assigned a serial number in the "89" series code (i.e., serial numbers beginning with the digits "89," sometimes referred to as "non-registrations"). Information about the statutory restriction should be discovered in an examining attorney's search and a copy of the statutory language may be in the search record.

The following are examples of the protection of words and symbols by statute:

- (1) The Copyright Act of 1976 includes provisions regarding the use of appropriate notices of copyright. 17 U.S.C. §§101-1332. These include provisions concerning the use of the letter "C" in a circle – ©, the word "Copyright" and the abbreviation "Copr." to identify visually perceptible copies (17 U.S.C. §401); the use of the letter "P" in a circle to indicate phonorecords of sound recordings (17 U.S.C. §402); and the use of the words "mask work," the symbol *M* and the letter "M" in a circle to designate mask works (17 U.S.C. §909). The Copyright Act designates these symbols to indicate that the user of the symbol is asserting specific statutory rights.

- (2) Red Cross Emblem or the designations “Red Cross” and “Geneva Cross”: Under 18 U.S.C. §706, the use of the Red Cross emblem as well as the designations “Red Cross” and “Geneva Cross,” or any imitation thereof, is prohibited except by the American National Red Cross, and by sanitary and hospital authorities of the armed forces of the United States. The statute carves out an exception for use of any such emblem, sign, insignia, or words that were lawfully used on or before June 25, 1948. *See In re Health Maint. Orgs., Inc.*, 188 USPQ 473 (TTAB 1975) (holding mark comprising a dark cross with legs of equal length on which a caduceus is symmetrically imposed (representation of caduceus disclaimed) registrable, the Board finding the mark readily distinguishable from the Greek red cross (on white background) and the Swiss confederation coat of arms (white cross on red background)). See [TMEP §§1205.01\(c\)–1205.01\(c\)\(iv\)](#) for further information.
- (3) False advertising or misuse of names to indicate a federal agency is proscribed by 18 U.S.C. §709. For example, this provision prohibits knowing use, without written permission of the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, of the words “Federal Bureau of Investigation,” the initials “F.B.I.” or any colorable imitation, in various formats “in a manner reasonably calculated to convey the impression that such advertisement, ... publication, ... broadcast, telecast, or other production, is approved, endorsed, or authorized by the Federal Bureau of Investigation.” Thus, an examining attorney must refuse to register such matter, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §709, if its use is reasonably calculated to convey an approval, endorsement, or authorization by the Federal Bureau of Investigation.
- (4) Section 110 of the Amateur Sports Act of 1978, 36 U.S.C. §220506, protects various designations associated with the Olympics. The United States Supreme Court has held that the grant by Congress to the United States Olympic Committee of the exclusive right to use the word “Olympic” does not violate the First Amendment. *San Francisco Arts & Athletics, Inc. v. U.S. Olympic Comm.*, 483 U.S. 522, 3 USPQ2d 1145 (1987) (concerning petitioner’s use of “Gay Olympic Games”). See [TMEP §§1205.01\(b\)–1205.01\(b\)\(vii\)](#) for information about marks comprising Olympic matter.
- (5) In chartering the Blinded Veterans Association, Congress granted it the sole right to use its name and such seals, emblems, and badges as it may lawfully adopt. 36 U.S.C. §30306. This protection of its exclusive right to use “Blinded Veterans Association” does not extend to the term “blinded veterans,” which has been found generic. *Blinded Veterans Ass’n v. Blinded Am. Veterans Found.*, 872 F.2d 1035, 10 USPQ2d 1432 (D.C. Cir. 1989).
- (6) *Red Crescent Emblem, Third Protocol Emblem, or the designations “Red Crescent” and “Third Protocol Emblem.”* Under 18 U.S.C. §706a, the use of the distinctive emblems the Red Crystal and the Red Crescent, as well as the designations “Third Protocol Emblem” and “Red Crescent,” or any imitation thereof, is prohibited, except by those authorized to wear, display, or use them under the provisions of the Geneva Conventions. The statute carves out an exception for use of any emblem, sign, insignia, or words which were lawfully used on or before December 8, 2005, if use of these would not appear in time of armed conflict to confer the protections of the Geneva Conventions of August 12, 1949. See [TMEP §§1205.01\(a\)–1205.01\(a\)\(vi\)](#) for further information.
- (7) *Swiss Confederation Coat of Arms.* Under 18 U.S.C. §708, use of the Swiss Confederation coat of arms as a trademark or for any other commercial purpose is prohibited. Because the statute does not specify any authorized users, no one may lawfully use the coat of arms as a trademark or service mark in the United States, unless the mark was in use on or before August 31, 1948. *See In re Health Maint. Orgs., Inc.*, 188 USPQ 473 (TTAB 1975) (holding mark comprising a dark cross with legs of equal length on which a caduceus is symmetrically imposed (representation of caduceus disclaimed) registrable, the Board finding the mark readily distinguishable from the Greek red cross (on white background) and the Swiss confederation coat of arms (white cross on red background)). See [TMEP §§1205.01\(d\)–1205.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#) for further information.

Usually, the statute will define the appropriate use of a designation and will prescribe criminal penalties or civil remedies for improper use. However, the statutes themselves do not provide the basis for refusal of

trademark registration. To determine whether registration should be refused in a particular application, the examining attorney should consult the relevant statute to determine the function of the designation and its appropriate use. If a statute provides that a specific party or government agency has the exclusive right to use a designation, and a party other than that specified in the statute has applied to register the designation, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, citing §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#), in addition to the relevant statute. *See* [TMEP §907](#).

Depending on the nature and use of the mark, other sections of the Trademark Act may also bar registration and must be cited where appropriate. For example, it may be appropriate for the examining attorney to refuse registration under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), on the ground that the mark comprises matter that may falsely suggest a connection with a person, institution, belief, or national symbol specified in the statute (e.g., the United States Olympic Committee). *See* [TMEP §§1203.03\(c\)–1203.03\(c\)\(iii\)](#). Other §2(a) bases for refusal could also apply. *See* [TMEP §§1203–1203.03\(c\)\(iii\)](#). It may be appropriate to refuse registration under §2(b), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#), for matter that comprises a flag, coat of arms, or other similar insignia. *See* [TMEP §1204](#). It may be appropriate to refuse registration under §2(d), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), if the party specified in the statute owns a registration for a mark that is the same or similar.

In some instances, it may be appropriate for the examining attorney to refuse registration pursuant to §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), on the ground that the subject matter would not be perceived as a trademark. For service mark applications, §3 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1053](#), must also be cited as a basis for refusal.

To determine what action is appropriate, the examining attorney should look to the particular use of a symbol or term by the applicant. For example, where it is evident that the applicant has merely included a copyright symbol in the drawing of the mark inadvertently, and the symbol is not a material portion of the mark, the examining attorney must indicate that the symbol is not part of the mark and require that the applicant amend the drawing to remove the symbol, instead of issuing statutory refusals of the types noted above.

Examining attorneys should also consider whether registration of matter comprised in whole or in part of designations notified pursuant to Article 6 *ter* of the Paris Convention and entered into the USPTO's search records may be prohibited by §§2(a) and 2(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(a\)](#) and [1052\(b\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1205.02](#).

1205.01(a) Examination Procedures for Marks Comprising a Red Crystal or Red Crescent on a White Background, or the Phrases “Red Crescent” or “Third Protocol Emblem”

On December 8, 2005, the United States signed the Third Protocol Additional to the 1949 Geneva Conventions relating to the Adoption of an Additional Distinctive Emblem (the “Protocol”). The Protocol creates two new distinctive emblems: (1) the Third Protocol Emblem, composed of a red diamond on a white background (shown below); and (2) the Red Crescent, composed of a red crescent on a white background (shown below).



Effective January 12, 2007, Public Law 109-481, 120 Stat. 3666, created a new criminal statutory provision, 18 U.S.C. §706a, to prohibit the use of the distinctive emblems the Red Crystal and the Red Crescent, or any imitation thereof, as well as the designations “Third Protocol Emblem” and “Red Crescent,” except by those authorized to wear, display, or use them under the provisions of the Geneva Conventions. Geneva Distinctive Emblems Protection Act of 2006, Pub. L. No. 109-481, 120 Stat. 3666 (2007). The statute carves out an exception for use of any such emblem, sign, insignia, or words that were lawfully used on or before December 8, 2005, if use of these would not appear in time of armed conflict to confer the protections of the Geneva Conventions of August 12, 1949. *Id.* The provisions of 18 U.S.C. §706a closely mirror the existing provision in 18 U.S.C. §706 for the American National Red Cross (*see* [TMEP §1205.01](#)).

1205.01(a)(i) First Use After December 8, 2005

If a party other than an authorized party (see [TMEP §1205.01\(a\)\(vi\)](#) for definition of authorized party) applies to register the Red Crescent, the Third Protocol Emblem, or the designation “Red Crescent” or “Third Protocol Emblem,” and claims a date of first use in commerce after December 8, 2005, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), on the ground that the mark comprises matter that may falsely suggest a connection with the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies and/or other authorized parties under the statute. *See* 18 U.S.C. §706a; [TMEP §1203.03\(e\)](#). The examining attorney must provide appropriate supporting evidence for the refusal. In addition, a refusal must also be made on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, citing §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#).

When examining specimens of use for such designations, the examining attorney should also consider issuing a refusal under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), on the ground that the subject matter would not be perceived as a trademark or, in the case of services, §§1, 2, 3, and 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), as appropriate. *See* [TMEP §1202](#).

1205.01(a)(ii) First Use On or Before December 8, 2005 – Grandfather Clause

Registration of the Red Crescent, the Third Protocol Emblem, or the designation “Red Crescent” or “Third Protocol Emblem” need not be refused where, in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#), the applicant claims a date of first use in commerce on or before December 8, 2005, if the goods and services would not appear in time of armed conflict to confer the protections of the Geneva Conventions. 18 U.S.C. §706a. However, registration should be refused under §2(a) and §§1 and 45 of the Act if the goods or services are of a type typically offered as emergency relief or assistance in times of armed conflict. Such goods or services may include, but are not limited to, medical or first-aid assistance, religious and charitable services, clothing, and food items. The refusals can be withdrawn if the applicant amends the identification to indicate that the goods/services are not offered as emergency relief or assistance in time of armed conflict.

When examining specimens of use for such designations, the examining attorney should also consider issuing a refusal under §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), on the ground that the subject matter would not be perceived as a trademark or, in the case of services, §§1, 2, 3, and 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), as appropriate. See [TMEP §1202](#).

1205.01(a)(iii) Date of First Use Not Specified

For applications filed under §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), [§1126](#), or [§1141f\(a\)](#), or for applications filed under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), where the application fails to indicate the applicant’s date of first use of the mark in commerce, the examining attorney should presume that the date of first use in commerce is or will be after December 8, 2005, unless the application record indicates otherwise.

Although applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) need not initially show actual use of the mark in commerce, applicants filing under these bases must have a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce.

See TMEP §§ [1008](#), [1009](#), [1101](#), [1102](#), [1904.01\(c\)](#), [1904.01\(d\)](#). Because “use in commerce” under the Trademark Act means “lawful use in commerce,” any intended use of the mark serving as the basis for these types of applications must also be lawful. See *In re Brown*, 119 USPQ2d 1350, 1351 (TTAB 2016); *John W. Carson Found. v. Toilets.com, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1942, 1948 (TTAB 2010); *In re Midwest Tennis & Track Co.*, 29 USPQ2d at 1386 n.2 (TTAB 1993); *Clorox Co. v. Armour-Dial, Inc.*, 214 USPQ 850, 851 (TTAB 1982); *In re Stellar Int’l, Inc.*, 159 USPQ 48, 50-51 (TTAB 1968); *CreAgri, Inc. v. USANA Health Sciences, Inc.*, 474 F.3d 626, 630 (9th Cir. 2007) (“It has long been the policy of the PTO’s Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that use in commerce only creates trademark rights when the use is lawful. . . . [W]e also agree with the PTO’s policy and hold that only lawful use in commerce can give rise to trademark priority.”) (citations omitted). With respect to a mark containing the Red Crescent, the Third Protocol Emblem, or the designation “Red Crescent” or “Third Protocol Emblem,” actual lawful use in commerce is not possible and thus there can be no bona fide intent to lawfully use the mark in commerce. See *John W. Carson Found.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1948. Therefore, it is appropriate to issue a refusal under §§1 and 45 for applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) if the facts and available evidence support the conclusion that the mark contains the prohibited symbols or wording.

1205.01(a)(iv) Applicable Refusals

The statute prohibiting use of the Red Crystal and Red Crescent symbols by unauthorized parties applies to “any sign or insignia made or colored in imitation thereof.” 18 U.S.C. §706a. If the mark includes a design element where the color red is claimed, and the design would be likely to be perceived as the Red Crystal

symbol or the Red Crescent symbol, and it is not significantly altered, stylized, or merged with other elements in the mark, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1 and 45, because the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, and under §2(a), if any of the following conditions exist:

- the drawing or foreign registration shows the symbol in red;
- the drawing is not in color, but the specimen shows the symbol in red; or
- the drawing is not in color, but it includes the wording “Red Crescent” or “Third Protocol Emblem.”

See TMEP §§ [1205.01\(a\)](#) and [1205.01\(a\)\(i\)](#). The refusals may be withdrawn if the applicant amends the drawing to a different, non-prohibited color scheme, or a non-color version of the drawing (i.e., a black-and-white or gray scale drawing) or submits a proper substitute specimen showing use of the mark in a color other than red. Cf. TMEP §§ [1205.01\(d\)\(i\)\(D\)](#), [1205.01\(d\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#). However, a photocopy of the original specimen is not an acceptable substitute specimen.

A mark that includes a crescent or crystal design element will generally be considered registrable, and will not be refused under §§1 and 45, or under §2(a), if the applicant does not claim color as a feature of the mark and the specimen shows the symbol in a color other than red. In such cases, a statement that the mark is not used in the color red is unnecessary, and if submitted, must not be printed on the registration certificate.

Regarding the phrases “Red Crescent” and “Third Protocol Emblem,” the statute prohibiting use of these designations does not apply to variations or modifications of these words. Only marks that include the exact wording RED CRESCENT or THIRD PROTOCOL EMBLEM, with or without additional wording, must be refused under §2(a) and §§1 and 45.

For example, REDCRESCENTS would not be refused registration, but RED CRESCENT DONOR could be refused registration if the date of first use is after December 8, 2005, or the application otherwise fails to qualify for the grandfather clause described in [TMEP §1205.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

1205.01(a)(v) Amendments to Disclaim, Delete, or Amend the Unregistrable Symbol or Designation

If the mark is unregistrable because it includes the Red Crescent or Third Protocol symbols or words, a disclaimer of the unregistrable matter will not render the mark registrable. Similarly, disclaimer of the color red is inappropriate, and will not obviate a refusal of registration.

On the other hand, if the unregistrable symbol or designation is deleted from the mark sought to be registered, the examining attorney should withdraw the refusal(s) based on the unregistrable symbol or designation, and, if necessary, refuse registration because the amendment to the mark is material. Deletions of matter determined to be unregistrable under §2(a) of the Act are sometimes permissible. See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#).

The examining attorney may also permit an amendment from a color drawing to a black-and-white drawing, to eliminate the claim of the color red, if such an amendment would not constitute a material alteration of the mark, and the amendment is supported by a proper specimen. See [TMEP §§807.14\(e\)-807.14\(e\)\(iii\)](#) regarding amendments to color features of marks, and [TMEP §1205.01\(a\)\(iv\)](#) regarding the situation where the applicant does not claim color as a feature of the mark, but the specimen shows use of the mark in red.

1205.01(a)(vi) Parties Authorized to use the Red Crescent and Third Protocol Emblem

Under 18 U.S.C. §706a, the following parties are authorized to use the Red Crescent symbol and the Third Protocol Emblem on a white background and the designations “Red Crescent” and “Third Protocol Emblem:”

- (1) authorized national societies that are members of the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies, and their duly authorized employees and agents;
- (2) the International Committee of the Red Cross, and its duly authorized employees and agents;
- (3) the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies, and its duly authorized employees and agents; and
- (4) the sanitary and hospital authorities of the armed forces of State Parties to the Geneva Conventions of August 12, 1949.

If the applicant is not clearly authorized to use an emblem or designation, the examining attorney must refuse registration. The refusal may be withdrawn if the applicant or the applicant’s attorney submits a statement that the applicant is an authorized party, and indicates the reason why the applicant is authorized (e.g., applicant is an authorized agent of the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies).

1205.01(b) Examination Procedures for Marks Comprising Matter Related to the United States Olympic Committee or the Olympics

Following passage of the Amateur Sports Act of 1978, 36 U.S.C. §380, unauthorized use of words and symbols associated with the United States Olympic Committee (“USOC”) or the Olympics subjected the user to civil actions and remedies. In 1998, Congress amended the 1978 act to the Ted Stevens Olympic and Amateur Sports Act (“OASA”), 36 U.S.C. §220506. In the amended Act, Congress designated certain Olympic-related words and symbols as being the exclusive property of the USOC, subject to limited exceptions. 36 U.S.C. §220506.

The USOC has the exclusive right to use the name “United States Olympic Committee” and the words “Olympic,” “Olympiad,” “Citius Altius Fortius,” “Pan American,” “Paralympic,” “Paralympiad,” “America Espirito Sport Fraternalite,” or any combination of these words. 36 U.S.C. §220506(a). The statutory protection also extends to the International Olympic Committee’s symbol of five interlocking rings, the International Paralympic Committee’s symbol of three TaiGeuks, and the Pan-American Sports Organization’s symbol of a torch surrounded by concentric rings. *Id.* The statute permits the USOC to authorize its contributors and suppliers to use the enumerated Olympic-related words or symbols, 36 U.S.C. §220506(b), exempts certain pre-existing uses and geographic references, 36 U.S.C. §220506(d), and allows the USOC to initiate civil-action proceedings to address unauthorized use, 36 U.S.C. §220506(c).

Proposed marks that contain the designated Olympic-related words or symbols, or any combination thereof, cannot be registered on the Principal or Supplemental Register (nor can the matter be disclaimed) and must be refused registration on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, citing §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#), for trademark applications or §§1, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), for service mark applications, as well as the OASA. Other statutory refusals under the Trademark Act may also bar registration, such as falsely suggesting a connection under [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(a\)](#) and likelihood of confusion under [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(d\)](#), and should be issued as appropriate. *See* [TMEP §1205.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#).

1205.01(b)(i) Nature of the Mark

Under 36 U.S.C. §220506(a), no applicant other than the USOC is capable of having lawful use in commerce of marks containing the designated Olympic-related words and symbols, or any combination thereof, and an applicant cannot obviate the spirit of the law by crafting a mark that combines a designated Olympic-related word or symbol with a non-designated word or symbol. *U.S. Olympic Comm. v. O-M Bread, Inc.*, 29 USPQ2d 1555, 1557-58 (TTAB 1993) (sustaining opposition to registration of OLYMPIC KIDS).

A refusal for unlawful use pursuant to §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#) or §§1, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), is required if the applicant's mark contains the exact words or symbols, or any combination thereof, enumerated in the statute. *See, e.g., In re Midwest Tennis & Track, Co.*, 29 USPQ2d 1386, 1388 (TTAB 1993) (reversing the refusal to register OLYMPIAN GOLDE since the mark did not comprise any of the forbidden words themselves, or a combination of them, and the statute did not encompass "simulations" of the listed words); *U.S. Olympic Comm. v. Olymp-Herrenwaschefabriken Bezner GmbH & Co.*, 224 USPQ 497, 500 (TTAB 1984) (denying USOC's opposition because OLYMP was not the same as OLYMPIC or OLYMPIAD, or a combination thereof, and, therefore, USOC cannot claim exclusive right of use).

1205.01(b)(ii) Issuing Other Substantive Refusals

Applications for marks comprising Olympic-related matter must also be analyzed for other substantive refusals in the same manner as any other application. The most common refusals that may accompany a refusal for unlawful use, or be issued by themselves or in combination, are a §2(a) refusal for deception or falsely suggesting a connection with the USOC or the Olympics and a §2(d) refusal for likelihood of confusion. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#) and [\(d\)](#). See TMEP [§§1203.02–1203.02\(f\)\(ii\)](#) regarding deceptive matter, [§§1203.03–1203.03\(f\)](#) regarding matter falsely suggesting a connection, and [§§1207–1207.04\(g\)\(i\)](#) regarding likelihood of confusion.

As to §2(a) refusals, the Board determined that "there are various international and national organizations pertaining to the Olympic Games" and that "the entire organization which comprises the Olympic Games, as a whole qualifies as an "institution" within the meaning of Section 2(a)." *In re Urbano*, 51 USPQ2d 1776, 1779-80 (TTAB 1999) (affirming the §2(a) refusal to register SYDNEY 2000 because the mark falsely suggested a connection with the Olympic Games held in Sydney, Australia in 2000; [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#)). Therefore, the United States Olympic Committee is part of the "institution" and entitled to protection under §2(a). *See In re Midwest Tennis & Track, Co.*, 29 USPQ2d 1386, 1389 (TTAB 1993) (reversing the §2(a) refusal and finding that OLYMPIAN GOLDE had multiple connotations and did not point "uniquely and unmistakably to the USOC" as would be required under §2(a)); *In re Kayser-Roth Corp.*, 29 USPQ2d 1379, 1385 (TTAB 1993) (reversing the §2(a) refusal and noting "[t]he question is not whether the word 'Olympic' falsely suggests a connection with the persona or identity of the United States Olympic Committee's but whether applicant's mark OLYMPIC CHAMPION does ... [we cannot] say on the basis of the record before us that the mark OLYMPIC CHAMPION 'points uniquely and unmistakably' to the United States Olympic Committee inasmuch as that term may as likely point to a contestant representing a country other than the United States in the Olympic games."); *U.S. Olympic Comm. v. Olymp-Herrenwaschefabriken Bezner GmbH & Co.*, 224 USPQ 497, 499 (TTAB 1984) (denying USOC's §2(a) claims since there was no evidence presented to establish that OLYMP was deceptive of the clothing goods or that OLYMP falsely suggested a connection with USOC).

Factors that may be relevant to a §2(d) refusal for likelihood of confusion include the wide variety of goods and services in connection with which marks consisting of Olympic-related matter are often used, the channels of trade in which they are found, and the level of sophistication of consumers of such Olympic-related

products as t-shirts, mugs, and pins. The Board has also upheld likelihood of confusion where an applicant other than the USOC used OLYMP or LYMPIC as part of its mark. *See Olymp-Herrenwaschefabriken* 224 USPQ at 498 (sustaining USOC's opposition to registration of OLYMP based on likelihood of confusion with its OLYMPIC marks); *U.S. Olympic Comm. v. Org. for Sport Aviation Competition*, 2002 TTAB Lexis 195 (TTAB 2002) (granting summary judgment to the USOC on the issue of likelihood of confusion against the mark SKYLYMPICS for aviation sporting events).

In proposed marks identifying specific Olympic Games by city and year, the examining attorney should consider the marks unitary, with the primary significance being that of the Olympic Games event, and not issue substantive refusals for descriptiveness or geographic descriptiveness or requirements for disclaimers. *Urbano*, 51 USPQ2d at 1779-80 (reversing the refusals under §§2(e)(1), 2(e)(2), and 2(e)(3) because the primary significance of the mark was as a reference to the Olympic Games).

1205.01(b)(iii) Amendments to Disclaim, Delete, or Amend the Unregistrable Wording or Symbol

If the mark is unregistrable because it includes Olympic-related matter, a disclaimer of the unregistrable matter will not render the mark registrable. If the applicant submits an amendment deleting the unregistrable matter, the examining attorney must, if appropriate, refuse registration because the amendment to the mark is material and maintain the refusal(s) based on the unregistrable symbol or designation in the alternative.

1205.01(b)(iv) Consent to Register

The USOC is permitted to authorize third parties to use and register the restricted Olympic-related words and symbols listed in the OASA. 36 U.S.C. §220506(b). If an applicant submits proof of consent from the USOC to both use and register the mark, the statutory requirement is satisfied.

1205.01(b)(v) First Use On or After September 21, 1950

If a party other than the USOC applies to register Olympic-related matter designated in the OASA and claims a date of first use in commerce on or after September 21, 1950, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, citing §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#), for trademark applications or §§1, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), for service mark applications. The examining attorney must provide appropriate supporting evidence for the refusal. In addition, refusals may also be made on other relevant grounds. *See* [TMEP §1205.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#).

1205.01(b)(vi) First Use Before September 21, 1950 – Grandfather Clause

Olympic-related matter enumerated in the OASA need not be refused registration where an applicant claims pre-existing use of the mark for any lawful purpose prior to September 21, 1950. 36 U.S.C. §220506(d)(1). An applicant making such a claim is permitted to continue lawful use of the mark for the same purpose and same goods or services. 36 U.S.C. §220506(d)(2).

Registration of a new mark that creates a materially different commercial impression than the earlier mark, even if that mark incorporates the grandfathered wording, is not permitted. *O-M Bread, Inc. v. U.S. Olympic Comm.*, 65 F.3d 933, 938-39, 36 USPQ2d 1041, 1045 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (sustaining opposition against registration of OLYMPIC KIDS for bakery products, even though applicant had grandfather rights in OLYMPIC for the same goods, and noting that OLYMPIC and OLYMPIC KIDS are not legal equivalents).

Expanding the use of a grandfathered mark to additional goods and services is generally not permissible, and should be construed very narrowly. *See In re Kayser-Roth Corp.*, 29 USPQ2d 1379, 1383-84 (TTAB 1993) (reversing the refusal to register OLYMPIC CHAMPION when applicant sought to expand use of the mark from various clothing goods to socks; finding that applicant had grandfather rights in the same mark for certain apparel and noting that socks have “attributes in common with the other named [clothing] goods” that permitted this additional use by applicant).

1205.01(b)(vii) Date of First Use Not Specified

For applications filed under §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), [§1126](#), or [§1141f\(a\)](#), or for applications filed under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), where the application fails to indicate the applicant’s date of first use of the mark in commerce, the examining attorney should presume that the date of first use in commerce is or will be after September 21, 1950, unless the application record indicates otherwise.

Although applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) need not initially show actual use of the mark in commerce, applicants filing under these bases must have a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce. See TMEP §§ [1008](#), [1009](#), [1101](#), [1102](#), [1904.01\(c\)](#), [1904.01\(d\)](#). Because “use in commerce” under the Trademark Act means “lawful use in commerce,” any intended use of the mark serving as the basis for these types of applications must also be lawful. *See John W. Carson Found. v. Toilets.com, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1942, 1948 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Midwest Tennis & Track Co.*, 29 USPQ2d at 1386 n.2 (TTAB 1993) ; *Clorox Co. v. Armour-Dial, Inc.*, 214 USPQ 850, 851 (TTAB 1982) ; *In re Stellar Int’l, Inc.*, 159 USPQ 48, 50-51 (TTAB 1968); *CreAgri, Inc. v. USANA Health Sciences, Inc.*, 474 F.3d 626, 630 (9th Cir. 2007) (“It has long been the policy of the PTO’s Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that use in commerce only creates trademark rights when the use is lawful. . . . [W]e also agree with the PTO’s policy and hold that only lawful use in commerce can give rise to trademark priority.”) (citations omitted). With respect to a mark containing the designated Olympic-related words or symbols, or any combination thereof, actual lawful use in commerce is not possible and thus there can be no bona fide intent to lawfully use the mark in commerce. *See John W. Carson Found.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1948. Therefore, it is appropriate to issue a refusal under §§1 and 45 for applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) if the facts and available evidence support the conclusion that the mark contains the prohibited wording and/or symbols.

1205.01(b)(viii) Geographic-Reference Exception

The OASA provides a narrow geographic-reference exception for use of the word OLYMPIC for businesses, goods, or services operated, sold, and marketed in the State of Washington west of the Cascade Mountain range. 36 U.S.C. §220506(d)(3). To qualify for the exception, the following requirements must be met: (1) the owner must not use the word OLYMPIC in combination with any of the other designated Olympic-related words or symbols; (2) it must be evident from the circumstances that use of the word OLYMPIC refers to the naturally occurring mountains or geographical region of the same name that were named prior to February 6, 1998, and not to the USOC or any Olympic activity; and (3) the goods or services offered under the OLYMPIC mark must be marketed and sold locally in Washington state west of the Cascade Mountain range, and not have substantial operations, sales, and marketing outside of this area. Since these requirements severely restrict the option of interstate commerce, which is regulated by Congress and a requirement under the Trademark Act, it is unlikely an applicant will be able to obtain a federal trademark registration under this exception.

1205.01(c) Examination Procedures for Marks Containing Greek Red Cross or the Phrases “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross”

Federal law prohibits anyone other than the American National Red Cross and its duly authorized employees and agents and the sanitary and hospital authorities of the armed forces of the United States from using the Greek red cross on a white ground or the words “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross.” 18 U.S.C. §706. There is an exception for use of any such emblem, sign, insignia, or words that were lawfully used on or before June 25, 1948.

1205.01(c)(i) Date of First Use is Before or After June 25, 1948

Registration of the Greek red cross on a white ground or the words “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross” need not be refused where, in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#), the applicant claims a date of first use in commerce on or before June 25, 1948. However, if a party other than an authorized party applies to register the Greek red cross on a white ground, or the designation “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross,” and claims a date of first use in commerce after June 25, 1948, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), on the ground that the mark comprises matter that may falsely suggest a connection with the American National Red Cross under the statute. *See* 18 U.S.C. §706; [TMEP §1203.03\(e\)](#). The examining attorney must provide appropriate supporting evidence for the refusal. In addition, a refusal must also be made on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, citing §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#).

1205.01(c)(ii) Date of First Use Not Specified

For applications filed under §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), [§1126](#), or [§1141f\(a\)](#), or for applications filed under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), where the application fails to indicate the applicant’s date of first use of the mark in commerce, the examining attorney should presume that the date of first use in commerce is or will be after June 25, 1948, unless the application record indicates otherwise.

Although applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) need not initially show actual use of the mark in commerce, applicants filing under these bases must have a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce. *See* TMEP §§ [1008](#), [1009](#), [1101](#), [1102](#), [1904.01\(c\)](#), [1904.01\(d\)](#). Because “use in commerce” under the Trademark Act means “lawful use in commerce,” any intended use of the mark serving as the basis for these types of applications must also be lawful. *See In re Brown*, 119 USPQ2d 1350, 1351 (TTAB 2016); *John W. Carson Found. v. Toilets.com, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1942, 1948 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Midwest Tennis & Track Co.*, 29 USPQ2d at 1386 n.2 (TTAB 1993) ; *Clorox Co. v. Armour-Dial, Inc.*, 214 USPQ 850, 851 (TTAB 1982) ; *In re Stellar Int’l, Inc.*, 159 USPQ 48, 50-51 (TTAB 1968); *CreAgri, Inc. v. USANA Health Sciences, Inc.*, 474 F.3d 626, 630 (9th Cir. 2007) (“It has long been the policy of the PTO’s Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that use in commerce only creates trademark rights when the use is lawful. . . . [W]e also agree with the PTO’s policy and hold that only lawful use in commerce can give rise to trademark priority.”) (citations omitted). With respect to a mark containing the Greek red cross on a white ground, or the designation “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross,” actual lawful use in commerce is not possible and thus there can be no bona fide intent to lawfully use the mark in commerce. *See John W. Carson Found.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1948. Therefore, it is appropriate to issue a refusal under §§1 and 45 for applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) if the facts and available evidence support the conclusion that the mark contains the prohibited symbol or wording.

1205.01(c)(iii) Applicable Refusals

The statute prohibiting use of the Greek red cross on a white ground, or the designation “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross,” by unauthorized parties applies to “any insignia colored in imitation thereof.” 18 U.S.C. §706. If the mark includes a design element that would be likely to be perceived as the Geneva red cross, and it is not significantly altered, stylized, or merged with other elements in the mark, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1 and 45, because the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, and under §2(a), if any of the following conditions exist:

- the drawing or foreign registration shows the symbol in red;
- the drawing is not in color, but the specimen shows the symbol in red; or
- the drawing is not in color, but it includes the wording Red Cross or Geneva Cross.

See [TMEP §1205.01\(c\)](#). The refusals may be withdrawn if the applicant amends the drawing to a different, non-prohibited color scheme, or a non-color version of the drawing (i.e., a black-and-white or gray scale drawing) or submits a proper substitute specimen showing use of the mark in a color other than red. Cf. TMEP §§ [1205.01\(d\)\(i\)\(D\)](#), [1205.01\(d\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#). However, a photocopy of the original specimen is not an acceptable substitute specimen.

A mark that includes a Greek cross will generally be considered registrable, and will not be refused as a red cross under §§1 and 45, or under §2(a), if the applicant does not claim color as a feature of the mark and the specimen shows the symbol in a color other than red. In such cases, a statement that the mark is not used in the color red is unnecessary, and if submitted, must not be printed on the registration certificate.

Regarding the phrases “Red Cross” and “Geneva Cross,” the statute prohibiting use of these designations does not apply to variations or modifications of these words. Only marks that include the exact wording RED CROSS or GENEVA CROSS, with or without additional wording, must be refused under §2(a) and §§1 and 45.

For example, RED CROSSES would not be refused registration, but RED CROSS DONOR could be refused registration if the date of first use is after June 25, 1948.

1205.01(c)(iv) Amendments to Disclaim, Delete, or Amend the Unregistrable Symbol or Designation

If the mark is unregistrable because it includes the Greek red cross on a white ground, or the designation “Red Cross” or “Geneva Cross,” a disclaimer of the unregistrable matter will not render the mark registrable. Similarly, disclaimer of the color red is inappropriate, and will not obviate a refusal of registration.

On the other hand, if the unregistrable symbol or designation is deleted from the mark sought to be registered, the examining attorney should withdraw the refusal(s) based on the unregistrable symbol or designation, and, if necessary, refuse registration because the amendment to the mark is material. Deletions of matter determined to be unregistrable under §2(a) of the Act are sometimes permissible. See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#).

The examining attorney may also permit an amendment from a color drawing to a black-and-white drawing, to eliminate the claim of the color red, if such an amendment would not constitute a material alteration of the mark, and the amendment is supported by a proper specimen. See [TMEP §§807.14\(e\)-807.14\(e\)\(iii\)](#) regarding amendments to color features of marks, and [TMEP §1205.01\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding the situation where the applicant does not claim color as a feature of the mark, but the specimen shows use of the mark in red.

1205.01(d) Examination Procedures for Marks Containing the Swiss Confederation Coat of Arms or Flag

The Trademark Act bars registration of trademarks or service marks containing the coat of arms or flag of the Swiss Confederation, commonly known as Switzerland. See 15 U.S.C. §§ 1052(a), [1052\(b\)](#), [1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), [1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), [1127](#); Britannica.com, *Switzerland*, <http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/577225/Switzerland> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012); Cent. Intelligence Agency, *The World Factbook, Switzerland*, <https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sz.html> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012).

The Swiss coat of arms consists of a white equilateral cross displayed upright on a red triangular shield and the Swiss flag consists of a white equilateral cross displayed upright on a red square. See Swiss Fed. Inst. of Intellectual Prop., *Frequently Asked Questions – Legislative Amendment “Swissness”*, <https://www.ige.ch/en/service/frequently-asked-questions/legislative-amendment-swissness/a-swiss-cross-and-the-swiss-coat-of-arms.html> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012) (indicating that “[t]he Swiss cross is a perpendicular, free-standing, white cross, each arm of which is one-sixth longer than it is wide on a red background” and that “[t]he Swiss coat of arms is a Swiss cross in a triangular shield”); Britannica.com, *Switzerland, flag of*, <http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/1355532/Switzerland-flag-of/> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012); Cent. Intelligence Agency, *The World Factbook, Switzerland*, https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/flags/flagtemplate_sz.html (accessed Aug. 15, 2012).



Swiss Coat of Arms



Swiss Flag

The primary refusals that apply to marks containing the Swiss coat of arms, the Swiss flag, or simulations thereof, are the following:

A refusal under Trademark Act §§1 and 45, because the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, based on the prohibition, under 18 U.S.C. §708, of the commercial use of the Swiss coat of arms. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#); see also [TMEP §1205.01](#).

A refusal under §2(b), because the mark consists of or comprises the flag or coat of arms of a foreign country, namely, Switzerland. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#); see also TMEP §§ [1204–1204.01\(e\)](#), [1204.04](#).

1205.01(d)(i) Refusal Under Sections 1 and 45: Swiss Coat of Arms Not in Lawful Use

Federal law prohibits anyone from using the Swiss Confederation coat of arms as a trademark or for any other commercial purpose. Specifically, the text of 18 U.S.C. §708 reads as follows:

Whoever, whether a corporation, partnership, unincorporated company, association, or person within the United States, willfully uses as a trade mark, commercial label, or portion thereof, or as an advertisement or insignia for any business or organization or for any trade or commercial purpose, the coat of arms of the Swiss Confederation, consisting of an upright white cross with equal arms and lines on a red ground, or any simulation thereof, shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than six months, or both. This section shall not make unlawful the use of any such design or insignia which was lawful on August 31, 1948.

The statute describes the coat of arms as “an upright white cross with equal arms and lines on a red ground.” 18 U.S.C. §708. Although the Swiss flag features this same type of white cross, the statute refers to the “coat of arms” and therefore is applied only to the Swiss coat of arms, which consists of a white equilateral cross displayed upright on a red triangular shield.

The text of 18 U.S.C. §708 does not specify any authorized users of the Swiss coat of arms. Accordingly, no one may lawfully use the coat of arms as a trademark or service mark in the United States, unless the mark was in use on or before August 31, 1948. See 18 U.S.C. §708. Thus, regardless of the identity of the applicant, any mark containing the Swiss coat of arms, or a simulation thereof, which was not in use on or before that date, must be refused under §§1 and 45 because the mark is not in lawful use in commerce.

Although applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) need not initially show actual use of the mark in commerce, applicants filing under these bases must have a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce. See TMEP §§ [1008](#), [1009](#), [1101](#), [1102](#), [1904.01\(c\)](#), [1904.01\(d\)](#). Because “use in commerce” under the Trademark Act means “lawful use in commerce,” any intended use of the mark serving as the basis for these types of applications must also be lawful. See *John W. Carson Found. v. Toilets.com, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1942, 1948 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Midwest Tennis & Track Co.*, 29 USPQ2d at 1386 n.2 (TTAB 1993) ; *Clorox Co. v. Armour-Dial, Inc.*, 214 USPQ 850, 851 (TTAB 1982) ; *In re Stellar Int’l, Inc.*, 159 USPQ 48, 50-51 (TTAB 1968); *CreAgri, Inc. v. USANA Health Sciences, Inc.*, 474 F.3d 626, 630 (9th Cir. 2007) (“It has long been the policy of the PTO’s Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that use in commerce only creates trademark rights when the use is lawful. . . . [W]e also agree with the PTO’s policy and hold that only lawful use in commerce can give rise to trademark priority.”) (citations omitted). With respect to a mark containing the Swiss coat of arms, actual lawful use in commerce is not possible and thus there can be no bona fide intent to lawfully use the mark in commerce. *John W. Carson Found.*, 94 USPQ2d at 1948. Therefore, it is appropriate to issue a refusal under §§1 and 45 for applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) if the facts and available evidence support the conclusion that the mark contains the Swiss coat of arms or a simulation thereof.

To properly support a refusal under §§1 and 45, based on a finding that the mark is not, or cannot be, in lawful use in commerce, there must be some indication that the mark features the Swiss coat of arms or a simulation thereof. A “simulation” refers to “something that gives the appearance or effect or has the characteristics of an original item.” *In re Waltham Watch Co.*, 179 USPQ 59, 60 (TTAB 1973) (citing Webster’s Third New Int’l Dictionary (unabridged ed. 1965)); see [TMEP §1204](#). Whether particular matter is a simulation of the Swiss coat of arms is determined by a visual comparison of the matter and the coat of arms. *Id.*

The application record usually contains sufficient information to establish that the mark contains the Swiss coat of arms or a simulation thereof. For example, the drawing may show a white cross on a red triangular shield. Or, if the drawing is not in color, the specimen, color claim, or color description may indicate that these elements appear in the prohibited color scheme.

Even if the application record itself does not provide evidence of unlawful use, it may be appropriate in some instances to base a refusal under §§1 and 45 on extrinsic evidence of applicant’s use of the mark. Examining attorneys are not required to search for extrinsic evidence. However, if the examining attorney locates relevant extrinsic evidence in the course of examining the mark, that evidence may be used to support the refusal.

1205.01(d)(i)(A) When a Refusal Under Sections 1 and 45 Must Be Issued

The examining attorney must issue a “not in lawful use” refusal under §§1 and 45 if a mark contains an element composed of an upright equilateral cross on a triangular shield (or a simulation thereof) that is not significantly altered, stylized, or merged with other elements in the mark; the dates of use are after August 31, 1948 (or are not provided); and any of the following conditions exist:

- the drawing shows the cross in white and the triangular shield in red;
- the drawing is not in color, but (i) the color claim or mark description indicates the cross is white and the shield is red or (ii) the specimen shows the cross in white and shield in red; or
- the drawing is not in color, there is no color claim, the mark description does not reference color (or there is no mark description), and there is no specimen of record (because one has not been submitted or is not required), but the examining attorney has found extrinsic evidence indicating that the applicant actually uses the mark in the white cross/red shield color scheme.

If the dates of use provided do not clearly indicate that the mark was in use on or before August 31, 1948, it should be presumed that the first use occurred after that date. In applications based on §1(b), §66(a), or solely on §44, the use dates should be presumed to be after August 31, 1948. These procedures apply regardless of the application filing basis.

The basis for concluding that a mark containing the Swiss coat of arms is not in lawful use is 18 U.S.C. §708, but the basis for refusing registration of the mark is Trademark Act §§1 and 45. Thus, when refusing registration on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce, the examining attorney must cite §§1 and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1127](#), in support of the refusal and explain that the finding of unlawful use is based on 18 U.S.C. §708. See [TMEP §1205.01](#). When issuing the refusal, the examining attorney should provide evidence showing the typical depiction of the Swiss coat of arms. See [TMEP §1205.01\(c\)](#).

For applications based on §1(a), the examining attorney must issue a requirement for additional information under Trademark Rule 2.61(b), [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), if a mark contains an element composed of an upright

equilateral cross on a triangular shield (or a simulation thereof), the dates of use are after August 31, 1948 (or are not provided), and all of the following conditions exist:

- the drawing is not in color;
- there is no color claim;
- the mark description does not reference color (or there is no mark description);
- the specimen of record shows the mark but is not in color (i.e., the specimen is a black-and-white or gray scale reproduction of a color specimen); and
- the examining attorney has found no extrinsic evidence indicating applicant actually uses the mark in the white cross/red shield color scheme.

The requirement for additional information should advise the applicant that the use of the Swiss coat of arms in the white and red color scheme is prohibited under 18 U.S.C. §708, and require the applicant to provide either a color version of the specimen of record or a statement that the cross-and-shield element in the mark, as used in the specimen of record, does not appear in the colors white and red. If, in response, the applicant submits a color version of the specimen and it shows that the cross-and-shield is displayed in colors other than white and red, no refusal under §§1 and 45 should issue. The statement that the cross-and-shield element, as used in the specimen of record, is not displayed in the prohibited color scheme may be submitted in a response to an Office action or entered by examiner's amendment. If the applicant submits this statement, no further inquiry is necessary. Although the statement will appear in the application record, it will not be printed on the registration certificate, should one issue.

1205.01(d)(i)(B) When an Advisory Should Be Provided

If issuing an Office action for other reasons, the examining attorney should provide an advisory regarding the potential refusal under §§1 and 45 when all of the following conditions exist:

- the dates of use are after August 31, 1948 (or are not provided);
- the mark contains an upright equilateral cross on a triangular shield that is not significantly altered, stylized, or merged with other elements in the mark;
- the drawing is not in color;
- the application record does not contain a specimen or any indication of the colors that appear in the mark as it is actually used; and
- the examining attorney has found no extrinsic evidence that the applicant uses the cross-and-shield element in the prohibited color scheme (the examining attorney is not required to search for such extrinsic evidence).

If the dates of use provided do not clearly indicate that the mark was in use on or before August 31, 1948, it should be presumed that the first use occurred after that date. In applications based on §1(b), §66(a), or solely on §44, the use dates should be presumed to be after August 31, 1948.

If possible, the examining attorney should provide the advisory in the initial Office action. The advisory should indicate that a refusal under Trademark Act §§1 and 45 will issue if the specimen submitted with an allegation of use (for §1(b) applications) or a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration of use (for §44 and §66(a) applications) shows the cross-and-shield element in a white and red color scheme. In addition, the applicant should be advised that a color version of the specimen showing a red cross on a white ground may result in a refusal on the ground that the mark is not in lawful use in commerce based on 18 U.S.C. §706 (see TMEP §§ [1205.01\(c\)–\(c\)\(iv\)](#) regarding marks containing the Greek red cross and TMEP § [1205.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#)). Failure

to provide an advisory does not preclude a refusal of registration in a subsequent Office action or a refusal of a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration of use. Cf. [TMEP §1202](#).

1205.01(d)(i)(C) When a Refusal Under Sections 1 and 45 Should Not Be Issued

Even if the mark contains an element composed of an upright equilateral cross on a triangular shield, the examining attorney should not issue a refusal under §§1 and 45 if any of the following conditions exist:

the applicant specifies that the mark was in use on or before August 31, 1948;

the coat of arms shown in the mark is significantly altered, stylized, or merged with other elements in the mark, so as to create a different commercial impression from the actual Swiss coat of arms;

the drawing is not in color, there is no color claim, the mark description has been omitted or does not reference color, and the application contains a color specimen that shows the relevant matter in a color scheme other than white and red; or

the drawing is in color and shows the cross and triangular shield in a color scheme other than white and red. In this situation, a refusal should not issue, even if the color claim, mark description, or specimen indicates that the cross and shield appear in the prohibited color scheme. Instead, to address the discrepancy between the drawing and the other information in the application record, the examining attorney must require a corrected color claim, an amended mark description, and/or a matching specimen, as appropriate. In addition, the examining attorney should provide an advisory indicating that the use of the Swiss coat of arms in the white and red color scheme is prohibited by federal law and that, if the applicant amends the drawing to show the cross in white and the shield in red, the mark will be refused under Trademark Act §§1 and 45.

The refusal should not be issued even if the cross is white and the shield is red.

1205.01(d)(i)(D) Applicant's Response to Refusal

If a mark is unregistrable under §§1 and 45 because it contains the Swiss coat of arms, disclaiming the coat of arms will not make it registrable, nor will claiming acquired distinctiveness under Trademark Act §2(f) or amending the application to the Supplemental Register. Cf. [TMEP §§ 1204.04\(a\)](#) and [1205.01\(a\)\(v\)](#). In addition, an applicant may not overcome the refusal under §§1 and 45 by disclaiming the colors that appear in the coat of arms. If registration is refused because the drawing or specimen actually shows the cross-and-shield element in white and red, the applicant may not overcome the refusal by merely providing a statement that the mark will not be used in the prohibited colors. (If the drawing contains a black-and-white depiction of the Swiss coat of arms, and the applicant provides a statement that the mark does not, or will not, appear in the colors white and red, the statement will remain in the application record but will not be printed on any registration certificate that may issue.)

For applications based on §1, applicants may overcome the refusal as follows:

Amending the Colors in the Drawing. If the mark is refused because the drawing shows the cross-and-shield element in the prohibited color scheme, a §1 applicant may overcome the refusal by submitting an amended drawing showing the cross-and-shield element in a different, non-prohibited color scheme, or by submitting a non-color version of the drawing (i.e., a black-and-white or gray scale drawing). Under these circumstances, these amendments to the drawing usually will not be considered a material alteration of the mark. Cf. [TMEP §1205.01\(a\)\(v\)](#). The color claim and color description must also be amended or deleted, as appropriate. If the application is based on §1(a),

the record must contain an acceptable matching specimen. Black-and-white or gray scale reproductions of specimens are not acceptable for this purpose; a color version of the specimen must be submitted.

Amending the Color Claim/Description; Substitute Specimen. If the drawing is not in color, but registration is refused because the color claim or mark description indicates that the cross-and-shield element appears in white and red, a §1 applicant may overcome the refusal by amending the color claim or mark description to delete any reference to color. Likewise, if the original drawing is not in color, but registration was refused because the specimen showed the cross-and-shield element in the prohibited color scheme, the applicant may obviate the refusal by submitting a color specimen showing use of the mark in colors other than white and red.

Deleting the Coat of Arms from the Drawing. A §1 applicant may also overcome the refusal by deleting the coat of arms from the mark if the coat of arms is separable from the other elements in the mark and the remaining matter is registrable. Cf. [TMEP §1204.04\(b\)](#). Generally, the deletion of this matter will not be considered a material alteration of the mark. Furthermore, if the coat of arms is deleted from the drawing, any specimen showing the mark with the deleted matter should still be considered to match the drawing. Cf. [TMEP §1204.04\(b\)](#).

For applications based on §44 or §66(a), applicants generally may not make amendments to the mark. Therefore, the option to delete the Swiss coat of arms is not available in these types of applications. [37 C.F.R. §§2.51\(c\), 2.72\(c\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§ 807.12\(b\), 1011.01, 1904.02\(j\)](#). However, if the mark in a §44 or §66(a) application is refused because the drawing presents the cross-and-shield element in the prohibited color scheme, but there is no corresponding color claim in the foreign or international registration, the applicant may overcome the refusal under §§1 and 45 by submitting a statement that no claim of color is made with respect to the foreign or international registration and amending the drawing to a black-and-white reproduction of the mark. See [TMEP §§ 1011.01, 1904.02\(k\)](#). In addition, the applicant must submit a statement confirming applicant's bona fide intent to use the mark lawfully (i.e., in colors other than white and red). This statement does not need to be verified.

1205.01(d)(i)(E) Refusals Based on Extrinsic Evidence

If a §1(b), §44, or §66(a) application is refused based solely on extrinsic evidence of applicant's unlawful use of the Swiss coat of arms, the applicant may overcome the refusal by submitting a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark lawfully (i.e., in colors other than white and red). [TMEP §§804–804.01\(b\)](#). For a §1(a) application refused based on extrinsic evidence (or based on the specimen of record), the applicant may overcome the refusal by amending the application filing basis to §1(b), and need only submit the usual verified statement corresponding to that amendment (i.e., that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services, and that the applicant had this intention as of the application filing date). [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(c\)](#). If the specimen submitted with the applicant's subsequent allegation of use, or with an affidavit or declaration of use under §8 or §71, shows the mark is not in lawful use, the refusal must be reissued.

1205.01(d)(ii) Refusal Under Section 2(b): Swiss Flag or Swiss Coat of Arms

Trademark Act §2(b) prohibits registration on the Principal Register or Supplemental Register of a mark that consists of or comprises the flag or coat of arms of a foreign nation. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#); see [TMEP §§1204-1204.05](#). In determining whether a mark must be refused under §2(b), the relevant question is whether consumers will perceive matter in the mark as a flag or coat of arms. See [TMEP §1204.01\(a\)](#).

Section 2(b) also prohibits registration of any simulation of a foreign nation's flag or coat of arms. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1204.01\(a\)](#). As previously noted, a "simulation" refers to "something that gives the appearance or effect or has the characteristics of an original item." *In re Waltham Watch Co.*, 179 USPQ 59, 60 (TTAB 1973) (citing Webster's Third New Int'l Dictionary (unabridged ed. 1965)); *see* [TMEP §1204.](#)

Whether particular matter is a simulation of a flag or coat of arms is determined by a visual comparison of the matter and the actual flag or coat of arms. *See In re Waltham Watch Co.*, 179 USPQ at 60; [TMEP §1204.](#) The focus of the analysis is on the relevant purchasers' general recollection of the flag or coat of arms, "without a careful analysis and side-by-side comparison." *In re Advance Indus. Sec., Inc.*, 194 USPQ 344, 346 (TTAB 1977) . *See* [TMEP §1204.01\(a\)](#) for examples of flag simulations.

The examining attorney should consider the following factors when determining whether matter in a mark will be perceived as the Swiss coat of arms or Swiss flag:

- the colors, if any, that appear in the matter;
- the stylization of the matter and its relationship to other elements in the mark;
- the presence of any words or other designs on the drawing that might create or reinforce the impression that the matter is the Swiss flag or Swiss coat of arms; and
- the presentation and use of the mark on the specimen of record, if one is provided. *See* [TMEP §1204.01\(a\)](#).

The determination of whether a refusal under §2(b) must issue should be based on how the mark is displayed in the drawing, described in the application, or used in the specimen of record. Extrinsic evidence of applicant's use of the mark should not be considered.

1205.01(d)(ii)(A) When a Refusal Under Section 2(b) Must Be Issued

The examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(b) if the mark contains an element composed of an upright equilateral cross on a square, a rectangle, or a triangular shield (or a simulation thereof) that is not significantly stylized, altered, or merged with other elements in the mark, and any of the following conditions exist:

- the drawing shows the cross in white and the square, rectangle, or triangular shield in red;
- the drawing is not in color, but (i) the color claim or mark description indicates the cross is white and the square, rectangle, or triangular shield is red, or (ii) the specimen shows the cross and square, rectangle, or triangular shield in the prohibited color scheme; or
- the drawing is not in color, but in addition to an upright equilateral cross on a square, a rectangle, or a triangular shield, the mark contains wording or other matter that creates or reinforces the impression that the cross and square/rectangle/shield design is the Swiss flag or Swiss coat of arms (e.g., "Switzerland," "Swiss," "Suisse," "Schweiz," "Swiss Confederation").

For applications based on §1(a), the examining attorney must issue a requirement for additional information based on Trademark Rule 2.61(b), [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), if a mark contains an element composed of an upright equilateral cross on a square, a rectangle, or a triangular shield (or a simulation thereof) and all of the following conditions exist:

- the drawing is not in color;
- there is no color claim;

the mark description is omitted or does not reference color;
the mark does not contain wording or other matter that creates or reinforces the impression that the matter is the Swiss flag or Swiss coat of arms (e.g., “Switzerland,” “Swiss,” “Suisse,” “Schweiz,” “Swiss Confederation”); and
the specimen of record shows the mark but is not in color (i.e., the specimen is a black-and-white or gray scale reproduction of a color specimen).

The requirement for additional information should advise that registration of the Swiss coat of arms or Swiss flag in the white-and-red color scheme is barred under Trademark Act §2(b) and require the applicant to provide either a color version of the specimen of record or a statement that the relevant matter in the mark, as used in the specimen of record, does not appear in the colors white and red. If, in response, the applicant submits a color version of the specimen and it shows that the relevant matter is displayed in colors other than white and red, a refusal under §2(b) should not be issued. The statement that the relevant matter, as used in the specimen of record, does not appear in the prohibited color scheme may be submitted in a response to an Office action or may be entered by examiner’s amendment. If the applicant submits this statement, no further inquiry is necessary. Although the statement will appear in the application record, it will not be printed on the registration certificate, should one issue.

When issuing the §2(b) refusal, the examining attorney must provide evidence supporting the conclusion that the matter in the mark is the official coat of arms or flag of the Swiss Confederation. *See, e.g.*, Swiss Fed. Inst. of Intellectual Prop., *Frequently Asked Questions – Legislative Amendment “Swissness”*, <https://www.eid.ch/service/frequently-asked-questions/legislative-amendment-swissness-a-swiss-cross-and-the-swiss-coat-of-arms.html> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012) (indicating that “[t]he Swiss cross is a perpendicular, free-standing, white cross, each arm of which is one-sixth longer than it is wide on a red background” and that “[t]he Swiss coat of arms is a Swiss cross in a triangular shield”); Britannica.com, *Switzerland, flag of*, <http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/1355532/Switzerland-flag-of/> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012); Cent. Intelligence Agency, *The World Factbook, Switzerland*, <https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sz.html> (accessed Aug. 15, 2012). In addition, if the refusal is based on the examining attorney’s conclusion that other wording or matter in the mark creates or reinforces the impression that the cross and square/rectangle/shield design is the Swiss flag or Swiss coat of arms, the examining attorney should provide evidence to support that conclusion.

When an examining attorney issues a §2(b) refusal because the mark features a cross-and-shield design that appears in, or is used in, the prohibited color scheme, the examining attorney must also issue a “not in lawful use” refusal under Trademark Act §§1 and 45. *See* [TMEP §1205.01\(c\)\(i\)](#). Sometimes, however, a §2(b) refusal will be issued not because information in the application indicates that the cross-and-shield design appears in, or is used in, the prohibited color scheme, but because other Swiss indicia in the mark would lead to the impression that a non-color cross-and-shield design is the Swiss coat of arms. In these instances, a refusal under §§1 and 45 is not appropriate unless there is extrinsic evidence that, as used by the applicant, the coat of arms in the mark appears in the prohibited color scheme.

1205.01(d)(ii)(B) When an Advisory Should Be Provided

If sending an Office action for other reasons, the examining attorney should provide an advisory regarding the potential refusal under §2(b) when all of the following conditions exist:

the mark contains an upright equilateral cross on a square, a rectangle, or a triangular shield that is not significantly stylized, altered, or merged with other elements in the mark;
the drawing is not in color;

the application record does not contain a specimen or any other indication of the colors that appear in the mark as it is actually used; and
there is no wording or other indicia in the mark that would create or reinforce the impression that the mark contains the Swiss flag or the Swiss coat of arms.

If possible, the examining attorney should provide the advisory in the initial Office action. The advisory should indicate that a refusal under Trademark Act §2(b) will issue if the specimen submitted with an allegation of use (for §1(b) applications) or a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration of use (for §44 and §66(a) applications) shows the cross and square/rectangle/shield in a white and red color scheme. Failure to provide an advisory does not preclude a refusal of registration in a subsequent Office action or a refusal of a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration. Cf. [TMEP §1202](#).

1205.01(d)(ii)(C) When a Refusal Under Section 2(b) Should Not Be Issued

Even if the mark contains an upright equilateral cross on a square, a rectangle, or a triangular shield (or simulation thereof), a §2(b) refusal should not be issued if any of the following conditions exist:

the flag or coat of arms shown in the mark is sufficiently altered, stylized, or merged with other elements in the mark, so as to create a distinct commercial impression;
the drawing is not in color, there is no color claim, the mark description does not reference color (or there is no mark description), and the application contains a color specimen that shows the relevant matter in a color scheme other than white and red; or
the drawing is in color and shows the cross and square/rectangle/shield in a color scheme other than white and red. In this situation, a refusal should not issue, even if the color claim, mark description, or specimen indicates that the cross and square/rectangle/shield appears in the prohibited color scheme. Instead, to address the discrepancy between the drawing and the other information in the application record, the examining attorney must require a corrected color claim, an amended mark description, and/or a matching specimen, as appropriate. In addition, the examining attorney should provide an advisory indicating that, under §2(b), the Swiss flag and Swiss coat of arms may not be registered as a trademark or service mark and that, if the applicant amends the drawing to show the cross in white and the square, rectangle, or shield in red, the mark will be refused under Trademark Act §2(b).

1205.01(d)(ii)(D) Applicant's Response to Refusal

Section 2(b) provides an absolute bar to registration. See [TMEP §1204.04\(a\)](#). Thus, a disclaimer of the relevant matter will not overcome the refusal, nor will a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) or an amendment to the Supplemental Register. *Id.*

In addition, if registration is refused because the drawing or specimen actually shows the cross and square/rectangle/shield element in white and red, the applicant may not overcome the refusal by merely providing a statement that the mark will not be used in the prohibited colors. (If the drawing contains a black-and-white depiction of the Swiss flag or the Swiss coat of arms, and the applicant provides a statement that the mark does not, or will not, appear in the colors white and red, the statement will remain in the application record but will not be printed on any registration certificate that may issue.)

For applications based on §1, an applicant may overcome a §2(b) refusal as follows:

Amending the Colors in the Drawing. If registration is refused because the drawing shows the relevant matter in the prohibited color scheme, amending the drawing to show the matter in another color scheme—either in different colors or in no particular colors (i.e., black and white or gray scale)—will usually be sufficient to overcome the refusal. However, amending to a non-color drawing showing the mark in black and white or gray scale will not overcome the refusal if there is other matter in the mark (e.g., wording such as “Swiss” or “Switzerland”) that creates or reinforces the impression that the cross and square/rectangle/shield design in the mark is the Swiss flag or the Swiss coat of arms.

Generally, amending the colors in the cross and square/rectangle/shield element in a mark to overcome a §2(b) refusal will not result in a material alteration of the mark. If the colors in the drawing are changed, the color claim and color description must also be amended or deleted, as appropriate. If the application is based on §1(a), the record must contain an acceptable matching specimen.

Black-and-white or gray scale reproductions of specimens are not acceptable for this purpose; a color version of the specimen must be submitted.

Amending the Color Claim/Description; Substitute Specimen. If the drawing is not in color, but registration is refused because the color claim or mark description indicates that the relevant matter appears in white and red, a §1 applicant may overcome the refusal by amending the color claim or mark description to delete any reference to color. Likewise, if the original drawing is not in color, but registration was refused because the specimen showed the relevant matter in the prohibited color scheme, the applicant may obviate the refusal by submitting a color specimen showing use of the relevant matter in the mark in colors other than white and red.

Deleting the Coat of Arms or Flag from the Drawing. Section 1 applicants may also overcome a §2(b) refusal by deleting the unregistrable flag or coat of arms, but only if the matter is separable from other elements in the mark (e.g., the flag design is separated from, or is used as a background for, other matter in the mark) and the remaining matter is registrable. If the flag or coat of arms is deleted from the drawing, any specimen showing the mark with the deleted matter should still be considered to match the drawing. See [TMPEP §1204.04\(b\)](#).

Amending the Filing Basis to §1(b). If registration of the mark is refused under §2(b) because the specimen of record shows the relevant matter in white and red, applicant may amend the application filing basis to §1(b), in which case the examining attorney should withdraw the refusal. However, the refusal must be reissued if the specimen submitted with applicant’s subsequent allegation of use shows the relevant matter in the prohibited color scheme.

For applications based on §44 or §66(a), applicants generally may not make amendments to the mark; thus, the option to delete the Swiss flag or Swiss coat of arms is not available. [37 C.F.R. §§2.51\(c\), 2.72\(c\)\(1\)](#); [TMPEP §§ 807.12\(b\), 1011.01, 1904.02\(j\)](#). However, if a §44 or §66(a) application presents the mark in color, but there is no corresponding color claim in the foreign or international registration, the applicant may submit a statement that no claim of color is made with respect to the foreign or international registration and amend the drawing to a black-and-white reproduction of the mark. See [TMPEP §§ 1011.01, 1904.02\(k\)](#). In this manner, the applicant may overcome the §2(b) refusal, provided there are no other Swiss indicia in the mark that would create the perception that the black-and-white or gray-scale coat of arms or flag in the mark is the Swiss coat of arms or Swiss flag.

1205.01(d)(iii) Other Refusals

If a mark containing matter that would be perceived as the Swiss coat of arms or Swiss flag also includes other Swiss indicia, such as the wording “Switzerland” or “Swiss,” or foreign equivalents, the examining attorney should consider whether the primary significance of the mark as a whole is geographic. If so, a refusal under Trademark Act §2(e)(2) (geographically descriptive) or §2(a)/§2(e)(3) (geographically

deceptive/primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive) may be appropriate, in addition to refusals under §§1 and 45 and/or §2(b). For detailed information regarding the examination procedures relating to geographic refusals, see [TMEP §§1210-1210.07\(b\)](#).

Like the Swiss coat of arms and the Swiss flag, the Red Cross features an upright equilateral cross and the colors red and white. However, the color scheme in the Red Cross is reversed, displaying the cross in red and the background in white. The Red Cross is also protected by federal statute, and marks containing this matter may be subject to refusals under Trademark Act §§1 and 45 (not in lawful use) and §2(a) (false suggestion of a connection with the American National Red Cross). *See* 18 U.S.C. §706. If the mark contains an equilateral cross, but the application does not provide a clear indication of the colors that appear in the mark, examining attorneys should consider whether a refusal on the basis that the mark appears to contain the Red Cross may be appropriate. For additional information, see [TMEP §1205.01](#).

Refusals for failure to function as a trademark or service mark, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#) (*see also* TMEP §§ [1202, 1301.02\(a\)](#)), or for likelihood of confusion, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), may also apply to these marks.

1205.01(d)(iv) Examples

Examples of Situations Where Registration Must (or Might) Be Refused. In some of the following examples, a refusal under §§1 and 45, §2(b), or both must be issued because the drawing itself shows that the mark contains the Swiss coat of arms, the Swiss flag, or a simulation thereof. In the remaining examples, other information will dictate whether either or both refusals are appropriate.



Mark: The mark consists of the wording SWISS OVEN appearing on a banner that is positioned over a red triangular shield containing a white cross, with depictions of wheat appearing on both sides of the shield

Analysis: The mark contains a red triangular shield containing a white equilateral cross. The shield is partially obscured and the cross is proportionally larger than the cross in the Swiss coat of arms. Nonetheless, this matter is essentially a simulation of the Swiss coat of arms (regardless of the wording in the mark). Thus, refusals under §§1 and 45 and §2(b) must be issued.



Mark: The mark consists of the wording ZURICH SWISS appearing below a red square containing a white equilateral cross.

Analysis: The mark contains the Swiss flag: a white equilateral cross on a red square. Therefore, the mark must be refused under §2(b). The wording in the mark reinforces the impression that the matter is the Swiss flag and further supports the §2(b) refusal. A refusal under §§1 and 45 is not appropriate, because this refusal applies only to the Swiss coat of arms. See [TMEP §1205.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#) regarding this mark's geographic significance.



Mark: The mark consists of an oval carrier featuring, among other things, a triangular shield containing an upright equilateral cross. Color is not claimed as a feature of the mark.

Analysis: A §2(b) refusal must be issued because, although the shield-and-cross element is not shown in color and is slightly different from the actual Swiss coat of arms, other Swiss indicia in the mark create the impression that the design is the Swiss coat of arms. A refusal under §§1 and 45 should not be issued based on the drawing alone, because the drawing does not show the relevant matter in a white-and-red color scheme. If, however, the specimen of use or extrinsic evidence shows that the cross-and-shield element is used in the prohibited color scheme, a refusal under §§1 and 45 would be appropriate. Otherwise, an advisory or a Rule 2.61(b) requirement for additional information may be appropriate,



Mark: The mark consists of a circular carrier containing a depiction of a mountain, a triangular shield containing an upright equilateral cross, and the wording SWISS GRILL and SWISS GOURMET FOOD. Color is not claimed as a feature of the mark.

Analysis: A §2(b) refusal must be issued in this case because, although the cross-and-shield element is not shown in color, other Swiss indicia in the mark will create the impression that the design is the Swiss coat of arms. A refusal under §§1 and 45 should not be issued based on the drawing alone, because the drawing does not show the relevant matter in a white-and-red color scheme. If, however, the specimen of record or extrinsic evidence shows that the cross-and-shield element is used in the prohibited color scheme, a refusal under §§1 and 45 would be appropriate. Otherwise, an advisory or a Rule 2.61(b) requirement for additional information may be appropriate.



Mark: The mark consists of the wording ADVANCED DERMATOLOGIC SOLUTIONS, LLC appearing above a rectangle containing an upright equilateral cross. Color is not claimed as a feature of the mark.

Analysis: A §2(b) refusal is appropriate if the color claim, mark description, or specimen of record indicates that the cross appears in white and the rectangle appears in red. A refusal under §§1 and 45 would not be appropriate, regardless of the colors these elements appear in, because this refusal applies only to the Swiss coat of arms. Otherwise, an advisory or a Rule 2.61(b) requirement for additional information may be appropriate.



Mark: The mark consists of a red background containing a white cross above the wording ANDREW CHRISTIAN, which is also in white.

Analysis: The red portion of the mark represents a red background, but not necessarily a red rectangular background. If the specimen of record shows the mark in a rectangular form, then the mark is essentially a simulation of the Swiss flag and a §2(b) refusal is appropriate. The inclusion of the wording

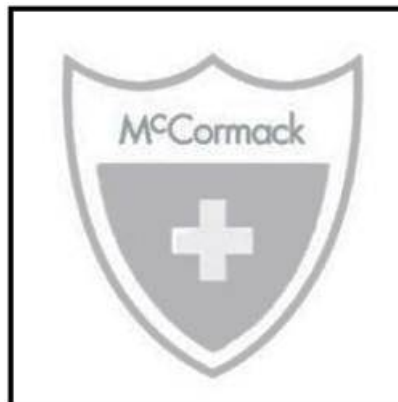
immediately below the cross would not detract from this impression. A refusal under §§1 and 45 is not appropriate because this refusal applies only to the Swiss coat of arms.



Mark: The mark consists of a rectangle containing a white equilateral cross on a red square, all of which is bordered in black, and the wording REMOTE MEDICAL INTL.

Analysis: Because it is bordered in black, the cross-and-square element in the mark is slightly different from Swiss flag. However, it is sufficiently similar to be considered a simulation of the Swiss flag. Thus, a §2(b) refusal is appropriate. A refusal under §§1 and 45 is not appropriate because this refusal applies only to the Swiss coat of arms.

Examples of Situations Where Refusal of Registration Is Not Appropriate. In the following examples, a refusal under §§1 and 45 or §2(b) is not appropriate for one or more of the following reasons: (1) the mark is displayed in a color scheme other than white and red; (2) the mark does not contain all of the characteristic elements of the Swiss coat of arms or the Swiss flag; or (3) the relevant matter in the mark is sufficiently altered, or merged with other design elements, to create a distinct commercial impression.



Mark: The mark consists of the word MCCORMACK in silver appearing above a white cross on a silver triangular background, all within a silver shield-shaped outline.

Analysis: Although the mark contains an upright equilateral cross on a triangular background, a refusal under §§1 and 45 is not appropriate because the relevant elements are not displayed in white and red. A refusal under §2(b) is not appropriate because the drawing and color claim indicate that the cross-and-shield design appear in the colors silver and white.



Mark: The mark consists of the word PROCARE, with the letters "PR" and "CARE" in blue and the letter "O" formed by a red circle containing a white cross.

Analysis: Although the mark features a design element composed of a white equilateral cross on a red background, a refusal under §§1 and 45 is not appropriate because the background shape is not a triangular shield. A §2(b) refusal is not appropriate because the relevant matter does not appear in the shape of the Swiss flag or Swiss coat of arms.



Mark: The mark consists of a red silhouette of a house containing a white equilateral cross.

Analysis: Although the mark contains an upright equilateral cross in white on a red background, this matter is integrated into a stylized silhouette of a house. As a result, the mark creates an impression of something entirely different from the Swiss flag or the Swiss coat of arms. Thus, a refusal under §§1 and 45 or §2(b) would not be appropriate.



Mark: The mark consists of a triangular shield containing an upright equilateral cross, appearing below the word REPEL and to the left of the wording ANTIMICROBIAL PROTECTED. The colors black, white, and gray are claimed as a feature of the mark.

Analysis: Although the mark contains an upright equilateral cross on a triangular shield, refusals under §§1 and 45 and §2(b) are not appropriate, because the drawing and color claim indicate that the cross-and-shield design appear in the colors black, white, and gray. These refusals should not issue, even if the specimen shows use of the cross-and-shield in the prohibited white-and-red color scheme. Instead, to address the discrepancy between the drawing and the specimen, the examining attorney must require a matching specimen that necessarily would not include the prohibited color scheme.

1205.02 Article 6ter of the Paris Convention

The United States is a member of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property, as revised at Stockholm on July 14, 1967, the members of which constitute a Union for the protection of industrial property. Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property art. 6 *ter*, Mar. 20, 1883, http://www.wipo.int/treaties/en/ip/paris/trtdocs_wo020.html.

Under Article 6 *ter* of the Paris Convention, the contracting countries have agreed to refuse or to invalidate the registration, and to prohibit the unauthorized use as trademarks or as elements of trademarks, of armorial bearings, flags, and other State emblems of the member countries, official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty adopted by member countries, and any imitation from a heraldic point of view. The provision applies equally to armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names of international intergovernmental organizations of which one or more countries of the Union are members, except for those that are already the subject of international agreements in force, intended to ensure their protection (e.g., “Red Cross” and emblems protected by the Geneva Convention of August 12, 1949).

Under Article 6 *ter*, each member country or international intergovernmental organization (IGO) may communicate armorial bearings, emblems, official signs and hallmarks indicating warranty and control, and names and abbreviations of IGOs to the IB, who will transmit the communications to the other member countries. Within twelve months from receipt of the notification, a member country may transmit its objections, through the IB.

When the USPTO receives notifications from the IB under Article 6 *ter*, the USPTO searches its records for conflicting marks, although the requests are not subjected to a full examination by an examining attorney or published for opposition. If the USPTO determines that a designation should be entered into the USPTO search records to assist USPTO examining attorneys, the designation is assigned a serial number in the “89” series code (i.e., serial numbers beginning with the digits “89,” sometimes referred to as “non-registrations”). Information about the designation should be discovered in an examining attorney’s search.

Refusal of Marks Notified Under Article 6ter

Depending on the nature and use of the mark, §§2(a) and 2(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(a\)](#) and [1052\(b\)](#), may bar registration of marks comprised in whole or in part of designations notified pursuant to Article 6 *ter* and to which the United States has transmitted no objections. A refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act is not appropriate. The issue is not whether the marks are confusingly similar, but whether registration of the mark would violate §§2(a) or 2(b) of the Trademark Act.

For example, it may be appropriate for the examining attorney to refuse registration under §2(a) of the Act on the ground that the mark comprises matter that may falsely suggest a connection with a national symbol of a member country or an international intergovernmental organization. See [TMEP §1203.03\(e\)](#). Other §2(a) bases for refusal could also apply. See [TMEP §§1203-1203.03\(f\)](#). It may be appropriate to refuse registration under §2(b) of the Act if the proposed mark comprises a flag, coat of arms, or other similar insignia. See [TMEP §1204](#). In some instances, it may be appropriate to refuse registration under §§1, 2 (preamble), and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), and [1127](#), on the ground that the subject matter would not be perceived as a trademark. For service mark applications, §3 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1053](#), should also be cited as a basis for refusal.

1205.03 Native American Tribal Insignia

Various federally and state-recognized Native American tribes have identified a particular insignia as their official tribal insignia. When a federally or state-recognized Native American tribe submits its official insignia to the USPTO, it is assigned a serial number in the “89” series code (i.e., serial numbers beginning with the digits “89,” sometimes referred to as “non-registrations”) and entered into the USPTO search records to assist examining attorneys and applicants. There is no legal requirement to submit such an insignia to the USPTO. Therefore, the search records include only the insignia of federally and state-recognized Native American tribes that choose to submit their insignia.

When the USPTO receives a request to enter an insignia, the USPTO complies if the request is made by a federally or state-recognized Native American tribe and includes certain required information. The USPTO does not investigate whether the insignia truly is the official insignia of the tribe.

Inclusion of the insignia in the search records aids in the examination of applications for trademark registration. Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), disallows the registration of marks that falsely suggest a connection with a non-sponsoring person or institution, including a Native American tribe. See *In re Shinnecock Smoke Shop* 571 F. 3d 1171, 91 USPQ 2d 1218 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *In re White*, 73 USPQ2d 1713 (TTAB 2004). Thus, if a mark that a party wishes to register as a trademark resembles an insignia of a Native American tribe, it may falsely suggest a connection with the tribe.

1206 Refusal on Basis of Name, Portrait, or Signature of Particular Living Individual or Deceased U.S. President Without Consent

15 U.S.C. §1052 (Extract)

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it ... (c) Consists of or comprises a name, portrait, or signature identifying a particular living individual except by his written consent, or the name, signature, or portrait of a deceased President of the United States during the life of his widow, if any, except by the written consent of the widow.

Section 2(c) absolutely bars the registration of these marks on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register. See [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(c\)](#), [1052\(f\)](#), [1091\(a\)](#).

The purpose of requiring the consent of a living individual to the registration of his or her name, signature, or portrait is to protect rights of privacy and publicity that living persons have in the designations that identify them. *In re Hoefflin*, 97 USPQ2d 1174, 1176 (TTAB 2010) ; *see also Univ. of Notre Dame du Lac v. J.C. Gourmet Food Imps. Co.*, 703 F.2d 1372, 1376 n.8, 217 USPQ 505, 509 n.8 (Fed. Cir. 1983); *Canovas v. Venezia 80 S.R.L.*, 220 USPQ 660, 661 (TTAB 1983). See [TMEP §1203.03](#) for a discussion of the right to control the use of one's identity, which underlies part of §2(a) as well as §2(c).

Section 2(c) does not apply to marks that comprise matter that identifies deceased persons, except for a deceased president of the United States during the life of the president's widow. See [15 U.S.C. §1052\(c\)](#);

In re Masucci, 179 USPQ 829 (TTAB 1973) (affirming §2(c) refusal of a mark consisting of the name EISENHOWER, a portrait of President Dwight D. Eisenhower, and the words PRESIDENT EISENHOWER REGISTERED PLATINUM MEDALLION #13 on the ground that the mark comprised the name, signature, or portrait of a deceased United States president without the written consent of his living widow).

Whether consent to registration is required depends on whether the public would recognize and understand the mark as identifying a particular living individual. Specifically, a consent is required only if the individual will be associated with the goods or services, because the person is publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, or is so well known that the public would reasonably assume a connection. See [TMEP §1206.02](#) for further information.

See [TMEP §1206.03](#) regarding when it is necessary for an examining attorney to inquire of the applicant as to whether a name, signature, or portrait in a mark identifies a particular living individual, and [TMEP §§813.01\(a\)-\(c\)](#) regarding the entry of pertinent statements in the record for printing in the *Official Gazette* and on a registration certificate.

1206.01 Name, Portrait, or Signature of Particular Living Individual

Section 2(c) explicitly pertains to any name, portrait, or signature that identifies a particular living individual, or a deceased president of the United States during the life of the president's widow.

Does Not Have to Be Full Name. For purposes of §2(c), a "name" does not have to be the full name of an individual. Section 2(c) applies not only to full names, but also first names, surnames, shortened names, pseudonyms, stage names, titles, or nicknames, if there is evidence that the name identifies a specific living individual who is publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, or who is so well known that such a connection would be assumed. See *In re Hoefflin*, 97 USPQ2d 1174, 1177-78 (TTAB 2010) (holding registration of the marks OBAMA PAJAMA, OBAMA BAHAMA PAJAMAS, and BARACK'S JOCKS DRESS TO THE LEFT barred under §2(c) in the absence of consent to register, because they create a direct association with President Barack Obama); *In re Sauer*, 27 USPQ2d 1073, 1074-75 (TTAB 1993)

(holding registration of a mark containing BO, used in connection with a sports ball, barred under §2(c) in the absence of consent to register, because BO is the nickname of a well-known athlete and thus use of the mark would lead to the assumption that he was associated with the goods), *aff'd per curiam*, 26 F.3d 140 (Fed. Cir. 1994); *In re Steak & Ale Rests. of Am., Inc.*, 185 USPQ 447, 448 (TTAB 1975) (affirming a §2(c) refusal of the mark PRINCE CHARLES because the wording identifies a particular well-known living individual whose consent was not of record); *Laub v. Indus. Dev. Labs., Inc.*, 121 USPQ 595 (TTAB 1959) (sustaining a §2(c)-based opposition to registration of opposer's surname, LAUB, for use on goods that opposer was associated with, because applicant had not obtained opposer's written consent); *Reed v. Bakers Eng'g & Equip. Co.*, 100 USPQ 196 (PTO 1954) (holding registration of REED REEL OVEN barred by §2(c) in the absence of written consent to register from the designer and builder of the ovens, Paul N. Reed); *cf. Société Civile Des Domaines Dourthe Frères v. S.A. Consortium Vinicole De Bordeaux Et De La Gironde*, 6 USPQ2d 1205, 1209 (TTAB 1988) (“Section 2(c) does not apply to surnames except in those cases where a particular individual is known by a surname alone.”).

Name Could Refer to More Than One Person. The fact that a name appearing in a mark may be the name of more than one person does not negate the requirement for a written consent to registration if the mark identifies, to the relevant public, a particular living individual who is well known or is publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, or a deceased United States president whose spouse is living. *See Steak & Ale Rests.*, 185 USPQ at 447 (“Even accepting the existence of more than one living ‘PRINCE CHARLES’, it does not follow that each is not a particular living individual.”).

Portraits. Cases involving portraits include *In re McKee Baking Co.*, 218 USPQ 287 (TTAB 1983) (involving a mark consisting of a sign on which the portrait of a young girl appears below the words LITTLE DEBBIE); *In re Masucci*, 179 USPQ at 829 (involving a mark containing the name and portrait of President Eisenhower); *Garden v. Parfumerie Rigaud, Inc.*, 34 USPQ 30 (Comm'r Pats. 1937) (involving marks containing the name and portrait of petitioner).

1206.02 Connection With Goods or Services

Whether consent to registration is required depends on whether the public would recognize and understand the mark as identifying a particular living individual. A consent is required only if the individual bearing the name in the mark will be associated with the mark as used on the goods or services, either because: (1) the person is so well known that the public would reasonably assume a connection between the person and the goods or services; or (2) the individual is publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used. *See In re Hoefflin*, 97 USPQ2d 1174, 1175-76 (TTAB 2010) ; *Krause v. Krause Publ'ns, Inc.*, 76 USPQ2d 1904, 1909-10 (TTAB 2005). For purposes of §2(c), “publicly connected” means that the named individual is associated in some significant manner with the applicant, is actually connected to the goods or services at issue, or is well known in the relevant field of goods or services, and, as a result, the relevant public will recognize or perceive the name as identifying that particular individual. *See In re Sauer*, 27 USPQ2d 1073, 1075 (TTAB 1993), *aff'd per curiam*, 26 F.3d 140 (Fed. Cir. 1994); *Reed v. Bakers Eng'g & Equip. Co.*, 100 USPQ 196 (PTO 1954) (holding registration of REED REEL OVEN barred by §2(c) in the absence of written consent to register from the designer and builder of the ovens, Paul N. Reed); *see also* [TMEP §1206.03](#) (noting that, because there must be some indication that the relevant public would actually perceive the name as identifying a particular individual, the mere fact that the name is the first name, pseudonym, stage name, surname, nickname, or title of a living individual associated with the applicant (e.g., an employee, founder, or corporate officer) usually would not, by itself, necessitate an inquiry regarding the name).

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board stated the following in *Martin v. Carter Hawley Hale Stores, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 931, 933 (TTAB 1979) :

[Section] 2(c) was not designed to protect every person from having a name which is similar or identical to his or her name registered as a trademark. Such a scope of protection would practically preclude the registration of a trademark consisting of a name since in most cases there would be someone somewhere who is known by the name and who might be expected to protest its registration. Rather, the Statute was intended to protect one who, for valid reasons, could expect to suffer damage from another's trademark use of his name. That is, it is more than likely that any trademark which is comprised of a given name and surname will, in fact, be the name of a real person. But that coincidence, in and of itself, does not give rise to damage to that individual in the absence of other factors from which it may be determined that the particular individual bearing the name in question will be associated with the mark as used on the goods, either because that person is so well known that the public would reasonably assume the connection or because the individual is publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used.

In *Krause v. Krause Publ'ns*, 76 USPQ2d at 1909-10, the evidence of record showed, among other things, that the cancellation petitioner, Chester L. Krause, formed a sole proprietorship under the name "Krause Publications" for the purpose of publishing coin collecting publications; was subsequently associated for almost fifty years with the respondent Krause Publications Inc., a major publisher of hobby magazines, newspapers, and price guides, as its president and/or chairman; coauthored at least three publications in the field of the study and collecting of coins; conducted a number of lectures on this subject around the country; received awards from national coin- and car-collecting organizations in recognition of his contributions to those fields; was the founder of a car show and swap meet; and had his large collection of cars featured in a film by an organization dedicated to automotive history. 76 USPQ2d at 1907, 1908, 1910-11. The Board found that this evidence established that the petitioner was publicly connected with the fields of coin collecting, car collecting, and publishing activities relating thereto, such that a connection between petitioner and the mark KRAUSE PUBLICATIONS would be presumed by those who have an interest in such fields. *Id.* at 1910. Thus, as to the goods and services related to those fields, the Board granted the petition to cancel because the mark identified a particular living individual and there was no written consent to register. *Id.* at 1914. However, the petition to cancel the registration for "entertainment services in the nature of competitions and awards in the field of cutlery," was dismissed because petitioner had not demonstrated that he was publicly connected with the field of cutlery, or that he is so well known by the general public that a connection between petitioner and the mark would be presumed with respect to these services. *Id.* at 1910, 1911-12, 1914.

If no one with the name of the person identified in the mark is actually connected with the applicant or with the business in which the mark is used, and no person with the name in the mark is generally known such that a connection would be assumed, the mark generally would not be deemed to identify a particular person under §2(c), and consent would not be required. See *In re Morrison & Foerster LLP*, 110 USPQ2d 1423, 1428 (TTAB 2014) (holding no consent required because applicant's FRANKNDODD mark would be understood by the relevant consuming public as referencing and commenting on the Dodd-Frank Act, rather than as specifically identifying Congressman Barney Frank and Senator Chris Dodd); *Martin*, 206 USPQ at 933 (holding that §2(c) did not prohibit registration of NEIL MARTIN for men's shirts, where the individual, although well known in his own professional and social circles, failed to establish that he was so famous as to be recognized by the public in general, or that he is or ever was publicly connected or associated with the clothing field); *Brand v. Fairchester Packing Co.*, 84 USPQ 97 (Comm'r Pats. 1950) (affirming dismissal of a petition to cancel the registration of the mark ARNOLD BRAND for use with fresh tomatoes because nothing in the record indicated that the mark identified the petitioner, Arnold Brand, an attorney specializing in patent and trademark matters, with the tomato business, or that use of the mark would lead the public to make such a connection).

To support a refusal under §2(c) as to a particular class in an application, it is not necessary to demonstrate that the individual is publicly connected with all the goods or services listed in the class. It is enough to show that the individual is publicly connected with at least some of the goods/services in the class. See *Krause*, 76 USPQ2d at 1911.

1206.03 When Inquiry is Required

Generally, if a mark comprises a name, portrait, or signature that could *reasonably* be perceived as identifying a particular living individual, and the applicant does not state whether the name or likeness does in fact identify a living individual, the examining attorney must inquire whether the name or likeness is that of a specific living individual and advise the applicant that, if so, the individual's written consent to register the name or likeness must be submitted. If there is sufficient evidence that the name, portrait, or signature identifies a particular living individual, the examining attorney may exercise discretion regarding whether to issue a §2(c) refusal instead of an inquiry.

Full Name. If a mark contains a full name, consisting of a first name/initial(s) and a surname, the examining attorney must issue an inquiry as to whether the mark comprises the name of a living individual, unless it is clear from the record that the name is not that of a living individual. It is not necessary to establish that the individual is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used before making the inquiry. If there is sufficient evidence that the individual is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, the examining attorney may, at his or her discretion, issue a §2(c) refusal rather than an inquiry.

Example: The mark is STEVEN JONES (or S. JONES), the application is silent as to whether the name identifies a living individual, and there is no evidence that the individual is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used. The examining attorney must inquire whether the name is that of a specific living individual and advise the applicant that, if so, the individual's written consent to register the name must be submitted.

Portrait or Likeness. Generally, if the mark comprises a portrait or likeness that could *reasonably* be perceived as that of a particular living individual, the examining attorney must issue an inquiry as to whether the mark comprises the likeness of living individual, unless it is clear from the record that the likeness is not that of a living individual. It is not necessary to establish that the individual is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used before making the inquiry. If there is sufficient evidence that the individual is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, the examining attorney may, at his or her discretion, issue a §2(c) refusal rather than an inquiry.

Fictitious Character. The examining attorney should not make an inquiry if it is clear from the record, or from the examining attorney's research, that the matter identifies a fictitious character. For example, no inquiry is necessary as to whether "Alfred E. Neuman," "Betty Crocker," or "Aunt Jemima" is the name of a particular living individual because they are names of well-known fictitious characters. Likewise, no inquiry is necessary as to a design that is obviously that of a cartoon character.

First Name, Pseudonym, Stage Name, Surname, Nickname, or Title. If the mark comprises a first name, pseudonym, stage name, nickname, surname, or title (e.g., "Mrs. Johnson," "The Amazing Jeffrey," or "Aunt Sally"), the examining attorney must determine whether there is evidence that the name identifies an individual who is generally known or is publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used and, as a result, the relevant public would perceive the name as identifying a particular living individual. See [TMEP §1206.02](#) regarding the meaning of "publicly connected."

Whether the relevant public would perceive a first name, pseudonym, stage name, surname, nickname, or title as identifying a particular individual usually depends on whether the particular individual has achieved some public recognition under that name, either generally or in connection with the relevant industry, business entity, goods, or services (e.g., as the inventor of the goods or services, the public face of the company, or a notable user of the products). See *In re Sauer*, 27 USPQ2d 1073, 1074-75 (TTAB 1993) (holding registration of a mark containing BO, used in connection with a sports ball, barred under §2(c) in the absence of consent to register, because BO is the nickname of a well-known athlete and thus use of the mark would lead to the assumption that he was associated with the goods), *aff'd per curiam*, 26 F.3d 140 (Fed. Cir. 1994); *Reed v. Bakers Eng'g & Equip. Co.*, 100 USPQ 196 (PTO 1954) (holding registration of REED REEL OVEN barred by §2(c) in the absence of written consent to register from the designer and builder of the ovens, Paul N. Reed).

Typically, in the absence of fame or public recognition, first names, pseudonyms, stage names, surnames, nicknames, and titles are not necessarily associated with a particular individual. Thus, when the name in a mark is a first name, pseudonym, stage name, surname, nickname, or title, an inquiry is usually unnecessary unless the available information indicates that the relevant public will recognize or perceive the name as identifying a particular individual. See *Société Civile Des Domaines Dourthe Frères v. S.A. Consortium Vinicole De Bordeaux Et De La Gironde*, 6 USPQ2d 1205, 1209 (TTAB 1988).

Example: The mark is DOCTOR JONES, and the application is silent as to whether this name identifies a living individual. Unless there is evidence that the name identifies an individual who is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, the examining attorney should not issue an inquiry or §2(c) refusal.

Example: The mark is JOE for cookies, and the application is silent as to whether this name identifies a living individual. Unless there is evidence that the name identifies an individual who is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, the examining attorney should not issue an inquiry or §2(c) refusal.

Example: The mark is LYNCH'S LIGHTING for lamps, and the application is silent as to whether this name identifies a living individual. Unless there is evidence that the name identifies an individual who is generally known or publicly connected with the business in which the mark is used, the examining attorney should not issue an inquiry or §2(c) refusal.

Because there must be some indication that the relevant public would actually perceive the name as identifying a particular individual, the mere fact that the name is the first name, pseudonym, stage name, surname, nickname, or title of a living individual associated with the applicant (e.g., an employee, founder, or corporate officer) usually would not, by itself, necessitate an inquiry regarding the name.

Famous Deceased Person or Historical Character. When it appears that the mark comprises the name or likeness of a famous deceased person or historical character, the examining attorney must obtain confirmation from the applicant that the person is in fact deceased, and require that the applicant submit a statement that the name or likeness shown in the mark does not identify a living individual. It is not necessary to print the statement. If the mark comprises a name that is distinctive and well known (e.g., Leonardo da Vinci), the examining attorney may consult with his or her manager regarding foregoing the inquiry. If there is clear evidence that the name, portrait, or signature identifies a particular living individual, the examining attorney may exercise discretion regarding whether to issue a §2(c) refusal instead of an inquiry. See [TMEP §§1206](#) and [1206.04\(a\)](#) regarding marks that consist of or comprise a name, portrait, or signature of a deceased U.S. president with a living widow.

Statement of Record in Prior Registration. If the applicant claims ownership of a valid registration for a mark comprised in whole or in part of the same name, portrait, or signature for any goods or services, and the prior registration includes a statement that the name, portrait, or signature is not that of a living individual, the examining attorney may enter the same statement in the record, even if applicant does not resubmit or

reference the statement. It is not necessary to issue an inquiry in this situation. See [TMEP §§813.01\(b\)](#) and [1206.05](#).

1206.04 Consent of Individual or President's Widow

1206.04(a) Consent Statement Must Be Written Consent to Registration

Must Be Personally Signed. When a name, portrait, or signature in a mark identifies a particular living individual, or a deceased president of the United States during the life of his widow, the mark can be registered only with the written consent of the individual, or of the president's widow. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(c\)](#). The consent must be a written consent to the registration of the identifying matter as a mark, and, in the case of a living individual, must be personally signed by the individual whose name, signature, or likeness appears in the mark. Where the name, signature, or likeness is that of a deceased president, the consent should be signed by the president's surviving spouse.

Consent to Use is Not Consent to Registration. Consent to use of a mark does not constitute consent to register. See *Krause v. Krause Pub'ns, Inc.*, 76 USPQ2d 1904, 1913 (TTAB 2005) ; *Reed v. Bakers Eng'g & Equip. Co.*, 100 USPQ 196, 199 (PTO 1954) ; *Garden v. Parfumerie Rigaud, Inc.*, 34 USPQ 30, 31 (Comm'r Pats. 1937) ("Permission to use one's name and portrait in connection with a specified item of merchandise falls far short of consent to register one's name and portrait as a trade mark for such merchandise generally.") Consent to register a mark that makes no reference to consent to use is acceptable; the USPTO has no authority to regulate use of a mark.

Minors. If the record indicates that the person whose name or likeness appears in the mark is a minor, the question of who should sign the consent depends on state law. If the minor can validly enter into binding legal obligations, and can sue or be sued, in the state in which he or she is domiciled, then the minor may sign the consent. Otherwise, the consent should be signed by a parent or legal guardian, clearly setting forth his or her status as a parent or legal guardian. If the record indicates that person whose name or likeness appears in the mark is a minor, the examining attorney must inquire as to whether the person can validly enter into binding legal obligations under the law of the state in which he or she is domiciled. If the minor cannot enter into binding legal obligations, the examining attorney must require consent by the parent or guardian. See [TMEP §803.01](#) regarding the filing of an application in the name of a minor.

1206.04(b) Consent May Be Presumed From Signature of Application

When a particular individual identified in a mark is also the person who signed the application, his or her consent to registration will be presumed. *AlfordMfg. Co. v. Alfred Elecs.*, 137 USPQ 250, 250 (TTAB 1963) ("The written consent to the registration of the mark 'ALFORD' by Andrew Alford, the individual, is manifested by the fact that said person executed the application . . .") , *aff'd*, 333 F.2d 912, 142 USPQ 168 (C.C.P.A. 1964); *Ex parte Dallieux*, 83 USPQ 262, 263 (Comm'r Pats. 1949) ("By signing the application, the applicant here obviously consents. . ."). Consent may be presumed whenever the person identified has signed the application, even if the applicant is not an individual.

Name of Signatory. Consent to register is presumed if the application is personally signed by the individual whose name appears in the mark, e.g. , if the mark is JOHN SMITH and the application is personally signed by John Smith. The examining attorney should not make an inquiry or require a written consent. The examining attorney must ensure that the consent statement is entered into the Trademark database. See [TMEP §§ 813.01\(a\)and \(c\)](#). The consent statement must be printed even if the name that appears in the mark is that of the applicant.

Names Must Match. Consent may be presumed only where the name in the mark matches the name of the signatory. If the names do not match, the examining attorney must issue an inquiry. For example, if the name in the mark is J.C. Jones, and the application is signed by John Jones, the examining attorney must inquire whether J.C. Jones is John Jones. If applicant states that J.C. Jones is John Jones, consent is presumed. The statement that J.C. Jones is John Jones may be entered by examiner's amendment, if appropriate. In such cases, the examining attorney must ensure that the consent statement is entered into the Trademark database. See TMEP §§ [813.01\(a\) and \(c\)](#).

Likeness of Signatory. Consent may also be presumed when the mark comprises the portrait or likeness of the person who personally signs the application. When the mark comprises a portrait, or a likeness that could *reasonably* be perceived as that of a particular living individual, the examining attorney must make an inquiry, unless the record indicates that the likeness is that of the person who signed the application. If the applicant responds by stating that the likeness is that of the person who signed the application, consent is presumed. No written consent is required, but the examining attorney must ensure that the consent statement is entered into the Trademark database. See TMEP §§ [813.01\(a\) and \(c\)](#).

Application Must be Personally Signed. Consent may be presumed only where the individual whose name or likeness appears in the mark *personally* signs the application. If the application is signed by an authorized signatory, consent to register the name or likeness must be obtained from the individual. This is true even where the name or likeness that appears in the mark is that of the individual applicant.

Section 66(a) Applications . In a §66(a) application, the signed verification is part of the international registration on file at the IB and is not included with the request for extension of protection sent to the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)](#); [TMEP §1904.01\(c\)](#). The examining attorney is thus unable to determine who signed the verified statement. Therefore, the examining attorney must require a written consent to register, even where the name that appears in the mark is that of the applicant. If the verified statement in support of the request for extension of protection to the United States was personally signed by the individual whose name or likeness appears in the mark, the applicant may satisfy the requirement for a written consent to registration by submitting a copy of the verified statement that is on file with the IB.

1206.04(c) New Consent Not Required if Consent is of Record in Valid Registration Owned by Applicant

An applicant does not have to submit a new consent if a consent to register is already part of the record in the file of a valid registration for a mark comprised in whole or in part of the same name, portrait, or signature for the *same* goods and/or services, or such goods and/or services as would encompass those in the subsequent application. See *In re McKee Baking Co.*, 218 USPQ 287, 288 (TTAB 1983) . In this situation, the applicant only has to: (1) claim ownership of that existing registration; and (2) advise the examining attorney that the consent is of record therein. If the applicant provides the information that the consent is of record in the claimed registration by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record. The examining attorney must ensure that the consent statement is entered into the Trademark database. See [TMEP §§813.01\(a\) and \(c\)](#).

If an applicant has submitted a consent to register in an application that has not matured to registration, a new consent is not required for pertinent co-pending applications, but the applicant must submit a copy of the consent for each pending application. See *In re McKee Baking Co.* , 218 USPQ at 288; [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(g\)](#).

See [TMEP §§813.01\(b\)](#) and [1206.05](#) regarding statements that a name or likeness that could reasonably be perceived as that of a living individual is *not* that of a specific living individual.

1206.04(d) Implicit Consent

Consent may sometimes be inferred from the actions of the individual. *In re D.B. Kaplan Delicatessen*, 225 USPQ 342, 344 (TTAB 1985) (finding consent to the use and registration of the mark D. B. KAPLAN'S DELICATESSEN implicit in the terms of a "buy-out" agreement that relinquished all property rights in the name and forbade its use by the named party in any subsequent business) . However, the mere incorporation of a business or consent to the business's use of the mark does not constitute implied consent to the registration of the mark. *Krause v. Krause Publ'ns, Inc.*, 76 USPQ2d 1904, 1912 (TTAB 2005) (finding cancellation petitioner did not give implied consent to register when he incorporated a business utilizing his name, sold his stock in the business, and pledged the business's assets, including trademarks, to finance expansion and acquisitions, where there was no evidence that the individual expressly stated that the mark was the property of the corporation or agreed to refrain from use of the name in any subsequent business); *In re New John Nissen Mannequins*, 227 USPQ 569 (TTAB 1985) (finding consent to register JOHN NISSEN MANNEQUINS not implied from appearance of the name "John Nissen" in a deed of incorporation of applicant's predecessor under the name "John Nissen Mannequins," nor from existence of foreign registrations for trademarks incorporating the name).

1206.05 Names and Likenesses That Do Not Identify a Particular Living Individual

If it appears that a name, portrait, or signature in a mark may identify a particular living individual but, in fact, the applicant devised the matter as fanciful, or believes it to be fanciful, the applicant may be required to submit a statement to that effect. See [TMEP §1206.03](#) for information as to when an examining attorney should inquire as to whether a name or likeness is that of an individual.

The applicant should explain any additional relevant circumstances. For example, if the matter identifies a certain character in literature, or a deceased historical person, then a statement of these facts in the record may be helpful; however, this information will not be printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the registration certificate.

No statement should be printed unless the name or portrait might *reasonably* be perceived as that of a specific living individual. This is true even if the applicant submits an unsolicited statement that a particular name or portrait does not identify a living individual.

Generally, if the name or likeness is such that an inquiry would have been required as to whether it identifies a living individual (*see* [TMEP §1206.03](#)), and the applicant states that the mark does not identify a living individual, then the statement that the name or likeness does not identify a living individual should be printed. *See* [TMEP §813.01\(b\)](#).

If the applicant owns a valid registration for a mark comprised in whole or in part of the same name, portrait, or signature for any goods or services, and the record for the registration contains a statement that the name or likeness is not that of a living individual, the applicant should claim ownership of the registration and advise the examining attorney that the statement is of record therein. The examining attorney may then enter the same statement in the record for the application, even if applicant does not resubmit or reference the statement. It is not necessary to issue an inquiry in this situation.

1207 Refusal on Basis of Likelihood of Confusion, Mistake, or Deception

15 U.S.C. §1052 Extract

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it . . . (d) Consists of or comprises a mark which so resembles a mark registered in the Patent and Trademark Office, or a mark or trade name previously used in the United States by another and not abandoned, as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods of the applicant, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive.

Section 2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), is the statutory basis for a refusal to register due to likelihood of confusion with another mark. Section 2(d) applies regardless of whether registration of the mark is sought on the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register.

1207.01 Likelihood of Confusion

In the ex parte examination of a trademark application, a refusal under §2(d) is normally based on the examining attorney's conclusion that the applicant's mark, as used on or in connection with the specified goods or services, so resembles a *registered* mark as to be likely to cause confusion. See [TMEP §1207.02](#) concerning application of the §2(d) provision relating to marks that so resemble another mark as to be likely to deceive, and [TMEP §1207.03](#) concerning §2(d) refusals based on unregistered marks (which generally are not issued in ex parte examination).

The issue is not whether the respective marks themselves, or the goods or services offered under the marks, are likely to be confused but, rather, whether there is a likelihood of confusion as to the source or sponsorship of the goods or services because of the marks used thereon. *See, e.g., Paula Payne Prods. Co. v. Johnson's Publ'g Co.*, 473 F.2d 901, 902, 177 USPQ 76, 77 (C.C.P.A. 1973) (“[T]he question is not whether people will confuse the marks, but rather whether the marks will confuse people into believing that the goods they identify emanate from the same source.”); *In re Majestic Distilling Co.*, 315 F.3d 1311, 1316, 65 USPQ2d 1201, 1205 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (“[T]he...mistaken belief that [a good] is manufactured or sponsored by the same entity [as another good] ... is precisely the mistake that §2(d) of the Lanham Act seeks to prevent.”); *In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1207, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1689 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (“The degree of ‘relatedness’ must be viewed in the context of all the factors, in determining whether the services are sufficiently related that a reasonable consumer would be confused as to source or sponsorship.”); *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531, 1534, 1535 (TTAB 2009); *In re Ass’n of the U.S. Army*, 85 USPQ2d 1264, 1267-68, 1270 (TTAB 2007) ; *Hilson Research Inc. v. Soc’y for Human Res. Mgmt.*, 27 USPQ2d 1423, 1429 (TTAB 1993) (“Although confusion, mistake or deception about source or origin is the usual issue posed under Section 2(d), any confusion made likely by a junior user’s mark is cause for refusal; likelihood of confusion encompasses confusion of sponsorship, affiliation or connection.”).

The examining attorney must conduct a search of USPTO records to determine whether the applicant's mark so resembles any registered mark(s) as to be likely to cause confusion or mistake, when used on or in connection with the goods or services identified in the application. The examining attorney also searches pending applications for conflicting marks with earlier effective filing dates. See [TMEP §§1208-1208.03\(c\)](#) regarding conflicting marks. The examining attorney must place a copy of the search strategy in the record.

If the examining attorney determines that there is a likelihood of confusion between applicant's mark and a previously registered mark or marks, the examining attorney refuses registration of the applicant's mark under §2(d). Before citing a registration, the examining attorney must check the automated records of the USPTO to confirm that any registration that is the basis for a §2(d) refusal is an active registration. See

[TMEP §716.02\(e\)](#) regarding suspension pending cancellation of a cited registration under §8 of the Act or expiration of a cited registration for failure to renew under §9 of the Act.

Also, if USPTO records indicate that an assignment of the conflicting registration has been recorded, the examining attorney must check the automated records of the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO to determine whether the conflicting mark has been assigned to applicant.

In the seminal case involving §2(d), *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, the U.S. Court of Customs and Patent Appeals discussed the factors relevant to a determination of likelihood of confusion. 476 F.2d 1357, 177 USPQ 563 (C.C.P.A. 1973). In setting forth the factors, the court cautioned that, with respect to determining likelihood of confusion, “[t]here is no litmus rule which can provide a ready guide to all cases.” *Id.* at 1361, 177 USPQ at 567. Not all of the factors are relevant and only those relevant factors for which there is evidence in the record must be considered. *Id.* at 1361-62, 177 USPQ at 567-68; *see also In re Mighty Leaf Tea*, 601 F.3d 1342, 1346, 94 USPQ2d 1257, 1259 (Fed. Cir. 2010) (“Not all of the *DuPont* factors are relevant to every case, and only factors of significance to the particular mark need be considered.”); *In re Majestic Distilling Co.*, 315 F.3d 1311, 1315, 65 USPQ2d 1201, 1204 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (citing *In re Dixie Rests., Inc.*, 105 F.3d 1405, 1406-07, 41 USPQ2d 1531, 1533 (Fed. Cir. 1997)); *Cunningham v. Laser Golf Corp.*, 222 F.3d 943, 946, 55 USPQ2d 1842, 1845 (Fed. Cir. 2000). Furthermore, the significance of a particular factor may differ from case to case. *See du Pont*, 476 F.2d at 1361-62, 177 USPQ at 567-68; *Dixie Rests.*, 105 F.3d at 1406-07, 41 USPQ2d at 1533 (noting that “any one of the factors may control a particular case”).

Although the weight given to the relevant *du Pont* factors may vary, the following two factors are key considerations in any likelihood of confusion determination:

- The similarity or dissimilarity of the marks in their entireties as to appearance, sound, connotation and commercial impression.
- The relatedness of the goods or services as described in the application and registration(s). *See, e.g., Federated Foods, Inc. v. Fort Howard Paper Co.*, 544 F.2d 1098, 1103, 192 USPQ 24, 29 (C.C.P.A. 1976) ; *In re Iolo Techs., LLC*, 95 USPQ2d 1498, 1499 (TTAB 2010); *In re Max Capital Grp. Ltd.*, 93 USPQ2d 1243, 1244 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1634, 1635 (TTAB 2009)

The following factors may also be relevant in an ex parte likelihood-of-confusion determination and must be considered if there is pertinent evidence in the record:

- The similarity or dissimilarity of established, likely-to-continue trade channels.
- The conditions under which and buyers to whom sales are made, i.e., “impulse” vs. careful, sophisticated purchasing (*see* [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(vii\)](#)).
- The number and nature of similar marks in use on similar goods (*see* [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#)).
- The existence of a valid consent agreement between the applicant and the owner of the previously registered mark (see [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(viii\)](#)).

See, e.g., du Pont, 476 F.2d at 1362-63, 177 USPQ at 568-69; *In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 113 USPQ2d 1546 (TTAB 2015) ; *In re Davey Prods. Pty Ltd.*, 92 USPQ2d 1198, 1203-04 (TTAB 2009) ; *In re Toshiba Med. Sys. Corp.*, 91 USPQ2d 1266, 1272-74 (TTAB 2009) ; *Ass’n of the U.S. Army*, 85 USPQ2d at 1271-73.

See [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the “actual confusion” factor and [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(ix\)](#) regarding the “fame of the prior mark” factor.

As should be clear from the foregoing, there is no mechanical test for determining likelihood of confusion and “each case must be decided on its own facts.” *Du Pont*, 476 F.2d at 1361, 177 USPQ at 567. In some cases, a determination that there is no likelihood of confusion may be appropriate, even where the marks are similar and the goods/services are related, because these factors are outweighed by other factors, such as differences in the relevant trade channels of the goods/services, the presence in the marketplace of a significant number of similar marks in use on similar goods/services, the existence of a valid consent agreement between the parties, or another established fact probative of the effect of use. For example, in *In re Strategic Partners, Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1397 (TTAB 2012), the Board reversed a refusal to register the mark ANYWEAR (in stylized text), for “footwear,” finding no likelihood of confusion with the registered mark ANYWEAR BY JOSIE NATORI (and design), for “jackets, shirts, pants, stretch T-tops and stoles.” Given the similarity in the marks and the relatedness of the goods, the Board stated that “under usual circumstances” it would conclude that confusion is likely to occur; however, an “unusual situation” compelled the Board “to balance the similarities between the marks and goods against the facts that applicant already owns a registration for a substantially similar mark for the identical goods, and that applicant’s registration and the cited registration have coexisted for over five years.” *Id.* at 1399. Applicant’s prior registration of ANYWEARS for goods including footwear was substantially similar to the applied-for mark ANYWEAR for the same goods, and the registration had achieved incontestable status. *Id.* Basing its decision on the thirteenth *du Pont* factor, which “relates to ‘any other established fact probative of the effect of use,’” the Board determined that this factor outweighed the others and confusion was unlikely. *Id.* at 1399-1400 (quoting *du Pont*, 476 F.2d at 1361, 177 USPQ at 567).

The decision in *Strategic Partners* may be applied and weighed against a §2(d) refusal in the limited situation where: (1) an applicant owns a prior registration for the same mark or a mark with no meaningful difference from the applied-for-mark; (2) the identifications of goods/services in the application and applicant’s prior registration are identical or identical in relevant part; and (3) the applicant’s prior registration has co-existed for at least five years with the registration being considered as the basis for the Section 2(d) refusal. See *Id.* at 1400.

The determination of likelihood of confusion under §2(d) in an intent-to-use application under §1(b) of the Trademark Act does not differ from the determination in any other type of application.

1207.01(a) Relatedness of the Goods or Services

In assessing the relatedness of the goods and/or services, the more similar the marks at issue, the less similar the goods or services need to be to support a finding of likelihood of confusion. *In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1207, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1689 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *Gen. Mills, Inc. v. Fage Dairy Processing Indus. S.A.*, 100 USPQ2d 1584, 1597 (TTAB 2011); *In re Iolo Techs., LLC*, 95 USPQ2d 1498, 1499 (TTAB 2010); *In re Opus One Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1812, 1815 (TTAB 2001). If the marks of the respective parties are identical or virtually identical, the relationship between the goods and/or services need not be as close to support a finding of likelihood of confusion as would be required if there were differences between the marks. *Shell Oil*, 992 F.2d at 1207, 26 USPQ2d at 1689; *In re Davey Prods. Pty Ltd.*, 92 USPQ2d 1198, 1202 (TTAB 2009); *In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1634, 1636 (TTAB 2009).

In some instances, because of established marketing practices, the use of identical marks on seemingly unrelated goods and services could result in a likelihood of confusion. See *In re Sloppy Joe’s Int’l, Inc.*, 43 USPQ2d 1350, 1356 (TTAB 1997) (“[T]he licensing of the names and/or likenesses of well known persons for use on various goods and services is a common practice.”); *In re Phillips-Van Heusen Corp.*, 228 USPQ 949, 951 (TTAB 1986) (“The licensing of commercial trademarks for use on ‘collateral’ products (such as clothing, glassware, linens, etc.), that are unrelated in nature to those goods or services on which the marks are normally used, has become a common practice in recent years.”).

1207.01(a)(i) Goods or Services Need Not Be Identical

In a §2(d) determination, the goods and/or services do not have to be identical or even competitive in order to find that there is a likelihood of confusion. *In re Iolo Techs., LLC*, 95 USPQ2d 1498, 1499 (TTAB 2010); *In re G.B.I. Tile & Stone, Inc.*, 92 USPQ2d 1366, 1368 (TTAB 2009). The issue is not whether the goods and/or services will be confused with each other, but rather whether the public will be confused as to their source. *See Recot Inc. v. M.C. Becton*, 214 F.3d 1322, 1329, 54 USPQ2d 1894, 1898 (Fed. Cir. 2000) “[E]ven if the goods in question are different from, and thus not related to, one another in kind, the same goods can be related in the mind of the consuming public as to the origin of the goods. It is this sense of relatedness that matters in the likelihood of confusion analysis.”; *In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1207, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1689 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *Safety-Kleen Corp. v. Dresser Indus., Inc.*, 518 F.2d 1399, 1403–04, 186 USPQ 476, 480 (C.C.P.A. 1975); *In re Ass’n of the U.S. Army*, 85 USPQ2d 1264, 1270 (TTAB 2007). It is sufficient that the goods and/or services of the applicant and the registrant are related in some manner or that the conditions surrounding their marketing are such that they are likely to be encountered by the same persons under circumstances that, because of the marks used in connection therewith, would lead to the mistaken belief that they originate from the same source. *See, e.g., On-line Careline Inc. v. America Online Inc.*, 229 F.3d 1080, 56 USPQ2d 1471 (Fed. Cir. 2000) (holding ON-LINE TODAY for Internet connection services and ONLINE TODAY for an electronic publication likely to cause confusion); *In re Martin’s Famous Pastry Shoppe, Inc.*, 748 F.2d 1565, 223 USPQ 1289 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (holding MARTIN’S for wheat bran and honey bread, and MARTIN’S for cheese, likely to cause confusion); *Weider Publ’ns, LLC v. D&D Beauty Care Co.*, 109 USPQ2d 1347 (TTAB 2014) (holding SHAPES for a variety of beauty salon, day spa, and health spa services likely to cause confusion with SHAPE for magazines where the services are of the type normally featured in the magazines); *Joel Gott Wines LLC v. Rehoboth Von Gott Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1424, 1433 (TTAB 2013) (holding GOTT LIGHT for various water beverages likely to cause confusion with GOTT and JOEL GOTT for wine); *Gen. Mills, Inc. v. Fage Dairy Processing Indus. S.A.*, 100 USPQ2d 1584, 1597 (TTAB 2011) (holding composite marks containing the word TOTAL for yogurt and other products likely to cause confusion with the mark TOTAL for ready-to-eat breakfast cereal); *In re Toshiba Med. Sys. Corp.*, 91 USPQ2d 1266 (TTAB 2009) (holding VANTAGE TITAN for MRI diagnostic apparatus, and TITAN for medical ultrasound device, likely to cause confusion); *L.C. Licensing, Inc. v. Berman*, 86 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 2008) (holding ENYCE for custom automotive accessories, and ENYCE for various urban lifestyle clothing items and accessories, likely to cause confusion); *In re Corning Glass Works*, 229 USPQ 65 (TTAB 1985) (holding CONFIRM for a buffered solution equilibrated to yield predetermined dissolved gas values in a blood gas analyzer, and CONFIRMCELLS for diagnostic blood reagents for laboratory use, likely to cause confusion).

Conversely, if the goods or services in question are not related or marketed in such a way that they would be encountered by the same persons in situations that would create the incorrect assumption that they originate from the same source, then, even if the marks are identical, confusion is not likely. *See, e.g., Coach Servs., Inc. v. Triumph Learning LLC*, 668 F.3d 1356, 1371, 101 USPQ2d 1713, 1723 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (affirming the Board’s dismissal of opposer’s likelihood-of-confusion claim, noting “there is nothing in the record to suggest that a purchaser of test preparation materials who also purchases a luxury handbag would consider the goods to emanate from the same source” though both were offered under the COACH mark); *Shen Mfg. Co. v. Ritz Hotel Ltd.*, 393 F.3d 1238, 1244-45, 73 USPQ2d 1350, 1356 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (reversing TTAB’s holding that contemporaneous use of RITZ for cooking and wine selection classes and RITZ for kitchen textiles is likely to cause confusion, because the relatedness of the respective goods and services was not supported by substantial evidence); *In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 113 USPQ2d 1546, 1551 (TTAB 2015) (finding use of identical marks for towable trailers and trucks not likely to cause confusion given the difference in the nature of the goods and their channels of trade and the high degree of consumer care likely to be exercised by the relevant consumers); *Local Trademarks, Inc. v. Handy Boys Inc.*, 16 USPQ2d 1156, 1158 (TTAB 1990) (finding liquid drain opener and advertising services in the plumbing field to be such different goods

and services that confusion as to their source is unlikely even if they are offered under the same marks); *Quartz Radiation Corp. v. Comm/Scope Co.*, 1 USPQ2d 1668, 1669 (TTAB 1986) (holding QR for coaxial cable and QR for various apparatus used in connection with photocopying, drafting, and blueprint machines not likely to cause confusion because of the differences between the parties' respective goods in terms of their nature and purpose, how they are promoted, and who they are purchased by).

1207.01(a)(ii) Establishing Relatedness of Goods to Services

It is well recognized that confusion may be likely to occur from the use of the same or similar marks for goods, on the one hand, and for services involving those goods, on the other. *See, e.g., In re Hyper Shoppes (Ohio), Inc.*, 837 F.2d 463, 6 USPQ2d 1025 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (holding BIGG'S (stylized) for retail grocery and general merchandise store services and BIGGS and design for furniture likely to cause confusion); *In re H.J. Seiler Co.*, 289 F.2d 674, 129 USPQ 347 (C.C.P.A. 1961) (holding SEILER's for catering services and SEILER'S for smoked and cured meats likely to cause confusion); *In re United Serv. Distribs., Inc.*, 229 USPQ 237 (TTAB 1986) (holding mark consisting of a design featuring silhouettes of a man and woman used in connection with distributorship services in the field of health and beauty aids and mark consisting of a design featuring silhouettes of a man and woman used in connection with skin cream likely to cause confusion); *In re Phillips-Van Heusen Corp.*, 228 USPQ 949 (TTAB 1986) (holding 21 CLUB for various items of clothing and THE "21" CLUB (stylized) for restaurant services likely to cause confusion); *In re U.S. Shoe Corp.*, 229 USPQ 707 (TTAB 1985) (holding CAREER IMAGE (stylized) for retail women's clothing store services and CREST CAREER IMAGES (stylized) for uniforms likely to cause confusion); *Steelcase Inc. v. Steelcare Inc.*, 219 USPQ 433 (TTAB 1983) (holding STEELCARE INC. and design for refinishing of furniture, office furniture, and machinery and STEELCASE for office furniture and accessories, likely to cause confusion); *Corinthian Broad. Corp. v. Nippon Elec. Co., Ltd.*, 219 USPQ 733 (TTAB 1983) (holding TVS for transmitters and receivers of still television pictures and TVS for television broadcasting services likely to cause confusion).

When the goods and services in question are well known or otherwise generally recognized as having a common source of origin, the burden of establishing relatedness is easier to satisfy. *In re St. Helena Hosp.*, 774 F.3d 747, 113 USPQ2d 1082 (Fed. Cir. 2014). For example, relatedness would generally be recognized when the services clearly include or encompass the goods in the identification, such as when the services are "brewpubs" and the goods are "beer" or when the services are "electronic transmission of data and documents via computer terminals" and the goods are "facsimile machines, computers, and computer software." *In re Coors Brewing Co.*, 343 F.3d 1340, 1347, 68 USPQ2d 1059, 1064 (Fed. Cir. 2003); *Hewlett-Packard Co. v. Packard Press, Inc.*, 281 F.3d 1261, 1268, 62 USPQ2d 1001, 1005 (Fed. Cir. 2002).

However, when the relatedness of the goods and services is not evident, well known, or generally recognized, "something more" than the mere fact that the goods and services are used together must be shown. *In re St. Helena Hosp.*, 774 F.3d at 754, 113 USPQ2d at 1087 (finding that substantial evidence did not support relatedness of hospital-based residential weight and lifestyle program and printed materials dealing with physical activity and fitness). Therefore, when comparing services such as "restaurant services" with less apparently related goods such as "beer," or "cooking classes" with "kitchen towels," "something more"—beyond the fact that the goods are used in the provision of the services—must be shown to indicate that consumers would understand such services and goods to emanate from the same source. Although the Court in *Coors* found evidence of "a few registrations" covering both the goods and services at issue insufficient, *see In re Coors Brewing Co.*, 343 F.3d at 1346, 68 USPQ2d at 1063, examples of actual use of a mark for both the goods and services at issue and/or evidence of a large number of third-party registrations covering both the goods and services at issue may suffice. When such evidence is not readily available through searches of electronic resources, examining attorneys should consider issuing an information request under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), asking whether the applicant provides both the goods and services at issue and

inquiring whether the applicant is aware of others who provide both the goods and services at issue, and if so, requesting additional information about them.

1207.01(a)(ii)(A) Food and Beverage Products Versus Restaurant Services

While likelihood of confusion has often been found where similar marks are used in connection with both food or beverage products and restaurant services, there is no per se rule to this effect. See *Lloyd's Food Prods., Inc. v. Eli's, Inc.*, 987 F.2d 766, 768, 25 USPQ2d 2027, 2030 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *In re Opus One Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1812, 1813 (TTAB 2001). Thus, the relatedness of such goods and services may not be assumed and the evidence of record must show "something more" than that similar or even identical marks are used for food products and for restaurant services. *In re Coors Brewing Co.*, 343 F.3d 1340, 1345, 68 USPQ2d 1059, 1063 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (quoting *Jacobs v. Int'l Multifoods Corp.*, 668 F.2d 1234, 1236, 212 USPQ 641, 642 (C.C.P.A. 1982)); see also *In re Giovanni Food Co.*, 97 USPQ2d 1990, 1991 (TTAB 2011).

In *Coors*, the examining attorney introduced evidence from several sources discussing the practice of some restaurants to offer private label or house brands of beer; evidence that brewpubs who brew their own beer often feature restaurant services; and copies of several third-party registrations showing that a single mark had been registered for both beer and restaurants services. 343 F.3d at 1345, 68 USPQ2d at 1063. However, applicant countered with evidence that while there are about 1,450 brewpubs and microbreweries in the United States, there are over 800,000 restaurants, which means that brewpubs and microbreweries account for only about 18 one-hundredths of one percent of all restaurants. *Id.* at 1346, 68 USPQ2d at 1063. Noting that "[t]here was no contrary evidence introduced on those points," the court found that:

While there was evidence that some restaurants sell private label beer, that evidence did not suggest that such restaurants are numerous. And although the Board had before it a few registrations for both restaurant services and beer, the very small number of such dual use registrations does nothing to counter Coors' showing that only a very small percentage of restaurants actually brew their own beer or sell house brands of beer; instead, the small number of such registrations suggests that it is quite uncommon for restaurants and beer to share the same trademark. Thus, the evidence before the Board indicates not that there is a substantial overlap between restaurant services and beer with respect to source, but rather that the degree of overlap between the sources of restaurant services and the sources of beer is *de minimis*. We therefore disagree with the Board's legal conclusion that Coors' beer and the registrant's restaurant services are sufficiently related to support a finding of a likelihood of confusion.

Id. at 1346, 68 USPQ2d at 1063–64.

In the following cases, the Board found the "something more" requirement to be satisfied: *In re Accelerate s.a.l.*, 101 USPQ2d 2047, 2050-51 (TTAB 2012) (holding COLOMBIANO COFFEE HOUSE, for providing food and drink, likely to cause confusion with the registered certification mark COLOMBIANO, for coffee, given the inclusion of COFFEE HOUSE in applicant's mark, third-party registrations covering both restaurant or café services and coffee beverages, and because coffee houses specialize in coffee beverages); *In re Opus One Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d at 1814-16 (holding use of OPUS ONE for both wine and restaurant services likely to cause confusion, where the evidence of record indicated that OPUS ONE is a strong and arbitrary mark, that it is common in the industry for restaurants to offer and sell private label wines named after the restaurant, and that registrant's wines were served at applicant's restaurant); *In re Comexa Ltda.*, 60 USPQ2d 1118, 1123 (TTAB 2001) (holding AMAZON and parrot design for chili sauce and pepper sauce and AMAZON for restaurant services likely to cause confusion, based on, inter alia, 48 use-based third-party registrations showing registration of the same mark for both sauces and restaurant services, and the determination that

“of all food products[,] sauces . . . are perhaps the ones most likely to be marketed by the restaurants in which those items are served”); *In re Azteca Rest. Enters.*, 50 USPQ2d 1209, 1211 (TTAB 1999) (holding AZTECA MEXICAN RESTAURANT for restaurant services and AZTECA (with and without design) for Mexican food items likely to cause confusion, where the AZTECA MEXICAN RESTAURANT mark itself indicated that the relevant restaurant services featured Mexican food and the evidence showed that the goods at issue “are often principal items of entrees served by . . . Mexican restaurants”); *In re Golden Griddle Pancake House Ltd.*, 17 USPQ2d 1074 (TTAB 1990) (holding GOLDEN GRIDDLE for table syrup and GOLDEN GRIDDLE PANCAKE HOUSE for restaurant services likely to cause confusion, based on third-party registration evidence showing that entities offering restaurant services may also offer a variety of goods under the same mark, as well as findings that “restaurants frequently package certain of their products for retail sale” and that the GOLDEN GRIDDLE PANCAKE HOUSE mark itself suggests that the relevant restaurant services feature pancakes and pancake syrup); *In re Mucky Duck Mustard Co.*, 6 USPQ2d 1467, 1469 (TTAB) (holding use of applied-for mark, MUCKY DUCK and duck design, for mustard, and registered mark, THE MUCKY DUCK and duck design, for restaurant services, likely to cause confusion, in view of the substantial similarity of the marks and the “unique and memorable nature” of registrant’s mark, and given that “mustard is . . . a condiment which is commonly utilized in restaurants by their patrons” and that “restaurants sometimes market their house specialties, including items such as salad dressings, through retail outlets”), *aff’d per curiam*, 864 F.2d 149 (Fed. Cir. 1988). *Cf. In re Giovanni Food Co.*, 97 USPQ2d at 1991 (finding the Office had not met its burden of proving likelihood of confusion where the marks were JUMPIN’ JACKS for barbeque sauce and JUMPIN JACK’S for catering services, because evidence indicating that some restaurants also provide catering services and sell barbeque sauce was not sufficient to establish catering services alone are related to barbeque sauce); *Steve’s Ice Cream v. Steve’s Famous Hot Dogs*, 3 USPQ2d 1477, 1478 (TTAB 1987) (holding use of applicant’s mark, STEVE’S and design comprising hot dog characters, for restaurants featuring hot dogs, and registrant’s mark STEVE’S, for ice cream, not likely to cause confusion, where the marks differed and there was no evidence of record that applicant made or sold ice cream or that “any one business makes and sells ice cream under the same mark in connection with which it renders restaurant services”).

1207.01(a)(iii) Reliance on Identification of Goods/Services in Registration and Application

The nature and scope of a party’s goods or services must be determined on the basis of the goods or services recited in the application or registration. *See, e.g., Stone Lion Capital Partners, L.P. v. Lion Capital LLP*, 746 F.3d 1317, 110 USPQ2d 1157, 1162 (Fed. Cir. 2014); *Coach Servs., Inc. v. Triumph Learning LLC*, 668 F.3d 1356, 1370, 101 USPQ2d 1713, 1722 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *Hewlett-Packard Co. v. Packard Press Inc.*, 281 F.3d 1261, 1267, 62 USPQ2d 1001, 1004 (Fed. Cir. 2002); *J & J Snack Foods Corp. v. McDonald’s Corp.*, 932 F.2d 1460, 1463, 18 USPQ2d 1889, 1892 (Fed. Cir. 1991); *Octocom Sys., Inc. v. Houston Computer Servs., Inc.*, 918 F.2d 937, 942, 16 USPQ2d 1783, 1787 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, N.A. v. Wells Fargo Bank*, 811 F.2d 1490, 1493, 1 USPQ2d 1813, 1815 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *Paula Payne Prods. Co. v. Johnson Publ’g Co.*, 473 F.2d 901, 902, 177 USPQ 76, 77 (C.C.P.A. 1973) ; *In re Giovanni Food Co.*, 97 USPQ2d 1990, 1991 (TTAB 2011) ; *In re Iolo Techs., LLC*, 95 USPQ2d 1498, 1500 (TTAB 2010) .

If the cited registration describes goods or services broadly, and there is no limitation as to their nature, type, channels of trade, or class of purchasers, it is presumed that the registration encompasses all goods or services of the type described, that they move in all normal channels of trade, and that they are available to all classes of purchasers. *See, e.g., Levi Strauss & Co. v. Abercrombie & Fitch Trading Co.*, 719 F.3d 1367, 1373, 107 USPQ2d 1167, 1173 (Fed. Cir. 2013); *In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1634, 1638 (TTAB 2009) (“We have no authority to read any restrictions or limitations into the registrant’s description of goods.”); *In re Jump Designs, LLC*, 80 USPQ2d 1370, 1374 (TTAB 2006) ; *see also In re i.am.symbolic, llc*, 116 USPQ2d 1406, 1409-10 (TTAB 2015) (rejecting applicant’s argument that confusion was unlikely because

the identification limited the goods to those “associated with William Adams, professionally known as ‘will.i.am,’” and finding instead that the wording does not, “in any meaningful way, alter the nature of the goods identified; nor does it represent that the goods will be marketed in any particular, limited way, through any particular, limited trade channels, or to any particular class of customers”); *In re C.H. Hanson Co.*, 116 USPQ2d 1351 (TTAB 2015) (noting that, to the extent that the punctuation in registrant’s identification of goods created ambiguity as to the scope of the identification, any doubt must be resolved in favor of the registrant). Therefore, if the cited registration has a broad identification of goods or services, an applicant does not avoid likelihood of confusion merely by more narrowly identifying its related goods. *See, e.g., In re Linkvest S.A.*, 24 USPQ2d 1716 (TTAB 1992) (noting that, where registrant’s goods are broadly identified as “computer programs recorded on magnetic disks,” without any limitation as to the kind of programs or the field of use, it must be assumed that registrant’s goods encompass all such computer programs, including computer programs of the type offered by applicant, that they travel in the same channels of trade normal for such goods, and that they are available to all classes of prospective purchasers of those goods); *In re Diet Ctr., Inc.*, 4 USPQ2d 1975 (TTAB 1987) (noting that, although applicant had limited its identification to indicate that its goods were sold only through franchised outlets offering weight-reduction services, the cited registration’s identification contained no limitations as to trade channels or classes of customers and thus it must be presumed that registrant’s goods travel through all the ordinary channels of trade); *In re Uncle Sam Chem. Co.*, 229 USPQ 233 (TTAB 1986) (finding that although applicant’s cleaning preparations and degreasers were limited to those for industrial and institutional use, registrant’s liquid preparations for cleaning woodwork and furniture, as identified, were not restricted to any particular trade channels or classes of customers and thus could presumably be used for institutional and industrial purposes).

Similarly, there may be a likelihood of confusion where an applicant identifies its goods or services so broadly that the identification encompasses the goods or services identified in the registration of a similar mark. *See, e.g., In re Fiesta Palms LLC*, 85 USPQ2d 1360 (TTAB 2007) (holding CLUB PALMS MVP for casino services, and MVP for casino services offered to preferred customers identified by special identification cards, likely to cause confusion); *In re Equitable Bancorporation*, 229 USPQ 709 (TTAB 1986) (holding RESPONSE for banking services, and RESPONSE CARD for banking services rendered through 24-hour teller machines, likely to cause confusion). In addition, language seeking to limit otherwise identical, or highly similar, goods or services may not be sufficient to distinguish them so as to avoid a likelihood of confusion. *See Bd. of Regents, Univ. of Tex. Sys. v. S. Ill. Miners, LLC*, 110 USPQ2d 1182, 1190-93 (TTAB 2014) (finding that although opposer’s clothing items were limited by the wording “college imprinted” and the applicant’s identical or highly similar items were limited by the wording “professional baseball imprinted,” these restrictions did not distinguish the goods, their trade channels, or their relevant consumers in any meaningful way).

An applicant may not restrict the scope of its goods and/or the scope of the goods covered in the registration by extrinsic argument or evidence, for example, as to the quality or price of the goods. *See, e.g., In re La Peregrina Ltd.*, 86 USPQ2d 1645, 1647 (TTAB 2008) ; *In re Bercut-Vandervoort & Co.*, 229 USPQ 763, 764-65 (TTAB 1986).

In cases where the terminology in an identification is unclear or undefined, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has permitted an applicant to provide extrinsic evidence to show that the registrant’s identification has a specific meaning to members of the trade. *See, e.g., In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1634, 1638 & n.10 (TTAB 2009) (noting that, although extrinsic evidence may not be used to limit or restrict the identified goods, it is nonetheless proper to consider extrinsic evidence in the nature of dictionary entries to define the terminology used to describe the goods); *In re Trackmobile Inc.*, 15 USPQ2d 1152, 1154 (TTAB 1990) (noting that, “when the description of goods for a cited registration is somewhat unclear . . . it is improper to simply consider that description in a vacuum and attach all possible interpretations to it

when the applicant has presented extrinsic evidence showing that the description of goods has a specific meaning to members of the trade.”)

1207.01(a)(iv) No “Per Se” Rule

The facts in each case vary and the weight to be given each relevant *du Pont* factor may be different in light of the varying circumstances; therefore, there can be no rule that certain goods or services are *per se* related, such that there must be a likelihood of confusion from the use of similar marks in relation thereto. *See, e.g., In re White Rock Distilleries Inc.*, 92 USPQ2d 1282, 1285 (TTAB 2009) (regarding alcoholic beverages); *Info. Res. Inc. v. X*Press Info. Servs.*, 6 USPQ2d 1034, 1038 (TTAB 1988) (regarding computer hardware and software); *Hi-Country Foods Corp. v. Hi Country Beef Jerky*, 4 USPQ2d 1169, 1171–72 (TTAB 1987) (regarding food products); *In re Quadram Corp.*, 228 USPQ 863, 865 (TTAB 1985) (regarding computer hardware and software); *In re British Bulldog, Ltd.*, 224 USPQ 854, 855-56 (TTAB 1984) (regarding clothing); *see also M2 Software, Inc. v. M2 Commc'ns, Inc.*, 450 F.3d 1378, 1383, 78 USPQ2d 1944, 1947–48 (Fed. Cir. 2006) (noting that relatedness between software-related goods may not be presumed merely because the goods are delivered in the same media format and that, instead, a subject-matter-based mode of analysis is appropriate).

1207.01(a)(v) Expansion-of-Trade Doctrine

The expansion-of-trade doctrine has limited application in ex parte proceedings, and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has indicated that “[i]t is not necessary, . . . in the context of an ex parte proceeding, for the Office to show that the owner of the particular registration that has been cited against the application has expanded or will expand its goods or services.” *In re 1st USA Realty Prof’ls, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1581, 1584 & n.4 (TTAB 2007) ; *see also In re Kysela Pere et Fils, Ltd.*, 98 USPQ2d 1261, 1266 (TTAB 2011)

The doctrine is typically applied in inter partes proceedings where an opposer claims that its priority of use of a mark with respect to its goods/services should be extended to include applicant’s goods/services because they are in the natural scope of expansion of opposer’s goods/services. *See Orange Bang, Inc. v. Ole Mexican Foods, Inc.*, 116 USPQ2d 1102, 1119 (TTAB 2015) (noting that the “natural zone of expansion” doctrine normally applies in inter partes cases in the context of the parties’ dueling claims of priority); *1st USA Realty Prof’ls*, 84 USPQ2d at 1584. However, in the ex parte context, the normal relatedness analysis is applied:

[W]e look at the question of the relatedness of the services identified in applicant's application and those in the cited registration based on whether consumers are likely to believe that the services emanate from a single source, rather than whether the Examining Attorney has shown that the registrant . . . has or is likely to expand its particular business to include the services of applicant.

Id.

To the extent the expansion-of-trade doctrine does apply in ex parte cases, it “is considered through a traditional relatedness of goods and services approach.” *Id.* at 1584 n.4.

1207.01(a)(vi) Evidence Showing Relatedness of Goods or Services

The examining attorney must provide evidence showing that the goods and services are related to support a finding of likelihood of confusion. *See, e.g., In re White Rock Distilleries Inc.*, 92 USPQ2d 1282, 1285

(TTAB 2009) (finding Office had failed to establish that wine and vodka infused with caffeine are related goods because there was no evidence that vodka and wine emanate from a single source under a single mark or that such goods are complementary products that would be bought and used together). Evidence of relatedness might include news articles and/or evidence from computer databases showing that the relevant goods/services are used together or used by the same purchasers; advertisements showing that the relevant goods/services are advertised together or sold by the same manufacturer or dealer; and/or copies of prior use-based registrations of the same mark for both applicant's goods/services and the goods/services listed in the cited registration. *See, e.g., In re Davia*, 110 USPQ2d 1810, 1817 (TTAB 2014) (finding pepper sauce and agave related where evidence showed both were used for the same purpose in the same recipes and thus consumers were likely to purchase the products at the same time and in the same stores. See [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#) and cases cited therein regarding the probative value of third-party registrations.

The identification of goods/services in the subject application and in the cited registration(s) may in itself constitute evidence of the relatedness of the goods or services. *Hewlett-Packard Co. v. Packard Press Inc.*, 281 F.3d 1261, 1267, 62 USPQ2d 1001, 1004 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (finding the Board erred in concluding that there was insufficient evidence of relatedness, because it "did not consider the important evidence already before it, namely the ITU application and [opposer's] registrations").

1207.01(b) Similarity of the Marks

Under *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973), the first factor requires examination of "the similarity or dissimilarity of the marks in their entireties as to appearance, sound, connotation and commercial impression." The test of likelihood of confusion is not whether the marks can be distinguished when subjected to a side-by-side comparison, but whether the marks are sufficiently similar that there is a likelihood of confusion as to the source of the goods or services. *See Midwestern Pet Foods, Inc., v. Societe Des Produits Nestle S.A.*, 685 F.3d 1046, 1053, 103 USPQ2d 1435, 1440 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *Edom Labs., Inc. v. Lichter*, 102 USPQ2d 1546, 1551 (TTAB 2012); *In re Iolo Techs., LLC*, 95 USPQ2d 1498, 1499 (TTAB 2010). When comparing the marks, "[a]ll relevant facts pertaining to appearance, sound, and connotation must be considered before similarity as to one or more of those factors may be sufficient to support a finding that the marks are similar or dissimilar." *Recot, Inc. v. M.C. Becton*, 214 F.3d 1322, 1329, 54 USPQ2d 1894, 1899 (Fed. Cir. 2000). : However, the analysis is based on the marks as depicted in the respective application and registration, without regard to whether the marks will appear with other marks, such as house marks, or other elements when used. *See In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1207 n.4, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1690 n.4 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (indicating that applicant's assertions that the applied-for mark would appear with applicant's house mark were not considered in the likelihood-of-confusion determination); *Mini Melts, Inc. v. Reckitt Benckiser LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1464, 1470 (TTAB 2016) (rejecting applicant's argument that, because its mark would appear along with its house mark and other distinguishing matter, the marks at issue were not confusingly similar); *see also Cunningham v. Laser Golf Corp.*, 222 F.3d 943, 950, 55 USPQ2d 1842, 1847 (Fed. Cir. 2000) ("Registrations with typed drawings are not limited to any particular rendition of the mark and, in particular, are not limited to the mark as it is used in commerce.").

In evaluating the similarities between marks, the emphasis must be on the recollection of the average purchaser who normally retains a general, rather than specific, impression of trademarks. *E.g., In re Cynosure, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1644, 1645 (TTAB 2009) (citing *Sealed Air Corp. v. Scott Paper Co.*, 190 USPQ 106, 108 (TTAB 1975)).

The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has provided the following guidance for evaluating the marks:

The basic principle in determining confusion between marks is that marks must be compared in their entireties and must be considered in connection with the particular goods or services for which they are used. It follows from that principle that likelihood of confusion cannot be predicated on dissection of a mark, that is, on only part of a mark. On the other hand, in articulating reasons for reaching a conclusion on the issue of confusion, there is nothing improper in stating that, for rational reasons, more or less weight has been given to a particular feature of a mark, provided the ultimate conclusion rests on consideration of the marks in their entireties. Indeed, this type of analysis appears to be unavoidable.

In re Nat'l Data Corp., 753 F.2d 1056, 1058, 224 USPQ 749, 750-51 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (footnotes omitted) (citations omitted).

When the goods or services are identical or virtually identical, the degree of similarity between the marks necessary to support a determination that confusion is likely declines. See *Bridgestone Americas Tire Operations, LLC v. Fed. Corp.*, 673 F.3d 1330, 1337, 102 USPQ2d 1061, 1064 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Viterra Inc.*, 671 F.3d 1358, 1363, 101 USPQ2d 1905, 1908 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Mighty Leaf Tea*, 601 F.3d 1342, 1348, 94 USPQ2d 1257, 1260 (Fed. Cir. 2010); *Century 21 Real Estate Corp. v. Century Life of Am.*, 970 F.2d 874, 877, 23 USPQ2d 1698, 1701 (Fed. Cir. 1992); *In re Max Capital Grp. Ltd.*, 93 USPQ2d 1243, 1248 (TTAB 2010); *In re Ginc UK Ltd.*, 90 USPQ2d 1472, 1477 (TTAB 2007).

1207.01(b)(i) Word Marks

The points of comparison for a word mark are appearance, sound, meaning, and commercial impression. See *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1371, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1691 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (citing *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973)). Similarity of the marks in one respect – sight, sound, or meaning – will not automatically result in a determination that confusion is likely even if the goods are identical or closely related; rather, taking into account all of the relevant facts of a particular case, similarity as to one factor alone may be sufficient to support a holding that the marks are confusingly similar. See *In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1634, 1635 (TTAB 2009); *In re White Swan Ltd.*, 8 USPQ2d 1534, 1535 (TTAB 1988).

1207.01(b)(ii) Similarity In Appearance

Similarity in appearance is one factor to consider when comparing the marks. See *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973) . Marks may be confusingly similar in appearance despite the addition, deletion, or substitution of letters or words. See, e.g., *Weiss Assocs. Inc. v. HRL Assocs. Inc.*, 902 F.2d 1546, 14 USPQ2d 1840 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (finding TMM confusingly similar to TMS); *Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce v. Wells Fargo Bank, N.A.*, 811 F.2d 1490, 1 USPQ2d 1813 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (affirming Board's holding that source confusion is likely where COMMCASH and COMMUNICASH are used in connection with identical banking services); *Ava Enters. v. Audio Boss USA, Inc.*, 77 USPQ2d 1783 (TTAB 2006) (finding AUDIO BSS USA and design similar in appearance to BOSS AUDIO SYSTEMS (stylized)); *In re Lamson Oil Co.*, 6 USPQ2d 1041 (TTAB 1987) (finding TRUCOOL and TURCOOL confusingly similar in appearance); *In re Pix of Am., Inc.*, 225 USPQ 691 (TTAB 1985) (finding NEWPORTS and NEWPORT to be essentially identical in appearance); *In re Pellerin Milnor Corp.*, 221 USPQ 558 (TTAB 1983) (finding MILTRON and MILLTRONICS (stylized) to be highly similar in appearance); *In re BASF A.G.*, 189 USPQ 424 (TTAB 1975) (finding difference between marks LUTEX and LUTEXAL insufficient to avoid source confusion).

1207.01(b)(iii) Comparing Marks That Contain Additional Matter

Determining whether there is a likelihood of confusion requires careful consideration of the nature of the common elements of the marks at issue, as well as the overall commercial impression created by each mark.

Likelihood of confusion is not necessarily avoided between otherwise confusingly similar marks merely by adding or deleting a house mark, other distinctive matter, or a term that is descriptive or suggestive of the named goods or services; if the dominant portion of both marks is the same, then the marks may be confusingly similar notwithstanding peripheral differences. *See e.g., Stone Lion Capital Partners, L.P. v. Lion Capital LLP*, 746 F.3d 1317, 1322 110 USPQ2d 1157, 1161 (Fed. Cir. Mar. 26, 2014) (affirming TTAB's finding that applicant's mark STONE LION CAPITAL incorporated the entirety of the registered marks LION CAPITAL and LION, and that the noun LION was the dominant part of both parties' marks); *In re Mighty Leaf Tea*, 601 F.3d 1342, 1347-48, 94 USPQ2d 1257, 1260-61 (Fed. Cir. 2010) (affirming TTAB's finding that applicant's mark, ML, is likely to be perceived as a shortened version of registrant's mark, ML MARK LEES (stylized), when used on the same or closely related skin-care products); *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée En 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1372-73, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1692 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (affirming TTAB's holding that contemporaneous use of appellant's mark, VEUVE ROYALE, for sparkling wine, and appellee's marks, VEUVE CLICQUOT and VEUVE CLICQUOT PONSARDIN, for champagne, is likely to cause confusion, noting that the presence of the "strong distinctive term [VEUVE] as the first word in both parties' marks renders the marks similar, especially in light of the largely laudatory (and hence non-source identifying) significance of the word ROYALE"); *In re Chatam Int'l Inc.*, 380 F.3d 1340, 1343, 71 USPQ2d 1944, 1946 (Fed. Cir. 2004) ("Viewed in their entireties with non-dominant features appropriately discounted, the marks [GASPAR'S ALE for beer and ale and JOSE GASPAR GOLD for tequila] become nearly identical."); *Hewlett-Packard Co. v. Packard Press, Inc.*, 281 F.3d 1261, 1266, 62 USPQ2d 1001, 1004 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (finding that, even though applicant's mark PACKARD TECHNOLOGIES (with "TECHNOLOGIES" disclaimed) does not incorporate every feature of opposer's HEWLETT PACKARD marks, a similar overall commercial impression is created); *In re Max Capital Grp. Ltd.*, 93 USPQ2d 1243, 1248 (TTAB 2010) (holding applicant's mark, MAX with pillar design, and registrant's mark, MAX, likely to cause confusion, noting that the "addition of a column design to the cited mark . . . is not sufficient to convey that [the] marks . . . identify different sources for legally identical insurance services"); *In re Toshiba Med. Sys. Corp.*, 91 USPQ2d 1266, 1271 (TTAB 2009) (holding VANTAGE TITAN for MRI diagnostic apparatus, and TITAN for medical ultrasound device, likely to cause confusion, noting that the marks are more similar than they are different and that the addition of applicant's "product mark," VANTAGE, to the registered mark would not avoid confusion); *In re SL&E Training Stable, Inc.*, 88 USPQ2d 1216, 1219 (TTAB 2008) (holding SAM EDELMAN and EDELMAN, both for wallets and various types of bags, likely to cause confusion, noting that there are strong similarities between the marks because they share the same surname, and that consumers viewing the mark EDELMAN may perceive it as an abbreviated form of SAM EDELMAN because it is the practice in the fashion industry to refer to surnames alone); *In re Chica, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1845, 1848-49 (TTAB 2007) (holding CORAZON BY CHICA with design, and CORAZON with design, both for jewelry, likely to cause confusion, noting that, "to many consumers, applicant's mark for the identical word 'Corazon' followed by the phrase 'BY CHICA' will simply be viewed as the identification of the previously anonymous source of the goods sold under the mark CORAZON"); *In re El Torito Rests. Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 2002 (TTAB 1988) (holding MACHO COMBOS (with "COMBOS" disclaimed), and MACHO (stylized), both for food items as a part of restaurant services, likely to cause confusion); *In re Computer Sys. Ctr. Inc.*, 5 USPQ2d 1378, 1381 (TTAB 1987) (holding CSC ADVANCED BUSINESS SYSTEMS for retail computer store services and computer maintenance and repair services in connection therewith, and CSC for various computer-related services, likely to cause confusion, noting that "the inclusion of 'ADVANCED BUSINESS SYSTEMS' as a feature of applicant's mark is not likely to help customers . . . distinguish the source of each party's service"); *In re Equitable Bancorporation*, 229 USPQ 709, 711 (TTAB 1986) (holding RESPONSE and RESPONSE CARD (with

“CARD” disclaimed), both for banking services, likely to cause confusion, noting that “the addition of descriptive matter to one of two otherwise similar, nondescriptive marks will not serve to avoid a likelihood of confusion”); *In re Apparel Ventures, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 225, 226 (TTAB 1986) (holding applicant’s mark, SPARKS BY SASSAFRAS (stylized), for clothing, and registrant’s mark, SPARKS (stylized), for footwear, likely to cause confusion, noting that “[t]hose already familiar with registrant’s use of its mark in connection with its goods, upon encountering applicant’s mark on applicant’s goods, could easily assume that ‘sassafras’ is some sort of house mark that may be used with only some of the ‘SPARKS’ goods”); *In re Corning Glass Works*, 229 USPQ 65, 66 (TTAB 1985) (holding CONFIRM for a buffered solution equilibrated to yield predetermined dissolved gas values in a blood-gas analyzer, and CONFIRMCELLS for diagnostic blood reagents for laboratory use, likely to cause confusion, noting that the relevant consumers would view the “CELLS” portion of CONFIRMCELLS as merely descriptive); *In re U.S. Shoe Corp.*, 229 USPQ 707, 709 (TTAB 1985) (holding CAREER IMAGE (stylized) for clothing and retail women’s clothing store services, and CREST CAREER IMAGES (stylized) for uniforms, likely to cause confusion, noting that CAREER IMAGE would be perceived by consumers as a shortened form of CREST CAREER IMAGES); *In re Energy Images, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 572, 573 (TTAB 1985) (holding SMART-SCAN (stylized) for optical line recognition and digitizing processors, and SMART for telemetry systems and remote-data gathering and control systems, likely to cause confusion, noting that, because of the descriptive significance of the term “SCAN,” it would be the portion of applicant’s mark that consumers would least likely rely upon to distinguish applicant’s goods); *In re Denisi*, 225 USPQ 624, 624 (TTAB 1985) (holding PERRY’S PIZZA and PERRY’S, both for restaurant services, likely to cause confusion, noting that “where a newcomer has appropriated the entire mark of a registrant, and has added to it a non-distinctive term, the marks are generally considered to be confusingly similar”); *In re Riddle*, 225 USPQ 630, 632 (TTAB 1985) (holding RICHARD PETTY’S ACCU TUNE and design for automotive service stations, and ACCU-TUNE for automotive testing equipment, likely to cause confusion); *In re Collegian Sportswear, Inc.*, 224 USPQ 174, 176 (TTAB 1984) (holding COLLEGIAN OF CALIFORNIA and design (with “CALIFORNIA” disclaimed), and COLLEGIENNE, both for items of clothing, likely to cause confusion, noting that the addition of “OF CALIFORNIA” would not obviate confusion because consumers might believe that such wording denotes a new product line from the same source); *In re Pierre Fabre S.A.*, 188 USPQ 691, 692 (TTAB 1975) (holding PEDI-RELAX for foot cream with antiperspirant properties, and RELAX for antiperspirant, likely to cause confusion).

Additions or deletions to marks may be sufficient to avoid a likelihood of confusion if: (1) the marks in their entireties convey significantly different commercial impressions; or (2) the matter common to the marks is not likely to be perceived by purchasers as distinguishing source because it is merely descriptive or diluted.

See, e.g., Citigroup Inc. v. Capital City Bank Group, Inc., 637 F.3d 1344, 1356, 98 USPQ2d 1253, 1261 (Fed. Cir. 2011) (affirming TTAB’s holding that contemporaneous use of applicant’s CAPITAL CITY BANK marks for banking and financial services, and opposer’s CITIBANK marks for banking and financial services, is not likely cause confusion, based, in part, on findings that the phrase “City Bank” is frequently used in the banking industry and that “CAPITAL” is the dominant element of applicant’s marks, which gives the marks a geographic connotation as well as a look and sound distinct from opposer’s marks); *Shen Mfg. Co. v. Ritz Hotel Ltd.*, 393 F.3d 1238, 1245, 73 USPQ2d 1350, 1356-57 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (reversing TTAB’s holding that contemporaneous use of THE RITZ KIDS for clothing items (including gloves) and RITZ for various kitchen textiles (including barbeque mitts) is likely to cause confusion, because, *inter alia*, THE RITZ KIDS creates a different commercial impression); *Safer, Inc. v. OMS Invs., Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1031, 1044-45 (TTAB 2010) (holding DEER-B-GON for animal repellent used to repel deer, other ruminant animals, and rabbits, and DEER AWAY and DEER AWAY PROFESSIONAL for repellent for repelling deer, other big game, and rabbits, not likely to cause confusion, noting that “DEER” is descriptive as applied to the relevant goods and thus has no source-indicating significance); *Bass Pro Trademarks, L.L.C. v. Sportsman’s Warehouse, Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d 1844, 1857-58 (TTAB 2008) (finding that, although cancellation petitioner’s and respondent’s marks were similar by virtue of the shared descriptive wording “SPORTSMAN’S

WAREHOUSE,” this similarity was outweighed by differences in terms of sound, appearance, connotation, and commercial impression created by other matter and stylization in the respective marks); *In re Farm Fresh Catfish Co.*, 231 USPQ 495, 495-96 (TTAB 1986) (holding CATFISH BOBBERS (with “CATFISH” disclaimed) for fish, and BOBBER for restaurant services, not likely to cause confusion, because the word “BOBBER” has different connotation when used in connection with the respective goods and services); *In re Shawnee Milling Co.*, 225 USPQ 747, 749 (TTAB 1985) (holding GOLDEN CRUST for flour, and ADOLPH’S GOLD’N CRUST and design (with “GOLD’N CRUST” disclaimed) for coating and seasoning for food items, not likely to cause confusion, noting that, because “GOLDEN CRUST” and “GOLD’N CRUST” are highly suggestive as applied to the respective goods, the addition of “ADOLPH’S” is sufficient to distinguish the marks); *In re S.D. Fabrics, Inc.*, 223 USPQ 54, 55-56 (TTAB 1984) (holding DESIGNERS/FABRIC (stylized) for retail fabric store services, and DAN RIVER DESIGNER FABRICS and design for textile fabrics, not likely to cause confusion, noting that, because of the descriptive nature of “DESIGNERS/FABRIC” and “DESIGNER FABRICS,” the addition of “DAN RIVER” is sufficient to avoid a likelihood of confusion); *see also* [TMEP §1207.01\(b\)\(viii\)](#).

1207.01(b)(iv) Similarity in Sound – Phonetic Equivalents

Similarity in sound is one factor in determining whether the marks are confusingly similar. *See In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973) ; *In re White Swan, Ltd.*, 8 USPQ2d 1534, 1535 (TTAB 1988) . For purposes of the §2(d) analysis, there is no “correct” pronunciation of a mark because it is impossible to predict how the public will pronounce a particular mark; therefore, “correct” pronunciation cannot be relied on to avoid a likelihood of confusion. *See, e.g., In re Viterra Inc.*, 671 F.3d 1358, 1367, 101 USPQ2d 1905, 1912 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (upholding the Board’s affirmance of a Section 2(d) refusal to register XCEED for agricultural seed based on a likelihood of confusion with the registered mark X-SEED and design, SEED disclaimed, for identical goods); *Centraz Indus. Inc. v. Spartan Chem. Co. Inc.*, 77 USPQ2d 1698, 1701 (TTAB 2006) (acknowledging that “there is no correct pronunciation of a trademark” and finding ISHINE (stylized) and ICE SHINE, both for floor finishing preparations, confusingly similar); *In re Lamson Oil Co.*, 6 USPQ2d 1041, 1042 n.3 (TTAB 1987) (“[C]orrect pronunciation as desired by the applicant cannot be relied upon to avoid a likelihood of confusion.”); *Kabushiki Kaisha Hattori Tokeiten v. Scutto*, 228 USPQ 461 (TTAB 1985) (holding SEYCOS and design for watches, and SEIKO for watches and clocks, likely to cause confusion); *In re Great Lakes Canning, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 483 (TTAB 1985) (holding CAYNA (stylized) for soft drinks, and CANA for, *inter alia*, canned and frozen fruit and vegetable juices, likely to cause confusion); *In re Energy Telecomms. & Elec. Ass’n*, 222 USPQ 350 (TTAB 1983) (holding ENTELEC and design for association services relating to telecommunications and other electrical control systems for use in the energy related industries, and INTELECT for promoting, planning, and conducting expositions and exhibitions for the electrical industry, likely to cause confusion); *In re Cresco Mfg. Co.*, 138 USPQ 401 (TTAB 1963) (holding CRESCO and design for leather jackets, and KRESSCO for hosiery, likely to cause confusion).

1207.01(b)(v) Similarity in Meaning

Similarity in meaning or connotation is another factor in determining whether the marks are confusingly similar. *See In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973) ; *In re Cynosure, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1644, 1645-46 (TTAB 2009) . The focus is on the recollection of the average purchaser who normally retains a general, rather than specific, impression of trademarks. *E.g., In re Ass’n of the U.S. Army*, 85 USPQ2d 1264, 1267-68 (TTAB 2007); *In re Cont’l Graphics Corp.*, 52 USPQ2d 1374, 1375 (TTAB 1999) ; *see also In re M. Serman & Co., Inc.*, 223 USPQ 52 (TTAB 1984) (holding CITY WOMAN for ladies’ blouses, and CITY GIRL for female clothing, likely to cause confusion); *Gastown, Inc., of Del. v. Gas City, Ltd.*, 187 USPQ 760 (TTAB 1975) (holding GAS CITY (“GAS” disclaimed) for gasoline, and GASTOWN for gasoline, diesel fuel, kerosene, and vehicle supply and

maintenance services, likely to cause confusion); *Watercare Corp. v. Midwesco-Enterprise, Inc.*, 171 USPQ 696 (TTAB 1971) (holding AQUA-CARE (stylized, with and without design) and WATERCARE (stylized), both for water-conditioning products, likely to cause confusion).

The meaning or connotation of a mark must be determined in relation to the named goods or services. Even marks that are identical in sound and/or appearance may create sufficiently different commercial impressions when applied to the respective parties' goods or services so that there is no likelihood of confusion. *See, e.g., In re Sears, Roebuck & Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 1312, 1314 (TTAB 1987) (holding CROSS-OVER for bras and CROSSOVER for ladies' sportswear not likely to cause confusion, noting that the term "CROSS-OVER" was suggestive of the construction of applicant's bras, whereas "CROSSOVER," as applied to registrant's goods, was "likely to be perceived by purchasers either as an entirely arbitrary designation, or as being suggestive of sportswear which "crosses over" the line between informal and more formal wear . . . or the line between two seasons"); *In re British Bulldog, Ltd.*, 224 USPQ 854, 856 (TTAB 1984) (holding PLAYERS for men's underwear and PLAYERS for shoes not likely to cause confusion, agreeing with applicant's argument that the term "PLAYERS" implies a fit, style, color, and durability suitable for outdoor activities when applied to shoes, but "implies something else, primarily indoors in nature" when applied to men's underwear); *In re Sydel Lingerie Co.*, 197 USPQ 629, 630 (TTAB 1977) (holding BOTTOMS UP for ladies' and children's underwear and BOTTOMS UP for men's clothing not likely to cause confusion, noting that the wording connotes the drinking phrase "Drink Up" when applied to men's clothing, but does not have this connotation when applied to ladies' and children's underwear).

1207.01(b)(vi) Doctrine of Foreign Equivalents

Under the doctrine of foreign equivalents, a foreign word (from a language familiar to an appreciable segment of American consumers) and the English equivalent may be held to be confusingly similar. *See, e.g., In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021 (TTAB 2006) (holding MARCHE NOIR for jewelry, and BLACK MARKET MINERALS for retail jewelry and mineral store services, likely to cause confusion); *In re Am. Safety Razor Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 1459 (TTAB 1987) (holding BUENOS DIAS for soap, and GOOD MORNING and design for latherless shaving cream, likely to cause confusion); *In re Hub Distrib., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 284 (TTAB 1983) (holding EL SOL for clothing and footwear, and SUN and design for footwear, likely to cause confusion).

Whether an examining attorney should apply the doctrine of foreign equivalents turns upon the significance of the foreign mark to the relevant purchasers, which is based on an analysis of the evidence of record, including, for example, dictionary, Internet, and LexisNexis® evidence. If the evidence shows that the relevant English translation is literal and direct, and no contradictory evidence of shades of meaning or other relevant meanings exists, the doctrine generally should be applied by the examining attorney. *See, e.g., In re Ithaca Indus., Inc.*, 230 USPQ 702 (TTAB 1986) (holding LUPO for men's and boys' underwear, and WOLF and design for various clothing items, likely to cause confusion, because, *inter alia*, "LUPO" is clearly the foreign equivalent of the English word "wolf").

If an examining attorney determines that the doctrine is applicable, the examining attorney must also consider all other relevant *du Pont* factors in assessing whether there is a likelihood of confusion. *See In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973) ; *In re L'Oreal S.A.*, 222 USPQ 925, 926 (TTAB 1984) (noting that "similarity [of the marks] in connotation must be viewed as but a single factor in the overall evaluation of likelihood of confusion").

1207.01(b)(vi)(A) Background

With respect to likelihood of confusion, “[i]t is well established that foreign words or terms are not entitled to be registered if the English language equivalent has been previously used on or registered for products which might reasonably be assumed to come from the same source.” *Mary Kay Cosmetics, Inc. v. Dorian Fragrances, Ltd.*, 180 USPQ 406, 407 (TTAB 1973) .

Although words from modern languages are generally translated into English, the doctrine of foreign equivalents has evolved into a guideline, not an absolute rule, and is applied only when the “ordinary American purchaser” would “stop and translate” the foreign wording in a mark into its English equivalent.

Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondee en 1772, 396 F.3d 1369, 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (reversing holding of likelihood of confusion where the marks were VEUVE ROYALE (the French equivalent of “Royal Widow”) and THE WIDOW, deeming it improbable that American purchasers would stop and translate “VEUVE” into “widow”). *see In re Aquamar, Inc.*, 115 USPQ2d 1122, 1127 (TTAB 2015) (applying foreign equivalents doctrine after finding that Spanish is a common language in the U.S. and that ordinary purchasers would stop and translate mark MARAZUL into English). The “ordinary American purchaser” includes “all American purchasers, including those proficient in a non-English language who would ordinarily be expected to translate words into English.” *In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1352, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1492 (Fed. Cir. 2009).

With respect to the likelihood of confusion determination, the doctrine has been applied generally in the situation where the wording in one mark is entirely in English and the wording in the other mark or marks is entirely in a foreign language. *See, e.g., In re Perez*, 21 USPQ2d 1075 (TTAB 1991); *In re Am. Safety Razor Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 1459 (TTAB 1987) ; *In re Hub Distrib., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 284 (TTAB 1983) . This is the most common scenario in the case law.

The Board, however, has applied the doctrine where the wording in both marks being compared is in the same foreign language. *See In re Lar Mor Int’l, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 180, 181-83 (TTAB 1983) (noting that “[i]t seems to us that the fact that both marks may be comprised of foreign words should not mean that we can disregard their meanings” and translating the marks BIEN JOLIE and TRES JOLIE to compare their meanings, but concluding that confusion was not likely, despite their substantially similar meanings, because of, *inter alia*, the highly laudatory nature of the registered mark, BIEN JOLIE). In the *Lar Mor* case, the marks in question consisted of common French terms and, thus, it was perhaps more likely that the ordinary American purchaser would stop and translate such terms. *Cf. Palm Bay Imps.*, 396 F.3d at 1377, 73 USPQ2d at 1692, 1696 (noting that the doctrine of foreign equivalents will not be applied when it is unlikely that an American buyer will translate a foreign mark and agreeing with TTAB’s determination that purchasers were unlikely to translate applicant’s French mark VEUVE ROYALE and opposer’s French marks VEUVE CLICQUOT PONSARDIN and VEUVE CLICQUOT, but concluding that confusion was likely because, *inter alia*, the presence of the arbitrary term “VEUVE” as the first word in both parties’ marks renders the marks similar); *Brown Shoe Co. v. Robbins*, 90 USPQ2d 1752, 1756 (TTAB 2009) (determining that the relevant circumstances of the case did not warrant application of the doctrine where the parties’ respective marks were the Spanish terms PALOMITA and PALOMA, but concluding that confusion was likely because, *inter alia*, the marks were substantially similar in appearance, pronunciation, meaning, and commercial impression).

The Board has also applied the doctrine in an inter partes case where the wording in one of the marks was in a foreign language and the wording in the other mark or marks was in a different foreign language. *See Miguel Torres S.A. v. Casa Vinicola Gerardo Cesari S.R.L.*, 49 USPQ2d 2018 (TTAB 1998) (applying the doctrine and concluding that confusion was likely where the applicant’s mark featured the Italian wording DUE TORRI, meaning “two towers,” and the opposer’s marks featured the Spanish wording TORRES and

TRES TORRES, meaning “towers” and “three towers” respectively), *vacated and remanded on other grounds*, 230 F.3d 1372 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (unpublished table decision). However, the Board has stated that, in general, it does not apply the doctrine where both marks are non-English words from two different foreign languages. *Brown Shoe Co.*, 90 USPQ2d at 1756; *see also Safeway Stores, Inc. v. Bel Canto Fancy Foods, Ltd.*, 5 USPQ2d 1980, 1982 (TTAB 1987) (“[T]his Board does not think it proper to take the French expression ‘bel air’ and the Italian expression ‘bel aria’ and then convert both into English and compare the English translations to determine whether there is similarity as to connotation . . .”). One reason for not applying the doctrine where the marks are in different foreign languages is that it is less likely that the ordinary American purchaser would be fluent in two or more foreign languages. In *Miguel Torres*, the Board noted that the relevant marks were of such a nature that it was unnecessary for those encountering the relevant marks to be fluent in both Spanish and Italian to understand the connotations of the marks, because, for instance, a purchaser who is fluent in Spanish and familiar with meaning of the mark TORRES may be able to discern the meaning of a mark containing the Italian wording DUE TORRI and a design of two towers. 49 USPQ2d at 2021. In any case, the doctrine may not be as relevant, and certainly not the sole determinative factor, in a situation such as the *Miguel Torres* case where the marks are also similar in other respects.

The Board has yet to apply the doctrine in a published decision where the wording in one or more of the marks being compared consists of a combination of English and foreign-language words or terms. In such a case, the issue would likely remain whether the ordinary American purchaser would stop and translate these combined-language marks. The sufficiency of the translation evidence, the nature of the combined foreign and English wording (i.e., whether the wording is arbitrary, suggestive, generic, etc.), and any other relevant facts and evidence should be considered in these cases.

1207.01(b)(vi)(B) When an Ordinary American Purchaser Would “Stop and Translate”

Issues regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents arise early in examination, that is, at the time of conducting a search for confusingly similar marks. The search of foreign words in an applied-for mark must include a search of their English translation to ensure that all possible conflicting registrations and prior-filed applications have been identified in the event that the doctrine applies. See [TMEP §§809.01-809.03](#) for information regarding how to ascertain the meaning of non-English wording in a mark and when a translation is required.

After conducting a complete search, an examining attorney must then assess whether a refusal under §2(d) may be warranted. If so, the examining attorney should research the English translation further using available resources, such as dictionaries, the Internet, and LexisNexis®, to ascertain whether there is sufficient evidence to support applying the doctrine.

As discussed below, if the evidence shows that the English translation is “literal and direct,” with no contradictory evidence of other relevant meanings or shades of meaning, then the doctrine should be applied, barring unusual circumstances. Further, if in its response to the application of the doctrine applicant argues that the foreign language is rare, obscure, or dead, then the examining attorney will need to provide evidence that the foreign language is a common, modern language.

English Translations – Literal and Direct

The Federal Circuit has stated that “[t]he test to be applied to a foreign word vis-a-vis an English word with respect to equivalency is not less stringent than that applicable to two English words.” *In re Sarkli, Ltd.*, 721 F.2d 353, 354, 220 USPQ 111, 113 (Fed. Cir. 1983).

Thus, the English translation evidence is a critical factor for the Board and the courts when determining whether to apply the doctrine. If the translation evidence shows that the English translation is unambiguously literal and direct, with no other relevant connotations or variations in meaning, the doctrine has generally been applied, and, therefore, should be applied by the examining attorney. *See In re Aquamar, Inc.*, 115 USPQ2d 1122 (TTAB 2015) (applying foreign equivalents doctrine and holding that MARAZUL for fish and seafood, and BLUE SEA for fish, likely to cause confusion, after finding that the record evidence established that “mar azul” means “blue sea”); *In re La Peregrina Ltd.*, 86 USPQ2d 1645, 1648-50 (TTAB 2008) (holding LA PEREGRINA for jewelry, pearls, pearl jewelry, and precious stones, and PILGRIM for jewelry, likely to cause confusion, where dictionary evidence showed that “pilgrim” is an exact translation of “peregrina” and there was no other dictionary evidence to the contrary); *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021, 1024-25 (TTAB 2006) (holding MARCHE NOIR for jewelry, and BLACK MARKET MINERALS for retail jewelry and mineral store services, likely to cause confusion, where the evidence showed “MARCHE NOIR” is the exact French equivalent of the English idiom “Black Market”); *In re Ithaca Indus., Inc.*, 230 USPQ 702, 704 (TTAB 1986) (LUPO for men’s and boys’ underwear, and WOLF and design for various clothing items, likely to cause confusion, where there was no dispute that “LUPO” is the Italian equivalent of “wolf”); *In re Hub Distrib., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 284, 284-85 (TTAB 1983) (holding EL SOL for clothing, and SUN and design for footwear, likely to cause confusion, where “EL SOL” was determined to be the “direct foreign language equivalent” of the term “sun”); *see also Ex parte Odol-Werke Wien GmbH.*, 111 USPQ 286, 286 (Comm’r Pats. 1956) (finding the French language mark CHAT NOIR and its English language equivalent BLACK CAT confusingly similar because “CHAT NOIR” undoubtedly means, and is the same as, ‘Black Cat’ to a substantial segment” of the relevant purchasers).

When determining the appropriate English translation of the foreign wording in the mark, an examining attorney should view the translations in the context of any significant features in the mark, such as design or wording elements, the identified goods and/or services in the application, the relevant marketplace, and the specimen. *See, e.g., In re Perez*, 21 USPQ2d 1075, 1076-77 (TTAB 1991) (holding EL GALLO for fresh vegetables, and ROOSTER for fresh citrus fruit, likely to cause confusion, rejecting applicant’s argument that purchasers would ascribe other meanings to “gallo,” where “rooster” was the first English translation listed in a Spanish-English language dictionary entry for “gallo,” where “gallo” was the only listed Spanish translation in a dictionary entry for “rooster,” and where the design of a rooster on the specimen reinforced the translation of “GALLO”).

Where the evidence shows that the English translation is not exact, literal, or direct, the doctrine of foreign equivalents has generally not been applied to find the marks confusingly similar. *See Sarkli*, 721 F.2d at 354-55, 220 USPQ at 112-13 (holding REPECHAGE for various skin-care products, and SECOND CHANCE for face creams and other toiletries, not likely to cause confusion, where the evidence failed to show that the terms were direct foreign equivalents); *see also In re Buckner Enters.*, 6 USPQ2d 1316 (TTAB 1987) (holding DOVE (with design) for stoves and furnaces, and PALOMA for various forms of gas heating apparatus, not likely to cause confusion, because, *inter alia*, the Spanish word “paloma” and the English word “dove” are not exact synonyms in that “paloma” can be translated into either “dove” or “pigeon”). Thus, several translation dictionaries showing variations in the English meaning constitute evidence that the foreign word or term may not have a literal and direct translation, and the doctrine should not be applied.

Common, Modern Foreign Languages

The doctrine applies to words or terms from common, modern languages, which encompasses all but dead, obscure, or unusual languages. *See Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696 (Fed. Cir. 2005). Thus, an examining attorney should provide evidence to show that the foreign language is a common, modern language. The type of evidence will vary depending on the particular facts of the case but, if available, the examining attorney should provide

evidence of the percentage or number of United States consumers who speak the language in question. For example:

- Census evidence provided by applicant, showing that only 0.6% of the American population speak French “very well” or “well,” was used by the Board against the applicant to find that French is a commonly spoken language and that, of the foreign languages with the greatest number of speakers in the United States, French was second only to Spanish. *Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d at 1024.
- Evidence showing that 706,000 Russian-speakers live in the United States was persuasive evidence to establish that a “significant portion of consumers” would understand the English meaning of the Russian mark for Russian vodka. *In re Joint Stock Co. “Baik,”* 80 USPQ2d 1305, 1310 (TTAB 2006).

Census evidence identifying the number of people who speak various foreign languages in the United States can be found at <http://www.census.gov/hhes/socdemo/language/>.

If such evidence is unavailable or unpersuasive, the examining attorney may instead provide other evidence that the language in question is a common, modern language by establishing, for example, that the foreign country where the language is spoken is a prominent trading partner of the United States or that the foreign language is spoken by a sizeable world population. Such evidence may be obtained from the USPTO’s Translations Branch, as well as the Internet, LexisNexis®, and any other relevant electronic or print resources.

If evidence shows that the language at issue is highly obscure or a dead language, the doctrine will generally not be applied. *See Palm Bay Imps.*, 396 F.3d at 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696; *cf. In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1351, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1491 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (indicating that the doctrine of foreign equivalents does not require that terms from dead or obscure languages be literally translated for the purpose of determining descriptiveness). The determination of whether a language is “dead” is made on a case-by-case basis, based upon the meaning the word or term would have to the relevant purchasing public. For example, Latin is generally considered a dead language. However, if evidence shows that a Latin term is still in use by the relevant purchasing public (i.e., if the term appears in current dictionaries or news articles), then this Latin term would not be considered dead. The same analysis is applied to other words or terms from uncommon or obscure languages.

Other Considerations: Alternate Meaning of Mark and Marketplace Circumstances of the Commercial Setting in Which the Mark is Used

The Board may also review the evidence of record to determine the following:

- (1) Whether the foreign wording has a meaning in the relevant marketplace that differs from the translated meaning in English; and/or
- (2) Whether it is more or less likely that the foreign expression will be translated by purchasers because of the manner in which the term is encountered in the marketing environment as used in connection with the goods and/or services.

See Thomas, 79 USPQ2d at 1025-26; *see also In re Jos. Schlitz Brewing Co.*, 223 USPQ 45, 45-46 (TTAB 1983) (considering whether purchasers would be likely to translate the mark “KUHLEBRAU” into its merely descriptive English equivalent, “cool brew”). In making such determinations, the Board generally reviews evidence such as dictionary definitions, declarations, and specimens.

Typically, the doctrine will not be applied where the foreign wording has developed an alternate meaning in the relevant marketplace that is different from the translated meaning in English, and the evidence shows that the alternate meaning would be understood by the relevant purchasing public. *See La Peregrina*, 86 USPQ2d at 1649 (finding that if sufficient evidence had been provided to show that the Spanish-language mark LA PEREGRINA, which translates to mean “the pilgrim,” for goods including pearls and pearl jewelry, was viewed by the relevant purchasing public as the “name of a very famous and unique pearl,” such would be a situation “where purchasers would not translate the name”); *cf. Cont’l Nut Co. v. Le Cordon Bleu S.a.r.l.*, 494 F.2d 1395, 1396-97, 181 USPQ 646, 647 (C.C.P.A. 1974) (finding that applicant’s ownership of a prior registration for “BLUE RIBBON” did not preclude opposer from asserting damage resulting from applicant’s registration of the mark CORDON BLEU, (which literally translates to “blue ribbon”) because CORDON BLEU would not be translated by, or have the same significance to, an American purchaser in view of the adoption by the English language of the wording CORDON BLEU, as evidenced by American English dictionary entries indicating that such wording refers to a highly skilled cook).

The doctrine also typically will not be applied where the record indicates that it is unlikely purchasers would translate the mark because of “marketplace circumstances or the commercial setting in which the mark is used.” *La Peregrina*, 86 USPQ2d at 1648; *see also Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d at 1026 (finding “MARCHE NOIR” confusingly similar to “BLACK MARKET MINERALS,” but suggesting that a different conclusion might have been reached if the marketplace circumstances or commercial setting in which the mark was used were such that it would be unlikely for purchasers to translate “MARCHE NOIR”); *In re Tia Maria, Inc.*, 188 USPQ 524, 525-26 (TTAB 1975) (holding TIA MARIA (which translates to “Aunt Mary”) for restaurant services, and AUNT MARY’S for canned fruits and vegetables, not likely to cause confusion, because, *inter alia*, a person dining at the TIA MARIA restaurant surrounded by its Mexican décor and Mexican food, would be likely to accept “TIA MARIA” as it is and not translate it into “AUNT MARY”).

1207.01(b)(vi)(C) Likelihood of Confusion Factors Still Apply When Assessing Whether Marks are Confusingly Similar

If the examining attorney has sufficient evidence to show that foreign wording comprising a mark has a relevant, literal, and direct English translation such that the foreign wording has an English language equivalent, then the doctrine generally should be applied. However, applying the doctrine is only part of the process of determining whether the marks being compared are confusingly similar. Appearance, sound, meaning, and overall commercial impression are also factors to be considered when comparing marks. *See Palm Bay Imps. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1371, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1691 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (citing *In re E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973); *In re Ness & Co.*, 18 USPQ2d 1815, 1816 (TTAB 1991) (“[S]uch similarity as there is in connotation [between the foreign word mark and the English word mark] must be weighed against the dissimilarity in appearance, sound, and all other factors, before reaching a conclusion on likelihood of confusion as to source.” (quoting *In re Sarkli, Ltd.*, 721 F.2d 353, 354, 220 USPQ 111, 113 (Fed. Cir. 1983))).

Similarity of the marks in one respect – sight, sound, or meaning – does not automatically result in a finding of likelihood of confusion even if the goods are identical or closely related; rather, the rule is that, taking into account all of the relevant facts of a particular case, similarity as to one factor alone may be sufficient to support a holding that the marks are confusingly similar. *See In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1634, 1635 (TTAB 2009); *In re White Swan Ltd.*, 8 USPQ2d 1534, 1535 (TTAB 1988) ; [TMEP §1207.01\(b\)\(i\)](#).

For example, if the English and foreign marks being compared are weak or highly suggestive, or have additional wording or matter that serves to distinguish the marks, then regardless of application of the doctrine and similarity in meaning, the marks may not be considered confusingly similar. *See Ness & Co.*,

18 USPQ2d at 1816 (holding GOOD-NESS for cheese and meats, and LABONTE (which translates to “the goodness”) for cheese, not likely cause confusion, because of the laudatory nature of the term “goodness,” the dissimilarity of the marks in appearance and sound, the slight differences in meaning of the marks, and the connotation of the mark GOOD-NESS in relation to applicant’s company name “Ness & Co.”); *In re L’Oreal S.A.*, 222 USPQ 925, 925-26 (TTAB 1984) (considering the English translation of the French mark HAUTE MODE (meaning “high fashion” in English), but concluding that contemporaneous use with the HI-FASHION SAMPLER was not likely to cause confusion, because of, *inter alia*, the “less than wholly arbitrary nature of the marks” and the differences in the marks, including the addition of the term SAMPLER in the English-language mark).

If both marks being compared are in a foreign language and have the same or a very similar meaning when translated, the following factors should also be assessed: (1) whether the English meaning of the marks is weak or highly suggestive with respect to the goods and/or services; and (2) whether the marks being compared are similar in sound and/or appearance in addition to having the same or similar meaning. If the marks are not weak or highly suggestive and are similar in meaning and sound, they may be found to be confusingly similar. *See Miguel Torres S.A v. Casa Vinicola Gerardo Cesari S.R. L.*, 49 USPQ2d 2018 (applying the doctrine and concluding that confusion was likely where the applicant’s mark featured the Italian wording DUE TORRI, meaning “two towers,” and opposer’s marks featured the Spanish wording TORRES and TRES TORRES, meaning “towers” and “three towers” respectively, because the marks were similar not only in connotation but also in sound), vacated and remanded on other grounds, 230 F.3d 1372 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (unpublished table decision); *In re Lar Mor Int’l, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 180 (translating the marks BIEN JOLIE and TRES JOLIE to compare their meanings, but concluding that confusion was not likely, despite the marks’ substantially similar meanings, because of, *inter alia*, the highly laudatory nature of the wording “JOLIE,” and the “obvious visual and phonetic differences” between the marks).

In addition, when comparing only foreign language marks, even if it is determined that the marks are not likely to be translated by purchasers, the marks may still be found confusingly similar for other reasons, such as similarity in sound and/or appearance. *See Palm Bay Imps.*, 396 F.3d at 1372-73, 1377, 73 USPQ2d at 1691, 1696 (agreeing with Board’s finding that purchasers would not translate into English applicant’s French mark VEUVE ROYALE and opposer’s French marks VEUVE CLICQUOT PONSARDIN and VEUVE CLICQUOT, and upholding the Board’s determination that confusion was nonetheless likely as to these marks, because, *inter alia*, “the presence of [the] strong distinctive term [VEUVE] as the first word in both parties’ marks renders the marks similar, especially in light of the largely laudatory . . . significance of the word ROYALE”).

See also TMEP §§ [1209.03\(g\)](#), [1210.05\(b\)](#), [1210.10](#), and [1211.01\(a\)\(vii\)](#) for additional information regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents.

1207.01(b)(vii) Transposition of Terms

Where the primary difference between marks is the transposition of the elements that compose the marks, and where this transposition does not change the overall commercial impression, there may be a likelihood of confusion. *See, e.g., In re Wine Soc’y of Am. Inc.*, 12 USPQ2d 1139, 1142 (TTAB 1989) (holding THE WINE SOCIETY OF AMERICA and design for wine club membership services including the supplying of printed materials, and AMERICAN WINE SOCIETY 1967 and design for newsletters, bulletins, and journals, likely to cause confusion); *In re Nationwide Indus., Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1882, 1884 (TTAB 1988) (holding RUST BUSTER (with “RUST” disclaimed) for rust-penetrating spray lubricant, and BUST RUST for penetrating oil, likely to cause confusion); *In re Gen. Tire & Rubber Co.*, 213 USPQ 870, 871 (TTAB 1982) (holding SPRINT STEEL RADIAL (with “STEEL” and “RADIAL” disclaimed) for pneumatic tires, and RADIAL SPRINT (with “RADIAL” disclaimed) for radial tires, likely to cause confusion).

However, if the transposed mark creates a distinctly different commercial impression, then confusion is not likely. *See, e.g., In re Best Prods. Co.*, 231 USPQ 988, 989-90 (TTAB 1986) (holding BEST JEWELRY and design (with “JEWELRY” disclaimed) for retail jewelry store services, and JEWELERS’ BEST for bracelets, not likely to cause confusion).

1207.01(b)(viii) Marks Consisting of Multiple Words

When assessing the likelihood of confusion between compound word marks, although each mark must be considered as a whole, it is appropriate to consider whether a portion of the mark is dominant in creating the mark’s commercial impression. As the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has noted, “in articulating reasons for reaching a conclusion on the issue of confusion, there is nothing improper in stating that, for rational reasons, more or less weight has been given to a particular feature of a mark, provided the ultimate conclusion rests on consideration of the marks in their entirety.” *In re Nat’l Data Corp.*, 753 F.2d 1056, 1058, 224 USPQ 749, 750-51 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *see also Juice Generation, Inc. v. GS Enters. LLC*, 794 F.3d 1334, 1340-41, 115 USPQ2d 1671, 1676 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (noting that “the message of a whole phrase may well not be adequately captured by a dissection and recombination”).

Although there is no mechanical test to select a “dominant” element of a compound word mark, consumers would be more likely to perceive a fanciful or arbitrary term, rather than a descriptive or generic term, as the source-indicating feature of the mark. *See, e.g., In re Dixie Rests., Inc.*, 105 F.3d 1405, 1407, 41 USPQ2d 1531, 1533-34 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (affirming TTAB’s finding that “DELTA,” not the disclaimed generic term “CAFE,” is the dominant portion of the mark THE DELTA CAFE); *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531, 1534 (TTAB 2009) (finding that “BINION’S,” not the disclaimed descriptive wording “ROADHOUSE,” is the dominant portion of the mark BINION’S ROADHOUSE). Accordingly, if two marks for related goods or services share identical or similar dominant features and the marks, when viewed in their entirety, create similar overall commercial impressions, then confusion is likely. *See, e.g., In re Cynosure, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1644 (TTAB 2009) (holding CYNERGY for medical lasers for, *inter alia*, treatment of the face and skin, and SYNERGIE PEEL for medical devices for microdermabrasion, likely to cause confusion, noting that “SYNERGIE” is the dominant portion of the cited mark and “PEEL” is insufficient to distinguish the marks); *In re J.M. Originals Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1393 (TTAB 1987) (holding JM ORIGINALS (with “ORIGINALS” disclaimed) for various items of apparel, and JM COLLECTABLES for sport shirts, likely to cause confusion).

If the common element of two marks is “weak” in that it is generic, descriptive, or highly suggestive of the named goods or services, it is unlikely that consumers will be confused unless the overall combinations have other commonality. *See, e.g., Juice Generation, Inc. v. GS Enters. LLC*, 794 F.3d at 1338-40, 115 USPQ2d at 1674-75 (remanded for consideration of whether and to what degree the phrase PEACE & LOVE was suggestive or descriptive in the food-service industry); *In re Bed & Breakfast Registry*, 791 F.2d 157, 159 229 USPQ 818, 819 (Fed. Cir. 1986) (reversing TTAB’s holding that contemporaneous use of BED & BREAKFAST REGISTRY for making lodging reservations for others in private homes, and BED & BREAKFAST INTERNATIONAL for room booking agency services, is likely to cause confusion, because, *inter alia*, the descriptive nature of the shared wording weighed against a finding that the marks are confusingly similar); *U.S. Shoe Corp. v. Chapman*, 229 USPQ 74 (TTAB 1985) (holding COBBLER’S OUTLET for shoes, and CALIFORNIA COBBLERS (in typed and stylized forms) for footwear and women’s shoes, not likely to cause confusion); *In re Istituto Sieroterapico E Vaccinogeno, Toscano “SCLAVO” S.p.A.*, 226 USPQ 1035 (TTAB 1985) (holding ASO QUANTUM (stylized, with “ASO” disclaimed) for diagnostic laboratory reagents, and QUANTUM I for laboratory instruments for analyzing body fluids, not likely to cause confusion); *see also* [TMEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(iii\), \(b\)\(ix\)](#).

However, while the public may rely more on the nondescriptive portions of marks to distinguish them, "this does not mean that the public looks only at the differences [between the marks], or that descriptive words play no role in creating confusion." *Nat'l Data Corp.*, F.2d at 1060, 224 USPQ at 752.

1207.01(b)(ix) Weak or Descriptive Marks

The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board have recognized that merely descriptive and weak designations may be entitled to a narrower scope of protection than an entirely arbitrary or coined word. See *Juice Generation, Inc. v. GS Enters. LLC*, 794 F.3d 1334, 1338-39, 115 USPQ2d 1671, 1674 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondee en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1373, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1693 (Fed. Cir. 2005); *Giersch v. Scripps Networks, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1020, 1026 (TTAB 2009); *In re Box Solutions Corp.*, 79 USPQ2d 1953, 1957-58 (TTAB 2006); *In re Cent. Soya Co.*, 220 USPQ 914, 916 (TTAB 1984). However, even a weak mark is entitled to protection against the registration of a similar mark for closely related goods or services. See *King Candy Co. v. Eunice King's Kitchen, Inc.*, 496 F.2d 1400, 1401 182 USPQ 108, 109 (C.C.P.A. 1974).

With respect to marks registered on the Supplemental Register, the Board stated the following in *In re Hunke & Jochheim*:

[R]egistration on the Supplemental Register may be considered to establish prima facie that, at least at the time of registration, the registered mark possessed a merely descriptive significance. This is significant because it is well established that the scope of protection afforded a merely descriptive or even a highly suggestive term is less than that accorded an arbitrary or coined mark. That is, terms falling within the former category have been generally categorized as "weak" marks, and the scope of protection extended to these marks has been limited to the substantially identical notation and/or to the subsequent use and registration thereof for substantially similar goods.

185 USPQ 188, 189 (TTAB 1975) (citation omitted).

However, even marks that are registered on the Supplemental Register may be cited under §2(d). *In re Clorox Co.*, 578 F.2d 305, 308-09, 198 USPQ 337, 341 (C.C.P.A. 1978).

1207.01(b)(x) Parody Marks

The fact that a mark is intended to be a parody of another trademark is not, by itself, sufficient to overcome a likelihood of confusion refusal, because "[t]here are confusing parodies and non-confusing parodies." J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition*, §31.153 (4th ed. 2010); see also *Nike, Inc. v. Maher*, 100 USPQ2d 1018, 1023 (TTAB 2011) ("[P]arody is not a defense if the marks would otherwise be considered confusingly similar."). "A true parody actually decreases the likelihood of confusion because the effect of the parody is to create a distinction in the viewer's mind between the actual product and the joke." *Mutual of Omaha Ins. Co. v. Novak*, 648 F. Supp. 905, 910, 231 USPQ 963, 965 (D. Neb. 1986), aff'd, 836 F.2d 397, 5 USPQ2d 1314 (8th Cir. 1987). Thus, "[w]hile a parody must call to mind the actual product to be successful, the same success also necessarily distinguishes the parody from the actual product." *Id.*

Cases involving a discussion of parody include the following: *Research in Motion Ltd. v. Defining Presence Mktg. Grp., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1187, 1192 (TTAB 2012) (sustaining oppositions to applications for the mark CRACKBERRY, for a variety of online computer services and clothing items, on the bases of a likelihood of confusion and likelihood of dilution by blurring with the mark BLACKBERRY, for handheld

devices, including smartphones, and related goods and services, noting that “likelihood of confusion will usually trump any First Amendment concerns”); *Starbucks U.S. Brands, LLC v. Ruben*, 78 USPQ2d 1741 (TTAB 2006) (holding contemporaneous use of applicant’s mark, LESSBUCKS COFFEE, and opposer’s marks, STARBUCKS and STARBUCKS COFFEE, for identical goods and services, likely to cause confusion, noting that “parody is unavailing to applicant as an outright defense and, further, does not serve to distinguish the marks”); *Columbia Pictures Indus., Inc. v. Miller*, 211 USPQ 816, 820 (TTAB 1981) (holding CLOTHES ENCOUNTERS for clothing, and CLOSE ENCOUNTERS OF THE THIRD KIND for t-shirts, likely to cause confusion, noting that the “right of the public to use words in the English language in a humorous and parodic manner does not extend to use of such words as trademarks if such use conflicts with the prior use and/or registration of the substantially same mark by another”); see also *Jordache Enters. v. Hogg Wyld Ltd.*, 828 F.2d 1482, 4 USPQ2d 1216, 1220, 1222 (10th Cir. 1987) (noting that “a parody of an existing trademark can cause a likelihood of confusion,” but affirming district court’s holding that contemporaneous use of LARDASHE and JORDACHE, both for jeans, is not likely to cause confusion).

1207.01(b)(xi) Color Marks

When the marks at issue are both color marks, the test is not whether the marks can be distinguished when subjected to a side-by-side comparison, but rather whether the marks are sufficiently similar in terms of their appearance and overall commercial impression so that confusion as to the source of the goods/services offered under the respective marks is likely to result. *In re Cook Med. Tech. LLC*, 105 USPQ2d 1377, 1381 (TTAB 2012). In *In re Cook Med. Tech.*, the Board affirmed a refusal to register the color "teal" for "medical devices, namely, guiding sheaths for use in conjunction with access needles, wire guides, and dilators for providing access for diagnostic and interventional devices in vascular and non-vascular procedures," finding the mark likely to cause confusion with a registered mark for the color "blue" applied to the tip and indwelling length of catheters. *Id.*, 105 USPQ2d at 1385. Because registrant’s “blue” mark was not limited to a particular shade of blue, it covered all shades of blue, including applicant’s “teal.” *Id.*, 105 USPQ2d at 1382. Further, the Board found that, in the context of the goods at issue, the marks were similar in color, noting that the original description of applicant’s mark identified it as the color "blue/teal," and that the goods were complementary *Id.*, 105 USPQ2d at 1380, 82-83.

1207.01(c) Design Marks

When the marks at issue are both design marks, the similarity of the marks must be decided primarily on the basis of visual similarity. *E.g.*, *In re Vienna Sausage Mfg. Co.*, 16 USPQ2d 2044, 2047 (TTAB 1990). In this situation, consideration must be given to the fact that the marks usually will not be viewed side-by-side in the marketplace and a purchaser’s recollection of design marks is often of a general, rather than specific, nature; thus the marks may be confusingly similar despite differences between them. *See, e.g.*, *In re United Serv. Distribs., Inc.*, 229 USPQ 237 (TTAB 1986) (holding mark consisting of a design featuring silhouettes of a man and woman, used in connection with distributorship services in the field of health and beauty aids, and mark consisting of a design featuring silhouettes of a man and woman, used in connection with skin cream, likely to cause confusion); *In re Steury Corp.*, 189 USPQ 353 (TTAB 1975) (holding mark consisting of three generally horizontal bars, for, *inter alia*, boats, campers, and travel trailers, and mark consisting of two generally horizontal bars, for, *inter alia*, boats, campers, and travel trailers, likely to cause confusion); *Matsushita Elec. Indus. Co. v. Sanders Assocs., Inc.*, 177 USPQ 720 (TTAB 1973) (holding mark consisting of a triangular arrow design within a square border, for various items of electrical and electronic equipment, and mark consisting of a triangular arrow design, for various items of electrical and electronic equipment, likely to cause confusion); *cf. Red Carpet Corp. v. Johnstown Am. Enters.*, 7 USPQ2d 1404 (TTAB 1988) (holding mark consisting of a highly stylized house design for use in connection with real estate property management, and mark consisting of a highly stylized house design for use in connection with real estate

brokerage services, not likely to cause confusion); *Ocean Spray Cranberries, Inc. v. Ocean Garden Prods., Inc.*, 223 USPQ 1027 (TTAB 1984) (holding mark consisting of a circle containing three curved lines with rounded ends, for seafood, and mark consisting of a stylized breaking wave within an oval, for various food items including juices and fruits, not likely to cause confusion).

1207.01(c)(i) Legal Equivalents – Comparison of Words and Their Equivalent Designs

Under the doctrine of legal equivalents, which is based on a recognition that a pictorial depiction and equivalent wording are likely to impress the same mental image on purchasers, a design mark may be found to be confusingly similar to a word mark consisting of the design's literal equivalent. *See, e.g., In re Rolf Nilsson AB*, 230 USPQ 141 (TTAB 1986) (holding applicant's mark consisting of a silhouette of a lion's head and the letter "L," for shoes, and registrant's mark, LION, for shoes, likely to cause confusion); *Puma-Sportschuhfabriken Rudolf Dassler KG v. Garan, Inc.*, 224 USPQ 1064 (TTAB 1984) (holding applicant's marks featuring a design of a mountain lion, for clothing items, and opposer's marks, a puma design and PUMA (with and without puma design), for items of clothing and sporting goods, likely to cause confusion); *In re Duofold Inc.*, 184 USPQ 638 (TTAB 1974) (holding mark consisting of a design of an eagle lined for the color gold, for sports apparel, and mark consisting of GOLDEN EAGLE and design of an eagle, for various items of clothing, likely to cause confusion).

Where, however, a pictorial representation in a mark is so highly stylized or abstract that it would not readily evoke in the purchaser's mind the wording featured in another mark, the marks may not be confusingly similar. *See, e.g., In re Serac, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 340, 341 (TTAB 1983) (concluding that applicant's design mark was "so highly stylized that an image of a ram's head would not be immediately discerned and the connection with [the registered mark] 'RAM'S HEAD' would not be readily evoked with the resulting generation of a likelihood of source confusion").

1207.01(c)(ii) Composite Marks Consisting of Both Words and Designs

Often, the examining attorney must determine whether a likelihood of confusion exists between composite marks that consist of a design element combined with words and/or letters. Frequently, the marks at issue are similar in only one element. Although it is not proper to dissect a mark, if one feature of a mark is more significant than another feature, greater weight may be given to the dominant feature for purposes of determining likelihood of confusion. *See, e.g., In re Viterra Inc.*, 671 F.3d 1358, 1362, 101 USPQ2d 1905, 1908 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *Giant Food, Inc. v. Nation's Foodservice, Inc.*, 710 F.2d 1565, 1570-71, 218 USPQ 390, 395 (Fed. Cir. 1983); *see also* [TMEP §1207.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#). However, the fundamental rule in this situation is that the marks must be considered in their entireties. *See Jack Wolfskin Ausrüstung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d 1363, 1371, 116 USPQ2d 1129, 1134 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1206, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1688 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *Massey Junior Coll., Inc. v. Fashion Inst. of Tech.*, 492 F.2d 1399, 1402, 181 USPQ 272, 273-74 (C.C.P.A. 1974) .

If a mark comprises both wording and a design, greater weight is often given to the wording, because it is the wording that purchasers would use to refer to or request the goods or services. *See, e.g., Viterra*, 671 F.3d at 1366, 101 USPQ2d at 1911; *In re Max Capital Grp. Ltd.*, 93 USPQ2d 1243, 1247 (TTAB 2010) ; *In re Appetito Provisions Co. Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1553, 1554 (TTAB 1987) . The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has cautioned, however, that "[t]here is no general rule as to whether letters or designs will dominate in composite marks; nor is the dominance of letters or design dispositive of the issue." *In re Electrolyte Labs. Inc.*, 929 F.2d 645, 647, 16 USPQ2d 1239, 1240 (Fed. Cir. 1990).

The comparison of composite marks must be done on a case-by-case basis, without reliance on mechanical rules of construction. *See, e.g., Jack Wolfskin Ausrüstung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d at 1371-72, 116 USPQ2d at 1134-35 (holding that Board finding lacked substantial evidence for minimizing the literal element in composite mark); *Spice Islands, Inc. v. Frank Tea & Spice Co.*, 505 F.2d 1293, 184 USPQ 35 (C.C.P.A. 1974) (reversing TTAB's holding that SPICE TREE with tree design, for garlic powder and minced onion, and SPICE ISLANDS with and without tree design, for seasoning herbs and spices, is not likely to cause confusion); *In re Covalinski*, 113 USPQ2d 1166 (TTAB 2014) (holding confusion unlikely between REDNECK RACEGIRL and design of large, double-letter RR configuration and registered mark RACEGIRL, even when used on in-part identical goods); *In re White Rock Distilleries Inc.*, 92 USPQ2d 1282 (TTAB 2009) (holding VOLTA for vodka infused with caffeine, and TERZA VOLTA and vine shoot design for wines, not likely to cause confusion); *In re Sun Supermarkets, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 693 (TTAB 1986) (holding applicant's mark, SUN SUPERMARKETS with sun design, for retail supermarket services, and registrant's marks, SUNSHINE and SUNRISE (both with sun designs), for retail grocery store services, likely to cause confusion).

1207.01(c)(iii) Comparison of Standard Character Marks and Special Form Marks

If a mark (in either an application or a registration) is presented in standard characters, the owner of the mark is not limited to any particular depiction of the mark. *Cunningham v. Laser Golf Corp.*, 222 F.3d 943, 950, 55 USPQ2d 1842, 1847 (Fed. Cir. 2000); *In re Cox Enters.*, 82 USPQ2d 1040, 1044 (TTAB 2007) . The rights associated with a mark in standard characters reside in the wording (or other literal element, e.g., letters, numerals, punctuation) and not in any particular display. *In re White Rock Distilleries Inc.*, 92 USPQ2d 1282, 1284 (TTAB 2009) . A registrant is entitled to all depictions of a standard character mark regardless of the font style, size, or color, and not merely "reasonable manners" of depicting such mark. *See In re Viterra Inc.*, 671 F.3d 1358, 1364-65, 101 USPQ2d 1905, 1910 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *Citigroup Inc. v. Capital City Bank Group, Inc.*, 637 F.3d 1344, 1353, 98 USPQ2d 1253, 1259 (Fed. Cir. 2011). Therefore, an applicant cannot, by presenting its mark in special form, avoid likelihood of confusion with a mark that is registered in standard characters because the registered mark presumably could be used in the same manner of display. *See, e.g., In re RSI Sys., LLC*, 88 USPQ2d 1445, 1448 (TTAB 2008) ; *In re Melville Corp.*, 18 USPQ2d 1386, 1388 (TTAB 1991) ; *In re Pollio Dairy Prods. Corp.*, 8 USPQ2d 2012, 2015 (TTAB 1988) . Likewise, the fact that an applied-for mark is presented in standard character form would not, by itself, be sufficient to distinguish it from a similar mark in special form. *See, e.g., In re Mighty Leaf Tea*, 601 F.3d 1342, 1348, 94 USPQ2d 1257, 1260 (Fed. Cir. 2010); *Sunnen Prods. Co. v. Sunex Int'l, Inc.*, 1 USPQ2d 1744, 1747 (TTAB 1987) ; *In re Hester Indus., Inc.*, 231 USPQ 881, 882 n.6 (TTAB 1986) .

See [TMPEP §§807.03-807.04\(b\)](#) regarding standard character and special form drawings.

1207.01(c)(iv) Matter Depicted in Broken Lines

In some cases, where the position of the mark on the goods (or on a label or container for the goods) is a feature of the mark, the applicant will submit a drawing that shows the placement of the mark by surrounding the mark with a proportionately accurate broken-line representation of the particular goods, packaging, or advertising on which the mark appears. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMPEP §807.08](#).

The matter depicted in broken lines is not part of the mark and should not be considered in determining likelihood of confusion. *See In re Homeland Vinyl Prods., Inc.*, 81 USPQ2d 1378, 1382 (TTAB 2006) .

1207.01(d) Miscellaneous Considerations

1207.01(d)(i) Doubt Resolved in Favor of Registrant

If there is any doubt as to whether there is a likelihood of confusion, that doubt must be resolved in favor of the prior registrant. *See In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1209, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1691 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *In re Hyper Shoppes (Ohio), Inc.*, 837 F.2d 463, 464-65, 6 USPQ2d 1025, 1026 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *In re G.B.I. Tile & Stone, Inc.*, 92 USPQ2d 1366, 1372 (TTAB 2009) ; *see also In re C.H. Hanson Co.*, 116 USPQ2d 1351 (TTAB 2015) (noting that to the extent that the punctuation in registrant's identification of goods created ambiguity as to the scope of the identification, any doubt must be resolved in favor of the registrant).

1207.01(d)(ii) Absence of Actual Confusion

It is well settled that the relevant test is likelihood of confusion, not actual confusion; thus, it is unnecessary to show actual confusion to establish likelihood of confusion. *Herbko Int'l, Inc. v. Kappa Books, Inc.*, 308 F.3d 1156, 1165, 64 USPQ2d 1375, 1380 (Fed. Cir. 2002); *Weiss Assocs. Inc. v. HRL Assocs. Inc.*, 902 F.2d 1546, 1549, 14 USPQ2d 1840, 1842-43 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *In re Big Pig*, 81 USPQ2d 1436, 1439-40 (TTAB 2006) .

1207.01(d)(iii) Third-Party Registrations and Evidence of Third-Party Use

Generally, the existence of third-party registrations cannot justify the registration of another mark that is so similar to a previously registered mark as to create a likelihood of confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. *E.g., In re Max Capital Grp. Ltd.*, 93 USPQ2d 1243, 1248 (TTAB 2010); *In re Toshiba Med. Sys. Corp.*, 91 USPQ2d 1266, 1272 (TTAB 2009) . However, active third-party registrations may be relevant to show that a mark or a portion of a mark is descriptive, suggestive, or so commonly used that the public will look to other elements to distinguish the source of the goods or services. *See, e.g., Jack Wolfskin Ausrüstung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d 1363, 116 USPQ2d 1129 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *Juice Generation, Inc. v. GS Enters. LLC*, 794 F.3d 1334, 1338-40, 115 USPQ2d 1671, 1674-75 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *Primrose Ret. Cmty., LLC v. Edward Rose Senior Living, LLC*, ___ USPQ2d ___ (TTAB 2016); *In re Hartz Hotel Servs., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1150, 1153-54 (TTAB 2012); *In re Melville Corp.*, 18 USPQ2d 1386, 1388 (TTAB 1991); *In re Dayco Products-Eagle Motive Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 1910, 1911-12 (TTAB 1988) ; *Plus Prods. v. Star-Kist Foods, Inc.*, 220 USPQ 541, 544 (TTAB 1983) . Properly used in this limited manner, third-party registrations are similar to dictionaries showing how language is generally used. *See, e.g., Tektronix, Inc. v. Daktronics, Inc.*, 534 F.2d 915, 917, 189 USPQ 693, 694-95 (C.C.P.A. 1976) ; *In re J.M. Originals Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1393, 1394 (TTAB 1987) ; *United Foods Inc. v. J.R. Simplot Co.*, 4 USPQ2d 1172, 1174 (TTAB 1987) . However, cancelled or expired third-party registrations for similar marks are not probative evidence of a mark's descriptiveness, suggestiveness, or strength. *See Bond v. Taylor*, 119 USPQ2d 1049, 1054 n. 10 (TTAB 2016).

Third-party registrations that cover a number of different goods or services may have some probative value to the extent that they may serve to suggest that goods or services are of a type that may emanate from a single source, if the registrations are based on use in commerce. *Hewlett-Packard Co. v. Packard Press, Inc.*, 281 F.3d 1261, 62 USPQ2d 1001, 1004 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (evidence that “a single company sells the goods and services of both parties, if presented, is relevant to the relatedness analysis”); *In re Mucky Duck Mustard Co.*, 6 USPQ2d 1467, 1470 n.6 (TTAB), *aff'd per curiam*, 864 F.2d 149 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *see also In re Princeton Tectonics, Inc.*, 95 USPQ2d 1509, 1511 (TTAB 2010) (“While third-party registrations can play an important role in establishing that the types of goods at issue are related, examining attorneys must

review the registrations carefully to ensure that each registration presented is probative and that the number of registrations is sufficient, along with other types of evidence, to establish that the types of goods at issue are related.”). Third-party registrations that are not based on use in commerce, such as those registered under §66 of the Trademark Act ([15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#)), or those registered solely under §44 of the Trademark Act ([15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#)), and for which no §8 or §71 affidavits or declarations of continuing use have been filed (15 U.S.C. §1058), have very little, if any, persuasive value. *See Calypso Tech., Inc. v. Calypso Capital Mgmt., LP*, 100 USPQ2d 1213, 1221 n.15 (TTAB 2011) ; *In re 1st USA Realty Prof’ls, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1581, 1583 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Albert Trostel & Sons Co.*, 29 USPQ2d 1783, 1786 (TTAB 1993) .

A list of registrations or a copy of a search report is not proper evidence of third-party registrations. *See, e.g., In re Promo Ink*, 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1304 (TTAB 2006) ; 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1304 (TTAB 2006); *In re Dos Padres, Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 1860, 1861 n.2 (TTAB 1998) ; [TBMP §1208.02](#). To make registrations of record, copies of the registrations or the electronic equivalent thereof (i.e., printouts or electronic copies of the registrations taken from the electronic database of the USPTO) must be submitted. *In re Ruffin Gaming, LLC*, 66 USPQ2d 1924, 1925 n.3 (TTAB 2002) ; *In re Smith & Mehaffey*, 31 USPQ2d 1531, 1532 n.3 (TTAB 1994) ;[TBMP §1208.02](#); [TMEP §710.03](#).

Evidence of third-party use falls under the sixth *du Pont* factor – the “number and nature of similar marks in use on similar goods.” *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973). If the evidence establishes that the consuming public is exposed to third-party use of similar marks on similar goods, it “is relevant to show that a mark is relatively weak and entitled to only a narrow scope of protection.” *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1373-74, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1693 (Fed. Cir. 2005); *see also Mini Melts, Inc. v. Reckitt Benckiser LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1464, 1470 (TTAB 2016) (noting that evidence that third parties had adopted marks that were the same as or similar to opposer’s mark for use in connection with food products “may show that a term carries a highly suggestive connotation in the industry and, therefore, may be considered weak”).

1207.01(d)(iv) Collateral Attack on Registration Improper in Ex Parte Proceeding

Section 7(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(b\)](#), provides that a certificate of registration on the Principal Register shall be prima facie evidence of the validity of the registration, of the registrant’s ownership of the mark, and of the registrant’s exclusive right to use the mark in commerce in connection with the goods or services specified in the certificate. During ex parte prosecution, an applicant will not be heard on matters that constitute a collateral attack on the cited registration (e.g., a registrant’s nonuse of the mark). *See In re Dixie Rests., Inc.*, 105 F.3d 1405, 1408, 41 USPQ2d 1531, 1534-35 (Fed. Cir. 1997); *In re Fiesta Palms, LLC*, 85 USPQ2d 1360, 1363 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Peebles Inc.* 23 USPQ2d 1795, 1797 n.5 (TTAB 1992) ; *In re Pollio Dairy Prods. Corp.*, 8 USPQ2d 2012, 2014-15 (TTAB 1988) .

It is also inappropriate for the applicant in an ex parte proceeding to place the burden of showing a likelihood of confusion on the owner of the cited registration. *In re Majestic Distilling Co.*, 315 F.3d 1311, 1318, 65 USPQ2d 1201, 1206 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (“It is the duty of the PTO and this court to determine whether there is a likelihood of confusion between two marks. . . . [I]t is no answer for the applicant to ask that the application be passed to publication to see whether the owner of the cited mark will oppose the registration.” (quoting *Dixie Rests.*, 105 F.3d at 1408, 41 USPQ2d at 1535)).

1207.01(d)(v) Classification of Goods/Services

The classification of goods and services has no bearing on the question of likelihood of confusion. *See Jean Patou, Inc. v. Theon Inc.*, 9 F.3d 971, 975, 29 USPQ2d 1771, 1774 (Fed. Cir. 1993). Rather, it is the manner

in which the applicant and/or registrant have identified their goods or services that is controlling. *See Nat'l Football League v. Jasper Alliance Corp.*, 16 USPQ2d 1212, 1216 & n.5 (TTAB 1990) .

1207.01(d)(vi) Prior Decisions of Examining Attorneys

Each case must be decided on its own merits. *E.g.*, *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531, 1536 (TTAB 2009). Previous decisions by examining attorneys in approving other marks are without evidentiary value and are not binding on the agency or the Board. *In re Davey Prods. Pty.*, 92 USPQ2d 1198, 1206 (TTAB 2009); *In re Wilson*, 57 USPQ2d 1863, 1871 (TTAB 2001) ; *In re Sunmarks, Inc.*, 32 USPQ2d 1470, 1472 (TTAB 1994); *In re Nat'l Novice Hockey League, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 638, 641 (TTAB 1984) .

1207.01(d)(vii) Sophisticated Purchasers

The fact that purchasers are sophisticated or knowledgeable in a particular field does not necessarily mean that they are immune to source confusion. *See In re Shell Oil Co.*, 992 F.2d 1204, 1208, 26 USPQ2d 1687, 1690 (Fed. Cir. 1993) (indicating that “even sophisticated purchasers can be confused by very similar marks”); *Top Tobacco, LP v. N. Atl. Operating Co.*, 101 USPQ2d 1163, 1170 (TTAB 2011) ; *In re Total Quality Grp., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1474, 1477 (TTAB 1999); *In re Decombe*, 9 USPQ2d 1812, 1814-15 (TTAB 1988) ; *In re Pellerin Milnor Corp.*, 221 USPQ 558, 560 (TTAB 1983); *cf. Stone Lion Capital Partners, L.P. v. Lion Capital LLP*, 746 F.3d 1317, 1325, 110 USPQ2d 1157, 1163 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (affirming that TTAB properly considered all potential investors for recited services, which included sophisticated investors, but that precedent requires TTAB decision to be based “on the least sophisticated potential purchasers.”) However, circumstances suggesting care in purchasing may tend to minimize the likelihood of confusion. *See, e.g., In re N.A.D., Inc.*, 754 F.2d 996, 999-1000, 224 USPQ 969, 971 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (concluding that, because only sophisticated purchasers exercising great care would purchase the relevant goods, there would be no likelihood of confusion merely because of the similarity between the marks NARCO and NARKOMED); *In re Homeland Vinyl Prods., Inc.*, 81 USPQ2d 1378, 1380, 1383 (TTAB 2006) .

1207.01(d)(viii) Consent Agreements

The term “consent agreement” generally refers to an agreement between parties in which one party (e.g., a prior registrant) consents to the registration of a mark by the other party (e.g., an applicant for registration of the same mark or a similar mark), or in which each party consents to the registration of an identical or similar mark by the other party.

An applicant may submit a consent agreement in an attempt to overcome a refusal of registration under §2(d) of the Act, or in anticipation of a refusal to register. However, an examining attorney may not solicit a consent agreement.

A consent agreement may take a number of different forms and arise under a variety of circumstances, but, when present, it is “but one factor to be taken into account with all of the other relevant circumstances bearing on the likelihood of confusion referred to in §2(d).” *In re N.A.D. Inc.*, 754 F.2d 996, 224 USPQ 969, 971 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *see also In re Bay State Brewing Co.*, 117 USPQ2d 1958, 1963 (TTAB 2016) (“[T]here is no per se rule that a consent, whatever its terms, will always tip the balance to finding no likelihood of confusion, and it therefore follows that the content of each agreement must be examined.”).

“Naked” consent agreements (i.e., agreements that contain little more than a prior registrant’s consent to registration of an applied-for mark and possibly a mere statement that source confusion is believed to be unlikely) are typically considered to be less persuasive than agreements that detail the particular reasons

why the relevant parties believe no likelihood of confusion exists and specify the arrangements undertaken by the parties to avoid confusing the public. *See In re E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1362, 177 USPQ 563, 568 (C.C.P.A 1973) (noting that “[i]n considering agreements, a naked ‘consent’ may carry little weight,” but “[t]he weight to be given more detailed agreements . . . should be substantial”); *see also In re Bay State Brewing Co.*, 117 USPQ2d at 1967 (finding that confusion was likely even if the parties’ marks were used in accordance with the consent agreement of record, because the agreement did “not comprise the type of agreement that is properly designed to avoid confusion,” nor did it “fully contemplate all reasonable circumstances in which the marks may be used by consumers calling for the goods”); *In re Donnay Int’l, S.A.*, 31 USPQ2d 1953, 1956 (TTAB 1994) (“[T]he more information that is in the consent agreement as to why the parties believe confusion to be unlikely, and the more evidentiary support for such conclusions in the facts of record or in the way of undertakings by the parties, the more we can assume that the consent is based on a reasoned assessment of the marketplace, and consequently the more weight the consent will be accorded.”); *In re Permagrain Prods., Inc.*, 223 USPQ 147 (TTAB 1984) (finding a consent agreement submitted by applicant did not alter the conclusion that confusion was likely, because the agreement was “naked” in that it merely indicated that each party would recognize, and refrain from interfering with, the other’s use of their respective marks and that the applicant would not advertise or promote its mark without its company name, but the agreement did not restrict the markets or potential customers for their goods in such a way as to avoid confusion); *cf. In re Wacker Neuson SE*, 97 USPQ2d 1408 (TTAB 2010) (finding an otherwise “thin consent” to be viable and reversing a §2(d) refusal, in view of the relationship of the parties, the provisions of a licensing agreement executed by the parties, and the fact that the goods and services offered under both parties’ marks were manufactured and sold by applicant).

If a consent agreement makes representations about both parties’ beliefs regarding the likelihood of confusion and/or indicates that both parties have agreed to undertake certain actions to avoid confusion, then it should be signed by both parties, or by individuals with legal authority to bind the respective parties. In some instances, however, a consent document might be signed only by the registrant, because only the registrant has provided its consent, agreed to take certain actions, or made representations as to the likelihood of confusion. The absence of applicant’s signature on the document in such cases does not necessarily render the document unacceptable, but, like any other consent document, its persuasive value should be determined in light of all other evidence in the record. *See, e.g., Donnay Int’l*, 31 USPQ2d at 1956-57 (finding that a consent letter signed only by the registrant and consisting merely of registrant’s consent to applicant’s registration and use of the applied-for mark was entitled to limited weight, but nonetheless concluding that it served to “tip the scales” in favor of reversing the §2(d) refusal, especially in view of the minimal evidence supporting the conclusion that confusion was likely); *In re Palm Beach Inc.*, 225 USPQ 785, 787-88 (TTAB 1985) (concluding there was no reasonable likelihood of confusion as to applicant’s and registrant’s marks, based on, *inter alia*, the different nature of the parties’ goods, two consent letters signed only by owners of the cited registration, and an affidavit of an officer of applicant’s subsidiary indicating that actual confusion had not occurred during the more than 45 years of the marks’ coexistence and that future likelihood of confusion was believed to be unlikely).

In the *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.* decision, the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals stated as follows:

[W]hen those most familiar with use in the marketplace and most interested in precluding confusion enter agreements designed to avoid it, the scales of evidence are clearly tilted. It is at least difficult to maintain a subjective view that confusion will occur when those directly concerned say it won’t. A mere *assumption* that confusion is likely will rarely prevail against uncontroverted evidence from those on the firing line that it is not.
476 F.2d at 1363, 177 USPQ at 568.

Accordingly, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has indicated that consent agreements should be given great weight, and that the USPTO should not substitute its judgment concerning likelihood of confusion for the judgment of the real parties in interest without good reason, that is, unless the other relevant factors clearly dictate a finding of likelihood of confusion. See *In re Four Seasons Hotels Ltd.*, 987 F.2d 1565, 26 USPQ2d 1071 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *In re N.A.D. Inc.*, 754 F.2d 996, 224 USPQ 969 (Fed. Cir. 1985); see also *du Pont*, 476 F.2d at 1362-63, 177 USPQ at 568; cf. *In re Mastic Inc.*, 829 F.2d 1114, 4 USPQ2d 1292 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (affirming TTAB's holding that applicant's mark was barred by §2(d), because the provided consent to register was essentially a "naked" consent and all other relevant factors weighed in favor of a conclusion that confusion was likely).

Thus, examining attorneys should give substantial weight to a proper consent agreement. When an applicant and registrant have entered into a credible consent agreement and, *on balance*, the other factors do not dictate a finding of likelihood of confusion, an examining attorney should not interpose his or her own judgment that confusion is likely.

A consent agreement is not the same as a "concurrent use" agreement. The term "concurrent use" is a term of art that refers to a geographical restriction on the registration. See [TMEP §1207.04](#) regarding concurrent use.

1207.01(d)(ix) Fame of the Prior Registered Mark

According to *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, the "fame of the prior mark" is a factor to be considered in determining likelihood of confusion. 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973). Because, in *ex parte* proceedings, the examining attorney is not expected to submit evidence regarding the fame of the cited mark, this factor is usually treated as neutral in such proceedings. However, this factor is usually considered more significant in *inter partes* proceedings. See *Bridgestone Americas Tire Operations, LLC v. Fed. Corp.*, 673 F.3d 1330, 102 USPQ2d 1061 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *Recot, Inc. v. M.C. Becton*, 214 F.3d 1322, 54 USPQ2d 1894 (Fed. Cir. 2000); *Research in Motion Ltd. v. Defining Presence Mktg. Grp., Inc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1187, 1192-93 (TTAB 2012); *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021, 1027 n.11 (TTAB 2006).

Famous marks are afforded a broad scope of legal protection because they are more likely to be remembered and associated in the public mind than a weaker mark. *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondee en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1374, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1694 (Fed. Cir. 2005); *Bose Corp. v. QSC Audio Prods. Inc.*, 293 F.3d 1367, 1371-76, 63 USPQ2d 1303, 1305-09 (Fed. Cir. 2002) (finding opposer's marks, ACOUSTIC WAVE and WAVE, to be famous and thus entitled to broad protection); *Recot*, 214 F.3d at 1327, 54 USPQ2d at 1897 (finding Board erred in limiting the weight accorded to the fame of opposer's FRITO-LAY mark); *Kenner Parker Toys Inc. v. Rose Art Indus., Inc.*, 963 F.2d 350, 353, 22 USPQ2d 1453, 1456 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (finding Board erred in discounting the significance of the fame of opposer's mark PLAY-DOH); *UMG Recordings, Inc. v. Mattel, Inc.*, 100 USPQ2d 1868, 1883 (TTAB 2011) (finding MOTOWN very famous in connection with musical recordings and musical entertainment, and noting that "a famous mark such as Motown can be expected to cast a long shadow and to be used in connection with numerous collateral goods").

When present, the fame of a mark is "a dominant factor in the likelihood of confusion analysis . . . independent of the consideration of the relatedness of the goods." *Recot*, 214 F.3d at 1328, 54 USPQ2d at 1898; *L'Oreal S.A. v. Marcon*, 102 USPQ2d 1434, 1438 (TTAB 2012) (noting that "a finding that a mark enjoys significant fame expands the scope of protection which might be accorded a lesser-known mark" and that "the fame of a registered or previously used mark can never support a junior party"); *Starbucks U.S. Brands, LLC v. Ruben*, 78 USPQ2d 1741, 1750 (TTAB 2006) ("As the fame of a mark increases, the degree of similarity between the marks necessary to support a conclusion of likely confusion declines."); see also *Nike, Inc. v.*

Maher, 100 USPQ2d 1018, 1023 (TTAB 2011) (finding applicant’s mark JUST JESU IT, and opposer’s mark JUST DO IT similar for likelihood of confusion purposes “despite the potential differences in meaning, given the fame of opposer’s mark and the similarity of appearance, pronunciation and overall commercial impressions”).

However, like the other *du Pont* factors, the fame of a mark may be considered only if there is relevant evidence of record. See [TMPEP §1207.01](#). Thus, a party who asserts that its mark is famous must submit evidence clearly establishing that its mark is viewed by relevant purchasers as a famous mark. See, e.g., *In re Hard Rock Cafe Licensing Corp. v. Elsea*, 48 USPQ2d 1400, 1409 (TTAB 1998) . The fame of a mark may be shown by evidence of, *inter alia*, the quantity of sales of products bearing the mark, the amount of advertising expenditures relating to the mark, and the length of time such indications of commercial awareness have been evident. See *Bose*, 293 F.3d at 1371, 63 USPQ2d at 1305-06.

Because of the nature of the evidence required to establish the fame of a registered mark, the Board normally does not expect the examining attorney to submit evidence as to the fame of the cited mark in an ex parte proceeding. See *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021, 1027 n.11 (TTAB 2006) ; see also *In re Mr. Recipe, LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1084, 1086-88 (TTAB 2016) (considering and finding persuasive examining attorney’s evidence of fame of the registered mark JAWS, but reiterating that examining attorneys are not expected to submit evidence of fame). And, in an ex parte analysis of the *du Pont* factors for determining likelihood of confusion (see [TMPEP §1207.01](#)), the “fame of the mark” factor is normally treated as neutral when no evidence as to fame has been provided. See *id.*; see also *In re Davey Prods. Pty Ltd.*, 92 USPQ2d 1198, 1204 (TTAB 2009) (noting that the absence of evidence as to the fame of the registered mark “is not particularly significant in the context of an ex parte proceeding”), 92 USPQ2d 1198, 1204 (TTAB 2009) (noting that the absence of evidence as to the fame of the registered mark “is not particularly significant in the context of an ex parte proceeding”).

1207.01(d)(x) Conflicting Marks Owned by Different Parties

During the examination of an application, the examining attorney should consider separately each registration found in a search of the marks registered in the USPTO that may bar registration of the applicant’s mark under §2(d). If the examining attorney finds registrations that appear to be owned by more than one registrant, he or she should consider the extent to which dilution may indicate that there is no likelihood of confusion. However, the examining attorney must cite all the marks that are considered to be a bar to registration of the mark presented in the application, even if they are owned by different parties. The examining attorney should always explain the reason that the mark in each cited registration is grounds for refusal under §2(d).

1207.01(d)(xi) Family of Marks

A family of marks is defined as “a group of marks having a recognizable common characteristic, wherein the marks are composed and used in such a way that the public associates not only the individual marks, but the common characteristic of the family, with the trademark owner.” *J & J Snack Foods Corp. v. McDonald’s Corp.*, 932 F.2d 1460, 1462, 18 USPQ2d 1889, 1891 (Fed. Cir. 1991). The common element may be a term, a phrase, or a component in the nature of a prefix or suffix.

The family of marks doctrine may be invoked by a plaintiff in inter partes proceedings relating to likelihood of confusion, but is not available to a defendant as a defense against an opposer’s or applicant’s intervening rights. *Baroid Drilling Fluids Inc. v. Sun Drilling Prods.*, 24 USPQ2d 1048 (TTAB), amended by 1992 TTAB LEXIS 27 (TTAB 1992).

Moreover, a family of marks argument is not available to an applicant seeking to overcome a likelihood of confusion refusal in an ex parte proceeding; instead, the focus of the likelihood of confusion analysis must be on the mark applicant seeks to register, not other marks applicant may have used or registered. *In re Cynosure, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1644, 1645 (TTAB 2009) ; *see also In re Ald, Inc.*, 148 USPQ 520, 521 (TTAB 1965) (“[I]n view of the specific prohibition of Section 2(d) . . . , the fact that applicant may possess a ‘family’ of marks characterized by the term ‘ALD’ is of no particular significance herein if the mark for which applicant now seeks registration . . . is confusingly similar to the previously registered mark . . .”).

It has also been noted that, in ex parte proceedings, examining attorneys do not have access to the evidence and information needed to establish whether a family of marks exists. *In re Mobay Chem. Co.*, 166 USPQ 218, 219 (TTAB 1970) . Therefore, examining attorneys should refrain from invoking the family of marks doctrine or from referring to a family of marks in a likelihood of confusion analysis. *See In re Hitachi High-Techs. Corp.*, 109 USPQ2d 1769, 1772 (TTAB 2014) ; *In re Mobay Chem. Co.*, 166 USPQ at 219.

1207.01(d)(xii) Pharmaceuticals or Medicinal Products

When determining if a likelihood of confusion exists between marks used in connection with pharmaceuticals or medicinal products for human use, greater care must be taken to avoid confusion because mistakes in the selection and use of these goods may result in serious and harmful consequences. *See Clifton v. Plough, Inc.*, 341 F.2d 934, 934, 144 USPQ 599, 600 (C.C.P.A. 1965) ; *In re Cook Med. Tech. LLC*, 105 USPQ2d 1377, 1381-82 (TTAB 2012) ; *Schering Corp. v. Alza Corp.*, 207 USPQ 504, 509 (TTAB 1980) ; *Am. Home Prods. Corp. v. USV Pharm. Corp.*, 190 USPQ 357, 359-60 (TTAB 1976) . Thus, in cases where confusion involving pharmaceuticals or medicinal products could result in harm or other serious consequences to consumers, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board and its primary reviewing court have considered this an additional relevant factor and applied a stricter standard that may require a lesser degree of proof to establish likelihood of confusion. *See Glenwood Labs., Inc. v. Am. Home Prods. Corp.*, 455 F.2d 1384, 1386-87, 173 USPQ 19, 21-22 (C.C.P.A. 1972) ; *Schering Corp.*, 207 USPQ at 509; *Ethicon, Inc. v. Am. Cyanamid Co.*, 192 USPQ 647, 651-52 (TTAB 1976) . *But see Mini Melts, Inc. v. Reckitt Benckiser LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1464, 1476, 1478 (TTAB 2016) (considering opposer’s arguments based on safety concerns about potential consumer confusion regarding opposer’s ice cream and applicant’s medicine, but finding that “any problems arising from the abuse or misuse of Applicant’s medicine, whether potential or actual, has no demonstrated relationship to the identical trademarks under which Applicant’s medicine and Opposer’s ice cream are sold”).

1207.02 Marks That Are Likely to Deceive

In addition to referring to a mark that so resembles another mark as to be likely to cause confusion or mistake, §2(d) refers to a mark being likely “to deceive.” As a practical matter, this provision is rarely applied in examination, because deceptiveness involves intent and would be difficult to prove in an ex parte proceeding.

1207.03 Marks Previously Used in United States but Not Registered

As a basis for refusal, §2(d) refers not only to registered marks but also to “a mark or trade name previously used in the United States by another and not abandoned.” Refusal on the basis of an unregistered mark or trade name has sometimes been referred to as refusal on the basis of a “known mark.” This provision is not applied in ex parte examination because of the practical difficulties with which an examining attorney is faced in locating “previously used” marks, and determining whether anyone has rights in them and whether they are “not abandoned.”

1207.04 Concurrent Use Registration

1207.04(a) Concurrent Use – In General

Section 2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), contains a proviso under which an eligible applicant may request issuance of a registration based on rights acquired by concurrent use of its mark, either with the owner of a registration or application for a conflicting mark or with a common-law user of a conflicting mark.

In a concurrent use application, the applicant normally requests a geographically restricted registration. *See* TBMP §§ [1101.01](#), [1103.01\(d\)\(2\)](#). The applicant seeks registration for a specified geographical area of the United States and lists one or more parties who concededly have rights in the mark in other geographical areas of the United States. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.42\(b\)](#); TBMP §§[1102.01](#), [1103.01](#). These other parties may own applications or registrations, or they may have common law rights in a mark, but no application or registration. [TBMP §1104](#).

There are two bases upon which a concurrent use registration may be issued: (1) a determination by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in either a prior or to-be-instituted concurrent use proceeding, that the applicant is entitled to a concurrent registration; or (2) a final determination by a court of competent jurisdiction of the concurrent rights of the relevant parties to use the same or similar marks in commerce. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.99](#); [TBMP §1102.02](#).

“Incontestable” registrations (i.e., where the registrant’s right to use the mark has become incontestable pursuant to [15 U.S.C §1065](#)) are subject to concurrent use registration proceedings. [TBMP §1105](#); *see* *Holiday Inn v. Holiday Inns, Inc.*, 534 F.2d 312, 319-20, 189 USPQ 630, 636 (C.C.P.A. 1976) ; *Thriftmart, Inc. v. Scot Lad Foods, Inc.*, 207 USPQ 330, 334 (TTAB 1980) .

Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register and registrations under the Act of 1920 (*see* [TMEP §1601.05](#)) are not subject to concurrent use registration proceedings. [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(g\)](#); [TBMP §1105](#).

Concurrent use registration is requested by the applicant; it should not be suggested or initiated by the examining attorney.

1207.04(b) Filing Basis of Application Seeking Concurrent Use Registration

Before seeking concurrent use, an applicant must assert use in commerce in its application and include in the application all the application requirements for a trademark, service mark, collective mark, or certification mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.42\(a\)](#). For information regarding specific application requirements, *see* [TMEP §§801-806.01\(e\)](#) for trademarks and service marks, [TMEP §1303.01](#) for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02](#) for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02](#) for certification marks.

If an application is based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the applicant may seek concurrent use registration at the time the application is filed or in a subsequent amendment. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.42\(a\)](#), [2.73](#). For information regarding amending to concurrent use, *see* [37 C.F.R. §2.73](#).

If an application is based on a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, the applicant may not amend to seek concurrent use registration until the applicant files an acceptable allegation of use. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.73, 2.99\(g\)](#).

Applications based solely on §44 or §66(a) of the Trademark Act are not subject to concurrent use registration proceedings. [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(g\)](#).

1207.04(c) Criteria for Requesting Concurrent Use Registration

An applicant is eligible to request a registration subject to concurrent use if it meets one or more of the following criteria:

- (1) The concurrent use request is sought pursuant to a decree of a court of competent jurisdiction (or a decision by the Board in a prior concurrent use proceeding) reflecting a final determination of the rights of the concurrent user;
- (2) The owner of the registration consents to the grant of a concurrent use registration to the applicant; or
- (3) The applicant's date of first use in commerce is before the *filing date* of the pending applications or of any registrations issued under the Trademark Act of 1946. When a party specified as an excepted user does not own an application or registration, the applicant's date of first use in commerce is before the filing date of any application to register the mark that may be filed by the excepted user.

See [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(e\)](#). The applicant has the burden of proving that it is entitled to a concurrent use registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(e\)](#); *America's Best Franchising, Inc. v. Abbott*, 106 USPQ2d 1540, 1548 (TTAB 2013) (quoting *Over the Rainbow, Ltd. v. Over the Rainbow, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 879, 883 (TTAB 1985)).

1207.04(d) Requirements for All Concurrent Use Applications

An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user is generally examined in the same manner as any other application for registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(a\)](#). The examining attorney must examine the application to determine whether it complies with the relevant requirements for a non-restricted application.

1207.04(d)(i) Concurrent Use Application for a Trademark or Service Mark

In addition to the requirements for a trademark or service mark application (see [TMEP §§801-806.01\(e\)](#)), a concurrent use application must include a verified statement in which the applicant attests to certain information. See [37 C.F.R. §2.42\(b\)](#).

The required verified statement must include the following:

- (1) the applicant's goods and/or services, the geographic area in which the applicant is using the mark in commerce, and the mode of use for which the applicant seeks registration;
- (2) the concurrent users' names and addresses, the concurrent user's goods and/or services, and the registrations issued to or applications filed by the concurrent users (if any), to the extent known by the applicant; and

- (3) the geographic areas in which the concurrent user is using the mark in commerce, the mode of use by the concurrent users, and the time periods of such use by the concurrent users, to the extent known by the applicant.

See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#), [1053](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.42\(b\)](#); [TBMP §1101](#).

For a §1(a) application, an applicant must also modify the verified statement required for an unrestricted application under [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §804.02](#)) to indicate an exception, i.e., that no other person *except as specified in the application* has the right to use the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(f\)](#); see [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#).

The applicant does not have to insert the information in the list above directly in the verification or declaration at the end of the application; this information may be set forth anywhere in the application as long as it is attested to by the applicant.

In addition to the requirements noted above, concurrent use applications must meet other conditions, depending on whether the application is subject to a concurrent use proceeding before the Board (see [TMEP §§1207.04\(e\)-\(e\)\(i\)](#)), pursuant to the decree of a court (see [TMEP §§1207.04\(f\)-\(f\)\(i\)](#)), or based on a final decision by the Board in a prior concurrent use proceeding (see [TMEP §§1207.04\(g\)-\(g\)\(i\)](#)).

1207.04(d)(ii) Concurrent Use Application for a Collective or Certification Mark

In addition to the requirements for a collective or certification mark application (see [TMEP §§1303.01](#), [1304.02](#), [1306.02](#)), a concurrent use application must include a verified statement in which the applicant attests to certain information. See [37 C.F.R. §2.42\(b\)](#).

The required verified statement must include the following, to the extent known by the applicant:

- (1) the applicant's members' or authorized users' goods and/or services, for a collective trademark, collective service mark, or certification mark, or the nature of the applicant's collective membership organization, for a collective membership mark;
- (2) the geographic area in which the applicant's members or authorized users are using the mark in commerce and the mode of use for which the applicant seeks registration;
- (3) the concurrent users' names and addresses and the registrations issued to or applications filed by the concurrent users (if any);
- (4) the concurrent user's members' or authorized users' goods and/or services, for a collective trademark, collective service mark, or certification mark, or the nature of the concurrent user's collective membership organization, for a collective membership mark; and
- (5) the geographic areas in which the concurrent user's members or authorized users are using the mark in commerce, the mode of use by the concurrent users' members or authorized users, and the time periods of such use by the concurrent users' members or authorized users.

See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#), [1054](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.42\(b\)](#); [TBMP §1101](#).

For a §1(a) collective mark application, an applicant must also modify the verified statement required for an unrestricted application under [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#) (see [TMEP §§1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#)) to indicate an exception, i.e., that no other persons *except members and the concurrent user(s) as specified*

in the application have the right to use the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(d\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#), [1054](#).

For a §1(a) certification mark application, an applicant must also modify the verified statement required for an unrestricted application under [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#)) to indicate an exception, i.e., that no other persons except authorized users and *concurrent user(s) as specified in the application* have the right to use the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(d\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#), [1054](#).

The applicant does not have to insert the information in the list above directly in the verification or declaration at the end of the application; this information may be set forth anywhere in the application as long as it is attested to by the applicant.

In addition to the requirements noted above, concurrent use applications must meet other conditions, depending on whether the application is subject to a concurrent use proceeding before the Board (*see* [TMEP §§1207.04\(e\)-\(e\)\(i\)](#)), pursuant to the decree of a court (*see* [TMEP §§1207.04\(f\)-\(f\)\(i\)](#)), or based on a final decision by the Board in a prior concurrent use proceeding (*see* [TMEP §§1207.04\(g\)-\(g\)\(i\)](#)).

1207.04(e) Applications Subject to Concurrent Use Proceeding Before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

Ordinarily, the examining attorney should not require an applicant for concurrent use registration to submit evidence in support of its claim to concurrent rights. However, the examining attorney should refuse registration under §2(d) if the applicant has requested a concurrent use registration and information in the record suggests that the applicant has not met the basic requirements for concurrent use registration (e.g., if the application indicates that the applicant adopted and used the mark with knowledge of the superior rights of a person specified as an excepted user, or that actual confusion has resulted from the concurrent use of the marks of the parties in their respective geographic areas). *See Gray v. Daffy Dan's Bargaintown*, 823 F.2d 522, 526-27, 3 USPQ2d 1306, 1308-09 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *America's Best Franchising Inc. v. Abbott*, 106 USPQ2d 1540, 1549 (TTAB 2013) (citing *In re Beatrice Foods Co.*, 429 F.2d 466, 472-73, 166 USPQ 431,435-36 (C.C.P.A. 1970)); *In re The Place for Vision, Inc.*, 196 USPQ 267, 269-70 (TTAB 1977) .

If an application that seeks registration through a concurrent use proceeding before the Board complies with the relevant requirements and it appears that the applicant is otherwise entitled to registration but for the question of concurrent rights, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication subject to a concurrent use proceeding. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1062\(a\)](#). The examining attorney must not issue a refusal under §2(d) as to any registration named by the applicant as an exception to its exclusive rights.

If, in response to a refusal under §2(d) or an advisory regarding an earlier-filed application, an application is amended to seek registration through a concurrent use proceeding and complies with the relevant requirements, and it appears that the applicant is otherwise entitled to registration but for the question of concurrent rights, the examining attorney will withdraw the previously issued refusal or advisory as to any registration or application named by the applicant as an exception to its exclusive rights and will approve the application for publication subject to a concurrent use proceeding.

1207.04(e)(i) Preparing the Record for Publication

When the examining attorney determines that the mark in an application that is subject to a concurrent use proceeding is ready for publication, the examining attorney should prepare the record as follows. The

application must contain a concurrent use statement that will be printed in the *Official Gazette*. The statement may be submitted by the applicant or prepared by the examining attorney. Pursuant to [TBMP §1103.01\(f\)](#), the statement must be in the following form:

Subject to Concurrent Use Proceeding with _____ [specifying the application serial number(s) or registration number(s), if any, of each other party; otherwise, the name and address of each other party].

Applicant claims the exclusive right to use the mark in the area comprising _____ [specifying the area for which the applicant seeks registration].

After publication, if no opposition is filed, or if any opposition that is filed is dismissed or withdrawn, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will institute the concurrent use proceeding. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.99](#); [TMEP §1506](#). The Board will consider and determine concurrent use rights only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding. [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(h\)](#).

See [TBMP Chapter 1100](#) regarding concurrent use proceedings.

1207.04(f) Application for Concurrent Use Registration Pursuant to Court Decree

The USPTO may issue a concurrent use registration pursuant to the final determination of a court of competent jurisdiction that more than one person is entitled to use the same or similar marks in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). An applicant who seeks a concurrent use registration on the basis of a court determination does not have to be a prior user or obtain the consent of the owner of the involved mark. *See* *Holiday Inn v. Holiday Inns, Inc.*, 534 F.2d 312, 317-18, 189 USPQ 630, 633-34 (C.C.P.A. 1976) ; *cf.* *Alfred Dunhill of London, Inc. v. Dunhill Tailored Clothes, Inc.*, 293 F.2d 685, 690-94, 130 USPQ 412, 417-20 (C.C.P.A. 1961) ; [TBMP §1103.03](#).

When examining an application for concurrent use registration pursuant to the decree of a court, the examining attorney must determine whether the application complies with the specific requirements for concurrent use applications (see [TMEP §1207.04\(d\)\(i\)-\(ii\)](#)) and the requirements that would apply to an unrestricted application (see [TMEP §§801-806.01\(e\)](#) for trademarks and service marks, [1303.01](#) for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [1304.02](#) for collective membership marks, and [1306.02](#) for certification marks).

In addition, under [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(f\)](#), all the following conditions must be met, or a concurrent use proceeding before the Board must be prepared and instituted:

- (1) The applicant is entitled to registration subject only to the concurrent lawful use of a party to the court proceeding;
- (2) The court decree specifies the rights of the parties;
- (3) A true copy of the court decree is submitted to the examining attorney;
- (4) The concurrent use application complies fully and exactly with the court decree; and
- (5) The excepted use specified in the concurrent use application does not involve a registration, or any involved registration has been restricted by the Director in accordance with the court decree.

If any of the conditions listed above are *not* satisfied, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication subject to a concurrent use registration proceeding before the Board (*see* [TMEP §§1207.04\(e\), \(e\)\(i\)](#)), rather than pursuant to the court decree. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.99\(f\)](#).

1207.04(f)(i) Preparing the Record for Publication

If the application complies with all the conditions listed in [TMEP §1207.04\(f\)](#) and all other relevant requirements, and is otherwise entitled to registration, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication of the mark. The examining attorney should prepare the record as follows:

The application must contain a concurrent use statement to be printed in the *Official Gazette*. The statement may be submitted by the applicant or prepared by the examining attorney. Pursuant to [TBMP §1103.03](#), the statement must delineate the concurrent rights of the parties as determined by the court, in the following form:

Registration limited to the area comprising _____ [specifying the area granted to the applicant by the court and any other restriction designated by the court] pursuant to the decree of _____ [specifying the name of the court, proceeding number, and date of the decree].
Concurrent registration with _____ [specifying the application serial number(s) or registration number(s), if any, of each other party; otherwise, the name and address of each other party].

After publication, if no opposition is filed, or if any opposition that is filed is dismissed or withdrawn, the application will mature into a registration.

1207.04(g) Application for Concurrent Use Registration Based on Final Board Decision in Prior Concurrent Use Proceeding

A concurrent use registration may also be based on a final determination by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in a prior concurrent use proceeding, that applicant is entitled to a concurrent use registration of its mark. [TBMP §1103.02](#).

When examining an application for a concurrent use registration based on a final Board decision in a prior concurrent use proceeding, the examining attorney must determine whether the application complies with the specific requirements for concurrent use applications (*see* [TMEP §1207.04\(d\)\(i\)-\(ii\)](#)) and all other requirements that would apply to an unrestricted application.

In addition, pursuant to [TBMP §1103.02](#), the following conditions must be met:

- (1) The applicant is entitled to registration subject only to the concurrent lawful use of a party or parties to the prior concurrent use proceeding;
- (2) The Board's prior decision specifies applicant's right to concurrent use registration;
- (3) A copy of the Board's prior decision is submitted to the examining attorney;
- (4) The concurrent use application complies with the Board's prior decision, in that it seeks registration for the same, or a more limited, geographic area or mode of use than granted to the applicant in the prior decision; seeks registration for substantially the same mark or one less confusingly similar to those of the other party or parties in the prior proceeding; and seeks registration for substantially the same goods/services/collective membership organization as, or more limited goods/services/collective membership organization than those listed in the Board's prior specification of the applicant's entitlement to concurrent registration; and
- (5) The excepted use specified in the concurrent use application does not involve a registration, or any involved registration has been restricted by the Director in accordance with the Board's prior decision.

If the conditions listed above are satisfied, the examining attorney must ensure that the appropriate concurrent use statement for registration based on a final determination by the Board in a *prior* concurrent use proceeding is entered into the Trademark database (see [TMEP §1207.04\(g\)\(i\)](#)) and approve the application for publication. See [TBMP §1103.02](#).

If any of the conditions listed above are *not* satisfied, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication subject to a new concurrent use registration proceeding before the Board (see [TMEP §§1207.04\(e\), \(e\)\(i\)](#)), rather than pursuant to a final decision of the Board in a prior concurrent use proceeding. See [TBMP §1103.02](#).

1207.04(g)(i) Preparing the Record for Publication

If the application satisfies all the conditions listed in [TMEP §1207.04\(g\)](#), complies with all other relevant requirements, and is otherwise entitled to registration, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication of the mark. The application must contain a concurrent use statement to be printed in the *Official Gazette*. The statement may be submitted by the applicant or prepared by the examining attorney. Pursuant to [TBMP §1103.02](#), the statement must delineate the concurrent rights of the parties as determined by the Board, in the following form:

Registration limited to the area comprising _____ [indicating the area specified in the Board’s prior decision as the area for which applicant is entitled to registration and any other restriction designated by the Board] pursuant to Concurrent Use Proceeding No. _____ [specifying the number of the prior concurrent use proceeding].

Concurrent registration with _____ [specifying the application serial number(s) or registration number(s), if any, of each other party involved in the prior concurrent use proceeding; otherwise, the name and address of each other party].

After publication, if no opposition is filed, or if any opposition that is filed is dismissed or withdrawn, the application will mature into a registration.

1208 Conflicting Marks in Pending Applications

37 CFR §2.83 Conflicting marks.

(a) Whenever an application is made for registration of a mark which so resembles another mark or marks pending registration as to be likely to cause confusion or mistake or to deceive, the mark with the earliest effective filing date will be published in the Official Gazette for opposition if eligible for the Principal Register, or issued a certificate of registration if eligible for the Supplemental Register.

(b) In situations in which conflicting applications have the same effective filing date, the application with the earliest date of execution will be published in the “Official Gazette” for opposition or issued on the Supplemental Register.

(c) Action on the conflicting application which is not published in the Official Gazette for opposition or not issued on the Supplemental Register will be suspended by the Examiner of Trademarks until the published or issued application is registered or abandoned.

1208.01 Priority for Publication or Issue Based on Effective Filing Date

In *ex parte* examination, priority among conflicting pending applications is determined based on the effective filing dates of the applications, without regard to whether the dates of use in a later-filed application are earlier than the filing date or dates of use of an earlier-filed application, whether the applicant in a later-filed application owns a registration of a mark that would be considered a bar to registration of the earlier-filed

application, or whether an application was filed on the basis of use of the mark in commerce or a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(a\)](#).

When two or more applications contain marks that are conflicting, the mark in the application that has the *earliest effective filing date* will be published for opposition if it is eligible for registration on the Principal Register, or will be registered if it is eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register. *Id.* In rare situations, the effective filing date changes after submission of an amendment to allege use and amendment to the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §206.01](#). In such cases, the examining attorney must conduct a new search and follow the procedures discussed in [TMEP §206.04](#). However, once a registration issues, a likelihood-of-confusion refusal that is required by the Trademark Act applies regardless of the filing-date priority of the underlying application. Internal examination procedures do not have primacy over statutory law, and a refusal that is authorized by the Trademark Act will not be considered invalid due to errors in examination procedure. *In re House Beer, LLC*, 114 USPQ2d 1073, 1076 (TTAB 2015) . See [TMEP §§206-206.03](#) regarding effective filing dates.

The examining attorney cannot refuse registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act based on a conflicting mark in an earlier-filed application until the conflicting mark registers. See [TMEP §1207.01](#). Therefore, when the examining attorney has examined the later-filed application and determined that, but for the conflict between the marks, it is in condition to be approved for publication or issue, or in condition for a final refusal, the examining attorney will *suspend* action on the later-filed application until the earlier-filed application matures into a registration or is abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(c\)](#); [TMEP §§716.02\(c\)](#) and [1208.02\(c\)](#).

1208.01(a) What Constitutes Conflict Between Pending Applications

Marks in applications filed by different parties are in conflict when the registration of one of the marks would be a bar to the registration of the other under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). Therefore, the term “conflicting application” refers to an application to register a mark that so resembles the mark in another application as to be likely to cause confusion. See [TMEP §702.03\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§1207-1207.01\(d\)\(xi\)](#) regarding likelihood of confusion. There may be multiple conflicting pending applications.

1208.01(b) What Constitutes Effective Filing Date

The *filing date* of an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act is the date when all the elements designated in [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#) are received at the USPTO. [TMEP §201](#). In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), the filing date is: (1) the international registration date, if the request for extension of protection to the United States is made in an international application; or (2) the date that the subsequent designation was recorded by the IB, if the request for extension of protection to the United States is made in a subsequent designation. [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.26](#); [TMEP §201](#).

While this is generally the *effective filing date* for purposes of determining priority among conflicting applications, in certain situations another date is treated as the effective filing date. See [TMEP §§206.01-206.03](#). For example, in an application claiming priority under §44(d) or §67 of the Trademark Act based on a foreign application, the effective filing date is the date the foreign application was first filed in the foreign country. [TMEP §206.02](#). In a §1(b) application that is amended to the Supplemental Register on the filing of an acceptable allegation of use, the effective filing date is the date of filing the allegation of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.75\(b\)](#); [TMEP §206.01](#). However, the USPTO does not alter the original filing date in its automated records. [TMEP §206](#).

If two or more applications conflict, the application with the earliest effective filing date will be approved for publication for opposition or for issuance of a registration on the Supplemental Register, as appropriate. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(a\)](#); [TMEP §1208.01](#).

If conflicting applications have the same effective filing date, the application with the earliest date of execution will be approved for publication for opposition or for issuance of a registration on the Supplemental Register. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(b\)](#). An application that is unexecuted will be treated as having a later date of execution.

Occasionally, conflicting applications will have the same date of filing and execution. If this situation occurs, the application with the lowest serial number will have priority for publication or issuance. When determining which serial number is the lowest, the examining attorney should disregard the series code (e.g., “76,” “77,” “78,” “79,” or “85”) and look only to the last three digits of the six-digit serial number that follows.

1208.01(c) Change in Effective Filing Date During Examination

If the effective filing date in an application containing a conflicting mark changes, the examining attorney should review all the application(s) involved to determine which application has the earliest effective filing date as a result of the change, and notify the examining attorney assigned to the application with the earliest effective filing date.

Whenever the effective filing date of an application changes to a date that is later than the original filing date, the assigned examining attorney must conduct a new search of the mark. *See* [TMEP §206.04](#).

1208.01(d) Examination of Conflicting Marks After Reinstatement or Revival

When an application listed as abandoned in the USPTO’s Trademark database is revived or reinstated (*see* [TMEP §§1712.01](#), [1713](#), and [1714](#)), the examining attorney must conduct a new search to determine whether any later-filed applications for conflicting marks have been approved for publication or registration, and place the search strategy in the record.

If a later-filed application for a conflicting mark has been approved, or the §2(d) search for the later-filed application occurred when the earlier-filed application was in abandoned status, the examining attorney should inform the examining attorney with the later-filed application that the earlier-filed application has been revived, so that appropriate action may be taken. If the later-filed application has been published, the examining attorney handling that application should request jurisdiction (*see* [TMEP §1504.04\(a\)](#)) and suspend the application pending disposition of the earlier-filed application that was revived or reinstated.

If a later-filed application for a conflicting mark has matured into registration, the examining attorney must refuse registration of the revived or reinstated application under §2(d), even though the application for the registered mark was filed after the revived or reinstated application.

1208.02 Conflicting Applications Examination Procedure

1208.02(a) Examination of Application with Earliest Effective Filing Date

When the application with the earliest effective filing date is first reviewed for action, the examining attorney should approve the application for publication or for issuance of a registration on the Supplemental Register, if appropriate. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(a\)](#).

If the application with the earliest effective filing date is not in condition for publication or issue, the examining attorney should issue an Office action that includes all relevant refusals and requirements.

The USPTO does not notify applicants of potentially conflicting later-filed applications.

See [TMEP §§206-206.03](#) and [1208.01\(b\)](#) regarding what constitutes an effective filing date.

1208.02(b) Action on Later-Filed Application: Giving Notice of the Earlier Application or Applications

If, when the later-filed conflicting application is first reviewed for action, it is not in condition for publication or issue, the examining attorney should, in addition to treating other matters, send with the Office action an electronic copy or a printout from the USPTO's automated search system of the information for the mark in each earlier-filed application. The examining attorney's letter should also advise the applicant that the earlier application, if and when it matures into a registration, may be cited against the applicant's later-filed application. The applicant should be notified of all conflicting applications with earlier effective filing dates.

See [TMEP §1208.02\(c\)](#) regarding suspension of later-filed conflicting applications that are otherwise in condition to be approved for publication or issue.

1208.02(c) Suspension of Later-Filed Application

When the later-filed application is in condition for publication or issue except for the conflicting mark in an earlier-filed application, either because no action was necessary on the application as filed or because examination on other matters has been brought to a conclusion, the examining attorney must suspend the later-filed application until the mark in the earlier-filed application is registered or the earlier-filed application is abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(c\)](#); see *In re Direct Access Commc'ns (M.C.G.) Inc.*, 30 USPQ2d 1393, 1394 (Comm'r Pats. 1993). If the examining attorney discovers that a previously filed pending application was abandoned, but that a petition to revive is pending, the examining attorney should suspend the later-filed application pending disposition of the petition to revive.

Action on the later-filed application must also be suspended when the application is in condition for a final action but for the conflict with the earlier-filed application. The letter of suspension should repeat any outstanding issues, but these issues should not be made final. See [TMEP §716.02\(c\)](#) for further information about suspension and removal from suspension in this situation.

If the Office action informing the applicant of the suspension is the first action in the case, the examining attorney should include an electronic copy or a printout from the USPTO's automated search system of the information for the mark in each earlier-filed conflicting application.

1208.02(d) Action on Later-Filed Application upon Disposition of the Earlier Application or Applications

If all conflicting earlier-filed applications have either matured into registrations or become abandoned, and there are no other grounds for suspension, the examining attorney should remove the later-filed application from suspension and take appropriate action as follows.

The examining attorney should cite the registration or registrations that issued from the earlier-filed conflicting application or applications, if there is a likelihood of confusion. This will be a first refusal under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). Any other outstanding issues should be repeated at this time.

If all earlier-filed applications have become abandoned, the examining attorney should either approve the later-filed application for publication or issue, or repeat and make final any remaining issues, as appropriate.

If some, but not all of the earlier-filed conflicting applications have matured into registrations, the examining attorney will normally not issue a refusal of registration until the remaining conflicting application(s) are registered or abandoned, in order to avoid issuing piecemeal refusals. [TMEP §716.02\(c\)](#).

1208.02(e) Applicant's Argument on Issues of Conflict

If an applicant with a later-filed application files a request to remove the later-filed application from suspension (*see* [TMEP §716.03](#)), arguing that there is no conflict in relation to the application with the earlier effective filing date, the examining attorney should consider the merits of that argument and determine whether or not the earlier-filed application constitutes a potential bar to registration under §2(d) of the Act.

If the examining attorney concludes that the earlier-filed application is not a potential bar, the examining attorney should remove the application from suspension and take appropriate action on any other outstanding issues.

However, if the examining attorney concludes that the earlier-filed application is a potential bar, the examining attorney should issue an action for the later-filed application (e.g., a new letter of suspension if there are no other issues that are not in condition for final action), in which the examining attorney explains why the applicant's arguments are not persuasive.

1208.02(f) Conflicting Mark Mistakenly Published or Approved for Issuance on the Supplemental Register

If a later-filed conflicting mark is mistakenly published for opposition, it may be necessary for the assigned examining attorney to obtain jurisdiction of the application to take appropriate action. See [TMEP §§1504.03-1504.04\(a\)](#) concerning obtaining jurisdiction of an application after publication.

The examining attorney has jurisdiction over an application forwarded for issuance on the Supplemental Register until the day of issuance of the registration.

1208.03 Procedure Relating to Possibility of Interference

Section 16 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1066](#), states that, upon petition showing extraordinary circumstances, the Director may declare that an interference exists when application is made for the registration of a mark that so resembles a mark previously registered by another, or for the registration of which another has previously applied, as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of the applicant, to cause confusion or mistake or to deceive. No interference shall be declared between an application and a registration that has become incontestable. These cases are extremely rare and are generally limited to situations where a party would be unduly prejudiced without an interference, such as where it would otherwise be required to engage in a series of opposition or cancellation proceedings involving substantially the same issue. *See* [TMEP §1208.03\(b\)](#).

An interference will not be declared except upon petition to the Director. [37 C.F.R. §2.91\(a\)](#). All petitions or requests for interference should be forwarded to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy for decision. The examining attorney does not make a determination on a request for interference.

See [TBMP Chapter 1000](#).

1208.03(a) Procedures on Request for Interference

The request for interference should be in a separate document in the form of a petition, and should be captioned as a petition. The petition fee indicated in [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#) should accompany the request. A petition to declare an interference should not be filed before the application has been examined and the mark has been found to be registrable but for the existence of one or more conflicting pending applications.

A request for interference does not make an application “special” or alter the normal order of examination.

See [TBMP Chapter 1000](#).

1208.03(b) Decision on Request for Interference

The Director will declare an interference only upon a showing of extraordinary circumstances that would result in a party being unduly prejudiced in the absence of an interference. [37 C.F.R. §2.91\(a\)](#). The availability of opposition and cancellation procedures provides a remedy and ordinarily precludes the possibility of undue prejudice to a party. *Id.* The request for interference must show that there is some extraordinary circumstance that would make the remedy of opposition or cancellation inadequate or prejudicial to the party’s rights. See *In re Family Inns of Am., Inc.*, 180 USPQ 332, 333 (Comm’r Pats. 1974). The potential need to file two notices of opposition that could be consolidated if the issues were sufficiently similar is not considered an extraordinary circumstance that will unduly prejudice a petitioner without an interference. The fact that an earlier-filed application based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) has been cited against a later-filed application based on use in commerce under §1(a) also is not an extraordinary circumstance that warrants declaration of an interference. An opposition proceeding is the proper forum for determining priority between an applicant and another party. Priority for purposes of examination of an application is determined by filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.83\(a\)](#); [TMEP §1208.02\(a\)](#).

Although §16 of the Act permits the declaration of an interference between an application and a registration, the practice of declaring an interference in these cases has been discontinued because the applicant cannot obtain a registration if the interfering registration remains on the register; therefore, even if the applicant prevailed in the interference, the applicant would still have to petition to cancel the interfering registration. See *In re Kimbell Foods, Inc.*, 184 USPQ 172, 172 (Comm’r Pats. 1974); *Ex parte H. Wittur & Co.*, 153 USPQ 362, 362-63 (Comm’r Pats. 1966); [37 C.F.R. §2.96](#).

See [TBMP Chapter 1000](#).

1208.03(c) Procedure When Interference Is to be Declared

If the Director grants a petition requesting an interference, the examining attorney must determine that each mark is registrable but for the interfering mark before the interference will be instituted. [37 C.F.R. §2.92](#).

All marks must be published for opposition before interference proceedings are instituted. *Id.* If possible, the marks should be published simultaneously.

Each application that is to be the subject of an interference must contain the following statement to be printed in the *Official Gazette*:

This application is being published subject to declaration of interference with:

Serial No.:

Filed:

Applicant:

(Address, if there is no attorney)

Attorney and Address:

Mark:

The examining attorney should prepare the statement.

If an application that is published subject to interference is opposed by a party other than the applicant(s) in the interfering application(s), the opposition will be determined first. If still necessary and appropriate, the interference will be instituted. If an opposition is filed by the applicant in the interfering application, the rights of the parties will be determined in the opposition proceeding, and the interference proceeding will not be instituted.

If, during the pendency of an interference, another application appears involving substantially the same registrable subject matter, the examining attorney may request suspension of the interference for the purpose of adding that application. If the application is not added, the examining attorney should suspend further action on the application pending termination of the interference proceeding. [37 C.F.R. §2.98](#).

See [TBMP Chapter 1000](#).

1209 Refusal on Basis of Descriptiveness

15 U.S.C. §1052 (Extract)

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it (e) Consists of a mark which, (1) when used on or in connection with the goods of the applicant is merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive of them....

Matter that “merely describes” the goods or services on or in connection with which it is used is not registrable on the Principal Register. As noted in *In re Abcor Dev. Corp.*, 588 F.2d 811, 813, 200 USPQ 215, 217 (C.C.P.A. 1978) :

The major reasons for not protecting such marks are: (1) to prevent the owner of a mark from inhibiting competition in the sale of particular goods; and (2) to maintain freedom of the public to use the language involved, thus avoiding the possibility of harassing infringement suits by the registrant against others who use the mark when advertising or describing their own products.

1209.01 Distinctiveness/Descriptiveness Continuum

With regard to trademark significance, matter may be categorized along a continuum, ranging from marks that are highly distinctive to matter that is a generic name for the goods or services. The degree of

distinctiveness – or, on the other hand, descriptiveness – of a designation can be determined only by considering it in relation to the specific goods or services. *Remington Products, Inc. v. N. Am. Philips Corp.*, 892 F.2d 1576, 1580, 13 USPQ2d 1444, 1448 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (the mark must be considered in context, i.e., in connection with the goods).

At one extreme are marks that, when used in relation to the goods or services, are completely arbitrary or fanciful. Next on the continuum are suggestive marks, followed by merely descriptive matter. Finally, generic terms for the goods or services are at the opposite end of the continuum from arbitrary or fanciful marks. As stated in *H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int'l Ass'n of Fire Chiefs, Inc.*, 782 F.2d 987, 989, 228 USPQ 528, 530 (Fed. Cir. 1986), quoting *Weiss Noodle Co. v. Golden Cracknel & Specialty Co.*, 290 F.2d 845, 847, 129 USPQ 411, 413 (C.C.P.A. 1961), “[t]he name of a thing is in fact the ultimate in descriptiveness.”

Fanciful, arbitrary, and suggestive marks, often referred to as “inherently distinctive” marks, are registrable on the Principal Register without proof of acquired distinctiveness. See [TMEP §1209.01\(a\)](#).

Marks that are merely descriptive of the goods or services may not be registered on the Principal Register absent a showing of acquired distinctiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). See [TMEP §1209.01\(b\)](#) regarding merely descriptive marks, and [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness. Merely descriptive marks may be registrable on the Supplemental Register in applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. [15 U.S.C. §1091](#).

Matter that is generic for the goods or services is not registrable on either the Principal or the Supplemental Register under any circumstances. See [TMEP §§1209.01\(c\)–\(c\)\(iii\)](#).

1209.01(a) Fanciful, Arbitrary, and Suggestive Marks

Fanciful marks comprise terms that have been invented for the sole purpose of functioning as a trademark or service mark. Such marks comprise words that are either unknown in the language (e.g., PEPSI, KODAK, and EXXON) or are completely out of common usage (e.g., FLIVVER).

Arbitrary marks comprise words that are in common linguistic use but, when used to identify particular goods or services, do not suggest or describe a significant ingredient, quality, or characteristic of the goods or services (e.g., APPLE for computers; OLD CROW for whiskey). See, e.g., *Palm Bay Imports, Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondee En 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1372, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1692 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (VEUVE – meaning WIDOW in English – held to be “an arbitrary term as applied to champagne and sparkling wine, and thus conceptually strong as a trademark”); *Nautilus Grp., Inc. v. Icon Health & Fitness, Inc.*, 372 F.3d 1330, 1340, 71 USPQ2d 1173, 1180 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (defining an arbitrary mark as “a known word used in an unexpected or uncommon way”).

Suggestive marks are those that, when applied to the goods or services at issue, require imagination, thought, or perception to reach a conclusion as to the nature of those goods or services. Thus, a suggestive term differs from a descriptive term, which immediately tells something about the goods or services. See *In re George Weston Ltd.*, 228 USPQ 57 (TTAB 1985) (SPEEDI BAKE for frozen dough found to fall within the category of suggestive marks because it only vaguely suggests a desirable characteristic of frozen dough, namely, that it quickly and easily may be baked into bread); *In re The Noble Co.*, 225 USPQ 749 (TTAB 1985) (NOBURST for liquid antifreeze and rust inhibitor for hot-water-heating systems found to suggest a desired result of using the product rather than immediately informing the purchasing public of a characteristic, feature, function, or attribute); *In re Pennwalt Corp.*, 173 USPQ 317 (TTAB 1972) (DRI-FOOT held

suggestive of anti-perspirant deodorant for feet in part because, in the singular, it is not the usual or normal manner in which the purpose of an anti-perspirant and deodorant for the feet would be described).

Incongruity is a strong indication that a mark is suggestive rather than merely descriptive. *In re Tennis in the Round Inc.*, 199 USPQ 496, 498 (TTAB 1978) (TENNIS IN THE ROUND held not merely descriptive for providing tennis facilities, the Board finding that the association of applicant's marks with the phrase “theater-in-the-round” created an incongruity because applicant's tennis facilities are not at all analogous to those used in a “theater-in-the-round”). The Board has described incongruity in a mark as “one of the accepted guideposts in the evolved set of legal principles for discriminating the suggestive from the descriptive mark,” and has noted that the concept of mere descriptiveness “should not penalize coinage of hitherto unused and somewhat incongruous word combinations whose import would not be grasped without some measure of imagination and ‘mental pause.’” *In re Shutts*, 217 USPQ 363, 364–5 (TTAB 1983) (SNO-RAKE held not merely descriptive of a snow-removal hand tool); *see also In re Vienna Sausage Mfg. Co.*, 156 USPQ 155, 156 (TTAB 1967) (FRANKWURST held not merely descriptive for wieners, the Board finding that although “frank” may be synonymous with “wiener,” and “wurst” is synonymous with “sausage,” the combination of the terms is incongruous and results in a mark that is no more than suggestive of the nature of the goods); *In re John H. Breck, Inc.*, 150 USPQ 397, 398 (TTAB 1966) (TINT TONE held suggestive for hair coloring, the Board finding that the words overlap in significance and their combination is somewhat incongruous or redundant and does not immediately convey the nature of the product); *cf. In re Getz Found.*, 227 USPQ 571, 572 (TTAB 1985) (MOUSE HOUSE held fanciful for museum services featuring mice figurines made up to appear as human beings, the Board finding that the only conceivable meaning of “mouse house,” i.e., a building at a zoo in which live and/or stuffed mice are displayed, is incongruous).

Suggestive marks, like fanciful and arbitrary marks, are registrable on the Principal Register without proof of secondary meaning. *See Nautilus Grp., Inc. v. Icon Health & Fitness, Inc.*, 372 F.3d 1330, 1340, 71 USPQ2d 1173, 1180 (Fed. Cir. 2004). Therefore, a designation does not have to be devoid of all meaning in relation to the goods/services to be registrable. If, after conducting independent research, it is unclear to the examining attorney whether a term in a mark has meaning in the relevant industry, the examining attorney must make an inquiry of the applicant, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). If the examining attorney determines that the term is arbitrary or fanciful, the examining attorney may enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that research was conducted regarding the meaning of the term in the relevant industry, without stating any legal opinions or conclusions.

1209.01(b) Merely Descriptive Marks

To be refused registration on the Principal Register under §2(e)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), a mark must be merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive of the goods or services to which it relates. A mark is considered merely descriptive if it describes an ingredient, quality, characteristic, function, feature, purpose, or use of the specified goods or services. *See In re TriVita, Inc.*, 783 F.3d 872, 114 USPQ2d 1574 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (NOPALEA held descriptive of dietary and nutritional supplements); *In re Gyulay*, 820 F.2d 1216, 3 USPQ2d 1009 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (APPLE PIE held merely descriptive of potpourri); *In re Bed & Breakfast Registry*, 791 F.2d 157, 229 USPQ 818 (Fed. Cir. 1986) (BED & BREAKFAST REGISTRY held merely descriptive of lodging reservations services); *In re MetPath Inc.*, 223 USPQ 88 (TTAB 1984) (MALE-P.A.P. TEST held merely descriptive of clinical pathological immunoassay testing services for detecting and monitoring prostatic cancer); *In re Bright-Crest, Ltd.*, 204 USPQ 591 (TTAB 1979) (COASTER-CARDS held merely descriptive of a coaster suitable for direct mailing). Similarly, a mark is considered merely descriptive if it immediately conveys knowledge of a quality, feature, function, or characteristic of an applicant's goods or services. *In re Chamber of Commerce of the U.S.*, 675 F.3d 1297, 1300, 102 USPQ2d 1217, 1219 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Bayer Aktiengesellschaft*, 488 F.3d 960, 963-64, 82 USPQ2d 1828, 1831 (Fed. Cir. 2007).

The examining attorney is not required to prove that others have used the mark at issue or that they need to use it; the correct test is whether the mark conveys an immediate idea of an ingredient, quality, characteristic, feature, function, purpose or use of the goods. *In re Fat Boys Water Sports LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1511, 1514 (TTAB 2016); *see also In re Walker Mfg. Co.*, 359 F. 2d 474, 149 USPQ 528 (CCPA 1966); (“The question . . . is not whether the Board or others may or would utilize ‘CHAMBERED PIPE’ to describe applicant’s goods, but whether this designation does, in fact, describe such goods. That there are other words which others may employ to describe or define applicant’s goods does not, in any way, lessen the descriptive character of the words ‘CHAMBERED PIPE.’ . . .”) (quoting Board decision with approval); *KP Permanent Make-Up, Inc. v. Lasting Impression I, Inc.*, 543 U.S. 111, 122 (2004) (trademark law does not countenance someone obtaining “a complete monopoly on use of a descriptive term simply by grabbing it first”) (citation omitted); *Clairol, Inc. v. Roux Distrib. Co.*, 280 F.2d 863, 126 USPQ 397, 398 (CCPA 1960) (“Even novel ways of referring to a product may nonetheless be merely descriptive.”); *In re Bailey Meter Co.*, 102 F. 2d 843, 41 USPQ 275, 276 (CCPA 1939) (“The fact that appellant may have been the first and only one to adopt and use the mark sought to be registered does not prove that the mark is not descriptive . . .”).

The determination of whether a mark is merely descriptive must be made in relation to the goods or services for which registration is sought, not in the abstract. *In re Chamber of Commerce*, 675 F.3d at 1300, 102 USPQ2d at 1219; *In re Bayer*, 488 F.3d at 964, 82 USPQ2d at 1831. This requires consideration of the context in which the mark is used or intended to be used in connection with those goods/services, and the possible significance that the mark would have to the average purchaser of the goods or services in the marketplace. *See In re Chamber of Commerce*, 675 F.3d at 1300, 102 USPQ2d at 1219; *In re Bayer*, 488 F.3d at 964, 82 USPQ2d at 1831; *In re Omaha Nat’l Corp.*, 819 F.2d 1117, 2 USPQ2d 1859 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *In re Abcor Dev. Corp.*, 588 F.2d 811, 200 USPQ 215 (C.C.P.A. 1978); *In re Datapipe, Inc.*, 111 USPQ2d 1330 (TTAB 2014) ; *In re Venture Lending Assocs.*, 226 USPQ 285 (TTAB 1985). The mark need not describe all the goods and services identified, as long as it merely describes one of them. *See In re Stereotaxis Inc.*, 429 F.3d 1039, 1041, 77 USPQ2d 1087, 1089 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (“[T]he Trademark Office may require a disclaimer as a condition of registration if the mark is merely descriptive for at least one of the products or services involved.”)

It is not necessary that a term describe all of the purposes, functions, characteristics, or features of a product to be considered merely descriptive; it is enough if the term describes one significant function, attribute, or property. *In re Chamber of Commerce*, 675 F.3d at 1300, 102 USPQ2d at 1219; *In re Oppedahl & Larson LLP*, 373 F.3d 1171, 1173, 71 USPQ2d 1370, 1371 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (“A mark may be merely descriptive even if it does not describe the ‘full scope and extent’ of the applicant’s goods or services,” citing *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 1346, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1812 (Fed. Cir. 2001)); *Gyulay*, 820 F.2d at 1218, 3 USPQ2d at 1010; *In re Positec Group Ltd.*, 108 USPQ2d 1161, 1171 (TTAB 2013) (“[I]f the mark is descriptive of some identified items – or even just one – the whole class of goods still may be refused by the examiner.”); *In re Cox Enters. Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1040 (TTAB 2007) *see also In re Omaha Nat’l Corp.*, 819 F.2d 1117, 1119, 2 USPQ2d 1859, 1861 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (rejecting argument that descriptiveness should be limited to a quality or characteristic of the service itself and holding that it includes a designation descriptive of the service provider).

A term also may be considered merely descriptive if the identified services fall within a subset of services indicated by the term. *See In re Amer. Soc’y of Clinical Pathologists, Inc.*, 442 F.2d 1404, 1406-07, 169 USPQ 800, 801 (C.C.P.A. 1971) (holding that REGISTRY OF MEDICAL PATHOLOGISTS was descriptive of certain claimed services that were implicitly subsumed within service of providing a registry of medical pathologists and of additional claimed services that were “supporting, ancillary or auxiliary to the primary function” of applicant’s registry services). *See also In re Chamber of Commerce of the U.S.*, 675 F.3d 1297, 1301-02, 102 USPQ2d 1217, 1220 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (NATIONAL CHAMBER held descriptive because “substantial evidence supports the TTAB’s determination that the designated business and regulatory data

analysis services are within the scope of traditional chambers of commerce activities” of “promoting the interests of businessmen and businesswomen”).

The great variation in facts from case to case prevents the formulation of specific rules for specific fact situations. Each case must be decided on its own merits. See *In re Ampco Foods, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 331 (TTAB 1985); *In re Venturi, Inc.*, 197 USPQ 714 (TTAB 1977).

See [TMPEP §§1209.03–1209.03\(u\)](#) regarding factors that often arise in determining whether a mark is merely descriptive or generic.

See also [TMPEP §§1213–1213.11](#) concerning disclaimer of merely descriptive matter within a mark.

1209.01(c) Generic Terms

Generic terms are terms that the relevant purchasing public understands primarily as the common or class name for the goods or services. *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1811 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *In re Am. Fertility Soc'y*, 188 F.3d 1341, 1346, 51 USPQ2d 1832, 1836 (Fed. Cir. 1999). A generic term is “the ultimate in descriptiveness” under §2(e)(1) and incapable of acquiring distinctiveness under §2(f). *H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int'l Ass'n of Fire Chiefs, Inc.*, 782 F.2d 987, 989, 228 USPQ 528, 530 (Fed. Cir. 1986). A generic term also does not meet the statutory definition of a mark because it is incapable of denoting a unique source. *In re Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner, & Smith, Inc.*, 828 F.2d 1567, 1569 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (“Generic terms, by definition incapable of indicating source, are the antithesis of trademarks, and can never attain trademark status.”). Thus, generic terms are not registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register.

Generic terms are refused registration on the Principal Register under Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45, for trademarks, and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, for service marks. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#). The statutory basis for refusal on the Supplemental Register is §§ 23(c) and 45. See [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\), 1127](#).

When a mark is comprised entirely of generic wording and some or all of the wording in the mark is the phonetic equivalent of the generic wording, the entire mark may not be disclaimed, even in the proper spelling, and approved for registration on the Supplemental Register. A disclaimer does not render an otherwise unregistrable generic mark registrable. See [TMPEP §§1213.06](#) and [1213.08\(c\)](#).

1209.01(c)(i) Test

A two-part test is used to determine whether a designation is generic:

- (1) What is the genus of goods or services at issue?
- (2) Does the relevant public understand the designation primarily to refer to that genus of goods or services?

H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int'l Ass'n of Fire Chiefs, Inc., 782 F.2d 987, 990, 228 USPQ 528, 530 (Fed. Cir. 1986).

The genus of the goods and/or services may be defined by an applicant’s identification of goods and/or services. See *In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 602, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1636 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (characterizing as the “correct approach” the Board’s conclusion that the genus of the services at issue was adequately defined by the wording “restaurant services” in applicant’s identification of services). The relevant

public for a genericness determination refers to the purchasing or consuming public for the identified goods and/or services. *Sheetz of Del., Inc. v. Doctor's Assocs. Inc.*, 108 USPQ2d 1341, 1351 (TTAB 2013) (citing *Magic Wand Inc. v. RDB Inc.*, 940 F.2d 638, 641, 19 USPQ2d 1551, 1553 Fed. Cir. 1991)).

The examining attorney has the burden of proving that a term is generic by clear evidence. *In re Nordic Naturals, Inc.*, 755 F.3d 1340, 1344, 111 USPQ2d 1495, 1498 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (finding the evidence reflected use of CHILDREN'S DHA in a generic manner rather than as third-party references recognizing applicant as the source of the goods); *In re Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Inc.*, 828 F.2d 1567, 1571, 4 USPQ2d 1141, 1143 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (finding that the NEXIS evidence relied upon to show CASH MANAGEMENT ACCOUNT was generic for brokerage services did not satisfy the USPTO's burden to prove genericness by clear evidence because the evidence reflected a "mixture of usages," with some publications showing third-party recognition of the applicant as the source of the services and some showing generic use). Evidence of the public's understanding of a term can be obtained from any competent source, including dictionary definitions, research databases, newspapers, and other publications. *See In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 118 USPQ2d 1632 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (finding the evidence of record, which included dictionary excerpts, online magazine articles, and newspaper articles, supported the conclusion that CHURRASCOS is generic for restaurant services); *In re Northland Aluminum Prods. Inc.*, 777 F.2d 1556, 227 USPQ 961 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (BUNDT, a term that designates a type of cake, held generic for ring cake mix, where the examining attorney cited cookbooks and food-related news articles); *In re Analog Devices Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1808 (TTAB 1988), *aff'd*, 871 F.2d 1097, 10 USPQ2d 1879 (Fed. Cir. 1989) (ANALOG DEVICES held generic for devices having analog capabilities, where the examining attorney cited dictionaries and Nexis® articles). Applicant's website and the websites of others are also proper sources of evidence as to the meaning of the proposed mark and the manner in which it is used in relation to the goods/services. *In re Reed Elsevier Props. Inc.*, 482 F.3d 1376, 82 USPQ2d 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (finding that in holding LAWYERS.COM generic for "providing an online interactive database featuring information exchange in the fields of law, legal news and legal services," the Board properly considered applicant's website and eight other websites containing "lawyer.com" or "lawyers.com" to determine the meaning of applicant's "information exchange about legal services.").

The test for genericness turns upon the primary significance that the wording would have to the relevant public. It is not necessary to show that the relevant public *uses* the term to refer to the genus. The correct inquiry is whether the relevant public would understand the term to be generic. *In re 1800Mattress.com IP LLC*, 586 F.3d 1359, 92 USPQ2d 1682, 1685 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *see also In re Meridian Rack & Pinion*, 114 USPQ2d 1462 (TTAB 2015) (holding BUYAUTOPARTS.COM generic for on-line retail store services featuring auto parts after finding that the relevant members of the public use and understand the words "buy auto parts" as referring to the purchase and sale transactions that are the central focus of retail sales of auto parts and that third-party retailers advertise to their customers to "Buy Auto Parts Online").

There can be more than one generic term for a particular genus of goods or services. Any term that the relevant public understands to refer to the genus is generic. *Id.* at 1364, 92 USPQ2d at 1685.

The test for genericness is the same whether the mark is a compound term or a phrase, and the examining attorney should include, if available, evidence showing use of the mark as a whole in the record. *See Princeton Vanguard, LLC v. Frito-Lay N. Am., Inc.*, 786 F.3d 960, 968, 114 USPQ2d 1827, 1832 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (citing *In re Am. Fertility Soc'y*, 188 F.3d 1341, 1348-49, 51 USPQ2d 1832, 1837 (Fed. Cir. 1999)). When a term consists of a compound word or a telescoped word, the examining attorney may establish that the term is generic by producing evidence that each of the constituent words is itself generic, and that the separate words retain their generic significance when joined to form the compound or telescoped word that has "a meaning identical to the meaning common usage would ascribe to those words as a compound." *In re Gould Paper Corp.*, 834 F.2d 1017, 1018, 5 USPQ2d 1110, 1111-12 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (SCREENWIPE held generic

as applied to premoistened antistatic cloths for cleaning computer and television screens); *In re Greenliant Sys. Ltd.*, 97 USPQ2d 1078, 1081 (TTAB 2010) (finding that consumers were likely to perceive the telescoped term NANDRIVE merely as a stylized version of the generic term “nand drive”); *In re Wm. B. Coleman Co., Inc.*, 93 USPQ2d 2019 (TTAB 2010) (finding that ELECTRIC CANDLE COMPANY is the combination of two generic terms joined to create a compound); *see also In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 1340, 116 USPQ2d 1262, 1268 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (Newman, J., concurring) (It was not reasonably argued that ‘fish fry products’ as a phrase would be understood by the consuming public to have a meaning different from the meaning imparted by the separate words”).

However, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has expressly limited the holding in *Gould* to “compound terms formed by the union of words” where the public understands the individual terms to be generic for a genus of goods or services, and the joining of the individual terms into one compound word lends “no additional meaning to the term.” *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 1345, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1810 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (citing *In re Am. Fertility Soc’y*, 188 F.3d at 1348-49, 51 USPQ2d at 1837). Thus, in *Am. Fertility Soc’y*, the court held that evidence that the components “Society” and “Reproductive Medicine” were generic was not enough to establish that the composite phrase SOCIETY FOR REPRODUCTIVE MEDICINE was generic for association services in the field of reproductive medicine because, unlike in *Gould*, the evidence did not establish that the public would perceive “the mark as a whole” to be no less generic than its constituents. *In re Am. Fertility Soc’y*, 188 F.3d at 1348, 51 USPQ2d at 1837; *see also Princeton Vanguard*, 786 F.3d at 968, 114 USPQ2d at 1832. In *Coleman*, however, the Board stated that *Am. Fertility Soc’y* cannot be read to suggest that an applicant can create a trademark merely by adding a clearly generic term to a non-source-identifying word, even without proof that others have used the composite. *In re Wm. B. Coleman Co.*, 93 USPQ2d at 2025; *accord Princeton Vanguard*, 786 F.3d at 968, 114 USPQ2d at 1833 (“[T]he Board must then consider *available* record evidence of the public’s understanding of whether joining those individual words into one lends additional meaning to the mark as a whole.” (emphasis added)).

In *Dial-A-Mattress*, the court found that 1-888-M-A-T-R-E-S-S was not generic as applied to “telephone shop-at-home retail services in the field of mattresses,” because there was no evidence of record that the public understood the term to refer to shop-at-home telephone mattress retailers. Therefore, to establish that a mnemonic telephone number is generic, the examining attorney must show that the relevant public would understand the mark as a whole to have generic significance.

With respect to Internet domain names, as with other marks, even if the evidence shows that the individual components that make up the proposed mark are generic, one must determine whether joining the individual terms creates a composite that is itself generic. In very rare instances, the addition of a top-level domain indicator (“TLD”) to an otherwise generic term may operate to create a distinctive mark. In *In re Steelbuilding.com*, 415 F.3d 1293, 1299, 75 USPQ2d 1420, 1423 (Fed. Cir. 2005), the Federal Circuit reversed the Board’s determination that STEELBUILDING.COM is generic for “computerized on-line retail services in the field of pre-engineered metal buildings and roofing systems.” The Court criticized the Board for only considering STEELBUILDING and .COM separately, stating that “[i]n this unusual case, the addition of the TLD indicator expanded the meaning of the mark to include goods and services beyond the mere sale of steel buildings. 415 F.3d at 1299, 75 USPQ2d at 1423. Specifically, the TLD expanded the mark to include internet services that include ‘building’ or designing steel structures on the website and then calculating an appropriate price before ordering the unique structure.” 415 F.3d at 1299, 75 USPQ2d at 1423.

The Court also criticized the Board for relying only on evidence that the separate terms “steel building” or “steel buildings” are generic, where the terms were joined together in the subject mark:

The record does not contain any examination of dictionary definitions or other sources that might have indicated that joining the separate words “steel” and “building” would create a word that, in context, would be generic. The Board merely cited evidence that showed that when customers or competitors talked about a steel building, they used the phrase “steel building.” That evidence shows that “steel building” is generic, but does not address directly the composite term STEELBUILDING.

415 F.3d at 1298–99, 75 USPQ2d at 1423.

Thus, to establish that a proposed mark is generic, the examining attorney must show that the relevant public would understand the mark as a whole to have generic significance. *See 1800Mattress.com*, 586 F.3d at 1363, 92 USPQ2d at 1684 (affirming Board’s conclusion that MATTRESS.COM was generic for “online retail store services in the field of mattresses, beds, and bedding,” where the Board considered each of the constituent words, “mattress” and “.com” and determined that they were both generic, then considered the mark as a whole and determined that the combination added no new meaning, relying on the prevalence of the term “mattress.com” in the website addresses of several online mattress retailers who provide the same services as the applicant); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (HOTELS.COM is generic for “providing information for others about temporary lodging; [and] travel agency services, namely, making reservations and bookings for temporary lodging for others by means of telephone and the global computer network,” based on various definitions of “hotel,” printouts from hotel reservation search websites showing “hotels” as the equivalent of or included within “temporary lodging,” as well as evidence from applicant’s website); *In re DNI Holdings Ltd.*, 77 USPQ2d 1435 (TTAB 2005) (SPORTSBETTING.COM held generic for “provision of casino games on and through a global computer network wherein there are no actual monetary wagers; provision of contests and sweepstakes on and through a global computer network; providing a website on and through a global computer network featuring information in the fields of gaming, athletic competition and entertainment...,” where the record included multiple examples of use of the terms “sports betting” as well as the joined terms “sportsbetting” by both applicant and its competitors to refer to both sports wagering and providing information about sports wagering, and there was no indication of a realistic alternative connotation of the compound term. See also [TMEP §§1209.03\(m\)](#) and [1215.05](#) regarding domain names comprising generic matter.)

1209.01(c)(ii) Terminology

As specifically amended by the Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988, §14 of the Trademark Act provides for the cancellation of a registration of a mark at any time if the mark “becomes the generic name for the goods or services, or a portion thereof, for which it is registered . . .” [15 U.S.C. §1064\(3\)](#). Previously, that provision had pertained to a mark that “becomes the common descriptive name of an article or substance....” Cases previously distinguished between generic names and “apt or common descriptive names,” which referred to matter that, while not characterized as “generic,” had become so associated with the product that it was recognized in the applicable trade as another name for the product, serving as a term of art for all goods of that description offered by different manufacturers rather than identifying the goods of any one producer. *See Questor Corp. v. Dan Robbins & Assocs., Inc.*, 199 USPQ 358, 364 (TTAB 1978), *aff’d*, 599 F.2d 1009, 202 USPQ 100 (C.C.P.A. 1979). In addition, the Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988 amended §15 of the Trademark Act to adopt the term “generic name” to refer to generic designations. [15 U.S.C. §1065\(4\)](#). In view of the amendment of §§14 and 15, a distinction between “generic” names and “apt or common descriptive” names is inappropriate. Rather, the terminology of the Act must be consistently used, e.g., in refusals to register matter that is a generic name for the goods or services, or a portion thereof. *See In re K-T Zoe Furniture Inc.*, 16 F.3d 390, 29 USPQ2d 1787 (Fed. Cir. 1994).

Similarly, cases have distinguished between “generic” terms and terms that were deemed “so highly descriptive as to be incapable of exclusive appropriation as a trademark.” See *In re Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 820 (TTAB 1984) (LAW & BUSINESS held so highly descriptive as to be incapable of distinguishing applicant’s services of arranging and conducting seminars in the field of business law); *In re Industrial Relations Counselors, Inc.*, 224 USPQ 309 (TTAB 1984) (INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS COUNSELORS, INC. held an apt name or so highly descriptive of educational services in the industrial relations field that it is incapable of exclusive appropriation and registration, notwithstanding *de facto* source recognition capacity). Regarding the terminology used in refusing registration of such matter, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board noted as follows in *In re Women’s Publ’g Co. Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1876, 1877 n.2 (TTAB 1992):

The Examining Attorney’s refusal that applicant’s mark is “so highly descriptive that it is incapable of acting as a trademark” is not technically a statutory ground of refusal. Where an applicant seeks registration on the Principal Register, the Examining Attorney may refuse registration . . . on the basis that the mark sought to be registered is generic.

In essence, the Board was merely emphasizing the need to use precise statutory language in stating grounds for refusal. While the decision does not explicitly bar the use of the terminology “so highly descriptive that it is incapable of acting as a trademark” under all circumstances, the case illustrates that the use of this terminology may lead to confusion and should be avoided. It is particularly important in this context to use the precise statutory language to avoid doctrinal confusion. See generally Linda McLeod, *The Status of So Highly Descriptive and Acquired Distinctiveness*, 82 Trademark Rep. 607 (1992). Therefore, examining attorneys must not state that a mark is “so highly descriptive that it is incapable of acting as a trademark” in issuing refusals. Rather, in view of the amendments of the Trademark Act noted above, the terminology “generic name for the goods or services” must be used in appropriate refusals, and use of the terminology “so highly descriptive” must be discontinued when referring to incapable matter.

This does not mean that designations that might formerly have been categorized as “so highly descriptive” should not be regarded as incapable. The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has specifically stated that “a phrase or slogan can be so highly laudatory and descriptive as to be incapable of acquiring distinctiveness as a trademark.” *In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 1373, 53 USPQ2d 1056, 1058 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA for beer and ale held to be “so highly laudatory and descriptive of the qualities of [applicant’s] product that the slogan does not and could not function as a trademark to distinguish Boston Beer’s goods and serve as an indication of origin”).

The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has also stated that “[t]he critical issue in genericness cases is whether members of the relevant public primarily use or understand the term sought to be registered to refer to the genus of goods or services in question.” *H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int’l Ass’n of Fire Chiefs, Inc.*, 782 F.2d 987, 989–90, 228 USPQ 528, 530 (Fed. Cir. 1986). Also, note that it is entirely appropriate to consider whether a particular designation is “highly descriptive” in evaluating registrability under §2(f), or in similar circumstances.

The expression “generic name for the goods or services” is not limited to noun forms but also includes “generic adjectives,” that is, adjectives that refer to a genus, species, category, or class of goods or services. See *Sheetz of Del., Inc. v. Doctor’s Assocs. Inc.*, 108 USPQ2d 1341 (TTAB 2013) (holding FOOTLONG generic for sandwiches, excluding hot dogs); *In re Reckitt & Colman, N. Am. Inc.*, 18 USPQ2d 1389 (TTAB 1991) (holding PERMA PRESS generic for soil and stain removers for use on permanent press products). Similarly, evidence showing that a term in singular form is generic typically will suffice to show that the plural also is generic. See *In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 603, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1637 (Fed. Cir.

2016) (“While each trademark must always be evaluated individually, pluralization commonly does not alter the meaning of a mark.”); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532, 1535 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (dictionary and other evidence of meaning of “hotel” sufficed to show that the plural form in HOTELS.COM was generic for the information and reservation services at issue).

1209.01(c)(iii) Generic Matter: Case References

Marks Held Generic

In the following cases, the matter sought to be registered was found generic: *In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 118 USPQ2d 1632 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (CHURRASCOS generic for restaurant services); *In re Nordic Naturals, Inc.*, 755 F.3d 1340, 111 USPQ2d 1495 (Fed. Cir. 2014) (CHILDREN’S DHA generic for “nutritional supplements containing DHA”); *In re 1800Mattress.com IP, LLC*, 586 F.3d 1359, 92 USPQ2d 1682 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (MATTRESS.COM generic for “online retail store services in the field of mattresses, beds, and bedding”); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (HOTELS.COM generic for “providing information for others about temporary lodging; [and] travel agency services, namely, making reservations and bookings for temporary lodging for others by means of telephone and the global computer network”); *In re Reed Elsevier Properties Inc.*, 482 F.3d 1376, 82 USPQ2d 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (LAWYERS.COM generic for “providing an online interactive database featuring information exchange in the fields of law, legal news and legal services”); *In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056, 1058 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (holding THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA for beer and ale to be “so highly laudatory and descriptive of the qualities of [applicant’s] product that the slogan does not and could not function as a trademark to distinguish Boston Beer’s goods and serve as an indication of origin”); *In re Gould Paper Corp.*, 834 F.2d 1017, 5 USPQ2d 1110 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (SCREENWIPE generic as applied to premoistened antistatic cloths for cleaning computer and television screens); *In re Northland Aluminum Products, Inc.*, 777 F.2d 1556, 227 USPQ 961 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (BUNDT, a term that designates a type of cake, generic for ring cake mix); *In re Meridian Rack & Pinion*, 114 USPQ2d 1462 (TTAB 2015) (BUYAUTOPARTS.COM held generic for “on-line retail store services featuring auto parts”); *In re ActiveVideo Network, Inc.*, 111 USPQ2d 1581 (TTAB 2014) (CLOUDTV held generic for software, non-downloadable software, broadcasting television programs, providing telecommunication connectivity services, and provision of audiovisual and multimedia content); *Sheetz of Del., Inc. v. Doctor’s Assocs. Inc.*, 108 USPQ2d 1341 (TTAB 2013) (FOOTLONG held generic for sandwiches, excluding hot dogs); *In re Greenliant Sys., Ltd.*, 97 USPQ2d 1078 (TTAB 2010) (NANDRIVE generic for electronic integrated circuits that include high-speed solid state flash memory drives); *In re Wm. B. Coleman Co., Inc.*, 93 USPQ2d 2019 (TTAB 2010) (ELECTRIC CANDLE COMPANY generic for “light bulbs; lighting accessories, namely, candle sleeves; lighting fixtures”); *In re Tires, Tires, Tires, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1153 (TTAB 2009) (TIRES TIRES TIRES generic for retail tire store services); *Stuart Spector Designs, Ltd. v. Fender Musical Instruments Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1549 (TTAB 2009) (product design configurations of “the body portion of a guitar” generic for “guitar bodies”); *In re Noon Hour Food Prods., Inc.*, 88 USPQ2d 1172 (TTAB 2008) (BOND-OST held generic for cheese); *In re Rosemount, Inc.*, 86 USPQ2d 1436 (TTAB 2008) (REDUCER generic for “flow meters used for measuring flow through pipes; vortex flow meters”); *In re Lens.com, Inc.*, 83 USPQ2d 1444 (TTAB 2007) (LENS generic for “retail store services featuring contact eyewear products rendered via a global computer network”); *In re Active Ankle Sys., Inc.*, 83 USPQ2d 1532 (TTAB 2007) (DORSAL NIGHT SPLINT generic for “orthopedic splints for the foot and ankle”); *In re Int’l Bus. Machs. Corp.*, 81 USPQ2d 1677 (TTAB 2006) (ESERVER generic for “computer network access products, namely, computer hardware and operating software therefor that allow connectivity to and the administration of public and proprietary computer networks and the processing of information contained thereon”); *In re The Outdoor Recreation Grp.*, 81 USPQ2d 1392 (TTAB 2006) (OUTDOOR PRODUCTS generic for a class of goods worn and used by persons engaged in outdoor activities); *In re Rodale Inc.*, 80 USPQ2d 1696 (TTAB 2006) (NUTRITION BULLETIN generic for “providing information in the field of

health and diet via a web site on the Internet”); *In re DNI Holdings Ltd.*, 77 USPQ2d 1435 (TTAB 2005) (SPORTSBETTING.COM generic for “provision of casino games on and through a global computer network wherein there are no actual monetary wagers; provision of contests and sweepstakes on and through a global computer network; [and] providing a web site on and through a global computer network featuring information in the fields of gaming, athletic competition and entertainment”); *In re Eddie Z's Blinds & Drapery, Inc.*, 74 USPQ2d 1037 (TTAB 2005) (BLINDSANDDRAPERY.COM generic for retail store services featuring blinds, draperies, and other wall coverings, conducted via the Internet); *In re Candy Bouquet Int'l, Inc.*, 73 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 2004) (CANDY BOUQUET generic for “retail, mail, and computer order services in the field of gift packages of candy”); *In re Cell Therapeutics Inc.*, 67 USPQ2d 1795 (TTAB 2003) (CELL THERAPEUTICS INC. generic for pharmaceutical preparations and laboratory research and development services); *In re Am. Inst. of Certified Pub. Accountants*, 65 USPQ2d 1972 (TTAB 2003) (CPA EXAMINATION generic for “printed matter, namely, practice accounting examinations; accounting exams; accounting exam information booklets; and prior accounting examination questions and answers”); *In re Am. Acad. of Facial Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery*, 64 USPQ2d 1748 (TTAB 2002) (FACIAL PLASTIC SURGERY held generic for training, association, and collective membership services, where evidence showed that the phrase “facial plastic surgery” is a recognized field of surgical specialization); *In re A La Vieille Russie, Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1895 (TTAB 2001) (RUSSIANART generic for dealership services in the field of fine art, antiques, furniture, and jewelry); *Cont'l Airlines Inc. v. United Airlines Inc.*, 53 USPQ2d 1385 (TTAB 1999) (E-TICKET generic for computerized reservation and ticketing of transportation services); *In re Log Cabin Homes Ltd.*, 52 USPQ2d 1206 (TTAB 1999) (LOG CABIN HOMES generic for architectural design of buildings and retail outlets selling kits for building log homes); *In re Web Commc'ns*, 49 USPQ2d 1478 (TTAB 1998) (WEB COMMUNICATIONS generic for consulting services to businesses seeking to establish sites on a global computer network); *In re Cent. Sprinkler Co.*, 49 USPQ2d 1194 (TTAB 1998) (ATTIC generic for sprinklers installed primarily in attics); *In re Stanbel Inc.*, 16 USPQ2d 1469 (TTAB 1990), *aff'd*, 20 USPQ2d 1319 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (ICE PAK for reusable ice substitute for use in food and beverage coolers held generic); *In re The Paint Prods., Co.*, 8 USPQ2d 1863 (TTAB 1988) (PAINT PRODUCTS CO. for “interior and exterior paints and coatings, namely, alkyd, oil, latex, urethane and epoxy based paints and coatings” held so highly descriptive as to be incapable of becoming distinctive); *In re Analog Devices Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1808 (TTAB 1988), *aff'd*, 871 F.2d 1097, 10 USPQ2d 1879 (Fed. Cir. 1989) (ANALOG DEVICES held generic for devices having analog capabilities); *In re Mortg. Bankers Ass'n of Am.*, 226 USPQ 954 (TTAB 1985) (CERTIFIED MORTGAGE BANKER (“MORTGAGE BANKER” disclaimed) for “educational services, namely providing qualifying examinations, testing and grading in the field of real estate finance” held so highly descriptive as to be incapable of functioning as a mark notwithstanding evidence of acquired distinctiveness); *In re Half Price Books, Records, Magazines, Inc.*, 225 USPQ 219, 222 (TTAB 1984) (HALF PRICE BOOKS RECORDS MAGAZINES for retail book and record store services “is incapable of designating origin and any evidence of secondary meaning can only be viewed as ‘de facto’ in import and incapable of altering the inability of the subject matter for registration to function as a service mark”); *Shammas v. Rea*, 978 F. Supp. 2d 599, 614 (E.D. Va. 2013) (PROBIOTIC found generic for a type of fertilizer).

Marks Held Not Generic

In the following cases, the matter sought to be registered was found not to be generic: *In re Steelbuilding.com*, 415 F.3d 1293, 75 USPQ2d 1420 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (STEELBUILDING.COM not generic for “computerized on line retail services in the field of pre-engineered metal buildings and roofing systems,” but evidence submitted by applicant insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness under §2(f)); *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 57 USPQ2d 1807 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (1-888-M-A-T-R-E-S-S not generic for “telephone shop-at-home retail services in the field of mattresses”); *In re Am. Fertility Soc'y*, 188 F.3d 1341, 51 USPQ2d 1832 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (SOCIETY FOR REPRODUCTIVE MEDICINE not generic for association services in the field of reproductive medicine); *In re Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith*

Inc., 828 F.2d 1567, 4 USPQ2d 1141 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (CASH MANAGEMENT ACCOUNT for “stock brokerage services, administration of money market fund services, and providing loans against securities services” held merely descriptive, rather than generic, and remanded to Board to consider sufficiency of §2(f) evidence); *H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int’l Ass’n of Fire Chiefs, Inc.*, 782 F.2d 987, 228 USPQ 528 (Fed. Cir. 1986) (FIRE CHIEF not generic for publications); *Alcatraz Media, Inc. v. Chesapeake Marine Tours Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1750 (TTAB 2013) (ANNAPOLIS TOURS, with TOURS disclaimed, not generic for “conducting guided tours of historic districts and other areas of cities,” but cancellation granted on ground that mark was merely descriptive and had not acquired distinctiveness); *Baroness Small Estates, Inc. v. Am. Wine Trade, Inc.*, 104 USPQ2d 1224, 1229 (TTAB 2012) (CMS not generic acronym for “wine” made from the grape varieties cabernet, merlot, and syrah; the Board noted that “the fact that a term is derived from individual generic words or even a listing of generic words does not necessarily make the derived term generic”); *In re Tennis Indus. Ass’n*, 102 USPQ2d 1671 (TTAB 2012) (TENNIS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION not generic for “association services, namely, promoting the interests of tennis facilities, tennis manufacturers, tennis retailers and tennis court contractors; providing market research services to track the economic vitality of the tennis industry,” but applicant failed to prove that the mark had acquired distinctiveness); *In re Country Music Ass’n*, 100 USPQ2d 1824 (TTAB 2011) (COUNTRY MUSIC ASSOCIATION, with ASSOCIATION disclaimed, not generic for “association services, namely, promoting country music entertainers and the country music recording industry”; evidence submitted by applicant held sufficient to demonstrate acquired distinctiveness under §2(f)); *In re Am. Online, Inc.*, 77 USPQ2d 1618 (TTAB 2006) (INSTANT MESSENGER not generic for telecommunications services and computer services related to providing real time text messages; evidence submitted by applicant held sufficient to demonstrate acquired distinctiveness under §2(f)); *Zimmerman v. Nat’l Ass’n of Realtors*, 70 USPQ2d 1425 (TTAB 2004) (collective service marks REALTOR and REALTORS not generic for real estate brokerage, management, appraisal, and planning services); *In re Federated Dept. Stores Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1541 (TTAB 1987) (THE CHILDREN’S OUTLET (“OUTLET” disclaimed), while merely descriptive of applicant’s “retail children’s clothing store services,” held capable of functioning as a mark, with evidence submitted by applicant sufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness pursuant to §2(f)); *Hunter Publ’g Co. v. Caulfield Publ’g Ltd.*, 1 USPQ2d 1996 (TTAB 1986) (SYSTEMS USER for periodic trade journal held merely descriptive, rather than generic, and applicant’s evidence held sufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness pursuant to §2(f)); *In re Failure Analysis Assocs.*, 1 USPQ2d 1144 (TTAB 1986) (FAILURE ANALYSIS ASSOCIATES, for “consulting services in the field of mechanical, structural, metallurgical, and metal failures, fires and explosions; engineering services in the field of mechanical design and risk analysis” and “consulting engineering services in the metallurgical field,” found to be merely descriptive of applicant’s services rather than incapable of distinguishing them from those of others; evidence submitted by applicant held sufficient to demonstrate acquired distinctiveness under §2(f)).

1209.02 Procedure for Descriptiveness and/or Genericness Refusal

The examining attorney must consider the evidence of record to determine whether a mark is merely descriptive or whether it is suggestive or arbitrary. See *In re Noble Co.*, 225 USPQ 749, 750 (TTAB 1985). The examining attorney may request that the applicant submit additional explanation or materials to clarify the meaning of the mark or the nature of the goods or services. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §814](#); see *In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644, 1650-51 (TTAB 2013). This would be especially appropriate for goods or services where the meaning of the mark or the nature of the goods or services would be readily apparent only to someone knowledgeable in that field. The examining attorney should also do any necessary research to determine the nature of the use of the designation in the marketplace. To the fullest extent possible, the examining attorney will examine §1(b) applications for registrability under §2(e)(1) according to the same procedures and standards that apply to any other application. See *In re Am. Psychological Ass’n*, 39 USPQ2d 1467, 1469 (Comm’r Pats. 1996); [TMEP §§1102](#) and [1102.01](#). “[T]he fact that applicant has filed an intent-to-use application does not limit the examining attorney’s evidentiary options, nor does it shield an

applicant from producing evidence that it may have in its possession.” *In re Promo Ink*, 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1303 (TTAB 2006) . If the examining attorney refuses registration, he or she must support the refusal with appropriate evidence. *See generally In re Stereotaxis Inc.*, 429 F.3d 1039, 77 USPQ2d 1087 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (finding a press release cited by the examining attorney relevant to show the public’s perception of the goods in an intent-to-use application).

In all cases, the examining attorney should try to make the Office action as complete as possible, so that the applicant may respond appropriately.

1209.02(a) Descriptive Marks – Advisory Statement That Mark Appears to Be Generic

A designation that is merely descriptive must be refused registration under §2(e)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#). The examining attorney must not initially issue a refusal in an application for registration on the Principal Register on the ground that a mark is a generic name for the goods or services, unless the applicant asserts that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) in the application itself. *See* [TMEP §1209.02\(b\)](#). Even if it appears that the mark is generic, the proper basis for the initial refusal is §2(e)(1) descriptiveness. If there is strong evidence that the proposed mark is generic, a statement that the subject matter appears to be a generic name for the goods or services should be included in conjunction with the refusal on the ground that the matter is merely descriptive. It has been said that a generic term is “the ultimate in descriptiveness.” *H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int’l Ass’n of Fire Chiefs, Inc.*, 782 F.2d 987, 989, 228 USPQ 528, 530 (Fed. Cir. 1986), quoting *Weiss Noodle Co. v. Golden Cracknel & Specialty Co.*, 290 F.2d 845, 847, 129 USPQ 411, 413 (C.C.P.A. 1961).

If, on the other hand, the mark appears to be capable, the examining attorney should provide appropriate advice concerning a possible amendment to the Supplemental Register or assertion of a claim of acquired distinctiveness. See [TMEP §1102.03](#) concerning ineligibility of the proposed mark in a §1(b) application for the Supplemental Register prior to filing an acceptable amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#). The examining attorney should also advise the applicant regarding any incapable portion of the mark for which a disclaimer would be required in connection with an amendment to the Supplemental Register or assertion of a claim of acquired distinctiveness. If the applicant responds by amending to the Supplemental Register or asserting acquired distinctiveness, but does not submit the disclaimer, the examining attorney must issue a nonfinal Office action. Prior to the applicant’s amendment, information regarding the disclaimer requirement is merely advisory. Failure to submit the disclaimer thus would constitute a new issue requiring a nonfinal Office action.

If the record is unclear as to whether the designation is capable of functioning as a mark, the examining attorney must refrain from giving any advisory statement. In general, the examining attorney should make every effort to apprise applicants as early as possible of the prospects for registration through appropriate amendments, if feasible. *NOTE: A mark in a §66(a) application cannot be registered on the Supplemental Register under any circumstances. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\)](#) and [2.75\(c\)](#).*

If, in response to a first-action refusal under §2(e)(1), the applicant merely argues that the mark is registrable on the Principal Register without claiming acquired distinctiveness or amending to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal under §2(e)(1), on the ground that the proposed mark is merely descriptive, if he or she is not persuaded by the applicant’s arguments.

1209.02(a)(i) Amendment to Supplemental Register in Response to Office Action

If the applicant responds to a §2(e)(1) descriptiveness refusal by amending its application to the Supplemental Register, this amendment presents a new issue requiring consideration by the examining attorney (unless the amendment is irrelevant to the outstanding refusal). See [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). If the examining attorney determines that the designation is a generic name for the applicant's goods or services, the examining attorney must then issue a nonfinal action refusing registration on the Supplemental Register. The statutory basis for such a refusal is §§23(c) and 45 of the Trademark Act. See [15 U.S.C. §§1091\(c\)](#), [1127](#).

See [TMEP §§815–816.05](#) concerning applications for registration on the Supplemental Register.

1209.02(a)(ii) Assertion of §2(f) in Response to Office Action

If the applicant responds to a §2(e)(1) descriptiveness refusal by amending its application to assert acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), this also raises a new issue. See [TMEP §§714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#) and [1212.02\(h\)](#). If the examining attorney determines that the designation is a generic name for the applicant's goods or services, the examining attorney must issue a new nonfinal action refusing registration under §§1, 2, and 45 (§§1, 2, 3, and 45, for service marks) on the basis that the mark is generic and stating that the claim of acquired distinctiveness is insufficient to overcome the refusal. The examining attorney must also maintain and continue, in the alternative, the refusal under §2(e)(1) that the mark is merely descriptive and must separately explain why the showing of acquired distinctiveness is insufficient to overcome the descriptiveness refusal even if the mark is ultimately deemed not to be generic. As the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board noted in *In re Women's Publ'g Co. Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1876, 1877 n.2 (TTAB 1992) :

The Examining Attorney's refusal that applicant's mark is "so highly descriptive that it is incapable of acting as a trademark" is not technically a statutory ground of refusal. Where an applicant seeks registration on the Principal Register, the Examining Attorney may refuse registration under Section 2(e)(1) of the Act, 15 USC 1052(e)(1), on the basis that the mark sought to be registered is generic. See, e.g., *In re Northland Aluminum Products Inc.*, 777 F.2d 1556, 227 USPQ 961, 962 (Fed. Cir. 1985), *Weiss Noodle Co. v. Golden Cracknel & Specialty Co.*, 290 F.2d 845, 129 USPQ 411, 413 (C.C.P.A. 1961), *In re Deutsche Airbus GmbH*, 224 USPQ 611 (TTAB 1984) and *Conde Nast Publ'ns Inc. v. Redbook Publ'g Co.*, 217 USPQ 356, 360 (TTAB 1983). Alternatively, an Examining Attorney may refuse registration under the same section if he or she believes that the mark is merely descriptive and that applicant's showing of acquired distinctiveness is unpersuasive of registrability.

If the examining attorney fails to separately address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence, this may be treated as a concession that the evidence would be sufficient to establish distinctiveness if the mark is ultimately found not to be generic. See *In re Country Music Ass'n*, 100 USPQ2d 1824, 1834 (TTAB 2011) (interpreting the examining attorney's silence on the sufficiency of the evidence submitted in support of applicant's claim of acquired distinctiveness "as a concession that, if the term is not generic, the record evidence is sufficient to show acquired distinctiveness under Section 2(f)"). Compare *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622, 1625 (TTAB 2009), in which the Board held that an examining attorney had "effectively conceded that, assuming the mark is not functional, applicant's evidence is sufficient to establish that the mark had acquired distinctiveness," where the examining attorney rejected the applicant's §2(f) claim on the ground that applicant's bicycle wheel configuration was functional and thus unregistrable even under §2(f), but did not specifically address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence or the question of whether the mark would be registrable under §2(f) if it were ultimately found to be nonfunctional.

Therefore, the descriptiveness refusal must be maintained, in the alternative, in the event that the mark is ultimately determined not to be generic. See [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#) regarding distinctiveness under §2(f), and [TMEP §1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding assertion of §2(f) claims with respect to generic matter. See, e.g., *In re Candy Bouquet Int'l Inc.*, 73 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 2004); *In re Am. Acad. of Facial Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery*, 64 USPQ2d 1748 (TTAB 2002); *In re A La Vieille Russie Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1895 (TTAB 2001).

1209.02(b) Descriptive and Possibly Generic Marks – Assertion of §2(f) in Application

If the applicant asserts acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) in the original application and the examining attorney determines that the applied-for mark is a generic name for the applicant's goods or services, the examining attorney must issue a nonfinal action refusing registration under Trademark Act §§1, 2, and 45, for trademarks, and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, for service marks, on the basis that the mark is generic and stating that the claim of acquired distinctiveness is insufficient to overcome the refusal. See [15 U.S.C §§1051, 1052, 1053, 1127](#). The examining attorney must also refuse registration under §2(e)(1), in the alternative, as merely descriptive and must separately explain why the showing of acquired distinctiveness is insufficient to overcome the descriptiveness refusal even if the mark is ultimately deemed not to be generic.

If the examining attorney ultimately issues a final refusal under §§1, 2, and 45, or §§1, 2, 3, and 45, on the ground that the mark is generic, the descriptiveness refusal under §2(e)(1), including an explanation of the insufficiency of any §2(f) evidence, must also be made final, in the alternative, in case the mark is ultimately determined not to be generic. See, e.g., *In re Candy Bouquet Int'l*, 173 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 2004); *In re Am. Acad. of Facial Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery*, 64 USPQ2d 1748 (TTAB 2002); *In re A La Vieille Russie Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1895 (TTAB 2001).

If the examining attorney fails to separately address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence, this may be treated as a concession that the evidence would be sufficient to establish distinctiveness if the mark is ultimately found not to be generic. See *In re Country Music Ass'n*, 100 USPQ2d 1824, 1834 (TTAB 2011) (interpreting the examining attorney's silence on the sufficiency of the evidence submitted in support of applicant's claim of acquired distinctiveness "as a concession that, if the term is not generic, the record evidence is sufficient to show acquired distinctiveness under Section 2(f)"). Compare *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622, 1625 (TTAB 2009), in which the Board held that an examining attorney had "effectively conceded that, assuming the mark is not functional, applicant's evidence is sufficient to establish that the mark had acquired distinctiveness," where the examining attorney rejected the applicant's §2(f) claim on the ground that applicant's bicycle wheel configuration was functional and thus unregistrable even under §2(f), but did not specifically address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence or the question of whether the mark would be registrable under §2(f) if it were ultimately found to be nonfunctional.

See [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#) regarding distinctiveness under §2(f), and [TMEP §1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding assertion of §2(f) claims with respect to generic matter.

1209.03 Considerations Relevant to Determination of Descriptiveness or Genericness

The following sections discuss factors and situations that often arise during a determination of whether a mark is descriptive or generic.

1209.03(a) Third-Party Registrations

Third-party registrations are not conclusive on the question of descriptiveness. Each case must stand on its own merits, and a mark that is merely descriptive must not be registered on the Principal Register simply because other such marks appear on the register. *In re theDot Commc'ns Network LLC*, 101 USPQ2d 1062, 1067 (TTAB 2011) (holding .music merely descriptive for, inter alia, on-line social networking services, domain registration services, interactive hosting services, electronic publishing, recording, and production services, online retail store and promotional services, and downloadable files and recordings despite the presence of third-party registrations for marks consisting of “dot ____” or “.____”); *In re Scholastic Testing Serv., Inc.*, 196 USPQ 517, 519 (TTAB 1977) (holding SCHOLASTIC merely descriptive of devising, scoring, and validating tests for others despite the presence of other marks on the Register using the word “Scholastic”). The question of whether a mark is merely descriptive must be determined based on the evidence of record at the time registration is sought. *See In re Nett Designs Inc.*, 236 F.3d 1339, 57 USPQ2d 1564 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (holding ULTIMATE BIKE RACK merely descriptive of “bicycle racks” despite the presence of “ultimate” without a disclaimer in other marks on the Principal Register); *In re Sun Microsystems Inc.*, 59 USPQ2d 1084 (TTAB 2001) (holding AGENTBEANS merely descriptive of computer software for use in software development and deployment where the Board found that changes in the vocabulary of the field reduced the relevance of third-party registrations).

1209.03(b) No Dictionary Listing

The fact that a term is not found in a dictionary is not controlling on the question of registrability if the examining attorney can show that the term has a well understood and recognized meaning. *See In re Orleans Wines, Ltd.*, 196 USPQ 516 (TTAB 1977) (BREADSPRED held merely descriptive of jellies and jams).

1209.03(c) First or Only User

The fact that an applicant may be the first and only user of a merely descriptive or generic designation does not justify registration if the only significance conveyed by the term is merely descriptive. *See In re Fat Boys Water Sports LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1511, 1514 (TTAB 2016) *In re Nat'l Shooting Sports Found., Inc.*, 219 USPQ 1018, 1020 (TTAB 1983). *See also In re Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner, & Smith, Inc.*, 828 F.2d 1567, 1569, 4 USPQ2d 1141, 1142 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (“To allow trademark protection for generic terms, *i.e.*, names which describe the genus of goods being sold, even when these have become identified with a first user, would grant the owner of the mark a monopoly, since a competitor could not describe his goods as what they are.”); *In re Preformed Prods. Co.*, 323 F.2d 1007, 1008, 139 USPQ 271, 273 (CCPA 1963) (exclusive use, even when coupled with “large sales volume of such goods and its substantial advertising expenditure . . . cannot take the common descriptive name of an article out of the public domain and give the temporarily exclusive user of it exclusive rights to it, no matter how much money or effort it pours into promoting the sale of the merchandise”) (quoting *J. Kohnstam, Ltd. v. Louis Marx & Co.*, 280 F.2d 437, 440 (CCPA 1960)); [TMEP §1212.06\(e\)\(i\)](#).

1209.03(d) Combined Terms

When two descriptive terms are combined, the determination of whether the composite mark also has a descriptive significance turns upon the question of whether the combination of terms evokes a new and unique commercial impression. If each component retains its descriptive significance in relation to the goods or services, the combination results in a composite that is itself descriptive. *Duopross Meditech Corp. v. Inviro Medical Devices, Ltd.*, 695 F.3d 1247, 103 USPQ2d 1753 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (SNAP SIMPLY SAFER merely descriptive for “medical devices, namely, cannulae; medical, hypodermic, aspiration and injection

needles; medical, hypodermic, aspiration and injection syringes”); *In re Oppedahl & Larson LLP*, 373 F.3d 1171, 71 USPQ2d 1370 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (PATENTS.COM merely descriptive of computer software for managing a database of records that could include patents and for tracking the status of the records by means of the Internet); *In re Gould Paper Corp.*, 834 F.2d 1017, 1018, 5 USPQ2d 1110, 1111–1112 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (SCREENWIPE held generic as applied to premoistened antistatic cloths for cleaning computer and television screens); *In re Positec Group Ltd.*, 108 USPQ2d 1161 (TTAB 2013) (SUPERJAWS merely descriptive for a variety of machine and hand tools including jaws); *In re Petroglyph Games, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1332 (TTAB 2009) (BATTLECAM merely descriptive for computer game software); *In re Carlson*, 91 USPQ2d 1198 (TTAB 2009) (URBANHOUSING merely descriptive of real estate brokerage, real estate consultation, and real estate listing services); *In re Leonhardt*, 109 USPQ2d 2091 (TTAB 2008) (BOBBLE POPS held merely descriptive for “candy,” which the record showed was a lollipop candy featuring a bobble head device); *In re Cox Enters. Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1040 (TTAB 2007) (THEATL – a compressed version of the term “THE ATL,” a recognized nickname for the city of Atlanta – held merely descriptive of printed matter of interest to residents of and tourists and visitors to Atlanta, Georgia); *In re King Koil Licensing Co. Inc.*, 79 USPQ2d 1048 (TTAB 2006) (THE BREATHABLE MATTRESS held merely descriptive of “beds, mattresses, box springs and pillows,” based on dictionary definitions of “breathable” and “mattress,” and excerpts of web pages that refer to “breathable mattresses” and “breathable bedding”); *In re Finisar Corp.*, 78 USPQ2d 1618 (TTAB 2006), *aff’d per curiam*, 223 Fed. App’x 984 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (SMARTSFP held merely descriptive of optical transceivers); *In re Tower Tech, Inc.*, 64 USPQ2d 1314 (TTAB 2002) (SMARTTOWER merely descriptive of “commercial and industrial cooling towers and accessories therefor, sold as a unit”); *In re Sun Microsystems Inc.*, 59 USPQ2d 1084 (TTAB 2001) (AGENTBEANS merely descriptive of computer software for use in development and deployment of application programs on global computer network); *In re Putman Publ’g Co.*, 39 USPQ2d 2021 (TTAB 1996) (FOOD & BEVERAGE ONLINE merely descriptive of news and information service for the food processing industry); *In re Copytele Inc.*, 31 USPQ2d 1540 (TTAB 1994) (SCREEN FAX PHONE merely descriptive of “facsimile terminals employing electrophoretic displays”); *In re Entenmann’s Inc.*, 15 USPQ2d 1750 (TTAB 1990), *aff’d per curiam*, 928 F.2d 411 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (holding OATNUT merely descriptive of bread containing oats and hazelnuts); *In re Serv-A-Portion Inc.*, 1 USPQ2d 1915 (TTAB 1986) (SQUEEZE N SERV merely descriptive of ketchup and thus subject to disclaimer); *In re Wells Fargo & Co.*, 231 USPQ 95 (TTAB 1986) (EXPRESSERVICE merely descriptive of banking and trust services); *In re Uniroyal, Inc.*, 215 USPQ 716 (TTAB 1982) (STEELGLAS BELTED RADIAL merely descriptive of vehicle tires containing steel and glass belts); *In re Bright-Crest, Ltd.*, 204 USPQ 591 (TTAB 1979) (COASTER-CARDS merely descriptive of coasters suitable for direct mailing).

However, a mark comprising a combination of merely descriptive components is registrable if the combination of terms creates a unitary mark with a unique, nondescriptive meaning, or if the composite has a bizarre or incongruous meaning as applied to the goods. *See In re Colonial Stores Inc.*, 394 F.2d 549, 157 USPQ 382 (C.C.P.A. 1968) (SUGAR & SPICE held not merely descriptive of bakery products); *In re Shutts*, 217 USPQ 363 (TTAB 1983) (SNO-RAKE held not merely descriptive of a snow removal hand tool).

When there is evidence that the composite mark itself has been used together to form a phrase that is descriptive of the goods or services, it is unnecessary to engage in an analysis of each individual component. *In re Shiva Corp.*, 48 USPQ2d 1957, 1958 (TTAB 1998) (TARIFF MANAGEMENT merely descriptive of computer hardware and computer programs to control, reduce, and render more efficient wide area network usage).

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has held that the addition of the prefix “e” does not change the merely descriptive significance of a term in relation to goods or services sold or rendered electronically, where the record showed that the “e” prefix has become commonly recognized as a designation for goods or services sold or delivered electronically. *In re Int’l Bus. Machs. Corp.*, 81 USPQ2d 1677, 1679 (TTAB

2006) (“We see no difference in the meaning or connotation of ‘e-server’ and ‘eserver,’ and consider them both to be an abbreviated form of ‘electronic server.’”); *In re SPX Corp.*, 63 USPQ2d 1592 (TTAB 2002) (E-AUTODIAGNOSTICS merely descriptive of an “electronic engine analysis system comprised of a hand-held computer and related computer software”); *In re Styleclick.com Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1445 (TTAB 2000) (E FASHION merely descriptive of software used to obtain beauty and fashion information, and for electronic retailing services); *Cont'l Airlines Inc. v. United Airlines Inc.*, 53 USPQ2d 1385 (TTAB 1999) (E-TICKET generic for computerized reservation and ticketing of transportation services). Similarly, with appropriate evidence, the prefix “i” or “I” was held to be understood by purchasers to signify Internet, when used in relation to Internet-related products or services. *See In re Zanova, Inc.*, 59 USPQ2d 1300 (TTAB 2000) (ITOOOL merely descriptive of computer software for use in creating web pages, and custom design of websites for others). In these situations, the examining attorney should provide evidence of use of the prefix “e” or “i” in relation to the goods or services.

The addition of an entity designator (e.g., Corporation, Corp., Co., Inc., Ltd., etc.) to a descriptive term does not alter the term’s descriptive significance, because an entity designation has no source-indicating capacity. *See Goodyear’s India Rubber Glove Mfg. Co. v. Goodyear Rubber Co.*, 128 U.S. 598, 602 (1888) (“The addition of the word ‘Company’ [to an otherwise generic mark] only indicates that parties have formed an association or partnership to deal in such goods . . .” and does not render the generic mark registrable); *In re Integrated Embedded*, 120 USPQ2d 1504,1507 (TTAB 2016) (“The addition of the disclaimed term GROUP to Applicant’s mark . . . is incapable of lending source-identifying significance to the mark.”); *In re Cell Therapeutics Inc.*, 67 USPQ2d 1795 (TTAB 2003) (CELL THERAPEUTICS INC. generic for pharmaceutical preparations and laboratory research and development services); *In re Taylor & Francis [Publishers] Inc.*, 55 USPQ2d 1213, 1215 (TTAB 2000) (“PRESS,” as applied to a printing or publishing establishment, “is in the nature of a generic entity designation which is incapable of serving a source-indicating function”); *In re Patent & Trademark Servs. Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 1537 (TTAB 1998) (PATENT & TRADEMARK SERVICES INC. is merely descriptive of legal services in the field of intellectual property; the term “INC.” merely indicates the type of entity that performs the services, and has no significance as a mark); *In re The Paint Products Co.*, 8 USPQ2d 1863, 1866 (TTAB 1988) (“‘PAINT PRODUCTS CO.’ is no more registrable for goods emanating from a company that sells paint products than it would be as a service mark for the retail paint store services offered by such a company.”); *In re E. I. Kane, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1203, 1205 (TTAB 1984) (“The addition of the term ‘INC.’ does not add any trademark significance to the matter sought to be registered. The complete term ‘OFFICE MOVERS, INC.’ is so highly descriptive that it is incapable of distinguishing applicant’s services [which included “moving services, namely the moving of office facilities”].”). *See TMEP §1213.03(d)* regarding disclaimer of entity designators.

1209.03(e) More Than One Meaning

Descriptiveness must be determined in relation to the goods or services for which registration is sought. Therefore, the fact that a term may have a different meaning(s) in a different context is not controlling. *See In re RiseSmart Inc.*, 104 USPQ2d 1931, 1933 (TTAB 2012) ; *In re Chopper Indus.*, 222 USPQ 258, 259 (TTAB 1984) ; *In re Bright-Crest, Ltd.*, 204 USPQ 591, 593 (TTAB 1979) ; *In re Champion Int’l Corp.*, 183 USPQ 318, 320 (TTAB 1974). If a term has a primary significance that is descriptive in relation to at least one of the recited goods/services, and does not create any double entendre or incongruity, then the term is merely descriptive.

See TMEP §1213.05(c) regarding wording that constitutes a “double entendre.”

1209.03(f) Picture or Illustration

A visual representation that consists merely of an illustration of the goods, or of an article that is an important feature or characteristic of the goods or services, is merely descriptive under §2(e)(1) of the Trademark Act, just as a merely descriptive word would be. See *In re Underwater Connections, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 95, 95 (TTAB 1983) (pictorial representation of a compressed air gas tank held merely descriptive of travel-tour services involving underwater diving); *In re Eight Ball, Inc.*, 217 USPQ 1183, 1184 (TTAB 1983) (holding the mark comprising a pictorial representation of a cue stick and eight ball to be merely descriptive of applicant's billiard parlor services); *Thistle Class Ass'n v. Douglass & McLeod, Inc.*, 198 USPQ 504, 511-12 (TTAB 1978) (holding the pictorial representation of a thistle in the mark to be merely descriptive of the class of sailboats sold by applicant); see also *In re Soc'y for Private & Commercial Earth Stations*, 226 USPQ 436, 438 (TTAB 1985) (representation of earth station held merely descriptive of services of an association promoting the interests of members of the earth-station industry). But see *In re LRC Prods., Ltd.*, 223 USPQ 1250 (TTAB 1984) (stylized hand design found not merely an illustration of the goods, i.e., gloves; thus not merely descriptive).

Similarly, when a mark is comprised of wording that is descriptive under §2(e)(1) and a design element that is a pictorial representation of the goods, or that reinforces the descriptive meaning of the wording, the entire mark is merely descriptive. See *DuoProSS Meditech Corp. v. Inviro Med. Devices Ltd.*, 695 F.3d 1247, 1255, 103 USPQ2d 1753, 1758 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (finding that the combination of the term SNAP and the design of a broken exclamation point, viewed as a whole, would be perceived as depicting the snapping of a syringe plunger); *In re Swatch Grp. Mgmt. Servs. AG*, 110 USPQ2d 1751, 1762 (TTAB 2014) *aff'd per curiam*, 599 Fed. Appx. 959 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (finding that the design element depicting a tourbillon - a watch component - combined with the word TOURBILLON reinforced the singular impression conveyed by the mark as a whole as merely descriptive for "jewellery, horological and chronometric instruments").

1209.03(g) Foreign Equivalents

The foreign equivalent of a merely descriptive English word is no more registrable than the English word itself. "[A] word taken from a well-known foreign modern language, which is, itself, descriptive of a product, will be so considered when it is attempted to be registered as a trade-mark in the United States for the same product." *In re N. Paper Mills*, 64 F.2d 998, 1002, 17 USPQ 492, 493 (C.C.P.A. 1933). See *In re Tokutake Indus. Co.*, 87 USPQ2d 1697 (TTAB 2008) (AYUMI and its Japanese-character equivalent held merely descriptive for footwear where the evidence, including applicant's own admissions, indicated that the primary meaning of applicant's mark is "walking"); *In re Oriental Daily News, Inc.*, 230 USPQ 637 (TTAB 1986) (Chinese characters that mean ORIENTAL DAILY NEWS held merely descriptive of newspapers); *In re Geo. A. Hormel & Co.*, 227 USPQ 813 (TTAB 1985) (SAPORITO, an Italian word meaning "tasty," held merely descriptive because it describes a desirable characteristic of applicant's dry sausage).

Although words from modern languages are generally translated into English, the doctrine of foreign equivalents is not an absolute rule, but merely a guideline. The doctrine should be applied only when it is likely that the ordinary American purchaser would stop and translate the foreign word into its English equivalent. See *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696 (Fed. Cir. 2005); see also *In re Highlights for Children, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d 1268, 1271 (TTAB 2016) (noting that the doctrine of foreign equivalents applies even when the foreign wording in the mark will appear with its English equivalent, because ordinary purchasers will still recognize the terms as equivalents due to the provided translation). Thus, an examining attorney will generally apply the doctrine when the relevant English translation is literal and direct, the term comes from a common, modern language, and there is no contradictory evidence of another relevant meaning. See *In re Sadoruo Grp. Ltd.*, 105 USPQ2d 1484, 1485 (TTAB 2012). "The 'ordinary American purchaser' in this context refers

to the ordinary American purchaser who is knowledgeable in the foreign language. . . . [Defining “ordinary American purchaser” as the “average American buyer”] would write the doctrine out of existence.” *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021, 1024 (TTAB 2006) . The “ordinary American purchaser” includes “all American purchasers, including those proficient in a non-English language who would ordinarily be expected to translate words into English.” *In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1352, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1492 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *see In re Highlights for Children, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d at 1271 (“The ‘ordinary American purchaser’ is not limited to those purchasers who speak only English.”).

While foreign words are generally translated into English for purposes of determining descriptiveness, foreign words from dead or obscure languages may be so unfamiliar to the American buying public that they should not be translated into English for descriptiveness purposes. *See Enrique Bernat F. S.A. v. Guadalajara Inc.*, 210 F.3d 439, 443, 54 USPQ2d 1497, 1499 (5th Cir. 2000), *reh’g denied* 218 F.3d 745 (2000); *cf. Gen. Cigar Co. v. G.D.M. Inc.*, 988 F. Supp. 647, 45 USPQ2d 1481 (S.D.N.Y. 1997). The determination of whether a language is “dead” must be made on a case-by-case basis, based upon the meaning that the term would have to the relevant purchasing public.

Example: Latin is generally considered a dead language. However, if evidence exists that the relevant purchasing public still uses a Latin term (e.g. , if the term appears in current dictionaries or news articles), then that Latin term is not considered dead. The same analysis should be applied to other uncommon languages.

Note that marks comprised of a term from a foreign language used with an English term may be found registrable if the commercial impression created by the combination differs from that which would be created by two English words. *See In re Johanna Farms Inc.*, 8 USPQ2d 1408 (TTAB 1988) (LA YOGURT for yogurt registrable on Principal Register with a disclaimer of “YOGURT”); *In re Sweet Victory, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 959 (TTAB 1986) (GLACE LITE held not descriptive for ice creams, sherbets, frozen yogurts, and nondairy frozen desserts); *In re Universal Package Corp.*, 222 USPQ 344 (TTAB 1984) (LE CASE not merely descriptive of jewelry boxes and gift boxes and, therefore, registrable with a disclaimer of “CASE”).

See [TMEP §§809–809.03](#) for information regarding how to determine the meaning of non-English wording in a mark. See also [TMEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)–1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)\(C\)](#), [1210.10](#), and [1211.01\(a\)\(vii\)](#) regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents.

1209.03(h) Acronyms

As a general rule, an acronym or initialism cannot be considered descriptive unless the wording it stands for is merely descriptive of the goods or services, and the acronym or initialism is readily understood by relevant purchasers to be "substantially synonymous" with the merely descriptive wording it represents. *See Modern Optics Inc. v. The Univis Lens Co.*, 234 F. 2d 504, 506, 110 USPQ 293, 295 (C.C.P.A. 1956); *Baroness Small Estates, Inc. v. Am. Wine Trade, Inc.*, 104 USPQ2d 1224, 1230-31 (TTAB 2012) (holding CMS not substantially synonymous with the grape varietals cabernet, merlot, and syrah and therefore not merely descriptive for wine); *In re Thomas Nelson, Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d 1712, 1715 (TTAB 2011) (holding NKJV substantially synonymous with merely descriptive term “New King James Version” and thus merely descriptive of bibles). A mark consisting of an abbreviation, initialism, or acronym will be considered substantially synonymous with descriptive wording if: (1) the applied-for mark is an abbreviation, initialism, or acronym for specific wording; (2) the specific wording is merely descriptive of applicant’s goods and/or services; and (3) a relevant consumer viewing the abbreviation, initialism, or acronym in connection with applicant’s goods and/or services will recognize it as an abbreviation, initialism, or acronym of the merely descriptive wording that it represents. *See In re Thomas Nelson, Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d at 1715-16 (citing *In re Harco Corp.*, 220 USPQ 1075, 1076 (TTAB 1984)). Thus, without additional evidence, an applicant’s proprietary use of an acronym is not sufficient to establish that the acronym is readily understood to be

substantially synonymous with the descriptive wording it represents. *Modern Optics*, 234 F.2d 504, 506, 110 USPQ 293, 295 (finding the record unconvincing that CV is a generally recognized term for multifocal lenses and lens blanks). See also *In re BetaBatt Inc.*, 89 USPQ2d 1152 (TTAB 2008) (DEC found to be routinely used as an abbreviation for “direct energy conversion”); *Capital Project Mgmt. Inc. v. IMDISI Inc.*, 70 USPQ2d 1172 (TTAB 2003) (TIA found to be substantially synonymous with “time impact analysis”); *In re The Yacht Exch., Inc.*, 214 USPQ 406 (TTAB 1982) (MLS held descriptive for multiple listing services for yachts and boats); cf. *In re Harco Corp.*, 220 USPQ 1075 (TTAB 1984) (record insufficient to establish that CPL would be commonly understood as no more than an abbreviation of “computerized potential log”).

1209.03(i) Intended Users

A term that identifies a group to whom the applicant directs its goods or services is merely descriptive. See *In re Planalytics, Inc.*, 70 USPQ2d 1453 (TTAB 2004) (GASBUYER merely descriptive of risk management services in the field of pricing and purchasing natural gas); *Hunter Publ'g Co. v. Caulfield Publ'g Ltd.*, 1 USPQ2d 1996 (TTAB 1986) (SYSTEMS USER found merely descriptive of a trade journal directed toward users of large data processing systems; evidence sufficient to establish distinctiveness under §2(f)); *In re Camel Mfg. Co., Inc.*, 222 USPQ 1031 (TTAB 1984) (MOUNTAIN CAMPER held merely descriptive of retail mail-order services in the field of outdoor equipment and apparel).

1209.03(j) Phonetic Equivalent

A slight misspelling of a word will not turn a descriptive or generic word into a non-descriptive mark. See *In re ING Direct Bancorp*, 100 USPQ2d 1681, 1690 (TTAB 2011) (holding PERSON2PERSON PAYMENT generic for direct electronic funds transfers including electronic payment services between individuals); *In re Carlson*, 91 USPQ2d 1198, 1203 (TTAB 2009) (holding URBANHOUSING, in standard character form, would be perceived by consumers as the equivalent of the descriptive term URBAN HOUSING, rather than as including the separate word ZING); *In re Ginc UK Ltd.*, 90 USPQ2d 1472, 1475 (TTAB 2007) (“The generic meaning of “togs” not overcome by the misspelling of the term as TOGGS. . .”); *In re Hubbard Milling Co.*, 6 USPQ2d 1239 (TTAB 1987) (holding MINERAL-LYX generic for mineral licks for feeding livestock); *C-Thru Ruler Co. v. Needleman*, 190 USPQ 93 (E.D. Pa. 1976) (holding C-THRU to be the equivalent of “see-through” and, therefore, merely descriptive of transparent rulers and drafting aids).

1209.03(k) Laudatory Terms

Laudatory terms, those that attribute quality or excellence to goods or services, are merely descriptive under §2(e)(1). See *Duopross Meditech Corp. v. Inviro Medical Devices, Ltd.*, 695 F.3d 1247, 103 USPQ2d 1753, 1759 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (finding SNAP SIMPLY SAFER merely descriptive for “medical devices, namely, cannulae; medical, hypodermic, aspiration and injection needles; medical, hypodermic, aspiration and injection syringes”); *In re Nett Designs Inc.*, 236 F.3d 1339, 57 USPQ2d 1564 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (finding THE ULTIMATE BIKE RACK to be merely descriptive and, therefore, subject to disclaimer); *In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (finding THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA so highly laudatory and descriptive as applied to beer and ale that it is incapable of acquiring distinctiveness); *In re Positec Group Ltd.*, 108 USPQ2d 1161, 1172 (TTAB 2013) (applying the guidance set forth in *In re Phillips-Van Heusen Corp.*, 63 USPQ2d 1047, 1052 (TTAB 2002), the Board found SUPERJAWS to be merely descriptive for a variety of machine and hand tools including jaws); *In re Phillips-Van Heusen Corp.*, 63 USPQ2d at 1052 (concluding that “if the word ‘super’ is combined with a word which names the goods or services, or a principal component, grade or size thereof, then the composite term is considered merely descriptive of the goods or services, but if such is not strictly true, then the composite mark is regarded as suggestive of the products or services.”); *In re Best Software Inc.*, 58 USPQ2d 1314 (TTAB 2001) (BEST

and PREMIER in mark BEST! SUPPORTPLUS PREMIER merely descriptive of computer consultation and support services and thus subject to disclaimer); *In re Dos Padres Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 1860 (TTAB 1998) (QUESO QUESADILLA SUPREME merely descriptive of cheese); *Gen. Foods Corp. v. Ralston Purina Co.*, 220 USPQ 990 (TTAB 1984) (ORIGINAL BLEND merely descriptive of cat food).

1209.03(i) Telephone Numbers

If an applicant applies to register a designation that consists of a merely descriptive term with numerals in the form of an alphanumeric telephone number (e.g., 800, 888, or 900 followed by a word), the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(e)(1). See *In re Page*, 51 USPQ2d 1660 (TTAB 1999) (888 PATENTS merely descriptive of patent-related legal services). The fact that a designation is in the form of a telephone number is insufficient, by itself, to render it distinctive.

If the relevant term is merely descriptive, but not generic, the mark may be registered on the Principal Register with a proper showing of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), or on the Supplemental Register, if appropriate. See *Express Mortg. Brokers Inc. v. Simpson Mortg. Inc.*, 31 USPQ2d 1371, 1374 (E.D. Mich. 1994) (369-CASH held merely descriptive but shown to have acquired distinctiveness as applied to mortgage brokering and mortgage-related services). Of course, the designation must also be used in the manner of a mark. See [TMEP §§1202–1202.16](#) regarding use as a mark.

If the proposed mark is generic, the designation is unregistrable on either the Principal or the Supplemental Register. However, to support a refusal of registration on the ground that a telephone number is generic, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has held that it is not enough to show that the telephone number consists of a non-source-indicating area code and a generic term. The examining attorney must show evidence of the meaning the relevant purchasing public accords the proposed alphanumeric mark as a whole. *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1811 (Fed. Cir. 2001). See also *Dial-A-Mattress Franchise Corp. v. Page*, 880 F.2d 675, 11 USPQ2d 1644 (2d Cir. 1989) (use of confusingly similar telephone number enjoined). *But see Dranoff-Perlstein Assocs. v. Sklar*, 967 F.2d 852, 857, 23 USPQ2d 1174, 1178 (3d Cir. 1992) (“[W]e decline to adopt the position espoused by the Second Circuit that telephone numbers which correlate to generic terms may be protectible as trademarks.... If telephone numbers that correlate to generic terms were granted protection, the first firm in a given market to obtain such a telephone number would, merely by winning the race to the telephone company, gain an unfair advantage over its competitors.”) (footnotes omitted); *800 Spirits Inc. v. Liquor By Wire, Inc.*, 14 F. Supp. 2d 675 (D.N.J. 1998) (800 SPIRITS generic for “gift delivery service of alcohol beverages”).

1209.03(m) Domain Names

A mark comprised of an Internet domain name is registrable as a trademark or service mark only if it functions as an identifier of the source of goods or services. Portions of the uniform resource locator (“URL”), including the beginning, (“http://www.”) and the top-level Internet domain name (“TLD”) (e.g., “.com,” “.org,” “.edu,”) indicate an address on the World Wide Web, and, therefore, generally serve no source-indicating function. See [TMEP §§1215–1215.10](#) for further information.

If a TLD has three or more characters, it is known as a “generic top-level domain” or “gTLD.” However “generic” in this term does not refer to genericness in the trademark sense. The gTLD typically signifies the type of entity using the domain name. For example, the gTLD “.com” signifies to the public that the user of the domain name constitutes a commercial entity, “.edu” signifies an educational institution, “.biz” signifies a business, and “.org” signifies a non-commercial organization. These types of gTLDs, which merely indicate the type of entity using the gTLD, must be treated as non-source-indicating. Further, as the

number of available gTLDs is increased by the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers ("ICANN"), or if the nature of new gTLDs changes, the examining attorney must consider any potential source-indicating function of the gTLD and introduce evidence as to the significance of the gTLD. See [TMEP §§1215.02\(d\) 1215.02\(d\)\(iv\)](#) regarding marks comprised solely of gTLDs for domain-name registry operator and registrar services and www.icann.org for information about gTLDs. Cf. *In re theDot Commc'ns Network LLC*, 101 USPQ2d 1062, 1067 (TTAB 2011) (finding “.music conveys the commercial impression of a top-level domain name similar to .com, .net, etc.,” and that consumers would understand it to be a TLD in the field of music based on the current marketing environment which included evidence of a concerted effort to obtain TLD status for .music).

Because gTLDs generally indicate the type of entity using a given domain name, and therefore serve no source-indicating function, their addition to an otherwise unregistrable mark typically cannot render it registrable. *In re 1800Mattress.com IP LLC*, 586 F.3d 1359, 92 USPQ2d 1682 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (MATTRESS.COM generic for “online retail store services in the field of mattresses, beds, and bedding,” and applicant “presented no evidence that “.com” evoked anything but a commercial internet domain”); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (HOTELS.COM generic for “providing information for others about temporary lodging; [and] travel agency services, namely, making reservations and bookings for temporary lodging for others by means of telephone and the global computer network”); *In re Reed Elsevier Properties Inc.*, 482 F.3d 1376, 82 USPQ2d 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (LAWYERS.COM generic for “providing an online interactive database featuring information exchange in the fields of law, legal news and legal services”); *In re Oppedahl & Larson LLP*, 373 F.3d 1171, 71 USPQ2d 1370 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (PATENTS.COM merely descriptive of computer software for managing a database of records and for tracking the status of the records by means of the Internet); *In re Eddie Z's Blinds & Drapery, Inc.*, 74 USPQ2d 1037 (TTAB 2005) (BLINDSANDDRAPERY.COM generic for retail store services featuring blinds, draperies and other wall coverings, sold via the Internet); *In re Microsoft Corp.*, 68 USPQ2d 1195, 1203 (TTAB 2003) (“The combination of the specific term and TLD at issue, i.e., OFFICE and .NET, does not create any double entendre, incongruity, or any other basis upon which we can find the composite any more registrable than its separate elements. The combination immediately informs prospective purchasers that the software includes ‘office suite’ type software and is from an Internet business, i.e., a ‘.net’ type business.”); *In re CyberFinancial.Net, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1789, 1792 (TTAB 2002) (“Applicant seeks to register the generic term ‘bonds,’ which has no source-identifying significance in connection with applicant’s services, in combination with the top level domain indicator “.com,” which also has no source-identifying significance. And combining the two terms does not create a term capable of identifying and distinguishing applicant’s services.”); *In re Martin Container, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1058, 1061 (TTAB 2002) (“[N]either the generic term nor the domain indicator has the capability of functioning as an indication of source, and combining the two does not result in a compound term that has somehow acquired this capability.”).

However, there is no bright-line, per se rule that the addition of a gTLD to an otherwise descriptive mark will never, under any circumstances, operate to create a registrable mark. See *Oppedahl & Larson LLP*, 373 F.3d at 1175, 71 USPQ2d 1374. In rare instances, if the gTLD is capable of indicating a source, the addition of the source-indicating gTLD to an otherwise unregistrable mark may render it registrable.

Example: The addition of the TLD “.PETER” to CLOTHES to form the mark CLOTHES.PETER *would* create a registrable mark.

Cf. [TMEP §1215.02\(d\)](#). Additionally, the Federal Circuit has cautioned that in rare, exceptional circumstances, a term that is not distinctive by itself may acquire some additional meaning from the addition of a non-source-indicating gTLD such as “.com” or “.net.” *In re Steelbuilding.com*, 415 F.3d 1293, 1297, 75 USPQ2d 1420, 1422 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (STEELBUILDING.COM for “computerized on line retail services in the field of pre-engineered metal buildings and roofing systems” held highly descriptive, but not generic), citing *Oppedahl & Larson*, 373 F.3d at 1175–1176, 71 USPQ2d at 1373.

Thus, when examining domain-name marks, it is important to evaluate the commercial impression of the mark as a whole to determine whether the gTLD may be capable of source-indicating significance, and whether the composite mark conveys any distinctive source-identifying impression apart from its individual components. The examining attorney must introduce evidence as to the significance of the individual components, including the gTLD, but must also consider the significance of the composite to determine whether the addition of a gTLD has resulted in a mark that conveys a source-identifying impression. *See In re 1800Mattress.com*, 92 USPQ2d 1682 (affirming Board's conclusion that MATTRESS.COM was generic, where the Board considered each of the constituent words "mattress" and ".com" and determined that they were both generic, then considered the mark as a whole and determined that the combination added no new meaning, relying on the prevalence of the term "mattress.com" in the website addresses of several online mattress retailers who provide the same services as the applicant); *In re Hotels.com*, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (HOTELS.COM found generic, where the record contained various definitions of "hotel," printouts from hotel reservation search websites showing "hotels" as the equivalent of or included within "temporary lodging," as well as evidence from applicant's website); *In re DNI Holdings Ltd.*, 77 USPQ2d 1435 (TTAB 2005) (SPORTSBETTING.COM held generic for providing online gaming services and information about sports and gaming, with the Board finding that "applicant's own website uses the expression 'sports betting,' e.g., touting itself as 'the leader in online sports betting' and providing tips on 'sports betting' as a game of skill. Furthermore, as the Trademark Examining Attorney has demonstrated in this record, other entities competing with applicant also use the term 'sports betting' (and 'sportsbetting') in generic fashion in describing their wagering and information services").

See [TMEP §§1215.04](#) and [1215.05](#) for further discussion of gTLDs combined with descriptive or generic terminology.

1209.03(n) "America" or "American"

If "AMERICA" or "AMERICAN" appears in a phrase or slogan, the examining attorney must evaluate the entire mark to determine whether it is merely descriptive as laudatory or even incapable. *In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA so highly laudatory and descriptive as applied to beer and ale that it is incapable of acquiring distinctiveness); *In re Carvel Corp.*, 223 USPQ 65 (TTAB 1984) (AMERICA'S FRESHEST ICE CREAM held incapable for ice cream); *In re Wileswood, Inc.*, 201 USPQ 400 (TTAB 1978) (AMERICA'S BEST POPCORN! and AMERICA'S FAVORITE POPCORN! merely descriptive of unpopped popcorn). Typically, these marks primarily extol the quality or popularity of the goods or services and secondarily denote geographic origin. The examining attorney must look at each mark to determine whether it is capable, considering all relevant circumstances and case law.

See [TMEP §1210.02\(b\)\(iv\)](#) and cases cited therein regarding use of terms such as "AMERICA," "AMERICAN," and "USA" in a way that is primarily geographically descriptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), or deceptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#).

1209.03(o) "National," "International," "Global," and "Worldwide"

The terms "NATIONAL" and "INTERNATIONAL" have been held to be merely descriptive of services that are nationwide or international in scope. *See In re Chamber of Commerce of the U.S.*, 675 F.3d 1297, 102 USPQ2d 1217 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (NATIONAL CHAMBER merely descriptive of nationwide online directory services featuring information regarding local and state chambers of commerce and business and regulatory data analysis services for nationally promoting the interests of businesspersons or industry); *In re Institutional Investor, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 614 (TTAB 1986) (INTERNATIONAL BANKING INSTITUTE

for organizing seminars for bank leaders of major countries held incapable); *In re Billfish Int'l Corp.*, 229 USPQ 152 (TTAB 1986) (BILLFISH INTERNATIONAL CORPORATION merely descriptive of corporation involved with billfish on an international scale); *In re Nat'l Rent A Fence, Inc.*, 220 USPQ 479 (TTAB 1983) (NATIONAL RENT A FENCE merely descriptive of nationwide fence rental services); *BankAmerica Corp. v. Int'l Travelers Cheque Co.*, 205 USPQ 1233 (TTAB 1979) (INTERNATIONAL TRAVELERS CHEQUE merely descriptive of financial consulting services that are international in scope); *Nat'l Fid. Life Ins. v. Nat'l Ins. Trust*, 199 USPQ 691 (TTAB 1978) (NATIONAL INSURANCE TRUST merely descriptive of services of handling administrative matters in locating suitable insurance coverage for attorneys); *Jefferson Bankshares Inc. v. Jefferson Sav. Bank*, 14 USPQ2d 1443, 1447 (W.D. Va. 1989) (NATIONAL BANK merely descriptive of banking services); *Nat'l Auto. Club v. Nat'l Auto Club, Inc.*, 365 F. Supp. 879, 180 USPQ 777 (S.D.N.Y. 1973), *aff'd*, 502 F.2d 1162 (2d Cir. 1974) (NATIONAL merely descriptive of auto club services).

The terms “GLOBAL” and “WORLDWIDE” are also considered to be merely descriptive of services that are global or worldwide in scope.

Note: A map of the world or a depiction of a globe generally is not considered the pictorial equivalent of the terms “INTERNATIONAL,” “GLOBAL,” or “WORLDWIDE.”

1209.03(p) Function or Purpose

Terms that identify the function or purpose of a product or service may be merely descriptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#) or generic. *See, e.g., In re Gould Paper Corp.*, 834 F.2d 1017, 5 USPQ2d 1110 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (SCREENWIPE held generic for an anti-static cloth used for cleaning computer and television screens); *In re Box Solutions Corp.*, 79 USPQ2d 1953 (TTAB 2006) (SOLUTIONS merely descriptive of the purpose of applicant's computer hardware – to resolve a problem – and must be disclaimed); *In re Hunter Fan Co.*, 78 USPQ2d 1474 (TTAB 2006) (ERGONOMIC held merely descriptive of ceiling fans); *In re Cent. Sprinkler Co.*, 49 USPQ2d 1194 (TTAB 1998) (ATTIC generic for sprinklers installed primarily in attics); *In re Reckitt & Colman, N. Am. Inc.*, 18 USPQ2d 1389 (TTAB 1991) (PERMA PRESS generic for soil and stain removers for use on permanent press products); *In re Wallyball, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 87 (TTAB 1984) (WALLYBALL held descriptive of sports clothing and game equipment); *In re Nat'l Presto Indus., Inc.*, 197 USPQ 188 (TTAB 1977) (BURGER held merely descriptive of cooking utensils); *In re Orleans Wines, Ltd.*, 196 USPQ 516 (TTAB 1977) (BREADSPRED held merely descriptive of jams and jellies).

1209.03(q) Source or Provider of Goods or Services

Terms that identify the source or provider of a product or service may be merely descriptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#) or generic. *See, e.g., In re Wm. B. Coleman Co., Inc.*, 93 USPQ2d 2019, 2027 (TTAB 2010) (ELECTRIC CANDLE COMPANY for lighting fixtures “incapable of identifying source for electric candles because it is a term a purchaser would understand and could use to refer to the type of company that sells electric candles, and must be left available for use by other such companies selling electric candles”); *In re Major League Umpires*, 60 USPQ2d 1059 (TTAB 2001) (MAJOR LEAGUE UMPIRE merely descriptive of clothing, face masks, chest protectors, and shin guards); *In re Taylor & Francis [Publishers] Inc.*, 55 USPQ2d 1213 (TTAB 2000) (PSYCHOLOGY PRESS merely descriptive of books in the field of psychology); *In re The Paint Products Co.*, 8 USPQ2d 1863 (TTAB 1988) (PAINT PRODUCTS COMPANY incapable for paint); *In re The Phone Co., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 1027 (TTAB 1983) (THE PHONE COMPANY merely descriptive of telephones). *See also In re Omaha Nat'l Bank*, 819 F.2d 1117, 1119, 2 USPQ2d 1859, 1861 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (rejecting argument that descriptiveness should be limited to a quality or characteristic of the good or service itself and holding that it includes a designation descriptive of the service provider); *cf. In re Chamber of Commerce of the U.S.*, 675 F.3d 1297, 1301-02, 102 USPQ2d 1217, 1220 (Fed. Cir. 2012)

(NATIONAL CHAMBER held descriptive of “traditional chambers of commerce activities” of “promoting the interests of businessmen and businesswomen”).

1209.03(r) Retail Store and Distributorship Services

A term that is generic for goods is descriptive of retail store services featuring those goods, when the goods are not a significant item typically sold in the type of store in question. *In re Pencils Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 1410 (TTAB 1988) (PENCILS held merely descriptive of office supply store services). However, where the matter sought to be registered identifies the primary articles of a store or distributorship service, the term is considered generic. *See, e.g., In re Tires, Tires, Tires, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1153, (TTAB 2009) (TIRES TIRES TIRES generic for retail tire store services); *In re Lens.com, Inc.*, 83 USPQ2d 1444 (TTAB 2007) (LENS generic for “retail store services featuring contact eyewear products rendered via a global computer network”); *In re Eddie Z’s Blinds & Drapery, Inc.*, 74 USPQ2d 1037 (TTAB 2005) (BLINDSANDDRAPERY.COM generic for retail store services featuring blinds, draperies, and other wall coverings, conducted via the Internet); *In re Candy Bouquet Int’l, Inc.*, 73 USPQ2d 1883 (TTAB 2004) (CANDY BOUQUET generic for “retail, mail, and computer order services in the field of gift packages of candy”); *In re A La Vieille Russie, Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1895 (TTAB 2001) (RUSSIANART generic for dealership services in the field of fine art, antiques, furniture, and jewelry); *In re Log Cabin Homes Ltd.*, 52 USPQ2d 1206 (TTAB 1999) (LOG CABIN HOMES generic for retail outlets selling kits for building log homes); *In re Bonni Keller Collections Ltd.*, 6 USPQ2d 1224 (TTAB 1987) (LA LINGERIE generic for retail stores specializing in the sale of lingerie); *In re Wickerware, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 970 (TTAB 1985) (WICKERWARE generic for mail order and distributorship services in the field of products made of wicker); *In re Half Price Books, Records, Magazines, Inc.*, 225 USPQ 219 (TTAB 1984) (HALF PRICE BOOKS RECORDS MAGAZINES generic for retail book and record store services).

The examining attorney, therefore, must “analyze the term in relation to the services recited in the application, the context in which it is used and the possible significance it would have to the recipient of the services.” *Pencils*, 9 USPQ2d at 1411.

1209.03(s) Slogans

Slogans that are considered to be merely informational in nature, or to be common laudatory phrases or statements that would ordinarily be used in business or in the particular trade or industry, are not registrable. *See In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA so highly laudatory and descriptive as applied to beer and ale that it is incapable of acquiring distinctiveness). *See also* [TMEP §1202.04](#) and cases cited therein.

1209.03(t) Repetition of Descriptive or Generic Term

The mere repetition of a merely descriptive term does not negate the mere descriptiveness of the mark as a whole, unless the combination is such as to create a new and different commercial impression from that which is engendered by the separate components. *See In re Litehouse, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1471 (TTAB 2007) (CAESAR! CAESAR! merely descriptive of salad dressing); *In re Disc Jockeys, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1715 (TTAB 1992) (DJDJ merely descriptive of disc jockey services).

Likewise, a generic term may not be rendered non-generic simply by repeating the term. In finding TIRES TIRES TIRES generic for retail tire store services, the Board held that “[t] here is no valid reason to require an examining attorney to demonstrate that a designation composed solely of a repeating word has been used by others, when the examining attorney has demonstrated that the repeated term is generic and that the

repetition does not result in a designation with a different meaning.” *In re Tires, Tires, Tires, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1153 (TTAB 2009) .

1209.03(u) Punctuation

The use of a common punctuation mark is not sufficient to negate the mere descriptiveness of a term. *See Duopross Meditech Corp. v. Inviro Medical Devices, Ltd.*, 695 F.3d 1247, 103 USPQ2d 1753, 1757-58 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (finding SNAP!, with a broken exclamation point, merely descriptive of medical syringes using snap-off plungers); *In re Litehouse, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1471 (TTAB 2007) (CAESAR! CAESAR! merely descriptive of salad dressing); *In re Vanilla Gorilla, L.P.*, 80 USPQ2d 1637 (TTAB 2006) (finding that the presence of a hyphen in the mark “3-0’s” does not negate mere descriptiveness of mark for automobile wheel rims); *In re Promo Ink*, 78 USPQ2d 1301, 1305 (TTAB 2006) (finding that the exclamation mark in the mark PARTY AT A DISCOUNT! “simply emphasize[d] the descriptive nature of the mark” for advertising services in the field of private party venues); *In re S.D. Fabrics, Inc.*, 223 USPQ 54 (TTAB 1984) , *reopening denied* 223 USPQ 56 (1984) (finding that the presence of a slash in the mark DESIGNERS/FABRIC does not negate mere descriptiveness of mark for retail store services in field of fabrics); *In re Brock Residence Inns, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 920 (TTAB 1984) (FOR A DAY, A WEEK, A MONTH OR MORE! merely descriptive of hotel services); *In re Wileswood, Inc.*, 201 USPQ 400 (TTAB 1978) (AMERICA’S BEST POPCORN! and AMERICA’S FAVORITE POPCORN! merely descriptive of unpopped popcorn); *In re Samuel Moore & Co.*, 195 USPQ 237 (TTAB 1977) (SUPERHOSE! merely descriptive of hydraulic hose made of synthetic resinous material).

1209.03(v) Key Aspect of Goods or Services

A term may be generic for a genus of goods or services if the relevant public understands the term to refer to a key aspect of that genus, such as a key product that characterizes a particular genus of retail services or identifies a category of goods or services within the genus. *See In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 603-04, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1637-38 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (finding substantial evidence supported the Board’s conclusion that CHURRASCOS is generic because it refers to a key aspect of restaurant services featuring grilled meat); *In re 1800Mattress.com IP, LLC*, 586 F.3d 1359, 1361, 1363, 92 USPQ2d 1682, 1683-84 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (agreeing with the Board’s determination that “mattress” is generic as applied to online retail mattress store services because the term identifies a key aspect of the services); *In re Hotels.com*, 573 F.3d 1300, 1304, 91 USPQ2d 1532, 1535 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (agreeing with the Board’s determination that, when applied to information services and reservation services dealing with hotels, the term “hotels” is generic because it names a key aspect of the services); *In re Cent. Sprinkler Co.*, 49 USPQ2d 1194, 1199 (TTAB 1998) (finding ATTIC generic for automatic sprinklers for fire protection because the term “directly names the most important or central aspect or purpose of applicant’s goods” and would be understood by the relevant public as referring to a category of sprinklers); *see also In re Northland Aluminum Prods., Inc.*, 777 F.2d 1556, 1559-60, 227 USPQ 961, 963-64 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (affirming the Board’s holding that BUNDT is generic for ring cake mix).

1209.03(w) Stylization

Adding stylization to descriptive or generic wording does not render the resulting mark registrable on the Principal Register unless the stylization creates a commercial impression separate and apart from the impression made by the wording itself, or the applicant can otherwise show by evidence that the particular stylized display has acquired distinctiveness. *See In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 606, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1639-1640 (Fed. Cir. 2016); *In re Northland Aluminum Prods., Inc.*, 777 F.2d 1556, 1561, 227 USPQ 961, 964 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

If descriptive or generic wording is in fact presented in a distinctive display or design, the mark as a whole may be registered with a disclaimer of the unregistrable component. *See In re Sadoru Grp., Ltd.*, 105 USPQ2d 1484, 1486-88 (TTAB 2012).

If generic wording is stylized to create a display or design that is not inherently distinctive, but is nonetheless capable of functioning as a mark, the mark may be registered on the Supplemental Register with a disclaimer of the generic wording. *See In re Wella Corp.*, 565 F.2d 143, 144, 196 USPQ 7, 8 (C.C.P.A. 1977); *In re Sadoru Grp., Ltd.*, 105 USPQ2d at 1486-88; *In re Carolyn's Candles, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 356, 360-61 (TTAB 1980); [TMEP §1213.03\(b\)](#).

1209.04 Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks

Section 2(e)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), also prohibits registration of designations that are deceptively misdescriptive of the goods or services to which they are applied. The examining attorney must consider the mark in relation to the applicant's goods or services to determine whether a mark is deceptively misdescriptive.

The examining attorney must first determine whether a term is misdescriptive as applied to the goods or services. A term that conveys an immediate idea of an ingredient, quality, characteristic, function, or feature of the goods or services with which it is used is merely descriptive. *See* [TMEP §1209.01\(b\)](#). If a term immediately conveys such an idea but the idea is false, although plausible, then the term is deceptively misdescriptive and is unregistrable under §2(e)(1). *See In re AOP LLC*, 107 USPQ2d 1644 (TTAB 2013) (AOP deceptive, deceptively misdescriptive, or, alternatively, merely descriptive for wine, after the applicant failed to fully respond to the examining attorney's inquiries regarding the origin and certification of applicant's goods); *In re Woodward & Lothrop Inc.*, 4 USPQ2d 1412 (TTAB 1987) (CAMEO deceptively misdescriptive of jewelry); *In re Ox-Yoke Originals, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 352 (TTAB 1983) (G.I. deceptively misdescriptive of gun cleaning patches, rods, brushes, solvents, and oils); *see also In re Hinton*, 116 USPQ2d 1051, 1055 (TTAB 2015) (finding that the misdescription presented by the mark THCTEA is plausible and would be highly relevant to a consumer's purchasing decision); *In re Shniberg*, 79 USPQ2d 1309, 1311 (TTAB 2006) (“[T]he misdescription must concern a feature that would be relevant to a purchasing decision.”).

The Trademark Act does not prohibit the registration of misdescriptive terms unless they are deceptively misdescriptive, that is, unless persons who encounter the mark, as used on or in connection with the goods or services in question, are likely to believe the misrepresentation. *See Binney & Smith Inc. v. Magic Marker Indus., Inc.*, 222 USPQ 1003 (TTAB 1984) (LIQUID CRAYON held neither common descriptive name, nor merely descriptive, nor deceptively misdescriptive of coloring kits or markers).

As explained in the case of *In re Quady Winery Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1213, 1214 (TTAB 1984) :

The test for deceptive misdescriptiveness has two parts. First we must determine if the matter sought to be registered misdescribes the goods. If so, then we must ask if it is also deceptive, that is, if anyone is likely to believe the misrepresentation. *Gold Seal Co. v. Weeks*, 129 F. Supp. 928 (D.D.C. 1955), *aff'd sub nom. S.C. Johnson & Son v. Gold Seal Co.*, 230 F.2d 832 (D.C. Cir.) (*per curiam*), *cert. denied*, 352 U.S. 829 (1956), *superseded by statute on other grounds as stated in Aktieselskabet AF 21. November 2001 v. Fame Jeans Inc.*, 525 F.3d 8, 86 USPQ2d 1527, 1532 (D.C. Cir. 2008). A third question, used to distinguish between marks that are deceptive under Section 2(a) and marks that are deceptively misdescriptive under Section 2(e)(1), is whether the misrepresentation would materially affect the decision to purchase the goods. *Cf. In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53 (TTAB 1983).

Thus, if the identification of goods/services does not include the wording in the mark, the examining attorney must make of record evidence demonstrating why the mark is misdescriptive. Specifically, the record must show the meaning of the wording at issue and that the identification indicates that the applicant's goods/services lack the feature or characteristic. Examples of such evidence are dictionary definitions, LexisNexis® articles, Internet websites, advertising material, product information sheets, hang tags, point-of-purchase displays, and trade journals. The applicant's admission regarding its goods/services may also satisfy the first prong of the test.

The examining attorney must then prove that the description conveyed by the mark is plausible by demonstrating that consumers regularly encounter goods or services that contain the features or characteristics in the mark. For example, to support the believability element as to the mark LOVEE LAMB for seat covers that were not made of lambskin, the examining attorney provided evidence that seat covers can be and are made from lambskin. *See In re Budge Mfg. Co. Inc.*, 857 F.2d 773, 775, 8 USPQ2d 1259, 1260 (Fed. Cir. 1988). Excerpts from a LexisNexis® search for the phrases “organic clothing,” “organic fabric,” “organically grown cotton,” and “organic cotton” were used to prove that consumers were familiar with clothing and textiles from organically grown plants or plants free of chemical processing or treatment. *See In re Organik Techs., Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1690, 1693–94 (TTAB 1997). Applicant's own hang tags, labels, advertising, and product information may also provide evidence of the believability of the misdescription. *See In re Shapely, Inc.*, 231 USPQ 72, 75 (TTAB 1986) (concluding that statements on hangtags can be used to show the materiality of the misrepresentation in the purchasing decision); *Evans Products Co. v. Boise Cascade Corp.*, 218 USPQ 160, 164–5 (TTAB 1983) (finding that applicant's advertising materials and affidavit indicated that it did attempt to “adopt a mark [CEDAR RIDGE] which conveyed the impression of authentic cedar”).

If the misdescription represented by the mark is material to the decision to purchase the goods or use the services, then the mark must be refused registration under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1203.02](#) regarding deceptive marks, [TMEP §1203.02\(c\)](#) regarding the distinction between deceptive marks and deceptively misdescriptive marks, and [TMEP §§1203.02\(d\)–1203.02\(d\)\(ii\)](#) regarding determining materiality.

The examining attorney should consider and make of record, or require the applicant to make of record, all available information that shows the presence or absence, and the materiality, of a misrepresentation. *See Glendale Int'l Corp. v. United States Patent & Trademark Office*, 374 F. Supp. 2d 479, 486, 75 USPQ2d 1139, 1144 (E.D. VA 2005) (TITANIUM deceptively misdescriptive of recreational vehicles that do not contain titanium, where the examining attorney made of record articles which showed that titanium is a lightweight metal, and discussed the use or potential use of titanium in the automotive industry).

The mere fact that the true nature of the goods or services is revealed by other matter on the labels, advertisements, or other materials to which the mark is applied does not preclude a determination that a mark is deceptively misdescriptive. *See R. Neumann & Co. v. Overseas Shipments, Inc.*, 326 F.2d 786, 790, 140 USPQ 276, 279 (C.C.P.A. 1964) (DURA-HYDE held deceptive and deceptively misdescriptive of plastic material of leather-like appearance made into shoes regardless of the presence of tags stating that the material “outwears leather”); *In re Shniberg*, 79 USPQ2d 1309, 1313 (TTAB 2006) (SEPTEMBER 11, 2001 held deceptively misdescriptive of books and entertainment services which did not in any way cover the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001; the fact that the nature of the misdescription would become known after consumers studied applicant's books and entertainment services does not prevent the mark from being deceptively misdescriptive).

See also In re ALP of South Beach Inc., 79 USPQ2d 1009 (TTAB 2006) (holding that pre-sale deception may occur without a sale taking place based on the deception); *Nw. Golf Co. v. Acushnet Co.*, 226 USPQ 240 (TTAB 1985) (finding deception unlikely given alternative meanings of the mark and that even cursory

curiosity on the part of consumers would avoid any potential deception); *R.J. Reynolds Tobacco Co. v. Brown & Williamson Tobacco Corp.*, 226 USPQ 169 (TTAB 1985) (NEW LOOK not likely to deceive consumers into believing that “cigarettes” will actually offer anything like a “new look”); and *Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass’n v. Nat’l Hearing Aid Soc’y*, 224 USPQ 798 (TTAB 1984) (CERTIFIED HEARING AID AUDIOLOGIST held deceptive in that it implies the user of the mark is a certified audiologist) regarding the issue of deceptive misdescriptiveness.

Marks that have been refused registration pursuant to §2(e)(1) on the ground of deceptive misdescriptiveness may be registrable under §2(f) upon a showing of acquired distinctiveness, or on the Supplemental Register if appropriate. [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(f\)](#) and [1091](#). Similarly, marks that contain registrable matter in addition to deceptively misdescriptive components can be registered with a disclaimer of the deceptively misdescriptive matter, when appropriate. See [TMEP §1213.03\(a\)](#). Marks that are deceptive under §2(a) are not registrable on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register under any circumstances.

1210 Refusal on Basis of Geographic Significance

15 U.S.C. §1052 (Extract)

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it—

(a) Consists of or comprises ... deceptive ... matter;... or a geographical indication which, when used on or in connection with wines or spirits, identifies a place other than the origin of the goods and is first used on or in connection with wines or spirits by the applicant on or after [January 1, 1996]....

(e) Consists of a mark which ... (2) when used on or in connection with the goods of the applicant is primarily geographically descriptive of them, except as indications of regional origin may be registrable under section 1054 of this title, (3) when used on or in connection with the goods of the applicant is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of them....

Section 2(e)(2) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), prohibits registration on the Principal Register of a mark that is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods or services named in the application. See [TMEP §1210.01\(a\)](#).

Section 2(e)(3) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), prohibits registration of a mark that is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of the goods or services named in the application. See [TMEP §1210.01\(b\)](#). Prior to the amendment of the Trademark Act on January 1, 1994, by the North American Free Trade Agreement (“NAFTA”) Implementation Act, Public Law 103-182, 107 Stat. 2057, the statutory basis for refusal to register primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive marks was §2(e)(2).

Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), prohibits registration of a designation that consists of or comprises deceptive matter, as well as geographical indications which, when used on or in connection with wines or spirits, identify a place other than the origin of the goods. See [TMEP §§1210.01\(c\)](#) and [1210.08](#).

See [TMEP §1210.05\(c\)](#) regarding the distinction between marks that are primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) and marks that are deceptive under §2(a).

1210.01 Elements

1210.01(a) Geographically Descriptive Marks – Test

To establish a prima facie case for refusal to register a mark as primarily geographically descriptive, the examining attorney must show that:

- (1) the primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location (*see* [TMEP §§1210.02–1210.02\(b\)\(iv\)](#));
- (2) the goods or services originate in the place identified in the mark (*see* [TMEP §1210.03](#)); and
- (3) purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the geographic place identified in the mark (*see* [TMEP §§1210.04–1210.04\(d\)](#)). *Note:* If the mark is remote or obscure, the public is unlikely to make a goods/place or services/place association (*see* [TMEP §1210.04\(c\)](#)).

1210.01(b) Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks – Test

To support a refusal to register a mark as primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive, the examining attorney must show that:

- (1) the primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location (*see* [TMEP §§1210.02–1210.02\(b\)\(iv\)](#));
- (2) the goods or services do not originate in the place identified in the mark (*see* [TMEP §1210.03](#));
- (3) purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the geographic place identified in the mark (*see* [TMEP §§1210.04–1210.04\(d\)](#)). *Note:* If the mark is remote or obscure, the public is unlikely to make a goods/place or services/place association (*see* [TMEP §1210.04\(c\)](#)); and
- (4) the misrepresentation is a material factor in a significant portion of the relevant consumer’s decision to buy the goods or use the services (*see* [TMEP §§1210.05\(c\)–\(c\)\(ii\)](#)).

In re Miracle Tuesday, LLC, 695 F.3d 1339, 1343, 104 USPQ2d 1330, 1332 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1350–54, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1490–95 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *In re Les Halles De Paris J.V.*, 334 F.3d 1371, 67 USPQ2d 1539 (Fed. Cir. 2003); *In re Cal. Innovations Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1334, 66 USPQ2d 1853 (Fed. Cir. 2003), *reh’g denied*, 2003 U.S. App. LEXIS 18883 (Fed. Cir. Aug. 20, 2003).

Prior to the amendment of the Trademark Act by the NAFTA Implementation Act, it was not necessary to show that the misrepresentation was likely to be a material factor in the consumer’s decision to buy the goods or use the services in order to establish that a mark was primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive. However, in *California Innovations*, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit held that in view of the NAFTA amendments, a showing of public deception is required to establish that a mark is unregistrable under §2(e)(3). *Cal. Innovations*, 329 F.3d at 1339, 66 USPQ2d at 1856.

See [TMEP §1210.05\(c\)](#) for further information regarding the distinction between marks comprising deceptive matter under §2(a) and marks comprising primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive matter under §2(e)(3), and [TMEP §§1210.05\(c\)–1210.05\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the showing that a misrepresentation of the origin of the goods or services is likely to affect the purchaser’s decision to buy the goods or use the services.

1210.01(c) Geographically Deceptive Marks – Test

As noted in [TMEP §1210.05\(a\)](#), the test for determining whether a mark is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) is the same as the test for determining whether a mark is deceptive under §2(a). To support a refusal of registration on the ground that a geographic term is deceptive under §2(a), the examining attorney must show that:

- (1) the primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location (*see* [TMEP §§1210.02–1210.02\(b\)\(iv\)](#));

- (2) the goods or services do not originate in the place named in the mark (*see* [TMEP §1210.03](#));
- (3) purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the geographic place identified in the mark (*see* [TMEP §§1210.04–1210.04\(d\)](#)). *Note:* If the mark is remote or obscure, the public is unlikely to make a goods/place or services/place association (*see* [TMEP §1210.04\(c\)](#)); and
- (4) the misrepresentation is a material factor in a significant portion of the relevant consumer’s decision to buy the goods or use the services (*see* [TMEP §§1210.05\(c\)–\(c\)\(ii\)](#)).

In re Miracle Tuesday, LLC, 695 F.3d 1339, 1343, 104 USPQ2d 1330, 1332 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1350–54, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1490–95 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *Institut Nat’l des Appellations D’Origine v. Vintners Int’l Co., Inc.*, 958 F.2d 1574, 1580, 22 USPQ2d 1190, 1195 (Fed. Cir. 1992), *reh’g denied*, No. 91-1332, 1992 U.S. App. LEXIS 8514 (Fed. Cir. 1992); *In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53 (TTAB 1983) , *recon. denied*, 223 USPQ 191 (TTAB 1984). *See also In re Cal. Innovations Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1334, 66 USPQ2d 1853 (Fed. Cir. 2003), *reh’g denied*, 2003 U.S. App. LEXIS 18883 (Fed. Cir. Aug. 20, 2003).

See [TMEP §1210.05\(a\)](#) for further information regarding the distinction between marks comprising deceptive matter under §2(a) and marks comprising primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive matter under §2(e)(3), and [TMEP §§1210.05\(c\)–\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the showing that a misrepresentation of the origin of the goods or services is likely to affect the purchaser’s decision to buy the goods or use the services.

1210.02 Primarily Geographic Significance

The significance of a mark is primarily geographic if it identifies a real and significant geographic location and the primary meaning of the mark is the geographic meaning.

1210.02(a) Geographic Locations

A geographic location may be any term identifying a country, city, state, continent, locality, region, area, or street.

Region. A particular, identifiable region (e.g. , “Midwest” or “Mid-Atlantic”) is a geographic location. *In re Pan-O-Gold Baking Co.*, 20 USPQ2d 1761 (TTAB 1991) (holding that the primary significance of “New England” is geographic). On the other hand, vague geographic terms (e.g. , “Global,” “National,” “International,” or “World”) are *not* considered to be primarily geographic, though they may be merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1). *See* [TMEP §1209.03\(o\)](#).

Nicknames. A geographic nickname (e.g., “Big Apple” or “Motown”), or an abbreviation or other variant of the name of a geographic location, is treated the same as the actual name of the geographic location, if it is likely to be perceived as such by the purchasing public. *See In re Spirits of New Merced, LLC*, 85 USPQ2d 1614 (TTAB 2007) (holding that “Yosemite” – a well recognized and frequently used shorthand reference to Yosemite National Park and the Yosemite region in general – conveys a readily recognizable geographic significance); *In re Carolina Apparel*, 48 USPQ2d 1542 (TTAB 1998) (CAROLINA APPAREL primarily geographically descriptive of retail clothing store services, where the evidence showed that “Carolina” is used to indicate either the state of North Carolina or the state of South Carolina). *But see In re Trans Cont’l Records, Inc.*, 62 USPQ2d 1541 (TTAB 2002) (O-TOWN found to be a “relatively obscure term” that would *not* be perceived by a significant portion of the purchasing public as a geographic reference to Orlando, Florida).

Adjectives. The adjectival form of the name of a geographic location is considered primarily geographic if it is likely to be perceived as such by the purchasing public. See *In re Joint-Stock Co. “Baik,”* 80 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2006) (BAIKALSKAYA – the Russian equivalent of “from Baikal” or “Baikal’s” – held primarily geographically descriptive of vodka); *In re Jack’s Hi-Grade Foods, Inc.,* 226 USPQ 1028 (TTAB 1985) (NEAPOLITAN held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of sausage emanating from the United States, where the term is defined as “of or pertaining to Naples in Italy”); *In re BankAmerica Corp.,* 231 USPQ 873 (TTAB 1986) (BANK OF AMERICA held primarily geographically descriptive).

Maps. A map or outline of a geographic area is also treated the same as the actual name of the geographic location if it is likely to be perceived as such. See *In re Canada Dry Ginger Ale, Inc.,* 86 F.2d 830, 32 USPQ 49 (C.C.P.A. 1936) (map of Canada held to be the equivalent of the word “Canada”). But see *In re Texsun Tire & Battery Stores, Inc.,* 229 USPQ 227, 229 (TTAB 1986) (holding that if the depiction of a map is fanciful or so integrated with other elements of a mark that it forms a unitary whole, then the map should not be considered primarily geographically descriptive).

Coined Locations. The mere fact that a term may be the name of a place that has a physical location does not necessarily make that term geographic under §2(e)(2). For example, names of amusement parks, residential communities, and business complexes which are coined by the applicant, must not be refused. *In re Pebble Beach Co.,* 19 USPQ2d 1687 (TTAB 1991) (17 MILE DRIVE not a geographic term, where it refers to a specific location wholly owned by applicant, and was coined by applicant to refer both to applicant’s services and the place where the services were performed).

1210.02(b) Primary Significance

To support a refusal to register geographic matter, the Trademark Act requires that the mark be *primarily* geographic, that is, that its primary significance to the relevant consumers in the United States be that of a geographic location. [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(2\)](#) and [\(3\)](#). See, e.g., *In re Newbridge Cutlery Co.,* 776 F.3d 854, 113 USPQ2d 1445 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (finding evidence insufficient to establish that Newbridge, Ireland is a place known generally to the relevant American public); *In re Wada,* 194 F.3d 1297, 52 USPQ2d 1539 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (NEW YORK held to have primarily geographic significance; Court was not persuaded by assertions that the composite NEW YORK WAYS GALLERY evokes a gallery that features New York “ways” or “styles”); *In re Societe Generale des Eaux Minerales de Vittel S.A.,* 824 F.2d 957, 3 USPQ2d 1450 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (evidence insufficient to establish that public in United States would perceive VITTEL as the name of a place where cosmetic products originate; Vittel, France found to be obscure); *In re Morinaga Nyugyo Kabushiki Kaisha,* 120 USPQ2d 1738 (TTAB 2016) (reversing a §2(e)(3) refusal of a mark containing the wording MT. RAINIER THE MOUNTAIN OF SEATTLE ESPRESSO & MILK, noting that “[w]hile there is no doubt that the term SEATTLE identifies a generally known geographic location, as it is used in the context of Applicant’s mark, we do not find that the relevant public would consider it to indicate of the origin of the goods”); *In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc.,* 85 USPQ2d 1917 (TTAB 2008) (NORMANDIE CAMEMBER, with CAMEMBER disclaimed, held primarily geographically descriptive of cheese because NORMANDIE is the French spelling for Normandy, consumers would recognize NORMANDIE as the equivalent of Normandy, the primary significance of Normandy is a known geographic place in France, and CAMEMBER is generic for applicant’s goods; Board was not persuaded that the primary significance of NORMANDIE was the ocean liner SS Normandie); *In re Cotter & Co.,* 228 USPQ 202 (TTAB 1985) (the primary significance of WESTPOINT is as the name of the United States Military Academy rather than the town in New York).

When the primary significance of a geographic designation identifying a city is that of a geographic location, the designation may include locations in the metropolitan area of the identified city.

When it is not clear on its face that the primary significance of the mark is that of a geographic location, the record must include substantial evidence to support a conclusion that the mark identifies a place “known generally to the relevant American public.” See *In re Newbridge Cutlery*, 776 F.3d at 862, 113 USPQ2d at 1450. A showing “...that the population of the location is sizable and/or that members of the consuming public have ties to the location (to use the example in *Loew’s*: that Durango, Mexico, would be recognized by “the Mexican population of this country”) is evidence that a location is generally known.” *Id.* at 861, 113 USPQ2d at 1449. A gazetteer entry alone, or a description of the place on the internet, does not necessarily evidence that a place is generally known to the relevant American consuming public. *Id.* at 863, 113 USPQ2d at 1450. Such evidence must, therefore, be supported by evidence showing the extent to which relevant American consumers would be familiar with the location. *Id.* at 862, 113 USPQ2d at 1450.

The fact that the proposed mark has meaning or usage other than as a geographic term does not necessarily alter its primarily geographic significance. See [TMEP §1210.02\(b\)\(i\)](#).

When a geographic term is combined with additional matter (e.g., wording and/or a design element), the examining attorney must determine the primary significance of the composite. See [TMEP §§1210.02\(c\)–1210.02\(c\)\(iii\)](#).

See [TMEP §1210.04\(c\)](#) regarding obscure or remote geographic marks.

1210.02(b)(i) Other Meanings

The fact that the mark has meaning or usage other than as a geographic term does not necessarily alter its primarily geographic significance. Thus, if a geographic term has another meaning, the examining attorney must determine whether the *primary* significance is geographic. If so, registration must be refused under §2(e)(2), §2(e)(3), or §2(a). See, e.g., *In re Hollywood Lawyers Online*, 110 USPQ2d 1852, 1858 (TTAB 2014) (finding no allusion to the alternative meaning of “Hollywood” referencing the film industry when viewed in the context of applicant’s services and without additional elements in the mark to detract from the geographic significance); *In re Opryland USA Inc.*, 1 USPQ2d 1409 (TTAB 1986) (THE NASHVILLE NETWORK held primarily geographically descriptive of television program production and distribution services, the Board finding that the primary significance of the term was Nashville, Tennessee, and not that of a style of music); *In re Cookie Kitchen, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 873, 874 (TTAB 1986) (the fact that MANHATTAN identifies an alcoholic cocktail does not alter the primary significance of that term as a borough of New York City); *In re Jack’s Hi-Grade Foods, Inc.*, 226 USPQ 1028, 1029 (TTAB 1985) (finding that the fact that NEAPOLITAN identifies, among other things, a type of ice cream, does not alter the primary significance of that term as meaning “of or pertaining to Naples in Italy”).

However, if the most prominent meaning or significance of the mark is not geographic, or if the mark creates a separate readily understood meaning that is not geographic, registration must not be refused under §2(e)(2), §2(e)(3), or §2(a). See *In re Newbridge Cutlery Co.*, 776 F.3d 854, 113 USPQ2d 1445 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (finding it less likely that Newbridge (a town in Ireland) is generally known as the name of a place given its other meanings); *In re Morinaga Nyugyo Kabushiki Kaisha*, 120 USPQ2d 1738 (TTAB 2016) (reversing a §2(e)(3) refusal of a mark containing the wording MT. RAINIER THE MOUNTAIN OF SEATTLE ESPRESSO & MILK, noting that “[w]hile there is no doubt that the term SEATTLE identifies a generally known geographic location, as it is used in the context of Applicant’s mark, we do not find that the relevant public would consider it to indicate of the origin of the goods”); *In re Int’l Taste Inc.*, 53 USPQ2d 1604, 1605–06 (TTAB 2000) (finding doubt as to the primary significance of HOLLYWOOD because of other prominent, significant meaning of HOLLYWOOD as referring to the entertainment industry in general, with the doubt resolved in favor of the applicant); *In re Urbano*, 51 USPQ2d 1776, 1780 (TTAB 1999) (finding the primary significance of SYDNEY 2000, used for advertising, business, and communication

services, is as a reference to the Olympic Games, not to the name of a place); *In re Jim Crockett Promotions Inc.*, 5 USPQ2d 1455, 1456 (TTAB 1987) (finding that the primary significance of THE GREAT AMERICAN BASH for promoting, producing, and presenting professional wrestling matches, is to suggest something of desirable quality or excellence rather than to describe the geographic origin of the services); *In re Dixie Ins. Co.*, 223 USPQ 514, 516 (TTAB 1984) (DIXIE held not primarily geographically descriptive of property and casualty underwriting services, where the examining attorney provided no evidence to show that the geographical significance of DIXIE was its primary significance); *Hyde Park Clothes, Inc. v. Hyde Park Fashions, Inc.*, 93 USPQ 250 (S.D.N.Y. 1951) (holding that the primary significance of HYDE PARK for men's suits is to suggest that the product is stylish or of high quality rather than to provide information about geographic origin), *aff'd*, 204 F.2d 223, 97 USPQ 246 (2d Cir. 1953).

1210.02(b)(i)(A) Surname Significance

A term's geographic significance may not be its primary significance if the term also has surname significance. *See In re Hamilton Pharm. Ltd.*, 27 USPQ2d 1939, 1943 (TTAB 1993) (HAMILTON held primarily merely a surname, even though the term had some geographical connotations); *In re Colt Indus. Operating Corp.*, 195 USPQ 75 (TTAB 1977) (FAIRBANKS held not primarily merely a surname because the geographical significance of the mark was determined to be just as dominant as its surname significance).

1210.02(b)(ii) More Than One Geographic Location With Same Name

The fact that the mark identifies more than one geographic location does not necessarily detract from the term's primary geographic significance. *See, e.g., In re Loew's Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 226 USPQ 865 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (DURANGO held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of chewing tobacco not grown in Durango, Mexico, where the evidence of record showed that tobacco is a crop produced and marketed in that area, even though there is more than one place named Durango); *In re Cambridge Digital Sys.*, 1 USPQ2d 1659, 1662 (TTAB 1986) (CAMBRIDGE DIGITAL and design held primarily geographically descriptive of computer systems and parts thereof, where applicant's place of business is Cambridge, Massachusetts, even though there is more than one Cambridge).

1210.02(b)(iii) Non-Geographic Characteristics of Goods or Services

Geographic matter may serve to designate a kind or type of goods or services, or to indicate a style or design that is a feature of the goods or services, rather than to indicate their geographic origin. For example, the geographic components in terms such as "dotted swiss," "Boston baked beans," "Swiss cheese," "Early American design," and "Italian spaghetti" are not understood as indicating the geographic origin of the goods but, rather, a particular type or style of product (regardless of where the product is produced). *See Forschner Grp. Inc. v. Arrow Trading Co. Inc.*, 30 F.3d 348, 356, 31 USPQ2d 1614, 1619 (2d Cir. 1994), *aff'd*, 124 F.3d 402, 43 USPQ2d 1942 (2d Cir. 1997) (finding that SWISS ARMY KNIFE refers to a knife used by the Swiss Army, not an Army Knife from Switzerland); *Institut Nat'l des Appellations D'Origine v. Vintners Int'l Co., Inc.*, 958 F.2d 1574, 1580, 22 USPQ2d 1190, 1195 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (finding evidence showing that Chablis is the name of a region in France insufficient to establish that CHABLIS WITH A TWIST is geographically deceptive of wine under §2(a), where evidence showed that the term "Chablis" would be perceived by consumers in the United States as the generic name for a type of wine with the general characteristics of French chablis); *Hyde Park Clothes, Inc. v. Hyde Park Fashions, Inc.*, 93 USPQ 250 (S.D.N.Y. 1951), *aff'd*, 204 F.2d 223, 97 USPQ 246 (2d Cir. 1953), *cert. denied*, 346 U.S. 827, 99 USPQ 491 (1953) (primary significance of HYDE PARK for men's suits is to suggest that the product is stylish or of high quality rather than to provide information about geographic origin).

When geographic terms are used in circumstances in which it is clear that they are meant to convey some meaning other than geographic origin, registration must not be refused on the basis of geographical descriptiveness or misdescriptiveness. However, there may be some other basis for refusal; for example, the terms may be merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive of the goods or services under §2(e)(1) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#). *In re MBNA Am. Bank, N.A.*, 340 F.3d 1328, 67 USPQ2d 1778 (Fed. Cir. 2003), *reh'g denied*, 2004 U.S. App. LEXIS 2187 (Fed. Cir. Jan. 12, 2004) (MONTANA SERIES and PHILADELPHIA SERIES are merely descriptive of “credit card services featuring credit cards depicting scenes or subject matter of, or relating to” the places named in the marks); *In re Cox Enters. Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1040 (TTAB 2007) (applicant’s mark, THEATL, is simply a compressed version of the term “THE ATL,” which is a nickname for the city of Atlanta, and is merely descriptive of the subject matter of applicant’s publications); *In re Busch Entm’t Corp.*, 60 USPQ2d 1130 (TTAB 2000) (EGYPT merely descriptive of subject matter or motif of amusement park services). See [TMEP §§1209–1209.04](#) regarding marks that are merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1).

In rare circumstances, it may be unclear whether the primary significance of the term is geographic or merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive. In such cases, the examining attorney may refuse registration on both grounds, in the alternative.

1210.02(b)(iv) “America” or “American” and Similar Terms in Marks

When terms such as “AMERICA,” “AMERICAN,” and “USA” appear in marks, determining whether the term or the entire mark should be considered geographic can be particularly difficult. There is no simple or mechanical answer to the question of how to treat “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN” in a mark. The examining attorney must evaluate each mark on a case-by-case basis. The examining attorney must consider the entire context, the type of goods or services at issue, the geographic origin of the goods or services and, most importantly, the overall commercial impression engendered by the mark at issue. The following principles, developed in the case law, should provide guidance in reaching a judgment in a given case.

- (1) If “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN” is used in a way that primarily denotes the United States origin of the goods or services, then the term is primarily geographically descriptive. *See, e.g., Am. Diabetes Ass’n, Inc. v. Nat’l Diabetes Ass’n*, 533 F. Supp. 16, 214 USPQ 231 (E.D. Pa. 1981), *aff’d*, 681 F.2d 804 (3d Cir. 1982) (AMERICAN DIABETES ASSOCIATION held primarily geographically descriptive); *In re Monograms Am., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1317 (TTAB 1999) (MONOGRAMS AMERICA primarily geographically descriptive of consultation services for owners of monogramming shops); *In re BankAmerica Corp.*, 231 USPQ 873 (TTAB 1986) (BANK OF AMERICA held primarily geographically descriptive); *Am. Paper & Plastic Products, Inc. v. Am. Automatic Vending Corp.*, 152 USPQ 117 (TTAB 1966) (AMERICAN AUTOMATIC VENDING held primarily geographically descriptive). One commentator refers to such marks as exhibiting an “unadorned” use of “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN.” J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition*, §14:11 (4th ed. 2006). Many service marks (e.g., association-type marks) fall squarely into this category. *See, e.g., In re U.S. Cargo, Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 1702 (TTAB 1998) (U.S. CARGO primarily geographically descriptive of towable trailers carrying cargo and vehicles).
- (2) If a composite mark does not primarily convey geographic significance overall, or if “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN” is used in a nebulous or suggestive manner, then it is inappropriate to treat “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN” as primarily geographically descriptive. *See, e.g., Hamilton-Brown Shoe Co. v. Wolf Bros. & Co.*, 240 U.S. 251 (1916) (THE AMERICAN GIRL held not primarily geographically descriptive for shoes); *Am. Plan Corp. v. State Loan & Fin. Corp.*, 365 F.2d 635, 150 USPQ 767 (3d Cir. 1966), *cert. denied*, 385 U.S. 1011, 152 USPQ 844 (1967) (AMERICAN PLAN CORPORATION held not primarily geographically descriptive for insurance brokerage

- services); *Wilco Co. v. Automatic Radio Mfg. Co., Inc.*, 255 F. Supp. 625, 151 USPQ 24 (D. Mass. 1966) (ALL AMERICAN held not primarily geographically descriptive); *In re Jim Crockett Promotions Inc.*, 5 USPQ2d 1455 (TTAB 1987) (THE GREAT AMERICAN BASH held not primarily geographically descriptive of wrestling exhibitions). The introduction of a nuance, even a subtle one, may remove a mark from the primarily geographically descriptive category. This area calls for the most difficult analysis. The examining attorney must determine whether the overall commercial impression is something other than primarily geographic – for example, due to double meanings or shades of suggestive meanings.
- (3) If “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN” is used in virtually any manner with goods or services that are not from the United States, then the examining attorney should determine whether the term is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) and/or deceptive under §2(a). *See, e.g., Singer Mfg. Co. v. Birginal-Bigsby Corp.*, 319 F.2d 273, 138 USPQ 63 (C.C.P.A. 1963) (AMERICAN BEAUTY held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive when used on Japanese-made sewing machines); *In re Biessecci S.p.A.*, 12 USPQ2d 1149 (TTAB 1989) (AMERICAN SYSTEM and design, with a disclaimer of AMERICAN, held deceptive for clothing manufactured in Italy). *Cf. In re Salem China Co.*, 157 USPQ 600 (TTAB 1968) (AMERICAN LIMOGES held deceptive under §2(a) when used on china not made in Limoges, France). In this situation, even marks that arguably convey a non-geographic commercial impression must be viewed with great skepticism.
- (4) If “AMERICA” or “AMERICAN” appears in a phrase or slogan, the examining attorney must evaluate the entire mark to determine whether it is merely descriptive as laudatory, or even incapable. *In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA so highly laudatory and descriptive as applied to beer and ale that it is incapable of acquiring distinctiveness); *In re Carvel Corp.*, 223 USPQ 65 (TTAB 1984) (AMERICA’S FRESHEST ICE CREAM held incapable); *In re Wileswood, Inc.*, 201 USPQ 400 (TTAB 1978) (AMERICA’S BEST POPCORN! and AMERICA’S FAVORITE POPCORN! held merely descriptive of unpopped popcorn); *Kotzin v. Levi Strauss & Co.*, 111 USPQ 161 (Comm’r Pats. 1956) (AMERICA’S FINEST JEANS and AMERICA’S FINEST for overalls held not confusingly similar and incapable by inference). Typically these marks primarily extol the quality or popularity of the goods or services and secondarily denote geographic origin. See [TMEP §1209.03\(n\)](#) regarding use of terms such as “AMERICA” and “AMERICAN” in a way that is merely descriptive or generic.

1210.02(c) Geographic Terms Combined With Additional Matter

A geographic composite mark is one composed of geographic matter coupled with additional matter (e.g., wording and/or a design element). When examining such a mark, the examining attorney must determine the primary significance of the composite. *See In re Save Venice New York Inc.*, 259 F.3d 1346, 59 USPQ2d 1778 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (THE VENICE COLLECTION and SAVE VENICE INC. with an image of the winged Lion of St. Mark, for various goods, held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of products that do not originate in Venice, Italy); *In re Wada*, 194 F.3d 1297, 52 USPQ2d 1539 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (NEW YORK WAYS GALLERY, with a disclaimer of NEW YORK, held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of backpacks, handbags, purses, and similar items); *In re Bacardi & Co. Ltd.*, 48 USPQ2d 1031 (TTAB 1997) (HAVANA SELECT, HABANA CLASICO, OLD HAVANA, HAVANA PRIMO, and HAVANA CLIPPER primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of rum); *In re Perry Mfg. Co.*, 12 USPQ2d 1751 (TTAB 1989) (PERRY NEW YORK and design, with a disclaimer of NEW YORK, held deceptive for various items of clothing that originate in North Carolina, and have no connection with New York, because of the renown of New York in the apparel industry); *In re Biessecci S.p.A.*, 12 USPQ2d 1149 (TTAB 1989) (AMERICAN SYSTEM and design of running man, for clothing manufactured in Italy, held deceptive).

See [TMEP §§1210.06–1210.06\(b\)](#) regarding the procedure for examining geographic composites.

1210.02(c)(i) Two Geographic Terms Combined

When two geographic terms are combined in the same mark, the primary significance of the composite may still be geographic, if purchasers would believe that the goods/services originate from or are rendered in both of the locations named in the mark. *See In re Narada Productions, Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1801, 1803 (TTAB 2001) (CUBA L.A. primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of musical recordings and live musical performances that do not originate in Cuba or Los Angeles, the Board finding that purchasers would understand the composite as a reference to the two places named rather than to “some mythical place called ‘Cuba L.A.’”); *In re London & Edinburgh Ins. Grp. Ltd.*, 36 USPQ2d 1367 (TTAB 1995) (LONDON & EDINBURGH INSURANCE primarily geographically descriptive of insurance and underwriting services that are rendered or originate in the cities of London and Edinburgh).

Repeating a geographical term does not alter the geographical significance of that term. *In re Juleigh Jeans Sportswear Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1694 (TTAB 1992) (LONDON LONDON held deceptive for clothing having no connection with London, given the renown of London as a center for contemporary as well as traditional fashions).

1210.02(c)(ii) Geographic Terms Combined With Descriptive or Generic Matter

Generally, the addition of a highly descriptive or generic term to the name of a geographic place does not alter its primarily geographic significance. *In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1917 (TTAB 2008) (NORMANDIE CAMEMBERT with CAMEMBERT disclaimed, held primarily geographically descriptive of cheese because Normandy, France was famous for cheese and the Board presumed that the goods would originate there since applicant failed to submit information about the origin of the goods); *In re JT Tobacconists*, 59 USPQ2d 1080 (TTAB 2001) (MINNESOTA CIGAR COMPANY primarily geographically descriptive of cigars); *In re Carolina Apparel*, 48 USPQ2d 1542 (TTAB 1998) (CAROLINA APPAREL primarily geographically descriptive of retail clothing store services); *In re Chalk’s Int’l Airlines Inc.*, 21 USPQ2d 1637 (TTAB 1991) (PARADISE ISLAND AIRLINES held primarily geographically descriptive of the transportation of passengers and goods by air, because the applicant’s services included flights to and from Paradise Island, Bahamas, even though the flights were not based there); *In re Wine Soc’y of Am. Inc.*, 12 USPQ2d 1139 (TTAB 1989) (THE WINE SOCIETY OF AMERICA held primarily geographically descriptive of wine club membership services); *In re Cal. Pizza Kitchen Inc.*, 10 USPQ2d 1704 (TTAB 1988) (CALIFORNIA PIZZA KITCHEN, with a disclaimer of PIZZA KITCHEN, held primarily geographically descriptive of restaurant services); *In re Cambridge Digital Sys.*, 1 USPQ2d 1659 (TTAB 1986) (CAMBRIDGE DIGITAL and design, with DIGITAL disclaimed, held primarily geographically descriptive of computer systems and parts thereof).

1210.02(c)(iii) Arbitrary, Fanciful, or Suggestive Composites

If, when viewed as a whole, a composite mark would not be likely to be perceived as identifying the geographic origin of the goods or services (i.e., the mark as a whole is not primarily geographically descriptive, primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive, or deceptive), then the mark is regarded as arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive. *See In re Sharky’s Drygoods Co.*, 23 USPQ2d 1061 (TTAB 1992) (PARIS BEACH CLUB, applied to T-shirts and sweatshirts, not deceptive under §2(a), the Board reasoning that because Paris is not located on an ocean or lake, and does not have a beach, the juxtaposition of “Paris” with “Beach Club” results in an incongruous phrase which purchasers would view as a humorous mark, a take off on the

fact that Paris is known for haute couture. Thus, purchasers would not expect T-shirts and sweatshirts to originate in the city of Paris).

1210.03 Geographic Origin of the Goods or Services

The question of whether a term is primarily geographically descriptive under §2(e)(2), primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3), or geographically deceptive under §2(a) depends on whether the mark identifies the place from which the goods or services originate. Goods or services may be said to “originate” from a geographic location if, for example, they are manufactured, produced, or sold there. *See Fred Hayman Beverly Hills Inc. v. Jacques Bernier Inc.*, 38 USPQ2d 1691 (TTAB 1996) (RODEO DRIVE held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of perfume, where opposer’s evidence showed that a significant number of Rodeo Drive retailers sell “prestige” fragrances, and that the public would be likely to make the requisite goods/place association between perfume and Rodeo Drive). *Cf. In re Jacques Bernier Inc.*, 894 F.2d 389, 13 USPQ2d 1725 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (RODEO DRIVE held not primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of perfume because of the lack of persuasive evidence of a goods/place association in the ex parte record).

A wide variety of factors must be considered in determining the origin of a product or service. For example, a product might be found to originate from a place if the main component or ingredient is made in that place. *See In re Joint-Stock Co. “Baik,”* 80 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2006) (BAIKALSKAYA – the Russian equivalent of “from Baikal” or “Baikal’s” – held primarily geographically descriptive of vodka, where the record showed that applicant was located in Irkutsk, Russia, a city near Lake Baikal, and that applicant’s vodka is made from the water of Lake Baikal). However, the fact that a product may have been produced in a geographic style under the direction of someone trained from that geographic place is not a sufficient connection to deem the goods originate from there. *See In re Compania de Licores Internacionales S.A.*, 102 USPQ2d 1841, 1850 (TTAB 2012) (holding OLD HAVANA primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for rum despite applicant’s arguments including that the rum was produced in a “Cuban” or “Havanese” style under the direction of someone trained in Cuba and that purchasers know the rum could not come from Cuba because of the embargo). The relevant inquiry is whether there is a connection between the goods and the place named in the mark. *See In re Miracle Tuesday, LLC*, 695 F.3d 1339, 1343, 104 USPQ2d 1330, 1332 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (holding that the fact that the designer of applicant’s products lived in Paris more than 25 years before was insufficient to establish that goods now marketed under JPK PARIS 75, and design, originated there).

Goods and services do not always originate in the applicant’s place of business. *See In re Mankovitz*, 90 USPQ2d 1246 (TTAB 2009) (THE MONTECITO DIET held *not* primarily geographically descriptive of printed publications, on-line journals, or information services in the fields of health, nutrition, illness prevention, detoxification, and diet and lifestyle choices, the Board finding that there was “no connection between Montecito and applicant’s goods and services other than applicant’s address”); *In re John Harvey & Sons Ltd.*, 32 USPQ2d 1451, 1455 (TTAB 1994) (HARVEYS BRISTOL CREAM not primarily geographically descriptive of cakes flavored with sherry wine, the Board finding that neither applicant’s sherry wines nor applicant’s cakes come from Bristol, England, where “the only connection appears to be that applicant’s headquarters are located there and that applicant’s sherry wine was bottled there at one time”); *In re Nantucket Allserve Inc.*, 28 USPQ2d 1144 (TTAB 1993) (NANTUCKET NECTARS held primarily geographically descriptive of soft drinks, even though the goods were manufactured elsewhere, where the record showed that applicant’s headquarters and research and development division were on Nantucket; the distributor of the goods was located on Nantucket; the goods were sold in the applicant’s store on Nantucket; and the specimens were labels that bore a picture of Nantucket, stated that the goods were “born” or “created” on Nantucket, and mentioned no other geographic location); *In re Chalk’s Int’l Airlines Inc.*, 21 USPQ2d 1637 (TTAB 1991) (PARADISE ISLAND AIRLINES held primarily geographically

descriptive of the transportation of passengers and goods by air, because the applicant's services included flights to and from Paradise Island, Bahamas, even though the flights were not based there); *In re Fortune Star Products Corp.*, 217 USPQ 277 (TTAB 1982) (NIPPON held not deceptive of, *inter alia*, radios and televisions because, although the applicant is an American corporation, the goods are made in Japan.)

When the goods or services may be said to originate both in the geographic place named in the mark and outside that place, registration will normally be refused on the ground that the mark is primarily geographically descriptive under §2(e)(2) of the Trademark Act. *In re Cal. Pizza Kitchen Inc.*, 10 USPQ2d 1704, 1706 n.2 (TTAB 1988) (CALIFORNIA PIZZA KITCHEN for restaurant services held primarily geographically descriptive, where the services were rendered both in California and elsewhere).

If it is unclear where the goods/services originate or will originate, because the applicant does not come from the place named in the mark, and the record does not indicate whether the goods/services originate in that place, and misdescriptiveness would not be material to the decision to purchase the goods/services, the examining attorney must do the following:

- (1) If (a) the entire mark would be geographically misdescriptive, or a portion of the mark would be geographically descriptive (making disclaimer an option), (b) there are no other substantive refusals (making an examiner's amendment an option), and (c) the application could be put into condition for publication by examiner's amendment (see [TMEP §707](#)), to expedite prosecution, the examining attorney must:

Attempt to contact the applicant to determine whether the goods/services originate in the place named and, if so, to obtain authorization for a disclaimer and for any other amendments that would put the application in condition for approval for publication.

If the applicant states that the goods/services do not originate in the place named, the examining attorney must so indicate by entering a Note to the File in the record, enter any amendments necessary to put the application in condition for approval, and approve the mark for publication.

- (2) If the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant or cannot obtain authorization for an examiner's amendment, or if the applicant indicates that they do not know where the goods/services will originate, or if an Office action is otherwise necessary to make substantive refusals or requirements that cannot be satisfied by examiner's amendment, the examining attorney must proceed as follows:

Issue an information request under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), asking where the goods/services originate. This written request is made to ensure the completeness of the record. The examining attorney may also issue a refusal under §2(e)(2) as geographically descriptive (or a requirement for a disclaimer, if appropriate), based on the presumption that the goods/services come from the place named in the mark; and

Issue any other relevant refusals and requirements.

See In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc., 85 USPQ2d 1917, 1919 (TTAB 2008) , (affirming alternative refusals of NORMANDIE CAMEMBERT for cheese under both §§2(e)(2) and 2(e)(3), as well as a refusal based on the applicant's failure to comply with the examining attorney's requirement for information as to the geographic origin of the goods under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#)). The Board stated that "our findings with respect to the substantive Section 2(e)(2) refusal include a presumption, unfavorable to applicant, that applicant's goods in fact originate or will originate in or from the place named in the mark. Similarly with respect to

the alternative Section 2(e)(3) refusal, we alternatively presume, unfavorably to applicant, that applicant's goods do not or will not originate in or from the place named in the mark").

See [TMEP §1210.05\(d\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the procedures when it is unclear where the goods/services originate or will originate and any misdescriptiveness would be material to the decision to purchase.

1210.04 Goods/Place or Services/Place Association

Refusal of registration under §2(e)(2), §2(e)(3), or §2(a) requires that there be a goods/place or services/place association such that the public is likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the place identified in the mark.

To show that there is a goods/place or services/place association, the examining attorney may provide such evidence as excerpts from telephone directories, gazetteers, encyclopedias, geographic dictionaries, the LexisNexis® database, or the results of an Internet search.

The examining attorney should also examine the specimen(s) and any other evidence in the record that shows the context in which the applicant's mark is used. See *In re Broyhill Furniture Indus., Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1511, 1517 (TTAB 2001) (finding that applicant's point of purchase display catalogs "foster a goods/place association between its furniture and Tuscany by referring to 'Europe's Mediterranean coast' and 'European sensibility'"); and *In re Nantucket Allserve Inc.*, 28 USPQ2d 1144, 1146 (TTAB 1993) (finding that applicant's product labels bore a picture of Nantucket, stated that the goods were "born" or "created" on Nantucket and "[embody] the wholesome quality of the Island whose name they bear," and mentioned no other geographic location). Note, however, that evidence other than the mark found on a specimen, which provides further information as to source, does not negate the geographic deceptive misdescriptiveness that may be conveyed by the mark itself. *In re Premiere Distillery, LLC*, 103 USPQ2d 1483, 1486-87 (TTAB 2012); *In re Compania de Licores Internacionales S.A.*, 102 USPQ2d 1841, 1848-49 (TTAB 2012) (finding the statements "brand," "Cuban Style Rum," and "Product of the USA" on applicant's label do not negate the primary geographically deceptive misdescriptiveness of the OLD HAVANA mark).

When the geographic significance of a term is its primary significance and the geographic place is neither obscure nor remote, for purposes of §2(e)(2), the goods/place or services/place association may ordinarily be presumed from the fact that the applicant's goods or services originate (see [TMEP §1210.03](#)) in or near the place named in the mark. *In re Spirits of New Merced, LLC*, 85 USPQ2d 1614, 1621 (TTAB 2007) (YOSEMITE BEER held geographically descriptive of beer produced and sold in a brewpub in Merced, California, the Board stating that "[s]ince the goods originate at or near [Yosemite National Park], we can presume an association of applicant's beer with the park."); *In re Joint-Stock Co. "Baik"*, 80 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2006) (BAIKALSKAYA – the Russian equivalent of from Baikal" or "Baikal's" – held primarily geographically descriptive of vodka made from water piped from Lake Baikal, the Board presuming a goods/place association "because applicant is located near Lake Baikal, in the city of Irkutsk."); *In re JT Tobacconists*, 59 USPQ2d 1080 (TTAB 2001) (MINNESOTA CIGAR COMPANY held primarily geographically descriptive of cigars); *In re U.S. Cargo, Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 1702 (TTAB 1998) (U.S. CARGO primarily geographically descriptive of towable trailers carrying cargo and vehicles); *In re Carolina Apparel*, 48 USPQ2d 1542 (TTAB 1998) (CAROLINA APPAREL primarily geographically descriptive of retail clothing store services); *In re Chalk's Int'l Airlines Inc.*, 21 USPQ2d 1637 (TTAB 1991) (PARADISE ISLAND AIRLINES held primarily geographically descriptive of the transportation of passengers and goods by air, because the applicant's services included flights to and from Paradise Island, Bahamas, even though the flights were not based there); *In re Cal. Pizza Kitchen Inc.*, 10 USPQ2d 1704 (TTAB 1988) (CALIFORNIA PIZZA KITCHEN held primarily geographically descriptive of restaurant services that

originate in California); *In re Handler Fenton Westerns, Inc.*, 214 USPQ 848 (TTAB 1982) (DENVER WESTERNS held primarily geographically descriptive of western-style shirts originating in Denver).

This presumption is rebuttable. See [TMEP §1210.04\(c\)](#) regarding obscure or remote places, and [TMEP §§1210.02–1210.02\(c\)\(iii\)](#) regarding the primary significance of a geographic term.

It is more difficult to establish a services/place association than a goods/place association when making a refusal under §§2(e)(3) and 2(a). *In re Les Halles De Paris J.V.*, 334 F.3d 1371, 1374, 67 USPQ2d 1539, 1542 (Fed. Cir. 2003). See [TMEP §1210.04\(a\)](#) regarding establishment of a goods/place association, and [TMEP §1210.04\(b\)](#) regarding establishment of a services/place association.

1210.04(a) Establishing Goods/Place Association

To establish a goods/place association, it is not necessary to show that the place identified in the mark is well known or noted for the goods. *In re Les Halles De Paris J.V.*, 334 F.3d 1371, 1374, 67 USPQ2d 1539, 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (“[T]he goods-place association often requires little more than a showing that the consumer identifies the place as a known source of the product.”). See *In re Miracle Tuesday, LLC*, 695 F.3d 1339, 1344, 104 USPQ2d 1330, 1333 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (JPK PARIS 75 and design held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of fashion accessories that do not originate in Paris where it is undisputed that Paris is famous for such products); *In re Save Venice New York Inc.*, 259 F.3d 1346, 59 USPQ2d 1778 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (THE VENICE COLLECTION and SAVE VENICE INC. composite marks featuring an image of the winged Lion of St. Mark held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of products that do not originate in Venice, Italy, where an encyclopedia and a gazetteer showed that Venice was a large metropolitan area where fine art objects, glassware, and decorative items had been made and sold for centuries, and a popular tourist destination); *In re Wada*, 194 F.3d 1297, 52 USPQ2d 1539 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (NEW YORK WAYS GALLERY held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive where manufacturing listings and Nexis® excerpts showed that handbags and luggage are designed and manufactured in New York); *In re Loew’s Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 226 USPQ 865 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (finding evidence from a gazetteer and dictionary showing that tobacco is a crop produced and marketed in Durango, Mexico sufficient to establish a prima facie goods/place association); *In re Joint-Stock Co. “Baik,”* 80 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2006) (BAIKALSKAYA held primarily geographically descriptive of vodka where record the showed that applicant is located in Irkutsk, Russia, a city near Lake Baikal and one of the main export regions of Russian vodka, applicant’s vodka is made from water piped directly from Lake Baikal, Lake Baikal is the world’s largest fresh water lake, and there are numerous references to “Baikal” in publications from various cities throughout the United States and in national publications); *In re Broyhill Furniture Indus., Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1511, 1516-17 (TTAB 2001) (finding evidence that Tuscany, Italy is an important industrial center that produces a variety of products including furniture, and that several businesses advertise the sale of furniture from Tuscany on the Internet, was sufficient to establish a goods/place association between Tuscany and furniture, even though Tuscany is not famous for its furniture); *In re Boyd Gaming Corp.*, 57 USPQ2d 1944 (TTAB 2000) (HAVANA RESORT & CASINO and ROYAL HAVANA RESORT & CASINO held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of wearing apparel, beauty products and perfume that do not come from Havana, Cuba, where the record showed that Havana produces a variety of goods, including clothing and cosmetic items); *In re Bacardi & Co. Ltd.*, 48 USPQ2d 1031 (TTAB 1997) (HAVANA SELECT, HABANA CLASICO, OLD HAVANA, HAVANA PRIMO, and HAVANA CLIPPER all held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of rum that does not originate in Havana, Cuba, where the evidence showed that Havana is a major city and rum is a significant product).

In *Save Venice*, the court noted that in the modern marketing context, geographic regions that are noted for certain products or services are likely to expand from their traditional goods or services into related goods

or services, and that this would be expected by consumers. Accordingly, the court held that “the registrability of a geographic mark may be measured against the public’s association of that region with both its traditional goods and any related goods or services that the public is likely to believe originate there.” 259 F.3d at 1355, 59 USPQ2d at 1784.

However, a showing that the geographic place is known to the public and could be the source of the goods or services may not be enough in itself to establish a goods/place or services/place association in all cases.

See In re Mankovitz, 90 USPQ2d 1246 (TTAB 2009) (THE MONTECITO DIET held *not* primarily geographically descriptive and the evidence of a goods/place or services/place association, consisting only of the fact that the applicant lived in Montecito, found insufficient, the Board stating that “it would be speculation on our part to reach the conclusion that the goods or services originate there or that the public would understand that there is a goods/place relationship”); *In re John Harvey & Sons Ltd.*, 32 USPQ2d 1451 (TTAB 1994) (HARVEYS BRISTOL CREAM not primarily geographically descriptive of cakes flavored with sherry wine, the Board finding evidence that applicant’s headquarters are located in Bristol, England and that applicant’s sherry wine was once bottled there insufficient to show that American consumers are likely to think that “Bristol” refers to a place from which the goods originate); *In re Gale Hayman Inc.*, 15 USPQ2d 1478 (TTAB 1990) (SUNSET BOULEVARD held not primarily geographically descriptive of perfume and cologne, the Board holding that the mere fact that applicant’s principal offices are in Century City, close to Sunset Boulevard does not mandate a finding that a goods/place association should be presumed, determining that the public would not make a goods/place association, and noting that there was no evidence that any perfume or cologne is manufactured or produced on Sunset Boulevard or that applicant’s goods are sold there); *Philip Morris Inc. v. Reemtsma Cigarettenfabriken GmbH*, 14 USPQ2d 1487 (TTAB 1990) (PARK AVENUE held neither deceptive nor geographically deceptively misdescriptive as applied to cigarettes and smoking tobacco, the Board finding no goods/place association between tobacco products and Park Avenue in New York City, on which opposer’s world headquarters was located); *In re Venice Maid Co., Inc.*, 222 USPQ 618, 619 (TTAB 1984) (VENICE MAID held *not* primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of canned foods, including, *inter alia*, lasagna and spaghetti, where the evidence of a goods/place association was found insufficient, the Board stating that “we are unwilling to sustain the refusal to register in this case simply on the basis that Venice is a large Italian city that could, conceivably, be the source of a wide range of goods, including canned foods”).

The question of whether there is a goods/place association is determined on a case-by-case basis, based on the evidence in the record. *Compare Fred Hayman Beverly Hills Inc. v. Jacques Bernier Inc.*, 38 USPQ2d 1691 (TTAB 1996) (RODEO DRIVE held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of perfume, where opposer’s evidence showed that a significant number of Rodeo Drive retailers sell “prestige” fragrances, and that the public would be likely to make the requisite goods/place association between perfume and Rodeo Drive) *with In re Jacques Bernier Inc.*, 894 F.2d 389, 13 USPQ2d 1725 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (RODEO DRIVE held not primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of perfume because of the lack of persuasive evidence of a goods/place association in the *ex parte* record).

1210.04(b) Establishing Services/Place Association

It is more difficult, with respect to refusals under §§2(a) and 2(e)(3), to establish a services/place association than a goods/place association. The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has provided the following guidance for refusals under §2(e)(3):

Application of the second prong of this test – the services-place association – requires some consideration. A customer typically receives services, particularly in the restaurant business, at the location of the business. Having chosen to come to that place for the services, the customer is well

aware of the geographic location of the service. This choice necessarily implies that the customer is less likely to associate the services with the geographic location invoked by the mark rather than the geographic location of the service, such as a restaurant. In this case, the customer is less likely to identify the services with a region of Paris when sitting in a restaurant in New York.

[T]he services-place association operates somewhat differently than a goods-place association.... In a case involving goods, the goods-place association often requires little more than a showing that the consumer identifies the place as a known source of the product [citations omitted]. Thus, to make a goods-place association, the case law permits an inference that the consumer associates the product with the geographic location in the mark because that place is known for producing the product. [citation omitted] In the case of a services-place association, however, a mere showing that the geographic location in the mark is known for performing the service is not sufficient. Rather the second prong of the test requires some additional reason for the consumer to associate the services with the geographic location invoked by the mark. See *In re Mun. Capital Mkts., Corp.*, 51 USPQ2d 1369, 1370–71 (TTAB 1999) (“Examining Attorney must present evidence that does something more than merely establish that services as ubiquitous as restaurant services are offered in the pertinent geographic location.”). Thus, a services-place association in a case dealing with restaurant services ... requires a showing that the patrons of the restaurant are likely to believe the restaurant services have their origin in the location indicated by the mark. In other words, to refuse registration under section 2(e)(3), the PTO must show that patrons will likely be misled to make some meaningful connection between the restaurant (the service) and the relevant place.

For example, the PTO might find a services-place association if the record shows that patrons, though sitting in New York, would believe the food served by the restaurant was imported from Paris, or that the chefs in New York received specialized training in the region in Paris, or that the New York menu is identical to a known Parisian menu, or some other heightened association between the services and the relevant place....

In re Les Halles De Paris J.V., 334 F.3d 1371, 1373–74, 67 USPQ2d 1539, 1541–42 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (LE MARAIS held not primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of restaurant services. Evidence that “Le Marais” was a fashionable Jewish area in Paris was insufficient to establish that the public would believe that “Le Marais” was the source of New York restaurant services featuring a kosher cuisine).

What constitutes a “heightened association” between the services and the place will vary depending on the nature of the services. There may be situations where the fact that the geographic location is known or famous for performing the service would be sufficient to establish a services/place association (e.g. , “Texas” for cattle breeding services).

The burden is greater for restaurant services, due to their ubiquitous nature. *In re Consol. Specialty Rests., Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1921 (TTAB 2004) (COLORADO STEAKHOUSE and design held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of restaurant services). In *Consol. Specialty Rests.*, the Board found that the examining attorney had established an “additional reason” why purchasers would mistakenly believe that the food served in the restaurant was from Colorado, where the record contained the following evidence: gazetteer and dictionary definitions of “Colorado” and “steakhouse;” a United States Department of Agriculture report on cattle inventory; stories excerpted from the LexisNexis® database; and Internet excerpts showing that Colorado was one of the 11 top cattle states in the United States, that Colorado was known for its steaks, that “Colorado steaks” are featured food items in restaurants outside the state, and that politicians from Colorado use “Colorado steaks” as the basis for wagers on sporting events. *Id.* at 1927-28.

1210.04(c) Obscure or Remote Geographic Marks

Geographic matter may be so obscure or remote that it would not be recognized as an indication of the geographic source of the goods or services. In such a case, the mark is treated as an arbitrary designation because its geographic meaning is likely to be lost on consumers. Thus, consumers will not perceive the geographic significance of the term as its primary significance and will not make a goods/place or services/place association. *See In re Brouwerij Nacional Balashi NV*, 80 USPQ2d 1820, 1827 (TTAB 2006) (finding Balashi, Aruba so obscure or remote that purchasers in the United States would not recognize it as indicating the geographical source of applicant's beer); *ConAgra Inc. v. Saavedra*, 4 USPQ2d 1245 (TTAB 1987) (TAPATIO held not primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of meatless hot sauce, despite the fact that the mark is a Spanish term meaning "of or pertaining to Guadalajara, Mexico" and the goods did not originate from Guadalajara, the Board finding that the significance of the term is lost on the public because of its obscurity); *In re Bavaria St. Pauli Brauerei AG*, 222 USPQ 926 (TTAB 1984) (reversing examining attorney's requirement for disclaimer of "JEVER" in application to register JEVER and design for beer originating in Jever, West Germany, where the sole evidence of a goods/place association was an entry from a 32-year-old geographic index); *In re Brauerei Aying Franz Inselkammer KG*, 217 USPQ 73 (TTAB 1983) (AYINGER BIER ("BIER" disclaimed) held not primarily geographically descriptive of beer emanating from Aying, West Germany, a hamlet of 500 inhabitants, where the examining attorney's only evidence of a goods/place association was the specimen label identifying Aying as the place of origin).

Remoteness or obscurity is determined from the perspective of the average American consumer. *See In re Societe Generale des Eaux Minerales de Vittel, S.A.*, 824 F.2d 957, 3 USPQ2d 1450 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (VITTEL and design held not primarily geographically descriptive of cosmetic products because of lack of goods/place association between the goods and the applicant's place of business in Vittel, France). However, the examining attorney does not necessarily have to show that the nationwide general public would associate the mark with the place. The significance of the term is determined not in the abstract, but from the point of view of the consumers of the particular goods or services identified in the application. *In re MCO Properties Inc.*, 38 USPQ2d 1154 (TTAB 1995) (FOUNTAIN HILLS held primarily geographically descriptive of real estate development services rendered in Fountain Hills, Arizona, where the record showed that Fountain Hills was the name of the town where the applicant was located and rendered its services, and that the purchasers who came in contact with the mark would associate that place with the services).

1210.04(d) Arbitrary Use of Geographic Terms

The name of a geographic location that has no significant relation to commercial activities or the production of the relevant goods or services, such as ALASKA for bananas, is treated as an arbitrary mark because it is unlikely that consumers would believe that the mark identifies the place from which the goods originate.

Often, names of mountains or rivers are arbitrary for goods because no commercial activity is performed there. For example, "Colorado River" for candy bars or "Mount Rushmore" for automobiles would be arbitrary. *See In re Nantucket, Inc.*, 677 F.2d 95, 105, 213 USPQ 889, 897 (C.C.P.A. 1982) (Nies, J., concurring) ("Thus, the names of places devoid of commercial activity are arbitrary usage. In this category are names of places such as ANTARCTICA, MOUNT EVEREST, or GALAPAGOS, at least when used for ordinary commercial products, such as beer and shoes. Names such as SUN, WORLD, GLOBE, MARS, or MILKY WAY are also arbitrary, not informational; competitors do not need to use the terms to compete effectively.").

1210.05 Geographically Deceptive Marks

1210.05(a) Basis for Refusal

Past Practice. Prior to the amendment of the Trademark Act by the NAFTA Implementation Act, the test for determining whether a mark was primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) of the Trademark Act differed from the test for determining whether a mark was deceptive under §2(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#). To establish that a mark was primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3), the examining attorney had to show that the primary significance of the mark was geographic, that purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originated in the place named in the mark, and that the goods or services did not originate in that place. *In re Nantucket, Inc.*, 677 F.2d 95, 213 USPQ 889 (C.C.P.A. 1982). An additional showing of “materiality” was required to establish that a mark was deceptive under §2(a), i.e., a showing that a goods/place or services/place association made by purchasers was “material” to the decision to purchase the goods or services. *Bureau Nat’l Interprofessionnel Du Cognac v. Int’l Better Drinks Corp.*, 6 USPQ2d 1610 (TTAB 1988); *In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53 (TTAB 1983), *recon. denied*, 223 USPQ 191 (TTAB 1984).

Current Practice. The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has held that with the NAFTA amendments, §2 of the Act “no longer treats geographically deceptively misdescriptive marks differently from geographically deceptive marks,” and that a showing of public deception is required to establish that a mark is unregistrable under §2(e)(3). *In re Cal. Innovations Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1334, 1339, 66 USPQ2d 1853, 1856 (Fed. Cir. 2003), *reh’g denied*, 2003 U.S. App. LEXIS 18883 (Fed. Cir. Aug. 20, 2003). Thus, the test for determining whether, post-NAFTA, a mark is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) is now the same as the test for determining whether a mark is deceptive under §2(a). *Id.*, 329 F.3d at 1340, 66 USPQ2d at 1857.

1210.05(b) Elements of a §2(e)(3) Refusal

Accordingly, the elements of a refusal under Trademark Act §2(e)(3) are as follows:

- (1) The primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location;
- (2) The goods or services do not originate in the place identified in the mark;
- (3) Purchasers would be likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the geographic place identified in the mark; and
- (4) The misrepresentation would be a material factor in a significant portion of the relevant consumers’ decision to buy the goods or use the services.

See In re Miracle Tuesday LLC, 695 F.3d 1339, 1343, 104 USPQ2d 1330, 1332 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1350–54, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1490–95 (Fed. Cir. 2009); *Cal. Innovations*, 329 F.3d at 1341; 66 USPQ2d at 1858.

The determination of whether the primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location can be made “by showing that the mark in question consists of or incorporates a term that denotes a geographical location which is neither obscure nor remote.” *In re Sharky’s Drygoods Co.*, 23 USPQ2d 1061, 1062 (TTAB 1992). See [TMEP §1210.06](#) regarding procedures for examining geographic composite marks and [TMEP §1210.06\(b\)](#) regarding primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive and deceptive composites. Thus, the focus is on whether the term in question is primarily geographic in the context of the mark, rather than on whether the geographic reference dominates the mark.

Often, the record is clear that neither the applicant nor the goods/services originate from the place named in the mark. In other cases, although the applicant may not come from the place named, it is not clear whether the goods/service originate in that place. In either situation, after determining that the primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location, and that there is a goods/place or services/place association such that the public is likely to believe that the goods or services originate in the place identified in the mark, the examining attorney must then determine whether a geographically deceptively misdescriptive refusal would be warranted. At this point, the assessment turns on materiality – that is, whether a known or possible misdescription in the mark would affect a substantial portion of the relevant consumers' decision to purchase the goods/services.

In cases under the doctrine of foreign equivalents, where the place name in the mark appears in a foreign language, the requirement that a substantial portion of the relevant consuming public would likely be deceived raises special issues. To make a determination about “a substantial portion” in such cases, the examining attorney must consider whether the foreign language place name would be recognizable as such to consumers who do not speak the foreign language, and/or whether consumers who speak the foreign language could constitute a substantial portion of the relevant consumers (e.g. , because they are the “target audience”). *Spirits*, 563 F.3d at 1353, 90 USPQ2d at 1493; *see Corporacion Habanos, S.A. v. Guantanamera Cigars Co.*, 102 USPQ2d 1085, 1097 (TTAB 2012) .

1210.05(c) Determining Materiality

To establish that a geographic term is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#) or deceptive under §2(a), it must be shown that the goods/place or services/place association made by a consumer is material to the consumer's decision to purchase those goods/services. *In re Cal. Innovations Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1334, 1340, 66 USPQ2d 1853, 1856 (Fed. Cir. 2003), *reh'g denied*, 2003 U.S. App. LEXIS 18883 (Fed. Cir. Aug. 20, 2003).

1210.05(c)(i) Materiality In Cases Involving Goods

In determining "materiality," the Board has stated that it looks to evidence regarding the probable reaction of purchasers to a particular geographical term when it is applied to particular goods. *See In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53, 56 (TTAB 1983), *recon. denied*, 223 USPQ 191 (TTAB 1984). Materiality may be established inferentially based on indirect evidence such as gazetteer entries and third-party websites. *See Corporacion Habanos, S.A. v. Guantanamera Cigars Co.*, 102 USPQ2d 1085, 1098 (TTAB 2012) . If the evidence shows that the geographical area named in the mark is sufficiently known to lead purchasers to make a goods/place association, but the record does not show that the relevant goods are a principal product of that geographical area, the deception will most likely be found not to be material. If, however, there is evidence that the relevant goods, or related goods, are a principal product of the geographical area named by the mark, then the deception will most likely be found to be material.

Furthermore, evidence that a place is famous as a source of the goods at issue raises an inference in favor of materiality. *In re Compania de Licores Internacionales S.A.*, 102 USPQ2d 1841, 1850 (TTAB 2012) ; *see In re Les Halles De Paris J.V.*, 334 F.3d 1371, 1374, 67 USPQ2d 1539, 1542 (Fed. Cir. 2003). Such evidence supports a presumption that a substantial portion of the relevant consumers is likely to be deceived.

Thus, to establish the materiality element for goods, the evidence must show that:

- The place named in the mark is famous as a source of the goods at issue;
- The goods in question are a principal product of the place named in the mark; or

- The goods are, or are related to, the traditional products of the place named in the mark, or are an expansion of the traditional products of the place named in the mark.

See Cal. Innovations, 329 F.3d at 1340, 66 USPQ2d at 1857; *In re Save Venice N.Y., Inc.*, 259 F.3d 1346, 1355, 59 USPQ2d 1778, 1784 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *Compania de Licores Internacionales*, 102 USPQ2d at 1850; *House of Windsor*, 221 USPQ at 57.

Searches that combine the place name with the name of the goods and terms such as “famous,” “renowned,” “well-known,” “noted for,” “principal,” or “traditional” may be useful to establish materiality. *Compania de Licores Internacionales*, 102 USPQ2d at 1850.

Note that in *U.S. Playing Card Co. v. Harbro, LLC*, 81 USPQ2d 1537, 1542 (TTAB 2006), the Board held that the mark VEGAS was *not* primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of playing cards that do not originate in Las Vegas, finding that the opposer failed to establish that the misleading goods/place association would be a material factor in the customer’s decision to purchase the goods. The Board rejected opposer’s argument that it had met the materiality factor by proving that there is a market for cancelled casino cards from Las Vegas casinos, stating that “[a]lthough the evidence demonstrates that consumers are interested in obtaining cards that were used in casinos, the evidence does not establish that they are interested in purchasing playing cards that were manufactured or used in Las Vegas.” The Board also disagreed with opposer’s contention that the goods/place association between Las Vegas and playing cards was so strong that materiality could be presumed.

1210.05(c)(ii) Materiality In Cases Involving Services

In a case involving services, a showing that the geographic location in the mark is known for performing the service is not sufficient, unless it rises to the level of fame. This is especially true for restaurant services because, having chosen a particular restaurant, a customer is aware of the geographic location of the service and is less likely to associate the services with the place named in the mark (e.g., a customer is less likely to identify restaurant services with a region of Paris when sitting in a restaurant in New York).

Therefore, before addressing materiality, the examining attorney must satisfy the services/place association prong by providing evidence of an additional reason for the consumer to associate the services with the geographic location invoked by the mark. For example, the examining attorney could provide evidence that a customer sitting in a restaurant in one location would believe that:

- The food came from the place named in the mark; or
- The chef received specialized training in the place identified in the mark; or
- The menu is identical to a known menu from the geographic location named in the mark.

See In re Les Halles De Paris J.V., 334 F.3d 1371, 1374, 67 USPQ2d 1539, 1541–1542 (Fed. Cir. 2003); *In re Consol. Specialty Rests., Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1921, 1927 (TTAB 2004).

This heightened association between the services and geographic place named in the mark raises an inference of deception or materiality for a service mark. The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has provided the following guidance regarding additional evidence that would be sufficient to satisfy the materiality element:

In any event, the record might show that customers would patronize the restaurant because they believed the food was imported from, or the chef was trained in, the place identified by the restaurant's mark. The importation of food and culinary training are only examples, not exclusive methods of analysis....

Les Halles De Paris, 334 F.3d at 1375, 67 USPQ2d at 1542.

In *Consol. Specialty Rests., Inc.*, the Board held COLORADO STEAKHOUSE and design primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of restaurant services. In the course of that holding, the Board found that a mistaken belief that the steaks served in applicant's restaurant were from Colorado would be material to the customer's decision to patronize the restaurant, where the record contained the following evidence: gazetteer and dictionary definitions of "Colorado" and "steakhouse;" a United States Department of Agriculture report on cattle inventory; stories excerpted from the LexisNexis® database; and Internet excerpts showing that Colorado was one of the 11 top cattle states in the United States, that Colorado was known for its steaks, that "Colorado steaks" are featured food items in restaurants outside the state, and that politicians from Colorado use "Colorado steaks" as the basis for wagers on sporting events. *Id.* at 1924-28. The Board stated that "an inference of materiality arises where there is a showing of a 'heightened association' between the services and the geographic place or, in other words, a showing of 'a very strong services-place association.'" *Id.* at 1928.

See also [TMEP §§1203.02–1203.02\(g\)](#) regarding deceptive marks, and [TMEP §1210.08](#) regarding geographical designations used on or in connection with wines or spirits that identify a place other than the origin of the goods.

1210.05(d) Procedures for Issuing Geographically Deceptive Refusals

Although the test for determining whether a mark is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) is now the same as the test for determining whether a mark is deceptive under §2(a), the statutory provisions with respect to registrability on the Supplemental Register and on the Principal Register under §2(f) are different:

- Under §23(a) of the Trademark Act, a mark that is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive may be registered on the Supplemental Register if the mark has been in lawful use in commerce since before December 8, 1993 (the date of enactment of the NAFTA Implementation Act), while a mark that is deceptive may not be registered on the Supplemental Register; and
- Under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, a mark that is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive may be registered if the mark became distinctive of the goods or services in commerce before December 8, 1993, while a mark that is deceptive may not be registered on the Principal Register even upon a showing of acquired distinctiveness.

Accordingly, because the statute expressly prohibits registration of deceptive marks on the Supplemental Register or on the Principal Register under §2(f), the examining attorney will proceed as follows.

1210.05(d)(i) Neither Applicant Nor Goods/Services Come from the Place Named

To ensure that no geographically deceptively misdescriptive marks claiming use in commerce or acquired distinctiveness prior to December 8, 1993 are registered on the Supplemental Register or under §2(f) when it is clear that neither the applicant nor the goods/services come from the place named in the mark, the

examining attorney must determine whether the misdescription would be material and follow the procedures outlined below:

- If the examining attorney determines that the misdescription would not be material to the decision to purchase, no refusal should be made. If the application is otherwise in condition for publication, the examining attorney should approve the mark for publication.
- If the examining attorney determines that the misdescription would be material to the decision to purchase, and the application claims use in commerce prior to December 8, 1993, the examining attorney must issue a nonfinal refusal under §2(a), supported by appropriate evidence.
- If the examining attorney determines that the misdescription would be material to the decision to purchase, and the application does not claim use prior to December 8, 1993, the examining attorney must issue nonfinal refusals under §§2(e)(3) and 2(a), supported by appropriate evidence.

Depending upon the applicant's response to a nonfinal refusal under §§2(e)(3) and 2(a), the examining attorney will ultimately issue a final refusal under either §2(e)(3) or §2(a):

- If the applicant's response does not claim use or acquired distinctiveness prior to December 8, 1993, the examining attorney must withdraw the §2(a) refusal and issue a final refusal under §2(e)(3), if otherwise appropriate.
- In the rare circumstance that the applicant responds by claiming use prior to December 8, 1993 and amends to the Supplemental Register, or establishes that the mark acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) prior to December 8, 1993, to ensure that a geographically deceptively misdescriptive mark will not be allowed to register, the examining attorney must withdraw the §2(e)(3) refusal and issue a final refusal under §2(a), if otherwise appropriate.

In re S. Park Cigar, Inc., 82 USPQ2d 1507, 1509, n.3 (TTAB 2007) . *See also Corporacion Habanos, S.A. v. Guantanamera Cigars Co.*, 86 USPQ2d 1473, 1475 (TTAB 2008) (Board considered only the §2(e)(3) claim in opposition based on both §§2(a) and 2(e)(3)); *In re Beaverton Foods, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1253, 1257 (TTAB 2007) (“[W]here an applicant is seeking registration for a mark with a geographic term on the Principal Register under Section 2(f) based on a claim that the mark had acquired distinctiveness prior to December 8, 1993, a geographically deceptive mark is properly refused registration under Section 2(a). Nothing in the statute or legislative history dictates otherwise. Moreover, this analysis is consistent with the practice of the USPTO.”).

1210.05(d)(ii) It is Not Clear Whether the Goods/Services Originate From the Place Named

If the applicant does not come from the place named in the mark, the record does not indicate whether the goods/services originate in that place (*see* [TMEP §1210.03](#)), and misdescriptiveness would be material to the decision to purchase, the examining attorney must do the following:

(1) If (a) the entire mark would not be geographically descriptive (making disclaimer an option if the goods/services originate from the place), (b) there are no other substantive refusals (making an examiner's amendment an option), and (c) the application could be put into condition for publication by examiner's amendment (*see* [TMEP §707](#)), to expedite prosecution, the examining attorney should:

- Attempt to contact the applicant to determine whether the goods/services originate in the place named and, if so, to obtain authorization for a disclaimer and for any other amendments that would put the application in condition for approval for publication.

- If the applicant states that the goods/services do not originate in the place named, such that the mark is geographically deceptively misdescriptive, the examining attorney must so indicate by entering a Note to the File in the record. The examining attorney must then follow the appropriate procedure in [TMEP §1210.05\(d\)\(i\)](#).

(2) If the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant or cannot obtain authorization for an examiner's amendment, or if the applicant indicates uncertainty as to where the goods/services will originate, or if an Office action is otherwise necessary to make substantive refusals or requirements that cannot be satisfied by examiner's amendment, the examining attorney must proceed as follows:

- Issue a refusal under §2(e)(2) as geographically descriptive (or a requirement for a disclaimer, if appropriate), based on the presumption that the goods/services come from the place named in the mark; and
- Issue alternative refusals, supported by evidence, under §§2(a) and 2(e)(3) as geographically deceptively misdescriptive, based on the alternative presumption that the goods do not come from the place named; and
- Issue any other relevant refusals and requirements; and
- Issue an information request under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), asking where the goods/services originate. This written request is made to ensure the completeness of the record in the event of an appeal.

See In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc., 85 USPQ2d 1917 (TTAB 2008).

See [TMEP §1210.03](#) regarding the procedures when it is unclear where the goods/services originate or will originate and any misdescriptiveness would not be material to the decision to purchase.

1210.05(e) Geographically Deceptive Matter: Case References

In re Miracle Tuesday LLC, 695 F.3d 1339, 104 USPQ2d 1330 (Fed. Cir. 2012) (affirming the TTAB's refusal to register JPK PARIS 75 and design as primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for fashion accessories that did not originate in Paris); *In re Spirits Int'l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 90 USPQ2d 1489 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (remanding case to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board to determine whether a substantial portion of the relevant consumers would translate and be materially deceived by the Russian term Moskovskaya for vodka); *In re Les Halles De Paris J.V.*, 334 F.3d 1371, 1375, 67 USPQ2d 1539, 1542 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (Court found that the record did not show that a diner at the restaurant in question would identify the region in Paris named in the mark as a source of the restaurant services or that a material reason for the choice of the restaurant was its identity with the region in Paris); *In re Cal. Innovations Inc.*, 329 F.3d 1334, 66 USPQ2d 1853 (Fed. Cir. 2003), *reh'g denied*, 2003 U.S. App. LEXIS 18883 (Fed. Cir. Aug. 20, 2003) (TTAB found to have applied an outdated standard of review under §2(e)(3), case remanded for application of new, post-NAFTA test); *In re Save Venice New York Inc.*, 259 F.3d 1346, 59 USPQ2d 1778 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (THE VENICE COLLECTION and SAVE VENICE INC. composite marks featuring an image of the winged Lion of St. Mark held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of products that do not originate in Venice, Italy, where an encyclopedia and a gazetteer showed that Venice was a well known center for the manufacture of glass, lace, art objects, jewelry, cotton, and silk textiles); *In re Wada*, 194 F.3d 1297, 52 USPQ2d 1539 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (NEW YORK WAYS GALLERY held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive where manufacturing listings and Nexis® excerpts showed that New York was well known as a place where leather goods and handbags are designed and manufactured); *In re Premiere Distillery, LLC*, 103 USPQ2d 1483 (TTAB 2012) (finding REAL RUSSIAN primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for vodka); *In re Compania de Licores Internacionales S.A.*, 102 USPQ2d 1841 (TTAB 2012) (finding OLD HAVANA primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive

for rum and applicant's claim of acquired distinctiveness insufficient); *Corporacion Habanos, S.A. v. Guantanamera Cigars Co.*, 102 USPQ2d 1085 (TTAB 2012) (finding GUANTANAMERA, a Spanish word meaning "girl from Guantanamo" or "of or from Guantanamo, Cuba," primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for cigars not from Cuba); *In re Jonathan Drew, Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d 1640 (TTAB 2011) (finding KUBA KUBA primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of cigars, tobacco, and related products that did not originate in Cuba nor would they be made from Cuban seed tobacco); *Corporacion Habanos, S.A. v. Annacas, Inc.*, 88 USPQ2d 1785 (TTAB 2008) (HAVANA CLUB found primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of cigars made from Cuban seed tobacco since Havana is world renowned for cigars and consumers would believe that the cigars originate in Havana when, in fact, they do not); *In re Cheezwhse.com, Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1917 (TTAB 2008) (NORMANDIE CAMEMBERT held primarily geographically descriptive of cheese because Normandy, France was famous for cheese and the Board presumed that the goods would originate there, and, in the alternative, primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for cheese, based on the presumption that the goods would not originate there, since applicant failed to submit information about the origin of the goods); *In re Beaverton Foods, Inc.*, 84 USPQ2d 1253 (TTAB 2007) (NAPA VALLEY MUSTARD CO. for mustard that did not originate in Napa Valley, California held deceptive, where the record contained printouts from various websites showing use of NAPA VALLEY in relation to mustard by third parties, evidence of a widely advertised annual Napa Valley Mustard Festival, evidence of the connection of Napa Valley to wineries and gourmet food, and copies of advertisements for applicant's goods which imply that the mustard originates in Napa Valley); *In re S. Park Cigar, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1507 (TTAB 2007) (YBOR GOLD held primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of cigars and tobacco that do not come from the Ybor City area of Tampa, Florida, given the prominence of Ybor City as a current and historical source of cigars); *In re Consol. Specialty Rests., Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1921 (TTAB 2004) (Board found that patrons of applicant's restaurants, COLORADO STEAKHOUSE, would believe the steaks that were served would come from Colorado); *In re Juleigh Jeans Sportswear Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1694 (TTAB 1992) (LONDON LONDON held deceptive for clothing having no connection with London, given the renown of London as a center for contemporary as well as traditional fashions); *In re Sharky's Drygoods Co.*, 23 USPQ2d 1061 (TTAB 1992) (holding that the juxtaposition of "Paris" with "Beach Club" results in incongruous phrase, and purchasers, thus, will view PARIS BEACH CLUB as humorous mark in which "Paris" is used facetiously rather than as geographic reference); *In re Perry Mfg. Co.*, 12 USPQ2d 1751 (TTAB 1989) (PERRY NEW YORK and design, with a disclaimer of NEW YORK, held deceptive for various items of clothing that originate in North Carolina, and have no connection with New York, because of the renown of New York in the apparel industry); *In re House of Windsor, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 53 (TTAB 1983) , *recon. denied*, 223 USPQ 191 (TTAB 1984) (BAHIA held deceptive of cigars that do not originate in the Bahia province of Brazil, where the evidence of record was "unequivocal" that tobacco and cigars are important products in the Bahia region).

1210.06 Procedure for Examining Geographic Composite Marks

A geographic composite mark is one composed of geographic matter coupled with additional matter (e.g., wording and/or a design element). When examining such a mark, the examining attorney must first determine the primary significance of the composite. See [TMEP §§ 1210.02\(c\)–1210.02\(c\)\(iii\)](#).

Composite marks present unique issues in regard to both geographically descriptive and misdescriptive refusals. When evaluating whether the mark's primary significance is a generally known geographic location, a composite mark must be evaluated as a whole. See *In re Save Venice New York Inc.*, 259 F.3d 1346, 1352, 59 USPQ2d 1778, 1782 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *In re Morinaga Nyugyo Kabushiki Kaisha*, 120 USPQ2d 1738, 1748 (TTAB 2016). In order to do so, the examining attorney may also consider the significance of each element within the mark. *In re Save Venice New York Inc.*, 259 F.3d at 1352, 59 USPQ2d at 1782.

For example, the mark PARIS BEACH CLUB, for clothing, was held not to be perceived as primarily geographic. *In re Sharky's Drygoods Co.*, 23 USPQ2d 1061 (TTAB 1992) . Because Paris is known for haute couture, is not located on an ocean or lake and does not have a beach, the Board found that the juxtaposition of PARIS with BEACH CLUB resulted in an incongruous phrase and that the word PARIS would be viewed as a facetious rather than a geographic reference. *Id.* at 1062. The mark NEW YORK WAYS GALLERY, however, was found to be geographically deceptive. *In re Wada*, 194 F.3d 1297, 52 USPQ2d 1539 (Fed. Cir. 1999). The Board determined that (1) NEW YORK was not an obscure geographical term; (2) NEW YORK was known as a place where the goods at issue were designed, manufactured, and sold; and (3) the primary geographic significance was not lost by the addition of WAYS GALLERY to NEW YORK. Likewise, in the case of the mark YBOR GOLD, the Board held that the mere addition of the word GOLD to the geographic designation YBOR did not result in an arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive composite. *In re S. Park Cigar, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1507 (TTAB 2007) . The Board determined that GOLD connoted the high quality of the goods and thus did not detract from the geographic significance of YBOR or negate the primarily geographic significance of the mark as a whole. *Id.* at 1513.

Depending on the primary significance of the composite, the examining attorney will handle the geographic issue in a geographic composite mark in one of the following ways:

- (1) If the examining attorney finds that the mark, when viewed as a whole, is arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive, he or she will approve the mark for publication without evidence that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). However, examining attorneys must consult their senior or managing attorney before going forward when they have made a preliminary determination that the primary significance of the mark as a whole is *not* geographic. The senior or managing attorney will make the final determination or may seek guidance from the Office of Legal Policy, within the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy;
- (2) If the examining attorney finds that the mark is primarily geographically descriptive under §2(e)(2) without a showing of acquired distinctiveness, primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3), or deceptive under §2(a), he or she will refuse registration of the mark as a whole; or
- (3) If the examining attorney finds that the geographic matter is a separable part of the mark, the examining attorney's action will depend on whether the matter is primarily geographically descriptive, primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive, or deceptive. See [TMEP §1210.06\(a\)](#) regarding primarily geographically descriptive composites, and [TMEP §1210.06\(b\)](#) regarding primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive and deceptive composites.

1210.06(a) Marks That Include Primarily Geographically Descriptive Terms Combined With Additional Matter

If a composite mark comprises a geographic term that is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods or services under §2(e)(2), and the mark as a whole would be likely to be perceived as indicating the geographic origin of the goods or services, then the examining attorney must consider: (1) whether the geographic term is a separable element in the mark; and (2) the nature of the additional matter that makes up the composite mark.

If the geographic term is not a separable element or if none of the additional matter that makes up the composite mark is inherently distinctive (e.g., it is merely descriptive or incapable), then the examining attorney must refuse registration of the entire mark on the Principal Register pursuant to §2(e)(2).

If the geographic term is a separable element and the additional matter making up the mark is inherently distinctive as applied to the goods or services (i.e., coined, arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive), the applicant may either: (1) register the mark on the Principal Register with a disclaimer of the geographic term; or (2) establish that the geographic term has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f).

A disclaimer is appropriate where the geographic component is a separable feature of the mark, and the composite mark includes an inherently distinctive, non-disclaimed component (e.g., coined, arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive wording or design). The composite mark must include a non-disclaimed component because a mark cannot be registered if all the components have been disclaimed. See [TMEP §§1213-1213.11](#) regarding disclaimer.

When the examining attorney requires a disclaimer of primarily geographically descriptive matter, the applicant may seek to overcome the disclaimer requirement by submitting a showing that the geographic term has become distinctive under §2(f). See [TMEP §§1210.07\(b\)](#) and [1212.02\(f\)](#) regarding §2(f) claims as to a portion of the mark.

A term that is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods or services under §2(e)(2) may be registered on the Supplemental Register in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, if it is not barred by other section(s) of the Act. See [TMEP §1210.07\(a\)](#).

To help ensure that determinations concerning the primary significance of composite marks are handled consistently, examining attorneys must consult their senior or managing attorney before going forward when they have made a preliminary determination that the primary significance of the mark as a whole is *not* geographic. The senior or managing attorney will make the final determination or may seek guidance from the Office of Legal Policy regarding such marks.

1210.06(b) Marks That Include Primarily Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive and Deceptive Terms Combined With Additional Matter

Geographically deceptive and primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive matter need not comprise the entire mark, or even the dominant portion of the mark, to form the basis for a refusal under §2(a) or §2(e)(3). See [15 U.S.C §1052\(a\)](#), [\(e\)\(3\)](#). However, a §2(e)(3) refusal is not appropriate unless the evidence shows that the mark as a whole would likely be perceived as indicating the geographic origin of the goods or services. *In re Morinaga Nyugyo Kabushiki Kaisha*, 120 USPQ2d 1738, 1748 (TTAB 2016). Likewise, a mark should not be refused under §2(a) unless the relevant geographic matter, when considered in the context of the mark as a whole, is deceptive. *Id.* (“Even under Trademark Act Section 2(a), which permits a narrower focus on the allegedly deceptive matter, a refusal to register may not be based on a term taken out of context when doing so would change its significance in the mark.”).

If a composite mark includes matter that is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive within the meaning of §2(e)(3) or deceptive under §2(a), and the mark as a whole would be likely to be perceived as indicating the geographic origin of the goods or services, the examining attorney must follow the procedures outlined above for refusing registration. See [TMEP §1210.05\(d\)](#).

A composite mark that is deceptive under §2(a) cannot be registered, even with a disclaimer of the geographic component. *In re Perry Mfg. Co.*, 12 USPQ2d 1751, 1751-52 (TTAB 1989). Similarly, a disclaimer of the geographic matter will not overcome a §2(e)(3) refusal, even if the mark was in use prior to December 8, 1993. *In re Wada*, 194 F.3d 1297, 52 USPQ2d 1539,1542 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

See [TMPEP §1210.05\(a\)](#) regarding the basis for refusal of marks that are primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive, and [TMPEP §1210.05\(d\)](#) for procedures for issuing such refusals.

To help ensure that determinations concerning the primary significance of composite marks are handled consistently, examining attorneys must consult their senior or managing attorney before going forward when they have made a preliminary determination that the primary significance of the mark as a whole is *not* geographic. The senior or managing attorney will make the final determination or may seek guidance from the Office of Legal Policy regarding such marks.

1210.07 Supplemental Register and §2(f)

1210.07(a) Registrability of Geographic Terms on the Supplemental Register

Primarily Geographically Descriptive Marks. A term that is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods/services under §2(e)(2) may be registered on the Supplemental Register, if it is not barred by other section(s) of the Act. See [TMPEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). However, in certain circumstances, a primarily geographically descriptive mark may be considered incapable. See *In re Bee Pollen from Eng. Ltd.*, 219 USPQ 163 (TTAB 1983) (finding BEE POLLEN FROM ENGLAND incapable of distinguishing bee pollen from England); *Mineco, Inc. v. Lone Mountain Turquoise Mine*, 217 USPQ 466 (TTAB 1983) (finding LONE MOUNTAIN incapable of distinguishing turquoise from the Lone Mountain Mine).

Primarily Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks. A mark that is found to be primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) may not be registered on the Supplemental Register unless the mark has been in lawful use in commerce since before December 8, 1993, the date of enactment of the NAFTA Implementation Act. Section 23(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1091\(a\)](#). If the applicant claims use prior to December 8, 1993 and seeks registration on the Supplemental Register, or amends to the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(a). See [TMPEP §1210.05\(d\)\(i\)](#).

Geographically Deceptive Marks. A mark that is deceptive under §2(a) may not be registered on the Supplemental Register. *In re Juleigh Jeans Sportswear Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1694, 1696 (TTAB 1992).

NOTE: A mark in a §66(a) application cannot be registered on the Supplemental Register under any circumstances. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\)](#) and [2.75\(c\)](#).

1210.07(b) Registrability of Geographic Terms under §2(f)

Primarily Geographically Descriptive Marks. A term that is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods/services under §2(e)(2) may be registered on the Principal Register if it is shown to have acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). See [TMPEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding a §2(f) claim submitted with an allegation of use in response to a refusal and [§§1212–1212.10](#) regarding §2(f).

Primarily Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive Marks. A mark that is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) may not be registered under §2(f) unless the mark became distinctive of the goods or services in commerce before December 8, 1993, the date of enactment of the NAFTA Implementation Act. See *In re Compania de Licores Internacionales S.A.*, 102 USPQ2d 1841, 1852 (TTAB 2012) ; *In re Boyd Gaming Corp.*, 57 USPQ2d 1944, 1947 (TTAB 2000) ; *Fred Hayman Beverly Hills Inc. v. Jacques Bernier Inc.*, 38 USPQ2d 1691, 1692 (TTAB 1996).

If the applicant claims that the mark acquired distinctiveness prior to December 8, 1993, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(a). See [TMEP §1210.05\(d\)\(i\)](#).

Geographically Deceptive Marks. A mark that is deceptive under §2(a) may not be registered on the Principal Register even under §2(f).

Section 2(f) in Part. An applicant may claim that a geographic component of a mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). See [TMEP §1212.02\(f\)](#) regarding claims of acquired distinctiveness as to a portion of a mark. Thus, if the examining attorney requires a disclaimer of matter that is primarily geographically descriptive under §2(e)(2), the applicant may seek to overcome the disclaimer requirement by submitting a showing that the geographic component has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). If the applicant is able to establish to the satisfaction of the examining attorney that the geographic component has acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney will approve the mark for publication with a notation that there is a claim of distinctiveness under §2(f) as to the geographic component, if appropriate.

1210.08 Geographical Indications Used on Wines and Spirits

Section 2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), prohibits the registration of a designation that consists of or comprises “a geographical indication which, when used on or in connection with wines or spirits, identifies a place other than the origin of the goods and is first used on or in connection with wines or spirits by the applicant on or after [January 1, 1996].” This provision was added by the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, implementing the Trade-Related Intellectual Property (“TRIPs”) portions of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (“GATT”). This provision does not apply to geographic indications that were first used in commerce on or in connection with wines or spirits prior to January 1, 1996.

The term “spirits” refers to “a strong distilled alcoholic liquor” (e.g., gin, rum, vodka, whiskey, or brandy). *Random House Webster’s Unabridged Dictionary* 1839 (2nd ed. 1998). This provision does not apply to designations used on or in connection with beer, nor does it apply to goods that are not wines or spirits, but are partially composed of wines or spirits (e.g., wine vinegar, wine sauces, wine jelly, rum balls, bourbon chicken).

This provision of §2(a) applies if the applicant’s identification of goods: (1) specifically includes wines or spirits; or (2) describes the goods using broad terms that could include wines or spirits (e.g., alcoholic beverages).

Section 2(a) is an absolute bar to the registration of these geographical designations on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register. Neither a disclaimer of the geographical designation nor a claim that it has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) can obviate a §2(a) refusal if the mark consists of or comprises a geographical indication that identifies a place other than the origin of the wines or spirits.

See [TMEP §1210.08\(a\)](#) regarding geographical indications used on wines and spirits that do not originate in the named place, [TMEP §1210.08\(b\)](#) regarding geographical indications used on wines and spirits that originate in the named place, [TMEP §1210.08\(c\)](#) regarding geographical indications that are generic for wines and spirits, and [TMEP §1402.03\(g\)](#) regarding situations in which the name and/or acronym of a trademark protection system or scheme for a geographical indication appears in an identification.

1210.08(a) Geographical Indications Used on Wines and Spirits That Do Not Originate in the Named Place

In implementing the TRIPs Agreement through the Uruguay Round Agreements Act (“URAA”), Pub. L. No. 103-465, 108 Stat. 4809 (1994), Congress approved a Statement of Administrative Action (“SAA”) which provides, in part, that:

“Geographical indications” are defined in TRIPs Article 22.1 as “indications which identify a good as originating in the territory of a Member, or a region or locality in that territory, where a given quality, reputation or other characteristic of the good is essentially attributable to its geographical origin.” The Administration expects that this definition will be applied in the context of trademark registration and that a “geographical indication” as used in this provision will be interpreted to comprise only those areas which have a reputation for being associated with the specific goods at issue. *Obscure areas or those that do not have a reputation or other characteristics generally associated with wines or spirits should not be prohibited from registration (emphasis added).*

Statement of Administrative Action, Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights, H.R. Doc. No. 103-316, §B.1.e (1994); 19 U.S.C. §§3511(a)(2) and 3512(d).

A designation is considered a *geographical indication* under §2(a) if it identifies the applicant’s wines or spirits as originating in a territory known for a given quality, reputation, or other characteristic associated with wines or spirits. A mark for wines or spirits that includes a geographical indication is unregistrable if: (1) purchasers would erroneously believe that the goods originate in the relevant geographic location; and (2) the quality, reputation, or characteristic associated with wines or spirits from that location would materially affect the purchaser’s decision to buy the goods.

To establish a prima facie case for refusal to register a mark under the “wines and spirits” provision of §2(a), the following is required:

- (1) The primary significance of the relevant term or design is geographic, e.g., a place name, abbreviation, nickname, or symbol; or an outline or map of a geographic area (*see* [TMEP §§1210.02\(a\)–1210.02\(b\)\(iv\)](#));
- (2) Purchasers would be likely to think that the goods originate in the geographic place identified in the mark, i.e., purchasers would make a goods/place association (*see* [TMEP §§1210.04–1210.04\(d\)](#));
- (3) The goods do not originate in the place identified in the mark (*see* [TMEP §1210.03](#));
- (4) A purchaser's erroneous belief as to the geographic origin of the goods would materially affect the purchaser's decision to buy the goods (*see* [TMEP §§1210.05\(c\)–1210.05\(c\)\(ii\)](#)); and
- (5) The mark was first used in commerce by the applicant on or after January 1, 1996.

Section 2(a) is an absolute bar to the registration of false geographical indications used on wines or spirits on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register. Neither a disclaimer of the geographic term or design nor a claim that it has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), can obviate a §2(a) refusal if the mark consists of or includes a geographical indication that identifies a place other than the true origin of the wines or spirits.

Requirement for First Use On or After January 1, 1996

For all applications filed under §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), [§1126](#), or [§1141f\(a\)](#), or for applications filed under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), where the application fails to indicate the applicant's date of first use of the mark in commerce, the examining attorney should presume that the applicant's first use of the mark in commerce is or will be on or after January 1, 1996, unless the application record indicates otherwise.

If the examining attorney determines that a mark featuring a false geographical indication was in use *prior* to January 1, 1996, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the mark is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), and deceptive under §2(a). See [TMEP §1210.05\(a\)](#).

1210.08(b) Geographical Indications Used on Wines and Spirits That Originate in the Named Place

If the wines or spirits originate in the identified place, and the primary significance of the mark is a generally known geographic location, the examining attorney should presume the requisite goods/place association, and refuse the mark under §2(e)(2) as geographically descriptive, or require disclaimer of the geographic term, as appropriate. See [TMEP §§1210.01\(a\)](#) and [1210.06\(a\)](#).

Sometimes, a geographic term is used to certify the geographic origin of wines or spirits. If the proposed mark is used to certify the goods, the applicant may convert the application to one for a certification mark of regional origin under §4 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1054](#). See [TMEP §1306.06\(b\)](#) regarding amendment to a different type of mark, and [TMEP §§1210.09](#) and [1306.05-1306.05\(c\)](#) regarding geographic certification marks.

1210.08(c) Geographical Indications That Are Generic for Wines and Spirits

When a geographic term or design in the mark is generic for a type of wine or spirit, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(e)(1) on the Principal Register or §23 on the Supplemental Register, as appropriate, because the term or design is generic. See [TMEP §§1209.02-1209.02\(b\)](#). Or, if appropriate, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the generic term or design. See [TMEP §§1213-1213.11](#) regarding disclaimer.

A geographic term or design is considered generic if United States consumers view it as designating the genus of the goods, rather than their geographic origin. See [TMEP §§1209.01\(c\)-1209.01\(c\)\(iii\)](#). If a geographic term or design is used in connection with wines or spirits, the examining attorney may submit a search request to the Trademark Law Library to determine whether there is evidence indicating that the term or design is generic for the applicant's goods.

1210.09 Geographic Certification Marks

Under certain circumstances, the name of the place from which goods or services originate may function as a certification mark. When geographic terms are used to certify regional origin (e.g., "Idaho" used to certify that potatoes are grown in Idaho), registration of certification marks should not be refused and, in applications to register composite certification marks, disclaimers of these geographic terms should *not* be required on the ground of geographical descriptiveness. See [TMEP §§1306.05-1306.05\(c\)](#) concerning procedures for registration of certification marks that certify regional origin.

When a geographical term used in a composite certification mark is not used to certify regional origin (e.g., “California” used to certify that fruit is organically grown), appropriate refusals pursuant to §§2(e)(2), 2(e)(3), or 2(a) should be made.

1210.10 Doctrine of Foreign Equivalents

Under the doctrine of foreign equivalents, foreign words from common, modern languages are translated into English to determine their geographic significance. Although the doctrine arises more often in cases involving likelihood of confusion, descriptiveness, and genericness, the doctrine also applies to issues involving geographic marks. *See, e.g., In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1351, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1491 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (applying doctrine in determining whether MOSKOVSKAYA, a Russian word meaning “of or from Moscow,” was primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for vodka not from Moscow); *Corporacion Habanos, S.A. v. Guantanamera Cigars Co.*, 102 USPQ2d 1085 (TTAB 2012) (holding GUANTANAMERA, a Spanish word meaning “girl from Guantanamo” or “of or from Guantanamo, Cuba,” primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive for cigars); *In re Joint Stock Co. “Baik”*, 80 USPQ2d 1305 (TTAB 2006) (holding BAIKALSKAYA, a Russian word meaning “from Baikal,” primarily geographically descriptive of vodka from Lake Baikal).

Although words from modern languages are generally translated into English, the doctrine of foreign equivalents is not an absolute rule, but merely a guideline. The doctrine should be applied only when it is likely that the ordinary American purchaser would stop and translate the foreign word into its English equivalent. *See Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696 (Fed. Cir. 2005). The “ordinary American purchaser” includes “all American purchasers, including those proficient in a non-English language who would ordinarily be expected to translate words into English.” *Spirits Int’l*, 563 F.3d at 1352, 90 USPQ2d at 1492.

While foreign words are generally translated into English for purposes of determining geographic significance, foreign words from dead or obscure languages may be so unfamiliar to the American buying public that they should not be translated into English for descriptiveness purposes. *See Enrique Bernat F. S.A. v. Guadalajara Inc.*, 210 F.3d 439, 443, 54 USPQ2d 1497, 1499 (5th Cir. 2000) (noting that “one policy undergirding the doctrine is ‘the assumption that there are (or someday will be) customers in the U.S. who speak that foreign language.’” (quoting *Otokoyama Co. v. Wine of Japan Import, Inc.*, 175 F.3d 266, 270, 50 USPQ2d 1626, 1629 (2d Cir. 1999))); *cf. Gen. Cigar Co. Inc. v. G.D.M. Inc.*, 988 F. Supp. 647, 660, 45 USPQ2d 1481, 1492 (S.D.N.Y. 1997) (finding it doubtful that prospective purchasers would associate the mark with a word in a language spoken by the indigenous population of the Dominican Republic). The determination of whether a language is “dead” must be made on a case-by-case basis, based upon the meaning that the term would have to the relevant purchasing public.

Example: Latin is generally considered a dead language. However, if there is evidence that a Latin term is still in use by the relevant purchasing public (e.g., if the term appears in current dictionaries or news articles), then that Latin term is not considered dead. The same analysis should be applied to other uncommon languages.

See [TMEP §§809–809.03](#) for information regarding how to ascertain the meaning of non-English wording in a mark. See also [TMEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)–1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)\(C\)](#), [1209.03\(g\)](#), and [1211.01\(a\)\(vii\)](#) regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents.

1211 Refusal on Basis of Surname

15 U.S.C. §1052 (Extract)

No trademark by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others shall be refused registration on the principal register on account of its nature unless it ... (e) Consists of a mark which ... (4) is primarily merely a surname.

Under §2(e)(4) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(4\)](#), a mark that is primarily merely a surname is not registrable on the Principal Register absent a showing of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). See [TMEP §§1212–1212.10](#) regarding acquired distinctiveness. Formerly §2(e)(3) of the Act, this section was designated §2(e)(4) when the NAFTA Implementation Act took effect on January 1, 1994. A mark that is primarily merely a surname may be registrable on the Supplemental Register in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act.

The legislative history of the Trademark Act of 1946 indicates that the word “primarily” was added to the existing statutory language “merely” with the intent to exclude registration of names such as “Johnson” or “Jones,” but not registration of names such as “Cotton” or “King” which, while surnames, have a primary significance other than as a surname. *See Sears, Roebuck & Co. v. Watson*, 204 F.2d 32, 33-34, 96 USPQ 360, 362 (D.C. Cir. 1953); *Ex parte Rivera Watch Corp.*, 106 USPQ 145, 149 (Comm’r Pats. 1955).

The Trademark Act, in §2(e)(4), reflects the common law that exclusive rights in a surname *per se* cannot be established without evidence of long and exclusive use that changes its significance to the public from that of a surname to that of a mark for particular goods or services. The common law also recognizes that surnames are shared by more than one individual, each of whom may have an interest in using his surname in business; and, by the requirement for evidence of distinctiveness, the law, in effect, delays appropriation of exclusive rights in the name. *In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 17, 225 USPQ 652, 653 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

1211.01 “Primarily Merely a Surname”

The test for determining whether a mark is primarily merely a surname depends on the primary significance of the mark as a whole to the purchasing public. *In re Hutchinson Tech. Inc.*, 852 F.2d 552, 554, 7 USPQ2d 1490, 1492 (Fed. Cir. 1988) *see also In re Kahan & Weisz Jewelry Mfg. Corp.*, 508 F.2d 831, 832, 184 USPQ 421, 422 (CCPA 1975); *In re Adlon Brand GmbH & Co. KG*, 120 USPQ2d 1717, 1719 (TTAB 2016); *In re Eximius Coffee*, 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1277 (TTAB 2016). Thus, the impact the applied-for term has or would have on the purchasing public must be evaluated in determining whether the primary, and only, significance of the term is a surname significance. *In re Eximius Coffee*, 120 USPQ2d at 1278 (citing *In re Harris-Intertype Corp.*, 518 F.2d 629, 186 USPQ 238, 239 (CCPA 1975)).

Each case must be decided on its own facts, based upon the evidence in the record. *See In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 17, 225 USPQ 652, 653 (Fed. Cir. 1985). There is no rule regarding the kind or amount of evidence necessary to show that the applied-for mark would be perceived as primarily merely a surname. *In re Eximius Coffee*, 120 USPQ2d at 1278.

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has identified five examples of inquiries that may lead to evidence regarding the public’s perception of a term’s primary significance:

- (1) whether the surname is rare (*see* [TMEP §1211.01\(a\)\(v\)](#));
- (2) whether the term is the surname of anyone connected with the applicant (*see* [TMEP §1211.02\(b\)\(iv\)](#));

- (3) whether the term has any recognized meaning other than as a surname (*see* [TMEP §§1211.01\(a\)–1211.01\(a\)\(vii\)](#));
- (4) whether it has the “structure and pronunciation” of a surname (*see* [TMEP §1211.01\(a\)\(vi\)](#)); and
- (5) whether the stylization of lettering is distinctive enough to create a separate commercial impression (*see* [TMEP §1211.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#)).

In re Benthin Mgmt. GmbH, 37 USPQ2d 1332, 1333-1334 (TTAB 1995) . Where the mark is in standard characters, it is unnecessary to consider the fifth factor. *In re Yeley*, 85 USPQ2d 1150, 1151 (TTAB 2007)

The Board has noted, however, that these factors are not exclusive. *In re Eximius Coffee*, 120 USPQ2d at 1278. Moreover, “any of these circumstances – singly or in combination – and any other relevant circumstances may shape the analysis in a particular case.” *Id.*

If there is any doubt as to whether a term is primarily merely a surname, the Board will resolve the doubt in favor of the applicant. *In re Yeley*, 85 USPQ2d at 1151; *In re Benthin*, 37 USPQ2d at 1334.

1211.01(a) Non-Surname Significance

Often a word will have a meaning or significance in addition to its significance as a surname. The examining attorney must determine the primary meaning of the term to the public. Evidence that a term has no recognized meaning other than as a surname further supports a determination that its primary significance is as a surname. *See In re Adlon Brand GmbH & Co. KG*, 120 USPQ2d 1717, 1719, 1721 (TTAB2016) *In re Eximius Coffee*, 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1280 (TTAB 2016).

1211.01(a)(i) Ordinary Language Meaning

If there is a readily recognized meaning of a term, apart from its surname significance, such that the primary significance of the term is not that of a surname, registration should be granted on the Principal Register without evidence of acquired distinctiveness. *See In re Isabella Fiore LLC*, 75 USPQ2d 1564 (TTAB 2005) (holding FIORE not primarily merely a surname where it is also the Italian translation of the English word “flower” and the non-surname meaning is not obscure); *In re United Distillers plc*, 56 USPQ2d 1220 (TTAB 2000) (holding the relatively rare surname HACKLER not primarily merely a surname, in light of dictionary meaning); *Fisher Radio Corp. v. Bird Elec. Corp.*, 162 USPQ 265 (TTAB 1969) (holding BIRD not primarily merely a surname despite surname significance); *In re Hunt Elecs. Co.*, 155 USPQ 606 (TTAB 1967) (holding HUNT not primarily merely a surname despite surname significance).

However, this does not mean that an applicant only has to uncover a non-surname meaning of a term to obviate a refusal under §2(e)(4). *See In re Nelson Souto Major Piquet*, 5 USPQ2d 1367 (TTAB 1987) (holding N. PIQUET (stylized) primarily merely a surname despite significance of the term “piquet” as “the name of a relatively obscure card game”). The mere existence of other non-surname meanings of a term does not preclude a finding that the term is primarily merely a surname. *Mitchell Miller, P.C. v. Miller*, 105 USPQ2d 1615, 1621 (TTAB 2013) (holding MILLER LAW GROUP primarily merely a surname for legal services despite other meanings of the term “miller”). “The question is not whether a mark having surname significance might also have a non-surname significance, but whether, in the context of the goods or services at issue, that non-surname significance is the mark’s primary significance to the purchasing public.” *Id.*; *see In re Harris-Intertype Corp.*, 518 F.2d 629, 631, 186 USPQ 238, 239 (C.C.P.A. 1975) .

1211.01(a)(ii) Phonetic Equivalent of Term with Ordinary Language Meaning

A term may be primarily merely a surname even if it is the phonetic equivalent of a word that has an ordinary meaning (e.g., Byrne/burn; Knott/not or knot; Chappell/chapel). *See In re Pickett Hotel Co.*, 229 USPQ 760 (TTAB 1986) (holding PICKETT SUITE HOTEL primarily merely a surname despite applicant's argument that PICKETT is the phonetic equivalent of the word "picket"); *cf. In re Monotype Corp. PLC*, 14 USPQ2d 1070, 1071 (TTAB 1989) (holding CALISTO not primarily merely a surname, the Board characterizing the telephone directory evidence of surname significance as "minimal" and in noting the mythological significance of the name "Callisto," stating that it is common knowledge that there are variations in the rendering of mythological names transliterated from the Greek alphabet (distinguishing *Pickett Hotel Co.*, 229 USPQ 760)). Similarly, the fact that a word that has surname significance is also a hybrid or derivative of another word having ordinary language meaning is insufficient to overcome the surname significance, unless the perception of non-surname significance would displace the primary surname impact of the word. *See In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 225 USPQ 652 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (holding DARTY primarily merely a surname despite applicant's argument that the mark is a play on the word "dart"); *In re Petrin Corp.*, 231 USPQ 902 (TTAB 1986) (holding PETRIN primarily merely a surname despite applicant's argument that the mark represents an abbreviation of "petroleum" and "insulation").

1211.01(a)(iii) Geographical Significance

A term with surname significance may not be primarily merely a surname if that term also has a well-known geographical meaning. *In re Colt Indus. Operating Corp.*, 195 USPQ 75 (TTAB 1977) (holding FAIRBANKS not primarily merely a surname because the geographical significance of the mark was determined to be just as dominant as its surname significance). However, the fact that a term is shown to have some minor significance as a geographical term will not dissipate its primary significance as a surname. *In re Hamilton Pharm. Ltd.*, 27 USPQ2d 1939 (TTAB 1993) (holding HAMILTON primarily merely a surname).

1211.01(a)(iv) Historical Place or Person

A term with surname significance may not be primarily merely a surname if that term also identifies a historical place or person. *See Lucien Piccard Watch Corp. v. Since 1868 Crescent Corp.*, 314 F. Supp. 329, 331, 165 USPQ 459, 461 (S.D.N.Y. 1970) (holding DA VINCI not primarily merely a surname because it primarily connotes Leonardo Da Vinci); *In re Pyro-Spectaculars, Inc.*, 63 USPQ2d 2022, 2024 (TTAB 2002) (holding SOUSA for fireworks and production of events and shows featuring pyrotechnics not primarily merely a surname, where the evidence showed present-day recognition and continuing fame of John Philip Sousa as a composer of patriotic music, and the applicant's goods and services were of a nature that "would be associated by potential purchasers with patriotic events such as the Fourth of July, patriotic figures, and patriotic music"); *Michael S. Sachs Inc. v. Cordon Art B.V.*, 56 USPQ2d 1132, 1136 (TTAB 2000) (finding the primary significance of M. C. ESCHER to be that of a famous deceased Dutch artist); *cf. In re Pickett Hotel Co.*, 229 USPQ 760, 762 (TTAB 1986) (holding PICKETT SUITE HOTEL primarily merely a surname despite applicant's evidence that PICKETT was the name of a famous Civil War general); *In re Champion Int'l Corp.*, 229 USPQ 550, 551 (TTAB 1985) (holding MCKINLEY primarily merely a surname despite being the name of a deceased president).

Evidence that an individual is famous in a particular field does not necessarily establish that he or she is a historical figure. *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531 (TTAB 2009) (holding BINION and BINION'S primarily merely a surname; although there was evidence that applicant had played a significant role in the gaming industry in Las Vegas, his notoriety was not deemed so remarkable or so significant that he is a historical figure); *In re Thermo LabSystems Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1285 (TTAB 2007) (holding WATSON primarily merely

a surname). Furthermore, the Board has held that a surname that would be evocative of numerous individuals, rather than one particular historical individual, does not qualify as a historical name and is merely a surname of numerous individuals with varying degree of historical significance. *Id.* at 1290.

1211.01(a)(v) Rare Surnames

The rarity of a surname is an important factor to be considered in determining whether a term is primarily merely a surname. *In re Joint-Stock Co. “Baik,”* 84 USPQ2d 1921, 1924 (TTAB 2007) (finding the extreme rarity of BAIK weighed against surname refusal); *In re Benthin Mgmt. GmbH,* 37 USPQ2d 1332, 1333 (TTAB 1995) (finding the fact that BENTHIN was a rare surname to be a factor weighing against a finding that the term would be perceived as primarily merely a surname); *In re Sava Research Corp.,* 32 USPQ2d 1380, 1381 (TTAB 1994) (finding SAVA not primarily merely a surname, where there was evidence that the term had other meaning, no evidence that the term was the surname of anyone connected with applicant, and the term’s use as a surname was very rare); *In re Garan Inc.,* 3 USPQ2d 1537 (TTAB 1987) (holding GARAN not primarily merely a surname).

However, the fact that a surname is rare does not per se preclude a finding that a term is primarily merely a surname. Even a rare surname may be held primarily merely a surname if its primary significance to purchasers is that of a surname. *See In re Etablissements Darty et Fils,* 759 F.2d 15, 225 USPQ 652 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (holding DARTY primarily merely a surname); *In re Rebo High Definition Studio Inc.,* 15 USPQ2d 1314 (TTAB 1990) (holding REBO primarily merely a surname); *In re Pohang Iron & Steel Co.,* 230 USPQ 79 (TTAB 1986) (holding POSTEN primarily merely a surname). Regardless of the rarity of the surname, the test is whether the primary significance of the term to the purchasing public is that of a surname. *See In re Adlon Brand GmbH & Co. KG,* 120 USPQ2d 1717, 1721 (TTAB 2016); (“The issue to be determined under the statute is whether the public would perceive the surname significance as the proposed mark’s primary significance, not whether the surname is rarely encountered.”).

An issue to be considered in determining how rarely a term is used is the media attention or publicity accorded to public personalities who have the surname. A surname rarely appearing in birth records may nonetheless appear more routinely in news reports, so as to be broadly exposed to the general public. *In re Gregory,* 70 USPQ2d 1792, 1795 (TTAB 2004); *cf. In re Eximius Coffee, LLC,* 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1281 (TTAB 2016).

1211.01(a)(vi) “Structure and Pronunciation” of a Surname

Some names, by their very nature, have only surname significance even though they are rare surnames. *See In re Industrie Pirelli Societa per Azioni,* 9 USPQ2d 1564, 1566 (TTAB 1988) (holding PIRELLI primarily merely a surname, the Board stated that “certain rare surnames look like surnames and certain rare surnames do not and ... ‘PIRELLI’ falls into the former category...”); *In re Petrin Corp.,* 231 USPQ 902 (TTAB 1986) (holding PETRIN primarily merely a surname). Conversely, certain surnames are so rare that they do not even have the appearance of surnames. In such cases, even in the absence of non-surname significance, a reasonable application of the “primary significance to the purchasing public” test could result in a finding that the surname, when used as a mark, would be perceived as arbitrary or fanciful. *In re United Distillers plc,* 56 USPQ2d 1220, 1222 (TTAB 2000) (finding HACKLER does not have the look and feel of a surname); *see also In re Joint-Stock Co. “Baik,”* 84 USPQ2d 1921, 1923 (TTAB 2007) (finding lack of other recognized meaning does not in itself imbue a mark with the “look and feel” of a surname).

Examining attorneys may submit evidence that the public would perceive a term to have surname significance due to its structure or pronunciation. *In re Eximius Coffee,* 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1280 (TTAB 2016). For example, the examining attorney may compare the mark at issue to other terms with the same structure. In

such cases, the examining attorney must provide evidence to show that the public would be likely to perceive the mark as a surname due to the similar structure, such as evidence that the terms to which the mark is being compared are common surnames to which the public has been exposed. *Id.*; see also *In re Adlon Brand GmbH & Co. KG*, 120 USPQ2d 1717, 1724 (TTAB 2016) (noting that “[t]he mere sharing of a prefix, suffix or letter string does not result in the sort of structural similarity that is helpful to [the surname] analysis” and that arguments about surname structure and pronunciation “would require more objective evidence . . . of how members of the public would perceive the structure and sound of [the applied-for mark] and whether they would be likely to perceive it as similar to the structure and sound of other surnames, common words or coined terms”).

1211.01(a)(vii) Doctrine of Foreign Equivalents

In determining whether a term is primarily merely a surname, the examining attorney must consider whether the term has any meaning in a foreign language. This determination is made from the point of view of American buyers familiar with the foreign language. *In re Isabella Fiore, LLC*, 75 USPQ2d 1564 (TTAB 2005) (holding FIORE – the Italian equivalent of “Flower” – not primarily merely a surname).

The doctrine of foreign equivalents is not an absolute rule, but merely a guideline, which should be applied only when it is likely that the ordinary American purchaser would stop and translate the foreign word into its English equivalent. See *Palm Bay Imps., Inc. v. Veuve Clicquot Ponsardin Maison Fondée en 1772*, 396 F.3d 1369, 1377, 73 USPQ2d 1689, 1696 (Fed. Cir. 2005). The “ordinary American purchaser” includes “all American purchasers, including those proficient in a non-English language who would ordinarily be expected to translate words into English.” *In re Spirits Int’l, N.V.*, 563 F.3d 1347, 1352, 90 USPQ2d 1489, 1492 (Fed. Cir. 2009). To support a refusal under §2(e)(4), the record must show that the surname significance is the *primary* significance. See *In re Picone*, 221 USPQ 93, 95 (TTAB 1984) (finding evidence that “PICON” is the name of a town and a mountain in Spain and that “piccone” is an Italian word meaning “pick” or “pickax” insufficient to overcome a refusal on the ground that PICONE is *primarily* merely a surname).

In *Fiore*, the Board noted that applicant had produced evidence that Italian is a popular language in the United States, such that the meaning of the term would be recognized by a wide variety of people; that “Fiore” is “listed as the only translation of the common English word ‘flower;’” that Italian is a major, modern language, not an obscure language; and that the non-surname meaning of the term in Italian is not obscure. The Board found that FIORE “is the type of term that potential customers would stop and translate,” and that “there is no question of whether the term would be recognized in its current form as the Italian word for ‘Flower.’” 75 USPQ2d at 1569.

The fact that a term has no meaning in a foreign language may also be relevant to a determination of whether a term is primarily merely a surname. In holding that PIRELLI was primarily merely a surname, the Board noted that the term “has no ordinary meaning in the Italian language, as the Italian dictionary excerpt, made of record by the Examining Attorney, shows.” *In re Industrie Pirelli Societa per Azioni*, 9 USPQ2d 1564, 1566 (TTAB 1988) .

See [TMPEP §§809–809.03](#) for information regarding how to ascertain the meaning of non-English wording in a mark.

See also [TMPEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)–1207.01\(b\)\(vi\)\(C\)](#), [1209.03\(g\)](#), and [1210.10](#) regarding the doctrine of foreign equivalents.

1211.01(b) Surname Combined with Additional Matter

Often a mark will be comprised of a word that, standing by itself, would be primarily merely a surname, coupled with additional matter (e.g., letters, words, or designs). The question remains whether the mark sought to be registered as a whole would be perceived by the public primarily merely as a surname. *In re Hutchinson Tech. Inc.*, 852 F.2d 552, 554, 7 USPQ2d 1490, 1492 (Fed. Cir. 1988). See [TMEP §§1211.01\(b\)\(i\)–1211.01\(b\)\(viii\)](#) for additional information about surnames combined with additional matter.

1211.01(b)(i) Double Surnames

A combination of two surnames is not primarily merely a surname, within the meaning of §2(e)(4), unless there is evidence of record showing that the combination would be perceived by the public primarily merely as a surname. *See In re Standard Elektrik Lorenz A.G.*, 371 F.2d 870, 873, 152 USPQ 563, 566 (C.C.P.A. 1967) (holding SCHAUB-LORENZ not primarily merely a surname, the Court noting that there was no evidence submitted that the mark sought to be registered was primarily merely a surname; that the only evidence of surname significance related to the individual “SCHAUB” and “LORENZ” portions of the mark; and that the mark must be considered in its entirety rather than dissected).

1211.01(b)(ii) Stylization or Design Elements

A mark comprised of a word that, standing by itself, would be considered primarily merely a surname, but which is coupled with a distinctive stylization or design element, is not considered primarily merely a surname. *In re Benthin Mgmt. GmbH*, 37 USPQ2d 1332, 1334 (TTAB 1995) (finding stylized display of term BENTHIN to be a factor weighing against a finding that the term would be perceived as primarily merely a surname). However, the addition of a nondistinctive design element or stylization to a term that, standing by itself, is primarily merely a surname does not remove the term from that category. The primary significance of the mark, in its entirety, would be merely that of a surname. *See In re Pickett Hotel Co.*, 229 USPQ 760, 763 (TTAB 1986) (holding PICKETT SUITE HOTEL primarily merely a surname despite the stylization of the lettering, which was considered “insignificant, in that it is clearly not so distinctive as to create any separate commercial impression in the minds of purchasers of appellant’s services”).

The display of a term in lower-case lettering does not detract from its surname significance. *In re Directional Mktg. Corp.*, 204 USPQ 675, 677 (TTAB 1979) .

1211.01(b)(iii) Surname Combined with Initials

A mark that consists of two or more initials preceding a surname will typically convey the commercial impression of a personal name and thus generally will not be primarily merely a surname. *In re P.J. Fitzpatrick*, 95 USPQ2d 1412, 1414 (TTAB 2010) (holding that the initials P.J. coupled with surname Fitzpatrick would be perceived as a given name and thus comprises an entire personal name, not merely a surname); *see In re Yeley*, 85 USPQ2d 1150, 1153 (TTAB 2007) (holding that the proposed mark J.J. YELEY was recognized as the full name of the well known NASCAR race driver and as such was perceived as a reference to a particular person and not primarily merely a surname) ; *Michael S. Sachs Inc. v. Cordon Art B.V.*, 56 USPQ2d 1132, 1136 (TTAB 2000) (finding that the primary significance of M.C. ESCHER was that of a famous deceased Dutch artist, commenting that “[t]he mark M.C. ESCHER would no more be perceived as primarily merely a surname than the personal names P.T. Barnum, T.S. Eliot, O.J. Simpson, I.M. Pei and Y.A. Tittle.”).

Although marks consisting of a single initial preceding a surname have been held to be primarily merely a surname, *In re I. Lewis Cigar Mfg. Co.*, 205 F.2d 204, 98 USPQ 265 (C.C.P.A. 1953), the Board has noted that no per se rule exists that a single initial preceding a surname must be deemed primarily merely a surname.

P.J. Fitzpatrick, 95 USPQ2d at 1413. The Board further opined that such a mark would not be perceived as primarily merely a surname where the record shows that the addition of a single initial to a surname creates the commercial impression of a personal name. *Id.* Therefore, applicants may attempt to overcome a surname refusal as to a mark consisting of a single initial preceding a surname by submitting evidence that the mark would likely be perceived as a personal name. For example, an applicant may provide evidence that consumers in general perceive a single initial preceding a surname as a personal name. Or, an applicant may show that such a mark is the name of an individual, such as the applicant or a signatory of the applicant, and evidence shows it would be recognized as such by the consuming public. In addition, if the applicant indicates that the name in the mark is that of a particular living individual, the applicant must provide written consent to register the mark from this individual. See [TMEP §§813](#), [813.01\(a\)](#), [1206.04\(a\)](#). However, when the name in the mark is identical to the name of the applicant or of a signer of the application (e.g., the mark is A. JONES and the applicant's name or signatory is A. Jones), consent is not necessary. In such cases, consent is presumed, but the examining attorney must ensure that a consent statement is entered into the Trademark database. See [TMEP §§813](#), [813.01\(a\)](#), and [1206.04\(b\)](#).

1211.01(b)(iv) Surname Combined with Title

A title, such as “Mr.,” “Mrs.,” “Mlle.,” “Dr.,” or “MD,” does not diminish the surname significance of a term; rather, it may enhance the surname significance of a term. *In re Rath*, 402 F.3d 1207, 74 USPQ2d 1174 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (affirming Board decision holding that DR. RATH was primarily merely a surname); *In re Giger*, 78 USPQ2d 1405 (TTAB 2006) (holding GIGER MD primarily merely a surname); *In re Revillon*, 154 USPQ 494 (TTAB 1967) (holding MLLE. REVILLON primarily merely a surname); *cf. In re Hilton Hotels Corp.*, 166 USPQ 216, 217 (TTAB 1970) (holding LADY HILTON not primarily merely a surname because it suggests a person or lady of nobility).

1211.01(b)(v) Surname in Plural or Possessive Form

The surname significance of a term is not diminished by the fact that the term is presented in its plural or possessive form. See *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531 (TTAB 2009) (holding BINION and BINION'S primarily merely a surname); *In re Woolley's Petite Suites*, 18 USPQ2d 1810 (TTAB 1991) (holding WOOLLEY'S PETITE SUITES for hotel and motel services primarily merely a surname); *In re McDonald's Corp.*, 230 USPQ 304, 306 (TTAB 1986) (holding MCDONALD'S primarily merely a surname based on a showing of surname significance of “McDonald,” the Board noting that “it is clear that people use their surnames in possessive and plural forms to identify their businesses or trades”); *In re Luis Caballero, S.A.*, 223 USPQ 355 (TTAB 1984) (holding BURDONS primarily merely a surname based in part on telephone listings showing surname significance of “Burdon”); *In re Directional Mktg. Corp.*, 204 USPQ 675 (TTAB 1979) (holding DRUMMONDS primarily merely a surname based on a showing of surname significance of “Drummond”).

1211.01(b)(vi) Surname Combined with Wording

The treatment of marks that include wording in addition to a term that, standing by itself, is primarily merely a surname, depends on the significance of the non-surname wording.

If the wording combined with the surname is incapable of functioning as a mark (i.e., a generic name for the goods or services), the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the entire mark

is primarily merely a surname under §2(e)(4). If the policy were otherwise, one could evade §2(e)(4) by the easy expedient of adding the generic name of the goods or services to a word that is primarily merely a surname. See *In re Integrated Embedded*, 120 USPQ2d 1504, (holding BARR GROUP for training, engineering, and expert witness services in the field of computer hardware and software primarily merely a surname); *Mitchell Miller, P.C. v. Miller*, 105 USPQ2d 1615 (TTAB 2013) (holding MILLER LAW GROUP for legal services primarily merely a surname); *In re Hamilton Pharm. Ltd.*, 27 USPQ2d 1939 (TTAB 1993) (holding HAMILTON PHARMACEUTICALS for pharmaceutical products primarily merely a surname); *In re Cazes*, 21 USPQ2d 1796, 1797 (TTAB 1991) (holding BRASSERIE LIPP primarily merely a surname where “‘brasserie’ is a generic term for applicant’s restaurant services”); *In re Woolley’s Petite Suites*, 18 USPQ2d 1810 (TTAB 1991) (holding WOOLLEY’S PETITE SUITES for hotel and motel services primarily merely a surname); *In re Possis Med., Inc.*, 230 USPQ 72, 73 (TTAB 1986) (holding POSSIS PERFUSION CUP primarily merely a surname, the Board finding that “[a]pplicant’s argument that PERFUSION CUP is not a generic name for its goods ... is contradicted by the evidence the Examining Attorney has pointed to”); *In re E. Martinoni Co.*, 189 USPQ 589, 590-91 (TTAB 1975) (holding LIQUORE MARTINONI (stylized) for liqueur primarily merely a surname, with “liqueure” being the Italian word for “liqueur”).

If the wording combined with the surname is capable of functioning as a mark (i.e., matter that is arbitrary, suggestive, or merely descriptive of the goods or services), the mark is not considered to be primarily merely a surname under §2(e)(4). However, if the additional wording is merely descriptive or the equivalent, and a disclaimer is otherwise proper, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the additional wording. [15 U.S.C §1056](#); [TMEP §1213.03](#).

Some wording may enhance rather than diminish the surname significance of the mark. See *In re Piano Factory Grp. Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1522, 1527 (TTAB 2006) (finding the addition of “& SONS” to the surname VOSE “serves only to emphasize or reinforce that ‘VOSE’ is the surname of the sons’ parents.”), and cases cited therein. See also [TMEP §1211.01\(b\)\(iv\)](#) regarding surnames combined with titles, [TMEP §1211.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding surnames combined with initials, and [TMEP §1211.01\(b\)\(viii\)](#) regarding surnames combined with legal or familial business entity designations.

1211.01(b)(vii) Surname Combined with Domain Name

A surname combined with a non-source-identifying top-level domain name (e.g., JOHNSON.COM) is primarily merely a surname under §2(e)(4). See [TMEP §1215.03](#).

1211.01(b)(viii) Surname Combined with Legal or Familial Entity Designation

The addition of wording that merely indicates the legal entity of an applicant, such as “Corporation,” “Inc.,” “Ltd.,” “Company,” or “Co.,” or the family business structure of an applicant, such as “& Sons” or “Bros.,” does not diminish the surname significance of a term that is otherwise primarily merely a surname. See *In re I. Lewis Cigar Mfg. Co.*, 205 F.2d 204, 98 USPQ 265 (C.C.P.A. 1953) (holding S. SEIDENBERG & CO’S. primarily merely a surname); *In re Piano Factory Grp. Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1522 (TTAB 2006) (holding VOSE & SONS primarily merely a surname). In fact, adding the familial entity designation “& SONS” to a surname was found to emphasize or reinforce the surname significance of the mark. *Piano Factory Grp. Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d at 1527.

1211.02 Evidence Relating to Surname Refusal

1211.02(a) Evidentiary Burden – Generally

The burden is initially on the examining attorney to establish a prima facie case that a mark is primarily merely a surname. The burden then shifts to the applicant to rebut this showing. *In re Petrin Corp.*, 231 USPQ 902, 902-03 (TTAB 1986). The evidence submitted by the examining attorney was found insufficient to establish a prima facie case in the following decisions: *In re Kahan & Weisz Jewelry Mfg. Corp.*, 508 F.2d 831, 833, 184 USPQ 421, 422 (C.C.P.A. 1975) (finding six telephone directory listings insufficient to establish a prima facie case); *In re BDH Two Inc.*, 26 USPQ2d 1556, 1558 (TTAB 1993) (finding twenty-one telephone directory listings, eleven excerpts from a research database, primarily from foreign publications, and a dictionary page showing no listing for the proposed mark insufficient to establish a prima facie case); *In re Raivico*, 9 USPQ2d 2006, 2006-07 (TTAB 1988) (finding applicant's statement that the mark is a surname and the specimens insufficient to establish a prima facie case); *In re Garan Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1537, 1540 (TTAB 1987) (finding six telephone directory listings, a reference in a television news program, and a dictionary page showing no listing for the proposed mark insufficient to establish a prima facie case).

There is no rule as to the kind or amount of evidence necessary to make out a prima facie showing that a term is primarily merely a surname. This question must be resolved on a case-by-case basis. *See, e.g., In re Monotype Corp. PLC*, 14 USPQ2d 1070 (TTAB 1989); *In re Pohang Iron & Steel Co.*, 230 USPQ 79 (TTAB 1986). The entire record is examined to determine the surname significance of a term. The following are examples of evidence that may be relevant: telephone directory listings; excerpted articles from computerized research databases; evidence in the record that the term is a surname; the manner of use on the specimen; dictionary definitions of the term and evidence from dictionaries showing no definition of the term. The quantum of evidence that is persuasive in finding surname significance in one case may be insufficient in another because of the differences in the names themselves. *See In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 17, 225 USPQ 652, 653 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

See [TMEP §§710–710.03](#) and [1211.02\(b\)–1211.02\(b\)\(vii\)](#) for additional information about evidence.

1211.02(b) Evidentiary Considerations

In appropriate cases, the examining attorney may present evidence that may appear contrary to his or her position, with an appropriate explanation as to why, in view of other evidence presented, this evidence was not considered controlling. In some cases, this may foreclose objections from an applicant and present a more complete picture in the event of an appeal.

See [TMEP §§1211.02\(b\)\(i\)–1211.02\(b\)\(vii\)](#) regarding types of evidence that may be relevant to a refusal of registration under §2(e)(4).

1211.02(b)(i) Telephone Directory Listings

Telephone directory listings from telephone books or electronic databases are one type of credible evidence of the surname significance of a term. *In re Integrated Embedded*, 120 USPQ2d 1504, 1507 (TTAB 2016) (evidence that more than 13,000 individuals in a number of locations throughout the U.S. bear the surname BARR establishes that it is a common enough surname that a substantial number of persons would be able to recognize its significance as a surname). The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has declined to hold that a minimum number of listings in telephone directories must be found to establish a prima facie showing

that the mark is primarily merely a surname. *See, e.g., In re Petrin Corp.*, 231 USPQ 902, 903 (TTAB 1986); *In re Wickuler-Kupper-Brauerei KGaA*, 221 USPQ 469, 470 (TTAB 1983) .

It is the American public's perception of a term that is determinative. Therefore, foreign telephone directory listings are not probative of the significance of a term to the purchasing public in the United States, regardless of whether the applicant is of foreign origin. *See, e.g., Société Civile Des Domaines Dourthe Frères v. S.A. Consortium Vinicole De Bordeaux Et De La Gironde*, 6 USPQ2d 1205, 1208 (TTAB 1988); *In re Stromsholmens Mekaniska Verkstad AB*, 228 USPQ 968, 969 (TTAB 1986); *In re Wickuler-Kupper-Brauerei*, 221 USPQ at 470 n.2.

1211.02(b)(ii) LexisNexis® Research Database Evidence

Excerpted articles from the LexisNexis® research database are one type of credible evidence of the surname significance of a term. There is no requirement that the examining attorney make of record every story found in a LexisNexis® search. However, the examining attorney is presumed to make the best case possible. *See In re Federated Dep't Stores Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1541, 1542 n.2 (TTAB 1987) ; 3 USPQ2d 1541, 1542 n.2 (TTAB 1987); *see also In re Monotype Corp. PLC*, 14 USPQ2d 1070, 1071 (TTAB 1989) (“We must conclude that, because the Examining Attorney is presumed to have made the best case possible, the 46 stories not made of record [the search yielded 48 stories] do not support the position that CALISTO is a surname and, indeed, show that CALISTO has non surname meanings.”) *See* [TMEP §710.01\(b\)](#) regarding evidence originating in foreign publications.

Examining attorneys may also show surname significance by providing evidence of the total number of occurrences of a particular surname in the LexisNexis® surname database, which is a regularly updated nationwide directory of mobile phone numbers and other numbers (such VOIP numbers) and the names with which they are associated.

An Office action that includes any evidence obtained from a research database should include a citation to the research service and a clear record of the specific search that was conducted, indicating the libraries or files that were searched and the date of the search (e.g., LexisNexis®, News and Business, All News, Aug. 5, 2007). The electronic record or printout summarizing the search should be made a part of the record. Relevant information not included on the summary, such as the number of documents viewed, should be stated in narrative in the Office action. *See* [TMEP §710.01\(a\)](#).

1211.02(b)(iii) U.S. Census Database Evidence

The Census Bureau (http://www.census.gov/topics/population/genealogy/data/2010_surnames.html) has a database of surnames taken from the most recent decennial census. The surnames are ordered by rank, and the database lists the number of individuals in the country having each surname. Because the database reflects the number of individuals, rather than the number of households, with a particular name, search results from this database may be more persuasive evidence of surname frequency than results from telephone directory listings.

1211.02(b)(iv) Surname of Person Associated with Applicant

The fact that a term is the surname of an individual associated with the applicant (e.g., an officer or founder) is evidence of the surname significance of the term. *See In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 17, 225 USPQ 652, 653 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re Eximius Coffee, LLC* 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1278-80 (TTAB 2016); *In reIntegrated Embedded* 120 USPQ2d 1504, 1507 (TTAB 2016); *Mitchell Miller, P.C. v. Miller*,

105 USPQ2d 1615, 1620-21 (TTAB 2013); *In re Rebo High Definition Studio Inc.*, 15 USPQ2d 1314, 1315 (TTAB 1990) ; *In re Industrie Pirelli Societa per Azioni*, 9 USPQ2d 1564, 1566 (TTAB 1988). However, the lack of such an association does not necessarily reduce the likelihood that the mark would be perceived as a surname. *See In re Adlon Brand GmbH & Co. KG* 120 USPQ2d 1717, 1724 (TTAB 2016).

1211.02(b)(v) Specimens Confirming Surname Significance of Term

The fact that a term appears on the specimen of record in a manner that confirms its surname significance is evidence of the surname significance of a term. *See In re Integrated Embedded* 120 USPQ2d 1504, 1510 (TTAB 2016) (holding BARR GROUP primarily merely a surname, noting evidence that applicant's co-founder, Michael Barr, is prominently featured on specimens, which also indicate that applicant derived its name from him); *In re Eximius Coffee, LLC* 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1279 (TTAB 2016) (holding ALDECOA primarily merely a surname, noting applicant's presentation of the mark with the phrase "Premium Family Coffee" on packaging for the goods); *Société Civile Des Domaines Dourthe Frères v. S.A. Consortium Vinicole De Bordeaux Et De La Gironde*, 6 USPQ2d 1205, 1208 (TTAB 1988) (holding DOURTHE primarily merely a surname, the Board noted applicant's references to "Dourthe" as the name of a particular family and found the surname significance of the term to be reinforced by the appearance on applicant's wine labels of the name and/or signature of an individual named Pierre Dourthe); *In re Taverniti, SARL*, 225 USPQ 1263, 1264 (TTAB 1985), *recon. denied*, 228 USPQ 975 (TTAB 1985) (holding J. TAVERNITI primarily merely a surname, the Board considered, among other factors, the presentation of the mark on the specimen in signature form); *In re Luis Caballero, S.A.*, 223 USPQ 355, 356-57 (TTAB 1984) (holding BURDONS primarily merely a surname, the Board weighted heavily the applicant's use of "Burdon" on the specimen as a surname, albeit of a fictitious character ("John William Burdon")).

1211.02(b)(vi) Negative Dictionary Evidence

Negative dictionary evidence (i.e., evidence that a term is absent from dictionaries or atlases) may demonstrate the lack of non-surname significance of a term. *In re Adlon Brand GmbH & Co. KG*, 120 USPQ2d 1717, 1719, 1721 (TTAB 2016) (finding that evidence showing that the applied-for mark did not appear in dictionaries created a "strong inference" that the mark has no other non-surname meaning) *In re Eximius Coffee, LLC*, 120 USPQ2d 1276, 1280 (TTAB 2016) ("The evidence that ALDECOA has no other recognized meaning further supports the Examining Attorney's case that its primary significance is as a surname.").

1211.02(b)(vii) Evidence of Fame of a Mark

Evidence of the fame of a mark (e.g., evidence of consumer recognition of a mark, or expenditures made in promoting or advertising a mark) is not relevant unless registration is sought under §2(f). *In re McDonald's Corp.*, 230 USPQ 304, 307 (TTAB 1986) (holding McDonald's primarily merely a surname in spite of strong secondary meaning, with the Board stating that "the word 'primarily' refers to the primary significance of the term, that is, the ordinary meaning of the word, and not to the term's strength as a trademark due to widespread advertising and promotion of the term as a mark to identify goods and/or services."); *see In re Industrie Pirelli Societa per Azioni*, 9 USPQ2d 1564, 1565 (TTAB 1988); *In re Nelson Souto Major Piquet*, 5 USPQ2d 1367, 1368 (TTAB 1987).

1212 Acquired Distinctiveness or Secondary Meaning

15 U.S.C. §1052(f)

Except as expressly excluded in subsections (a), (b), (c), (d), (e)(3), and (e)(5) of this section, nothing herein shall prevent the registration of a mark used by the applicant which has become distinctive of the applicant's goods in commerce. The Director may accept as prima facie evidence that the mark has become distinctive, as used on or in connection with the applicant's goods in

commerce, proof of substantially exclusive and continuous use thereof as a mark by the applicant in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made. Nothing in this section shall prevent the registration of a mark which, when used on or in connection with the goods of the applicant, is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive of them, and which became distinctive of the applicant's goods in commerce before the date of the enactment of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act.

If a proposed trademark or service mark is not inherently distinctive, it may be registered on the Principal Register only upon proof of acquired distinctiveness, or "secondary meaning," that is, proof that it has become distinctive as applied to the applicant's goods or services in commerce. If the applicant establishes, to the satisfaction of the examining attorney, that the matter in question has acquired distinctiveness as a mark in relation to the named goods or services, then the mark is registrable on the Principal Register under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#).

Within the context of the Trademark Act, §2(f) may be described as follows:

[U]nlike the first five sections of [15 U.S.C. §1052](#) which define the grounds upon which a trademark registration is to be refused, Section 2(f) serves as an exception to a rejection under the provisions of one of the other sections, Section 2(e) (citation omitted). Section 2(f) permits registration of marks that, despite not qualifying for registration in light of Section 2(e), have nevertheless "become distinctive of the applicant's goods in commerce." Thus, "Section 2(f) is not a provision on which registration can be refused," . . . but is a provision under which an applicant has a chance to prove that he is entitled to a federal trademark registration which would otherwise be refused.

Yamaha Int'l Corp. v. Hoshino Gakki Co., 840 F.2d 1572, 1580, 6 USPQ2d 1001, 1007 (Fed. Cir. 1988), quoting *In re Capital Formation Counselors, Inc.*, 219 USPQ 916, 917 n.2 (TTAB 1983).

The purpose and significance of secondary meaning may be described as follows:

A term which is descriptive . . . may, through usage by one producer with reference to his product, acquire a special significance so that to the consuming public the word has come to mean that the product is produced by that particular manufacturer. 1 Nims, *Unfair Competition and Trademarks* at §37 (1947). This is what is known as secondary meaning.

The crux of the secondary meaning doctrine is that the mark comes to identify not only the goods but the source of those goods. To establish secondary meaning, it must be shown that the *primary* significance of the term in the minds of the consuming public is not the product but the producer (citations omitted). This may be an anonymous producer, since consumers often buy goods without knowing the personal identity or actual name of the manufacturer.

Ralston Purina Co. v. Thomas J. Lipton, Inc., 341 F. Supp. 129, 133, 173 USPQ 820, 823 (S.D.N.Y. 1972)

Three basic types of evidence may be used to establish acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) for a trademark or service mark:

- (1) *Prior Registrations* : A claim of ownership of one or more active prior registrations on the Principal Register of the same mark for goods or services that are sufficiently similar to those identified in the pending application ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#)); see [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#);
- (2) *Five Years' Use* : A statement verified by the applicant that the mark has become distinctive of the applicant's goods or services by reason of the applicant's substantially exclusive and continuous use

of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1212.05–1212.05\(d\)](#)); and

- (3) *Other Evidence* : Other appropriate evidence of acquired distinctiveness ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(3\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#)).

These three basic types of evidence apply similarly to collective trademarks, collective service marks, and collective membership marks (together “collective marks”), and certification marks, with slight modifications regarding the type of evidence required due to (1) the different function and purpose of collective and certification marks and (2) the fact that these types of marks are used by someone other than the applicant. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)–\(d\)](#).

- (1) *Prior Registrations* : A claim of ownership of one or more active prior registrations on the Principal Register of the same mark for: goods or services that are sufficiently similar to those identified in the pending application, for a collective trademark or collective service mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(1\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#)); goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization that are sufficiently similar to those identified in the pending application, for a collective membership mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(c\)\(1\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#)); and goods or services that are sufficiently similar to the goods or services certified in the pending application, for a certification mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(d\)\(1\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#));
- (2) *Five Years’ Use* : A statement verified by the applicant that the mark has become distinctive of: the members’ goods or services by reason of the members’ substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, for a collective trademark or collective service mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#)); indicating membership in the applicant’s collective membership organization by reason of the members’ substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, for a collective membership organization ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(c\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#)); or the certified goods or services, by reason of the authorized users’ substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, for a certification mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(d\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#)); and
- (3) *Other Evidence* : Other appropriate evidence of acquired distinctiveness ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(3\)](#), [\(c\)\(3\)](#), [\(d\)\(3\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#)).

The applicant may submit one or any combination of these types of evidence, which are discussed in more detail below. Depending on the nature of the mark and the facts in the record, the examining attorney may determine that a claim of ownership of a prior registration(s) or a claim of five years’ substantially exclusive and continuous use in commerce is insufficient to establish a prima facie case of acquired distinctiveness. In which case, the applicant may then submit additional other evidence of acquired distinctiveness.

The legal principles pertaining to evidence of acquired distinctiveness discussed in this section and below with respect to trademarks and service marks apply generally to collective marks and certification marks as well.

1212.01 General Evidentiary Matters

Whether acquired distinctiveness has been established is a question of fact. *See In re Loew’s Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 769-70, 226 USPQ 865, 869 (Fed. Cir. 1985), and cases cited therein. The record must contain facts or evidence of acquired distinctiveness.

The burden of proving that a mark has acquired distinctiveness is on the applicant. *See Yamaha Int'l Corp. v. Hoshino Gakki Co.*, 840 F.2d 1572, 1578-79, 6 USPQ2d 1001, 1006 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *In re Meyer & Wenthe, Inc.*, 267 F.2d 945, 949, 122 USPQ 372, 375 (C.C.P.A. 1959).

The applicant may present any competent evidence to establish that a mark has acquired distinctiveness. Actual evidence of acquired distinctiveness may be submitted regardless of the length of time the mark has been used. *See Ex parte Fox River Paper Corp.*, 99 USPQ 173, 174 (Comm'r Pats. 1953).

The amount and character of evidence required to establish acquired distinctiveness depends on the facts of each case and particularly on the nature of the mark sought to be registered. *See Roux Labs., Inc. v. Clairol Inc.*, 427 F.2d 823, 829, 166 USPQ 34, 39 (C.C.P.A. 1970); *In re Hehr Mfg. Co.*, 279 F.2d 526, 528, 126 USPQ 381, 383 (C.C.P.A. 1960); *In re Gammon Reel, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 729, 730 (TTAB 1985).

Typically, more evidence is required where a mark is so highly descriptive that purchasers seeing the matter in relation to the named goods or services would be less likely to believe that it indicates source in any one party. *See, e.g., In re Bongrain Int'l Corp.*, 894 F.2d 1316, 1318, 13 USPQ2d 1727, 1729 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *Alcatraz Media, Inc. v. Chesapeake Marine Tours Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1750, 1767 (TTAB 2013); *In re Seaman & Assocs., Inc.*, 1 USPQ2d 1657, 1659 (TTAB 1986); *In re Packaging Specialists, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 917, 919 (TTAB 1984). Research showing that third parties in applicant's field or closely related fields use the same or substantially the same wording as the mark, or very similar wording as the mark, tends to indicate the mark is at least highly descriptive.

If the applicant has one or more prior federal registrations under §2(f) for a different depiction of the same mark (e.g., stylized vs. standard character) or a portion of the proposed mark, for the same goods/services, the examining attorney's review of the records to assess the probative value of the prior registrations may assist in resolving whether the mark in question has acquired distinctiveness, and thereby obviate the necessity of determining the issue on appeal. *In re Thomas Nelson, Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d 1712, 1713 (TTAB 2011).

Facts based on events that occurred subsequent to the filing date of the application may be considered. Whether acquired distinctiveness has been established is determined in view of the facts that exist at the time registrability is being considered. *McCormick & Co. v. Summers*, 354 F.2d 668, 674, 148 USPQ 272, 276 (C.C.P.A. 1966); *Gen. Foods Corp. v. MGD Partners*, 224 USPQ 479, 486 (TTAB 1984).

1212.02 General Procedural Matters

1212.02(a) Situations in Which a Claim of Distinctiveness Under §2(f) Is Appropriate

A claim of distinctiveness by the applicant under §2(f) is usually made either in response to a statutory refusal to register or in anticipation of such a refusal. *See* [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). A claim of distinctiveness is appropriately made in response to, or in anticipation of, only certain statutory refusals to register. For example, it is inappropriate to assert acquired distinctiveness to contravene a refusal under §2(a), (b), (c), (d), or (e)(5), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), [\(b\)](#), [\(c\)](#), [\(d\)](#), [\(e\)\(5\)](#). Furthermore, acquired distinctiveness may not be asserted to contravene a refusal under §2(e)(3), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), unless the mark became distinctive of the applicant's goods in commerce before December 8, 1993, the date of enactment of the NAFTA Implementation Act (*see* [TMEP §1210.07\(b\)](#)). *See* [TMEP §§1210.05\(d\)–1210.05\(d\)\(ii\)](#) regarding procedures for refusing registration under §2(a) in response to a claim that a geographically deceptive mark acquired distinctiveness prior to December 8, 1993.

In *In re Soccer Sport Supply Co.*, 507 F.2d 1400, 1403 n.3, 184 USPQ 345, 348 n.3 (C.C.P.A. 1975), the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals noted as follows:

[T]he judicially developed concept of “secondary meaning,” codified by section 2(f) ([15 U.S.C. 1052\(f\)](#)), relates to descriptive, geographically descriptive, or surname marks which earlier had a primary meaning which did not indicate a single source and were, therefore, unregistrable because of section 2(e) (citation omitted). Additionally, section 2(f) has been applied to permit registration of a mark consisting solely of a design and, therefore, not within the purview of section 2(e).

1212.02(b) Section 2(f) Claim Is, for Procedural Purposes, a Concession that Matter Is Not Inherently Distinctive

For procedural purposes, a claim of distinctiveness under §2(f), whether made in the application as filed or in a subsequent amendment, may be construed as conceding that the matter to which it pertains is not inherently distinctive and, thus, not registrable on the Principal Register absent proof of acquired distinctiveness. *See Cold War Museum, Inc. v. Cold War Air Museum, Inc.*, 586 F.3d 1352, 92 USPQ2d 1626, 1629 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (“Where an applicant seeks registration on the basis of Section 2(f), the mark’s descriptiveness is a nonissue; an applicant’s reliance on Section 2(f) during prosecution presumes that the mark is descriptive.”). For the purposes of establishing that the subject matter is not inherently distinctive, the examining attorney may rely on this concession alone. Once an applicant has claimed that matter has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), the issue to be determined is not whether the matter is inherently distinctive but, rather, whether it has acquired distinctiveness.

See, e.g., Yamaha Int’l Corp. v. Hoshino Gakki Co., 840 F.2d 1572, 1577, 6 USPQ2d 1001, 1005 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *In re Cabot Corp.*, 15 USPQ2d 1224, 1229 (TTAB 1990); *In re Prof'l Learning Ctrs., Inc.*, 230 USPQ 70, 71 (TTAB 1986); *In re Chopper Indus.*, 222 USPQ 258, 259 (TTAB 1984).

However, claiming distinctiveness in the alternative is *not* an admission that the proposed mark is not inherently distinctive. [TMEP §1212.02\(c\)](#).

See [TMEP §1212.02\(d\)](#) regarding unnecessary §2(f) claims.

1212.02(c) Claiming §2(f) Distinctiveness in the Alternative

An applicant may argue the merits of an examining attorney’s refusal and, in the alternative, claim that the matter sought to be registered has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f). Unlike the situation in which an applicant initially seeks registration under §2(f) or amends its application without objection, the alternative claim does not constitute a concession that the matter sought to be registered is not inherently distinctive. *See In re Thomas Nelson, Inc.*, 97 USPQ2d 1712, 1713 (TTAB 2011); *In re E S Robbins Corp.*, 30 USPQ2d 1540, 1542 (TTAB 1992); *In re Prof'l Learning Ctrs., Inc.*, 230 USPQ 70, 71 n.2 (TTAB 1986).

When an applicant claims acquired distinctiveness in the alternative, the examining attorney must treat separately the questions of: (1) the underlying basis of refusal; and (2) assuming the matter is determined to be registrable, whether acquired distinctiveness has been established. If the applicant has one or more prior registrations under §2(f) for a different depiction of the same mark (e.g., stylized vs. standard character) or a portion of the proposed mark, and for the same goods/services, the examining attorney’s review of the records of the registrations would reveal whether the applicant previously conceded descriptiveness or whether the Board found the mark descriptive on appeal. *See In re Thomas Nelson*, 97 USPQ2d at 1713. Such an assessment of the probative value of the prior registrations might also assist in resolving whether

the mark in question has acquired distinctiveness, thereby obviating the necessity of determining that issue on appeal as well. *Id.*

In the event of an appeal on both grounds, the Board will use the same analysis, provided the evidence supporting the §2(f) claim is in the record and the alternative grounds have been considered and finally decided by the examining attorney. *In re Harrington*, 219 USPQ 854, 855 n.1 (TTAB 1983). If the appeal results in a finding of descriptiveness, and also that the mark has acquired distinctiveness, then descriptiveness would be present, even though not conceded by the applicant. *In re Thomas Nelson*, 97 USPQ2d at 1713.

If the examining attorney accepts the §2(f) evidence, the applicant must be given the option of publication under §2(f) or going forward with the appeal on the underlying refusal. This should be done by telephone or e-mail, with a Note to the File in the record indicating the applicant's decision, wherever possible. If the applicant wants to appeal, or if the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must issue a written action continuing the underlying refusal and noting that the §2(f) evidence is deemed acceptable and will not be an issue on appeal.

Similarly, in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the applicant may seek registration on the Principal Register under §2(f) and, in the alternative, on the Supplemental Register. Depending on the facts of the case, this approach may have limited practical application. If the examining attorney finds that the matter sought to be registered is not a mark within the meaning of §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1127](#) (e.g., is generic or purely ornamental) (or §§1, 2, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1054, 1127](#), for collective and certification marks), the examining attorney will refuse registration on both registers.

However, if the issues are framed in the alternative (i.e., whether the matter sought to be registered has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) or, in the alternative, whether it is capable of registration on the Supplemental Register), and it is ultimately determined that the matter is a mark within the meaning of the Act (e.g., that the matter is merely descriptive rather than generic), then the evidence of secondary meaning will be considered. If it is determined that the applicant's evidence is sufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness, the application will be approved for publication on the Principal Register under §2(f). If the evidence is determined to be insufficient, the mark may be registered on the Supplemental Register in an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act.

Accordingly, the applicant may submit an amendment to the Supplemental Register, and continue to argue entitlement to registration on the Principal Register in an appeal. An applicant may not, however, state that it "reserves the right" to amend to the Supplemental Register if the refusal is not withdrawn or is affirmed on appeal. *In re Integrated Embedded*, 120 USPQ2d 1504, 1511(TTAB 2016) (stating the "[a]pplicant cannot 'reserve a right' that does not exist").

If the applicant files a notice of appeal in such a case, the Board will institute the appeal, suspend action on the appeal and remand the application to the examining attorney to determine registrability on the Supplemental Register.

If the examining attorney determines that the applicant is entitled to registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must send a letter notifying the applicant of the acceptance of the amendment and telling the applicant that the application is being referred to the Board for resumption of the appeal. If the examining attorney determines that the applicant is not entitled to registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney will issue a nonfinal action refusing registration on the Supplemental Register. If the applicant fails to overcome the refusal, the examining attorney will issue a final action, and refer the

application to the Board to resume action on the appeal with respect to entitlement to registration on either the Principal or the Supplemental Register.

Rather than framing the issues in the alternative (i.e., whether the matter has acquired distinctiveness pursuant to §2(f) or, in the alternative, whether it is capable of registration on the Supplemental Register), the applicant may amend its application between the Principal and Supplemental Registers. [37 C.F.R. §2.75](#); see *In re Educ. Commc'ns, Inc.*, 231 USPQ 787, 787 (TTAB 1986); *In re Broco*, 225 USPQ 227, 228 (TTAB 1984).

See [TMPEP §§816–816.05](#) and [§1102.03](#) regarding amending an application to the Supplemental Register, and [TBMP §1215](#) regarding alternative positions on appeal.

1212.02(d) Unnecessary §2(f) Claims

If the applicant specifically requests registration under §2(f), but the examining attorney considers the entire mark to be inherently distinctive and the claim of acquired distinctiveness to be unnecessary, the examining attorney must so inform the applicant and inquire whether the applicant wishes to delete the statement or to rely on it.

In this situation, if it is necessary to issue an Office action about another matter, the examining attorney must state in the Office action that the §2(f) claim appears to be unnecessary, and inquire as to whether the applicant wants to withdraw it. If it is otherwise unnecessary to communicate with the applicant, the inquiry may be made by telephone or e-mail. If the applicant wants to delete the §2(f) claim, this may be done by examiner's amendment. If the applicant does not respond promptly to the telephone or e-mail message (applicant must be given at least a week), the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File in the record and approve the application for publication without deleting the §2(f) claim.

If the applicant specifically requests registration of the entire mark under §2(f), but the examining attorney believes that part of the mark is inherently distinctive, the examining attorney should give the applicant the option of limiting the §2(f) claim to the matter that is not inherently distinctive, if otherwise appropriate. See [TMPEP §1212.02\(f\)](#) regarding claims of §2(f) distinctiveness as to a portion of a mark. However, if the applicant wishes, a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) may be made as to an entire mark or phrase that contains both inherently distinctive matter and matter that is not inherently distinctive. *In re Del E. Webb Corp.*, 16 USPQ2d 1232, 1234 (TTAB 1990).

If the application contains statements that seem to relate to acquired distinctiveness or §2(f) but do not actually amount to a request for registration under §2(f), and the examining attorney does not believe that resorting to §2(f) is necessary, the examining attorney may treat the statements as surplusage. If it is necessary to communicate with the applicant about another matter, the examining attorney should inform the applicant that the statements are being treated as surplusage. If it is otherwise unnecessary to communicate with the applicant, the examining attorney should delete the statements from the Trademark database, enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that this has been done, and approve the application for publication. The documents containing the surplusage will remain in the record, but a §2(f) claim will not be printed in the *Official Gazette* or on the certificate of registration. See [TMPEP §817](#) regarding preparation of applications for publication or issuance.

1212.02(e) Disclaimers in Applications Claiming Distinctiveness under §2(f)

Section 6(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1056\(a\)](#), states, in part, “The Director may require the applicant to disclaim an unregistrable component of a mark otherwise registrable.” See *In re Creative*

Goldsmiths of Wash., Inc., 229 USPQ 766, 768 (TTAB 1986) (“[W]e conclude that it is within the discretion of an Examining Attorney to require the disclaimer of an unregistrable component (such as a common descriptive, or generic, name) of a composite mark sought to be registered on the Principal Register under the provisions of Section 2(f).”).

1212.02(f) Section 2(f) Claim in Part

1212.02(f)(i) Standards for Establishing Acquired Distinctiveness for Claims of §2(f) in Part

A claim of acquired distinctiveness may apply to a portion of a mark (a claim of §2(f) “in part”). The standards for establishing acquired distinctiveness are the same whether a claim of distinctiveness pertains to the entire mark or a portion of it. However, examining attorneys must focus their review of the evidence submitted on the portion of the mark for which acquired distinctiveness is claimed, rather than on the entire mark.

Three basic types of evidence may be used to establish acquired distinctiveness for claims of §2(f) in part for a trademark or service mark:

- (1) *Prior Registrations* : A claim of ownership of one or more active prior registrations on the Principal Register of the *relevant portion of the mark* for goods or services that are sufficiently similar to those identified in the pending application (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#));
- (2) *Five Years’ Use* : A statement verified by the applicant that the *relevant portion of the mark* has become distinctive of the applicant’s goods or services by reason of the applicant's substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §§1212.05–1212.05\(d\)](#)); or
- (3) *Other Evidence* : Other appropriate evidence of acquired distinctiveness of the *relevant portion of the mark* (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#)).

These three basic types of evidence apply similarly to collective trademarks, collective service marks, and collective membership marks (together “collective marks”), and certification marks, with slight modifications regarding the type of evidence required due to (1) the different function and purpose of collective and certification marks and (2) the fact that these types of marks are used by someone other than the applicant. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)-\(d\)](#).

- (1) *Prior Registrations* : A claim of ownership of one or more active prior registrations on the Principal Register of the relevant portion of the mark for: goods or services that are sufficiently similar to those identified in the pending application, for a collective trademark or collective service mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(1\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#)); goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization that are sufficiently similar to those identified in the pending application, for a collective membership mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(c\)\(1\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#)); or goods or services that are sufficiently similar to the goods or services certified in the pending application, for a certification mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(d\)\(1\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#));
- (2) *Five Years’ Use* : A statement verified by the applicant that the relevant portion of the mark has become distinctive of: the members’ goods or services by reason of the members’ substantially exclusive and continuous use of the relevant portion of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, for a collective trademark or collective service mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#)); indicating membership in the applicant’s collective organization by reason of the members’ substantially exclusive and continuous use of the relevant portion of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of

distinctiveness is made, for a collective membership organization ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(c\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#)); or the certified goods or services, by reason of the authorized users' substantially exclusive and continuous use of the relevant portion of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, for a certification mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(d\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#)); and

- (3) *Other Evidence* : Other appropriate evidence of acquired distinctiveness of the relevant portion of the mark ([37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(3\)](#), [\(c\)\(3\)](#), [\(d\)\(3\)](#); *cf.* [TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#)).

The applicant may submit one or any combination of these types of evidence. Depending on the nature of the relevant portion of the mark and the facts in the record, the examining attorney may determine that a claim of ownership of a prior registration(s) or a claim of five years' substantially exclusive and continuous use in commerce is insufficient to establish a prima facie case of acquired distinctiveness in part.

The amount and character of evidence required typically depends on the facts of each case and the nature of the relevant portion of the mark sought to be registered. *See Roux Labs., Inc. v. Clairol Inc.*, 427 F.2d 823, 829, 166 USPQ 34, 39 (C.C.P.A. 1970); *In re Hehr Mfg. Co.*, 279 F.2d 526, 528, 126 USPQ 381, 383 (C.C.P.A. 1960) ; *In re Gammon Reel, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 729, 730 (TTAB 1985) ; [TMEP §1212.01](#). A determination regarding the acceptability of a §2(f) claim depends on the nature of the relevant portion of the mark and/or the nature and sufficiency of the evidence provided by the applicant. *See In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015); (finding that applicant's evidence of prior registrations did not establish that the specific wording at issue had acquired distinctiveness); [TMEP §§1212.04\(a\)](#), [1212.05\(a\)](#), [1212.06](#).

The legal principles pertaining to evidence of acquired distinctiveness in part discussed below with respect to trademarks and service marks apply generally to collective marks and certification marks as well.

1212.02(f)(ii) Appropriate/Inappropriate Situations for Claiming §2(f) in Part

When a claim of acquired distinctiveness applies to a portion of a mark, the applicant must clearly identify the portion of the mark for which distinctiveness is claimed.

Generally, the element that is the subject of the §2(f) claim must present a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from the other elements of the mark. That is, it must be a separable element in order for the applicant to assert that it has acquired distinctiveness as a mark. Consequently, if a mark is unitary for purposes of avoiding a disclaimer, a claim of §2(f) in part would generally not be appropriate since the elements are so merged together that they cannot be regarded as separable. If appropriate, the applicant can claim §2(f) as to the entire unitary mark.

See [TMEP §1212.09\(b\)](#) regarding claims of §2(f) in part in §1(b) applications, and [TMEP §1212.08](#) regarding claims of §2(f) in part in §44 and §66a applications.

See also [TMEP §1212.10](#) for information on printing §2(f) in part notations and limitation statements.

1212.02(f)(ii)(A) Appropriate Situations for Claiming §2(f) in Part

Descriptive Matter Combined with an Inherently Distinctive Element

Claiming §2(f) in part is appropriate when descriptive matter that is combined with an inherently distinctive element, such as arbitrary words or an inherently distinctive design, presents a separate and distinct

commercial impression apart from the other matter in the mark and has acquired distinctiveness through use by itself.

For example, if the mark is TASTY SNACKARAMA for potato chips and the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness as to the descriptive word TASTY by itself, the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the word TASTY (i.e., “2(f) in part as to TASTY”) since the term SNACKARAMA is inherently distinctive.

Similarly, if the mark is TASTY SNACKARAMA POTATO CHIPS for potato chips and the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness as to TASTY by itself, the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the word TASTY (i.e., “2(f) in part as to TASTY”) since the term SNACKARAMA is inherently distinctive. The applicant must also disclaim the generic wording POTATO CHIPS.

If the mark is TASTY POTATO CHIPS combined with an inherently distinctive design for potato chips and the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness as to the wording TASTY POTATO CHIPS by itself, the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the wording TASTY POTATO CHIPS (i.e., “2(f) in part as to TASTY POTATO CHIPS”). The applicant must also disclaim the generic wording POTATO CHIPS.

Alternatively, if the mark is TASTY POTATO CHIPS combined with an inherently distinctive design for potato chips and the applicant can only show acquired distinctiveness as to TASTY (e.g., because the applicant had not previously used the entire wording TASTY POTATO CHIPS), the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the word TASTY (i.e., “2(f) in part as to TASTY”). The applicant must also disclaim the generic wording POTATO CHIPS.

Geographically Descriptive Matter Combined with an Inherently Distinctive Element

Claims of §2(f) in part are also appropriate when a mark is comprised of geographically descriptive matter combined with an inherently distinctive element, and the geographically descriptive matter presents a separate and distinct commercial impression apart from the other matter in the mark and has acquired distinctiveness through use by itself.

For example, if the mark is TEXAS GOLD for car-cleaning preparations and the applicant, who is based in Texas, can show acquired distinctiveness as to TEXAS by itself, the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the word TEXAS only (i.e., “2(f) in part as to TEXAS”) since the term GOLD is inherently distinctive.

Similarly, if the mark is TEXAS combined with an inherently distinctive design element for car-cleaning preparations and the applicant, who is again from Texas, can show acquired distinctiveness as to the wording in the mark, the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the word TEXAS only (i.e., “2(f) in part as to TEXAS”).

See [TMEP §1210.07\(b\)](#) for further information regarding the registrability of geographic terms under §2(f) in part.

Surname Combined with Generic Wording

Applicants may also claim §2(f) in part for marks comprised of a surname combined with generic wording, when the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness only as to the surname.

For example, if the mark is JONES JEANS for pants and the applicant can only show acquired distinctiveness as to JONES (because the applicant had not previously used the entire wording JONES JEANS, for example),

the applicant must limit the claim under §2(f) to the surname JONES only (i.e., “2(f) in part as to JONES”). The applicant must also disclaim the generic wording JEANS. However, this situation is rare, and the record must clearly reflect that the applicant can only show acquired distinctiveness as to the claimed portion of the mark. Note, by contrast, that if the applicant’s prior use is of the entire mark, JONES JEANS, a claim of §2(f) in part would be incorrect because the claim of acquired distinctiveness should apply to the entire mark. That is, in this example, the proper claim would be §2(f) as to JONES JEANS with a separate disclaimer of JEANS.

As an Alternative to a Disclaimer

A claim of §2(f) in part may be offered as an alternative to a disclaimer requirement, if it appears that the applicant can establish acquired distinctiveness in the relevant portion of the mark.

For example, if the mark is MOIST MORSELS combined with an inherently distinctive design for various food items, the applicant must enter a disclaimer of MOIST MORSELS or, if appropriate, a claim of §2(f) in part as to MOIST MORSELS.

Examining attorneys are not required to offer the applicant the option of claiming §2(f) in part when issuing a disclaimer requirement. However, it is not uncommon for an applicant to respond to a disclaimer requirement with a claim of §2(f) in part instead of the required disclaimer, and this option may be offered in the first Office action, if appropriate.

1212.02(f)(ii)(B) Inappropriate Situations for Claiming §2(f) in Part

Claim Applies to Entire Mark

When a mark is comprised of merely descriptive matter, geographically descriptive matter, or a surname combined with generic matter, and the applicant has made a prima facie case of acquired distinctiveness, the applicant’s §2(f) claim should generally refer to the entire mark as used, with a separate disclaimer of any generic term(s).

For example, if the mark is NATIONAL CAR RENTAL for car-rental services and the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness as to the entire mark, the proper claim is §2(f) as to NATIONAL CAR RENTAL with a separate disclaimer of the generic wording CAR RENTAL. Similarly, if the mark is NATIONAL CAR RENTAL combined with an inherently distinctive design element, and the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness as to the entire wording, the proper §2(f) statement is §2(f) in part as to the wording NATIONAL CAR RENTAL with a separate disclaimer of CAR RENTAL. In these examples, it would be improper to limit the §2(f) statement to the word NATIONAL because the applicant is not claiming acquired distinctiveness as to NATIONAL, but rather as to the wording NATIONAL CAR RENTAL.

However, if the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness only as to the word NATIONAL (e.g., because the applicant had not previously used the entire wording NATIONAL CAR RENTAL), the applicant may claim §2(f) in part as to NATIONAL and must separately disclaim CAR RENTAL. Similarly, if the mark is NATIONAL CAR RENTAL combined with an inherently distinctive design element, and the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness only as to the word NATIONAL, the proper §2(f) statement is §2(f) in part as to the word NATIONAL with a separate disclaimer of CAR RENTAL. As noted above, this situation is rare, and the record must clearly reflect that the applicant can show acquired distinctiveness only as to the claimed portion of the mark.

If a §2(f) in part claim is improperly provided by the applicant when the record reflects that the §2(f) claim should apply to the entire mark, the examining attorney must issue a new requirement to correct the §2(f) claim.

Inappropriate Alternative to a Disclaimer

In some situations, §2(f) in part is not an acceptable alternative to a disclaimer requirement. Specifically, if an applicant's claim of distinctiveness applies to only part of a mark and the examining attorney determines that (1) the claimed portion of the mark is unregistrable (e.g., generic) and therefore the §2(f) claim is of no avail or (2) although the claimed portion is registrable, the applicant has failed to establish acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney may require a disclaimer of that portion of the mark, assuming a disclaimer is otherwise appropriate. *See In re Lillian Vernon Corp.*, 225 USPQ 213 (TTAB 1985) (affirming requirement for disclaimer of PROVENDER in application to register PROVENDER and design for "mail order services in the gourmet, bath and gift item field," "provender" meaning "food" (claim of §2(f) distinctiveness in part held unacceptable)) ; *cf. In re Chopper Indus.*, 222 USPQ 258 (TTAB 1984) (reversing requirement for disclaimer of CHOPPER in application to register CHOPPER 1 and design for wood log splitting axes (claim of §2(f) distinctiveness in part held acceptable)).

Relying on a Claim of Ownership of a Prior Registration

In certain cases, an applicant may not rely on ownership of one or more prior registrations on the Principal Register of the relevant portion of the mark, for goods or services that are the same as or related to those named in the pending application, to support a claim of §2(f) in part.

First, if the term for which the applicant seeks to prove distinctiveness was disclaimed in the claimed prior registration, the prior registration may not be accepted as prima facie evidence of acquired distinctiveness. *See Kellogg Co. v. Gen. Mills, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1766, 1771 n.5 (TTAB 2007) ; *In re Candy Bouquet Int'l, Inc.*, 73 USPQ2d 1883, 1889-90 (TTAB 2004) ; [TMEP §1212.04\(a\)](#). For example, if the mark is TASTY SNACKARAMA for potato chips and the applicant attempts to rely on a prior registration for the mark TASTY combined with an inherently distinctive design, with TASTY disclaimed, for the same goods, to support its claim of acquired distinctiveness as to the descriptive word TASTY, such evidence would not be sufficient since the word TASTY was disclaimed in the prior registration. Absent additional evidence to show acquired distinctiveness as to TASTY, the examining attorney must require the applicant to delete the claim of §2(f) in part, and instead provide a disclaimer of the term TASTY.

Second, when an applicant is claiming §2(f) in part as to only a portion of its mark, the mark in the claimed prior registration must be the same as or the legal equivalent of the portion of the mark for which the applicant is claiming acquired distinctiveness. A mark is the legal equivalent of a portion of another mark if it creates the same, continuing commercial impression such that the consumer would consider the mark to be the same as the portion of the other mark. *See* [TMEP §1212.04\(b\)](#) and cases cited therein.

§2(f) in Part versus §2(f) Claim Restricted to Particular Goods, Services, or Classes

A claim of §2(f) in part should not be confused with a §2(f) claim restricted to certain classes in a multiple-class application or to a portion of the goods/services within a single class. Such a restriction can be made *regardless* of whether the applicant is claiming §2(f) for the entire mark or §2(f) in part for a portion of the mark. *See* [TMEP §1212.02\(j\)](#).

1212.02(g) Examining Attorney’s Role in Suggesting §2(f) or Appropriate Kind/Amount of Evidence

In a first action refusing registration, the examining attorney should suggest, where appropriate, that the applicant amend its application to seek registration under §2(f). For example, this should be done as a matter of course, if otherwise appropriate, in cases where registration is refused under §2(e)(4) on the ground that the mark is primarily merely a surname, and the applicant has recited dates of use that indicate that the mark has been in use in commerce for at least five years.

If the examining attorney determines that an applicant’s evidence is insufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney should suggest, where appropriate, that the applicant submit additional evidence. *See In re Half Price Books, Records, Magazines, Inc.*, 225 USPQ 219, 220 n.2 (TTAB 1984) (Noting that applicant was specifically invited to seek registration pursuant to §2(f) but, after amending its application to do so, was refused registration on the ground that the mark was incapable of acquiring distinctiveness, the Board stated that, in fairness to applicant, this practice should be avoided where possible).

The examining attorney should not “require” that the applicant submit evidence of secondary meaning. There would be no practical standard for a proper response to this requirement, nor would there be a sound basis for appeal from the requirement. *See In re Capital Formation Counselors, Inc.*, 219 USPQ 916, 917 n.2 (TTAB 1983) (“Section 2(f) is not a provision on which registration can be refused.”).

The examining attorney should not specify the kind or the amount of evidence sufficient to establish that a mark has acquired distinctiveness. It is the responsibility of the applicant to submit evidence to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness. *See* [TMEP §1212.01](#). However, the examining attorney may make a suggestion as to a course of action, if the examining attorney believes this would further the prosecution of the application.

1212.02(h) Nonfinal and Final Refusals

If an application is filed under §2(f) of the Trademark Act and the examining attorney determines that (1) the mark is not inherently distinctive, and (2) the applicant’s evidence of secondary meaning is insufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney will issue a nonfinal action refusing registration on the Principal Register pursuant to the appropriate section of the Trademark Act (e.g., §2(e)(1)), and will separately explain why the applicant’s evidence of secondary meaning is insufficient to overcome the underlying statutory basis for refusal. The examining attorney should suggest, where appropriate, that the applicant submit additional evidence. *See* [TMEP §1212.02\(g\)](#) concerning the examining attorney’s role in suggesting a claim of distinctiveness under §2(f).

If an application is not filed under §2(f) and the examining attorney determines that the mark is not inherently distinctive, the examining attorney will issue a nonfinal action refusing registration on the Principal Register under the appropriate section of the Act (e.g., §2(e)(1)). The examining attorney should suggest, where appropriate, that the applicant amend its application to claim distinctiveness under §2(f).

Thereafter, if the applicant amends its application to seek registration under §2(f), a new issue is raised as to the sufficiency of the applicant’s evidence of secondary meaning (*see* [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#)). The underlying statutory basis for refusal remains the same (i.e., §2(e)(1)), but the issue changes from whether the underlying refusal is warranted to whether the matter has acquired distinctiveness. If the examining attorney is persuaded that a prima facie case of acquired distinctiveness has been established, the examining attorney will approve

the application for publication under §2(f). If the examining attorney determines that the applicant's evidence is insufficient to establish that the matter has acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney will issue a second nonfinal action repeating the underlying statutory basis for refusal (e.g., §2(e)(1)), and explaining why the applicant's evidence is insufficient to overcome the stated refusal.

The examining attorney cannot issue a final refusal on the underlying statutory basis of the original refusal, upon an applicant's initial assertion of a §2(f) claim. The mere assertion of distinctiveness under §2(f) raises a new issue. *See In re Educ. Commc'ns, Inc.*, 231 USPQ 787, 787 n.2 (TTAB 1986). Even if the applicant has submitted, in support of the §2(f) claim, a statement of five years' use that is technically defective (e.g., not verified or comprising incorrect language), the assertion of §2(f) distinctiveness still constitutes a new issue.

Exception: The examining attorney may issue a final refusal upon an applicant's initial assertion of a §2(f) claim if the amendment is irrelevant to the outstanding refusal. *See* [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#). *See also* [TMEP §§1212.02\(a\)](#) and [1212.02\(i\)](#) regarding situations where it is and is not appropriate to submit a claim of acquired distinctiveness to overcome a refusal.

After the examining attorney has issued a nonfinal action refusing registration on the Principal Register with a finding that the applicant's evidence of secondary meaning is insufficient to overcome the stated refusal, the applicant may elect to submit additional arguments and/or evidence regarding secondary meaning. If, after considering this submission, the examining attorney is persuaded that the applicant has established a prima facie case of acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney will approve the application for publication under §2(f). If the examining attorney is not persuaded that the applicant has established a prima facie case of acquired distinctiveness, and the application is otherwise in condition for final refusal, the examining attorney will issue a final refusal pursuant to the appropriate section of the Act (e.g., §2(e)(1)), with a finding that the applicant's evidence of acquired distinctiveness is insufficient to overcome the stated refusal. *See In re Capital Formation Counselors, Inc.*, 219 USPQ 916, 917 n.2 (TTAB 1983).

In any action in which the examining attorney indicates that the evidence of record is insufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney must specify the reasons for this determination. *See In re Interstate Folding Box Co.*, 167 USPQ 241, 243 (TTAB 1970); *In re H. A. Friend & Co.*, 158 USPQ 609, 610 (TTAB 1968).

1212.02(i) Section 2(f) Claim with Respect to Incapable Matter

If matter is generic, functional, or purely ornamental, or otherwise fails to function as a mark, the matter is unregistrable. *See, e.g., In re Bongrain Int'l Corp.*, 894 F.2d 1316, 1317 n.4, 13 USPQ2d 1727, 1728 n.4 (Fed. Cir. 1990) ("If a mark is generic, incapable of serving as a means 'by which the goods of the applicant may be distinguished from the goods of others' ... it is not a trademark and can not be registered under the Lanham Act."); *H. Marvin Ginn Corp. v. Int'l Ass'n of Fire Chiefs, Inc.*, 782 F.2d 987, 989, 228 USPQ 528, 530 (Fed. Cir. 1986), and cases cited therein ("A generic term ... can never be registered as a trademark because such a term is 'merely descriptive' within the meaning of §2(e)(1) and is incapable of acquiring *de jure* distinctiveness under §2(f). The generic name of a thing is in fact the ultimate in descriptiveness."); *see also In re Melville Corp.*, 228 USPQ 970, 972 (TTAB 1986) (finding BRAND NAMES FOR LESS, for retail store services in the clothing field, "should remain available for other persons or firms to use to describe the nature of their competitive services.").

It is axiomatic that matter may not be registered unless it is used as a mark, namely, "in a manner calculated to project to purchasers or potential purchasers a single source or origin for the goods in question." *In re*

Remington Prods. Inc., 3 USPQ2d 1714, 1715 (TTAB 1987) . See, e.g., *In re Melville Corp.*, 228 USPQ at 971 n.2 (“If matter proposed for registration does not function as a mark, it is not registrable in accordance with Sections 1 and 2 of the Act because the preambles of those sections limit registration to subject matter within the definition of a trademark.”); *In re Whataburger Sys., Inc.*, 209 USPQ 429, 430 (TTAB 1980) (“[A] designation may not be registered either as a trademark or as a service mark unless it is used as a mark, in such a manner that its function as an indication of origin may be readily perceived by persons encountering the goods or services in connection with which it is used.”).

Therefore, where the examining attorney has determined that matter sought to be registered is not registrable because it is not a mark within the meaning of the Trademark Act, a claim that the matter has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) as applied to the applicant’s goods or services does not overcome the refusal. See, e.g., *TrafFix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 33, 58 USPQ2d 1001, 1007 (2001) (“Functionality having been established, whether MDI’S dual spring design has acquired secondary meaning need not be considered.”); *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 1484-85, 222 USPQ 1, 3 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (“Evidence of distinctiveness is of no avail to counter a de jure functionality rejection.”); *Stuart Spector Designs, Ltd. v. Fender Musical Instruments Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1549, 1554 (TTAB 2009) (stating that a product design may become generic and, thus, cannot be registered, regardless of applicant’s claim of acquired distinctiveness); *In re Tilcon Warren, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 86, 88 (TTAB 1984) (“Long use of a slogan which is not a trademark and would not be so perceived does not, of course, transform the slogan into a trademark.”); *In re Mancino*, 219 USPQ 1047, 1048 (TTAB 1983) (“Since the refusal ... was based on applicant’s failure to demonstrate technical service mark use, the claim of distinctiveness under Section 2(f) was of no relevance to the issue in the case.”).

As discussed above, evidence of acquired distinctiveness will not alter the determination that matter is unregistrable. However, the examining attorney must review the evidence and make a separate, alternative, determination as to whether, if the proposed mark is ultimately determined to be capable, the applicant’s evidence is sufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness. This will provide a more complete record in the event that the applicant appeals and prevails on the underlying refusal. The examining attorney must also consider whether the applicant’s evidence has any bearing on the underlying refusal. See [TMEP §§1209.02–1209.02\(b\)](#) regarding the procedure for descriptiveness and/or generic refusals.

If the examining attorney fails to separately address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence, this may be treated as a concession that the evidence would be sufficient to establish distinctiveness if the mark is ultimately found to be capable. Cf. *In re Dietrich*, 91 USPQ2d 1622, 1625 (TTAB 2009), in which the Board held that an examining attorney had “effectively conceded that, assuming the mark is not functional, applicant’s evidence is sufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness,” where the examining attorney rejected the applicant’s §2(f) claim on the ground that applicant’s bicycle wheel configuration was functional and thus unregistrable even under §2(f), but did not specifically address the sufficiency of the §2(f) evidence or the question of whether the mark would be registrable under §2(f) if it were ultimately found to be nonfunctional.

See also *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ 76, 79 (TTAB 1984) (finding applicant’s evidence relating to public perception of WHY PAY MORE! entitled to relatively little weight, noting that the evidence is relevant to the issue of whether the slogan functions as a mark for applicant’s supermarket services).

1212.02(j) Section 2(f) Claim Restricted to Particular Goods/Services/Classes

An applicant may claim acquired distinctiveness as to certain classes in a multiple-class application, or as to only a portion of the goods/services within a single class. The applicant must clearly identify the goods/services/classes for which distinctiveness is claimed. The standards for establishing acquired

distinctiveness are the same whether the claim of distinctiveness pertains to all or to only a portion of the goods/services.

If the examining attorney determines that a claim of distinctiveness as to a portion of the goods/services/classes is appropriate, the examining attorney must ensure that the “§2(f)” field in the Trademark database indicates that the §2(f) claim is restricted to certain goods/services/classes, and that those goods/services/classes are clearly identified in the restriction statement of record in the USPTO database. See the following example, where the applicant is claiming §2(f) for the entire mark, but only as to a portion of the goods/services:

MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION

SECTION 2F: YES
Section 2F Restriction Statement:

SECTION 2F IN PART: NO
 The 2(f) claim is restricted to class(es) <specify classes> as to the <specify goods/services>.

See also the following example, where the applicant is claiming §2(f) in part (not as to the entire mark), restricted to a portion of the goods/services:

MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION

SECTION 2F: NO
Section 2F Restriction Statement:

SECTION 2F IN PART: YES
 The 2(f) in part claim is restricted to class(es) <specify classes> as to the <specify goods/services>.

A separate limitation statement is also required for claims of §2(f) in part. See [TMEP §1212.10](#).

1212.03 Evidence of Distinctiveness under §2(f)

37 CFR §2.41 Proof of distinctiveness under section 2(f).

(a) For a trademark or service mark.

(1) Ownership of prior registration(s). In appropriate cases, ownership of one or more active prior registrations on the Principal Register or under the Trademark Act of 1905 of the same mark may be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness if the goods or services are sufficiently similar to the goods or services in the application; however, further evidence may be required.

(2) Five years substantially exclusive and continuous use in commerce. In appropriate cases, if a trademark or service mark is said to have become distinctive of the applicant’s goods or services by reason of the applicant’s substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, a showing by way of

verified statements in the application may be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness; however, further evidence may be required.

(3) Other evidence. In appropriate cases, where the applicant claims that a mark has become distinctive in commerce of the applicant's goods or services, the applicant may, in support of registrability, submit with the application, or in response to a request for evidence or to a refusal to register, verified statements, depositions, or other appropriate evidence showing duration, extent, and nature of the use in commerce and advertising expenditures in connection therewith (identifying types of media and attaching typical advertisements), and verified statements, letters or statements from the trade or public, or both, or other appropriate evidence of distinctiveness.

See also [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)-\(d\)](#) (for collective and certification marks).

“To establish secondary meaning, a manufacturer must show that, in the minds of the public, the primary significance of a product feature or term is to identify the source of the product rather than the product itself.” *Inwood Labs., Inc. v. Ives Labs., Inc.*, 456 U.S. 844, 851 n.11, 214 USPQ 1, 4 n.11 (1982).

1212.04 Prior Registrations as Proof of Distinctiveness

Trademark Rule 2.41(a)(1), [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#), provides that the examining attorney may accept, as prima facie evidence of acquired distinctiveness, ownership by the applicant of one or more active prior registrations of the same mark on the Principal Register or under the Act of 1905. See [TMEP §1212.04\(b\)](#) as to what constitutes the “same mark,” and [TMEP §§1212.09–1212.09\(b\)](#) concerning §1(b) applications.

The rule states that, “in appropriate cases,” ownership of existing registrations to establish acquired distinctiveness “may be accepted as sufficient prima facie evidence of distinctiveness,” but that the USPTO may, at its option, require additional evidence of distinctiveness. *In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 1347, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1812 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *In re Loew's Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 769, 226 USPQ 865, 869 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

The following are general guidelines regarding claiming ownership of prior registrations as a method of establishing acquired distinctiveness.

1212.04(a) Sufficiency of Claim Vis-à-Vis Nature of the Mark

The examining attorney has the discretion to determine whether the nature of the mark sought to be registered is such that a claim of ownership of an active prior registration for sufficiently similar goods or services is enough to establish acquired distinctiveness. For example, if the mark sought to be registered is deemed to be highly descriptive or misdescriptive of the goods or services named in the application, the examining attorney may require additional evidence of acquired distinctiveness. See *In re Loew's Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 769, 226 USPQ 865, 869 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (finding claim of ownership of a prior registration insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness where registration was refused as primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive).

If the term for which the applicant seeks to prove distinctiveness was disclaimed in the prior registration, the prior registration may not be accepted as prima facie evidence of acquired distinctiveness. *Kellogg Co. v. Gen. Mills, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1766, 1771 n.5 (TTAB 2007); *In re Candy Bouquet Int'l, Inc.*, 73 USPQ2d 1883, 1889-90 (TTAB 2004).

1212.04(b) “Same Mark”

A proposed mark is the “same mark” as a previously registered mark for the purpose of [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#) if it is the “legal equivalent” of such a mark. “A mark is the legal equivalent of another if it creates the same, continuing commercial impression such that the consumer would consider them both the same mark.” *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 1347, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1812 (Fed. Cir. 2001); *see also In re Brouwerij Bosteels*, 96 USPQ2d 1414, 1423 (TTAB 2010) (finding three-dimensional product packaging trade dress mark is not the legal equivalent of a two-dimensional design logo); *In re Nielsen Bus. Media, Inc.*, 93 USPQ2d 1545, 1547-48 (TTAB 2010) (finding THE BOLLYWOOD REPORTER is not the legal equivalent of the registered marks THE HOLLYWOOD REPORTER, THEHOLLYWOODREPORTER.COM, and THE HOLLYWOOD REPORTER STUDIO BLU-BOOK); *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531, 1539 (TTAB 2009) (finding BINION and BINION’S are not the legal equivalents of the registered marks JACK BINION and JACK BINION’S); *Bausch & Lomb Inc. v. Leupold & Stevens Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1475, 1477 (TTAB 1988) (“The words GOLDEN RING, while they are used to describe the device, are by no means identical to or substantially identical to the gold ring device trademark.”); *In re Best Prods. Co.*, 231 USPQ 988, 989 n.6 (TTAB 1986) (“[W]e infer in the instant case that the differences between the marks BEST & Des. and BEST JEWELRY & Des., and between the identifications of services in their respective registrations, were deemed to be immaterial differences.”); *In re Loew’s Theatres, Inc.*, 223 USPQ 513, 514 n.5 (TTAB 1984), *aff’d*, 769 F.2d 764, 226 USPQ 865 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (“We do not, however, agree with the Examining Attorney that a minor difference in the marks (i.e., here, merely that the mark of the existing registration is in plural form) is a proper basis for excluding any consideration of this evidence under the rule.”); *In re Flex-O-Glass, Inc.*, 194 USPQ 203, 205-06 (TTAB 1977) (“[P]ersons exposed to applicant’s registered mark ... would, upon encountering [applicant’s yellow rectangle and red circle design] ..., be likely to accept it as the same mark or as an inconsequential modification or modernization thereof.... [A]pplicant may ‘tack on’ to its use of the mark in question, the use of the registered mark ... and therefore may properly rely upon its registration in support of its claim of distinctiveness herein.”).

See, e.g., Van Dyne-Crotty, Inc. v. Wear-Guard Corp., 926 F.2d 1156, 1159, 17 USPQ2d 1866, 1868 (Fed. Cir. 1991) regarding the concept of “tacking” with reference to prior use of a legally equivalent mark.

When an applicant is claiming §2(f) as to only a portion of its mark, then the previously registered mark must be the legal equivalent of the relevant portion for which the applicant is claiming acquired distinctiveness. See [TMEP §1212.02\(f\)](#) regarding claims of acquired distinctiveness as to a portion of a mark.

1212.04(c) Goods or Services Must be "Sufficiently Similar"

The examining attorney must determine whether the goods or services identified in the application are "sufficiently similar" to the goods or services identified in the active prior registration(s). *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#). If the similarity or relatedness is self-evident, the examining attorney may generally accept the §2(f) claim without additional evidence. This is most likely to occur with ordinary consumer goods or services where the nature and function or purpose of the goods or services is commonly known and readily apparent (e.g., a prior registration for hair shampoo and new application for hair conditioner).

If the similarity or relatedness of the goods or services in the application and prior registration(s) is not self-evident, the examining attorney may not accept the §2(f) claim without evidence and an explanation demonstrating the purported similarity or relatedness between the goods or services. This is likely to occur with industrial goods or services where there may in fact be a high degree of similarity or relatedness, but it would not be obvious to someone who is not an expert in the field. *See Bausch & Lomb Inc. v. Leupold & Stevens Inc.*, 6 USPQ2d 1475, 1478 (TTAB 1988) (“Applicant’s almost total reliance on the distinctiveness

which its gold ring device has achieved vis-à-vis rifle scopes and handgun scopes is simply not sufficient by itself to establish that the same gold ring device has become distinctive vis-à-vis binoculars and spotting scopes.”); *In re Best Prods. Co.*, 231 USPQ 988, 989 n.6 (TTAB 1986) (“[W]e infer in the instant case that the differences between the marks BEST & Des. and BEST JEWELRY & Des., and between the identifications of services in their respective registrations [‘mail order and catalog showroom services’ and ‘retail jewelry store services’], were deemed to be immaterial differences.”); *In re Owens-Illinois Glass Co.*, 143 USPQ 431, 432 (TTAB 1964) (holding applicant’s ownership of prior registration of LIBBEY for cut-glass articles acceptable as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness of identical mark for plastic tableware, the Board stated, “Cut-glass and plastic articles of tableware are customarily sold in the same retail outlets, and purchasers of one kind of tableware might well be prospective purchasers of the other.”); *In re Lytle Eng'g & Mfg. Co.*, 125 USPQ 308, 309 (TTAB 1960) (holding applicant’s ownership of prior registration of LYTLE for various services, including the planning, preparation, and production of technical publications, acceptable as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness of identical mark for brochures, catalogs, and bulletins).

1212.04(d) Registration Must Be in Full Force and Effect and on Principal Register or under Act of 1905

Trademark Rule 2.41(a)(1), [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#), states that ownership of an active prior registration “on the Principal Register or under the Act of 1905” may be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. Therefore, claims of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) may not be based on ownership of registrations on the Supplemental Register. See *In re Canron, Inc.*, 219 USPQ 820, 822n.2 (TTAB 1983).

Additionally, a claim of acquired distinctiveness may not be based on a registration that is cancelled or expired. See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#); *In re BankAmerica Corp.*, 229 USPQ 852, 853 (TTAB 1986) . When an examining attorney considers a §2(f) claim based on ownership of one or more prior registrations, the examining attorney must confirm, in the records of the USPTO, that the claimed registrations were issued on the Principal Register or under the Act of 1905 and that they are in full force and effect.

1212.04(e) Form of §2(f) Claim Based on Ownership of Prior Registrations

The following language may be used to claim distinctiveness under §2(f) for a trademark or service mark on the basis of ownership of one or more prior registrations:

The mark has become distinctive of the goods and/or services as evidenced by ownership of active U.S. Registration No(s). _____ on the Principal Register for the same mark for sufficiently similar goods and/or services.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(1\)](#).

If the applicant is relying solely on its ownership of one or more active prior registrations as proof of acquired distinctiveness, the §2(f) claim does not have to be verified. Therefore, an applicant or an applicant’s attorney may authorize amendment of an application to add such a claim through an examiner’s amendment, if otherwise appropriate.

1212.05 Five Years of Use as Proof of Distinctiveness

Section 2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), provides that “proof of substantially exclusive and continuous use” of a designation “as a mark by the applicant in commerce for the five years before the date

on which the claim of distinctiveness is made” may be accepted as prima facie evidence that the mark has acquired distinctiveness as used in commerce with the applicant’s goods or services. See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#).

The Trademark Act previously required that the relevant five-year period precede the filing date of the application. The Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988, Pub. L. No. 100-667, 102 Stat. 3935 (1988), revised §2(f) of the Act to provide for a prima facie showing of acquired distinctiveness based on five years’ use running up to the date the claim is made. Under the revised provision, any five-year claim submitted on or after November 16, 1989, is subject to the new time period. This applies even if the application was filed prior to that date.

Section 2(f) of the Act and [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#) state that reliance on a claim of five years’ use to establish acquired distinctiveness “may” be acceptable in “appropriate cases.” The USPTO may, at its option, require additional evidence of distinctiveness. *In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (noting that the statute does not require the USPTO to accept five years’ use as prima facie evidence of acquired distinctiveness). Whether a claim of five years’ use will be deemed sufficient to establish that the mark has acquired distinctiveness depends largely on the nature of the mark in relation to the specified goods/services/classes.

The following are general guidelines regarding the statutorily suggested proof of five years’ use as a method of establishing acquired distinctiveness.

1212.05(a) Sufficiency of Claim Vis-à-Vis Nature of the Mark

For most surnames, the statement of five years’ use will be sufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness.

The amount of evidence necessary to establish secondary meaning varies – “the greater the degree of descriptiveness the term has, the heavier the burden to prove it has attained secondary meaning.” *In re Bongrain Int’l Corp.*, 894 F.2d 1316, 1317 n.4, 13 USPQ2d 1727, 1728 n.4 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (citing *Yamaha Int’l Corp. v. Hoshino Gakki Co.*, 840 F.2d 1572, 1581, 6 USPQ2d 1001, 1008 (Fed. Cir. 1988)).

Accordingly, for marks refused under §2(e)(1) or §2(e)(2), whether the statement of five years’ use is sufficient in and of itself to establish acquired distinctiveness depends on the degree to which the mark is descriptive or misdescriptive. If the mark is highly descriptive or misdescriptive of the goods or services named in the application, the statement of five years’ use alone will be deemed insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness. See *In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (holding that the Board was within its discretion not to accept applicant’s allegation of five years’ use given the highly descriptive nature of the mark); *Alcatraz Media, Inc. v. Chesapeake Marine Tours Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1750, 1766 (TTAB 2013) (“Given the highly descriptive nature of registrant’s mark [ANNAPOLIS TOURS], continuous use alone since 1992 would not be sufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness.”); *In re Noon Hour Food Prods., Inc.*, 88 USPQ2d 1172 (TTAB 2008) (finding, despite applicant’s claim of use in commerce for almost one hundred years, as well as an “inadvertently cancelled” seventy-year old registration for the mark BOND-OST for cheese, current evidence clearly showed the mark was generic for the goods, and assuming arguendo that BOND-OST is not generic, that applicant had failed to establish acquired distinctiveness of the highly descriptive mark); *In re Crystal Geyser Water Co.*, 85 USPQ2d 1374 (TTAB 2007) (holding applicant’s evidence of acquired distinctiveness, including a claim of use since 1990, sales of more than 7,650,000,000 units of its goods, and extensive display of its mark CRYSTAL GEYSER ALPINE SPRING WATER on advertising and delivery trucks and promotional paraphernalia, insufficient to establish that the highly descriptive phrase ALPINE SPRING WATER had acquired distinctiveness for applicant’s bottled spring water); *In re Kalmbach Publ’g Co.*, 14 USPQ2d 1490 (TTAB 1989) (holding applicant’s sole evidence of acquired distinctiveness, a claim of use since 1975,

insufficient to establish that the highly descriptive, if not generic, designation RADIO CONTROL BUYERS GUIDE had become distinctive of applicant's magazines); *In re Gray Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1558, 1559 (TTAB 1987) (“[T]o support registration of PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT [for burglar and fire alarms and burglar and fire alarm surveillance services] on the Principal Register a showing considerably stronger than a prima facie statement of five years’ substantially exclusive use is required.”); *cf. In re Synergistics Research Corp.*, 218 USPQ 165 (TTAB 1983) (holding applicant’s declaration of five years’ use sufficient to support registrability under §2(f) of BALL DARTS for equipment sold as a unit for playing a target game, in view of lack of evidence that the term is highly descriptive (e.g., no dictionary evidence of any meaning of BALL DARTS and no evidence of use of the term by competitors or the public)).

For matter that is not inherently distinctive because of its nature (e.g., nondistinctive product design, overall color of a product, mere ornamentation, and sounds for goods that make the sound in their normal course of operation), evidence of five years’ use is not sufficient to show acquired distinctiveness. In such a case, actual evidence that the mark is perceived as a mark for the relevant goods/services/classes would be required to establish distinctiveness. *See generally In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 227 USPQ 417 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (color pink as uniformly applied to applicant’s fibrous glass residential insulation); *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 222 USPQ 1 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (configuration of pistol grip water nozzle for water nozzles); *Nextel Commc’ns, Inc. v. Motorola, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1393, 1401 (TTAB 2009) (noting that “the evidence required is in proportion to the degree of nondistinctiveness of the mark at issue” in relation to a sound mark emitted by cellular telephones in their normal course of operation); *In re ic! berlin brillen GmbH*, 85 USPQ2d 2021 (TTAB 2008) (configuration of an earpiece for frames for sunglasses and spectacles comprised of three “fingers” near the hinge); *In re The Black & Decker Corp.*, 81 USPQ2d 1841, 1844 (TTAB 2006) (finding applicant successfully established acquired distinctiveness for the design of a key head for key blanks and various metal door hardware, where evidence submitted in support thereof included twenty-four years of use in commerce and significant evidence regarding industry practice, such that the evidence showed that “it is common for manufacturers of door hardware to use key head designs as source indicators.”); *Edward Weck Inc. v. IM Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1142 (TTAB 1990) (color green for medical instruments); *In re Cabot Corp.*, 15 USPQ2d 1224 (TTAB 1990) (configuration of a pillow-pack container for ear plugs and configuration of a pillow-pack container with trade dress (white circle surrounded by blue border) for ear plugs); *In re Star Pharm., Inc.*, 225 USPQ 209 (TTAB 1985) (color combination of drug capsule and seeds therein for methyltestosterone); *In re Craigmyle*, 224 USPQ 791 (TTAB 1984) (configuration of halter square for horse halters).

1212.05(b) “Substantially Exclusive and Continuous”

The five years of use in commerce does not have to be exclusive, but must be “substantially” exclusive. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#). This makes allowance for use by others that may be inconsequential or infringing, which does not necessarily invalidate the applicant’s claim. *L.D. Kichler Co. v. Davoil, Inc.*, 192 F.3d 1349, 1352, 52 USPQ2d 1307, 1309 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

The existence of other applications to register the same mark, or other known uses of the mark, does not automatically eliminate the possibility of using this method of proof, but the examining attorney should inquire as to the nature of such use and be satisfied that it is not substantial or does not otherwise nullify the claim of distinctiveness. *See Levi Strauss & Co. v. Genesco, Inc.*, 742 F.2d 1401, 1403, 222 USPQ 939, 940-41 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (“When the record shows that purchasers are confronted with more than one (let alone numerous) independent users of a term or device, an application for registration under Section 2(f) cannot be successful, for distinctiveness on which purchasers may rely is lacking under such circumstances.”); *Ayoub, Inc. v. ACS Ayoub Carpet Serv.*, 118 USPQ2d 1392, 1404 (TTAB 2016) (finding that, because of widespread third-party uses of the surname Ayoub in connection with rug, carpet and flooring businesses, applicant’s use of the applied-for mark, AYOUNB, was not “substantially exclusive” and thus the mark had

not acquired distinctiveness in connection with applicant's identified carpet and rug services); *Nextel Commc'ns, Inc. v. Motorola, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1393, 1408 (TTAB 2009) (finding opposer's contemporaneous use of the mark in connection with services closely related to applicant's goods rose to the level necessary to rebut applicant's contention of substantially exclusive use); *Target Brands, Inc. v. Hughes*, 85 USPQ2d 1676, 1682-83 (TTAB 2007) (finding substantial use of mark by opposer's parent company and additional use of mark by numerous third parties "seriously undercuts if not nullifies applicant's claim of acquired distinctiveness."); *Marshall Field & Co. v. Mrs. Fields Cookies*, 11 USPQ2d 1355, 1357-58 (TTAB 1989) ("[T]he existence of numerous third party users of a mark, even if junior, might well have a material impact on the Examiner's decision to accept a party's claim of distinctiveness."); *Flowers Indus. Inc. v. Interstate Brands Corp.*, 5 USPQ2d 1580, 1588-89 (TTAB 1987) ("[L]ong and continuous use alone is insufficient to show secondary meaning where the use is not substantially exclusive.").

The use of the mark during the five years must also be continuous, without a period of "nonuse" or suspension of trade in the goods or services in connection with which the mark is used. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#).

1212.05(c) Use "as a Mark"

The substantially exclusive and continuous use must be "as a mark." [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#); see *In re Craigmyle*, 224 USPQ 791, 793 (TTAB 1984) (finding registrability under §2(f) not established by sales over a long period of time where there was no evidence that the subject matter had been used as a mark); *In re Kwik Lok Corp.*, 217 USPQ 1245, 1248 (TTAB 1983) (holding declarations as to sales volume and advertising expenditures insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness. "The significant missing element in appellant's case is evidence persuasive of the fact that the subject matter has been used *as a mark*.").

1212.05(d) Form of the Proof of Five Years' Use

If the applicant chooses to seek registration under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), by using the statutory suggestion of five years of use as proof of distinctiveness, the applicant should submit a claim of distinctiveness. The following is the suggested format for a claim for a trademark or service mark, for a certification mark, for a collective membership mark, and for a collective trademark or collective service mark, based on [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#), and [\(c\)\(2\)](#).

For a *trademark or service mark*, the claim of distinctiveness should read as follows, if accurate:

The mark has become distinctive of the goods/services through the applicant's substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress may lawfully regulate for at least the five years immediately before the date of this statement.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#).

For a *certification mark*, the claim of distinctiveness should read as follows, if accurate:

The mark has become distinctive of the certified goods/services through the authorized users' substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress may lawfully regulate for at least the five years immediately before the date of this statement.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(d\)\(2\)](#).

For a *collective membership mark*, the claim of distinctiveness should read as follows, if accurate:

The mark has become distinctive of indicating membership in the collective membership organization through the members' substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress may lawfully regulate for at least the five years immediately before the date of this statement.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(c\)\(2\)](#).

For a *collective trademark or collective service mark*, the claim of distinctiveness should read as follows, if accurate:

The mark has become distinctive of the goods/services through the applicant's members' substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress may lawfully regulate for at least the five years immediately before the date of this statement.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(b\)\(2\)](#).

The claim of five years of use is generally required to be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), signed by the applicant. See [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#), [\(c\)\(2\)](#), [\(d\)\(2\)](#). The affidavit or declaration can be signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#).

The following are guidelines regarding the form and language appropriate for a claim of five years of use:

- (1) Use of the precise statutory wording is desirable, but variations may be accepted if they do not affect the essential allegations.
- (2) The wording “substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce” is essential.
- (3) It must be clear from the record that the five years of use has been in commerce that may lawfully be regulated by the U.S. Congress. See *Blanchard & Co. v. Charles Gilman & Son, Inc.*, 239 F. Supp. 827, 145 USPQ 62 (D. Mass. 1965), *aff'd*, 353 F.2d 400, 147 USPQ 263 (1st Cir. 1965).
- (4) The use of the mark must cover the five years immediately before the date of the statement of five years' use. Thus, wording that indicates that the use referred to is before the date of the statement is essential. Its omission can only be excused if the facts in the record clearly show that the use includes the five years before the date of the statement.
- (5) The affidavit or declaration should include a statement that the mark has become distinctive or that the applicant believes that the mark has become distinctive, but absence of this statement is not fatal. See [TMEP §1212.07](#) for examples of various ways in which an applicant may assert a §2(f) claim.
- (6) The affidavit or declaration must contain a reference to distinctiveness with respect to the applicant's goods, services, or membership in the collective membership organization because the distinctiveness created by the five years' use must relate to the goods/services/collective membership organization specified in the application. If there is doubt that the distinctiveness pertains to all or any of the goods/services/classes specified in the application, the examining attorney must inquire regarding that issue. While a clarifying response does not have to be verified, a substitute statement regarding acquired distinctiveness must be verified, i.e., supported by an affidavit or a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), signed by the applicant.

1212.06 Establishing Distinctiveness by Actual Evidence

Under Trademark Rule 2.41(a)(3), [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(3\)](#), an applicant may submit affidavits, declarations under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), depositions, or other appropriate evidence showing the duration, extent, and nature of the applicant's use of a mark in commerce that may lawfully be regulated by the U.S. Congress, advertising expenditures in connection with such use, letters, or statements from the trade and/or public, or other appropriate evidence tending to show that the mark distinguishes the goods or services.

Establishing acquired distinctiveness by actual evidence was explained as follows in *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 1125, 227 USPQ 417, 422 (Fed. Cir. 1985):

An evidentiary showing of secondary meaning, adequate to show that a mark has acquired distinctiveness indicating the origin of the goods, includes evidence of the trademark owner's method of using the mark, supplemented by evidence of the effectiveness of such use to cause the purchasing public to identify the mark with the source of the product.

The kind and amount of evidence necessary to establish that a mark has acquired distinctiveness in relation to goods or services depends on the nature of the mark and the circumstances surrounding the use of the mark in each case. *Yamaha Int'l Corp. v. Hoshino Gakki Co.*, 840 F.2d 1572, 1581, 6 USPQ2d 1001, 1008 (Fed. Cir. 1988); *Roux Labs., Inc. v. Clairol Inc.*, 427 F.2d 823, 829, 166 USPQ 34, 39 (C.C.P.A. 1970) ; *In re Hehr Mfg. Co.*, 279 F.2d 526, 528, 126 USPQ 381, 383 (C.C.P.A. 1960) ; *In re Capital Formation Counselors, Inc.*, 219 USPQ 916, 918 (TTAB 1983) .

Evidence that only shows a mark used in conjunction with other wording may be insufficient to show that the mark has acquired distinctiveness. *See In re Mogen David Wine Corp.*, 372 F.2d 539, 542, 152 USPQ 593, 595-96 (C.C.P.A. 1967) (finding evidence of a bottle design failed to prove secondary meaning where advertising depicting the bottle design always featured applicant's word mark); *In re Franklin Cnty. Historical Soc'y*, 104 USPQ2d 1085, 1093 (TTAB 2012) (noting none of applicant's evidence showed use of the proposed mark "CENTER OF SCIENCE AND INDUSTRY" without the acronym "COSI," while other evidence only used the acronym to refer to applicant's services).

In considering a claim of acquired distinctiveness, the issue is whether acquired distinctiveness of the mark in relation to the goods or services has in fact been established in the minds of the purchasing public, not whether the mark is capable of becoming distinctive. *In re Redken Labs., Inc.*, 170 USPQ 526, 528 (TTAB 1971) ; *In re Fleet-Wing Corp.*, 122 USPQ 335, 335 (TTAB 1959) .

The following sections provide examples of different types of evidence that have been used, alone or in combination, to establish acquired distinctiveness. No single evidentiary factor is determinative. The value of a specific type of evidence and the amount necessary to establish acquired distinctiveness will vary according to the facts of the specific case.

1212.06(a) Long Use of the Mark in Commerce

Long-term use of the mark in commerce is one relevant factor to consider in determining whether a mark has acquired distinctiveness. *See In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (finding evidence of long use insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness of FISH FRY PRODUCTS where evidence involved uses of LOUISIANA FISH FRY PRODUCTS); *In re Uncle Sam Chem. Co.*, 229 USPQ 233, 235 (TTAB 1986) (finding §2(f) claim of acquired distinctiveness of SPRAYZON for "cleaning preparations and degreasers for industrial and institutional use" persuasive where applicant

had submitted declaration of its president supporting sales figures and attesting to over eighteen years of substantially exclusive and continuous use); *In re Packaging Specialists, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 917, 920 (TTAB 1984) (finding evidence submitted by applicant insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness of PACKAGING SPECIALISTS, INC., for contract packaging services, notwithstanding, *inter alia*, continuous and substantially exclusive use for sixteen years, deemed “a substantial period but not necessarily conclusive or persuasive”).

To support a §2(f) claim, use of the mark must be use in commerce, as defined in [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). See [TMEP §§901–901.04](#) as to what constitutes use in commerce.

1212.06(b) Advertising Expenditures

Large-scale expenditures in promoting and advertising goods and services under a particular mark are significant to indicate the extent to which a mark has been used. However, proof of an expensive and successful advertising campaign is not in itself enough to prove secondary meaning. *Mattel, Inc. v. Azrak-Hamway Int’l, Inc.*, 724 F.2d 357, 361 n.2, 221 USPQ 302, 305 n.2 (2d Cir. 1983). See *In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (finding evidence of sales and advertising expenditures insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness of FISH FRY PRODUCTS where evidence involved uses of LOUISIANA FISH FRY PRODUCTS); *In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (finding claim based on annual sales under the mark of approximately eighty-five million dollars, and annual advertising expenditures in excess of ten million dollars – two million of which were spent on promotions and promotional items which included the phrase THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA – insufficient to establish distinctiveness, in view of the highly descriptive nature of the proposed mark).

The ultimate test in determining whether a designation has acquired distinctiveness is applicant’s success, rather than its efforts, in educating the public to associate the proposed mark with a single source. The examining attorney must examine the advertising material to determine how the term is being used, the commercial impression created by such use, and what the use would mean to purchasers. *In re Redken Labs., Inc.*, 170 USPQ 526, 529 (TTAB 1971) (holding evidence adduced by applicant pursuant to §2(f) insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness of THE SCIENTIFIC APPROACH, for lectures concerning hair and skin treatment, notwithstanding ten years of use, over \$500,000 in promotion and sponsorship expenses, and the staging of over 300 shows per year). See *In re Chevron Intellectual Prop. Group LLC*, 96 USPQ2d 2026, 2031 (TTAB 2010) (finding evidence of acquired distinctiveness deficient in part because of the lack of advertisements promoting recognition of pole spanner design as a service mark); *Mag Instrument Inc. v. Brinkmann Corp.*, 96 USPQ2d 1701, 1723 (TTAB 2010) (finding absence of “look for” advertisements damaging to attempt to demonstrate acquired distinctiveness of proposed configuration mark); *Nextel Commc’ns, Inc. v. Motorola, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1393, 1408 (TTAB 2009) (sustaining opposition on the ground that sound mark had not acquired distinctiveness in part because applicant failed to provide evidence corroborating that the mark was used in advertisements in such a way that it would be recognized as a source identifier for cellular telephones); *In re ic! berlin brillen GmbH*, 85 USPQ2d 2021, 2023 (TTAB 2008) (affirming refusal to register product configuration for spectacles and sunglasses, as the applicant had failed to prove acquired distinctiveness chiefly because of the “absence of evidence of the advertising and/or promotion by the applicant of the earpiece design as a trademark”); *In re E.I. Kane, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1203, 1206 (TTAB 1984) (affirming refusal to register OFFICE MOVERS, INC., for moving services, notwithstanding §2(f) claim based on, *inter alia*, evidence of substantial advertising expenditures. “There is no evidence that any of the advertising activity was directed to creating secondary meaning in applicant’s highly descriptive trade name.”); *In re Kwik Lok Corp.*, 217 USPQ 1245, 1247-48 (TTAB 1983) (holding evidence insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness for configuration of bag closures made of plastic, notwithstanding applicant’s statement that advertising of the closures involved several hundred thousands

of dollars, where there was no evidence that the advertising had any impact on purchasers in perceiving the configuration as a mark); *cf. In re Haggard Co.*, 217 USPQ 81, 84 (TTAB 1982) (holding background design of a black swatch registrable pursuant to §2(f) for clothing where applicant had submitted, *inter alia*, evidence of “very substantial advertising and sales,” the Board finding the design to be, “because of its serrated left edge, something more than a common geometric shape or design”).

If the applicant prefers not to specify the extent of its expenditures in promoting and advertising goods and services under the mark because this information is confidential, the applicant may indicate the types of media through which the goods and services have been advertised (e.g., national television) and how frequently the advertisements have appeared.

1212.06(c) Affidavits or Declarations Asserting Recognition of Mark as Source Indicator

Affidavits or declarations that assert recognition of the mark as a source indicator are relevant in establishing acquired distinctiveness. However, the value of the affidavits or declarations depends on the statements made and the identity of the affiant or declarant. *See In re Chem. Dynamics Inc.*, 839 F.2d 1569, 1571, 5 USPQ2d 1828, 1830 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (finding conclusionary declaration from applicant’s vice-president insufficient without the factual basis for the declarant’s belief that the design had become distinctive). Proof of distinctiveness also requires more than proof of the existence of a relatively small number of people who associate a mark with the applicant. *See In re The Paint Prods. Co.*, 8 USPQ2d 1863, 1866 (TTAB 1988) (“Because these affidavits were sought and collected by applicant from ten customers who have dealt with applicant for many years, the evidence is not altogether persuasive on the issue of how the average customer for paints perceives the words ‘PAINT PRODUCTS CO.’ in conjunction with paints and coatings.”); *see also Mag Instrument Inc. v. Brinkmann Corp.*, 96 USPQ2d 1701, 1723 (TTAB 2010) (finding sixteen declarations of little persuasive value, as they were nearly identical in wording and only one of the declarants was described as an end consumer); *In re Gray Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1558, 1560 (TTAB 1987) (finding affidavit of applicant’s counsel expressing his belief that the mark has acquired secondary meaning of “no probative value whatsoever” because, among other reasons, the statement is subject to bias); *In re Petersen Mfg. Co.*, 2 USPQ2d 2032, 2035 (TTAB 1987) (finding declarations from customers which stated that designs used by applicant indicate to the declarant that the applicant is the source of the goods, but which did not refer to or identify the designs with any specificity, not persuasive); *In re Bose Corp.*, 216 USPQ 1001, 1005 (TTAB 1983), *aff’d*, 772 F.2d 866, 227 USPQ 1 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (deeming retailer’s statement that he has been in contact with many purchasers of loudspeaker systems of whom a substantial number would recognize the depicted design as originating with applicant competent evidence of secondary meaning); *In re Flex-O-Glass, Inc.*, 194 USPQ 203, 206 (TTAB 1977) (“[T]he fact that the affidavits may be similar in format and expression is of no particular significance ... since the affiants have sworn to the statements contained therein.”).

1212.06(d) Survey Evidence, Market Research and Consumer Reaction Studies

Survey evidence, market research, and consumer reaction studies are relevant in establishing acquired distinctiveness and secondary meaning. *See Yankee Candle Co. v. Bridgewater Candle Co.*, 259 F.3d 25, 43, 59 USPQ2d 1720, 1730 (1st Cir. 2001) (“Although survey evidence is not required, ‘it is a valuable method of showing secondary meaning.’” (quoting *I.P. Lund Trading ApS v. Kohler Co.*, 163 F.3d 27, 42, 49 USPQ2d 1225, 1235 (1st Cir. 1998))).

To show secondary meaning, the survey must show that the consuming public views the proposed mark as an indication of the source of the product or service. *See Nextel Commc’ns, Inc. v. Motorola, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1393, 1402-03 (TTAB 2009) (finding survey did not provide evidence of acquired distinctiveness as it was unclear if respondents associated the sound mark with applicant’s goods or opposer’s services); *Boston*

Beer Co. L.P. v. Slesar Bros. Brewing Co., 9 F.3d 175, 183, 28 USPQ2d 1778, 1784 (1st Cir. 1993) (finding survey insufficient to establish acquired distinctiveness where survey demonstrated product-place association rather than product-source association). Moreover, the survey should reveal that the consuming public associates the proposed mark with a *single source*, and not that the applicant is the first among many parties associated with the designation. See J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition* §15.42 (4th ed. 2013) (citing *Am. Flange & Mfg. Co. v. Rieke Corp.*, 80 USPQ2d 1397, 1415 (TTAB 2006), *withdrawn on other grounds*, 90 USPQ2d 1127 (TTAB 2009)); see also *British Seagull Ltd. v. Brunswick Corp.*, 28 USPQ2d 1197, 1202 (TTAB 1993), *aff'd*, 35 F.3d 1527, 32 USPQ2d 1120 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (finding survey does not provide convincing proof that respondents believe all black engines come from the same source).

The applicant must document the procedural and statistical accuracy of this type of evidence and carefully frame the questions contained therein. *In re Van Valkenburgh*, 97 USPQ2d 1757, 1767 (TTAB 2011) (finding “no basis on which to conclude that the survey is based on scientifically valid principles” where the survey consisted of questionnaires distributed to an unknown number of people who filled them out and mailed them back to applicant’s counsel); see *In re Steelbuilding.com*, 415 F.3d 1293, 1300, 75 USPQ2d 1420, 1424 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (deeming applicant’s Internet poll on name recognition unreliable, where the poll did not attempt to prevent visitors from voting more than once or to prevent interested parties such as friends or associates or employees of the applicant from voting multiple times, and the poll results did not indicate the number of actual participants); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 87 USPQ2d 1100, 1109–10 (TTAB 2008), *aff'd*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (finding applicant’s survey entitled to no probative weight as to the public’s perception of HOTELS.COM due to flaws including the order of the questions and an assumption that consumers understand the difference between a brand name and domain name); *In re E.I. Kane, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1203, 1206 (TTAB 1984) (“[T]he survey asked the wrong question. The issue is not whether the term ‘Office Movers’ identifies a specific company. Rather, it is whether the term ‘OFFICE MOVERS, INC.’ identifies services which emanate from a single source.”); *Gen. Foods Corp. v. Ralston Purina Co.*, 220 USPQ 990, 994 n.7 (TTAB 1984) (“[W]here ... [reports of market research and consumer reaction studies] have been conducted for marketing reasons rather than directly to assist in resolving the issues in proceedings before us, their value will almost always depend upon interpretations of their significance by witnesses or other evidence.”); *Specialty Brands, Inc. v. Spiceseas, Inc.*, 220 USPQ 73, 74 n.4 (TTAB 1983) (finding testimony concerning survey results, unsupported by documentation, to be unreliable hearsay). Therefore, information regarding how a survey was conducted, the number of participants surveyed, and the geographic scope of the survey may assist the examining attorney in determining the probative weight of such evidence.

Evidence of secondary meaning may be sufficient if it shows that a substantial portion of the consuming public associates the proposed mark with a single source. See *Perini Corp. v. Perini Constr., Inc.*, 915 F.2d 121, 125, 16 USPQ2d 1289, 1292 (4th Cir. 1990) (quoting *Food Fair Stores, Inc. v. Lakeland Grocery Corp.*, 301 F.2d 156, 161, 133 USPQ 127, 131 (4th Cir. 1962)); J. Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition* §§15.45, 32.190 (4th ed. 2013); see also *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d 1116, 1127, 227 USPQ 417, 424 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (noting “the results show a syndetic relationship between the color ‘pink’ and Owens-Corning Fiberglas in the minds of a significant part of the purchasing public”). As noted by the Court of Customs and Patent Appeals (the predecessor to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit), “proof of distinctiveness requires more than proof of the existence of a relatively small number of people” who associate the proposed mark with the applicant. *Roselux Chem. Co. v. Parsons Ammonia Co.*, 299 F.2d 855, 862, 132 USPQ 627, 633 (C.C.P.A. 1962). Although all evidence must be reviewed on a case-by-case basis, generally, survey results showing less than 10% consumer recognition are insufficient to establish secondary meaning, and results over 50% are sufficient to establish secondary meaning. See *id.* (finding 10% insufficient to establish secondary meaning); *In re Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.*, 774 F.2d at 1127–28, 227 USPQ at 424–25 (finding 50% probative in establishing secondary

meaning given the totality of the evidence); Thomas McCarthy, *McCarthy on Trademarks and Unfair Competition* §§15.45, 32.190 (4th ed. 2013). However, the probative value of a survey is significantly weakened, despite consumer recognition rates greater than 50%, if there are flaws in the way the survey is conducted. *See Stuart Spector Designs Ltd. v. Fender Musical Instruments Corp.*, 94 USPQ2d 1549, 1569–71 (TTAB 2009) .

1212.06(e) Miscellaneous Considerations Regarding Evidence Submitted to Establish Distinctiveness

1212.06(e)(i) First or Only User

When the applicant is the only source of the goods or services, use alone does not automatically represent trademark recognition and acquired distinctiveness. *See, e.g., J. Kohnstam, Ltd. v. Louis Marx & Co.*, 280 F.2d 437, 440, 126 USPQ 362, 364 (C.C.P.A. 1960) ; *In re Mortg. Bankers Ass'n of Am.*, 226 USPQ 954, 956 (TTAB 1985) ; *In re Nat'l Shooting Sports Found., Inc.*, 219 USPQ 1018, 1020 (TTAB 1983); *In re Meier's Wine Cellars, Inc.*, 150 USPQ 475, 475 (TTAB 1966) ; *In re G. D. Searle & Co.*, 143 USPQ 220, 223 (TTAB 1964) , *aff'd*, 360 F.2d 650, 149 USPQ 619 (C.C.P.A. 1966).

Similarly, evidence of intentional copying of a product design is not probative of acquired distinctiveness. “Where the proposed mark is a product design, the copier may be attempting to exploit a desirable product feature, rather than seeking to confuse customers as to the source of the product.” *In re Van Valkenburgh*, 97 USPQ2d 1757, 1768 (TTAB 2011) .

1212.06(e)(ii) State Trademark Registrations

State trademark registrations are of relatively little probative value. *See, e.g., In re Vico Prods. Mfg. Co.*, 229 USPQ 364, 370 (TTAB 1985), *recon. denied*, 229 USPQ 716 (TTAB 1986) (“While applicant’s design may be registrable under the provisions of California trademark law, it is the federal trademark statute and the cases interpreting it by which we must evaluate the registrability of applicant’s asserted mark.”); *In re Craigmyle*, 224 USPQ 791, 794 (TTAB 1984) (finding California trademark registration not controlling with respect to federal registrability).

1212.06(e)(iii) Design Patent

The fact that a device is the subject of a design patent does not, without more, mean that it functions as a mark or has acquired distinctiveness. *In re Vico Prods. Mfg. Co.*, 229 USPQ 364, 370 (TTAB 1985), *recon. denied*, 229 USPQ 716 (TTAB 1986) (citing *In re R.M. Smith, Inc.*, 734 F.2d 1482, 1485, 222 USPQ 1, 3 (Fed. Cir. 1984).

1212.06(e)(iv) Acquiescence to Demands of Competitors

Acquiescence to demands of competitors to cease use of a term can be equally viewed as simply a desire to avoid litigation. *See, e.g., In re Wella Corp.*, 565 F.2d 143, 144 n.2, 196 USPQ 7, 8 n.2 (C.C.P.A. 1977) ; *In re Consol. Cigar Corp.*, 13 USPQ2d 1481, 1483 (TTAB 1989) .

1212.07 Form of Application Asserting Distinctiveness

To base a registration on acquired distinctiveness under §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), an applicant must indicate its intent to do so.

The indication of the applicant's intent to rely on §2(f) can take a variety of forms, for example, a statement that registration is requested under §2(f); a statement that the mark has become distinctive, or that the applicant believes the mark has become distinctive of the goods/services/classes in commerce; the statement relating to five years' use in commerce as suggested in §2(f); or a statement that evidence is being submitted in support of acquired distinctiveness.

If it is unclear from the application whether a claim of distinctiveness under §2(f) has been made, the examining attorney must inquire whether the applicant is seeking registration under §2(f). See [TMEP §1212.02\(d\)](#) concerning unnecessary §2(f) claims.

If the statement requesting registration under §2(f) and the evidence submitted to establish acquired distinctiveness are in the application when filed, the §2(f) statement and proof are supported by the verification of the application.

If a claim of distinctiveness pursuant to §2(f) is submitted as an amendment, or if additional evidence is added in an amendment, the nature of the proof submitted to establish acquired distinctiveness determines whether a verification is necessary.

A claim of ownership of one or more active prior registrations as proof of distinctiveness does not have to be verified. See [TMEP §1212.04\(e\)](#).

If the applicant claims that the mark has become distinctive of the applicant's goods and/or services through substantially exclusive and continuous use of the mark in commerce for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, the applicant must submit this claim in the form of an affidavit, or a declaration in accordance with [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), signed by the applicant. [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.41\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §1212.05\(d\)](#) regarding the suggested format for a claim of proof of five years' use for a trademark, service mark, collective mark, and certification mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) and [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#) regarding persons properly authorized to sign on behalf of applicant.

If an application is amended to add a §2(f) claim relying on other types of evidence, there may be considerable flexibility as to form. While statements by the applicant regarding advertising or sales figures or other facts that may show acquired distinctiveness would normally be presented in the form of affidavits, or declarations under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), signed by the applicant, verification may not be required for other types of evidence. The examining attorney will determine whether the evidence relied on is of a nature that requires verification by the applicant.

1212.08 Section 44 and §66(a) Applications and Distinctiveness

In applications based on §44(d), §44(e), or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#), [§1126\(e\)](#), [§1141f\(a\)](#), registration may be sought under §2(f) as to the entire mark upon showing that the mark has acquired distinctiveness in commerce that may lawfully be regulated by the U.S. Congress. See *In re Etablissements Darty et Fils*, 759 F.2d 15, 18, 225 USPQ 652, 654 (Fed. Cir. 1985). Similarly, registration may be sought under §2(f) in part upon showing that the *relevant part of the mark* has acquired distinctiveness in commerce that may lawfully be regulated by the U.S. Congress. *Id.* The same standards for establishing acquired distinctiveness apply whether the application is based on §1(a), §44, or §66(a). Although dates of first use are not required in applications based solely on §44 or §66(a), reference to length of use in commerce or information as to specific dates of use in commerce, presented in support of the claim of acquired distinctiveness, is clearly relevant to a determination of the acceptability of the claim.

The applicant may not rely on use other than use in commerce that may be regulated by the U.S. Congress in establishing acquired distinctiveness. Evidence of use solely in a foreign country, or between two foreign countries, is not evidence of acquired distinctiveness in the United States. *In re Rogers*, 53 USPQ2d 1741, 1746 (TTAB 1999) .

1212.09 Section 1(b) Applications and Distinctiveness

1212.09(a) Section 2(f) Claim Requires Prior Use

Section 2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#), is limited by its terms to “a mark used by the applicant.” A claim of distinctiveness under §2(f) is normally not filed in a §1(b) application before the applicant files an allegation of use, because a claim of acquired distinctiveness, by definition, requires prior use.

However, an intent-to-use applicant who has used the mark on related goods or services may file a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) before filing an allegation of use, if the applicant can establish that, as a result of the applicant’s use of the mark on other goods or services, the mark has become distinctive of the goods or services in the intent-to-use application, and that this previously created distinctiveness will transfer to the goods and services in the intent-to-use application when use in commerce begins. *In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 1347, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1812 (Fed. Cir. 2001).

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has set forth the requirements for showing that a mark in an intent-to-use application has acquired distinctiveness:

The required showing is essentially twofold. First, applicant must establish, through the appropriate submission, the acquired distinctiveness of the same mark in connection with specified other goods and/or services in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce. All of the rules and legal precedent pertaining to such a showing in a use-based application are equally applicable in this context.... Second, applicant must establish, through submission of relevant evidence rather than mere conjecture, a sufficient relationship between the goods or services in connection with which the mark has acquired distinctiveness and the goods or services recited in the intent-to-use application to warrant the conclusion that the previously created distinctiveness will transfer to the goods or services in the application upon use.

In re Rogers, 53 USPQ2d 1741, 1744 (TTAB 1999) .

To satisfy the first element, the applicant must establish acquired distinctiveness as to the other goods or services by appropriate evidence, such as ownership of an active prior registration for the same mark for sufficiently similar or related goods or services ([see TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#)), a prima facie showing of acquired distinctiveness based on five years’ use of the same mark with related goods or services ([see TMEP §§1212.05–1212.05\(d\)](#)), or actual evidence of acquired distinctiveness for the same mark with respect to the other goods or services ([see TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#)). *See In re Highlights for Children, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d 1268, 1273-75 (TTAB 2016) (finding that the applied-for mark, IMÁGENES ESCONDIDAS, and the previously registered English equivalent, HIDDEN PICTURES, are not the “same mark” because they are entirely different both aurally and visually, and applicant provided no evidence demonstrating that consumers would consider the two marks to be the same mark even if they understood the equivalence in meaning); *In re Nielsen Bus. Media, Inc.*, 93 USPQ2d 1545, 1547-48 (TTAB 2010) (finding applicant failed to meet the first requirement, because the intent-to-use mark THE BOLLYWOOD REPORTER was not deemed to be the “same” mark as the previously registered marks THE HOLLYWOOD REPORTER, THEHOLLYWOODREPORTER.COM, and THE HOLLYWOOD REPORTER STUDIO

BLU-BOOK); *In re Binion*, 93 USPQ2d 1531, 1539 (TTAB 2009) (finding applicant failed to meet the first requirement, because the intent-to-use marks BINION and BINION’S were not deemed to be the “same” marks as the previously registered marks JACK BINION and JACK BINION’S).

To satisfy the second element, applicant must show “the extent to which the goods or services in the intent-to-use application are related to the goods or services in connection with which the mark is distinctive, and that there is a strong likelihood that the mark’s established trademark function will transfer to the related goods or services when use in commerce occurs.” *Rogers*, 53 USPQ2d at 1745.

The showing necessary to establish relatedness will vary from case to case, depending on the nature of the goods or services involved and the language used to identify them. There is no absolute rule that applicant must submit extrinsic evidence to support its contention that the goods are related in every case. *Kellogg Co. v. Gen. Mills, Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1766, 1771 (TTAB 2007) (deeming close relationship between cereal and food bars derived from cereal “self evident from the respective identifications of goods”).

The fact that a mark is famous in connection with certain goods or services does *not* necessarily lead to the conclusion that, upon use, distinctiveness will transfer to use of the mark in connection with unrelated goods or services in an intent-to-use application. In *Rogers*, the Board stated that:

The owner of a famous mark must still establish a strong likelihood of transference of the trademark function to the goods or services identified in the intent-to-use application. This factually-based determination will still involve establishing some degree of relationship between the goods or services for which the mark is famous and the goods or services in the intent-to-use application.

53 USPQ2d at 1745-1746.

An applicant whose application is based on use in commerce under §1(a), [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), may also base a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) on long-term use of the mark on related goods or services, if the applicant meets the requirements set forth above.

1212.09(b) Claim of §2(f) “in Part” in §1(b) Applications

An intent-to-use applicant may assert a claim of acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) as to part of a mark prior to filing an acceptable allegation of use if the applicant has already used the relevant part of the mark in commerce on or in connection with the specified goods or services, or related goods or services. See [TMEP §1212.02\(f\)](#) regarding claims of §2(f) “in part.”

The requirements to support such a claim are twofold. First, the applicant must establish acquired distinctiveness of the relevant portion of the mark through the same methods required in a use-based application. See [TMEP §1212.02\(f\)\(i\)](#). Evidence in support of such a claim may consist of: (1) ownership of an active prior registration on the Principal Register covering the relevant portion of the mark and sufficiently similar or related goods or services (see [TMEP §§1212.04–1212.04\(e\)](#)); (2) a prima facie showing of distinctiveness based on five years’ use of the relevant portion of the mark with the same or related goods or services (see [TMEP §§1212.05–1212.05\(d\)](#)); or (3) actual evidence of acquired distinctiveness of the relevant portion of the mark with respect to the same or related goods or services (see [TMEP §§1212.06–1212.06\(e\)\(iv\)](#)).

Second, if the relevant portion of the mark has been used with related, as opposed to identical, goods or services, the applicant must additionally show the extent to which the goods or services in the §1(b) application

are related to the goods or services in connection with which the mark is distinctive, and a strong likelihood that the mark's established trademark function will transfer to the related goods or services when use in commerce begins. *In re Rogers*, 53 USPQ2d 1741, 1745 (TTAB 1999) ; see [TMEP §1212.09\(a\)](#).

If the examining attorney determines that the applicant has established acquired distinctiveness as to the relevant portion of the mark, the examining attorney must withdraw any refusal related to the nondistinctive character of that part of the mark.

1212.10 Printing §2(f) Notations, §2(f) in Part Notations, and Limitation Statements

Currently, when a mark is registered under §2(f), the USPTO prints a “2(f)” notation in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. The examining attorney must ensure that the §2(f) claim has been entered into the Trademark database, so that it will be printed in the *Official Gazette* and on the certificate of registration. Similarly, when a claim of §2(f) in part is appropriate, the examining attorney must ensure that the record reflects that the §2(f) claim applies only to a portion of the mark and that the relevant portion is correctly identified in the limitation statement. See [TMEP §817](#) regarding preparation of an application for publication or registration.

For example, if the mark is SOFTSOAP for liquid soap and the applicant has successfully shown acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney must ensure that the “§2(f)” field in the Trademark database reads as follows before approving the mark for publication:

MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION

SECTION 2F: YES

SECTION 2F IN PART: NO

Similarly, if the mark is SOFTSOAP combined with an inherently distinctive design for liquid soap and the applicant has successfully shown acquired distinctiveness as to the wording in the mark, the examining attorney must ensure that the “§2(f)” field in the Trademark database reads as follows before approving the mark for publication:

MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION

SECTION 2F: NO

SECTION 2F IN PART: YES

**2F Limitation
Statement:**

as to “SOFTSOAP”

If the applicant has successfully shown acquired distinctiveness as to non-English wording in the mark, or as to non-English wording that has been transliterated from non-Latin characters, the examining attorney must ensure that the §2(f) claim is entered as shown in the following examples.

If the mark is KONE UNIPOWER for machine parts, the term KONE means “machine or engine,” and the applicant has successfully shown acquired distinctiveness as to the term KONE, the examining attorney must ensure that the “§2(f)” field in the Trademark database reads as follows before approving the mark for publication:

MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION

SECTION 2F: NO

SECTION 2F IN PART: YES

**2F Limitation
Statement:**

as to “KONE”

Similarly, in the mark shown below, where the non-Latin characters transliterate to “ME-RI-LAND-HAN-IN-SI-MIN-HYUP-IIOY,” which means



“MARYLAND, KOREAN AMERICAN LEAGUE,” and the mark is used for organizing and conducting community service projects and programs to promote cultural and social awareness, if the applicant has successfully shown acquired distinctiveness as to the portion of the mark comprised of the non-Latin characters, the examining attorney must ensure that the “§2(f)” field in the Trademark database reads as follows before approving the mark for publication:

MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION**SECTION 2F: NO****2F Limitation
Statement:****SECTION 2F IN PART: YES**as to the non-Latin characters
that transliterate to "ME-RI-
LAND-HAN-IN-SI-MIN-HYUP-
IIOY"

In the past, the USPTO did not print §2(f) notations on the registration. Therefore, the absence of a “§2(f)” notation on an older registration does not necessarily mean that the mark was registered without a §2(f) claim.

1213 Disclaimer of Elements in Marks**15 U.S.C. §1056 Disclaimers.**

(a) The Director may require the applicant to disclaim an unregistrable component of a mark otherwise registrable. An applicant may voluntarily disclaim a component of a mark sought to be registered.

(b) No disclaimer, including those made under subsection (e) of section 1057 of this title, shall prejudice or affect the applicant’s or registrant’s rights then existing or thereafter arising in the disclaimed matter, or his right of registration on another application if the disclaimed matter be or shall have become distinctive of his goods or services.

A disclaimer is a statement that the applicant or registrant does not claim the exclusive right to use a specified element or elements of the mark in a trademark application or registration. A disclaimer may be included in an application as filed or may be added by amendment, e.g., to comply with a requirement by the examining attorney.

The purpose of a disclaimer is to permit the registration of a mark that is registrable as a whole but contains matter that would not be registrable standing alone, without creating a false impression of the extent of the registrant’s right with respect to certain elements in the mark. As stated in *Horlick’s Malted Milk Co. v. Borden Co.*, 295 F. 232, 234 (D.C. Cir. 1924) (citing *Estate of P. D. Beckwith, Inc. v. Comm’r of Pats.*, 252 U.S. 538, 544 (1920)):

[T]he fact that a mark contains descriptive words is not enough to warrant a refusal to register it. Unless it consists only of such words, it may not be refused a place on the registry of the Patent Office.

The significance of a disclaimer is conveyed in the following statement:

As used in trade mark registrations, a disclaimer of a component of a composite mark amounts merely to a statement that, in so far as that particular registration is concerned, no rights are being asserted in the disclaimed component standing alone, but rights are asserted in the composite; and the particular registration represents only such rights as flow from the use of the composite mark.

Sprague Electric Co. v. Erie Resistor Corp., 101 USPQ 486, 486-87 (Comm’r Pats. 1954).

A disclaimer may be limited to pertain to only certain classes, or to only certain goods or services.

1213.01 History of Disclaimer Practice

There was no statutory authority for disclaimer prior to 1946. As various court decisions were rendered, USPTO practice fluctuated from, first, registering the composite mark without a qualifying statement; later, requiring a statement in the application disclaiming the unregistrable matter in the mark; and, finally, requiring removal of the unregistrable matter from the mark on the drawing. This fluctuation ended with the decision of *Estate of P.D. Beckwith, Inc. v. Comm’r of Pats.*, 252 U.S. 538 (1920), in which the United States Supreme Court held that to require the removal of descriptive matter from a composite mark was erroneous, and commended the practice of a statement of disclaimer. Thus, the practice of disclaimer was established officially in the USPTO, although still without statutory support.

The Trademark Act of 1946 created a statutory basis for the practice of disclaimer in §6, [15 U.S.C. §1056](#).

1213.01(a) Discretion in Requiring Disclaimer

When first incorporated in the Trademark Act in 1946, §6 stated that the Director *shall* require unregistrable matter to be disclaimed. Under the impetus of the mandatory word “shall,” it became customary to require a disclaimer for every occurrence, in any type of combination, of every term or symbol which by itself might be refused registration in the first instance under the 1946 Act.

In 1962, §6 was amended to state that the Director *may* require the applicant to disclaim an unregistrable component of a mark otherwise registrable. The change from “shall” to “may” justifies the exercise of greater discretion by examining attorneys in determining whether a disclaimer is necessary. *See also In re La. Fish Fry Prods., Ltd.*, 797 F.3d 1332, 116 USPQ2d 1262 (Fed. Cir. 2015) (stating that registration can be conditioned on disclaimer of an unregistrable component of a mark).

Examining attorneys should keep in mind the basic purpose of disclaimers, which is to indicate in the record that a significant element of a composite mark is not being appropriated apart from the composite. The examining attorney must not require that an element of a mark be disclaimed when a disclaimer would be unnecessary, e.g., when the form or degree of integration of an element in the composite makes it obvious that no claim is being made in any element apart from the composite.

1213.01(b) Refusal to Register Because of Failure to Disclaim

Failure to comply with a requirement to disclaim was held to be a basis for refusal to register before the Act of 1946. *See In re Am. Cyanamid & Chem. Corp.*, 99 F.2d 964, 39 USPQ 445 (C.C.P.A. 1938) . Failure to comply with a requirement to disclaim also was held to justify a refusal after the 1946 Act. *See In re Hercules Fasteners, Inc.*, 203 F.2d 753, 97 USPQ 355 (C.C.P.A. 1953) . Even after amendment of the pertinent language of §6 of the 1946 Act to the discretionary wording “may require the applicant to disclaim,” registration may be refused if an applicant does not comply with a requirement for a disclaimer made by the examining attorney. *See In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 78 USPQ2d 1395 (Fed. Cir. 2006); *In re Stereotaxis Inc.* , 429 F.3d 1039, 77 USPQ2d 1087 (Fed. Cir. 2005) ; *In re Omaha Nat’l Corp.*, 819 F.2d 1117, 2 USPQ2d 1859 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *In re Richardson Ink Co.*, 511 F.2d 559, 185 USPQ 46 (C.C.P.A. 1975) ; *In re Nat’l Presto Indus., Inc.*, 197 USPQ 188 (TTAB 1977); *In re Pendleton Tool Indus., Inc.*, 157 USPQ 114 (TTAB 1968).

If an applicant fails to comply with the examining attorney's requirement for a disclaimer, the examining attorney must make the requirement final if the application is otherwise in condition for a final action.

1213.01(c) Voluntary Disclaimer of Registrable or Unregistrable Matter

Section 6(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1056\(a\)](#), was amended in 1962 to add the sentence, "An applicant may voluntarily disclaim a component of a mark sought to be registered." Disclaimers volunteered by applicants generally should conform to the guidelines set forth in this Manual. See [TMEP §§1213.08–1213.08\(d\)](#).

In *In re MCI Commc'ns Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1534 (Comm'r Pats. 1991), the Commissioner held that §6(a) of the Act permits an applicant to disclaim matter voluntarily, regardless of whether the matter is registrable or unregistrable. The Commissioner specifically overruled all previous USPTO authority holding otherwise. *Id.* at 1539. (Previous practice prohibited the entry of disclaimers of registrable components of marks.) Therefore, if an applicant offers a disclaimer of any matter in a mark, the USPTO will accept the disclaimer.

The *MCI* decision states emphatically that the entry of a voluntary disclaimer does *not* render registrable a mark that is otherwise unregistrable under relevant sections of the Trademark Act, such as §2(d) or §2(e). *Id.* at 1538. The examining attorney must evaluate the entire mark, including any disclaimed matter, to determine registrability. *Id.* See *In re RSI Sys., LLC*, 88 USPQ2d 1445, 1448 (TTAB 2008) (finding voluntary disclaimer of "RSI" has no legal effect on the issue of likelihood of confusion because it is not a weak term). Furthermore, the *MCI* decision states that the applicant may not disclaim the entire mark. *MCI*, 21 USPQ2d at 1538. See [TMEP §1213.06](#).

An applicant may volunteer a disclaimer in the mistaken belief that a disclaimer would be required when, in fact, USPTO policy would not require a disclaimer. If this appears to be the case, the examining attorney must offer the applicant the opportunity to withdraw the disclaimer.

If it is necessary to communicate with the applicant about another matter, the examining attorney must state in the Office action that the disclaimer appears to be unnecessary, and inquire as to whether the applicant wants to withdraw the disclaimer. If the applicant does not respond to the inquiry regarding the unnecessary disclaimer, and the application is otherwise in condition for final action or approval for publication for opposition or registration, the examining attorney must enter a Note to the File regarding the disclaimer and issue the final action or approve the application for publication for opposition or registration, as appropriate, without deleting the disclaimer.

In applications under §1 or §44, if it is otherwise unnecessary to issue a first Office action, the inquiry may be made by telephone or e-mail. If the applicant wants to delete the disclaimer, this may be done by examiner's amendment. If the applicant does not respond promptly to the telephone or e-mail message (applicant should be given at least a week), the examining attorney must enter an appropriate Note to the File and approve the application for publication for opposition or registration without deleting the disclaimer.

In applications under §66(a), if it is otherwise unnecessary to issue a first Office action, the examining attorney should issue a "no-call" Examiner's Amendment informing the applicant that the disclaimer appears to be unnecessary and inquiring as to whether the applicant wants to withdraw the disclaimer. (This is meant only to provide information to the applicant and does not "amend" the application. An examiner's amendment may not be issued as a first Office action because the IB will not accept such amendments.) The examining attorney should then approve the application for publication for opposition without deleting the disclaimer. It is not necessary to wait for the applicant to respond.

1213.01(d) Disclaimer Offered in the Alternative

An applicant may argue the merits of an examining attorney's requirement for a disclaimer and, in the alternative, consent to entry of the disclaimer. In such circumstances, submission of the disclaimer does not constitute a concession that the matter sought to be registered is not inherently distinctive or registrable.

See In re RiseSmart Inc., 104 USPQ2d 1931, 1932 (TTAB 2012). Thus, when an applicant submits a disclaimer in the alternative, while maintaining that the wording at issue is not descriptive, the disclaimer requirement is not moot. If the examining attorney finds the disclaimer acceptable, the applicant must be given the option of entering the disclaimer in the record or going forward with appeal of the underlying issue of whether the wording subject to the requirement is merely descriptive. This should be done by telephone or e-mail, with a Note to the File in the record indicating the applicant's decision, wherever possible. If the applicant wants to appeal, or if the examining attorney is unable to reach the applicant by telephone or e-mail, the examining attorney must maintain the requirement, or issue a final Office action requiring the disclaimer, as appropriate. *Id.* If the applicant elects to enter the disclaimer in the record and not appeal the requirement, then the disclaimer constitutes a concession that the matter is not inherently distinctive or registrable.

See [TMEP §1212.02\(c\)](#) regarding a claim, in the alternative, that matter sought to be registered has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f).

1213.02 “Composite” Marks

A “composite” mark may consist of a word or words combined with a design or designs; it may consist solely of words, when there are separable word elements; or it may consist solely of separable design elements. An unregistrable component of a composite mark is subject to disclaimer. However, if a composite mark (or portion thereof) is “unitary,” an individual component of the mark (or of the unitary portion) that would otherwise be unregistrable need not be disclaimed. *See* [TMEP §§1213.05–1213.05\(g\)\(iv\)](#).

The same principles apply to disclaimer of an unregistrable component of a composite mark, whether the mark is a combination of wording and designs or consists entirely of wording or entirely of designs.

1213.03 Disclaimer of Unregistrable Components of Marks

1213.03(a) “Unregistrable Components” in General

Estate of P.D. Beckwith, Inc. v. Comm’r of Pats., 252 U.S. 538 (1920), and other disclaimer decisions before the Trademark Act of 1946 dealt with disclaiming descriptive or generic matter. Section 6 of the Act referred initially to “unregistrable matter” and, since the 1962 amendment, now refers to “an unregistrable component.”

Typically, an unregistrable component of a registrable mark is the name of the goods or services, other matter that does not indicate source, matter that is merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive of the goods or services, or matter that is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods or services.

Office practice does not require disclaimer of a surname. *Ex parte Norquist Prods., Inc.*, 109 USPQ 399 (Comm’r Pats. 1956) (finding disclaimer of “NORQUIST” unnecessary in application to register mark comprising “NORQUIST CORONET” on an oval background featuring a coronet, for tables and chairs). In that decision, the Commissioner stated as follows:

Section [2(e)(4)] of the statute does not contemplate the dissection of a composite mark to determine whether a word which constitutes an integral part of the mark is primarily merely a surname. Rather, it contemplates an examination of the mark in its entirety and an evaluation of the commercial impression created by the entire mark. A word which is primarily merely a surname may lose that significance when it appears in a distinctive composite.

Id. at 400. The addition of other registrable matter creates a composite mark with an overall impression that is not primarily merely that of a surname. If the additional matter is minimal or unregistrable, then the mark is primarily merely a surname and refusal under §2(e)(4) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(4\)](#) (formerly §2(e)(3), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#)), must be made. See *In re E. Martinoni Co.*, 189 USPQ 589, 590-91 (TTAB 1975) (holding LIQUORE MARTINONI (stylized) for liqueur primarily merely a surname, with “liqueure” being the Italian word for “liqueur”). See [TMEP §§1211.01\(b\)–1211.01\(b\)\(viii\)](#) regarding the combination of a surname with additional matter.

In cases where registration of a mark is barred under the Trademark Act (e.g., under §§2(a), 2(b), 2(c), 2(d), and 2(e)(3)), a disclaimer of an unregistrable component will not render the mark registrable. See, e.g., *Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass’n v. Nat’l Hearing Aid Soc’y*, 224 USPQ 798, 808 (TTAB 1984) (“While the disclaimer is appropriate to indicate that respondent claims no proprietary right in the disclaimed words, the disclaimer does not affect the question of whether the disclaimed matter deceives the public, since one cannot avoid the Section 2(a) deceptiveness prohibition by disclaiming deceptive matter apart from the mark as a whole.”). See [TMEP §1203.02](#) regarding disclaiming deceptive matter, [TMEP §1204.04\(a\)](#) about disclaiming flags or insignia, [TMEP §§1210.05\(d\)\(ii\)](#) and [1210.06\(a\)–\(b\)](#) regarding disclaimer of geographic terms in composite marks, and [TMEP §1213.10](#) concerning disclaimers with regard to likelihood of confusion.

1213.03(b) Generic Matter and Matter That Does Not Function as a Mark

If a mark is comprised in part of matter that, as applied to the goods or services, is generic or does not function as a mark, the matter must be disclaimed to permit registration on the Principal Register (including registration under §2(f) of the Act) or on the Supplemental Register. If, however, matter that would otherwise be generic or would not function as a mark is part of a unitary mark or part of a separable unitary element of a mark, the examining attorney should not require a disclaimer of the matter. See [TMEP §§1213.05–1213.05\(g\)\(iv\)](#).

See [TMEP §1212.02\(e\)](#) regarding disclaimers of unregistrable components in applications to register marks on the Principal Register under §2(f). See also *In re Creative Goldsmiths of Wash., Inc.*, 229 USPQ 766, 768 (TTAB 1986) (“[I]t is within the discretion of an Examining Attorney to require the disclaimer of an unregistrable component (such as a common descriptive, or generic, name) of a composite mark sought to be registered on the Principal Register under the provisions of Section 2(f).”).

Regarding disclaimers of unregistrable components in applications to register marks on the Supplemental Register, as stated in *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 845 n.6, 208 USPQ 89, 91 n.6 (C.C.P.A. 1980) (citing *In re Wella Corp.*, 565 F.2d 143, 196 USPQ 7 (C.C.P.A. 1977)), “Section 6 is equally applicable to the Supplemental Register.” See *Wella*, 565 F.2d 143, 196 USPQ 7 (finding mark comprising stylized lettering of BALSAM, with disclaimer of “BALSAM,” registrable on Supplemental Register for hair conditioner and hair shampoo); *In re Carolyn’s Candies, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 356, 360 (TTAB 1980) (“Section 6 of the Trademark Act of 1946, which provides for the disclaimer of ‘unregistrable matter’, does not limit the disclaimer practice to marks upon the Principal Register.”).

1213.03(c) Pictorial Representations of Descriptive Matter

An accurate pictorial representation of descriptive matter is equivalent to the written expression and, therefore, must be disclaimed pursuant to the same rules applicable to merely descriptive wording. *See Thistle Class Ass'n v. Douglass & McLeod, Inc.*, 198 USPQ 504, 511-12 (TTAB 1978) (finding thistle design synonymous to the word “thistle,” which is used in a descriptive sense to designate a class of sailboats).

A properly worded disclaimer would read as follows:

No claim is made to the exclusive right to use the design of _____ apart from the mark as shown.

No disclaimer of highly stylized pictorial representations of descriptive matter should be required because the design element creates a distinct commercial impression. *See In re LRC Prods. Ltd.*, 223 USPQ 1250, 1252 (TTAB 1984) (holding outline of two gloved hands arbitrary and fanciful), and cases cited therein.

Note: A map of the world or a depiction of a globe generally is not considered the pictorial equivalent of the terms “INTERNATIONAL,” “GLOBAL,” or “WORLDWIDE.”

1213.03(d) Entity Designations

Words or abbreviations in a trade name designating the legal character of an entity (e.g., Corporation, Corp., Co., Inc., Ltd., etc.) or the familial business structure of an entity (e.g., “& Sons” or “Bros.”) must be disclaimed because an entity designation has no source-indicating capacity. *See In re Piano Factory Grp., Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1522 (TTAB 2006) (holding VOSE & SONS primarily merely a surname); *In re Taylor & Francis [Publishers] Inc.*, 55 USPQ2d 1213, 1215 (TTAB 2000) (finding “PRESS,” as applied to a printing or publishing establishment, “is in the nature of a generic entity designation which is incapable of serving a source-indicating function”); *In re The Paint Prods. Co.*, 8 USPQ2d 1863, 1866 (TTAB 1988) (“PAINT PRODUCTS CO.’ is no more registrable for goods emanating from a company that sells paint products than it would be as a service mark for the retail paint store services offered by such a company”); *In re Packaging Specialists, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 917, 919 (TTAB 1984) (“the element ‘INC.’ [in PACKAGING SPECIALISTS, INC.] being recognized, in trademark evaluation, to have no source indication or distinguishing capacity” (citing *In re E.I. Kane, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 1203 (TTAB 1984))). Further, such designations must also be disclaimed in marks seeking registration on the Principal Register under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register.

However, a disclaimer should not be required when the entity designation is used in an arbitrary manner and thus has trademark significance (e.g., THE LTD. or KIDS INCORPORATED for clothing or CHUCKLE BROS. for a comic strip). *See Nautilus Grp., Inc. v. ICON Health & Fitness, Inc.*, 372 F.3d 1330, 1340, 71 USPQ2d 1173, 1180 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (defining an arbitrary mark as “a known word used in an unexpected or uncommon way”); [TMEP §1209.01\(a\)](#). Likewise, a disclaimer is unnecessary when the entity designation is part of a unitary, registrable whole (e.g., “T-MarkeyInc.”). *See* [TMEP §§1213.05–1213.05\(h\)](#).

1213.04 Trade Names

Unregistrable components of trade names or company names shall be disclaimed pursuant to the same rules that apply generally to trademarks. *See In re Martin’s Famous Pastry Shoppe, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 364 (TTAB 1984), *aff’d on other grounds*, 748 F.2d 1565, 223 USPQ 1289 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (affirming requirement for disclaimer of PASTRY SHOPPE in application to register MARTIN’S FAMOUS PASTRY SHOPPE INC. and design for various baked goods).

1213.05 Unitary Marks

A mark or portion of a mark is considered “unitary” when it creates a commercial impression separate and apart from any unregistrable component. The test for unitariness inquires whether the elements of a mark are so integrated or merged together that they cannot be regarded as separable. *See In re EBS Data Processing*, 212 USPQ 964, 966 (TTAB 1981) ; *In re Kraft, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 571, 573 (TTAB 1983) . The inquiry focuses on “how the average purchaser would encounter the mark under normal marketing of such goods and also ... what the reaction of the average purchaser would be to this display of the mark.” *Dena Corp. v. Belvedere Int’l, Inc.*, 950 F.2d 1555, 1561, 21 USPQ2d 1047, 1052 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (quoting *In re Magic Muffler Serv., Inc.*, 184 USPQ 125, 126 (TTAB 1974)). The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has set forth the elements of a unitary mark:

A unitary mark has certain observable characteristics. Specifically, its elements are inseparable. In a unitary mark, these observable characteristics must combine to show that the mark has a distinct meaning of its own independent of the meaning of its constituent elements. In other words, a unitary mark must create a single and distinct commercial impression.

Dena Corp., 950 F.2d at 1561, 21 USPQ2d at 1052. If the matter that comprises the mark or relevant portion of the mark is unitary, no disclaimer of an element, whether descriptive, generic, or otherwise, is required.

The examining attorney must consider a number of factors in determining whether matter is part of a single or unitary mark: whether it is physically connected by lines or other design features; the relative location of the respective elements; and the meaning of the terminology as used on or in connection with the goods or services. *Dena Corp.*, 950 F.2d at 1561, 21 USPQ2d at 1052.

The examining attorney should exercise discretion in determining whether a mark or portion of a mark is unitary, in which case a disclaimer of a nondistinctive component must not be required. Some considerations that may factor into an assessment of whether wording in a mark or portion of a mark is unitary are discussed in [TMEP §§1213.05\(a\)–\(b\)\(iii\)](#). Each consideration may not apply in every case, and a phrase may be found to be unitary or to constitute a slogan even where none apply if, for some other reason, the whole is something more than the sum of its parts. Furthermore, if a mark that includes a registrable unitary phrase or slogan also has other unregistrable components that are separable, the latter must be disclaimed.

1213.05(a) Compound Word Marks

A compound word mark is comprised of two or more distinct words (or words and syllables) that are represented as one word (e.g., BOOKCHOICE, PROSHOT, MAXIMACHINE, and PULSAIR).

If a compound word mark consists of an unregistrable component and a registrable component combined into a single word, no disclaimer of the unregistrable component of the compound word will be required. *See In re EBS Data Processing, Inc.*, 212 USPQ 964, 966 (TTAB 1981) (finding that “[a] disclaimer of a descriptive portion of a composite mark is unnecessary . . . if the elements are so merged together that they cannot be regarded as separable elements . . . for example, . . . by combining two words or terms, one of which would be unregistrable by itself . . .”).

If a composite mark consists of a compound word combined with arbitrary matter, and the compound word is unregistrable, a disclaimer of the compound word may be required. The form of the disclaimer of the compound word – that is, whether the disclaimed portion of the mark appears as one compound word or as two or more distinct words – should be consistent with the evidence of descriptiveness. If the compound

word itself (with no spaces) is used descriptively, it should be disclaimed in that form. Otherwise, the disclaimed portion should appear as two or more distinct words, separated by spaces. See [TMEP §1213.08\(c\)](#) regarding disclaimer of misspelled words.

See [TMEP §807.12\(e\)](#) regarding drawings of compound word marks.

1213.05(a)(i) Telescoped Words

A telescoped mark is one that comprises two or more words that share letters (e.g., HAMERICAN, ORDERRECORDER, SUPERINSE, VITAMINSURANCE, and POLLENERGY). See [TMEP §807.12\(e\)](#) regarding drawings for telescoped marks.

A telescoped word is considered unitary. Therefore, no disclaimer of an individual portion of a telescoped word is required, regardless of whether the mark is shown in a standard character or special form drawing.

However, if a telescoped word is itself unregistrable, a disclaimer of the telescoped word may be required. See *In re Omaha Nat'l Corp.*, 819 F.2d 1117, 2 USPQ2d 1859 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (affirming refusal to register FIRSTIER and design for banking services in the absence of a disclaimer of “FIRST TIER,” in view of evidence that the term describes a class of banks). See [TMEP §1213.08\(c\)](#) regarding disclaimers of misspelled words, in general.

1213.05(a)(ii) Compound Words Formed with Hyphen or Other Punctuation

When a compound word is formed by hyphenating two words or terms, one of which would be unregistrable alone, no disclaimer is necessary. “*X*” *Labs., Inc. v. Odorite Sanitation Serv. of Balt., Inc.*, 106 USPQ 327, 329 (Comm’r Pats. 1955) (holding requirement for a disclaimer of “TIRE” unnecessary in application to register TIRE-X for a tire cleaner).

Word marks consisting of two terms joined by an asterisk (e.g., RIB*TYPE), a slash (e.g., RIB/TYPE) or a raised period (e.g., RIB°TYPE) are analogous to hyphenated words. Therefore, no disclaimer of portions of marks formed by asterisks, slashes, or raised periods is necessary.

If a hyphenated term comprising part of a mark is unregistrable, then a disclaimer of the hyphenated term may be required. See [TMEP §1209.03\(d\)](#) regarding determinations of whether a composite comprising two descriptive terms is itself descriptive. In this situation, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the words in the correct spelling.

Example 1: If the mark includes the term SOFT-TOYS for stuffed animals, the applicant must disclaim the two separate words “SOFT TOYS” apart from the mark as shown.

Example 2: If the mark includes the term OVER-COAT for winter coats, the applicant must disclaim the compound word “OVERCOAT,” because this is how the term is commonly spelled.

1213.05(b) Unitary Phrases

A phrase is “a group of words that are used together in a fixed expression,” “two or more words in sequence that form a syntactic unit that is less than a complete sentence,” and “a sequence of two or more words arranged in a grammatical construction and acting as a unit in a sentence.” MacmillanDictionary.com, search of “phrase,” <http://www.macmillandictionary.com/dictionary/american/phrase> (Jan. 31, 2012); *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language* 1324 (4th ed. 2006); *Random House Webster’s*

Unabridged Dictionary 1460 (2nd ed. 2001). Acting as a “single idea” or a “syntactical unit,” however, does not necessarily mean that a phrase is “unitary” in the trademark sense. A phrase qualifies as unitary in the trademark sense only if the whole is something more than the sum of its parts. *Dena Corp. v. Belvedere Int’l, Inc.*, 950 F.2d 1555, 1561, 21 USPQ2d 1047, 1052 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (finding EUROPEAN FORMULA and design for cosmetic products not unitary since the “elements are not so merged together that they cannot be regarded as separate” and the proximity of the words to the design feature “does not endow the whole with a single, integrated, and distinct commercial impression”).

Even where it includes an otherwise unregistrable component, a unitary phrase as a whole will have “some degree of ingenuity in its phraseology as used in connection with the goods; or [say] something a little different from what might be expected to be said about the product; or [say] an expected thing in an unexpected way.” *Ex parte Mooresville Mills, Inc.*, 102 USPQ 440, 441 (Comm’r Pats. 1954) (holding FROM FIBER TO FABRIC FOR THE STYLE CONSCIOUS MILLIONS for fabrics capable of registration on the Supplemental Register).

Phrases must be analyzed on a case-by-case basis to determine whether their meaning and commercial impression indicate an inseparable whole. As noted above, a unitary phrase derives its meaning when viewed as a whole, with the combination of the components having a distinct commercial impression that is independent of the constituent elements. *Dena Corp.*, 950 F.2d at 1561, 21 USPQ2d at 1052 (noting that the proximity of the words EUROPEAN FORMULA to the design feature “does not endow the whole with a single, integrated, and distinct commercial impression”). In some cases, in addition to the mark itself, the specific arrangement and placement of all the elements of the phrase and the manner of use and presentation on the specimen, on applicant’s website, in promotional materials, and in connection with other goods or services may all demonstrate how the phrase is presented to and perceived by consumers.

Some considerations for determining whether a phrase that comprises a mark or part of a mark is unitary are set forth below.

1213.05(b)(i) Slogans

A slogan is a type of phrase and is defined as “a brief attention-getting phrase used in advertising or promotion” and “a catch phrase used to advertise a product.” Merriam-Webster.com, search of “slogan,” <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/slogan> (Jan. 31, 2012); *Webster’s New World College Dictionary* (4th ed. 2010). A registrable slogan is one that is used in a trademark sense and functions as a trademark or service mark on the Principal or Supplemental Register, including the Principal Register under §2(f). *Roux Labs., Inc. v. Clairol Inc.*, 427 F.2d 823, 166 USPQ 34 (C.C.P.A. 1970) (holding that the mark HAIR COLOR SO NATURAL ONLY HER HAIRDRESSER KNOWS FOR SURE for hair tinting, dyeing, coloring preparations had become distinctive of the goods and was registrable); *In re The Hallicrafters Co.*, 153 USPQ 376 (TTAB 1967) (holding QUALITY THROUGH CRAFTSMANSHIP registrable for radio receivers and transmitters, power supplies, and antennae). Slogans, by their attention-getting nature, are treated as unitary matter and must not be broken up for purposes of requiring a disclaimer.

However, if a mark consists entirely of a slogan that is generic, merely descriptive, merely informational, or that is otherwise not being used as a mark, registration must be refused. *See In re Carvel Corp.*, 223 USPQ 65 (TTAB 1984) (holding AMERICA’S FRESHEST ICE CREAM for flavored ices, ice cream, etc., incapable of distinguishing applicant’s goods and unregistrable on the Supplemental Register); *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ 76 (TTAB 1984) (holding WHY PAY MORE! for supermarket services to be an unregistrable common commercial phrase); *see* [TMEP 1213.05\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

If an unregistrable slogan is a component of a mark with registrable matter, the examining attorney must require that the slogan be disclaimed.

1213.05(b)(ii) Grammar and Punctuation

Grammatical structure and punctuation may play a part in the analysis of whether a phrase or slogan would be viewed as unitary. Such considerations serve as guidelines rather than dispositive factors and the weight to be given each depends upon the overall meaning and commercial impression of the mark.

1213.05(b)(ii)(A) Verbs

Verbs indicate “the performance or occurrence of an action or the existence of a condition or a state of being.” The Chicago Manual of Style ¶ 5.95 (16th ed. 2010). The presence of a verb may indicate that a mark or portion of a mark is a unitary phrase or slogan by linking a subject and an object, or by referring to something that is ongoing, thereby creating continuity of thought or expression. *See id.* ¶ 5.96.

Example 1: TIP YOUR HAT for “hats”

When linked with the phrase YOUR HAT, the verb TIP renders the mark as a unitary phrase that creates the commercial impression of touching or raising a hat as a greeting or polite gesture. No disclaimer of HAT is required.

Example 2: TRANSFORMING STATE GOVERNMENT for “providing information in the field of state governments”

The verb TRANSFORMING indicates an ongoing activity being performed on STATE GOVERNMENT, thereby unifying the terms so that they function as a unit. No disclaimer of STATE GOVERNMENT is required.

Some additional examples of phrases in which the verb renders the phrase unitary are:

FILING TAXES SO YOU DON’T HAVE TO for “tax preparation”

BOATS ARE FUN for “boats”

TAKE THIS MEDICINE for “cough syrup”

See [TMEP §1213.05\(b\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#) for examples in which the combination of a verb and a preposition link the wording to create a unitary phrase.

1213.05(b)(ii)(B) Prepositional Phrases

Prepositions are words or phrases that link a grammatical object—such as a noun, pronoun, verb, adjective, or phrase—to another word to indicate the relationship between them. *See* The Chicago Manual of Style ¶ 5.169 (16th ed. 2010). For instance, the relationship could be one of space, location, time, cause, means, or possession. *See id.* ¶ 5.174. Examples of prepositions include *above, at, before, between, by, for, from, in, into, of, on, since, through, to, toward, until, and with*. *See id.* ¶ 5.170. A prepositional phrase is the combination of the “preposition, its object, and any words that modify the object,” such as “over the hill,” “in the sports car,” or “near her.” *See id.* ¶ 5.173.

Wording in a mark that comprises a prepositional phrase is generally connected or unified by the preposition(s) in such a way that the elements would not be regarded as separable. In addition, marks comprised of prepositional phrases often have the commercial impression of a catch phrase or slogan. In some instances, however, marks contain distinctive matter followed by unitary prepositional phrases that are informational or descriptive, and these prepositional phrases are separable from the rest of the mark and must be disclaimed. Common examples include “of” followed by a geographic place name (e.g., “of Atlanta”) and “for” followed by a consumer designation (e.g., “for children”).

Example 1: MANGOES FOR THE EARTH for “fresh mangoes”

The preposition FOR joins THE EARTH with MANGOES, indicating a relationship between the wording. MANGOES is not separable because the prepositional phrase modifying it brings all the wording in the mark together to convey something more than the individual components. No disclaimer of MANGOES is required.

Example 2: A DAY OF HOPE FOR HEART DISEASE for “conducting workshops relating to heart disease”

The prepositions OF and FOR create two prepositional phrases joined as a unit that could be viewed as a catch phrase. No disclaimer of HEART DISEASE is required.

Example 3: ESTEE LAUDER FOR MEN for “cologne”

The descriptive prepositional phrase FOR MEN appears separable from the rest of the mark and does not create a distinct meaning independent of the meaning of the separate elements. Disclaimer of FOR MEN is required.

Some additional examples of phrases in which the preposition renders the phrase unitary are:

TALES OF THE COCKTAIL for “conducting seminars in mixology”

MENTORS FOR COMPLETE TEACHING for “remedial tutoring program for children in the areas mathematics and science”

CHECK UP FROM THE NECK UP for “medical services”

LANGUAGE OF LOLLIPOPS for “candy”

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY for “newsletters in the field of military science”

A DIVISION OF XYZ INDUSTRIES for “construction of buildings”

In some cases, the combination of a verb and a preposition link the wording to create a unitary phrase. For example:

GET MORE FROM ENERGY for “providing nondownloadable software for computing energy savings”

CHANGING THE WORLD OF SUSHI for “restaurant services”

WOMEN WHO RUN FROM COMPUTERS for “computer education training using multisensoral methods, group process and drama to motivate those with computer anxiety or fear”

1213.05(b)(ii)(C) Punctuation

The use of punctuation, such as a question mark, exclamation point, colon, dash, or period, as well as the meaning of the punctuation itself, may be a factor weighing either in favor of or against a mark or a portion of a mark being a unitary phrase or slogan. Note, however, that the presence of punctuation in a mark comprising a slogan or phrase should not be confused with the significance of punctuation in a mark containing compound words that are formed using punctuation. See [TMEP §1213.05\(a\)\(ii\)](#). Punctuation may either unite or separate all or some of the words in the mark. Where punctuation unites all the words, the mark or phrase as a whole is likely unitary. Where punctuation separates some of the words, however, the result

likely indicates a mark or phrase that is not unitary, requiring disclaimer or refusal of the unregistrable matter. Therefore, the punctuation in the mark must be considered in connection with an assessment of the specific arrangement of the words and the overall meaning and commercial impression of the slogan or phrase.

Example 1: CREATIVE NAILS? for “nail polish”

A question mark can be "used to indicate a direct question" or "express surprise, disbelief, or uncertainty." The Chicago Manual of Style ¶ 6.66 (16th ed. 2010). Here, the question mark at the end of the phrase joins the terms so that they function as a unit, thereby changing the commercial impression. No disclaimer of NAILS is required.

Example 2: GO! PUZZLE for “computer games software”

An exclamation point can be used to indicate “an outcry or an emphatic or ironic comment.” *Id.* ¶ 6.71. It is usually placed at the end of a thought and indicates the conclusion of that thought. Here, the exclamation point is in the middle of the mark and physically separates GO and PUZZLE. The exclamation point also conceptually separates GO from PUZZLE because it gives GO a commanding and urgent connotation not applied to PUZZLE. Since PUZZLE is outside of the exclamatory statement and is descriptive for the goods, it is not united with GO. Disclaimer of PUZZLE is required.

Example 3: COMFY. COZY. COTTON for “bed sheets and blankets”

In this example, the period after each term physically and conceptually separates the terms such that each stands alone. Therefore, the wording does not comprise a unitary mark and a disclaimer of COTTON is required.

Example 4: NAA – NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ACCOUNTANTS for “association services, namely, promoting the interests of accountants”

Here, the punctuation physically and conceptually separates the wording in the mark. Moreover, the phrase NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ACCOUNTANTS is descriptive and must be disclaimed.

Example 5: BONDS – THE FUTURE OF INVESTING for “financial planning”

The punctuation physically and conceptually separates the wording in the mark and a disclaimer of BONDS is required. Note, however, that THE FUTURE OF INVESTING is a unitary phrase, avoiding a disclaimer of INVESTING.

In some cases, the use of punctuation in combination with a verb and/or preposition may combine to create a unitary phrase or a mark with a distinct meaning independent of the meaning of the separate elements, as shown below:

HAVE YOU HAD YOUR MEDS TODAY? for “prescription pills for diabetics”

PAPER FOR YOUR OFFICE. TO YOUR OFFICE. for “retail store services featuring office products”

WHERE SNACKS LOVE TO DIP! for “dips”

GO FOR GOLD! for “gold jewelry”

1213.05(b)(ii)(D) Possessives

Generally, the use of a possessive form of a word in a mark does not, by itself, merge the wording so as to create the commercial impression of a unitary phrase or slogan. However, if the mark contains the possessive form of a word as well as one of the considerations discussed above, this combination of the elements may result in a slogan or unitary phrase.

Example 1: BILL'S CARPETS for "retail carpet stores"

The possessive form of BILL'S alone is not sufficient to unite BILL'S with CARPETS such that the whole is more than the sum of its parts. Disclaimer of CARPETS is required.

Example 2: BILL'S IS CARPETS for "retail carpet stores"

The possessive BILL'S does not, by itself, unite BILL'S with CARPETS. However, the presence of the verb IS unites all the words to convey a complete thought that functions as a unit and expresses a fanciful state of being. No disclaimer of CARPETS is required.

Some other examples of wording in which the possessive does not create a unitary phrase and disclaimer of the descriptive wording is required are:

THE CHILDREN'S PLACE for "clothing"; "backpacks"; "retail stores" (disclaimer of CHILDREN's required)

BARB'S BREAD BAKERY, INC. for "bakery services" (disclaimer of BREAD BAKERY, INC. required)

HUBER'S PREMIUM WORKWEAR for "clothing" (disclaimer of PREMIUM WORKWEAR required)

1213.05(b)(iii) Other Considerations

Even if none of the considerations discussed above apply, there may be something about the components of the mark that joins them together and transforms them into a unitary phrase or slogan. If other considerations, such as word pattern, double entendre, and incongruity (see [TMEP §§1213.05\(c\)-1213.05\(e\)](#)), or the context, rhetorical structure, or some other aspect of the mark creates a distinct meaning or commercial impression that is more than its constituent parts, the phrase should be deemed unitary for purposes of a disclaimer. For example, a descriptive word can be combined with nondescriptive wording in such a way that the descriptive significance of the word in relation to the goods is lost and the combination functions as a unit. This happens when the combination itself has a new meaning.

Example 1: BLACK MAGIC for "accessories for skateboards and snowboards, namely grip tape"

The wording "Black Magic" has a distinct meaning of its own as a whole. The word BLACK is not intended to have color significance in relation to the goods, and should not be disclaimed even if the mark is applied to goods that are black in color.

Example 2: NOT YOUR ORDINARY DINER for "restaurant services"

The combination formed by the familiar phrase NOT YOUR ORDINARY followed by a descriptive or generic term creates a unitary phrase. No disclaimer of DINER is required.

Example 3: CORPORATE FUEL for "business management and advisory services"

Here, the descriptive term CORPORATE and the arbitrary word FUEL combine to create a unitary phrase that is a play on actual types of fuel, like jet fuel or diesel fuel. No disclaimer of CORPORATE is required.

Note, however, that in the following examples, nothing about the components of the marks joins them together and transforms them into unitary phrases.

Example 4: SWEETER PEARS REGENCY ORCHARD for “pears”

The mark does not contain a verb, preposition, or punctuation. Except for REGENCY, all the terms are descriptive and inform about the goods, their nature, and the type of place where they are grown. That the arbitrary term REGENCY is in the middle does not connect all the words to create a unitary phrase. Therefore, SWEETER PEARS and ORCHARD must be disclaimed.

Example 5: AAMCO COMPLETE CAR CARE EXPERTS for “motor vehicle maintenance and repair services”

The arbitrary term AAMCO is not connected to the rest of the terms, since there is no verb, preposition, or punctuation. The wording COMPLETE CAR CARE EXPERTS, which is descriptive and a separable element from AAMCO, must be disclaimed.

1213.05(b)(iv) Unregistrable Unitary Phrases or Slogans

Although the determination that a mark or portion of a mark is unitary may provide an exception to the disclaimer requirement, when an entire unitary phrase or slogan is generic, descriptive, or merely informational, it remains unregistrable. To illustrate, “common laudatory phrases or statements that would ordinarily be used in business or in the particular trade or industry” are unregistrable despite the fact that they may be unitary phrases or slogans. *See In re Boston Beer Co. L.P.*, 198 F.3d 1370, 53 USPQ2d 1056 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (THE BEST BEER IN AMERICA for beer and ale); *In re Remington Prods. Inc.*, 3 USPQ2d 1714 (TTAB 1987) (PROUDLY MADE IN USA for electric shavers); *In re Carvel Corp.*, 223 USPQ 65 (TTAB 1984) (AMERICA’S FRESHEST ICE CREAM for flavored ices); *In re Tilcon Warren, Inc.*, 221 USPQ 86 (TTAB 1984) (WATCH THAT CHILD for construction material); *see also* [TMEP §§1209.03\(s\)](#) and [1202.04](#). Therefore, unless a unitary phrase or slogan otherwise meets all requirements for registrability, it must be disclaimed or refused registration, as appropriate.

1213.05(c) Double Entendre

A “double entendre” is a word or expression capable of more than one interpretation. For trademark purposes, a “double entendre” is an expression that has a double connotation or significance *as applied to the goods or services*. The mark that comprises the “double entendre” will not be refused registration as merely descriptive if one of its meanings is not merely descriptive in relation to the goods or services.

A true “double entendre” is unitary by definition. An expression that is a “double entendre” should not be broken up for purposes of requiring a disclaimer. *See In re Kraft, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 571, 573 (TTAB 1983), where the Board found inappropriate a requirement for a disclaimer of “LIGHT” apart from the mark “LIGHT N’ LIVELY” for reduced calorie mayonnaise, stating as follows:

The mark “LIGHT N’ LIVELY” as a whole has a suggestive significance which is distinctly different from the merely descriptive significance of the term “LIGHT” per se. That is, the merely descriptive significance of the term “LIGHT” is lost in the mark as a whole. Moreover, the expression as a whole has an alliterative lilting cadence which encourages persons encountering it to perceive it as a whole.

See also *In re Symbra'ette, Inc.*, 189 USPQ 448 (TTAB 1975) (holding SHEER ELEGANCE for panty hose to be a registrable unitary expression; thus, no disclaimer of “SHEER” considered necessary).

The multiple interpretations that make an expression a “double entendre” must be associations that the public would make fairly readily, and *must be readily apparent from the mark itself*. See *In re RiseSmart Inc.*, 104 USPQ2d 1931, 1934 (TTAB 2012) (finding that TALENT ASSURANCE does not present a double entendre such that “the merely descriptive significance of the term [TALENT] is lost in the mark as a whole”); *In re The Place, Inc.*, 76 USPQ2d 1467, 1470 (TTAB 2005) (holding THE GREATEST BAR laudatory and merely descriptive of restaurant and bar services; the Board stating that “[i]f the alleged second meaning of the mark is apparent to purchasers only after they view the mark in the context of the applicant’s trade dress, advertising materials or other matter separate from the mark itself, then the mark is not a double entendre”); *In re Wells Fargo & Co.*, 231 USPQ 95, 99 (TTAB 1986) (holding EXPRESSERVICE merely descriptive for banking services, despite applicant’s argument that the term also connotes the Pony Express, the Board finding that, in the relevant context, the public would not make that association). See also *In re Ethnic Home Lifestyles Corp.*, 70 USPQ2d 1156, 1158 (TTAB 2003) (holding ETHNIC ACCENTS merely descriptive of “entertainment in the nature of television programs in the field of home décor,” because the meaning in the context of the services is home furnishings or decorations which reflect or evoke particular ethnic traditions or themes, which identifies a significant feature of applicant’s programs; viewers of applicant’s programs deemed unlikely to discern a double entendre referring to a person who speaks with a foreign accent).

If all meanings of a “double entendre” are merely descriptive in relation to the goods, then the mark comprising the “double entendre” must be refused registration as merely descriptive.

The following cases illustrate situations where marks were considered to be “double entendres” and, therefore, registrable unitary marks: *In re Colonial Stores Inc.*, 394 F.2d 549, 157 USPQ 382 (C.C.P.A. 1968) (SUGAR & SPICE for bakery products); *In re Tea and Sympathy, Inc.*, 88 USPQ2d 1062 (TTAB 2008) (holding THE PHARMACY registrable for retail store services featuring natural herbs and organic products and related health and information services relating to dietary supplements and nutrition); *In re Simmons Co.*, 189 USPQ 352 (TTAB 1976) (THE HARD LINE for mattresses and bed springs); *In re Del. Punch Co.*, 186 USPQ 63 (TTAB 1975) (THE SOFT PUNCH for noncarbonated soft drink); *In re National Tea Co.*, 144 USPQ 286 (TTAB 1965) (NO BONES ABOUT IT for fresh pre-cooked ham).

1213.05(d) Incongruity

If two or more terms are combined in a mark to create an incongruity (e.g., URBAN SAFARI, MR. MICROWAVE, and DR. GRAMMAR), the mark is unitary and no disclaimer of nondistinctive individual elements is necessary. See [TMEP §1209.01\(a\)](#) regarding incongruity.

1213.05(e) Sound Patterns

Alliterative or repeated wording does not in itself make a mark unitary. *In re Ginc UK Ltd.*, 90 USPQ2d 1472, 1477 (TTAB 2007) (finding the rhyming quality of the words ZOGGS TOGGS “does not infuse TOGGS with any separate and distinct meaning apart from its generic meaning”); *In re Lean Line, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 781, 782 (TTAB 1986) (holding LEAN LINE *not* unitary; “there is nothing in the record to suggest that the mere fact that both words which form the mark begin with the letter ‘L’ would cause purchasers to miss the merely descriptive significance of the term ‘LEAN’ or consider the entire mark to be a unitary expression.”)

In rare cases, a rhyming pattern, alliteration, or some other use of sound that creates a distinctive impression may contribute to a finding that the mark is regarded as unitary and individual elements should not be disclaimed. *See In re Kraft, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 571, 573 (TTAB 1983) (finding LIGHT N' LIVELY to be a unitary term not subject to disclaimer, because the mark as a whole "has a suggestive significance which is distinctly different from the merely descriptive significance of the term 'LIGHT' per se" and that "the merely descriptive significance of the term 'LIGHT' is lost in the mark as a whole."). Other evidence, such as registrations of the mark for related goods and consumer recognition of the mark as a unitary expression, may also contribute to a finding that the mark is unitary. *Id.*

1213.05(f) Display of Mark

The visual presentation of a mark may be such that the words and/or designs form a unitary whole. In such a case, disclaimer of individual nondistinctive elements is unnecessary. *See, e.g., In re Texsun Tire & Battery Stores, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 227, 229 (TTAB 1986) (“[T]he portion of the outline of the map of Texas encircled as it is with the representation of a tire and surrounded by a rectangular border results in a unitary composite mark which is unique and fanciful.”); *cf. In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 78 USPQ2d 1395 (Fed. Cir. 2006) (holding trade dress configuration of product design consisting of a label with the words “FLASH DARE!” in a V-shaped background, and cut-out areas located on each side of the label, with the cut-out areas consisting of a hole in a garment and a flap attached to the garment with a closure device not to be unitary where applicant owned separate registrations for some of the elements and in view of the separate locations of the words and design elements).

1213.05(g) Marks with Design Elements Replacing Letters

Generally, when a design element replaces one or more letters (or a portion of a letter or letters) in a word that is merely descriptive, generic, or geographically descriptive, this combination of word and design element does not create a “unitary mark” if the word remains recognizable. Accordingly, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the merely descriptive, generic, or geographically descriptive word in such cases. *See In re Clutter Control, Inc.*, 231 USPQ 588, 590 (TTAB 1986) .

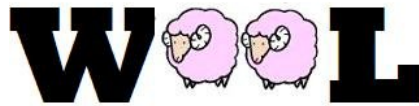
If the wording to be disclaimed is otherwise registrable (i.e., not generic), applicant may submit a claim of acquired distinctiveness as to that portion of the mark under Trademark Act §2(f). The examining attorney must always separately determine whether an applicant has adequately shown acquired distinctiveness. *See In re Venturi, Inc.*, 197 USPQ 714, 717 (TTAB 1977) .

The examining attorney must also assess whether the proposed mark might be unitary for other reasons (such as a compound or telescoped mark).

1213.05(g)(i) Marks with a Distinctive Design Replacing a Letter in Descriptive or Generic Wording

Marks with a distinctive design that replaces a letter or part of a letter are registrable on the Principal Register with a disclaimer of the merely descriptive, generic, or primarily geographically descriptive wording. For example:

Jelly Bean




Principal Register – Disclaimer of “WOOL”

Flapjack, Inc.

A  ***imal Food***

Principal Register – Disclaimer of “INC.” and “ANIMAL FOOD”

NUMBSKULL
CL  THING
CO.

Principal Register – Disclaimer of “CLOTHING CO.”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “PARIS”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “PONY”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “FISH”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “KIDS”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “NUTRITION”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “TOWELS”



Principal Register – Disclaimer of “DOGGIE”

**1213.05(g)(ii) Marks with Merely Descriptive or Primarily Geographically Descriptive Designs
Replacing Letters within Descriptive or Primarily Geographically Descriptive Wording**

If the design that replaces a letter within descriptive or primarily geographically descriptive wording is itself merely descriptive or primarily geographically descriptive, or is otherwise nondistinctive, the examining attorney must require the applicant to amend to the Supplemental Register or seek registration on the Principal Register under §2(f) and to disclaim any generic wording. For example:

*NATIONAL BANKERS
ASSOCIATION*

Disclaim “BANKERS ASSOCIATION” on Principal Register under §2(f) or on Supplemental Register

C  **CONNECTICUT**
Builders Association

Disclaim “BUILDERS ASSOCIATION” on Principal Register under §2(f) or on Supplemental Register

**National
Check
Cashers**

Disclaim “CHECK CASHERS” on Principal Register under §2(f) or on Supplemental Register

1213.05(g)(iii) Marks with Accurate Pictorial Representations Replacing Letters in Merely Descriptive and Primarily Geographically Descriptive Marks

If the mark is otherwise merely descriptive or primarily geographically descriptive, and the design replacing a letter is an accurate pictorial representation of generic, merely descriptive, or geographically descriptive matter, the examining attorney must require the applicant to amend to the Supplemental Register or seek registration on the Principal Register under Trademark Act §2(f). The applicant must disclaim any generic wording or any accurate pictorial representation of generic matter. For example:

BEST SOCCER BALLS

Disclaim “SOCCER BALLS” and the pictorial representation of the soccer ball on the Principal Register under §2(f) or on the Supplemental Register

1213.05(g)(iv) Unitary Marks with Design Elements Replacing Letters in Descriptive or Generic Wording

If literal and design elements in a mark are so merged together that they cannot be divided or regarded as separable elements, these elements may be considered unitary. For example, where the design element replacing a letter is merely one part of a larger design, the mark may be unitary, and no disclaimer of the descriptive or generic wording is required:



1213.05(h) Unitary Marks: Case References

In the following cases, marks were considered unitary: *B. Kuppenheimer & Co., v. Kayser-Roth Corp.*, 326 F.2d 820, 822, 140 USPQ 262, 263 (C.C.P.A. 1964) (holding that KUPPENHEIMER and SUP-PANTS were combined so that they shared the double “P,” making “an indivisible symbol rather than two divisible words”); *In re Kraft, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 571, 573 (TTAB 1983) (finding that purchasers would regard LIGHT N’LIVELY as a unitary mark); *In re Hampshire-Designers, Inc.*, 199 USPQ 383, 384 (TTAB 1978) (holding DESIGNERS PLUS+ for sweaters unitary); *In re J.R. Carlson Labs., Inc.*, 183 USPQ 509, 511 (TTAB 1974) (holding E GEM unitary for bath oil containing vitamin E).

In the following cases, marks were found not to be unitary: *In re Slokevage*, 441 F.3d 957, 963 78 USPQ2d 1395, 1400 (Fed. Cir. 2006) (holding not unitary trade dress mark for clothing consisting of a label with the words “FLASH DARE!” in a V-shaped background and cut-out areas located on each side of the label); *Dena Corp.*, 950 F.2d at 1561, 21 USPQ2d at 1052 (holding EUROPEAN FORMULA above a circular design on a dark square or background not unitary); *In re Ginc UK Ltd.*, 90 USPQ2d 1472, 1476 (TTAB 2007) (holding ZOGGS TOGGS for clothing not unitary and affirming requirement for disclaimer of “TOGGS”); *In re Brown-Forman Corp.*, 81 USPQ2d 1284, 1288 (TTAB 2006) (holding GALA ROUGE for wine not unitary and affirming requirement for disclaimer of “ROUGE”); *In re Lean Line, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 781 (TTAB 1986) (holding LEAN LINE for low calorie foods not unitary; requirement for disclaimer of “LEAN” held proper); *In re IBP, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 303 (TTAB 1985) (holding IBP SELECT TRIM for pork not unitary; refusal of registration in the absence of a disclaimer of “SELECT TRIM” affirmed); *In re Uniroyal, Inc.*, 215 USPQ 716 (TTAB 1982) (holding UNIROYAL STEEL/GLAS for vehicle tires not unitary; requirement for disclaimer of “STEEL/GLAS” deemed appropriate); *In re EBS Data Processing*, 212 USPQ at 966 (TTAB 1981) (holding PHACTS POCKET PROFILE, for personal medication history summary and record forms, not unitary; refusal to register in the absence of a disclaimer of “POCKET PROFILE” affirmed. “A disclaimer of a descriptive portion of a composite mark is unnecessary only where the form or degree of integration of that element in the composite makes it obvious that no claim other than of the composite would be involved. That is, if the elements are so merged together that they cannot be regarded as separable elements, the mark is a single unitary mark and not a composite mark and no disclaimer is necessary.”); *In re Nat’l Presto Indus., Inc.*, 197 USPQ 188 (TTAB 1977) (holding PRESTO BURGER for electrical cooking utensils not unitary; requirement for disclaimer of “BURGER” affirmed).

1213.06 Entire Mark May Not Be Disclaimed

An entire mark may not be disclaimed. If a mark is not registrable as a whole, a disclaimer will not make it registrable. There must be something in the combination of elements in the mark, or something of sufficient substance or distinctiveness over and above the matter being disclaimed, that would make the composite registrable. See *In re Sadoru Group, Ltd.*, 105 USPQ2d 1484 (TTAB 2012) (finding the stylization of SADORU does not create a separate and inherently distinctive commercial impression apart from the word itself); *In re Carlson*, 91 USPQ2d 1198, 1203 (TTAB 2009); *In re Anchor Hocking Corp.*, 223 USPQ 85, 86 (TTAB 1984) (citing *In re Carolyn’s Candies, Inc.*, 206 USPQ 356, 360 (TTAB 1980)); *Ex parte Ste. Pierre Smirnoff Fls, Inc.*, 102 USPQ 415, 416 (Comm’r Pats. 1954). This includes marks that are comprised entirely of generic wording, and either the entire mark or some of the terms are the phonetic equivalent of the generic wording. Such marks cannot be disclaimed, even in the proper spelling, and approved for registration on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1209.01\(c\)](#).

In *Dena Corp. v. Belvedere Int’l Inc.*, 950 F.2d 1555, 1560, 21 USPQ2d 1047, 1051 (Fed. Cir. 1991), the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit stated as follows:

[U]nder traditional disclaimer practice, an applicant could not disclaim all elements of a composite mark. Section 1056(a) codified this policy. A mark which must be entirely disclaimed has no ‘unregistrable component,’ but is instead entirely nonregistrable. In other words, a mark which must be entirely disclaimed has no ‘otherwise registrable’ parts. Therefore, such marks do not qualify as composite marks for which the Commissioner may require a disclaimer.

1213.07 Removal Rather Than Disclaimer

When it is not clear that matter forms part of a mark, the examining attorney must consider whether it is appropriate for the applicant to amend the drawing of the mark to remove the matter, rather than to disclaim it. See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#) regarding deletion of matter from the mark on a drawing. An applicant may not amend the drawing if the amendment would constitute a material alteration of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#).

There are circumstances under which the applicant may omit or remove matter from the mark shown in the drawing, if the overall commercial impression is not altered. See *Institut Nat’l Des Appellations D’Origine v. Vintners Int’l Co.*, 958 F.2d 1574, 1582, 22 USPQ2d 1190, 1197 (Fed. Cir. 1992); *In re Servel, Inc.*, 181 F.2d 192, 85 USPQ 257 (C.C.P.A. 1950). However, matter may not be omitted from the drawing if the omission would result in an incomplete representation of the mark, sometimes referred to as “mutilation.” See [TMEP §807.12\(d\)](#). In other words, the matter presented for registration must convey a single distinct commercial impression. If a mark is not unitary in this sense, it cannot be registered. See *Dena Corp. v. Belvedere Int’l Inc.*, 950 F.2d 1555, 1561, 21 USPQ2d 1047, 1052 (Fed. Cir. 1991).

1213.08 Form of Disclaimers

1213.08(a) Wording of Disclaimer

1213.08(a)(i) Standardized Printing Format for Disclaimer

Since November 9, 1982, disclaimers for marks published for opposition and those registered on the Supplemental Register are printed in a standardized form in the *Official Gazette*, regardless of the text submitted. Disclaimers are in the standardized format in certificates of registration on the Supplemental Register issued as of that date. Disclaimers are in the standardized format in certificates of registration on the Principal Register issued as of February 1, 1983. The disclaimed matter is taken from the disclaimer of record and inserted into the standardized disclaimer format for printing and Trademark database purposes. The standardized disclaimer text is as follows:

No claim is made to the exclusive right to use " _____ " apart from the mark as shown.

See 1022 OG 44 (Sept. 28, 1982). See also *In re Owatonna Tool Co.*, 231 USPQ 493, 495 (Comm’r Pats. 1983) (“[T]he use of the standardized form is solely for the purpose of printing and data base purposes, not for the limitation of registrant’s rights.”).

For the record only, examining attorneys will accept disclaimers with additional statements pertaining to reservation of common-law rights, although §6 of the Trademark Act of 1946 states that no disclaimer shall prejudice or affect the applicant’s or registrant’s rights then existing or thereafter arising in the disclaimed matter. Disclaimers with these additional statements can be entered by examiner’s amendment. The examining

attorney must inform the applicant or attorney who authorizes the amendment that the disclaimer will be printed in the standardized format.

Where non-adjacent components of a mark, or adjacent components that do not form a grammatically or otherwise unitary expression must be disclaimed, the following format is suggested:

No claim is made to the exclusive right to use " _____ " and " _____ " apart from the mark as shown.

While the “and” connector is preferred, the USPTO will also accept a statement that “no claim is made to the exclusive right to use " _____ " or " _____ " apart from the mark as shown.”

See [TMEP §1213.08\(b\)](#) regarding the disclaimer of unregistrable matter in its entirety.

1213.08(a)(ii) Unacceptable Wording for Disclaimer

Wording that claims matter, rather than disclaims it, is not acceptable. A disclaimer should be no more than a statement that identifies matter to which the applicant may not have exclusive rights apart from what is shown on the drawing.

Therefore, statements that the applicant “claims” certain matter in the association shown are not acceptable. The examining attorney must require correction of this wording and of variations that amount to the same thing. Likewise, a statement that the mark is “not claimed except in the association shown,” or similar wording, is not acceptable, and the examining attorney must require correction. See *Textron Inc. v. Pilling Chain Co.*, 175 USPQ 621, 621-22 (TTAB 1972), concerning an application which included the statement, “The mark is not to be claimed except in the setting presented.” The Board found this wording unacceptable, noting, “The alleged disclaimer filed by applicant is in such vague terms that it actually disclaims nothing.”

1213.08(a)(iii) Unacceptable Statements in Disclaimers

A statement that purports to limit a mark by excluding color(s) or other features that do not appear in the mark is not appropriate for inclusion in a disclaimer. The issue most often arises where there are possible infringement issues involving a particular color, the applicant’s mark does not claim any color, but the applicant attempts to “disclaim” the color from the application with a statement such as: “No claim is made to the exclusive right to use the color purple within or as part of the (design element) apart from the mark as shown.”

Although applicants may include such restrictive statements in the application record, they are not appropriate for the registration certificate. Accordingly, if an applicant inserts any such limiting statement in a disclaimer, the examining attorney must ensure that it is deleted from the Trademark database so that it will not be printed on the registration certificate.

1213.08(b) Disclaimer of Unregistrable Matter in Its Entirety

Unregistrable matter must be disclaimed in its entirety. For example, when requiring a disclaimer of terms that form a grammatically or otherwise unitary expression (e.g., “SHOE FACTORY, INC.”), the examining attorney must require that they be disclaimed in their entirety. See, e.g., *In re Med. Disposables Co.*, 25 USPQ2d 1801 (TTAB 1992) (finding MEDICAL DISPOSABLES to be a unitary expression that must be

disclaimed as a composite); *Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass'n v. Nat'l Hearing Aid Soc'y*, 224 USPQ 798, 805 n.3 (TTAB 1984) (finding “CERTIFIED HEARING AID AUDIOLOGIST” to be “a unitary expression that should be disclaimed in its entirety”); *In re Surelock Mfg. Co.*, 125 USPQ 23, 24 (TTAB 1960) (holding proposed disclaimer of “THE” and “RED” and “CUP” unacceptable to comply with requirement for disclaimer of “THE RED CUP;” the Board concluding, “A disclaimer of the individual components of the term ‘THE RED CUP,’ under the circumstances, is meaningless and improper”); *In re Wanstrath*, 7 USPQ2d 1412, 1413 (Comm’r Pats. 1987) (denying petitioner’s request to substitute separate disclaimers of “GLASS” and “TECHNOLOGY” for the disclaimer of “GLASS TECHNOLOGY” in its registration of GT GLASS TECHNOLOGY in stylized form, the Commissioner finding “GLASS TECHNOLOGY” to be a unitary expression and noting, “Disclaimers of individual components of complete descriptive phrases are improper.”).

However, separate disclaimers of adjacent components of a mark may be accepted where they do not form a grammatically or otherwise unitary expression, and each component retains its separate descriptive significance. *In re Grass GmbH*, 79 USPQ2d 1600 (TTAB 2006) (reversing requirement for unitary disclaimer of “SNAP ON 3000,” and accepting separate disclaimers of “SNAP ON” and “3000.”)

1213.08(c) Disclaimer of Misspelled Words

Marks often comprise words that may be characterized as “misspelled.” For example, marks may comprise terms that are “telescoped” (see [TMEP §1213.05\(a\)\(i\)](#)) or terms that are phonetic equivalents of particular words but spelled in a manner that varies from the ordinary spelling of such words.

If a mark comprises a word or words that are misspelled but nonetheless must be disclaimed, the examining attorney must require disclaimer of the word or words in the correct spelling. See *In re Omaha Nat’l Corp.*, 819 F.2d 1117, 1119, 2 USPQ2d 1859, 1861 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *In re Carlson*, 91 USPQ2d 1198, 1203 (TTAB 2009); *In re Newport Fastener Co.*, 5 USPQ2d 1064, 1067 n.4 (TTAB 1987). However, the entry of a disclaimer does not render registrable a mark that is otherwise unregistrable. For example, if a mark is comprised entirely of generic wording and some or all of the wording in the mark is the phonetic equivalent of the generic wording, the entire mark may not be disclaimed, even in the proper spelling, and approved for registration on the Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §1209.01\(c\)](#).

If the examining attorney has not required any disclaimer of misspelled wording because a disclaimer is not necessary under USPTO policy, the applicant may provide a disclaimer of the wording as spelled in the mark or in its correct spelling voluntarily. In such a case, the examining attorney must offer the applicant the opportunity to withdraw the disclaimer. If it is necessary to communicate with the applicant about another matter, the examining attorney must state in the Office action that the disclaimer appears to be unnecessary, and inquire as to whether the applicant wants to withdraw the disclaimer. If it is otherwise unnecessary to communicate with the applicant, the inquiry may be made by telephone or e-mail. If the applicant wants to delete the disclaimer, this may be done by examiner’s amendment. If the applicant does not respond promptly to the telephone or e-mail message (applicant should be given at least a week), the examining attorney must enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record. Again, the disclaimer does not render an otherwise unregistrable mark registrable. The examining attorney must consider the entire mark, including the disclaimed matter, to determine whether the entire mark is registrable.

1213.08(d) Disclaimer of Non-English Words

Non-English wording that comprises an unregistrable component of a mark is subject to disclaimer. *See Bausch & Lomb Optical Co. v. Overseas Finance & Trading Co.*, 112 USPQ 6, 8 (Comm'r Pats. 1956) (noting that “Kogaku,” the transliteration of the Japanese word for “optical,” was properly disclaimed).

If translated non-English wording must be disclaimed, the actual non-English wording must be disclaimed, not the English translation. The applicant must disclaim the wording that actually appears in the mark, not the translated version. For non-Latin characters, the following format is suggested:

No claim is made to the exclusive right to use the non-Latin characters that transliterate to “[specify Latin character transliteration]” apart from the mark as shown.

See [TMEP §§809–809.03](#) regarding translation and transliteration of non-English wording in marks.

1213.09 Mark of Another May Not Be Registered with Disclaimer

Normally, a mark that includes a mark registered by another person must be refused registration under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), based on likelihood of confusion. A refusal of registration under §2(d) may not be avoided by disclaiming the mark of another. *Cf. In re Franklin Press, Inc.*, 597 F.2d 270, 201 USPQ 662 (C.C.P.A. 1979) (permitting disclaimer of informational phrase indicating that applicant’s employees are represented by certain labor organizations). See [TMEP §1213.10](#) regarding disclaimer in relation to likelihood of confusion.

1213.10 Disclaimer in Relation to Likelihood of Confusion

A disclaimer does not remove the disclaimed matter from the mark. The mark must still be regarded as a whole, including the disclaimed matter, in evaluating similarity to other marks. *See In re Nat'l Data Corp.*, 753 F.2d 1056, 1059, 224 USPQ 749, 751 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *Specialty Brands, Inc. v. Coffee Bean Distribs., Inc.*, 748 F.2d 669, 672, 223 USPQ 1281, 1282 (Fed. Cir. 1984); *Giant Food, Inc. v. Nation's Foodservice, Inc.*, 710 F.2d 1565, 1570, 218 USPQ 390, 395 (Fed. Cir. 1983); *Schwarzkopf v. John H. Breck, Inc.*, 340 F.2d 978, 144 USPQ 433 (C.C.P.A. 1965); *In re MCI Commc'ns Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1534, 1538-39 (Comm'r Pats. 1991).

Typically, disclaimed matter will not be regarded as the dominant, or most significant, feature of a mark. However, since the Trademark Act permits an applicant to voluntarily disclaim registrable matter (*see* [TMEP §1213.01\(c\)](#)), disclaimed matter may be dominant or significant in some cases. As noted in *MCI Commc'ns Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d at 1539, “Examining Attorneys will continue to consider the question of likelihood of confusion, under Section 2(d) of the statute, in relation to the marks as a whole, including any voluntarily disclaimed matter.”

1213.11 Acquiring Rights in Disclaimed Matter

In *Estate of P.D. Beckwith, Inc. v. Comm'r of Pats.*, 252 U.S. 538, 545 (1920), the United States Supreme Court stated, regarding registration of a mark with a disclaimer, that “the registrant would be precluded by his disclaimer from setting up in the future any exclusive right to the disclaimed part of it.” Subsequently, that principle was applied literally; registrants were prohibited from asserting that disclaimed matter had

acquired secondary meaning. *See Shaler Co. v. Rite-Way Prods., Inc.*, 107 F.2d 82, 84, 43 USPQ 425, 427 (6th Cir. 1939).

The situation was changed by the Trademark Act of 1946, which provided that “disclaimer shall not prejudice or affect the applicant’s or owner’s rights then existing or thereafter arising in the disclaimed matter, nor shall such disclaimer prejudice or affect the applicant’s or owner’s rights of registration on another application of later date if the disclaimed matter has become distinctive of the applicant’s or owner’s goods or services.” [15 U.S.C. §1056](#) (1946), *amended by* [15 U.S.C. §1056\(b\)](#) (1962). In 1962, the statutory provision was amended to read, “No disclaimer ... shall prejudice or affect the applicant’s or registrant’s rights then existing or thereafter arising in the disclaimed matter, or his right of registration on another application if the disclaimed matter be or shall have become distinctive of his goods or services.” [15 U.S.C. §1056\(b\)](#).

It is now clear that, aside from generic matter, disclaimed matter is not forever barred from registration, and it can subsequently be considered for registration on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register. When an application is filed seeking registration of matter previously disclaimed, it must be examined in the same manner as other applications. *See Quaker Oil Corp. v. Quaker State Oil Ref. Corp.*, 161 USPQ 547, 549 (TTAB 1969), *aff’d*, 453 F.2d 1296, 172 USPQ 361 (C.C.P.A. 1972); *Victor Tool & Mach. Corp. v. Sun Control Awnings, Inc.*, 299 F. Supp. 868, 875-76, 162 USPQ 389, 394 (E.D. Mich. 1968), *aff’d*, 411 F.2d 792, 162 USPQ 387 (6th Cir. 1969).

Whether or not previously disclaimed matter has become eligible for registration depends on the circumstances and the evidence adduced in the examination process. *See Roux Distrib. Co. v. Duart Mfg. Co.*, 114 USPQ 511, 512 (Comm’r Pats. 1957); *Helena Rubinstein, Inc. v. Ladd*, 219 F. Supp. 259, 260, 138 USPQ 106, 107 (D.D.C. 1963), *aff’d*, 141 USPQ 623 (D.C. Cir. 1964).

1214 “Phantom” Elements in Marks

In some applications, the applicant seeks to register a “phantom” element (i.e., a word, alpha-numeric designation, or other component that is subject to change) as part of a mark. The applicant represents the changeable or “phantom” element by inserting a blank, or by using dots, dashes, underlining, or a designation such as “XXXX.”

Examples include marks incorporating a date (usually a year), a geographic location, or a model number that is subject to change. While these are some of the most common examples of the types of elements involved, there are many variations.

1214.01 Single Application May Seek Registration of Only One Mark

If an application seeks registration of a mark with a significant changeable or “phantom” element, the examining attorney must consider whether the element encompasses so many potential combinations that the drawing would not give adequate constructive notice to third parties as to the nature of the mark and a thorough and effective search for conflicting marks is not possible. If so, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#), on the ground that the application seeks registration of more than one mark. *See In re Int’l Flavors & Fragrances Inc.*, 183 F.3d 1361, 51 USPQ2d 1513 (Fed. Cir. 1999); *In re Primo Water Corp.*, 87 USPQ2d 1376 (TTAB 2008); *Cineplex Odeon Corp. v. Fred Wehrenberg Circuit of Theatres Inc.*, 56 USPQ2d 1538 (TTAB 2000); *see also* [TMEP §807.01](#) (regarding the requirement that an application be limited to one mark).

In *International Flavors*, the applicant filed three applications to register the designations “LIVING xxxx,” “LIVING xxxx FLAVOR,” and “LIVING xxxx FLAVORS,” for essential oils and flavor substances. The applications indicated that “the ‘xxxx’ served to denote ‘a specific herb, fruit, plant or vegetable.’” *Int’l*

Flavors, 183 F.3d at 1363-64, 51 USPQ2d at 1514-15. In upholding the refusal of registration, the Federal Circuit noted that under §22 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1072](#), registration serves as constructive notice to the public of the registrant's ownership of the mark and, therefore, precludes another user from claiming innocent misappropriation as a trademark infringement defense. To make this constructive notice meaningful, the mark as registered must accurately reflect the mark that is used in commerce, so that someone who searches the register for a similar mark will locate the registration. The court stated that "phantom marks" with missing elements "encompass too many combinations and permutations to make a thorough and effective search possible" and, therefore, the registration of these marks does not provide adequate notice to competitors and the public. *Id.* at 1367-68, 51 USPQ2d at 1517-18.

In *Primo Water*, the Board affirmed a refusal of registration of a mark comprising the "placement and orientation of identical spaced indicia" on either side of the handle of a water bottle in inverted orientation, where the description of the mark indicated that the "indicia" can be "text, graphics or a combination of both." *Primo Water*, 87 USPQ2d at 1377. The Board noted that the varying indicia must be viewed by consumers before they can perceive the repetition and inversion elements of the mark, and that marks with changeable or "phantom" elements do not provide proper notice to other trademark users. *Id.* at 1379-80. The Board also noted that the only issue on appeal was whether applicant seeks to register more than one mark, and that this issue is separate from the question of whether the proposed mark is distinctive and functions as a mark. *Id.* at 1380; *see also In re Upper Deck Co.*, 59 USPQ2d 1688, 1691 (TTAB 2001) (finding hologram used on trading cards in varying shapes, sizes, contents, and positions constitutes more than one "device" as contemplated by §45 of the Trademark Act).

However, a mark with a changeable element may be registrable if the element is limited in terms of the number of possible variations, such that the drawing provides adequate notice as to the nature of the mark and an effective §2(d) search is possible. *Cf. In re Dial-A-Mattress Operating Corp.*, 240 F.3d 1341, 1347-48, 57 USPQ2d 1807, 1812-13 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (rejecting the argument that the mark (212) M-A-T-T-R-E-S is an unregistrable phantom mark, because, although 212 was displayed in dotted lines to indicate it was a changeable element, it was clear that this element was "an area code, the possibilities of which are limited by the offerings of the telephone companies"). For example, a "phantom mark" refusal would not be necessary for the mark T.MARKEY TRADEMARK EXHIBITION 2***, in which the asterisks represent elements that change to indicate different years.

See [TMEP §807.01](#) regarding the requirement that an application be limited to one mark.

1214.02 Agreement of Mark on Drawing with Mark on Specimens or Foreign Registration

The examining attorney must also consider whether the "phantom mark" is a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on the specimen in a use-based application, or the mark in the home country registration in an application based on Trademark Act §44, [15 U.S.C. §1126](#). *See* [TMEP §§807.12-807.12\(e\)](#).

The applicant may amend the mark to overcome a refusal on the ground that the mark on the drawing does not agree with the mark as used on the specimen, or with the mark in the foreign registration, if the amendment is not a material alteration of the mark. See [TMEP §§807.14-807.14\(f\)](#) regarding material alteration.

1214.03 "Phantom Marks" in §1(b) Applications

In an intent-to-use application for which no allegation of use has been filed, it may be unclear whether the applicant is seeking registration of a mark with a changeable element. In that case, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that, if the specimen filed with an amendment to allege use under §1(c) of the

Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#), or a statement of use under §1(d) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), shows that applicant is seeking registration of a mark with a changeable element, registration may be refused on the ground that the application seeks registration of more than one mark. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided before the applicant files an allegation of use, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis.

Otherwise, if it is clear that the applicant is seeking registration of a “phantom mark” (e.g., if the application includes a statement that “the blank line represents matter that is subject to change”) that would not provide adequate constructive notice of the nature of the mark and that precludes a thorough and effective search for conflicting marks (*see* [TMEP §1214.02](#)), the examining attorney should issue a refusal of registration under §§1 and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#), on the ground that the application seeks registration of more than one mark.

1214.04 “Phantom Marks” in §44 and §66(a) Applications

The "phantom mark" refusal may be issued in applications under §§44 and 66(a) as well as §1 of the Trademark Act.

1215 Marks Composed, in Whole or in Part, of Domain Names

1215.01 Background

A domain name is part of a Uniform Resource Locator (“URL”), which is the address of a site or document on the Internet. A domain name is usually preceded in a URL by “http://www.” The “http://” refers to the protocol used to transfer information, and the “www” refers to World Wide Web, a graphical hypermedia interface for viewing and exchanging information.

In general, a domain name is comprised of a second-level domain, a “dot,” and a top-level domain (“TLD”). The wording to the left of the “dot” is the second-level domain. A TLD is the string of letters that follows the last “.” or “dot”.

Example: If the domain name is “ABC.com,” the term “ABC” is a second-level domain and the term “com” is a TLD.

Generic TLDs. If a TLD has three or more characters, it is known as a “generic top-level domain” or “gTLD.” The following are examples of gTLDs designated for use by the public:

.com	commercial, for-profit organizations
.edu	4-year, degree-granting colleges/universities
.gov	U.S. federal government agencies
.int	international organizations
.mil	U.S. military organizations, even if located outside the U.S.
.net	network infrastructure machines and organizations
.org	miscellaneous, usually non-profit organizations and individuals

Each of the gTLDs listed above is intended for use by a certain type of organization. For example, the gTLD “.com” is for use by commercial, for-profit organizations. However, the administrator of the .com, .net, .org, and .edu gTLDs does not check the requests of parties seeking domain names to ensure that such parties are

a type of organization that should be using those gTLDs. On the other hand, .mil, .gov, and .int gTLD applications are checked, and only the U.S. military, the U.S. government, or international organizations are allowed in the respective domain space.

Country-Code TLDs. Country-code TLDs are for use by each individual country. For example, the TLD “.ca” is for use by Canada, and the TLD “.jp” is for use by Japan. Each country determines who may use its code. For example, some countries require that users of their code be citizens or have some association with the country, while other countries do not.

See www.icann.org and [TMEP §§1215.02\(d\)\(i\) 1215.02\(d\)\(iv\)](#) for additional information about other gTLDs and [TMEP §1209.03\(m\)](#) about descriptiveness or genericness of marks comprising domain names.

1215.02 Use as a Mark

Generally, when a trademark, service mark, collective mark, or certification mark is composed, in whole or in part, of a domain name, neither the beginning of the URL (“http://www.”) nor the gTLD has any source-indicating significance. Instead, those designations are merely devices that every Internet site provider must use as part of its address. Advertisements for all types of products and services routinely include a URL for the website of the advertiser, and the average person familiar with the Internet recognizes the format for a domain name and understands that “http,” “www,” and a gTLD are a part of every URL.

However, in 2011, the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (“ICANN”) authorized the launch of a program to introduce new gTLDs. Some of the gTLDs under consideration may have significance as source identifiers. To the extent that some of the new gTLDs under consideration comprise existing registered trademarks or service marks that are already strong source identifiers in other fields of use, some of the premises mentioned above may no longer hold true for such gTLDs (e.g., a gTLD consisting of a coined mark is not an abbreviation of an entity type or class of intended user of domain space). Where the wording following the “.” or “dot” is already used as a trademark or service mark, the appearance of such marks as a gTLD may not negate the consumer perception of them as source indicators. Accordingly, in some circumstances, a gTLD may have source-indicating significance. See [TMEP §1215.02\(d\) 1215.02\(d\)\(iv\)](#) (mark consisting of a gTLD for domain-name registry operator and registrar services, where the wording following the “.” or “dot” is already used as a trademark or service mark, may be registrable).

1215.02(a) Use Applications

A mark composed of a domain name is registrable as a trademark or service mark only if it functions as a source identifier. The mark, as depicted on the specimen, must be presented in a manner that will be perceived by potential purchasers to indicate source and not as merely an informational indication of the domain name address used to access a website. *See In re Roberts*, 87 USPQ2d 1474, 1479 (TTAB 2008) (finding that *irestmymcase* did not function as a mark for legal services, where it is used only as part of an address by means of which one may reach applicant’s website, or along with applicant’s other contact information on letterhead); *In re Eilberg*, 49 USPQ2d 1955, 1957 (TTAB 1998) .

In *Eilberg*, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board held that a term that only serves to identify the applicant’s domain name or the location on the Internet where the applicant’s website appears, and does not separately identify applicant’s services, does not function as a service mark. The applicant’s proposed mark was WWW.EILBERG.COM, and the specimen showed that the mark was used on letterhead and business cards in the following manner:

WILLIAM H. EILBERG
ATTORNEY AT LAW
820 HOMESTEAD ROAD, P.O. BOX 7
JENKINTOWN, PENNSYLVANIA 19046
215-885-4600
FAX: 215-885-4603
EMAIL WHE@EILBERG.COM

PATENTS, TRADEMARKS
AND COPYRIGHTS

WWW.EILBERG.COM

(The specimen submitted was the business card of William H. Eilberg, Attorney at Law, 820 Homestead Road, P.O. Box 7, Jenkintown, Pennsylvania 19046, 215-855-4600, email whe@eilberg.com.)

The Board affirmed the examining attorney's refusal of registration on the ground that the matter presented for registration did not function as a mark, stating that:

[T]he asserted mark, as displayed on applicant's letterhead, does not function as a service mark identifying and distinguishing applicant's legal services and, as presented, is not capable of doing so. As shown, the asserted mark identifies applicant's Internet domain name, by use of which one can access applicant's Web site. In other words, the asserted mark WWW.EILBERG.COM merely indicates the location on the Internet where applicant's Web site appears. It does not separately identify applicant's legal services as such. *Cf. In re The Signal Companies, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 956 (TTAB 1986).

This is not to say that, if used appropriately, the asserted mark or portions thereof may not be trademarks or [service marks]. For example, if applicant's law firm name were, say, EILBERG.COM and were presented prominently on applicant's letterheads and business cards as the name under which applicant was rendering its legal services, then that mark may well be registrable.

Eilberg, 49 USPQ2d at 1957.

The examining attorney must review the specimen in order to determine how the proposed mark is actually used. It is the perception of the ordinary customer that determines whether the asserted mark functions as a mark, not the applicant's intent, hope, or expectation that it does so. *See In re The Standard Oil Co.*, 275 F.2d 945, 947, 125 USPQ 227, 229 (C.C.P.A. 1960).

If the proposed mark is used in a way that would be perceived as nothing more than an Internet address where the applicant can be contacted, registration must be refused. Examples of a domain name used only as an Internet address include a domain name used in close proximity to language referring to the domain name as an address, or a domain name displayed merely as part of the information on how to contact the applicant.

Example: The mark is WWW.ABC.COM for online ordering services in the field of clothing. A specimen consisting of an advertisement that states "visit us on the web at www.ABC.com" does not show service mark use of the proposed mark.

Example: The mark is ABC.COM for financial consulting services. A specimen consisting of a business card that refers to the services and lists a telephone number, fax number, and the domain name sought to be registered does not show service mark use of the proposed mark.

If the specimen fails to show use of the domain name as a mark and the applicant seeks registration on the Principal Register, the examining attorney must refuse registration on the ground that the matter presented for registration does not function as a mark. The statutory bases for the refusals are §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), for trademarks; and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#), for service marks.

If the applicant seeks registration on the Supplemental Register, the examining attorney must refuse registration under Trademark Act §23, [15 U.S.C. §1091](#).

1215.02(b) Advertising One's Own Products or Services on the Internet is not a Service

Advertising one's own products or services is not a "service" under the Trademark Act. *In re Reichhold Chems., Inc.*, 167 USPQ 376 (TTAB 1970). See [TMEP §§1301.01\(a\)\(ii\) and 1301.01\(b\)\(i\)](#). Therefore, businesses that create a website for the sole purpose of advertising their own products or services cannot register a domain name used to identify that activity. In examination, the issue usually arises when the applicant describes the activity as a registrable service, e.g., "providing information about [a particular field]," but the specimen of use makes it clear that the website merely advertises the applicant's own products or services. In this situation, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the mark is used to identify an activity that does not constitute a "service" within the meaning of the Trademark Act. The statutory basis for the refusal is Trademark Act §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#).

1215.02(c) Agreement of Mark on Drawing with Mark on Specimens of Use

In viewing a domain name mark (e.g., ABC.COM or HTTP://WWW.ABC.COM), consumers generally look to the second-level domain name for source identification, not to the generic top-level domain (gTLD) or the terms "http://www." or "www." Therefore, it is usually acceptable to depict only the second-level domain name on the drawing page, even if the specimen shows a mark that includes a traditional gTLD (such as .COM) or the terms "http://www." or "www." However, if the mark depicted in the specimen includes a gTLD that serves a source-indicating function, the drawing of record must include such source-indicating gTLD. *Cf. Institut Nat'l des Appellations D'Origine v. Vintners Int'l Co.*, 958 F.2d 1574, 22 USPQ2d 1190 (Fed. Cir. 1992) (CHABLIS WITH A TWIST held to be registrable separately from CALIFORNIA CHABLIS WITH A TWIST as shown on labels); *In re Raychem Corp.*, 12 USPQ2d 1399 (TTAB 1989) (refusal to register TINEL-LOCK based on specimen showing "TRO6AI-TINEL-LOCK-RING" reversed). See also [37 C.F.R. §2.51\(a\)–\(b\)](#), and [TMEP §§807.12–807.12\(e\)](#).

Example: The specimen shows the mark HTTP://WWW.ABC.COM. The applicant may elect to depict only the term "ABC" on the drawing.

Sometimes the specimen fails to show the entire mark sought to be registered (e.g., the drawing of the mark is HTTP://WWW.ABC.COM, but the specimen only shows ABC). If the drawing of the mark includes a gTLD, or the terms "http://www." or "www.," the specimen must also show the mark used with these terms. Trademark Act §1(a)(3)(C), [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(C\)](#).

Example: If the drawing of the mark is ABC.COM, a specimen that only shows the term ABC is unacceptable.

If, in an application in which the identification of services specifies or otherwise encompasses domain-name registry operator or registrar services, and the applied-for mark consists of or includes wording without a dot (“.”) before it, but the specimen provided shows use of the mark only with a “.” before the wording, or vice versa, the examining attorney must refuse the specimen on the grounds that the marks do not match because the commercial impression created by the applied-for mark differs from the commercial impression created by the mark shown in the specimen. Specifically, when used in connection with domain-name registry operator or registrar services, wording immediately preceded by a “.” will likely be viewed by consumers as a generic top-level domain (gTLD). On the other hand, the same wording, used in connection with the same services, but shown without the “.” would not give the impression of a gTLD and could be viewed as an indicator of source, such that the commercial impression created by the marks materially differs. Thus, in this context, the “.” does not constitute the type of “extraneous, nondistinctive punctuation” discussed in [TMEP §807.12\(a\)\(i\)](#) and the drawing may not be amended to add a “.” to, or delete a “.” from, the mark. See [TMEP §1215.08\(c\)](#).

Example: If the applied-for mark is TMARKIE for “domain-name registration services,” a specimen that shows the mark as .TMARKIE is unacceptable.

See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) and [1215.08–1215.08\(b\)](#) regarding material alteration.

1215.02(d) Marks Comprised Solely of gTLDs for Domain-Name Registry Operator and Registrar Services

A “registry operator” maintains the master database of all domain names registered in each top-level domain, and also generates the “zone file,” which allows computers to route Internet traffic to and from top-level domains anywhere in the world, and a “registrar” is an entity through which domain names may be registered, and which is responsible for keeping website contact information records and submitting the technical information to a central directory (i.e., the “registry”). The terms “registry operator” and “registrar” refer to distinct services and are not interchangeable. Further, “registry operators” and “registrars” are distinguishable from re-sellers, which are entities that are authorized by registrars to sell or register particular Internet addresses on a given top-level domain. See Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers, Glossary, <http://www.icann.org/en/about/learning/glossary> (accessed March 19, 2014).

A mark composed solely of a gTLD for domain-name registry operator or registrar services fails to function as a trademark because consumers are predisposed to view gTLDs as merely a portion of a web address rather than as an indicator of the source of domain-name registry operator and registrar services. Therefore, registration of such marks must initially be refused under Trademark Act §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#), on the ground that the gTLD would not be perceived as a mark. However, the applicant may, in some circumstances, avoid or overcome the refusal by providing evidence that the mark will be perceived as a source identifier. In addition, the applicant must show that: (1) it has entered into a currently valid Registry Agreement with the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (“ICANN”) designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark and (2) the identified services will be primarily for the benefit of others.

If the gTLD merely describes the subject or user of the domain space, registration must be refused under Trademark Act §2(e)(1), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), on the ground that the gTLD is merely descriptive of the registry services.

1215.02(d)(i) Prior Registration(s) of the Same Mark for Goods or Services in the Same Field of Use

The applicant must submit evidence that the gTLD shown in the mark is the subject of one or more prior U.S. registrations for goods/services that are related to the identified subject matter of the websites to be registered via the domain-name registry operator and registrar services by establishing:

- (1) Ownership of one or more currently active U.S. registrations on the Principal Register for the same mark, based on use in commerce under §1 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051](#), or
- (2) Ownership of a U.S. registration on the Principal Register for the same mark, based on either a foreign registration under §44(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#), for which an affidavit of use in commerce under §8 of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1058, has been accepted, or a registration under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141\(f\)\(a\)](#), for which an affidavit of use in commerce under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), has been accepted.

The prior U.S. registration(s) must show the same mark as that shown in the relevant application. However, the lack of a “.” or “dot” in the prior U.S. registration(s) is not determinative as to whether the mark in the registration is the same as the mark in the application. In addition, the prior registration may be registered pursuant to §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#).

Because a consumer’s ability to recognize a gTLD in an application as a source-identifying mark is based, in part, on the applicant’s prior registration(s) for the same mark, the applicant must limit the “field of use” for the identified domain-name registry operator and registrar services to fields that are related to the goods/services listed in the submitted prior registration(s). For example, if the applicant submits prior registrations identifying its goods as “automobiles” and its services as “automobile dealerships,” the services in the application may be identified as “domain-name registry operator and registrar services for websites featuring automobiles and information about automobiles.” However, the applicant may not identify its services as, for example, “domain-name registry operator and registrar services for websites featuring information about restaurants” or merely as “domain-name registry operator and registrar services.”

If the applicant does not specify a field of use for the identified domain-name registry operator and registrar services, or specifies a field of use that includes goods/services not listed in the prior registration(s), the examining attorney must require the applicant to amend the identification of services so as to indicate only a field of use that is related to goods/services that are the subject of the prior registration(s). In amending the identification, the applicant may not broaden its scope. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1402.06–1402.06\(b\)](#).

If the application is not amended, or cannot be amended, to specify a field of use that is related to the goods/services listed in the prior registration(s), the examining attorney must refuse registration under Trademark Act §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1053](#), and [1127](#), because, absent a relevant prior registration, the gTLD would not be perceived by consumers as a mark.

1215.02(d)(ii) Additional Proof that the Mark Used as a gTLD Will Be Perceived as a Mark

In addition to the prior registration(s), the applicant must also submit a significant amount of additional evidence relevant to the issue of whether the mark, with or without the “.” or “dot,” will immediately function to identify the source of the domain-name registry operator and registrar services rather than merely being perceived as a portion of an Internet domain name that can be acquired through applicant’s services. Because consumers are so highly conditioned, and may be predisposed, to view gTLDs as non-source-indicating, the applicant must show that consumers already will be so familiar with the wording as a mark that they

will transfer the source recognition even to the domain-name registry operator and registrar services. The amount of additional evidence required may vary, depending on the nature of the wording set out in the gTLD. Relevant evidence may include, but is not limited to: examples of advertising and promotional materials that specifically promote the mark shown in the application, with or without the “.” or “dot,” as a trademark or service mark in the United States; dollar figures for advertising devoted to such promotion; and/or sworn consumer statements of recognition of the applied-for mark as a trademark or service mark.

1215.02(d)(iii) Registry Agreement/ICANN Contract

If the applicant has not entered into a Registry Agreement with ICANN designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark, consumers may be deceived by use of a particular gTLD as a mark. Consumers generally would believe that the applicant’s domain-name registry operator and registrar services feature the gTLD in the proposed mark, and would consider that material in the purchase of these services. Therefore, to avoid a deceptiveness refusal under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1203, 1203.02–1203.02\(g\)](#), the applicant must: (1) submit evidence that it has entered into a currently valid Registry Agreement with ICANN, designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark prior to registration and (2) indicate in the identification of services that the domain-name registry operator and registrar services feature the gTLD shown in the mark.

If the application does not include a verified statement indicating that the applicant has an active or currently pending application for a Registry Agreement with ICANN designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark, the examining attorney must issue an Office action with an information request under Trademark Rule 2.61(b), [37 C.F.R. 2.61\(b\)](#), that requires the applicant to submit a verified statement indicating: (1) whether the applicant has in place, or has applied for, such a Registry Agreement with ICANN and (2) if the applicant has so applied, the current status of such application. The examining attorney must include an advisory indicating that if the applicant does not have a currently active, or currently pending application for a, Registry Agreement with ICANN designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark, a deceptiveness refusal will be issued pursuant to §2(a). A currently pending application with ICANN avoids an immediate deceptiveness refusal, but as discussed below, the USPTO will not approve the trademark application for publication without proof of the award of the Registry Agreement.

If the applicant fails to respond to the information requirement, the examining attorney must maintain and continue the information requirement and issue a deceptiveness refusal under §2(a). If, in response to the information requirement, the applicant indicates that: (1) the applicant has not applied for a Registry Agreement with ICANN designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark; (2) the applicant has applied for a Registry Agreement with ICANN designating the applicant as the Registry Operator for the gTLD identified by the mark, but that the application has not been approved and is no longer pending with ICANN; or (3) the applicant’s previous Registry Agreement with ICANN is no longer valid, the examining attorney must issue a deceptiveness refusal under §2(a).

If the applicant indicates that it has a currently pending application before ICANN for a Registry Agreement for the gTLD identified by the mark and the applicant has otherwise demonstrated that the mark consisting of the gTLD in the application before the USPTO could function as a mark, the examining attorney may suspend the application until the resolution of the applicant’s pending application with ICANN. See [TMEP §716.02\(i\)](#).

1215.02(d)(iv) Legitimate Service for the Benefit of Others

To be considered a service within the parameters of the Trademark Act, an activity must, inter alia, be primarily for the benefit of someone other than the applicant. See *In re Reichhold Chems., Inc.*, 167 USPQ 376, 377 (TTAB 1970); [TMEP §1301.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#). Therefore, the examining attorney must issue an information request pursuant to Trademark Rule 2.61(b), [37 C.F.R. 2.61\(b\)](#), to ascertain the following information to determine if the domain-name registry operator and registrar services will be primarily for the benefit of others:

Does the applicant intend to use the applied-for mark as a gTLD?

Does the applicant intend to operate a registry for the applied-for mark as a new gTLD and sign a Registry Agreement with ICANN for such gTLD?

To what entities and industries will the applicant's domain-name registry operator and registrar services be targeted?

Does the applicant intend to register domain names for others using the gTLD identified by the applied-for mark and will there be any restrictions on to whom it will be available?

While operating a gTLD registry that is only available for the applicant's employees or for the applicant's marketing initiatives alone generally would not qualify as a service, registration for use by the applicant's affiliated distributors typically would.

If the applicant fails to indicate for the record that the applicant's domain-name registry operator and registrar services are, or will be, primarily for the benefit of others, the examining attorney must refuse registration pursuant to §§1, 2, 3, and 45 of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. §§1051-1053, [1127](#). See [TMEP §1301.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

1215.02(e) Section 1(b) Applications

A refusal of registration on the ground that the matter presented for registration does not function as a mark relates to the manner in which the asserted mark is used. Generally, in an intent-to-use application filed under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, a mark that includes a domain name will not be refused on this ground until the applicant has submitted specimen(s) of use *and* an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)). The specimen provides a better record upon which to determine the registrability of the mark. However, the examining attorney should include an advisory note in the first Office action that registration may be refused if the proposed mark, as used on the specimen, identifies only an Internet address. This is done strictly as a courtesy. If information regarding this possible ground for refusal is not provided to the applicant prior to the filing of the allegation of use, the USPTO is not precluded from refusing registration on this basis.

1215.02(f) Section 44 and §66(a) Applications

If the record indicates that the proposed mark would be perceived as merely an informational indication of the domain name address used to access a website rather than an indicator of source, the examining attorney must refuse registration in an application under §44 or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, on the ground that the subject matter does not function as a mark. The statutory bases for the refusals are §§1, 2, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, and 1127](#), for trademarks; and §§1, 2, 3, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127](#), for service marks.

1215.03 Surnames

If a mark is composed of a surname and a non-source-identifying gTLD, the examining attorney must refuse registration because the mark is primarily merely a surname under Trademark Act §2(e)(4), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(4\)](#), absent a showing of acquired distinctiveness under Trademark Act §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). If the gTLD has no trademark significance, and the primary significance of a term is that of a surname, adding the gTLD to the surname does not alter the primary significance of the mark as a surname. *Cf. In re I. Lewis Cigar Mfg. Co.*, 205 F.2d 204, 98 USPQ 265 (C.C.P.A. 1953) (S. SEIDENBERG & CO'S. for cigars held primarily merely a surname); *In re Hamilton Pharms. Ltd.*, 27 USPQ2d 1939 (TTAB 1993) (HAMILTON PHARMACEUTICALS for pharmaceutical products held primarily merely a surname); *In re Cazes*, 21 USPQ2d 1796 (TTAB 1991) (BRASSERIE LIPP for restaurant services held primarily merely a surname where "brasserie" is a generic term for applicant's restaurant services). See also [TMEP §1211.01\(b\)\(vi\)](#) regarding surnames combined with additional wording.

1215.04 Descriptiveness

If a proposed mark is composed of a merely descriptive term(s) combined with a non-source-identifying gTLD, in general, the examining attorney must refuse registration under Trademark Act §2(e)(1), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), on the ground that the mark is merely descriptive. This applies to trademarks, service marks, collective marks, and certification marks.

The gTLD will be perceived as part of an Internet address, and typically does not add source-identifying significance to the composite mark. *In re 1800Mattress.com IP LLC*, 586 F.3d 1359, 92 USPQ2d 1682 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (MATTRESS.COM generic for "online retail store services in the field of mattresses, beds, and bedding"); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (HOTELS.COM generic for "providing information for others about temporary lodging; travel agency services, namely, making reservations and bookings for temporary lodging for others by means of telephone and the global computer network"); *In re Reed Elsevier Props. Inc.*, 482 F.3d 1376, 82 USPQ2d 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (LAWYERS.COM generic for "providing access to an online interactive database featuring information exchange in the fields of law, lawyers, legal news, and legal services"); *In re Oppedahl & Larson LLP*, 373 F.3d 1171, 71 USPQ2d 1370 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (PATENTS.COM merely descriptive of "computer software for managing a database of records and for tracking the status of the records by means of the Internet"); *In re DNI Holdings Ltd.*, 77 USPQ2d 1435 (TTAB 2005) (SPORTSBETTING.COM generic for "provision of casino games on and through a global computer network wherein there are no actual monetary wagers; provision of contests and sweepstakes on and through a global computer network; providing a web site on and through a global computer network featuring information in the fields of gaming, athletic competition and entertainment"); *In re Eddie Z's Blinds and Drapery, Inc.*, 74 USPQ2d 1037 (TTAB 2005) (BLINDSANDDRAPERY.COM generic for retail store services featuring blinds, draperies, and other wall coverings, sold via the Internet); *In re Microsoft Corp.*, 68 USPQ2d 1195 (TTAB 2003) (OFFICE.NET merely descriptive of various computer software and hardware products); *In re CyberFinancial.Net, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1789 (TTAB 2002) (BONDS.COM generic for providing information regarding financial products and services and electronic commerce services rendered via the Internet); *In re Martin Container, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1058 (TTAB 2002) (CONTAINER.COM generic for "retail store services and retail services offered via telephone featuring metal shipping containers" and "rental of metal shipping containers").

However, there is no bright-line, per se rule that the addition of a non-source-identifying gTLD to an otherwise descriptive mark will never under any circumstances operate to create a registrable mark. The Federal Circuit has cautioned that in rare, exceptional circumstances, a term that is not distinctive by itself may acquire some additional meaning from the addition of a gTLD such as ".com" or ".net." *In re Steelbuilding.com*, 415 F.3d 1293, 1297, 75 USPQ2d 1420, 1422 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (STEELBUILDING.COM highly descriptive,

but not generic, for “computerized on-line retail services in the field of pre-engineered metal buildings and roofing systems,” noting that “the addition of the TLD can show Internet-related distinctiveness, intimating some ‘Internet feature’ of the item.”) (citing *Oppedahl & Larson*, 373 F.3d at 1175-1176, 71 USPQ2d at 1373).

Thus, when examining domain name marks, it is important to evaluate the commercial impression of the mark as a whole to determine whether the composite mark conveys any distinctive source-identifying impression apart from its individual components. The examining attorney must introduce evidence as to the significance of the individual components, including the gTLD, but must also consider the significance of the composite term (e.g. , “Sportsbetting” in the mark SPORTSBETTING.COM) to determine whether the addition of the TLD has resulted in a mark that conveys a source-identifying impression.

See also [TMEP §§1209.03\(m\)](#), [1215.02\(d\)](#) [1215.02\(d\)\(iv\)](#), and [1215.05](#).

1215.05 Generic Refusals

Generally, a mark comprised of a generic term(s) combined with a non-source-identifying gTLD is generic and without trademark or service mark significance. *In re 1800Mattress.com IP LLC*, 586 F.3d 1359, 92 USPQ2d 1682 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (MATTRESS.COM generic for “online retail store services in the field of mattresses, beds, and bedding”); *In re Hotels.com, L.P.*, 573 F.3d 1300, 91 USPQ2d 1532 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (HOTELS.COM generic for “providing information for others about temporary lodging; travel agency services, namely, making reservations and bookings for temporary lodging for others by means of telephone and the global computer network”).

The Federal Circuit has noted that “[o]nly in rare instances will the addition of a [top level domain] indicator to a descriptive term operate to create a distinctive mark.” *1800Mattress.com*, 586 F.3d at 1364, 92 USPQ2d at 1685. However, there is no per se rule that the addition of a non-source-identifying gTLD to an otherwise generic term can never under any circumstances operate to create a registrable mark. The Court has held that in rare, exceptional circumstances, a term that is not distinctive by itself may acquire some additional meaning from the addition of a gTLD such as “.com” or “.net” that will render it “sufficiently distinctive for trademark registration.” *In re Steelbuilding.com*, 415 F.3d 1293, 1299, 75 USPQ2d 1420, 1423 (Fed. Cir. 2005) (citing *In re Oppedahl & Larson LLP*, 373 F.3d 1171, 1177, 71 USPQ2d 1370, 1373 (Fed. Cir. 2004)). In *Steelbuilding*, vacating the Board’s determination that STEELBUILDING.COM was generic for “computerized on-line retail services in the field of pre-engineered metal buildings and roofing systems,” the Court criticized the Board for considering STEELBUILDING and .COM separately, holding that “[i]n this unusual case, the addition of the TLD indicator expanded the meaning of the mark to include goods and services beyond the mere sale of steel buildings. Specifically, the TLD expanded the mark to include internet services that include ‘building’ or designing steel structures on the web site and then calculating an appropriate price before ordering the unique structure.” 415 F.3d at 1299, 75 USPQ2d at 1423. The Court also criticized the Board for relying on evidence that “steel building” or “steel buildings” is generic, where there was an alternative meaning of the composite term STEELBUILDING as denoting the act of building steel structures. *Id.* at 1298, 75 USPQ2d at 1422. However, the Court held that the term STEELBULDING.COM was highly descriptive and unregistrable on the Principal Register under §2(e)(1), absent “a concomitantly high level of secondary meaning.” *Id.* at 1301, 75 USPQ2d at 1424.

Thus, to establish that a mark comprising a generic term with a non-source-identifying gTLD is generic, the examining attorney must show that the relevant public would understand the mark as a whole to have generic significance. See *1800Mattress.com*, 586 F.3d at 1363, 92 USPQ2d at 1684 (Board properly concluded MATTRESS.COM is generic for “online retail store services in the field of mattresses, beds, and bedding,” where the Board considered each of the constituent words, “mattress” and “.com” and determined

that they were both generic, then considered the mark as a whole and determined that the combination added no new meaning, relying on the prevalence of the term “mattress.com” in the website addresses of several online mattress retailers who provide the same services as the applicant); *Hotels.com*, 573 F.3d at 1303, 91 USPQ2d at 1535 (HOTELS.COM generic for “providing information for others about temporary lodging; travel agency services, namely, making reservations and bookings for temporary lodging for others by means of telephone and the global computer network,” based on various definitions of “hotel,” printouts from hotel reservation search websites showing “hotels” as the equivalent of or included within “temporary lodging,” as well as evidence from applicant’s website); *In re Reed Elsevier Props. Inc.*, 482 F.3d 1376, 1379-80, 82 USPQ2d 1378, 1380-81 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (LAWYERS.COM generic for “providing access to an online interactive database featuring information exchange in the fields of law, lawyers, legal news, and legal services,” where the record included pages from applicant’s website showing that applicant’s services include providing information about lawyers and assistance in selecting a lawyer, and pages from eight other websites containing “lawyer.com” or “lawyers.com”); *In re DNI Holdings Ltd.*, 77 USPQ2d 1435, 1439-41 (TTAB 2005) (SPORTSBETTING.COM generic for “provision of casino games on and through a global computer network wherein there are no actual monetary wagers; provision of contests and sweepstakes on and through a global computer network; . . . providing a website on and through a global computer network featuring information in the fields of gaming, athletic competition and entertainment,” based on evidence of multiple examples of use of the terms “sports betting” and “sportsbetting,” by both applicant and its competitors, to refer to both sports wagering and providing information about sports wagering, and there was no indication of a realistic alternative connotation of the compound term). *See also In re Eddie Z’s Blinds and Drapery, Inc.*, 74 USPQ2d 1037 (TTAB 2005) (BLINDSANDDRAPERY.COM generic for retail store services featuring blinds, draperies, and other wall coverings, sold via the Internet); *In re CyberFinancial.Net, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1789 (TTAB 2002) (BONDS.COM generic for providing information regarding financial products and services and electronic commerce services rendered via the Internet, where bonds was the name of one of the financial products offered under the mark); *In re Martin Container, Inc.*, 65 USPQ2d 1058 (TTAB 2002) (CONTAINER.COM generic for “retail store services and retail services offered via telephone featuring metal shipping containers” and “rental of metal shipping containers”).

It is not necessary to show that the relevant public *uses* the term to refer to the genus. The correct inquiry is whether the relevant public would *understand* the term to be generic. *1800Mattress.com*, 586 F.3d at 1364, 92 USPQ2d at 1685.

Marks comprised of generic terms combined with non-source-identifying gTLDs are not eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register under Trademark Act §23, [15 U.S.C. §1091](#), or on the Principal Register under Trademark Act §2(f), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). This applies to trademarks, service marks, collective marks, and certification marks. However, the examining attorney generally should not issue a refusal in an application for registration on the Principal Register on the ground that a mark is a generic name for the goods or services, unless the applicant asserts that the mark has acquired distinctiveness under §2(f) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). Absent a claim of acquired distinctiveness, the examining attorney must issue a refusal on the ground that the mark is merely descriptive of the goods or services under §2(e)(1), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), and provide an advisory statement that the matter sought to be registered appears to be a generic name for the goods or services. *See* [TMEP §§1209.02–1209.02\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §1209.01\(c\)\(i\)](#) regarding the test for establishing that a term is generic. *See also* [TMEP §§1209.03\(m\)](#), [1215.02\(d\)](#) [1215.02\(d\)\(iv\)](#), and [1215.04](#).

1215.06 Marks Containing Geographical Matter

The examining attorney should examine marks containing geographic matter along with a gTLD in the same manner that any mark containing geographic matter is examined. *See generally* [TMEP §§1210–1210.10](#).

Depending on the manner in which it is used on or in connection with the goods or services, a proposed domain name mark containing a geographic term may be primarily geographically descriptive under §2(e)(2) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(3) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), deceptive under §2(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), and/or merely descriptive or deceptively misdescriptive under §2(e)(1) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#).

When a geographic term is used as a mark for services that are provided on the Internet, the geographic term sometimes describes the subject of the service rather than the geographic origin of the service. Usually this occurs when the mark is composed of a geographic term that describes the subject matter of information services (e.g., NEW ORLEANS.COM for “providing vacation planning information about New Orleans, Louisiana by means of the global computer network”). In these cases, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §2(e)(1) because the mark is merely descriptive of the services. See [TMEP §1210.02\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

1215.07 Disclaimers

Trademark Act §6(a), [15 U.S.C. §1056\(a\)](#), provides for the disclaimer of “an unregistrable component of a mark otherwise registrable.” The guidelines on disclaimer discussed in [TMEP §§1213–1213.11](#) apply to domain name mark applications.

If a composite mark includes a domain name composed of unregistrable matter (e.g., a merely descriptive or generic term and a non-source-identifying gTLD), disclaimer is required.

If a disclaimer is required and the domain name includes a misspelled or telescoped word, the correct spelling must be disclaimed. See [TMEP §§1213.05\(a\)\(i\)](#) and [1213.08\(c\)](#).

A compound term composed of arbitrary or suggestive matter combined with a “dot” and a non-source-identifying gTLD is considered unitary, and, therefore, no disclaimer of the gTLD is required. See examples below and [TMEP §§1213.05–1213.05\(g\)\(iv\)](#) regarding unitary marks.

Mark	Disclaimer
ABC BANK.COM	BANK.COM
ABC FEDERALBANK.COM	FEDERAL BANK.COM
ABC GROCERI STOR.COM	GROCERY STORE.COM
ABC.COM	no disclaimer
ABC.BANK.COM	no disclaimer
ABCBANK.COM	no disclaimer

1215.08 Material Alteration

Amendments may not be made to the drawing of the mark if the character of the mark is materially altered. [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#). In determining whether an amendment is a material alteration, the controlling question is always whether the new and old forms of the mark create essentially the same commercial impression. See [TMEP §§807.14–807.14\(f\)](#) regarding further information about material alteration. *In re Yale Sportswear Corp.*, 88 USPQ2d 1121 (TTAB 2008) (mark on the specimen (UPPER 90°) not a substantially exact representation of the mark on the drawing (UPPER 90)); *In re Innovative Cos., LLC*, 88 USPQ2d 1095 (TTAB 2008) (proposed amendment of the drawing from FREEDOMSTONE to FREEDOM STONE not material alteration of the mark); *Paris Glove of Can., LTD, v. SBC/Sporto Corp.*, 84 USPQ2d 1856, 1862

(TTAB 2007) (in an application to renew a registration, the old and new specimens (AQUA STOP and AQUASTOP, both stylized) were deemed to be substantially the same because “mere changes in background or styling, or modernization, are not ordinarily considered to be material changes in the mark.”).

1215.08(a) Adding or Deleting TLDs in Domain Name Marks

Generally, an applicant may add or delete a non-source-identifying gTLD to/from the drawing of a domain name mark (e.g., COOPER amended to COOPER.COM, or COOPER.COM amended to COOPER) without materially altering the mark. Although a mark that includes a gTLD generally will be perceived by the public as a domain name, while a mark without a gTLD will not, if the gTLD merely indicates the type of entity using the domain name, the essence of the mark is created by the second-level domain name, not the gTLD. Thus, the commercial impression created by the second-level domain name usually remains the same whether the non-source-identifying gTLD is present or not. If the gTLD does function as a source indicator, its deletion from the domain name mark may constitute a material alteration of the mark.

Example: Amending a mark from PETER to PETER.COM would *not* materially change the mark because the essence of both marks is still PETER, a person’s name.

Example: Amending a mark from ABC.PETER to ABC *would* materially change the mark because the essence of the original mark is created by both the second-level domain and the gTLD.

Similarly, substituting one non-source-identifying gTLD for another in a domain name mark, or adding or deleting a “dot” or “http://www.” or “www.” to a domain name mark is generally permitted.

Example: Amending a mark from ABC.ORG to ABC.COM would *not* materially change the mark because the essence of both marks is still ABC.

Example: Amending a mark from ABC.COM to ABC.PETER *would* materially change the mark because the essence of the original mark was ABC and the proposed mark now includes a source-identifying gTLD.

1215.08(b) Adding or Deleting gTLDs in Other Marks

If a mark that is not used as an Internet domain name includes a gTLD, adding or deleting the gTLD may be a material alteration.

Example: Deleting the term .COM from the mark “.COM ” used on sports magazines would materially change the mark.

1215.08(c) Adding or Deleting “.” in Marks for Domain Name Registry Operator or Registrar Services

When used in connection with domain name registry operator or registrar services, wording immediately preceded by a dot (“.”) will likely be viewed by consumers as a gTLD. On the other hand, the same wording, used in connection with the same services, but shown without the “.” would not give the impression of a gTLD and could be viewed as an indicator of source, such that the commercial impression created by the marks materially differs. Thus, the “.” in this context does not constitute the type of “extraneous, nondistinctive punctuation” discussed in [TMEP §807.12\(a\)\(i\)](#).

Accordingly, an applicant may not amend an application to add a “.” before wording in a mark for which the identification of services encompasses domain name registry operator or registrar services. Nor may an applicant amend a drawing to delete a “.” from the beginning of wording in a mark in these instances.

Example: Amending an applied-for mark from TMARKIE to .TMARKIE would materially change the commercial impression of the mark from that of a source-indicating mark to that of a gTLD.

1215.09 Likelihood of Confusion

When analyzing whether a domain name mark is likely to cause confusion with another pending or registered mark, the examining attorney must consider the marks as a whole, but generally should accord little weight to a non-source-identifying gTLD portion of the mark. *Apple Computer v. TVNET.net, Inc.*, 90 USPQ2d 1393 (TTAB 2007). See [TMEP §1207.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

1215.10 Marks Containing the Phonetic Equivalent of a Generic Top-Level Domain

Marks that contain the phonetic equivalent of a non-source-identifying gTLD (e.g., ABC DOTCOM) are treated in the same manner as marks composed of the gTLD itself. If a disclaimer is necessary, the disclaimer must be in the form of the gTLD and not the phonetic equivalent. See [TMEP §1213.08\(c\)](#) regarding disclaimer of misspelled words.

Example: The mark is INEXPENSIVE RESTAURANTS DOT COM for providing information about restaurants by means of a global computer network. Registration must be refused because the mark is merely descriptive of the services under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#).

Example: The mark is ABC DOTCOM. The applicant must disclaim the gTLD “.COM” rather than the phonetic equivalent “DOTCOM.”

1216 Effect of Applicant’s Prior Registrations

1216.01 Decisions Involving Prior Registrations Not Controlling

Trademark rights are not static, and eligibility for registration must be determined on the basis of the facts and evidence of record that exist at the time registration is sought. *In re Morton-Norwich Prods., Inc.*, 671 F.2d 1332, 213 USPQ 9 (C.C.P.A. 1982) ; *In re Thunderbird Prods. Corp.*, 406 F.2d 1389, 160 USPQ 730 (C.C.P.A. 1969) ; *In re Sun Microsystems Inc.*, 59 USPQ2d 1084 (TTAB 2001) ; *In re Styleclick.com Inc.*, 58 USPQ2d 1523 (TTAB 2001) ; *In re Styleclick.com Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1445 (TTAB 2000) .

Each case must be decided on its own facts. The USPTO is not bound by the decisions of the examiners who examined the applications for the applicant’s previously registered marks, based on different records. See *In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 600, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1635 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (“The PTO is required to examine all trademark applications for compliance with each and every eligibility requirement . . . even if the PTO earlier mistakenly registered a similar or identical mark suffering the same defect.”); *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (upholding examining attorney’s requirement for amendment of the term “chronographs” in the identification of goods, notwithstanding applicant’s ownership of several registrations in which this term appears without further qualification in the identification); *In re Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner, & Smith Inc.*, 828 F.2d 1567, 4 USPQ2d 1141 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (incontestable registration of CASH MANAGEMENT ACCOUNT for credit card services did not automatically entitle applicant to registration of the same mark for broader financial services); *In re Loew’s Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 226 USPQ 865 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (examining attorney could properly refuse registration on ground that DURANGO for chewing tobacco is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive, even though applicant owned incontestable registration of same mark for cigars); *In re Rodale Inc.*, 80 USPQ2d 1696 (TTAB 2006) (NUTRITION BULLETIN generic for “providing information in the field of health and diet via a web site on the Internet,” notwithstanding applicant’s claims of ownership

of six prior registrations on the Supplemental Register that included the term “bulletin” in the mark for related goods and services (e.g., “Weight-Loss Bulletin,” “Sex Bulletin,” “Muscle Bulletin,” and “Nutrition Bulletin”)); *In re Best Software Inc.*, 58 USPQ2d 1314 (TTAB 2001) (applicant’s ownership of registration of BEST! did not preclude examining attorney from requiring disclaimer of “Best” in applications seeking registration of BEST! SUPPORTPLUS and BEST! SUPPORTPLUS PREMIER for the same and additional services); *In re Sunmarks Inc.*, 32 USPQ2d 1470 (TTAB 1994) (examining attorney not precluded from refusing registration of ULTRA for “gasoline, motor oil, automotive grease, general purpose grease, machine grease and gear oil,” even though applicant owned registrations of same mark for “motor oil” and “gasoline for use as automotive fuel, sold only in applicant’s automotive service stations”); *In re Medical Disposables Co.*, 25 USPQ2d 1801 (TTAB 1992) (disclaimer of the unitary term “MEDICAL DISPOSABLES” required, notwithstanding applicant’s ownership of a prior registration in which a piecemeal disclaimer of the words “MEDICAL” and “DISPOSABLES” was permitted); *In re Perez*, 21 USPQ2d 1075 (TTAB 1991) (likelihood of confusion between applicant’s EL GALLO for fresh tomatoes and peppers and the previously registered mark ROOSTER for fresh citrus fruit, notwithstanding applicant’s ownership of an expired registration of the same mark for the same goods); *In re Lean Line, Inc.*, 229 USPQ 781 (TTAB 1986) (LEAN merely descriptive of low-calorie foods, even though applicant had registered the term for other goods and services and a third-party had registered the term “LEAN CUISINE” with no disclaimer); *In re McDonald’s Corp.*, 229 USPQ 555 (TTAB 1985) (Board not bound to allow registration of APPLE PIE TREE for restaurant services merely because applicant had succeeded in registering the character and name as trademarks and the character as a service mark); *In re Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 820 (TTAB 1984) (LAW & BUSINESS incapable of distinguishing the services of arranging and conducting seminars in the field of business law, notwithstanding applicant’s ownership of a registration on the Supplemental Register for the same mark for books, pamphlets, and monographs); *In re Local Trademarks, Inc.*, 220 USPQ 728 (TTAB 1983) (upholding refusal of registration on the ground that WHEN IT’S TIME TO ACT did not identify advertising services; Board not bound to allow registration simply because applicant owned registrations for identical services); *In re Pilon*, 195 USPQ 178 (TTAB 1977) (title of chapter or section of book not registrable, even though applicant owned prior registrations of marks comprising chapter titles). *See also In re Wilson*, 57 USPQ2d 1863 (TTAB 2001) (“reasoned decisionmaking” doctrine, which prohibits a federal agency from creating conflicting lines of precedent governing identical situations, did not entitle applicant to registration of PINE CONE BRAND for packaged fresh citrus fruit, even though USPTO issued registration for similar PINE CONE mark in 1933 despite then-existing registration for PINE CONE mark that was cited against applicant).

1216.02 Effect of “Incontestability” in Ex Parte Examination

Section 15 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1065](#), provides a procedure by which a registrant’s exclusive right to use a mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services covered by the registration can become incontestable. See [TMEP §§1605–1605.06](#) for information about the requirements for filing an affidavit of incontestability under §15.

In *Park ‘N Fly v. Dollar Park & Fly, Inc.*, 469 U.S. 189, 224 USPQ 327 (1985), the Supreme Court held that the owner of a registered mark may rely on incontestability to enjoin infringement, and that an incontestable registration, therefore, cannot be challenged on the ground that the mark is merely descriptive.

In *In re Am. Sail Training Ass’n*, 230 USPQ 879 (TTAB 1986), the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board held that an examining attorney could not require a disclaimer of “TALL SHIPS” in an application for registration of the mark RETURN OF THE TALL SHIPS, where the applicant owned an incontestable registration for the mark TALL SHIPS for the identical services. This would be a collateral attack on an incontestable registration. However, this applies only where both the marks and the goods or services are identical, and the identical part of the applied-for mark would not be considered generic. The Board noted

that the matter required to be disclaimed was “identical to the subject matter of applicant’s incontestable registration,” and that “the services described in applicant’s application are identical to those recited in the prior incontestable registration.” *Id.* at 880.

For determining likelihood of confusion, “the fact that opposer’s federally registered trademark has achieved incontestable status means that it is conclusively considered to be valid, but it does not dictate that the mark is ‘strong.’” *Safer, Inc. v. OMS Invs., Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1031, 1036 (TTAB 2010). Moreover, although “an incontestable registration may not be challenged as invalid for mere descriptiveness,” incontestability does not preclude a finding that, in terms of conceptual strength, the mark is descriptive for purposes of determining the inherent strength of a mark as a factor relevant to likelihood of confusion. *Couch/Braunsdorf Affinity, Inc. v. 12 Interactive, LLC*, 110 USPQ2d 1458, 1476-77 (TTAB 2014); *see also In re Fat Boys Water Sports LLC*, 118 USPQ2d 1511, 1517-18 (TTAB 2016) (noting that registrant’s mark was “presumptively distinctive” under Trademark Act §§7(b) and 33(a), but finding that the evidence showed that the mark was “nevertheless weak as a source indicator” for purposes of determining likelihood of confusion).

Ownership of an incontestable registration does *not* give the applicant a right to register the same mark for different goods or services, even if they are closely related to the goods or services in the incontestable registration. *See In re Save Venice N.Y. Inc.*, 259 F.3d 1346, 1353, 59 USPQ2d 1778, 1782 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (applicant’s ownership of incontestable registration of the word mark SAVE VENICE for newsletters, brochures, and fundraising services did not preclude examining attorney from refusing registration of a composite mark consisting of the phrases THE VENICE COLLECTION and SAVE VENICE INC. with an image of the winged Lion of St. Mark for different goods; “[a] registered mark is incontestable only in the form registered and for the goods or services claimed.”); *In re Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner, & Smith Inc.*, 828 F.2d 1567, 4 USPQ2d 1141 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (incontestable registration of CASH MANAGEMENT ACCOUNT for credit card services did not automatically entitle applicant to registration of the same mark for broader financial services); *In re Bose Corp.*, 772 F.2d 866, 873, 227 USPQ 1, 6-7 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (incontestable status of registration for one speaker design did not establish nonfunctionality of another speaker design with shared feature); *In re Loew’s Theatres, Inc.*, 769 F.2d 764, 226 USPQ 865 (Fed. Cir. 1985) (examining attorney could properly refuse registration on ground that mark DURANGO for chewing tobacco is primarily geographically deceptively misdescriptive, even though applicant owned incontestable registration of same mark for cigars); *In re Best Software Inc.*, 63 USPQ2d 1109, 1113 (TTAB 2002) (applicant’s ownership of incontestable registration for the mark BEST! did not preclude examining attorney from requiring disclaimer of “BEST” in applications seeking registration of BEST! IMPERATIV HRMS “for goods which, although similar, are nevertheless somewhat different”); *In re Best Software Inc.*, 58 USPQ2d 1314 (TTAB 2001) (applicant’s ownership of incontestable registration for the mark BEST! did not preclude the examining attorney from requiring disclaimer of “BEST” in applications seeking registration of BEST! SUPPORTPLUS and BEST! SUPPORTPLUS PREMIER for the same and additional services); *In re Industrie Pirelli Societa per Azioni*, 9 USPQ2d 1564 (TTAB 1988) (examining attorney could properly refuse registration on the ground that a mark is primarily merely a surname even if applicant owned incontestable registration of same mark for unrelated goods); *In re BankAmerica Corp.*, 231 USPQ 873 (TTAB 1986) (examining attorney could refuse registration of BANK OF AMERICA under §§2(e)(1) and 2(e)(2), despite applicant’s ownership of incontestable registrations of same mark for related services); *see also In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 600, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1635 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (finding that the Board did not err in declining to consider the alleged incontestability of a prior registered standard-character word mark in evaluating the genericness of the stylized form thereof in connection with the same services).

1217 Res Judicata, Collateral Estoppel, and Stare Decisis

A prior adjudication against an applicant may be dispositive of a later application for registration of the same mark on the basis of the same facts and issues, under the doctrine of res judicata, collateral estoppel, or stare decisis. Prior adjudications include decisions of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or any of the reviewing courts.

Res Judicata. Res judicata, or claim preclusion, protects against relitigation of a previously adjudicated claim between the same parties or their privies based on the same cause of action. *In re Bose Corp.*, 476 F.3d 1331, 81 USPQ2d 1748 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (stating that application for registration of speaker design is barred by Federal Circuit's 1985 decision affirming refusal of registration of the same mark for the same goods on the ground that the proposed mark was functional). A plaintiff is barred by res judicata from bringing a second action if: "(1) there is identity of parties (or their privies); (2) there has been an earlier final judgment on the merits of a claim; and (3) the second claim is based on the same set of transactional facts as the first." *Levi Strauss & Co. v. Abercrombie & Fitch Trading Co.*, 719 F.3d 1367, 1372, 107 USPQ2d 1167, 1171 (Fed. Cir. 2013) (quoting *Jet, Inc. v. Sewage Aeration Sys.*, 223 F.3d 1360, 1362, 55 USPQ2d 1854, 1856 (Fed. Cir. 2000)); *Sharp Kabushiki Kaisha v. ThinkSharp, Inc.*, 448 F.3d 1368, 1370, 79 USPQ2d 1376, 1378 (Fed. Cir. 2006); *Mayer/Berkshire Corp. v. Berkshire Fashions, Inc.*, 424 F.3d 1229, 1232, 76 USPQ2d 1310, 1312 (Fed. Cir. 2005); *Zachry Infrastructure, LLC v. Am. Infrastructure, Inc.*, 101 USPQ2d 1249 (TTAB 2011). A defendant in an earlier proceeding is precluded from bringing a later action if: "(1) the claim or defense asserted in the second action was a compulsory counterclaim that the defendant failed to assert in the first action, or (2) the claim or defense represents what is essentially a collateral attack on the first judgment." *Nasalok Coating Corp. v. Nylok Corp.*, 522 F.3d 1320, 1324, 86 USPQ2d 1369, 1372 (Fed. Cir. 2008) (finding that cancellation petitioner is barred from challenging the validity of the subject registration where the petitioner could have asserted, but did not assert, a claim of invalidity in an earlier infringement action, and noting that the cancellation petition amounted to a collateral attack on the district court's judgment).

Identity of Parties. The examining attorney should not invoke res judicata based on an inter partes case or a federal court proceeding involving the applicant, since there is no identity of parties. In this situation, the examining attorney may rely on stare decisis. *In re Alfred Dunhill Ltd.*, 224 USPQ 501, 503 n.7 (TTAB 1984); *In re Multivox Corp. of Am.*, 209 USPQ 627 (TTAB 1981); *In re Bordo Prods. Co.*, 188 USPQ 512 (TTAB 1975). Collateral estoppel may be invoked even where identity of parties is lacking, if the other prerequisites for applying the doctrine are met.

Same Set of Transactional Facts. Res judicata does not apply unless the subsequent claim is based on that same set of transactional facts as the prior claim. *Levi Strauss & Co.*, 719 F.3d at 1372, 107 USPQ2d at 1171; *see also Chutter, Inc. v. Great Concepts, LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1865, 1870 (TTAB 2016). Even when there is an identity of parties, a claim for trademark infringement is not the same as an inter partes claim for opposition or cancellation of the registration of a mark. The Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit has warned that the USPTO should use caution in applying res judicata based on an infringement action, because infringement actions and Board proceedings are "different causes of action [that] may involve different sets of transactional facts, different proofs, different burdens and different public policies. Registrability is not at issue in infringement litigation, and although the likelihood of confusion analysis presents a 'superficial similarity,' differences in transactional facts will generally avoid preclusion." *Mayer/Berkshire*, 424 F.3d at 1232, 76 USPQ2d at 1313 (citing *Jet*, 223 F.3d at 1364-65, 55 USPQ2d at 1857). *See also Nasalok*, 522 F.3d at 1324, 86 USPQ2d at 1372.

Collateral Estoppel. In the absence of res judicata, the related principle of collateral estoppel, or issue preclusion, can also bar relitigation of the same issue in a second action between the same parties or their

privies. Collateral estoppel applies where: "(1) a prior action presents an identical issue; (2) the prior action actually litigated and adjudged that issue; (3) the judgment in that prior action necessarily required determination of the identical issue; and (4) the prior action featured full representation of the estopped party." *Stephen Slesinger Inc. v. Disney Enters. Inc.*, 702 F.3d 640, 644, 105 USPQ2d 1472, 1474 (Fed. Cir. 2012); *see also Levi Strauss & Co.*, 719 F.3d at 1371, 107 USPQ2d at 1171; *Mayer/Berkshire*, 424 F.3d at 1232, 76 USPQ2d at 1313; *Jet*, 223 F.3d at 1366, 55 USPQ2d at 1859; *NH Beach Pizza LLC v. Cristy's Pizza Inc.*, 119 USPQ2d 1861, 1864 (TTAB 2016); *In re Anderson*, 101 USPQ2d 1912, 1916 (TTAB 2012). In *Lukens Inc. v. Vesper Corp.*, 1 USPQ2d 1299, 1301 (TTAB 1986), *aff'd unpub'd op.*, 831 F.2d 306 (Fed. Cir. 1987), the Board applied collateral estoppel in an opposition proceeding based on a prior judgment in an ex parte proceeding in 1957, because the applicant had appealed the decision to federal district court and, as such, had the opportunity to introduce new evidence and had a "full and fair opportunity" to litigate the issue of functionality. On the other hand, in *Flowers Indus., Inc. v. Interstate Brands Corp.*, 5 USPQ2d 1580, 1584 (TTAB 1987), the Board refused to apply collateral estoppel, distinguishing *Lukens* and noting that "the absence of a prior resort to [trial de novo in federal court] in the present case weighs heavily against the application of issue preclusion." *See also In re Cordua Rests., Inc.*, 823 F.3d 594, 601, 118 USPQ2d 1632, 1635 n.2 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (rejecting appellant's argument that an ex parte determination of registrability in a previous application was binding in a subsequent application as a matter of issue preclusion). In *In re Anderson*, 101 USPQ2d at 1917, the Board found the doctrine of collateral estoppel to be applicable and to preclude registration in an ex parte proceeding based on a final judgment involving an identical likelihood-of-confusion issue entered in a prior inter partes proceeding involving the applicant and cited registrant, and in *Zachry Infrastructure, LLC v. Am. Infrastructure, Inc.*, 101 USPQ2d 1249 (TTAB 2011), the Board determined that the district court's finding that the term AMERICAN INFRASTRUCTURE had not acquired distinctiveness was binding on the parties and the Board under the doctrine of collateral estoppel, but declined to enter judgment on the genericness claims since the district court had not addressed the issue of genericness. In *Nextel Commc'ns, Inc. v. Motorola, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1393, 1399 (TTAB 2009), the Board found issue preclusion and entered judgment in favor of opposer on the issue of whether applicant's 911 Hz chirp sound functioned as a mark for applicant's two-way radios, based on an earlier opposition proceeding involving the same parties and nearly the same proposed mark, but found issue preclusion inapplicable as to other goods that were not at issue in the earlier proceeding. In *Daimler Chrysler Corp. v. Maydak*, 86 USPQ2d 1945, 1950 (TTAB 2008), the Board held that it did not need to decide a collateral estoppel claim where a permanent injunction issued during civil litigation between the parties prohibits the applicant from using or registering the mark for any products or services, therefore, making its registration by the applicant "a legal impossibility."

Stare Decisis. Stare decisis provides that when a court has once laid down a principle of law as applicable to a certain set of facts, it will adhere to that principle, and apply it to all future cases, where the facts are substantially the same, regardless of whether the parties and properties are the same. *In re Johanna Farms Inc.*, 8 USPQ2d 1408, 1410 (TTAB 1988).

Changed Circumstances. All these doctrines are discretionary and will not be applied where circumstances relating to trademark use and consumer recognition have changed since the prior judgment was rendered. *See In re Honeywell Inc.*, 8 USPQ2d 1600, 1602–03 (TTAB 1988) (finding that res judicata did not preclude application for registration of a configuration of a circular thermostat cover based on prior decisions holding the design functional, where the marks were somewhat different, and the applicant presented evidence that conditions in the marketplace had changed in the seventeen years since the record in its prior application closed); *Johanna Farms*, 8 USPQ2d at 1411-12 (stating that stare decisis did not preclude registration of LA YOGURT for yogurt under §2(f) based on a prior decision holding the mark unregistrable on the Supplemental Register, where applicant submitted additional evidence in the nature of a survey and consumer letters dealing with the question of how purchasers perceive the proposed mark); *Flowers Indus.*, 5 USPQ2d at 1584 (finding that application for registration of HONEY WHEAT for bread under §2(f) is not precluded

by a forty-year old Commissioner's decision affirming a refusal of registration of the same mark on the same grounds, because the applicant had now used the proposed mark for more than fifty years, whereas its predecessor had used it for only ten years at the time of the earlier decision); *Bordo Prods.*, 188 USPQ at 514 (holding that application for registration of BORDO for pitted dates is not precluded by decision in an opposition by the owner of the cited registration against applicant's earlier application for the same mark for the same goods due to changed circumstances based on affidavits that the goods move through different channels of trade, evidence of contemporaneous use for over fifty years with no known actual confusion, and failure of the owner of the cited registration to take steps to enjoin applicant from using the mark).

In *Bose*, 476 F.3d at 1334, 81 USPQ2d at 1751, the applicant argued that facts and circumstances had changed since the prior decision in that: (1) the Court did not explicitly consider the "curved front edge" of the design in the prior decision; (2) there had been a change in the legal standard for functionality, in view of the Supreme Court's decision in *Traffix Devices, Inc. v. Mktg. Displays, Inc.*, 532 U.S. 23, 58 USPQ2d 1001 (2001); and (3) applicant had "presented additional evidence, such as the absence of promotional material that 'touts' the utilitarian aspects of the mark." The Court rejected these arguments, noting that it had acknowledged in the prior decision that the design includes a "bowed front edge," and "bowed" is simply another term for "curved;" that *Traffix* did not affect the prior functionality analysis and provides further support for finding that Bose's design is functional; and that the focus on advertising materials, which do not promote the utilitarian aspects of the curved front edge, is not relevant because the proposed mark is an entire pentagonal-shaped design and not merely the curved front edge, and the promotional advertisements submitted in the earlier case "did clearly promote the functional reason for the overall design." *Bose*, 476 F.3d at 1335-37, 81 USQP2d at 1752-53.

Slight differences in a mark or in an identification of goods or services will not avoid application of these doctrines. *In re Orion Research Inc.*, 669 F.2d 689, 205 USPQ 688 (C.C.P.A. 1980) ; *Miller Brewing Co. v. Coy Int'l Corp.*, 230 USPQ 675 (TTAB 1986) . *See also MasterCard Int'l Inc. v. Am. Express Co.*, 14 USPQ2d 1551, 1553 (TTAB 1990) (finding that applicant is barred by collateral estoppel from litigating the issue of descriptiveness or genericness of the proposed mark as used on the services that were the subject of the prior proceeding, but may go forward with respect to use of the mark on other services).

Final Decision Required. These doctrines should be invoked only after the time for further court review has expired and no such review has been sought or, if sought, the review action has been terminated. If a proceeding is pending, the examining attorney may suspend action on the application pending termination, once all other matters are in condition for publication or final refusal. See [TMEP §716.02\(d\)](#) regarding suspension.

Examining Attorney Should Issue Appropriate Refusals. The examining attorney should issue refusals based on res judicata, collateral estoppel, or stare decisis, as appropriate, but should not rely exclusively on such doctrines. Even if the examining attorney believes that registration is barred by one of these doctrines, he or she must also issue and provide full evidentiary support for any relevant substantive refusals.

Chapter 1300 Service Marks, Collective Marks, and Certification Marks

1301	Service Marks
1301.01	What Is a Service?
1301.01(a)	Criteria for Determining What Constitutes a Service
1301.01(a)(i)	Performance of a Real Activity
1301.01(a)(ii)	For the Benefit of Others
1301.01(a)(iii)	Sufficiently Distinct from Activities Involved in Provision of Goods or Performance of Other Services
1301.01(b)	Whether Particular Activities Constitute “Services”
1301.01(b)(i)	Contests and Promotional Activities
1301.01(b)(ii)	Warranty or Guarantee of Repair
1301.01(b)(iii)	Publishing One’s Own Periodical
1301.01(b)(iv)	Soliciting Investors
1301.01(b)(v)	Informational Services Ancillary to the Sale of Goods
1301.01(b)(vi)	Clinical Trials
1301.02	What Is a Service Mark?
1301.02(a)	Matter that Does Not Function as a Service Mark
1301.02(b)	Names of Characters or Personal Names as Service Marks
1301.02(c)	Three-Dimensional Service Marks
1301.02(d)	Titles of Radio and Television Programs
1301.02(e)	Process, System, or Method
1301.02(f)	Computer Software
1301.03	Use of Service Mark in Commerce
1301.03(a)	Use of Service Mark in Advertising to Identify Services
1301.03(b)	Rendering of Service in Commerce Regulable by Congress
1301.04	Specimens of Use for Service Marks
1301.04(a)	Whether the Specimen Shows the Mark as Actually Used by the Applicant in Commerce in the Sale or Advertising of the Services
1301.04(b)	Whether the Identified Services Are Registrable Services
1301.04(c)	Whether the Specimen Shows Use in Connection with All Classes in a Multiple-Class Application
1301.04(d)	Whether the Mark Is Used in Connection With the Identified Services
1301.04(e)	Whether the Mark Functions as a Service Mark
1301.04(f)	Elements of an Acceptable Service-Mark Specimen
1301.04(f)(i)	Show the Mark
1301.04(f)(ii)	Associate the Mark with the Identified Services
1301.04(g)	Grounds for Refusal
1301.04(g)(i)	Failure to Show the Mark Used in Commerce
1301.04(g)(ii)	Failure to Show the Mark Functioning as a Service Mark
1301.04(h)	Considerations and Common Issues when Examining Certain Specimens
1301.04(h)(i)	Letterhead
1301.04(h)(ii)	Specimens for Entertainment Services
1301.04(h)(iii)	Specimens for Technology-Related Services
1301.04(h)(iv)	Common Forms of Specimens for Modern Technology-Related Services
1301.04(h)(iv)(A)	Sign-In Screens
1301.04(h)(iv)(B)	Title or Launch Screens
1301.04(h)(iv)(C)	Webpages
1301.04(h)(iv)(D)	Software Applications (“Apps”)
1301.04(i)	Examples of Acceptable Service-Mark Specimens
1301.04(j)	Examples of Unacceptable Service-Mark Specimens

1301.05	Identification and Classification of Services
1302	Collective Marks Generally
1302.01	Brief History of Collective Marks
1303	Collective Trademarks and Collective Service Marks Generally
1303.01	Application Requirements for a Collective Trademark or Collective Service Mark
1303.01(a)	Filing Basis
1303.01(a)(i)	Use in Commerce – §1(a)
1303.01(a)(i)(A)	Manner/Method of Control
1303.01(a)(i)(B)	Dates of Use
1303.01(a)(i)(C)	Specimens
1303.01(a)(ii)	Intent to Use – §1(b)
1303.01(a)(iii)	Foreign Priority – §44(d)
1303.01(a)(iv)	Foreign Registration – §44(e)
1303.01(a)(iv)(A)	Scope of Foreign Registration
1303.01(a)(v)	Extension of Protection of International Registration – §66(a)
1303.01(a)(vi)	Multiple Bases, Amending/Deleting the Basis, Review of Basis Prior to Publication/Issue
1303.01(b)	Verification of Certain Statements
1303.01(b)(i)	Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application
1303.01(b)(ii)	Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §66(a) Application
1303.02	Examination of Collective Trademark and Collective Service Mark Applications
1303.02(a)	Ownership Considerations
1303.02(b)	Likelihood of Confusion
1304	Collective Membership Marks
1304.01	Collective Membership Marks Generally
1304.02	Application Requirements for Collective Membership Marks
1304.02(a)	Filing Basis
1304.02(a)(i)	Use in Commerce – §1(a)
1304.02(a)(i)(A)	Manner/Method of Control
1304.02(a)(i)(B)	Dates of Use
1304.02(a)(i)(C)	Specimens
1304.02(a)(ii)	Intent to Use – §1(b)
1304.02(a)(iii)	Foreign Priority – §44(d)
1304.02(a)(iv)	Foreign Registration – §44(e)
1304.02(a)(iv)(A)	Scope of Foreign Registration
1304.02(a)(v)	Extension of Protection of International Registration – §66(a)
1304.02(a)(vi)	Multiple Bases, Amending/Deleting the Basis, Review of Basis Prior to Publication/Issue
1304.02(b)	Verification of Certain Statements
1304.02(b)(i)	Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application
1304.02(b)(ii)	Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §66(a) Application
1304.02(c)	Identification of Nature of Collective Membership Organization
1304.02(d)	Classification
1304.03	Examination of Collective Membership Mark Applications
1304.03(a)	Ownership Considerations
1304.03(b)	Specimen Refusals Specific to Collective Membership Marks
1304.03(b)(i)	Matter that Does Not Function as a Membership Mark

1304.03(b)(ii)	Degree or Title Designations
1304.03(c)	Likelihood of Confusion
1305	Trademarks and Service Marks Used by Collective Organizations
1306	Certification Marks
1306.01	Types of Certification Marks
1306.01(a)	Use Is by Person Other than Owner of Certification Mark
1306.01(b)	Purpose Is to Certify, Not to Indicate Source
1306.01(c)	Identifying Certification Mark Applications
1306.02	Application Requirements for a Certification Mark
1306.02(a)	Filing Basis
1306.02(a)(i)	Use in Commerce – §1(a)
1306.02(a)(i)(A)	Dates of Use
1306.02(a)(i)(B)	Specimens
1306.02(a)(ii)	Intent to Use – §1(b)
1306.02(a)(iii)	Foreign Priority – §44(d)
1306.02(a)(iv)	Foreign Registration – §44(e)
1306.02(a)(iv)(A)	Scope of Foreign Registration
1306.02(a)(v)	Extension of Protection of International Registration – §66(a)
1306.02(a)(vi)	Multiple Bases, Amending/Deleting the Basis, Review of Basis Prior to Publication/Issue
1306.02(b)	Verification of Certain Statements
1306.02(b)(i)	Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application
1306.02(b)(ii)	Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §66(a) Application
1306.02(c)	Identification of Goods and Services of the Authorized Users
1306.02(d)	Classification
1306.03	Special Elements of Certification Mark Applications
1306.03(a)	Certification Statement
1306.03(b)	Certification Standards – Required for §1(a) Applications and Allegations of Use Only
1306.03(c)	Statement that Applicant Is Not Engaged in (or Will not Engage in) Production or Marketing of the Goods/Services
1306.04	Examination of Certification Mark Applications
1306.04(a)	Compare the Mark on the Drawing to the Specimen for §1(a)
1306.04(b)	Ownership
1306.04(b)(i)	Exercise of Control
1306.04(b)(ii)	Distinguishing Certification Mark Use from Related-Company Use of Trademark or Service Mark
1306.04(b)(iii)	Patent Licenses
1306.04(c)	Characteristics of Certification Marks – Specimen Shows Mark Functions as a Certification Mark
1306.04(d)	Specimen Refusals Specific to Certification Marks
1306.04(d)(i)	Whether Certification Mark and Trademark or Service Mark Appear on Specimen Together
1306.04(d)(ii)	Specimen Shows Use as Title or Degree for Certification Mark Certifying that Labor Was Performed by Specific Group or Individual
1306.04(e)	Relationship of §14 (Cancellation)
1306.04(f)	Same Mark Not Registrable as Certification Mark and as Any Other Type of Mark

1306.04(f)(i)	Cancellation of Applicant’s Prior Registration Required by Change from Certification Mark Use to Trademark or Service Mark Use, or Vice Versa
1306.05	Geographic Certification Marks
1306.05(a)	Geographic Certification Marks – Generally
1306.05(b)	Additional Considerations in Geographic Certification Mark Applications
1306.05(b)(i)	Certification Statement
1306.05(b)(ii)	Authority to Control a Geographic Certification Mark
1306.05(b)(iii)	Specimens
1306.05(c)	Mark Must Serve to Certify Geographic Origin
1306.05(d)	Section 2(e)(2) Does Not Apply to Geographic Certification Marks
1306.05(e)	Geographically Deceptive Marks Not Registrable as Geographic Certification Marks
1306.05(f)	Geographic Designations that Do Not Certify Regional Origin
1306.05(g)	Likelihood-of-Confusion Search and Analysis
1306.05(g)(i)	Considerations When the Proposed Mark Is a Geographic Certification Mark
1306.05(g)(ii)	Considerations When the Proposed Mark Contains a Geographic Designation but Is Not a Geographic Certification Mark
1306.05(h)	American Viticultural Areas
1306.05(i)	Geographic Certification Marks Containing §2(b) Matter
1306.05(j)	Examples of Geographic Certification Marks
1306.06	Uncertainty Regarding Type of Mark
1306.06(a)	Distinction Between Certification Mark and Collective Mark
1306.06(b)	Amendment to Different Type of Mark
1306.06(c)	Registration as Correct Type of Mark

The Trademark Act of 1946 provides for registration of trademarks, service marks, collective trademarks, and service marks, collective membership marks, and certification marks. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1053, and 1054](#). The language of this Manual is generally directed to trademarks. Procedures for trademarks usually apply to other types of marks, unless otherwise stated. This chapter is devoted to special circumstances relating to service marks, collective marks, collective membership marks, and certification marks.

1301 Service Marks

Section 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines “service mark” as follows:

The term “service mark” means any word, name, symbol, or device, or any combination thereof--

- (1) used by a person, or
- (2) which a person has a bona fide intention to use in commerce and applies to register on the principal register established by this [Act],

to identify and distinguish the services of one person, including a unique service, from the services of others and to indicate the source of the services, even if that source is unknown. Titles, character names, and other distinctive features of radio or television programs may be registered as service marks notwithstanding that they, or the programs, may advertise the goods of the sponsor.

Therefore, to be registrable as a service mark, the asserted mark must function both to *identify* the services recited in the application *and distinguish* them from the services of others, and to *indicate the source* of

the recited services, even if that source is unknown. The activities recited in the identification must constitute services as contemplated by the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §§1301.01 et seq.](#)

If a proposed mark does not function as a service mark for the services recited, or if the applicant is not rendering a registrable service, the statutory basis for refusal of registration on the Principal Register is §§1, 2, 3, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127.](#)

See [TMEP §1303](#) concerning collective service marks.

1301.01 What Is a Service?

A service mark can only be registered for activities that constitute services as contemplated by the Trademark Act. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1053, and 1127.](#) The Trademark Act defines the term “service mark,” but it does not define what constitutes a service. Many activities are obviously services (e.g., dry cleaning, banking, shoe repairing, transportation, and house painting).

1301.01(a) Criteria for Determining What Constitutes a Service

The following criteria have evolved for determining what constitutes a service: (1) a service must be a real activity; (2) a service must be performed to the order of, or for the benefit of, someone other than the applicant; and (3) the activity performed must be qualitatively different from anything necessarily done in connection with the sale of the applicant’s goods or the performance of another service. *In re Canadian Pac. Ltd.*, 754 F.2d 992, 224 USPQ 971 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re Betz Paperchem, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 89 (TTAB 1984); *In re Integrated Res., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 829 (TTAB 1983); *In re Landmark Commc'ns, Inc.*, 204 USPQ 692 (TTAB 1979) .

1301.01(a)(i) Performance of a Real Activity

A service must be a real activity. A mere idea or concept, e.g., an idea for an accounting organizational format or a recipe for a baked item, is not a service. Similarly, a system, process, or method is not a service.

In re Universal Oil Prods. Co., 476 F.2d 653, 177 USPQ 456 (C.C.P.A. 1973); *In re Citibank, N.A.*, 225 USPQ 612 (TTAB 1985); *In re Scientific Methods, Inc.*, 201 USPQ 917 (TTAB 1979); *In re McCormick & Co.*, 179 USPQ 317 (TTAB 1973). See [TMEP §1301.02\(e\)](#) regarding marks that identify a system or process.

The commercial context must be considered in determining whether a real service is being performed. For example, at one time the activities of grocery stores, department stores, and similar retail stores were not considered to be services. However, it has long been recognized that gathering various products together, making a place available for purchasers to select goods, and providing any other necessary means for consummating purchases constitutes the performance of a service.

1301.01(a)(ii) For the Benefit of Others

To be a service, an activity must be primarily for the benefit of someone other than the applicant. While an advertising agency provides a service when it promotes the goods or services of its clients, a company that promotes the sale of its own goods or services is doing so for its own benefit rather than rendering a service for others. *In re Reichhold Chems., Inc.*, 167 USPQ 376 (TTAB 1970) ; see [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(i\)](#). Similarly, a company that sets up a personnel department to employ workers for itself is merely facilitating

the conduct of its own business, while a company whose business is to recruit and place workers for other companies is performing employment agency services.

The controlling question is who *primarily* benefits from the activity for which registration is sought. If the activity is done primarily for the benefit of others, the fact that applicant derives an incidental benefit is not fatal. *In re Venture Lending Assocs.*, 226 USPQ 285 (TTAB 1985). On the other hand, if the activity primarily benefits applicant, it is not a registrable service even if others derive an incidental benefit. *In re Dr. Pepper Co.*, 836 F.2d 508, 5 USPQ2d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (contest promoting applicant's goods not a service, even though benefits accrue to winners of contest); *City Nat'l Bank v. OPGI Mgmt. GP Inc./Gestion OPGI Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d 1668, 1676 (TTAB 2013) (finding that intranet website was used solely for internal purposes and that respondent was primary beneficiary); *In re Alaska Nw. Publ'g Co.*, 212 USPQ 316, 317 (TTAB 1981) (stating that “[t]he that the activities and operations associated with the production, advertising or sale of the product may be indirectly beneficial to purchasers of the product is immaterial to the question of registrability of the mark as a service mark”).

Collecting information for the purpose of publishing one's own periodical is not a service because it is done primarily for the applicant's benefit rather than for the benefit of others. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

Offering shares of one's own stock for investment is not a service because these are routine corporate activities that primarily benefit the applicant. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(iv\)](#). On the other hand, offering a retirement income plan to applicant's employees was found to be a service, because it primarily benefits the employees. *Am. Int'l Reins. Co. v. Airco, Inc.*, 570 F.2d 941, 197 USPQ 69 (C.C.P.A. 1978).

Licensing intangible property has been recognized as a separate service, analogous to leasing or renting tangible property, that primarily benefits the licensee. *In re Universal Press Syndicate*, 229 USPQ 638 (TTAB 1986).

See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(vi\)](#) regarding conducting clinical trials.

1301.01(a)(iii) Sufficiently Distinct from Activities Involved in Provision of Goods or Performance of Other Services

In determining whether an activity is sufficiently separate from an applicant's principal activity to constitute a service, the examining attorney must first ascertain the nature of the applicant's principal activity under the mark in question (i.e., the performance of a service or the provision of a tangible product). The examining attorney must then determine whether the activity identified in the application is in any material way a different kind of economic activity than what any provider of that particular product or service normally provides. *In re Landmark Commc'ns, Inc.*, 204 USPQ 692, 695 (TTAB 1979). The identification of goods/services, specimen of use, or other information in the application record may indicate whether the activity identified in the application is a separately registrable service. If necessary, the examining attorney should request additional information, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), to determine if the activity constitutes a service as contemplated by the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §814](#).

For example, operating a grocery store is clearly a service. Bagging groceries for customers is not considered a separately registrable service, because this activity is normally provided to and expected by grocery store customers, and is, therefore, merely ancillary to the primary service.

Providing general information or instructions as to the purpose and uses of applicant's goods is merely incidental to the sale of goods, not a separate consulting service. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(v\)](#).

Conducting clinical trials for one's own pharmaceuticals is generally considered to be a normally expected and routine activity that is not separately registrable from the principal activity of providing the goods themselves because the U.S. Food and Drug Administration legally requires clinical trials as a prerequisite of pharmaceutical approval. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(vi\)](#).

Conducting a contest to promote the sale of one's own goods or services is usually not considered a service, because it is an ordinary and routine promotional activity. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(i\)](#).

While the repair of the goods of others is a recognized service, an applicant's guarantee of repair of its own goods generally does not constitute a separate service, because that activity is ancillary to the principal activity of providing the goods and normally expected in the trade. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#).

However, the fact that an activity is ancillary to a principal service or to the sale of goods does not in itself mean that it is not a separately registrable service. The statute makes no distinction between primary, incidental, or ancillary services. *In re Universal Press Syndicate*, 229 USPQ 638 (TTAB 1986) (licensing cartoon character found to be a separate service that was not merely incidental or necessary to larger business of magazine and newspaper cartoon strip); *In re Betz Paperchem, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 89 (TTAB 1984) (chemical manufacturer's feed, delivery, and storage of liquid chemical products held to constitute separate service, because applicant's activities extend beyond routine sale of chemicals); *In re Congoleum Corp.*, 222 USPQ 452 (TTAB 1984) (awarding prizes to retailers for purchasing applicant's goods from distributors held to be sufficiently separate from the sale of goods to constitute a service rendered to distributors, because it confers a benefit on distributors that is not normally expected by distributors in the relevant industry); *In re C.I.T. Fin. Corp.*, 201 USPQ 124 (TTAB 1978) (computerized financial data-processing services rendered to applicant's loan customers held to be a registrable service, since it provides benefits that were not previously available, and is separate and distinct from the primary service of making consumer loans); *In re U.S. Home Corp. of Tex.*, 199 USPQ 698 (TTAB 1978) (planning and laying out residential communities for others was found to be a service, because it goes above and beyond what the average individual would do in constructing and selling a home on a piece of land that he or she has purchased); *In re John Breuner Co.*, 136 USPQ 94 (TTAB 1963) (credit services provided by a retail store constitute a separate service, since extension of credit is neither mandatory nor required in the operation of a retail establishment).

The fact that the activities are offered only to purchasers of the applicant's primary product or service does not necessarily mean that the activity is not a service. *In re Otis Eng'g Corp.*, 217 USPQ 278 (TTAB 1982) (quality control and quality assurance services held to constitute a registrable service even though the services were limited to applicant's own equipment); *In re John Breuner Co.*, 136 USPQ at 95 (credit services offered only to customers of applicant's retail store found to be a service).

The fact that the services for which registration is sought are offered to a different class of purchasers than the purchasers of applicant's primary product or service is also a factor to be considered. *In re Forbes Inc.*, 31 USPQ2d 1315 (TTAB 1994); *In re Home Builders Ass'n of Greenville*, 18 USPQ2d 1313 (TTAB 1990).

Another factor to be considered in determining whether an activity is a registrable service is the use of a mark different from the mark used on or in connection with the applicant's principal product or service.

See *In re Mitsubishi Motor Sales of Am. Inc.*, 11 USPQ2d 1312, 1314-15 (TTAB 1989); *In re Universal Press Syndicate*, 229 USPQ at 640; *In re Congoleum Corp.*, 222 USPQ at 453-54; *In re C.I.T. Fin. Corp.*, 201 USPQ at 126. However, an activity that is normally expected or routinely done in connection with sale of a product or another service is not a registrable service even if it is identified by a different mark. *In re Dr. Pepper Co.*, 836 F.2d 508, 5 USPQ2d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *In re Television Digest, Inc.*, 169 USPQ 505 (TTAB 1971). Moreover, the mark identifying the ancillary service does not have to be different from

the mark identifying the applicant's goods or primary service. *Ex parte Handmacher-Vogel, Inc.*, 98 USPQ 413 (Comm'r Pats. 1953).

1301.01(b) Whether Particular Activities Constitute “Services”

1301.01(b)(i) Contests and Promotional Activities

It is well settled that the promotion of one's own goods is not a service. *In re Radio Corp. of Am.*, 205 F.2d 180, 98 USPQ 157 (C.C.P.A. 1953) (record manufacturer who prepares radio programs primarily designed to advertise and sell records is not rendering a service); *In re SCM Corp.*, 209 USPQ 278 (TTAB 1980) (supplying merchandising aids and store displays to retailers does not constitute separate service); *Ex parte Wembley, Inc.*, 111 USPQ 386 (Comm'r Pats. 1956) (national advertising program designed to sell manufacturer's goods to ultimate purchasers is not service to wholesalers and retailers, because national product advertising is normally expected of manufacturers of nationally distributed products, and is done in furtherance of the sale of the advertised products).

However, an activity that goes above and beyond what is normally expected of a manufacturer in the relevant industry may be a registrable service, even if it also serves to promote the applicant's primary product or service. *In re U.S. Tobacco Co.*, 1 USPQ2d 1502 (TTAB 1986) (tobacco company's participating in auto race held to constitute an entertainment service, because participating in an auto race is not an activity that a seller of tobacco normally does); *In re Heavenly Creations, Inc.*, 168 USPQ 317 (TTAB 1971) (applicant's free hairstyling instructional parties found to be a service separate from the applicant's sale of wigs, because it goes beyond what a seller of wigs would normally do in promoting its goods); *Ex parte Handmacher-Vogel, Inc.*, 98 USPQ 413 (Comm'r Pats. 1953) (clothing manufacturer's conducting women's golf tournaments held to be a service, because it is not an activity normally expected in promoting the sale of women's clothing).

Conducting a contest to promote the sale of one's own goods is usually not considered a service, even though benefits may accrue to the winners of the contest. Such a contest is usually ancillary to the sale of goods or services, and is nothing more than a device to advertise the applicant's products or services. *In re Dr. Pepper Co.*, 836 F.2d 508, 5 USPQ2d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *In re Loew's Theatres, Inc.*, 179 USPQ 126 (TTAB 1973); *In re Johnson Publ'g Co.*, 130 USPQ 185 (TTAB 1961). However, a contest that serves to promote the sale of the applicant's goods may be registrable if it operates in a way that confers a benefit unrelated to the sale of the goods, and the benefit is not one that is normally expected of a manufacturer in that field. *In re Congoleum Corp.*, 222 USPQ 452 (TTAB 1984).

A mark identifying a beauty contest is registrable either as a promotional service, rendered by the organizer of the contest to the businesses or groups that sponsor the contest, or as an entertainment service. *In re Miss Am. Teen-Ager, Inc.*, 137 USPQ 82 (TTAB 1963). See [TMEP §1402.11](#).

See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding the providing of advertising space in a periodical.

1301.01(b)(ii) Warranty or Guarantee of Repair

While the repair of the goods of others is a recognized service, an applicant's guarantee of repair of its own goods does not normally constitute a separate service, because that activity is ancillary to and normally expected in the trade. *In re Orion Research Inc.*, 669 F.2d 689, 205 USPQ 688 (C.C.P.A. 1980) (guarantee of repair or replacement of applicant's goods that is not separately offered, promoted, or charged for is not

a service); *In re Lenox, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 966 (TTAB 1986) (lifetime warranty that is not separately offered, promoted, or charged for is not a service).

However, a warranty that is offered or charged for separately from the goods, or is sufficiently above and beyond what is normally expected in the industry, may constitute a service. *In re Mitsubishi Motor Sales of Am., Inc.*, 11 USPQ2d 1312 (TTAB 1989) (comprehensive automobile vehicle preparation, sales, and service program held to be a service, where applicant's package included features that were unique and would not normally be expected in the industry); *In re Sun Valley Waterbeds Inc.*, 7 USPQ2d 1825 (TTAB 1988) (retailer's extended warranty for goods manufactured by others held to be a service, where the warranty is considerably more extensive than that offered by others); *In re Otis Eng'g Corp.*, 217 USPQ 278 (TTAB 1982) (non-mandatory quality control and quality assurance services held to constitute a registrable service even though the services were limited to applicant's own equipment, where the services were separately charged for, the goods were offered for sale without services, and the services were not merely a time limited manufacturer's guarantee).

Providing warranties to consumers and retailers on power-operated outdoor products was held to be a registrable service where the warranty covered goods manufactured by applicant but sold under the marks of third-party retailers. Noting that none of applicant's trademarks appeared on the goods or identified applicant as the source of the goods, the Board found that the third-party retailers rather than applicant would be regarded as the manufacturer of the products. Because purchasers would make a distinction between the provider of the warranty and the provider of the goods, applicant's warranty service would not be regarded as merely an inducement to purchase its own goods. The Board also noted that applicant's activities constitute a service to the third-party retailers, because applicant's provision of warranties avoids the need of the retailer itself to provide a warranty. *In re Husqvarna Aktiebolag*, 91 USPQ2d 1436 (TTAB 2009) .

When an applicant offers a warranty on its own goods or services, the identification of services must include the word "extended," or similar wording, to indicate that the warranty is "qualitatively different" from a warranty normally provided ancillary to the sale of the applicant's goods/services. When an applicant offers a warranty on third-party goods, the identification of services must so indicate. *See In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (affirming that the USPTO has the discretion to determine whether and how a trademark registration should include a more particularized identification of the goods for which a mark is used).

The identification of services must also specify the item(s) that the extended warranty covers, e.g., "providing extended warranties on television sets." *Id.*

Extended warranty services are classified in Class 36.

1301.01(b)(iii) Publishing One's Own Periodical

The publication of one's own periodical is not a service, because it is done primarily for applicant's own benefit and not for the benefit of others. *In re Billfish Int'l Corp.*, 229 USPQ 152 (TTAB 1986) (activities of collecting, distributing, and soliciting information relating to billfishing tournaments for a periodical publication not a separate service, because these are necessary preliminary activities that a publisher must perform prior to publication and sale of publication); *In re Alaska Nw. Publ'g Co.*, 212 USPQ 316 (TTAB 1981) (title of magazine section not registrable for magazine publishing services, because the activities and operations associated with designing, producing, and promoting applicant's own product are ancillary activities that would be expected by purchasers and readers of any magazine); *In re Landmark Commc'ns, Inc.*, 204 USPQ 692 (TTAB 1979) (title of newspaper section not registrable as service mark for educational or entertainment service, because collected articles, stories, reports, comics, advertising, and illustrations

are indispensable components of newspapers without which newspapers would not be sold); *In re Television Digest, Inc.*, 169 USPQ 505 (TTAB 1971) (calculating advertising rates for a trade publication not a registrable service, because this is an integral part of the production or operation of any publication).

However, providing advertising space in one's own periodical may be a registrable service, if the advertising activities are sufficiently separate from the applicant's publishing activities. *In re Forbes Inc.*, 31 USPQ2d 1315 (TTAB 1994) ("providing advertising space in a periodical" held to be a registrable service, where the advertising services were rendered to a different segment of the public under a different mark than the mark used to identify applicant's magazines); *In re Home Builders Ass'n of Greenville*, 18 USPQ2d 1313 (TTAB 1990) (real estate advertising services rendered by soliciting advertisements and publishing a guide comprising the advertisements of others held to be a registrable service, where advertising was found to be the applicant's primary activity, and the customers who received the publication were not the same as those to whom the advertising services were rendered).

1301.01(b)(iv) Soliciting Investors

Offering shares of one's own stock for investment and reinvestment, and publication of reports to one's own shareholders, are not services, because these are routine corporate activities that primarily benefit the applicant. *In re Canadian Pac. Ltd.*, 754 F.2d 992, 224 USPQ 971 (Fed. Cir. 1985). Similarly, soliciting investors in applicant's own partnership is not a registrable service. *In re Integrated Res., Inc.*, 218 USPQ 829 (TTAB 1983) (syndicating investment partnerships did not constitute a service within the meaning of the Trademark Act, because there was no evidence that the applicant was in the business of syndicating the investment partnerships of others; rather, the applicant partnership was engaged only in syndication of interests in its own organization). On the other hand, investing the funds of others is a registrable service that primarily benefits others. *In re Venture Lending Assocs.*, 226 USPQ 285 (TTAB 1985) (investment of funds of institutional investors and providing capital for management found to be a registrable service).

In Canadian Pacific, 224 USPQ at 974, the court noted that since shareholders are owners of the corporation, an applicant who offers a reinvestment plan to its stockholders is essentially offering the plan to itself and not to a segment of the buying public. The court distinguished *American Int'l Reinsurance Co., v. Airco, Inc.*, 570 F.2d 941, 197 USPQ 69 (C.C.P.A. 1978), in which offering an optional retirement plan to applicant's employees was found to be a registrable service that primarily benefits the employees.

1301.01(b)(v) Informational Services Ancillary to the Sale of Goods

Providing general information or instructions as to the purpose and uses of applicant's goods is merely incidental to the sale of goods, not a separate informational service. *In re Moore Bus. Forms Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1638 (TTAB 1992) (paper manufacturer who rates the recycled content and recyclability of its own products is merely providing information about its goods, not rendering a service to others); *In re Reichhold Chems., Inc.*, 167 USPQ 376 (TTAB 1970) ("promoting the sale and use of chemicals" is not a registrable service, where applicant is merely providing "technical bulletins" that contain information about its own products); *Ex parte Armco Steel Corp.*, 102 USPQ 124 (Comm'r Pats. 1954) (analyzing the needs of customers is not registrable as a consulting service, because it is an ordinary activity that is normally expected of a manufacturer selling goods); *Ex parte Elwell-Parker Elec. Co.*, 93 USPQ 229 (Comm'r Pats. 1952) (providing incidental instructions on the efficient use of applicant's goods not a service). However, an applicant's free hairstyling instructional "parties" were found to be a service, because conducting parties goes beyond what a seller of wigs would normally do in promoting its goods. *In re Heavenly Creations, Inc.*, 168 USPQ 317 (TTAB 1971).

1301.01(b)(vi) Clinical Trials

Because conducting clinical trials necessary for governmental approval of one's own pharmaceuticals generally is a normally expected, routine, and legally required activity in connection with the sale of pharmaceuticals, it is not a separate registrable service done primarily for the benefit of others. *Cf. In re Dr Pepper Co.*, 836 F.2d 508, 509, 5 USPQ2d 1207, 1208 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (“[I]t has become a settled principle that the rendering of a service which is normally ‘expected or routine’ in connection with the sale of one's own goods is not a registrable service whether denominated by the same or a different name from the trademark for its product.”); *In re Landmark Commc’ns, Inc.*, 204 USPQ 692, 695 (TTAB 1979) (noting that “to be separately recognizable, as services, an applicant’s activity must be qualitatively different from anything necessarily done in connection with the sale of goods”).

Pharmaceutical companies are legally required to conduct clinical trials before pharmaceutical preparations can be approved for human use. See U.S. Food & Drug Admin., *What is the Approval Process for a New Prescription Drug?*, <http://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/Transparency/Basics/ucm194949.htm> (accessed Sept. 2, 2014); see also 21 C.F.R. §312.21 (explaining the three phases of clinical trials for a previously untested drug). An activity or process that is necessary or legally required for an applicant to be able to provide the main product or service is not separable from the main product or service. See *In re Orion Research, Inc.*, 523 F.2d 1398, 1400, 187 USPQ 485, 486-87 (C.C.P.A. 1975) (holding a warranty to repair or replace one's own merchandise to be a normally expected and legally required duty of a merchandiser and not a separate and registrable service); *In re Television Digest, Inc.*, 169 USPQ 505, 508 (TTAB 1971) (noting that providing a schedule of advertising rates is necessary for publishing a directory or magazine and is not a separate service). Therefore, since conducting a clinical trial is a legally required prerequisite to pharmaceutical sales, when this service is conducted by a pharmaceutical company for its own goods, it is an expected and mandated activity not separately registrable from the principal activity of providing the pharmaceutical preparations themselves.

Accordingly, when registration is sought for a mark used in connection with the conducting of pharmaceutical clinical trials, the examining attorney must ascertain whether the services are provided for the pharmaceuticals of others. If the record is unclear, the examining attorney should request additional information, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), to clarify whether the pharmaceutical clinical trials are registrable services as contemplated by the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §814](#).

1301.02 What Is a Service Mark?

Not every word, combination of words, or other designation used in the performance or advertising of services is registrable as a service mark. To function as a service mark, the asserted mark must be used in a way that identifies and distinguishes the source of the services recited in the application. Even if it is clear that the applicant is rendering a service (see [TMEP §§1301.01 et seq.](#)), the record must show that the asserted mark actually identifies and distinguishes the source of the service recited in the application. *In re Adver. & Mktg. Dev. Inc.*, 821 F.2d 614, 2 USPQ2d 2010 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (stationery specimen showed use of THE NOW GENERATION as a mark for applicant's advertising or promotional services as well as to identify a licensed advertising campaign, where the recited services were specified in a byline appearing immediately beneath the mark).

The fact that the proposed mark appears in an advertisement or brochure in which the services are advertised does not in itself show use as a mark. The record must show that there is a direct association between the mark and the service. See *In re Universal Oil Prods. Co.*, 476 F.2d 653, 177 USPQ 456 (C.C.P.A. 1973) (term that identifies only a process does not function as a service mark, even where services are advertised in the same specimen brochure in which the name of the process is used); *In re Graystone Consulting Assocs.*,

115 USPQ2d 2035 (TTAB 2015) (finding specimen did not show a direct association between the mark WALK-IN SHOPPER and the identified business training consultancy services, but instead showed the mark being used to identify a particular type of customer that is the focus of the consulting services); *In re Duratech Indus. Inc.*, 13 USPQ2d 2052 (TTAB 1989) (term used on bumper sticker with no reference to the services does not function as a mark); *Peopleware Sys., Inc. v. Peopleware, Inc.*, 226 USPQ 320 (TTAB 1985) (term PEOPLEWARE used within a byline on calling card specimen does not constitute service mark usage of that term, even if specimen elsewhere shows that applicant provides the recited services); *In re J.F. Pritchard & Co.*, 201 USPQ 951 (TTAB 1979) (proposed mark used only to identify a liquefaction process in brochure advertising the services does not function as a mark, because there is no direct association between the mark and the offering of services). See [TMEP §1301.04\(b\)](#).

The question of whether a designation functions as a mark that identifies and distinguishes the recited services is determined by examining the specimen(s) and any other evidence in the record that shows how the designation is used. *In re Morganroth*, 208 USPQ 284 (TTAB 1980); *In re Republic of Austria Spanische Reitschule*, 197 USPQ 494 (TTAB 1977). It is the perception of the ordinary customer that determines whether the asserted mark functions as a service mark, not the applicant's intent, hope, or expectation that it do so. *In re Standard Oil Co.*, 275 F.2d 945, 125 USPQ 227 (C.C.P.A. 1960). Factors that the examining attorney should consider in determining whether the asserted mark functions as a service mark include whether the wording claimed as a mark is physically separate from textual matter, whether a term is displayed in capital letters or enclosed in quotation marks, and the manner in which a term is used in relation to other material on the specimen.

While a service mark does not have to be displayed in any particular size or degree of prominence, it must be used in a way that makes a commercial impression separate and apart from the other elements of the advertising matter or other material upon which it is used, such that the designation will be recognized by prospective purchasers as a source identifier. *In re C.R. Anthony Co.*, 3 USPQ2d 1894 (TTAB 1987); *In re Post Props., Inc.*, 227 USPQ 334 (TTAB 1985). The proposed mark must not blend so well with other matter on specimen that it is difficult or impossible to discern what the mark is. *In re McDonald's Corp.*, 229 USPQ 555 (TTAB 1985); *In re Royal Viking Line A/S*, 216 USPQ 795 (TTAB 1982); *In re Republic of Austria Spanische Reitschule, supra*; *Ex parte Nat'l Geographic Soc'y*, 83 USPQ 260 (Comm'r Pats. 1949). On the other hand, the fact that the proposed mark is prominently displayed does not in and of itself make it registrable, if it is not used in a manner that would be perceived by consumers as an indicator of source. *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ 76 (TTAB 1984). The important question is not how readily a mark will be noticed but whether, when noticed, it will be understood as identifying and indicating the origin of the services. *In re Singer Mfg. Co.*, 255 F.2d 939, 118 USPQ 310 (C.C.P.A. 1958).

The presence of the "SM" symbol is not dispositive of the issue of whether matter sought to be registered is used as a service mark. *In re British Caledonian Airways Ltd.*, 218 USPQ 737 (TTAB 1983).

See [TMEP §1301.02\(a\)](#) for further information about matter that does not function as a service mark, [TMEP §§1301.01 et seq.](#) regarding what constitutes a service, and [TMEP §§1301.04 et seq.](#) regarding service mark specimens.

1301.02(a) Matter that Does Not Function as a Service Mark

To function as a service mark, a designation must be used in a manner that would be perceived by purchasers as identifying and distinguishing the source of the services recited in the application.

Use of a designation or slogan to convey advertising or promotional information, rather than to identify and indicate the source of the services, is not service mark use. See *In re Standard Oil Co.*, 275 F.2d 945, 125

USPQ 227 (C.C.P.A. 1960) (GUARANTEED STARTING found to be ordinary words that convey information about the services, not a service mark for the services of “winterizing” motor vehicles); *In re Melville Corp.*, 228 USPQ 970 (TTAB 1986) (BRAND NAMES FOR LESS found to be informational phrase that does not function as a mark for retail store services); *In re Brock Residence Inns, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 920 (TTAB 1984) (FOR A DAY, A WEEK, A MONTH OR MORE so highly descriptive and informational in nature that purchasers would be unlikely to perceive it as an indicator of the source of hotel services); *In re Wakefern Food Corp.*, 222 USPQ 76 (TTAB 1984) (WHY PAY MORE found to be a common commercial phrase that does not serve to identify grocery store services); *In re Gilbert Eiseman, P.C.*, 220 USPQ 89 (TTAB 1983) (IN ONE DAY not used as source identifier but merely as a component of advertising matter that conveyed a characteristic of applicant’s plastic surgery services); *In re European-American Bank & Trust Co.*, 201 USPQ 788 (TTAB 1979) (slogan THINK ABOUT IT found to be an informational or instructional phrase that would not be perceived as a mark for banking services); *In re Restonic Corp.*, 189 USPQ 248 (TTAB 1975) (phrase used merely to advertise goods manufactured and sold by applicant’s franchisees does not serve to identify franchising services). *Cf. In re Post Props., Inc.*, 227 USPQ 334 (TTAB 1985) (the designation QUALITY SHOWS, set off from text of advertising copy in extremely large typeface and reiterated at the conclusion of the narrative portion of the ad, held to be a registrable service mark for applicant’s real estate management and leasing services, because it was used in a way that made a commercial impression separate from that of the other elements of advertising material upon which it was used, such that the designation would be recognized by prospective customers as a source identifier). See also [TMEP §1202.04](#) regarding informational matter that does not function as a trademark.

A term that is used only to identify a product, device, or instrument sold or used in the performance of a service rather than to identify the service itself does not function as a service mark. *See In re Moody’s Investors Serv. Inc.*, 13 USPQ2d 2043 (TTAB 1989) (“Aaa,” as used on the specimen, found to identify the applicant’s ratings instead of its rating services); *In re Niagara Frontier Servs., Inc.*, 221 USPQ 284 (TTAB 1983) (WE MAKE IT, YOU BAKE IT only identifies pizza, and does not function as a service mark to identify grocery store services); *In re British Caledonian Airways Ltd.*, 218 USPQ 737 (TTAB 1983) (term that identifies a seat in the first-class section of an airplane does not function as mark for air transportation services); *In re Editel Prods., Inc.*, 189 USPQ 111 (TTAB 1975) (MINI-MOBILE identifies only a vehicle used in rendering services and does not serve to identify the production of television videotapes for others); *In re Oscar Mayer & Co.*, 171 USPQ 571 (TTAB 1971) (WIENERMOBILE does not function as mark for advertising and promoting the sale of wieners, where it is used only to identify a vehicle used in rendering claimed services).

Similarly, a term that only identifies a process, style, method, or system used in rendering the services is not registrable as a service mark, unless it is also used to identify and distinguish the service. See [TMEP §1301.02\(e\)](#) and cases cited therein.

A term that only identifies a menu item does not function as a mark for restaurant services. *In re El Torito Rest. Inc.*, 9 USPQ2d 2002 (TTAB 1988) .

The name or design of a character or person does not function as a service mark, unless it identifies and distinguishes the services in addition to identifying the character or person. See [TMEP §1301.02\(b\)](#) and cases cited therein.

A term used only as a trade name is not registrable as a service mark. *See In re The Signal Companies*, 228 USPQ 956 (TTAB 1986) (journal advertisement submitted as specimen showed use of ONE OF THE SIGNAL COMPANIES merely as an informational slogan, where words appeared only in small, subdued typeface underneath the address and telephone number of applicant’s subsidiary). See [TMEP §1202.01](#) for additional information about matter used solely as a trade name.

Matter that is merely ornamental in nature does not function as a service mark. See *In re Tad's Wholesale, Inc.*, 132 USPQ 648 (TTAB 1962) (wallpaper design not registrable as a service mark for restaurant services). See [TMEP §§1202.03](#) *et seq.* for additional information about ornamentation.

See [TMEP §1202.02\(a\)\(vii\)](#) regarding functionality and service marks, and [TMEP §1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding trade dress.

1301.02(b) Names of Characters or Personal Names as Service Marks

Under [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), a name or design of a character does not function as a service mark, unless it identifies and distinguishes services in addition to identifying the character. If the name or design is used only to identify the character, it is not registrable as a service mark. *In re Hechinger Inv. Co. of Del.*, 24 USPQ2d 1053 (TTAB 1991) (design of dog appearing in advertisement does not function as mark for retail hardware and housewares services); *In re McDonald's Corp.*, 229 USPQ 555 (TTAB 1985) (APPLE PIE TREE does not function as mark for restaurant services, where the specimen shows use of mark only to identify one character in a procession of characters); *In re Whataburger Sys., Inc.*, 209 USPQ 429 (TTAB 1980) (design of zoo animal character distributed to restaurant customers in the form of an iron-on patch not used in a manner that would be perceived as an indicator of source); *In re Burger King Corp.*, 183 USPQ 698 (TTAB 1974) (fanciful design of king does not serve to identify and distinguish restaurant services). See [TMEP §1202.10](#) regarding the registrability of the names and designs of characters in creative works.

Similarly, personal names (actual names and pseudonyms) of individuals or groups function as marks only if they identify and distinguish the services recited and not merely the individual or group. *In re Mancino*, 219 USPQ 1047 (TTAB 1983) (holding that BOOM BOOM would be viewed by the public solely as applicant's professional boxing nickname and not as an identifier of the service of conducting professional boxing exhibitions); *In re Lee Trevino Enters.*, 182 USPQ 253 (TTAB 1974) (LEE TREVINO used merely to identify a famous professional golfer rather than as a mark to identify and distinguish any services rendered by him); *In re Generation Gap Prods., Inc.*, 170 USPQ 423 (TTAB 1971) (GORDON ROSE used only to identify a particular individual and not as a service mark to identify the services of a singing group).

The name of a character or person *is* registrable as a service mark if the record shows that it is used in a manner that would be perceived by purchasers as identifying the services in addition to the character or person. *In re Fla. Cypress Gardens Inc.*, 208 USPQ 288 (TTAB 1980) (name CORKY THE CLOWN used on handbills found to function as a mark to identify live performances by a clown, where the mark was used to identify not just the character but also the act or entertainment service performed by the character); *In re Carson*, 197 USPQ 554 (TTAB 1977) (individual's name held to function as mark, where specimen showed use of the name in conjunction with a reference to services and information as to the location and times of performances, costs of tickets, and places where tickets could be purchased); *In re Ames*, 160 USPQ 214 (TTAB 1968) (name of musical group functions as mark, where name was used on advertisements that prominently featured a photograph of the group and gave the name, address, and telephone number of the group's booking agent); *In re Folk*, 160 USPQ 213 (TTAB 1968) (THE LOLLIPOP PRINCESS functions as a service mark for entertainment services, namely, telling children's stories by radio broadcasting and personal appearances).

See [TMEP §§1202.09\(a\)](#) *et seq.* regarding the registrability of the names and pseudonyms of authors and performing artists, and [TMEP §1202.09\(b\)](#) regarding the registrability of the names of artists used on original works of art.

1301.02(c) Three-Dimensional Service Marks

The three-dimensional configuration of a building is registrable as a service mark only if it is used in such a way that it is or could be perceived as a mark. Evidence of use might include menus or letterhead that show promotion of the building's design, or configuration, as a mark. See *In re Lean-To Barbecue, Inc.*, 172 USPQ 151 (TTAB 1971); *In re Master Kleens of Am., Inc.*, 171 USPQ 438 (TTAB 1971) ; *In re Griffs of Am., Inc.*, 157 USPQ 592 (TTAB 1968) . Cf. *Fotomat Corp. v. Cochran*, 437 F. Supp. 1231, 194 USPQ 128 (D. Kan. 1977) ; *Fotomat Corp. v. Photo Drive-Thru, Inc.*, 425 F. Supp. 693, 193 USPQ 342 (D.N.J. 1977) .

A three-dimensional costume design may function as a mark for entertainment services. See *In re Red Robin Enters.*, 222 USPQ 911 (TTAB 1984) .

Generally, a photograph is a proper specimen of use for a three-dimensional mark. However, photographs of a building are not sufficient to show use of the building design as a mark for services performed in the building if they only show the building in which the services are performed. The specimen must show that the proposed mark is used in a way that would be perceived as a mark.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#) and [TMEP §807.10](#) regarding drawings of three-dimensional marks.

When examining a three-dimensional mark, the examining attorney must determine whether the proposed mark is inherently distinctive. See [TMEP §1202.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#).

1301.02(d) Titles of Radio and Television Programs

The title of a continuing series of presentations (e.g., a television or movie "series," a series of live performances, or a continuing radio program), may constitute a mark for either entertainment services or educational services. However, the title of a single creative work, that is, the title of one episode or event presented as one program, does not function as a service mark. *In re Posthuma*, 45 USPQ2d 2011 (TTAB 1998) (term that identifies title of a play not registrable as service mark for entertainment services). The record must show that the matter sought to be registered is more than the title of one presentation, performance, or recording. See [TMEP §§1202.08 et seq.](#) and cases cited therein for further information regarding the registrability of the title of a single creative work.

Specimens that show use of a service mark in relation to television programs or a movie series may be in the nature of a photograph of the video or film frame when the mark is used in the program.

Service marks in the nature of titles of entertainment programs may be owned by the producer of the show, by the broadcasting system or station, or by the author or creator of the show, depending upon the circumstances. Normally, an applicant's statement that the applicant owns the mark is sufficient; the examining attorney should not inquire about ownership, unless information in the record clearly contradicts the applicant's verified statement that it is the owner of the mark.

1301.02(e) Process, System, or Method

A term that only identifies a process, style, method, system, or the like is not registrable as a service mark. A system or process is only a way of doing something, not a service. The name of a system or process does not become a service mark, unless it is also used to identify and distinguish the service. *In re Universal Oil Prods. Co.*, 476 F.2d 653, 177 USPQ 456 (C.C.P.A. 1973) (term not registrable as service mark where

the specimen shows use of the term only as the name of a process, even though applicant is in the business of rendering services generally and the services are advertised in the same specimen brochure in which the name of the process is used); *In re HSB Solomon Assoc.*, 102 USPQ2d 1269, 1274 (TTAB 2012) (finding that the specimens show CEI identifying only a process and do not show a direct association between CEI and the applied-for services); *In re Hughes Aircraft Co.*, 222 USPQ 263 (TTAB 1984) (term does not function as service mark where it only identifies a photochemical process used in rendering service); *In re Vsesoyuzny Ordena Trudovogo Krasnogo Znameni Nauchnoissledovatel'sky Gorno-Metallurgichesky Institut Tsvetnykh Metallov "Vnitsvetmet"*, 219 USPQ 69 (TTAB 1983) (KIVCET identifies only a process and plant configuration, not engineering services); *In re Scientific Methods, Inc.*, 201 USPQ 917 (TTAB 1979) (term that merely identifies educational technique does not function as mark to identify educational services); *In re J.F. Pritchard & Co.*, 201 USPQ 951 (TTAB 1979) (term used only to identify liquefaction process does not function as mark to identify design and engineering services); *In re Produits Chimiques Ugine Kuhlmann Societe Anonyme*, 190 USPQ 305 (TTAB 1976) (term that merely identifies a process used in rendering the service does not function as service mark); *In re Lurgi Gesellschaft Fur Mineraloltechnik m.b.H.*, 175 USPQ 736 (TTAB 1972) (term that merely identifies process for recovery of high-purity aromatics from hydrocarbon mixtures does not function as service mark for consulting, designing, and construction services); *Ex parte Phillips Petroleum Co.*, 100 USPQ 25 (Comm'r Pats. 1953) (although used in advertising of applicant's engineering services, CYCLOVERSION was only used in the advertisements to identify a catalytic treating and conversion process).

If the term is used to identify *both* the system or process *and* the services rendered by means of the system or process, the designation may be registrable as a service mark. *See Liqwacon Corp. v. Browning-Ferris Indus., Inc.*, 203 USPQ 305 (TTAB 1979), in which the Board found that the mark LIQWACON identified both a waste treatment and disposal service and a chemical solidification process.

The name of a system or process is registrable only if: (1) the applicant is performing a service (*see* [TMEP §§1301.01](#) *et seq.*); and (2) the designation identifies and indicates the source of the service. In determining eligibility for registration, the examining attorney must carefully review the specimen, together with any other information in the record, to see how the applicant uses the proposed mark. The mere advertising of the recited services in a brochure that refers to the process does not establish that a designation functions as a service mark; there must be some association between the offer of services and the matter sought to be registered. *In re Universal Oil Prods. Co.*, *supra*; *In re J.F. Pritchard & Co.*, *supra*.

1301.02(f) Computer Software

A term that only identifies a computer program does not become a service mark, unless it is also used to identify and distinguish the service. *In re Walker Research, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 691 (TTAB 1986) (term that merely identifies computer program used in rendering services does not function as a mark to identify market analysis services); *In re Info. Builders Inc.*, 213 USPQ 593 (TTAB 1982) (term identifies only a computer program, not the service of installing and providing access to a computer program); *In re DSM Pharms., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d 1623 (TTAB 2008) (term that merely identifies computer software used in rendering services does not function as a mark to identify custom manufacturing of pharmaceuticals). However, it is important to review the record carefully to determine the manner of use of the mark and the impression it is likely to make on purchasers. *See In re JobDiva, Inc.*, ___ F.3d ___, 121 USPQ2d 1122, 1126 (Fed. Cir.2016) (“To determine whether a mark is used in connection with the services . . . a key consideration is the perception of the user.”).

The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board has noted that:

[I]n today's commercial context if a customer goes to a company's website and accesses the company's software to conduct some type of business, the company may be rendering a service, even though the service utilizes software. Because of the ... blurring between services and products that has occurred with the development and growth of web-based products and services, it is important to review all the information in the record to understand both how the mark is used and how it will be perceived by potential customers.

In re Ancor Holdings, 79 USPQ2d 1218, 1221 (TTAB 2006) (INFOMINDER found to identify reminder and scheduling services provided via the Internet, and not just software used in rendering the services); *see also In re JobDiva*, 121 USPQ2d at 1126 (Fed. Cir. 2016) (noting that the question of whether consumers would associate registrant's mark with the identified services, when each step of the services is performed by software, is a factual determination involving case-specific factors).

1301.03 Use of Service Mark in Commerce

1301.03(a) Use of Service Mark in Advertising to Identify Services

In examining an application under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#), or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), the examining attorney ordinarily must refuse registration if the record shows that the services advertised have not been rendered. For example, the use of a mark in the announcement of a future service, including an advance reservation for or advance purchase of the service, does not constitute use as a service mark. *Aycock Eng'g, Inc. v. Airflite, Inc.*, 560 F.3d 1350, 90 USPQ2d 1301 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (holding that actual use of the mark in commerce in connection with an existing service is required and that mere preparations to use a mark sometime in the future does not constitute use in commerce); *In re Port Auth. of N. Y.*, 3 USPQ2d 1453 (TTAB 1987) (finding advertising and promoting telecommunications services before the services were available insufficient to support registration); *In re Cedar Point, Inc.*, 220 USPQ 533 (TTAB 1983) (holding that advertising of a marine entertainment park, which was not yet open, was not a valid basis for registration); *In re Nationwide Mutual Ins. Co.*, 124 USPQ 465 (TTAB 1960) (holding that stickers placed on policies, bills, and letters announcing prospective name change is mere adoption, not service mark use).

Sometimes a service-mark specimen may show the wording "beta" being used in connection with the relevant services. This term is commonly used to describe a preliminary version of a product or service. Although some beta services may not be made available to consumers, others are. For example, a beta version of non-downloadable or downloadable software may be made available to the public for use even though the final version has not been released. Thus, the appearance of this term on a service-mark specimen does not, by itself, necessarily mean that the relevant services are not in actual use in commerce or that the specimen is unacceptable. However, if examination of the specimen indicates that the beta version is not in actual use in commerce, the examining attorney must refuse registration because applicant has not provided evidence of use of the applied-for mark in commerce. The statutory basis for refusal is [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1127](#). See [TMEP §§904.03\(e\)](#) and [904.03\(i\)\(D\)](#) regarding trademark specimens containing the term "beta."

See [TMEP §806.03\(c\)](#) regarding amendment of the basis to intent-to-use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) when a §1(a) basis fails; [TMEP §1104.10](#) regarding withdrawal of an amendment to allege use, and [TMEP §§1109.16-1109.16\(e\)](#) regarding the time limits for correcting deficiencies in a statement of use.

1301.03(b) Rendering of Service in Commerce Regulable by Congress

In an application under §1(a) or §1(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#) or [§1051\(b\)](#), the applicant must use the mark in the rendering of the services in commerce before a registration may be granted. *Couture v. Playdom, Inc.*, 778 F.3d 1379, 113 USPQ2d 2042 (Fed. Cir. 2015). Section 45 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines “commerce” as “all commerce which may lawfully be regulated by Congress.” See [TMEP §§901.01, 901.03](#).

The following are three examples of how a service may be rendered in commerce: (1) the applicant’s services are rendered across state lines; (2) customers come across state lines in response to advertising for the services; and (3) the applicant’s licensees or franchisees who use the mark are located in more than one state. See [TMEP §901.03](#) and cases cited therein.

1301.04 Specimens of Use for Service Marks

A service-mark specimen must show the mark as actually used in the sale or advertising of the services recited in the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(2\)](#). “[B]ecause by its very nature a service mark can be used in a wide variety of ways, the types of specimens which may be submitted as evidence of use are varied.” *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1315, 1316 (TTAB 1992). Whatever type of specimen is submitted, it must show proper use in commerce of the mark, which may be established by (1) showing the mark used or displayed as a service mark in the sale of the services, which includes use in the course of rendering or performing the services, or (2) showing the mark used or displayed in *advertising* the services, which encompasses marketing and promotional materials. See *On-Line Careline, Inc. v. Am. Online, Inc.*, 229 F.3d 1080, 1088, 56 USPQ2d 1471, 1476-77 (Fed. Cir. 2000) (indicating that an online menu item bearing the mark ONLINE TODAY was proper service mark use in connection with “providing access to online computer services offering computer-industry news, commentary and product reviews” because, inter alia, the “menu items are the mechanisms by which users obtained access to a particular online service”); *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d at 1316 (indicating that a specimen that does not explicitly refer to the services may be acceptable if it “show[s] use of the mark in the rendering, i.e., sale, of the services”); *In re Red Robin Enters.*, 222 USPQ 911, 914 (TTAB 1984) (stating that “rendition” of services is properly viewed as an element of the “sale” of services); [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(2\)](#). For purposes of clarity and simplicity, the term “rendering” is used in the following sections when discussing specimens that show use of the mark in the sale, performance, or rendering of the services.

The type of specimen submitted will often be apparent without the need for additional information regarding how the mark is used on the specimen. However, a specimen description submitted by the applicant typically helps clarify the manner in which the mark is used in commerce, and the more explanation the applicant provides initially, the more helpful it is to the examining attorney’s analysis. Thus, applicants are encouraged to provide a specimen description and explain how the applicant renders or provides the services and, if relevant, how marks are commonly used in the particular industry for such services. For instance, a description stating that a specimen comprises a title screen bearing the mark and showing the mark used in rendering the identified services is helpful for determining the nature and acceptability of the specimen.

If it is not readily apparent that the specimen meets the criteria for an advertisement or rendering type of specimen, and any specimen description does not provide adequate clarification, the specimen must be refused for failure to show use of the mark in commerce. See [TMEP §1301.04\(g\)](#) regarding the grounds for refusal. If further clarification regarding the nature of the specimen or the manner in which the mark is used may easily overcome the refusal (e.g., an explanation that the specimen is a title screen displaying the mark at the start of the provision of the identified services), an advisory to that effect may be included with the

refusal. Under Trademark Rule 2.61(b), [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), an examining attorney may also require the applicant to submit additional information about the specimen or the mark's manner of use.

Regardless of whether the specimen shows the mark used in the advertising or rendering of the services, the examining attorney should consider the following when determining whether a service-mark specimen is acceptable.

1301.04(a) Whether the Specimen Shows the Mark as Actually Used by the Applicant in Commerce in the Sale or Advertising of the Services

The specimen must show the mark as actually used by the applicant in selling or advertising the services. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(2\)](#). Acceptable specimens may include newspaper and magazine advertisements, brochures, billboards, handbills, direct-mail leaflets, menus (for restaurants), press releases that are publicly available (e.g., on the applicant's website), and the like. However, printer's proofs or mock-ups of advertisements, press releases sent exclusively to news media, or printed articles resulting from such releases are not acceptable because they do not demonstrate the required use of the mark by the applicant. See [TMEP §1301.04\(f\)](#). Business documents such as letterhead and invoices may be acceptable service-mark specimens if they show the mark and refer to the relevant services. In some instances, a specimen or the specimen description may indicate that the specimen is not yet in use in commerce by inclusion of wording such as "internal only," "printer's proof," "website coming soon," or "under construction."

1301.04(b) Whether the Identified Services Are Registrable Services

A service-mark specimen must show the mark used or displayed in connection with a registrable service offered for the benefit of others. For information regarding activities that constitute registrable services, see [TMEP §§1301.01–1301.01\(b\)\(v\)](#).

1301.04(c) Whether the Specimen Shows Use in Connection with All Classes in a Multiple-Class Application

The same specimen may be acceptable for multiple classes if the specimen shows direct association between the mark and at least one of the identified services in each class. See [TMEP §1301.04\(f\)\(ii\)](#). If the applicant intends for a submitted specimen to support multiple classes, the applicant should include a statement to that effect and indicate the classes supported by the specimen, but the applicant need not submit multiple copies of the same specimen. See [TMEP §904.01\(b\)](#).

1301.04(d) Whether the Mark Is Used in Connection With the Identified Services

The specimen must demonstrate the mark serving as a source indicator for the identified services. Therefore, registration must be refused if the specimen shows the mark is used only to promote goods rather than the identified services, or the mark is used as a service mark but not for the identified services (i.e., the applicant misidentified the services). See [TMEP §§1301.02\(a\)](#), [1301.02\(e\)–1301.02\(f\)](#). See [TMEP § 1301.04\(g\)\(i\)](#) regarding failure to show use in commerce and [§1301.04\(h\)\(iii\)](#) regarding misidentified services.

1301.04(e) Whether the Mark Functions as a Service Mark

The mark must actually function as a source-indicating service mark. Thus, registration must be refused if, for example, the specimen shows the mark serves *solely* as a trade name, only as the name of a computer software program or application, *exclusively* as the name of a method, process, or system, or merely as

informational or ornamental matter. *See In re Universal Oil Prods. Co.*, 476 F.2d 653, 655, 177 USPQ 456, 457 (C.C.P.A. 1973) (“The requirement that a mark must be ‘used in the sale or advertising of services’ to be registered as a service mark is clear and specific. We think it is not met by evidence which only shows use of the mark as the name of a process and that the company is in the business of rendering services generally, even though the advertising of the services appears in the same brochure in which the name of the process is used. The minimum requirement is some direct association between the offer of services and the mark sought to be registered therefor.”); *In re Osmotica Holdings Corp.*, 95 USPQ2d 1666, 1669 (TTAB 2010) (finding that, although the submitted specimens referenced the identified consulting services, the applied-for mark, as used on the specimens, would be perceived by the relevant public as identifying only applicant’s drug technology and thus the specimens failed to establish the required association between the mark and the identified services); *In re DSM Pharm., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d 1623, 1625-26 (TTAB 2008) (finding the submitted specimen unacceptable evidence of use of the mark in connection with custom manufacturing services because it did not show an association between the mark and the services, but instead the mark was used only to refer to computer software); [TMPEP §§1202.01, 1202.03–1202.04, 1301.02\(a\), 1301.02\(e\)–1301.02-\(f\)](#).

That the software or process may actually be used in providing the identified services neither transforms that software or process into the identified services, nor associates the name of that software or process as the name of the identified services. *See In re HSB Solomon Assocs.*, 102 USPQ2d 1269, 1274 (TTAB 2012) (finding no direct association between the mark, CEI, and the identified technical consultation services because the submitted specimens showed the mark being used only to identify a metric, index, equivalency factor, standard, or performance measure and never to identify the identified services; noting that, even if the CEI metric, index, equivalency factor, standard, or performance measure is used by applicant in performing the identified services, that “does not transform that metric into a technical consulting service or associate the term CEI with the technical consulting service such that it serves as a source identifier rather than simply the name of a process”); *In re Walker Research, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 691, 692 (TTAB 1986) (finding the submitted specimen unacceptable since SEGMENTOR referred only to the computer software used in performing the services and not to identify and distinguish the services themselves; noting that “[t]he fact that applicant does not sell the ‘SegMentor’ software and may not use ‘SegMentor’ in a technical trademark case in connection with the software does not . . . warrant a finding that ‘SegMentor’ must therefore function as a service mark”); [TMPEP §1301.02\(f\)](#).

However, when services are provided through software, it is possible for a mark to serve as a source indicator for the services provided and not just for the software itself. *See In re JobDiva, Inc.*, ___ F.3d ___, 121 USPQ2d 1122, 1126 (Fed. Cir.2016) (“Even though a service may be performed by a company’s software, the company may well be rendering a service.”). Therefore, the examining attorney must review all the information in the record to determine how the mark is used and how it will be perceived by potential customers. *See In re Ancor Holdings*, 79 USPQ2d 1218, 1221 (TTAB 2006). Registration should not be refused when the specimen shows that the mark used in connection with the software (or process) also serves as a service mark for the identified services. *See* [TMPEP §§1301.02\(e\)–1301.02\(f\)](#).

The use of the “SM” symbol with the mark does not, by itself, transform a designation into a service mark if other indicia suggest that it does not function as a service mark. Likewise, the “TM” symbol, which is occasionally used in connection with service marks, is not, by itself, an indication that the designation functions as a service mark. *See* [TMPEP §1301.02](#).

See [37 C.F.R. §2.59](#) and [TMPEP §§904.05](#) and [904.07](#) *et seq.* regarding substitute specimens.

1301.04(f) Elements of an Acceptable Service-Mark Specimen

To be acceptable, a service-mark specimen must show the mark sought to be registered used in a manner that demonstrates a direct association between the mark and the services. Essentially, the mark must be shown “in a manner that would be perceived by potential purchasers as identifying the applicant's services and indicating their source.” *In re DSM Pharm., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d 1623, 1624 (TTAB 2008) ; *see In re JobDiva, Inc.*, ___ F.3d ___, 121 USPQ2d 1122, 1126 (Fed. Cir.2016) (“To determine whether a mark is used in connection with the services . . . a key consideration is the perception of the user.”); *In re Ancor Holdings, LLC*, 79 USPQ2d 1218, 1220 (TTAB 2006) (citing *In re Walker Research, Inc.*, 228 USPQ 691, 692 (TTAB 1986)).

The acceptability of a specimen is determined based on the facts and evidence of record, and viewed in the context of the relevant commercial environment. *See In re Ancor Holdings, LLC*, 79 USPQ2d at 1220 (“[W]e must base our determination of public perception of applicant's mark on the manner of use of [the mark] in the advertising which has been submitted as a specimen. Further, we must make that determination within the current commercial context, and, in doing so, we may consider any other evidence of record ‘bearing on the question of what impact applicant's use is likely to have on purchasers and potential purchasers.’” (quoting *In re Safariland Hunting Corp.*, 24 USPQ2d 1380, 1381 (TTAB 1992)). Thus, the information provided by the specimen itself, any explanations offered by the applicant clarifying the nature, content, or context of use of the specimen, and any other information in the record should be considered in the analysis. *In re DSM Pharm., Inc.*, 87 USPQ2d at 1626 (“In determining whether a specimen is acceptable evidence of service mark use, we may consider applicant's explanations as to how the specimen is used, along with any other available evidence in the record that shows how the mark is actually used.”); *In re Ancor Holdings, LLC*, 79 USPQ2d at 1220.

When the identified services involve newer technology, the examining attorney must follow the appropriate examination policies and procedures, but also should employ a practical approach in analyzing the submitted specimen. *See In re Ralph Mantia Inc.*, 54 USPQ2d 1284, 1286 (TTAB 2000) (finding a business card and stationery displaying the mark and the word “design” were acceptable specimens of use for applicant’s mark in connection with commercial art design services, noting that “[i]t is not necessary that the specific field of design, i.e., commercial art, also appear thereon” and that “the word ‘design’ alone is sufficient to create in the minds of purchasers an association between the mark and applicant's commercial art services”); *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1315, 1316 (TTAB 1992) (finding the submitted specimens acceptable to show use of applicant’s mark in connection with data transmission services because the specimens showed “the mark as it appears on a computer terminal in the course of applicant's rendering of the service” and noting that “purchasers and users of the service would recognize [applicant’s mark], as it appears on the computer screen specimens, as a mark identifying the data transmission services which are accessed via the computer terminal”). This may entail reviewing all the information of record to understand both how the mark is used and how it will be perceived by consumers. *See In re JobDiva*, 121 USPQ2d at 1126; *In re Ancor Holdings, LLC*, 79 USPQ2d at 1221. Additionally, if the examining attorney elects to conduct research regarding the mark, the services, or practices in the particular industry, it may be helpful to consider any information uncovered regarding how the applicant and others in the industry typically advertise and render the identified services in the relevant marketplace, as well as the manner in which service marks are normally used in connection with those services. See [TMPEP §1301.04\(h\)\(iii\)](#) for a discussion of issues surrounding technology-related services.

1301.04(f)(i) Show the Mark

The mark on the drawing must be a substantially exact representation of the mark shown on the specimen. See [TMPEP §§807.12–807.12\(a\)\(iii\)](#) and [807.12\(d\)–807.12\(e\)](#) regarding agreement of the mark on the drawing

and on the specimen. Furthermore, the designation must appear sufficiently prominent on the specimen (e.g., placement, size, or stylization) so that it will be perceived by consumers as a mark. *See In re Dell Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1725, 1729 (TTAB 2004) (finding a mark “sufficiently prominent” even though it was “shown in a smaller type size than other words appearing on the webpage,” given that it appeared “in a bullet listing of information about the product,” and was placed “at the beginning of a line and [was] followed by the ‘TM’ trademark indicator”); [TMEP §904.03\(i\)\(B\)\(1\)](#). Compare *In re Quantum Foods, Inc.*, 94 USPQ2d 1375, 1378 (TTAB 2010) (describing a mark as “prominently displayed” on the specimen when the mark appeared by itself above pictures relating to applicant’s goods in relatively large font and in a different color than some of the other text on the page) with *In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d 1220, 1223 (TTAB 2007) (finding the mark not prominently displayed because it was buried in text describing the mark and, while the mark was shown in bold font, so was other matter). For instance, if shown in the same font, size, and color as the surrounding text on the specimen, the designation may not be perceived as a source indicator. *See In re Osterberg*, 83 USPQ2d at 1223.

1301.04(f)(ii) Associate the Mark with the Identified Services

The specimen must show the mark used in a manner that creates in the minds of potential consumers a direct association between the mark and the services. *In re Universal Oil Prods. Co.*, 476 F.2d 653, 655, 177 USPQ 456, 457 (C.C.P.A. 1973) (“The minimum requirement is some direct association between the offer of services and the mark sought to be registered therefor.”); *see also In re JobDiva, Inc.*, ___ F.3d ___, 121 USPQ2d 1122, 1126 (Fed. Cir.2016) (noting that the question of whether consumers would associate registrant’s mark with the identified services, when each step of the services is performed by software, is a factual determination involving case-specific factors); *In re Adver. & Mktg. Dev., Inc.*, 821 F.2d 614, 620, 2 USPQ2d 2010, 2014 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (“The ‘direct association’ test does not create an additional or more stringent requirement for registration; it is implicit in the statutory definition of ‘a mark used * * * to identify and distinguish the services of one person * * * from the services of others and to indicate the source of the services.’”); *In re WAY Media, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d 1697, 1698 (TTAB 2016) (“A specimen that shows only the mark with no reference to, or association with, the services does not show service mark usage.”); *In re Johnson Controls, Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1318, 1320 (TTAB 1994) (“While the nature of the services does not need to be specified in the specimens, there must be something which creates in the mind of the purchaser an association between the mark and the service activity.”). Direct association is the minimum the specimen must show, and it may be established textually, contextually, or logically. *In re Universal Oil Prods. Co.*, 476 F.2d at 655, 177 USPQ at 457. What is necessary to establish direct association differs depending on the type of specimen submitted, that is, whether it is an advertising specimen or a rendering specimen.

Mark Used in Advertising: For specimens showing the mark used in advertising the identified services, in order to establish the requisite direct association the specimen must contain a reference to the services and the mark must be used on the specimen to identify the services and their source. *See In re WAY Media, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d at 1698; *In re Monograms Am., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1317, 1318 (TTAB 1999). While the services need not be stated word for word, a “sufficient reference” to the services themselves or a general reference to the trade, industry, or field of use is required. *See id.*; *In re Ralph Mantia Inc.*, 54 USPQ2d 1284, 1286 (TTAB 2000) (reversing the specimen refusal since the term “design” appeared on applicant’s letterhead stationery, envelope, and business cards and stating “[i]t is not necessary that the specific field of design, i.e., commercial art, also appear [on the specimen]. Here, the word ‘design’ alone is sufficient to create in the minds of purchasers an association between the mark and applicant’s commercial art services.”); *In re Monograms Am., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d at 1318; *see also* [TMEP §1301.04\(h\)](#). However, if the alleged reference to the services is so vague that the services cannot be discerned, the specimen will not be acceptable. *In re Chengdu AOBi Info. Tech. Co.*, 111 USPQ2d 2080, 2082 (TTAB 2011) ; *see In re Monograms Am., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d at 1318. *See* [TMEP §1301.04\(i\)](#).

Mark Used in Rendering: For specimens showing the mark used in rendering the identified services, the services need not be explicitly referenced to establish the requisite direct association. See *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1315, 1316-17 (TTAB 1992) (noting that “the requirements specific to specimens which are advertising are not applicable” and finding the submitted specimens acceptable to show use of applicant’s mark in connection with data transmission services because the specimens showed “the mark as it appears on a computer terminal in the course of applicant’s rendering of the service” and noting that “purchasers and users of the service would recognize [applicant’s mark], as it appears on the computer screen specimens, as a mark identifying the data transmission services which are accessed via the computer terminal”). Rather, direct association may be indicated by the context or environment in which the services are rendered, or may be inferred based on the consumer’s general knowledge of how certain services are provided or from the consumer’s prior experience in receiving the services. *Id.*; see *In re WAY Media, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d at 1698. In other words, the context in which the services are provided and consumer knowledge and experience create an inference of the services without an explicit textual reference to the services. See [TMEP §1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 17 (CASHFLOW UNITS).

The applicant may respond to a specimen refusal for failing to show direct association by explaining the nature of the mark’s use or the manner in which the services are advertised or rendered. *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d at 1316 (finding the submitted specimens acceptable based, in part, on applicant’s explanation that the specimens showed the mark as it appeared on a computer terminal in the course of rendering the services). With respect to a particular industry’s typical use of marks in relation to specific services, it may also be helpful for the applicant to provide an explanation regarding industry practice concerning the use of the mark during the rendering of such services and how the applicant’s use comports with such practice. See [TMEP §1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 19 (design of speech bubbles).

The mere fact that the mark is displayed and the services are explicitly referenced or can be inferred from the context of the specimen does not automatically result in direct association between the mark and the services. See *In re Johnson Controls*, 33 USPQ2d at 1320. The specimen must associate the mark with the services such that the mark serves as a source identifier for those particular services. See *In re WAY Media, Inc.*, 118 USPQ2d at 1698; *cf. In re Sones*, 590 F.3d 1282, 1288, 93 USPQ2d 1118, 1123 (Fed. Cir. 2009) (“[T]he test for an acceptable website-based specimen, *just as any other specimen*, is simply that it must in some way evince that the mark is ‘associated’ with the goods and serves as an indicator of source.” (emphasis added)). The requisite mark-services association is present when the specimen makes a direct link or connection between the mark and the identified services. See [TMEP §1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 17 (CASHFLOW UNITS) and Example 18 (RIDE 411).

Thus, a specimen is unacceptable if it fails to convey a proper nexus between the mark and the services, or if the services are too attenuated from the proposed mark, either in terms of proximity or logical connection. See, e.g., *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d at 1316; *In re Monograms Am., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d at 1319. The mere fact that wording from the identification of services appears somewhere on the specimen may not necessarily suffice for the mark-services association or nexus, if there is nothing else to connect that wording to the mark, such as proximity or additional text that establishes the connection.

When examining for the mark-services association, the examining attorney should consider the specimen’s content, layout, and overall look and feel, as well as any description of the specimen and industry practice relating to service-mark usage in advertising and rendering the services.

1301.04(g) Grounds for Refusal

1301.04(g)(i) Failure to Show the Mark Used in Commerce

Trademark Act Sections 1 and 45, 15 U.S.C §§ 1051, 1127, are the statutory bases for refusing a specimen that does not meet the requirements of an acceptable service-mark specimen; such specimen is not acceptable because it does not show the mark in “use in commerce.” For instance, if the mark does not appear on the specimen or the specimen shows use of the mark in connection with goods rather than the identified services, the specimen must be refused for failure to show service-mark use in commerce in connection with the identified services.

The applicant’s response options include submitting an acceptable substitute specimen or, if appropriate, amending the application to a §1(b) filing basis. See [TMEP §806.03\(c\)](#) regarding amending filing basis from §1(a) to §1(b), and [§§904.07–904.07\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding requirements for substitute specimens. In some cases, the applicant may respond by providing clarification of the nature of the original specimen submitted, or an explanation of the content of the original specimen, to justify its acceptability.

The examining attorney may consider any of the following facts and evidence properly made of record:

- declarations from persons with firsthand knowledge of the facts, with a sufficiently detailed explanation of how the mark is used in advertising or rendering the services or how the services are advertised or rendered;
- clarification of the specimen of record, such as an explanation of the nature, content, or context of use of the specimen (this explanation need not be verified with a declaration);
- evidence, such as declarations or industry-related periodicals, regarding industry practice with respect to how marks and services are promoted in advertising or how the services are rendered;
- additional background materials, such as printouts showing information on subsequent webpages from the applicant’s website or subsequent screenshots of an electronic device on which the services may be accessed, rendered, and experienced (this matter generally need not be verified with a declaration); and/or
- responses to any Trademark Rule 2.61(b) request for information.

If the specimen of record, the specimen description, the applicant’s response and explanations, and any additional proffered evidence are unpersuasive, a final refusal must issue, if the application is otherwise in condition for final. See [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)–\(b\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §714.03](#).

1301.04(g)(ii) Failure to Show the Mark Functioning as a Service Mark

A specimen may show the mark used as something other than a service mark for the identified services. For instance, it may show the mark used *solely* as a trade name, *only* as the name of a computer software program or application, *exclusively* as the name of a method, process, or system, or *merely* as informational or ornamental matter. See [TMEP §§1202.01, 1202.03–1202.04, 1301.02\(a\), 1301.02\(e\)–1301.02\(f\)](#). In such cases, the mark does not function as a service mark to identify and distinguish the applicant’s services and indicate their source. Thus, a failure-to-function refusal should issue under Trademark Act Sections 1, 2, 3, and 45. 15 U.S.C. §§1051 1053, [1127](#); see [TMEP §1301.04\(e\)](#). No specimen refusal should issue, however, if the mark identifies, for example, *both* a process and the identified services and the requisite mark-services association is present. See [TMEP §§ 1301.02\(e\), 1301.04\(j\)](#) (Example 21 (LEADING EDGE TONERS)).

1301.04(h) Considerations and Common Issues when Examining Certain Specimens

1301.04(h)(i) Letterhead

Letterhead stationery, business cards, or invoices bearing the mark may be accepted if they create an association between the mark and the services. To create an association between the mark and the services, the specimen does not have to spell out the specific nature or type of services. A general reference to the industry may be acceptable. *In re Ralph Mantia Inc.*, 54 USPQ2d 1284 (TTAB 2000) (letterhead and business cards showing the word “Design” are acceptable evidence of use of mark for commercial art design services); *In re Sw. Petro-Chem, Inc.*, 183 USPQ 371 (TTAB 1974) (use of mark on letterhead next to the name SOUTHWEST PETRO-CHEM, INC. found to be sufficient to show use of the mark for “consulting and advisory services relating to the making and using of lubricating oils and greases,” when used for letters in correspondence with customers).

Letterhead or business cards that bear only the mark and a company name and address are not adequate specimens (unless the mark itself has a descriptive portion that refers to the service), because they do not show that the mark is used in the sale or advertising of the particular services recited in the application. *In re Monograms Am., Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1317 (TTAB 1999) (letterhead specimen showing the mark MONOGRAMS AMERICA and the wording “A Nationwide Network of Embroidery Stores” held insufficient to support registration for consulting services for embroidery stores).

If the letterhead itself does not include a reference to the services, a copy of an actual letter on letterhead stationery bearing the mark is an acceptable specimen of use if the content of the letter indicates the field or service area in which the mark is used. In *Monograms America*, the Board indicated that the letterhead specimen might have been accepted if the applicant had submitted a copy of a letter to a store owner describing the services. 51 USPQ2d at 1319.

1301.04(h)(ii) Specimens for Entertainment Services

For live entertainment services, acceptable specimens include a photograph of the group or individual in performance with the name displayed, e.g., the name printed on the drum of a band. For any entertainment service, advertisements or radio or television listings showing the mark may be submitted, but the specimen must show that the mark is used to identify and distinguish the services recited in the application, not just the performer. See *In re Ames*, 160 USPQ 214 (TTAB 1968) (advertisements for records show use of the mark for entertainment services rendered by a musical group, where the advertisements prominently feature a photograph of musical group and give the name, address, and telephone number of a booking agent).

A designation that identifies only the performer is not registrable as a service mark. See [TMEP §1301.02\(b\)](#) regarding the registrability of names of characters or personal names as service marks, and [TMEP §§1202.09\(a\)](#) et seq. regarding the registrability of names and pseudonyms of performing artists.

1301.04(h)(iii) Specimens for Technology-Related Services

Proper specimen analysis requires consideration of the nature of the identified services. Modern computer and technology-related services present special challenges because these services, and the terminology used to describe them, are continually evolving. In addition, any online activity entails the use of computer software, making it difficult to differentiate the various services provided online from the underlying technology used to provide them. As the Board has noted, “[a]lthough it may well be software that is generating the [services], in today's commercial context if a customer goes to a company's website and

accesses the company's software to conduct some type of business, the company may be rendering a service, even though the service utilizes software." *In re Ancor Holdings, LLC*, 79 USPQ2d 1218, 1221 (TTAB 2006); *see also In re JobDiva, Inc.*, ___ F3d. ___, 121 USPQ2d 1122 (Fed. Cir. 2016). ("[I]f the software is hosted on JobDiva's website such that the user perceives direct interaction with JobDiva during operation of the software, a user might well associate JobDiva's marks with personnel 'placement and recruitment' services performed by JobDiva").

It may be unclear, based on the submitted specimen, whether the applicant is providing non-software services in a given field or subject matter (e.g., "financial consulting in the field of retirement planning" in Class 36), or offering computer software or application services involving that same field or subject matter (e.g., "providing temporary use of non-downloadable software for retirement planning" in Class 42), or both. Sometimes, an applicant that is actually providing non-downloadable software services (e.g., "providing temporary use of non-downloadable software for medical billing" in Class 42) misidentifies the services as the underlying function of the software (e.g., "medical billing" in Class 35). Similarly, the applicant may be using social networking websites to advertise non-social networking services (e.g., operating a pet store) and communicate with customers, leading the applicant to misidentify the services as "online social networking services" in Class 45.

Thus, a primary consideration in these instances is whether the specimen indicates that the applicant is actually performing the relevant service activities for others, or, for instance, merely providing software that allows users of the software to perform those activities themselves, or only offering an online game that is accessed via a social networking website. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 5 (ATHENACOORDINATOR), Example 7 (CLINICANYWHERE), and Example 14 (OUTERNAUTS).

Furthermore, some traditional services, and the associated terminology, may require fresh understanding and broader interpretation in the modern commercial environment. More and more traditional services are now offered online and, increasingly, multiple services are seamlessly integrated, creating difficulty in distinguishing the source of the services. For instance, television programs that were once provided only by broadcast television and cable outlets are now also accessible via streaming services like Netflix®, Hulu®, or YouTube®. Thus, typical service identification terms like "broadcasting," "distribution," and "transmission" have taken on new meaning in the modern marketplace. Thinking of traditional and other services more broadly and being cognizant of the current marketplace realities will also help the examining attorney determine whether the specimen properly shows use of the mark in association with the identified services.

When the nature of the services is not readily apparent from the information of record, such as the identification and specimen, the examining attorney may consult several resources for research and guidance, including: the notices and notes in the U.S. Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual (ID Manual); the applicant's and third-party websites; telephone or e-mail communication with the applicant or applicant's attorney; technology dictionaries, encyclopedias, and trade and industry publications; and the Office of Trademark Classification Policy & Practice. In addition, the Trademark Law Library is available to assist examining attorneys with research. Finally, the examining attorney may require the applicant to provide further information about the services, pursuant to Trademark Rule 2.61(b). [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

1301.04(h)(iv) Common Forms of Specimens for Modern Technology-Related Services

As noted above, an applicant may submit a specimen that shows the mark as used in rendering the services. These specimens are often submitted in connection with modern technology-related services, and common types are discussed below.

For specimens showing use of the mark in rendering the services, an explicit, textual reference to the services or their trade, industry, or field of use is not necessary, but an indication of the services sufficient to establish direct association between the mark and the services is required. The examining attorney must refuse the specimen if neither the specimen itself nor the description of the specimen provides sufficient information to decipher the nature of the services, determine the manner of use, and assess whether the necessary mark-services association exists. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(g\)\(i\)](#).

1301.04(h)(iv)(A) Sign-In Screens

Applicants often submit screenshots of sign-in screens as specimens for online services, such as non-downloadable software services and application-service-provider services. Sign-in screens show that the services are available and the context indicates that they are accessed by inputting credentials, which is a generally known and accepted means of accessing many online services. *In re Metriplex, Inc.*, 23 USPQ2d 1315, 1317 (TTAB 1992) (finding the submitted specimens acceptable to show use of applicant's mark in connection with data transmission services because "we have a situation where the service are rendered through the means of a tangible item, namely, a computer terminal, so that the mark can appear on the computer screen, and the specimens show such use").

Some sign-in screens may include a reference to the services and effectively function as an advertisement. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 6 (MYFITAGE). Other sign-in screens may contain no reference to the services, but may nonetheless be acceptable if the overall content of the specimen sufficiently indicates the services. Or, the specimen description may explain the context of the services by stating the specimen is a sign-in screen for accessing the services and that applicant is offering the type of services being applied for. Such an explanation may provide a sufficient basis for accepting the sign-in screen specimen, as long as there is no contradictory information in the record indicating that the mark is not associated with the identified services. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 4 (STAFFTAP).

1301.04(h)(iv)(B) Title or Launch Screens

A title or launch screen is an on-screen graphic typically displayed at the beginning of entertainment content, such as video games or ongoing television programs, often with other information about the content featured. For services such as Class 41 entertainment services involving the provision, production, or distribution of entertainment content, screenshots of title or launch screens from the content may create the requisite direct association between the mark and the services. Thus, title or launch screens may be acceptable specimens as long as their nature as such is clear either from the overall look and feel of the specimen or from the applicant's description of the specimen.

While showing the title or launch screen being displayed on any particular electronic device (e.g., television, computer, or smartphone) is not required, a specimen showing an electronic device bearing the title or launch screen may be acceptable without further explanation because it places the mark in the context of how the services are rendered. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 14 (OUTERNAUTS). A title or launch-screen specimen showing only the mark but not the electronic device, with no specimen description or an insufficient description, may require a specimen description identifying the specimen as a title or launch screen and placing the mark in the context of the services. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 13 (DELICIOSO).

While title or launch-screen specimens may be acceptable to show service-mark use, the mark must be refused if the specimen shows that the mark is the title of a single creative work (e.g., the title or name of one episode of a television or radio program, one movie, or one show presented as a single event). *See*

[TMEP §§1202.08–1202.08\(f\)](#) regarding titles of single creative works and [§1301.02\(d\)](#) regarding titles of radio and television programs.

1301.04(h)(iv)(C) Webpages

Webpages from an applicant’s or a third-party’s website may be submitted as *advertising*. This type of specimen is acceptable if it shows the mark used in advertising the identified services and creates the required direct association by referring to the services and by showing the mark being used to identify and distinguish the services and their source. *In re Florists’ Transword Delivery, Inc.*, 119 USPQ2d 1056, 1062 (TTAB 2016).

Webpages lacking a reference to the services may be acceptable if they show use of the mark in rendering the services. *See* TMEP §[1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 14 (OUTERNAUTS).

Webpages from social-networking websites should be scrutinized to ensure that the mark is properly associated with the identified services. Some applicants may mistakenly mischaracterize their services as “social networking” because they assume that advertising or promoting their non-social-networking services via a social-networking website means they are providing social-networking services. For instance, an applicant may mistakenly file an application for “online social-networking services” and provide a Facebook® webpage as a specimen when, in fact, they operate a pet store and are only using the Facebook® website to advertise the pet store and communicate information to and messages with actual and potential customers. Such a specimen is not acceptable for the social-networking services since it does not demonstrate that the applicant is providing these services. *See In re Florists’ Transword Delivery, Inc.*, 119 USPQ2d at 1057 (“[A]n applicant generally will not be able to rely on use of its social media account to support an application for registration of a mark for [the service of creating an online community for users].”).

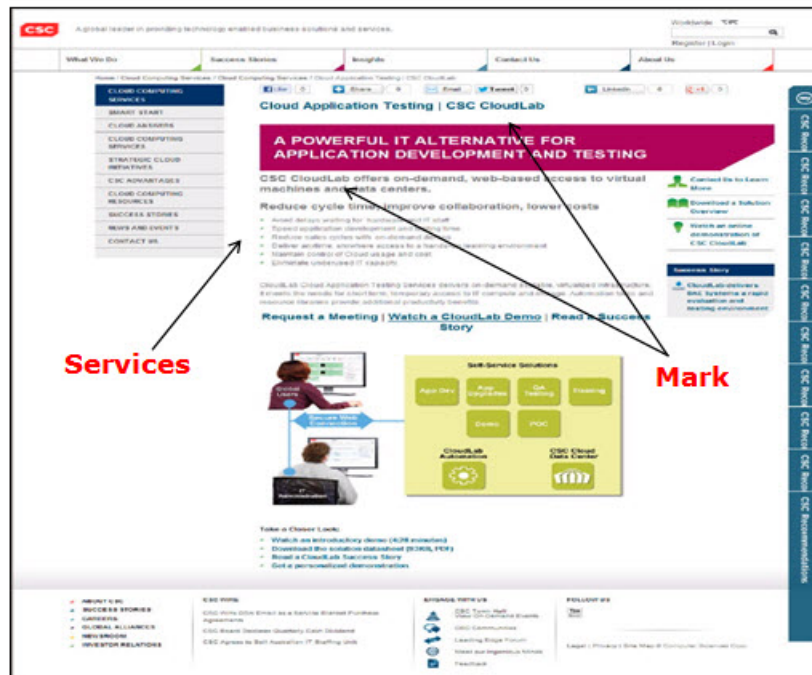
1301.04(h)(iv)(D) Software Applications (“Apps”)

Software applications (“apps”) for smartphones and computer tablets are now commonly used to provide online services. Apps are simply the interface that enables the providers of the services to reach the users and render the services, and the users to access those services. Common specimens for such apps are usually screenshots of electronic devices demonstrating the apps delivering the services. Such a specimen may not always depict proper service-mark use of the mark in connection with the identified services, but it may be acceptable if the displayed screenshot clearly and legibly shows the mark associated with the identified services as the services are rendered or performed via the app. *See* TMEP § [1301.04\(i\)](#), Example 15 (KURBKARMA).

1301.04(i) Examples of Acceptable Service-Mark Specimens

Cloud-Computing Services

EXAMPLE 1



Mark: CSC CLOUDLAB

Relevant Services: Infrastructure as a Service (IAAS) services, namely, providing web-based use of virtualized computer hardware, networking, and storage equipment on a utility computing basis, namely, providing virtual computer systems and virtual computer environments through cloud computing, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “web page screenshot” and appears to be advertising.

Mark is displayed near the top center of the webpage in large, color font, and in the middle center of the webpage at the beginning of a statement shown in bold font.

Services are referenced in the following statements:

“CSC CloudLab offers on-demand, web-based access to virtual machines and data centers.”

“CloudLab Cloud Application Testing Services delivers on-demand scalable, virtualized infrastructure.”

Mark-services association is present because the mark is used directly in connection with the services in textual statements describing the services, and is placed immediately above explicit/textual references to the services.

Specimen is described as “web page screenshot” and appears to be advertising.

Mark is displayed near the top center of the webpage in large, color font, and in the middle center of the webpage at the beginning of a statement shown in bold font.

Services are referenced in the following statements:

“CSC CloudLab offers on-demand, web-based access to virtual machines and data centers.”

“CloudLab Cloud Application Testing Services delivers on-demand scalable, virtualized infrastructure.”

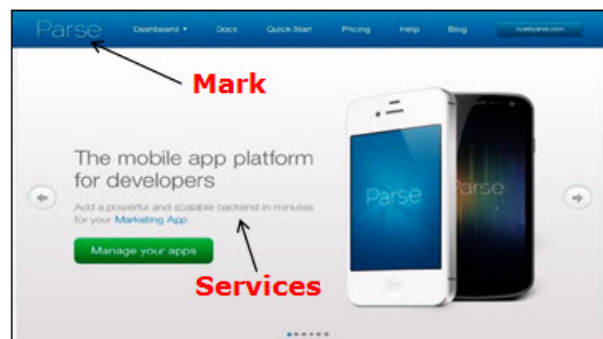
Mark-services association is present because the mark is used directly in connection with the services in textual statements describing the services, and is placed immediately above explicit/textual references to the services.

EXAMPLE 2

Original Specimen



Substitute Specimen



Mark: PARSE

Services: Platform as a service (PAAS) featuring computer software platforms offering server-side functionality to provide backend services, namely, data storage, push notifications and user management, all for mobile applications, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Original specimen is described as “website offering purchase and download of Parse software”; the substitute specimen is described as “website advertising.”

On the substitute specimen, the mark is presented in large font on the top of the webpage and on the screen of an electronic device.

Original specimen was refused because the specimen and its description indicated the mark is used in association with software goods rather than PAAS services.

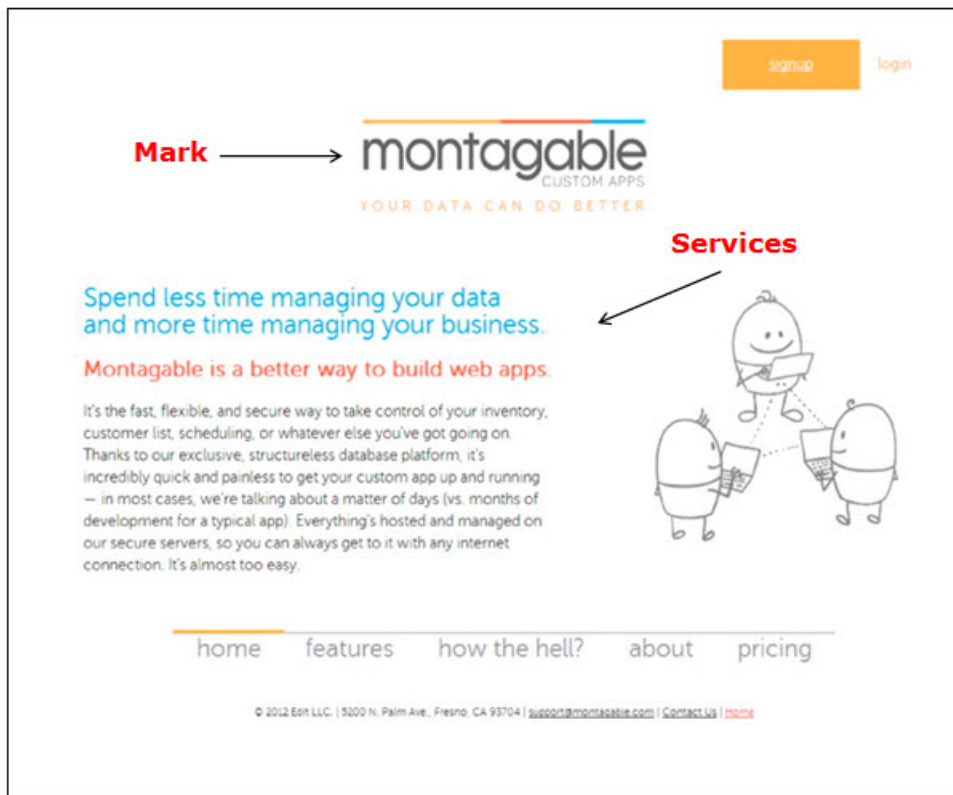
Substitute specimen is acceptable due to the following statements referencing the services and the following indicia of the context in which the services are rendered:

The wording “The mobile app platform for developers” and “Add a powerful and scalable backend in minutes for your Marketing App” describes the nature of the services.

The “Manage your apps” button indicating that the services are accessed by clicking on the button.

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpages on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is in close proximity to explicit textual references to the services and the “Manage your apps” button, thus creating the mark-services connection.

EXAMPLE 3



Mark: MONTAGABLE

Services: Computer software platform as a service (PAAS) featuring computer software platforms for application building, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “screenshots” from applicant’s website and appears to be advertising. Mark is prominently shown in large font on the top of the webpage.

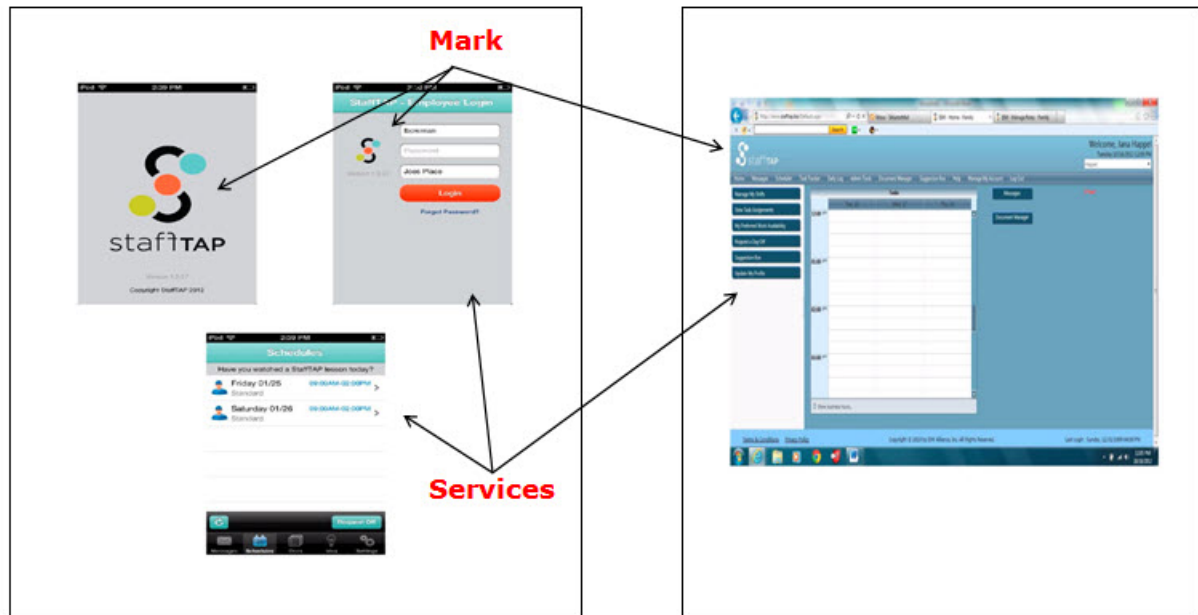
Services are referenced in the following statements:

“Montagable is a better way to build web apps.”

“Thanks to our exclusive, structureless database platform, it’s incredibly quick and painless to get your custom app up and running”

“Everything’s hosted and managed on our secure services, so you can always get to it with any internet connection.”

Mark-services association is present because the mark is used directly in connection with the services in textual statements describing the services, and is placed immediately above explicit textual references to the services as well as in statements referencing the services.

EXAMPLE 4

Mark: STAFFTAP

Services: Software as a service (SAAS) services featuring software for use in staff management and related scheduling tasks, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “screenshot capture of a representative online portal” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services.

Mark appears prominently in large font on a launch screen, on the sign-in screen, and on the top of a screen displaying the software services in use.

Services are indicated by the context in which they are rendered, as follows:

A launch screen with the wording “Version 1.0.27” indicates the version of the online software services being rendered.

The “Employee Login” screen indicates that one must log in to access the software services and the subsequent screen shows the schedule for Friday and Saturday.

A screen showing a date and time grid for scheduling tasks and the menu on the left containing options, including “Manage My Shifts” and “View Task Assignments,” indicates the staff management functions of the software services.

Mark-services association is present because the mark appears on the launch screen where it is customary in such industry to place the mark under which the services are offered and such placement

is recognized as the introduction of the online services; and the mark also appears on the sign-in screen where it is customary to input credentials to gain access to online services. The context in which the mark is used, i.e., on the title and sign-in screens, creates the mark-services connection (since using such screens is common practice for rendering such services) and implies that the services are available and rendered once the user initiates access to the services by logging in. The launch screen alone is acceptable because it is generally known that such screens are used to initiate the start up of or access to online services. The sign-in screen is also acceptable on its own since it is a generally known means of accessing online services. The mark is also displayed on another screen which shows the mark while the services are being performed and, thus, the proximity of the mark to the services conveys a connection.

EXAMPLE 5



Mark: ATHENACORDINATOR

Services: Physician order support services and medical practice management services relating to medical tests and procedures, namely, verifying patient eligibility and benefits, handling scheduling requests, obtaining insurance pre-certifications, handling patient pre-registrations, and collecting self-pay balances from patients, in Class 35; and Software as a service (SAAS) services featuring software for use in communications between physicians and other participants in the health care system with respect to orders for medical tests and procedures, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as a “brochure” and appears to be advertising.

Mark appears prominently in large font on the top of the brochure.

Class 35 services are referenced in the following statements:

“Through software and service, we deploy critical knowledge to support effective and efficient care coordination.”

“A dedicated team of remote specialists with essential clinical and payer knowledge verifies eligibility and benefits. They also obtain required insurance pre-certifications to ensure claims get paid the first time.”

“A dedicated team of specialists delivers pre-registration services to ensure order fulfillment, registering patients in the hospital system and collecting self-pay balances. Patients and physicians benefit from an efficient registration process.”

Class 42 services are referenced in the following statements:

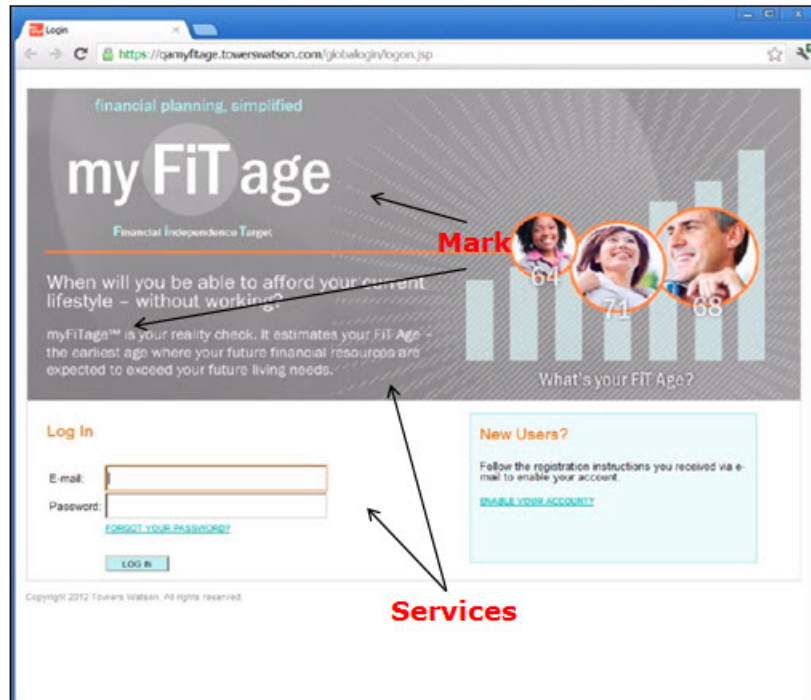
“Through software and service, we deploy critical knowledge to support effective and efficient care coordination.”

“The web-based platform facilitates easy order entry and status for physician, enables our pre-certification and pre-registration services and delivers a “clean” order to the hospital.”

Mark-services association is present because the mark is used directly in connection with the services in textual statements describing the services, and is placed immediately above explicit textual references to the services.

Non-Downloadable Software Services

EXAMPLE 6



Mark: MYFITAGE

Services: Providing temporary use of non-downloadable computer software for retirement planning, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “web printout” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services. Mark is shown in large font at the top of the webpage and in the middle of the webpage. Services are referenced in the following statements and indicated by the context in which they are rendered, as follows:

The wording “financial planning simplified” appears above the mark.

The wording “Financial Independence Target” appears below the mark.

“myFiTage is your reality check. It estimates your FiT Age – the earliest age where your future financial resources are expected to exceed your future living needs.”

“Log in” fields are provided for accessing the non-downloadable software.

Mark-services association is present because the mark appears on the sign-in screen where it is customary in such industry to input credentials to gain access to online services. The context in which the mark is used, i.e., during the sign-in process, creates the connection with the services since sign-in screens are common practice and imply that the services are available and rendered once the user logs in. Additionally, the mark is used directly in connection with the services in

textual statements describing the services, and is placed above and below statements referencing the services, further conveying the mark-services connection. The sign-in screen alone would also be acceptable even if the services were not textually referenced since it is a generally known means of accessing online services. The specimen is acceptable both as an advertisement and as showing the mark in rendering the services.

EXAMPLE 7

Leading the Way

How Mercy is raising the national bar on telemedicine

By LYNNE JETER

The groundbreak was held at community roundtables, held in various Mercy markets in the Greater St. Louis area and beyond.

Over the last few years, and condensed at recently held roundtables, residents in rural areas voiced a common theme: they wanted to stay close to home to receive care from specialists and subspecialists in larger communities for their families. With feedback in hand, hospital administrators made the decision early on: even if reimbursement wasn't forthcoming, Mercy would invest heavily in telemedicine.

"It started with us thoughtfully looking around to ask 'what can Mercy do for you?' and then to see if we were in a position to match what we were able to do with what residents wanted," said Tamara Smith, MD, vice president of research for Mercy's Center for Innovative Care (CIC), who also treats migrant patients via telemedicine from the Mercy Clinic Headache Center in St. Louis. "Telemedicine is an obvious solution, and a range of opinions became an automatic success story for us."

Smith helped Mercy, which serves 3 million patients annually, land roughly \$2.5 million in grants to launch the telemedicine pilot project, with the bulk coming from USDA's Distance Learning and Telemedicine grants for Mercy's most rural communities in Arkansas, Kansas, Missouri and Oklahoma.

"Mercy is the ideal health system for



employing telemedicine technology because we have a large geographic footprint and an interesting mix of large metro hospitals with subspecialists and rural health clinics and small critical care hospitals in remote areas," said Smith.

SafeWatch, an electronic ICU (e-ICU) monitoring program started in 2006, is Mercy's most mature telemedicine operation. From one center, 430 ICU beds are monitored throughout four states.

"It wasn't the first program of its kind, but it's the largest in the country," said Smith.

Mercy now operates 72 distinct telemedicine pilot programs, projects and fully developed operations. Among them: cardiology, dermatology, neonatology, ophthalmology, pathology, pulmonology, psychiatry, radiology, and stroke.

"And we haven't even built the Virtual Care Center yet," said Smith. "That's how ambitious this project is ... to improve service delivery through telemedicine."

Difference-Maker

Tom Hale, MD, director of Mercy's CIC, pointed to the early and sustained success of SafeWatch for the impetus of hospital leaders deciding to invest heavily in telemedicine.

"The real testament to the program's success is that we're 12 percent below the anticipated APACHE (Acute Physiology and Chronic Health Evaluation) score for hospital mortality for critically ill patients by putting this program in place," he said.

Hale also noted that Massachusetts, which enacted its own healthcare reform law in 2006, has experienced such positive response for its e-ICU monitoring pilot programs that the state plans to expand it statewide.

"It's not there yet, but our hope is that this type of program will expand significantly," Hale said.

Challenges and Benefits

Sufficient bandwidth remains one of few limitations to aggressive expansion of telemedicine.

"We'd like to not have any limits on what we can deliver," said Smith. "For example, we want to extend mental health

Cloud-based Practice Management and EHR Solution.
Top-notch Medical Billing Services.

Any device. Any time.
Anywhere.....ClinicAnywhere.



ClinicAnywhere

POWERED BY ETG

CALL US TODAY AT
888-275-9406
OR email bmoore@clinicanywhere.com

Services

Mark

Bioscience Resource Project | JULY 2012 • 27

Mark:

Clinic)Anywhere

Services: Medical Billing Support, in Class 35; and Providing on-line, non-downloadable, Internet-based software application for medical billing for physicians and health care institutions, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as an advertisement.

Mark is prominently displayed in large, color font in the middle of the advertisement.

Class 35 services are referenced in the following statement:

“Top-notch Medical Billing Services.”

Class 42 services are referenced in the following statements:

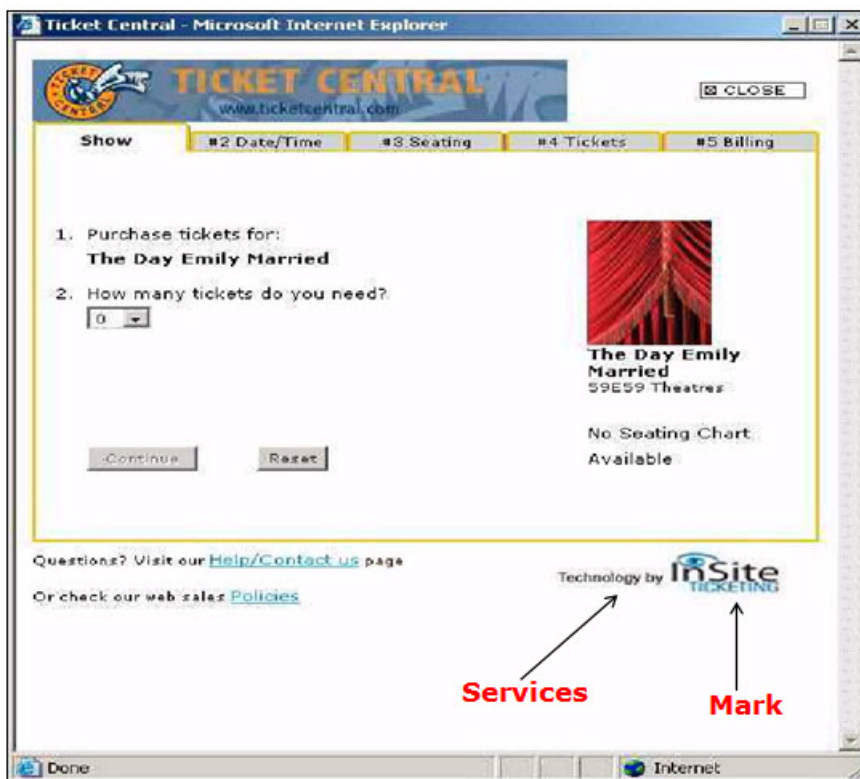
“Cloud-based Practice Management and EHR Solutions.”

“Any device. Any time. Anywhere.....ClinicAnywhere.”

Mark-services association is present because the mark is used directly in connection with the services in textual statements describing the services, and is placed immediately below explicit textual references to the services.

Application-Service-Provider (ASP) Services

EXAMPLE 8



Mark: INSITE TICKETING

Services: Application service provider (ASP), namely, hosting computer software applications for others in the field of ticketing and related ticketing services, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as a “screen shot” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services. Mark is prominently displayed on the bottom of the screenshot.

Services are indicated by the context in which they are rendered, as follows:

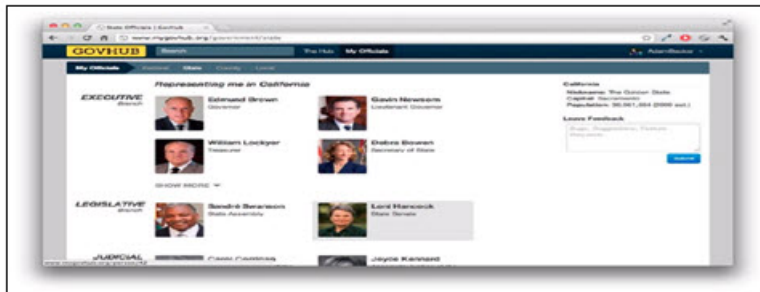
The mark is displayed directly below the area where customers purchase tickets, thereby indicating that the ASP hosting or providing the software services is INSITE TICKETING. The wording “Technology by” placed next to the mark, implies that the software technology services that are operating the website are provided by the applicant.

Mark-services association is present because the mark is displayed on the screen where the services are rendered and experienced. While another mark, “Ticket Central,” is shown on the top left of the webpage, it appears to be associated only with ticket-purchasing services, not ASP services, and thus does not detract from associating the applied-for mark with the identified services.

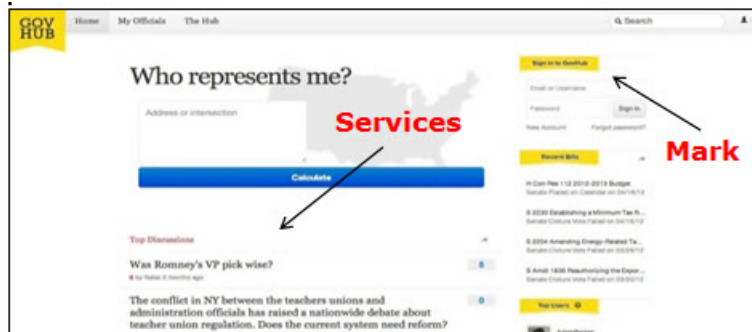
Telecommunications Services

EXAMPLE 9

Original Specimen



Substitute Specimen



Mark: GOVHUB

Services: Providing on-line forums for transmission of messages among computer users, in Class 38.

Analysis:

Original specimen is described as “website screen-shot” and the substitute specimen is described as “screenshot of the homepage of the website.”

Mark is presented on the substitute specimen at the top right of the webpage.

Original specimen was refused because it failed to reference the services.

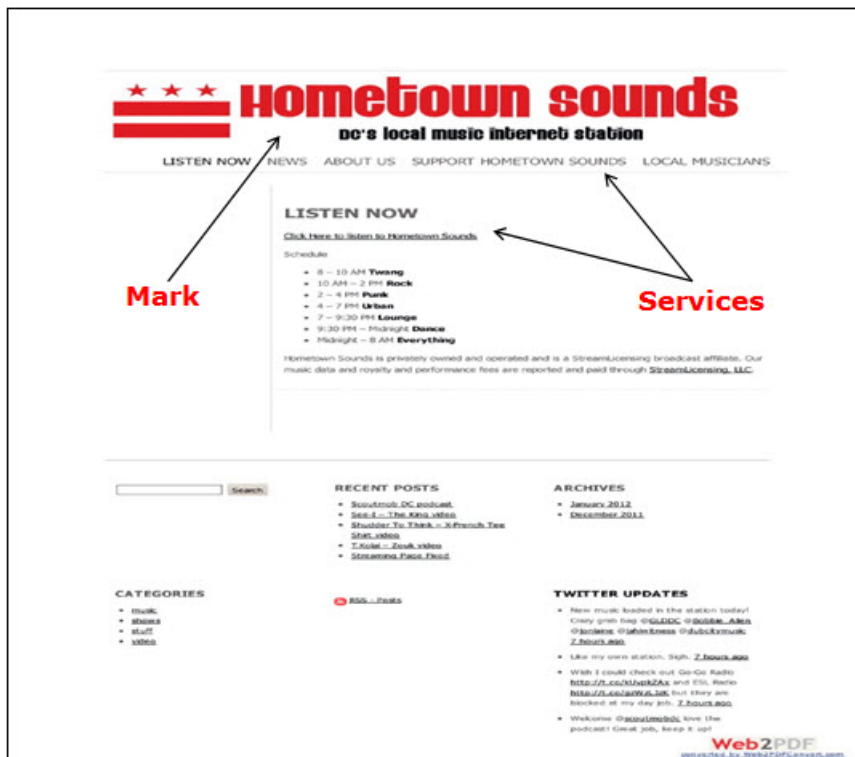
Substitute specimen is acceptable because the services are indicated by the following:

“Sign in to GovHub” indicates that a user may log in to use the services, i.e., read and send messages.

“Top Discussions” shows two discussion topics in progress, and the “5” and “0” shown in the color blue specify that there are 5 messages posted for the first discussion and 0 for the second discussion, indicating that the services involve on-line forums for transmission of messages.

Mark-services association is present on the substitute specimen because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpage on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is in proximity to indicia implying the services and no other marks appear to negate the mark-services connection. While the services are not explicitly textually referenced, when viewing the heading “Top Discussions,” the two discussion topics below it, and the “5” and “0” messages posted about the discussion topics – all these factors together indicate that applicant is offering online forum services.

EXAMPLE 10



Mark: HOMETOWN SOUNDS

Services: Electronic transmission and streaming of digital media content for others via global and local computer networks; Streaming of audio material on the Internet; Transmission services via the Internet, featuring MP3 files and music videos, in Class 38.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “website for Hometown Sounds” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services.

Mark is presented in large font on the top of the webpage.

Services are referenced in the following statements and indicated by the context in which they are rendered, as follows:

The wording “DC’s local music internet station” describes the services.

The wording “Listen Now” indicates that the website may be used to stream audio content.

The link “Click Here to listen to Hometown Sounds” indicates that the services are accessed by clicking on the link.

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpage on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is physically close to indicia implying the services and no other marks appear to negate the mark-services connection. The mark appears above textual references to the services as well as in textual instructions for accessing the services, which further conveys the mark-services connection. The specimen is acceptable both as an advertisement and as showing the mark in rendering the services.

EXAMPLE 11



Mark:



Services: Broadcasting of video and audio programming over the Internet, in Class 38.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “web page” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services. Mark is shown in large font on the top of the webpage. Services are indicated by the following:

A freeze-frame of a video featuring a play button is displayed, indicating the services are accessed by clicking the play button.

The wording “Join Now! Get the latest feel-good videos, news and events” conveys the different content that is available for broadcast.

The wording “Latest Videos” and the images of several videos appear near the bottom, implying that other videos are available for broadcast.

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpages on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is sufficiently near indicia implying the services and no other marks appear to negate the mark-services connection. While the nature of the services is not explicitly textually referenced, the display of the play button and “Latest Videos” indicate that applicant is offering broadcasting services.

Entertainment Services

EXAMPLE 12



Mark: CINEMAX

Services: Entertainment services in the nature of providing entertainment programming and content, namely, on-going television programs, and related clips and graphics and information relating to television programming and content in the fields of comedy, drama, action, adventure via television, cable and satellite systems, the Internet, electronic communications networks, computer networks and wireless communications networks, in Class 41.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “mark as used in commerce on specified goods and services” and appears to be a webpage advertising some of the identified services and rendering other identified services. Mark is displayed prominently at the top of the webpage.

Services are referenced in the following wording and statements:

The navigation tabs at the top “VIDEOS,” “SCHEDULE,” “ORIGINAL SERIES,” “MOVIES,” and “AFTER DARK” indicate the entertainment content available.

The play button next to “WATCH PREVIEW” indicates that a clip of the show “ASYLUM BLACKOUT” may be viewed.

The reference to “BANSHEE” states “From the creator of ‘True Blood’ comes a Cinemax original series about a small town where nothing is as it seems . . .,” advertising another on-going television program.

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpage on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is sufficiently near textual references to the services, thus indicating the mark-services connection.

EXAMPLE 13



Mark: DELICIOSO

Services: Entertainment and education services, namely, ongoing television program concerning cooking and nutrition, in Class 41.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as a “photo of opening title of applicant’s television program” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services.

Mark is prominently shown in large font on the title screen of an electronic device that is displaying the ongoing television program.

Mark-services association is present because the mark appears on the title screen where it is customary in such industry to place the mark under which the services are promoted. It is common practice for a title screen bearing the mark to appear at the start of entertainment content and indicate the launch of the services. While the nature of the services is not textually referenced, it is sufficient that the overall content of the specimen implies that applicant is offering entertainment services.

The specimen would be unacceptable without the specimen description, which clarifies that the specimen is an “opening title” and places the mark in the context of providing the services. Since the specimen could possibly be print advertising, a specimen description is necessary to clarify the nature of the specimen. The top right corner of the specimen shows some wording that suggests that the title screen is displayed on an electronic device. However, since that wording is not legible and

the context of the title screen is not visible, the nature of the specimen is unclear and, thus, a specimen description is required clarifying that it is a title screen.

EXAMPLE 14



Mark: OUTERNAUTS

Services Entertainment services, namely, providing online video games, in Class 41.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as a “screenshot of the page on Facebook.com, an Internet website, from which the services are provided to users” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services. Mark is prominently shown in large font near the top of the webpage.

Services are referenced in the following statements and indicated by the following:

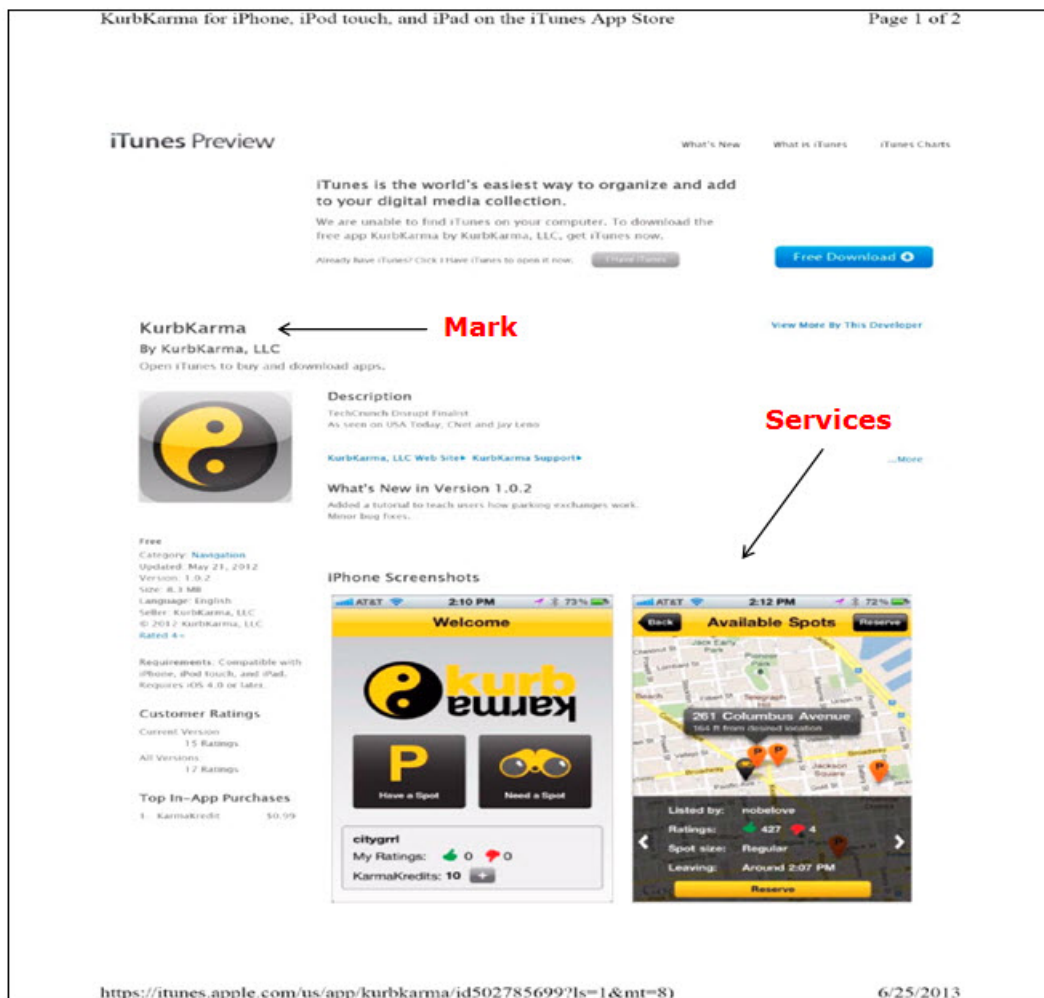
The mark appears near video game information “Get Star Gems,” “Leaderboard,” and “loading Outernauts.”

The mark appears near the word “Games,” generally referencing the services.

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpage on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is near indicia implying the services and other marks appear to cloud the mark-services connection. While the specimen shows the webpage is from a third-party

website, i.e., Facebook®, this does not diminish the requisite association due to the proximity of the applied-for mark to the matter indicating the online services, which appear to be directly launched from the website. The screenshot also appears to be of the title or launch screen of the online video game, where it is common practice in such industry to place the mark under which the services are promoted and where such placement is recognized as the introduction of the online services. The screenshot here implies, and it is generally known, that access to and performance of the services begins with this screen. The specimen description combined with the wording “loading Outernauts” further supports the mark-services connection. The specimen is also acceptable as an advertisement since the word “Games” appears on the lower left corner as part of a third-party mark “Insomniac Games.” It may be inferred that the combination of the applied-for mark OUTERNAUTS with the reference to “Games” and to “EA” sufficiently and textually references the online video game services.

EXAMPLE 15



Mark: KURBKARMA

Services: On-line matching services for connecting automobile drivers with other drivers who are, respectively, searching for or departing from parking spaces accessible via a mobile application, in Class 35.

Analysis:

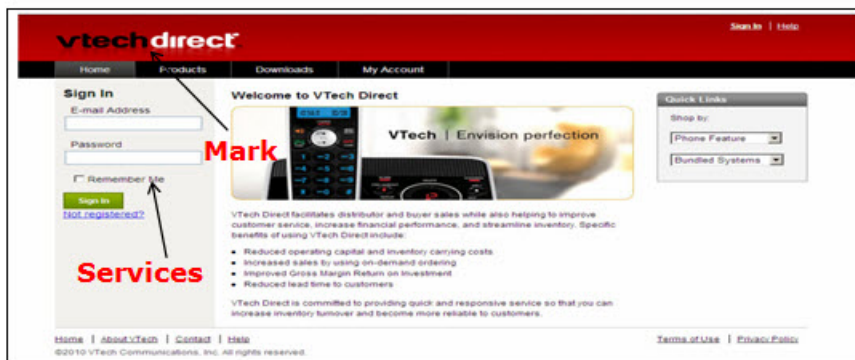
Specimen is described as “screenshot of the iTunes store which features Applicant's mark and describes Applicant's services.”

Mark is displayed in bold font in the middle left of the webpage.

Services are indicated by the following:

The iPhone® screen images clearly and legibly show the wording “Have a Spot,” “Need a Spot,” and “Available Spots,” indicating the services being performed by the applicant via the app.

Mark-services association is present because the mark is placed in sufficiently close proximity to the iPhone® screenshots, which show the services as they are accessed and rendered via the device.

EXAMPLE 16

Mark: VTECH DIRECT

Services: Providing a web site for online business-to-business store services featuring wireline telephony products and wireless fidelity streaming music devices; online business-to-business store featuring wireline telephony products and wireless fidelity streaming music devices, in Class 35.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “pages from website” and appears to show the mark being used in both the advertising and rendering of the services.

Mark is displayed prominently in bold font on the top left of each webpage.

Services are referenced and indicated by the following:

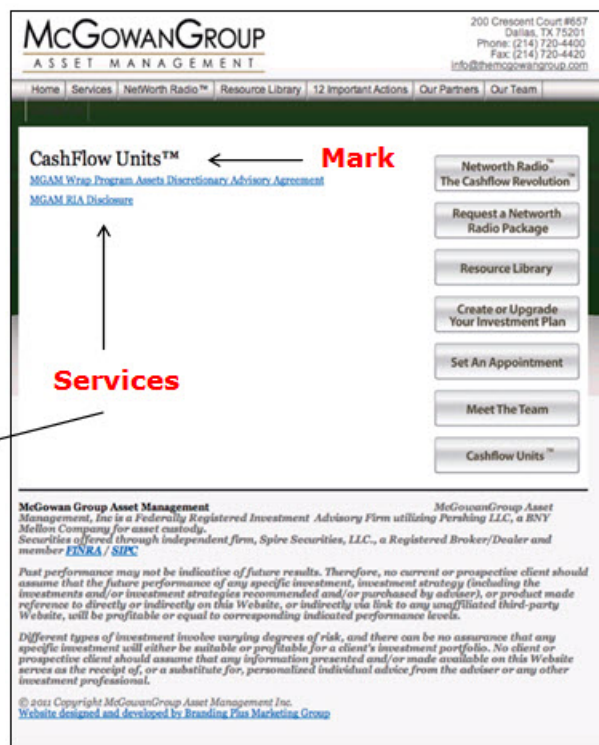
“Sign In” fields are provided for accessing the online business-to-business store services, indicating that one may access the services by logging in.

“Tune in over 11,000 stations around the globe using wireless Internet access. Listen to music, sports, talk radio and more.”

Image of an electronic streaming music device described as “IS9181 – (80-6569-02) Stream internet radio stations Stream digital music files stored on your PC or Mac Connect to your MP3 or CD player.”

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpage on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is near explicit textual references to the services, thus conveying the mark-services connection. The webpage showing the sign-in fields is an acceptable specimen since signing-in is a generally known means of accessing online services. Thus, the specimen is acceptable both as an advertisement and as showing the mark in rendering the services.

EXAMPLE 17



Mark: CASHFLOW UNITS

Services: Investment products, namely, wealth management and performance tracking, and providing financial advisory and financial portfolio management services, in Class 36.

Analysis:

Specimens are described as “webpages.”

Mark is placed below “the McGowanGroup Asset Management banner.”

The Board held the specimen acceptable as showing use of the mark in rendering the services based on the following findings:

“The disclosures at the bottom of one webpage inform the viewer that applicant is a ‘Federally Registered Investment Advisory Firm.’”

The mark “appears under the McGowanGroup Asset Management banner, thus informing the viewer that CASHFLOW UNITS are part of an asset management service.”

Directly below the mark are links to two documents: (1) the “MGAM Wrap Program Assets Discretionary Advisory Agreement”; and (2) the “MGAM RIA Disclosure”. The Board noted that the first document is the applicant’s contract and an offer to enter into an agreement for advisory services, and the second document is the applicant’s notice of compliance with the conflict of interest rules.

The mark on the webpage is placed “in close proximity to links for documents used by applicant in rendering those services” and “the links to these documents create an association between the mark and the offered service activity.”

EXAMPLE 18



Mark: RIDE 411

Relevant Services: Providing an online search engine service for new and used automobile listings and automobile related information; Providing specific information as requested by customers via the Internet; Provision of Internet search engines; Provision of search engines for the Internet, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “screen shot of our website” and appears to be a webpage advertising some of the identified services and rendering other identified services.

Mark is displayed in large, color font on the top of the webpage.

Services are referenced in the following statements and indicated by the context in which they are rendered, as follows:

“Simply type any keyword(s) into our search engine to find a group of suppliers for exactly what you are looking for, or select from a category and drill down from there.”

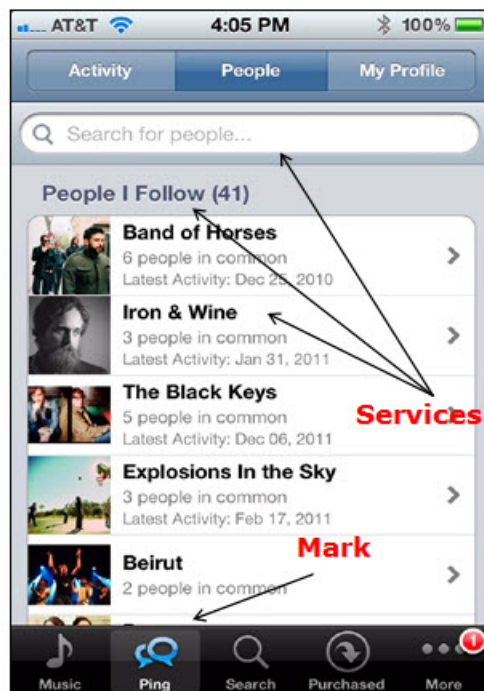
The wording “Your destination for hard to find classic car parts, services, events & more” and “FIND ... How can I find hard to locate parts for my classic car?” indicates the nature of the services provided.

Hyperlinks appear under “Locate Parts,” “Locate Services,” and “Search By Category.”

Services are provided primarily for the benefit of others, i.e., the users are able to view the search results from a variety of sources from the Internet in one list.

Mark-services association is present because it is customary to display service marks near the top of the webpage on which the services are advertised or through which they are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Here, the mark is near textual references to the services, thus indicating the mark-services connection. The mark is also near indicia of the services, i.e., searchable links and categories for locating automobile parts and services, which is also sufficient to show a mark-services association. Thus, the specimen is acceptable both as an advertisement and as showing the mark in rendering the services.

EXAMPLE 19



Mark: (stylized speech bubbles)



Services: Online social networking services, in Class 45.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as “screenshot of applicant’s software” and appears to show the mark used in rendering the services.

Mark is displayed in the color blue at the bottom of the screen of an electronic device.

Services are indicated by the following:

A highlighted “People” tab appears at the top of the screen, as does a search bar containing the wording “Search for people.”

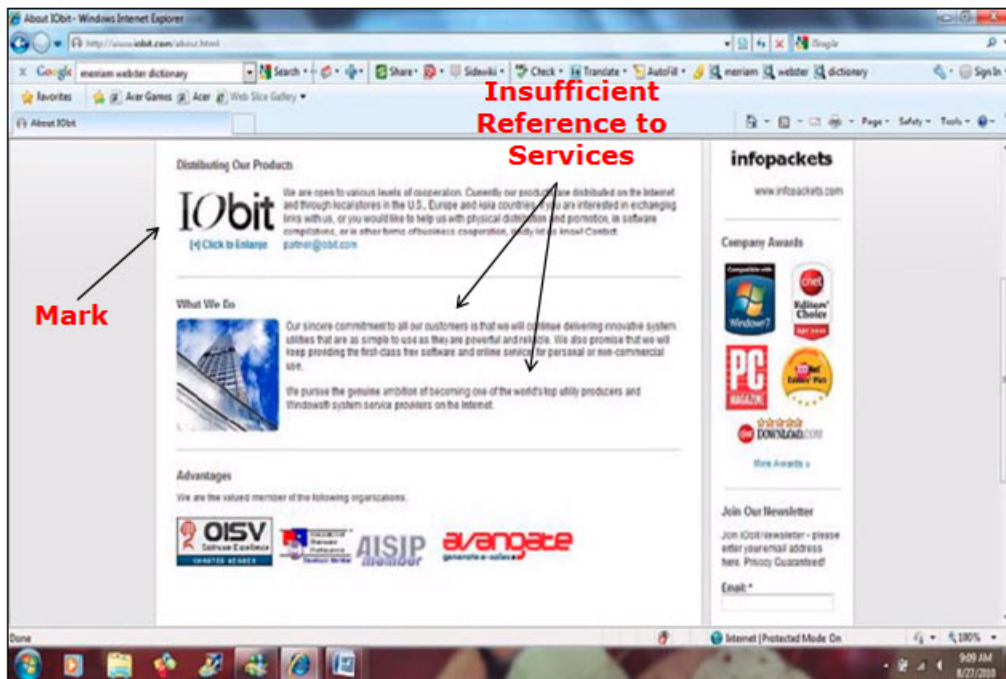
The wording “People I Follow (41)” indicates that the user follows 41 people and the screen shows a list of people being followed, each specifying the number of “people in common.”

Applicant explained that the specimen is a screenshot from an Apple® handheld mobile device showing the mark used in rendering the services.

Mark-services association is present because the mark appears on the screen of an electronic device via which the online services are accessed, rendered, and experienced. Additionally, the mark is displayed on the screen below indicia implying the services as well as showing the services as they are accessed and rendered via the device. The context in which the mark is used, i.e., while the services are being performed and experienced, creates the association with the services. The presence of a third-party mark (AT&T®) displayed on the top left of the screenshot does not detract from the applicant’s mark being associated with the services. The AT&T® mark denotes the telecommunication company that provides the connection to the Internet, but it appears that the applicant’s services enable online social networking.

1301.04(j) Examples of Unacceptable Service-Mark Specimens

EXAMPLE 20



Mark: IObit

Services: Computer programming; Computer software design; Conversion of data or documents from physical to electronic media; Data conversion of computer programs and data, not physical conversion; Duplication of computer programs; Hosting of web sites; Installation of computer software; Maintenance of computer software; Research and development for new products for others; Research and development of computer software; Updating and maintenance of computer software, in Class 42.

Analysis:

Specimen is a “screenshot from applicant’s website.”

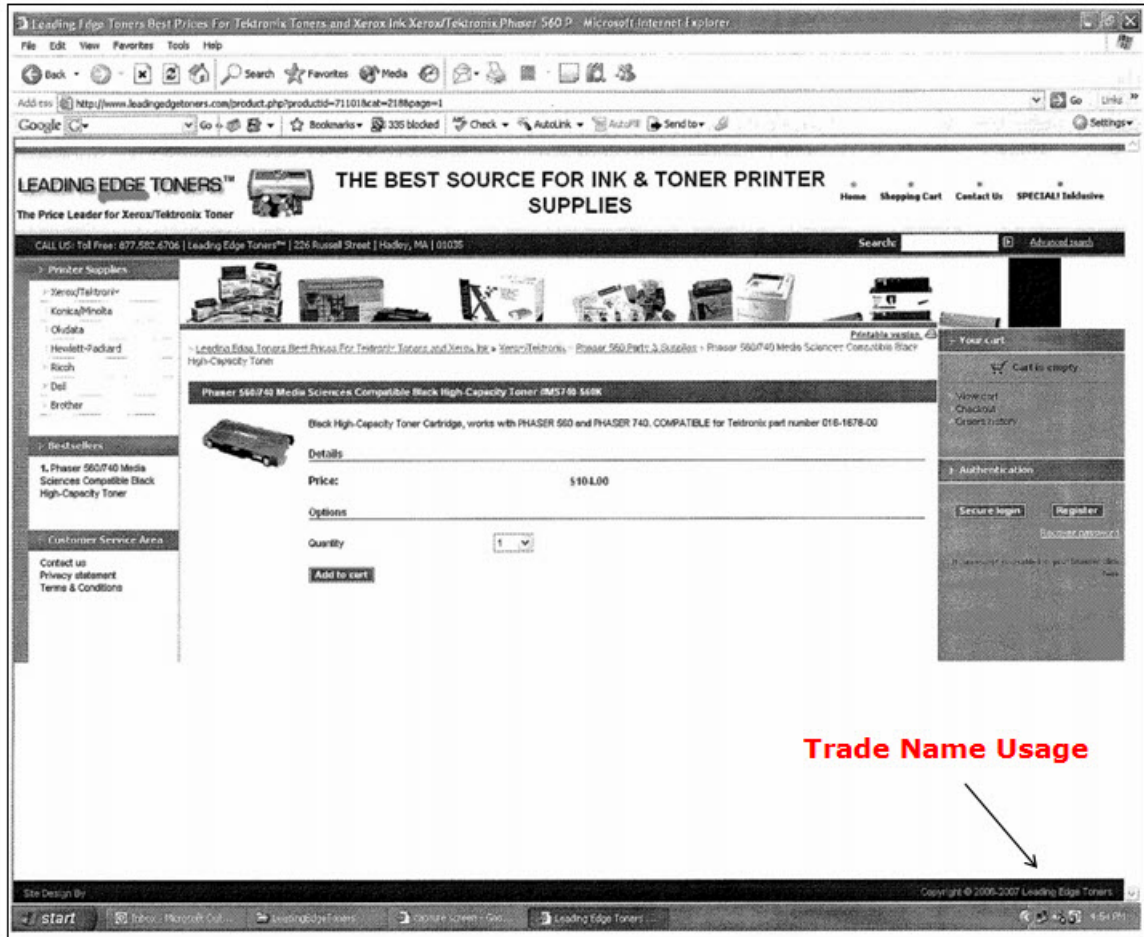
The Board found the following statements were vague and did not sufficiently reference the services:

“Our sincere commitment to all our customers is that we will continue delivering innovative system utilities that are as simple to use as they are powerful and reliable. We also promise that we will keep providing the first-class free software and online service, for personal or non-commercial use.”

“We pursue the genuine ambition of becoming one of the world's top utility producers and Windows system service providers on the Internet.”

It is unclear whether the reference to “online service” is to a separate service or part of the free software goods. The textual reference to becoming a top utility producer and Windows system service provider is not sufficient to indicate being a provider of the identified services.

EXAMPLE 21



Mark: LEADING EDGE TONERS

Goods: Numerous goods including toner; toner cartridges, in Class 2; components for laser toner cartridges; and printer parts, in Class 9; and Ink sticks, in Class 16.

Analysis:

Specimen is described as a “web page.”

Mark is displayed in several places, including at the bottom right corner next to the copyright notice. The Board noted that “where the mark is used with the copyright notice . . ., applicant assumed ‘without admitting’ that the use was solely as a trade name.”

While the specimen is not acceptable for the identified goods, had the mark been used in connection with retail store or distributorship services, the specimen would likely have been acceptable due to

the placement of the mark on the upper left corner of the webpage where service marks normally appear.

1301.05 Identification and Classification of Services

See [TMEP §§1402.11](#) *et seq.* regarding identifications of services, and [TMEP §§1401](#) *et seq.* regarding classification.

1302 Collective Marks Generally

Section 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), defines “collective mark” as follows:

The term “collective mark” means a trademark or service mark--

- (1) used by the members of a cooperative, an association, or other collective group or organization, or
- (2) which such cooperative, association, or other collective group or organization has a bona fide intention to use in commerce and applies to register on the principal register established by this [Act], and includes marks indicating membership in a union, an association, or other organization.

Under the Trademark Act, a collective mark is *owned by* a collective entity even though the mark is *used by* the members of the collective.

There are basically **two types of collective marks**: (1) **collective trademarks or collective service marks**; and (2) **collective membership marks**. The distinction between these types of collective marks is explained in *Aloe Creme Labs., Inc. v. Am. Soc’y for Aesthetic Plastic Surgery, Inc.*, 192 USPQ 170, 173 (TTAB 1976), as follows:

A **collective trademark or collective service mark** is a mark adopted by a “collective” (i.e., an association, union, cooperative, fraternal organization, or other organized collective group) for use only by its members, who in turn use the mark *to identify their goods or services and distinguish them from those of nonmembers*. The “collective” itself neither sells goods nor performs services under a collective trademark or collective service mark, but the collective may advertise or otherwise promote the goods or services sold or rendered by its members under the mark. A **collective membership mark** is a mark adopted for the purpose of *indicating membership in an organized collective group*, such as a union, an association, or other organization. Neither the collective nor its members uses the collective membership mark to identify and distinguish goods or services; rather, the sole function of such a mark is to indicate that the person displaying the mark is a member of the organized collective group.

See also *In re Int’l Inst. of Valuers*, 223 USPQ 350 (TTAB 1984) . See [TMEP §1303](#) concerning collective trademarks and service marks; [TMEP §1304](#) concerning collective membership marks; and [TMEP §1305](#) concerning the distinction between collective trademarks or service marks from trademarks and service marks used by collective organizations.

1302.01 Brief History of Collective Marks

Under the Trademark Act of 1905, registration could be based only on a person’s own use of a mark. The Act did not permit for registration of collective and certification marks because such marks are generally

used by a member of a collective organization or an authorized user, while the owner of the mark exercises legitimate control over this use by others. However, the June 10, 1938 amendment to the Act of 1905, out of which §4 and the accompanying definitions in §45 grew, changed this limitation on use and provided for registration of a mark by an owner who “exercises legitimate control over the use of a collective mark.” “Collective marks,” however, were not defined in the federal statute until implementation of Section 45 of the Act of 1946.

Section 4 of the Trademark Act of 1946 provides the authority for the registration of collective and certification marks by persons exercising legitimate control over their use, even in the absence of an industrial or commercial establishment. [15 U.S.C. §1054](#). Section 45 defines collective marks and certification marks separately, as distinctly different types of marks. [15 U.S.C. §§1054, 1127](#). Additionally, the definition of collective mark in §45 encompasses collective trademarks and collective service marks, as well as collective membership marks, which indicate membership in a union, association, or other organization. [15 U.S.C. §1054](#). See [TMEP §1306](#) regarding certification marks.

1303 Collective Trademarks and Collective Service Marks Generally

Although collective trademarks and collective service marks indicate the commercial origin of goods or services, they also indicate that the party providing the goods or services is a member of a certain group and meets the group's standards for admission. A collective mark is used by all members of the collective group; therefore, no one member can own the mark, and the collective organization holds the title to the collectively used mark for the benefit of all members of the group. In comparison, a trademark or service mark is used by the owner of the mark to indicate the commercial source or origin of the goods/services in the owner.

The collective organization itself neither sells the goods nor renders the services provided under the mark, but may advertise so as to publicize the mark and promote the goods or services sold by its members under the mark. For example, a collective organization of real-estate professionals does not render real-estate services, but rather promotes the real-estate services offered by its members. *See Zimmerman v. Nat'l Assoc. of Realtors*, 70 USPQ2d 1425, 1428 (TTAB 2004).

Compared with a specimen for a trademark or service mark, which generally shows use of the mark by the owner, a specimen of use for a collective trademark or collective service mark must show use of the mark by a member of the collective organization. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#). Such use must be on the member's goods/packaging or in the sale, advertising, or rendering of the member's services. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#).

1303.01 Application Requirements for a Collective Trademark or Collective Service Mark

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.44](#), a complete application for a collective trademark or collective service mark must include the following:

- (1) the legal name and physical address of the applicant (*see* [TMEP §§803.02, 803.05](#));
- (2) the applicant's legal entity type (*see* [TMEP §803.03](#));
- (3) the applicant's citizenship or the jurisdiction under whose laws the applicant is organized, and if the applicant is a domestic partnership or joint venture, the names and citizenship of the general partners or active members of the joint venture (*see* [TMEP §§803.03\(b\), 803.04](#));
- (4) a description of the mark if the mark is not in standard characters (*see* [TMEP §808](#));
- (5) a translation/transliteration of any foreign wording in the mark (*see* [TMEP §809](#));
- (6) a drawing of the mark sought to be registered (*see* [TMEP §807](#));

- (7) a filing fee (*see* [TMEP §810](#));
- (8) a list of the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant's members use or intend to use the mark (*see* [TMEP §§805, 1402](#));
- (9) the international classification of the goods or services (*see* [TMEP §§805, 1401](#)); and
- (10) a filing basis (*see* [TMEP § 1303.01\(a\)-\(a\)\(vi\)](#)), including verification of certain statements signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (*see* [TMEP § 1303.01\(b\)-\(b\)\(ii\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(1\), \(a\)\(2\)\(i\), \(a\)\(3\)\(i\), \(a\)\(4\)](#).

Requirements that differ in form from those in trademark or service mark applications . Most application requirements for collective trademarks and collective service marks are the same as those for regular trademarks and service marks. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(1\)](#). However, the filing basis and verification requirements for collective trademark and collective service mark applications differ in form from other trademark and service mark applications because of the difference between who owns and uses collective trademarks and collective service marks. *See* TMEP §§1303.01(a)-(a)(v) for information regarding filing-basis requirements for collective trademarks and collective service marks and TMEP §§1303.01(b)-(b)(ii) for information regarding the verification of certain statements in collective trademark and collective service mark applications.

See TMEP [Chapter 1600](#) for requirements post registration.

1303.01(a) Filing Basis

All applications for registration must include a filing basis, regardless of the type of mark, because this is the statutory basis for filing an application for registration of a mark in the United States. [TMEP §806](#). There are five filing bases: (1) use of a mark in commerce under §1(a) of the Act; (2) bona fide intention to use a mark in commerce under §1(b) of the Act; (3) a claim of priority, based on an earlier-filed foreign application under §44(d) of the Act; (4) ownership of a registration of the mark in the applicant's country of origin under §44(e) of the Act; and (5) extension of protection of an international registration to the United States, under §66(a) of the Act. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)-\(b\), 1126\(d\)-\(e\), 1141f\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)](#).

An applicant is not required to specify or otherwise satisfy the requirements for a filing basis to receive a filing date. *See* *Kraft Grp. LLC v. Harpole*, 90 USPQ2d 1837, 1840 (TTAB 2009) . If a §1 or §44 application does not specify a basis, the examining attorney must require in the first Office action that the applicant specify the basis for filing and submit all the elements required for that basis. If the applicant timely responds to the first Office action, but fails to specify a basis for filing, or fails to submit all the elements required for a particular basis, the examining attorney will issue a final Office action, if the application is otherwise in condition for final action.

In a §66(a) application, the basis for filing will have been established in the international registration on file at the IB.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)](#) and TMEP §1301(a)(i)-(v) for a list of the requirements for each basis.

1303.01(a)(i) Use in Commerce – §1(a)

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\), 1054](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#), to establish a basis under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the applicant must:

- (1) Submit a statement specifying the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark by the members ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) Specify the date of the applicant's member's first use of the mark anywhere on or in connection with the goods or services ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#));
- (3) Specify the date of the applicant's member's first use of the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#));
- (4) Submit one specimen for each class, showing how a member uses the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\), 2.56\(b\)\(3\)](#)); and
- (5) Submit a verified statement that the applicant believes the applicant is the owner of the mark; that the mark is in use in commerce; that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons except members have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; that the specimen shows the mark as used in commerce by the applicant's members; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(C\), 1054](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#)). See TMEP §1303.01(b)(i) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1(a) of the Trademark Act.

The Trademark Act defines “commerce” as commerce which may lawfully be regulated by Congress, and “use in commerce” as the bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); *see* [TMEP §§901–901.04](#).

An applicant may claim both use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act and intent-to-use under §1(b) of the Act as a filing basis in the same application, but may not assert both §1(a) and §1(b) for the identical goods or services in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(c\)](#); *see* [TMEP §806.02\(b\)](#).

An applicant may not claim a §1(a) basis unless the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services covered by the §1(a) basis as of the application filing date. *Cf. E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co. v. Sunlyra Int'l, Inc.*, 35 USPQ2d 1787, 1791 (TTAB 1995) .

If the applicant claims use in commerce in addition to another filing basis, but does not specify which goods or services are covered by which basis, the USPTO may defer examination of the specimen(s) until the applicant identifies the goods or services for which use is claimed. [TMEP §806.02\(c\)](#).

In certain situations, notwithstanding the use of a collective trademark or collective service mark by the members of the collective, the collective itself may also use the same mark as a trademark or service mark for the goods or services covered by the collective trademark or collective service mark registration. *See* [TMEP §1305](#). The “anti-use-by-owner rule” of §4 of the Trademark Act does not apply to collective marks. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1054](#). The Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988, which became effective on November 16, 1989, amended §4 to indicate that the “anti-use-by-owner rule” in that section applies only to certification marks. *Cf. Roush Bakery Prods. Co. v. F.R. Lepage Bakery Inc.*, 4 USPQ2d 1401 (TTAB 1987) , *aff'd*, 851 F.2d 351, 7 USPQ2d 1395 (Fed. Cir. 1988), *withdrawn, vacated and remanded*, 863 F.2d 43, 9 USPQ2d 1335 (Fed. Cir. 1988), *vacated and modified*, 13 USPQ2d 1045 (TTAB 1989) (stating that the Board no longer believes that the anti-use-by-owner rule is applicable to trademarks).

The same mark may not be used both as a collective trademark or collective service mark and as a certification mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(f\)](#); [TMEP § 1306.04\(f\)](#).

1303.01(a)(i)(A) Manner/Method of Control

An applicant must specify the class of persons entitled to use the mark, indicating their relationship to the applicant, and the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#). A statement that the applicant's bylaws or other written provisions specify the manner of control is sufficient to satisfy this requirement. This statement does not have to be verified and, therefore, may be entered by examiner's amendment.

The following language may be used for the above purpose:

Applicant controls the members' use of the mark in the following manner: [specify, e.g., the applicant's bylaws specify the manner of control].

1303.01(a)(i)(B) Dates of Use

When setting out the dates of use for a collective trademark on goods or collective service mark in connection with services, the applicant must state that the mark was first used by a member of the applicant rather than by the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#).

The date of first use anywhere for a collective trademark application is the date when an applicant's member's goods were first sold or transported or, for a collective service mark application, when an applicant's member's services were first rendered, under the mark, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of "use" within the definition of "abandonment of mark"). For every applicant, whether foreign or domestic, the date of first use of a mark is the date of the first use anywhere, in the United States or elsewhere, regardless of whether the nature of the use was local or national, intrastate or interstate, or of another type.

The date of first use in commerce for a collective trademark application is the date when an applicant's member's goods were first sold or transported or, for a collective service mark application, when an applicant's member's services were first rendered, under the mark in a type of commerce that may be lawfully regulated by the U.S. Congress, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of "use" within the definition of "abandonment of mark"). See [TMEP §901.01](#) for definitions of "commerce" and "use in commerce," and [TMEP §901.03](#) regarding types of commerce.

In a §1(a) application, the applicant may not specify a date of use that is later than the filing date of the application. If an applicant who filed under §1(a) cannot show that a member used the mark in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the basis to §1(b). See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

Neither a date of first use nor a date of first use in commerce is required to receive a filing date in an application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act. If the application does not include a date of first use and/or a date of first use in commerce, the examining attorney must require that the applicant specify the date of first use and/or date of first use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#). The dates must be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\), 2.71\(c\)](#).

An applicant may not file an application on the basis of use of a mark in commerce if such use has been discontinued.

1303.01(a)(i)(C) Specimens

A specimen of use for a collective trademark or collective service mark must show use of the mark by a member on the member's goods or in the sale or advertising of the member's services. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(3\)](#).

The specimen must show use of the mark to indicate that the party providing the goods or services is a member of a certain group. For example, collective trademark specimens should show the mark used on the goods or packaging for the goods; collective service mark specimens should show the mark used in the sale, advertising, or rendering of the services.

The purpose of the mark must be to indicate that the product or service is provided by a member of a collective group. However, the specimen itself does not have to state that purpose explicitly. The examining attorney should accept the specimen if the mark is used on the specimen to indicate the source of the product or service, and there is no information in the record that is inconsistent with the applicant's averments that the mark is a collective mark owned by a collective group and used by members of the group.

See [TMEP §904.07\(a\)](#) regarding whether a trademark or service mark specimen shows the mark used in commerce.

1303.01(a)(ii) Intent to Use – §1(b)

In an application based on intent to use, the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1054](#). See TMEP §1303.01(b)(i) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1(b) of the Trademark Act.

Prior to registration, the applicant must file an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), which states that (a) the mark is in use in commerce and (b) the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, and includes dates of use, the filing fee for each class, and one specimen evidencing use of the mark for each class. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)](#), [2.88\(b\)](#). *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.76](#) and [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use and [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#) and [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use.

Once an applicant claims a §1(b) basis for any or all the goods or services, the applicant may not amend the application to seek registration under §1(a) of the Act for those goods or services unless the applicant files an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(8\)](#).

See [TMEP Chapter 1100](#) for additional information about intent-to-use applications.

1303.01(a)(iii) Foreign Priority – §44(d)

Section 44(d) of the Act provides a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, but not a basis for publication or registration. Before the application can be approved for publication, or for registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must establish a basis under §1(a), §1(b), or §44(e) of the Act. [37 C.F.R.](#)

[§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1003.03](#). If the applicant claims a §1(b) basis, the applicant must file an allegation of use before the mark can be registered. See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the requirements for a §1(b) basis.

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1054](#), [1126\(d\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)](#), the requirements for receipt of a priority filing date based on a previously filed foreign application are:

- (1) The applicant must file a claim of priority within six months of the filing date of the foreign application ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) The applicant must: (a) specify the filing date, serial number, and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or (b) state that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#); *see also* Paris Convention Article 4(D)); and
- (3) The applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), 1054). This allegation is required even if use in commerce is asserted in the application ([TMEP §806.02\(e\)](#)). See [TMEP § 1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §44 of the Trademark Act.

The scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(2\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

If an applicant properly claims a §44(d) basis in addition to another basis, the applicant may retain the priority filing date without perfecting the §44(e) basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#). See [TMEP §806.04\(b\)](#) regarding processing an amendment electing not to perfect a §44(e) basis and [TMEP §806.02\(f\)](#) regarding the examination of applications that claim §44(d) in addition to another basis. See [TMEP §§1003–1003.08](#) for further information about §44(d) applications.

1303.01(a)(iv) Foreign Registration – §44(e)

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1054](#), [1126\(e\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)](#), the requirements for establishing a basis for registration under §44(e), relying on a registration granted by the applicant's country of origin, are:

- (1) The applicant must submit a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of the registration in the applicant's country of origin. If the foreign registration or other certification is not in English, the applicant must provide a translation of the document. If the record indicates that the foreign registration will expire before the U.S. registration will issue, the applicant must submit a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of a proof of renewal from the applicant's country of origin to establish that the foreign registration has been renewed and will be in full force and effect at the time the U.S. registration will issue. If the proof of renewal is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §§1004.01](#), [1004.01\(b\)](#));

- (2) The applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), 1054). This allegation is required even if use in commerce is asserted in the application ([TMEP §806.02\(e\)](#)). See TMEP §1303.01(b)(i) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §44 of the Trademark Act; and
- (3) The applicant's country of origin must either be a party to a convention or treaty relating to trademarks to which the United States is also a party, or extend reciprocal registration rights to nationals of the United States by law (15 U.S.C. §1026(b), *see* [TMEP § 1002.03](#)).

If the applicant does not submit a certification or a certified copy of the registration from its country of origin, the applicant must submit a true copy or photocopy of a document that has been issued to the applicant by, or certified by, the intellectual property office in the applicant's country of origin. A photocopy of an entry in the intellectual property office's gazette (or other official publication) or a printout from the intellectual property office's website is not, by itself, sufficient to establish that the mark has been registered in that country and that the registration is in full force and effect. *See* [TMEP §1004.01](#).

The scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis in the United States application may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(2\)\(iii\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

An application may be based on more than one foreign registration. If the applicant amends an application to rely on a different foreign registration, this is not considered a change in basis; however, the application must be republished. [TMEP §1004.02](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to add or substitute a basis.

See [TMEP §§1004–1004.02](#) for further information about §44(e) applications.

1303.01(a)(iv)(A) Scope of Foreign Registration

A registration as a collective trademark or collective service mark in the United States may not be based on a foreign registration that is actually a trademark registration. *See In re Löwenbräu München*, 175 USPQ 178 (TTAB 1972) (noting that the U.S. registration cannot exceed the breadth or scope of the foreign registration on which it is based); TMEP § [1402.01\(b\)](#). The scope of the registration, i.e., the nature of the registration right, would not be the same.

The scope and nature of the registration is not always immediately apparent from a foreign registration certificate. Foreign registration certificates may not always clearly identify whether the mark is a trademark, service mark, collective mark, or certification mark and even when they indicate the type, the significance of the term used for the type is not always clear. For example, the designation "collective" represents a different concept in some foreign countries than it does in the United States. Moreover, while a certificate printed on a standardized form may be headed with the designation "trademark," the body of the certificate might contain language to the contrary.

If a foreign registration certificate has a heading that designates the mark as a collective trademark or collective service mark, or if the body of the foreign certificate contains language indicating that the

registration is for a collective trademark or collective service mark, the foreign registration normally may be accepted to support registration in the United States as a collective trademark or collective service mark.

If a foreign registration certificate has a heading that designates the mark as a collective mark, or if the body of the foreign certificate contains language indicating that the registration is for a collective mark, this could indicate that the foreign registration is for a collective trademark, collective service mark, or collective membership mark. *See* TMEP § [1302](#). In such a situation, the examining attorney must review the foreign registration to determine if there is a reference to goods or services such that the registration is for a collective trademark or collective service mark, or a reference indicating membership only such that the registration is for a collective membership mark. *Id.*

Whenever there is ambiguity about the scope or nature of the foreign registration, or whenever the examining attorney believes that the foreign certificate may not reflect the actual registration right, the examining attorney should inquire regarding the basis of the foreign registration, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. 2.61\(b\)](#).

1303.01(a)(v) Extension of Protection of International Registration – §66(a)

Section 66(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), provides for a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#). The request must include a verified statement alleging that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation; that the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant/holder; and that to the best of his/her knowledge and belief, no other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, except members, has the right to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1054](#). For a collective trademark or collective service mark application, the required verified statement is not part of the international registration on file at the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”); therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

See [TMEP § 1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §66(a) of the Trademark Act.

A §66(a) applicant may not change the basis or claim more than one basis unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §§2.35\(a\)](#), [2.44\(c\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1904.09](#) regarding the limited circumstances under which a §66(a) application may be transformed into an application under §1 or §44.

Section 66(a) requires transmission of a request for extension of protection by the IB to the USPTO. Such basis may not be added or substituted as a basis in an application originally filed under §1 or §44.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#), Madrid Protocol Article 4(2), and [37 C.F.R. §7.27](#), the §66(a) applicant may claim a right of priority within the meaning of Article 4 of the Paris Convention if:

- (1) The request for extension of protection contains a claim of priority;

- (2) The request for extension of protection specifies the filing date, serial number, and the country of the application that forms the basis for the claim of priority; *and*
- (3) The date of international registration or the date of the recordal of the subsequent designation requesting an extension of protection to the United States is not later than six months after the date of the first regular national filing (within the meaning of Article 4(A)(3) of the Paris Convention) or a subsequent application (within the meaning of Article 4(C)(4) of the Paris Convention).

See Common Regs., Rule 9(4)(a)(iv); Guide to the International Registration of Marks under the Madrid Agreement and the Madrid Protocol (2014) (“Guide to International Registration”), Para. B.II.07.32.

1303.01(a)(vi) Multiple Bases, Amending/Deleting the Basis, Review of Basis Prior to Publication/Issue

The procedures for examining an application with multiple bases, amending or deleting a basis, and reviewing the basis information prior to publication or issuance of a registration are the same as for trademark and service mark applications. See [TMPEP §806.02](#) for information about multiple bases, [TMPEP §806.03](#) regarding amending the basis, [TMPEP §806.04](#) regarding deleting a basis, and [TMPEP §806.05](#) regarding review of a basis prior to publication or issue.

1303.01(b) Verification of Certain Statements

An application must include certain statements that are verified by the applicant or by someone who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant. See [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#); [TMPEP §1303.01\(b\)\(i\) - \(b\)\(ii\)](#).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, a signed verification is not required for receipt of an application filing date under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#). If the initial application does not include a proper verified statement, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a verified statement that relates back to the original filing date. See [TMPEP §§804.01–804.01\(b\)](#) regarding the form of the oath or declaration, [TMPEP §1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the essential allegations required to verify an application for registration of a mark, and [TMPEP §804.04](#) regarding persons properly authorized to sign a verification on behalf of an applicant.

In §66(a) applications, the verified statement is *not* part of the international registration on file at the IB; therefore the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#), [TMPEP §§804.05](#), [1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1904.01\(c\)](#).

1303.01(b)(i) Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application

The requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)-\(iv\)](#). See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)](#), [1051\(b\)\(3\)](#), [1054](#), [1126](#). These allegations are required regardless of whether the verification is in the form of an oath ([TMPEP §804.01\(a\)](#)) or a declaration ([TMPEP §804.01\(b\)](#)). See [TMPEP §1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the requirements for verification of a §66(a) application. See [TMPEP §§1303.01\(a\) - \(a\)\(iv\)](#) for further information regarding filing-basis requirements, including the verified statement.

Truth of Facts Recited . Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(B\)](#) and [1051\(b\)\(3\)\(C\)](#), verification of an application for registration must include an allegation that “to the best of the verifier’s knowledge and belief, the facts recited in the application are accurate.” The language in [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) that “all statements made of [the signatory’s] own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true” satisfies this requirement. See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#).

Use in Commerce and Exercising Legitimate Control . If the filing basis is §1(a), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce and that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the mark was in use in commerce and the applicant was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Bona Fide Intention and Entitlement to Exercise Legitimate Control . If the filing basis is §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, and that to the best of the signatory’s knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Ownership . In an application based on §1(a), the verified statement must allege that the applicant *believes the applicant is the owner of the mark* , and that to the best of the signatory’s knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#); see [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(A\)](#), [\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#).

Concurrent Use . The verification for concurrent use should be modified to indicate an exception that no other persons *except members and the concurrent user(s)* as specified in the application have the right to use the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(d\)](#); see [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#). See TMEP §1207.04(d)(ii) for concurrent use application requirements for a collective mark.

Affirmative, Unequivocal Averments Based on Personal Knowledge Required. The verification must include affirmative, unequivocal averments that meet the requirements of the Act and the rules. Statements such as “the undersigned [person signing the declaration] has been informed that the mark is in use in commerce [or has been informed that applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce] . . .,” or wording that disavows the substance of the declaration, are unacceptable.

Verification Not Filed Within Reasonable Time . If the verified statement is not filed within a reasonable time after it is signed, the examining attorney will require the applicant to submit a substitute verified statement attesting that, as of the application filing date, the mark was in use in commerce and the applicant was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (in an application based on §1(a)); or, as of the application filing date, the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (in an application based on §1(b) or §44). [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §804.03](#) for information regarding time between execution and filing of documents.

Substitute Verification . If the verified statement does not include all the necessary averments, the examining attorney will require a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

1303.01(b)(ii) Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §66(a) Application

For a collective trademark or collective service mark in a §66(a) application, the verified statement is not part of the international registration on file at the IB; therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Thus, in applications under §66(a) of the Act, the applicant must supplement the request for extension of protection to the United States to include a declaration that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#). The declaration must include a statement that the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant and that to the best of his/her knowledge and belief, no other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, except members, has the right to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate, either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods/services of such other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. 2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1141\(f\)\(a\)](#).

Additionally, because the verified statement is not included with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

See [TMEP § 1303.01\(a\)\(v\)](#) for further information regarding filing basis requirements, including the verified statement.

1303.02 Examination of Collective Trademark and Collective Service Mark Applications

The examination of applications to register collective trademarks and collective service marks is conducted in a manner similar to the examination of applications to register regular trademarks and service marks, using most of the same criteria of registrability. See [15 U.S.C. §1054](#). Thus, the same standards generally applicable to trademarks and service marks are used in considering issues such as descriptiveness, disclaimers, likelihood of confusion, and deceptiveness. However, use (specimens) and ownership requirements are slightly different due to the nature of collective marks. *See* [TMEP §§ 1303.01\(a\)\(i\) - \(a\)\(v\)](#). See [TMEP § 1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective marks. See [TMEP §1207.04](#) for information regarding a concurrent use registration.

1303.02(a) Ownership Considerations

Under the definition of “collective mark” in §45 of the Trademark Act, a collective mark must be owned by a collective entity. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). The use of a collective trademark or collective service mark is by members of the collective, but no member may own the collective mark. That is, application may not be made by a mere member. Therefore, in an application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), the applicant must assert that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce.

1303.02(b) Likelihood of Confusion

Likelihood of confusion may arise from the contemporaneous use, by one party, of a collective trademark or collective service mark on the one hand and a trademark or service mark on the other. The same standards used to determine likelihood of confusion between trademarks and service marks also apply to collective marks. See [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#); cf. *In re Nat'l Novice Hockey League, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 638 (TTAB 1984); *Allstate Life Ins. Co. v. Cuna Int'l, Inc.*, 169 USPQ 313 (TTAB 1971), aff'd, 487 F.2d 1407, 180 USPQ 48 (C.C.P.A. 1973).

The finding of likelihood of confusion between a collective trademark or collective service mark and a trademark or service mark is not based on confusion as to the source of any goods or services provided by the members of the collective organization. Rather, the question is whether relevant persons are likely to believe that the trademark owner's goods or services emanate from, are endorsed by, or are in some way associated with the collective organization. Cf. *In re Code Consultants Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1699, 1701 (TTAB 2001).

1304 Collective Membership Marks

1304.01 Collective Membership Marks Generally

The sole purpose of a collective membership mark is to indicate that the user of the mark is a member of a particular organization. See *Constitution Party of Tex. v. Constitution Ass'n USA*, 152 USPQ 443 (TTAB 1966) (holding cancellation of collective membership mark registration proper since mark was not being used to indicate membership in registrant).

Thus, membership marks are not trademarks or service marks in the ordinary sense; they are not used in business or trade, and they do not indicate commercial origin of goods or services. Registration of these marks fills the need of collective organizations who do not use the symbols of their organizations on goods or services but who still wish to protect their marks from use by others. See *Ex parte Supreme Shrine of the Order of the White Shrine of Jerusalem*, 109 USPQ 248 (Comm'r Pats. 1956), regarding the rationale for registration of collective membership marks.

A collective membership mark may comprise an individual letter or combination of letters, a single word or combination of words, a design alone, a name or nickname, or other matter that identifies the collective organization or indicates its purpose. A membership mark may, but need not, include the term "member" or the equivalent.

In addition to the mark being printed (the most common form), a membership mark may consist of an object, such as a flag, or may be a part of articles of jewelry, such as lapel pins or rings. See [TMEP §§1304.02\(a\)\(i\)](#) and [1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding use of membership marks and acceptable specimens.

Nothing in the Trademark Act prohibits the use of the same mark as a membership mark by members and, also, as a trademark or a service mark by the parent organization, but the same mark may not be used both as a membership mark and as a certification mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1306.04\(f\)](#).

See [TMEP §1302.01](#) regarding the history of collective membership marks.

1304.02 Application Requirements for Collective Membership Marks

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.44](#), a complete application for a collective membership mark must include the following:

- (1) the legal name and physical address of the applicant (see [TMEP §§803.02](#), [803.05](#));
- (2) the applicant's legal entity type (see [TMEP §803.03](#));
- (3) the applicant's citizenship or the jurisdiction under whose laws the applicant is organized, and if the applicant is a domestic partnership or joint venture, the names and citizenship of the general partners or active members of the joint venture (see [TMEP §§803.03\(b\)](#), [803.04](#));
- (4) a description of the mark if the mark is not in standard characters (see [TMEP §808](#));
- (5) a translation/transliteration of any foreign wording in the mark (see [TMEP §809](#));
- (6) a drawing of the mark sought to be registered (see [TMEP §807](#));
- (7) a filing fee (see [TMEP §810](#));
- (8) a description of the nature of the membership organization such as by type, purpose, or area of activity of the members (see [TMEP §1304.02\(c\)](#));
- (9) classification in U.S. Class 200 for a §1 or §44 application, or the classification assigned by the IB for a §66(a) application (see [TMEP §1304.02\(d\)](#)); and
- (10) a filing basis (see [TMEP §§1304.02\(a\) - \(a\)\(vi\)](#)), including verification of certain statements signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see [TMEP §§1304.02\(b\) - b\(ii\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(1\)](#), [\(a\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)](#).

Requirements that differ in form from those in trademark or service mark applications. Most application requirements for collective membership marks are the same as those for regular trademarks and service marks. However, the filing basis, verification, identification, and classification requirements for collective membership mark applications differ in form from other trademark and service mark applications because of the difference between who owns and uses collective membership marks. See [TMEP §§1304.02\(a\) - \(a\)\(v\)](#) for information regarding filing basis requirements, [TMEP §§1304.02\(b\) - \(b\)\(ii\)](#) for information regarding the verification of certain statements, [TMEP §1304.02\(c\)](#) for identification requirements, and [TMEP §1304.02\(d\)](#) for classification requirements in collective membership mark applications.

See [TMEP Chapter 1600](#) for post-registration requirements.

1304.02(a) Filing Basis

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)](#) for information regarding an application filing basis for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks.

For a list of the requirements pertaining to each filing basis, see [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)](#) and [TMEP §§1304.02\(a\)\(i\) - \(v\)](#).

1304.02(a)(i) Use in Commerce – §1(a)

Registration of a collective membership mark under §1(a) is based on actual use of the mark by the members of a collective organization. The owner of the mark exercises control over the use of the mark; however, because the sole purpose of a membership mark is to indicate membership, use of the mark is by its members. See *In re Triangle Club of Princeton Univ.*, 138 USPQ 332 (TTAB 1963) (collective membership mark registration denied because specimen did not show use of mark by members).

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\), 1054](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#), to establish a basis under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the applicant must:

- (1) Submit a statement specifying the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark by the members ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) Specify the date of the applicant's members' first use of the mark anywhere to indicate membership in the collective organization ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#));
- (3) Specify the date of the applicant's members' first use of the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#));
- (4) Submit one specimen for each class, showing how a member uses the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\), 2.56\(b\)\(3\)](#)); and
- (5) Submit a verified statement that the applicant believes the applicant is the owner of the mark; that the mark is in use in commerce; that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons except members have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the collective membership organization of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; that the specimen shows the mark as used in commerce by the applicant's members; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(C\), 1054](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#)). See [TMEP § 1304.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1(a) of the Trademark Act.

The Trademark Act defines "commerce" as commerce that may lawfully be regulated by Congress, and "use in commerce" as the bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); see [TMEP §§901–901.04](#).

An applicant may not assert both §1(a) and §1(b) for the same collective membership organization in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(c\)](#); see [TMEP §806.02\(b\)](#).

Nothing in the Trademark Act prohibits the use of the same mark as a collective membership mark by members and, also, as a trademark or service mark by the parent organization (see [TMEP §1303.01](#)), but the same mark may not be used both as a collective membership mark and as a certification mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(f\)](#); [TMEP § 1306.04\(f\)](#).

1304.02(a)(i)(A) Manner/Method of Control

See [TMEP § 1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(A\)](#) for information regarding the requirement for a Manner/Method of Control statement for a collective trademark or collective service mark. This requirement applies similarly to collective membership marks.

1304.02(a)(i)(B) Dates of Use

When setting out dates of use of a collective membership mark, the applicant must state that the mark was first used by a member of the applicant rather than by the applicant, and that the mark was first used on a specified date to indicate membership rather than first used on goods or in connection with services.

The date of first use anywhere is the date when an applicant's member first indicates membership in the collective organization under the mark, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of "use" within the definition of "abandonment of mark"). For every applicant,

whether foreign or domestic, the date of first use of a mark is the date of the first use anywhere, in the United States or elsewhere, regardless of whether the nature of the use was local or national, intrastate or interstate, or of another type.

The date of first use in commerce is the date when an applicant's member first indicates membership in the collective organization under the mark in a type of commerce that may be lawfully regulated by the U.S. Congress, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of "use" within the definition of "abandonment of mark"). See [TMEP §901.01](#) for definitions of "commerce" and "use in commerce," and [TMEP §901.03](#) regarding types of commerce.

In a §1(a) application, the applicant may not specify a date of use that is later than the filing date of the application. If an applicant who filed under §1(a) cannot show that a member used the mark in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the basis to §1(b). See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

Neither a date of first use nor a date of first use in commerce is required to receive a filing date in an application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act. If the application does not include a date of first use and/or a date of first use in commerce, the examining attorney must require that the applicant specify the date of first use and/or date of first use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#). The dates must be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\), 2.71\(c\)](#).

An applicant may not file an application on the basis of use of a mark in commerce if such use has been discontinued.

1304.02(a)(i)(C) Specimens

The owner of a collective membership mark exercises control over the use of the mark but does not itself use the mark to indicate membership. Therefore, a proper specimen of use of a collective membership mark must show use by members to indicate membership in the collective organization. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(4\)](#); *In re Int'l Ass'n for Enterostomal Therapy, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 343 (TTAB 1983) ; *In re Triangle Club of Princeton Univ.*, 138 USPQ 332 (TTAB 1963).

The most common types of specimens are membership cards and certificates. The applicant may submit as a specimen a blank or voided membership card or certificate.

For trade or professional associations, decals bearing the mark for use by members on doors or windows in their establishments, wall plaques bearing the mark, or decals or plates for use, e.g., on members' vehicles, are satisfactory specimens. If the members are in business and place the mark on their business stationery to show their membership, pieces of such stationery are acceptable. Flags, pennants, and banners of various types used in connection with political parties, club groups, or the like could be satisfactory specimens.

Many associations, particularly fraternal societies, use jewelry such as pins, rings, or charms to indicate membership. See *In re Triangle Club of Princeton Univ.*, *supra*. However, not every ornamental design on jewelry is necessarily an indication of membership. The record must show that the design on a piece of jewelry is actually an indication of membership before the jewelry can be accepted as a specimen of use. See *In re Inst. for Certification of Computer Prof'ls*, 219 USPQ 372 (TTAB 1983) (in view of contradictory evidence in record, specimen with nothing more than CCP thereon was not considered evidence of membership); *In re Mountain Fuel Supply Co.*, 154 USPQ 384 (TTAB 1967) (design on specimen did not indicate membership in organization, but merely showed length of service).

Shoulder, sleeve, pocket, or similar patches, or lapel pins, whose design constitutes a membership mark and which are authorized by the parent organization for use by members on garments to indicate membership, are normally acceptable as specimens. Clothing authorized by the parent organization to be worn by members may also be an acceptable specimen.

A specimen that shows use of the mark by the collective organization itself, rather than by a member, is not acceptable. Collective organizations often publish various kinds of printed material, such as catalogs, directories, bulletins, newsletters, magazines, programs, and the like. Placement of the mark on these items by the collective organization represents use of the mark as a trademark or service mark to indicate that the collective organization is the source of the material. The mark is not placed on these items by the parent organization to indicate membership of a person in the organization.

See [TMPEP §904.07\(a\)](#) regarding whether a trademark or service mark specimen shows the mark used in commerce.

See [TMPEP §1304.03\(b\)](#) regarding specimen refusals specific to collective membership marks.

1304.02(a)(ii) Intent to Use – §1(b)

See [TMPEP § 1303.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#) for information regarding an intent-to-use filing basis for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks, with the only difference being that the verified statement refers to a collective membership organization rather than goods or services.

1304.02(a)(iii) Foreign Priority – §44(d)

See [TMPEP § 1303.01\(a\)\(iii\)](#) for information regarding a §44(d) filing basis for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks, with the only difference being that the verified statement refers to a collective membership organization rather than goods or services.

1304.02(a)(iv) Foreign Registration – §44(e)

See [TMPEP §1303.01\(a\)\(iv\)](#) for information regarding a §44(e) filing basis for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks, with only two differences. First, the verified statement refers to a collective membership organization rather than goods or services. Second, the scope of the nature of the collective membership organization covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the nature of the collective membership organization identified in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(2\)\(iii\)](#); [TMPEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

1304.02(a)(iv)(A) Scope of Foreign Registration

See [TMPEP §1303.01\(a\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#) for information regarding the scope of a foreign registration for a collective trademark or collective service mark. This information applies similarly to collective membership marks.

1304.02(a)(v) Extension of Protection of International Registration – §66(a)

See [TMPEP §1303.01\(a\)\(v\)](#) for information regarding a §66(a) filing basis for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks, with the only

difference being that the verified statement refers to a collective membership organization rather than goods or services.

1304.02(a)(vi) Multiple Bases, Amending/Deleting the Basis, Review of Basis Prior to Publication/Issue

The procedures for examining an application with multiple bases, amending or deleting a basis, and reviewing the basis information prior to publication or issuance of a registration are the same as for trademark and service mark applications. See [TMEP §806.02](#) for information about multiple bases, [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amending the basis, [TMEP §806.04](#) regarding deleting a basis, and [TMEP §806.05](#) regarding review of a basis prior to publication or issue.

1304.02(b) Verification of Certain Statements

See [TMEP §1303.01\(b\)](#) for information about the verification of certain statements for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks, except for the statement regarding the applicant's bona fide intent and entitlement to exercise legitimate control and the applicant's ownership statement.

1304.02(b)(i) Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application

See [TMEP §1303.01\(b\)\(i\)](#) for information about the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1 or §44 for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to collective membership marks. The two exceptions are the following requirements, which differ only in form.

Bona Fide Intention and Entitlement to Exercise Legitimate Control . If the filing basis is §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, and that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used in connection with the collective membership organization of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Ownership . In an application based on §1(a), the verified statement must allege that the applicant *believes the applicant is the owner of the mark* , and that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except members, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used in connection with the collective membership organization of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(A\)](#), [1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1304.02\(a\) - \(a\)\(iv\)](#) for further information regarding filing-basis requirements, including the verified statement.

1304.02(b)(ii) Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §66(a) Application

For a collective membership mark in a §66(a) application, the verified statement is *not* part of the international registration on file at the IB; therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. See [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

In applications under §66(a) of the Act, the applicant must supplement the request for extension of protection to the United States to include a declaration that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate to indicate membership in the collective organization. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#). The declaration must include a statement that the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant and that to the best of his/her knowledge and belief, no other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, except members, has the right to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used in connection with the collective membership organization of such other person, firm, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. 2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#); see [15 U.S.C. §1141\(f\)\(a\)](#).

Additionally, because the verified statement is not included with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that, *as of the application filing date*, the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.44\(b\)\(2\)](#).

See [TMEP § 1303.01\(a\)\(v\)](#) for further information regarding filing-basis requirements, including the verified statement.

1304.02(c) Identification of Nature of Collective Membership Organization

The purpose of a collective membership mark is to indicate membership in an organization; therefore, an identification of goods or services would not be appropriate in connection with a collective membership mark. More accurate identification language would be “indicating membership in an organization (association, club, or the like) . . .,” followed by a phrase indicating the nature of the organization or association, for example, “indicating membership in an organization of computer professionals” or “indicating membership in a motorcycle club.”

The nature of an organization can be indicated by specifying the area of activity of its members (e.g., they may sell lumber, cosmetics, or food, or may deal in chemical products or household goods, or provide services as fashion designers, engineers, or accountants). If goods or services are not directly involved, the nature of an organization can be indicated by specifying the organization’s type or purpose (such as a service or social club, a political society, a trade association, a beneficial fraternal organization, or the like). Detailed descriptions of an organization’s objectives or activities are not necessary. It is sufficient if the identification indicates broadly either the field of activity as related to the goods or services, or the general type or purpose of the organization.

1304.02(d) Classification

Section 1 and §44 Applications. In applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, collective membership marks are classified in U.S. Class 200. [37 C.F.R. §6.4](#). United States Class 200 was established as a result of the decision in *Ex parte Supreme Shrine of the Order of the White Shrine of Jerusalem*, 109 USPQ 248 (Comm’r Pats. 1956). Before this decision, there was no registration of membership insignia on the theory

that all collective marks were either collective trademarks or collective service marks. Some marks that were actually membership marks were registered under the Trademark Act of 1946 as collective service marks, and a few were registered as collective trademarks. That practice was discontinued upon the clarification of the basis for registration of membership marks and the creation of U.S. Class 200.

Section 66(a) Applications. A §66(a) application may indicate that the mark is a “Collective, Certificate or Guarantee Mark” or the identification may indicate that the mark is intended to indicate membership. In such cases, the examining attorney will require the applicant to clarify for the record the type of mark for which it seeks protection. The examining attorney must also require the applicant to comply with the requirements for the particular type of mark, i.e., collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark. See [TMEP §§1303–1303.02\(b\)](#) regarding collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §§1304–1304.03\(c\)](#) regarding collective membership marks, and [TMEP §§1306–1306.06\(c\)](#) regarding certification marks.

If a §66(a) applicant indicates that the mark is a collective membership mark, the USPTO will not reclassify it into U.S. Class 200 because the classification of such applications may not be changed from that assigned by the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”). [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\), 1904.02\(b\)](#). However, the examining attorney must ensure that the applicant complies with all other U.S. requirements for collective membership marks. See [TMEP §§1304–1304.03\(c\)](#).

1304.03 Examination of Collective Membership Mark Applications

An application to register a collective membership mark on the Principal Register must meet all the criteria for registration of other marks on the Principal Register. [15 U.S.C. §1054](#); see [37 C.F.R. §2.46](#). Likewise, when determining the registrability of a collective membership mark on the Supplemental Register, the same standards are used as are applied to other types of marks. See [37 C.F.R. §2.47](#).

The examination of collective membership mark applications is conducted in the same manner as the examination of applications to register trademarks and service marks, using the same criteria of registrability. Thus, the same standards generally applicable to trademarks and service marks are used in considering issues such as descriptiveness or disclaimers. See *Racine Indus. Inc. v. Bane-Clene Corp.*, 35 USPQ2d 1832, 1837 (TTAB 1994) ; *In re Ass’n of Energy Eng’rs, Inc.*, 227 USPQ 76, 77 (TTAB 1985) ; *In re Int’l Ass’n for Enterostomal Therapy, Inc.*, 218 USPQ 343 (TTAB 1983) . However, use (specimens) and ownership requirements are slightly different due to the nature of collective membership marks indicating membership rather than commercial origin.

See [TMEP §1207.04](#) for information regarding seeking a concurrent use registration.

1304.03(a) Ownership Considerations

Under the definition of “collective mark” in §45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1127](#), only a “cooperative, an association or other collective group or organization” can become the owner of a collective mark. However, there is great variety in the organizational form of collective groups whose members use membership marks. The terms “group” and “organization” are broad enough to cover all groups of persons who are brought together in an organized manner such as to justify their being called “collective.”

The organization is usually an association, either incorporated or unincorporated, but is not limited to being an association and may have some other form.

A collective membership mark may be owned by someone other than the collective organization whose members use the mark, and the owner might not itself be a collective organization. An example is a business corporation who forms a club for persons meeting certain qualifications, and arranges to retain control of the group and of the mark used by the members of the group. The corporation that has retained control over the use of the mark is the owner of the mark, and is entitled to apply to register the mark. *In re Stencel Aero Eng'g Corp.*, 170 USPQ 292 (TTAB 1971) .

To apply to register a collective membership mark, the collective organization which owns the mark must be a person capable of suing and being sued in a court of law. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); [TMEP §803.01](#). The persons who compose a collective group may be either natural or juristic persons.

Application to register a membership mark must be made by the organization or person (including juristic persons) that controls or intends to control the use of the mark by the members and, therefore, owns or is entitled to use the mark. See [15 U.S.C. §1054](#); *In re Stencel Aero Eng'g Corp.*, 170 USPQ 292 (TTAB 1971) . Application may not be made by a mere member.

1304.03(b) Specimen Refusals Specific to Collective Membership Marks

1304.03(b)(i) Matter that Does Not Function as a Membership Mark

Whether matter functions as a collective membership mark is determined by the specimen and evidence of record. It is the use of the mark to indicate membership, rather than the character of the matter composing the mark, that determines whether a term or other designation is a collective membership mark. See *Ex parte Grand Chapter of Phi Sigma Kappa*, 118 USPQ 467 (Comm'r Pats. 1958) (holding that use of Greek letter abbreviations on athletic jerseys did not function as collective membership marks indicating membership in Greek letter societies); *In re Mountain Fuel Supply Co.*, 154 USPQ 384 (TTAB 1967) (holding that the design on a jewelry pin merely indicated longevity of service rather than membership in a collective organization). If a proposed mark does not function as a mark indicating membership, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1, 2, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1054, 1127](#). See [TMEP § 1304.03\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding specimens showing use as degrees or titles. See [TMEP § 904.07\(b\)](#) for information about matter that fails to function as a trademark or service mark.

1304.03(b)(ii) Degree or Title Designations

Professional, technical, educational, and similar organizations often adopt letters or similar designations to be used by persons to indicate that the persons have passed certain tests or completed certain courses of instruction that are specified by the organization, or have demonstrated a degree of proficiency to the satisfaction of the organization. When such a symbol is used solely as a personal title or degree for an individual (i.e., it is used in a manner that identifies *only* a title or degree conferred on this individual), then it does not serve to indicate membership in an organization, and registration as a membership mark must be refused. *In re Int'l Inst. of Valuers*, 223 USPQ 350 (TTAB 1984) (registration properly refused where use of the mark on specimen indicated award of a degree or title, and not membership in collective organization); see also *In re Nat'l Soc'y of Cardiopulmonary Technologists, Inc.*, 173 USPQ 511 (TTAB 1972) ; *cf. In re Thacker*, 228 USPQ 961 (TTAB 1986); *In re Nat'l Ass'n of Purchasing Mgmt.*, 228 USPQ 768 (TTAB 1986) ; *In re Mortg. Bankers Ass'n of Am.*, 226 USPQ 954 (TTAB 1985) .

If the proposed mark functions merely as a degree or title, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1, 2, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1054, 1127](#), on the ground that the matter does not function as a collective membership mark. See [TMEP §1304.03\(b\)\(i\)](#).

1304.03(c) Likelihood of Confusion

Likelihood of confusion may arise from the contemporaneous use, by one party, of a collective membership mark on the one hand and a trademark or service mark on the other. The same standards used to determine likelihood of confusion between trademarks and service marks also apply to collective membership marks.

See [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#); *In re Nat'l Novice Hockey League, Inc.*, 222 USPQ 638 (TTAB 1984) ; *Allstate Life Ins. Co. v. Cuna Int'l, Inc.*, 169 USPQ 313 (TTAB 1971) , *aff'd*, 487 F.2d 1407, 180 USPQ 48 (C.C.P.A. 1973).

The finding of likelihood of confusion between a collective membership mark and a trademark or service mark is not based on confusion as to the source of any goods or services provided by the members of the collective organization. Rather, the question is whether relevant persons are likely to believe that the trademark owner's goods or services emanate from, are endorsed by, or are in some way associated with the collective organization. *In re Code Consultants Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1699, 1701 (TTAB 2001) .

1305 Trademarks and Service Marks Used by Collective Organizations

A collective organization may itself use trademarks and service marks to identify its goods and services, as opposed to collective trademarks and service marks or collective membership marks used by the collective's members. *See B.F. Goodrich Co. v. Nat'l Coops., Inc.*, 114 USPQ 406 (Comm'r Pats. 1957) (mark used to identify tires made for applicant cooperative and sold by its distributors is a trademark, not a collective mark that identifies goods of applicant's associated organizations; applicant alone provides specifications and other instructions and applicant alone is responsible for faulty tires).

The examination of applications to register trademarks and service marks used or intended to be used by collective organizations is conducted in the same manner as for other trademarks and service marks, using the same criteria of registrability.

The form of the application used by collective organizations is the same as for those used or intended to be used by other applicants. The collective organization should be listed as the applicant, because it uses or intends to use the mark itself. The specimen submitted must be material applied by the collective organization to its goods or used in connection with its services.

1306 Certification Marks

1306.01 Types of Certification Marks

Section 4 of the Trademark Act, provides for the registration of "certification marks, including indications of regional origin," which are defined in Section 45 as follows:

The term "certification mark" means any word, name, symbol, or device, or any combination thereof--

- (1) used by a person other than its owner, or
- (2) which its owner has a bona fide intention to permit a person other than the owner to use in commerce and files an application to register on the principal register established by this [Act],

to certify regional or other origin, material, mode of manufacture, quality, accuracy, or other characteristics of such person's goods or services or that the work or labor on the goods or services was performed by members of a union or other organization.

[15 U.S.C. §§1054, 1127.](#)

Based on the statute, there are generally three types of certification marks, that is, those that certify:

1. *Geographic origin.* Certification marks may be used to certify that authorized users' goods or services originate in a specific geographic region (e.g., ROQUEFORT for cheese). *See Cmty. of Roquefort v. William Faehndrich, Inc.*, 303 F.2d 494, 133 USPQ 633 (2d Cir. 1962) (ROQUEFORT for cheese from a municipality in France); *State of Fla., Dep't of Citrus v. Real Juices, Inc.*, 330 F. Supp. 428, 171 USPQ 66 (M.D. Fla. 1971) (SUNSHINE TREE for citrus from Florida); *Bureau Nat'l Interprofessionnel Du Cognac v. Int'l Better Drinks Corp.*, 6 USPQ2d 1610 (TTAB 1988) (COGNAC for distilled brandy from a region in France); [TMPEP §§1306.05–1306.05\(j\)](#).
2. *Standards met with respect to quality, materials, or mode of manufacture.* Certification marks may be used to certify that authorized users' goods or services meet certain standards in relation to quality, materials, or mode of manufacture (e.g., approval by Underwriters Laboratories). *See Midwest Plastic Fabricators Inc. v. Underwriters Labs. Inc.*, 906 F.2d 1568, 15 USPQ2d 1359 (Fed. Cir. 1990) (UL certifies, among other things, representative samplings of electrical equipment meeting certain safety standards); *In re Celanese Corp. of Am.*, 136 USPQ 86 (TTAB 1962) (CELANESE certifies plastic toys meeting certifier's safety standards).
3. *Work/labor performed by member or that worker meets certain standards.* Certification marks may also be used to certify that authorized users' work or labor on the products or services was performed by a member of a union or other organization, or that the performer meets certain standards. See [TMPEP §1306.04\(d\)\(ii\)](#) and cases cited therein for further information.

Differences between certification marks and trademarks or service marks. Two characteristics differentiate certification marks from trademarks or service marks: first, a certification mark is not used by its owner but rather by authorized users and, second, a certification mark does not indicate commercial source or distinguish the goods or services of one person from those of another person but rather indicates that the goods/services of authorized users are certified as to a particular aspect of the goods/services. See [TMPEP §1306.06\(a\)](#) for a discussion of the distinction between a certification mark and a collective trademark, collective service mark, or collective membership mark.

1306.01(a) Use Is by Person Other than Owner of Certification Mark

A certification mark may not be used, in the trademark sense of "used," by the owner of the mark; it may be used only by a person or persons other than the owner of the mark. That is, the owner of a certification mark does not apply the mark to his or her goods or services and, in fact, usually does not attach or apply the mark at all. The mark is generally applied by other persons to their goods or services, with authorization from the owner of the mark.

The owner of a certification mark does not produce the goods or perform the services in connection with which the mark is used, and thus does not control their nature and quality. Therefore, it is not appropriate to inquire about control over the nature and quality of the goods or services. What the owner of the certification mark does control is use of the mark by others on their goods or services. This control consists of taking steps to ensure that the mark is applied only to goods or services that contain the characteristics or meet the requirements that the certifier/owner has established or adopted for the certification. See [TMPEP](#)

[§1306.03\(b\)](#) regarding submission of the standards established by the certifier to determine whether the certification mark may be used in relation to the goods and/or services of others.

1306.01(b) Purpose Is to Certify, Not to Indicate Source

A certification mark “is a special creature created for a purpose uniquely different from that of an ordinary service mark or trademark . . .” *In re Fla. Citrus Comm’n*, 160 USPQ 495, 499 (TTAB 1968) . That is the purpose of a certification mark is to inform purchasers that the goods or services of a person possess certain characteristics or meet certain qualifications or standards established by another person. A certification mark does not indicate origin in a single commercial or proprietary source the way a trademark or service mark does. Rather, the same certification mark is used on the goods or services of many different producers.

The message conveyed by a certification mark is that the goods or services have been examined, tested, inspected, or in some way checked by a person who is not their producer, using methods determined by the certifier/owner. The placing of the mark on goods, or its use in connection with services, thus constitutes a certification by someone other than the producer that the prescribed characteristics or qualifications of the certifier for those goods or services have been met.

1306.01(c) Identifying Certification Mark Applications

If the applicant has used the appropriate application form, the application will clearly indicate that the mark is intended to be a certification mark and should include the required elements. For certification mark applications based on §66(a) of the Trademark Act, the request for extension of protection will include a field indicating that the mark is a “Collective, Certificate or Guarantee Mark.” See [TMEP §1904.02\(d\)](#) regarding requirements for §66(a) applications for certification and collective marks.

The examining attorney may also determine that the mark is a certification mark based on a review of the information in the application, which should include a certification statement or language indicating the mark’s use, or intended use, to certify some aspect of the goods or services, such as certifying regional origin, or that the labor was performed by a certain group, or that the goods or services meet certain safety standards. If the nature of the mark and its intended use are unclear, the examining attorney must seek clarification, through a Trademark Rule 2.61(b) requirement for additional information or, if appropriate, by telephone or e-mail communication. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §§1306.04\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1306.06-1306.06\(b\)](#). Any clarification regarding the certification statement that is received by informal communication must be recorded in a Note to the File. In addition, if certain required elements, such as those discussed in [TMEP §1306.03](#), are missing or unacceptable, the applicant will be required to provide or amend them.

1306.02 Application Requirements for a Certification Mark

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.45](#), a complete application for a certification mark must include the following:

- (1) the legal name and physical address of the applicant (see [TMEP §§803.02](#), [803.05](#));
- (2) the applicant’s legal entity type (see [TMEP §803.03](#));
- (3) the applicant’s citizenship or the jurisdiction under whose laws the applicant is organized, and if the applicant is a domestic partnership or joint venture, the names and citizenship of the general partners or active members of the joint venture (see [TMEP §§803.03\(b\)](#), [803.04](#));
- (4) a description of the mark if the mark is not in standard characters (see [TMEP §808](#));
- (5) a translation/transliteration of any foreign wording in the mark (see [TMEP §809](#));
- (6) a drawing of the mark sought to be registered (see [TMEP §807](#));

- (7) a filing fee (see [TMEP §810](#));
- (8) a filing basis (see [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)-\(a\)\(vi\)](#)), including:
 - (a) verification of certain statements signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant (see [TMEP §§1306.02\(b\)-\(b\)\(ii\)](#));
 - (b) a statement specifying what the applicant is (or will be) certifying about the goods or services (see [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#));
 - (c) a copy of the certification standards governing use of the certification mark on or in connection with the goods or services (see [TMEP §1306.03\(b\)](#)) (required for Section 1(a) applicants only); and
 - (d) a statement that the applicant is not engaged (or will not engage) in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant (see [TMEP § 1306.03\(c\)](#));
- (9) a list of the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant's authorized users use or intend to use the mark (see [TMEP §§805, 1402](#));
- (10) classification in U.S. Class A for goods or U.S. Class B for services for a §1 or §44 application, or the classification assigned by the International Bureau, for a §66(a) application (see [TMEP §§805, 1401](#));

[37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)](#).

Requirements that differ in form from those in trademark or service mark applications. Most application requirements for certification marks are the same as those for regular trademarks and service marks. However, the filing basis, verification, identification, and classification requirements for certification mark applications differ in form from other trademarks and service mark applications because of the difference between who owns and uses certification marks. See [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)-\(a\)\(v\)](#) for information regarding filing-basis requirements, [TMEP §§1306.02\(b\)-\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for information regarding the verification of certain statements, [TMEP §1306.02\(c\)](#) for identification requirements, and [TMEP §1306.02\(d\)](#) for classification requirements in certification mark applications.

See [TMEP §1306.03](#) for further information regarding the special elements of certification mark applications.

See [TMEP Chapter 1600](#) for post-registration requirements.

1306.02(a) Filing Basis

See [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)](#) for information regarding an application filing basis for a collective trademark or collective service mark. These requirements apply similarly to certification marks.

For a list of the requirements pertaining to each filing basis, see [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)-\(v\)](#) and [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)\(i\) - \(v\)](#).

1306.02(a)(i) Use in Commerce – §1(a)

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\), 1054](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)](#), to establish a basis under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, the applicant must:

- (1) Submit a statement specifying what the applicant is certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) Submit a copy of the certification standards governing use of the certification mark on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#));
- (3) Submit a statement that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#));
- (4) Specify the date of the applicant's authorized user's first use of the mark anywhere on or in connection with the goods or services ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#));
- (5) Specify the date of the applicant's authorized user's first use of the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#));
- (6) Submit one specimen for each class, showing how an authorized user uses the mark in commerce ([37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(E\), 2.56\(b\)\(5\)](#)); and
- (7) Submit a verified statement that the applicant believes the applicant is the owner of the mark; that the mark is in use in commerce; that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons except authorized users have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; that the specimen shows the mark as used in commerce by the applicant's authorized users; and that the facts set forth in the application are true (*see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(C\), 1054](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#)). See [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1(a) of the Trademark Act.

The Trademark Act defines “commerce” as commerce which may lawfully be regulated by Congress, and “use in commerce” as the bona fide use of a mark in the ordinary course of trade. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); *see* [TMEP §§901–901.04](#).

An applicant may claim both use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act and intent to use under §1(b) of the Act as a filing basis in the same application, but may not assert both §1(a) and §1(b) for the identical goods or services in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(c\)](#); *see* [TMEP §806.02\(b\)](#).

An applicant may not claim a §1(a) basis unless the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods or services covered by the §1(a) basis as of the application filing date. *Cf. E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co. v. Sunlyra Int'l, Inc.*, 35 USPQ2d 1787, 1791 (TTAB 1995) .

If the applicant claims use in commerce in addition to another filing basis, but does not specify which goods or services are covered by which basis, the USPTO may defer examination of the specimen(s) until the applicant identifies the goods or services for which use is claimed. [TMEP §806.02\(c\)](#).

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) regarding statements specifying what the mark certifies, [TMEP §1306.03\(b\)](#) regarding certification standards, and [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#) regarding statements that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods/services.

1306.02(a)(i)(A) Dates of Use

When specifying the dates of use as a certification mark, the applicant must indicate that the certification mark was first used by the applicant's authorized users because a certification mark is not used by the applicant itself. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#).

The date of first use anywhere is the date when an applicant's authorized user's goods were first sold or transported, or an applicant's authorized user's services were first rendered, under the mark, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of "use" within the definition of "abandonment of mark"). For every applicant, whether foreign or domestic, the date of first use of a mark is the date of the first use anywhere, in the United States or elsewhere, regardless of whether the nature of the use was local or national, intrastate or interstate, or of another type.

The date of first use in commerce is the date when an applicant's authorized user's goods were first sold or transported, or an applicant's authorized user's services were first rendered, under the mark in a type of commerce that may be lawfully regulated by the U.S. Congress, if such use is bona fide and in the ordinary course of trade. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#) (definition of "use" within the definition of "abandonment of mark"). See [TMEP §901.01](#) for definitions of "commerce" and "use in commerce," and [TMEP §901.03](#) regarding types of commerce.

In a §1(a) application, the applicant may not specify a date of use that is later than the filing date of the application. If an applicant who filed under §1(a) cannot show that an authorized user used the mark in commerce on or before the application filing date, the applicant may amend the basis to §1(b). See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to the basis.

Neither a date of first use nor a date of first use in commerce is required to receive a filing date in an application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Act. If the application does not include a date of first use and/or a date of first use in commerce, the examining attorney must require that the applicant specify the date of first use and/or date of first use in commerce. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#). The dates must be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(D\)](#), [2.71\(c\)](#).

An applicant may not file an application on the basis of use of a mark in commerce if such use has been discontinued.

1306.02(a)(i)(B) Specimens

A certification mark specimen must show how a person other than the owner uses the mark to reflect certification of regional or other origin, material, mode of manufacture, quality, accuracy, or other characteristics of that person's goods or services; or that members of a union or other organization performed the work or labor on the goods or services. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(5\)](#); see *In re Council on Certification of Nurse Anesthetists*, 85 USPQ2d 1403 (TTAB 2007) .

Although a certification mark performs a different function from a trademark or a service mark, users of certification marks typically apply them to goods and services in a manner similar to trademarks and service marks. That is, certification marks appear on labels, tags, or packaging for goods, or on materials used in the advertising or rendering of services. Thus, specimens of use in certification mark applications generally are examined using the same standards that apply to specimens for trademarks and service marks. See [TMEP §§904-904.07\(b\)\(i\)](#). However, because it is improper for certification marks to be used by their owners, any

specimen of use submitted in support of a certification mark application must show use of the mark as a certification mark by an authorized user. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(5\)](#).

Sometimes, the owner/certifier prepares tags or labels that bear the certification mark and that are supplied to the authorized users to attach to their goods or use in relation to their services. See *Ex parte Porcelain Enamel Inst., Inc.*, 110 USPQ 258 (Comm'r Pats. 1956). These tags or labels are acceptable specimens.

See [TMEP §1306.04\(c\)](#) for information regarding characteristics of certification marks and specimens that show the mark functions as a certification mark.

See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding specimens for geographic certification marks.

1306.02(a)(ii) Intent to Use – §1(b)

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)](#), [1054](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)](#), to establish a basis under §1(b) of the Trademark Act, the applicant must:

- (1) Submit a statement specifying what the applicant will be certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) Submit a statement that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#)); and
- (3) Submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except authorized users, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#)); see [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), [1054](#)). See [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1(b) of the Trademark Act.

Prior to registration, the applicant must file an allegation of use (i.e., either an amendment to allege use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or a statement of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#)) that states that (a) the mark is in use in commerce and (b) the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, includes dates of use and a filing fee for each class, and includes one specimen evidencing such use for each class. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.76](#), [2.88](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.76](#) and [TMEP §§1104–1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use and [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#) and [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use.

Once an applicant claims a §1(b) basis for any or all of the goods or services, the applicant may not amend the application to seek registration under §1(a) of the Act for those goods or services unless the applicant files an allegation of use under §1(c) or §1(d) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(8\)](#).

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) regarding statements specifying what the mark is intended to certify and [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#) regarding statements that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods/services.

See [TMEP Chapter 1100](#) for additional information about intent-to-use applications.

1306.02(a)(iii) Foreign Priority – §44(d)

Section 44(d) of the Act provides a basis for receipt of a priority filing date, but not a basis for publication or registration. Before the application can be approved for publication, or for registration on the Supplemental Register, the applicant must establish a basis under §1(a), §1(b), or §44(e) of the Act. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)](#); [TMEP §1003.03](#). If the applicant claims a §1(b) basis, the applicant must file an allegation of use before the mark can be registered. See [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the requirements for a §1(b) basis.

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1054, 1126\(d\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)](#), to establish a basis under §44(d) of the Trademark Act, the applicant must:

- (1) File a claim of priority within six months of the filing date of the foreign application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) Specify the filing date, serial number, and country of the first regularly filed foreign application; or (b) state that the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, and that any prior-filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned, or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(A\)](#); *see also* Paris Convention Article 4(D));
- (3) Submit a statement specifying what the applicant will be certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#));
- (4) Submit a statement that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#)); and
- (5) Submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except authorized users, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), 1054). See [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §44 of the Trademark Act.

The scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

If an applicant properly claims a §44(d) basis in addition to another basis, the applicant may retain the priority filing date without perfecting the §44(e) basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(4\)](#). See [TMEP §806.04\(b\)](#) regarding processing an amendment electing not to perfect a §44(e) basis and [TMEP §806.02\(f\)](#) regarding the examination of applications that claim §44(d) in addition to another basis.

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) regarding statements specifying what the mark is intended to certify and [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#) regarding statements that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods/services.

See [TMEP §§1003–1003.08](#) for further information about §44(d) applications.

1306.02(a)(iv) Foreign Registration – §44(e)

Under [15 U.S.C. §§1054](#), [1126\(e\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)](#), the requirements for establishing a basis for registration under §44(e), relying on a registration granted by the applicant's country of origin, are:

- (1) The applicant must submit a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of the registration in the applicant's country of origin. If the foreign registration or other certification is not in English, the applicant must provide a translation of the document. If the record indicates that the foreign registration will expire before the U.S. registration will issue, the applicant must submit a true copy, a photocopy, a certification, or a certified copy of a proof of renewal from the applicant's country of origin to establish that the foreign registration has been renewed and will be in full force and effect at the time the U.S. registration will issue. If the proof of renewal is not in the English language, the applicant must submit a translation ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §§1004.01, 1004.01\(b\)](#));
- (2) The applicant must submit a statement specifying what the applicant will be certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#));
- (3) The applicant must submit a statement that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#));
- (4) The applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; that to the best of the signatory's knowledge and belief, no other persons, except authorized users, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\)](#); see [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), 1054). See [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §44 of the Trademark Act; and
- (5) The applicant's country of origin must either be a party to a convention or treaty relating to trademarks to which the United States is also a party, or extend reciprocal registration rights to nationals of the United States by law (see [15 U.S.C. §1026\(b\)](#), [TMEP §1002.03](#)).

If the applicant does not submit a certification or a certified copy of the registration from its country of origin, the applicant must submit a true copy or photocopy of a document that has been issued to the applicant by, or certified by, the intellectual property office in the applicant's country of origin. A photocopy of an entry in the intellectual property office's gazette (or other official publication) or a printout from the intellectual property office's website is not, by itself, sufficient to establish that the mark has been registered in that country and that the registration is in full force and effect. See [TMEP §1004.01](#).

The scope of the goods/services covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the foreign registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#).

An application may be based on more than one foreign registration. If the applicant amends an application to rely on a different foreign registration, this is not considered a change in basis; however, the application must be republished. [TMEP §1004.02](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amendments to add or substitute a basis.

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) regarding statements specifying what the mark is intended to certify and [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#) regarding statements that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods/services.

See [TMEP §§1004–1004.02](#) for further information about §44(e) applications.

1306.02(a)(iv)(A) Scope of Foreign Registration

A registration as a certification mark in the United States may not be based on a foreign registration that is actually a trademark registration, i.e., a registration that is based on the registrant's placement of the mark on his or her own goods as a trademark. See *In re Löwenbräu München*, 175 USPQ 178 (TTAB 1972) (noting that the U.S. registration cannot exceed the breadth or scope of the foreign registration on which it is based); [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#). The scope of the registration, i.e., the nature of the registration right, would not be the same.

The scope and nature of the registration is not always immediately apparent from a foreign registration certificate. Foreign registration certificates may not always clearly identify whether the mark is a trademark, service mark, collective mark, or certification mark and even when they indicate the type, the significance of the term used for the type is not always clear. For example, the designation “collective” represents a different concept in some foreign countries than it does in the United States. Moreover, while a certificate printed on a standardized form may be headed with the designation “trademark,” the body of the certificate might contain language to the contrary.

If a foreign registration certificate has a heading that designates the mark as a certification mark, or if the body of the foreign certificate contains language indicating that the registration is for certification, the foreign registration normally may be accepted to support registration in the United States as a certification mark.

Whenever there is ambiguity about the scope or nature of the foreign registration, or whenever the examining attorney believes that the foreign certificate may not reflect the actual registration right, the examining attorney should inquire regarding the basis of the foreign registration, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. 2.61\(b\)](#).

1306.02(a)(v) Extension of Protection of International Registration – §66(a)

Section 66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), provides for a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#). To establish a basis under §66(a), the applicant must:

- (1) Submit a statement specifying what the applicant will be certifying about the goods or services in the application ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(A\)](#));
- (2) Submit a statement that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(A\)](#)); and
- (3) Submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation; that the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant; and that to the best of his/her knowledge and belief, no other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, except authorized users, has the right to use the mark in commerce

that the U.S. Congress can regulate either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive ([37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#), 1054). For a certification mark application, the required verified statement is *not* part of the international registration on file at the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”); therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#).

See [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for additional information regarding the requirements for the verified statement in applications under §66(a) of the Trademark Act.

A §66(a) applicant may not change the basis or claim more than one basis unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c). [37 C.F.R. §§2.35\(a\), 2.45\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §1904.09](#) regarding the limited circumstances under which a §66(a) application may be transformed into an application under §1 or §44.

Section 66(a) requires transmission of a request for extension of protection by the IB to the USPTO. It may not be added or substituted as a basis in an application originally filed under §1 or §44.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#), Madrid Protocol Article 4(2), and [37 C.F.R. §7.27](#), the §66(a) applicant may claim a right of priority within the meaning of Article 4 of the Paris Convention if:

- (1) The request for extension of protection contains a claim of priority;
- (2) The request for extension of protection specifies the filing date, serial number, and the country of the application that forms the basis for the claim of priority; *and*
- (3) The date of international registration, or the date of the recordal of the subsequent designation requesting an extension of protection to the United States, is not later than six months after the date of the first regular national filing (within the meaning of Article 4(A)(3) of the Paris Convention) or a subsequent application (within the meaning of Article 4(C)(4) of the Paris Convention).

See Common Regs., Rule 9(4)(a)(iv); *Guide to the International Registration of Marks under the Madrid Agreement and the Madrid Protocol* (2014) (“*Guide to International Registration*”), Para. B.II.07.32.

1306.02(a)(vi) Multiple Bases, Amending/Deleting the Basis, Review of Basis Prior to Publication/Issue

The procedures for examining an application with multiple bases, amending or deleting a basis, and reviewing the basis information prior to publication or issuance of a registration are the same as for trademark and service mark applications. See [TMEP §806.02](#) for information about multiple bases, [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amending the basis, [TMEP §806.04](#) regarding deleting a basis, and [TMEP §806.05](#) regarding review of a basis prior to publication or issue.

1306.02(b) Verification of Certain Statements

An application must include certain statements that are verified by the applicant or by someone who is authorized to verify facts on behalf of an applicant. [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)](#), [\(b\)\(3\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)-\(ii\)](#).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, a signed verification is not required for receipt of an application filing date under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)](#). If the initial application does not include a proper verified statement, the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit a verified statement that relates back to the original filing date. See [TMEP §§804.01–804.01\(b\)](#) regarding the form of the oath or declaration, [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the essential allegations required to verify an application for registration of a mark, and [TMEP §804.04](#) regarding persons properly authorized to sign a verification on behalf of an applicant.

In §66(a) applications, this particular verified statement is not part of the international registration on file at the IB; therefore the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#), [TMEP §§804.05](#), [1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1904.01\(c\)](#).

1306.02(b)(i) Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §1 or §44 Application

The requirements for the verified statement in applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)-\(iv\)](#). See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)](#), [1051\(b\)\(3\)](#), [1126](#). These allegations are required regardless of whether the verification is in the form of an oath ([TMEP §804.01\(a\)](#)) or a declaration ([TMEP §804.01\(b\)](#)). See [TMEP §1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the requirements for verification of a §66(a) application. See [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)-\(a\)\(iv\)](#) for further information regarding filing-basis requirements, including the verified statement.

Truth of Facts Recited . Under [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(3\)\(B\)](#) and [1051\(b\)\(3\)\(C\)](#), verification of an application for registration must include an allegation that “to the best of the verifier’s knowledge and belief, the facts recited in the application are accurate.” The language in [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) that “all statements made of [the signatory’s] own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true” satisfies this requirement. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\)](#).

Use in Commerce and Exercising Legitimate Control . If the filing basis is §1(a), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the mark is in use in commerce and that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the mark was in use in commerce and the applicant was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Bona Fide Intention and Entitlement to Exercise Legitimate Control . If the filing basis is §1(b), §44(d), or §44(e), the applicant must submit a verified statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, and that to the best of the signatory’s knowledge and belief, no other persons, except authorized users, have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original application, it must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Ownership . In an application based on §1(a), the verified statement must allege that the applicant *believes the applicant is the owner of the mark* , and that to the best of the signatory’s knowledge and belief, no other persons except authorized users have the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such

other persons, to cause confusion or mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(A\)](#), [\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#).

Concurrent Use . The verification for concurrent use should be modified to indicate that no other persons *except authorized users and concurrent users* as specified in the application have the right to use the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(d\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)\(3\)\(D\)](#). See TMEP §1207.04(d)(ii) for concurrent use application requirements for a certification mark.

Affirmative, Unequivocal Averments Based on Personal Knowledge Required. The verification must include affirmative, unequivocal averments that meet the requirements of the Act and the rules. Statements such as “the undersigned [person signing the declaration] has been informed that the mark is in use in commerce [or has been informed that applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce] . . .,” or wording that disavows the substance of the declaration, are unacceptable.

Verification Not Filed Within Reasonable Time . If the verified statement is not filed within a reasonable time after it is signed, the examining attorney will require the applicant to submit a substitute verified statement attesting that, as of the application filing date, the mark was in use in commerce and the applicant was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (in an application based on §1(a)); or, as of the application filing date, the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (in an application based on §1(b) or §44). [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §804.03](#) for information regarding time between execution and filing of documents.

Substitute Verification . If the verified statement does not include all the necessary averments, the examining attorney will require a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

1306.02(b)(ii) Statements Required in Verification of Application for Registration - §66(a) Application

The verified statement for a certification mark in a §66(a) application is *not* part of the international registration on file at the IB; therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#).

In applications under §66(a) of the Act, the applicant must amend the request for extension of protection to the United States to include a declaration that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#). The declaration must include a statement that the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant and that to the best of his/her knowledge and belief, that no other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, except authorized users, has the right to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate, either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods/services of such other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. 2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §1141\(f\)\(a\)](#).

Additionally, because the verified statement cannot be filed with the initial application, the verified statement must also allege that, *as of the application filing date* , the applicant had a bona fide intention, and was entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(b\)\(2\)](#).

See [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(v\)](#) for further information regarding filing-basis requirements, including the verified statement.

1306.02(c) Identification of Goods and Services of the Authorized Users

The identification of goods or services in a certification mark application must describe the goods and/or services of the party who will receive the certification, not the activities of the certifier/owner of the certification mark. This is consistent with the requirement that the owner of a certification mark not produce the goods or perform the services in connection with which the mark is used. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(B\), \(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\), \(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\), \(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(A\)](#). The certification activities of the certifier are described in the certification statement, not in the identification of goods/services. For an explanation of the certification statement, see [TMEP § 1306.03\(a\)](#).

In a certification mark application, the goods or services that are certified may be identified less specifically than in an application for registration of a trademark or service mark. Ordinarily, it is only necessary to indicate the general category of goods and services, such as the following: food, agricultural commodities, electrical products, clothing, printed material, insurance services, machinery repair, or restaurant services. However, sufficient information must be provided to enable a comparison of goods/services and analysis of trade channels in regard to possible likelihood-of-confusion scenarios. If the certification program itself is limited to specific items of goods or services, for example, wine, wood doors, or bakery machinery, then the identification in the application must also reflect this level of specificity.

The terms “certification,” “certify,” or “certifies” should not be included in the identification, which should be limited only to the goods or services, as in the following examples:

Building, construction, and safety materials and products, in International Class A

Medical services in the field of addiction medicine and treatment, in International Class B

Furthermore, the identification in an application for a geographic certification mark need not refer to the specific geographic origin of the goods or services. For example, the identification of goods for the geographic certification mark WISCONSIN REAL CHEESE is “dairy products, namely, cheese.”

1306.02(d) Classification

Section 1 and §44 Applications

In applications to register certification marks, all goods are classified in U.S. Class A and all services are classified in U.S. Class B. [37 C.F.R. §6.3](#). Both U.S. Classes A and B (but not any other classes) may be included in one application. See [TMEP §§1403–1403.07](#) regarding multiple-class applications.

NOTE: When the Trademark Act of 1946 went into effect, the goods and services for which certification marks were registered were classified in the regular numbered international classes for goods and services. It was later concluded that this was not reasonable, because a certification mark is commonly used on a great variety of goods and services, and the specialized purpose of these marks makes it unrealistic to divide the goods and services into the competitive groups that the regular classes represent. The change to classification in U.S. Classes A and B for certification marks was made by amendment to the Trademark Rules on August 15, 1955.

Section 66(a) Applications

In a §66(a) application, classification is determined by the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”), in accordance with the *Nice Agreement*. Classes A and B come from the old United States classification system (*see* [TMEP §1401.02](#)) and are not included in the international classification system. In a §66(a) application, the international classification of goods/services may not be changed from the classification assigned to the goods/services by the IB. *See* [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\), 1904.02\(b\)](#). Accordingly, if the mark in a §66(a) application is identified as a certification mark, or appears to be a certification mark, the USPTO will not reclassify it into U.S. Class A or B. However, the examining attorney must ensure that the applicant complies with all other U.S. requirements for certification marks, regardless of the classification assigned by the IB.

1306.03 Special Elements of Certification Mark Applications

1306.03(a) Certification Statement

The application must contain a statement of the characteristic, standard, or other feature that is certified or intended to be certified by the mark, also known as the certification statement. The certification statement should begin with wording, “The certification mark, as used or intended to be used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies or is intended to certify that the goods/services provided have” *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\), \(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(A\), \(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\), \(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\), \(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(A\)](#).

The certification statement must be sufficiently detailed to give proper notice of what is being certified. All of the characteristics or features that the mark certifies should be included. A certification mark application is not limited to certifying a single characteristic or feature.

The broad suggestive terms of the statute, such as quality, material, mode of manufacture, are generally not satisfactory by themselves, because they do not accurately reveal the nature of the certification. How specific the statement should be depends in part on the narrowness or breadth of the certification. For example, indicating that “quality” is being certified does not inform the public of what is being certified where the characteristic being certified is limited, for example, to the strength of a material, or the purity of a strain of seed.

The certification statement in the application is printed on the registration certificate. For that reason, it should be reasonably specific but does not have to include the details of the specifications of the characteristic being certified. If practicable, however, more detailed specifications should be made part of the application file record.

Amendments that would materially alter the certification statement must not be permitted. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(e\)](#).

The statement of what the mark certifies is a separate requirement from that of the identification of goods and/or services.

See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(i\)](#) for information regarding the certification statement for geographic certification marks.

1306.03(b) Certification Standards – Required for §1(a) Applications and Allegations of Use Only

The applicant (certifier) must submit a copy of the standards established to determine whether others may use the certification mark on their goods and/or in connection with their services. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#). For an intent-to-use application, under §1(b) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the standards are submitted with the allegation of use (i.e., either the amendment to allege use or the statement of use). [37 C.F.R. §§2.76\(b\)\(5\), 2.88\(b\)\(5\)](#).

The standards do not have to be originally created by the applicant. They may be standards established by another party, such as specifications promulgated by a government agency or standards developed through research of a private research organization.

The standards must cover the full scope of the goods/services identified in the application. For example, if the goods are “olive oil,” but the standards are only for “extra virgin olive oil,” the examining attorney must require the applicant to submit standards that cover all types of olive oil or to amend the identification to “extra virgin olive oil.”

1306.03(c) Statement that Applicant Is Not Engaged in (or Will not Engage in) Production or Marketing of the Goods/Services

For applications based on §1(a) of the Act, the application must contain a statement that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#). For applications based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Act, the application must contain a statement that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(A\)](#). This statement does not have to be verified and, therefore, may be entered by examiner’s amendment.

1306.04 Examination of Certification Mark Applications

Except where otherwise specified herein, the same procedures are used to determine the registrability of certification marks that are used for other types of marks. Thus, the standards generally applicable to trademarks and service marks are used in considering issues such as descriptiveness, disclaimers, and likelihood of confusion. (But see [TMEP §§1306.05–1306.05\(j\)](#) regarding certification marks indicating regional origin only.)

Regarding the application of §2(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)](#), to certification marks, see *Cnty. of Roquefort v. Santo*, 443 F.2d 1196, 170 USPQ 205 (C.C.P.A. 1971) ; *In re Nat’l Ass’n of Legal Secretaries (Int’l)*, 221 USPQ 50 (TTAB 1983) .

Regarding the application of §2(d), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), the test for determining likelihood of confusion is the same for certification marks – the *du Pont* analysis. *In re Accelerate s.a.l.*, 101 USPQ2d 2047, 2049 (TTAB 2012) (quoting *Motion Picture Ass’n of Am., Inc. v. Respect Sportswear, Inc.*, 83 USPQ2d 1555, 1559-60 (TTAB 2007)); see *In re E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973) ; see also *Procter & Gamble Co. v. Cohen*, 375 F.2d 494, 153 USPQ 188 (C.C.P.A. 1967) ; *Tea Bd. of India v. Republic of Tea, Inc.*, 80 USPQ2d 1881 (TTAB 2006) ; *Stabilisierungsfonds*

fur Wein v. Peter Meyer Winery GmbH, 9 USPQ2d 1073 (TTAB 1988) ; *E.I. duPont de Nemours & Co. v. Yoshida Int'l, Inc.*, 393 F. Supp. 502, 185 USPQ 597 (E.D.N.Y. 1975) .

However, because a certification mark owner does not use the mark itself, the likelihood-of-confusion analysis is based on a comparison of the mark as applied to the goods and/or services of the certification mark users, including the channels of trade and classes of purchasers. *In re Accelerate s.a.l.*, 101 USPQ2d at 2049 (quoting *Motion Picture Ass'n of Am. Inc. v. Respect Sportswear, Inc.*, 83 USPQ2d at 1559-60); *see also Jos. S. Cohen & Sons Co. v. Hearst Magazines, Inc.*, 220 F.2d 763, 765, 105 USPQ 269, 271 (C.C.P.A. 1955) .

A refusal to register because the specimen fails to show the applied-for mark functioning as a certification mark is predicated on §§1, 2, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1054](#), [1127](#). For example, registration should be refused on this basis where the specimen shows use only as an educational or other degree or title awarded to individuals, and not use as a certification mark. Titles and degrees indicate qualifications or attainments of a person; they do not pertain to or certify services that have been performed by the person. *See* [TMEP §1306.04\(d\)\(ii\)](#).

See [TMEP §1207.04](#) for information regarding seeking a concurrent use registration.

See [TMEP §§1306.05 1306.05\(j\)](#) regarding the examination of geographic certification mark applications.

1306.04(a) Compare the Mark on the Drawing to the Specimen for §1(a)

In evaluating the drawing, the same standards used in relation to trademark and service mark drawings apply to certification marks (*see* [TMEP §§807–807.18](#)). For §1(a) applications, the examining attorney must refer to the specimen to determine what constitutes the mark. *See In re Nat'l Inst. for Auto. Serv. Excellence*, 218 USPQ 744 (TTAB 1983) . The drawing in the application must include the entire certification mark, but it should not include matter that is not part of the mark.

1306.04(b) Ownership

The owner of a certification mark is the party responsible for the certification that is conveyed by the mark. The party who affixes the mark, with authorization of the certifier, does not own the mark; nor is the mark owned by someone who merely acts as an agent for the certifier, for example, an inspector hired by the certifier. The certifier, as owner, is the only person who may file an application for registration of a certification mark. *See In re Safe Elec. Cord Comm.*, 125 USPQ 310 (TTAB 1960) .

Certification is often the sole purpose for the owner of a certification mark. However, a person is not necessarily precluded from owning a certification mark because he or she also engages in other activities, including the sale of goods or the performance of services. However, the certification mark may not be the same mark that the person uses as a trademark or service mark on the same goods or services. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1306.04\(f\)](#).

Examples of organizations that conduct both types of activities are trade associations and other membership or “club” types of businesses, such as automobile associations. These organizations may perform services for their members, and sell various goods to their members and others, as well as conduct programs in which they certify characteristics or other aspects of goods or services, especially of kinds which relate to the main purpose of the association.

Manufacturing or service companies that do not certify the goods or services of members may nonetheless engage in certification programs under proper circumstances. For example, a manufacturer of chemical wood preservatives might conduct a program certifying certain characteristics of wood or wood products that are treated and sold by others. Among the characteristics or circumstances certified could be the fact that a preservative produced by this manufacturer under a specified trademark was used in the treatment.

A magazine publisher may also conduct a certification program relating to goods or services that are advertised in or have some relevance to the interest area of the magazine.

The certifier/owner determines the requirements for the certification. The standards do not have to be created by the certifier/owner, but may be standards established by another person, such as specifications promulgated by a government agency or standards developed through research of a private research organization. See TMEP §1306.03(b) regarding the standards for certification. However, if the name of the organization that developed the standards is part of the mark, an issue could arise as to whether the mark is deceptively misdescriptive under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(1\)](#) (see [TMEP §1209.04](#)) or falsely suggests a connection with persons, institutions, beliefs, or national symbols under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#) (see [TMEP §1203.03\(c\)](#)).

See [TMEP §1306.04\(d\)\(i\)](#) regarding appearance of a trademark or service mark in a certification mark or on a specimen, and see [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding the authority to control a geographic certification mark.

1306.04(b)(i) Exercise of Control

As stated in the application requirements, an application based on use in commerce under §1(a) of the Trademark Act, and an allegation of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) filed in connection with a §1(b) application, must include a verified statement that the applicant is exercising legitimate control over the use of the certification mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\), 2.76\(b\)\(1\)\(v\), 2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(v\)](#). For an application based on §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Act, the verified statement must specify that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the certification mark in commerce. [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\), \(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\), \(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\), \(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#).

If there is any evidence of record that casts doubt as to the existence or nature of such control by the applicant, the examining attorney must require an explanation and sufficient disclosure of facts, or the filing of appropriate documents, to support the applicant's statement regarding the exercise of control over the use of the mark, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

1306.04(b)(ii) Distinguishing Certification Mark Use from Related-Company Use of Trademark or Service Mark

Sometimes, an application requests registration of a certification mark, but there is a contractual relationship in the nature of a franchise or license between the applicant and the user of the mark, whereby the applicant, as the franchisor or licensor, specifies the nature or quality of the goods produced (or of the services performed) under the contract. These situations require care in examination because they usually indicate trademark or service mark use (through related companies) rather than certification mark use, because the applicant, as franchisor or licensor, controls the nature of the goods or services and has the responsibility for their quality.

The key distinction between use of subject matter as a certification mark and use as a trademark or service mark through a related company is the purpose and function of the mark in the market place, and the

significance that it would have to the relevant purchasing public. A trademark or service mark serves to indicate the origin of goods or services, whereas a certification mark serves to guarantee certain qualities or characteristics. *See In re Monsanto Co.*, 201 USPQ 864, 870 (TTAB 1978) ; *In re Celanese Corp. of Am.*, 136 USPQ 86 (TTAB 1962) .

Furthermore, the owner of a certification mark must permit use of the mark if the goods or services meet the certifier's standard, whereas a trademark owner may, but is not obligated to, license use of its mark to third parties. *In re Monsanto Co.*, 201 USPQ at 870.

1306.04(b)(iii) Patent Licenses

Sometimes, the owner of a patent asserts ownership of the mark that is applied to goods that are manufactured under license from the patent owner, in accordance with the terms and specifications of the patent. Typically, these marks have been registered as trademarks, on the basis of related-company use, rather than as certification marks. Generally, the patent owner's purpose, in arranging for the application of a mark to the goods manufactured under his or her license, would be to identify and distinguish those goods whose nature and quality the patent owner controls through the terms and specifications of the patent. Therefore, registration as a trademark (on the basis of related-company use) rather than registration as a certification mark would be appropriate.

1306.04(c) Characteristics of Certification Marks – Specimen Shows Mark Functions as a Certification Mark

The Trademark Act does not require that a certification mark be in any specific form or include any specific wording. A certification mark may be wording only, design only, or a combination of wording and design. In other words, there is no particular way that a mark must look in order to be a certification mark.

A certification mark often includes wording such as “approved by,” “inspected,” “conforming to,” “certified,” or similar wording, because certification (or approval) is practically the only significance the mark is to have when it is used on goods or in connection with services. However, this wording is not required, and a mark that lacks this wording can perform the function of certification.

The examining attorney must look to the specimen and any facts disclosed in the record to determine whether the mark is used in certification activity and is in fact a certification mark.

It is not necessary to show that the mark is instantly recognizable as a certification mark, or that the mark has already become well known to the public as a certification mark. However, it should be clear from the record that the circumstances surrounding the use or promotion of the mark will give certification significance to the mark in the marketplace. *See Ex parte Van Winkle*, 117 USPQ 450 (Comm'r Pats. 1958).

If the specimen shows the proposed mark is not being used by a person other than the applicant or does not function as a certification mark, the examining attorney must refuse registration under §§1, 2, 4, and 45 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1054](#), [1127](#). The applicant may overcome the refusal by submitting an acceptable substitute specimen or amending the filing basis to §1(b), if appropriate. *See* [TMEP §§806.03\(c\)](#), [904.05](#). *See* [TMEP §1306.04\(d\)\(ii\)](#) regarding specimens showing use as degrees or titles. *See* [TMEP §904.07\(b\)](#) for information about matter that fails to function as a trademark or service mark.

See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding the specimens of use for geographic certification mark applications.

1306.04(d) Specimen Refusals Specific to Certification Marks

1306.04(d)(i) Whether Certification Mark and Trademark or Service Mark Appear on Specimen Together

It is customary for trademarks or service marks to be placed on goods or used with services in conjunction with certification marks. However, it is also possible for a certification mark to be the only mark used on goods or with services. Some producers market their goods or services without using a trademark or service mark, yet these producers may be authorized to use a certification mark and, as a result, the certification mark would be the only mark on the goods or services. In these situations, the significance of the mark might not be readily apparent and the examining attorney should request an explanation under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#) of the circumstances to ascertain whether the mark is a certification mark rather than a trademark or service mark. *See also* [TMEP §1306.06](#).

When a trademark or a service mark appears on the specimen in addition to a certification mark, the certification mark can be on a separate label, or can be included on a single label along with the user's own trademark or service mark.

A composite certification mark may include a trademark or service mark, provided the composite mark functions to certify, with the trademark or service mark serving only to inform, or to suggest the certification program, rather than to indicate the commercial origin of the goods or services with which the mark is used. These situations usually are created when a company that produces goods or performs services wants to develop a program and a mark to certify characteristics of the goods or services of others that are related to the producer's own goods or services. See the examples in [TMEP §1306.04\(b\)](#).

Under these circumstances, the trademark or service mark must be owned by the same person who owns the certification mark, and the trademark or service mark may not be identical to the certification mark. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(f\)](#), [2.86\(d\)](#).

Further, a party may not include the trademark or service mark of another in a certification mark, even with a disclaimer. If the examining attorney believes that a trademark or service mark included in a certification mark is not owned by the applicant, the examining attorney must refuse registration of the certification mark based on Section 2(d), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#), or false association under Section 2(a), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), as appropriate.

1306.04(d)(ii) Specimen Shows Use as Title or Degree for Certification Mark Certifying that Labor Was Performed by Specific Group or Individual

A certification mark may be used to certify that the work or labor on the goods or services was performed by a member of a union or other organization, or by a person who meets certain standards and tests of competency set by the certifier. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). The certifier does not certify the quality of the work being performed, but only that the work was performed by a member of the union or group, or by someone who meets certain standards. *In re Nat'l Inst. for Auto. Serv. Excellence*, 218 USPQ 744, 747 (TTAB 1983) ; *see also Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass'n v. Nat'l Hearing Aid Soc'y*, 224 USPQ 798 (TTAB 1984) . Used in this manner, the mark certifies a characteristic of the goods or services. Whether or not specific matter functions as a certification mark depends on whether the matter is used in connection with the goods or services in such a manner that the purchasing public will recognize it, either consciously or otherwise, as a certification mark.

Occasionally, it is not clear whether a term is being used to certify that work or labor relating to the goods or services was performed by someone meeting certain standards or by members of a union or other organization to indicate membership, or whether the term is merely being used as a title or a degree of the performer to indicate professional qualifications. Matter that might appear to be simply a title or a degree may function as a certification mark if used in the proper manner. See *In re Council on Certification of Nurse Anesthetists*, 85 USPQ2d 1403 (TTAB 2007) (CRNA functions as certification mark used to certify that anesthesia services are being performed by a person who meets certain standards and tests of competency); *In re Software Publishers Ass'n*, 69 USPQ2d 2009 (TTAB 2003) (CERTIFIED SOFTWARE MANAGER used on certificate merely indicates that holder of the certificate has been awarded a title or degree, and is not likely to be perceived as certification mark); *In re Nat'l Ass'n of Purchasing Mgmt.*, 228 USPQ 768 (TTAB 1986) (C.P.M. used merely as title or degree, not as certification mark); *In re Nat'l Ass'n of Legal Secretaries (Int'l)*, 221 USPQ 50 (TTAB 1983) (PROFESSIONAL LEGAL SECRETARY not used on the specimen in such a way as to indicate certification significance); *In re Nat'l Inst. for Auto. Serv. Excellence, supra* (design mark not used simply as a degree or title, but to certify that the performer of the services had met certain standards); *In re Inst. of Certified Prof'l Bus. Consultants*, 216 USPQ 338 (TTAB 1982) (CPBC not used as a certification mark for business consulting services, but only as a title or degree); *In re Prof'l Photographers of Ohio, Inc.*, 149 USPQ 857 (TTAB 1966) (CERTIFIED PROFESSIONAL PHOTOGRAPHER used only as the title of a person, not as a certification mark); cf. *In re Univ. of Miss.*, 1 USPQ2d 1909 (TTAB 1987) (use of university seal on diplomas did not represent use as a certification mark).

See [TMEP §1306.06\(a\)](#) regarding the difference between a certification mark and a collective mark.

1306.04(e) Relationship of §14 (Cancellation)

15 U.S.C. 1064 Cancellation (Extract)

A petition to cancel a registration of a mark, stating the grounds relied upon, may, upon payment of the prescribed fee, be filed as follows by any person who believes that he is or will be damaged, including as a result of a likelihood of dilution by blurring or dilution by tarnishment under section 1125(c) of this title, by the registration of a mark on the principal register established by this [Act], or under the Act of March 3, 1881, or the Act of February 20, 1905....

...

(5) At any time in the case of a certification mark on the ground that the registrant (A) does not control, or is not able legitimately to exercise control over, the use of such mark, or (B) engages in the production or marketing of any goods or services to which the certification mark is applied, or (C) permits the use of the certification mark for purposes other than to certify, or (D) discriminately refuses to certify or to continue to certify the goods or services of any person who maintains the standards or conditions which such mark certifies....

...

Nothing in paragraph (5) shall be deemed to prohibit the registrant from using its certification mark in advertising or promoting recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services meeting the certification standards of the registrant. Such uses of the certification mark shall not be grounds for cancellation under paragraph (5), so long as the registrant does not itself produce, manufacture, or sell any of the certified goods or services to which its identical certification mark is applied.

Section 14 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#), provides for petitions to cancel registrations. Subsection (5) lists specific circumstances when petitions to cancel certification marks may be filed. The only subsections in (5) applicable to examination would be (A) and (B), as an analysis of (5)(A)-(D) below shows:

Subsection A ("exercising legitimate control") : In an application, the applicant states under oath or declaration that the applicant is exercising, or has a bona fide intention to exercise, legitimate control

over the use in commerce of the certification mark. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(F\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#); [TMEP §1306.04\(b\)\(i\)](#). Such statement is accepted, unless the examining attorney has knowledge of facts indicating that it should not be accepted.

Subsection B (not engaged in, or will not engage in, the production or marketing of any goods or services to which the certification mark is applied ...): The applicant is required to state, as appropriate, that he or she is not engaged in, or will not engage in, the production or marketing of any goods or services to which the certification mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the applicant. See [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iii\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(iv\)\(B\)](#), [\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1306.03\(c\)](#). Such statement is accepted, unless the record contains facts to the contrary.

Subsection C (used for purposes other than to certify): This subsection concerns whether a party permits use of the certification mark for purposes other than to certify. No statements are required in the application specifically on this point. The existence of unauthorized or illegal uses by others without the applicant's authorization is not within the examining attorney's province and cannot be used as a basis for refusal to register, provided that use authorized by the applicant, as supported by the record, is proper certification use.

Subsection D (discriminately refusing to certify): This subsection relates to the obligation of the owner not to discriminately refuse to certify. This subject is not mentioned in §4 or §45, [15 U.S.C. §1054](#) or [§1127](#). The USPTO does not evaluate, in ex parte examination, whether the standards or characteristics which the mark certifies, as set out by the applicant, are discriminatory per se; nor is it in the province of ex parte procedure to investigate or police how the certification is practiced.

1306.04(f) Same Mark Not Registrable as Certification Mark and as Any Other Type of Mark

A trademark or service mark is used by the owner of the mark on his or her goods or services, whereas a certification mark is used by persons other than the owner of the mark. A certification mark does not distinguish between producers, but represents a certification regarding some characteristic that is common to the goods or services of many persons. Using the same mark for two contradictory purposes would result in confusion and uncertainty about the meaning of the mark and would invalidate the mark for either purpose. Thus, registration as a certification mark precludes the same owner from registering the same mark as any other type of mark (e.g., a trademark or a service mark) for the same goods or services.) See [15 U.S.C. §1064\(5\)\(B\)](#) (providing for cancellation of a registered certification mark if the registrant engages in the production or marketing of any goods or services to which the certification mark is applied); *In re Monsanto Co.*, 201 USPQ 864, 868-69 (TTAB 1978) ; [TMEP §1306.04\(f\)](#).

Section 4 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1054](#), prohibits the registration of a certification mark “when used so as to represent falsely that the owner or a user thereof makes or sells the goods or performs the services on or in connection with which such mark is used;” and §14(5)(B) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064\(5\)\(B\)](#), provides for the cancellation of a registered certification mark where the registrant engages in the production or marketing of any goods or services to which the certification mark is applied. See [TMEP §1306.04\(e\)](#) regarding §14(5) of the Act. Thus, if a party attempts to register the same mark as a trademark or service mark for particular goods or services and as a certification mark for those goods or services, the applied-for mark must be refused under Trademark Act §§4 and 14(5)(B). [15 U.S.C. §§1054, 1064\(5\)\(B\)](#); see also [37 C.F.R. §2.45](#); [TMEP §1306.04\(f\)](#).

The prohibition against registration both as a trademark or service mark and as a certification mark applies to marks that are identical or so similar as to constitute essentially the same mark. For these purposes, two marks need not be identical, but any differences must be so insignificant that the marks would still be viewed as essentially the same. Even small variations in wording or design, if meaningful, could create different marks that may coexist on the register. On the other hand, inconsequential differences, such as the style of lettering or the addition of wording of little importance, normally would not prevent marks from being regarded as the same. *See In re 88Open Consortium Ltd.*, 28 USPQ2d 1314 (TTAB 1993) (finding the mark 88OPEN COMPATIBILITY CERTIFIED and design registrable as a certification mark even though applicant owned six registrations for the marks 88OPEN in typed and stylized form as trademarks, service marks, and collective membership marks. The Board noted that the words COMPATIBILITY CERTIFIED served to inform those seeing the mark that it is functioning as a certification mark, and that the certification mark included a design feature not found in the previously registered marks.). *See also* [TMEP §§1306.04\(b\), 1306.04\(d\)\(i\), 1306.06](#).

The owner of a certification mark may seek registration of the same mark as a trademark or service mark for goods or services other than those to which the certification mark is applied. However, the application for a certification mark must be filed separately from the application for a trademark or service mark, because the purpose and use of a trademark or service mark differ from those of a certification mark as do the allegations and claims made in support of a certification mark.

1306.04(f)(i) Cancellation of Applicant’s Prior Registration Required by Change from Certification Mark Use to Trademark or Service Mark Use, or Vice Versa

The nature of the activity in which the mark is used or intended to be used may change from use to certify characteristics of goods or services to use on the party’s own goods or services, or on goods or services produced for the party by related companies. The change might also be the other way around, from trademark or service mark use to certification mark use.

If there is already a registration as one type of mark and the registrant files an application for registration of the mark as the other type, the applicant must surrender the previous registration under §7(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#), before the examining attorney approves the new application for publication for opposition or issuance of a registration on the Supplemental Register. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.172](#) and [TMEP §1608](#) regarding surrender. The registration certificate for the new application should not issue until the prior registration actually has been cancelled.

In examining the new application, the examining attorney must carefully review the application to ensure that the facts of record support the new application.

1306.05 Geographic Certification Marks

1306.05(a) Geographic Certification Marks – Generally

A geographic certification mark is a word, name, symbol, device, or some combination of these elements, used alone or as a portion of a composite mark, to certify that the goods or services originate in the geographical region identified by the term or, in some circumstances, from a broader region that includes the region identified by the term. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). As noted in *Cmty of Roquefort v. William Faehndrich, Inc.*, 303 F.2d 494, 497, 133 USPQ 633, 635 (2d Cir. 1962):

A geographical name does not require a secondary meaning in order to qualify for registration as a certification mark. It is true that section 1054 provides that certification marks are “subject to the provisions relating to the registration of trademarks, so far as they are applicable....” But section 1052(e)(2), which prohibits registration of names primarily geographically descriptive, specifically excepts “indications of regional origin” registrable under section 1054. Therefore, a geographical name may be registered as a certification mark even though it is primarily geographically descriptive.

A geographic certification mark may feature a recognized geographic term that identifies the relevant geographic region, as in the marks ROQUEFORT for cheese, DARJEELING for tea, and COLOMBIAN for coffee. Or the mark may contain a variation or abbreviation of a geographic term or a combination of different geographic terms, with or without other matter. Sometimes the mark will include or consist of a designation or figurative element that is not technically geographic, but nonetheless has significance as an indication of geographic origin solely in a particular region. For example, the mark CIAUSCOLO is not the name of a particular place, but it nevertheless certifies that the salami to which it is applied originates in various municipalities of certain Italian provinces. See [TMEP §1306.05\(j\)](#) for additional examples of geographic certification marks.

As with any certification mark, a geographic certification mark is not used by its owner in the same way a trademark or service mark is. Rather, the owner of a geographic certification mark controls use of the mark by other parties. These parties apply the mark to goods or services to indicate to consumers that the goods or services have been certified as meeting the standards set forth by the certifier. Thus, the goods or services to which a geographic certification mark is applied may emanate from a number of sources comprising various certified producers in the relevant region. See [TMEP §§ 1306.01-1306.01\(b\)](#), [1306.04\(b\)](#).

The issue in determining whether a designation is registrable as a regional certification mark is whether the public understands that goods bearing the mark come only from the region named in the mark, not whether the public is expressly aware of the certification function of the mark per se. If use of the designation in fact is controlled by the certifier and limited to products meeting the certifier’s standards of regional origin, and if purchasers understand the designation to refer only to products produced in the particular region and not to products produced elsewhere, then the designation functions as a regional certification mark. *Institut Nat’l Des Appellations D’Origine v. Brown-Forman Corp.*, 47 USPQ2d 1875 (TTAB 1998) .

Regardless of an applicant’s intent, however, consumers may perceive some terms as identifying a type or category of the relevant goods or services, rather than indicating geographic origin. As discussed in [TMEP §1306.05\(c\)](#), these terms do not function as geographic certification marks and may not be registered as such. Not every certification mark that features a geographic designation serves as a geographic certification mark. See [TMEP §1306.05\(f\)](#). But, as explained in [TMEP §1306.05\(d\)](#), those that do are specifically excluded from the provisions of Trademark Act §2(e)(2). Furthermore, for purposes of a §2(d) likelihood-of-confusion analysis, geographic designations that appear in a certification mark and function to certify regional origin should be treated like distinctive terms and should not be considered “weak.” See [TMEP §1306.05\(g\)](#).

Applications for geographic certification marks must include all of the elements of a certification mark application. See [TMEP §§1306.02-1306.02\(d\)](#); [1306.03](#). As discussed in [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)](#), additional considerations apply to some of the elements.

1306.05(b) Additional Considerations in Geographic Certification Mark Applications

1306.05(b)(i) Certification Statement

Indicating the Region

When a geographic term is being used as a certification mark to indicate regional origin, the application must define the regional origin that the mark certifies. The identified region might be as large as a country or as small as a village, and an applicant may define it in general terms in the certification statement (e.g., “the Darjeeling region in India” or “the community of Roquefort, Department of Aveyron, France”). The certification standards, however, will usually be more specific as to the particular geographic boundaries involved.

If the available evidence indicates that the region identified by a geographic designation in the mark is well known for the identified goods or services, or that the goods or services are principal products of the region, the certification statement must limit the defined region to the region identified by the designation in the mark. When the certification statement is not appropriately limited in these instances, it is possible that the mark will be applied to goods or services that do not originate in the region named in the mark. Thus, the mark is geographically deceptive as to those goods or services and must be refused accordingly. See [TMEP §1306.05\(e\)](#). The applicant may overcome the refusal by amending the certification statement to limit the defined region to the region identified by the geographic designation in the mark.

If there is insufficient evidence to conclude that the region identified in the mark is known for the goods or services, or that the goods or services are principal products of the region, the region defined in the certification statement may be broader than the region named in the mark. However, the region named in the mark must still be encompassed by the larger region specified in the certification statement.

Other Characteristics

The certification statement must be sufficiently detailed to give proper notice of what is being certified, which may include other characteristics in addition to geographic origin. See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#). For example, the registration for ROQUEFORT indicates the mark certifies that the cheese to which it is applied “has been manufactured from sheep’s milk only, and has been cured in the natural caves of the community of Roquefort, Department of Aveyron, France.”

Form of Certification Statement

The certification statement must start with the following wording or the equivalent: “The certification mark, as used or intended to be used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies or is intended to certify that the goods/services provided have” See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#). The following are examples of acceptable certification statements for geographic certification marks:

The certification mark, as used or intended to be used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies or is intended to certify the regional origin of potatoes grown in the State of Idaho and certifies that those potatoes conform to grade, size, weight, color, shape, cleanliness, variety, internal defect, external defect, maturity and residue level standards promulgated by the certifier.

The certification mark, as used or intended to be used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies or is intended to certify that the cheese on which the mark is used has been made entirely in the State of California with cow's milk produced entirely within the State of California.

The certification mark, as used or intended to be used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies or is intended to certify that the agricultural products are aquacultural seafood products from the waters in the Gulf of Mexico off the Florida coast that are determined to be safe from oil.

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) for information regarding certification statements in general.

1306.05(b)(ii) Authority to Control a Geographic Certification Mark

The right that a private person can acquire in a geographical term is usually a trademark right, on the basis of exclusive use resulting in the term becoming distinctive of that person's goods. Sometimes, however, circumstances make it desirable or necessary for various persons in a region to use a geographic designation for that region not as a trademark indicating commercial origin in one particular source, but to certify the regional origin of all the parties' goods. And, when geographic designations are used to certify regional origin, a governmental body or government-authorized entity is usually most able to exert the necessary control to ensure all qualified parties in the region are free to use the designation and to discourage improper or otherwise detrimental uses of the certification mark.

When a geographical term is used as a certification mark, two elements are of basic concern: first, preserving the freedom of all persons in the region to use the term and; second, preventing abuses or illegal uses of the mark that would be detrimental to all those entitled to use the mark. Normally, a private individual is not in the best position to fulfill these objectives. The government of a region would be the logical authority to control the use of the name of the region. The government, either directly or through a body to which it has given authority, would have power to preserve the right of all persons entitled to use the mark and to prevent abuse or illegal use of the mark.

The applicant may be the government itself (such as the government of the United States, a state, or a city), one of the departments of a government, or a body operating with governmental authorization that is not formally a part of the government. There may be an interrelationship between bodies in more than one of these categories and the decision as to which is the appropriate body to apply depends on which body actually conducts the certification program or is most directly associated with it. The examining attorney should not question the identity of the applicant, unless the record indicates that the entity identified as the applicant is not the certifier.

If an applicant's authority to control use of a geographic certification mark featuring a geographic designation is not obvious, or is otherwise unclear, such as when the applicant is not a governmental entity, the examining attorney must request clarification, using a Trademark Rule 2.61(b) requirement for information. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). One acceptable response would be an explanation that the relevant governmental body has granted the applicant the authority to implement the certification program.

If the applicant's response does not establish applicant's authority to control the mark, registration may be refused under Trademark Act Sections 4 and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1054, 1127](#), on the ground that the application does not satisfy all of the statutory requirements for a certification mark because the applicant does not appear to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark or does not have a bona fide intent to do so.

1306.05(b)(iii) Specimens

Users of certification marks typically apply them to goods and services in a manner similar to trademarks and service marks. That is, certification marks appear on labels, tags, or packaging for goods, or on materials used in the advertising or rendering of services. Thus, specimens of use in certification mark applications

generally are examined using the same standards that apply to specimens for trademarks and service marks. See [TMEP §§904–904.07\(b\)\(i\)](#). However, because it is improper for certification marks to be used by their owners, any specimen of use submitted in support of a certification mark application must show use of the mark as a certification mark by an authorized user. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(b\)\(5\)](#). See [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) for more information regarding specimens for certification marks.

Because geographic certification marks certify regional origin, and thus often consist primarily of a geographic term, they may appear in an inconspicuous fashion on specimens (see [TMEP §1306.05\(j\)](#), Examples 4 and 8) and they may not look the same as other types of certification marks, which typically include wording, such as “certified,” or design elements, such as seals or similar matter. In other instances, the geographic certification mark may be the only mark displayed because the authorized user has chosen to market its goods or services without using a trademark or service mark. See [TMEP §1306.05\(j\)](#), Example 2. If the significance of the mark as used on the specimen is not apparent, the examining attorney may require the applicant, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), to explain the circumstances surrounding the use of the mark so that the examining attorney may determine whether the mark truly functions as a certification mark.

If the examining attorney concludes either that the specimen does not show the mark being used by a person other than the applicant or that the specimen does not demonstrate the mark functioning as a certification mark, registration should be refused under Trademark Act §§1, 2, 4, and 45. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1052, 1054, 1127](#). The applicant may overcome the refusal by submitting an acceptable substitute specimen or amending the filing basis to §1(b), if appropriate. See [TMEP §§806.03\(c\), 904.05](#).

1306.05(c) Mark Must Serve to Certify Geographic Origin

When reviewing an application for a geographic certification mark, the examining attorney must consider the specimen of record and any other available evidence to determine whether the relevant consumers understand the designation as referring only to goods or services produced in the particular region identified by the term and not those produced elsewhere as well. Consumers need not be expressly aware of the certification purpose of a designation. It is sufficient that they would perceive the designation as an indication of a particular regional origin. If so, the designation functions as a geographic certification mark and is registrable.

However, if the available evidence shows that the relevant purchasing public perceives the primary significance of a term as identifying a type or category of the relevant goods or services, without regard to the origin of the goods or services or the methods and conditions for producing them, then the term is generic and does not serve to certify regional origin. See *Tea Bd. of India v. Republic of Tea, Inc.*, 80 USPQ2d 1881, 1887 (TTAB 2006). For example, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board found that a mark did not function as a geographic certification mark for cheese because, although the identified cheese was originally produced in a particular part of Italy, the evidence showed that, to American purchasers, the word signifies a type of cheese with particular hardness, texture, and flavor characteristics, regardless of regional origin. *In re Cooperativa Produttori Latte E Fontina Valle D'Acosta*, 230 USPQ 131, 133-34 (TTAB 1986) .

To determine whether the relevant designation in an applied-for geographic certification mark is generic, the examining attorney should undertake the same analysis as would be applied to any potentially generic matter. See [TMEP §1209.01\(c\)\(i\)](#) for further information.

The burden is on the examining attorney to prove by clear evidence that a designation is generic. Relevant evidence may include the following:

product information from the applicant or the producers of the relevant goods or services; definitions in dictionaries or other reference materials; trade publications, newspapers, magazines, and other periodicals that use the term generically; and any other competent evidence of generic use of the term in the marketplace by producers and consumers.

Tea Bd. of India, 80 USPQ2d at 1887; *In re Cooperativa Produttori Latte E Fontina Valle D'Acosta*, 230 USPQ at 133-34.

In addition, the fact that the term is commonly used to identify goods or services in third-party registrations may further support the conclusion that it is viewed in the relevant marketplace as generic, rather than as an indication of geographic origin. When considering the available evidence, the examining attorney must take particular care to distinguish evidence that shows true generic use of a designation from evidence that merely shows infringing or otherwise improper use of a certification mark.

When the certification mark consists solely of generic matter, or generic matter and other unregistrable matter, it should be refused under Trademark Act §§2(e)(1), 4, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1052\(e\)\(1\)](#), [1054](#), [1127](#), if registration is sought on the Principal Register. If registration is sought on the Supplemental Register, the statutory bases for refusal are §§4, 23, and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1054](#), [1091](#), [1127](#). If the mark contains registrable matter in addition to the generic matter, the examining attorney must require a disclaimer of the generic matter. See [TMEP §1213.03\(b\)](#).

Even if a proposed mark is not generic, the applicant's specimen of use may fail to demonstrate that the mark functions as a certification mark, in which case registration should be refused under Trademark Act §§1, 2, 4, and 45. [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1052](#), [1054](#), [1127](#). See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

In response to a refusal on the ground that the mark is generic or otherwise does not function as a certification mark, an applicant may submit for the examining attorney's consideration any information or evidence that the applicant believes would support registration.

1306.05(d) Section 2(e)(2) Does Not Apply to Geographic Certification Marks

Trademark Act §2(e)(2), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), bars registration of primarily geographically descriptive marks, but specifically excludes from this prohibition those marks that serve as indications of regional origin. Thus, when a mark consists of or includes a geographic designation that functions to certify regional origin, the examining attorney must not refuse registration or require a disclaimer on the basis that the designation is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods or services. See [TMEP §1210.09](#). However, a requirement to disclaim other matter in the mark may be appropriate. See [TMEP §1213.03\(b\)](#). For instance, for the geographic certification mark WISCONSIN CHEESE, which certifies that cheese products originate in Wisconsin, a disclaimer of the generic term "CHEESE" is appropriate.

1306.05(e) Geographically Deceptive Marks Not Registrable as Geographic Certification Marks

A geographic certification mark that is geographically deceptive may not be registered on either the Principal or Supplemental Register and must be refused under Trademark Act §2(a), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), or §2(e)(3), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), as appropriate. See [TMEP §1210.05](#) regarding geographically deceptive marks.

1306.05(f) Geographic Designations that Do Not Certify Regional Origin

Sometimes, a geographic designation in a certification mark is not used to certify the geographic origin of the goods or services. For example, a certification mark includes the word “California,” but is used to certify that the fruits and vegetables to which it is applied are organically grown. The word “California” may or may not describe the geographic origin of the goods, but, in this instance, it is not being used to certify that the goods originate in California. If a geographic designation in a certification mark is primarily geographically descriptive of the goods or services, and the certification mark’s purpose, as indicated by the certification statement, is to certify something other than geographic origin, the examining attorney must refuse registration under Trademark Act §2(e)(2), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#), or require a disclaimer, as appropriate. If a geographic designation in a non-geographic certification mark is geographically deceptive as applied to the goods or services, the mark must be refused under §2(a) [15 U.S.C. §1052\(a\)](#), or §2(e)(3), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(3\)](#), as appropriate.

See [TMEP §§1210-1210.07\(b\)](#) for information on refusals under §§2(a), 2(e)(2), and 2(e)(3), including when it is appropriate to issue refusals in the alternative.

1306.05(g) Likelihood-of-Confusion Search and Analysis

When comparing marks in a typical §2(d) likelihood-of-confusion analysis, terms that are geographically descriptive of the relevant goods or services are sometimes given less weight. See [TMEP §§1207.01\(b\)\(iii\), 1207.01\(b\)\(ix\)](#). However, as indicated in [TMEP §1306.05\(d\)](#), a registered certification mark containing a geographic designation that functions to certify regional origin is not considered geographically descriptive. See [§15 U.S.C. §1052\(e\)\(2\)](#) (barring registration of any mark that is primarily geographically descriptive of goods or services, but providing an exception for indications of regional origin). Rather, it is treated as if it is distinctive because it serves to designate and certify the particular geographic origin of the relevant goods or services. Consequently, a registered geographic certification mark should not be considered “weak” or subject to a narrower scope of protection. See *Institute Nat’l Des Appellations d’Origine v. Brown-Forman Corp.*, 47 USPQ2d 1875, 1889-91 (TTAB 1998) .

Furthermore, the likelihood-of-confusion analysis is generally the same for certification marks as it is for trademarks or service marks, in that all of the relevant *du Pont* factors should be considered. See *In re E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 476 F.2d 1357, 1361-62, 177 USPQ 563, 567 (C.C.P.A. 1973) ; *In re Accelerate s.a.l.*, 101 USPQ2d 2047, 2049 (TTAB 2012) ; *Motion Picture Ass’n of Am. v. Respect Sportswear, Inc.*, 83 USPQ2d 1555, 1559 (TTAB 2007); *Brown-Forman Corp.*, 47 USPQ2d at 1891; [TMEP §1306.04](#). However, because a certification mark may not be used by the owner of the mark, but is instead used by authorized users, the analysis is based on the authorized users’ goods or services and their relevant trade channels and classes of consumers. See [TMEP §1306.04](#).

The following guidelines, which focus on the similarity-of-the-marks *du Pont* factor, are provided to aid the examining attorney in considering the issues when a likelihood-of-confusion search and analysis involves a geographic certification mark. The facts and evidence will vary in each application, affecting the relevance and weight of the various *du Pont* factors. But, for the purposes of these guidelines, assume that any other relevant *du Pont* factors, including the relatedness of the parties’ goods and services, either support a finding that source confusion is likely or otherwise do not outweigh the factors that support such a finding.

1306.05(g)(i) Considerations When the Proposed Mark Is a Geographic Certification Mark

When the application is for a geographic certification mark, the examining attorney should consider citing not only any prior mark with distinctive elements (e.g., suggestive, arbitrary, or fanciful wording, or distinctive design elements) that are confusingly similar to those in the applied-for geographic certification mark, but also any prior mark of any type that contains a geographic designation (whether disclaimed or not) that is confusingly similar to the designation in the applied-for mark.

Thus, if the geographic certification mark certifies that figs originate in Wyoming, and consists of a stylized cowboy hat above the wording WYOMING CERTIFIED (with CERTIFIED disclaimed), the potential cites may include (i) a geographic certification mark that is applied to Wyoming figs and is composed of the wording WYOMING'S OWN and (ii) a trademark that is applied to figs and consists of a cowboy-hat design that is nearly identical to the design in the applied-for mark.

Or, if the geographic certification mark certifies that pecans originate in Shenandoah County, Virginia, and consists of the wording SHENANDOAH COUNTY, potential cites may include (i) a trademark for roasted mixed nuts, consisting of the wording T.MARKEY'S SHENANDOAH MIXED NUTS (with SHENANDOAH MIXED NUTS disclaimed) and (ii) a trademark for pecans, composed of a stylized depiction of a pecan and the wording PETE'S PRICELESS PECANS OF SHENANDOAH (with PECANS OF SHENANDOAH disclaimed).

If there are numerous registrations and prior applications containing the same geographic designation (whether disclaimed or not) as the geographic certification mark, then, in the absence of the consent of the relevant registrants and applicants, a §2(d) refusal citing all of the relevant registrations and an advisory citing the prior applications may be appropriate. In addition, the examining attorney should consider refusing registration under Trademark Act §§4 and 45, [15 U.S.C. §§1054, 1127](#), on the basis that the application does not satisfy all of the statutory requirements for a certification mark because the applicant does not appear to exercise legitimate control over the use of the applied-for mark. *See* [15 U.S.C. §1054](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.45](#); [TMEP §1306.04\(b\)\(i\)](#). The applicant may respond to these refusals by submitting information or evidence that supports registration, including information and evidence regarding the relationship between the applicant and the owners of the cited marks.

1306.05(g)(ii) Considerations When the Proposed Mark Contains a Geographic Designation but Is Not a Geographic Certification Mark

When the application is for a mark that contains a geographic designation but is not a geographic certification mark, the examining attorney should consider citing not only any prior mark with distinctive elements (e.g., suggestive, arbitrary, or fanciful wording, or distinctive design elements) that are confusingly similar to those in the applied-for mark, but also any prior geographic certification mark containing a geographic designation that is confusingly similar to the geographic designation in the applied-for mark. Even if the geographic designation in the applied-for mark is not the dominant element, is relatively inconspicuous, or appears with a number of other elements, it may nonetheless be appropriate to cite a prior geographic certification mark that contains the same designation. By contrast, if there are no prior geographic certification marks containing the geographic designation, but there are numerous prior trademarks or service marks that contain and disclaim the designation, then a §2(d) refusal based on the fact that the respective marks share the designation is likely not appropriate.

As an example of the analysis when a prior geographic certification mark is involved, consider an applied-for mark that is used as a trademark for fresh bamboo shoots, consisting of the wording ZZZ BAMBOO in large

lettering appearing above EVERGLADES in small lettering (with BAMBOO and EVERGLADES disclaimed). A potential cite might be a geographic certification mark consisting of the wording CERTIFIED EVERGLADES BAMBOO (with CERTIFIED and BAMBOO disclaimed), which certifies that live bamboo plants originate in the Everglades. Citing the prior geographic certification mark, and only that mark, may be appropriate even if there are also a few prior trademarks that contain the word EVERGLADES and are applied to bamboo products.

Of course, if other matter in the applied-for mark changes the commercial impression of a geographic designation (e.g., GEORGE WASHINGTON FRUITS vs. WASHINGTON STATE RAISINS), then that factor would weigh against citing prior marks containing the geographic term. See [TMEP §1207.01\(b\)\(iii\)](#).

Confusion as to sponsorship, affiliation, or connection may be likely even when the applicant's goods or services have been certified by the owner of the certification mark or would otherwise be considered genuine. See *Institute Nat'l Des Appellations d'Origine v. Brown-Forman Corp.*, 47 USPQ2d 1875, 1890-91 (TTAB 1998). Thus, the mere fact that the applied-for mark is, or will be, applied to goods or services that originate in the relevant geographic region covered by a confusingly similar registered certification mark, and otherwise meet the certification standards of the registrant, is not, by itself, sufficient to overcome a §2(d) refusal. See *id.* at 1889-91.

1306.05(h) American Viticultural Areas

American Viticultural Areas (AVA) are defined grape-growing regions in the United States, created on petition by interested parties through the federal rulemaking process. AVA designations appear on wine labels and “allow vintners and consumers to attribute a given quality, reputation, or other characteristic of a wine made from grapes grown in an area to its geographic origin.” Thus, these designations facilitate the accurate description of wine origins and aid consumers in identifying wines. See U.S. Dept. of the Treasury, Alcohol and Tobacco Tax and Trade Bureau, *American Viticultural Area (AVA)*, <http://www.ttb.gov/wine/ava.shtml> (accessed June 30, 2014). The currently recognized AVA designations can be found at 27 C.F.R. §§9.22-9.233. In addition, the Alcohol and Tobacco Tax and Trade Bureau of the U.S. Department of the Treasury provides an up-to-date alphabetical list of the designations at http://www.ttb.gov/appellation/us_by_ava.pdf.

Although AVA designations are similar to geographic certification marks in terms of their purpose and function, these designations raise complex issues when included in applied-for marks of any type. Thus, if an applied-for mark of any type contains an AVA designation, the assigned examining attorney must consult the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure before taking any action on the application.

1306.05(i) Geographic Certification Marks Containing §2(b) Matter

Trademark Act §2(b), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(b\)](#), bars the registration of marks that contain the flag, coat of arms, or other insignia of the United States, any state or municipality, or any foreign nation. If a geographic certification mark includes this matter, it must be refused registration. See [TMEP §§1204–1204.05](#) regarding refusing registration under §2(b).

1306.05(j) Examples of Geographic Certification Marks

Example 1

Mark: IDAHO (typed drawing)



Specimen

Goods: Potatoes and potato products, namely, fresh, frozen, refrigerated and dehydrated potatoes

Certification Statement: “The Certification mark, as used by authorized persons, certifies that goods identified by the mark are grown in Idaho and that the goods conform to quality, grade and other requirements, pursuant to standards designated by the Applicant.”

Example 2



Mark



Specimen

Goods: Potatoes and potato products, namely, fresh, frozen, refrigerated and dehydrated potatoes

Certification Statement: “The certification mark, as used by person[s] authorized by the certifier, certifies the regional origin of potatoes grown in the State of Idaho and certifies that those potatoes conform to grade, size, weight, color, shape, cleanliness, variety, internal defect, external defect, maturity and residue level standards promulgated by the certifier.”

Example 3

ROQUEFORT

Mark



Specimen

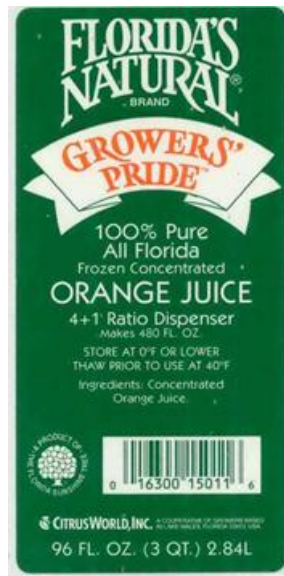
Goods: Cheese

Certification Statement: “The certification mark is used upon the goods to indicate that the same has been manufactured from sheep’s milk only, and has been cured in the nature caves of the community of Roquefort, Department of Aveyron, France.” See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the preferred form and content of the certification statement.

Example 4



Mark



Specimen

Goods: Oranges; grapefruit, tangerines, orange juice; grapefruit juice; orange juice concentrate and grapefruit juice concentrate, both frozen and unfrozen; and citrus salad

Certification Statement: “The mark certifies that the goods bearing the mark either consist of citrus fruit grown in the state of Florida, under specified standards, or are processed or manufactured from or with such fruit.” See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the preferred form and content of the certification statement.

Example 5

Mark: RECIOTO (standard characters)



Specimen

Goods: Alcoholic beverages, namely, wine

Certification Statement: “The certification mark, as used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies a wine produced in the Valpolicella region of Italy.”

Example 6



Mark



Specimen

Goods: Butter and cheese

Certification Statement: “The mark certifies that the goods are produced in Denmark and meet standards and quality established by applicant.” See [TMEP § 1306.05\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the preferred form and content of the certification statement

Example 7



Mark



Specimen

Services: “Retirement communities in Texas, development of retirement communities in Texas, and retirement homes in Texas”

Certification Statement: “The certification mark, as used or intended to be used by persons authorized by the certifier, certifies that the services provided originate in the State of Texas, and meet community, tax, housing, safety, employment, healthcare, public transportation, educational, leisure, and recreational standards as set by the certifier.”

Example 8



Mark



Specimen

Goods: Tea

Certification Statement: “The certification mark, as used by persons authorized by certifier, certifies that a blend of tea contains at least sixty percent (60%) tea originating in the Darjeeling region of India, and that the blend meets other specifications established by the certifier.” See [TMEP §1306.05\(b\)\(i\)](#) regarding the preferred form and content of the certification statement.

Example 9

Mark: VIDALIA (typed drawing)

**Specimen**

Goods: Fresh onions

Certification Statement: “The certification mark is intended to be used by persons authorized by certifier, and will certify that the goods in connection with which it is used are yellow Granex type onions and are grown by authorized growers within the Vidalia onion production area in Georgia as defined in the Georgia Vidalia onion act of 1986.”

1306.06 Uncertainty Regarding Type of Mark

When the facts in the application are insufficient to provide an adequate basis for determining whether the mark is functioning as a trademark or service mark or as a certification mark, the examining attorney should ask, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), for further explanation as to the activities in which the mark is or will be used and for the disclosure of facts regarding the mark to enable a proper examination to be made. The manner in which the activities associated with a mark are conducted is the main factor that determines the type of mark. The conduct of parties involved with the mark evidences the relationship between the parties, and the responsibilities of each to the goods or services and to the mark.

1306.06(a) Distinction Between Certification Mark and Collective Mark

A collective trademark or collective service mark indicates origin of goods or services in the members of a group. A collective membership mark indicates membership in an organization. A certification mark certifies characteristics or features of goods or services. See *Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass'n v. Nat'l Hearing Aid Soc'y*, 224 USPQ 798, 806-808 (TTAB 1984), for a discussion of the distinction between collective marks and certification marks.

Both collective marks and certification marks are used by more than one person, but only the users of collective marks are related to each other through membership in a collective group. The collective mark is used by all members and the collective organization holds the title to the collective mark for the benefit of all members.

A certification mark may be used to certify that the work or labor on the goods or services was performed by a member of a union or other organization. See [TMEP §1306.04\(d\)\(ii\)](#). Used in this manner, the certification mark certifies not that the user is a member of an organization but that the labor on the user's goods or services was performed by a member of an organization.

An application to register a mark that is used or intended to be used by members of a collective group must be scrutinized carefully to determine the function of the mark. If the mark is used or intended to be used by the members as a trademark on goods they produce or as a service mark for services they perform, then the mark is a collective trademark or collective service mark. If the mark is used or intended to be used by members to indicate membership in an organization, then the mark is a collective membership mark. However, if use of the mark is or will be authorized only under circumstances designated by the organization to certify characteristics or features of the goods or services, the mark is a certification mark.

1306.06(b) Amendment to Different Type of Mark

If a certification mark application is filed but the mark is actually another type of mark, or if an application for another type of mark is filed but it is actually a certification mark, the application may be amended to request registration as the proper type of mark. Also, the application should be re-executed because some essential allegations differ for the different types of marks.

Applications for certification marks, collective marks, and collective membership marks cannot be filed using TEAS Plus. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(d\)](#). Therefore, in a TEAS Plus application, an additional TEAS Plus processing fee will be required if the mark is amended to a collective trademark or collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark. See [TMEP §819.01\(a\)](#).

See [TMEP §1306.04\(d\)\(i\)](#) regarding appearance of a trademark or service mark in a certification mark or on a specimen, [TMEP §1306.04\(b\)\(ii\)](#) regarding related company use, and [TMEP §1306.04\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding use under a patent license.

1306.06(c) Registration as Correct Type of Mark

The examining attorney should take care to ascertain the correct type of mark during examination, and to require amendment if necessary. If a registration is issued for the wrong type of mark, it may be subject to cancellation. See *Am. Speech-Language-Hearing Ass'n v. Nat'l Hearing Aid Soc'y*, 224 USPQ 798 (TTAB 1984); *Nat'l Trailways Bus Sys. v. Trailway Van Lines, Inc.*, 269 F. Supp. 352, 155 USPQ 507 (E.D.N.Y. 1965).

Chapter 1400 Classification and Identification of Goods and Services

1401	Classification
1401.01	Statutory Authority
1401.02	International Trademark Classification Adopted
1401.02(a)	Headings of International Trademark Classes
1401.02(b)	Short Titles for International Trademark Classes
1401.02(c)	International Alphabetical List
1401.03	Designation of Class
1401.03(a)	Designation of Class by Applicant Normally Initially Accepted in Applications Under §§1 and 44
1401.03(b)	Designation of Class by USPTO When Class Number Is Not Designated or Is Inaccurate in Application Under §1 or §44
1401.03(c)	Failure to Classify May Delay Action in Applications Under §§1 and 44
1401.03(d)	Classification Determined by World Intellectual Property Organization in §66(a) Applications
1401.04	Classification Determines Number of Fees
1401.04(a)	Prior United States Classification System
1401.04(b)	Limiting Goods and Services to the Number of Classes for Which Filing Fees Are Paid
1401.05	Criteria on Which International Classification Is Based
1401.05(a)	Identification and Classification of Kits, Gift Baskets, and Items Sold as a Unit
1401.05(b)	Medical vs. Non-Medical Goods
1401.05(c)	Classification and Plurality of Uses
1401.05(d)	Identification and Classification of “Systems”
1401.05(e)	Identification and Classification of “Food Additives”
1401.06	Specimen(s) as Related to Classification
1401.07	Specimen Discloses Special Characteristics
1401.08	Classification and the Identification of Goods and Services
1401.09	Implementation of Changes to the Nice Agreement
1401.10	Effective Date of Changes to USPTO ID Manual
1401.11	Changes in Practice Based on the Restructuring of International Class 42 in the 8th Edition of the Nice Agreement
1401.11(a)	Elimination of “Miscellaneous Class Designation”
1401.12	General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 9th Edition of the Nice Agreement
1401.12(a)	Legal Services Transferred to International Class 45
1401.12(b)	Goods Made of Precious Metal are Classified According to Their Function
1401.12(c)	Transfer of Aquaria and Related Items
1401.13	General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 10th Edition of the Nice Agreement
1401.13(a)	Electric/Electrothermic Goods
1401.13(b)	Amusement and Game-Playing Apparatus
1401.13(c)	Food Additives
1401.13(d)	Dietetic Substances and Meal Replacements
1401.13(e)	Marketing Services
1401.14	General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 11th Edition of the Nice Agreement
1401.14(a)	Cosmetic and Toiletry Preparations
1401.14(b)	Household or Kitchen Serving Utensils and Small Hand-operated Kitchen Apparatus for Mincing, Grinding, Pressing, or Crushing

- 1401.14(c) Dietetic Food and Beverages Adapted for Medical or Veterinary Use
- 1401.14(d) Nut and Plant Milks; Milk Substitutes
- 1401.14(e) Security Services in Class 42 and Class 45
- 1402 Identification of Goods and Services**
- 1402.01 Specifying the Goods and/or Services - in General
 - 1402.01(a) General Guidelines for Acceptable Identifications of Goods or Services
 - 1402.01(b) Identification of Goods and Services in a §44 Application
 - 1402.01(c) Identification and Classification of Goods and Services in a §66(a) Application
 - 1402.01(d) Location of "Identification of Goods and Services"
 - 1402.01(e) Responsibilities of Examining Attorney as to Identification
- 1402.02 Entitlement to Filing Date With Respect to Identification of Goods and Services
- 1402.03 Specificity of Terms Used in Identifying Goods and Services
 - 1402.03(a) Inclusive Terminology
 - 1402.03(b) House Marks
 - 1402.03(c) Marks for a "Full Line of ..."
 - 1402.03(d) Identifying Computer Programs with Specificity
 - 1402.03(e) Identifying Publications with Specificity
 - 1402.03(f) Recognition of Industry Terms
 - 1402.03(g) Name and/or Acronym of Trademark Protection System or Scheme for Geographical Indication Appearing in Identification
- 1402.04 Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual
- 1402.05 Accuracy of Identification
 - 1402.05(a) Goods That Are Components or Ingredients
 - 1402.05(b) Material Composition
- 1402.06 Amendments Permitted to Clarify or Limit Identification
 - 1402.06(a) Limiting the Identification of Goods and Services
 - 1402.06(b) Clarifying the Identification of Goods and Services
- 1402.07 Scope of Identification of Goods and Services for Purposes of Amendment
 - 1402.07(a) The "Ordinary-Meaning" Test
 - 1402.07(b) Ambiguous Identifications
 - 1402.07(c) Unambiguous Identifications
 - 1402.07(d) Permissible Scope of Identification Not Affected by Proposed Amendment That Is Unacceptable
 - 1402.07(e) Permissible Scope of Identification Affected by Proposed Amendment That Is Acceptable
- 1402.08 Moving Goods and Services Between Companion Applications
- 1402.09 Use of Marks or Terms "Applicant" and "Registrant" Inappropriate in Identifications
- 1402.10 Identification of Goods and Services in Documents Filed in Connection with §1(b) Applications
- 1402.11 Identification of Services
 - 1402.11(a) Computer Services
 - 1402.11(a)(i) Services Classified in Classes 35, 36, 37, 39, 40, 41, 44, and 45
 - 1402.11(a)(ii) Content Providers
 - 1402.11(a)(iii) Provision of Telecommunications Connections to the Internet
 - 1402.11(a)(iv) Office-Function-Type and Computerized Web Traffic Services
 - 1402.11(a)(v) Computer Installation and Repair Services
 - 1402.11(a)(vi) Computer Retail Services
 - 1402.11(a)(vii) Computer Entertainment Services
 - 1402.11(a)(viii) Computer Design and Development Services
 - 1402.11(a)(ix) Database Services
 - 1402.11(a)(x) Online Publications

1402.11(a)(xi)	Electronic Storage, Hosting of Data, and Cloud Computing
1402.11(a)(xii)	Non-Downloadable Computer Software
1402.11(b)	Information Services
1402.11(c)	Association Services and “Promoting the Interest of” Services
1402.11(d)	Charitable Services, Other than Monetary
1402.11(e)	Consulting Services
1402.11(f)	Distribution of Videotapes, Audiotapes, Videodiscs, and Similar Items
1402.11(g)	Recorded Entertainment Services
1402.11(h)	Identification of “Bonus Programs”
1402.11(i)	Marketing Services and Advertising Services
1402.11(j)	Issuing Awards
1402.11(k)	Accreditation- and Certification-Related Services vs. Certification Marks
1402.12	Parentheses and Brackets Should Not be Used in Identifications of Goods and Services
1402.13	Requirement for Amendment of Portion of Identification of Goods/Services
1402.14	Identification of Goods/Services Must Conform to Rules and Policies in Effect at the Time Registration is Sought
1402.15	Procedures for Processing Unacceptable Amendments to Identifications
1403	Combined or Multiple-Class Applications
1403.01	Requirements for Combined or Multiple-Class Applications
1403.02	Amendment of Combined or Multiple-Class Application
1403.02(a)	Deletion of Classes
1403.02(b)	Correction of Classification
1403.02(c)	Addition of Classes
1403.03	Dividing of Combined or Multiple-Class Application
1403.04	Combined or Multiple-Class Marks in Official Gazette
1403.05	Refusals and Oppositions as to Less Than All the Classes in a Multiple-Class Application
1403.06	Fees for Action After Filing, Multiple Classes
1403.07	Surrender or Amendment in Multiple-Class Registrations

1401 Classification

1401.01 Statutory Authority

Section 30 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1112](#), provides authority for establishing a classification system. That section states, in part, as follows:

The Director may establish a classification of goods and services, for convenience of Patent and Trademark Office administration, but not to limit or extend the applicant’s or registrant’s rights.

1401.02 International Trademark Classification Adopted

As of September 1, 1973, the international classification of goods and services is the controlling classification used by the United States, and it applies to all applications filed on or after September 1, 1973, and their resulting registrations, for all statutory purposes. See [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(a\)](#). Unless otherwise indicated, references in this manual to class refer to the international class.

Prior to September 1, 1973, the United States used its own classification of goods and services, which is different from the international classification. The prior United States classification continues to govern for all statutory purposes for trademark applications filed on or before August 31, 1973, and all registrations issued on the basis of an application filed on or before August 31, 1973, unless the owner of the registration amends the registration to adopt international classification. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(b\)](#).

If a registration issued under the United States classification system, the owner of the registration may voluntarily amend to reclassify under the international classification system, pursuant to §7(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#), if the owner pays the required fee. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [2.85\(e\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §1609.04](#).

Classification schedules are set forth in Part 6 of the Trademark Rules of Practice. See [37 C.F.R §6.1](#) for the international classification schedule for goods and services, [37 C.F.R §6.2](#) for the prior United States classification schedule for goods and services, [37 C.F.R. §6.3](#) for certification marks, and [37 C.F.R §6.4](#) for collective membership marks.

1401.02(a) Headings of International Trademark Classes

International trademark classification, and the headings of the international trademark classes, are established by the Committee of Experts of the Nice Union and set forth in the *International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks* (Nice Classification) published annually by the World Intellectual Property Organization (“WIPO”) on its website. See [TMEP §1401.02\(c\)](#) for further information.

In 2013, the Committee of Experts began annual revisions to the Nice Classification. The annual revisions, which are published electronically and enter into force on January 1 each year, are referred to as versions and identified by edition number and year of the effective date (e.g., “Nice Classification, 10th edition, version 2013” or “NCL 10-2013”). Each annual version includes all changes adopted by the Committee of Experts since the adoption of the previous version. The changes consist of the addition of new goods and services to, and deletion of goods and services from, the Alphabetical List, and any modifications to the wording in the Alphabetical List, the class headings and the explanatory notes that do not involve the transfer of goods or services from one class to another. New editions continue to be published electronically and enter into force usually every five years, and include all changes adopted annually since the previous edition, as well as all amendments. Amendments consist of goods or services transferred from one class to another or new classes that are created. The [Nice Agreement Current Edition/Version](#) page sets forth the general remarks, class numbers, class headings and explanatory notes for the current edition and version of the Nice Agreement.

The general remarks, class numbers, class headings, and explanatory notes for each international trademark class under Nice Classification, 11th edition, version 2017 (“NCL 11-2017” or “Nice 11-2017”) are set forth below. The word or words in parentheses following the class numbers are short titles for the classes that are used exclusively in the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) and are not part of the official text of the Nice Classification. See [TMEP §1401.02\(b\)](#).

In addition NCL 11-2017 is available on WIPO’s website at <http://www.wipo.int/classifications/nice/en>. See also [TMEP §1401.02\(c\)](#).

GENERAL REMARKS

The indications of goods or services appearing in the class headings are general indications relating to the fields to which, in principle, the goods or services belong. The Alphabetical List should therefore be consulted in order to ascertain the exact classification of each individual product or service.

Goods

If a product cannot be classified with the aid of the List of Classes, the Explanatory Notes and the Alphabetical List, the following remarks set forth the criteria to be applied:

- (a) A finished product is in principle classified according to its function or purpose. If the function or purpose of a finished product is not mentioned in any class heading, the finished product is classified by analogy with other comparable finished products, indicated in the Alphabetical List. If none is found, other subsidiary criteria, such as that of the material of which the product is made or its mode of operation, are applied.
- (b) A finished product which is a multipurpose composite object (e.g., clocks incorporating radios) may be classified in all classes that correspond to any of its functions or intended purposes. If those functions or purposes are not mentioned in any class heading, other criteria, indicated under (a), above, are to be applied.
- (c) Raw materials, unworked or semi-worked, are in principle classified according to the material of which they consist.
- (d) Goods intended to form part of another product are in principle classified in the same class as that product only in cases where the same type of goods cannot normally be used for another purpose. In all other cases, the criterion indicated under (a), above, applies.
- (e) When a product, whether finished or not, is classified according to the material of which it is made, and it is made of different materials, the product is in principle classified according to the material which predominates.
- (f) Cases adapted to the product they are intended to contain are in principle classified in the same class as the product.

Services

If a service cannot be classified with the aid of the List of Classes, the Explanatory Notes and the Alphabetical List, the following remarks set forth the criteria to be applied:

- (a) Services are in principle classified according to the branches of activities specified in the headings of the service classes and in their Explanatory Notes or, if not specified, by analogy with other comparable services indicated in the Alphabetical List.
- (b) Rental services are in principle classified in the same classes as the services provided by means of the rented objects (e.g., Rental of telephones, covered by Cl. 38). Leasing services are analogous to rental services and therefore should be classified in the same way. However, hire or lease-purchase financing is classified in Class 36 as a financial service.
- (c) Services that provide advice, information or consultation are in principle classified in the same classes as the services that correspond to the subject matter of the advice, information or consultation, e.g., transportation consultancy (Cl. 39), business management consultancy (Cl. 35), financial consultancy (Cl. 36), beauty consultancy (Cl. 44). The rendering of the advice, information or consultancy by electronic means (e.g., telephone, computer) does not affect the classification of these services.

- (d) Services rendered in the framework of franchising are in principle classified in the same class as the particular services provided by the franchisor (e.g., business advice relating to franchising (Class 35), financing services relating to franchising (Class 36), legal services relating to franchising (Class 45)).

GOODS

CLASS 1

(Chemicals)

Chemicals used in industry, science and photography, as well as in agriculture, horticulture and forestry; unprocessed artificial resins, unprocessed plastics; manures; fire extinguishing compositions; tempering and soldering preparations; chemical substances for preserving foodstuffs; tanning substances; adhesives used in industry.

Explanatory Note

Class 1 includes mainly chemical products used in industry, science and agriculture, including those which go to the making of products belonging to other classes.

This Class includes, in particular:

- compost;
- salt for preserving other than for foodstuffs;
- certain additives for the food industry (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods).

This Class does not include, in particular:

- raw natural resins (Cl. 2);
- chemical products for use in medical science (Cl. 5);
- fungicides, herbicides and preparations for destroying vermin (Cl. 5);
- adhesives for stationery or household purposes (Cl. 16);
- salt for preserving foodstuffs (Cl. 30);
- straw mulch (Cl. 31).

CLASS 2

(Paints)

Paints, varnishes, lacquers; preservatives against rust and against deterioration of wood; colorants; mordants; raw natural resins; metals in foil and powder form for use in painting, decorating, printing and art.

Explanatory Note

Class 2 includes mainly paints, colorants and preparations used for the protection against corrosion.

This Class includes, in particular:

- paints, varnishes and lacquers for industry, handicrafts and arts;
- dyestuffs for clothing;
- colorants for foodstuffs and beverages.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- unprocessed artificial resins (Cl. 1);
- laundry blueing (Cl. 3);
- cosmetic dyes (Cl. 3);
- paint boxes (articles for use in school) (Cl. 16);
- insulating paints and varnishes (Cl. 17).

CLASS 3

(Cosmetics and cleaning preparations)

Bleaching preparations and other substances for laundry use; cleaning, polishing, scouring and abrasive preparations; non-medicated soaps; perfumery, essential oils, non-medicated cosmetics, non-medicated hair lotions; non-medicated dentifrices.

Explanatory Note

Class 3 includes mainly cleaning preparations and non-medicated toiletry preparations.

This Class includes, in particular:

- deodorants for human beings or for animals;
- room fragrancing preparations;
- sanitary preparations being toiletries.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- chemical chimney cleaners (Cl. 1);
- degreasing preparations for use in manufacturing processes (Cl. 1);
- deodorants other than for human beings or for animals (Cl. 5);
- medicated shampoos, medicated soaps, medicated hair lotions and medicated dentifrices (Cl. 5);
- sharpening stones and grindstones (hand tools) (Cl. 8).

CLASS 4

(Lubricants and fuels)

Industrial oils and greases; lubricants; dust absorbing, wetting and binding compositions; fuels (including motor spirit) and illuminants; candles and wicks for lighting.

Explanatory Note

Class 4 includes mainly industrial oils and greases, fuels and illuminants.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain special industrial oils and greases (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods).

CLASS 5

(Pharmaceuticals)

Pharmaceuticals, medical and veterinary preparations; sanitary preparations for medical purposes; dietetic food and substances adapted for medical or veterinary use, food for babies; dietary supplements for humans and animals; plasters, materials for dressings; material for stopping teeth, dental wax; disinfectants; preparations for destroying vermin; fungicides, herbicides.

Explanatory Note

Class 5 includes mainly pharmaceuticals and other preparations for medical or veterinary purposes.

This Class includes, in particular:

- sanitary preparations for personal hygiene, other than toiletries;
- diapers for babies and incontinents;
- deodorants other than for human beings or for animals;
- medicated shampoos, soaps, lotions and dentifrices;
- dietary supplements, intended to supplement a normal diet or to have health benefits;
- meal replacements, dietetic food and beverages, adapted for medical or veterinary use;
- cigarettes without tobacco, for medical purposes.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- sanitary preparations being non-medicated toiletries (Cl. 3);
- deodorants for human beings or for animals (Cl. 3);
- supportive bandages (Cl. 10);
- meal replacements, dietetic food and beverages not for medical or veterinary use (Cl. 29, 30, 31, 32 or 33).

CLASS 6

(Metal goods)

Common metals and their alloys, ores; metal materials for building and construction; transportable buildings of metal; non-electric cables and wires of common metal; small items of metal hardware; metal containers for storage or transport; safes.

Explanatory Note

Class 6 includes mainly unwrought and partly wrought common metals, including ores, as well as certain goods made of common metals.

This Class includes, in particular:

metals in foil or powder form for further processing, for example, for 3D printers;
 metal building materials, for example, materials of metal for railway tracks, pipes and tubes of metal;
 small items of metal hardware, for example, bolts, screws, nails, furniture casters, window fasteners;
 transportable buildings or structures of metal, for example, prefabricated houses, swimming pools, cages for wild animals, skating rinks;
 certain goods made of common metals not otherwise classified by function or purpose, for example, all-purpose boxes of common metal, statues, busts and works of art of common metal.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- metals and ores used as chemicals in industry or scientific research for their chemical properties, for example, bauxite, mercury, antimony, alkaline and alkaline-earth metals (Cl. 1);
- metals in foil and powder form for use in painting, decorating, printing and art (Cl. 2); electric cables (Cl. 9) and non-electric cables and ropes, not of metal (Cl. 22);
- pipes being parts of sanitary installations (Cl. 11), flexible pipes, tubes and hoses, not of metal (Cl. 17) and rigid pipes, not of metal (Cl. 19); • cages for household pets (Cl. 21);
- certain goods made of common metals that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, hand tools, hand operated (Cl. 8), paper clips (Cl. 16), furniture (Cl. 20), kitchen utensils (Cl. 21), household containers (Cl. 21).

CLASS 7

(Machinery)

Machines and machine tools; motors and engines (except for land vehicles); machine coupling and transmission components (except for land vehicles); agricultural implements other than hand-operated; incubators for eggs; automatic vending machines.

Explanatory Note

Class 7 includes mainly machines, machine tools, motors and engines.

This Class includes, in particular:

- parts of motors and engines (of all kinds);
- electric cleaning machines and apparatus.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain special machines and machine tools (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- hand tools and implements, hand-operated (Cl. 8);
- motors and engines for land vehicles (Cl. 12).

CLASS 8

(Hand tools)

Hand tools and implements (hand-operated); cutlery; side arms; razors.

Explanatory Note

Class 8 includes mainly hand-operated implements used as tools in the respective professions.

This Class includes, in particular:

- cutlery of precious metals;
- electric razors and clippers (hand instruments).

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain special instruments (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- machine tools and implements driven by a motor (Cl. 7);
- surgical cutlery (Cl. 10);
- side arms being firearms (Cl. 13);
- paper knives (Cl. 16);
- fencing weapons (Cl. 28).

CLASS 9

(Electrical and scientific apparatus)

Scientific, nautical, surveying, photographic, cinematographic, optical, weighing, measuring, signalling, checking (supervision), life-saving and teaching apparatus and instruments; apparatus and instruments for conducting, switching, transforming, accumulating, regulating or controlling electricity; apparatus for recording, transmission or reproduction of sound or images; magnetic data carriers, recording discs; compact discs, DVDs and other digital recording media; mechanisms for coin-operated apparatus; cash registers, calculating machines, data processing equipment, computers; computer software; fire-extinguishing apparatus.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

apparatus and instruments for scientific research in laboratories;

apparatus and instruments for controlling ships, such as apparatus and instruments for measuring and for transmitting orders;

protractors;

punched card office machines;

all computer programs and software regardless of recording media or means of dissemination, that is, software recorded on magnetic media or downloaded from a remote computer network.

This Class does not include, in particular:

the following electrical apparatus and instruments:

- (a) electromechanical apparatus for the kitchen (grinders and mixers for foodstuffs, fruit presses, electrical coffee mills, etc.), and certain other apparatus and instruments driven by an electrical motor, all coming under Class 7;
 - (b) apparatus for pumping or dispensing fuels (Cl. 7);
 - (c) electric razors, clippers (hand instruments) and flat irons (Cl. 8);
 - (d) electrical apparatus for space heating or for the heating of liquids, for cooking, ventilating, etc. (Cl. 11);
 - (e) electric toothbrushes and combs (Cl. 21);
- clocks and watches and other chronometric instruments (Cl. 14);
- control clocks (Cl. 14);
- amusement and game apparatus adapted for use with an external display screen or monitor (Cl. 28).

CLASS 10

(Medical apparatus)

Surgical, medical, dental and veterinary apparatus and instruments; artificial limbs, eyes and teeth; orthopaedic articles; suture materials; therapeutic and assistive devices adapted for the disabled; massage apparatus; apparatus, devices and articles for nursing infants; sexual activity apparatus, devices and articles.

Explanatory Note

Class 10 includes mainly surgical, medical, dental and veterinary apparatus, instruments and articles generally used for the diagnosis, treatment or improvement of function or condition of persons and animals.

This Class includes, in particular:

- supportive bandages and special clothing for medical purposes, for example, compression garments, stockings for varices, strait jackets, orthopaedic footwear;
- articles, instruments and devices for menstruation, contraception and childbirth, for example, menstrual cups, pessaries, condoms, childbirth mattresses, forceps;
- therapeutic and prosthetic articles and devices for implantation composed of artificial or synthetic materials, for example, surgical implants composed of artificial materials, artificial breasts, brain pacemakers, biodegradable bone fixation implants;
- furniture especially made for medical purposes, for example, armchairs for medical or dental purposes, air mattresses for medical purposes, operating tables.

This Class does not include, in particular:

medical dressings and absorbent sanitary articles, for example, plasters, bandages and gauze for dressings, breast-nursing pads, babies' napkins and napkins for incontinents, tampons (Cl. 5); surgical implants comprised of living tissue (Cl. 5); tobacco-free cigarettes for medical purposes (Cl. 5) and electronic cigarettes (Cl. 34);

wheelchairs and mobility scooters (Cl. 12);
massage tables and hospital beds (Cl. 20).

CLASS 11

(Environmental control apparatus)

Apparatus for lighting, heating, steam generating, cooking, refrigerating, drying, ventilating, water supply and sanitary purposes.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

- air-conditioning apparatus;
- bed warmers, hot water bottles, warming pans, electric or non-electric;
- electrically heated cushions (pads) and blankets, not for medical purposes;
- electrically heated clothing;
- electric kettles;
- electric cooking utensils.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- steam producing apparatus (parts of machines) (Cl. 7);

CLASS 12

(Vehicles)

Vehicles; apparatus for locomotion by land, air or water.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

- motors and engines for land vehicles;
- couplings and transmission components for land vehicles;
- air cushion vehicles.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain special vehicles not for transportation purposes (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- certain parts of vehicles (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- railway material of metal (Cl. 6);
- motors, engines, couplings and transmission components other than for land vehicles (Cl. 7);
- parts of motors and engines (of all kinds) (Cl. 7).

CLASS 13**(Firearms)**

Firearms; ammunition and projectiles; explosives; fireworks.

Explanatory Note

Class 13 includes mainly firearms and pyrotechnical products.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- matches (Cl. 34).

CLASS 14**(Jewelry)**

Precious metals and their alloys; jewellery, precious and semi-precious stones; horological and chronometric instruments.

Explanatory Note

Class 14 includes mainly precious metals and certain goods made of precious metals or coated therewith, as well as jewellery, clocks and watches, and component parts therefor.

This Class includes, in particular:

- jewellery, including imitation jewelry, for example, paste jewellery;
- cuff links, tie pins, tie clips;
- key rings, key chains and charms therefor;
- jewellery charms;
- jewellery boxes;
- component parts for jewellery, clocks and watches, for example, clasps and beads for jewellery, movements for clocks and watches, clock hands, watch springs, watch crystals.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- smartwatches (Cl. 9);
- charms, other than for jewellery, key rings or key chains (Cl. 26);
- objects of art not made of precious metals or coated therewith that are classified according to the material of which they are made, for example, works of art of metal (Cl. 6), of stone, concrete or marble (Cl. 19), of wood, wax, plaster or plastic (Cl. 20), of porcelain, terra-cotta or glass (Cl. 21);
- certain goods made of precious metals or coated therewith that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, metals in foil and powder form for use in painting, decorating, printing and art (Cl. 2), dental amalgams of gold (Cl. 5), cutlery (Cl. 8), electric contacts (Cl. 9), pen nibs of gold (Cl. 16), teapots (Cl. 21), gold and silver embroidery (Cl. 26), cigar boxes (Cl. 34).

CLASS 15**(Musical Instruments)**

Musical instruments.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

- mechanical pianos and their accessories;
- musical boxes;
- electrical and electronic musical instruments.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- apparatus for the recording, transmission, amplification and reproduction of sound (Cl. 9).

CLASS 16**(Paper goods and printed matter)**

Paper and cardboard; printed matter; bookbinding material; photographs; stationery and office requisites, except furniture; adhesives for stationery or household purposes; artists' and drawing materials; paintbrushes; instructional and teaching materials; plastic sheets, films and bags for wrapping and packaging; printers' type, printing blocks.

Explanatory Note

Class 16 includes mainly paper, cardboard and certain goods made of those materials, as well as and office requisites.

This Class includes, in particular:

- paper knives and paper cutters;
- cases, covers and devices for holding or securing paper, for example, document files, money clips, holders for cheque books, paper-clips, passport holders, scrapbooks;
- certain office machines, for example, typewriters, duplicators, franking machines for office use, pencil sharpeners;
- painting articles for use by artists and interior and exterior painters, for example, artists' watercolour saucers, painters' easels and palettes, paint rollers and trays;
- certain disposable paper products, for example, bibs, handkerchiefs and table linen of paper;
- certain goods made of paper or cardboard not otherwise classified by function or purpose, for example, paper bags, envelopes and containers for packaging, statues, figurines and works of art of paper or cardboard, such as figurines of papier mâché, framed or unframed lithographs, paintings and watercolours.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- paints (Cl. 2);
- hand tools for artists, for example, spatulas, sculptors' chisels (Cl. 8);
- teaching apparatus, for example, audiovisual teaching apparatus, resuscitation mannequins (Cl. 9), and toy models (Cl. 28);
- certain goods made of paper or cardboard that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, photographic paper (Cl. 1), abrasive paper (Cl. 3), paper blinds (Cl. 20), table cups and plates of paper (Cl. 21), bed linen of paper (Cl. 24), paper clothing (Cl. 25), cigarette paper (Cl. 34).

CLASS 17

(Rubber goods)

Unprocessed and semi-processed rubber, gutta-percha, gum, asbestos, mica and substitutes for all these materials; plastics and resins in extruded form for use in manufacture; packing, stopping and insulating materials; flexible pipes, tubes and hoses, not of metal.

Explanatory Note

Class 17 includes mainly electrical, thermal and acoustic insulating materials and plastics, for use in manufacture in the form of sheets, blocks and rods, as well as certain goods made of rubber, gutta-percha, gum, asbestos, mica or substitutes therefor.

This Class includes, in particular:

- rubber material for recapping tyres;
- floating anti-pollution barriers;
- adhesive tapes, other than stationery and not for medical or household purposes;
- plastic films, other than for wrapping and packaging, for example, anti-dazzle films for windows;
- elastic threads and threads of rubber or plastic, not for textile use;
- certain goods made of the materials in this class not otherwise classified by function or purpose, for example, foam supports for flower arrangements, padding and stuffing materials of rubber or plastics, rubber stoppers, shock-absorbing buffers of rubber, rubber bags or envelopes for packaging.

This Class does not include, in particular:

fire hose (Cl. 9);
pipes being parts of sanitary installations (Cl. 11) and rigid pipes of metal (Cl. 6) and not of metal (Cl. 19);
insulating glass for building (Cl. 19);
certain goods made of the materials in this class that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, gum resins (Cl. 2), rubber for dental purposes (Cl. 5), asbestos screens for firemen (Cl. 9), adhesive rubber patches for repairing inner tubes (Cl. 12), rubber erasers (Cl. 16).

CLASS 18

(Leather goods)

Leather and imitations of leather; animal skins and hides; luggage and carrying bags; umbrellas and parasols; walking sticks; whips, harness and saddlery; collars, leashes and clothing for animals.

Explanatory Note

Class 18 includes mainly leather, imitations of leather and certain goods made of those materials.

This Class includes, in particular:

luggage and carrying bags, for example, suitcases, trunks, travelling bags, sling bags for carrying infants, school bags;
luggage tags;
business card cases and pocket wallets;
boxes and cases of leather or leatherboard.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- clothing, footwear and headgear of leather for humans (Cl. 25);
- bags and cases adapted to the product they are intended to contain, for example, bags adapted for laptops (Cl. 9); bags and cases for cameras and photographic equipment (Cl. 9), cases for musical instruments (Cl. 15), golf bags with or without wheels, bags especially designed for skis and surfboards (Cl. 28);
- certain goods made of leather, imitations of leather, animal skins and hides that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, leather strops (Cl. 8), polishing leather (Cl. 21), chamois leather for cleaning (Cl. 21), leather belts for clothing (Cl. 25).

CLASS 19

(Nonmetallic building materials)

Building materials (non-metallic); non-metallic rigid pipes for building; asphalt, pitch and bitumen; non-metallic transportable buildings; monuments, not of metal.

Explanatory Note

Class 19 includes mainly non-metallic building materials.

This Class includes, in particular:

- semi-worked woods (for example, beams, planks, panels);
- veneers;
- building glass (for example, floor slabs, glass tiles);
- glass granules for marking out roads;
- letter boxes of masonry.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- cement preservatives and cement-waterproofing preparations (Cl. 1);
- fireproofing preparations (Cl. 1).

CLASS 20

(Furniture and articles not otherwise classified)

Furniture, mirrors, picture frames; containers, not of metal, for storage or transport; unworked or semi-worked bone, horn, whalebone or mother-of-pearl; shells; meerschaum; yellow amber.

Explanatory Note

Class 20 includes mainly furniture and parts therefor, as well as certain goods made of wood, cork, reed, cane, wicker, horn, bone, ivory, whalebone, shell, amber, mother-of-pearl, meerschaum and substitutes for all these materials, or of plastic.

This Class includes, in particular:

- metal furniture, furniture for camping, gun racks, newspaper display stands;
- indoor window blinds and shades;
- bedding, for example, mattresses, spring mattresses, pillows;
- looking glasses, furniture and toilet mirrors;
- registration plates, not of metal;
- small items of non-metallic hardware, for example, bolts, screws, dowels, furniture casters, collars for fastening pipes;
- letter boxes, not of metal or masonry.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- special furniture for laboratories (Cl. 9) or for medical use (Cl. 10);
- outdoor blinds of metal (Cl. 6), not of metal and not of textile (Cl. 19), of textile (Cl. 22);
- bed linen, eiderdowns and sleeping bags (Cl. 24);
- certain mirrors for specific uses, for example, mirrors used in optical goods (Cl. 9), mirrors used in surgery or dentistry (Cl. 10), rearview mirrors (Cl. 12), sighting mirrors for guns (Cl. 13);
- certain goods made of wood, cork, reed, cane, wicker, horn, bone, ivory, whalebone, shell, amber, mother-of-pearl, meerschaum and substitutes for all these materials, or of plastic, that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, beads for making jewellery (Cl. 14), wooden floor boards (Cl. 19), baskets for domestic use (Cl. 21), plastic cups (Cl. 21), reed mats (Cl. 27).

CLASS 21

(Housewares and glass)

Household or kitchen utensils and containers; combs and sponges; brushes, except paint brushes; brush-making materials; articles for cleaning purposes; unworked or semi-worked glass, except building glass; glassware, porcelain and earthenware.

Explanatory Note

Class 21 includes mainly small, hand-operated utensils and apparatus for household and kitchen use, as well as toilet utensils, glassware and certain goods made of porcelain, ceramic, earthenware or glass.

This Class includes, in particular:

- utensils and containers for household and kitchen use, for example, fly swatters, bread boards, corkscrews, cocktail shakers, piggy banks, pails, cooking pots and pans;
- small hand-operated kitchen apparatus for mincing, grinding, pressing or crushing, for example, garlic presses, nutcrackers, pestles and mortars;
- serving utensils, for example, sugar tongs, ice tongs, pie servers and serving ladles;
- combs, electric and non-electric;
- toothbrushes, electric and non-electric;
- dish stands and decanter stands.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- cleaning preparations (Cl. 3);
- small apparatus for mincing, grinding, pressing or crushing, which are driven by electricity (Cl. 7);
- razors and shaving apparatus, hair and nail clippers, implements for manicure and pedicure, electric and non-electric, for example, manicure sets, emery boards, cuticle nippers (Cl. 8);
- table cutlery (Cl. 8);
- lice combs, tongue scrapers (Cl. 10);
- cooking utensils, electric (Cl. 11);
- toilet mirrors (Cl. 20);
- certain goods made of glass, porcelain and earthenware that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, porcelain for dental prostheses (Cl. 5), spectacle lenses (Cl. 9), glass wool for insulation (Cl. 17), earthenware tiles (Cl. 19), building glass (Cl. 19), glass fibres for textile use (Cl. 22).

CLASS 22

(Cordage and fibers)

Ropes and string; nets; tents and tarpaulins; awnings of textile or synthetic materials; sails; sacks for the transport and storage of materials in bulk; padding, cushioning and stuffing materials, except of paper, cardboard, rubber or plastics; raw fibrous textile materials and substitutes therefor.

Explanatory Note

Class 22 includes mainly canvas and other materials for making sails, rope, padding and stuffing materials and raw fibrous textile materials.

This Class includes, in particular:

- cords and twines made of natural or artificial textile fibres, paper or plastics;
- fishing nets, hammocks, rope ladders;
- vehicle covers, not fitted;

- certain sacks and bags not otherwise classified by function or purpose, for example, bags for washing hosiery, body bags, mail bags;
- packaging bags of textile;
- animal fibres and raw textile fibres, for example, animal hair, cocoons, jute, raw or treated wool, raw silk.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- metal ropes (Cl. 6);
- strings for musical instruments (Cl. 15) and for sports rackets (Cl. 28);
- padding and stuffing materials of paper or cardboard (Cl. 16), rubber or plastics (Cl. 17);
- certain nets and bags that are classified according to their function or purpose, for example, safety nets (Cl. 9), luggage nets for vehicles (Cl. 12), garment bags for travel (Cl. 18), hair nets (Cl. 26), golf bags (Cl. 28), nets for sports (Cl. 28);
- packaging bags, not of textile, which are classified according to the material of which they are made, for example, packaging bags of paper or plastics (Cl. 16), of rubber (Cl. 17), of leather (Cl. 18).

CLASS 23

(Yarns and threads)

Yarns and threads, for textile use.

CLASS 24

(Fabrics)

Textiles and substitutes for textiles; household linen; curtains of textile or plastic.

Explanatory Note

Class 24 includes mainly fabrics and fabric covers for household use.

This Class includes, in particular:

- household linen, for example, bedspreads, pillow shams, towels of textile;
- bed linen of paper;
- sleeping bags, sleeping bag liners;
- mosquito nets.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- electrically heated blankets, for medical purposes (Cl. 10) and not for medical purposes (Cl. 11);
- table linen of paper (Cl. 16);
- asbestos safety curtains (Cl. 17), bamboo curtains and bead curtains for decoration (Cl. 20);
- horse blankets (Cl. 18);

- certain textiles and fabrics for specific uses, for example, fabrics for bookbinding (Cl. 16), insulating fabrics (Cl. 17), geotextiles (Cl. 19).

CLASS 25

(Clothing)

Clothing, footwear, headgear.

Explanatory Note

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain clothing and footwear for special use (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods).

CLASS 26

(Fancy goods)

Lace and embroidery, ribbons and braid; buttons, hooks and eyes, pins and needles; artificial flowers; hair decorations; false hair.

Explanatory Note

Class 26 includes mainly dressmakers' articles, natural or synthetic hair for wear, and hair adornments, as well as small decorative items intended to adorn a variety of objects, not included in other classes.

This Class includes, in particular:

- wigs, toupees and false beards;
- barrettes and hair bands;
- hair nets;
- buckles and zippers;
- charms, other than for jewellery, key rings or key chains.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain special types of hooks (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- certain special types of needles (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- false eyelashes (Cl. 3);
- hair prostheses (Cl. 10);
- charms for key rings or key chains (Cl. 14);
- jewellery charms (Cl. 14);
- yarns and threads for textile use (Cl. 23).

CLASS 27

(Floor coverings)

Carpets, rugs, mats and matting, linoleum and other materials for covering existing floors; wall hangings (non-textile).

Explanatory Note

Class 27 includes mainly products intended to be added as furnishings to previously constructed floors and walls.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- wooden flooring (Cl. 19)

CLASS 28**(Toys and sporting goods)**

Games, toys and playthings; video game apparatus; gymnastic and sporting articles; decorations for Christmas trees.

Class 28 includes mainly toys, apparatus for playing games, sports equipment, amusement and novelty items, as well as certain articles for Christmas trees.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

- amusement and game apparatus adapted for use with an external display screen or monitor, including controllers therefor;
- amusement and novelty items, for example, carnival masks, paper party hats, confetti, practical jokes and party favours;
- hunting and fishing tackle, for example, fishing rods, landing nets for anglers, decoys, hunting game calls;
- equipment for various sports and games.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- Christmas tree candles (Cl. 4), electric lights for Christmas trees (Cl. 11), confectionery and chocolate decorations for Christmas trees (Cl. 30);
- diving equipment (Cl. 9);
- sex toys and love dolls (Cl. 10);
- clothing for gymnastics and sports (Cl. 25);
- certain gymnastic and sporting articles, for example, protective helmets, goggles and mouthguards for sports (Cl. 9), sporting firearms (Cl. 13), gymnasium mats (Cl. 27), as well as certain fishing and hunting equipment, for example, hunting knives, harpoons (Cl. 8), hunting firearms (Cl. 13), fishing nets (Cl. 22), that are classified according to other functions or purposes.

CLASS 29

(Meats and processed foods)

Meat, fish, poultry and game; meat extracts; preserved, frozen, dried and cooked fruits and vegetables; jellies, jams, compotes; eggs; milk and milk products; edible oils and fats.

Explanatory Note

Class 29 includes mainly foodstuffs of animal origin as well as vegetables and other horticultural comestible products which are prepared for consumption or conservation.

This Class includes, in particular:

- milk beverages (milk predominating);
- seeds prepared for human consumption, not being seasonings or flavourings.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain foodstuffs of plant origin (consult the Alphabetical List of Goods);
- baby food (Cl. 5);
- dietetic food and substances adapted for medical use (Cl. 5);
- dietary supplements (Cl. 5);
- processed seeds for use as a seasoning (Cl. 30);
- salad dressings (Cl. 30);
- fertilised eggs for hatching (Cl. 31);
- foodstuffs for animals (Cl. 31);
- live animals (Cl. 31);
- seeds for planting (Cl. 31).

CLASS 30

(Staple foods)

Coffee, tea, cocoa and artificial coffee; rice; tapioca and sago; flour and preparations made from cereals; bread, pastries and confectionery; edible ices; sugar, honey, treacle; yeast, baking-powder; salt; mustard; vinegar, sauces (condiments); spices; ice.

Explanatory Note

Class 30 includes mainly foodstuffs of plant origin prepared for consumption or conservation as well as auxiliaries intended for the improvement of the flavour of food.

This Class includes, in particular:

- beverages with coffee, cocoa, chocolate or tea base;
- cereals prepared for human consumption (for example, oat flakes and those made of other cereals).

This Class does not include, in particular:

- certain foodstuffs of plant origin (consult the Alphabetical List);
- salt for preserving other than for foodstuffs (Cl. 1);
- medicinal teas and dietetic food and substances adapted for medical use (Cl. 5);
- baby food (Cl. 5);
- dietary supplements (Cl. 5);
- yeast for pharmaceutical purposes (Cl. 5), yeast for animal consumption (Cl. 31);
- raw cereals (Cl. 31);
- foodstuffs for animals (Cl. 31).

CLASS 31

(Natural agricultural products)

Raw and unprocessed agricultural, aquacultural, horticultural and forestry products; raw and unprocessed grains and seeds; fresh fruits and vegetables, fresh herbs; natural plants and flowers; bulbs, seedlings and seeds for planting; live animals; foodstuffs and beverages for animals; malt.

Explanatory Note

Class 31 includes mainly land and sea products not having been subjected to any form of preparation for consumption, live animals and plants, as well as foodstuffs for animals.

This Class includes, in particular:

- unprocessed cereals;
- plant residue;
- unprocessed algae;
- unsawn timber;
- fertilized eggs for hatching;
- fresh mushrooms and truffles;
- litter for animals, for example, aromatic sand, sanded paper for pets.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- cultures of micro-organisms and leeches for medical purposes (Cl. 5);
- dietary supplements for animals and medicated animal feed (Cl. 5);
- semi-worked woods (Cl. 19);
- artificial fishing bait (Cl. 28);
- rice (Cl. 30);
- tobacco (Cl. 34).

CLASS 32

(Light beverages)

Beers; mineral and aerated waters and other non-alcoholic beverages; fruit beverages and fruit juices; syrups and other preparations for making beverages.

Explanatory Note

Class 32 includes mainly non-alcoholic beverages, as well as beer.

This Class includes, in particular:

- de-alcoholised beverages.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- beverages for medical purposes (Cl. 5);
- milk beverages (milk predominating) (Cl. 29);
- beverages with coffee, cocoa, chocolate or tea base (Cl. 30).

CLASS 33

(Wines and spirits)

Alcoholic beverages (except beers).

Explanatory Note

This Class does not include, in particular:

- medicinal beverages (Cl. 5);
- de-alcoholised beverages (Cl. 32).

CLASS 34

(Smokers' articles)

Tobacco; smokers' articles; matches.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

- tobacco substitutes (not for medical purposes).

This Class does not include, in particular:

- cigarettes without tobacco, for medical purposes (Cl. 5);

SERVICES

CLASS 35

(Advertising and business)

Advertising; business management; business administration; office functions.

Explanatory Note

Class 35 includes mainly services rendered by persons or organizations principally with the object of:

- (1) help in the working or management of a commercial undertaking, or
- (2) help in the management of the business affairs or commercial functions of an industrial or commercial enterprise,

as well as services rendered by advertising establishments primarily undertaking communications to the public, declarations or announcements by all means of diffusion and concerning all kinds of goods or services.

This Class includes, in particular:

- the bringing together, for the benefit of others, of a variety of goods (excluding the transport thereof), enabling customers to conveniently view and purchase those goods; such services may be provided by retail stores, wholesale outlets, through vending machines, mail order catalogues or by means of electronic media, for example, through websites or television shopping programmes;
- services consisting of the registration, transcription, composition, compilation, or systematization of written communications and registrations, and also the compilation of mathematical or statistical data;
- services of advertising agencies and services such as the distribution of prospectuses, directly or through the post, or the distribution of samples. This Class may refer to advertising in connection with other services, such as those concerning bank loans or advertising by radio.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- services such as evaluations and reports of engineers which do not directly refer to the working or management of affairs in a commercial or industrial enterprise (consult the Alphabetical List of Services).

CLASS 36

(Insurance and financial)

Insurance; financial affairs; monetary affairs; real estate affairs.

Explanatory Note

Class 36 includes mainly services rendered in financial and monetary affairs and services rendered in relation to insurance contracts of all kinds.

This Class includes, in particular:

services relating to financial or monetary affairs comprise the following:

(a) services of all the banking establishments, or institutions connected with them such as exchange brokers or clearing services;

(b) services of credit institutions other than banks such as co-operative credit associations, individual financial companies, lenders, etc.;

(c) services of “investment trusts,” of holding companies;

(d) services of brokers dealing in shares and property;

(e) services connected with monetary affairs vouched for by trustees;

(f) services rendered in connection with the issue of travellers’ cheques and letters of credit; hire or lease-purchase financing;

services of realty administrators of buildings, i.e., services of letting or valuation, or financing;

services dealing with insurance such as services rendered by agents or brokers engaged in insurance, services rendered to insured, and insurance underwriting services.

CLASS 37

(Building construction and repair)

Building construction; repair; installation services.

Explanatory Note

Class 37 includes mainly services rendered by contractors or subcontractors in the construction or making of permanent buildings, as well as services rendered by persons or organizations engaged in the restoration of objects to their original condition or in their preservation without altering their physical or chemical properties.

This Class includes, in particular:

- services relating to the construction of buildings, roads, bridges, dams or transmission lines and services of undertakings specializing in the field of construction such as those of painters, plumbers, heating installers or roofers;
- services auxiliary to construction services like inspections of construction plans;
- services of shipbuilding;
- services consisting of hiring of tools or building materials;
- repair services, i.e., services which undertake to put any object into good condition after wear, damage, deterioration or partial destruction (restoration of an existing building or another object that has become imperfect and is to be restored to its original condition);
- various repair services such as those in the fields of electricity, furniture, instruments, tools, etc.;
- services of maintenance for preserving an object in its original condition without changing any of its properties (for the difference between this Class and Class 40 see the Explanatory Note of Class 40).

This Class does not include, in particular:

- services consisting of storage of goods such as clothes or vehicles (Cl. 39);
- services connected with dyeing of cloth or clothes (Cl. 40).

CLASS 38

(Telecommunications)

Telecommunications.

Explanatory Note

Class 38 includes mainly services allowing at least one person to communicate with another by a sensory means. Such services include those which:

- (1) allow one person to talk to another,
- (2) transmit messages from one person to another, and
- (3) place a person in oral or visual communication with another (radio and television).

This Class includes, in particular:

- services which consist essentially of the diffusion of radio or television programmes.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- radio advertising services (Cl. 35);
- telephone marketing (telemarketing) services (Cl. 35).

CLASS 39

(Transportation and storage)

Transport; packaging and storage of goods; travel arrangement.

Explanatory Note

Class 39 includes mainly services for the transport of people, animals or goods from one place to another (by rail, road, water, air or pipeline) and services necessarily connected with such transport, as well as services relating to the storing of goods in a warehouse or other building for their preservation or guarding.

This Class includes, in particular:

- services rendered by companies exploiting stations, bridges, rail-road ferries, etc., used by the transporter;
- services connected with the hiring of transport vehicles;
- services connected with maritime tugs, unloading, the functioning of ports and docks and the salvaging of wrecked ships and their cargoes;
- services connected with the packaging and parcelling of goods before dispatch;

- services consisting of information about journeys or the transport of goods by brokers and tourist agencies, information relating to tariffs, timetables and methods of transport;
- services relating to the inspection of vehicles or goods before transport.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- services relating to advertising transport undertakings such as the distribution of prospectuses or advertising on the radio (Cl. 35);
- services relating to the issuing of travellers' cheques or letters of credit by brokers or travel agents (Cl. 36);
- services relating to insurances (commercial, fire or life) during the transport of persons or goods (Cl. 36);
- services rendered by the maintenance and repair of vehicles, nor the maintenance or repair of objects connected with the transport of persons or goods (Cl. 37);
- services relating to reservation of rooms in a hotel by travel agents or brokers (Cl. 43).

CLASS 40

(Treatment of materials)

Treatment of materials.

Explanatory Note

Class 40 includes mainly services not included in other classes, rendered by the mechanical or chemical processing, transformation or production of objects or inorganic or organic substances, including custom manufacturing services.

For the purposes of classification, the production or manufacturing of goods is considered a service only in cases where it is effected for the account of another person to their order and specification.

If the production or manufacturing is not being performed to fulfil an order for goods which meet the customer's particular needs, requirements, or specifications, then it is generally ancillary to the maker's primary commercial activity or goods in trade.

If the substance or object is marketed to third parties by the person who processed, transformed or produced it, then this would generally not be considered a service.

This Class includes, in particular:

- services relating to transformation of an object or substance and any process involving a change in its essential properties (for example, dyeing a garment); consequently, a maintenance service, although usually in Class 37, is included in Class 40 if it entails such a change (for example, the chroming of motor vehicle bumpers);
- services of material treatment which may be present during the production of any substance or object other than a building; for example, services which involve cutting, shaping, polishing by abrasion or metal coating;

- the custom manufacturing of goods to the order and specification of others (bearing in mind that certain offices require that the goods produced be indicated), for example, custom manufacturing of automobiles.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- repair services (Cl. 37);
- certain customization services, for example, the custom painting of automobiles (Cl. 37).

CLASS 41

(Education and entertainment)

Education; providing of training; entertainment; sporting and cultural activities.

Explanatory Note

Class 41 covers mainly services rendered by persons or institutions in the development of the mental faculties of persons or animals, as well as services intended to entertain or to engage the attention.

This Class includes, in particular:

- services consisting of all forms of education of persons or training of animals;
- services having the basic aim of the entertainment, amusement or recreation of people;
- presentation of works of visual art or literature to the public for cultural or educational purposes.

CLASS 42

(Computer and scientific)

Scientific and technological services and research and design relating thereto; industrial analysis and research services; design and development of computer hardware and software.

Explanatory Note

Class 42 includes mainly services provided by persons, individually or collectively, in relation to the theoretical and practical aspects of complex fields of activities; such services are provided by members of professions such as chemists, physicists, engineers, computer programmers, etc.

This Class includes, in particular:

- the services of engineers and scientists who undertake evaluations, estimates, research and reports in the scientific and technological fields (including technological consultancy);
- computer and technology services for securing computer data and personal and financial information and for the detection of unauthorized access to data and information;
- scientific research services for medical purposes.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- business research and evaluations (Cl. 35);
- word processing and computer file management services (Cl. 35);
- financial and fiscal evaluations (Cl. 36);
- mining and oil extraction (Cl. 37);
- computer (hardware) installation and repair services (Cl. 37);
- services provided by the members of professions such as medical doctors, veterinary surgeons, psychoanalysts (Cl. 44);
- medical treatment services (Cl. 44);
- garden design (Cl. 44);
- legal services (Cl. 45).

CLASS 43

(Hotels and restaurants)

Services for providing food and drink; temporary accommodation.

Explanatory Note

Class 43 includes mainly services provided by persons or establishments whose aim is to prepare food and drink for consumption and services provided to obtain bed and board in hotels, boarding houses or other establishments providing temporary accommodation.

This Class includes, in particular:

- reservation services for travellers' accommodation, particularly through travel agencies or brokers;
- boarding for animals.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- rental services for real estate such as houses, flats, etc., for permanent use (Cl. 36);
- arranging travel by tourist agencies (Cl. 39);
- preservation services for food and drink (Cl. 40);
- discotheque services (Cl. 41);
- boarding schools (Cl. 41);
- rest and convalescent homes (Cl. 44).

CLASS 44

(Medical, beauty and agricultural)

Medical services; veterinary services; hygienic and beauty care for human beings or animals; agriculture, horticulture and forestry services.

Explanatory Note

Class 44 includes mainly medical care, hygienic and beauty care given by persons or establishments to human beings and animals; it also includes services relating to the fields of agriculture, horticulture and forestry.

This Class includes, in particular:

- medical analysis services relating to the treatment of persons (such as x-ray examinations and taking of blood samples);
- artificial insemination services;
- pharmacy advice;
- animal breeding;
- services relating to the growing of plants such as gardening;
- services relating to floral art such as floral compositions as well as garden design.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- vermin exterminating, other than for agriculture, aquaculture, horticulture and forestry (Cl. 37);
- installation and repair services for irrigation systems (Cl. 37);
- ambulance transport (Cl. 39);
- animal slaughtering services and taxidermy (Cl. 40);
- timber felling and processing (Cl. 40);
- animal training services (Cl. 41);
- health clubs for physical exercise (Cl. 41);
- scientific research services for medical purposes (Cl. 42);
- boarding for animals (Cl. 43);
- retirement homes (Cl. 43).

CLASS 45

(Personal and legal)

Legal services; security services for the physical protection of tangible property and individuals; personal and social services rendered by others to meet the needs of individuals.

Explanatory Note

This Class includes, in particular:

- services rendered by lawyers, legal assistants, and personal advocates, to individuals, groups of individuals, organizations and enterprises;
- investigation and surveillance services relating to the physical safety of persons and security of tangible property;
- services provided to individuals in relation with social events, such as social escort services, matrimonial agencies, funeral services.

This Class does not include, in particular:

- professional services giving direct aid in the operations or functions of a commercial undertaking (Cl. 35);
- services relating to financial or monetary affairs and services dealing with insurance (Cl. 36);
- escorting of travellers (Cl. 39);
- security transport (Cl. 39);
- services consisting of all forms of education of persons (Cl. 41);
- performances of singers and dancers (Cl. 41);
- computer programming services for the protection of software (Cl. 42);
- computer and internet security consultancy and data encryption services (Cl. 42);
- services provided by others to give medical, hygienic or beauty care for human beings or animals (Cl. 44);
- certain rental services (consult the Alphabetical List of Services and General Remark (b) relating to the classification of services).

1401.02(b) Short Titles for International Trademark Classes

The USPTO associates the following word titles with the respective international trademark class numbers:

GOODS

1. Chemicals
2. Paints
3. Cosmetics and cleaning preparations
4. Lubricants and fuels
5. Pharmaceuticals
6. Metal goods
7. Machinery
8. Hand tools
9. Electrical and scientific apparatus
10. Medical apparatus
11. Environmental control apparatus
12. Vehicles
13. Firearms
14. Jewelry

15. Musical instruments
16. Paper goods and printed matter
17. Rubber goods
18. Leather goods
19. Non-metallic building materials
20. Furniture and articles not otherwise classified
21. Housewares and glass
22. Cordage and fibers
23. Yarns and threads
24. Fabrics
25. Clothing
26. Fancy goods
27. Floor coverings
28. Toys and sporting goods
29. Meats and processed foods
30. Staple foods
31. Natural agricultural products
32. Light beverages
33. Wines and spirits
34. Smokers' articles

SERVICES

35. Advertising and business
36. Insurance and financial
37. Building construction and repair

38. Telecommunications
39. Transportation and storage
40. Treatment of materials
41. Education and entertainment
42. Computer and scientific
43. Hotels and restaurants
44. Medical, beauty and agricultural
45. Personal and legal

These short titles are not an official part of the international classification. Their purpose is to provide a means to quickly identify the general content of numbered international classes. By their nature, these titles will not necessarily disclose the classification of specific items. The titles are not designed to be used for classification, but only as information to assist in the identification of numbered classes. To determine the classification of particular goods and services, it is necessary to refer to the Alphabetical List, the class headings of the international classes, and explanatory notes in the *International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks* (Nice Classification), published annually by WIPO on its website. The full names of international classes are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §6.1](#).

The short titles are printed in the *Official Gazette* in association with the international class numbers under MARKS PUBLISHED FOR OPPOSITION, Sections 1 and 2; TRADEMARK REGISTRATIONS ISSUED, PRINCIPAL REGISTER, Section 1; TRADEMARK REGISTRATIONS ISSUED UNDER SECTION 1(d), Sections 1 and 2; and SUPPLEMENTAL REGISTER, Sections 1 and 2.

The international trademark classification was adopted by the United States as its system of classification as of September 1, 1973. See 911 TMOG 210 (June 26, 1973). The use of short titles was announced in a notice at 924 TMOG 155 (July 16, 1974).

1401.02(c) International Alphabetical List

Additional general guidance concerning identifications may be found in the Alphabetical List of goods and services of the Nice Classification, available online at <http://www.wipo.int/classifications/nice/en/>, and published by the World Intellectual Property Organization. A French version of the Alphabetical List is also available online. Note: The paper publication of the Nice Classification was discontinued in 2011 with the publication of the 10th edition.

As the Alphabetical List was developed to *classify* goods and services and not to identify specific goods and services, most entries in the Alphabetical List will not be sufficiently definite to use in an *identification* of goods and/or services. If such entries are provided as identifications, the USPTO exercises its discretion to require greater particularity. See *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007).

The USPTO's [Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual](#) ("ID Manual") provides general guidance on whether an identification is sufficiently definite. See [TMEP §1402.04](#).

1401.03 Designation of Class

In an application for registration of a mark, the applicant should designate the international class number(s) that are appropriate for the identified goods and/or services whenever the information is known. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(7\)](#). See TMEP § [1401.02\(a\)](#) for the international classification schedule with explanatory notes.

In an application under §1 or §44, incorrect classification will be corrected by amendment. See [TMEP §1401.03\(b\)](#).

1401.03(a) Designation of Class by Applicant Normally Initially Accepted in Applications Under §§1 and 44

Sometimes, a product could be classified in more than one class. Some products are classified differently depending on the type of material of which the product is composed or a particular use of the product. For example, plastic statuettes are in Class 20 while glass statuettes are in Class 21; reagents for research purposes are in Class 1 while reagents for medical use are in Class 5. Generally, in applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, prior to their assignment to an examining attorney, the USPTO retains the class number designated by the applicant, in the absence of any information clearly contradicting that classification. The applicant may be asked for further clarification for classification of goods of this type during the examination of the application. If the wording in the identification is broad enough to encompass more than one class, amendment will be required. See *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (“chronographs” held indefinite because it includes both time recording devices in Class 9 and watches in Class 14). Also, if the examining attorney determines that the class designated by the applicant is incorrect, the examining attorney will require reclassification.

1401.03(b) Designation of Class by USPTO When Class Number Is Not Designated or Is Inaccurate in Application Under §1 or §44

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, if the applicant does not designate a class number(s), the USPTO will do so. If the class number(s) indicated by the applicant is clearly wrong (e.g., goods are classified in a service class), the USPTO will change the classification, either prior to or during examination.

Upon examination, the classification must be amended if the class numbers are incorrect. When the examining attorney requires or recommends an amendment of the identification of goods and/or services that would necessitate an amendment of the classification, the examining attorney should also require the applicant to amend the classification.

If an incorrect class number was designated by the Pre-Examination Section, and the examining attorney must issue an Office action, he or she must also inform the applicant of the correct class number for the identified goods and/or services, and require amendment of the classification. If it is unnecessary to issue an Office action, the examining attorney must ensure that the correct classification is entered into the electronic records of the USPTO.

The examining attorney may amend or correct classification through an examiner’s amendment, without prior authorization by the applicant. See *Groening v. Missouri Botanical Garden*, 59 USPQ2d 1601 (Comm’r Pats. 1999). See [TMEP §707.02](#).

Before approving an application for publication, the examining attorney must check to make sure that the properly assigned class is reflected in the electronic records of the USPTO.

1401.03(c) Failure to Classify May Delay Action in Applications Under §§1 and 44

The applicant should make an initial effort at classification, using the Alphabetical List of goods and services.

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, when an application and fee is filed for a single class, but the identification lists a large number of items that obviously involve many classes, the examining attorney will require the applicant to properly classify the items. Class designations must be determined and fees for multiple classes must be paid before an examining attorney does an extensive search in a large number of classes. See [TMEP §810.01](#).

1401.03(d) Classification Determined by World Intellectual Property Organization in §66(a) Applications

37 CFR §2.85(d) Section 66(a) applications and registered extensions of protection.

In an application under section 66(a) of the Act or registered extension of protection, the classification cannot be changed from the classification assigned by the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, unless the International Bureau corrects the classification. Classes cannot be added, and goods or services cannot be transferred from one class to another in a multiple-class application.

In an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), i.e., a request for protection of an international registration to the United States pursuant to the Madrid Protocol, the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”) controls classification. Article 3(2) of the Protocol.

The IB classifies the goods and services in the appropriate classes of the *International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks* in effect at the time international registration is filed. Subject to the conformity of the international application with other applicable requirements, the international registration will be issued in accordance with the classification and grouping that the IB considers to be correct. Common Regulations under the Madrid Agreement and Protocol, Rule 12(9). The USPTO will be notified of the edition of the Nice Agreement used and it will be listed in the request for extension of protection.

The §66(a) application (and any resulting registration) remains part of the international registration, and a change of classification in the United States would have no effect on the international registration. Therefore, the international classification of goods and/or services in a §66(a) application **cannot be changed** from the classification given to the goods/services by the IB, even if the IB’s classification of goods/services in the §66(a) application is different from the classification set forth in the ID Manual. Classes may not be added, and goods or services may not be transferred from one class to another in a multiple-class application. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#).

Accordingly, if the mark in a §66(a) application appears to be a certification or collective membership mark, the USPTO **will not** reclassify it into United States Class A, B, or 200. However, the applicant must comply with all other United States requirements for certification and collective membership marks, regardless of the classification chosen by the IB. See [TMEP §§1304 et seq.](#), regarding collective membership marks, [TMEP §§1306 et seq.](#) regarding certification marks, and [TMEP §1904.02\(d\)](#) regarding §66(a) applications for these types of marks. See also [TMEP §1904.02\(c\)\(v\)](#) regarding the effect of indicated classes in registered extensions of protection and published applications under §66(a).

For purposes of *identification* of goods or services, the examining attorney will examine a §66(a) application according to the same standards of specificity used in examining applications under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act. That is, the examining attorney must follow the procedures set forth in the TMEP and identify the goods/services in accordance with the ID Manual whenever possible. See [TMEP §§1904.02\(c\) et seq.](#)

See also [TMEP §1402.01\(c\)](#) regarding the identification and classification of goods and services in a §66(a) application and [TMEP §1904.02\(b\)](#) regarding the examination of classification of goods and services in a §66(a) application.

1401.04 Classification Determines Number of Fees

15 U.S.C. §1112 (Extract)

*** The applicant may apply to register a mark for any or all of the goods or services on or in connection with which he or she is using or has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce: Provided, That if the Director by regulation permits the filing of an application for the registration of a mark for goods or services which fall within a plurality of classes, a fee equaling the sum of the fees for filing an application in each class shall be paid, and the Director may issue a single certificate of registration for such mark.

Classification is the basis for determining the number of fees that must be paid. In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, a fee is required for each class.

In an application under §1 or §44, if the application sets forth goods or services in more than one class and pays insufficient fees to cover all the classes, the applicant must either amend the application to restrict the goods or services to the number of classes for which the fee has been paid, or submit additional fees to cover all the goods or services set forth in the identification. The fees for multiple classes must be paid before an examining attorney does an extensive search in a large number of classes. See [TMEP §810.01](#).

If, with the original application, the applicant submits fees for more classes than are validly represented in the application, the fees that have been overpaid in error will be refunded. See [TMEP §405.04](#) regarding refunds.

In a §66(a) application, the amount of the filing fee will be determined by the IB, who will collect the fee and send it to the USPTO pursuant to the provisions of the Madrid Protocol and the *Common Regulations Under the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks and the Protocol Relating to That Agreement* (“Common Regs.”). The examining attorney will not question the sufficiency of the filing fee in a §66(a) application. The classification in a §66(a) application cannot be changed, and classes cannot be added. See [TMEP §1401.03\(d\)](#) for further information.

1401.04(a) Prior United States Classification System

Prior to the adoption of the International Classification in 1973, the United States Classification was the controlling classification used in the USPTO. After adoption of the International Classification, the United States Classification became a secondary classification system. United States classes are still assigned to all applications by a computerized system. Each international class is coordinated with the United States classes that are most frequently associated with it. Neither examining attorneys nor any other USPTO personnel have the authority or capability of altering these automatically assigned secondary United States Classification designations.

1401.04(b) Limiting Goods and Services to the Number of Classes for Which Filing Fees Are Paid

An application may list, in connection with each class designated, only goods or services that fall within that class. An applicant may apply to register a mark for the goods and/or services on or in connection with which the applicant is using or has a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce, if the applicant submits

a filing fee for each class. See [15 U.S.C. §1112](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)](#). An application that includes more than one class is called a combined or multiple-class application. See [TMEP §§1403–1403.06](#).

The applicant should designate only the number of classes for which a filing fee is submitted and should limit the specified goods and services to those within the particular class(es) designated. Thus, if a single filing fee is submitted, the applicant should designate only one class and should limit the goods or services specified in the identification to items in that class.

The examining attorney must require any necessary amendments to ensure that the classification is correct for the specified goods or services. In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, if the applicant identifies goods or services that are classified in a greater number of classes than the classes for which filing fees have been paid, the examining attorney must require that the applicant either: (1) pay the additional fees; or (2) amend the identification to restrict the application to the number of classes for which fees have already been paid. See [TMEP §§810.01, 1403.02\(c\)](#).

In a §66(a) application, the amount of the filing fee will be determined by the IB, who will collect the fee and send it to the USPTO, pursuant to the provisions of the Madrid Protocol and the Common Regs. The examining attorney will not question the sufficiency of the filing fee in a §66(a) application. The classification in a §66(a) application may not be changed, and classes may not be added. See [TMEP §1401.03\(d\)](#).

1401.05 Criteria on Which International Classification Is Based

The General Remarks of the Nice Classification set forth general criteria for placing goods or services in the international classes. See [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#).

The Class Headings of the Nice Classification indicate the type of goods or services appropriate to each class. *Id.* The Explanatory Notes at the end of most class headings of goods or services explain the principles and differentiating lines on which the international classes are based.

The Alphabetical List of the Nice Classification contains information about the appropriate class for particular products and services. See [TMEP §1401.02\(c\)](#).

1401.05(a) Identification and Classification of Kits, Gift Baskets, and Items Sold as a Unit

The USPTO permits registration of a kit or gift basket in a single international class, even if the identification of goods includes components that are classified in other classes. This practice is not recognized by the Nice Classification and is not followed by the International Bureau of WIPO nor by most other national trademark offices. See [TMEP §1902.02\(g\)\(iii\)](#) regarding identification of kits and gift baskets in applications for international registration.

Although certain types of kits are deemed acceptable for identification and classification purposes without listing the individual components (e.g., face painting kits and teeth whitening kits in Class 3, and first aid kits and ovulation test kits in Class 5), in general, the identification must indicate the type of kit and its principal components. Kits that are deemed acceptable for identification and classification purposes without listing the individual components are included in the ID Manual and are generally classified according to purpose; other kits are classified on a case-by-case basis using the classification principles set forth below.

Generally, kits are identified and classified in two ways:

- (1) If the kit is for the purpose of making a single object, it would be classified by the item it is intended to make. For example, kits for making wine consisting of fresh grapes and chemicals for fermenting wine would be classified in Class 33, the class for wine, even though the individual components would be classified in other classes (e.g., fresh grapes in Class 31 and chemicals for fermenting wine in Class 1).
- (2) If the kit is a combination of a number of components around a theme (e.g., nail care kits), the class that includes the majority of individual components in the kit generally controls the classification for the entire kit. Thus, a nail care kit comprised of nail polish (Class 3), nail files (Class 8), nail polish remover (Class 3), an instruction manual (Class 16), and false nails (Class 3) is classified in Class 3, which is the class of the majority of individual components in the kit; however, the identification must be modified to list all of the components in Class 3 at the beginning of the list of components. In such cases, the identification must indicate the type of kit and list the components, with all of the items in the predominant class listed first. Components that are secondary should be set forth after the primary components.

Example – “Nail care kits comprised primarily of nail polish, nail polish remover, and false nails and also including nail files and printed instructions” is acceptable in Class 3, the class of the primary components which are listed first in the list of kit components.

Example – “Nail care kits comprised of nail polish, nail polish remover, false nails, nail files, and printed instructions” is acceptable in Class 3, the class of the primary components which are listed first in the list of kit components.

Example – “Nail care kits comprised of nail polish, nail files, nail polish remover, an instruction manual, and false nails” is properly classified in Class 3, but is not acceptably worded because the predominant components in Class 3 (i.e., nail polish, nail polish remover, and false nails) are not all listed first in the list of kit components.

If the goods are kits around a particular theme, but the majority of components are secondary components, the identification should indicate that the kits are comprised “primarily” of specific components in a particular class and subsequently indicate that the kits are “also consisting of” the secondary items. The secondary components may be in a different class or classes from the primary component(s). In that case, the kits are classified in the class of the primary components, even if the primary components are not the majority of components in the kits.

Example – “Nail care kits comprised primarily of nail polish and also including nail files and printed instructions” is acceptable in Class 3, because nail polish is clearly indicated as the primary component and appears first in the list of kit components.

If the individual components of the kit do not appear to have a predominant class (e.g., the kit contains two or three components, each in a different class), the applicant may elect which class(es) the kit should be in, but the identification must still list all of the goods that control the class first in the list of kit components.

Example – “Tool kits comprising hand saws and power-driven saws” is acceptable in Class 8 because there is no predominant class for the components in the kit and “hand saws,” which are listed first in the list of components, are classified in Class 8.

Example – “Tool kits comprising power-driven saws and hand saws” is acceptable in Class 7 because there is no predominant class for the components in the kit and “power-driven saws,” which are listed first in the list of components, are classified in Class 7.

Example – “Tool kits comprising carpenter’s levels, hand saws, power-driven saws, and carpenters’ rules” is not acceptable in Class 9 because the components in Class 9 are not all listed first in the list of components. The components appropriate to Class 9, carpenter’s levels and carpenters’ rules, must all be listed first in the list of components for an acceptable identification in Class 9.

Classification of multi-component kits that have no predominant components is determined by the first listed component. Rearranging the order of the components listed for kits which have no predominant components

will impact the classification, with the class of the first-listed component dictating the appropriate class for the kits.

Example – “Tool kits comprising carpenter’s levels, hand saws, and power-driven saws” is acceptable in Class 9 because there is no predominant class for the kit components and “carpenter’s levels,” which are listed first in the list of components, are classified in Class 9.

Example - “Tool kits comprising hand saws, power-driven saws, and carpenter’s levels” is acceptable in Class 8 because there is no predominant class for the kit components and “hand saws,” which are listed first in the list of components, are classified in Class 8.

Example - “Tool kits comprising power-driven saws, carpenter’s levels, and hand saws” is acceptable in Class 7 because there is no predominant class for the kit components and “power-driven saws,” which are listed first in the list of components, are classified in Class 7.

The same criteria are applied to the classification of hobby craft kits. For example, if the hobby craft kit is for the purpose of making a single object, it would be classified by the item it is intended to make.

Example – “Hobby craft kits for making toy model houses comprising wooden craft sticks and craft glue for stationery or household purposes” would be classified in Class 28, the class for toy models, even though the individual components would be classified in other classes (e.g., wooden craft sticks in Class 20 and craft glue for stationery or household purposes in Class 16).

If the hobby craft kit is a combination of a number of components around a theme (e.g., Halloween hobby craft kits), the class that includes the majority of individual components in the hobby craft kit generally controls the classification for the entire kit. In such cases, the identification must indicate the type of kit and list the components, with all of the items in the predominant class listed first. Components that are secondary should be set forth after the primary components.

Example – “Halloween hobby craft kits comprised primarily of permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, fabric glue for household use and also including felt cloth and thread” is acceptable in Class 16, the class of the primary components which are listed first in the list of kit components.

Example – “Halloween hobby craft kits comprised of permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, fabric glue for household use and felt cloth” is acceptable in Class 16, the class of the primary components which are listed first in the list of kit components. Example – “Halloween hobby craft kits comprised of permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, felt cloth, and fabric glue for household use” is properly classified in Class 16, but is not acceptably worded because the predominant components in Class 16 (i.e., permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, and fabric glue for household use) are not all listed first in the list of kit components.

Example – “Halloween hobby craft kits comprised of permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, fabric glue for household use and felt cloth” is acceptable in Class 16, the class of the primary components which are listed first in the list of kit components. Example – “Halloween hobby craft kits comprised of permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, felt cloth, and fabric glue for household use” is properly classified in Class 16, but is not acceptably worded because the predominant components in Class 16 (i.e., permanent markers, printed sewing patterns, stencils, and fabric glue for household use) are not all listed first in the list of kit components.

The same criteria are applied to the classification of gift baskets.

Similarly, a product may comprise items that are sold as a unit and that, if sold separately, would be classified in different classes. The identification in such cases should include wording to indicate that the goods are “sold as a unit.” All of the predominant elements should be listed first and the collection of items sold as a unit will be classified accordingly.

Example - Computer software is classified in Class 9. Instructional manuals are classified in Class 16. The item “Computer software for the creation of firewalls and instructional manuals for the creation of firewalls, sold as a unit” would be classified in Class 9.

“Instructional manuals for the creation of firewalls and computer software relating thereto, sold as a unit” would be classified in Class 16.

1401.05(b) Medical vs. Non-Medical Goods

It is sometimes difficult to determine whether certain pieces of apparatus are classified in Class 9 or Class 10. While photographic, optical, measuring, testing, and scientific research apparatus are generally classified in Class 9, surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary apparatus used for the diagnosis, treatment, or improvement of function or condition of persons or animals are generally classified in Class 10. Certain goods could be classified in both classes, with appropriate wording, depending upon their use. For example, thermometers are commonly used for both medical and non-medical purposes. Thermometers for medical use are in Class 10 because they function as medical instruments, while thermometers other than for medical use, such as meat thermometers, are in Class 9 because they function as measuring apparatus. While both items measure temperature, they are usually very different in nature and classified in different classes based on their specific uses.

Goods should be specified as being for surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary use when the items could be in a class other than Class 10 when not for surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary use. When goods, like thermometers, are commonly used for both surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary use and non-surgical, medical, dental or veterinary use, it is sufficient to indicate that the goods are “for medical use” or “not for medical use,” as appropriate, to justify the classification. The mere addition of “for medical use” to an identification is not sufficient to justify classification of items in Class 10 if the goods are not directly used for the diagnosis, treatment, or improvement of function or condition of persons or animals.

If an item is normally not classified in Class 10, it is not necessary to specify that it is not for surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary use when it is classified in its normal class. For example, “thread” (without any further specification) is an acceptable identification in Class 23, while “surgical thread” is classified in Class 10 based on its surgical use. To justify classification of goods not commonly used for surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary use in Class 10, the identification must indicate the particular surgical, medical, dental, or veterinary use of the goods in diagnosing, treating, or improving the function or condition of persons or animals.

Items specially adapted for use by people with disabilities are also classified in Class 10. The identification must indicate that the goods are “specially adapted” for that particular purpose to justify the classification in Class 10. For example, while “toilets” (without any further specification) are in Class 11, “toilets adapted for medical patients or for use by disabled persons” are in Class 10.

1401.05(c) Classification and Plurality of Uses

A product that has a plurality of uses or aspects is ordinarily classified in a single class. *Ex parte Schatz*, 87 USPQ 374 (Comm’r Pats. 1950). However, if it can be shown that a product has a plurality of uses or aspects so that two or more classes apply, multiple classification may be permissible. If a product is normally classified in a particular class, an applicant cannot obtain registration in another class merely by identifying an ultimate use of the product in goods that fall in the other class.

Example - Essential oils are classified in Class 3. This item cannot be classified in Class 1 with an indication that it is used in the manufacture of other finished products. Raw or unfinished materials that are used in the manufacture of other finished products may be classified in Class 1. However, an item like essential oils, which is always classified in Class 3 regardless of its ultimate use, cannot be transferred to Class 1 by adding Class 1 qualifying language.

When classification in multiple classes is appropriate, the identification must clearly indicate the basis for multiple classifications with language that is appropriate for the respective classes. Identical language cannot be used in multiple classes. For example, the USPTO will not accept the identification “clock radios,” because it is unclear what the goods are and in which class the goods fall - Class 9 for radios or Class 14 for clocks. However, the applicant may adopt either or both of the following identifications - “radios incorporating clocks” in Class 9 or “clocks incorporating radios” in Class 14.

Certain services may also be classified in multiple classes on the basis of the purpose for which the service activity is rendered. While services are in principle classified according to the branches of activities specified in the headings of the service classes and in their Explanatory Notes, if an activity is not specified by any class heading, the purpose may determine classification.

Example – Layout services are classified in Class 35 when specified to be “for advertising purposes” and are classified in Class 41 when specified to be “other than for advertising purposes.”

In an application under §1 of the Trademark Act, the specimen(s) should reflect acceptable use of the mark for each of the specified classes and the record must not indicate that the product has only one use or aspect.

See The Procter & Gamble Co. v. Economics Laboratory, Inc. modified without opinion, 495 F.2d 1360, 181 USPQ 722 (C.C.P.A. 1974); In re International Salt Co., 166 USPQ 215 (TTAB 1970) ; Mead Johnson Co. v. Watson, 112 USPQ 284 (D.D.C. 1957) , aff’d 253 F.2d 862, 117 USPQ 13 (D.C. Cir. 1958).

Where a single specimen supports multiple classes, the examining attorney need not require multiple copies of the specimen. *See* [TMEP §904.01](#).

Where a single product or service is classified in more than one class, the applicant must also comply with all other requirements for multiple-class applications. *See* [TMEP §1403.01](#).

1401.05(d) Identification and Classification of “Systems”

In general, the USPTO will not accept identifications of goods described as “systems” because the terminology is considered indefinite. *See* [TMEP §§1402.01, 1402.01\(a\)](#). If the applicant submits an indefinite identification of goods described as “systems” (e.g., lawn-care systems), the examining attorney must require an amendment to the identification. The amended identification must specify the nature, purpose, or use of the system and its primary parts or components. The primary parts or components should be specified first in the list of the system’s parts or components. The system is classified in the same class as the primary parts or components. For example, lawn-care systems comprised of lawn mowers and herbicides are in Class 7, which is the same class as the lawn mowers; lawn-care systems comprised of herbicides, pesticides, and lawn sprinklers are in Class 5, which is the same class as the herbicides and pesticides.

Although USPTO policy generally requires further specificity of “systems,” the USPTO may accept this wording when the identification is a generic term for a particular category of goods classified in a single international class. For example, “brake systems for vehicles” is an acceptable identification in Class 12 because it is a generic term for a combination of goods functioning as a unit to brake the vehicle. The ID Manual also lists additional acceptable wording for specific types of systems.

1401.05(e) Identification and Classification of “Food Additives”

Under the 10th and 11th editions of the Nice Agreement, identifications of goods in the nature of food additives must indicate the generic name of the product (e.g., lecithin, glucose, or pectin) as well as the purpose of the food additive. *See* [TMEP §1401.13\(c\)](#) for further explanation.

Proper classification may be based on purpose (e.g., industrial purpose as a raw ingredient for manufacturing food, medical purpose as a dietary supplement, or culinary purpose). In the case of food additives for culinary purposes, the particular characteristics of the substance(s) may affect classification. For example, “lecithin for culinary purposes” is classified in Class 29 because lecithin is a fat-like substance found in the cell membranes of plants and animals, and “edible oils and fats” are in the Class 29 class heading. “Glucose for culinary purposes,” however, is classified in Class 30 because glucose is a sugar-like substance, and “sugar” is in the Class 30 class heading.

1401.06 Specimen(s) as Related to Classification

As a general rule, the specimen(s) in an application under §1 of the Trademark Act helps to determine the correct classification. The examining attorney should carefully review the specimen to ensure that the identification and classification of the goods and/or services is accurate. If the information on the specimen and the wording of the identification differ, or if some significant characteristic shown in the specimen is omitted from the identification, the assigned class number may be incorrect. See [TMEP §1402.05](#). However, the examining attorney must remember that, generally, a specimen need only support use of the mark on one item in each class of goods or services set forth in an application. See [TMEP §904.01\(a\)](#).

1401.07 Specimen Discloses Special Characteristics

The classification of goods could be affected if the specimen shows that the mark identifies a composition, an ingredient, or a part that exists in the market only as a component of another product, but the identification does not reveal that the item exists only as a component of a specified product. See [TMEP §1402.05\(a\)](#).

Finished products are in principle classified according to their function or purpose. See [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#). When a specimen discloses that use of the identified goods is limited to a particular function or purpose, classification may be impacted. For example, orthopedic shoes are classified in Class 10 as medical apparatus, and ordinary shoes are classified in Class 25. If the specimen in an application for “shoes, in Class 25” shows that the goods are orthopedic shoes, the identification and classification must be amended to “orthopedic shoes, in Class 10.” If the specimen indicates that the goods are promoted for industrial use only, this should be reflected in the identification when it affects the designation of the correct class. For example, detergents for industrial use are classified in Class 1, not in Class 3 where most other detergents are classified.

If the specimen shows that the mark identifies a structural part of a machine, this should be reflected in the identification, because parts for machines are generally classified with the machine if the part has no applicability elsewhere.

If the mark is used or intended to be used on raw or semi-worked materials, such as plastics or resins which may be marketed in a variety of forms (such as sheets, powders, or solutions, or as materials that may be either natural or synthetic), these facts should be indicated in the identification of the goods. This is important because some raw or semi-worked materials are classified in several international classes. For example, “semi-processed plastic in sheet form” is classified in Class 17, and “unprocessed plastic in powder form” is classified in Class 1. Certain synthetic materials are in a different class from those that are natural. Usually, a specimen will disclose these characteristics of raw or semi-worked materials.

If the specimen indicates that a product is made of a particular material, the identification must specify the material composition of the goods when the goods are classified according to material composition. See [TMEP §1402.05\(b\)](#) for further explanation. Generally, if a classification is dedicated to a particular type of goods, the material composition for those goods does not have to be indicated in the identification. For

example, Class 20 is the proper class for furniture. This is true even when the furniture is made of metal. Metal furniture is not classified in Class 6 with other metal products because there is an acceptable class (Class 20) for all furniture regardless of material composition. On the other hand, ladders do not have a specifically designated class, and therefore they are classified by material composition, which must be set forth in the identification: metal ladders are in Class 6; ladders of wood or plastics are in Class 20; and rope ladders are in Class 22.

1401.08 Classification and the Identification of Goods and Services

The items listed in the identification of goods and services must be limited to those on or in connection with which the applicant uses or has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. The entire contents of a class, as represented by the short title of the class, should not be set forth as the identification of goods or services. The Class Headings under the Nice Classification also should not be used to indicate that an application includes all goods in a particular class. The Class Headings and the short titles indicate the general scope of the classes and include wording that is too broad and inclusive to be used to identify particular goods or services. *See also* [TMEP §§1402.01\(b\)](#), [1402.02](#).

1401.09 Implementation of Changes to the Nice Agreement

When a new edition/version of the Nice Agreement is issued, any changes apply only to applications filed on or after the effective date of the change. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(e\)\(1\)](#). In a §1 or §44 application filed before the effective date of the change, the examining attorney may offer the applicant the option of remaining in compliance with the edition/version of the Nice Agreement that was in effect on the application filing date or amending the application to comply with the requirements of the current edition. The applicant may, of its own accord, submit an amendment to its application that brings it into compliance with the current edition/version of the Nice Agreement. However, if an applicant chooses to comply with the current edition/version, the applicant must comply with the current edition/version for all the goods and/or services in the application, and the applicant must pay the fees for any added class(es) resulting from changes in the current edition/version. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(e\)\(2\)](#). An applicant cannot choose to have some items comply with the current edition/version and other items comply with the requirements of a previous edition/version.

1401.10 Effective Date of Changes to USPTO ID Manual

In the ID Manual, the “Effective Date” indicates the date on which the status (i.e., Added, Modified, Example, or Deleted) of a particular entry went into effect. When the “Effective Date” changes, the new requirements established by that particular entry apply only to applications filed on or after the date of the change. In a §1 or §44 application filed before the effective date of the change, the examining attorney may give the applicant the choice to either keep the existing identification and/or class or amend to the new identification and/or class. However, if an applicant chooses to comply with the new identification and/or class, the applicant must pay the fees for any added class(es) resulting from the change. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#). Therefore, if an Office action is issued before the effective date, and the action is inconsistent with the new or modified entry, the applicant may be given the choice to either keep the existing identification and/or class or amend to the new identification and/or class if a subsequent Office action is issued. However, if a first Office action is issued on or after the effective date, any amendment to the specific portion of the identification or classification that relates to a previously acceptable identification and/or classification must comply with the new or modified entry.

1401.11 Changes in Practice Based on the Restructuring of International Class 42 in the 8th Edition of the Nice Agreement

Effective January 1, 2002, the Nice Agreement Concerning the International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks (“Nice Agreement”) was amended to add three new service classes (Classes 43 through 45). These new classes arose from the extensive restructuring of Class 42. In the course of that restructuring, many activities were removed from Class 42 and placed in one of the three new classes.

The purpose of the Nice Classification is to group, as much as possible, like goods or services in a single class. Generally, the system is successful in achieving that purpose. However, over the years, it became apparent that Class 42 included many disparate services. This was due in large part to the inclusion of the language “services that cannot be classified in other classes” in the class heading for Class 42. This language allowed services as different as “chemical research” and “horoscope casting” to be included in the class.

Therefore, after much study and discussion, the Committee of Experts for the Nice Agreement approved the restructuring of Class 42. The restructuring amended Class 42 by limiting the scope of the services included in this class to computer, scientific, and legal services, and created three additional classes that grouped services previously classified in Class 42 into new classes that kept like services grouped together.

See [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#); see also [TMEP §1401.12\(a\)](#) regarding later reclassification of legal services to Class 45.

Effective January 1, 2002, the language “services that cannot be classified in other classes,” which previously appeared in the class heading of Class 42, was eliminated. See [TMEP §1401.11\(a\)](#).

1401.11(a) Elimination of “Miscellaneous Class Designation”

Prior to January 1, 2002, the language “services that cannot be classified in other classes” appeared in the class heading of Class 42. Effective January 1, 2002, this language no longer appears in any of the class headings or explanatory notes of the Nice Agreement. The Committee of Experts found that the revision of the Nice Agreement created an adequate number of well-defined classes so that this language was no longer necessary. Services must now be identified with sufficient clarity and precision to allow for appropriate classification in one of the eleven service classes.

See [TMEP §§1402.11 et seq.](#) for further information about the changes in identification and classification of services.

1401.12 General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 9th Edition of the Nice Agreement

The requirements of the 9th edition of the Nice Agreement apply to applications filed on or after January 1, 2007. For applications filed on or after the effective date of the 10th edition (i.e., January 1, 2012) and prior to the effective date of the 11th edition (i.e., January 1, 2017), any changes in practice brought about by the 10th edition supersede the 9th edition to the extent any inconsistency exists. See [TMEP §§1401.13-1401.13\(e\)](#) for the general summary of changes in practice based on the 10th edition of the Nice Agreement. For applications filed on or after the effective date of the 11th edition, any changes in practice brought about by the 11th edition supersede prior editions and versions of the Nice Agreement to the extent any inconsistency exists.

The most notable changes under the 9th edition are: the transfer of all legal services from Class 42 to Class 45; the determination that items made of precious metals should be classified according to their function rather than in Class 14 merely because they are made of precious metal; and the transfer of aquaria and related items from Class 16 to Class 21. These changes are discussed below.

1401.12(a) Legal Services Transferred to International Class 45

Effective January 1, 2007, legal services were transferred from Class 42 to Class 45. Class 42 is now generally limited to computer, scientific, technological, engineering, and design services.

In 2002, when the Nice Agreement was amended to add three new service classes, Class 42 was restructured, but legal services remained in Class 42. However, over the five-year revision period that led to the 9th edition, it became apparent that Class 42 was not the most appropriate class for these services. The ultimate decision to include these services in Class 45 was based on an item in the class heading for Class 45 - "security services for the protection of property and individuals." The Committee of Experts reasoned that legal services are an extension of the security services already in Class 45. Security services provide for the protection of property and individuals, and the enforcement of that security is in the hands of the legal profession. For changes under Nice 11-2017 regarding security services, see [TMEP §1401.14\(e\)](#).

1401.12(b) Goods Made of Precious Metal are Classified According to Their Function

Class 14 went through the most extensive revision of all of the classes in the 9th edition of the Nice Agreement. The Committee of Experts decided that items made of precious metal that were classified in other classes based on their function when not made of precious metal, should also be classified in those classes. Goods made of precious metal that are not classified by function, but rather by material composition, e.g., statues, figurines, and boxes, are still classified in Class 14. This decision eliminated much of the confusion in this class caused by some goods being listed in Class 14 when made of precious metal and in other classes when not made of precious metal, while other goods were classified according to function without reference to any particular material composition. For example, ashtrays for smokers were classified in Class 14 when made of precious metal and in Class 34 when not made of precious metal. However, cutlery, namely forks, knives, and spoons were classified only in Class 8, even if made of precious metal, even though it is not uncommon for cutlery to be made of precious metal. The changes in the 9th edition were intended to eliminate this inconsistency.

1401.12(c) Transfer of Aquaria and Related Items

Indoor aquaria, its related accessory aquarium hoods, and indoor terrariums [vivariums] were previously classified in Class 16 because they were considered educational. This may have been true when they were first introduced into the Nice Agreement list, but that is a minimal or secondary use today. Most often, these goods are found in homes or offices as hobby or decorative items. They are traditionally made of glass so that the contents are visible. Therefore, they were transferred to Class 21, the main class for other glass items. Other aquarium items with specific uses or functions remain in their 8th edition classes. These items include aerating pumps for aquaria in Class 7, aquarium gravel and sand in Class 19, and aquarium lights, heaters, and filtering apparatus in Class 11. However, large public aquaria that are, in fact, structures are classified in Class 19, since they are made primarily from nonmetallic materials. The aquaria transferred from Class 16 to Class 21 are those that may be found in homes or offices and would not be considered structures in the nature of a building.

1401.13 General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 10th Edition of the Nice Agreement

A number of changes in the international classification of goods and services occurred in connection with the 10th edition of the Nice Classification, which went into effect January 1, 2012. The requirements of the 10th edition apply only to applications filed on or after January 1, 2012. Any changes under subsequent versions or editions of the Nice Classification supersede the 10th edition to the extent any inconsistency exists. Several notable changes under the 10th edition are discussed below. A comprehensive view of the changes and their impact on USPTO identification and classification policy can be found in the *International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks* (10th ed. 2011), published by the World Intellectual Property Organization and available online at <http://www.wipo.int>, and in the [ID Manual](#).

1401.13(a) Electric/Electrothermic Goods

Under the 10th edition, a number of electric/electrothermic goods that were previously in Class 9 are now classified in the same class as their non-electric or non-electrothermic counterparts. Electric/electrothermic goods transferred from Class 9 to Class 7 include vending machines, electric door openers, and electrodes for welding machines. Cigar lighters for automobiles were transferred from Class 9 to Class 12 (as a land vehicle part). Automatic turnstiles were deleted from Class 9 because they are considered building materials and thus are classified according to material composition, with turnstiles of metal classified in Class 6 and turnstiles not of metal classified in Class 19. The ID Manual should be consulted for the identification and classification of other electric/electrothermic goods.

1401.13(b) Amusement and Game-Playing Apparatus

Under the 9th edition, “hand-held units for playing electronic games for use with external display screens or monitors” were classified in Class 9, and “hand-held units for playing electronic games other than those for use with external display screens or monitors” were classified in Class 28. Under the 10th edition, all amusement and game-playing apparatus, whether for use with an external monitor or display screen or having a built-in monitor or display screen, are classified in Class 28.

1401.13(c) Food Additives

Under the 10th edition Nice Alphabetical List, food additives are classified in Classes 1, 5, and 29-33 according to their particular purposes. Previously, the Nice Alphabetical List recognized only two types of food additives - those for medical purposes in Class 5 and those in the nature of raw materials in Class 1. The 9th edition was silent on the classification of food additives used as ingredients in cooking and/or baking for domestic purposes. Under the 10th edition, food additives for industrial purposes, including those for use in manufacturing food, are classified in Class 1. Additionally, food additives for medical purposes and for use as dietary supplements are classified in Class 5, and food additives for culinary purposes are classified in Classes 29-33, according to the particular nature of the food additive. The 10th edition also requires that the food additive be specifically named (e.g., “lecithin for culinary purposes” in Class 29). This requirement is especially important when the food additives are for culinary purposes because classification of such goods is determined by their nature.

1401.13(d) Dietetic Substances and Meal Replacements

The 10th edition amended the Class 5 class heading to include “meal replacements, dietetic food and beverages, adapted for medical or veterinary use.” For classification in Class 5, these three items must be identified as being “adapted for medical use” or “adapted for veterinary use” (or include other language indicating that these items are adapted for a particular medical or veterinary use) to make clear that their purpose and use are not as part of a regular diet for human beings or animals. Under the 10th edition (effective January 1, 2012), the specific meal replacement, dietetic food, or dietetic beverage item must also be indicated. Under the 11th edition of the Nice Agreement (effective January 1, 2017), changes were made to the requirements for the identification of dietetic foods and beverages in Class 5; for more information, see [TMEP §1401.14\(c\)](#).

The Class 5 class heading was also amended under the 10th edition to exclude “meal replacements, dietetic food and beverages not for medical or veterinary consumption (Cl. 29, 30, 31, 32 or 33).” This specific exclusion is a corollary to the inclusion discussed above. Previously, all meal replacements were classified in Class 5, and the Nice Agreement was silent regarding how to classify dietetic food and beverages that were not for medical or veterinary purposes. Meal replacements and dietetic food and beverages that are not for medical or veterinary use must be identified with adequate specificity to determine the particular food or beverages classes in which they should be classified. For example, “fruit-based meal replacement bars” is acceptable in Class 29 based on the wording “preserved, frozen, dried and cooked fruits and vegetables” in the Class 29 class heading, and “chocolate-based meal replacement bars” is acceptable in Class 30 based on the wording “cocoa,” “confectionery,” and “sugar” in the Class 30 heading.

1401.13(e) Marketing Services

“Marketing” was added to the Nice Alphabetical List, in Class 35, under the 10th edition. The Nice Agreement was previously silent regarding marketing services. The addition of “marketing” reflects the recognition by the Committee of Experts that the most common use of the term “marketing” refers to promoting the goods and services of others.

1401.14 General Summary of Major Changes in Practice Based on the 11th Edition of the Nice Agreement

The 11th edition of the Nice Classification went into effect January 1, 2017. The requirements of the 11th edition apply only to applications filed on or after January 1, 2017. Any changes under subsequent versions or editions of the Nice Classification supersede the 11th edition to the extent any inconsistency exists. Several changes to identification and/or classification policy in compliance with the 11th edition are discussed below. A comprehensive view of the changes and their impact on USPTO identification and classification policy can be found in the International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks (11th ed. 2017), published by the World Intellectual Property Organization and available online at <http://www.wipo.int>, and in the [ID Manual](#).

1401.14(a) Cosmetic and Toiletry Preparations

Under the 11th edition of the Nice Classification, cosmetics, toiletry preparations, and soap are classified in Class 3, except when those goods are medicated, are for pharmaceutical purposes, or have antibacterial or disinfectant properties. In such cases, the goods are classified in Class 5. Under the 11th edition, “medicated soap” and “disinfectant soap” were transferred from Class 3 to Class 5. “Antibacterial soap,” “medicated toiletry preparations,” and “medicated shampoos” were added to the Alphabetical List in Class 5.

1401.14(b) Household or Kitchen Serving Utensils and Small Hand-operated Kitchen Apparatus for Mincing, Grinding, Pressing, or Crushing

Under the 11th edition of the Nice Classification, household or kitchen serving utensils, except for “serving knives,” are classified in Class 21. “Serving knives” are classified with all other knives in Class 8 under the Class Heading “cutlery.” The following are examples of serving utensils that are classified in Class 21: “sugar tongs,” “ice tongs,” “ice cream scoops,” and “ladles for serving wine.”

In addition, under the 11th edition, small hand-operated kitchen apparatus for mincing, grinding, pressing, or crushing are classified in Class 21. For example, the following small hand-operated kitchen apparatus are acceptable in Class 21: “non-electric mincers,” “hand-operated coffee grinders,” “garlic presses,” “nutcrackers,” and “mortars and pestles for kitchen use.”

1401.14(c) Dietetic Food and Beverages Adapted for Medical or Veterinary Use

Under both the 10th (effective January 1, 2012) and 11th (effective January 1, 2017) editions of the Nice Classification, identifications for dietetic foods and dietetic beverages in Class 5 must indicate that the goods are “adapted for medical use” or “adapted for veterinary use” (or include other language indicating that these items are adapted for a particular medical or veterinary use) to make clear that their purpose and use are not as part of a regular diet for human beings or animals.

Under the 10th edition, identifications for dietetic food and dietetic beverages adapted for medical or veterinary use in Class 5 were required to indicate the specific meal replacement, dietetic food, or dietetic beverage item. See [TMEP §1401.13\(d\)](#). However, under the 11th edition, it is no longer a requirement that the particular dietetic food or dietetic beverage item adapted for medical or veterinary use be indicated. For example, “dietetic foods adapted for medical purposes” and “dietetic beverages adapted for medical purposes” are acceptable identifications under the 11th edition. For information about the effective date to ID Manual changes, see [TMEP §1401.10](#).

1401.14(d) Nut and Plant Milks; Milk Substitutes

Under the 10th edition of the Nice Classification, nut or plant milks were generally classified according to their purpose. If the goods were used as milk substitutes or used for culinary purposes, the goods were classified in Class 29. If the goods were used as beverages, other than milk substitutes, they were classified in Class 32.

Under the 11th edition of the Nice Classification, goods identified as “milk” or “milk-based beverages” must be classified in Class 29. The identification may include the purpose of the milk (e.g., for use as a beverage, for culinary purposes, etc.), but it is not required. The purpose of the milks generally has no impact on classification. For example, “almond milk,” “almond milk-based beverages,” and “almond milk for culinary purposes” are all acceptable in Class 29.

“Milk substitutes” was added to the Nice Alphabetical List in Class 29 under Nice 11-2017; thus, “milk substitutes” is an acceptable identification without further specification. The identification may indicate the particular type of milk substitute, but it is not required.

1401.14(e) Security Services in Class 42 and Class 45

Under the 11th edition of the Nice Classification, the Committee of Experts inserted new wording into the Class 42 Explanatory Note and changed the Class 45 Heading to distinguish between computer and technology services for securing computer data or personal and financial information and detecting unauthorized access in Class 42 and physical security services for protecting tangible property and individuals in Class 45.

These additions and modifications resolve ambiguity under Nice 10-2016 resulting from the co-existence in the Nice Alphabetical List of “computer security consultancy” in Class 42 and “security consultancy” in Class 45.

Examples of computer and information security services in Class 42 are “data encryption services,” “electronic monitoring of personally identifying information to detect identity theft via the internet,” and “monitoring of computer systems for detecting unauthorized access or data breach.”

Examples of physical security services in Class 45 are “personal body guarding” and “monitoring of burglar and security alarms.” Although the burglar and security-alarm monitoring activity could be rendered by computerized or electronic means, it is considered a surveillance service relating to the physical safety of persons and security of tangible property.

1402 Identification of Goods and Services

1402.01 Specifying the Goods and/or Services - in General

A written application must specify the particular goods and/or services on or in connection with which the applicant uses, or has a bona fide intention to use, the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(2\) and 1051\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#). To “specify” means to name in an explicit manner. The identification should set forth common names, using terminology that is generally understood. For products or services that do not have common names, the applicant should use clear and succinct language to describe or explain the item. Technical or esoteric language and lengthy descriptions of characteristics or uses are not appropriate.

The language used to describe goods and/or services should be understandable to the average person and should not require an in-depth knowledge of the relevant field. An identification may include terms of art in a particular field or industry, but, if these terms are not widely understood by the general population, the identification should include an explanation of the specialized terminology.

The identification of goods and/or services must be specific, definite, clear, accurate, and concise. *See In re Societe Generale des Eaux Minerales de Vittel S.A.*, 1 USPQ2d 1296 (TTAB 1986) , rev'd on other grounds, 824 F.2d 957, 3 USPQ2d 1450 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *The Procter & Gamble Co. v. Economics Laboratory, Inc.*, 175 USPQ 505 (TTAB 1972) , modified without opinion, 498 F.2d 1406, 181 USPQ 722 (C.C.P.A. 1974); *In re Cardinal Laboratories, Inc.*, 149 USPQ 709 (TTAB 1966) ; *California Spray-Chemical Corp. v. Osmose Wood Preserving Co. of America, Inc.*, 102 USPQ 321 (Comm'r Pats. 1954); *Ex parte The A.C. Gilbert Co.*, 99 USPQ 344 (Comm'r Pats. 1953).

The applicant must identify the goods and services specifically to provide public notice and to enable the USPTO to classify the goods and services properly and to reach informed judgments concerning likelihood of confusion under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). The USPTO has discretion to require the degree of particularity deemed necessary to clearly identify the goods and/or services covered by the mark. *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007).

Terminology that includes items in more than one class is considered indefinite, even with such additional wording as “included in this class” at the end of the identification. *See id.* (“chronographs” held indefinite because it includes both time recording devices in Class 9 and watches in Class 14 and because merely classifying the goods in only one of the classes does not preclude a requirement for further specificity in the identification).

Example: “Blankets” is not acceptable without qualifying wording because it is not particular enough to identify the kind of blanket on which the mark is used, e.g., fire blankets (Class 9), electric blankets for household purposes (Class 11), horse blankets (Class 18), and bed blankets (Class 24).

However, the conclusion that a term would clearly include items classified in more than one class should not be drawn unless reasonable, in light of the evidence of record. *See In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1474 (TTAB 2007) (“park trailer” held to be an acceptable identification, where the applicant’s evidence showed that it is a term of art generally understood by those in the industry and by consumers as a designation for a type of recreational vehicle, which unambiguously places it in Class 12; Board was not persuaded by the examining attorney’s argument that the identification was indefinite because it could also encompass mobile homes in Class 19.).

The accuracy of identification language in the original application is important because the identification cannot later be expanded. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1402.06](#) *et seq.* and [1402.07](#) *et seq.*; *In re M.V. Et Associes*, 21 USPQ2d 1628 (Comm’r Pats. 1991).

See [TMEP §1306.02\(c\)](#) regarding the identification of goods and services in certification mark applications and [TMEP §1304.02\(c\)](#) regarding identification language in collective membership mark applications.

1402.01(a) General Guidelines for Acceptable Identifications of Goods or Services

With few exceptions, an identification of goods and services will be considered acceptable if it:

- Describes the goods and/or services so that an English speaker could understand what the goods and/or services are, even if the grammar or phrasing is not optimal;
- Meets the *standards* (not necessarily the language) set forth in the ID Manual;
- Is not a class heading; and
- Is in the correct class, i.e., there is no language in the identification that makes classification difficult or ambiguous; each class lists goods or services that are clearly in a single class.

Deference should be given to the language set forth by the applicant in the original application.

If an identification contains spelling errors, the examining attorney must require correction. Obvious spelling errors in an identification may be corrected by examiner’s amendment without contacting the applicant.

See [TMEP §707.02](#). However, British English variants of American English spellings (e.g., colour, vapour, and organise) are acceptable and need not be changed.

In general, commas should be used in the identification to separate items within a particular category of goods or services. When the items are preceded by the word “namely,” a comma should always be used before and after that term. For example, “clothing, namely, hats, caps, sweaters, and jeans” is an acceptable identification of goods in Class 25 and shows proper use of commas.

Semicolons should generally be used to separate distinct categories of goods or services within a single class. For example, “cleaners, namely, glass cleaners, oven cleaners, and carpet cleaners; deodorants for pets” is an acceptable identification in Class 3. In this example, the word “cleaners” names the category covering “glass cleaners, oven cleaners, and carpet cleaners.” The semicolon prior to “deodorants for pets” indicates that the deodorants are a separate category of goods from the cleaners. See *In re Midwest Gaming & Entm’t LLC*, 106 USPQ2d 1163, 1166 (TTAB 2013) (finding that, because a semicolon separated the two relevant clauses in registrant’s identification, its “restaurant and bar services” is a discrete category of services that stands alone and independently as a basis for likelihood-of-confusion analysis, and is not connected to nor dependent on the services set out on the other side of the semicolon).

Care should be taken to use commas and semicolons properly when identifying items that are part of a kit or system. In general, items that are to be sold together (e.g., as components of a system or kit) should be separated by commas. However, other goods within the same class that are to be sold independently of the kit or system should be separated by semicolons. This is an exception to the general rule regarding using semicolons to separate categories of goods. Here, the semicolons are used to separate items that in a non-kit or non-system identification would be separated by commas. For example, an identification that includes kits comprised of several items, as well as other goods sold independently from the kits, should be punctuated as follows: “nail care kits comprised of nail polish, nail polish remover, false nails, nail files, and printed instructions; nail glitter; body art stickers.” The use of “and” before “printed instructions” indicates that the “printed instructions” are the final items contained in the kit. The use of semicolons indicates that “nail glitter” and “body art stickers” are separate items and are not included in the nail care kits.

Commas, semicolons, and apostrophes are the only punctuation that should be included in an identification. Colons and periods should not be used as punctuation within the identification of goods and services.

1402.01(b) Identification of Goods and Services in a §44 Application

The identification of goods and services in an application based on §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126](#), must comply with the same standards that govern other applications. The applicant must identify the goods and services specifically, to enable the USPTO to classify the goods and services properly and to reach informed judgments concerning likelihood of confusion under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#).

Foreign registrations often include broad statements identifying the goods and services. In many cases, the identification is merely a repetition of the entire general class heading for a given class. These broad identifications are generally unacceptable in U.S. applications. The identification of goods and/or services in the U.S. application must be definite and specific even if the foreign registration includes an overly broad identification. See *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (noting that the USPTO has discretion to require greater particularity than an entry in WIPO’s Alphabetical List of goods and services); *In re Fiat Grp. Mktg. & Corporate Commc’ns S.p.A.*, 109 USPQ2d 1593 (TTAB 2014) .

Furthermore, in an application based on §44 of the Trademark Act, the identification of goods and services covered by the §44 basis in the U.S. application may not exceed the scope of the goods and services identified in the foreign registration. *Marmark Ltd. v. Nutrexpa, S.A.*, 12 USPQ2d 1843 (TTAB 1989) ; *In re Löwenbräu München*, 175 USPQ 178 (TTAB 1972) . However, if the applicant also relies on use in commerce under §1(a) or intent-to-use in commerce under §1(b) as a filing basis, the identification may include goods or services not listed in the foreign registration, if the applicant specifically limits the §44 basis to the goods and/or services covered by the foreign registration. See [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#). See [TMEP §806.02](#) regarding multiple-basis applications.

If a foreign registration in a single class includes a broad statement identifying the goods or services and the USPTO determines that the goods or services identified are in more than one class, the applicant may rely on the same foreign registration to cover the additional classes in the U.S. application, provided that the identification in the foreign registration encompasses all goods and/or services identified in the U.S. application and the applicant pays the fees to add the additional classes in the U.S. application. See [TMEP §§1403–1403.06](#) regarding multiple-class applications.

1402.01(c) Identification and Classification of Goods and Services in a §66(a) Application

The identification of goods and services in an application based on §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), must comply with the same standards that govern applications under §1 or §44. The applicant must identify the goods and services specifically to provide public notice and to enable the USPTO to reach informed judgments concerning likelihood of confusion under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#).

The examining attorney will examine the identification of goods and/or services in a §66(a) application according to the same standards of specificity used in examining applications under §1 and §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#) and [1126](#). That is, the examining attorney must follow the procedures set forth in the TMEP and identify the goods and/or services in accordance with the principles set forth in the ID Manual, whenever possible. Thus, although international registrations often include broad statements identifying the goods and services, and in many cases use the entire class heading of a given class, these broad identifications are generally unacceptable in United States applications. The identification of goods and/or services in the request for extension of protection to the United States must be definite and specific even if the international registration includes an overly broad identification. See *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (noting that the USPTO has discretion to require greater particularity than an entry in WIPO's Alphabetical List of goods and services).

When the original identification of goods and/or services in a §66(a) application is definite, but misclassified under United States standards, the examining attorney must accept the identification.

The international classification of goods and/or services in a §66(a) application **may not be changed** from the classification assigned by the IB. If the IB's classification of goods or services in the §66(a) application is different from the classification set forth in the ID Manual, the examining attorney will not request an amendment of the classification. In addition, the goods or services may not be moved to another class identified in the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\)](#), [1904.02\(b\)](#). The examining attorney should notify the Office of the Administrator for Trademark Classification Policy and Practice of the particular definite, misclassified goods or services.

When a proposed amendment to the identification is definite, but describes goods and/or services in a class other than the original class assigned by the IB, the examining attorney will not accept it because the amended identification is outside the scope of the original goods and/or services. Because the international registration is limited to the class(es) assigned by the IB, any amendments to the identification of goods/services may only include goods or services that are properly within the scope of the class(es) set out in the §66(a) application. The inclusion of any goods and/or services outside of the scope of the IB-assigned class(es) in a §66(a) application would result in the lack of a basis for registration of such goods/services under U.S. law. See also [TMEP §§1904.02\(c\)](#) *et seq.* regarding the examination of the identification of goods and services in a §66(a) application.

1402.01(d) Location of “Identification of Goods and Services”

Paper Application. If the applicant submits a separate drawing page in a paper application, this page is considered part of the written application and not a separate element. Any goods or services listed on the drawing page in a paper application will be considered part of the “identification of goods and services,” even if they do not appear within the body of the application.

There is no requirement that goods or services be listed in any particular place within the body of a written paper application. See *In re Atlantic Scientific Corp.*, 47 USPQ2d 1959 (Comm'r Pats. 1998). However, goods or services referenced only on the specimen(s) are not considered part of the identification.

TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus Application. In a TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus application, only goods and/or services listed in the proper field will be considered part of the identification.

§66(a) Application. In an application under §66(a), the listing of goods and/or services for which the holder of an international registration seeks protection in the United States is transmitted to the USPTO from the IB. The goods and/or services may be all of those listed in the international registration – the “basic goods/services.” Alternatively, the holder of an international registration may seek protection for less than all the goods/services listed in the international registration. In such cases, in addition to the “Basic Goods/Services,” the §66(a) application will contain “Limitation” details. The “limited” goods/services are the operative goods/services for the purposes of examination. Further limitations may be transmitted from the IB. Such limitations are processed by the Madrid Processing Unit (MPU) and examining attorneys are notified of changes as appropriate. See [TMEP §1904.02\(e\)\(ii\)](#) regarding limitations.

1402.01(e) Responsibilities of Examining Attorney as to Identification

It is the applicant’s duty and prerogative to identify the goods and services. However, the examining attorney may require amendment of the identification of goods and/or services to ensure that it is clear and accurate and conforms to the requirements of the statute and rules. The examining attorney should explain clearly and concisely the reason for requiring an amendment.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#), the examining attorney may require information and evidence, if necessary, to ascertain the nature of the goods and/or services or otherwise permit proper examination of the application.

See [TMEP §814](#).

When requiring amendment to the identification, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that goods or services deleted by amendment may not be reinserted at a later point in prosecution. See [TMEP §§1402.06\(a\), 1402.07\(e\)](#). Examining attorneys should take particular care to ensure that *pro se* applicants are aware of the restrictions on amendments to the identification of goods and services.

To determine proper classification and the acceptability of the language in an identification of goods and/or services, the examining attorney should review this chapter of the TMEP, the ID Manual, and any other resources provided by the USPTO relating to the principles of classification under the Nice Agreement and USPTO practices with regard to specificity of goods and services. After consulting these resources, if the examining attorney is uncertain as to the proper classification or acceptability of language in an identification, he or she should consult with a senior or managing attorney. If the issue still remains unresolved, questions about policy and practice regarding the goods or services at issue may be referred to the Office of the Administrator for Trademark Classification Policy and Practice.

The examining attorney has the discretion to issue a final refusal based on a requirement to amend the identification of goods and/or services. Examining attorneys should make every effort to resolve these issues, and should suggest an acceptable identification, if possible. The Office of the Administrator for Trademark Classification Policy and Practice should be consulted, whenever necessary, to resolve identification and classification issues that are the subjects of appeals, and copies of appeal briefs that involve those issues should be sent to the Office of the Administrator for monitoring purposes.

See [TMEP §§718.02\(a\)](#) and [1402.13](#) for information regarding a requirement for an amendment of the identification of goods and/or services that is expressly limited to only certain goods/services.

1402.02 Entitlement to Filing Date With Respect to Identification of Goods and Services

An application under §1 or §44 must include an identification of goods or services to receive a filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(4\)](#).

Effective October 30, 1999, any goods or services listed on the drawing page of a paper application are considered part of the “identification of goods and services.” However, only goods and/or services listed in the proper field on a TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus application will be considered for determining whether the application meets the requirements for receipt of a filing date.

If the application does not identify any recognizable goods or services, the USPTO will deny a filing date. For example, a filing date will be denied if the identification of goods or services is blank or recites only the following:

- (1) the mark itself;
- (2) a class number;
- (3) wording such as “company name,” “corporate name,” or “company logo;”
- (4) “Internet services” or “e-commerce services;”
- (5) “business” or “business services;”
- (6) “miscellaneous” or “miscellaneous services;” or
- (7) “personal services.”

These examples fail to meet the minimum requirements necessary to receive a filing date under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(4\)](#), because they do not provide adequate notice to third parties as to the nature of the goods or services.

In an application under §1 or §44, if an examining attorney finds that the application fails to specify any recognizable goods or services, the examining attorney should have the filing date cancelled for failure to specify recognizable goods or services, under [37 C.F.R. §2.21\(a\)\(4\)](#).

If the identification language includes wording that would not be sufficient and other wording that would itself be specific enough to entitle the application to a filing date, the USPTO will grant the application a filing date. However, any wording that would not otherwise be sufficient for a filing date will not be considered part of the application, and will be disregarded for the purpose of determining the scope of permissible amendments. For example, if the applicant uses “e-commerce services” along with definite language, such as “online retail store services featuring clothing,” the identification of services may only be amended to identify services within the scope of the definite language, i.e., “online retail store services featuring clothing,” and may not include services within the scope of “e-commerce services.” Or, if the applicant uses “advertising and business,” the USPTO will disregard “business,” and the identification may

only be amended to services within the scope of the term “advertising.” See [TMEP §§1402.07 et seq.](#) regarding the scope of an identification for purposes of amendment.

The fact that goods or services are referenced on the specimen(s) does not satisfy the requirement for an “identification of goods or services.” In a paper application, the application documents themselves (i.e., the written application and/or separate drawing page) must contain a reference to the goods and/or services.

In a TEAS, TEAS RF, or TEAS Plus application, the identification of goods and/or services must appear in the proper field. See [TMEP §1402.01\(d\)](#) regarding the location of the identification of goods and/or services.

The USPTO will not deny a filing date if the applicant uses the language of an international class heading or indicates that the mark is used on all goods or services in a certain class. However, the USPTO strongly discourages the use of the language of the international class headings or statements that the mark is used on all goods or services in a class to identify the goods or services for which registration of the mark is sought, and will generally require amendment of any such identification. See *In re Fiat Grp. Mktg. & Corporate Comm'ns S.p.A.*, 109 USPQ2d 1593, 1598 (TTAB 2014) (stating that “use of the words comprising a class heading as an identification in an application filed with the USPTO is not deemed to include all the goods or services in the established scope of that class”); [TMEP §1402.07\(a\)](#).

Note also that an applicant is required to submit a verified statement that the applicant is either using the mark in commerce or has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with all the goods and/or services set forth in the identification. It is unlikely that any applicant is using or intends to use a mark on all goods or services within a certain class. If an applicant claims use or asserts a bona fide intention to use the mark on all goods/services in a particular class but only uses or intends to use the mark on some of those goods/services, the resulting registration could be void. *In re Bose Corp.*, 580 F.3d 1240, 91 USPQ2d 1938 (Fed. Cir.2009); *Torres v. Cantine Torresella S.r.l.*, 808 F.2d 46, 1 USPQ2d 1483 (Fed. Cir.1986).

Section 66(a) Applications. Because the requirements for receipt of a filing date set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#) are specifically limited to applications under §1 and §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1126](#), the USPTO does not apply these requirements to applications under §66(a) for “filing date” purposes. In an application under §66(a), the date of the international registration, or the effective date of a subsequent designation in which the holder of an international registration seeks extension of protection in the United States, is treated as the effective filing date.

1402.03 Specificity of Terms Used in Identifying Goods and Services

Applicants frequently use broad terms to identify the goods or services in an application. In applications based solely on §1(a), [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), the applicant must have used the mark in commerce on all of the goods and/or services as of the application filing date. See *First Int’l Services Corp. v. Chuckles, Inc.*, 5 USPQ2d 1628 (TTAB 1987). In applications filed under §1(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), and §44, [15 U.S.C. §1126](#), the applicant must assert a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the specified goods and/or services as of the application filing date. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(b\)\(2\)](#). In an application filed under §66(a), [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), the verified statement is part of the international registration on file at the IB, and must allege that the applicant/holder has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce with the goods/services identified in the international application or subsequent designation. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)\(1\)](#). The requirement for use or a bona fide intent to use is not necessarily violated by broad identifying terms. When a mark is used on a number of items that make up a homogeneous group, a term that identifies the group as a whole would be understood as encompassing products of the same general type that are commercially related.

As long as a broad term identifies the goods or services that are intended to be covered with reasonable certainty, it will be reasonable, from a commercial viewpoint, to consider that the mark has been used for all the related goods or services that fall in the designated group. *See In re Dynamit Nobel AG*, 169 USPQ 499 (TTAB 1971) (“ammunition” permitted because its scope was assumed to be understood); *In re Port Huron Sulphite & Paper Co.*, 120 USPQ 343 (TTAB 1959) (“paper other than board papers” approved because of evidence of actual use on various types of paper).

Where an applicant has identified its goods or services very broadly but does not use the mark on a substantial number of related goods/services encompassed by the identification language, the USPTO may require further specificity.

The examining attorney must consider the following guidelines:

- (1) A term that clearly includes particular items that are classified in more than one class (e.g., “artists’ materials”) is not acceptable, even with such additional wording as “included in this class” at the end of the identification. *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (“chronographs” held indefinite because it includes both time-recording devices in Class 9 and watches in Class 14 and because merely classifying the goods in only one of the classes does not preclude a requirement for further specificity in the identification). Other examples are “blankets,” which include such diverse and differently classified types as bed blankets in Class 24, fire blankets in Class 9, and horse blankets in Class 18; “boxes,” which include set top boxes and junction boxes in Class 9, music boxes in Class 15, and boxes for holding things, which are classified according to their material compositions; and “sports equipment,” because the nature of the equipment will determine the class, i.e., a football helmet would be in Class 9, the football uniform would be in Class 25, and a football would be in Class 28. However, the conclusion that a term would clearly include items classified in more than one class should not be drawn unless reasonable, in light of the evidence of record. *See In re Thor Tech, Inc.*, 85 USPQ2d 1474 (TTAB 2007) (“park trailer” held to be an acceptable identification, where the applicant’s evidence showed that it is a term of art generally understood by those in the industry and by consumers as a designation for a type of recreational vehicle, which unambiguously places it in Class 12; Board was not persuaded by the examining attorney’s argument that the identification was indefinite because it could also encompass mobile homes in Class 19). See [TMEP § 1402.05\(b\)](#) regarding goods that may be classified in more than one class depending on their material composition.
- (2) Some terminology is sufficient for purposes of according a filing date but too indefinite to enable proper examination (e.g., “metallic parts”). For example, in *In re Societe Des Parfums Schiaparelli, S.A.*, 122 USPQ 349, 350 n.4 (TTAB 1959), clarification of the term “beauty products” was held to be necessary because the term does not have a particular commercial meaning. In such a situation, the examining attorney may seek further information under [37 C.F.R. § 2.61\(b\)](#). See [TMEP § 814](#).
- (3) In rare instances, an identification may include a term that has multiple, entirely different meanings. If the meaning of such a term can be understood when read in association with the title of the class in which it is placed, and if the term is otherwise satisfactory, the examining attorney need not require amendment to further qualify the term. For example, “mufflers” in the clothing class would not require further modification to indicate that articles of clothing are intended, rather than automotive mufflers. The limited number of items to which this applies, however, represents a narrow exception to the general rule that an identification must itself provide a clear indication of the nature of the goods or services, without reference to the class. See [TMEP §§ 1402.01](#) and [1402.05\(b\)](#). The title of a class cannot be used to define the nature of the goods when the same item could be classified in more than one class depending on its function, material composition, or field of use. *See In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (“chronographs”

- held indefinite because it includes both chronographs that function as time recording devices in Class 9 and chronographs that function as watches in Class 14).
- (4) The common understanding of words or phrases used in an identification determines the scope and nature of the goods or services. *In re Fiat Grp. Mktg. & Corporate Commc'ns S.p.A.*, 109 USPQ2d 1593 (TTAB 2014); [TMEP §1402.07\(a\)](#). A basic and widely available dictionary should be consulted to determine the definition or understanding of a commonly used word.
 - (5) Many goods are commonly understood to move in a particular channel of trade or have particular attributes. When those goods are classified in the class that is appropriate for that common understanding, often no further specification as to the nature of those goods is necessary. However, when the goods have a special use or attributes that are not typically associated with those particular goods that would cause it to be classified in a different class, that use or attribute should be indicated in the identification in order to justify the classification. For example, “toilets” usually refers to a particular sanitary apparatus and, thus, is classified in Class 11 without further specification. However, “toilets adapted for medical patients or for use by disabled persons” are classified in Class 10 as medical apparatus based on the particular use of the goods.

With broad identifications, as with any identification that includes more than one item, the amount of proof (normally by way of specimens) necessary to assure the examining attorney that the mark has been used on “all” the items in the application will vary. See [TMEP §904.01\(a\)](#). The USPTO does not require specimens showing use of the mark for every item set forth in an application. However, if an identification is broad or so extensive that it encompasses a wide range of products or services, the applicant may be required to submit evidence that it actually uses the mark on a wide range of products or services to obtain registration. [37 C.F.R. §§2.56\(a\), 2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\), and \(e\)](#). See *In re Air Products & Chemicals, Inc.*, 192 USPQ 84, *recon. denied* 192 USPQ 157 (TTAB 1976). See [TMEP §1402.05](#) regarding accuracy of the identification.

The examining attorney should consider the degree of commercial relationship between the products. For a closely related group, a specimen showing use of the mark on one item of the group is sufficient. As the closeness of the relationship becomes less certain, specimens of use on more than one item might be necessary to show generalized use. [37 C.F.R. §§2.56\(a\), 2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\), and \(e\)](#). The nature of the mark may also be considered. “House” marks are placed on all the goods that a company produces, whereas a “product” mark that is appropriate only for a specific commodity is used only on that commodity. See [TMEP §1402.03\(b\)](#) regarding house marks, and [TMEP §1402.03\(c\)](#) regarding identifications that refer to “a full line of” a genre of products.

The appropriateness of any broad identification depends on the facts in the particular case. The examining attorney should permit applicants to adopt terms that are as broad as the circumstances justify.

1402.03(a) Inclusive Terminology

The identification should state common names for goods or services, be as complete and specific as possible, and avoid indefinite words and phrases. The terms “including,” “comprising,” “such as,” “and the like,” “and similar goods,” “products,” “concepts,” “like services” and other indefinite terms and phrases are almost always unacceptable.

The terms “namely,” “consisting of,” “particularly,” and “in particular” are definite and are preferred to set forth an identification that requires greater particularity. The examining attorney will require that vague terminology be replaced by these terms (e.g., power tools, namely, drills in Class 7; needle point kits consisting of needles, thread, and printed patterns in Class 26; or projectors, particularly projectors for the entertainment industry in Class 9).

In limited situations for closely related goods, certain indefinite terms may be used in explanatory phrases that follow a definite term -- for example, “paint for model airplanes, model cars, and the like.” *See Ex parte The A.C. Gilbert Co.*, 99 USPQ 344 (Comm’r Pats. 1953).

“Parts therefor,” as related to machinery, is acceptable when it follows a definite identification. “Accessories therefor” is usually considered indefinite, but it has been allowed in some cases, particularly in the toy field.

Identifications such as “dolls and accessories therefor” and “toy vehicles and accessories therefor” are acceptable because all goods that fall within that broad designation would be classified in Class 28 with the dolls or toy vehicles and could be the basis for a refusal of registration under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). However, this phrase should only be used in a situation where it is clear that the goods encompassed by the phrase relate closely to the primary goods and would all be classified in the same class as the primary goods.

1402.03(b) House Marks

House marks do not identify the goods – rather, they identify the manufacturer or seller over a wide variety of goods, with such goods often themselves identified by a “product mark.” Marks of this type are often used in the chemical, pharmaceutical, publishing, and food industries. A product may bear both a product mark and a house mark.

For example, a pharmaceutical manufacturer, XYZ Laboratories Corp., may sell a particular pharmaceutical preparation for a cough syrup under the product mark “FORMULA M” and also feature the house mark “XYZ LABS” on the packaging for the goods. XYZ may also use the same house mark on the packaging of its other pharmaceutical preparations to indicate that all such goods come from a common source.

In an application for registration of a house mark, the identification of goods may include wording such as “a house mark for...” As with other applications, these applications must define the type of goods with sufficient particularity to permit proper classification in a single class and to enable the USPTO to make necessary determinations under §2(d) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#).

In an application to register a mark as a house mark based on use in commerce, the applicant must demonstrate that the mark is, in fact, used as a house mark. Therefore, the examining attorney must require that the applicant provide catalogues, or similar evidence showing broad use of the mark, to substantiate this claim. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#).

An intent-to-use applicant who wishes to register a mark as a house mark must clearly indicate its intention to register the mark as a house mark during initial examination, and the circumstances must establish that the applicant’s proposed use of the mark as a house mark is credible. The nature of the mark and the capacity of the applicant to use the mark as asserted should be considered in determining whether the claim that the mark is to be used as a house mark is credible. If the applicant indicates such an intention, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that, upon filing of the allegation of use, the applicant will be required to provide evidence to substantiate use as a house mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). If the applicant cannot do so, the applicant will be required to amend the identification of goods to conform to the usual standards for specificity.

The USPTO will register a mark as a house mark only when evidence shows sufficient use as a house mark.

Therefore, if an applicant seeks to register a house mark in an application under any basis, including §44 or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, the examining attorney must require evidence that the mark is in fact used as a house mark. This is not a requirement for specimens, but rather a requirement that applicant provide evidence to substantiate the claim of use as a house mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). If the applicant cannot do

so, the identification of goods must be amended to remove the indication “a house mark for” and the remaining wording must comply with the requirements for sufficient specificity as to such goods.

If an applicant further indicates that its “house mark” is to be used “for a full line” of products, the examining attorney must review both the nature of use of the mark as a house mark as well as the acceptability of the claim of “a full line” by considering the specimens or other evidence of record. See [TMEP §1402.03\(c\)](#) for the requirements for identifications for a “full line of” products. If the record does not support use of the “house mark” on a sufficient number or variety of products in its line, the examining attorney may require applicant to provide evidence in support of a “full line” or amend the identification to identify the goods with the requisite specificity.

Example: The identification specifies “a house mark for a full line of building paints.” The examining attorney must review the specimen and any other evidence of record to determine (1) whether the mark is being used as a house mark rather than a product mark and (2) whether the mark is used on a sufficient number or variety of products (e.g., interior paints, exterior paints, house paints, floor paints, etc.) to substantiate use for a full line. If the record does not support both use as a house mark and use on a sufficient variety of products, the examining attorney may require applicant to provide additional evidence in support of applicant’s claims of the mark being both “a house mark” and for “a full line.” In the alternative, the applicant may amend the goods to remove the indication “a house mark for a full line” and identify the “building paints” with further specificity (e.g., damp proofing paints, interior paints, house paints, floor paints, etc.).

1402.03(c) Marks for a “Full Line of ...”

In rare circumstances, the USPTO may accept an identification of goods that refers to “a full line of” a genre of products. To qualify for the use of such terminology, the line of products must be in one class. The most commonly accepted situation is “a full line of clothing.” While there may be some rare exceptions, all clothing is classified in Class 25. Another example would be pharmaceuticals, which are almost all classified in Class 5. Therefore, as long as the specimens and/or other evidence show use of the mark on virtually all of these goods, the “full line of” language may be used. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). It may not be used in a situation such as “a full line of hand tools.” Even though Class 8 is the general class for hand tools, a number of items that might be considered hand tools are classified in other classes (e.g., a non-electric egg beater is in Class 21 but could be considered to fall within the broad category of “hand tools”).

The “full line of” language may be used only in appropriate situations and the circumstances and specimens or other evidence of record must be analyzed carefully to ensure that an applicant who does not in fact use a particular mark on a sufficient number or variety of products in its line does not receive a trademark registration that could potentially bar the registration of another applicant who uses a similar mark on different products. If the goods are a “full line of pharmaceuticals,” the examining attorney must require the applicant to provide evidence that it uses the mark in connection with pharmaceuticals to treat diseases or health problems in all chapters in the World Health Organization (“WHO”) International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems. See *In re Astra Merck Inc.*, 50 USPQ2d 1216 (TTAB 1999) (evidence of use on only three products does not justify registration of the mark for a full line of those products). See also [TMEP §904.01\(a\)](#).

Although the USPTO will accept “a full line of clothing” as a sufficient identification, because the applicant is committing to virtually all the goods described by the broad language and the validity of the registration depends on the applicant’s statement that it is using the mark on all the goods and the evidence of such use as a “full line,” the USPTO will not accept an identification of goods as merely “clothing.” In the latter situation, the applicant must identify the items of the clothing by their common commercial name since the applicant is not likely using the mark for all items of clothing, and the registration should be limited to only those items of clothing on which the applicant is actually using the mark.

In some cases, it may be more appropriate to indicate that the applicant is providing a full line of a subset of a genre of products (e.g., “a full line of sports clothing” or “a full line of anti-viral and cardiovascular pharmaceuticals”). As with any identification that refers to a full line of a genre of products, all of the products must be classifiable in one class and the specimens and/or other evidence must show use of the mark on virtually all of the relevant goods.

An intent-to-use applicant who wishes to register a mark for a full line of a genre of products must clearly indicate an intention to register the mark for a full line during initial examination, and the circumstances must establish that the applicant’s proposed use of the mark for a full line of products is credible. The nature of the mark and the capacity of the applicant to use the mark as asserted should be considered in determining whether the claim that the mark is to be used for a full line of products is credible. If the applicant indicates such an intention, the examining attorney should advise the applicant that, upon filing of the allegation of use, the applicant will be required to provide evidence to substantiate use for a full line of products. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). If the applicant cannot do so, the applicant will be required to amend the identification of goods to conform to the usual standards for specificity.

The USPTO will register a mark for a “full line of” a genre of products only when evidence shows the mark is actually used as such. If an applicant seeks to register a mark for a “full line of” a genre of products in an application under any basis, including §44 or §66(a) of the Trademark Act, the examining attorney must require evidence to substantiate use for a full line of products. This is not a requirement for specimens, but rather a requirement that applicant provide evidence to substantiate the claim of use as a mark for a “full line of” a genre of products. [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#). For example, in the pharmaceutical context, proof of use in connection with pharmaceuticals to treat diseases or health problems in all categories in the WHO International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems reflects appropriate use to qualify for a “full line.” If the applicant cannot establish sufficient use for a “full line of” a genre of products, the identification of goods must be amended to conform to remove the indication “full line of” and the remaining wording must comply with the requirements for sufficient specificity as to such goods..

1402.03(d) Identifying Computer Programs with Specificity

Any identification of goods for computer programs must be sufficiently specific to permit determinations with respect to likelihood of confusion. The purpose of requiring specificity in identifying computer programs is to avoid the issuance of unnecessary refusals of registration under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#) where the actual goods of the parties are not related and there is no conflict in the marketplace. *See In re Linkvest S.A.*, 24 USPQ2d 1716 (TTAB 1992). Due to the proliferation and degree of specialization of computer programs, broad specifications such as “computer programs in the field of medicine” or “computer programs in the field of education” will not be accepted, unless the particular function or purpose of the program in that field is indicated. For example, “computer programs for use in cancer diagnosis” or “computer programs for use in teaching children to read” would be acceptable.

Typically, indicating only the intended users, field, or industry will not be deemed sufficiently definite to identify the nature of a computer program. However, this does not mean that user, field, or industry indications can never be sufficient to specify the nature of the computer program adequately. For example, “downloadable geographical information system (GIS) software” would be acceptable. Geographical information systems, also known in the industry as GIS, are well-defined computer applications that do not need further definition. If the identification in the application does not adequately specify the nature of a computer program, further information may be requested. Any questions concerning the recognition of a term of art for a computer program should be discussed with senior attorneys, managing attorneys, or other examining attorneys who are knowledgeable in the computer field.

If an applicant asserts that the computer programs at issue serve a wide range of diverse purposes, the applicant must submit appropriate evidence and/or specimens to substantiate such a broad identification of goods. See [37 C.F.R. §2.61\(b\)](#); [TMEP §§1402.03\(b\)–\(c\)](#).

Generally, an identification for “computer software” will be acceptable as long as *both* the function/purpose *and* the field of use are set forth. However, specifying the field of use is not required when the identified software has a clear function and is not field-specific/content-specific. Further, some general wording is allowed. The following wording is acceptable:

- (1) *Computer game software.*
- (2) *Computer operating programs and computer operating systems:* Software under this category comprises master control programs that run the computer itself. They are the first programs loaded when the computer is turned on and set the standards for the application programs that run in the operating system or operating program.
- (3) *Computer utility programs:* These programs must be designed to perform maintenance work on a computer system or components thereof, such as file management (sorting, copying, comparing, listing, and searching files), as well as diagnostic and measurement routines that check the health and performance of the computer system. Beware of identifications that read “Computer utility programs, namely, business software.” - This is **NOT** a utility program.
- (4) *Computer software development tools:* These programs are designed to create other computer programs. This is one of the few exceptions in which use of the term “tools” is acceptable.
- (5) *Database management software [if for general use, otherwise indicate specific field]:* Software that controls the organization, storage, retrieval, security, and integrity of data in a database (an electronically stored collection of data). Other examples:
 - Computer software for use in database management.
 - Database management software for use by financial advisors.
 - Database management software in the field of baseball cards.
- (6) *Spreadsheet software [if for general use, otherwise indicate specific field]:* Software that simulates a paper spreadsheet, or worksheet, in which columns or individual cells of numbers are summed, subtracted, multiplied, or divided with the contents of other columns or cells for budgets and plans. Other examples:
 - Spreadsheet software for general use.
 - Computer software for use as a spreadsheet.
 - Spreadsheet software for use by budget analysts.
- (7) *Word processing programs [if for general use, otherwise indicate specific field]:* Software used to create text documents. Other examples:
 - Downloadable computer software for word processing.
 - Computer programs for word processing.
- (8) *Computer aided design (CAD) software [if for general use, otherwise indicate specific field]:* Computer Aided Design software is generally used to design products. CAD software is available for generic design or specialized uses, such as architectural, electrical, and mechanical design. Other examples:
 - Computer aided design (CAD) software for general use.
 - Computer aided design (CAD) software for designing integrated circuits.

- Computer aided design (CAD) software for architectural use.
- (9) *Computer aided manufacturing (CAM) software [if for general use, otherwise indicate specific field]:* Computer Aided Manufacturing software automates manufacturing systems and techniques, including numerical control, process control, robotics, and materials requirements planning. Other examples:
- Computer aided manufacturing (CAM) software for general use.
 - Computer aided manufacturing (CAM) software for use in the manufacture of airplane components.
 - Computer aided manufacturing (CAM) software for integrated circuits.
- (10) *CAD/CAM software [if for general use, otherwise indicate specific field]:* Computer Aided Design/Computer Aided Manufacturing software integrates functions of CAD and CAM software in that products designed by the CAD systems are directly inputted into the CAM systems for manufacture.

Examples of indefinite and unacceptable wording include the following:

- (1) Computer programs featuring multimedia (unless the applicant specifies the content, e.g., interactive multimedia software featuring audio and video information for patients on the subject of treatments, procedures and alternatives related to dentistry).
- (2) Computer firmware (unless the applicant specifies the function/purpose of the program, and, if the program is content or field specific, the field of use).
- (3) Computer devices (must specify the common commercial name therefor).
- (4) Computer accessories (must specify the common commercial name therefor).

Computer software is a product classified in International Class 9 if it is recorded on media or is downloadable and thus can be transferred or copied from a remote computer system for use on a long-term basis. However, providing on-line non-downloadable software is considered a computer service in International Class 42 because it is generally provided for use on a temporary basis. See [TMEP §1402.11\(a\)\(xii\)](#). An exception, however, is online or temporary use of non-downloadable game software, which is classified in International Class 41. See *id.*

See [TMEP §1402.11\(a\)](#) regarding identification and classification of computer services.

1402.03(e) Identifying Publications with Specificity

When the goods are publications, the identification must indicate both the specific physical nature and the literary subject matter of the publication.

Example - “Magazines in the field of medicine” is acceptable in Class 16.

Example - “Newsletters about television programs” is acceptable in Class 16.

In the case of publications of a specialized nature, the identification should describe the goods by specific names or wording that explains their specialized nature.

Example - “Children’s storybooks” is acceptable in Class 16.

Even if the mark itself indicates the subject of a publication, the identification must specify the subject matter.

As a general rule, “books” should be described by subject matter (e.g., “religious books” or “travel books”). In the case of a mark used by a publishing house on books, a general identification, such as “a house mark for books” or “a full line of books” is sufficient if supported by the record. However, if the goods are restricted to certain types of literature, such as science fiction, engineering, romance, or poetry, the identification should so indicate. The applicant may also indicate the channels of trade or groups of purchasers for the goods.

When the subject matter is not a significant aspect of a publication, the identification may merely give an indication of the general character or type of the publication.

Example - “General feature magazines” is acceptable in Class 16.

Publications in Class 16 are in printed form. Although it is acceptable for identifications in Class 16 to indicate that the publications are “printed,” such wording is not required for classification of the goods.

Downloadable publications and publications recorded on electronic media are classified in Class 9. Identifications for electronic publications must indicate the nature and subject matter of the publications and must specify that the goods are downloadable or recorded on computer media for classification in Class 9.

Example - “Electronic publications, namely, {indicate specific type of publication, e.g., book, magazine, manual} featuring {indicate subject matter} recorded on computer media” is acceptable in Class 9.

See [TMEP §1402.11\(a\)\(x\)](#) regarding online publications.

1402.03(f) Recognition of Industry Terms

Widely used industry terminology should be recognized as sufficient to identify the goods or services when supported by dictionary definitions or other authoritative references. Examples of acceptable terminology are “telecommunications services, namely, personal communications services” and “telecommunications services, namely, ISDN services.” If there is any doubt as to the widespread recognition of the terminology, a brief explanation of the product or activity should be included in the identification, but the accepted industry terminology may remain part of the identification as well. See [TMEP §1402.01](#) regarding “terms of art.”

1402.03(g) Name and/or Acronym of Trademark Protection System or Scheme for Geographical Indication Appearing in Identification

A geographical indication of origin identifies goods as originating in a territory known for a given quality, reputation, or other characteristic associated with the goods. WTO Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights, Art. 22.1, Apr. 15, 1994. Geographical indications are used in connection with wines and spirits, foodstuffs, and agricultural products. They are typically names of geographic places and identify the goods as having characteristics associated with the named places, e.g., “Parmigiano Reggiano” for cheese, “Barolo” for wine, “Colombian” for coffee, and “Parma” for ham. See [TMEP §§1210.08](#) and [1306.02](#).

Different countries, as well as governmental organizations such as the European Union, have different legal systems or schemes to protect geographical indications of origin. They also have different terminology that has significance in the relevant territories. The following are examples of acronyms and their full names used to designate a protection system or scheme in a particular territory:

COUNTRY	ACRONYM	FULL NAME
Brazil	GI	Geographical Indication
Chile	DO	Denominacion de Origen
European Union	AOP	L'Appellation d'Origine Protégée
European Union	PDO	Protected Designation of Origin
European Union	PGI	Protected Geographical Indication
France	AOC	Appellation d'Origine Contrôlée (also referred to as appellation of origin)
Italy	DOC	Controlled Designation of Origin (Denominazione di Origine Controllata)
Italy	DOCG	Controlled and Guaranteed Designation of Origin
Italy	DOP	Protected Designation Origin
Italy	IGP	Protected Geographic Indication
Portugal	DOC	Denominação de Origem Controlada
Romania	DOC	Denumire de origine Controlat
Spain	DO	Denominacion de Origen (also referred to as designation of origin)

The identification should only contain the common commercial or generic name of the goods and/or services, using terminology that is generally understood by the average consumers in the United States. *See* [TMEP §1402.01](#). Therefore, if the identification refers to a protection system or scheme, such wording should not be part of the identification of goods and/or services featuring those goods. This includes not only when the protection system or scheme is indicated by an acronym and/or full name along with reference to a region-specific or particular protection system or scheme (e.g., “DO wines with a protected designation of origin Rioja”), but also when the full name is used in a general or broad sense and without reference to a region-specific or particular protection system or scheme (e.g., “wines protected by appellation of origin” or “distilled spirits protected by geographical indication”).

The examining attorney must issue an identification requirement instructing the applicant to submit an amended identification that is definite and complies with the USPTO identification practice. Applicant may not delete the reference to a protection system or scheme entirely from the identification because such an amendment would impermissibly broaden the scope of the goods and/or services. *See* [TMEP §§1402.06, 1402.07](#). The amended identification must indicate that the goods are made or produced, or the services feature goods made or produced, in accordance with certain, specific, or adopted standards. The language used to describe the goods and/or services should be understandable to the average person and should not require an in-depth knowledge of the relevant field. [TMEP §1402.01](#).

Examples of original identifications and the amended wording that may be recommended are:

ORIGINAL ID	RECOMMENDED AMENDMENT
DOC wines protected by the designation of origin Barolo, Italy	Wines produced in the Barolo region of Italy in accordance with adopted standards
AOC wines, namely, wines with protected appellation of origin	Wines made from grapes from <i>{insert geographic name or region}</i> in accordance with specific standards

ORIGINAL ID	RECOMMENDED AMENDMENT
Distilled spirits protected by appellation of origin	Distilled spirits produced in <i>{insert geographic name or region}</i> in accordance with certain standards
PGI distilled spirits made from grains from a protected geographical indication	Distilled spirits made from grains from <i>{insert geographic name or region}</i> in accordance with adopted standards
Grape brandy protected by the appellation of origin (AOC) Beaujolais	Brandy from the Beaujolais region of France made in accordance with adopted standards
Cheeses complying with the characteristics of the Franche-Comté registered designation of origin	Cheese made in the Franche-Comté region of France in accordance with specific standards
Retail store services featuring cheese with the protected designation of origin Franche-Comté	Retail store services featuring cheese from the Franche-Comté region of France made in accordance with specific standards

Please note that, occasionally, the acronym and/or full name of a non-English region-specific protection system or scheme may be part of the mark and appear on the drawing. In such cases, a translation and/or disclaimer of the non-English wording must be made of record, as appropriate, the same as with other marks comprising foreign matter that is descriptive or generic. See [TMEP §§809–809.03](#) regarding translations and [TMEP §§1213–1213.11](#) regarding disclaimers.

1402.04 Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual

The USPTO maintains an ID Manual comprised of a listing of acceptable identifications of goods and services compiled by the Office of the Administrator for Trademark Classification Policy and Practice.

Although entries in the ID Manual are acceptable as written, the examining attorney may require an amendment to an otherwise definite identification in certain circumstances. *See, for example,* [TMEP §§1401.07](#) and [1203.02\(e\)\(ii\)](#). The ID Manual is updated periodically, and the entries in it are more extensive and specific than the Alphabetical List under the Nice Classification that is published by WIPO. The listing is not exhaustive, but is intended to serve as a guide to examining attorneys in acting on applications and to the public in preparing applications.

Using identification language from the ID Manual enables trademark owners to avoid objections by examining attorneys concerning indefinite identifications of goods or services; however, applicants should note that they must assert actual use in commerce or a bona fide intent to use the mark in commerce for the goods or services specified. Therefore, even if the identification is definite, examining attorneys may inquire as to whether the identification chosen accurately describes the applicant’s goods or services (see [TMEP §1402.05](#) regarding accuracy of identifications).

No listing could include all possible identifications for the multitude of products and services for which marks may be registered. Therefore, a primary use of the ID Manual’s listings, in addition to indicating precise identifications that will be accepted, is to indicate by analogy and example the kinds of identifications that will be acceptable for products and services not covered by the existing listings.

Any identification of goods and services in the ID Manual that has a letter "T" in the TM5 column indicates that the identification is acceptable in the USPTO, the Japanese Patent Office (“JPO”), the European Union Intellectual Property Office (“EUIPO”), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (“KIPO”), and the State Administration for Industry and Commerce (“SAIC”) of the People’s Republic of China.

In a TEAS Plus application, the application must include correctly classified goods and/or services, with an identification of goods and/or services taken directly from the USPTO ID Manual, available through the TEAS Plus form. [37 C.F.R. §2.22\(a\)\(8\)](#); [TMEP §819.01\(g\)](#). In a TEAS or TEAS RF application, the applicant may include correctly classified goods and/or services taken from the ID Manual or may create and enter a listing of recognizable goods and/or services. See [TMEP §805](#) regarding listing particular goods or services in an application and designation of international class number(s) and [TMEP §1402.02](#) regarding entitlement to a filing date with respect to the identification of goods and services.

The ID Manual can be viewed from the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>, and it is accessible from within TEAS.

1402.05 Accuracy of Identification

An identification is unacceptable if it is inconsistent with the goods or services indicated by the specimens, or if the ordinary meaning of the identification language is at variance with the goods or services evidenced by the specimens or any other part of the record.

The examining attorney may require an amendment of the identification language to accurately describe the goods or services. *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (affirming decision that the examining attorney properly required amendment of the term “chronographs” in the identification of goods so that proper classification could be determined); *In re Faucher Indus. Inc.*, 107 USPQ2d 1355, 1361 (TTAB 2013) (finding that examining attorney properly questioned the nature of the goods and required that the identification of goods be amended to disclose the material composition of the goods so that proper classification could be determined). Moreover, the examining attorney must require an amendment to the identification language when it includes broad wording that would normally be acceptable, but the specimen(s) shows that the actual goods or services are a specialized type or are used only in a specialized trade channel. In this situation, the identification would be overly broad and misleading.

The amended identification should specify the specialized characteristic or specialized trade channel to accurately describe the goods or services. *In re Petroglyph Games, Inc.*, 91 USPQ2d 1332, 1335 (TTAB 2009) (Board stating that “[t]he Office’s requirement that the examining attorney ensure the accuracy of the identification of goods is abundantly clear.”); *In re Water Gremlin Co.*, 635 F.2d 841, 208 USPQ 89 (C.C.P.A. 1980), *aff’g* 204 USPQ 261 (TTAB 1979) (examining attorney has discretion to require applicant to state whether goods are packaged in container to which mark refers); *Kiekhaefer Corp. v. Willys-Overland Motors, Inc.*, 236 F.2d 423, 111 USPQ 105 (C.C.P.A. 1956) (requirement to restrict identification to “outboard motors” considered proper); *The Procter & Gamble Co. v. Economics Laboratory, Inc.*, 175 USPQ 505, 509 (TTAB 1972), *modified without opinion*, 498 F.2d 1406, 181 USPQ 722 (C.C.P.A. 1974) (noting that, in view of specimens, greater specificity should have been required in identifying registrant’s detergent product); *In re Toro Mfg. Corp.*, 174 USPQ 241 (TTAB 1972) (noting that use on “grass-catcher bags for lawn-mowers” did not justify the broad identification “bags,” which would encompass goods diverse from and commercially unrelated to applicant’s specialized article); *Ex parte Consulting Engineer Publishing Co.*, 115 USPQ 240 (Comm’r Pats. 1957) (amendment of “periodical” to “monthly news bulletin” required).

In *Petroglyph Games*, 91 USPQ2d at 1336, the Board addressed the question of whether the identification “computer game software” was accurate for the mark BATTLECAM if the mark was being used only for a feature of a computer game. The Board found that the subsets of computer code identified by the mark, which the specimen indicated supported only particular aspects or features of the computer game, could also be accurately identified as “computer game software,” noting that although “there is a market for selling or distributing to computer game players all the software that allows a game to be played in its entirety, there may also be a market for computer game software related to only certain game features, perhaps among game developers or producers who might want to include a particular feature in a complete game, or perhaps

among players seeking after-market add-ons or enhancements for existing games.” Therefore, it would not be inaccurate to identify such software simply as “computer game software.”

The wording of an identification cannot be amended to accurately describe the goods or services if the amendment would add to or expand the scope of the identification. See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1402.06 et seq.](#) and [1402.07 et seq.](#)

See [TMEP §1402.13](#) regarding requirements to amend a portion of the identification of goods/services.

1402.05(a) Goods That Are Components or Ingredients

When a mark is used to identify only a component or ingredient of a product, and not the entire product, the identification must (1) precisely set forth the common name of the component or ingredient, (2) indicate that the component or ingredient is sold as a component or ingredient of another finished product, and (3) set forth the common name of the finished product of which the identified component or ingredient forms a part, e.g., “acoustic baffles sold as a component of loudspeakers.” In other words, when the specimen or other material in the record clearly indicates that the mark relates only to a distinguishable component or ingredient of a finished product, then the application should identify that component or ingredient as the goods rather than the finished product. The identification should leave no doubt that the mark refers only to the component or ingredient and not to the entire product. See *Ex parte The Joseph & Feiss Co.*, 114 USPQ 463 (Comm’r Pats. 1957); *Ex parte Palm Beach Co.*, 114 USPQ 463 (Comm’r Pats. 1957); *Mercantile Stores Co. v. The Joseph & Feiss Co.*, 112 USPQ 298 (Comm’r Pats. 1957); *In re Libbey-Owens-Ford Glass Co.*, 75 USPQ 202 (Comm’r Pats. 1947). For example, if a mark is used on a label for fiber-optic cables to identify only the optical fibers that are components of the cables, “optical fibers sold as a component of fiber-optical cables” would be an acceptable identification to accurately identify the goods.

The examining attorney should examine the specimen to determine whether it shows use of the mark to identify the separate component or ingredient or the finished product in its entirety. Components or ingredients sold as part of a finished product are classified in the class of the finished product, since the components or ingredients have been incorporated into other finished goods.

Example – The identification of goods lists “glass door lites” in Class 19. (Glass door lites are glass panes for installation into doors.) The specimen is a label for a metal door which shows use of the mark to identify a particular component of the door, while the door itself is identified by a different mark. As the mark for which registration is sought identifies a component of a finished product and not a separate finished product, the identification must specify that the goods are “glass door lites sold as components of metal doors,” and the proper classification is that of “metal doors,” namely, Class 6.

If the mark does not pertain solely to a component or ingredient rather than the finished or composite product, the identification should not specify the component or ingredient as the goods.

Components or ingredients used for the manufacture of other finished products that are sold *separately* from the finished products are classified in the class of the specified components or ingredients, since the components or ingredients have not yet been transformed into the finished goods.

The same rules of language construction for purposes of amendment, as set forth in [TMEP §§1402.01 et seq.](#), [1402.06 et seq.](#), and [1402.07 et seq.](#), apply to amendments of identifications to indicate components or ingredients. Thus, whether an identification may be amended will depend on the particular circumstances of each application.

Example - The indefinite term “fabric” may be amended to the definite identification “fabric sold as an integral component of finished furniture” but may not be amended to “furniture,” which is beyond the scope of the identification.

See [TMEP §1402.05](#) regarding accuracy of the identification.

1402.05(b) Material Composition

According to the General Remarks of the Nice Classification, unworked or semi-worked raw materials are in principle classified according to their material composition. See [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#). For example, “gold, unworked or semi-worked” is classified in Class 14 and “raw or semi-worked rubber” is classified in Class 17.

The General Remarks of the Nice Classification also provide the following guidance on the classification of finished goods:

A finished product is in principle classified according to its function or purpose. If the function or purpose of a finished product is not mentioned in any class heading, the finished product is classified by analogy with other comparable finished products, indicated in the Alphabetical List. *If none is found, other subsidiary criteria, such as that of the material of which the product is made or its mode of operation, are applied.*

[TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#) (emphasis added). If an identification of goods is specific, but the goods could be classified in more than one class depending on the material composition, then the material composition must be indicated in the identification of the goods.

Example - “Statues” refers to specific items; however, the classification depends on the material composition. “Statues of non-precious metal” are classified in Class 6; “statues of precious metal” are classified in Class 14; “statues of wax, wood, plaster, or plastic” are classified in Class 20; and “statues of glass” are classified in Class 21.

However, in certain situations, because of the nature of the particular industry and the knowledge that the items are made out of different materials and are classified accordingly, an indication of the material composition in the identification may be unnecessary. See [TMEP §§1401.07](#) and [1402.03](#) for further explanation.

When goods, whether finished or not, are classified according to material composition, and the goods are made of more than one material, the goods are classified according to the material that predominates. See Nice General Remarks in [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#). The identification must clearly set forth the primary material composition of the goods for proper classification.

Example - “Statues primarily of precious metal and also including glass” are classified in Class 14 because the primary composition is precious metal, and statues of precious metal are classified in Class 14.

Example - “Statues primarily of glass and also including precious metal” are classified in Class 21 because the primary composition is glass, and statues of glass are classified in Class 21.

1402.06 Amendments Permitted to Clarify or Limit Identification

Trademark Rule 2.71(a), [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#), restricts amendments to the identification of goods or services as follows, “The applicant may amend the application to clarify or limit, but not to broaden, the identification of goods and/or services” [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#); see *In re Jimmy Moore LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1764 (TTAB 2016). This rule applies to all applications.

Section 7(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(c\)](#), provides that filing an application for registration on the Principal Register establishes constructive use and nationwide priority, contingent on issuance of the registration (see [TMEP §201.02](#)). Therefore, the identification of goods and/or services in an application

defines the scope of those rights established by the filing of an application for registration on the Principal Register.

1402.06(a) Limiting the Identification of Goods and Services

As noted above, the rules permit amendments to limit the identification of goods and services.

Deletions from the identification of goods and services are also permitted. “Deletion” means the elimination of an existing item in an identification of goods and services in its entirety. If the applicant wishes to amend the identification of goods and services to delete one or more items, the examining attorney should accept the amendment, if it is timely and otherwise proper. However, once the applicant has expressly amended the identification of goods and services to delete an item, it may not be reinserted in a later amendment.

If the applicant wishes to amend the identification of goods and services to restrict one or more of the items by inserting qualifying language within the scope of the identification or substituting more specific language, the examining attorney should accept the amendment, if it is timely and otherwise proper. Qualifying language, however, may not be deleted from an identification.

Example - If the applicant initially identifies the goods as “publications,” the applicant may amend to substitute one or more terms that fall under the definition of publications. Likewise, if an applicant identifies its goods as “pamphlets,” the applicant may amend to include “brochures,” because these terms are generally equivalent and interchangeable. In either case, the applicant must specify the subject matter. See [TMEP §1402.03\(e\)](#).

Example - If the applicant initially identifies the services as “charitable services” and wishes to amend to “charitable fundraising” in Class 36 and “charitable services, namely, providing vision screenings” in Class 44, the amendment should be permitted. Both specific services are logically included under “charitable services.”

Example - If the applicant initially identifies the goods as “commercial cooking ovens sold to restaurants,” the applicant cannot delete the language “sold to restaurants,” because this would broaden the identification.

If an applicant wishes to amend the identification of goods and services to insert an item that is equivalent to or logically encompassed by an item already included in the identification of goods and services, the examining attorney should permit the amendment, if it is timely and otherwise proper.

On the other hand, an applicant may not amend an identification of goods/services to add or substitute a term that is not logically included within the scope, or to add exclusionary language that falls outside the scope, of the terms originally identified or that is otherwise qualitatively different from the goods and services as originally identified.

Example - If the applicant identifies the goods as “computer programs,” the applicant may not add or substitute computers or other items of computer hardware to the listing.

Example - If the applicant initially identifies the goods as “hats,” the applicant may not add or substitute “scarves.” Likewise, the applicant may not add or substitute “shirts” for “slacks.”

Example - If the applicant identifies its services as “ophthalmology services,” the applicant may not amend the identification to “medical services,” because the amendment would expand the identification to include services beyond the scope of those identified initially.

The scope of the goods and services, as originally identified or as amended by an express amendment, establishes the outer limit for any later amendments. See [TMEP §1402.07](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#), there is no general prohibition against specific types of limitations in identifications of goods and services, such as the use of negatives, exceptions, or similar language. Limitations on identifications phrased in the negative or as exceptions are acceptable, if they are otherwise proper.

Because [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#) precludes additions that broaden the identification, examining attorneys should not require or suggest unduly restrictive identifications. See *In re Sentry Chem. Co.*, 230 USPQ 556 (TTAB 1986). Once the identification has been limited, it cannot be expanded later. See *In re Swen Sonic Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1794 (TTAB 1991); *In re M.V Et Associes*, 21 USPQ2d 1628 (Comm'r Pats. 1991). Also, when requiring amendments to the identification, examining attorneys must advise applicants that additions that broaden the identification are not permitted.

1402.06(b) Clarifying the Identification of Goods and Services

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#), an applicant may amend “to clarify” the identification of goods and/or services. The applicant may clarify an identification that is indefinite or overly broad to identify goods and/or services that are within the scope of the goods and services in the identification. As noted in [TMEP §1402.06](#), filing an application for registration on the Principal Register establishes a constructive date of first use in commerce, contingent on issuance of the registration. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(c\)](#). Accordingly, the applicant may not expand those rights through an amendment that broadens the identification of goods and/or services.

Thus, the applicant may amend from the more general to the specific, but the applicant may not amend from the specific to the more general. The scope of the goods/services identified initially, or as limited by an express amendment, establishes the outer limit for permissible amendments. See [TMEP §§1402.07](#); *In re Jimmy Moore LLC*, 119 USPQ2d 1764 (TTAB 2016).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, classification may provide some guidance in determining whether an amendment exceeds the scope of the goods/services identified initially, but it is not controlling. In an application under §1 or §44, the examining attorney may suggest and accept amendments to the identification that result in a change of class, if the amended identification does not exceed the scope of the original identification.

Example - If an applicant has erroneously identified its goods and services as “menus” but, in fact, the applicant intends to register the mark for restaurant services, the applicant may not amend the identification to “restaurant services.” In such a case, the original identification, which is specific and narrow in scope, may not be expanded to services beyond the scope of that identification.

Example - If an applicant has erroneously identified its goods and services as “bottles for salad dressing” but, in fact, the applicant intends to register the mark for salad dressing, the applicant may not amend the identification to “salad dressing.” However, if an applicant identifies its goods and services as “bottles of salad dressing,” the applicant may amend the identification to “salad dressing.” As above, where the original language is specific and narrow in scope, the identification may not be expanded to goods beyond that scope.

Example - If an applicant has erroneously identified its goods and services either as “packaging and labels” or as “packaging and labels for toys” but, in fact, the applicant intends to register the mark for toys, the applicant may not amend to correct the identification, because “toys” is not within the scope of the initial identification.

In a §66(a) application, classification is assigned by the IB and may not be changed. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\)](#), [1402.01\(c\)](#), and [1904.02\(b\) and \(c\)](#) regarding §66(a) applications.

1402.07 Scope of Identification of Goods and Services for Purposes of Amendment

1402.07(a) The “Ordinary-Meaning” Test

In applications under §1 or §44, for the purpose of determining the scope of an identification, the examining attorney should consider the ordinary meaning of the wording apart from the class number designation. The class number (*see* [TMEP §§1401.03](#) *et seq.*), whether inserted by the applicant or the USPTO, does not limit the scope of permissible amendments. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(f\)](#). If the applicant designates the class by number, this information may be weighed with other factors for the benefit of the applicant in determining the scope of permissible amendments.

However, if the applicant does not merely designate the class number, but expressly limits the goods or services recited to those that are within one or more classes, the applicant may not amend to specify items not in those classes.

In many cases, the identification is merely a repetition of the entire general class heading for a given class.

However, use of the words comprising a class heading as an identification of goods or services in an application filed with the USPTO or in a request for extension of protection notified under the Madrid Protocol is not deemed to include all the goods or services in the established scope of that class. *In re Fiat Grp. Mktg. & Corporate Commc'ns S.p.A.*, 109 USPQ2d 1593, 1598 (TTAB 2014) . In this situation, the USPTO will look to the ordinary meaning of the words for the purposes of determining the scope of the identification. The USPTO will not permit the applicant to amend to include any item that falls in the class, unless the item falls within the ordinary meaning of the words in the heading. *See Id.* at 1597 (finding that the wording from the class heading, “business management services,” refers to services that are significantly different from and do not include “retail store services”). As noted in [TMEP §1402.01\(b\)](#), class headings are generally unacceptable to identify goods/services in United States applications, even if the class heading is used as the identification in the foreign registration.

In §66(a) applications, the classification assigned by the IB cannot be changed, so the scope of the identification for purposes of permissible amendments *is* limited by the class. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(f\)](#). *See* [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\)](#), [1402.01\(c\)](#), and [1904.02\(c\)](#). For example, if an identification in a §66(a) application is the entire class heading for a particular class, the applicant must replace any indefinite wording with goods or services within the ordinary meaning of the indefinite wording in the heading and may not amend the identification to include goods or services in other classes.

1402.07(b) Ambiguous Identifications

An applicant may amend an ambiguous identification of goods or services (i.e., an identification that fails to indicate a type of goods or services) in order to specify definite goods *or* services within the scope of the indefinite terminology.

Example - “Food” is indefinite, and may be amended to “fresh fruit” (Class 31), or “processed fruit” (Class 29), or “dog food” (Class 31). However, “food” may not be amended to “whiskey” (Class 33).

Example - “Metallic parts” is indefinite, and may be amended to “metal threaded fasteners” (Class 6), or “metal drive gears for machines” (Class 7). However, “metallic parts” may not be amended to “metal chairs” (Class 20).

Likewise, if the applicant includes wording in an indefinite identification of goods or services that, in context, is obviously superfluous, the applicant may amend the identification to specify goods *or* services within

the scope of the indefinite terminology. In many cases, the superfluous wording will not restrict the range of permissible amendments.

Example - If the applicant begins an indefinite identification of goods with superfluous wording such as “sale of . . .,” “production of . . .,” “making of . . .,” “manufacture of . . .,” (as long as it does not include the wording “custom” or “to the order and specification of others”), or similar wording, the applicant may amend to specify either goods or services within the scope of the existing identification. However, the specific terms used to preface the goods do establish some limitation as to scope. “Sale of” may justify an amendment to retail store or mail order services for specific goods, or to the goods themselves, but not to custom manufacturing or advertising agency services related to those goods.

The policy permitting applicants to amend to specify *either* goods *or* services should be construed narrowly. The applicant should only be permitted to amend from goods to services, or vice versa, when the existing identification of goods and services fails to specify a definite type of goods or services *and* when the existing identification provides reasonable notice to third parties that the applicant may be providing *either* goods *or* services within the scope of the existing identification. See [TMEP §1402.07\(c\)](#).

1402.07(c) Unambiguous Identifications

An applicant may amend an unambiguous identification of *goods* that indicates a specific type of goods to specify definite and acceptable identifications of *goods* within the scope of the existing terminology.

An applicant may amend an unambiguous identification of *services* that indicates a specific type of service to specify definite and acceptable identifications of *services* within the scope of the existing terminology.

An applicant may not amend a definite identification of goods to specify services, or vice versa, except that if the goods are of a type that are available in more than one medium, and the applicant does not specify the medium in the identification of goods, the applicant will be allowed to amend to any medium, even if one of the mediums is classified as a service.

Example - If the applicant specifies “newsletters in the field of accounting,” the applicant may amend to “printed newsletters in the field of accounting” (Class 16), “downloadable electronic newsletters in the field of accounting” (Class 9), “providing online newsletters in the field of accounting” (Class 41), or “electronic publications, namely, newsletters in the field of accounting, recorded on computer media” (Class 9). See [TMEP § 1402.11\(a\)\(x\)](#) regarding online publications.

Example - If the applicant specifies “computer programs in the field of accounting,” the applicant may only amend to specify computer programs within the scope specified, i.e., those programs concerning accounting. The applicant may not amend to any service, other than “providing temporary use of non-downloadable computer programs in the field of accounting.” The applicant may not amend from “providing temporary use of non-downloadable computer programs in the field of accounting” to “computer programs in the field of accounting,” because “computer programs” are broader in scope than “providing temporary use of non-downloadable computer programs.” Nor may the applicant amend to any goods outside the scope of those already identified.

Example - If the applicant identifies the goods as “computer programs” without specifying the field, the applicant is limited to types of specific computer programs for the purposes of amendment. The applicant has identified a definite type of goods, but USPTO policy requires further specificity as to the purpose or function of the goods. An applicant who has identified its goods as “clothing” would likewise be limited to goods within the scope of the term “clothing.”

Example - If the applicant specified “retail store services,” the applicant would be limited to amendments within the scope of this service. Although USPTO policy requires further specificity as to field, the applicant has identified a definite type of service.

Example - If the applicant identifies its goods as “stationery,” “wine labels,” or “menus,” the applicant is restricted, in any amendments, to goods within the scope of the type indicated. The applicant could not amend to specify other types of goods or services, such as “wine” or “restaurant services.”

Example - If the applicant specified the service “television programming [scheduling],” the applicant would be limited to amendments within the scope of this service. This service does not refer to a series of programs. It is only a scheduling service.

1402.07(d) Permissible Scope of Identification Not Affected by Proposed Amendment That Is Unacceptable

If the applicant proposes an amendment to the identification of goods and services, and the examining attorney determines that the amendment is unacceptable, the examining attorney should refer to the identification of goods before the proposed amendment to determine whether any later amendment is within the scope of the identification. In such a case, the applicant is not bound by the scope of the language in the proposed amendment but, rather, by the language of the identification before the proposed amendment.

If the applicant submits an amendment to the identification of goods and services, and the examining attorney determines that it is unacceptable, in whole or in part, the examining attorney must advise the applicant of the item or items that are unacceptable. For those items which are unacceptable, the examining attorney should also advise the applicant that the previous items listed in the existing identification (not the unacceptable substitute) remain operative for purposes of future amendment. If portions of an amended identification are accepted, those items may not be further amended to exceed the scope of the accepted amendment. See [TMEP §1402.07\(e\)](#).

If the applicant submitted the amendment in response to a requirement, the examining attorney must issue a final requirement for amendment of the identification, if the proposed amendment raises no new issues and the application is otherwise in condition for a final action. See [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

1402.07(e) Permissible Scope of Identification Affected by Proposed Amendment That Is Acceptable

Once an applicant amends the identification of goods and/or services in a manner that is acceptable to the examining attorney, the amendment replaces all previous identifications and restricts the scope of the goods and/or services to that of the amended language. Further amendments that would add to or expand the scope of the recited goods or services, as amended, will not be permitted. [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#); *In re Swen Sonic Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1794 (TTAB 1991) ; *In re M.V Et Associes*, 21 USPQ2d 1628 (Comm’r Pats. 1991).

This includes amendments to the identification submitted in an amendment to allege use, a statement of use, or a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.71\(a\)](#), [2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#), [2.89\(f\)](#). See [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding submission of a response to Office action and amendment to allege use that contain different amendments to the identification of goods and/or services, [TMEP §1108.02\(d\)](#) regarding identifying the goods and/or services in a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, and [TMEP §1109.13](#) regarding identifying the goods and/or services in a statement of use.

The only circumstance in which the applicant may reinsert goods or services that were omitted or deleted from the identification of goods or services is when before publication or within six months of the issuance of an examiner’s amendment (*see* [TMEP §§707-707.03](#)), whichever is earlier, the applicant objects to an amendment of the identification of goods and/or services in the examiner’s amendment on the ground that the examiner’s amendment does not reflect the agreement between the applicant and the examining attorney.

1402.08 Moving Goods and Services Between Companion Applications

If an applicant has filed separate applications to register the same mark, the applicant may, in a limited situation, amend to move items of goods or services from one application to another, if the application from

which the item is to be moved was filed on or before the filing date of the application to which it is to be moved. Such an amendment will be permitted only if some of the goods/services in one application should be classified in a different class and the companion application includes that class. If the companion application does not include that class, the proper recourse is for the applicant to file a request to divide. See [TMEP §§1110-1110.11\(a\)](#).

Moving goods/services between applications in this way may only be done if neither of the marks involved has been approved for publication in the *Official Gazette*. Moreover, items of goods/services can be moved between applications only in applications filed under § 1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. In applications under §1, the applicant may request to move goods/services under a §1(b) basis to a companion application that includes goods/services in the same class, but which are under a §1(a) basis, or vice versa. However, the examining attorney must ensure that the application to which the goods/services are moved clearly indicates that more than one basis is claimed and separately lists each basis, followed by the goods/services to which that basis applies. See [TMEP §806.02\(a\)](#). The applicant cannot amend to move items of goods/services to or from a §66(a) application.

The applicant must file a separate amendment for each application, that is, a request to delete specified goods/services in the application from which they are to be moved, specifying the serial number of the application to which they should be added, and an amendment in the application to which those goods/services are to be added, specifying the serial number of the application from which they are to be moved. The examining attorney(s) must ensure that the USPTO automated records are updated to reflect the changes in both applications.

An applicant may file a request to move all the goods/services from one application to another, if the applicant meets the requirements set forth above. The USPTO will construe such a request as a request to expressly abandon the application from which the goods/services are moved. If the request to move all the goods/services is granted, and no goods or services remain in the application from which the goods/services are moved, the USPTO will abandon the application. The USPTO will not refund the application filing fee. See [TMEP §718.01](#) regarding express abandonment.

1402.09 Use of Marks or Terms "Applicant" and "Registrant" Inappropriate in Identifications

If a mark that is registered to an entity other than the applicant is used in the identification of goods or services, the examining attorney must require that it be deleted and that generic wording be substituted. It is inappropriate to use a registered mark to identify a kind of product or a service, because such a mark indicates origin in only one party and cannot be used to define goods or services that originate in a party other than the registrant. *Camloc Fastener Corp. v. Grant*, 119 USPQ 264, 265 n.1 (TTAB 1958) . In place of the mark, a generic term must be used.

Generally, an applicant should not use its own registered or unregistered mark in an identification of goods or services in its own application. If the applicant chooses to do so, however, the applicant should be careful to use the mark as an adjective modifying the generic name of the goods or services.

In addition, the words “applicant” or “registrant” must not appear in the identification of goods or services. Before registration, use of the term “registrant” is inaccurate, and, after registration, use of the term “applicant” is inaccurate.

If the examining attorney issues a *nonfinal* action requiring amendment of the identification because it is indefinite, and the applicant responds with an amended identification that is definite but is unacceptable

because it includes a registered mark or the terms “applicant” or “registrant” in reference to the party seeking registration of the mark, this is not considered a new issue, and the examining attorney must issue a final requirement for amendment of the identification. However, if the examining attorney issues a *final* action requiring amendment of the identification because it is indefinite, and the applicant responds with an amended identification that is definite but includes a registered mark or the terms “applicant” or “registrant,” the examining attorney should treat the response as incomplete, and grant the applicant additional time to cure this deficiency, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §718.03\(b\)](#) for further information about granting an applicant additional time to perfect an incomplete response. *Examining attorneys are encouraged to try to resolve this issue by examiner’s amendment.*

1402.10 Identification of Goods and Services in Documents Filed in Connection with §1(b) Applications

See [TMEP §1104.10\(b\)\(iii\)](#) regarding examination of the identification of goods or services in an amendment to allege use; [TMEP §1108.02\(d\)](#) regarding the identification of goods or services in a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use; and [TMEP §1109.13](#) regarding examination of the identification of goods or services in a statement of use.

1402.11 Identification of Services

This section addresses identifications of particular types of services.

The primary major requirements for an acceptable identification of services are: (1) the identification must be definite; (2) it must use the common name or terminology for the services, so as to be readily understandable; (3) it must accurately describe the services; and (4) it must constitute a service as contemplated by the Trademark Act, and not merely refer to collateral or related activities associated with rendering the service. See [TMEP §§1301.01-1301.01\(b\)\(v\)](#) for information on what constitutes a service.

Example - Where a mark indicates the source of checking account services, the identification “banking services in the nature of checking account services” is more accurate than the general identification “banking services,” which is inclusive of services that may not be associated with the mark. The former identification is more definite, and clearly stated. On the other hand, if a service mark indicates the source of a bank’s many services, then the more general identification “banking services” would be appropriate. Thus, either of these identifications could be accepted depending on the particular circumstances, including the nature of the mark and its use or intended use. In both cases, the services would be classified in Class 36.

Example - “Radio broadcasting” (Class 38) would be an appropriate identification when a radio station uses a mark, such as call letters, to indicate the source of its broadcasting services generally. On the other hand, if an applicant is using the name of a weekly comedy television show as a mark, “television broadcasting” would not be appropriate because the mark does not serve to identify and distinguish the electrical transmission of the program. Instead, the applicant should identify the services as “entertainment services in the nature of an ongoing television comedy series” (Class 41).

Generally, the identification of a service should not emphasize the method or manner by which the service is provided. However, in some circumstances, it may be helpful to include such information in a trailing phrase.

Example - “Accounting services” (Class 35) is an acceptable identification of services; thus, whether this type of service is rendered online or through other means need not be mentioned.

Example - “Dinner theaters” (Class 41) emphasizes the entertainment aspect associated with theater generally. The fact that dinner is also served at the theater performance is ancillary to the primary service of presenting the theatrical production.

Fashion-show services are generally classified either as promotional services rendered by the organizer of the fashion show to the businesses or groups that sponsor the event or as an entertainment service. When the record shows that the primary purpose of conducting such a fashion show is to promote the sale of goods or services of the sponsors, the service should be recited as “promoting the goods or services of others by means of a fashion show” or “fashion show exhibitions for commercial purposes” in Class 35. Where the fashion show is presented primarily as entertainment for the general public, the service should be identified as “entertainment in the nature of fashion shows” in Class 41.

The activities recited in the identification must constitute services as contemplated by the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §§1301.01](#) *et seq.* as to what constitutes a registrable service. For example, “sales” cannot be listed as the primary activity in an identification, because the sale of one’s own goods or services is not a registrable service.

See also [TMEP §§1401.11](#) *et seq.* regarding the changes in the international classification of services effective January 1, 2002.

1402.11(a) Computer Services

1402.11(a)(i) Services Classified in Classes 35, 36, 37, 39, 40, 41, 44, and 45

Any activity consisting of a service that ordinarily falls in these classes (e.g., real estate agency services, banking services, dating services), and that happens to be provided over the Internet, is classified in the class where the underlying service is classified. For example, banking services are classified in Class 36 whether provided in a bank or online.

The following are examples of some acceptable identifications:

- “Internet advertising services in Class 35.”
- “Online banking services in Class 36.”
- “Online cosmetic skincare consultation services in Class 44.”
- “Internet-based dating, social introduction and social networking services in Class 45.”

1402.11(a)(ii) Content Providers

The term “content provider” is generally used to indicate a person or entity that provides information or entertainment content for use on the internet or electronic media. Content-provider services may be classified in a variety of classes depending upon the nature of the activity provided. Thus, the activity provided must be specified in the identification. As discussed below, the subject matter of the services may also be required for appropriate classification.

Information Provider Services

The service of providing information via the Internet is classified in the class of the information subject. Entities that provide these services by computer are considered to be “content providers,” that is, they provide the informational or substantive content of a website and/or home page. If an entity provides information in a wide variety of fields, the applicant must select the subject matter to be protected and

classify the services accordingly (e.g., business information in Class 35, banking information in Class 36, home repair information in Class 37). See [TMEP §1402.11\(b\)](#) regarding information services.

Some acceptable identifications:

- “Providing business information via a website in Class 35.”
- “Providing a website *featuring information* in the field of banking, in Class 36.” This is purely an information provision service and should be treated accordingly. The website is the means and not itself a classifiable service.
- “Providing real-time information concerning vehicle parking space availability, in Class 39.”

Audiovisual Content

Content-provider services involving the provision of online, non-downloadable videos are classified in Class 41 regardless of the subject matter of the videos. The subject matter of the videos must also be included in the identification to assist in likelihood of confusion determinations under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). For additional information on identifying and classifying computer entertainment services, see [TMEP § 1402.11\(a\)\(vii\)](#).

Other Services Offered by Content Providers

Businesses and individuals commonly provide content services in addition to other types of services. For example, Internet Service Providers (ISPs) often provide online content as well as Class 38 internet access services. For information about identifying telecommunications services provided by ISPs, see [TMEP § 1402.11\(a\)\(iii\)](#). Online audiovisual content providers may similarly offer both video-streaming services in Class 38 and online non-downloadable videos in Class 41. Content providers also may provide a variety of technological services, such as web-site hosting services, in Class 42. Each service on or in connection with which the applicant uses, or has a bona fide intention to use, the mark in commerce should be set forth in the application. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(a\)\(2\)](#) and [1051\(b\)\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#). For multiple-class application requirements, see [TMEP §1403.01](#).

1402.11(a)(iii) Provision of Telecommunications Connections to the Internet

Telecommunication connections, such as those provided by AT&T® and Verizon®, are the wired, or wireless, electronic means by which one telecommunications-enabled device, such as a telephone, smartphone, or computer, communicates with another telecommunications-enabled device. The Class 38 activities of a telecommunications connection provider do NOT include providing the computer hardware or software that enables the electronic transmission of the data. These telecommunications services connect the user’s device to the internet via wired or wireless means.

Just because an applicant is conducting an internet-based activity or rendering a service that involves electronic transmission of data, the applicant’s service is not automatically considered a telecommunications service in Class 38. For example, an applicant who merely provides a website featuring sports information is not providing “electronic transmission of messages and data in the field of sports,” in Class 38. The telecommunications services providers, such as AT&T® and Verizon®, are providing the Internet connections for the actual transmissions; the applicant is merely making the information available.

Providing online bulletin boards and chat rooms is classified in Class 38 *regardless of the content or subject matter*. The rationale for this stems from the fact that these services allow individuals to communicate with each other, like other Class 38 services.

“Providing multiple-user access to the Internet,” is classified in Class 38. *Note:* This identification covers those services provided by Internet Service Providers (“ISPs”), such as Cox®, AOL®, Comcast®, Verizon®, and AT&T®. ISPs provide the computer connection (often using the Class 38 telecommunications services of other entities) that enables a computer user to access the databases and websites of others via the Internet. These entities are considered “access providers” in that they provide the computer connection needed for a computer user to access a content provider. The word “access” should be limited to these services and should not be used in describing the services of a content provider.

Some acceptable identifications:

- “Providing telecommunications connections to the Internet or databases, in Class 38.”
- “Transmission of electronic mail, in International Class 38.”
- “Broadcasting of video and audio programs over the Internet, in Class 38.”
- “Webcasting services, in Class 38.”
- “Web conferencing services, in Class 38.”
- “Providing online chat rooms for transmission of messages among computer users concerning topics of interest to teens in Class 38.”
- “Providing multiple-user access to the Internet in Class 38.” Many ISPs have expanded their services to encompass content-based services for their subscribers. The “providing multiple-user access” identification only covers the ISP services. If the applicant wishes to protect its “content-based” services, it must identify those services with specificity and pay any additional fees, as appropriate. For information on identifying and classifying content-provider services, see [TMEP § 1402.11\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

1402.11(a)(iv) Office-Function-Type and Computerized Web Traffic Services

These services are essentially office function services (e.g., filing and record keeping) that happen to be conducted with the use of a computer:

- “Data processing services, in Class 35.”
- “Computer data entry services, in Class 35.”
- “Compilation of information into computer databases, in Class 35.”

Computerized web services include website-focused activities the primary function of which is to promote, advertise or market the websites of others by improving a website’s visibility in search engine results.

“Website traffic optimization, in Class 35.”

“Consulting services in the field of search engine optimization for sales promotion, in Class 35.”

“Promoting the goods and services of others through search engine referral traffic analysis and reporting, in Class 35.”

1402.11(a)(v) Computer Installation and Repair Services

As set forth in the Nice Alphabetical List, installation, maintenance, and repair of computer hardware are in Class 37, while installation, maintenance, and updating of computer software are activities in Class 42. Therefore, for classification purposes, the applicant must distinguish between computer *hardware* and computer *software*. For example:

- “Installation, maintenance, and repair of computer *hardware*, in Class 37.”
- “Installation, maintenance, and updating of computer *software*, in Class 42.”

If the installation and maintenance services refer to networking hardware, the service should be classified in Class 37. For example:

“Installation, maintenance, and repair of Ethernet and wireless networking hardware, in Class 37.”

If the applicant applies for “*technical support services*,” the examining attorney will require the applicant to further specify the nature of the services. Technical support services may include services classified in more than one class, including the following:

- “Technical support services, namely, troubleshooting in the nature of the repair of computer hardware, in Class 37;”
- “Technical support services, namely, providing technical advice related to the manufacture of {indicate goods being manufactured}, in Class 40;”
- “Technical support services, namely, troubleshooting of computer software problems, in Class 42;” and
- “Technical support services, namely, troubleshooting in the nature of diagnosing computer hardware and software problems, in Class 42.”

1402.11(a)(vi) Computer Retail Services

Retail store, catalog, and ordering services are classified in Class 35 no matter how the services are conducted. Any of the following identifications is acceptable:

- “Computerized online retail store services in the field of {indicate field of goods}, in Class 35.”
- “Computerized on-line ordering services in the field of {indicate field of goods}, in Class 35.”
- “Providing a website used to place online commercial orders in the field of {indicate specific field or subject matter}, in Class 35.”

Other types of retail services, including marketing, advertising, and promotion services, are also classified in Class 35 regardless of how the services are conducted. For example:

“Marketing, advertising, and promoting the retail goods and services of others through wireless electronic devices, in Class 35.”

1402.11(a)(vii) Computer Entertainment Services

Generally, entertainment services are classified in Class 41. However, the type of entertainment activity the applicant is conducting must be specified. Therefore, the wording “providing a website featuring entertainment” is not acceptable. Instead, one of the following may be appropriate:

If the services comprise an “*online game*:”

- “Entertainment services, namely, providing an online computer game, in Class 41.”

- “Providing a computer game for use network-wide by network users, in Class 41.”

If the services involve *chat rooms*: “Providing online chat rooms for transmission of messages among computer users concerning {indicate field or subject of chat room}, in Class 38.”

If the services involve providing *information*: “Provision of information relating to electronic computer games provided via the Internet, in Class 41.” See [TMEP §1402.11\(b\)](#).

If the services involve providing *non-downloadable videos*: “Providing a website featuring non-downloadable videos in the field of {indicate field or subject matter of videos}, in Class 41.”

If the services consist of *providing a particular online show “webcasted”* over the Internet: “Entertainment services, namely, providing webcasts in the field of {indicate field or subject matter}, in Class 41.”

1402.11(a)(viii) Computer Design and Development Services

Generally, computer-related design and development services, such as “design and development of computer hardware and software,” are classified in Class 42. It is important to remember that these services must be performed for the benefit of *others*. For example, if an applicant is developing its own software, it is not engaging in a recognized service. (See [TMEP §§1301.01 et seq.](#) regarding activities that do not constitute services.) The specimens must show that the applicant provides these services for other parties. Some acceptable identifications are:

- “Design and development of wireless computer networks, in Class 42.”
- “Computer services, namely, creating and maintaining websites for others, in Class 42.”
- “Duplication of computer programs, in Class 42.”

1402.11(a)(ix) Database Services

Prior to January 1, 2002, the service of providing an online database via the Internet was classified in Class 42 if the database included a wide variety of subject matter. However, effective January 1, 2002, the *subject matter or content of the online database* now governs the classification of the services. Applicants must now separate the subject matter or content of the databases into their appropriate individual international classes. Acceptable identifications include:

- “Providing an online searchable database featuring business evaluations of automobile companies, in Class 35.”
- “Providing an online computer database in the field of banking, in Class 36.”
- “Providing an online computer database in the field of computer programming, in Class 42.”

In determining whether the specimens support “database provision services,” look for the following clues:

- See if the specimens use words like “to access our database,” “our database includes...,” etc.
- Confirm that the information provided online is capable of being searched, sorted, re-arranged, and indexed like a traditional database.

- If the specimens consist of merely a series of web pages, this is NOT a database. A more appropriate identification might be “providing information in the field of {indicate service-related subject matter or nature of information} via a website, in Class ____ (classification depends on the subject matter).”

Other common database services include the following:

- “Database development services, in Class 42.”
- “Computerized database management, in Class 35.”

See [TMEP §1402.11\(b\)](#) regarding information services.

1402.11(a)(x) Online Publications

Online publications are non-downloadable publications provided via the internet. All online publications are classified in Class 41 *no matter what the subject matter*. The identification for online publications must indicate both the specific nature and the subject matter of the online publication. An acceptable identification would be:

“Providing online publications in the nature of {indicate specific nature of publications, e.g., magazines, newsletters, etc.} in the field of {indicate subject matter of publication}, in Class 41.”

The examining attorney should verify from the specimens that the information is presented in a “publication” format. An online magazine in Class 41 must really look like and have the attributes of a magazine, i.e., contain monthly or periodic articles, sections, features, advertisements, credits, etc. If it does not, and appears to be an information service, a more appropriate identification would be “providing information in the field of {indicate service-related subject matter or nature of information} via a website, in Class ____” (classification depends on the subject matter).

If an applicant identifies its goods and/or services as “publications, namely ...,” and it becomes apparent during examination that the publications are non-downloadable online publications, the applicant may amend the identification to indicate that the services are providing online publications in Class 41, as the term “publications,” without additional context, is broad enough to encompass both printed and online publications. On the other hand, if the applicant identifies its goods as “printed publications...,” the identification cannot be amended to “online publications,” because this would exceed the scope of the original identification. See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#).

1402.11(a)(xi) Electronic Storage, Hosting of Data, and Cloud Computing

Electronic storage of data for others is considered a computer technology service as it requires the provision of technological means to conduct the activity and is classified in Class 42 as of the 10th edition, 2014 version of the Nice Classification system. Hosting of computer websites and other data, including software as a service, is also a computer technology service when conducted for third parties. The storage or hosting of one’s own data is not considered a service within the meaning of the Trademark Act. Some acceptable identifications are:

- “Electronic data storage, in Class 42.”
- “Electronic storage of documents and archived e-mails, in Class 42.”

“Hosting of digital content on the Internet, in Class 42.”

“Website hosting services, in Class 42.”

Cloud computing comprises a variety of Class 42 activities that must be further specified for purposes of examination on the basis of likelihood of confusion under §2(d), [15 U.S.C. §1052\(d\)](#). Some acceptable identifications are:

“Computer services, namely cloud hosting provider services, in Class 42.”

“Providing virtual computer systems and virtual computer environments through cloud computing, in Class 42.”

“Cloud computing featuring software for use {specify the function of the programs, e.g., for use in database management, for use as a spreadsheet, for word processing, etc. and, if software is content- or field-specific, the field of use}, in Class 42.”

1402.11(a)(xii) Non-Downloadable Computer Software

Online non-downloadable software, or providing on-line non-downloadable software, is considered a computer service in Class 42 because it is generally provided for use on a temporary basis. For definiteness and for proper classification in Class 42 as a technological service, identifications for non-downloadable software and provision of non-downloadable software must specify the manner of presentation of the non-downloadable software, for example, that it is provided “online,” is “web-based,” and/or that its use is provided on a temporary basis. For example, “providing on-line non-downloadable geographic information system (GIS) software” and “providing temporary use of non-downloadable computer software for tracking packages over computer networks, intranets and the internet” are acceptable identifications in Class 42. An exception, however, is providing online, web-based, or temporary use of non-downloadable game software, which is classified in Class 41.

1402.11(b) Information Services

Prior to January 1, 2002, the identification “providing information in a wide variety of fields” was an acceptable identification of services, particularly in the context of Internet websites. The only caveat being that the website or information services *did* provide information in a wide variety of fields.

Effective January 1, 2002, the “miscellaneous” phrase has been eliminated from the heading of Class 42 (*see* [TMEP §1401.11\(a\)](#)). Therefore, the examining attorney must require that the applicant indicate the fields in which it is providing information so that the service can be accurately classified. The fields may be listed somewhat broadly, but with enough specificity to allow classification. “Bundling” of the fields of information (that is, listing all fields of information but allowing the dominant or most significant field to control the classification with the other fields simply “along for the ride”) is no longer acceptable.

Since information services must now be classified according to the subject matter of the information, the nature or subject matter of the information provided must be specified to allow for proper classification.

For example, “information in the field of automobiles” is not sufficiently definite to allow for proper classification. If the information pertains to purchasing an automobile, then the service is classified in Class 35. If the information pertains to the care and maintenance of automobiles, the service is classified in Class 37. If the service involves insurance or financing of automobiles, then Class 36 is the proper class. The best way to ensure that the information is classified correctly may be to identify the subject matter of the service. For example, “providing information in the field of automobile financing” is adequate to classify

the service in Class 36. Another way to clarify the classification of information services is to characterize the information itself. Thus, “providing financing information in the field of automobiles” clearly puts the service in Class 36.

As with many other service identifications that require an indication of the subject matter or field, the subject matter or field does not have to be as specific as would be required if the subject matter or field were the service itself. However, an indication of the nature of the information must be included, either by reference to the type of information or the subject matter of the information provided, and must be sufficiently specific to allow for proper classification of the activity. For example, classification cannot be determined from the indefinite and broad wording “providing educational information.” Since all information can be characterized as educational, describing information as “educational” is not sufficient to justify classification in Class 41. “Educational information” services are classified in the same manner as all information services - according to the subject matter of the information. “Providing educational information about healthcare” is classified in Class 44 because the information pertains to healthcare and healthcare services are generally classified in Class 44, whereas “providing information in the field of education regarding healthcare” is classified in Class 41 because the information pertains to the subject matter of education, specific to healthcare education.

An applicant is not required to register in all classes in which it provides information, but may instead choose to register only the classes of the fields that are most important to it. The examining attorney will ask the applicant to indicate the fields of information to assist in classification. The applicant must decide if it wishes to: (1) go forward and register the information services in all of the appropriate classes; or (2) choose the class(es) that are most important to its business and amend the identification to delete reference to fields of information that fall into other classes. *See* [TMEP §1401.04\(b\)](#).

1402.11(c) Association Services and “Promoting the Interest of” Services

The classification of services rendered by associations was affected by the reorganization of Class 42 (*see* [TMEP §§1401.11 et seq.](#)). Prior to January 1, 2002, the Explanatory Notes regarding this topic for the old Class 42 included the language “services (not included in other classes) rendered by associations to their own members.” This language in the old Class 42 allowed identifications of services such as “association services, namely, promoting the interest of lawyers” to be accepted in Class 42. Effective January 1, 2002, there is no reference to “services rendered by an association” in the Class Heading or Explanatory Notes for any of the service classes.

Most activities rendered by associations are easily classified in other classes, e.g., business services (Class 35), insurance services (Class 36), travel arrangements (Class 39), training and entertainment (Class 41).

Effective January 1, 2002, under U.S. identification policy, lobbying services and activities related or similar to lobbying activities provided by an association are classified in Class 35, because they further the business interests of the group represented by the association. Even non-business interests such as those that promote reading skills or environmental protection have a “business interest” in promoting their concerns.

1402.11(d) Charitable Services, Other than Monetary

Prior to January 1, 2002, non-monetary charitable services were classified in Class 42, regardless of the type of service being provided by the charity. Effective January 1, 2002, non-monetary charitable services are classified by the nature of the service provided. The wording “charitable services” merely indicates that a service is provided for charitable purposes, but does not set forth the nature of the activity provided for those purposes. Appropriate classification of the services cannot be determined from the wording “charitable

services.” For information about the Nice Classification, see [TMEP §1401.02\(a\)](#). The particular activity must be specified for proper classification. For example, the wording “charitable services, namely, providing temporary shelter for the homeless” is acceptable in Class 43, like other temporary accommodation services; “charitable services, namely, providing tutoring in the field of math for underprivileged students” is classified in Class 41, like other educational services. See [TMEP §§1401.11 et seq.](#) regarding the changes in the international classification of services effective January 1, 2002.

Charitable services that involve donating or providing a specific type of non-monetary goods to those in need are classified according to the service-related activity of the goods provided. For example, “charitable services, namely, donating bicycles to the needy” is classified in Class 39 because the service-related activity provided by bicycles is transportation, and transportation services are classified in Class 39; “charitable services, namely, providing first-aid supplies to those in need” is classified in Class 44 because the service-related activity provided by first-aid supplies is medical services, and medical services are classified in Class 44.

1402.11(e) Consulting Services

Prior to January 1, 2002, all consulting services were classified in Class 42 except those relating to business (Class 35) and financial or insurance (Class 36). Effective January 1, 2002, consulting services are classified in the class of the subject matter of the service. This includes technical consulting services. Technical consulting is like any other consultation service, although it focuses primarily on how things work. Thus, the type of consultation or subject matter of the consultation must be set forth with adequate specificity to allow for accurate classification. It should be noted that *technology* consulting is in Class 42 because it encompasses consulting about the technology aspects of the subject matter given, and “technological services” appears in the Class 42 Class Heading.

Some Acceptable Identifications:

- “Consulting in the field of telecommunication services, namely, transmission of voice, data, and documents via telecommunications networks, in Class 38.”
- “Consulting in the field of telecommunications technology, in Class 42.”
- “Consulting in the field of maintenance and repair of telecommunications network hardware, apparatus, and instruments, in Class 37.”
- “Technical consulting related to the installation of oil and gas equipment, control systems, and machinery, in Class 37.”
- “Technical consulting related to the manufacturing of oil and gas equipment, control systems, and machinery, in Class 40.”
- “Technical consultancy in the field of environmental science, in Class 42.”

See [TMEP §§1401.11 et seq.](#) regarding the changes in the international classification of services effective January 1, 2002.

1402.11(f) Distribution of Videotapes, Audiotapes, Videodiscs, and Similar Items

The services of production and distribution of motion pictures and television programs are classified in Class 41. This service involves the actual creation of the motion picture or television program and the accompanying activity of distributing it to movie theatres and television stations for display to the public.

In this service, the ownership of the physical product does not leave the producer. The movie theatre or television stations “lease” (in a sense) the film or tape for a period of time and then return it to the producer.

This is not the case when distribution relates to videotapes, audiotapes, or other hard goods that result from the production of visual or audio entertainment. When these goods are distributed, it is the same as the distribution of any other kind of hard goods by any other manufacturer. The ownership of the physical product is transferred to the purchaser just as it is with clothing, toys, food products, or computers. For this reason, the identification “distribution of videotapes, audiotapes, and videodiscs” should not be accepted as a service even when the distribution is linked to the production of these goods. The production of the entertainment product is perfectly acceptable in Class 41; however, the distribution of the hard goods that result from that production is not a service in that class. It is possible that such distribution could be considered a distributorship service in Class 35, but that must be determined on a case-by-case basis.

Distribution of one’s own goods is not a service; it is merely a necessary part of doing business. However, if the applicant distributes the videotapes, audiotapes, etc. of others as well as those it has produced, it may be identified as a distributorship service in Class 35.

See [TMEP §§1301.01](#) *et seq.* regarding the criteria for determining whether an activity constitutes a service.

1402.11(g) Recorded Entertainment Services

For entertainment services such as those rendered by a musical group, the performance must be live. The recording of a live concert or studio performance is not considered a service of the performing group.

Similarly, performances for the sole purpose of recording are not considered services. The production by another entity of a performance by a musical group for recordation would be a service, but an identification such as "live and recorded performances by a musical group" could not be accepted as a valid service identification unless the words "and recorded" were deleted.

Recorded entertainment usually takes the form of goods in Class 9, such as videotapes, audio cassettes, DVDs, CD-ROMs, etc. This is consistent with the treatment of "distribution" of these products as goods and not services as discussed in §1402.11(f).

See [TMEP §§1301.01](#) *et seq.* regarding the criteria for determining whether an activity constitutes a service.

1402.11(h) Identification of “Bonus Programs”

Many businesses offer "bonus programs" or "frequent patron programs" to encourage patronage of that business. However, promotion of one’s own goods or services is not considered a service under the Trademark Act since the beneficiary of such an activity is the business itself and not a third party. See [TMEP §1301.01\(b\)\(i\)](#). These special programs do confer some benefit to the customers who participate in the program, but this benefit flows directly from use of the trademark owner’s goods or services. Thus, a frequent flyer program provided by an airline to encourage use of its own air transportation services would be identified as "air transportation services featuring a frequent flyer bonus program" and it would be classified in Class 39. Similarly, a retail store that has a program through which patrons earn points that result in discounts on future purchases at that store would be identified as "retail store services in the field of {indicate field} featuring a frequent patron program in which points are accumulated to be used for discounts on future purchases." This service would be in Class 35 because it is primarily a retail store service. It should be noted that organizing and conducting a program of this type for a third party is a promotion/advertising service and would be classified in Class 35 and identified with language such as "promoting the goods and services of others by means of a point accumulation program with points used for discounts on future purchases of those goods and services" (or whatever the details of the program may be).

1402.11(i) Marketing Services and Advertising Services

Effective January 1, 2012, “Marketing” was added to the Nice Alphabetical List. *See* [TMEP §1401.13\(e\)](#). As with “Advertising services,” the entry is listed in the ID Manual as “Marketing services” to emphasize that the activity is a service (i.e., an activity done for the benefit of others) and to make clear that use of both terms is preferred.

However, if upon consideration of the entire application, including the specimen of use, other wording in the identification or other information in the application, the Examining Attorney determines that an applicant is actually promoting its own goods and/or services, a refusal may be issued on the basis that the record fails to identify a registrable service as contemplated by the Trademark Act. *See* TMEP §§ [904.07\(b\)](#), [1301.01-1301.01\(b\)\(v\)](#). Further, the unambiguous wording “marketing of {specify goods}” may not be clarified to identify only goods. For example, amendment of “marketing of shirts” to “shirts” would be beyond the scope of the original, acceptably definite identification.

1402.11(j) Issuing Awards

Services that involve the issuance of awards are usually classified in Classes 35 and 41. Classification depends upon the purpose of the award program. If the award program is an employee incentive rewarding excellence in job-related performance that actually furthers the business of an employer (e.g., safety, quality, productivity, customer service), then the service is classified in Class 35. If the award program is to recognize excellence or achievement that may or may not be related to the participants’ business or professional endeavors (e.g., achievements in community service, excellence in country music performance), then the service should be classified in Class 41. The distinction is that Class 35 award programs do further the business interests of an employer by encouraging positive business-related performance, while Class 41 award programs reward excellence for endeavors that do not further the business interests of an employer.

1402.11(k) Accreditation- and Certification-Related Services vs. Certification Marks

Service marks are used to identify and distinguish the services of one person from the services of others and to indicate the source of the services. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). For information about what constitutes a service under the Trademark Act, *see* [TMEP §1301.01 1301.01\(b\)\(vi\)](#). Unlike service marks, certification marks are not used by their owners but instead are used by authorized producers of goods or services to indicate that the goods or services possess certain prescribed characteristics or meet certain standards established by the certification mark owner. *See* [TMEP §1306.01 1306.06](#).

Accreditation and certification activities are not considered “services” under the Trademark Act or Nice Classification and should not be included in the identification of services for a service-mark application. However, activities underlying the accreditation or certification, such as testing goods/services to determine whether they conform to established accreditation/certification standards, may constitute services under the Trademark Act if they are performed for the benefit of others and meet the other criteria for activities that constitute services. *See* [TMEP §§1301.01\(a\) 1301.01\(a\)\(iii\)](#). The development, evaluation, or testing of accreditation or certification standards may also constitute services under the Trademark Act when those activities are performed for the benefit of or to the order and specification of others. *See generally* [TMEP §1301.01](#).

Identifications for accreditation- or certification-related services should make clear the nature of the activities performed for the benefit of others. Therefore, examining attorneys must require clarification of an identification for accreditation- or certification-related services where the activity identified does not clearly

constitute a service under the Trademark Act. For example, the identification “Accreditation services, namely, setting and providing standards for {indicate field or subject matter} for the purposes of accreditation” is indefinite because the activities may be performed by the accrediting body for its own benefit rather than by a third party for the benefit of the accrediting body. Thus, it is unclear whether the activities encompassed by the identification constitute services under the Trademark Act and clarification is required.

For information on identifying goods or services of authorized users in certification mark applications, see [TMEP §1306.02\(c\)](#).

1402.12 Parentheses and Brackets Should Not be Used in Identifications of Goods and Services

Generally, parentheses and brackets should not be used in identifications of goods and services. The Post Registration Section of the USPTO uses single square brackets to indicate that goods/services have been deleted from a registration either by amendment under [15 U.S.C. §1057](#), filing of a partial affidavit of continued use under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), or filing of a partial renewal application under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#). The Post Registration Section also uses double parentheses to indicate that certain goods or services are not claimed in an affidavit of incontestability under [15 U.S.C. §1065](#). See [TMEP Chapter 1600](#) regarding affidavits of continued use or excusable nonuse, renewal applications, affidavits of incontestability, and amendment of registrations. Therefore, to avoid confusion, applicants should not use parentheses and brackets in the identification of goods or services in an application.

The only time parentheses may be used in an identification is when the parentheses merely explain or translate the matter preceding the parenthetical phrase in such a way that it does not affect the clarity of the identification. For example, “bags (tote)” in Class 18 would not be an acceptable use of parentheses. If the identification were misinterpreted to mean that “tote” was no longer part of the identification of goods (due to an amendment of the goods or filing of a partial affidavit of continued use or renewal application), the item would merely read “bags.” That would create an ambiguity within Class 18, since it could refer to any type of bag – from an all-purpose sports bag to an evening bag – and it would make a determination of likelihood of confusion difficult. Also, some bags are in classes other than Class 18. Without an indication of the type of bag, classification of the goods is problematic. However, an identification of goods such as “Sash bands for kimono (obj)” in Class 25 would be acceptable because the parenthetical phrase merely provides further information about the goods.

If bracketed material is entered in an identification, it will be automatically deleted in all TEAS applications. In a paper application, the examining attorney may delete the bracketed material with a “no-call” examiner’s amendment. See [TMEP §702.02](#).

1402.13 Requirement for Amendment of Portion of Identification of Goods/Services

If a requirement for an amendment of the identification of goods and/or services is expressly limited to only certain goods/services, and the applicant fails to file a response to the refusal or requirement, the application shall be abandoned only as to those particular goods/services, if it is otherwise in condition for approval for publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#). However, if the Office action includes an advisory stating that amendment would require the payment of additional fees because the fee paid is insufficient to cover all the classes, and the applicant fails to file a response, the entire application will be abandoned. [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).

Accordingly, when the identification of goods/services includes some terminology that is indefinite and some terminology that is acceptable, the examining attorney should specify which terminology is indefinite,

suggest amended language if possible, and indicate that the rest of the identification is acceptable. If the examining attorney has not expressly limited the requirement to the particular indefinite wording, and it is appropriate to do so (*see* [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#)), the applicant may request in a request for reconsideration, filed after a final Office action or with a notice of appeal, that the requirement be limited accordingly.

When an applicant fails to respond to a requirement to amend some terminology in an otherwise acceptable identification of goods/services, and the application is otherwise in condition for approval for publication, the examining attorney should issue an examiner's amendment that clearly sets forth the changes that will be made to the identification of goods/services. No prior authorization from the applicant is needed to issue an examiner's amendment in this situation. See [TMEP §707.02](#) regarding examiner's amendments without prior authorization by the applicant.

1402.14 Identification of Goods/Services Must Conform to Rules and Policies in Effect at the Time Registration is Sought

The question of whether the identification and/or classification of goods/services is acceptable must be determined on the basis of the facts and evidence that exist at the time registration is sought, that is, at the time of filing. *Cf.* [TMEP §1216.01](#). The international classification system and USPTO policy on acceptable identifications change periodically (see, e.g., [TMEP §§1401.11](#) *et seq.* regarding the restructuring of international class 42). Therefore, the fact that an identification of goods or services was accepted in an earlier-filed application or prior registration does not necessarily mean it is controlling in a later-filed application. See *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1362, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (examining attorney's requirement for amendment of the term "chronographs" in the identification of goods upheld, notwithstanding applicant's ownership of several registrations in which this term appears without further qualification in the identification).

1402.15 Procedures for Processing Unacceptable Amendments to Identifications

If an applicant submits an amendment to the identification of goods/services and the examining attorney determines that the amendment is unacceptable, the examining attorney must issue an action refusing to accept the amendment. If an unacceptable amendment was entered into the automated records of the USPTO, and an acceptable amendment was subsequently submitted, the examining attorney must ensure that the automated records are modified to reflect the acceptable identification prior to approving the mark for publication.

If the applicant later submits arguments in support of acceptance of the amendment and the examining attorney determines that the amendment is still unacceptable, the examining attorney must issue a final refusal of the amendment, if the application is otherwise in condition for final action.

1403 Combined or Multiple-Class Applications

37 CFR §2.86 Multiple-class applications.

- (a) In a single application for a trademark, service mark, and/or collective mark, an applicant may apply to register the same mark for goods, services, and/or a collective membership organization in multiple classes. In a multiple-class application, the applicant must satisfy the following, in addition to the application requirements of § 2.32 for a trademark or service mark, and § 2.44 for collective marks:
 - (1) For an application filed under section 1 or 44 of the Act, identify the goods or services in each international class and/or the nature of the collective membership organization in U.S. Class 200; for applications filed under section 66(a) of the

- Act, identify the goods services in each international class assigned by the International Bureau in the corresponding international registration;
- (2) Submit the application filing fee required by § 2.6 for each class; and
 - (3) Include either dates of use and one specimen for each class based on section 1(a) of the Act; or a statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, for a trademark or service mark, or a statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, for collective marks, for each class based on section 1(b), 44, or 66(a) of the Act. When requested by the Office, additional specimens must be provided.
- (b) In a single application for a certification mark, an applicant may apply to register the same certification mark for goods and services. In such case, the applicant must satisfy the following, in addition to the application requirements of § 2.45:
- (1) For an application filed under section 1 or 44 of the Act, identify the goods in U.S. Class A and the services in U.S. Class B; for applications filed under section 66(a) of the Act, identify the goods and services in each international class assigned by the International Bureau in the corresponding international registration;
 - (2) Submit the application filing fee required by § 2.6 for both classes; and
 - (3) Include either dates of use and one specimen for each class based on section 1(a) of the Act; or a statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce for each class based on section 1(b), 44, or 66(a) of the Act. When requested by the Office, additional specimens must be provided.
- (c) In a single application, both section 1(a) and 1(b) of the Act may not be claimed for identical goods or services.
- (d) In a single application based on section 1 or 44 of the Act, goods or services in U.S. Classes A and/or B may not be combined with either goods or services in any international class or with a collective membership organization in U.S. Class 200; and in a single application based on section 66(a) of the Act, a certification mark application may not be combined with goods, services, or a collective membership organization in any international class. See § 2.45(f).
- (e) An amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88 for multiple classes must include, for each class, the required fee, dates of use, and one specimen. When requested by the Office, additional specimens must be provided. The applicant may not file an amendment to allege use or a statement of use until the applicant has used the mark on or in connection with all the goods, services, or classes, unless the applicant also files a request to divide under § 2.87.
- (f) The Office will issue a single certificate of registration for the mark, unless the applicant files a request to divide under § 2.87.

In a single application for a trademark, service mark, and/or collective mark, an applicant may apply for the same mark for a combination of goods, services, and/or a collective membership organization in multiple classes. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)](#). Additionally, in a single application for a certification mark, an applicant may apply for the same certification mark for both goods and services in U.S. Classes A and B. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(b\)](#). The USPTO calls these types of applications a “combined” or “multiple-class” application.

A multiple-class application may be viewed as a group of applications for registration of one mark in connection with goods, services, or a collective membership organization in particular classes, all combined into one application. Generally an applicant is in the same position that he or she would have been if they had filed several single-class applications instead. *G&W Labs., Inc. v. G W Pharma Ltd.*, 89 USPQ2d 1571, 1574 (TTAB 2009) .

A multiple-class application must pertain to only one mark, and to only one register. A single certificate of registration will be issued, unless the application is divided. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(f\)](#). See [TMEP §§1110-1110.11\(a\)](#) for information regarding requesting to divide an application.

1403.01 Requirements for Combined or Multiple-Class Applications

In addition to the requirements for a trademark, service mark, collective mark, or certification mark application (see [TMEP §§801-806.01\(e\)](#), [1303.01](#), [1304.02](#), [1306.02](#)), a multiple-class application must contain the following:

- (1) Class Designations: For a §1 or §44 multiple-class application, the class numbers for which registration is sought, and the goods/services/collective membership organization appropriately

classified in each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(1\), \(b\)\(1\)](#). The classes must be set forth in consecutive numerical order beginning with the lowest number, and the goods/services/collective membership organization must be listed in association with their class number. Setting out the classes and the goods/services/collective membership organization in tabulated form rather than narrative form is recommended because it adds clarity. For a §66(a) multiple-class application, the classes are assigned by the International Bureau. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(1\), \(b\)\(1\)](#).

- (2) Filing Fees: A filing fee for each class. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6\(a\)\(1\), 2.86\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(2\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§810.01, 1403.06](#).
- (3) Section 1(a) Application: For an application filed under §1(a) of the Act:
 - (a) Dates of use: The dates of first use and first use in commerce for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#). If the dates are the same for all the classes, the dates may be stated once, with the statement that the mark was first used on said dates in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization in all the classes. If the dates of use differ for different classes, the appropriate dates for each class must be specified separately. The dates may be set forth in separate clauses, sentences, or paragraphs, or in tabular form, whichever will give complete information in the clearest way under the circumstances.
 - (b) Specimens: One specimen supporting use of the mark for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#). If a single specimen supports multiple classes, the applicant may so indicate, and the examining attorney need not require multiple copies of the specimen. The examining attorney should enter a Note to the File in the record, indicating which classes the specimen supports.
- (4) Section 1(b), 44, or 66(a) Application: For an application filed under §1(b), §44, or §66(a) of the Act, a statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, for a trademark or service mark, or a statement that the applicant has a bona fide intention, and is entitled, to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce, for collective or certification marks, for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(a\)\(3\), \(b\)\(3\)](#).

In a §1(b) application, prior to registration, the applicant must file an allegation of use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#) or [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#) that states the mark is in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization; and includes dates of use, the filing fee for an allegation of use for each class, and one specimen evidencing use of the mark for each class. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(e\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.76](#) and [TMEP §§1104-1104.11](#) regarding amendments to allege use and [37 C.F.R. §2.88](#) and [TMEP §§1109-1109.18](#) regarding statements of use. An applicant may not file an allegation of use until the applicant has used the mark in connection with all the goods/services/classes in the application, unless the applicant also submits a request to divide the application under [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(e\)](#).

Further, an applicant may not claim both §1(a) and §1(b) for identical goods or services in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §2.86\(c\)](#).

Additionally, an applicant may not apply for a certification mark and a trademark, service mark, or collective mark in the same application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(f\), 2.86\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1306.04\(f\)](#) for more information on restrictions to certification marks.

1403.02 Amendment of Combined or Multiple-Class Application

An application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act may be amended during prosecution to delete, correct, or add classes, when appropriate.

In a §66(a) application, classes may be deleted, but classes may not be added, and goods/services may not be transferred from one class to another class. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\), 1402.01\(c\), 1904.02\(b\), \(c\)](#).

1403.02(a) Deletion of Classes

An applicant may delete a class or classes and prosecute the application only in the remaining class or classes. Normally, the filing fee is not refunded when a class is deleted. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.209\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§405.04, 810.02](#).

If the applicant designates the classes incorrectly and there are actually no goods, services, or collective membership description in one of the classes designated in a multiple-class application, the fee for that class may be refunded. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.209\(a\)](#)

1403.02(b) Correction of Classification

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, improper classification may be corrected by switching goods/services by amendment from one to another of the classes originally set forth, or by changing the class designations, as long as the number of classes is not increased.

The examining attorney may correct classification by examiner's amendment, without prior authorization by the applicant. *See* [TMEP §707.02](#). Correction of classification after publication for opposition does not require republication. *See* [TMEP §1505.03\(b\)](#).

When more than one item of goods or services is listed in a class, the specimen and dates of use given do not necessarily apply to all the items listed. If the item to which the specimen and/or dates pertain is removed from the identification by amendment, the applicant must submit a new specimen and/or dates of use for that class. If the new dates differ from the dates originally set forth, the additional dates must be verified by an affidavit or declaration by the applicant. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#). *See* [TMEP §903.04](#) regarding a permissible amendment of dates of use.

In a §66(a) application, classes may not be added, and goods/services may not be transferred from one class to another in a multiple-class application. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\), 1402.01\(c\), 1904.02\(b\), \(c\)](#).

1403.02(c) Addition of Classes

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, class(es) may be added if any of the items originally recited are properly classified in class(es) not originally indicated. The applicant must pay an additional fee for each new class.

The amount of the fee varies depending on the method used to file the original application and the amendment adding classes, as follows:

- If the original application was filed through TEAS RF or TEAS Plus and the amendment is filed through TEAS (either as a voluntary amendment or a response to an examining attorney's Office action) or entered by examiner's amendment, then the fee for adding a class is the same as the TEAS RF or TEAS Plus application filing fee per class (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\), \(iv\)](#)).

- If the original application was not filed through TEAS RF or TEAS Plus, and the amendment is filed through TEAS or entered by examiner's amendment, then the fee for adding a class is the same as the TEAS Regular application filing fee per class (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#)).
- If the amendment is filed on paper, then the fee for adding a class is the same as the fee per class for filing an application on paper (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)\(i\)](#)), regardless of how the original application was filed.

The current fee schedule is available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

If dates of use for a class that is added are different from dates previously set forth, the applicant must submit an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) to verify these dates. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)](#). *See* [TMEP §903.04](#) regarding a permissible amendment of dates of use.

An additional specimen that is not identical to a specimen originally filed must be supported by an affidavit or declaration attesting to its use as of an appropriate date. [37 C.F.R. §2.59\(a\)](#); [TMEP §904.05](#).

If an intent-to-use application is amended to add class(es), the applicant must submit, for each added class, the basic application fee *and* fees for the allegation of use (i.e., either the amendment to allege use or the statement of use), and any extension request(s) granted in the interim. This applies even if the classes are added after the amendment to allege use or statement of use is filed, or the extension request(s) is granted.

In a §66(a) application, classes may not be added, and goods/services may not be transferred from one class to another in a multiple-class application. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\)](#), [1402.01\(c\)](#), [1904.02\(b\)](#), (c).

1403.03 Dividing of Combined or Multiple-Class Application

A delay in registration of one class in a multiple-class application will mean delay for the entire application. In such a situation, upon payment of the applicable fee, the applicant may file a request to physically divide the original application into separate applications. These new applications are assigned new serial numbers and cross-referenced with the original application. The additional separate applications are given the same filing date as the original application.

The following are examples of situations when an applicant may want to have class(es) divided out into one or more separate applications:

- (1) Registration is refused in less than all the classes;
- (2) A notice of opposition is filed against goods/services/a collective membership organization in less than all the classes; or
- (3) The applicant in a §1(b) application begins using the mark in commerce on goods/services/a collective membership organization in less than all the classes.
- (4) The applicant intends to respond to a refusal by amending to the Supplemental Register as to only certain goods/services/classes in the application. *See* [TMEP §§801.02\(b\)](#), [816.04](#).

When a multiple-class application is divided, the application is separated or divided into individual applications. *See* [TMEP §§1110-1110.11\(a\)](#) for information regarding requesting to divide an application.

1403.04 Combined or Multiple-Class Marks in *Official Gazette*

The marks in multiple-class applications appear in the *Official Gazette* in a separate section from the marks in single-class applications. Therefore, it is necessary to look in more than one place in the *Official Gazette* to make a complete review of published marks.

1403.05 Refusals and Oppositions as to Less Than All the Classes in a Multiple-Class Application

A refusal to register or a requirement may be made for less than all the classes in an application. Whether it is appropriate to make a refusal or requirement with regard to less than all classes must be considered on a case-by-case basis.

When issuing a refusal or requirement pertaining to less than all the classes, the examining attorney must expressly state that the refusal or requirement that applies only to certain class(es), and indicate the class(es) to which the refusal or requirement pertains. If an applicant fails to file a complete response to a refusal or requirement that was expressly limited to certain class(es), the application shall be abandoned only as to those class(es) if it is otherwise in condition for approval for publication. However, if the Office action includes an advisory stating that amendment would require the payment of additional fees because the fee paid is insufficient to cover all the classes, and the applicant fails to file a response, the entire application will be abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).

When an opposition is sustained only as to some of the class(es) in a multiple-class application, the application is returned to the examining attorney. The examining attorney must perform the proper Trademark database transaction to ensure issuance of registration for only the proper class(es).

1403.06 Fees for Action After Filing, Multiple Classes

In a multiple-class application or registration, a fee for each class must be paid when filing an allegation of use or request for extension of time to file a statement of use for applications under §1(b) of the Trademark Act; ex parte appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board; affidavit or declaration under §8 or §71 of the Act; affidavit of incontestability under §15 of the Act; application for renewal of a registration under §9 of the Act, opposition, or petition for cancellation of a registration under §14 of the Act. [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1058, 1059, 1063, 1064, 1065, 1141k](#).

In these situations, when a party submits a fee that does not cover all the classes in the application or registration, the party should state that action is sought only for the number of classes equal to the number of fees submitted, and should specify the classes for which action is being sought. This may avoid an unnecessary inquiry by the USPTO.

See [TMEP §1403.02\(c\)](#) regarding the fee(s) for adding class(es) to an application.

1403.07 Surrender or Amendment in Multiple-Class Registrations

In a multiple-class registration, deletion of less than all the goods or services in a single class constitutes an amendment, whereas deletion of an entire class constitutes a surrender of the registration for cancellation as to the class deleted. [37 C.F.R. §2.172](#); [TMEP §1609.03](#).

Chapter 1500 Post-Examination Procedures

1501	Appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board
1501.01	Appealable Matter
1501.02	Appeal Briefs
1501.02(a)	Applicant's Appeal Brief
1501.02(b)	Examining Attorney's Appeal Brief
1501.02(c)	Reply Briefs in Ex Parte Appeals
1501.03	Withdrawal of Refusal or Requirement After Appeal
1501.04	Fee for Appeal
1501.05	Amendment During Appeal
1501.06	Amendment After Decision on Appeal
1501.07	Examining Attorney's Request for Reconsideration
1502	Publication in Trademark Official Gazette
1502.01	Notification of Clerical Errors in Trademark Official Gazette
1503	Opposition
1503.01	Filing a Notice of Opposition
1503.02	Joining Persons in an Opposition
1503.03	Time for Opposing
1503.04	Extension of Time to Oppose
1503.05	Opposition to §66(a) Applications
1504	Jurisdiction over Application
1504.01	Jurisdiction of Examining Attorney
1504.02	Jurisdiction of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board
1504.03	Action by Examining Attorney After Publication
1504.04	Restoration of Jurisdiction to Examining Attorney by Director
1504.04(a)	Request for Jurisdiction
1504.05	Remand to Examining Attorney by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board
1505	Amendments Filed by Applicants After Publication
1505.01	Procedures for Processing Amendments Filed by the Applicant After Publication
1505.01(a)	Form and Timing of Amendments
1505.01(b)	Processing Amendments to §§1(a), 44, and 66(a) Applications in Cases Where No Opposition Has Been Filed and a Registration Certificate Has Not Yet Issued
1505.01(b)(i)	Acceptable Amendments
1505.01(b)(ii)	Unacceptable Amendments
1505.01(c)	Processing Amendments to §1(b) Applications in Cases Where No Opposition Has Been Filed and No Notice of Allowance Has Issued
1505.01(c)(i)	Acceptable Amendments
1505.01(c)(ii)	Unacceptable Amendments
1505.01(d)	Processing Amendments Filed Between Issuance of the Notice of Allowance and Filing of Statement of Use
1505.01(e)	Processing Amendments in Cases Where a Request for Extension of Time to Oppose Has Been Filed or Granted
1505.01(f)	Processing Amendments in Cases Where an Opposition Has Been Filed
1505.02	Types of Amendments After Publication
1505.02(a)	Amendments to the Identification
1505.02(b)	Amendments to Classification
1505.02(c)	Amendments to Marks
1505.02(d)	Amendments to the Dates of Use
1505.02(e)	Amendments Adding or Deleting Disclaimers
1505.02(f)	Amendment of the Basis
1505.02(g)	Amendments to the Applicant's Name, Citizenship, or Entity Type

1505.03	Republication for Opposition
1505.03(a)	When Republication Is Required
1505.03(b)	When Republication Is Not Required
1506	Concurrent Use Registration Proceeding
1507	Interference

1501 Appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

15 U.S.C. §1070

An appeal may be taken to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board from any final decision of the examiner in charge of the registration of marks upon the payment of the prescribed fee.

37 CFR §2.141 Ex parte appeals from action of trademark examining attorney.

(a) An applicant may, upon final refusal by the trademark examining attorney, appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon payment of the prescribed fee for each class in the application for which an appeal is taken, within six months of the date of issuance of the final action. A second refusal on the same grounds may be considered as final by the applicant for purpose of appeal.

(b) The applicant must pay an appeal fee for each class from which the appeal is taken. If the applicant does not pay an appeal fee for at least one class of goods or services before expiration of the six-month statutory filing period, the application will be abandoned. In a multiple-class application, if an appeal fee is submitted for fewer than all classes, the applicant must specify the class(es) in which the appeal is taken. If the applicant timely submits a fee sufficient to pay for an appeal in at least one class, but insufficient to cover all the classes, and the applicant has not specified the class(es) to which the fee applies, the Board will issue a written notice setting a time limit in which the applicant may either pay the additional fees or specify the class(es) being appealed. If the applicant does not submit the required fee or specify the class(es) being appealed within the set time period, the Board will apply the fee(s) to the class(es) in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class.

An appeal from an examining attorney's action is taken to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ("Board"), not to a court. An appeal is taken by filing a notice of appeal and paying the appeal fee within six months of the date of issuance of the action from which the appeal is taken. [15 U.S.C. §1070](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#). See [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) ("TBMP") [§1202.03](#).

The Trademark Act gives applicants a right to appeal to the Board after a final action by an examining attorney. [15 U.S.C. §1070](#). Under [37 C.F.R. §2.141\(a\)](#), a second refusal on the same grounds or a repeated requirement is considered a final action for purposes of appeal as long as all refusals or requirements are repeated in that action. Appeal from a first refusal or requirement, however, is premature. In addition, an Office action's mere advisory statement regarding a potential refusal is not subject to appeal. *In re Harley*, 119 USPQ2d 1755, 1757 (TTAB 2016) ("An advisory statement made by an examining attorney indicating that a refusal or requirement may issue if specified circumstances arise is not a refusal to register, let alone a *final* refusal to register, and is therefore not subject to appeal.").

The applicant must file the notice of appeal and appeal fee within six months of the date of issuance of the final refusal. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#); [TBMP §1202.02](#). Notices of appeal must be filed through the Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals ("ESTTA") at <http://estta.uspto.gov>. [37 C.F.R. §2.126](#). If ESTTA is unavailable due to technical problems, or when extraordinary circumstances are present, the notice of appeal may be filed in paper form. [37 C.F.R. §2.126\(b\)](#). A submission in paper form must include a written explanation of such technical problems or extraordinary circumstances. *Id.* If filing on paper, the applicant may use a certificate of mailing or transmission to avoid lateness. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.197](#) and [2.198](#), and [TMEP §§305.02 et seq.](#), [305.03](#), and [306.05 et seq.](#) regarding certificate of mailing, Priority Mail Express®, and certificate of transmission procedures. If the applicant does not timely file a notice of appeal and appeal fee, the application is abandoned. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#). If the applicant's failure to file a proper notice of appeal was unintentional, the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) (see [TMEP §1714 et seq.](#)).

Note: The unintentional delay standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does not apply to applications that are abandoned due to an **incomplete** response e.g., a request for reconsideration that is not accompanied by a notice of appeal). See [TMEP §§715.03](#) *et seq.* regarding requests for reconsideration, and [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)–\(f\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#) regarding situations where the unintentional delay standard does not apply.

In appropriate circumstances, after an appeal is filed either the applicant or the examining attorney can request a remand, or the Board may remand the application to the examining attorney. See [TBMP §§1209](#) *et seq.* regarding remand during an appeal. See also [TMEP §§1504.05](#) *et seq.* for further information.

See generally [37 C.F.R. §§2.142](#) and [2.144](#) and [TBMP Chapter 1200](#) for further information about ex parte appeals to the Board, and [15 U.S.C. §1071](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.145](#), and [TBMP Chapter 900](#) regarding appeal to a court from a decision of the Board.

1501.01 Appealable Matter

An applicant who wishes to contest a refusal based on a matter of substance (e.g., a matter arising under §§2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or 23 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1052](#), [1053](#), [1054](#), [1055](#), [1056](#), 1091), should file an appeal to the Board, not a petition to the Director.

If the only issue in dispute is a question regarding the applicant's compliance with a technical provision of the Trademark Act or Trademark Rules of Practice, the applicant may file a petition to the Director rather than an appeal. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(a\)](#), [\(b\)](#), [2.146](#). See also [TMEP §1704](#) and [TBMP §1201.05](#) regarding petitionable matter versus appealable matter.

An examining attorney's requirement that is the subject of a petition decided by the Director subsequently may not be the subject of an appeal to the Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(c\)](#).

1501.02 Appeal Briefs

1501.02(a) Applicant's Appeal Brief

The applicant must file an appeal brief within 60 days of the date of the appeal, or the Board may dismiss the appeal. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(b\)\(1\)](#); see *In re Live Earth Prods. Inc.*, 49 USPQ2d 1063 (TTAB 1998). If the appeal is dismissed, the applicant may file a motion with the Board to set aside the dismissal and accept a late-filed brief. Applicant may also file a motion to accept a late-filed brief when the time for filing the brief has expired but the Board has not yet issued an order dismissing the appeal. If the Board denies the motion, the applicant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), asking the Director to review the Board's action. The Director will reverse the Board's action only if the Board clearly erred or abused its discretion. An applicant should not file a petition to the Director until it has *first* filed a request/motion to accept the late-filed brief with the Board, and the Board has denied the request/motion. [TBMP §1203.02\(a\)](#). The applicant may not file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) when an appeal is dismissed for failure to file a brief. [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(E\)](#).

The date of appeal for purposes of calculating the due date of the appeal brief is the date on which the notice of appeal and filing fee is received by the USPTO. If the applicant has also filed a request for reconsideration under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(3\)](#), the Board will acknowledge receipt of the appeal and request, suspend further proceedings (including applicant's time for filing its appeal brief), and remand the application to the examining attorney. See [TBMP §§1203.02\(a\)](#) and [1204](#) for further information. The filing of a request for reconsideration within six months of a final Office action will automatically result in a suspension of the

appeal, and an applicant need not file either its appeal brief or a request for an extension of time to file the brief. See [TBMP §1204](#).

The applicant's brief may not exceed twenty-five double-spaced pages in length, and should meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.126](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TBMP §1203.01](#); see *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021 (TTAB 2006) (Board refused to consider applicant's 29-page brief).

1501.02(b) Examining Attorney's Appeal Brief

After the applicant's brief has been filed, the Board will send a notice to the examining attorney. The examining attorney has sixty days from the date of the Board's notice to file a responsive brief with the Board and send a copy to the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(b\)\(1\)](#); see [TBMP §1203.02\(b\)](#).

The examining attorney's appeal brief should be concise and contain a complete statement of reasons for the refusal(s) or requirement(s) and supporting facts.

Examining attorneys should use the format shown in Appendix A as a model when preparing an appeal brief. The purpose of this format is to promote consistency and to provide content guidelines. The substance of the appeal brief is a matter of individual discretion.

The brief may not exceed twenty-five double-spaced pages in length. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TBMP §1203.01](#); see *In re Thomas*, 79 USPQ2d 1021 (TTAB 2006) (Board refused to consider applicant's 29-page brief). When referring to the record, the examining attorney is encouraged to include a citation to the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval database (TSDR). The citation format may be by date, description of filing, and page number, for example: November 4, 2013 Office Action, TSDR p. 2. See [TBMP §1203.01](#).

The record in the application should be complete prior to appeal. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(d\)](#). It is not necessary to attach as exhibits to a brief evidence that is already in the application. Exhibits attached to a brief that were not made of record during examination are untimely, and generally will not be considered. However, if the applicant does submit such evidence, the examining attorney should specifically object to such evidence if he or she does not want it to be considered. If the examining attorney does not object to the evidence, and discusses it in his or her brief or elsewhere in the record, the Board may treat it as of record. [TBMP §1207.03](#); [TMEP §710.01\(c\)](#); see *In re Broyhill Furniture Indus., Inc.*, 60 USPQ2d 1511, 1513 n.3 (TTAB 2001).

If, during the preparation of the appeal brief, the examining attorney determines that jurisdiction should be restored for further examination (e.g., to make a new refusal, to correct informalities, to suspend, or good cause exists to introduce additional evidence), the examining attorney should submit a request for remand instead of an appeal brief. See [TMEP §1504.05](#). If the Board grants the examining attorney's request, the Board will stay further proceedings in connection with the appeal. If the Board denies the request, it will reset the time for submission of the examining attorney's appeal brief.

1501.02(c) Reply Briefs in Ex Parte Appeals

The applicant may file a brief in reply to the examining attorney's appeal brief. Reply briefs must be filed within twenty days of the date of issuance of the examining attorney's brief. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(b\)\(1\)](#). The examining attorney may not file a written response to the reply brief. However, in the oral argument (if the applicant requests an oral argument), the examining attorney should respond to any significant issues raised in the applicant's reply brief.

1501.03 Withdrawal of Refusal or Requirement After Appeal

If, after considering the applicant's brief or reply brief, the examining attorney believes that the requirement or refusal should be withdrawn, the examining attorney must withdraw the requirement or refusal and approve the application for publication or registration, if it is otherwise in condition for such action. The examining attorney must also promptly attempt to notify the applicant by telephone or e-mail that the requirement or refusal is withdrawn, and must enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record. This approval for publication or allowance for registration may be done at any time before the Board's decision on appeal. It is not necessary to notify the Board that the refusal or requirement has been withdrawn.

If there are multiple grounds for refusal and/or requirements, and the examining attorney decides that only certain refusals and/or requirements should be withdrawn, the appeal should go forward on the remaining ground(s) only. The following language should be included in the examining attorney's brief, informing the applicant of the withdrawal of the refusal(s) and/or requirement(s):

The examining attorney acknowledges receipt of the applicant's appeal brief. The examining attorney has withdrawn [specify the refusal(s) and/or requirement(s)].

1501.04 Fee for Appeal

When filing an ex parte appeal to the Board from the refusal of the examining attorney to register a mark, the applicant must pay a fee for each class in the application for which the appeal is taken. [37 C.F.R. §2.141\(b\)](#).

The fee for at least one class must be paid before expiration of the six-month statutory filing period, or the application is abandoned. If the fee filed with the appeal is sufficient for at least one class but insufficient for all the classes in a multiple-class application, and the applicant has not specified the class(es) to which the fee applies, the Board will notify the applicant of the defect, and will set a time limit in which the applicant may either pay the additional fee(s), or limit the appeal to the number of classes for which the fee(s) have been paid. If the applicant does not submit the required fee(s) or specify the class(es) to which the fee applies within the time set in the notice, the fee submitted will be applied to the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest-numbered class and including the number of classes in the application for which sufficient fees have been submitted. See [37 C.F.R. §2.141\(b\)](#); [TBMP §1202.04](#).

1501.05 Amendment During Appeal

If the applicant files an amendment after filing a timely notice of appeal, the examining attorney may not act on it without authorization from the Board, because jurisdiction over the application is with the Board after a notice of appeal is filed. In appropriate cases, the Board may remand the case to the examining attorney to consider the matter presented in the document, with appropriate instructions to the examining attorney regarding consideration of the document and disposition of the case after such consideration. [TBMP §1205](#).

If an application is remanded to the examining attorney to consider an amendment, and the examining attorney determines that the amendment places the application in condition for publication or issue, the examining attorney should notify the applicant by telephone or e-mail that the amendment has been entered, and that the amendment renders the appeal moot. It is not necessary to notify the Board.

1501.06 Amendment After Decision on Appeal

An examining attorney may not take action in an application after the Board has rendered a decision on appeal, because the examining attorney does not have jurisdiction over the application. See *In re U.S. Catheter & Instrument Corp.*, 158 USPQ 54, 55 n.3 (TTAB 1968). After a decision on appeal, the applicant may petition the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(g\)](#) to reopen prosecution of the application. If the petition is granted, jurisdiction is restored to the examining attorney to take the specified action.

A petition to reopen prosecution of the application could be granted if the appeal involved the applicant's compliance with a requirement rather than a refusal based on the nature of the mark. See *In re Hickory Mfg. Co.*, 183 USPQ 789 (Comm'r Pats. 1974). However, the Director will deny a petition to reopen prosecution if granting the petition would require further examination (e.g., to consider a claim of acquired distinctiveness under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#) or an amendment to the Supplemental Register). See *In re Petite Suites Inc.*, 21 USPQ2d 1708 (Comm'r Pats. 1991); *In re Vycom Elecs. Ltd.*, 21 USPQ2d 1799 (Comm'r Pats. 1986); *In re Mack Trucks, Inc.*, 189 USPQ 642 (Comm'r Pats. 1976); see also [TBMP §1218](#) (and cases cited therein).

1501.07 Examining Attorney's Request for Reconsideration

In *In re Ferrero S.p.A.*, 22 USPQ2d 1800 (TTAB 1992), *recon. denied*, 24 USPQ2d 1061 (TTAB 1992), an augmented panel of the Board expressly overruled prior precedent and held that an examining attorney may request reconsideration of a Board decision reversing the examining attorney in an ex parte appeal.

The examining attorney's request must be filed within one month from the date of the Board's decision. [37 C.F.R. §2.144](#). No new evidence can be introduced with the request. The request should point out any errors of fact or law in the Board's decision.

To request reconsideration, the examining attorney must prepare a request and a supporting brief and submit the request to the managing attorney for concurrence in the decision to seek reconsideration. If the managing attorney concurs, the managing attorney will submit the request for reconsideration and brief to the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure for approval.

If the Administrator approves the request, the examining attorney will file the request with the Board and send a copy to the applicant. The Board will set an appropriate time for the applicant to respond to the request. The examining attorney may not file a reply brief in response to the applicant's brief.

1502 Publication in *Trademark Official Gazette*

After examination of an application is completed and the examining attorney determines that the mark is entitled to registration on the Principal Register, the mark is published in the *Official Gazette* of the USPTO for opposition. [15 U.S.C. §1062](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.80](#). Any notice of opposition must be filed within thirty days after the date of publication, or within an extension of time granted by the Board for filing an opposition. [15 U.S.C. §1063\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(c\)](#); [TMEP §1503.03](#). See [TMEP §1503.01](#) for further information about filing a notice of opposition.

Marks that are found to be registrable on the Supplemental Register are registered when printed in the *Official Gazette*. Marks registered on the Supplemental Register cannot be opposed, but are subject to cancellation under [15 U.S.C. §1064](#). [15 U.S.C. §1094](#).

In addition, marks registered on the Principal Register under the intent-to-use provisions of §1(d) of the Act are printed in the *Official Gazette* on the date of issuance of the registration. These marks were previously published for opposition, and are not subject to opposition again. See [TMEP §1105](#) regarding the publication of intent-to-use applications for opposition.

1502.01 Notification of Clerical Errors in Trademark Official Gazette

To request correction of a clerical error by the USPTO in the publication of a mark in the *Trademark Official Gazette*, the applicant or applicant's attorney must file a written request. This request should include the applicant's or attorney's telephone number and e-mail address, and should be e-mailed to TMPostPubQuery@uspto.gov. The request should be filed within one week after the date of publication in the *Official Gazette*.

Only purely clerical errors by the USPTO (e.g., a typographical error or omission, drawing printed upside down, or incorrectly stated data) can be corrected by a request(s) sent to this e-mail address. The paralegal specialists in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy will review the applicant's request to verify the existence of the clerical error and determine whether the error can be corrected without jurisdiction being restored to the examining attorney or republication being required.

To request correction of typographical errors made by the applicant that appear in the USPTO Trademark databases after the mark has been approved for publication, use the Post-Publication Amendment form at <http://teas.uspto.gov/office/ppa/>.

See [TMEP §§1505 et seq.](#) for information concerning post-publication amendments and when republication is required.

1503 Opposition

1503.01 Filing a Notice of Opposition

Any person who believes that he or she would be damaged by the registration of a mark on the Principal Register may oppose registration by filing a notice of opposition with the Board, and paying the required fee, within thirty days after the date of publication, or within an extension period granted by the Board for filing an opposition. See [15 U.S.C. §1063](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.101-2.107](#); [TBMP §§303](#).

The notice of opposition must include a concise statement of the reasons for the opposer's belief that the opposer would be damaged by the registration of the opposed mark, and must state the grounds for opposition. [37 C.F.R. §2.104\(a\)](#); [TBMP §309.03\(a\)\(2\)](#).

A notice of opposition to an application based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act must be filed through the Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals ("ESTTA") at <http://estta.uspto.gov/>. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(b\)\(1\)](#). If ESTTA is unavailable due to technical problems, or when extraordinary circumstances are present, an opposition to an application based on §1 or §44 may be filed in paper form. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(b\)\(2\)](#). The paper opposition must be filed by the due date set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(c\)](#) and must be accompanied by a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), with the required fees and a showing that ESTTA was unavailable because of technical problems or that extraordinary circumstances are present. *Id.*

A notice of opposition to an application based on §66(a) of the Act always *must* be filed through ESTTA and may not be filed in paper form under any circumstances. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(b\)\(3\)](#); *see In re Börlind Gesellschaft für kosmetische Erzeugnisse mbH*, 73 USPQ2d 2019 (TTAB 2005); [TBMP §309.01](#).

A notice of opposition does not have to be verified, and it may be signed by either the opposer or the opposer's attorney. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(b\)](#); [TBMP §309.02\(b\)](#).

1503.02 Joining Persons in an Opposition

Two or more persons may join in an opposition. [TBMP §303.06](#). Related companies are separate persons for the purpose of filing an opposition.

1503.03 Time for Opposing

An opposition must be filed within thirty days after the date of publication in the *Official Gazette*, or within an extension period granted by the Board. [15 U.S.C. §1063\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(c\)](#); [TBMP §§306 et seq.](#) The time within which to file an opposition is set by statute and may not be extended or waived. *In re Kabushiki Kaisha Hitachi Seisakusho*, 33 USPQ2d 1477 (Comm'r Pats. 1994); *In re Cooper*, 209 USPQ 670 (Comm'r Pats. 1980).

When a registration is issued, inadvertently, from an application that was the subject of a timely filed notice of opposition, the Board is without authority to cancel the registration and restore it to application status.

In this situation, the Board will refer the registration file to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy for appropriate action. *See* [TBMP §216](#). *See also* [TMEP §1609.10\(a\)](#) regarding correction of USPTO errors.

1503.04 Extension of Time to Oppose

Requests for extensions of time to oppose are handled by the Board. *See* [TBMP Chapter 200](#).

A request for an extension of time must be filed within thirty days after the date of publication in the *Official Gazette*, or within an extension period granted by the Board. [15 U.S.C. §1063\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.102\(c\)](#); [TBMP §202.01](#). The time within which to file a request for extension of time to oppose is set by statute and may not be extended or waived. *In re Kabushiki Kaisha Hitachi Seisakusho*, 33 USPQ2d 1477 (Comm'r Pats. 1994); *In re Cooper*, 209 USPQ 670 (Comm'r Pats. 1980).

A request for extension of time to oppose an application based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act must be filed through ESTTA, at <http://estta.uspto.gov/>. [37 C.F.R. §2.102\(a\)\(1\)](#). If ESTTA is unavailable due to technical problems, or when extraordinary circumstances are present, a request to extend the opposition period for an application based on §1 or §44 may be filed in paper form. *Id.* The paper extension request must be filed by the due date set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(c\)](#) and must be accompanied by a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), with the required fees and a showing that ESTTA was unavailable because of technical problems or that extraordinary circumstances are present. [37 C.F.R. §2.102\(a\)\(2\)](#).

A request for extension of time to oppose a §66(a) application always *must* be filed through ESTTA and may not be filed in paper form under any circumstances. [37 C.F.R. §2.102\(a\)\(1\)](#); *see In re Börlind Gesellschaft für kosmetische Erzeugnisse mbH*, 73 USPQ2d 2019 (TTAB 2005).

For additional information regarding filing a request for an extension of time to oppose, see [TBMP Chapters 200](#) and [300](#).

When a registration is issued, inadvertently, from an application that was the subject of an unexpired extension of time to oppose on the date of registration, the Board is without authority to cancel the registration and restore it to application status. See [TBMP §216](#). In this situation, a request to have the registration cancelled as inadvertently issued should be directed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. See [TMEP §1609.10\(a\)](#) regarding correction of USPTO errors.

1503.05 Opposition to §66(a) Applications

Section 68(a)(2) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(2\)](#), provides that a request for extension of protection is subject to opposition under §13 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1063](#). The USPTO must notify the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”) within 18 months of the date the IB sends the request for extension of protection to the USPTO of: (1) a notification of refusal based on the filing of an opposition; or (2) a notification of the possibility that an opposition may be filed after expiration of the 18-month period. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)\(1\)\(B\)-\(C\)](#); see [TMEP §§1904.03](#), [1904.04](#).

An opposition to a §66(a) application, or a request for extension of time to oppose a §66(a) application, must be filed through ESTTA and may not be filed in paper form under any circumstances. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(b\)\(3\)](#), [2.102\(a\)\(1\)](#); see *In re Börlind Gesellschaft für kosmetische Erzeugnisse mbH*, 73 USPQ2d 2019 (TTAB 2005).

Once filed, an opposition to a §66(a) application may not be amended to add to the grounds for opposition, to add to the goods/services opposed, or to add a joint opposer. [37 C.F.R. §§2.104\(c\)](#), [2.107\(b\)](#). The opposition is limited to the goods, services, grounds, and named opposers set forth in the ESTTA-generated opposition form cover sheet. [37 C.F.R. §§2.104\(c\)](#), [2.107\(b\)](#) (“The grounds for opposition, the goods or services opposed, and the named opposers are limited to those identified in the ESTTA cover sheet regardless of what is contained in any attached statement.”) *CSC Holdings LLC v. SAS Optimhome*, 99 USPQ2d 1959, 1962 (TTAB 2011); *Hunt Control Sys., Inc. v. Koninklijke Philips Elec. N.V.*, 98 USPQ2d 1558, 1561-62 (TTAB 2011); see [TBMP §315](#).

1504 Jurisdiction over Application

1504.01 Jurisdiction of Examining Attorney

As a general rule, until publication of the mark in the *Official Gazette*, the examining attorney has jurisdiction over the application and can issue a refusal or a requirement without the approval of the Director. See [TMEP §1504.03](#) regarding action by the examining attorney after publication.

In addition, for applications under §1(b) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#), the examining attorney has jurisdiction after issuance of the notice of allowance under §13(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1063\(b\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.84\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1107](#) regarding amendment of a §1(b) application during the period between issuance of a notice of allowance and filing of a statement of use.

There is a time period during which an examining attorney cannot issue an action in an application because the USPTO is unable to withdraw the mark from its scheduled publication in the *Official Gazette*. The USPTO is generally unable to withdraw a mark within the twenty-day period before the scheduled publication date. See [TMEP §§1505 et seq.](#) regarding the processing of amendments filed during this period.

1504.02 Jurisdiction of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

The Board has jurisdiction over an application upon the filing of the notice of appeal. The Board may, in response to an examining attorney's request, on its own initiative, or upon request from the applicant, suspend the appeal and remand the application to the examining attorney. If an examining attorney wants to issue a new refusal or requirement during an appeal, the examining attorney must file a request for remand with the Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(f\)\(6\)](#). See TBMP §§[1209.01](#), [1209.02](#); [TMEP §1504.05](#). See [TMEP §715.04\(a\) and \(b\)](#) regarding the examining attorney's action when an application is remanded after the filing of an appeal.

The Board also has jurisdiction over any application in which a notice of opposition has been filed or a concurrent use proceeding has commenced. The Board will approve or disapprove any amendments proposed during an inter partes proceeding. See [37 C.F.R. §2.133](#); [TBMP §§514 et seq.](#); [TMEP §1505.01\(f\)](#).

In an application under §1 or §44 of the Act, if an examining attorney wants to issue a new refusal or requirement during an inter partes proceeding, the examining attorney must request that the Board suspend the proceedings and remand the application for further examination. [37 C.F.R. §2.130](#); [TBMP §515](#). In a §66(a) application, the examining attorney may not request a remand during an opposition. [TBMP §515](#); [TMEP §1504.05](#).

A request for an extension of time to file an opposition does not vest jurisdiction in the Board. In this situation, any request by the examining attorney for jurisdiction should be addressed to the Director. See [TMEP §§1504.03](#), [1504.04\(a\)](#).

The Board has no jurisdiction over a pending application that has been suspended pending disposition of the applicant's petition to cancel a registration cited under §2(d) of the Trademark Act (see [TMEP §716.02\(a\)](#)), or disposition of the applicant's opposition to an earlier-filed application cited as a potential bar to registration under §2(d) (see [TMEP §§716.02\(c\)](#), [1208.02\(c\)](#)). In either situation, if the applicant wants to amend its pending application, or submit a consent agreement, the applicant must file the amendment or the consent agreement with the examining attorney, not with the Board. See [TBMP §605.03\(c\)](#) regarding filing an amendment or consent agreement in a pending application owned by the plaintiff pursuant to a settlement agreement between the parties in a Board proceeding.

1504.03 Action by Examining Attorney After Publication

If it is found necessary (e.g., through internal quality review), for an examining attorney to refuse registration or to make a requirement after a mark has been published for opposition, jurisdiction over the application must be restored to the examining attorney.

With the exception of applications that are the subject of inter partes proceedings before the Board (see [TMEP §1504.05](#)), the examining attorney can telephone an applicant and issue an examiner's amendment without restoration of jurisdiction. However, if the examining attorney issues an Office action, even if merely asking for additional information, the examining attorney must request jurisdiction, because the request for additional information is a "requirement."

If it is necessary to issue an Office action after publication, the examining attorney must check the status of the application to determine whether the Board has received a notice of opposition. If a request for an extension of time to file an opposition has been filed, the examining attorney should prepare a request to restore jurisdiction, directed to the Director. See [TMEP §1504.04\(a\)](#). If a notice of opposition has been

filed, jurisdiction is with the Board, and the examining attorney should file a request for remand, directed to the Board. See [TMEP §1504.05](#).

When it is necessary to issue an Office action after publication in a §1(a) application, but it is too late to withdraw the application from issuance of a registration, the examining attorney should bring the matter to the attention of the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure. After registration, the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy may restore the application to pendency and refer it to the examining attorney for appropriate action.

See [TMEP §§1505](#) *et seq.* regarding amendments proposed by applicants after publication.

1504.04 Restoration of Jurisdiction to Examining Attorney by Director

If it is necessary to refuse registration or to make a requirement after publication and prior to the filing of a notice of opposition or issuance of a notice of allowance, the examining attorney must request that the Director restore jurisdiction so that the examining attorney may take the specified action on the application. See [TMEP §1106.02](#) regarding action by the examining attorney after issuance of a notice of allowance.

Normally, the Director will restore jurisdiction to the examining attorney only if there has been a clear error (see [TMEP §706.01](#)) After publication of a mark, a restoration of jurisdiction to the examining attorney is possible only in the case of an application for registration on the Principal Register. A mark found registrable on the Supplemental Register is not published for opposition but is published only when it has registered.

The examining attorney does not have to request jurisdiction to act in a §1(b) application *after* issuance of the notice of allowance. If, after the notice of allowance issues, the examining attorney determines that he or she must issue a new refusal or requirement, the examining attorney must request cancellation of the notice of allowance. However, the examining attorney should not make a refusal or requirement that could or should have been made during initial examination of the application unless the initial failure to make the refusal or requirement was a clear error, and must consult with the managing attorney or senior attorney before taking the action. See [TMEP §706.01](#) regarding “clear error” and [TMEP §§1106.02](#) and [1106.03](#) regarding action by the examining attorney after issuance of the notice of allowance and cancellation of the notice of allowance.

The provisions with respect to requesting jurisdiction over published §66(a) applications are similar to those for applications under §§1(a) and 44 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.84](#). However, when deciding whether to grant requests for jurisdiction of §66(a) applications, the Director must consider the time limits for notifying the IB of a refusal of a §66(a) application, set forth in Article 5(2) of the Madrid Protocol and §68(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#) for further information.

1504.04(a) Request for Jurisdiction

The examining attorney’s request for jurisdiction should be in the form of a memorandum to the Director, accompanied by the Office action that the examining attorney proposes to send to the applicant. The request should be signed by the examining attorney, the managing attorney, and the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure.

In the Office action, the examining attorney should apologize for the untimeliness of the action because, at this point, except for possible opposition issues, the applicant is expecting issuance of a registration or notice

of allowance. The action should provide a detailed explanation of the basis for the refusal or requirement, citing appropriate case law, even when addressing basic and well-established propositions.

1504.05 Remand to Examining Attorney by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

The Board, on its own initiative or in response to a request, may remand an application to the examining attorney for consideration of specific facts or issues. Upon receipt of a remand from the Board, the examining attorney may not make a requirement or refuse registration on a ground not specified in the Board's remand letter or submit evidence relating to a requirement or ground not specified in the Board's remand letter. *In re Hughes Furniture Indus., Inc.*, 114 USPQ2d 1134, 1136 (TTAB 2015) . When the Board initiates a remand, the examining attorney must take action upon the remanded issue within the time set by the Board in the remand order. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(f\)\(1\)](#); [TBMP §1209.01](#).

A request for remand made by the examining attorney should succinctly explain the specific reasons why remand is requested. That is, the request should be a brief statement of the reason for the request and an explanation of the action the examining attorney intends to take. On remand, the examining attorney may address only those issues for which the application was remanded. If the examining attorney identifies additional issues other than those for which the application was remanded, the examining attorney must request an expanded remand to consider the additional issues. [TBMP §1209.02](#).

The following are examples of circumstances when the Board may remand an application to the examining attorney during an ex parte appeal:

- (1) When evidence that the applicant or the examining attorney wants to include in the record was not previously available (e.g., a recent article, newly issued registration, or recent decision).
- (2) When a new attorney for the applicant, or a new examining attorney, wants to supplement the record made by his or her predecessor.
- (3) When the applicant and the examining attorney agree to a remand.
- (4) When the examining attorney requests a remand to issue a new requirement or new ground for refusal of registration, or to reinstate a previously withdrawn requirement or refusal. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(f\)\(6\)](#). Prior to submission of such a request for remand, however, the examining attorney must bring the matter to the attention of the managing and senior attorneys, who must then bring it to the attention of the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy ("Administrator"). See [TBMP §1209.02](#) regarding an examining attorney's request for remand.

See also [TBMP §1207.02](#).

A request for remand by the examining attorney to submit additional evidence must include a showing of good cause (which may take the form of a satisfactory explanation as to why the evidence was not filed prior to appeal), and be accompanied by the additional evidence sought to be introduced. See [TBMP §1207.02](#). Absent a remand, no evidence should be submitted to the Board following a notice of appeal, except with or in response to an applicant's timely filed request for reconsideration. [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(d\)](#); [TBMP §1207.01](#). See [TBMP §1207.04](#) and [TMEP §715.03](#) regarding the submission of evidence with or in response to a request for reconsideration.

If the examining attorney finds it necessary to refuse registration or to make a requirement during an inter partes proceeding involving an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the examining attorney must request the Board to remand the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.130](#). However, the examining attorney must

bring the matter to the attention of the managing and senior attorneys, who must then bring it to the attention of the Administrator prior to submission of such a request for remand. In a §66(a) application, the examining attorney may not request a remand during an inter partes proceeding.

See [TBMP §1209](#) regarding remand during an appeal, and [TBMP §515](#) regarding remand during an inter partes proceeding.

1505 Amendments Filed by Applicants After Publication

Applicants sometimes submit amendments after publication. For processing purposes, an “amendment after publication” includes any amendment filed during the time period in which the USPTO is unable to withdraw a mark from its scheduled publication in the *Official Gazette*, or from the scheduled issuance of its registration. The USPTO is generally unable to withdraw a mark unless the amendment is received and processed at least twenty days before the scheduled publication date or registration issue date.

The following sections discuss the USPTO’s procedures and policies for the disposition of amendments after publication.

1505.01 Procedures for Processing Amendments Filed by the Applicant After Publication

1505.01(a) Form and Timing of Amendments

All amendments filed after publication must be submitted in writing. Unless a notice of opposition has been filed, the USPTO prefers that amendments filed after publication but before issuance of a registration or notice of allowance be filed electronically. In TEAS, the Post-Publication Amendment form can be accessed at <http://www.uspto.gov>. If it is not possible to file the amendment electronically, it should be faxed to Post Publication Amendments/Corrections at 571-270-9007, unless the amendment includes a special form drawing. See [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(d\)\(2\)](#) (prohibiting fax transmission of drawing). An amendment filed on paper that includes a special form drawing should be mailed to the following address:

Commissioner for Trademarks
Petitions Office
P.O. Box 1451
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451

Requests to correct minor typographical errors entered by the USPTO, inquiries regarding the procedure for submitting a post-publication amendment, or questions regarding the status of a pending post-publication amendment can be e-mailed to TMPostPubQuery@uspto.gov.

Any amendment filed during the pendency of an inter partes opposition proceeding should be filed directly with the Board. See [37 C.F.R. §2.133](#); [TMEP §1505.01\(f\)](#).

The USPTO cannot process any amendment filed during the time periods in which the mark cannot be withdrawn from publication in the *Official Gazette* or from issuance of a registration. If a request for amendment relates to a mark that cannot be withdrawn from publication, it will be processed in accordance with the procedures set forth in [TMEP §§1505.01\(b\)](#) through [1505.02\(f\)](#). If a request for amendment relates to a mark that cannot be withdrawn from issuance of a registration, or that has already registered, the applicant will be instructed to resubmit its request to the Post Registration Section as a request to amend or correct the registration under §7 of the Trademark Act. [15 U.S.C. §1057](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.6, 2.173\(a\), 2.174, 2.175](#).

See [TMPEP §§1107](#) and [1107.01](#) regarding amendments to a §1(b) application filed between the issuance of a notice of allowance and the submission of a statement of use, and [TMPEP §§1609](#) *et seq.* regarding amendment of a registration under §7(e) of the Trademark Act.

1505.01(b) Processing Amendments to §§1(a), 44, and 66(a) Applications in Cases Where No Opposition Has Been Filed and a Registration Certificate Has Not Yet Issued

Amendments filed after publication will be reviewed by paralegal specialists in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. If necessary, the application will be withdrawn from issue to ensure that the mark does not register before the amendment has been considered. The paralegal specialists will consult with an attorney, if necessary.

1505.01(b)(i) Acceptable Amendments

If an amendment is acceptable and does not require republication of the mark, the paralegal specialist will enter the amendment and the mark will continue on to the scheduled issue date. See [TMPEP §1505.03\(b\)](#) for examples of amendments that do not require republication.

If the amendment is acceptable and republication is required, the paralegal specialist must telephone or e-mail the applicant and inform the applicant that the amendment is acceptable, but requires republication of the mark. If the applicant wishes to pursue the request, the paralegal specialist must enter a Note to the File in the record that the proposed amendment has been accepted, that republication is required, and that the applicant has agreed to the republication. The paralegal specialist will then enter the amendment and set a new publication date. A new notice of publication will be issued. See [TMPEP §1505.03\(a\)](#) for examples of amendments that require republication.

1505.01(b)(ii) Unacceptable Amendments

If the paralegal specialist determines that an amendment is unacceptable, the paralegal specialist must provide written notification to the applicant, explaining why the amendment is unacceptable and advising the applicant that: (1) the application will be returned to processing without entry of the requested amendment; and (2) applicant's only recourse is to file a petition to the Director requesting that jurisdiction be restored to the examining attorney to consider the merits of the amendment. [37 C.F.R. §§2.84, 2.146](#). Any petition to the Director must be filed within six weeks of the publication date to ensure that it is timely processed. Thereafter, any request for amendment must be filed pursuant to §7 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057](#).

1505.01(c) Processing Amendments to §1(b) Applications in Cases Where No Opposition Has Been Filed and No Notice of Allowance Has Issued

Amendments filed after publication and before issuance of a notice of allowance will be reviewed by paralegal specialists in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. If necessary, the application will be withdrawn from issue to ensure that the notice of allowance does not issue before the amendment has been considered.

1505.01(c)(i) Acceptable Amendments

If the amendment is acceptable and republication is not required, the paralegal specialist will enter the amendment and schedule the mark for issuance of a notice of allowance. See [TMPEP §1505.03\(b\)](#) for examples of amendments that do not require republication.

If the amendment is acceptable and republication is required, a paralegal specialist must telephone or e-mail the applicant and inform the applicant that the amendment is acceptable, but requires republication of the mark. If the applicant wishes to pursue the request, the paralegal specialist must enter a Note to the File in the record indicating that the proposed amendment has been accepted, that republication is required, and that the applicant has agreed to the republication. The paralegal specialist will then enter the amendment and set a new publication date. A new notice of publication will be issued. See [TMEP §1505.03\(a\)](#) for examples of amendments that require republication.

1505.01(c)(ii) Unacceptable Amendments

If the paralegal specialist determines that the amendment is unacceptable, the paralegal specialist must provide written notification to the applicant explaining why the amendment is unacceptable and advising the applicant that: (1) the request to amend the application may be resubmitted with the statement of use; or (2) the applicant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §§2.84](#) and [2.146](#) requesting that jurisdiction be restored to the examining attorney to consider the merits of the amendment.

See [TMEP §§1107](#) *et seq.* regarding amendments after issuance of the notice of allowance but before the filing of the statement of use.

1505.01(d) Processing Amendments Filed Between Issuance of the Notice of Allowance and Filing of Statement of Use

Generally, the only amendments that will be entered in a §1(b) application between the issuance of a notice of allowance and the submission of a statement of use are those outlined in [TMEP §1107](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(a\)](#). All other amendments may be entered during this period only with the express permission of the Director, after consideration on petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). If the Director determines that the amendment requires review by the examining attorney, the petition will be denied and the amendment may be resubmitted with the statement of use in order for the applicant to preserve its right to review. [37 C.F.R. §2.77\(b\)](#). See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions and [TMEP §§1107–1107.01](#) for further information about amendments filed between the issuance of a notice of allowance and the submission of a statement of use.

1505.01(e) Processing Amendments in Cases Where a Request for Extension of Time to Oppose Has Been Filed or Granted

An amendment of an application that is under an extension of time to file an opposition should be processed in accordance with the procedures set forth in [TMEP §§1505.01\(b\)-\(d\)](#). The Director retains jurisdiction of such an application until an opposition is actually filed.

It is not necessary for the paralegal specialist to notify the Board of the action taken on the amendment.

The Board will not suspend the potential opposer's time to file a notice of opposition in this situation. See notice at 68 Fed. Reg. 55748, 55760 (Sept. 26, 2003).

1505.01(f) Processing Amendments in Cases Where an Opposition Has Been Filed

If the applicant files an amendment after a notice of opposition has been filed, the Board will act on the amendment under [37 C.F.R. §2.133](#). The Board has jurisdiction over any application in which an opposition has been filed. See [TBMP §§514](#) *et seq.* for further information about amendment of an application during an opposition.

1505.02 Types of Amendments After Publication

The following subsections discuss the most common types of amendments after publication. Note that there are some restrictions on amendments to §66(a) applications, as discussed below. In addition, only certain amendments are permitted in §1(b) applications between the issuance of the notice of allowance and filing of the statement of use absent the filing of a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.77](#); [TMEP §§1107, 1107.01](#).

See [TMEP §1505.01\(a\)](#) regarding the form and timing of filing amendments after publication and [TMEP §1609](#) regarding amendment of a registration under §7(e) of the Trademark Act.

1505.02(a) Amendments to the Identification

If an applicant proposes to amend the identification after publication by *restricting* or *deleting* items in the existing identification, and the amendment is otherwise proper, the USPTO will approve the amendment, and the mark will not be republished. Amendments to add to or broaden the scope of an identification are not permitted at any time. See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#); [TMEP §§1402.07 et seq.](#)

1505.02(b) Amendments to Classification

In an application under §1 or §44, if the applicant proposes to amend the classification after publication, and the amendment is consistent with the current version of the *Nice Agreement Concerning the International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks*, the USPTO will approve the amendment. Republication is not required.

The international classification in a §66(a) application cannot be changed from the classification assigned by the IB. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); see [TMEP §1401.03\(d\)](#).

1505.02(c) Amendments to Marks

In an application under §1 or §44, if the applicant proposes to amend the mark after publication, the amendment is not a material alteration of the mark, and the specimen of record or foreign registration (if applicable) supports use of the mark as amended, the USPTO will approve the amendment and will not republish the mark. If the applicant proposes to amend the mark and the amendment represents a material alteration to the mark, the USPTO will not approve the amendment. See [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); [TMEP §§807.13 et seq.](#), [807.14 et seq.](#)

The mark in a §66(a) application cannot be amended. [TMEP §807.13\(b\)](#).

1505.02(d) Amendments to the Dates of Use

If, in an application under §1(a), the applicant proposes to amend the dates of use to adopt a date of use that is after the filing date of the application, the USPTO will not approve the amendment. See [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(1\)](#). If, in an application under §1(a), the applicant proposes to amend the dates of use to adopt a date of use that is later than the date originally stated, but before the application filing date, the USPTO will approve the amendment and will republish the mark to provide notice to parties who may have commenced use of a similar mark during the intervening period. If the applicant proposes to amend the dates of use to adopt a date that is before the date originally stated, the USPTO will approve the amendment and will not

republish the mark. See [TMEP §903.04](#) for further information about amending the dates of use in a pending application, and [TMEP §1609.07](#) regarding amendment of the dates of use after registration.

1505.02(e) Amendments Adding or Deleting Disclaimers

If an applicant proposes to amend an application to insert a disclaimer after publication and before issuance of the notice of allowance or registration certificate, and the amendment is otherwise proper, the USPTO will approve the amendment and will not republish the mark. If the notice of allowance has issued, an amendment to insert a disclaimer may not be submitted as a post publication amendment. It must be submitted in a petition to the Director under Trademark Rule 2.146. [37 C.F.R. §§2.77\(b\), 2.146](#). Likewise, if the USPTO requests the insertion of a disclaimer after publication and the applicant agrees to the disclaimer, the USPTO will enter the disclaimer and will not republish the mark.

If an applicant proposes to amend the application to delete a disclaimer after publication and before issuance of the notice of allowance or registration certificate, and the USPTO determines that the amendment is acceptable, the USPTO will approve the amendment in accordance with the procedures in [TMEP §1505.01\(c\)\(i\)](#), and will republish the mark. If the amendment deleting the disclaimer is unacceptable, the USPTO will follow the procedures in [TMEP §1505.01\(c\)\(ii\)](#). A request to delete a disclaimer after issuance of the notice of allowance and before the filing of a statement of use is not permitted. Between the issuance of the notice of allowance and the filing of a statement of use, the Office cannot republish the application or issue an Office action regarding the request. The applicant may submit the amendment with the statement of use.

Republishing is generally required when a disclaimer is deleted after publication (e.g., if printed through a clerical error or originally required by the examining attorney and later determined to be unnecessary).

Exception: If the applicant proposes to amend the mark after publication to delete matter that was the subject of a disclaimer (e.g., generic wording), the USPTO determines that the amendment is not a material alteration of the mark, and the applicant also requests that the disclaimer be deleted, republishing is not required.

1505.02(f) Amendment of the Basis

In an application that is not the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Board, if an applicant wants to add or substitute a basis after publication, the applicant must petition the Director to allow the examining attorney to consider the amendment. If the Director grants the petition, and the examining attorney accepts the added or substituted basis, the mark must be republished. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §806.03\(j\)](#). See [TMEP §806.03](#) regarding amending the basis generally and [37 C.F.R. §2.133\(a\)](#) and [TBMP §514](#) regarding amending the basis of an application that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Board.

In a §66(a) application, the applicant may not change the basis, unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§1904.09 et seq.](#) regarding transformation.

In a multiple-basis application, the applicant may delete a basis at any time prior to registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(1\)](#). No petition is required. See [TMEP §806.04\(a\)](#) regarding the deletion of a §1(b) basis after publication or issuance of the notice of allowance.

1505.02(g) Amendments to the Applicant's Name, Citizenship, or Entity Type

If an applicant proposes to amend an application after publication to correct an inadvertent error in the manner in which its name, entity type, or citizenship is set forth, and the amendment is otherwise proper, the USPTO will approve the amendment and will not republish the mark. See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors in identifying the applicant.

1505.03 Republication for Opposition

The following sections list examples of post-publication amendments that require republication of the mark and those that do not require republication. If a mark that is the subject of a request for an extension of time to oppose will be republished, the paralegal specialist or the examining attorney who orders the republication must notify the Board that the mark will be republished. See [TBMP §214](#) regarding the effect of republication on marks that are republished during the original thirty-day opposition period or within a granted extension period.

1505.03(a) When Republication Is Required

Republication is required after entry of any acceptable post-publication amendment that expands the applicant's rights or would otherwise require notice to third parties. The following list, though not exhaustive, provides examples of amendments that would require republication of the mark:

- Amendment adds or substitutes a basis (see [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#));
- Unnecessary §2(f) claim is deleted;
- Unnecessary disclaimer is deleted;
- A product, service, or class was deleted by USPTO error and is reinserted into the application;
- A product, service, or class was deleted due to partial abandonment (see [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#)) and is reinserted upon granting of petition to revive;
- Identification is amended to an identification that is narrower in scope than the published identification, but results in a material difference in the nature of the goods/services/collective membership organization (e.g., the mark published for “shoes” in Class 25 and the applicant then amends to “orthopedic shoes” in Class 10);
- An incorrect mark was published due to USPTO error;
- The effective filing date (see [TMEP §§206 et seq.](#)) changes to a later date;
- The priority filing date under §44(d) (see [TMEP §1003](#)) is corrected to a later date;
- In a §1(a) application, either the date(s) of first use or the date(s) of first use in commerce is amended to a date(s) that is later than the date(s) stated (but earlier than the filing date of the application);
- In a §1(b) application for which an amendment to allege use has been filed, either the date(s) of first use or the date(s) of first use in commerce is amended to a date(s) that is later than the date(s) stated (but earlier than the filing date of the amendment to allege use);
- Application is amended to the Principal Register from the Supplemental Register;
- Application is amended from a trademark or service mark to certification mark or vice versa;
- An application with a §44(e) basis is amended to rely on a different foreign registration after publication.

1505.03(b) When Republication Is Not Required

Republication is not required after entry of **acceptable** post-publication amendments in the following situations:

- The mark is amended, and the USPTO determines that the amendment is not a material alteration of the mark;
- A multiple-basis application is amended to delete a §1(b) basis;
- The priority filing date under §44(d) (see [TMEP §1003](#)) is corrected to an earlier date;
- Identification is amended to adopt an identification that is narrower in scope than the published identification and there is no material difference in the nature of the goods/services/collective membership organization (e.g., republication is not required if the mark published for “shoes” in Class 25 and the applicant amends to “shoes, namely, running shoes” in Class 25);
- An application that published on the Principal Register is amended to the Supplemental Register;
- The filing date (*see* [TMEP §§206](#) *et seq.*) is amended to an earlier date (*Note* : The filing date change must be approved by the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.);
- The date(s) of first use or date(s) of first use in commerce is amended to adopt a date(s) that is earlier than the date(s) originally stated;
- The goods/services/collective membership organization published in the wrong class;
- A disclaimer is added;
- A §2(f) claim is added;
- The applicant’s name, citizenship, or entity type is amended to correct an inadvertent error;
- In a §1(b) application for which a statement of use has been filed, either the date(s) of first use or the date(s) of first use in commerce is amended to a date(s) that is later than the date(s) stated (but earlier than the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use);
- An amendment to show the dates of use in one or more classes for a multiple-class application that published without the dates showing in those classes, when the dates of use appeared on the allegation of use and are the same as or earlier than those that published for the other classes.
- A statement of concurrent use is added.

1506 Concurrent Use Registration Proceeding

A concurrent use registration proceeding is an inter partes proceeding in which the Board determines whether one or more applicants are entitled to concurrent registration. A concurrent registration is one with conditions and limitations, fixed by the Board, as to the mode or place of use of the applicant’s mark or the goods/services/collective membership organization on or in connection with which the mark is used. The Board conducts these proceedings after the mark has been published, and the Board determines whether or not concurrent use registrations should issue. *See* [TBMP Chapter 1100](#).

See [TMEP §§1207.04](#) *et seq.* regarding the procedure to be followed by examining attorneys in relation to concurrent use.

1507 Interference

An interference is a proceeding in which the Board determines which, if any, of the owners of conflicting applications (or of one or more applications and one or more registrations that are in conflict) is entitled to registration. *See* [15 U.S.C. §§1066](#), [1068](#).

An interference can be declared only upon petition to the Director. However, the Director will grant such a petition only if the petitioner can show extraordinary circumstances that would result in a party being unduly prejudiced in the absence of an interference. [37 C.F.R. §2.91\(a\)](#). The availability of an opposition or cancellation proceeding ordinarily precludes the possibility of undue prejudice to a party. Thus, a petitioner must show that there is some extraordinary circumstance that would make the remedy of opposition or

cancellation inadequate or prejudicial to the party's rights. Interferences are generally limited to situations where a party would otherwise be required to engage in successive or a series of opposition or cancellation proceedings, and where the issues are substantially the same. *See In re Family Inns of Am., Inc.*, 180 USPQ 332 (Comm'r Pats. 1974).

The following matters are not subject to interference: (1) registrations on the Supplemental Register; (2) applications for registration on the Supplemental Register; (3) registrations under the Act of 1920; and (4) registrations of marks that have become incontestable. [37 C.F.R. §2.91\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1208.03 et seq.](#) and [TBMP Chapter 1000](#) for more information about interferences.

Chapter 1600 Registration and Post Registration Procedures

1601	Types of Registrations
1601.01	Registrations Now Being Issued
1601.01(a)	Certificate of Registration
1601.01(b)	Duplicate Certificate of Registration
1601.01(c)	Registered Extension of Protection of International Registration to the United States
1601.02	Repeal of Prior Acts
1601.03	Additional Registration Under Act of 1946
1601.04	1881 and 1905 Act Registrations
1601.05	1920 Act Registrations
1601.06	Registrations Issued Under Prior Classification Systems
1601.07	Form of Copies of Registrations
1602	Duration and Maintenance of Registrations
1602.01	Act of 1946
1602.02	Acts of 1881 and 1905
1602.03	Act of 1920
1602.04	Trademark Law Treaty Implementation Act Changes
1603	Bringing Prior Act Registrations Under 1946 Act, §12(c)
1603.01	Notification and Printing of Mark in Official Gazette
1603.02	Cancellation and Incontestability
1603.03	Affidavits or Declarations of Use in Commerce Required
1604	Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse of Mark in Commerce under §8 of the Trademark Act
1604.01	Registrations to Which §8 Affidavit or Declaration Pertains
1604.02	Notice of When Affidavit or Declaration Is Due
1604.03	Form for Filing §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.04	Time for Filing §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.04(a)	Premature Filing of §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.04(b)	Registrations in Twenty-Year Terms
1604.05	Requirements for §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.06	Fees for §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.06(a)	Filing Fee for Affidavit or Declaration
1604.06(b)	Grace Period Surcharge and Deficiency Surcharge
1604.06(c)	Processing Affidavit or Declaration Filed with Insufficient Fees
1604.07	Ownership and Who May File §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.07(a)	Affidavit or Declaration Must Be Filed by Owner
1604.07(b)	Establishing Ownership
1604.07(c)	Acceptance Notice Issued in Name of Owner of Record
1604.07(d)	Changes of Legal Entity
1604.07(e)	Changes of Name
1604.07(f)	Correction of Mistake in Setting Forth the Name of the Owner
1604.08	Execution of Affidavit or Declaration
1604.08(a)	Persons Who May Sign Affidavit or Declaration
1604.08(b)	Date of Execution of Affidavit or Declaration
1604.08(c)	Signature of Electronically Transmitted Affidavit or Declaration
1604.08(d)	Form and Wording of Verification
1604.09	Goods/Services/Classes Set Forth in §8 Affidavit or Declaration
1604.09(a)	Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization Must Be Specified or Expressly Incorporated by Reference
1604.09(b)	Deletion of Goods/Services/Classes

- 1604.09(c) Failure to List All Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization in Registration
- 1604.09(d) New Goods and/or Services Cannot Be Added
- 1604.10 Use in Commerce
- 1604.11 “Excusable Nonuse” of Mark
- 1604.12 Specimen Showing Current Use of Mark in Commerce
- 1604.12(a) Specimen for Each Class Required
- 1604.12(b) Specimens in Electronically Filed Affidavits or Declarations
- 1604.12(c) Substitute Specimens
- 1604.13 Differences in the Mark as Used on the Specimen and the Mark as Registered
- 1604.13(a) Possible Amendment of Mark in Registration
- 1604.14 Designation of Domestic Representative by Foreign Owner
- 1604.15 Office Actions and Notices Regarding Affidavit or Declaration
- 1604.16 Response to Office Action
- 1604.17 Correction of Deficiencies in §8 Affidavit or Declaration
- 1604.17(a) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Timely Filed Within the Periods Set Forth in §8(a) of the Act
- 1604.17(b) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Filed During the Grace Period
- 1604.17(c) Defects That Cannot be Cured After Expiration of the Grace Period
- 1604.18 Petition Under 37 C.F.R. §2.146
- 1604.18(a) Response to Examiner’s Refusal Required Before Petition
- 1604.18(b) Decision on Petition Is Final Action of the USPTO
- 1604.18(c) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition
- 1604.18(d) Appeal to Federal Court
- 1604.19 Section 8 Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse Combined with Renewal Application
- 1604.20 Additional Requirements for §8 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Collective Marks
- 1604.20(a) Exercising Legitimate Control
- 1604.20(b) Manner/Method of Control
- 1604.21 Additional Requirements for §8 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Certification Marks
- 1604.21(a) Certification Standards
- 1604.21(b) Exercising Legitimate Control
- 1604.21(c) Certification Statement
- 1604.21(d) Statement that Owner is Not Engaged in Production or Marketing of the Goods/Services
- 1605 **Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability Under §15 of the Trademark Act**
- 1605.01 Registrations to Which §15 Affidavit or Declaration Pertains
- 1605.02 Form for Filing Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability
- 1605.03 Time for Filing Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability
- 1605.04 Requirements for Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability
- 1605.05 Combining §15 Affidavit or Declaration with §8 Affidavit or Declaration
- 1605.06 Section 14 Limitation is Independent of §15 Affidavit or Declaration
- 1606 **Renewal of Registration Under §9 of the Trademark Act**
- 1606.01 Which Registrations Must Be Renewed Under §9
- 1606.01(a) Registrations Based on Applications Under §1 or §44 Must Be Renewed Under §9
- 1606.01(b) Section 9 Does Not Apply to Extensions of Protection of International Registrations to the United States

- 1606.01(c) Renewal of Registrations Issued Under Prior U.S. Trademark Acts Must Be Renewed Under §9
- 1606.02 Requirements for Renewal Under §9
- 1606.03 Time for Filing §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.03(a) Premature Filing of §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.04 Form for Filing §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.05 Fees for §9 Renewal Applications
- 1606.05(a) Fee for Filing Application for Renewal Under §9
- 1606.05(b) Grace Period Surcharge and Deficiency Surcharge
- 1606.05(c) Processing §9 Renewal Application Filed with Insufficient Fees
- 1606.06 Ownership and Who May File §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.07 Execution of §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.08 Goods/Services/Classes Set Forth in §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.08(a) Listing of Goods/Services/Classes Required Only for Partial Renewal
- 1606.08(b) No Goods/Services/Classes Listed
- 1606.08(c) Some Goods/Services/Classes Listed
- 1606.08(d) Goods/Services/Classes Not Listed in Registration May Not Be Listed in Renewal Application
- 1606.09 Affidavit of Use in Commerce or Excusable Nonuse Not Required
- 1606.10 Designation of Domestic Representative by Foreign Applicant for Renewal Under §9
- 1606.11 Office Actions and Notices Regarding §9 Renewal Application
- 1606.12 Response to Office Action
- 1606.13 Correction of Deficiencies in §9 Renewal Applications
- 1606.13(a) Correcting Deficiencies in §9 Renewal Applications Filed Within the Year Before the Expiration Date of the Registration
- 1606.13(b) Correcting Deficiencies in Renewal Applications Filed During the Grace Period
- 1606.13(c) Late Filing Cannot Be Cured
- 1606.14 Petition Under 37 C.F.R. §2.146
- 1606.14(a) Response to Examiner's Refusal Required Before Petition
- 1606.14(b) Decision on Petition is Final Action of the USPTO
- 1606.14(c) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition
- 1606.14(d) Appeal to Federal Court
- 1606.15 Section 9 Renewal Application Combined with Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse
- 1607 **Cancellation of Registrations Under §§14 and 37 of the Trademark Act**
- 1608 **Surrender of Registration for Cancellation**
- 1609 **Amendment and Correction of Registrations**
- 1609.01 Amendment of Registration - In General
- 1609.01(a) Limited Amendments to Registered Extension of Protection
- 1609.01(b) Amendment of Registration Resulting from §1 or §44 Application
- 1609.02 Amendment of Mark
- 1609.02(a) Determining What Constitutes Material Alteration of Mark
- 1609.02(b) New Drawing Required
- 1609.02(c) Supporting Specimens and Declaration
- 1609.02(d) Conforming Amendments
- 1609.02(e) Amendment of Black-and-White Drawing of Mark for Which Color is Claimed to Substitute Color Drawing
- 1609.02(f) Amendment of Black-and-White Drawing to Color Drawing
- 1609.02(g) Amendment to Special Form Drawing Containing Black, White, and/or Gray

1609.03	Amendment of Identification
1609.04	Amendment of Classification
1609.05	Disclaimer of Mark and Claim of Acquired Distinctiveness
1609.06	Territorial Restrictions
1609.07	Dates of Use
1609.08	Effect of Amendment of Registration on Limitation of Grounds for Cancellation of a Registration
1609.09	Amendment from Supplemental to Principal Register Not Permitted
1609.10	Correction of Mistake in Registration
1609.10(a)	Correction of USPTO Error
1609.10(b)	Correction of Owner's Error
1609.11	Change of Owner's Address Can Be Filed Through TEAS
1609.12	Amendment of Certification Statement for Certification Marks
1610	Court Orders Concerning Registrations
1611	Updating Automated Records to Show the Status of Registrations
1612	Powers of Attorney and Designations of Domestic Representative Filed After Registration
1613	Affidavit or Declaration of Use in Commerce or Excusable Nonuse Under §71 of the Trademark Act
1613.01	Registrations to Which §71 Affidavit or Declaration Pertains
1613.02	Notice of When Affidavit or Declaration Is Due
1613.03	Form for Filing §71 Affidavit or Declaration
1613.04	Time for Filing §71 Affidavit or Declaration
1613.05	Requirements for §71 Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse
1613.06	Fees for §71 Affidavit or Declaration
1613.06(a)	Filing Fee for Affidavit or Declaration
1613.06(b)	Grace Period Surcharge and Deficiency Surcharge
1613.06(c)	Processing Affidavit or Declaration Filed with Insufficient Fees
1613.07	Ownership and Who May File §71 Affidavit or Declaration
1613.07(a)	Affidavit or Declaration Must Be Filed by Holder
1613.07(b)	Establishing Ownership
1613.07(c)	Changes of Legal Entity
1613.07(d)	Changes of Name
1613.07(e)	Correction of Mistake in Setting Forth the Name of the Holder
1613.08	Execution of Affidavit or Declaration
1613.08(a)	Persons Who May Sign Affidavit or Declaration
1613.08(b)	Date of Execution of Affidavit or Declaration
1613.08(c)	Signature of Electronically Transmitted Affidavit or Declaration
1613.08(d)	Form and Wording of Verification
1613.09	Goods/Services/Classes Set Forth in §71 Affidavit or Declaration
1613.09(a)	Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization Must Be Specified or Expressly Incorporated by Reference
1613.09(b)	Deletion of Goods/Services/Classes
1613.09(c)	Failure to List All Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization in Registration
1613.09(d)	New Goods and/or Services Cannot Be Added
1613.10	Use in Commerce
1613.11	"Excusable Nonuse" of Mark
1613.12	Specimen Showing Current Use of Mark in Commerce
1613.12(a)	Specimen for Each Class Required
1613.12(b)	Specimens in Electronically Filed Affidavits or Declarations

- 1613.12(c) Substitute Specimens
- 1613.13 Differences in the Mark as Used on the Specimen and the Mark as Registered
- 1613.13(a) Amendment of Mark in Registration
- 1613.14 Designation of Domestic Representative by Foreign Holder
- 1613.15 Office Actions and Notices Regarding Affidavit or Declaration
- 1613.16 Response to Office Action
- 1613.17 Correction of Deficiencies in §71 Affidavit or Declaration
- 1613.17(a) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Timely Filed Within the Periods Set Forth in §71(a) of the Act
- 1613.17(b) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Filed During the Grace Period
- 1613.17(c) Defects That Cannot Be Cured After Expiration of the Grace Period
- 1613.18 Petition Under 37 C.F.R. §2.146
- 1613.18(a) Response to Examiner’s Refusal Required Before Petition
- 1613.18(b) Decision on Petition Is Final Action of the USPTO
- 1613.18(c) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition
- 1613.18(d) Appeal to Federal Court
- 1613.19 Section 71 Affidavit or Declaration Combined with Section 15 Affidavit or Declaration
- 1613.20 Additional Requirements for §71 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Collective Marks
- 1613.20(a) Exercising Legitimate Control
- 1613.20(b) Manner/Method of Control
- 1613.21 Additional Requirements for §71 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Certification Marks
- 1613.21(a) Certification Standards
- 1613.21(b) Exercising Legitimate Control
- 1613.21(c) Certification Statement
- 1613.21(d) Statement that Holder is Not Engaged in Production or Marketing of the Goods/Services
- 1614 **Renewal of Registered Extension of Protection**
- 1615 **Division of Registrations**
- 1615.01 Division of Registration Based on Application Under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act
- 1615.02 Division of Registered Extension of Protection
- 1616 **Replacement**

1601 Types of Registrations

1601.01 Registrations Now Being Issued

Currently, the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) issues registrations only under the Trademark Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §§1051 et seq.](#) These are either Principal Register registrations or Supplemental Register registrations. See [TMEP §801.02\(a\)](#) regarding the Principal Register, and [TMEP §801.02\(b\)](#) regarding the Supplemental Register.

1601.01(a) Certificate of Registration

The USPTO issues registration certificates for all registrations resulting from applications based on §§1, 44, and 66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051, 1126, 1141f\(a\)](#). The registration certificate includes

the owner's name and address, the mark, the goods/services/collective membership organization, and the class(es). The certificate is signed by the Director and issued under the seal of the USPTO. [15 U.S.C. §§1057\(a\), 1093; 37 C.F.R. §2.151](#). See *Notice of Reformatted Trademark Registration Certificate* at [74 Fed. Reg. 34559](#) (July 16, 2009).

1601.01(b) Duplicate Certificate of Registration

If the owner of the registration does not receive the original certificate of registration, or a corrected, amended, or new certificate of registration issued by the USPTO, the USPTO will issue a duplicate certificate if the owner files a written request *within one year of issuance*, stating that the certificate was never received.

Such requests should be faxed to the Post Registration Section at (571) 273-9500.

For registrations issued on or after September 15, 2009, if more than one year has passed since the date of issuance, the owner of the registration may request a duplicate certificate of registration by filing a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#), accompanied by the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#), and the Director may exercise supervisory authority to grant the request for good cause. See [TMEP §§1705.02, 1707](#). On September 15, 2009, changes were made to the format of the registration certificate that enable the USPTO to provide duplicates of certificates issued on or after that date. However, the USPTO is not able to provide duplicates of registrations issued before September 15, 2009.

The owner of a registration may obtain a certified copy of the registration from the Document Services Branch of the Public Records Division of the USPTO for a fee. See [TMEP §111](#).

1601.01(c) Registered Extension of Protection of International Registration to the United States

Effective November 2, 2003, §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#), permits the holder of an international registration to file a request for extension of protection of the international registration to the United States. See [TMEP §§1904 et seq.](#)

Unless the request for extension of protection is refused under §68 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141h](#), the USPTO will issue a certificate of extension of protection and publish notice of such certificate in the *Official Gazette*. Section 69(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141i\(a\)](#). The certificate of registration will look the same as the certificates issued for registrations resulting from applications based on §§1 and 44 of the Act. From the date of issuance of the certificate, the extension of protection has the same effect and validity as a registration on the Principal Register, and the holder of the international registration has the same rights and remedies as the owner of a registration on the Principal Register. Section 69(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141i\(b\)](#).

Under §66(b), [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(b\)](#), unless the extension of protection is refused, the proper filing of the request for extension of protection constitutes constructive use of the mark, conferring the same rights as those specified in §7(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(c\)](#), as of the earliest of the following:

- (1) The international registration date, if the request for extension of protection was made in the international application;
- (2) The date of recordal of the subsequent designation requesting an extension of protection to the United States, if the request for extension of protection to the United States was made in a subsequent designation; or

- (3) The date of priority claimed pursuant to §67 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#).

Upon registration, the USPTO will refer to an extension of protection to the United States as a “registration” or a “registered extension of protection.” [37 C.F.R. §7.25\(c\)](#).

A registered extension of protection remains part of the international registration after registration in the United States. See [15 U.S.C. §1141j](#), [37 C.F.R. §7.30](#), and [TMEP §1904.08](#) for information about the dependence of the extension of protection on the underlying international registration. In this respect, the registered extension of protection differs from a registration issuing from a §44 application, which exists independent of the underlying foreign registration, pursuant to §44(f), [15 U.S.C. §1126\(f\)](#).

See [TMEP §1609.01\(a\)](#) regarding amendment of registered extensions of protection under §7 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057](#).

1601.02 Repeal of Prior Acts

The Act of 1946 became effective on July 5, 1947. Most Acts relating to trademarks that existed prior to the Act of 1946 were repealed as of the effective date of the Act of 1946. Repealed Acts include the Act of 1881, the Act of 1905, the Act of 1920, and the amendment entitled “Act of June 10, 1938.” The repeal did not affect the validity of registrations granted under prior Acts. Trademark Act §46(a), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#).

1601.03 Additional Registration Under Act of 1946

Marks that were registered under any previous Act may be registered again, under the Act of 1946, if the mark meets the requirements of the Act of 1946. Trademark Act §46(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#).

However, the USPTO will not issue duplicate registrations for marks that are registered under the Act of 1946. [37 C.F.R. §2.48](#); *see* [TMEP §703](#).

1601.04 1881 and 1905 Act Registrations

Registrations that were issued under the Acts of 1881 and 1905 may be renewed under §9 of the Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §1059](#). These registrations are subject to, and entitled to the benefits of, the provisions of the Act of 1946 as though registered on the Principal Register of the Act, except with certain limitations that are set out in §46(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#). Some of these limitations can be removed if the registrant claims the benefits of the Act of 1946 under §12(c), [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1603](#).

Marks registered under the “10-year proviso” of §5 of the Act of 1905 are deemed to have become distinctive under §2(f) of the Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#). Trademark Act §46(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#).

See [TMEP §1602.02](#) regarding the duration of and requirements for maintaining registrations issued under the Acts of 1881 and 1905.

1601.05 1920 Act Registrations

Registrations under the Act of 1920 are subject to, and entitled to the benefits of, the provisions of the Act of 1946 relating to marks registered on the Supplemental Register, and may not be renewed, unless renewal is required to support a foreign registration. Trademark Act §46(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#).

See [TMEP §1602.03](#) regarding the duration of and requirements for maintaining registrations issued under the Act of 1920.

1601.06 Registrations Issued Under Prior Classification Systems

Prior to September 1, 1973, the United States used its own system for the classification of goods and services, which is different from the international classification system. For all registrations issued on the basis of an application filed on or before August 31, 1973, the classification under which the registration issued governs for all statutory purposes, including affidavits or declarations under §8, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), and renewal applications under §9, [15 U.S.C. §1059](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.85\(b\), 2.183\(f\)](#).

As of September 1, 1973, the international system for classification of goods and services is the controlling classification system used by the United States, and it applies to all applications filed on or after September 1, 1973, and their resulting registrations, for all statutory purposes. See [TMEP §1401.02](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(a\)](#).

A registrant whose registration issued under the U.S. classification system may voluntarily amend the registration under §7 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057](#), to adopt the international classification set forth in the current version of the *Nice Agreement Concerning the International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks* (“Nice Agreement”). The registrant must pay the filing fee required for §7 amendments under [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.84\(e\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §1609.04](#).

1601.07 Form of Copies of Registrations

Before August 24, 1920, the name of the Act under which a registration was issued was not designated on the copy of the registration on file in the Trademark Search Library. Beginning with registrations issued on August 24, 1920, each registration includes in the heading either the words “Act of Feb. 20, 1905” or the words “Act of Mar. 19, 1920.” The first registrations under the Act of 1920 apparently were issued on August 24, 1920.

Registrations under the Act of 1881 range from Number 8,191, issued on May 17, 1881, through Number 44,357, issued on March 28, 1905. No registrations were issued between March 28, 1905, and July 4, 1905. On July 4, 1905, the first registration under the Act of 1905 was issued as Number 44,358.

The Act of 1946 provides that the certificates of registration for marks registered on the Supplemental Register shall be conspicuously different from certificates issued for marks registered on the Principal Register. Trademark Act §25, [15 U.S.C. §1093](#). Certificates issued under the 1946 Act are clearly marked either “Principal Register” or “Supplemental Register,” with the date the application was filed.

1602 Duration and Maintenance of Registrations

The Trademark Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §§1051 et seq.](#), became effective on July 5, 1947, and as of that date the Trademark Acts of 1881, 1905, and 1920 were repealed insofar as they were inconsistent with the Act of 1946. Trademark Act §46(a), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#).

The duration of registrations has varied, depending upon the Act under which the registration was issued. See [TMEP §§1602.01](#), [1602.02](#), [1602.03](#), [1614](#).

1602.01 Act of 1946

Registrations Resulting From Applications Under §§1 and 44

The Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988, Pub. L. No. 100-667, 102 Stat. 3935, which took effect on November 16, 1989, amended §9 of the Trademark Act of 1946 to reduce both the duration of registration and the term of renewal from twenty to ten years. All registrations issued or renewed on or after November 16, 1989 are issued or renewed for a ten-year period.

Thus, registrations issued under the Act of 1946 on or after November 16, 1989, remain in force for ten years, provided that affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under §8 of the Act are filed. [37 C.F.R. §2.181\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.160\(a\)](#) and [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the due dates for affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse. Registrations issued under the Act of 1946 before November 16, 1989 remain in force for twenty years, provided that an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse was filed during the sixth year after the date of registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.181\(a\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§1604 et seq.](#) regarding affidavits or declarations of use under §8 of the 1946 Act.

Effective November 16, 1989, registrations under the Act of 1946 may be renewed for periods of ten years from the end of the expiring period. [37 C.F.R. §2.181\(a\)](#). Before November 16, 1989, registrations under the Act of 1946 were renewed for twenty-year periods. The applicable term for renewals that were processed during the transition depends on whether the registration was renewed before or after November 16, 1989. If the registration was renewed before November 16, 1989, the renewal term is twenty years; if the registration was renewed on or after November 16, 1989, the renewal term is ten years, regardless of the date on which the renewal application was filed. *In re Maytag Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1615 (Comm’r Pats. 1991). See [TMEP §§1606 et seq.](#) regarding renewal under §9 of the 1946 Act.

Registered Extensions of Protection

Section 9 of the Trademark Act does not apply to registered extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States. Renewal of an international registration and its corresponding extension of protection to the United States must be made at the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”), in accordance with Article 7 of the Madrid Protocol. [37 C.F.R. §7.41\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1614](#) for further information about renewal of international registrations.

Section 71 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), requires the periodic filing of affidavits or declarations of use in commerce or excusable nonuse for registered extensions of protection. See [TMEP §1613](#) regarding due dates and requirements for §71 affidavits or declarations.

1602.02 Acts of 1881 and 1905

Registrations under the Act of 1905 were issued for an original term of twenty years, and were renewable for twenty-year periods. Registrations under the Act of 1881 were issued for an original term of thirty years, and were renewable under the Act of 1905 for twenty-year periods.

Effective November 16, 1989, registrations issued under the 1905 Act and the 1881 Act are renewable under the 1946 Act for periods of ten years. Before November 16, 1989, registrations issued under the 1905 Act

and the 1881 Act were renewable under the 1946 Act for periods of twenty years. Trademark Act §46(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.181\(b\)](#).

A registrant under the 1905 Act or the 1881 Act may file an affidavit or declaration under §12(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#), to claim the benefits of the 1946 Act, without affecting the term of the registration. See [TMEP §1603](#). Under §8(a)(1) of the 1946 Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(1\)](#), if the registrant claims the benefits of the 1946 Act, the registrant must file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse within the sixth year after publication of the notice of the §12(c) claim in the *Official Gazette*, to avoid cancellation. See [TMEP §§1604 et seq.](#) regarding affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse.

Section 8(a)(2) of the 1946 Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(2\)](#), requires that owners of marks registered under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 file affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse at the end of each successive ten-year period following the date of registration, even if the registrant does not claim the benefits of the 1946 Act under §12(c) of the Act. However, this requirement does not apply to a registration renewed for a twenty-year term (i.e., a registration renewed prior to November 16, 1989) until a renewal application is due. See [TMEP §1604.04\(b\)](#).

1602.03 Act of 1920

The Act of 1920 did not specify any term of registration. However, the Act of 1946 provided that 1920 Act registrations would expire six months after July 5, 1947 (the effective date of the 1946 Act), or twenty years from the date of registration, whichever was later. A 1920 Act registration may not be renewed, unless renewal is required to support a foreign registration. In that instance, the registration may be renewed on the Supplemental Register for a ten-year period, in the same manner as a registration issued under the 1946 Act. Trademark Act §46(b), [15 U.S.C. §1051 note](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.181\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1606 et seq.](#) regarding renewal.

The requirement that renewal be necessary to support a foreign registration applies to all renewals of a 1920 Act registration, not just the first renewal. *Ex parte U.S. Steel Corp.*, 157 USPQ 435 (Comm'r Pats. 1968).

The application for renewal of a 1920 Act registration should identify the foreign registration(s) that the renewal is needed to support, the country, the name of the present owner, the registration number, and the date of registration, and must show that the foreign registration(s) is currently in force.

Under §8(a)(2) of the 1946 Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(2\)](#), an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse under §8 is also required at the end of each successive ten-year period following the date of registration. However, this requirement does not apply to a registration renewed for a twenty-year term (i.e., a registration renewed prior to November 16, 1989) until a renewal application is due. See [TMEP §1604.04\(b\)](#).

1602.04 Trademark Law Treaty Implementation Act Changes

The Trademark Law Treaty Implementation Act of 1998 (“TLTIA”), Pub. L. No. 105-330, 112 Stat. 3064, changed the requirements for filing affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) (“§8 affidavits”), and renewal applications under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#) (“§9 renewal applications”), effective October 30, 1999. See *Post Registration: Changes to Requirements for Maintaining Trademark Registrations*, at [1228 TMOG 187](#) (Nov. 30, 1999), for a discussion of these changes.

TLTIA did not change the duration of registrations. See [TMEP §§1602 et seq.](#) regarding the term of registrations.

1603 Bringing Prior Act Registrations Under 1946 Act, §12(c)

Owners of marks registered under the Acts of 1905 or 1881 may claim the benefits of the Act of 1946, but are not required to do so. Trademark Act §12(c), [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#). The 1946 Act refers to a “registrant” claiming the benefits of the Act. The term “registrant” includes both the original registrant and a person who has acquired ownership through proper transfer of title. See [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). The claim must be made by the person who owns the mark at the time the claim is made.

To claim the benefits of the Act of 1946, the owner of the registration must file an affidavit or a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#). The affidavit or declaration must: (1) set forth those items listed in the registration on which the mark is currently in use in commerce; (2) state that the benefits of the Act of 1946 are claimed for the mark; (3) be accompanied by the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#); and (4) be filed by the owner and signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner. [37 C.F.R. §2.153](#). No specimen is required. Goods or services not listed in the affidavit or declaration will be deleted from the registration. The affidavit or declaration under §12(c) of the Act may be filed at any time during the life of the registration.

A claim of the benefits of the 1946 Act does *not* affect or alter the *term* of the 1905 or 1881 Act registration. These registrations still remain in force for the times indicated in [TMEP §1602.02](#), *subject to cancellation if acceptable affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse are not filed under 15 U.S.C. §1058*. The deadline for *renewal* (and the affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse required during the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of the registration) is calculated from the date of issue of the registration, *not* from the date of publication of the notice of the registrant’s claim of the benefits of the 1946 Act.

1603.01 Notification and Printing of Mark in Official Gazette

If the affidavit or declaration claiming the benefits of the Act of 1946 is acceptable, the mark and accompanying notice of the claim of benefits of the 1946 Act are printed in the *Official Gazette* under the heading “Registrations Published Under Sec. 12(c).” [37 C.F.R. §2.154](#). The USPTO notifies the registrant of the printing of the mark in the *Official Gazette*, and also informs the registrant of the requirement for filing affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.155](#).

If an affidavit or declaration claiming the benefits of the Act of 1946 is unacceptable, the USPTO notifies the registrant of the defect.

These marks are not subject to opposition on their appearance in the *Official Gazette*. [37 C.F.R. §2.156](#).

1603.02 Cancellation and Incontestability

If the benefits of the Act of 1946 are claimed, registrants under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 may subsequently file affidavits or declarations under §15 of the Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#), whereby the marks shall be incontestable. See [TMEP §§1605 et seq.](#)

Once the registrant claims the benefits of the Act of 1946, registrations under the 1905 and 1881 Acts are subject to cancellation under §14 of the Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#). See [TMEP §1607](#).

1603.03 Affidavits or Declarations of Use in Commerce Required

After the benefits of the Act of 1946 are claimed for a registration issued under the Act of 1881 or the Act of 1905, the registrant must file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse during the sixth year after the date of publication of the notice of the registrant's claim of the benefits of the 1946 Act in the *Official Gazette*, or within the six-month grace period after expiration of the sixth year, to avoid cancellation under §8(a)(1) and (a)(3) of the Act. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(1\), \(a\)\(3\)](#). An affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse must also be filed within one year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of the registration, or within the six-month grace period thereafter. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(2\), \(a\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §§1604 et seq.](#) for further information about affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#).

1604 Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse of Mark in Commerce under §8 of the Trademark Act

15 U.S.C. §1058 Duration, affidavits and fees.

(a) Time Periods for Required Affidavits. Each registration shall remain in force for 10 years, except that the registration of any mark shall be canceled by the Director unless the owner of the registration files in the United States Patent and Trademark Office affidavits that meet the requirements of subsection (b), within the following time periods:

(1) Within the 1-year period immediately preceding the expiration of 6 years following the date of registration under this Act or the date of the publication under section 12(c).

(2) Within the 1-year period immediately preceding the expiration of 10 years following the date of registration, and each successive 10-year period following the date of registration.

(3) The owner may file the affidavit required under this section within the 6-month grace period immediately following the expiration of the periods established in paragraphs (1) and (2), together with the fee described in subsection (b) and the additional grace period surcharge prescribed by the Director.

(b) Requirements for Affidavit. The affidavit referred to in subsection (a) shall—

(1)(A) state that the mark is in use in commerce;

(B) set forth the goods and services recited in the registration on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;

(C) be accompanied by such number of specimens or facsimiles showing current use of the mark in commerce as may be required by the Director; and

(D) be accompanied by the fee prescribed by the Director; or

(2)(A) set forth the goods and services recited in the registration on or in connection with which the mark is not in use in commerce;

(B) include a showing that any nonuse is due to special circumstances which excuse such nonuse and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark; and

(C) be accompanied by the fee prescribed by the Director.

(c) Deficient Affidavit. If any submission filed within the period set forth in subsection (a) is deficient, including that the affidavit was not filed in the name of the owner of the registration, the deficiency may be corrected after the statutory time period, within the time prescribed after notification of the deficiency. Such submission shall be accompanied by the additional deficiency surcharge prescribed by the Director.

(d) Notice of Requirement. Special notice of the requirement for such affidavit shall be attached to each certificate of registration and notice of publication under section 12(c).

(e) Notification of Acceptance or Refusal. The Director shall notify any owner who files any affidavit required by this section of the Director's acceptance or refusal thereof and, in the case of a refusal, the reasons therefor.

(f) Designation of Resident for Service of Process and Notices. If the owner is not domiciled in the United States, the owner may designate, by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. Such notices or process may be served upon the person so designated by leaving with that person or mailing to that person a copy thereof at the address specified in the last designation so filed. If the person so designated cannot be found at the last designated address, or if the owner does not designate by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the

United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark, such notices or process may be served on the Director.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), the owner of a registration must periodically file affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse of the mark. The purpose of the affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse (“§8 affidavit or declaration”) is to remove marks that are no longer being used in commerce from the register.

1604.01 Registrations to Which §8 Affidavit or Declaration Pertains

Registered Extensions of Protection

Section 8 of the Trademark Act applies only to registrations resulting from applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. However, §71 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), requires periodic affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse in registered extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States. See [TMEP §§1613–1613.19](#) for further information about §71 affidavits or declarations.

Six-Year Section 8 Affidavits or Declarations for Registrations Resulting from Applications Under §1 or §44

Under §8(a)(1) and (a)(3) of the Trademark Act, an affidavit or declaration under §8 of the Act is required during the sixth year after the date of registration for registrations issued on either the Principal Register or the Supplemental Register or the date of publication under §12(c) for registrations issued under the Acts of 1881 and 1905 for which the owner has claimed the benefits of the Act of 1946 under §12(c), or within the six-month grace period after expiration of the sixth year. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(1\), \(a\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §1603.03](#).

Ten-Year Section 8 Affidavits or Declarations Required for All Registrations Resulting from Applications Under §1 or §44

Section 8(a)(2) of the Trademark Act requires an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse at the end of each successive ten-year period following the date of registration, or within the six-month grace period after the end of the ten-year period. However, the provisions of §8(a)(2) of the Act, requiring the filing of a §8 affidavit or declaration at the end of each successive ten-year period after registration, do not apply to a registration issued or renewed for a twenty-year term until a renewal application is due. See [TMEP §1604.04\(b\)](#).

1604.02 Notice of When Affidavit or Declaration Is Due

A statement noting the requirements for filing the affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under §8 of the Act (and applications for renewal under §9 of the Act) is included on each certificate of registration as originally issued. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(d\)](#); see [15 U.S.C. §1059](#). Additionally, a courtesy e-mail reminder of USPTO maintenance filing deadlines will be sent to trademark owners who authorize e-mail communication and maintain a current e-mail address with the USPTO. To ensure that e-mail is authorized and an e-mail address is current, owners are encouraged to use the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”) Change of Correspondence Address and Change of Owner’s Address Forms if it is necessary to update the information. The owner must file the affidavit or declaration and application for renewal within the time periods required by §§8 and 9 of the Act regardless of whether the owner receives the notice on the registration certificate or in the courtesy e-mail reminder. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.160, 2.162, 2.182](#). See [TMEP §1604.19](#) for information about combined filings under §§8 and 9.

1604.03 Form for Filing §8 Affidavit or Declaration

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the owner file the §8 affidavit or declaration through the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”). See [TMEP §301](#) for more information about electronic filing. Forms for filing affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under §8, combined affidavits or declarations of use and incontestability under §§8 and 15 (see [TMEP §1605.05](#)), and §8 affidavits or declarations combined with renewal applications under §9 of the Act (see [TMEP §1604.19](#)) are available through TEAS at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Alternatively, the owner may call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed form that can be filled out and mailed, faxed, or hand delivered to the USPTO.

See [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the deadline for filing the affidavit or declaration, and [TMEP §1604.05](#) regarding the requirements for filing the affidavit or declaration.

1604.04 Time for Filing §8 Affidavit or Declaration

37 CFR §2.160(a)

During the following time periods, the owner of the registration must file an affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse, or the registration will be cancelled:

(1)(i) For registrations issued under the Trademark Act of 1946, on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of registration; or

(ii) For registrations issued under prior Acts, on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act; and

(2) For all registrations, within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration.

(3) The affidavit or declaration may be filed within a grace period of six months after the end of the deadline set forth in paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, with payment of the grace period surcharge per class required by section 8(a)(3) of the Act and § 2.6.

Under §8(a)(1) and (a)(2) of the Trademark Act, the owner of the registration must file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse:

- (1) on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary of the date of registration or date of publication under §12(c) of the Act; *and*
- (2) within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.160\(a\)](#).

See [TMEP §1604.04\(b\)](#) regarding registrations in twenty-year terms.

Under §8(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(3\)](#), the owner may file the affidavit or declaration within a grace period of six months after the expiration of the deadlines set forth in §8(a)(1) and (a)(2) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(1\)](#), [\(a\)\(2\)](#), with an additional grace period surcharge.

Affidavits or declarations may be filed on the registration anniversary dates at the end of the fifth and sixth years, or at the end of the ninth and tenth years.

Example : For a registration issued on Nov. 1, 2005, a six-year affidavit or declaration may be filed as early as Nov. 1, 2010, and may be filed as late as Nov. 1, 2011, before entering the six-month grace period.

A §8 affidavit or declaration filed through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#).

Section 8 affidavits or declarations filed on paper are considered timely if they are received in the USPTO by the due date or if they are mailed or transmitted by the due date with a certificate of mailing or facsimile transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#). See [TMEP §§305.02](#) and [306.05](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness.

If the owner of the registration does not file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse before the end of the grace period, the registration will be cancelled. [37 C.F.R. §§2.160\(a\)](#), [2.164\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §1604.07](#) regarding who may file a §8 affidavit or declaration.

The Director has no authority to waive the deadline for filing a proper affidavit or declaration of use of a registered mark under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#). See *Checkers Drive-In Rest., Inc. v. Comm' of Patents & Trademarks*, 51 F.3d 1078, 1085, 34 USPQ2d 1574, 1581 (D.C. App. 1995), cert. denied 516 U.S. 866 (1995) (“[I]n establishing cancellation as the penalty for failure to file the required affidavit, Congress made no exception for the innocent or the negligent. Thus, the Commissioner had no discretion to do other than cancel Checkers's service mark registration in this case.”); *In re Mother Tucker's Food Experience (Can.) Inc.*, 925 F.2d 1402, 1405, 17 USPQ2d 1795, 1798 (Fed. Cir. 1991) (“It was not within the Commissioner's discretionary authority to waive this requirement.”); cf. *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 1018, 222 USPQ 273, 275 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (“Timeliness set by statute is not a minor technical defect which can be waived by the Commissioner.”).

1604.04(a) Premature Filing of §8 Affidavit or Declaration

The affidavit or declaration cannot be filed before the periods specified in §8(a) of the Act. The purpose of the affidavit or declaration is to show that the mark is still in use in commerce within the relevant period, which cannot be done by an affidavit or declaration filed before that period. Cf. *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 222 USPQ 273 (Fed. Cir. 1984). If an affidavit or declaration is filed before the period specified in §8(a)(1) and (a)(2) of the Act, the USPTO will issue a notice advising the owner: (1) that the affidavit or declaration is premature; (2) of the appropriate time for filing the affidavit or declaration; (3) that the fee(s) submitted will be held; and (4) that the owner may file a new affidavit or declaration at the appropriate time or may request a refund at any time. There is no deficiency surcharge. The prematurely filed affidavit or declaration will remain in the record for informational purposes only. The owner of the registration must file a newly executed affidavit or declaration before the end of the grace period, or the registration will be cancelled and the USPTO will refund the fees.

See [TMEP §1604.08\(b\)](#) regarding the date of execution of a §8 affidavit or declaration.

1604.04(b) Registrations in Twenty-Year Terms

As noted in [TMEP §1604.04](#), §8(a)(2) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(2\)](#), requires an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse at the end of each successive ten-year period following the date of registration for all registrations. However, this requirement does not apply to a registration issued or renewed for a twenty-year term (i.e., a registration issued or renewed before November 16, 1989) until a renewal application is due. See [1228 TMOG 187](#), 189 (Nov. 30, 1999).

Example : If a registration was issued or renewed on November 15, 1989, no §8(a)(2) affidavit or declaration is due between November 15, 1998 and November 15, 1999. Section 8(a)(2) of the Act does not apply until the renewal application is due, i.e., between November 15, 2008 and November 15, 2009.

1604.05 Requirements for §8 Affidavit or Declaration

37 CFR §2.161 Requirements for a complete affidavit or declaration of continued use or excusable nonuse

A complete affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act must:

- (a) Be filed by the owner within the period set forth in § 2.160(a);
- (b) Include a verified statement attesting to the use in commerce or excusable nonuse of the mark within the period set forth in section 8 of the Act. This verified statement must be executed on or after the beginning of the filing period specified in § 2.160(a).
- (c) Include the U.S. registration number;
- (d)(1) Include the fee required by § 2.6 for each class that the affidavit or declaration covers;
- (2) If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period under section 8(a)(3) of the Act, include the grace period surcharge per class required by § 2.6;
- (3) If at least one fee is submitted for a multiple-class registration, but the fee is insufficient to cover all the classes, and the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will issue a notice requiring either submission of the additional fee(s) or specification of the class(es) to which the initial fee(s) should be applied. Additional fee(s) may be submitted if the requirements of § 2.164 are met. If the additional fee(s) are not submitted within the time period set out in the Office action and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class;
- (e)(1) Specify the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which the mark is in use in commerce, and/or the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which excusable nonuse is claimed under paragraph (f)(2) of this section; and
- (2) Specify the goods, services, or classes being deleted from the registration, if the affidavit or declaration covers fewer than all the goods, services, or classes in the registration;
- (f)(1) State that the registered mark is in use in commerce; or
- (2) If the registered mark is not in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods, services, or classes specified in the registration, set forth the date when such use of the mark in commerce stopped and the approximate date when such use is expected to resume; and recite facts to show that nonuse as to those goods, services, or classes is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse and is not due to an intention to abandon the mark; and
- (g) Include one specimen showing how the mark is in use in commerce for each class in the registration, unless excusable nonuse is claimed under paragraph (f)(2) of this section. When requested by the Office, additional specimens must be provided. The specimen must meet the requirements of §2.56.
- (h) The Office may require the owner to furnish such information, exhibits, affidavits or declarations, and such additional specimens as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act.
- (i) Additional requirements for a collective mark. In addition to the above requirements, a complete affidavit or declaration pertaining to a collective mark must:
 - (1) State that the owner is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and
 - (2) If the registration issued from an application based solely on section 44 of the Act, state the nature of the owner's control over the use of the mark by the members in the first affidavit or declaration filed under paragraph (a) of this section.
- (j) Additional requirements for a certification mark. In addition to the above requirements, a complete affidavit or declaration pertaining to a certification mark must:
 - (1) Include a copy of the certification standards specified in § 2.45(a)(4)(i)(B);
 - (i) Submitting certification standards for the first time. If the registration issued from an application based solely on section 44 of the Act, include a copy of the certification standards in the first affidavit or declaration filed under paragraph (a) of this section; or
 - (ii) Certification standards submitted in prior filing. If the certification standards in use at the time of filing the affidavit or declaration have not changed since the date they were previously submitted to the Office, include a statement to that effect; if the certification standards in use at the time of filing the affidavit or declaration have changed since the date they were previously submitted to the Office, include a copy of the revised certification standards;

(2) State that the owner is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and

(3) Satisfy the requirements of § 2.45(a)(4)(i)(A) and (C).

(k) For requirements of a complete affidavit or declaration of use in commerce or excusable nonuse for a registration that issued from a section 66(a) basis application, see § 7.37.

See [TMPEP §§1604.06–1604.19](#) for general requirements for §8 affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse for trademarks or service marks and [TMPEP §§1604.20–1604.21\(d\)](#) for additional requirements for §8 affidavits or declarations for collective marks and certification marks. See [TMPEP §§1613.06–1613.19](#) for general requirements for §71 affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse for trademarks or service marks and [TMPEP §§1613.20–1613.21\(d\)](#) for additional requirements for §71 affidavits or declarations for collective marks and certification marks.

1604.06 Fees for §8 Affidavit or Declaration

1604.06(a) Filing Fee for Affidavit or Declaration

Under [15 U.S.C. §1058\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(d\)\(1\)](#), an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse must include the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#) for each class that the affidavit or declaration covers. See [TMPEP §§1401.02, 1401.04 et seq.](#), and [1601.06](#) regarding use of international classification or prior U.S. classification to calculate fees due.

1604.06(b) Grace Period Surcharge and Deficiency Surcharge

If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period under §8(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(3\)](#), it must include the grace period surcharge per class required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#).

Section 8(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#), requires a “deficiency surcharge” for correcting deficiencies in the affidavit or declaration after expiration of the deadlines specified in §8. See [TMPEP §§1604.17 et seq.](#) regarding the deadlines and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

Only a single deficiency surcharge is required for correcting one or more deficiencies in a multiple-class registration. Similarly, only a single deficiency surcharge is required to correct several deficiencies within one §8 affidavit or declaration, or one combined filing under §§8 and 9. See [TMPEP §1604.19](#) regarding combined filings under §§8 and 9.

The grace period surcharge applies only where no filing was made during the sixth year after the date of registration (or date of publication under §12(c) of the Act), or within the year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration. An owner who files within these periods, but corrects a deficiency after these periods have expired, will be subject to the deficiency surcharge only. On the other hand, someone who files during the grace period and cures deficiencies after expiration of the grace period will be subject to both the grace period surcharge (for the ability to file the affidavit during the grace period) *and* the deficiency surcharge (for the ability to correct a deficiency after the end of the grace period). H.R. Rep. No. 105-194, 105th Congress, 1st Sess. 17 (1997).

1604.06(c) Processing Affidavit or Declaration Filed with Insufficient Fees

An affidavit or declaration that does not include a fee, or does not include sufficient fees for all the classes to which the affidavit or declaration pertains (and the grace period surcharge, where applicable), is deficient. Fee deficiencies may be cured before expiration of the deadlines set forth in §8 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), without payment of a deficiency surcharge, or after expiration of the deadlines set forth in §8 of the Act

with the deficiency surcharge required by §8(c) of the Act. See [TMEP §§1604.17 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

If the affidavit or declaration was filed without sufficient fee(s), but the affidavit or declaration included an authorization to charge deficient fees to a USPTO deposit account (37 C.F.R. §2.208), the required fee(s) (and grace period surcharge, where applicable) will be charged to the deposit account. If the deposit account authorization was included with the affidavit or declaration as filed, and the deposit account had sufficient funds to cover the fee(s) in question, there is no fee deficiency and no deficiency surcharge is required.

An authorization to charge fees to a deposit account with insufficient funds to cover the fee is regarded as a deficiency.

If a check submitted as payment of a filing fee for an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse is returned unpaid, or an electronic funds transfer (“EFT”) or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, this is regarded as a deficiency. In addition to the deficiency surcharge (where applicable), there is a fee for processing the payment that was refused. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). See [TMEP §405.06](#) for additional information.

If at least one fee is submitted for a multiple-class registration, but the fee is insufficient to cover all the classes, and the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring either (1) submission of the additional fee(s) or (2) specification of the class(es) to which the initial fee(s) should be applied. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(d\)\(3\)](#). If the owner does not respond within the time period set out in the Office action by submitting the additional fee(s) or specifying the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied, the USPTO will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class and will delete any unpaid class(es).

Id. See [TMEP §1608](#) regarding surrender of the registration as to class(es) that are omitted from a §8 affidavit or declaration.

1604.07 Ownership and Who May File §8 Affidavit or Declaration

1604.07(a) Affidavit or Declaration Must Be Filed by Owner

The affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse must be filed by the owner of the registration. Filing by the owner is a minimum requirement that must be met before the expiration of the deadlines set forth in §8(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)](#), (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Trademark Act, or within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration), or within the six-month grace period after expiration of these deadlines. [37 C.F.R. §§2.160\(a\), 2.161\(a\)](#).

If it is unclear whether the party who filed the affidavit or declaration is the present owner, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the party to establish its ownership. If the party who filed the affidavit or declaration was the owner of the registration at the time of filing, the owner may file evidence to establish ownership, even if the filing period set forth in §8 of the Act has expired. There is no deficiency, and no deficiency surcharge is required for providing evidence to establish ownership. See [TMEP §1604.07\(b\)](#).

If the affidavit or declaration was not filed in the name of the owner of the registration, and there is time remaining in the statutory filing period (which includes the grace period), the true owner may (1) submit, in response to an Office action, a correction of the name in the filing of record or (2) file a complete new

affidavit or declaration, together with the filing fee per class required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#), and, if applicable, a specimen of use for each class. If a new affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period, the owner must include the grace period surcharge per class with the new affidavit or declaration. If a correction is submitted, the owner must also confirm that the original affidavit or declaration was signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the true owner. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §1604.08\(a\)](#). If the original affidavit or declaration was not signed by an authorized signatory, the owner must also submit a statement, signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner, that affirms the representations in the original affidavit or declaration. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.161\(b\), 2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

If the affidavit or declaration was not filed in the name of the owner of the registration, and there is no time remaining in the grace period, the deficiency may be corrected within a prescribed time. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#). The Post Registration staff will issue an Office action notifying the party who filed the affidavit or declaration of the ownership issue and of the time period within which it must be corrected. The true owner may submit a correction to the filing of record within the prescribed time and must also include the deficiency surcharge. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(20\)](#). If a correction is submitted, the owner must also verify that the original affidavit or declaration was signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the true owner. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §1604.08\(a\)](#). If the original affidavit or declaration was not signed by an authorized signatory, the owner must also submit a statement, signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner, that affirms the representations in the original affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(b\)](#).

See also [TMEP §1604.07\(f\)](#) regarding mistakes in setting forth the name of the owner.

1604.07(b) Establishing Ownership

When the affidavit or declaration is filed by someone other than the original owner of the registration, the USPTO cannot accept the affidavit or declaration unless there is a clear chain of title from the original owner to the party who filed the affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)](#); [TMEP §502.01](#).

When the affidavit or declaration is filed, the Post Registration staff will check the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO, available at <http://assignments.uspto.gov/assignments>. If the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch show a clear chain of title in the party who filed the affidavit or declaration, no inquiry will be issued. The Post Registration staff will enter the change of ownership into the automated records of the Trademark Operation, if necessary.

If the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch do not show a clear chain of title in the party who filed the affidavit or declaration, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the party to establish its ownership of the registration. To establish ownership, the party must: (1) record documents in the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO that show each change of ownership, and include a statement in the response to the Office action that the documents have been recorded; or (2) submit documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the party who filed the affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §502.01](#).

“Documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee” ([37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)\(1\)\(i\)](#)) normally consists of the same type of documents that would be recorded in the Assignment Recordation Branch, e.g., assignment documents, certificates of merger, or certificates of change of name. In the alternative, an affidavit or declaration containing sufficient facts to support the transfer of title may be accepted.

The owner may submit evidence of ownership even if the filing period set forth in §8 of the Act has expired. If the party who filed the affidavit or declaration was the owner of the registration at the time of filing, there is no deficiency, and no deficiency surcharge is required for providing evidence to establish ownership.

See [TMEP §1604.07\(a\)](#) regarding an affidavit or declaration filed by a party who was not the owner of the registration at the time of filing.

1604.07(c) Acceptance Notice Issued in Name of Owner of Record

The notification of acceptance of a §8 affidavit or declaration is issued in the name of the owner of record, as shown in the Trademark database.

When a party other than the original owner files a §8 affidavit or declaration, the USPTO will accept the affidavit or declaration if the new owner submits documentary evidence of the chain of title (*see* [TMEP §1604.07\(b\)](#)), even if the new owner does not record the documents of ownership in the Assignment Recordation Branch. [37 C.F.R. §3.73](#). However, the USPTO will not issue the notice of acceptance of the §8 affidavit or declaration in the name of the new owner unless the new owner: (1) records the appropriate document in the Assignment Recordation Branch; and (2) notifies the Post Registration staff that the document has been recorded. [37 C.F.R. §3.85](#).

See [TMEP §§504](#) *et seq.* regarding the circumstances in which the “Ownership” field in the Trademark database will be automatically updated after recordation of a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch, even if the new owner does not notify the Post Registration staff that the document has been recorded.

See also [TMEP §505.02](#) regarding requests to update ownership information after registration, [TMEP §609.02\(f\)](#) regarding correspondence after recordation of a change of ownership, [TMEP §502.01](#) regarding establishing ownership of a registration, and [TMEP §502.03](#) regarding issuance of a new certificate in the name of a new owner.

1604.07(d) Changes of Legal Entity

The procedures for establishing ownership, as discussed in [TMEP §1604.07\(b\)](#), also apply to changes of name and changes of legal entity. See [TMEP §1604.07\(e\)](#) regarding changes of name.

A change in the state of incorporation is a change of legal entity, creating a new party.

The death of a partner, or other change in the membership of a partnership, creates a change in legal entity unless the partnership agreement provides for continuation of the partnership and the relevant state law permits this.

A merger of companies into a new company normally constitutes a change of legal entity.

Affidavits or declarations may be accepted from trustees, executors, administrators, and the like, when supported by a court order or other evidence of the person’s authority to act on behalf of the present owner. If there is a court order, a copy of the order should be submitted.

1604.07(e) Changes of Name

A mere change of the name of a party is not a change of entity and will not require an inquiry regarding ownership, if there is clear title in the party who filed the §8 affidavit or declaration. Therefore, if the owner

records a change of name with the Assignment Recordation Branch and subsequently files the §8 affidavit or declaration in its former name, the USPTO will not issue an inquiry regarding ownership.

However, if it is unclear from the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch whether the party who filed the affidavit or declaration is the owner of record, the owner must either record evidence of the change of name in the Assignment Recordation Branch or submit proof of the change of name. See [37 C.F.R. §3.73\(b\)](#); [TMEP §1604.07\(b\)](#). For a corporation, this is done by recording or submitting a certificate of change of name issued by the Secretary of State (or other authorized body) of the state of incorporation.

See [TMEP §1604.07\(c\)](#) regarding issuance of the notice of acceptance of the affidavit or declaration in the name of the new owner.

1604.07(f) Correction of Mistake in Setting Forth the Name of the Owner

If the affidavit or declaration was filed by the owner of the registration, but there is a mistake in the manner in which the name of the owner is set out, the mistake can be corrected. *In re Atlanta Blue Print Co.*, 19 USPQ2d 1078 (Comm'r Pats. 1990). No deficiency surcharge is required in this situation.

See [TMEP §1604.07\(a\)](#) regarding an affidavit or declaration mistakenly filed in the name of a person or existing legal entity who did not own the mark as of the filing date.

See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors.

1604.08 Execution of Affidavit or Declaration

1604.08(a) Persons Who May Sign Affidavit or Declaration

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(b\)](#), the §8 affidavit or declaration must include a statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner. A person who is "properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner" is: (1) a person with legal authority to bind the owner; (2) a person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or (3) an attorney as defined in [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the owner. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

Generally, the USPTO does not question the authority of the person who signs a verification unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory's authority to sign. See [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#).

1604.08(b) Date of Execution of Affidavit or Declaration

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(b\)](#), the verified statement must be executed on or after the beginning of the relevant filing period specified in §8 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), (i.e., on or after the fifth anniversary of the date of registration or publication under §12(c), on or after the beginning of the one-year period before the end of each ten-year period after the date of registration, or during the available grace period). Because the purpose of the affidavit or declaration is to attest to the use or excusable nonuse of the mark within the time periods specified in §8 of the Act, the affidavit or declaration cannot be executed before these time periods begin.

An affidavit or declaration filed within the period specified in §8 of the Act, but executed before that period, is deficient. The owner of the registration will be required to submit a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration attesting to use in commerce (or excusable nonuse) on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization within the relevant period specified in §8 of the Act.

If the prematurely executed §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the relevant period specified in §8(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Trademark Act, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration), the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the relevant period for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant period with the deficiency surcharge required under §8(c) of the Act. If the prematurely executed §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §8 affidavits or declarations and [TMEP §§1604.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

Date of Execution Omitted. If the §8 affidavit or declaration is signed, but the date of execution is omitted, the Post Registration staff must require that the owner of the registration set forth the date of execution for the record. If the affidavit or declaration was executed within the relevant filing period, no deficiency fee is required. If there are no other outstanding issues, the owner may provide the Post Registration staff with the date by telephone or e-mail and the Post Registration staff must enter a Note to the File in the record. If the affidavit or declaration was not executed within the relevant filing period, the affidavit or declaration is deficient, and the owner must submit a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration, as discussed above.

1604.08(c) Signature of Electronically Transmitted Affidavit or Declaration

See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#) and [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of an affidavit or declaration filed through TEAS.

1604.08(d) Form and Wording of Verification

The format of the verification may be: (1) the classical form for verifying, which includes an oath (jurat) (see [TMEP §804.01\(a\)](#)); or (2) a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) or 28 U.S.C. §1746 instead of an oath (see [TMEP §804.01\(b\)](#)). See [37 C.F.R. §2.2\(n\)](#)

1604.09 Goods/Services/Classes Set Forth in §8 Affidavit or Declaration

1604.09(a) Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization Must Be Specified or Expressly Incorporated by Reference

Under [15 U.S.C. §1058\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(e\)\(1\)](#), the affidavit or declaration must specify the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which the mark is in use in commerce, and/or the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which excusable nonuse is claimed. See [TMEP §1604.10](#) regarding use in commerce, and [TMEP §1604.11](#) regarding excusable nonuse. The affidavit or declaration may incorporate by reference the identification set forth in the registration certificate (e.g., “all goods/all services/or the nature of the collective membership organization listed in the existing registration” or “all goods/services/classes listed in the registration except . . . [specifying the

goods/services/classes not covered by the affidavit or declaration]”). Incorporation by reference is recommended, to avoid inadvertent omissions.

If the owner is alleging use with respect to some of the goods/services/classes and excusable nonuse for other goods/services/classes, the owner must clearly indicate which goods/services/classes are in use and which goods/services/classes are not in use.

1604.09(b) Deletion of Goods/Services/Classes

If the owner of the registration intends to delete goods/services/classes from the registration, this should be expressly stated in the affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(e\)\(2\)](#). Once an owner expressly indicates an intention to delete goods, services, or classes from a registration, they may not be reinserted. For example, reinsertion is prohibited after the owner submits a TEAS §8 form indicating that certain goods, services, or classes are to be deleted, as the form states that the filing does not cover the deleted goods, services, or classes and that they are to be permanently deleted from the registration.

1604.09(c) Failure to List All Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization in Registration

An affidavit or declaration that fails to list or incorporate by reference all goods/services/or the nature of the collective membership organization listed in the registration, and does not include a statement of intent to delete the omitted goods/services/classes, is deficient. In such case, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the party to either (1) file a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the omitted goods/services/collective membership organization or (2) state that the omitted goods/services/classes should be deleted.

If the owner files a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration adding the omitted goods/services/collective membership organization, the owner must verify that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization during the relevant filing period specified in §8 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#). This substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the relevant deadline set forth in §8 of the Act for no fee, or after expiration of the deadline set forth in §8 of the Act with the deficiency surcharge required by §8(c) of the Act. See [TMEP §§1604.17 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

If the owner does not file a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the omitted goods/services/collective membership organization within the period for response to the Office action (*see* [TMEP §1604.16](#)), the omitted goods/services/classes will be deleted from the registration.

1604.09(d) New Goods and/or Services Cannot Be Added

Goods and/or services that are not listed in the registration may not be set forth in the §8 affidavit or declaration.

1604.10 Use in Commerce

The §8 affidavit or declaration must state that the mark is in use in commerce, unless excusable nonuse is claimed. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(f\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §1604.11](#) regarding excusable nonuse. The use in commerce

requirement may be satisfied if the mark has not been abandoned and the use meets the statutory definition of "use in commerce," i.e., bona fide use in the ordinary course of trade, and not made merely to reserve a right in the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). The §8 affidavit or declaration does not have to specify the type of commerce (e.g., interstate) in which the mark is used. The USPTO presumes that someone who states that the mark is in use in commerce is stating that the mark is in use in a type of commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record.

A §8 affidavit or declaration that does not state that the mark is in use in commerce is deficient. The owner must submit a substitute affidavit or declaration stating that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods, services, and/or collective membership organization identified in the registration during the relevant period specified in §8 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), as follows:

- (1) If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Act, the substitute affidavit or declaration must state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization before the expiration of the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c), if accurate; or
- (2) If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration, the substitute affidavit or declaration must state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization within one year before the end of the ten-year period after the date of registration, if accurate; or
- (3) If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute affidavit or declaration must state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization before the expiration of the grace period, if accurate.

If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the relevant period specified in §8(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Act, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration), the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the relevant period for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant period with the deficiency surcharge required under §8(c) of the Act. If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §8 affidavits or declarations and [TMEP §§1604.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

While a substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed after the expiration of the period specified in §8 of the Act, the substitute affidavit or declaration must attest to use within the time period specified in §8 of the Act. Therefore, if the substitute affidavit or declaration does not state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization within the relevant period specified in §8 of the Act, the USPTO will not accept the §8 affidavit or declaration, and the registration will be cancelled.

1604.11 “Excusable Nonuse” of Mark

37 CFR §2.161 (Extract) A complete affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act must:

...

(f) ...

(2) If the registered mark is not in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods, services, or classes specified in the registration, set forth the date when such use of the mark in commerce stopped and the approximate date when such use is expected to resume; and recite facts to show that nonuse as to those goods, services, or classes is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse and is not due to an intention to abandon the mark[.]

The purpose of Section 8 of the Trademark Act is to remove from the register those registrations that have become deadwood. *See Morehouse Mfg. Corp. v. J. Strickland & Co.*, 407 F.2d 881, 160 USPQ 715 (C.C.P.A. 1969) . It is not intended, however, to cancel registrations because of a temporary interruption in the use of the mark due to circumstances beyond the control of the owner of the registration. *In re Moorman Mfg. Co.*, 203 USPQ 712 (Comm'r Pats. 1979). Thus, if the mark is not in use in commerce but the owner believes the registration should not be cancelled, the owner may file an affidavit or declaration showing that nonuse is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse, and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(b\)\(2\)](#); *Ex parte Kelley-How-Thomson Co.*, 118 USPQ 40 (Comm'r Pats. 1958).

Requirements for Affidavit or Declaration

Since "showing" implies proof, merely stating that special circumstances exist and there is no intention to abandon the mark is not sufficient. *In re Conusa Corp.*, 32 USPQ2d 1857 (Comm'r Pats. 1993); *In re Moorman Mfg. Co.*, *supra*; *Ex parte Astra Pharm. Prod., Inc.*, 118 USPQ 368 (Comm'r Pats. 1958); *Ex parte Denver Chem. Mfg. Co.*, 118 USPQ 106 (Comm'r Pats. 1958). The affidavit or declaration must state when use in commerce stopped and give the approximate date when use is expected to resume. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(f\)\(2\)](#). If the mark was registered under §44(e) and the owner was unable to commence use due to special circumstances beyond the owner's control that excuse the nonuse, the owner should state that the mark was never in use and give the approximate date when use is expected to begin. Affidavits or declarations should also specify the reason for nonuse, the specific steps being taken to put the mark back in use, and any other relevant facts to support a finding of excusable nonuse.

Sufficient facts must be set forth to demonstrate clearly that nonuse is due to some special circumstance beyond the owner's control or "forced by outside causes." *In re Conusa Corp.*, *supra*; *In re Moorman Mfg. Co.*, *supra*; *Ex parte Kelley-How-Thomson Co.*, *supra*.

The goods/services/classes for which excusable nonuse is claimed must be specified. See [TMEP §§1604.09 et seq.](#) regarding proper specification of the goods/services/collective membership organization in a §8 affidavit or declaration.

In a multiple-class registration, there must be a recitation of facts as to nonuse for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains, or it must be clear that the facts recited apply to all the classes.

Presumption of Abandonment

If the mark has not been in use for three consecutive years and the owner has done nothing to try to resume use of the mark, the USPTO may presume that the owner has abandoned the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); *see Imperial Tobacco Ltd. v. Phillip Morris Inc.*, 899 F.2d 1575, 14 USPQ2d 1390 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *Stromgren Supports Inc. v. Bike Athletic Co.*, 43 USPQ2d 1100 (TTAB 1997).

Examples of Special Circumstances that Do and Do Not Excuse Nonuse

In addition to a showing that there is no intention to abandon the mark, the owner must show that nonuse is due to special circumstances beyond the owner's control that excuse nonuse. The following examples provide general guidelines as to what is considered to be a special circumstance that excuses nonuse:

- *Business Decision.* Nonuse related to a business decision is not beyond the owner's control and does not excuse nonuse.

- *Decreased Demand.* Decreased demand for the product sold under the mark, resulting in its discontinuance for an indefinite period, does not excuse nonuse. The purpose of the requirement for an affidavit or declaration is to eliminate registrations of marks that are in nonuse due to ordinary changes in social or economic conditions. See *In re Conusa Corp.*, *supra*; *In re Parmalat S.p.A.*, 32 USPQ2d 1860 (Comm'r Pats. 1991); *Ex parte Astra Pharm. Prod., Inc.*, *supra*; *Ex parte Denver Chem. Mfg. Co.*, *supra*.
- *Trade Embargo or Other Circumstance Beyond Owner's Control.* Nonuse may be considered excusable where the owner of the registration is willing and able to continue use of the mark in commerce, but is unable to do so due to a trade embargo.
- *Sale of a Business.* Temporary nonuse due to the sale of a business might be considered excusable.
- *Retooling.* The mark might be out of use temporarily because of an interruption of production for retooling of a plant or equipment, with production possible again at a scheduled time. However, nonuse due to retooling is excusable only if the owner shows that the plant or equipment being retooled was essential to the production of the goods and that alternative equipment was unavailable on the market. *In re New Eng. Mutual Life Ins. Co.*, 33 USPQ2d 1532 (Comm'r Pats. 1991).
- *Orders on Hand.* If the product is of a type that cannot be produced quickly or in large numbers (e.g., airplanes), yet there are orders on hand and activity toward filling them, nonuse might be considered excusable.
- *Illness, Fire, and Other Catastrophes.* Illness, fire, and other catastrophes may create situations of temporary nonuse, with the owner being able to outline arrangements and plans for resumption of use. Such nonuse is often excusable. However, a mere statement that the owner is ill and cannot conduct his or her business will not in itself excuse nonuse; the owner must show that the business is an operation that could not continue without his or her presence. *New Eng. Mutual Life Ins.*, *supra*.
- *Negotiations with Distributors.* A recitation of efforts to negotiate agreements that would allow for resumption of use of the mark, or a statement that samples of the goods have been shipped to potential distributors, may establish lack of intention to abandon the mark, but does not establish the existence of special circumstances that excuse the nonuse. *In re Parmalat*, *supra*; *In re Moorman*, *supra*.
- *Use in Foreign Country.* Use of the mark in a foreign country has no bearing on excusable nonuse of a mark in commerce that can be regulated by the United States Congress. *In re Conusa*, *supra*.
- *Use of Mark on Different Goods/Services.* Use of the mark on goods/services other than those recited in the registration does not establish either special circumstances or lack of intention to abandon the mark. *Ex parte Kelley-How-Thomson Co.*, *supra*.
- *Use of Mark in Another Form.* Use of a mark as an essential part of a materially different composite mark does not excuse the failure to use the mark at issue. *In re Cont'l Distilling Corp.*, 254 F.2d 139, 117 USPQ 300 (C.C.P.A. 1958).

Supplementary Evidence or Explanation of Nonuse

If the USPTO determines that the facts set forth do not establish excusable nonuse, the owner may file supplementary evidence or explanation, within the response period set forth in the Office action. If the affidavit or declaration included a claim of excusable nonuse when filed, no deficiency surcharge will be required for supplementing this claim with additional evidence or an explanation.

New Affidavit or Declaration Claiming Use

If there is time remaining in the statutory filing period (including the grace period) and the owner responds to the Office action by submitting a new affidavit or declaration with a claim of use, specimen, and filing fee, the USPTO will examine the new affidavit or declaration of use.

1604.12 Specimen Showing Current Use of Mark in Commerce

1604.12(a) Specimen for Each Class Required

A §8 affidavit or declaration must include a specimen showing how the mark is in use in commerce for each class in the registration, unless excusable nonuse is claimed. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(g\)](#). When requested by the USPTO, additional specimens must be provided. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(g\)](#).

See [TMEP §§904.03](#) *et seq.* regarding trademark specimens, [TMEP §§1301.04](#) *et seq.* regarding service mark specimens, [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding specimens for certification marks..

The specimen must show use of essentially the same mark as the mark shown in the registration, and must be used on or in connection with the goods/services/classes listed in the registration. A specimen that shows use of a materially different mark (*see* [TMEP §1604.13](#)), or shows use of the mark on other goods/services/classes, is unacceptable. An affidavit or declaration that does not include an acceptable specimen for each class is deficient. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(g\)](#).

If a single specimen supports multiple classes, the owner should so indicate, and the Post Registration staff need not require additional copies of the specimen. The Post Registration staff should enter a Note to the File in the record indicating which classes the specimen supports.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(1\)](#), the specimen should be flat and no larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. If a specimen exceeds these size requirements, the USPTO will create a digital facsimile of the specimen that meets the requirements of the rule (i.e., is flat and no larger than 8½ inches wide by 11.69 inches long), put it in the record, and destroy the original bulky specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(2\)](#). If the copy of the specimen created by the USPTO does not adequately depict the mark, the Post Registration staff will require a substitute specimen that meets the size requirements of the rule, and an affidavit or declaration verifying the use of the substitute specimen.

If the specimen is otherwise deficient, the Post Registration staff will require a substitute specimen, together with an affidavit or declaration that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/classes during the relevant period specified in §8 of the Act. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.164](#). *See* [TMEP §1604.12\(c\)](#) regarding substitute specimens.

The USPTO will not return specimens filed with a §8 affidavit or declaration.

1604.12(b) Specimens in Electronically Filed Affidavits or Declarations

If the owner files the §8 affidavit or declaration through TEAS, the owner must submit a digitized image in .jpg or .pdf format. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(4\)](#).

Sometimes, no visible specimen is in the record due to a technical problem during submission of the affidavit or declaration. In this situation, the Post Registration staff should first send an e-mail to the TEAS mailbox

to ask whether the problem can be fixed by uploading the file again. If it cannot, the Post Registration staff must ask the owner to submit: (1) the specimen (or a facsimile of the specimen) that was attached to the original electronically filed affidavit or declaration; and (2) a statement by the person who transmitted the affidavit or declaration to the USPTO that the specimen being submitted is a true copy of the specimen submitted with the electronically filed affidavit or declaration. This statement does not have to be verified.

Alternatively, the owner may submit a new specimen, together with an affidavit or declaration that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services during the relevant period specified in §8 of the Act. No deficiency surcharge is required. See [TMEP §1604.12\(c\)](#) regarding the requirements for an affidavit or declaration supporting use of substitute specimens.

The USPTO prefers that the specimen, whether a true copy of the original or a substitute, be submitted electronically via the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”). In TEAS, the Response to Office Action form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled “Response Forms” at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

1604.12(c) Substitute Specimens

If a specimen for any class is omitted or is deficient, the owner must file a substitute specimen, together with an affidavit or declaration that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services during the relevant period specified in §8 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), as follows:

- (1) If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#), the affidavit or declaration supporting use of the substitute specimen must state that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce before the expiration of the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c), if accurate; or
- (2) If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration, the affidavit or declaration supporting use of the substitute specimen must state that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce within one year before the end of the ten-year period after the date of registration, if accurate; or
- (3) If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the affidavit or declaration supporting use of the substitute specimen must state that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce before the expiration of the grace period, if accurate.

If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the relevant period specified in §8(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Trademark Act, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration), the substitute specimen may be filed before expiration of the relevant period for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant period with the deficiency surcharge required under §8(c) of the Act. If the §8 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute specimen may be filed before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §8 affidavits or declarations, and [TMEP §§1604.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

While a substitute specimen and supporting affidavit or declaration may be filed after the expiration of the period specified in §8 of the Act, the supporting affidavit or declaration must attest to use of the specimen within the time period specified in §8 of the Act. Therefore, if the affidavit or declaration supporting the substitute specimen does not state that the specimen was in use in commerce prior to the end of the relevant period specified in §8 of the Act, the USPTO will not accept the affidavit or declaration, and the registration will be cancelled as to any class for which no proper specimen was submitted.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) and [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#) regarding the proper person to sign an affidavit or declaration.

1604.13 Differences in the Mark as Used on the Specimen and the Mark as Registered

The mark to which the §8 affidavit or declaration pertains must be essentially the same as the mark that appears in the registration. Where the specimen reflects a change in the mark since the registration issued, acceptance of the affidavit or declaration will depend on the degree of change. A *material* alteration of the mark will result in refusal of the affidavit or declaration on the ground that the registered mark is no longer in use. *In re Int'l Nickel Co., Inc.*, 282 F.2d 952, 127 USPQ 331 (C.C.P.A. 1960); *In re Cont'l Distilling Corp.*, 254 F.2d 139, 117 USPQ 300 (C.C.P.A. 1958); *Ex parte Richards*, 153 USPQ 853 (Comm'r Pats. 1967); *see also Jack Wolfskin Ausrustung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d 1363, 116 USPQ2d 1129 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *Torres v. Cantine Torresella S.r.l.*, 808 F.2d 46, 1 USPQ2d 1483 (Fed. Cir. 1986); *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 222 USPQ 273 (Fed. Cir. 1984).

Mere changes in background or styling, or modernization, are not ordinarily considered to be material changes in the mark. *See Ex parte Petersen & Pegau Baking Co.*, 100 USPQ 20 (Comm'r Pats. 1953) (change in matter determined to be mere background and type face held not a material alteration of “PETER PAN” mark). However, each case must be decided on its own facts, and these general rules are subject to exceptions. The controlling question is always whether the old and new forms of the mark create essentially the same commercial impression. *See Jack Wolfskin Ausrustung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d at 1370, 116 USPQ2d at 1133-34 (holding minor adjustment to the font and alterations to the design element of registered mark insufficient to change the commercial impression created by the mark).

Generally, the standard used to determine whether a change is material under §8 is the same as the standard used to determine whether the mark in a registration may be amended under [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#). If the mark could be amended under §7(e) because the character of the mark had not been materially altered, then the specimen filed with the §8 affidavit or declaration should be accepted. In determining whether a change constitutes a material alteration, the USPTO will always compare the mark in the specimen to the mark as originally registered. See [TMEP §§807.14 et seq.](#) and [1609.02\(a\)](#) for additional information about material alteration.

However, where the registered mark is currently used as one of several elements in a composite mark, the decision as to whether to accept the specimen requires consideration of whether the registered mark makes an impression apart from the other elements of the composite mark. If the display of the composite is such that the essence of the registered mark makes a separate impression, then the specimen may be sufficient for purposes of the §8 requirement. In many cases, word elements are severable from design elements, because words tend to dominate in forming a commercial impression. *In re DeWitt Int'l Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1620 (Comm'r Pats. 1991). If the mark, as used on the §8 specimen, creates a separate impression apart from any other material on the specimen, then the specimen may be accepted as evidence of current use of the registered mark.

If the USPTO determines that the mark on the specimen is a material alteration of the registered mark, the owner may file a substitute specimen. If the owner files a substitute specimen after expiration of the relevant filing period specified in §8 of the Act, the owner must pay the deficiency surcharge required by §8(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See [TMEP §1604.12\(c\)](#) regarding substitute specimens, and [37 C.F.R. §2.164](#) and [TMEP §§1604.17 et seq.](#) regarding the procedures for correcting deficiencies in a §8 affidavit or declaration.

1604.13(a) Possible Amendment of Mark in Registration

If the USPTO accepts the §8 affidavit or declaration, and there is a difference between the mark on the specimen filed with the affidavit or declaration and the mark in the registration, the mark as originally registered remains the mark of record. If the owner wants to change the mark in the registration to agree with the mark currently used, the owner must file a separate request for amendment under §7(e) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#), and pay the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See *Ex parte Petersen & Pegau Baking Co.*, 100 USPQ 20 (Comm'r Pats. 1953). See [TMEP §§1609.02](#) *et seq.* regarding amendment of a registered mark under §7(e).

However, amending the mark in a registration under §7(e) to agree with the mark as shown on a §8 specimen is not mandatory.

1604.14 Designation of Domestic Representative by Foreign Owner

Under [15 U.S.C. §1058\(f\)](#), if the owner of the registration is not domiciled in the United States, the affidavit or declaration may include the name and address of a United States resident upon whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served. The USPTO encourages parties who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that designations of domestic representative be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. See [TMEP §610](#).

The designation should be signed by the individual owner, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner authorized to practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) (“qualified practitioner”). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(h\)](#).

1604.15 Office Actions and Notices Regarding Affidavit or Declaration

Upon receipt of a §8 affidavit or declaration, the USPTO updates the prosecution history of the registration in the Trademark database to indicate that the affidavit or declaration has been filed.

When a §8 affidavit or declaration is filed electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the affidavit or declaration, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

If a §8 affidavit or declaration is filed on paper, no acknowledgment of receipt of the affidavit or declaration is sent before it is examined, unless the owner includes a stamped, self-addressed postcard with the affidavit or declaration (see [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#) *et seq.*).

If, upon examination, the USPTO determines that the affidavit or declaration is acceptable, the USPTO sends a notice of acceptance. If the affidavit or declaration is not acceptable, the USPTO issues an action stating the reasons for refusal. [37 C.F.R. §2.163](#).

Sometimes, it may be necessary for the USPTO to request additional information in order to properly examine the affidavit or declaration. In such cases, the USPTO will require the owner to furnish such additional

information, specimens, exhibits, and affidavits or declarations as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the §8 affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(h\)](#).

The propriety of the original registration is not re-examined in connection with the affidavit or declaration under §8.

1604.16 Response to Office Action

Deadline . Under [37 C.F.R. §2.163\(b\)](#), the owner must file a response to a refusal within six months of the issuance date of the Office action, or before the end of the relevant filing period set forth in §8(a) of the Act, whichever is later. If no response is received within that time, the registration will be cancelled, unless time remains in the grace period under §8(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(3\)](#). If time remains in the grace period, the owner may file a complete new affidavit or declaration, with a new fee.

The owner may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#) to waive [37 C.F.R. §2.163\(b\)](#) so that a late response to an Office action may be accepted. However, the Director will waive a rule only in an extraordinary situation, where justice requires and no other party is injured. See [TMEP §1708](#). The failure to receive an Office action has been found to be an extraordinary circumstance that warrants a waiver of [37 C.F.R. §2.163\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §1712.02\(b\)](#). The “unintentional delay” standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does not apply to the failure to respond to an Office action issued in connection with a §8 affidavit or declaration. [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#).

Signature . The response must be signed by a qualified practitioner, or by the owner of the registration or someone with legal authority to bind the owner. If the owner is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\)](#), [11.18\(a\)](#). If the owner is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual owner or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.163\(b\)](#), [11.14\(e\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.06 et seq.](#) for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities and [TMEP §§602 et seq.](#) regarding persons who are qualified to represent others before the USPTO in trademark cases.

When it appears that a response to an Office action is signed by an improper party, the Post Registration staff must treat the response as incomplete and follow the procedures in [TMEP §§611.05 et seq.](#)

Correction of Deficiencies. See [TMEP §§1604.17 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

1604.17 Correction of Deficiencies in §8 Affidavit or Declaration

37 CFR §2.164 Correcting deficiencies in affidavit or declaration.

(a) If the affidavit or declaration is filed within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected after notification from the Office, as follows:

(1) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations timely filed within the periods set forth in sections 8(a)(1) and 8(a)(2) of the Act. If the affidavit or declaration is timely filed within the relevant filing period set forth in section 8(a)(1) or section 8(a)(2) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the end of this filing period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the end of this filing period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 8(c) of the Act and § 2.6.

(2) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations filed during the grace period. If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the six-month grace period provided by section 8(a)(3) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 8(c) of the Act and § 2.6.

(b) If the affidavit or declaration is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 8 of the Act, the registration will be cancelled.

1604.17(a) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Timely Filed Within the Periods Set Forth in §8(a) of the Act

If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the periods set forth in §8(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration or publication under §12(c) of the Act, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration), deficiencies may be corrected, after notification from the Office, within the relevant period without paying a deficiency surcharge, or after the expiration of the relevant period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by §8(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#).

Any deficiency must be cured before the end of the relevant filing period set forth in §8 of the Act or within the set period for response to the Office action, whichever is later. [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#). If no response is filed, or if the owner does not correct the deficient affidavit or declaration, within this time period, the registration will be cancelled, unless time remains in the grace period under §8(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(3\)](#). If time remains in the grace period, the owner may file a complete new affidavit or declaration, with a new fee. See [TMEP §1604.16](#).

1604.17(b) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Filed During the Grace Period

If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the six-month grace period under §8(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) (a)(3), deficiencies may be corrected, after notification from the Office, before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge, or after the expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge required by §8(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#).

Deficiencies must be cured within six months of the issuance date of the Office action. [37 C.F.R. §2.163\(b\)](#); see [TMEP §1604.16](#).

1604.17(c) Defects That Cannot be Cured After Expiration of the Grace Period

The registration will be cancelled if an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse is not filed within the time period set forth in §8 of the Act (including the grace period). [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)](#). Untimely filing cannot be cured after expiration of the grace period, even with a deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the deadline for filing the affidavit or declaration.

1604.18 Petition Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#)

The action of the Post Registration staff on a §8 affidavit or declaration may not be appealed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, but the owner may file a petition to the Director for review of the action under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#) and [2.165\(b\)](#). A petition fee is required by [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [2.146\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1705 – 1705.09](#) regarding petition procedure.

1604.18(a) Response to Examiner's Refusal Required Before Petition

A response to the initial refusal to accept an affidavit or declaration is required before filing a petition, unless the Post Registration staff directs otherwise or there is no time remaining to respond to the refusal. [37 C.F.R. §2.165\(a\)](#).

If the Post Registration staff continues the refusal to accept the affidavit or declaration, the owner may file a petition for review of the action under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#) within six months of the issuance date. See [TMEP §1705.04](#). If the owner does not file a petition within six months, the registration will be cancelled. [37 C.F.R. §2.165\(b\)](#).

1604.18(b) Decision on Petition Is Final Action of the USPTO

The decision on a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) is the final action of the USPTO. In the absence of a request for reconsideration (see [TMEP §1604.18\(c\)](#)), or an appeal to an appropriate court (see [TMEP §1604.18\(d\)](#)) within two months of the issuance date of the decision on petition, the registration will be cancelled.

1604.18(c) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(j\)](#), if a petition is denied, the petitioner may file a request for reconsideration within two months of the issuance date of the decision denying the petition. A second petition fee must be paid with the request for reconsideration. See [TMEP §1705.08](#) regarding requests for reconsideration of petition decisions.

1604.18(d) Appeal to Federal Court

The owner of the registration may appeal to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or commence a civil action for review of the decision denying a petition. [15 U.S.C. §§1071\(a\)\(1\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.145\(a\), \(c\)](#).

The deadline for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action is 63 days from the issuance date of the decision on petition. [15 U.S.C. §§1071\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.145\(d\)\(1\), \(d\)\(3\)](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.165\(c\)](#), a decision on petition is necessary before the owner can file an appeal or commence a civil action in any court.

1604.19 Section 8 Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse Combined with Renewal Application

A §8 affidavit or declaration and a §9 renewal application may be combined into a single document, if the document meets the requirements of both §§8 and 9 of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.166](#).

The filing fee for the combined §8 and §9 filing is the sum of the cost of the individual filings. For example, if filed electronically, the filing fee for the §8 affidavit or declaration is \$125 per class, the filing fee for the renewal application is \$300 per class, and the filing fee for the combined §8 and §9 document is \$425 per class. If filed on paper, the filing fee for the §8 affidavit or declaration is \$225 per class, the filing fee for the renewal application is \$500 per class, and the filing fee for the combined §8 and §9 document is \$725 per class.

If the combined §8 and §9 document is filed during the grace period, the filing fees per class and the grace period surcharge per class must be paid for *both* the §8 affidavit or declaration and the §9 renewal application.

Example: The period for filing a §8 affidavit or declaration and §9 renewal application expires on November 19, 2009. A combined §8 and §9 document is filed November 21, 2009, during the six-month grace period. The proper fees are as follows: (1) filing fee

for the §8 affidavit or declaration, per class; (2) grace period surcharge for the §8 affidavit or declaration, per class; (3) filing fee for the §9 renewal application, per class; *and* (4) grace period surcharge for the §9 renewal application, per class.

Failure to include the proper fees is a deficiency that may require a deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §§1604.17 et seq.](#) and [1606.13 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

Only a single deficiency surcharge is required for curing one or more deficiencies in a combined §8 and §9 filing, even if both the §8 affidavit or declaration and the §9 renewal application are deficient. Similarly, only a single deficiency surcharge is required to correct several deficiencies within one document.

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the combined §8 and §9 filing be submitted through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When the combined filing is submitted electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the document, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

Alternatively, the owner of the registration can call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed form that can be filled out and mailed, faxed, or hand-delivered to the USPTO.

See [TMEP §1605.05](#) regarding a combined filing under §§8 and 15 of the Act.

1604.20 Additional Requirements for §8 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Collective Marks

In addition to the requirements specified in [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(a\)-\(h\)](#) and [TMEP §§1604.06–1604.19](#), a complete §8 affidavit or declaration pertaining to a collective trademark, collective service mark, or collective membership mark for which use in commerce is claimed must include:

- (1) A statement that the owner is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (*see* [TMEP § 1604.20\(a\)](#)); and
- (2) If the registration issued from an application based solely on §44 of the Act, a statement specifying the nature of the owner’s control over the use of the mark by the members in the first §8 affidavit or declaration filed with the USPTO (*see* [TMEP § 1604.20\(b\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.161\(i\)-\(i\)\(2\)](#).

1604.20(a) Exercising Legitimate Control

If use in commerce is claimed, the owner must submit a verified statement that the owner is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(i\)\(1\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original affidavit or declaration, it must also allege that, the owner was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce during the relevant time period for filing the §8 affidavit or declaration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(b\)](#), [\(i\)\(1\)](#).

1604.20(b) Manner/Method of Control

If the registration issued from an application based solely on §44 of the Act, the owner must state the nature of the owner's control over the use of the mark by the members, in the first §8 affidavit or declaration of use that is filed with the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(i\)\(2\)](#). A statement that the owner's bylaws or other written provisions specify the manner of control is sufficient to satisfy this requirement.

The following language may be used for the above purpose:

The owner controls the members' use of the mark in the following manner: [specify, e.g., the owner's bylaws specify the manner of control].

1604.21 Additional Requirements for §8 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Certification Marks

In addition to the requirements specified in [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(a\)-\(h\)](#) and [TMEP §§1604.06–1604.19](#), a complete §8 affidavit or declaration pertaining to a certification mark for which use in commerce is claimed must include:

- (1) A copy of the certification standards governing use of the certification mark on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the registration (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#); [TMEP §1604.21\(a\)](#));
- (2) A statement that the owner is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (*see* [TMEP §1604.21\(b\)](#));
- (3) A statement specifying what the owner is certifying about the goods or services in the registration (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1604.21\(c\)](#)); and
- (4) A statement that the owner is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the owner (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §1604.21\(d\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)-\(j\)\(3\)](#).

1604.21(a) Certification Standards

Submitting certification standards for the first time . If the registration issued from an application based solely on §44 of the Act, the owner must include a copy of the standards established to determine whether others may use the certification mark on their goods and/or in connection with their services, in the first §8 affidavit or declaration of use that is filed with the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)\(1\)\(i\)](#).

The standards do not have to be originally created by the owner. They may be standards established by another party, such as specifications promulgated by a government agency or standards developed through research of a private research organization.

The standards must cover the full scope of the goods/services identified in the registration. For example, if the goods are “olive oil,” but the standards are only for “extra virgin olive oil,” the USPTO must require the owner to submit standards that cover all types of olive oil or to amend the identification to “extra virgin olive oil.”

Certification standards submitted in prior filing . If the certification standards in use at the time of filing the §8 affidavit or declaration have not changed since the date they were previously submitted to the USPTO, the §8 affidavit or declaration must include a statement to that effect. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#). If the certification standards in use at the time of filing the §8 affidavit or declaration have changed since the date they were previously submitted to the USPTO, the §8 affidavit or declaration must include a copy of the revised certification standards. *Id.*

1604.21(b) Exercising Legitimate Control

If use in commerce is claimed, the owner must submit a verified statement that the owner is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)\(2\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original affidavit or declaration, it must also allege that the owner was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce during the relevant time period for filing the §8 affidavit or declaration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(b\)](#), [\(j\)\(2\)](#).

1604.21(c) Certification Statement

If use in commerce is claimed, the §8 affidavit or declaration must include a statement specifying the characteristic, standard, or other feature that is being certified by the mark, also known as the certification statement. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#), [2.161\(j\)\(3\)](#).

Registrations Issued from Applications Based on §1 of the Act:

If the registration issued from an application based on §1 of the Act, the registration as issued included a certification statement specifying what the owner is certifying about the goods or services in the registration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#). This statement, if still accurate, must be included in the §8 affidavit or declaration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)\(3\)](#). If what is being certified about the goods or services has changed, the owner must include in the §8 affidavit or declaration an amended certification statement specifying what the owner is currently certifying about the goods or services in the registration; however, an amendment that would materially alter the certification statement will not be permitted. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1609.12](#).

Registrations Issued from Applications Based Solely on §44 of the Act:

If the registration issued from an application based solely on §44 of the Act, the registration as issued included a certification statement specifying what the owner *will* be certifying about the goods or services in the registration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#). However, the §8 affidavit or declaration must include a certification statement specifying what the owner *is* certifying about the goods or services in the registration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)\(3\)](#). The certification statement from the registration, if still accurate, must be included in the §8 affidavit or declaration using the present tense “is certifying,” “certifies,” or “is being certified.” If what is being certified about the goods or services has changed, the owner must include in the §8 affidavit or declaration an amended certification statement specifying what the owner is currently certifying about the goods or services in the registration; however, an amendment that would materially alter the certification statement will not be permitted. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(f\)](#); [TMEP § 1609.12](#).

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) for general information about certification statements.

1604.21(d) Statement that Owner is Not Engaged in Production or Marketing of the Goods/Services

If use in commerce is claimed, the §8 affidavit or declaration must contain a statement that the owner is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the owner. [37 C.F.R. §2.161\(j\)\(3\)](#); *see* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#). This statement does not have to be verified.

1605 Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability Under §15 of the Trademark Act

Section 15 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1065](#), provides a procedure by which the exclusive right to use a registered mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services covered by the registration can become “incontestable,” if the owner of the registration files an affidavit or declaration stating that the mark has been in continuous use in commerce for a period of five years after the date of registration. To expedite processing, it is recommended that the owner file the §15 affidavit or declaration through TEAS, available at <http://www.uspto.gov>. *See* [TMEP §1605.02](#).

Under §33(b) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1115\(b\)](#), if the right to use the mark has become incontestable under §15, then the registration is conclusive evidence of the validity of the registered mark and its registration, of the registrant’s ownership of the mark, and of the owner’s exclusive right to use the registered mark in commerce, subject to certain defenses and exceptions. Sections 15 and 33(b) apply only to registrations issued on the Principal Register.

Filing an affidavit or declaration of incontestability under §15 of the Trademark Act (“§15 affidavit or declaration”) is optional. An eligible registrant may choose to claim the benefits of incontestability and file an appropriate affidavit or declaration, or may elect to retain the registration without those benefits. The requirements for maintaining and renewing a federal registration are not affected.

The USPTO does not “accept” §15 affidavits or declarations. *Arman’s Sys., Inc. v. Armand’s Subway, Inc.*, 215 USPQ 1048, 1050 n.2. (TTAB 1982). Rather, the USPTO reviews the affidavit or declaration to determine whether it is consistent with the requirements of the statute and rules (e.g. , whether it is signed, whether it was filed at an appropriate time, and whether the §15 claims are properly set forth).

When a §15 affidavit or declaration complies with the requirements of the statute and rules, the USPTO updates its records to acknowledge receipt of the affidavit or declaration and sends a notice of acknowledgment to the owner of the registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(i\)](#). Acknowledging receipt of the affidavit or declaration provides notice to the public that an affidavit or declaration of incontestability has been filed; it is not a determination by the USPTO that the registration is in fact incontestable. The question of whether the registration is incontestable arises and is determined by a court if there is a proceeding involving the mark.

If the §15 affidavit or declaration does not comply with the statute and rules, the USPTO issues a written action notifying the owner of any inconsistency or error, but does not require correction. If the §15 affidavit or declaration is filed alone, the owner is given six months from the issuance date of the Office action to file a response. If it is filed as part of a combined affidavit or declaration under §§8 and 15 or §§71 and 15, and there are issues in the Office action relating to both parts of the combined filing, the owner must file a response within six months of the issuance date of the Office action, or before the end of the relevant filing period set forth in §8(a) or §71(a), whichever is later. *See* [TMEP §§1604.16, 1613.16](#). If the issues in the Office action relate only to the §15 affidavit or declaration, the owner is given six months from the issuance

date of the Office action to file a response. If no response is received within the required time, the §15 affidavit or declaration will be abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(h\)](#). The USPTO does *not* update its records to acknowledge receipt of a noncompliant affidavit or declaration. The owner may file a new §15 affidavit or declaration, with a new filing fee. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(k\)](#)

A fee is required for each class in the registration to which the §15 affidavit or declaration pertains. [37 C.F.R. §§2.6, 2.167\(g\)](#). If insufficient fees are included with the affidavit or declaration, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action allowing the owner additional time to submit the required fees. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(g\)](#).

An owner may abandon a timely filed §15 affidavit or declaration that contains an inaccuracy by filing a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(j\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1605.03, 1704, 1707](#).

The limitation of grounds that a third party can raise in a petition to cancel a registered mark under [15 U.S.C. §1064](#) filed more than five years from the date of registration does *not* depend on the filing of a §15 affidavit or declaration. [TMEP §1605.06](#).

See [TMEP §1605.05](#) regarding a combined affidavit or declaration under §§8 and 15 of the Act, and [TMEP §1216.02](#) regarding the effect of “incontestability” in ex parte examination.

1605.01 Registrations to Which §15 Affidavit or Declaration Pertains

The provisions of §15 of the Trademark Act apply only to registrations issued on the Principal Register under the Act of 1946 and to registrations issued under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 that have been “published” under §12(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §1603](#) regarding §12(c).

A §15 affidavit or declaration may be filed for a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States. Section 73 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141m](#).

Section 15 affidavits or declarations may not be filed for marks registered on the Supplemental Register of the Act of 1946, marks registered under the Act of 1920, or marks registered under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 for which the benefits of the Act of 1946 have not been claimed under §12(c). If a §15 affidavit or declaration is filed for a registration that is not eligible for the benefits of §15, the USPTO will not review it and will refund the filing fee.

1605.02 Form for Filing Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the owner file the §15 affidavit or declaration through TEAS, available at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When the affidavit or declaration is submitted electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the affidavit or declaration, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

Alternatively, the owner can call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed form that can be filled out and mailed, faxed, or hand-delivered to the USPTO.

1605.03 Time for Filing Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability

The owner may not file a §15 affidavit or declaration until the federally registered mark has been in continuous use in commerce for at least five consecutive years after the date of registration. This may be any five-year period after the date of registration for marks registered under the Act of 1946, or after the date of publication under §12(c) for marks registered under the Acts of 1905 and 1881.

The owner may file the affidavit or declaration within one year after the five-year period that is selected. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(f\)](#). The affidavit or declaration must be both executed and filed within that one-year period. If the affidavit or declaration is filed earlier than five years after the date of registration or the date of publication under §12(c), the USPTO will not review it and will refund the filing fee. The owner may file a new affidavit, with a fee, during the statutory filing period.

The USPTO does not review the validity of a claim of continuous use in commerce made in a §15 affidavit or declaration. Therefore, after timely filing a §15 affidavit or declaration, if the owner determines that the affidavit or declaration contained an inaccuracy, the owner may not request that the affidavit or declaration be withdrawn and the fee refunded. In such situations, the owner may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) requesting that the §15 affidavit or declaration be abandoned. See [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(j\)](#); [TMEP §§1704, 1707](#).

An affidavit or declaration filed through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#).

Section 15 affidavits or declarations filed on paper are considered timely if they are received in the USPTO by the due date or if they are mailed or transmitted by the due date with a certificate of mailing or facsimile transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#). See [TMEP §§305.02](#) and [306.05](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness.

The USPTO will not acknowledge a §15 affidavit or declaration unless a §8 affidavit or declaration is pending or has been accepted by the Office. If a §15 affidavit or declaration is filed alone during the statutory period for filing the §8 affidavit or declaration, the Post Registration staff will notify the owner that the registration will be cancelled without an acceptable §8 affidavit or declaration. In response to such notification, the owner may request that the §15 affidavit or declaration be treated as a deficient §8 affidavit or declaration. See [TMEP §1604.04](#) regarding the deadline for filing a §8 affidavit or declaration and [TMEP §1604.05](#) regarding the requirements for filing a §8 affidavit or declaration.

See [TMEP §1605.05](#) regarding a combined affidavit or declaration under §§8 and 15 of the Act.

1605.04 Requirements for Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability

Section 15 of the Act refers to the affidavit or declaration merely as “setting forth” the specified information. See [15 U.S.C. §1065\(3\)](#). Therefore, no showing or proof beyond the owner’s verified statement is required.

Must be Filed by Owner. In order to be effective, the §15 affidavit or declaration must be filed by the person who is the owner of the registration at the time the affidavit or declaration is filed. [37 C.F.R. §§2.167\(a\), 2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). If the affidavit or declaration was filed by the wrong party, the true owner may file a new affidavit or declaration, with a new filing fee.

Fee. A fee is required for each class in the registration to which the §15 affidavit or declaration pertains.

See [37 C.F.R. §§2.6, 2.167\(g\)](#). If insufficient fees are included with the affidavit or declaration, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action allowing the owner additional time to submit the required fees. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(g\)](#).

Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization Must be Recited. The §15 affidavit or declaration must specify the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization recited in the registration on or in connection with which the mark has been in continuous use in commerce for the five-year period after the date of registration or publication under §12(c), and is still in use in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §1065\(3\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(c\)](#). More than one affidavit or declaration may be filed at different times for different goods/services/classes in the same registration.

Mark Must be in Use in Commerce. Regardless of the basis for registration, the use on which the §15 affidavit or declaration is based must be use in commerce. This applies to both foreign and domestic registrants. It is not necessary to specify the type of commerce (e.g. , interstate) in which the mark is used. The USPTO presumes that someone who states that the mark is in use in commerce is stating that the mark is in use in a type of commerce that the United States Congress can regulate, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record. See [TMEP §§901 et seq.](#) regarding use in commerce.

No Adverse Decision or Pending Proceeding Involving Rights in the Mark. The §15 affidavit or declaration must state that there has been no final decision adverse to the owner's claim of ownership of the mark for the goods, services, or collective membership organization, or to the owner's right to register the mark or to keep the mark on the register. It must also state that there is no proceeding involving these rights pending in the USPTO or in a court and not finally disposed of. [15 U.S.C. §§1065\(1\), \(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(d\), \(e\)](#). If the USPTO finds facts contrary to either of the foregoing statements, the USPTO will not acknowledge receipt of the §15 affidavit or declaration. See [TMEP §1605](#). The USPTO does not consider a proceeding involving the mark in which the owner is the plaintiff, where there is no counterclaim involving the owner's rights in the mark, to be a "proceeding involving these rights" that would preclude the filing or acknowledgment of a §15 affidavit or declaration.

If the USPTO finds that there is a proceeding pending that involves the owner's right to register the mark or to keep the mark on the register, the USPTO will not acknowledge the affidavit or declaration, even if the proceeding was instituted after the owner filed the §15 affidavit or declaration but before the affidavit or declaration was reviewed by the USPTO. If a pending proceeding is later dismissed, the owner may file a new affidavit or declaration, with a new filing fee.

Verification. The §15 affidavit or declaration must be signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by the owner of the registration or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner of the registration. [37 C.F.R. §§2.167\(a\), 2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). A "person who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of the owner" is: (1) a person with legal authority to bind the owner; (2) a person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the owner; or (3) an attorney as defined in [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the owner. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#). Generally, the USPTO does not question the authority of the person who signs a §15 affidavit or declaration, unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory's authority to sign. [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#).

See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#) and [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of electronically filed affidavits or declarations.

1605.05 Combining §15 Affidavit or Declaration with §8 Affidavit or Declaration

A §15 affidavit or declaration may be combined with a §8 affidavit or declaration, if the combined affidavit or declaration meets the requirements of both §§8 and 15.

The filing fee for a combined §8 and §15 affidavit or declaration is the sum of the cost of the individual filings. For example, if filed electronically, the filing fee for the §8 affidavit or declaration is \$125 per class, the filing fee for the §15 affidavit or declaration is \$200 per class, and the filing fee for the combined affidavit or declaration under §§8 and 15 is \$325 per class. If filed on paper, the filing fee for the §8 affidavit or declaration is \$225 per class, the filing fee for the §15 affidavit or declaration is \$300 per class, and the filing fee for the combined affidavit or declaration under §§8 and 15 is \$525 per class.

If the combined §8 and §15 affidavit or declaration is filed during the §8 grace period, the grace period surcharge per class for the §8 affidavit or declaration must be paid. There is no grace period surcharge for a §15 affidavit or declaration.

If a combined §8 and §15 affidavit or declaration is filed, and the §8 affidavit or declaration is deficient, the deficiency may be corrected before expiration of the relevant deadline set forth in §8 of the Act for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant deadline with the deficiency surcharge required by §8(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1604.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies in a §8 affidavit or declaration. There is no deficiency surcharge for a §15 affidavit or declaration.

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the owner file the combined §8 and §15 affidavit or declaration through TEAS, available at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When the combined affidavit or declaration is submitted electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the affidavit or declaration, and it may be printed or copied and pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information. Alternatively, the owner can call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed form that can be filled out and mailed, faxed, or hand-delivered to the USPTO.

See [TMEP §1613.19](#) regarding a combined filing under §§71 and 15 of the Act.

1605.06 Section 14 Limitation is Independent of §15 Affidavit or Declaration

Section 14 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#), limits the grounds that a third party can raise in a petition to cancel a mark registered on the Principal Register when the petition is filed more than five years from the date of registration or publication under §12(c). This limitation of grounds does *not* depend on the filing of a §15 affidavit or declaration. [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) (“TBMP”) [§307.02\(b\)](#).

1606 Renewal of Registration Under §9 of the Trademark Act

15 U.S.C. §1059 Renewal of registration.

(a) Subject to the provisions of section 8, each registration may be renewed for periods of 10 years at the end of each successive 10-year period following the date of registration upon payment of the prescribed fee and the filing of a written application, in such form as may be prescribed by the Director. Such application may be made at any time within 1 year before the end of each successive 10-year period for which the registration was issued or renewed, or it may be made within a grace period of 6 months after the end of each successive 10-year period, upon payment of a fee and surcharge prescribed therefor. If any application filed under this

section is deficient, the deficiency may be corrected within the time prescribed after notification of the deficiency, upon payment of a surcharge prescribed therefor.

(b) If the Director refuses to renew the registration, the Director shall notify the registrant of the Director's refusal and the reasons therefor.

(c) If the registrant is not domiciled in the United States the registrant may designate, by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. Such notices or process may be served upon the person so designated by leaving with that person or mailing to that person a copy thereof at the address specified in the last designation so filed. If the person so designated cannot be found at the address given in the last designation, or if the registrant does not designate by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark, such notices or process may be served on the Director.

1606.01 Which Registrations Must Be Renewed Under §9

1606.01(a) Registrations Based on Applications Under §1 or §44 Must Be Renewed Under §9

Section 9 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1059](#), requires that registrations resulting from applications based on §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act be renewed periodically. See [TMEP §§1606.02 et seq.](#) for information about the requirements for renewal under §9.

1606.01(b) Section 9 Does Not Apply to Extensions of Protection of International Registrations to the United States

Section 9 of the Trademark Act does not apply to registered extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States. Renewal of international registrations must be made at the IB, in accordance with Article 7 of the Madrid Protocol. [37 C.F.R. §7.41\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1614](#) for further information about renewal of international registrations.

1606.01(c) Renewal of Registrations Issued Under Prior U.S. Trademark Acts Must Be Renewed Under §9

An application for renewal of a registration issued under a prior Act, where required, must meet all the requirements of §9 of the Act and [37 C.F.R. §2.183](#). See [TMEP §1602.02](#) regarding the renewal of registrations issued under the Acts of 1881 and 1905, and [TMEP §1602.03](#) regarding the renewal of registrations issued under the Act of 1920.

1606.02 Requirements for Renewal Under §9

37 CFR §2.183 Requirements for a complete renewal application

A complete renewal application must include:

- (a) A request for renewal of the registration, signed by the registrant or the registrant's representative;
- (b) The fee required by §2.6 for each class;
- (c) The additional fee required by §2.6 for each class if the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period set forth in section 9(a) of the Act;
- (d) If the renewal application covers less than all the goods, services, or classes in the registration, a list specifying the particular goods, services, or classes to be renewed.
- (e) If at least one fee is submitted for a multiple-class registration, but the fee is insufficient to cover all the classes and class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will issue a notice requiring either the submission of additional fee(s) or an indication of the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied. Additional fee(s) may be submitted if the requirements of §2.185 are met. If the required fee(s) are not submitted and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should

be applied are not specified, the Office will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class.

(f) Renewals of registrations issued under a prior classification system will be processed on the basis of that system, unless the registration has been amended to adopt international classification pursuant to §2.85(e)(3).

1606.03 Time for Filing §9 Renewal Application

The application for renewal must be filed within one year before the expiration of the registration, or within the six-month grace period after the expiration of the registration with an additional grace period surcharge.

If no renewal application is filed before the end of the grace period, the registration will expire. [15 U.S.C. §1059\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.182](#). See [TMEP §§1602](#) *et seq.* as to the term of a registration.

A renewal application may be filed on the anniversary dates of the statutory period.

Example : For a registration issued on November 5, 1998, an application for renewal may be filed as early as November 5, 2007, and as late as November 5, 2008, before entering the six-month grace period.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#), a renewal application filed through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. When the renewal application is submitted electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the application, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

An application for renewal of a registration filed on paper is considered timely if it is received in the USPTO by the due date or if it is mailed or transmitted by the due date with a certificate of mailing or facsimile transmission in accordance with [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#). See [TMEP §§305.02](#) and [306.05](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness.

The Director has no authority to waive the deadline for filing a proper §9 renewal application. See *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 1018, 222 USPQ 273, 275 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (“Timeliness set by statute is not a minor technical defect which can be waived by the Commissioner.”). Cf. *Checkers Drive-In Restaurants, Inc. v. Comm’r of Patents and Trademarks.*, 51 F.3d 1078, 1085, 34 USPQ2d 1574, 1581 (D.C. App. 1995), *cert. denied* 516 U.S. 866 (1995) (“[I]n establishing cancellation as the penalty for failure to file the required affidavit [under 15 U.S.C. §1058], Congress made no exception for the innocent or the negligent. Thus, the Commissioner had no discretion to do other than cancel Checkers’s service mark registration in this case”).

1606.03(a) Premature Filing of §9 Renewal Application

A renewal application may not be filed before the period specified in §9 of the Act. See *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 222 USPQ 273 (Fed. Cir. 1984). If an application for renewal is filed more than one year before the expiration date of the registration, the USPTO will advise the registrant: (1) that the renewal application is premature; (2) of the appropriate time period for filing a renewal application; (3) that the fees submitted will be held; and (4) that the registrant may file a new renewal application at the appropriate time or may request a refund at any time. The prematurely filed renewal application will be placed in the record for informational purposes only. A timely renewal application must be filed before the end of the grace period, or the registration will expire and the fees will be refunded. There is no deficiency surcharge for filing a timely substitute renewal application.

1606.04 Form for Filing §9 Renewal Application

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the owner file the renewal application through TEAS.

Because the deadlines for filing renewal applications coincide with the deadlines for filing affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058\(a\)\(2\)](#) at the end of each ten-year period following the date of registration, the USPTO has created a form for filing a §8 affidavit or declaration combined with a §9 renewal application. See [TMEP §1604.19](#) for more information about combined filings under §§8 and 9 of the Act.

The form for the combined filing is available through TEAS at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Alternatively, the owner can call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed form that can be filled out and mailed, faxed, or hand-delivered.

The USPTO's §9 renewal form cannot be used to renew an international registration. See [TMEP §1614](#) for information about renewal of international registrations.

1606.05 Fees for §9 Renewal Applications

1606.05(a) Fee for Filing Application for Renewal Under §9

A renewal application must include the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#) for each class for which renewal is sought. [15 U.S.C. §1059\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.183\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§1401.02](#), [1401.04](#), and [1601.06](#) regarding use of international classification or prior United States classification for calculation of fees due. See [TMEP §1606.05\(c\)](#) regarding renewal applications filed with insufficient fees.

1606.05(b) Grace Period Surcharge and Deficiency Surcharge

If the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period, there is an additional grace period surcharge for each class for which renewal is sought. [15 U.S.C. §1059\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#), [2.183\(c\)](#).

Under §9(a) of the Trademark Act, a deficiency surcharge is required for correcting a deficiency after expiration of the relevant deadline specified in §9 of the Act. If the renewal application is filed within one year before the expiration of the registration, a deficiency surcharge is required for correcting deficiencies after the expiration date of the registration. If the renewal application is filed during the grace period, a deficiency surcharge is required for correcting deficiencies after expiration of the grace period. See [TMEP §§1606.13](#) *et seq.* for further information regarding the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

Only a single deficiency surcharge is required for correcting one or more deficiencies in a multiple-class registration. Similarly, only a single deficiency surcharge is required to correct several deficiencies within one renewal application or one combined filing under §§8 and 9. See [TMEP §1604.19](#) regarding combined filings under §§8 and 9.

The grace period surcharge applies only if no filing was made within the year before the expiration of the registration. Someone who files within one year before the expiration of the registration, but corrects a deficiency after expiration of the registration, will be subject to the deficiency surcharge only. On the other hand, someone who files during the grace period and cures a deficiency after the grace period expires will be subject to both the grace period surcharge (for the ability to file the renewal application during the grace

period) *and* the deficiency surcharge (for the ability to correct a deficiency after the expiration of the grace period). H.R. Rep. No. 105-194, 105th Congress, 1st Sess. 17 (1997).

1606.05(c) Processing §9 Renewal Application Filed with Insufficient Fees

A §9 renewal application that does not include sufficient fees to cover the filing fee for all the classes to which the application pertains (and the grace period surcharge, where applicable), is deficient. If the renewal application is filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, the deficiency may be corrected before the expiration date of the registration for no fee, or after the expiration date of the registration with the deficiency surcharge required by §9(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1059\(a\)](#). If the renewal application is filed during the grace period, the deficiency may be corrected before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge required by §9(a) of the Act. See [TMEP §§1606.13](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

If the renewal application was filed without sufficient fee(s), but included an authorization to charge additional fees to a USPTO deposit account, the required fee (and grace period surcharge, where applicable) will be charged to the deposit account. If the deposit account authorization was included with the renewal application as filed, and the deposit account had sufficient funds to cover the fee(s) in question, there is no fee deficiency and no deficiency surcharge is required.

An authorization to charge fees to a deposit account with insufficient funds to cover the fee is regarded as a deficiency.

If a check submitted as payment of a filing fee for a renewal application is returned unpaid, or an EFT or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, this is also regarded as a deficiency.

In addition to the deficiency surcharge (where applicable), there is a fee for processing the payment that was refused. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). See [TMEP §405.06](#).

If at least one fee is submitted for a multiple-class registration, but the fee is insufficient to cover all the classes and the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Post Registration staff will issue a notice requiring either (1) the submission of additional fee(s) or (2) an indication of the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied. If the required fee(s) are not submitted and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the USPTO will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class and will delete any unpaid classes. [37 C.F.R. §2.183\(e\)](#). See [TMEP §1608](#) regarding surrender of the registration as to class(es) that are omitted from a §9 renewal application.

1606.06 Ownership and Who May File §9 Renewal Application

The Trademark Act and the Trademark Rules of Practice do not require that a renewal application be filed by the owner of the registration.

Therefore, if the renewal applicant is not the owner of record, the USPTO does not require that the renewal applicant show continuity of title from the original registrant.

However, registrations are renewed in the name of the party who is the owner of record of the registration, as shown in the Trademark database. The registration will be renewed in the name of a new owner only if the owner: (1) records an assignment or other document of title with the Assignment Recordation Branch;

and (2) notifies the Post Registration staff at the time the renewal application is filed that the document has been recorded with the Assignment Recordation Branch. See [TMEP §§504](#) *et seq.* regarding the circumstances in which the “Ownership” field in the Trademark database will be automatically updated after recordation of a document with the Assignment Recordation Branch, even if the new owner does not notify the Trademark Operation that the document has been recorded.

See [TMEP §502.03](#) regarding issuance of a new certificate in the name of a new owner.

1606.07 Execution of §9 Renewal Application

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.183\(a\)](#), a renewal application must be signed by “the registrant or the registrant’s representative.” Verification is not required.

Generally, the USPTO does not question the authority of the person who signs a renewal application, unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory’s authority to sign.

The Trademark Act and the Trademark Rules of Practice do not require that a renewal application be executed within any particular time period. Therefore, the USPTO will accept undated renewal applications, and will not issue any inquiry or requirement regarding the date of execution of a renewal application.

See [TMEP §1604.08\(b\)](#) regarding the date of execution of the §8 affidavit or declaration and [§1606.12](#) regarding signature of a response to an Office action issued in connection with a renewal application.

1606.08 Goods/Services/Classes Set Forth in §9 Renewal Application

1606.08(a) Listing of Goods/Services/Classes Required Only for Partial Renewal

Neither the Trademark Act nor the Trademark Rules of Practice requires a specific listing of the goods/services/classes in the registration, if the renewal application covers all the goods/services/classes in the registration. However, if the renewal application covers less than all the goods/services/classes, the renewal application must include a list of the goods/services/classes for which renewal is sought. [37 C.F.R. §2.183\(d\)](#).

1606.08(b) No Goods/Services/Classes Listed

If no goods/services/classes are specified in the renewal application, it will be presumed that renewal is sought for all the goods/services/classes in the registration.

1606.08(c) Some Goods/Services/Classes Listed

If the renewal application lists only some of the goods/services/classes set forth in the registration, it will be presumed that renewal is sought for only the goods/services/classes listed, and the goods/services/classes omitted from the renewal application will be deleted from the registration.

1606.08(d) Goods/Services/Classes Not Listed in Registration May Not Be Listed in Renewal Application

Goods/services/classes that are not listed in the registration may not be listed in the renewal application.

1606.09 Affidavit of Use in Commerce or Excusable Nonuse Not Required

The Trademark Act does not require that a renewal application include an affidavit or declaration of use in commerce, a specimen of use, or a showing that any nonuse is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse, and not due to any intention to abandon the mark. See [1228 TMOG 187](#) (Nov. 30, 1999). See also [TMEP §§1604](#) *et seq.* regarding affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#).

1606.10 Designation of Domestic Representative by Foreign Applicant for Renewal Under §9

A renewal applicant who is not domiciled in the United States may set forth the name and address of a United States resident on whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served. The USPTO encourages parties who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives. See [15 U.S.C. §1059\(c\)](#); [TMEP §610](#).

The designation should be signed by the individual registrant, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(h\)](#).

1606.11 Office Actions and Notices Regarding §9 Renewal Application

Upon receipt of a §9 renewal application, the prosecution history of the registration in the Trademark database is updated to show that the renewal application has been filed.

When a renewal application is filed electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the document, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information. For renewal applications filed on paper, no acknowledgment of receipt of the application is sent before it is examined.

If the renewal application is examined and found acceptable, the USPTO sends the registrant a notice that the registration is renewed. The USPTO does not issue an Updated Registration Certificate (“URC”) for renewed registrations.

If the renewal application is not acceptable, the USPTO issues an action stating the reasons for refusal. [15 U.S.C. §1059\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(a\)](#).

The propriety of the original registration is not re-examined on renewal.

1606.12 Response to Office Action

Deadline . If the renewal application is not acceptable, the USPTO will notify the renewal applicant of the reason(s) for refusal. [15 U.S.C. §1059\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(a\)](#). The registrant must file a response to a refusal of renewal within six months of the issuance date of the Post Registration Office action, or before the expiration date of the registration, whichever is later. If no response is filed within this time period, the registration will expire, unless time remains in the grace period under §9(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1059\(a\)](#).

If time remains in the grace period, the registrant may file a complete new renewal application, with a new fee. [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(b\)\(1\)](#).

The registrant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#) to waive [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(b\)\(1\)](#) and accept a late response to an Office action. However, the Director will waive a rule only in an extraordinary situation, where justice requires and no other party is injured. See [TMEP §1708](#). The failure to receive an Office action has been found to be an extraordinary circumstance that warrants a waiver of [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §1712.02\(b\)](#). The “unintentional delay” standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does not apply to a registrant’s failure to respond to an Office action issued in connection with a renewal application. [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#).

Signature . The response must be signed by a qualified practitioner, or by the registrant or someone with legal authority to bind the registrant. If the registrant is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\)](#), [11.18\(a\)](#). If the registrant is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual owner or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.184\(b\)\(2\)](#), [11.14\(e\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#). In the case of joint registrants who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.06 et seq.](#) for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities, and [TMEP §§602 et seq.](#) regarding persons who are qualified to represent others before the USPTO in trademark cases.

When it appears that a response to an Office action is signed by an improper party, the Post Registration staff must treat the response as incomplete and follow the procedures in [TMEP §§611.05 et seq.](#)

Correction of Deficiencies . The renewal applicant may correct deficiencies, if the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.185](#) are met. See [TMEP §§1606.13 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

1606.13 Correction of Deficiencies in §9 Renewal Applications

37 CFR §2.185 Correcting deficiencies in renewal application.

(a) If the renewal application is filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected after notification from the Office, as follows:

(1) Correcting deficiencies in renewal applications filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration. If the renewal application is filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration date of the registration without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration date of the registration with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 9(a) of the Act and §2.6.

(2) Correcting deficiencies in renewal applications filed during the grace period. If the renewal application is filed during the six-month grace period, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 9(a) of the Act and §2.6.

(b) If the renewal application is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 9(a) of the Act, the registration will expire. This deficiency cannot be cured.

1606.13(a) Correcting Deficiencies in §9 Renewal Applications Filed Within the Year Before the Expiration Date of the Registration

If the renewal application is filed within one year before the expiration date of the registration, deficiencies may be corrected, after notification from the Office, before the expiration date without paying a deficiency surcharge, or after the expiration date with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by §9(a) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.185\(a\)\(1\)](#).

Any deficiency must be cured within the set period for response to the Office action, i.e., within six months of the issuance date of the action, or before the expiration date of the registration, whichever is later. If no response is filed within this time period, the registration will expire, unless time remains in the grace period. If time remains in the grace period, the registrant may file a complete new renewal application, with a new fee. [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(b\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1606.12](#).

1606.13(b) Correcting Deficiencies in Renewal Applications Filed During the Grace Period

If the renewal application is filed during the grace period, deficiencies may be corrected, after notification from the Office, before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge, or after the expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge required by §9(a) of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.185\(a\)\(2\)](#).

Deficiencies must be cured within six months of the issuance date of the Office action. [37 C.F.R. §2.184\(b\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1606.12](#).

1606.13(c) Late Filing Cannot Be Cured

If the renewal application is not filed within the statutory filing period (which includes the grace period), the registration will expire. Filing after the expiration of the grace period is not a deficiency that can be cured, even with a deficiency surcharge. [37 C.F.R. §§2.182, 2.185\(b\)](#).

1606.14 Petition Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#)

The action of the Post Registration staff on a §9 renewal application may not be appealed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, but the registrant may file a petition to the Director for review of the action under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#) and [2.186\(b\)](#). A petition fee is required by [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [2.146\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1705 – 1705.09](#) regarding petition procedure.

1606.14(a) Response to Examiner's Refusal Required Before Petition

A response to the initial refusal to accept a renewal application is required before filing a petition, unless the Post Registration staff directs otherwise or there is no time remaining to respond to the refusal. [37 C.F.R. §2.186\(a\)](#).

If the Post Registration staff continues the refusal of the renewal application, the registrant may file a petition for review of the action under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#), within six months of the issuance date of the action continuing the refusal. *See* [TMEP §1705.04](#). If the registrant does not file a petition within six months of the issuance date, the registration will expire. [37 C.F.R. §2.186\(b\)](#).

1606.14(b) Decision on Petition is Final Action of the USPTO

The decision on a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) is the final action of the USPTO. In the absence of a request for reconsideration of the decision (*see* [TMEP §1606.14\(c\)](#)), or an appeal to federal court (*see* [TMEP §1606.14\(d\)](#)) within two months of the issuance date of the decision on petition, the registration will expire.

1606.14(c) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(j\)](#), if a petition is denied, the petitioner may file a request for reconsideration within two months of the issuance date of the decision denying the petition. A second petition fee must be paid with the request for reconsideration. See [TMEP §1705.08](#) regarding requests for reconsideration of petition decisions.

1606.14(d) Appeal to Federal Court

The registrant may appeal to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or commence a civil action for review of the decision on petition. [15 U.S.C. §§1071\(a\)\(1\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.145\(a\), \(c\)](#).

The deadline for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action is 63 days from the issuance date of the decision on petition. [15 U.S.C. §1071\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.145\(d\)\(1\), \(d\)\(3\)](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.186\(c\)](#), a decision on petition is necessary before the registrant can file an appeal or commence a civil action in any court.

1606.15 Section 9 Renewal Application Combined with Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse

A §9 renewal application and a §8 affidavit or declaration may be combined into a single document, if the document meets the requirements of both §§8 and 9 of the Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.166](#). See [TMEP §1604.19](#) for further information about combined filings under §§8 and 9.

1607 Cancellation of Registrations Under §§14 and 37 of the Trademark Act

A petition to cancel a registration owned by another party may be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board under §14 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.111](#). See [TBMP §§303, 307308](#), and [309](#), for the requirements and fees for filing a petition to cancel a registration.

The cancellation petition must be filed through the Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals (“ESTTA”) at <http://estta.uspto.gov/>. [37 C.F.R. §2.111\(c\)\(1\)](#). If ESTTA is unavailable due to technical problems, or when extraordinary circumstances are present, a petition to cancel may be filed in paper form. [37 C.F.R. §2.111\(c\)\(2\)](#). The paper petition to cancel must be accompanied by a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), with the required fees and a showing that ESTTA was unavailable because of technical problems or that extraordinary circumstances are present. *Id.*

See [TMEP §1608](#) regarding the voluntary surrender of one’s own registration for cancellation.

Registrations can also be cancelled under §37 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1119](#), pursuant to the final order of the court in an action involving a registered mark. The party who has prevailed in the civil action must submit a certified copy of the court order or decree to the Office of the Solicitor of the USPTO. See [TMEP §1610](#).

1608 Surrender of Registration for Cancellation

The owner of a registration may voluntarily surrender his or her registration for cancellation, under §7(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#). There is no fee.

A request to surrender a registration must be signed by the individual owner, someone with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.172](#). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#).

Filing a §8 affidavit or declaration, §71 affidavit or declaration, or §9 renewal application for fewer than the total number of classes in the registration is regarded as a surrender of the registration as to the class(es) that are omitted.

Unless the registration is the subject of a cancellation proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a request for surrender is handled by the Post Registration Section. See [TBMP §602.02\(a\)](#) as to the voluntary surrender of a registration that is the subject of a cancellation proceeding before the Board; *see also Christiane E, LLC v. Int'l Expeditions, Inc.*, 106 USPQ2d 2042 (TTAB 2013) (finding that registrant's situation was not so extraordinary as to warrant a withdrawal of registrant's voluntary surrender of its registration).

If the registration is surrendered in its entirety, the USPTO updates its records accordingly, and sends the owner of record a notice that the registration is cancelled.

If fewer than all classes are surrendered, the USPTO enters a notation in the record, and updates the Trademark database to indicate that specified classes have been cancelled under §7(e) of the Act. A certified copy of the updated registration certificate may be obtained from the Document Services Branch of the Public Records Division for a fee. *See* [TMEP §111](#).

A request to surrender a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States may be filed either directly with the IB or with the USPTO. If it is filed with the USPTO, the USPTO will notify the IB of the cancellation of the request for extension of protection to the United States. See [TMEP §§1906.01](#) *et seq.* regarding requests to record changes at the IB, and [TMEP §1906.01\(e\)](#) regarding renunciation, limitation, or cancellation of an international registration.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.172](#), a surrender for cancellation may not subsequently be withdrawn.

1609 Amendment and Correction of Registrations

1609.01 Amendment of Registration - In General

1609.01(a) Limited Amendments to Registered Extension of Protection

An extension of protection of an international registration remains part of (and dependent on) the international registration even after registration in the United States. [15 U.S.C. §1141j](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.30](#); [TMEP §§1601.01\(c\)](#), [1904.08](#). All requests to record changes to an international registration must be filed at the IB.

Accordingly, the holder of a registered extension of protection may file a request for amendment under §7 of the Trademark Act with the USPTO only in limited circumstances, where the change will affect only the extension of protection to the United States. For example, a holder may request to amend the registered extension of protection to add a voluntary disclaimer, to amend the translation of the mark that was provided during examination in the USPTO, or to limit or partially surrender goods/services/classes. If the USPTO grants the §7 request, the USPTO will notify the IB of the change to the extension of protection to the United States.

The USPTO will not accept an amendment of a registered extension of protection involving the holder's name or address that has not been recorded with the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#); [TMEP §1906.01\(c\)](#).

The mark in a registered extension of protection cannot be amended. See [TMEP §§1609.02, 1906.01\(i\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1904.13](#) *et seq.* regarding amendment and correction of registered extensions of protection, and [1906.01](#) *et seq.* regarding requests to record changes at the IB.

1609.01(b) Amendment of Registration Resulting from §1 or §44 Application

Under §7(e) of the Trademark Act, a registration based on an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act may be amended “for good cause.” Any request for amendment of a mark must be accompanied by the required fee. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.6, 2.173\(b\)\(1\)](#). Original certificates of registration are not required for requests for amendment under §7, and owners are strongly discouraged from submitting them. If original certificates are submitted, they will be scanned into TICRS and discarded. See notice at [69 FR 51362](#) (Aug. 19, 2004), removing the requirement that a section 7 request include the original certificate.

The request for amendment must be signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by the individual owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.173\(b\)\(2\), 2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#). See [TMEP §§611.06](#) *et seq.* for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities, and [TMEP §§602](#) *et seq.* regarding persons who are qualified to represent others before the USPTO in trademark cases.

Requests to amend registrations are handled by the Post Registration Section, unless the registration is the subject of an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(a\)](#).

Requests to amend registrations that are the subject of inter partes proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board are handled by the Board. See [37 C.F.R. §2.133](#); [TBMP §§514](#) *et seq.* If a request to amend a registration that is the subject of an inter partes proceeding is filed with the Post Registration Section, the Post Registration staff will deny the request, and advise the owner to file a motion to amend pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.133](#). See [TBMP §§502](#) *et seq.* for further information about filing motions with the Board.

If the request for amendment is granted, the USPTO sends an updated registration certificate showing the amendment to the owner of record, and updates USPTO records accordingly.

1609.02 Amendment of Mark

Mark in Registered Extension of Protection Cannot be Amended

The holder of a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States cannot file a request to amend the mark under §7 of the Trademark Act. A registered extension of protection remains part of the international registration, and all requests to record changes to such a registration must be filed at the IB. However, the Madrid Protocol and the *Common Regulations Under the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks and the Protocol Relating to That Agreement* (“Common Regs.”) do not permit amendment of the mark in an international registration. If the holder of the international registration wants to change the mark in any way, even slightly, the holder must file a new international application. The IB’s *Guide to the International Registration of Marks under the Madrid Agreement and the Madrid Protocol* (2008) (“*Guide to International Registration*”), Para. B.II.72.02, provides as follows:

[T]here is no provision for a mark that is recorded in the International Register to be amended in any way, either on renewal or at any other time. If the holder wishes to protect the mark in a form which differs, even slightly, from the mark as recorded, he must file a new international application. This is true even if the mark has been allowed to be changed in the basic application, the registration resulting from the basic application or the basic registration....

Therefore, the mark in a registered extension of protection cannot be amended.

Although the mark in a registered extension of protection cannot be amended, in some situations the holder of a registered extension of protection may file a request under §7 of the Trademark Act to add a standard character claim. If the international registration does not indicate that the mark is in standard characters, and the holder seeks to amend the registered extension of protection to add a standard character claim, the Post Registration staff must contact the Supervisor of the Madrid Processing Unit (“MPU”) via e-mail for instructions on how to proceed. The holder may not add a standard character claim unless the mark meets the United States requirements for a standard character claim, as set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.03\(a\)-\(b\)](#).

Amendment of Mark in Registration Based on §1 or §44 Application

Under [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#), upon application by the owner and payment of the prescribed fee, a registration based on an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act may be amended for good cause, if the amendment does not materially alter the character of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.14 et seq.](#) and [1609.02\(a\)](#) regarding material alteration.

1609.02(a) Determining What Constitutes Material Alteration of Mark

Section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#), prohibits an amendment that materially alters the character of the mark. “Material alteration” is the standard for evaluating amendments to marks at all relevant stages of processing, both during examination of the application and after registration. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.72, 2.173\(d\)](#); [TMEP §§807.14 et seq.](#)

In determining whether a proposed amendment is a material alteration of a registered mark, the USPTO will always compare the proposed amendment to the mark *as originally registered*.

The general test of whether an alteration is material is whether, if the mark in an application for registration had been published, the change would require republication in order to present the mark fairly for purposes of opposition. If republication would be required, the amendment is a material alteration.

An amendment of a registered mark is acceptable if the modified mark contains the essence of the original mark (i.e., the mark as originally registered), and the mark as amended creates essentially the same impression as the original mark. *In re Umax Data Sys., Inc.*, 40 USPQ2d 1539 (Comm'r Pats. 1996). For example, in marks consisting of wording combined with a design, if the word is the essence of the mark and the design is merely background embellishment or display that is not integrated into the mark in any significant way, the removal or change of the design will not be a material alteration of the mark. *See Ex parte Petersen & Pegau Baking Co.*, 100 USPQ 20 (Comm'r Pats. 1953). On the other hand, if a design is integrated into a mark and is a distinctive feature necessary for recognition of the mark, then a change in the design would materially alter the mark. *See In re Dillard Dep't Stores, Inc.*, 33 USPQ2d 1052 (Comm'r Pats. 1993) (proposed deletion of highly stylized display features of mark "IN•VEST•MENTS" held to be a material alteration); *Ex parte Kadane-Brown, Inc.*, 79 USPQ 307 (Comm'r Pats. 1948) (proposed amendment of "BLUE BONNET" mark to delete a star design and to change the picture of the girl held a material alteration).

When a mark is solely a picture or design, an alteration must be evaluated by determining whether the new form has the same commercial impression as the original mark, i.e., whether the form as altered would be likely to be recognized as the same mark. *See Ex parte Black & Decker Mfg. Co.*, 136 USPQ 379 (Comm'r Pats. 1963) (proposed amendment to delete circle found to be a material alteration, where the circle was determined to be a prominent element of a design mark).

Marks entirely comprised of words can sometimes be varied as to their style of lettering, size, and other elements of form without resulting in a material alteration of the mark. *See Ex parte Squire Dingee Co.*, 81 USPQ 258, *recon. denied*, 81 USPQ 543 (Comm'r Pats. 1949) (amendment from block lettering to script not a material alteration). However, changing from special form to standard characters, or the reverse, may be a material alteration. [TMEP §807.03\(d\)](#).

A generic or purely informational term may be deleted if the essence of the mark in appearance or meaning is not changed, but a word or feature that is necessary to the significance of the mark may not be deleted. Likewise, a unique or prominent design feature may not be deleted. *See In re Richards-Wilcox Mfg. Co.*, 181 USPQ 735 (Comm'r Pats. 1974), *overruled on other grounds, In re Umax Data Sys., Inc.*, 40 USPQ2d 1539 (Comm'r Pats. 1996) (proposed amendment to block lettering from mark comprising a diamond design surrounding the word "FYER-WALL" with an inverted channel bracket around the letters "RW" held a material alteration). See [TMEP §807.14\(a\)](#) regarding amendments deleting matter from a mark.

1609.02(b) New Drawing Required

When applying for an amendment to a registration that involves a change in the mark, the owner of the registration must submit a new drawing displaying the amended mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(b\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §§807 et seq.](#) regarding drawings.

1609.02(c) Supporting Specimens and Declaration

The owner of the registration must submit a specimen showing use of the proposed mark as amended for each class specified in the registration, and must include an affidavit or a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) stating that the specimen was in use in commerce at least as early as the date the §7 amendment was filed. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(b\)\(3\)](#). When requested by the USPTO, additional specimens must be provided. *Id.* If a single specimen supports multiple classes, the owner may so indicate by specifying which classes the specimen supports, and the Post Registration staff need not require multiple copies of the specimen. The Post Registration staff should make a Note to the File in the record indicating which classes the specimen supports.

A request to amend a registration under §7 must be signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by the individual owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.173\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#); [TMEP §§611.03\(f\)](#), [1609.01\(b\)](#). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#). If the affidavit or a declaration supporting use of the substitute specimen(s) is submitted in a separate document, it must be signed by a person properly authorized to sign a verification on behalf of the owner. See [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#) as to persons properly authorized to verify facts on behalf of an owner.

One specimen per class showing use of the proposed mark as amended on or in connection with the goods, services, or collective membership organization is required, even if the mark originally registered based on a foreign registration under §44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(e\)](#) or an extension of protection of an international registration to the United States under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1015](#) regarding the independence of a §44 registration from the underlying foreign registration.

Sometimes, it may be necessary for the USPTO to request additional information in order to properly examine the amendment. In such cases, the USPTO will require the owner to furnish such additional information, specimens, exhibits, and affidavits or declarations as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the §7 amendment. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(b\)\(4\)](#).

See [TMEP §§904.03](#) *et seq.* regarding trademark specimens, [TMEP §§1301.04](#) *et seq.* regarding service mark specimens, [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding specimens for certification marks.

1609.02(d) Conforming Amendments

If a registration includes a disclaimer, description of the mark, and/or other miscellaneous statement (e.g., lining or stippling statement (*see* [TMEP §808.01\(b\)](#)), translation, transliteration, or color claim), any request to amend the registration must also include a request to make any necessary conforming amendments to the disclaimer, description, and/or miscellaneous statement. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(g\)](#). For example, if the mark is “XYZ INC.,” with a disclaimer of the entity designator “INC.,” and the owner of the registration proposes to amend the mark to remove “INC.,” the proposed amendment should also request that the disclaimer be deleted.

If a proposed amendment does not include all necessary conforming amendment(s), the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the amendment(s).

1609.02(e) Amendment of Black-and-White Drawing of Mark for Which Color is Claimed to Substitute Color Drawing

Prior to November 2, 2003, the USPTO did not publish marks or issue registrations in color. An applicant who wanted to show color in a mark was required to submit a black-and-white drawing, with a statement describing the color(s). *See* [TMEP §807.07\(g\)](#). Effective November 2, 2003, the USPTO accepts color drawings. Black-and-white drawings with a color claim, or drawings that show color by use of lining patterns, are no longer permitted. Color drawings must be accompanied by a color claim naming the color(s) that are a feature of the mark, and a separate statement specifying where the color(s) appear(s) on the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)](#) *et seq.*

In a registration based on an application filed before November 2, 2003, if the application included a black-and-white drawing with a statement claiming color, the owner may file a request under §7 of the Trademark Act to substitute a color drawing for the black-and-white drawing. The request must include: (1) a color drawing showing the same colors claimed in the registration; (2) a color claim naming the color(s) that are a feature of the mark; (3) a description of where the color(s) appear(s) in the mark; and (4) the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(a\)](#), [\(b\)\(1\)](#), [\(g\)](#). No specimen is required if the owner is merely substituting a color drawing for a legally equivalent black-and-white drawing, and is not amending the mark.

1609.02(f) Amendment of Black-and-White Drawing to Color Drawing

A special form drawing registered in black-and-white may be amended under §7(e) to include a claim of color, as long as the amendment does not constitute a material alteration. See [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(d\)](#). Requests to amend the mark to color must include: (1) a color drawing; (2) a color claim naming the color(s) that are a feature of the mark; (3) a statement specifying where the color(s) appear(s) in the mark; (4) a specimen showing the mark as depicted on the amended drawing; and (5) the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#), [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(a\)](#), [\(b\)\(1\)](#), [\(g\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.07](#) *et seq.* regarding requirements for color drawings, and [TMEP §§807.14\(e\)](#) *et seq.* regarding amendments to color features of marks.

1609.02(g) Amendment to Special Form Drawing Containing Black, White, and/or Gray

When a mark shown in special form is amended under §7(e), and the mark shown on the new drawing page contains gray, or the description of the mark refers to black, white, and/or gray, the owner must clarify whether the mark is in color. Specifically, the record must contain either: (1) a statement that the mark is not in color; or (2) a statement that the colors black, white, and/or gray are features of the mark and a statement specifying the location of the colors. If not all are claimed as colors, the color location statement must specify that the black/white/gray is not claimed as color and represents background, outlining, shading, and/or transparent areas.

Likewise, if the §7(e) amendment includes a statement that color is claimed as a feature of the mark and the drawing contains black, white, and/or gray, the record must contain one of the following: (1) a statement that the color(s) black, white, and/or gray are features of the mark and statement specifying the location of the colors; or (2) a statement that the black/white/gray represents background, outlining, shading, and/or transparent areas and is not a part of the mark. No statement regarding a white background is required if the background of the drawing is white and it is clear that the white background is not part of the mark.

See [TMEP §§807.07\(f\)](#) *et seq.* regarding requirements for drawings containing black, white, and/or gray.

1609.03 Amendment of Identification

Identification in Registered Extension of Protection

The identification of goods, or services, or the description of the nature the collective membership organization in a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States may be amended only in limited circumstances that will affect only the extension of protection to the United States. [TMEP §1609.01\(a\)](#). Specifically, the holder of a registered extension of protection may file a request with the USPTO to amend the registered extension of protection to limit or partially surrender goods/services or limit or fully surrender a collective membership organization. If the USPTO grants the §7 request, the USPTO will notify the IB of the change to the extension of protection to the United States. See [TMEP §1904.13\(a\)](#).

All requests to record changes to an international registration must be filed at the IB. See [TMEP §§1906.01 et seq.](#) regarding requests to record changes at the IB. Note that the IB does not permit amendments that expand the list of goods/services or broaden the nature of the collective membership organization in an international registration. See [TMEP §1906.01\(i\)](#).

See also [TMEP §1904.15](#) regarding a notification of limitation in the list of goods/services or the nature of the collective membership organization in a registered extension of protection.

Amendment of Registration Based on §1 or §44 Application

In registrations based on applications under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act, amendments may be made to the identification of goods/services/collective membership organization to restrict the identification or otherwise to change it in ways that would not require republication of the mark. However, goods/services or a collective membership organization may not be added to a registration by amendment. See [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(e\)](#).

In a multiple-class registration, deletion of less than all the goods or services in a single class constitutes an amendment, whereas deletion of an entire class constitutes a surrender of the registration for cancellation as to the class deleted. See [37 C.F.R. §2.172](#). See [TMEP §1608](#) regarding surrender.

1609.04 Amendment of Classification

Classification in Registered Extension of Protection Cannot be Amended Under §7

The classification in a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States may not be amended under §7 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); [TMEP §§1401.03\(d\)](#) and [1609.01\(a\)](#). However, the holder of a registered extension of protection may request to amend the registered extension of protection to surrender class(es). See [TMEP §1904.13\(a\)](#).

Amendment of Registration Based on §1 or §44 Application

In a registration that issued based on an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act, the classification may be amended under §7 of the Trademark Act, if the requested international classification is consistent with the current version of the *Nice Agreement*. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(e\)\(3\)](#). In such a case, the USPTO will amend the international classification and issue an updated registration certificate with the new classification noted.

The owner of a registration may reclassify registrations from multiple United States classes into a single international classification. For example, goods in United States classes 21 and 26 often fall into only International Class 9. Hence, an owner can request an amendment from United States classes 21 and 26 into International Class 9. If the owner reclassifies any of the goods/services in this manner, the owner must reclassify all the goods/services in the registration to the international classification system. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(e\)\(3\)](#).

The amendment must include the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#) for §7 amendments. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(b\)\(1\)](#).

1609.05 Disclaimer of Mark and Claim of Acquired Distinctiveness

Addition/Deletion of Disclaimer. A registered mark may be amended to disclaim part of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(a\)](#). However, no amendment seeking the elimination of a disclaimer will be permitted, unless deletion of the disclaimed portion of the mark is also sought. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(h\)](#). This exception to the general prohibition against amendments to delete disclaimers applies in the limited situation where the mark is amended to delete the disclaimed matter. See [TMEP §1609.02\(d\)](#) regarding conforming amendments.

An amended registration must still contain registrable matter, and the mark as amended must be registrable as a whole. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(c\)](#).

Addition/Deletion of §2(f) Claim of Acquired Distinctiveness. An amendment under §7 of the Trademark Act seeking the addition or deletion of a §2(f) claim of acquired distinctiveness will not be permitted. [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(i\)](#).

1609.06 Territorial Restrictions

A registration cannot be restricted territorially by amendment under §7(e) of the Act. *In re Forbo*, 4 USPQ2d 1415 (Comm'r Pats. 1984). Generally, a concurrent use restriction cannot be removed from a registration by an amendment under §7(e), except where an entity that was the *only* exception to the owner's right to exclusive use of its registered mark assigns its rights in the mark to the owner of the registration, so that all rights in the mark are merged in the owner. *In re Alfred Dunhill Ltd.*, 4 USPQ2d 1383 (Comm'r Pats. 1987); [TBMP §§1101.02, 1114](#).

1609.07 Dates of Use

The USPTO will accept a correction request changing the dates of use, even if the corrected dates are later than the dates originally set forth in the registration. *See In re Pamex Foods, Inc.*, 209 USPQ 275 (Comm'r Pats. 1980); *Grand Bag & Paper Co. v. Tidy-House Paper Prods., Inc.*, 109 USPQ 395 (Comm'r Pats. 1956). However, the USPTO will not enter a correction if the corrected dates are later than the dates that would have been accepted during examination. Therefore, the USPTO will not enter the following corrections:

- If the application for the registration was based on use in commerce under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(a\)](#), the registration cannot be corrected to specify a date of use that is later than the application filing date (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(1\)](#));
- If the application for the registration was based on intent-to-use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) in which a statement of use was filed under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#), the registration cannot be corrected to specify a date of use that is later than the statutory deadline for filing the statement of use (i.e., within six months of the issuance date of the notice of allowance or before the expiration of an extension of time for filing a statement of use) (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.71\(c\)\(2\)](#));
- If the application for the registration was based on intent-to-use under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#) in which an amendment to allege use was filed under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(c\)](#), the registration cannot be corrected to specify a date of use that is later than the filing date of the amendment to allege use (*see* [TMEP §903.04](#)); and
- The date of first use in commerce may not be earlier than the date of first use anywhere (*see* [TMEP §903.03](#)).

1609.08 Effect of Amendment of Registration on Limitation of Grounds for Cancellation of a Registration

Section 14 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1064](#), limits the grounds that a third party can raise in a petition to cancel a mark registered on the Principal Register when the petition is filed more than five years after the date of registration.

Ordinarily, the five-year period runs from the date of the registration of the mark for a registration issued on the Principal Register under the Act of 1946, and from the date of publication under §12(c) of the Act for registrations issued under prior Acts and published under §12(c) of the Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. §1062\(c\)](#).

However, when a registration has been amended, the five-year period runs from the date of the amendment, to the extent that the amendment of the registration has in any way enlarged the owner's rights, as though the registration had issued on the date of the amendment. See [TBMP §307.02\(c\)\(2\)](#).

1609.09 Amendment from Supplemental to Principal Register Not Permitted

A registration on the Supplemental Register may not be amended to the Principal Register. If the owner of a registration wishes to seek registration on the Principal Register of a mark for which it owns a registration on the Supplemental Register, the owner must file a new application. Under [15 U.S.C. §1062\(a\)](#), a mark must be published for opposition before it can be registered on the Principal Register.

1609.10 Correction of Mistake in Registration

The USPTO may make a correction to a registration in appropriate cases, upon written request by the owner of the registration. See §7(g) of the Trademark Act, [37 C.F.R. §2.174](#), and [TMEP §1609.10\(a\)](#) regarding correction of USPTO errors; and §7(h) of the Act, [37 C.F.R. §2.175](#), and [TMEP §1609.10\(b\)](#) regarding correction of errors by the owner of a registration. Original certificates of registration need not be submitted with requests for correction under §7, and owners are strongly discouraged from submitting them. If original certificates are submitted, they will be scanned into TIGRS and discarded. See notice at [69 FR 51362](#) (Aug. 19, 2004), removing the requirement that a section 7 request include the original certificate.

Requests for correction of registrations are handled by the Post Registration Section.

If the request for correction is granted, the USPTO sends an updated registration certificate to the owner of record, and updates USPTO records to show the correction.

1609.10(a) Correction of USPTO Error

Registered Extension of Protection

If USPTO records show that a clerical error occurred through the fault of the USPTO, the USPTO will correct the error without charge. See [TMEP §1904.14](#) regarding a notification of correction in the international register with respect to a registered extension of protection.

Registration Based on Application under §1 or §44

If a clerical error occurred through the fault of the USPTO, the USPTO will correct the error without charge. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(g\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.174](#). Section 7(g) gives the Director the discretion to issue a certificate of correction of the existing registration, or to issue a new certificate of registration without charge.

The owner of the registration should submit a written request, specifying the error to be corrected. This request should be signed by the individual owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or the owner's qualified practitioner, and directed to the Post Registration Section.

The USPTO will issue a certificate of correction if the change is non-material, such as a slight misspelling in the mark or the identification of goods/services, or an error in entering the owner's name or address.

A USPTO error in classification may be corrected if the requested classification is consistent with the current version of the *Nice Agreement*. Republication is not required.

If correction of a USPTO error would result in a material change such that republication is required (e.g., a material change of the mark because the wrong mark published or a broadening of the identification of goods/services because goods/services were deleted in error), the USPTO will not issue a certificate of correction under §7(g). Section 12(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1062\(a\)](#), requires examination and publication prior to registration. Therefore, the error can be corrected only by canceling the registration as inadvertently issued and republishing the mark with the correct information. Depending on the circumstances, the USPTO may give the owner the option of either: (1) keeping the registration as issued; or (2) having the registration cancelled as inadvertently issued and republishing the mark. If the mark is republished, and registration is not successfully opposed, the USPTO will issue a new certificate of registration with a new registration date.

In some cases, further examination may be required to correct a USPTO error that would materially change the registration, e.g., where a proposed amendment to the mark or the identification of goods/services was filed prior to registration, but not timely made of record and reviewed by the examining attorney. In this situation, the registration will be cancelled as inadvertently issued and the application will be returned to examination. The examining attorney will examine the amendment using standard examination procedures. If the examining attorney approves the amendment, the mark will be republished. If the amendment is not acceptable, the examining attorney will issue a non-final Office action with a six-month response clause.

A request to have a registration cancelled as inadvertently issued should be directed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

1609.10(b) Correction of Owner's Error

Registered Extension of Protection

Generally, all requests to record changes to an international registration must be filed at the IB, because an extension of protection of an international registration remains part of the international registration even after registration in the United States. However, in the limited circumstance where the holder of an international registration makes a mistake in a document filed during prosecution in the USPTO that affects only the extension of protection to the United States, the registrant may request correction of the error pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.175](#). See [TMEP §1904.13\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1906](#) and [1906.01](#) *et seq.* regarding requests to record changes at the IB, and [TMEP §1904.14](#) regarding a notification of correction in the International Register with respect to a registered extension of protection.

Registration Based on Application under §1 or §44

Under §7(h) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(h\)](#), if a mistake in a registration occurs in good faith through the fault of the owner of the registration, the Director may correct the error upon written request and payment of the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#), *provided* the correction does not result in a change that would require republication of the mark.

The owner of the registration must file a written request specifying the error, explaining how the error occurred, and showing that it occurred in good faith. [37 C.F.R. §2.175\(b\)\(1\)](#). The request must be signed and verified or supported by a declaration under 37 C.F.R. §2.20 by the individual owner, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.175\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(6\)](#). The request for correction should be directed to the Post Registration Section. See [TMEP §§611.06](#) *et seq.* for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities, and [TMEP §§602](#) *et seq.* regarding persons who are qualified to represent others before the USPTO in trademark cases.

As noted above, the owner of a registration cannot correct a mistake if the changes would require republication of the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(h\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.175\(a\)](#). Thus, a correction cannot be made if it would materially alter the mark, or broaden the identification of goods/services. See [TMEP §§807.14](#) and [1609.02\(a\)](#) regarding material alteration, and [TMEP §1609.03](#) regarding changes to the identification of goods/services.

A registration can be corrected to cure an inadvertent error in the manner in which the owner's name is set forth. However, the registration cannot be corrected to substitute another entity as the owner. See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors in identifying the owner of an application or registration.

Section 7(h) gives the Director the discretion to issue either a certificate of correction of the existing registration or a new certificate of registration. See *In re Pamex Foods, Inc.*, 209 USPQ 275, 277-78 (Comm'r Pats. 1980). In either case, if the mistake was made by the owner of the registration, a fee is required. See [15 U.S.C. §1057\(h\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#), [2.175\(b\)\(3\)](#).

1609.11 Change of Owner's Address Can Be Filed Through TEAS

It is not necessary to file a §7 amendment to change the address of the owner of a registration. This may be done through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Note: The owner's address often differs from the correspondence address. The correspondence address may also be changed through TEAS, using a different form. See [TMEP §609.02\(e\)](#) for information about changing the correspondence address after registration.

1609.12 Amendment of Certification Statement for Certification Marks

A registration for a certification mark must include a statement specifying what the owner is certifying about the goods or services in the registration. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.161\(j\)\(3\), 7.37\(j\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §§1306.03, 1604.21\(c\), 1613.21\(c\)](#).

The certification statement must be sufficiently detailed to give proper notice of what is being certified. All of the characteristics or features that the mark certifies should be included. A certification mark registration is not limited to certifying a single characteristic or feature.

Under §7(e) of the Act, the certification statement may be amended if the amendment does not materially alter the certification statement. See [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(f\)](#).

1610 Court Orders Concerning Registrations

The USPTO must rectify the register and make appropriate entry upon its records in response to a court order certified to the USPTO pursuant to [15 U.S.C. §1119](#). That section provides:

In any action involving a registered mark the court may determine the right to registration, order the cancellation of registrations, in whole or in part, restore cancelled registrations, and otherwise rectify the register with respect to the registrations of any party to the action. Decrees and orders shall be certified by the court to the Director, who shall make appropriate entry upon the records of the Patent and Trademark Office, and shall be controlled thereby.

Any such order affecting a registration must be *certified* to the USPTO, and should be addressed to the Office of the Solicitor, Mail Stop 8, Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. 37 C.F.R. §1.1(a)(3)(iii). An uncertified copy of the court order is unacceptable. If the registration affected by the order is the subject of a pending or suspended inter partes proceeding at the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, that fact should be noted in a cover letter to the Office of the Solicitor. Once the USPTO receives the certified order, appropriate action will typically be taken by the USPTO without the necessity of any submission by an interested party. However, if it would be helpful for purposes of determining the scope or effect of an order, the USPTO may, at the Director's discretion, issue a show cause order directing the registrant and parties to the action from which the order arose to respond and provide information or arguments regarding the order.

1611 Updating Automated Records to Show the Status of Registrations

USPTO records will be automatically updated to indicate the status of registrations as follows:

- (1) When the owner of a registration timely files a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration and/or §9 renewal application, USPTO records are updated to indicate receipt of the document and the action taken on it. This information appears in the Trademark database.
- (2) If no §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration is filed before the end of the grace period (see [TMEP §§1604.04](#) and [1613.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §8 and §71 affidavits or declarations), USPTO records are automatically updated to indicate that the registration is cancelled, and this information appears in the Trademark database. However, USPTO records are not updated to show that the registration is cancelled until 30 days *after* the expiration of the grace period.

- (3) If no §9 renewal application is filed before the end of the grace period (see [TMEP §1606.03](#) regarding the deadline for filing a renewal application), USPTO records are automatically updated to indicate that the registration is expired, and this information appears in the Trademark database. However, USPTO records are not updated to show that the registration is expired until 30 days *after* the expiration of the grace period.

The reason the USPTO waits until 30 days *after* the expiration of the grace period before updating its records to show that the registration is cancelled or expired is to avoid inadvertent cancellation or expiration of a registration due to a delay in entering a timely filed §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration or §9 renewal application into USPTO records. If an examining attorney determines that 30 days have passed since the expiration of the grace period, but the Trademark database does not indicate that the registration is cancelled or expired, the examining attorney should contact the Supervisor of the Post Registration Section and request that the database be updated to show that the registration is cancelled or expired. If a party other than the examining attorney determines that 30 days have passed since the expiration of the grace period, but the Trademark database does not indicate that the registration is cancelled or expired, the party should contact the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 and request that the database be updated to show that the registration is cancelled or expired.

If the owner of a registration who has not timely filed a §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration or §9 renewal application wants to expedite cancellation or expiration of its own registration, the owner may request in writing that the USPTO expedite the processing of the cancellation or expiration of the registration. The request should be signed by the owner, someone with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner, and should specifically state that no §8 affidavit or declaration, §71 affidavit or declaration, or §9 renewal application was filed on or before the end of the grace period. Such a request should be directed to the Post Registration Section; if it is sent to the examining attorney, the examining attorney should forward it to the Supervisor of the Post Registration Section.

See [TMEP §716.02\(e\)](#) regarding suspension of an application for a conflicting mark pending cancellation of the cited registration under §8 or §71 of the Act or expiration of the cited registration for failure to renew under §9 of the Act.

1612 Powers of Attorney and Designations of Domestic Representative Filed After Registration

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that powers of attorney, requests to revoke powers of attorney, requests to withdraw as attorney, and designations of domestic representative be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. When these documents are filed through TEAS, the data is automatically entered into the Trademark database.

The USPTO considers a power of attorney filed after registration to end when the mark is cancelled or expired or when ownership changes. See [TMEP §604.02](#).

When the owner of a registration files a new power of attorney or designation of domestic representative *on paper*, the USPTO scans an image of the power or designation into the record, but does not update the Trademark database unless the owner concurrently takes an action such as filing a §8, §12(c), §15, or §71 affidavit or declaration, §9 renewal application, or request to amend or correct a registration under §7 of the Trademark Act. Likewise, when the owner of a registration files a *paper* request to revoke a power of attorney, or a qualified practitioner files a request to withdraw, the USPTO scans an image of the document into the record but does not change the “Attorney” field in the Trademark database.

When the owner of a registration files a §8, §12(c), §15, or §71 affidavit or declaration, §9 renewal application, or request to amend or correct a registration through a qualified practitioner, the USPTO will update the Trademark database to indicate the name of the practitioner who filed the document, and any designation of domestic representative. If the owner does not have a qualified practitioner, the USPTO will update the Trademark database to indicate the owner's address as shown in the affidavit or declaration, renewal application, or amendment.

See [TMEP §605.04](#) regarding powers of attorney filed after registration, [TMEP §610](#) regarding designations of domestic representative by parties not domiciled in the United States, [TMEP §607](#) regarding withdrawal of attorney, and [TMEP §609.02\(e\)](#) regarding changes of correspondence address filed after registration.

1613 Affidavit or Declaration of Use in Commerce or Excusable Nonuse Under §71 of the Trademark Act

15 U.S.C. §1141k Duration, affidavits and fees.

(a) Time Periods for Required Affidavits. Each extension of protection for which a certificate has been issued under section 69 shall remain in force for the term of the international registration upon which it is based, except that the extension of protection of any mark shall be canceled by the Director unless the holder of the international registration files in the United States Patent and Trademark Office affidavits that meet the requirements of subsection (b), within the following time periods:

(1) Within the 1-year period immediately preceding the expiration of 6 years following the date of issuance of the certificate of extension of protection.

(2) Within the 1-year period immediately preceding the expiration of 10 years following the date of issuance of the certificate of extension of protection, and each successive 10-year period following the date of issuance of the certificate of extension of protection.

(3) The holder may file the affidavit required under this section within a grace period of 6 months after the end of the applicable time period established in paragraph (1) or (2), together with the fee described in subsection (b) and the additional grace period surcharge prescribed by the Director.

(b) Requirements for Affidavit. The affidavit referred to in subsection (a) shall—

(1)(A) state that the mark is in use in commerce;

(B) set forth the goods and services recited in the extension of protection on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce;

(C) be accompanied by such number of specimens or facsimiles showing current use of the mark in commerce as may be required by the Director; and

(D) be accompanied by the fee prescribed by the Director; or

(2)(A) set forth the goods and services recited in the extension of protection on or in connection with which the mark is not in use in commerce;

(B) include a showing that any nonuse is due to special circumstances which excuse such nonuse and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark; and

(C) be accompanied by the fee prescribed by the Director.

(c) Deficient Affidavit. If any submission filed within the period set forth in subsection (a) is deficient, including that the affidavit was not filed in the name of the holder of the international registration, the deficiency may be corrected after the statutory time period, within the time prescribed after notification of the deficiency. Such submission shall be accompanied by the additional deficiency surcharge prescribed by the Director.

(d) Notice of Requirement. Special notice of the requirement for such affidavit shall be attached to each certificate of extension of protection.

(e) Notification of Acceptance or Refusal. The Director shall notify the holder of the international registration who files any affidavit required by this section of the Director's acceptance or refusal thereof and, in the case of a refusal, the reasons therefor.

(f) Designation of Resident for Service of Process and Notices. If the holder of the international registration of the mark is not domiciled in the United States, the holder may designate, by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. Such notices or process may be served upon the person so designated by leaving with that person or mailing to that person

a copy thereof at the address specified in the last designation so filed. If the person so designated cannot be found at the last designated address, or if the holder does not designate by a document filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark, such notices or process may be served on the Director.

Under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), a registered extension of protection to the United States will be cancelled unless the holder of the international registration periodically files affidavits of use in commerce or excusable nonuse (“§71 affidavits or declarations”). The purpose of the §71 affidavit or declaration is to remove marks that are no longer being used in commerce from the register.

1613.01 Registrations to Which §71 Affidavit or Declaration Pertains

Section 71 of the Trademark Act applies only to registered extensions of protection of international registrations to the United States. However, §8 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1058](#), requires periodic affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse for registrations resulting from applications under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act. See [TMEP §§1604 et seq.](#) for further information about §8 affidavits or declarations.

1613.02 Notice of When Affidavit or Declaration Is Due

A statement noting the requirement for filing the affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under §71 of the Act is included on each certificate of registration as originally issued. [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(d\)](#). Additionally, a courtesy e-mail reminder of USPTO maintenance filing deadlines will be sent to trademark holders who authorize e-mail communication and maintain a current e-mail address with the USPTO. To ensure that e-mail is authorized and an e-mail address is current, holders are encouraged to use the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”) Change of Correspondence Address Form if it is necessary to update the information. The holder must file the affidavit or declaration within the time periods required by §71 of the Act regardless of whether the holder receives the notice on the registration certificate or the courtesy e-mail reminder. See [37 C.F.R. §§7.36\(b\)](#), [7.38](#).

1613.03 Form for Filing §71 Affidavit or Declaration

To expedite processing, it is recommended that the holder file the §71 affidavit or declaration through the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”). See [TMEP §301](#) for more information about electronic filing. Forms for filing affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under §71 are available through TEAS at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Alternatively, the holder may call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to obtain a pre-printed form that can be filled out and mailed, faxed, or hand delivered to the USPTO.

See [TMEP §1613.04](#) regarding the deadline for filing the affidavit or declaration, and [TMEP §1613.05](#) regarding the requirements for filing the affidavit or declaration.

1613.04 Time for Filing §71 Affidavit or Declaration

37 CFR §7.36(b)

During the following time periods, the holder of an international registration must file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse, or the registered extension of protection will be cancelled under section 71 of the Act:

- (1) On or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary after the date of registration in the United States; and
- (2) Within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States.

(3) The affidavit or declaration may be filed within a grace period of six months after the end of the deadline set forth in paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section, with payment of the grace period surcharge per class required by section 71(a)(3) of the Act and §7.6.

Under §§71(a)(1) and (a)(2) of the Trademark Act, the holder of the international registration must file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse:

(1) on or after the fifth anniversary and no later than the sixth anniversary of the date of registration in the United States; *and*

(2) within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States.

[37 C.F.R. §7.36\(b\)\(1\)-\(2\)](#).

Under §71(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(a\)\(3\)](#), the holder may file the affidavit or declaration within a grace period of six months after the expiration of the deadlines set forth in §§71(a)(1) and (a)(2) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1141k\(a\)\(1\)](#) and [\(a\)\(2\)](#), with an additional grace period surcharge. [37 C.F.R. §7.36\(b\)\(3\)](#)

Affidavits or declarations may be filed on the U.S. registration anniversary dates at the end of the fifth and sixth years, or at the end of the ninth and tenth years.

Example: For a registration issued on Nov. 1, 2005, a six-year affidavit may be filed as early as Nov. 1, 2010, and may be filed as late as Nov. 1, 2011, before entering the six-month grace period.

A §71 affidavit or declaration filed through TEAS is considered to have been filed on the date the USPTO receives the transmission, regardless of whether that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §2.195\(a\)\(2\)](#).

Section 71 affidavits or declarations filed on paper are considered timely if they are received in the USPTO by the due date or if they are mailed or transmitted by the due date with a certificate of mailing or facsimile transmission under [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#). See [TMEP §§305.02](#) and [306.05](#) for certificate of mailing and certificate of facsimile transmission procedures to avoid lateness.

If the holder of the registration does not file an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse before the end of the grace period, the registration will be cancelled. [37 C.F.R. §§7.36\(b\)](#), [7.39\(d\)](#). See [TMEP §1613.07](#) regarding who may file a §71 affidavit or declaration.

The Director has no authority to waive the deadline for filing a proper affidavit or declaration of use of a registered mark under [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#). See *Checkers Drive-In Rests., Inc. v. Comm'r of Patents and Trademarks*, 51 F.3d 1078, 1085, 34 USPQ2d 1574, 1581 (D.C. App. 1995), *cert. denied* 516 U.S. 866 (1995) (“[I]n establishing cancellation as the penalty for failure to file the required affidavit, Congress made no exception for the innocent or the negligent. Thus, the Commissioner had no discretion to do other than cancel Checkers's service mark registration in this case.”); *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 1018, 222 USPQ 273, 275 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (“Timeliness set by statute is not a minor technical defect which can be waived by the Commissioner.”).

Premature Filing of §71 Affidavit or Declaration

The affidavit or declaration cannot be filed before the periods specified in §71(a) of the Act. The purpose of the affidavit or declaration is to show that the mark is still in use in commerce within the relevant period, which cannot be done by an affidavit or declaration filed before that period. *Cf. In re Holland Am. Wafer*

Co., 737 F.2d 1015, 222 USPQ 273 (Fed. Cir. 1984). If an affidavit or declaration is filed before the period specified in §§71(a)(1) and (a)(2) of the Act, the USPTO will issue a notice advising the holder: (1) that the affidavit or declaration is premature; (2) of the appropriate time for filing the affidavit or declaration; (3) that the fee(s) submitted will be held; and (4) that the holder may file a new affidavit or declaration at the appropriate time or may request a refund at any time. There is no deficiency surcharge. The prematurely filed affidavit or declaration will remain in the record for informational purposes only. The holder of the registration must file a newly executed affidavit or declaration before the end of the grace period or the registration will be cancelled and the USPTO will refund the fees.

See [TMEP §1613.08\(b\)](#) regarding the date of execution of a §71 affidavit or declaration.

1613.05 Requirements for §71 Affidavit or Declaration of Use or Excusable Nonuse

37 CFR §7.37 Requirements for a complete affidavit or declaration of use in commerce or excusable nonuse.

A complete affidavit or declaration under section 71 of the Act must:

- (a) Be filed by the holder of the international registration within the period set forth in §7.36(b);
- (b) Include a verified statement attesting to the use in commerce or excusable nonuse of the mark within the period set forth in section 71 of the Act. The verified statement must be executed on or after the beginning of the filing period specified in §7.36(b). A person who is properly authorized to sign on behalf of the holder is:
 - (1) A person with legal authority to bind the holder;
 - (2) A person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the holder; or
 - (3) An attorney as defined in §11.1 of this chapter who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the holder.
- (c) Include the U.S. registration number;
- (d)(1) Include the fee required by §7.6 for each class that the affidavit or declaration covers;
 - (2) If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period under section 71(a)(3) of the Act, include the grace period surcharge per class required by §7.6;
 - (3) If at least one fee is submitted for a multiple-class registration, but the fee is insufficient to cover all the classes and the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will issue a notice requiring either submission of the additional fee(s) or specification of the class(es) to which the initial fee(s) should be applied. If the additional fee(s) are not submitted within the time period set out in the Office action and the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Office will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class;
- (e)(1) Specify the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which the mark is in use in commerce, and/or the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which excusable nonuse is claimed under paragraph (f)(2) of this section; and;
 - (2) Specify the goods, services, or classes being deleted from the registration, if the affidavit or declaration covers fewer than all the goods, services, or classes in the registration;
- (f)(1) State that the registered mark is in use in commerce; or
 - (2) If the registered mark is not in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods, services, or classes specified in the registration, set forth the date when such use of the mark in commerce stopped and the approximate date when such use is expected to resume; and recite facts to show that nonuse as to those goods, services, or classes is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse and is not due to an intention to abandon the mark; and
- (g) Include one specimen showing how the mark is in use in commerce for each class in the registration, unless excusable nonuse is claimed under paragraph (f)(2) of this section. When requested by the Office, additional specimens must be provided. The specimen must meet the requirements of §2.56 of this chapter.
- (h) The Office may require the holder to furnish such information, exhibits, affidavits or declarations, and such additional specimens as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the affidavit or declaration under section 71 of the Act.
- (i) Additional requirements for a collective mark. In addition to the above requirements, a complete affidavit or declaration pertaining to a collective mark must:
 - (1) State that the holder is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and

(2) State the nature of the holder's control over the use of the mark by the members in the first affidavit or declaration filed under paragraph (a) of this section.

(j) Additional requirements for a certification mark. In addition to the above requirements, a complete affidavit or declaration pertaining to a certification mark must:

(1) Include a copy of the certification standards specified in § 2.45(a)(4)(i)(B) of this chapter;

(i) Submitting certification standards for the first time. In the first affidavit or declaration filed under paragraph (a) of this section, include a copy of the certification standards; or

(ii) Certification standards submitted in prior filing. If the certification standards in use at the time of filing the affidavit or declaration have not changed since the date they were previously submitted to the Office, include a statement to that effect; if the certification standards in use at the time of filing the affidavit or declaration have changed since the date they were previously submitted to the Office, include a copy of the revised certification standards;

(2) State that the holder is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce; and

(3) Satisfy the requirements of § 2.45(a)(4)(i)(A) and (C) of this chapter.

See [TMEP §§1613.06–1613.19](#) for general requirements for §71 affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse for trademarks or service marks and [TMEP §§1613.20–TMEP § 1613.21\(d\)](#) for additional requirements for §71 affidavits or declarations for collective marks and certification marks.

1613.06 Fees for §71 Affidavit or Declaration

1613.06(a) Filing Fee for Affidavit or Declaration

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(d\)\(1\)](#), an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse must include the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#) for each class that the affidavit or declaration covers. See [TMEP §§1401.02](#) and [1401.04](#) *et seq.* regarding use of international classification to calculate fees due.

1613.06(b) Grace Period Surcharge and Deficiency Surcharge

If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period under §71(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(a\)\(3\)](#), it must include the grace period surcharge per class required by [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#).

Section 71(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#), requires a “deficiency surcharge” for correcting deficiencies in the affidavit or declaration after expiration of the deadlines specified in §71. See [TMEP §§1613.17](#) *et seq.* regarding the deadlines and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

Only a single deficiency surcharge is required for correcting one or more deficiencies in a multiple-class registration. Similarly, only a single deficiency surcharge is required to correct several deficiencies within one §71 affidavit or declaration.

The grace period surcharge applies only where no filing was made during the sixth year after the date of registration, or within the year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration. A holder who files within these periods, but corrects a deficiency after these periods have expired, will be subject to the deficiency surcharge only. On the other hand, someone who files during the grace period and cures deficiencies after expiration of the grace period will be subject to both the grace period surcharge (for the ability to file the affidavit or declaration during the grace period) *and* the deficiency surcharge (for the ability to correct a deficiency after the end of the grace period). See H.R. Rep. No. 105-194, 105th Congress, 1st Sess. 17 (1997).

1613.06(c) Processing Affidavit or Declaration Filed with Insufficient Fees

An affidavit or declaration that does not include a fee, or does not include sufficient fees for all the classes to which the affidavit or declaration pertains (and the grace period surcharge, where applicable), is deficient.

Fee deficiencies may be cured before expiration of the deadlines set forth in §71 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), without payment of a deficiency surcharge, or after expiration of the deadlines set forth in §71 of the Act with the deficiency surcharge required by §71(c) of the Act. See [TMEP §§1613.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

If the affidavit or declaration was filed without sufficient fee(s), but the affidavit or declaration included an authorization to charge deficient fees to a USPTO deposit account (37 C.F.R. §2.208), the required fee(s) (and grace period surcharge, where applicable) will be charged to the deposit account. If the deposit account authorization was included with the affidavit or declaration as filed, and the deposit account had sufficient funds to cover the fee(s) in question, there is no fee deficiency and no deficiency surcharge is required.

An authorization to charge fees to a deposit account with insufficient funds to cover the fee is regarded as a deficiency.

If a check submitted as payment of a filing fee for an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse is returned unpaid, or an electronic funds transfer (“EFT”) or credit card payment is refused or charged back by a financial institution, this is regarded as a deficiency. In addition to the deficiency surcharge (where applicable), there is a fee for processing the payment that was refused. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(10\)](#). See [TMEP §405.06](#) for additional information.

If at least one fee is submitted for a multiple-class registration, but the fee is insufficient to cover all the classes, and the class(es) to which the fee(s) should be applied are not specified, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring either (1) submission of the additional fee(s) or (2) specification of the class(es) to which the initial fee(s) should be applied. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(d\)\(3\)](#). If the holder does not respond within the time period set out in the Office action by submitting the additional fee(s) or specifying the class(es) to which the original fee(s) should be applied, the USPTO will presume that the fee(s) cover the classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest-numbered class and will delete any unpaid class(es).

Id. See [TMEP §1608](#) regarding surrender of the registration as to class(es) that are omitted from a §71 affidavit or declaration.

1613.07 Ownership and Who May File §71 Affidavit or Declaration

1613.07(a) Affidavit or Declaration Must Be Filed by Holder

The affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse must be filed by the holder of the international registration. Filing by the holder is a minimum requirement that must be met before the expiration of the deadlines set forth in §71(a) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(a\)](#), (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States, or within the year before the end of every ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States), or within the six-month grace period after expiration of these deadlines. [37 C.F.R. §§7.36\(b\), 7.37\(a\)](#).

If it is unclear whether the party who filed the affidavit or declaration is the present holder, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the party to establish its ownership. See [TMEP §1613.07\(b\)](#).

If the affidavit or declaration was not filed in the name of the holder of the registration, and there is time remaining in the statutory filing period (which includes the grace period), the true holder may (1) submit, in response to an Office action, a correction of the name in the filing of record or (2) file a complete new affidavit or declaration, together with the filing fee per class required by [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#), and, if applicable, a specimen of use for each class. If a new affidavit or declaration is filed during the grace period, the holder must include the grace period surcharge per class with the new affidavit or declaration. If a correction is submitted, the holder must also confirm that the original affidavit or declaration was signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the true holder. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\), 7.37\(b\)](#); [TMEP §1613.08\(a\)](#). If the original affidavit or declaration was not signed by an authorized signatory, the holder must also submit a statement, signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the holder, that affirms the representations in the original affidavit or declaration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\), 7.37\(b\)](#).

If the affidavit or declaration was not filed in the name of the holder of the registration, and there is no time remaining in the grace period, the deficiency may be corrected within a prescribed time. [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#). The Post Registration staff will issue an Office action notifying the party who filed the affidavit or declaration of the ownership issue and of the time period within which it must be corrected. The true holder may submit a correction to the filing of record within the prescribed time and must also include the deficiency surcharge. [37 C.F.R. §7.6\(a\)\(8\)](#). If a correction is submitted, the holder must also verify that the original affidavit or declaration was signed by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the true holder. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\), 7.37\(b\)](#); [TMEP §1613.08\(a\)](#). If the original affidavit or declaration was not signed by an authorized signatory, the holder must also submit a statement, signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the holder, that affirms the representations in the original affidavit or declaration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\), 7.37\(b\)](#).

See also [TMEP §1613.07\(e\)](#) regarding mistakes in setting forth the name of the holder.

1613.07(b) Establishing Ownership

When the affidavit or declaration is filed by someone other than the original holder of the registration, the USPTO cannot accept the affidavit or declaration unless there is clear chain of title from the original holder to the party who filed the affidavit or declaration. [TMEP §502.01](#).

If USPTO records do not show a clear chain of title in the party who filed the affidavit or declaration, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the party to establish its ownership of the registration. Ownership can be established by recording the appropriate documents with the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“IB”). [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#); [TMEP §1904.06](#). Actual evidence of a chain of title cannot be submitted to the USPTO to establish ownership of an extension of protection.

Because an extension of protection remains part of the international registration, assignments of extensions of protection to the United States must first be recorded at the IB. A holder cannot file an assignment (or other document transferring title) of an extension of protection to the United States directly with the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO. The USPTO will record only those notifications received from the IB. The IB will notify the USPTO of any changes of the name of the holder or in ownership of the international registration recorded in the International Register, and the USPTO will automatically update the Trademark database to reflect the change(s). [TMEP §§501.07, 1904.06](#).

The holder should notify the Post Registration staff when Office records indicate that the change in the name or ownership has been received from the IB. The USPTO cannot recognize the party who filed the §71

affidavit or declaration as the current holder until notification is received from the IB that a change in name or ownership has been recorded. Therefore, the holder may wish to contact the IB at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/contact.html> regarding the recordation of the appropriate documents. Additionally, a new holder can check TSDR to determine whether the Trademark database has been updated to reflect all changes received from the IB. See [TMEP §1613.07\(a\)](#) regarding an affidavit or declaration filed by a party who was not the holder of the registration at the time of filing.

1613.07(c) Changes of Legal Entity

The procedures for establishing ownership, as discussed in [TMEP §1613.07\(b\)](#), also apply to changes of name and changes of legal entity. See [TMEP §1613.07\(d\)](#) regarding changes of name.

A change in the country or other jurisdiction of incorporation is a change of legal entity, creating a new party.

The death of a partner, or other change in the membership of a partnership, normally creates a change in legal entity unless the partnership agreement provides for continuation of the partnership and the relevant law permits this.

A merger of companies into a new company normally constitutes a change of legal entity.

Affidavits or declarations may be accepted from trustees, executors, administrators, and the like, when supported by a court order or other evidence of the person's authority to act on behalf of the present holder. If there is a court order, a copy of the order should be submitted.

1613.07(d) Changes of Name

A mere change of the name of a party is not a change of entity and will not require an inquiry regarding ownership, if there is clear title in the party who filed the §71 affidavit or declaration. Therefore, if the holder records a change of name with the IB and subsequently files the §71 affidavit or declaration in its former name, the USPTO will not issue an inquiry regarding ownership.

However, if it is unclear from USPTO records whether the party who filed the affidavit or declaration is the holder of record, the holder must record appropriate documentation of the change of name with the IB. See [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#); [TMEP §1613.07\(b\)](#). Actual evidence cannot be submitted to the USPTO to establish ownership of an extension of protection.

1613.07(e) Correction of Mistake in Setting Forth the Name of the Holder

If the affidavit or declaration was filed by the holder of the registration, but there is a mistake in the manner in which the name of the holder is set out in the affidavit or declaration, the mistake can be corrected.

See *In re Atlanta Blue Print Co.*, 19 USPQ2d 1078 (Comm'r Pats. 1990). No deficiency surcharge is required in this situation.

See [TMEP §1613.07\(a\)](#) regarding an affidavit or declaration mistakenly filed in the name of a person or existing legal entity who did not own the mark as of the filing date.

See [TMEP §1201.02\(c\)](#) for examples of correctable and non-correctable errors.

1613.08 Execution of Affidavit or Declaration

1613.08(a) Persons Who May Sign Affidavit or Declaration

Under [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(b\)](#), the §71 affidavit or declaration must include a statement that is signed and verified (sworn to) or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) by a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the holder. A person who is "properly authorized to sign on behalf of the holder" is: (1) a person with legal authority to bind the holder; (2) a person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the holder; or (3) an attorney as defined in [37 C.F.R. §11.1](#) who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the holder. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(1\), 7.37\(b\)](#).

Generally, the USPTO does not question the authority of the person who signs a verification unless there is an inconsistency in the record as to the signatory's authority to sign. See [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#).

1613.08(b) Date of Execution of Affidavit or Declaration

Under [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(b\)](#), the verified statement must be executed on or after the beginning of the relevant filing period specified in §71 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), (i.e., on or after the fifth anniversary of the date of registration in the United States, on or after the beginning of the one-year period before the end of each ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States, or during the available grace period).

Because the purpose of the affidavit or declaration is to attest to the use or excusable nonuse of the mark within the time periods specified in §71 of the Act, the affidavit or declaration cannot be executed before these time periods begin.

An affidavit or declaration filed within the period specified in §71 of the Act, but executed before that period, is deficient. The holder of the registration will be required to submit a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration attesting to use in commerce (or excusable nonuse) on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization within the relevant period specified in §71 of the Act.

If the prematurely executed §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the relevant period specified in §71(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States), the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the relevant period for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant period with the deficiency surcharge required under §71(c) of the Act. If the prematurely executed §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1613.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §71 affidavits and [TMEP §§1613.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

Date of Execution Omitted. If the §71 affidavit or declaration is signed, but the date of execution is omitted, the Post Registration staff must require that the holder of the registration set forth the date of execution for the record. If the affidavit or declaration was executed within the relevant filing period, no deficiency fee is required. If there are no other outstanding issues, the holder may provide the Post Registration staff with the date by telephone or e-mail and the Post Registration staff must enter an appropriate Note to the File in the record. If the affidavit or declaration was not executed within the relevant filing period, the affidavit or declaration is deficient, and the holder must submit a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration, as discussed above.

1613.08(c) Signature of Electronically Transmitted Affidavit or Declaration

See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(c\)](#) and [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of an affidavit or declaration filed through TEAS.

1613.08(d) Form and Wording of Verification

The format of the verification may be: (1) the classical form for verifying, which includes an oath (jurat) (*see* [TMEP §804.01\(a\)](#)); or (2) a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) or 28 U.S.C. §1746 instead of an oath (*see* [TMEP §804.01\(b\)](#)). [37 C.F.R. §2.2\(n\)](#).

1613.09 Goods/Services/Classes Set Forth in §71 Affidavit or Declaration

1613.09(a) Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization Must Be Specified or Expressly Incorporated by Reference

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(b\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(e\)\(1\)](#), the affidavit or declaration must specify the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which the mark is in use in commerce, and/or the goods, services, or nature of the collective membership organization for which excusable nonuse is claimed. See [TMEP §1613.10](#) regarding use in commerce and [TMEP §1613.11](#) regarding excusable nonuse. The affidavit or declaration may incorporate by reference the identification set forth in the registration certificate (e.g., “all goods/all services/or the nature of the collective membership organization listed in the existing registration” or “all goods/services/classes listed in the registration except... [specifying the goods/services/classes not covered by the affidavit or declaration]”). Incorporation by reference is recommended to avoid inadvertent omissions.

If the holder is alleging use with respect to some of the goods/services/classes and excusable nonuse for other goods/services/classes, the holder must clearly indicate which goods/services/classes are in use and which goods/services/classes are not in use.

1613.09(b) Deletion of Goods/Services/Classes

If the holder of the registration intends to delete goods/services/classes from the registration, this should be expressly stated in the affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(e\)\(2\)](#). Once a holder expressly indicates an intention to delete goods, services, or classes from a registration, they may not be reinserted.

1613.09(c) Failure to List All Goods/Services/Collective Membership Organization in Registration

An affidavit or declaration that fails to list or incorporate by reference all the goods/services/or the nature of the collective membership organization listed in the registration, and does not include a statement of intent to delete the omitted goods/services/classes, is deficient. In such case, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action requiring the party to either (1) file a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the omitted goods/services/collective membership organization or (2) state that the omitted goods/services/classes should be deleted.

If the holder files a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration adding the omitted goods/services/collective membership organization, the holder must verify that the mark was in use in commerce on or in

connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization during the relevant filing period specified in §71 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#). This substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the relevant deadline set forth in §71 of the Act for no fee, or after expiration of the deadline set forth in §71 of the Act with the deficiency surcharge required by §71(c) of the Act. See [TMEP §§1613.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

If the holder does not file a substitute or supplemental affidavit or declaration that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the omitted goods/services/collective membership organization within the period for response to the Office action (*see* [TMEP §1613.16](#)), the omitted goods/services/classes will be deleted from the registration.

1613.09(d) New Goods and/or Services Cannot Be Added

Goods and/or services that are not listed in the registration may not be set forth in the §71 affidavit or declaration.

1613.10 Use in Commerce

The §71 affidavit or declaration must state that the mark is in use in commerce unless excusable nonuse is claimed. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(f\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §1613.11](#) regarding excusable nonuse. The use in commerce requirement may be satisfied if the mark has not been abandoned and the use meets the statutory definition of “use in commerce,” i.e., bona fide use in the ordinary course of trade, and not made merely to reserve a right in the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#). The §71 affidavit or declaration does not have to specify the type of commerce (e.g., interstate) in which the mark is used. The USPTO presumes that someone who states that the mark is in use in commerce is stating that the mark is in use in a type of commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate, unless there is contradictory evidence in the record.

A §71 affidavit or declaration that does not state that the mark is in use in commerce is deficient. The holder must submit a substitute affidavit or declaration stating that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods, services, and/or collective membership organization identified in the registration during the relevant period specified in §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), as follows:

(1) If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States, the substitute affidavit or declaration must state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization before the expiration of the sixth year after the date of registration, if accurate; or

(2) If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States, the substitute affidavit or declaration must state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization within one year before the end of the ten-year period after the date of registration, if accurate; or

(3) If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute affidavit or declaration must state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization before the expiration of the grace period, if accurate.

If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the relevant period specified in §71(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States), the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the relevant period for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant period with the deficiency surcharge required under §71(c) of the Act. If the §71 affidavit or declaration

was filed during the grace period, the substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1613.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §71 affidavits or declarations, and [TMEP §§1613.17](#) *et seq.* for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

While a substitute affidavit or declaration may be filed after the expiration of the period specified in §71 of the Act, the substitute affidavit or declaration must attest to use within the time period specified in §71 of the Act. Therefore, if the substitute affidavit or declaration does not state that the mark was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/collective membership organization within the relevant period specified in §71 of the Act, the USPTO will not accept the §71 affidavit or declaration, and the registration will be cancelled.

1613.11 “Excusable Nonuse” of Mark

37 CFR §7.37 (Extract)

A complete affidavit or declaration under section 71 of the Act must:

...

(f) ...

(2) If the registered mark is not in use in commerce on or in connection with all the goods, services, or classes specified in the registration, set forth the date when such use of the mark in commerce stopped and the approximate date when such use is expected to resume; and recite facts to show that nonuse as to those goods, services, or classes is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse and is not due to an intention to abandon the mark[.]

The purpose of Section 71 of the Trademark Act is to remove from the register those registrations that have become deadwood. *See Morehouse Mfg. Corp. v. J. Strickland & Co.*, 407 F.2d 881, 160 USPQ 715 (C.C.P.A. 1969) . It is not intended, however, to cancel registrations because of a temporary interruption in the use of the mark due to circumstances beyond the control of the holder of the registration. *See In re Moorman Mfg. Co.*, 203 USPQ 712 (Comm’r Pats. 1979). Thus, if the mark is not in use in commerce but the holder believes the registration should not be cancelled, the holder may file an affidavit or declaration showing that nonuse is due to special circumstances that excuse the nonuse, and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(b\)\(2\)](#); *see Ex parte Kelley-How-Thomson Co.*, 118 USPQ 40 (Comm’r Pats. 1958).

Requirements for Affidavit or Declaration

Since "showing" implies proof, merely stating that special circumstances exist and there is no intention to abandon the mark is not sufficient. *See In re Conusa Corp.*, 32 USPQ2d 1857 (Comm’r Pats. 1993); *In re Moorman Mfg. Co.*, *supra*; *Ex parte Astra Pharm. Prod., Inc.*, 118 USPQ 368 (Comm’r Pats. 1958); *Ex parte Denver Chem. Mfg. Co.*, 118 USPQ 106 (Comm’r Pats. 1958). The affidavit or declaration must state when use in commerce stopped and give the approximate date when use is expected to resume. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(f\)\(2\)](#). If the holder was unable to commence use due to special circumstances beyond the holder’s control that excuse the nonuse, the holder should state that the mark was never in use and give the approximate date when use is expected to begin. The affidavit or declaration must also specify the reason for nonuse, the specific steps being taken to put the mark in use, and any other relevant facts to support a finding of excusable nonuse.

Sufficient facts must be set forth to demonstrate clearly that nonuse is due to some special circumstance beyond the holder's control or "forced by outside causes." *See In re Conusa Corp.*, *supra*; *In re Moorman Mfg. Co.*, *supra*; *Ex parte Kelley-How-Thomson Co.*, *supra*.

The goods/services/classes for which excusable nonuse is claimed must be specified. See [TMEP §§1613.09 et seq.](#) regarding proper specification of the goods/services/collective membership organization.

In a multiple-class registration, there must be a recitation of facts as to nonuse for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains, or it must be clear that the facts recited apply to all the classes.

Presumption of Abandonment

If the mark has not been in use for three consecutive years and the holder has done nothing to try to resume use of the mark, the USPTO may presume that the holder has abandoned the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1127](#); see *Imperial Tobacco Ltd. v. Phillip Morris Inc.*, 899 F.2d 1575, 14 USPQ2d 1390 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *Dragon Bleu (SARL) v. VENM, LLC*, 112 USPQ2d 1925 (TTAB 2014) ; *Stromgren Supports Inc. v. Bike Athletic Co.*, 43 USPQ2d 1100 (TTAB 1997).

Examples of Special Circumstances that Do and Do Not Excuse Nonuse

In addition to a showing that there is no intention to abandon the mark, the holder must show that nonuse is due to special circumstances beyond the holder's control that excuse nonuse. The following examples provide general guidelines as to what is considered to be a special circumstance that excuses nonuse:

- *Business Decision.* Nonuse related to a business decision is not beyond the holder's control and does not excuse nonuse.
- *Decreased Demand.* Decreased demand for the product sold under the mark, resulting in its discontinuance for an indefinite period, does not excuse nonuse. The purpose of the requirement for an affidavit or declaration is to eliminate registrations of marks that are in nonuse due to ordinary changes in social or economic conditions. See *In re Conusa Corp.*, *supra*; *In re Parmalat S.p.A.*, 32 USPQ2d 1860 (Comm'r Pats. 1991); *Ex parte Astra Pharm. Prod., Inc.*, *supra*; *Ex parte Denver Chem. Mfg. Co.*, *supra*.
- *Trade Embargo or Other Circumstance Beyond Holder's Control.* Nonuse may be considered excusable where the holder of the registration is willing and able to continue use of the mark in commerce, but is unable to do so due to a trade embargo.
- *Sale of a Business.* Temporary nonuse due to the sale of a business might be considered excusable.
- *Retooling.* The mark might be out of use temporarily because of an interruption of production for retooling of a plant or equipment, with production possible again at a scheduled time. However, nonuse due to retooling is excusable only if the holder shows that the plant or equipment being retooled was essential to the production of the goods and that alternative equipment was unavailable on the market. See *In re New Eng. Mutual Life Ins. Co.*, 33 USPQ2d 1532 (Comm'r Pats. 1991).
- *Orders on Hand.* If the product is of a type that cannot be produced quickly or in large numbers (e.g., airplanes), yet there are orders on hand and activity toward filling them, nonuse might be considered excusable.
- *Illness, Fire, and Other Catastrophes.* Illness, fire, and other catastrophes may create situations of temporary nonuse, with the holder being able to outline arrangements and plans for resumption of use. Such nonuse is often excusable. However, a mere statement that the holder is ill and cannot conduct his or her business will not in itself excuse nonuse; the holder must show that the business is an operation that could not continue without his or her presence. See *New Eng. Mutual Life Ins.*, *supra*.
- *Negotiations with Distributors.* A recitation of efforts to negotiate agreements that would allow for resumption of use of the mark, or a statement that samples of the goods have been shipped to potential distributors, may establish lack of intention to abandon the mark, but does not establish

the existence of special circumstances that excuse the nonuse. *See In re Parmalat, supra; In re Moorman, supra.*

- *Use in Foreign Country.* Use of the mark in a foreign country has no bearing on excusable nonuse of a mark in commerce that can be regulated by the United States Congress. *See In re Conusa, supra.*
- *Use of Mark on Different Goods/Services.* Use of the mark on goods/services other than those recited in the registration does not establish either special circumstances or lack of intention to abandon the mark. *See Ex parte Kelley-How-Thomson Co., supra.*
- *Use of Mark in Another Form.* Use of a mark as an essential part of a materially different composite mark does not excuse the failure to use the mark at issue. *See In re Cont'l Distilling Corp., 254 F.2d 139, 117 USPQ 300 (C.C.P.A. 1958).*

Supplementary Evidence or Explanation of Nonuse

If the USPTO determines that the facts set forth do not establish excusable nonuse, the holder may file supplementary evidence or explanation, within the response period set forth in the Office action. If the affidavit or declaration included a claim of excusable nonuse when filed, no deficiency surcharge will be required for supplementing this claim with additional evidence or an explanation.

New Affidavit or Declaration Claiming Use

If there is time remaining in the statutory filing period (including the grace period) and the holder responds to the Office action by submitting a new affidavit or declaration with a claim of use, specimen, and filing fee, the USPTO will examine the new affidavit or declaration of use.

1613.12 Specimen Showing Current Use of Mark in Commerce

1613.12(a) Specimen for Each Class Required

A §71 affidavit or declaration must include a specimen showing how the mark is in use in commerce for each class in the registration, unless excusable nonuse is claimed. [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(g\)](#). When requested by the USPTO, additional specimens must be provided. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(g\)](#).

See [TMEP §§904.03](#) *et seq.* regarding trademark specimens, [TMEP §§1301.04](#) *et seq.* regarding service mark specimens, [TMEP §1303.01\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §1304.02\(a\)\(i\)\(C\)](#) regarding specimens for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §1306.02\(a\)\(i\)\(B\)](#) regarding specimens for certification marks.

The specimen must show use of essentially the same mark as the mark shown in the registration, and must be used on or in connection with the goods/services/classes listed in the registration. A specimen that shows use of a materially different mark (*see* [TMEP §1613.13](#)), or shows use of the mark on other goods/services/classes, is unacceptable. An affidavit or declaration that does not include an acceptable specimen for each class is deficient. *See* [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(g\)](#).

If a single specimen supports multiple classes, the holder should so indicate, and the Post Registration staff need not require additional copies of the specimen. The Post Registration staff should enter a Note to the File in the record indicating which classes the specimen supports.

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(1\)](#), the specimen should be flat and no larger than 8½ inches (21.6 cm) wide by 11.69 inches (29.7 cm.) long. If a specimen exceeds these size requirements, the USPTO will create a digital facsimile of the specimen that meets these requirements (i.e., is flat and no larger than 8½ inches wide by 11.69 inches long), put it in the record, and destroy the original bulky specimen. [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(2\)](#). If the copy of the specimen created by the USPTO does not adequately depict the mark, the Post Registration staff will require a substitute specimen that meets these size requirements, and an affidavit or declaration verifying the use of the substitute specimen.

If the specimen is otherwise deficient, the Post Registration staff will require a substitute specimen, together with an affidavit or declaration that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services/classes during the relevant period specified in §71 of the Act. See [37 C.F.R. §7.39](#); *see also* [TMEP §1613.12\(c\)](#) (regarding substitute specimens).

The USPTO will not return specimens filed with a §71 affidavit or declaration.

1613.12(b) Specimens in Electronically Filed Affidavits or Declarations

If the holder files the §71 affidavit or declaration through TEAS, the holder should submit a digitized image in .jpg or .pdf format. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.56\(d\)\(4\)](#).

Sometimes, no visible specimen is in the record due to a technical problem during submission of the affidavit or declaration. In this situation, the Post Registration staff should first send an e-mail to the TEAS mailbox to ask whether the problem can be fixed by uploading the file again. If it cannot, the Post Registration staff must ask the holder to submit: (1) the specimen (or a facsimile of the specimen) that was attached to the original electronically filed affidavit or declaration; and (2) a statement by the person who transmitted the affidavit or declaration to the USPTO that the specimen being submitted is a true copy of the specimen submitted with the electronically filed affidavit or declaration. This statement does not have to be verified.

Alternatively, the holder may submit a new specimen, together with an affidavit or declaration that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods/services during the relevant period specified in §71 of the Act. No deficiency surcharge is required. See [TMEP §1613.12\(c\)](#) regarding the requirements for an affidavit or declaration supporting use of substitute specimens.

The USPTO prefers that the specimen, whether a true copy of the original or a substitute, be submitted electronically via the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”). In TEAS, the Response to Office Action form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled “Response Forms” at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

1613.12(c) Substitute Specimens

If a specimen for any class is omitted or is deficient, the holder must file a substitute specimen, together with an affidavit or declaration that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services during the relevant period specified in §71 of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), as follows:

(1) If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States, the affidavit or declaration supporting use of the substitute specimen must state that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce before the expiration of the sixth year after the date of registration, if accurate; or

(2) If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States, the affidavit or declaration supporting use of the substitute

specimen must state that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce within one year before the end of the ten-year period after the date of registration, if accurate; or

(3) If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the affidavit or declaration supporting use of the substitute specimen must state that the substitute specimen was in use in commerce before the expiration of the grace period, if accurate.

If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the relevant period specified in §71(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States), the substitute specimen may be filed before expiration of the relevant period for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant period with the deficiency surcharge required under §71(c) of the Act. If the §71 affidavit or declaration was filed during the grace period, the substitute specimen may be filed before expiration of the grace period for no fee, or after expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1613.04](#) regarding the deadlines for filing §71 affidavits or declarations and [TMEP §§1613.17 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

While a substitute specimen and supporting affidavit or declaration may be filed after the expiration of the period specified in §71 of the Act, the supporting affidavit or declaration must attest to use of the specimen within the time period specified in §71 of the Act. Therefore, if the affidavit or declaration supporting the substitute specimen does not state that the specimen was in use in commerce prior to the end of the relevant period specified in §71 of the Act, the USPTO will not accept the affidavit or declaration, and the registration will be cancelled as to any class for which no proper specimen was submitted.

See [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#) and [TMEP §611.03\(a\)](#) regarding the proper person to sign an affidavit or declaration.

1613.13 Differences in the Mark as Used on the Specimen and the Mark as Registered

The mark to which the §71 affidavit or declaration pertains must be essentially the same as the mark that appears in the registration. Where the specimen reflects a change in the mark since the registration issued, acceptance of the affidavit or declaration will depend on the degree of change. A *material* alteration of the mark will result in refusal of the affidavit or declaration on the ground that the registered mark is no longer in use. See *In re Int'l Nickel Co., Inc.*, 282 F.2d 952, 127 USPQ 331 (C.C.P.A. 1960); *In re Cont'l Distilling Corp.*, 254 F.2d 139, 117 USPQ 300 (C.C.P.A. 1958); *Ex parte Richards*, 153 USPQ 853 (Comm'r Pats. 1967). See also *Jack Wolfskin Ausrustung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.*, 797 F.3d 1363, 116 USPQ2d 1129 (Fed. Cir. 2015); *Torres v. Cantine Torresella S.r.l.*, 808 F.2d 46, 1 USPQ2d 1483 (Fed. Cir. 1986); *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 222 USPQ 273 (Fed. Cir. 1984).

Mere changes in background or styling, or modernization, are not ordinarily considered to be material changes in the mark. See *Ex parte Petersen & Pegau Baking Co.*, 100 USPQ 20 (Comm'r Pats. 1953) (change in matter determined to be mere background and type face held not a material alteration of “PETER PAN” mark). However, each case must be decided on its own facts, and these general rules are subject to exceptions. The controlling question is always whether the old and new forms of the mark create essentially the same commercial impression. See *Jack Wolfskin Ausrustung Fur Draussen GmbH & Co. KGAA v. New Millennium Sports, S.L.U.* 797 F.3d at 1370, 116 USPQ2d at 1133-34 (holding minor adjustment to the font and alterations to the design element of registered mark insufficient to change the commercial impression created by the mark).

Generally, the standard used to determine whether a change is material under §71 is the same as the standard used to determine whether the mark in a registration based on an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act may be amended under [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#). If the mark could be amended under §7(e) because the character of the mark had not been materially altered, then the specimen filed with the §71 affidavit or declaration should be accepted. In determining whether a change constitutes a material alteration, the USPTO will always compare the mark in the specimen to the mark as originally registered. See [TMEP §§807.14](#) *et seq.* and [1609.02\(a\)](#) for additional information about material alteration.

However, where the registered mark is currently used as one of several elements in a composite mark, the decision as to whether to accept the specimen requires consideration of whether the registered mark makes an impression apart from the other elements of the composite mark. If the display of the composite is such that the essence of the registered mark makes a separate impression, then the specimen may be sufficient for purposes of the §71 requirement. In many cases, word elements are severable from design elements, because words tend to dominate in forming a commercial impression. See *In re DeWitt Int'l Corp.*, 21 USPQ2d 1620 (Comm'r Pats. 1991). If the mark, as used on the §71 specimen, creates a separate impression apart from any other material on the specimen, then the specimen may be accepted as evidence of current use of the registered mark.

If the USPTO determines that the mark on the specimen is a material alteration of the registered mark, the holder may file a substitute specimen. If the holder files a substitute specimen after expiration of the relevant filing period specified in §71 of the Act, the holder must pay the deficiency surcharge required by §71(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#), and [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#). See [TMEP §1613.12\(c\)](#) regarding substitute specimens, and [37 C.F.R. §7.39](#) and [TMEP §§1613.17](#) *et seq.* regarding the procedures for correcting deficiencies in a §71 affidavit.

1613.13(a) Amendment of Mark in Registration

If the USPTO accepts the §71 affidavit or declaration, and there is a difference between the mark on the specimen filed with the affidavit or declaration and the mark in the registration, the mark as originally registered remains the mark of record. The holder cannot file a request for amendment under §7(e) of the Act as the mark in a registered extension of protection cannot be amended. In some situations, however, the holder may file a request under §7(e) to add a standard character claim. See [TMEP §1609.02](#).

1613.14 Designation of Domestic Representative by Foreign Holder

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(f\)](#), if the holder of the international registration of the mark is not domiciled in the United States, the affidavit or declaration may include the name and address of a United States resident upon whom notices or process in proceedings affecting the registration may be served. The USPTO encourages parties who do not reside in the United States to designate domestic representatives. To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that designations of domestic representative be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>. See [TMEP §610](#).

The designation should be signed by the individual holder, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic holder (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner authorized to practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) (“qualified practitioner”). In the case of joint holders who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(8\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(h\)](#).

1613.15 Office Actions and Notices Regarding Affidavit or Declaration

Upon receipt of a §71 affidavit or declaration, the USPTO updates the prosecution history of the registration in the Trademark database to indicate that the affidavit or declaration has been filed.

When a §71 affidavit or declaration is filed electronically, TEAS almost immediately displays a “Success” page that confirms receipt. This page is evidence of filing should any question arise as to the filing date of the affidavit or declaration, and it may be printed or copied-and-pasted into an electronic record for storage. TEAS also separately sends an e-mail acknowledgement of receipt, which includes a summary of the filed information.

If a §71 affidavit or declaration is filed on paper, no acknowledgment of receipt of the affidavit or declaration is sent before it is examined, unless the holder includes a stamped, self-addressed postcard with the affidavit or declaration (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#) *et seq.*).

If, upon examination, the USPTO determines that the affidavit or declaration is acceptable, the USPTO sends a notice of acceptance. If the affidavit or declaration is not acceptable, the USPTO issues an action stating the reasons for refusal. [37 C.F.R. §7.39](#).

Sometimes, it may be necessary for the USPTO to request additional information in order to properly examine the affidavit or declaration. In such cases, the USPTO will require the holder to furnish such additional information, specimens, exhibits, and affidavits or declarations as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the §71 affidavit or declaration. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(h\)](#).

The propriety of the original registration is not re-examined in connection with the affidavit or declaration under §71.

1613.16 Response to Office Action

Deadline . Under [37 C.F.R. §7.39\(a\)](#), the holder must file a response to a refusal within six months of the issuance date of the Office action, or before the end of the relevant filing period set forth in §71(a) of the Act, whichever is later. If no response is received within that time, the registration will be cancelled, unless time remains in the grace period under §71(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(a\)\(3\)](#). If time remains in the grace period, the holder may file a complete new affidavit or declaration, with a new fee.

The holder may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#) to waive [37 C.F.R. §7.39\(a\)](#) so that a late response to an Office action may be accepted. However, the Director will waive a rule only in an extraordinary situation, where justice requires and no other party is injured. *See* [TMEP §1708](#). The failure to receive an Office action has been found to be an extraordinary circumstance that warrants a waiver of [37 C.F.R. §7.39\(a\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1712.02\(b\)](#). The “unintentional delay” standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does not apply to the failure to respond to an Office action issued in connection with a §71 affidavit or declaration. [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#).

Signature . The response must be signed by a qualified practitioner, or by the holder of the registration or someone with legal authority to bind the holder. If the holder is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\)](#), [7.39\(a\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#). If the holder is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual holder or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic holder must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§7.39\(a\)](#) and [11.14\(e\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#). In the case of joint holders who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#). *See* [TMEP §§611.06 et](#)

seq. for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of juristic entities, and [TMEP §§602 et seq.](#) regarding persons who are qualified to represent others before the USPTO in trademark cases.

When it appears that a response to an Office action is signed by an improper party, the Post Registration staff must treat the response as incomplete and follow the procedures in [TMEP §§611.05 et seq.](#)

Correction of Deficiencies. See [TMEP §§1613.17 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies.

1613.17 Correction of Deficiencies in §71 Affidavit or Declaration

37 CFR §7.39(c)

If the affidavit or declaration is filed within the time periods set forth in section 71 of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected after notification from the Office, as follows:

(1) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations timely filed within the periods set forth in sections 71(a)(1) and 71(a)(2) of the Act. If the affidavit or declaration is timely filed within the relevant filing period set forth in section 71(a)(1) or section 71(a)(2) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the end of this filing period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the end of this filing period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 71(c) of the Act and § 7.6.

(2) Correcting deficiencies in affidavits or declarations filed during the grace period. If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the six-month grace period provided by section 71(a)(3) of the Act, deficiencies may be corrected before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge. Deficiencies may be corrected after the expiration of the grace period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by section 71(c) of the Act and § 7.6.

(d) If the affidavit or declaration is not filed within the time periods set forth in section 71 of the Act, the registration will be cancelled.

1613.17(a) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Timely Filed Within the Periods Set Forth in §71(a) of the Act

If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the periods set forth in §71(a) of the Act (i.e., during the sixth year after the date of registration in the United States, or within one year before the end of any ten-year period after the date of registration in the United States), deficiencies may be corrected, after notification from the Office, within the relevant period without paying a deficiency surcharge, or after the expiration of the relevant period with payment of the deficiency surcharge required by §71(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#).

Any deficiency must be cured before the end of the relevant filing period set forth in §71 of the Act or within the set period for response to the Office action, whichever is later. [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#). If no response is filed, or if the holder does not correct the deficient affidavit or declaration, within this time period, the registration will be cancelled, unless time remains in the grace period under §71(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(a\)\(3\)](#). If time remains in the grace period, the holder may file a complete new affidavit, with a new fee. See [TMEP §1613.16](#).

1613.17(b) Correcting Deficiencies in Affidavits or Declarations Filed During the Grace Period

If the affidavit or declaration is filed during the six-month grace period under §71(a)(3) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#) (a)(3), deficiencies may be corrected, after notification from the Office, before the expiration of the grace period without paying a deficiency surcharge, or after the expiration of the grace period with the deficiency surcharge required by §71(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#).

Deficiencies must be cured within six months of the issuance date of the Office action. [37 C.F.R. §7.39\(a\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1613.16](#).

1613.17(c) Defects That Cannot Be Cured After Expiration of the Grace Period

The registration will be cancelled if an affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse is not filed within the time period set forth in §71 of the Act (including the grace period). [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(a\)](#). Untimely filing cannot be cured after expiration of the grace period, even with a deficiency surcharge. See [TMEP §1613.04](#) regarding the deadline for filing the affidavit or declaration.

1613.18 Petition Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#)

The action of the Post Registration staff on a §71 affidavit or declaration may not be appealed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, but the holder may file a petition to the Director for review of the action under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#) and [7.40\(b\)](#). A petition fee is required by [37 C.F.R. §§2.6](#) and [2.146\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1705 – 1705.09](#) regarding petition procedure.

1613.18(a) Response to Examiner’s Refusal Required Before Petition

A response to the initial refusal to accept an affidavit or declaration is required before filing a petition, unless the Post Registration staff directs otherwise or there is no time remaining to respond to the refusal. [37 C.F.R. §7.40\(a\)](#).

If the Post Registration staff continues the refusal to accept the affidavit or declaration, the holder may file a petition for review of the action under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#) within six months of the issuance date. *See* [TMEP §1705.04](#). If the holder does not file a petition within six months, the registration will be cancelled. [37 C.F.R. §7.40\(b\)](#).

1613.18(b) Decision on Petition Is Final Action of the USPTO

The decision on a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) is the final action of the USPTO. In the absence of a request for reconsideration (*see* [TMEP §1613.18\(c\)](#)), or an appeal to an appropriate court (*see* [TMEP §1613.18\(d\)](#)) within two months of the issuance date of the decision on petition, the registration will be cancelled.

1613.18(c) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(j\)](#), if a petition is denied, the petitioner may file a request for reconsideration within two months of the issuance date of the decision denying the petition. A second petition fee must be paid with the request for reconsideration. See [TMEP §1705.08](#) regarding requests for reconsideration of petition decisions.

1613.18(d) Appeal to Federal Court

The holder of the registration may appeal to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or commence a civil action for review of the decision denying a petition. [15 U.S.C. §1071\(a\)\(1\)](#), [\(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.145\(a\)](#), [\(c\)](#).

The deadline for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action is 63 days from the issuance date of the decision on petition. [15 U.S.C. §1071\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.145\(d\)\(1\), \(d\)\(3\)](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §7.40\(c\)](#), a decision on petition is necessary before the holder can file an appeal or commence a civil action in any court.

1613.19 Section 71 Affidavit or Declaration Combined with Section 15 Affidavit or Declaration

A §71 affidavit or declaration may be combined with a §15 affidavit or declaration, if the combined affidavit or declaration meets the requirements of both §§71 and 15.

The filing fee for a combined §71 and §15 affidavit or declaration is the sum of the cost of the individual filings. For example, if filed electronically, the filing fee for the §71 affidavit or declaration is \$125 per class, the filing fee for the §15 affidavit or declaration is \$200 per class, then the filing fee for the combined affidavit or declaration under §§71 and 15 is \$325 per class. If filed on paper, the filing fee for the §71 affidavit or declaration is \$225 per class, the filing fee for the §15 affidavit or declaration is \$300 per class, and the filing fee for the combined §71 and §15 document is \$525 per class.

If the combined §71 and §15 affidavit or declaration is filed during the §71 grace period, the grace period surcharge per class for the §71 affidavit or declaration must be paid. There is no grace period surcharge for a §15 affidavit or declaration.

If a combined §71 and §15 affidavit or declaration is filed, and the §71 affidavit or declaration is deficient, the deficiency may be corrected before expiration of the relevant deadline set forth in §71 of the Act for no fee, or after expiration of the relevant deadline with the deficiency surcharge required by §71(c) of the Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1613.17 et seq.](#) for information about the procedures, deadlines, and surcharge for correcting deficiencies in a §71 affidavit or declaration. There is no deficiency surcharge for a §15 affidavit or declaration.

1613.20 Additional Requirements for §71 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Collective Marks

In addition to the requirements specified in [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(a\)-\(h\)](#) and [TMEP §§1613.06–1613.19](#), a complete §71 affidavit or declaration pertaining to a collective trademark, or service mark, for which use in commerce is claimed must include:

- (1) A statement that the holder is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (*see* [TMEP §1613.20\(a\)](#)); and
- (2) A statement specifying the nature of the holder's control over the use of the mark by the members in the first §71 affidavit or declaration filed with the USPTO (*see* [TMEP §1613.20\(b\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §7.37\(i\)-\(i\)\(2\)](#).

1613.20(a) Exercising Legitimate Control

If use in commerce is claimed, the holder must submit a verified statement that the holder is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. *See* [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(i\)\(1\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original affidavit or declaration, it must also allege that the holder was exercising

legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce during the relevant time period for filing the §71 affidavit or declaration. See [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(b\)](#), [\(i\)\(1\)](#).

1613.20(b) Manner/Method of Control

The holder must state the nature of the holder's control over the use of the mark by the members, in the first §71 affidavit or declaration of use filed with the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(i\)\(2\)](#). A statement that the holder's bylaws or other written provisions specify the manner of control is sufficient to satisfy this requirement.

The following language may be used for the above purpose:

The holder controls the members' use of the mark in the following manner: [specify, e.g., the holder's bylaws specify the manner of control].

1613.21 Additional Requirements for §71 Affidavits or Declarations Pertaining to Certification Marks

In addition to the requirements specified in [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(a\)-\(h\)](#) and [TMEP §§1613.06–1613.19](#), a complete §71 affidavit or declaration pertaining to a certification mark for which use in commerce is claimed must include:

- (1) A copy of the certification standards governing use of the certification mark on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the registration (see [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(B\)](#); [TMEP §1613.21\(a\)](#));
- (2) A statement that the holder is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce (see [TMEP §1613.21\(b\)](#));
- (3) A statement specifying what the holder is certifying about the goods or services in the registration (see [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#); [TMEP §1613.21\(c\)](#)); and
- (4) A statement that the holder is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the holder (see [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#); [TMEP §1613.21\(d\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §7.37\(j\)-\(j\)\(3\)](#).

1613.21(a) Certification Standards

Submitting certification standards for the first time . In the first §71 affidavit or declaration of use filed with the USPTO, the holder must include a copy of the standards established to determine whether others may use the certification mark on their goods and/or in connection with their services. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(j\)\(1\)\(i\)](#).

The standards do not have to be originally created by the holder. They may be standards established by another party, such as specifications promulgated by a government agency or standards developed through research of a private research organization.

The standards must cover the full scope of the goods/services identified in the registration. For example, if the goods are “olive oil,” but the standards are only for “extra virgin olive oil,” the USPTO must require

the holder to submit standards that cover all types of olive oil or to amend the identification to “extra virgin olive oil.”

Certification standards submitted in prior filing . If the certification standards in use at the time of filing the §71 affidavit or declaration have not changed since the date they were previously submitted to the USPTO, the §71 affidavit or declaration must include a statement to that effect. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(j\)\(1\)\(ii\)](#). If the certification standards in use at the time of filing the §71 affidavit or declaration have changed since the date they were previously submitted to the USPTO, the §71 affidavit or declaration must include a copy of the revised certification standards. *Id.*

1613.21(b) Exercising Legitimate Control

If use in commerce is claimed, the holder must submit a verified statement that the holder is exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce. *See* [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(j\)\(2\)](#). If this verified statement is not filed with the original affidavit or declaration, it must also allege that the holder was exercising legitimate control over the use of the mark in commerce during the relevant time period for filing the §71 affidavit or declaration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(b\)](#), [\(j\)\(2\)](#).

1613.21(c) Certification Statement

If use in commerce is claimed, the §71 affidavit or declaration must include a statement specifying the characteristic, standard, or other feature that is being certified by the mark, also known as the certification statement. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(A\)](#), [7.37\(j\)\(3\)](#).

The registration as issued included a certification statement specifying what the holder *will be certifying* about the goods or services in the registration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#). However, the §71 affidavit or declaration must include a certification statement specifying what the holder *is certifying* about the goods or services in the registration. *See* [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(j\)\(3\)](#). This statement, if still accurate, must be included in the §71 affidavit or declaration using the present tense “is certifying,” “certifies,” or “is being certified.” If what is being certified about the goods or services has changed, the holder must include in the §71 affidavit or declaration an amended certification statement specifying what the holder is currently certifying about the goods or services in the registration; however, an amendment that would materially alter the certification statement will not be permitted. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.173\(f\)](#); [TMEP §1609.12](#).

See [TMEP §1306.03\(a\)](#) for general information about certification statements.

1613.21(d) Statement that Holder is Not Engaged in Production or Marketing of the Goods/Services

If use in commerce is claimed, the §71 affidavit or declaration must contain a statement that the holder is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied, except to advertise or promote recognition of the certification program or of the goods or services that meet the certification standards of the holder. [37 C.F.R. §7.37\(j\)\(3\)](#); *see* [37 C.F.R. §2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(i\)\(C\)](#). This statement does not have to be verified.

1614 Renewal of Registered Extension of Protection

The holder of a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States must renew the international registration with the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.41\(a\)](#). Renewal of international registrations is governed by Article 7 of the Madrid Protocol and Rules 29 - 31 of the Common Regs. See [TMEP §1905](#).

Under §70(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(b\)](#), and Article 3ter(2) of the Protocol, if the international registration is not renewed, the IB will notify the USPTO that the registration has expired. The corresponding extension of protection to the United States will expire as of the expiration date of the international registration. The USPTO will cancel the extension of protection.

Section 9 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1069](#), does not require renewal of a registered extension of protection with the USPTO. However, the holder must file affidavits or declarations of use or excusable nonuse under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#). See [TMEP §1613](#).

1615 Division of Registrations

37 CFR §2.171(b) Partial change of ownership.

(1) In a registration resulting from an application based on section 1 or section 44 of the Act, if ownership of a registration has changed with respect to some but not all of the goods and/or services, the owner(s) may file a request that the registration be divided into two or more separate registrations. The assignment or other document changing title must be recorded in the Office. The request to divide must include the fee required by §2.6(a)(8) for each new registration created by the division, and be signed by the owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind the owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under §11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with §2.193(e)(2) of this chapter.

(2)(i) When the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization notifies the Office that an international registration has been divided as the result of a change of ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods and/or services, the Office will construe the International Bureau's notice as a request to divide. The Office will update Office records to reflect the change in ownership, divide out the assigned goods and/or services from the registered extension of protection (parent registration), and publish notice of the parent registration in the Official Gazette.

(ii) The Office will create a new registration number for the child registration, and enter the information about the new registration in its automated records. The Office will notify the new owner that the new owner must pay the fee required by §2.6 to obtain a new registration certificate for the child registration. It is not necessary for the new owner to file a separate request to divide.

(iii) The Office will not divide a registered extension of protection unless the International Bureau notifies the Office that the international registration has been divided.

A registration may be divided only if ownership of the registration has changed with respect to some, but not all, of the goods/services/classes. [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(b\)](#). Requests to divide registrations are processed in the Post Registration Section.

See [TMEP §1615.01](#) regarding division of registrations based on applications under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act, and [TMEP §1615.02](#) regarding division of registered extensions of protection.

1615.01 Division of Registration Based on Application Under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act

If ownership of a registration has changed with respect to some but not all of the goods/services/classes, the owner is strongly encouraged to file a request that a registration be divided into two or more separate registrations, to ensure that USPTO records will accurately reflect current ownership information.

A party requesting division of a registration must: (1) record the change of ownership with the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO; (2) file a request to divide; and (3) pay the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#) for each new registration created by the division. [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(b\)\(1\)](#).

The request must be signed by the individual owner of the registration, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic owner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(b\)\(1\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(b\)](#). If the owner is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(i\)](#), [11.18\(a\)](#). If the owner is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the individual owner or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) owner must sign. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#), [11.14\(e\)](#). In the case of joint owners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#).

If the request does not meet these requirements, the Post Registration staff will issue an Office action granting the party who filed the request six months in which to comply with the requirements of the rule. If there is no response, the request to divide will be dismissed.

A party who requests division of a registration issued under the old United States classification system (*see* [TMEP §1401.02](#)) must agree to adopt the international classification system for both the parent and child registration. See [TMEP §1609.04](#) regarding amendment of classification.

Once the registration is divided, the USPTO will: (1) create a new registration number for the child registration and update the information about the parent and child registration in its automated records; (2) create a new registration certificate for the child registration and an amended registration certificate for the parent registration; (3) publish notice of both the parent and child registrations in the Official Gazette and scan both the child and amended parent registration certificates into TICRS; and (4) issue a registration certificate for the child registration to the new owner. The USPTO will not issue an amended registration certificate for the parent registration to the owner of the parent registration unless the owner submits a request and pays the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#).

A registration may be divided more than once.

1615.02 Division of Registered Extension of Protection

When ownership of an international registration changes with respect to some but not all of the goods/services/classes for all designated Contracting Parties, the IB will create a separate new international registration for the goods/services/classes that have been transferred, and notify the USPTO accordingly. See the IB's *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.67.01.

When the IB notifies the USPTO of the division of an international registration resulting from a change of ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods/services/classes, the USPTO will construe the IB's notice as a request to divide. The USPTO will update Office records to reflect the change in ownership, divide out the assigned goods/services/classes from the registered extension of protection (parent registration), and publish notice of the parent registration in the *Official Gazette*. [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(b\)\(2\)\(i\)](#). The USPTO will issue an amended registration certification for the parent registration upon payment of the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#).

The USPTO will create a new registration number for the child, and enter the information about the new registration into the Trademark database. The USPTO will notify the new owner that the new owner must pay the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(8\)](#) to obtain a new registration certificate for the child registration. It is not necessary for the new owner to file a separate request to divide. [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(b\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#). If the

new owner does not respond to the notice, the child registration will remain active, as long as the owner files the necessary maintenance documents, but the USPTO will not issue a new registration certificate for the child registration, or publish notice of the child registration in the *Official Gazette*.

The USPTO will not divide a registered extension of protection to the United States unless the IB notifies the USPTO that the international registration has been divided. [37 C.F.R. §2.171\(b\)\(2\)\(iii\)](#).

A registration may be divided more than once.

See [TMEP §1110.11](#) regarding division of a pending §66(a) application after ownership has changed with respect to some but not all of the goods/services/classes, and [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding assignment of extensions of protection.

1616 Replacement

If a United States national registration and a subsequently issued certificate of extension of protection of an international registration to the United States are (1) owned by the same person, (2) identify the same mark, and (3) list the same goods or services, the extension of protection shall have the same rights as those accrued to the United States national registration at the time the certificate of extension of protection issues. Section 74 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141n](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.28\(a\)](#); Article 4bis. See [TMEP §1904.12](#) for further information on requests to note replacement of a United States national registration with a registered extension of protection. All requests to note replacements should be directed to the Madrid Processing Unit.

Chapter 1700 Petitions, Requests for Reinstatement, and Other Matters Submitted to Director

1701	Statutory Authority of Director
1702	Petitions to the Director Under 37 C.F.R. §2.146 - In General
1703	Specific Types of Petitions
1704	Petitionable Subject Matter
1705	Petition Procedure
1705.01	Standing
1705.02	Petition Fee
1705.03	Evidence and Proof of Facts
1705.04	Timeliness
1705.05	Due Diligence
1705.06	Stay or Suspension of Pending Matters
1705.07	Signature of Petition
1705.08	Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition
1705.09	Appeal to Federal Court
1706	Standard of Review on Petition
1707	Director's Supervisory Authority Under 37 C.F.R. §2.146(a)(3)
1708	Waiver of Rules
1709	Matters Delegated by Director
1710	Petition to Make Special
1710.01	Basis for Granting or Denying Petition
1710.02	Processing Petition
1711	Review of Denial of Filing Dates
1712	Reinstatement of Applications and Registrations
1712.01	Reinstatement of Applications Abandoned Due to Office Error
1712.02	Reinstatement of Registrations Cancelled or Expired
1712.02(a)	Request for Reinstatement Due to Office Error
1712.02(b)	Formal Petition
1712.02(b)(i)	Time for Filing Petition
1712.02(b)(ii)	Standard of Review
1712.02(b)(iii)	No Authority to Waive Statutory Requirements
1713	Petition to Reverse Holding of Abandonment for Incomplete Response
1713.01	Standard of Review
1713.02	Failure to Respond to Notice of Incomplete Response or Denial of Request for Reconsideration with No Appeal Filed
1714	Petition to Revive Abandoned Application
1714.01	Procedural Requirements for Filing Petition to Revive
1714.01(a)	Failure to Timely Respond to an Examining Attorney's Office Action
1714.01(a)(i)	Response to Nonfinal Office Action
1714.01(a)(ii)	Response to Final Office Action
1714.01(b)	Failure to File a Statement of Use or Extension Request - Notice of Allowance Received
1714.01(b)(i)	Applicant Must File Statement of Use or Further Extension Requests During Pendency of a Petition
1714.01(c)	Notice of Allowance Not Received
1714.01(d)	Timeliness and Diligence
1714.01(e)	Signed Statement that Delay Was Unintentional
1714.01(f)	Applicability of Unintentional Delay Standard
1714.01(f)(i)	Situations Where the Unintentional Delay Standard Applies
1714.01(f)(ii)	Situations Where the Unintentional Delay Standard Does Not Apply

1714.01(f)(ii)(A)	Examining Attorney’s Holding of Abandonment for Failure to File Complete Response to Office Action
1714.01(f)(ii)(B)	Examining Attorney’s Refusal of Registration on Ground That Applicant Did Not Meet Statutory Requirements Before Expiration of Deadline for Filing Statement of Use
1714.01(f)(ii)(C)	Goods/Services Omitted from Statement of Use or Request for Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use
1714.01(f)(ii)(D)	Registered Marks
1714.01(f)(ii)(E)	Dismissal of Appeal for Failure to File a Brief
1714.01(g)	Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition to Revive
1715	Letters of Protest in Pending Applications
1715.01	Appropriate and Inappropriate Subjects to Be Raised in Letter of Protest
1715.01(a)	Issues Appropriate as Subjects of Letters of Protest
1715.01(b)	Issues Inappropriate as Subjects of Letters of Protest
1715.02	Letter of Protest Filed Before Publication
1715.02(a)	Standard of Review for Letter of Protest Filed Before Publication
1715.02(b)	Action by Examining Attorney Before Publication
1715.03	Letters of Protest Filed on the Date of Publication or After Publication
1715.03(a)	Standard of Review for Letters of Protest Filed on the Date of Publication or After Publication
1715.03(b)	Timely Filing of Letter of Protest
1715.03(c)	Jurisdiction of Application when a Letter of Protest Is Accepted After Publication
1715.03(d)	Action by Examining Attorney After Publication
1715.03(e)	Letter of Protest Does Not Stay or Extend Opposition Period
1715.04	Information for Parties Filing Letter of Protest
1715.04(a)	Types of Evidence Appropriate for Letter of Protest
1715.04(b)	Amount and Format of Evidence for Letter of Protest
1715.05	Requests for Copy of Letter of Protest
1715.06	Recourse After Denial of Letter of Protest

1701 Statutory Authority of Director

The United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) is led by the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“Director”). The Commissioner for Trademarks oversees the staff and operations of the USPTO with regard to trademark matters. [35 U.S.C. §3\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §1709](#) regarding delegation of duties by the Director.

The Patent and Trademark Office Efficiency Act, Subtitle G of the American Inventors Protection Act of 1999, Pub. L. 106-113, 113 Stat. 1501A-572, amended Title 35 of the United States Code to reorganize the USPTO as a performance-based organization within the Department of Commerce. See *Reestablishment of the Patent and Trademark Office as the United States Patent and Trademark Office*, 1234 TMOG 41 (May 9, 2000). Section 4732(b)(1)(B) of the Patent and Trademark Office Efficiency Act, 113 Stat. 1501A-583, amended the Trademark Act of 1946, [15 U.S.C. 1051](#) *et seq.* (except for §17) to strike “Commissioner” in each place that it appears and substitute “Director.” Section 4741(b) of the Patent and Trademark Office Efficiency Act, 113 Stat. 1501A-586, provides that:

Any reference in any other Federal law, Executive order, rule, regulation, or delegation of authority, or any document of or pertaining to the Patent and Trademark Office-

- (1) to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks is deemed to refer to the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office; [and]

* * *

- (3) to the Assistant Commissioner for Trademarks is deemed to refer to the Commissioner for Trademarks.

Under [15 U.S.C. §1123](#) and [35 U.S.C. §2\(b\)\(2\)](#), the Director may establish regulations for the conduct of proceedings in the USPTO.

Citation to decisions issued by the Director on petition on or after March 29, 2000 must include a parenthetical reference to “(Dir USPTO <specify year>).” Citation to decisions issued by the Commissioner for Patents and Trademarks prior to March 29, 2000 must reference “(Comm’r Pats. <specify year>).”

See [TMEP §1709](#) regarding delegation of the Director’s authority.

1702 Petitions to the Director Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) - In General

37 CFR §2.146 Petitions to the Director.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Director: (1) From any repeated or final formal requirement of the examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application if permitted by §2.63(a) and (b); (2) in any case for which the Act of 1946, or Title 35 of the United States Code, or this Part of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations specifies that the matter is to be determined directly or reviewed by the Director; (3) to invoke the supervisory authority of the Director in appropriate circumstances; (4) in any case not specifically defined and provided for by this Part of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations; (5) in an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, to request a suspension or waiver of any requirement of the rules not being a requirement of the Act of 1946.

(b) Questions of substance arising during the ex parte prosecution of applications, including, but not limited to, questions arising under §§2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 23 of the Act of 1946, are not considered to be appropriate subject matter for petitions to the Director.

(c) Every petition to the Director shall include a statement of the facts relevant to the petition, the points to be reviewed, the action or relief requested, and the fee required by § 2.6. Any brief in support of the petition shall be embodied in or accompany the petition. The petition must be signed by the petitioner, someone with legal authority to bind the petitioner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner qualified to practice under § 11.14 of this chapter, in accordance with the requirements of § 2.193(e)(5). When facts are to be proved on petition, the petitioner must submit proof in the form of verified statements signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts to be proved, and any exhibits.

(d) A petition must be filed within two months of the date of issuance of the action from which relief is requested, unless a different deadline is specified elsewhere in this chapter, and no later than two months from the date when Office records are updated to show that the registration has been cancelled or has expired.

(e)(1) A petition from the grant or denial of a request for an extension of time to file a notice of opposition must be filed within fifteen days from the date of issuance of the grant or denial of the request. A petition from the grant of a request must be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the potential opposer, if any, or on the potential opposer. A petition from the denial of a request must be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or on the applicant. Proof of service of the petition must be made as provided by §2.119. The potential opposer or the applicant, as the case may be, may file a response within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition and must serve a copy of the response on the petitioner, with proof of service as provided by §2.119. No further document relating to the petition may be filed.

(2) A petition from an interlocutory order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board must be filed within thirty days after the date of issuance of the order from which relief is requested. Any brief in response to the petition must be filed, with any supporting exhibits, within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition. Petitions and responses to petitions, and any documents accompanying a petition or response under this subsection must be served on every adverse party pursuant to §2.119.

(f) An oral hearing will not be held on a petition except when considered necessary by the Director.

(g) The mere filing of a petition to the Director will not act as a stay in any appeal or inter partes proceeding that is pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board nor stay the period for replying to an Office action in an application except when a stay is specifically requested and is granted or when §§2.63(a) and (b) and 2.65(a) are applicable to an ex parte application.

(h) Authority to act on petitions, or on any petition, may be delegated by the Director.

(i) Where a petitioner seeks to reactivate an application or registration that was abandoned, cancelled or expired because documents were lost or mishandled, the Director may deny the petition if the petitioner was not diligent in checking the status of the application or registration. To be considered diligent, a petitioner must:

(1) During the pendency of an application, check the status of the application every six months between the filing date of the application and issuance of a registration;

(2) After registration, check the status of the registration every six months from the filing of an affidavit of use or excusable nonuse under section 8 or 71 of the Act, or a renewal application under section 9 of the Act, until the petitioner receives notice that the affidavit or renewal application has been accepted; and

(3) If the status check reveals that the Office has not received a document filed by the petitioner, or that the Office has issued an action or notice that the petitioner has not received, the petitioner must promptly request corrective action.

(j) If the Director denies a petition, the petitioner may request reconsideration, if the petitioner:

(1) Files the request within two months of the date of issuance of the decision denying the petition; and

(2) Pays a second petition fee under §2.6.

Applicants, registrants, and parties to inter partes proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (“Board”) who believe they have been injured by certain adverse actions of the USPTO, or who believe that they cannot comply with the requirements of the Trademark Rules of Practice (37 C.F.R. Parts 2, 3, 6, and 7) because of an extraordinary situation, may seek equitable relief by filing a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(1\)](#), an applicant may file a petition to review an examining attorney’s formal requirement if permitted by [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#). Under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(a\)\(2\)](#), a petition from a requirement that is repeated but not made final is permitted if a non-final action contains no substantive refusals and the subject matter of the requirement is appropriate for petition. Under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#), a petition from a final requirement is permitted if a final action contains no substantive refusals and the subject matter of the requirement is procedural, and therefore appropriate for petition. See [TMEP §1704](#) regarding petitionable subject matter. If a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(1\)](#) is denied, the applicant has six months from the issuance date of the Office action that repeated the requirement or made it final, or thirty days from the date of the decision on the petition, whichever is later, to comply with the requirement. [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(c\)](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#), a petition may be filed in any case for which the Trademark Act, Trademark Rules of Practice, or Title 35 of the United States Code specifies that the matter is to be determined directly or reviewed by the Director. This includes petitions to review the actions of the Post Registration staff under [15 U.S.C. §§1057, 1058, 1059, and 1141k](#).

Under [35 U.S.C. §2](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#), the Director may invoke supervisory authority in appropriate circumstances. See [TMEP §1707](#).

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#), a party may petition the Director to suspend or waive any requirement of the rules that is not a requirement of the statute, in an extraordinary situation, where justice requires and no other party is injured thereby. See [TMEP §1708](#).

See [TMEP §1703](#) for a list of issues that often arise on petition, and [TMEP §§1705–1705.09](#) regarding petition procedure.

1703 Specific Types of Petitions

A variety of issues may be reviewed on petition. The following is a list of issues that commonly arise:

Petitions to Restore an Application Filing Date. See [TMEP §1711](#).

Petitions to Make Special. See [TMEP §1710](#).

Petitions to Reverse an Examining Attorney's Holding of Abandonment for Failure to File a Complete Response to an Office Action are reviewed under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §1713](#).

Petitions to Revive an Application Abandoned Due to Unintentional Delay in Responding to an Office Action or Notice of Allowance are considered under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). See [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#).

Petitions to Restore Jurisdiction to the Examining Attorney may be filed by the applicant under [37 C.F.R. §2.84](#), when the examining attorney does not have jurisdiction to review an amendment to the application. See [TMEP §§1504–1504.05](#).

Petitions to Review the Action of an Examining Attorney. A petition to review an examining attorney's formal requirement may be filed under [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) and [2.146\(a\)\(1\)](#), if the requirement is repeated or made final and the subject matter is appropriate for petition. See [TMEP §1704](#) regarding petitionable subject matter, and [TMEP §1706](#) regarding the standard of review.

Petitions to Review the Action of the Post Registration Staff may be filed if an affidavit of use or excusable nonuse is refused under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [§1141k](#), a renewal application is refused under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#), or a proposed amendment or correction is refused under [15 U.S.C. §1057](#). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.165, 2.176, 2.186](#); [TMEP §§1604.18, 1606.14, 1613.18](#).

Petitions to Review the Refusal of the Madrid Processing Unit to Certify an Application for International Registration are reviewed under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#). See [TMEP §1902.03\(a\)](#).

Petitions to Reverse a Nonfinal Decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ([37 C.F.R. §2.146\(e\)\(2\)](#)) are reviewed under the standard of clear error or abuse of discretion, if the subject matter is appropriate for consideration on petition. *Riko Enters., Inc. v. Lindsley*, 198 USPQ 480 (Comm'r Pats. 1977). See [Trademark Trial and Appeal Board Manual of Procedure](#) (“TBMP”) [§§901.02\(a\), 905](#).

Petitions to Review a Decision to Deny or Grant a Request for an Extension of Time to Oppose ([37 C.F.R. §2.146\(e\)\(1\)](#)) are reviewed to determine whether the Board correctly applied [37 C.F.R. §§2.101](#) and [2.102](#).

Petitions to Add or Substitute a Basis After Publication are reviewed under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(2\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §§806.03\(j\)-806.03\(j\)\(iii\)](#).

Petitions to Abandon an Affidavit or Declaration of Incontestability Under §15 of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. §1065, are reviewed under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(j\)](#); [TMEP §§1605, 1605.03, 1704, 1707](#).

Petitions to Reissue or Accept a Late Response to a Post Registration Office Action Due to Non-Receipt are reviewed under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#). See [TMEP §§1604.16, 1606.12, 1613.16, 1708, 1712.02\(b\)](#).

See [TMEP §1607](#) and TBMP [§§303, 307, 308](#), and [309](#) regarding petitions to cancel registrations under [15 U.S.C. §1064](#), which are handled by the Board.

1704 Petitionable Subject Matter

Ex Parte Examination

Under [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#), an applicant may petition the Director to review an examining attorney's repeated or final requirement if the subject matter of the requirement is appropriate for petition. However,

under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(b\)](#), “[q]uestions of substance arising during the ex parte prosecution of applications, including, but not limited to, questions arising under §§2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 23 of the Act of 1946, are not considered to be appropriate subject matter for petitions....”

Procedural issues reviewable on petition include: whether a disclaimer was properly printed in standardized format; whether an examining attorney acted properly in suspending an application; whether an examining attorney acted properly in holding an application abandoned for failure to file a complete response to an Office action (see [TMEP §1713](#)); and whether it was premature for an examining attorney to issue a final action.

Substantive issues that arise in ex parte examination are not proper subject matter for petition, and may be reviewed only by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board on appeal. See [TMEP §§1501–1501.07](#) regarding appeal procedure. For example, an examining attorney’s requirement for a special form drawing that agrees with the mark shown on the specimen(s) of record may not be reviewed on petition, because it requires an analysis of the commercial impression of the mark. *In re Hart*, 199 USPQ 585, 587 (Comm’r Pats. 1978). An examining attorney’s requirement for a disclaimer of a feature of a mark is also improper subject matter for petition. *Ex parte Fla. Citrus Cannery Coop.*, 37 USPQ 463 (Comm’r Pats. 1938); *Ex parte Kleen-O-Dent Labs., Inc.*, 37 USPQ 232 (Comm’r Pats. 1938). The question of whether an amendment to a drawing is a material alteration of the mark is not petitionable, but the question of whether USPTO practice permits an applicant to correct an allegedly obvious typographical error on a drawing was found to be reviewable on petition. *In re Tetrafluor Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1160 (Comm’r Pats. 1990). The determination of what is appealable and what is petitionable is made on a case-by-case basis.

Some issues that arise in ex parte examination may be reviewed by either petition or appeal. For example, the question of who is a proper signatory of a statement of use or other verification of facts on behalf of an applicant may be reviewed by either petition or appeal. *In re Dermahose Inc.*, 82 USPQ2d 1793, 1795, n.5 (TTAB 2007).

A requirement for amendment of an identification of goods/services may also be reviewed by either petition or appeal. *In re Stenographic Machs., Inc.*, 199 USPQ 313, 316 (Comm’r Pats. 1978). On the other hand, a requirement for amendment of the classification is a procedural matter that may only be reviewed on petition. *In re Tee-Pak, Inc.*, 164 USPQ 88, 89 (TTAB 1969).

If an applicant files a petition from an examining attorney’s formal requirement, the applicant subsequently may not appeal the requirement to the Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(c\)](#).

See [TBMP §1201.05](#) for further information about appealable versus petitionable subject matter in examination.

Post Registration

Trademark Rule 2.146(b) applies only to questions of substance that arise during ex parte examination of applications for registration. The Director considers questions of substance, such as whether a proposed amendment materially alters a registered mark or whether a specimen supports use of a registered mark, when reviewing the action of the Post Registration staff in connection with a proposed amendment filed under [15 U.S.C. §1057](#) (“§7 amendment”), or an affidavit of use under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#) or [§1141k](#) (“§8 affidavit” or “§71 affidavit”). The decisions of Post Registration staff under [15 U.S.C. §§1057](#), [1058](#), [1059](#), and [1141k](#) may not be appealed to the Board.

An owner may petition the Director under Trademark Rule 2.146(a)(3), [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#), to request that an affidavit or declaration of incontestability under §15 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1065](#), be abandoned if the owner determines, after timely filing the affidavit or declaration, that the affidavit or declaration contained an inaccuracy. [37 C.F.R. §2.167\(j\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1605, 1605.03, 1707](#).

Cancellation of a registration for failure to file an affidavit or declaration under §8 or §71 of the Trademark Act ([15 U.S.C. §§1058, 1141k](#)), or expiration of a registration for failure to file a renewal application under §9 (15 U.S.C. §1059), does not constitute petitionable subject matter under the “unintentional delay” standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). *See* [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#). Furthermore, a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) requesting that the Director accept a late-filed §8 or §71 affidavit or declaration, or a §9 renewal application, will not be granted because the Director has no authority to waive the deadline for filing these documents. *See* [TMEP §§ 1604.04, 1606.03, 1613.04, 1707](#). Such petitions will be dismissed since the Director lacks authority to grant them.

Inter Partes Proceedings Before Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

In an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a party may petition the Director to review an order or decision of the Board that concerns a matter of procedure and does not put an end to the litigation before the Board. *See* [TBMP §§901.02\(a\), 905](#).

1705 Petition Procedure

A petition should include a verified statement of the relevant facts, the points to be reviewed, the requested action or relief, and the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(c\)](#). The petition should be accompanied by a supporting brief and any evidence to be considered.

1705.01 Standing

A person must have standing to file a petition. *See Ex parte Lasek*, 115 USPQ 145 (Comm’r Pats. 1957).

There is no provision in the Trademark Act or Rules of Practice for intercession by a third party in an ex parte matter. Accordingly, petitions by third parties to review actions taken in ex parte matters are dismissed.

1705.02 Petition Fee

A petition must be accompanied by the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#).

Any petition that is not accompanied by the required fee is incomplete. A staff attorney or paralegal in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy will notify the petitioner in writing that the petition is incomplete and grant the petitioner 30 days to submit the fee. If the fee is not submitted within the time allowed, the petition is denied without consideration on the merits, because the petitioner has not met the requirements for filing a petition. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(c\)](#).

A petition fee will be waived only in an extraordinary situation (*see* [TMEP §1708](#)), or if the record clearly shows that the petition was the result of a USPTO error. When requesting waiver of a fee, it is recommended that the petitioner submit the fee, but include a request that the fee be refunded because the petition was the result of a USPTO error. This will expedite consideration of the petition if the request for waiver of the petition fee is denied.

If a check submitted as a petition fee is returned to the USPTO unpaid, or an electronic funds transfer or credit card is refused or charged back by a financial institution, the petitioner must resubmit the petition fee, along with a fee for processing the payment that was refused or charged back, before the petition will be considered on the merits. [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(b\)\(12\)](#). See [TMEP §405.06](#).

1705.03 Evidence and Proof of Facts

A petition should include a statement of the relevant facts, and should be accompanied by any evidence to be considered. Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(c\)](#), when facts are to be proved, the petitioner must submit proof in the form of an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

An affidavit or declaration supporting a petition should be based on firsthand knowledge. For example, if the petition arises from the loss or misplacement of a document submitted to the USPTO, it should be accompanied by the affidavit or declaration of the person who sent the document, attesting to the date of submission and identifying the document filed with the petition as a true copy of the document previously filed.

When a petition includes an unverified assertion that is not supported by evidence, a staff attorney or paralegal in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy will notify the petitioner that an affidavit or declaration is required, and grant the petitioner 30 days to submit the necessary verification.

If the petitioner does not submit a verification within the time allowed, the petition will be denied, or, in appropriate cases, a decision on petition will be rendered based on the information in the record, without consideration of the unverified assertion.

This procedure is also followed with respect to physical evidence. If physical evidence is available, such as a postcard receipt that shows the date of actual receipt of a document in the USPTO (see [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#)), or a copy of a cancelled check that shows receipt of the filing fee for a missing document, the petitioner should include the evidence with the initial petition. However, if the evidence is omitted from the initial filing, the USPTO will give the petitioner an opportunity to supplement the petition within a specified time limit, normally 30 days.

1705.04 Timeliness

To avoid prejudicing the rights of third parties, petitions must be filed within a reasonable time after the disputed event. In many cases, deadlines for filing petitions are expressly stated in the rules. The following petition deadlines run from the issuance date of the action or order of which the petitioner seeks review:

- Denial of a request for an extension of time to file a notice of opposition -- 15 days ([37 C.F.R. §2.146\(e\)\(1\)](#));
- Interlocutory order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board -- 30 days ([37 C.F.R. §2.146\(e\)\(2\)](#));
- Final decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board -- two months (see [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#));
- Denial of a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use -- two months ([37 C.F.R. §2.89\(g\)](#));
- Section 7 rejection -- six months from date of issuance of Office action refusing to enter an amendment or correction ([37 C.F.R. §2.176](#));
- Section 8 or 71 rejection -- six months from date of issuance of Office action maintaining a refusal of the affidavit ([37 C.F.R. §2.165\(b\)](#); see [TMEP §§1604.18–1604.18\(a\)](#), [1613.18–1613.18\(a\)](#));
- Section 9 rejection -- six months from date of issuance of Office action maintaining a refusal of the renewal ([37 C.F.R. §2.186\(b\)](#); see [TMEP §§1606.14–1606.14\(a\)](#));

- Petition to reinstate a registration for failure to perfect a timely filed maintenance filing under §§8, 9, or 71 – two months from date of issuance of the cancellation notice; if the registrant did not receive the cancellation notice, or no cancellation notice was issued, two months from the date the Trademark database was updated to indicate that the registration expired or was cancelled (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1712.02\(b\)](#));
- Petition to revive -- two months from date of issuance of notice of abandonment or two months from the date of actual knowledge of the abandonment, if the applicant did not receive the notice of abandonment, and the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application every six months in accordance with §2.146(i) ([37 C.F.R. §2.66\(a\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§1705.05, 1714–1714.01\(g\)](#));
- Petition to revive goods/services/classes deleted for failure to respond to a partial refusal or requirement - two months from date of issuance of the examiner’s amendment deleting (abandoning) the goods/services/classes to which the refusal or requirement pertained or two months from the date of actual knowledge of the issuance of the examiner’s amendment deleting (abandoning) the goods/services/classes to which the refusal or requirement pertained, if the applicant did not receive the examiner’s amendment and the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application every six months in accordance with §2.146(i) ([37 C.F.R. §2.66\(a\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§718.02\(a\), 1705.05, 1714–1714.01\(g\)](#));
- Examining attorney’s formal requirement -- six months from date of issuance ([15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.62, 2.63\(a\), \(b\)](#));
- Petition to reverse an examining attorney’s holding of abandonment for failure to file a complete response to an Office action - two months from date of issuance of notice of abandonment (*see* [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#));
- Request for reconsideration of decision on petition -- two months from date of issuance of decision ([37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(f\)\(1\), 2.146\(j\)\(1\)](#)).

If the rules do not provide an express deadline, the petition must be filed within two months of the date of issuance of the action from which relief is requested, under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#).

If there is no “issuance of an action,” the two-month “catchall deadline” of [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#) runs from the date of actual knowledge, or the date of the phone call or other communication that prompts the filing of the petition (unless the subject of the petition is to reinstate a cancelled/expired registration, in which case the two months runs from the date the Trademark database was updated to indicate that the registration expired or was cancelled). See [TMEP §1705.05](#) regarding diligence. The two-month deadline of [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#) also applies where the petition alleges that the petitioner did not receive the action that prompts the filing of the petition, running from the date of the petitioner’s actual knowledge of said action.

The time limits set forth in the rules are strictly enforced. Petitions filed after the expiration of the deadlines are dismissed as untimely. If the petitioner can show that extraordinary circumstances caused the delay in filing the petition, the petitioner may request waiver of these time limits, pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#). See [TMEP §1708](#) regarding waiver of rules.

Petitions filed using the certificate of mailing and certificate of transmission procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) will be considered timely if mailed or transmitted to the USPTO by the due date, with a certificate that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197\(a\)\(1\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§305.02, 306.05–306.05\(d\)](#)).

See [TMEP §1705.05](#) regarding the duty to exercise due diligence in monitoring the status of pending matters.

1705.05 Due Diligence

Applicants and registrants are responsible for tracking the status of matters pending before the USPTO. When a petitioner seeks to reactivate an application or registration that was abandoned, cancelled, or expired due to the loss or mishandling of documents sent to or from the USPTO, the USPTO may deny the petition if the petitioner was not diligent in checking the status of the application or registration, even if the petitioner can show that the USPTO actually received documents, or declares that a notice from the USPTO was never received by the petitioner. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)](#).

The required showing of diligence is necessary to protect third parties who may be harmed by the removal and later reinsertion of an application or registration into the Trademark database. For example, a third party may have searched USPTO records and begun using a mark because the search showed no earlier-filed conflicting marks, or an examining attorney may have searched USPTO records and approved a later-filed application for a conflicting mark because the examining attorney was unaware of the earlier-filed application.

The USPTO generally processes applications, responses, and other documents in the order in which they are received. Since it is reasonable to expect some notice from the USPTO about a pending matter within six months of the filing or receipt of a document, a party who has not received the expected written action or telephone call from the USPTO within that time frame should be on notice that the filing may have been lost. The party awaiting notification has the burden of inquiring as to the cause of the delay, and requesting corrective action in writing when necessary.

To be considered diligent, a petitioner must:

- Check the status of a pending application every six months between the filing date of the application and issuance of a registration;
- Check the status of a registration every six months after filing an affidavit of use or excusable nonuse under §8 or §71 of the Trademark Act, or a renewal application under §9 of the Trademark Act (“§9 renewal application”), until the petitioner receives notice that the affidavit or renewal application has been accepted; and
- Promptly request corrective action in writing where necessary.

[37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)](#). See notice at 68 FR 55748 (Sept. 26, 2003).

Applicants and registrants should check the status on each six-month anniversary of the filing of an application for registration, §8 or §71 affidavit, or §9 renewal application to avoid abandonment or cancellation and to ensure that they meet the diligence requirement. For example, if an application was filed on October 1, 2009, the applicant should check the status on May 1, 2010, November 1, 2010, and on each six-month anniversary thereafter, until a registration is issued.

However, to provide applicants, registrants, and their attorneys with flexibility in docketing deadlines for both responses and status checks, an applicant or registrant will meet the diligence requirement if the applicant or registrant checks the status within six months of the filing or receipt of a document for which further action by the USPTO is expected.

Applicants and registrants can check the status of an application or registration through the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) database on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>, which is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week. The party should print the TSDR screen and place it in the party’s own file, in order to have a record of the status inquiry and the information learned.

A party who does not have access to the Internet can call the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199 to determine the status. After making a telephone status inquiry, a party should make a note in the party's own file as to the date of the status inquiry and the information learned. No further documentation is required to establish that the status inquiry was made. Written status inquiries are discouraged, because they may delay processing of the application or registration.

If a status inquiry reveals that a document sent to the USPTO was not received, that an Office action or notice was issued but not received by the applicant or registrant, that an application has been abandoned or a registration cancelled or expired, or that some other problem exists, corrective action should be promptly requested in writing. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)\(3\)](#). Petitions should be directed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. Requests for reinstatement should be directed to the paralegals in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy, the supervisory legal instruments examiner in the law office, or the supervisor of the ITU/Divisional Unit or Post Registration Section. See [TMEP §§1712](#) *et seq.* regarding requests for reinstatement.

Where a registrant has proof that a USPTO error caused a registration to expire or be cancelled, the registrant may file a request for reinstatement. See [TMEP §1712.02\(a\)](#) regarding the types of proof of USPTO error that will support a request for reinstatement. Generally, where there is proof that a registration was cancelled solely due to a USPTO error, a request for reinstatement will not be denied solely because the registrant was not diligent in monitoring the status of the §8 affidavit or renewal application.

A request to reinstate an *application* abandoned due to USPTO error (*see* [TMEP §1712.01](#)) must be timely (*see* [TMEP §1705.04](#)) and may be denied if the applicant was not diligent in monitoring the status of the application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(a\)\(2\)](#), [2.146\(i\)](#).

1705.06 Stay or Suspension of Pending Matters

37 CFR §2.146(g) (Extract)

The mere filing of a petition ... will not act as a stay in any appeal or inter partes proceeding that is pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board nor stay the period for replying to an Office action in an application except when a stay is specifically requested and is granted or when §§2.63(a) and (b) and 2.65(a) are applicable to an ex parte application.

Filing a petition does not stay the period for replying to an Office action, except when a stay is specifically requested and granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(g\)](#), or when [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) and 2.65(a) are applicable. Any request to stay a deadline for filing a response to an Office action or notice of appeal should be directed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. If such a request is sent to the examining attorney, the examining attorney should forward it to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. If a stay has not been specifically requested and granted under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), the examining attorney must *not* suspend action on an application pending a decision on petition.

A request to suspend a proceeding before the Board pending a decision on petition should be directed to the Board. [37 C.F.R. §2.117\(c\)](#); [TBMP §510.03\(a\)](#). See TBMP §§[510–510.03\(b\)](#), [1213](#) regarding suspension of Board proceedings.

Filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to file a proper statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use does not stay the time for filing a statement of use or further extension request(s). *See* [TMEP §1714.01\(b\)\(i\)](#).

1705.07 Signature of Petition

A petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) must be personally signed by the individual petitioner, someone with legal authority to bind a juristic petitioner (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner authorized to practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) (“qualified practitioner”). [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §602](#) regarding persons authorized to represent a party before the USPTO, and [TMEP §§611.06–611.06\(h\)](#) for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of legal entities.

Petitions to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) are often accompanied by separate verifications, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts to be proved on petition. See [TMEP §1705.03](#). However, the petition itself must be separately signed by a proper party. If the petitioner is represented by a qualified practitioner, the practitioner must sign the petition. [37 C.F.R. §§2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(i\)](#), [11.18\(a\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(e\)](#). If the petitioner is not represented by a qualified practitioner, the petition must be signed by the petitioner or someone with legal authority to bind the petitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(c\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(e\)](#). In the case of joint petitioners who are not represented by a qualified practitioner, all must sign. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(5\)\(ii\)](#); [TMEP §611.03\(e\)](#).

Petitions to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) (see [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#)) must include a statement that the delay was unintentional, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge. [37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(b\)\(2\)](#), [\(c\)\(2\)](#); [TMEP §1714.01\(e\)](#). Where a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) consists only of a statement that the delay was unintentional and/or that the applicant did not receive an Office action or notice of allowance, the petition may be signed by someone with firsthand knowledge, and no separate signature by the petitioner, someone with legal authority to bind the petitioner, or a qualified practitioner is required. However, any response to an Office action accompanying the petition (see [TMEP §§1714.01\(a\)\(i\)–\(ii\)](#)) must be signed by a proper party. [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\)](#), [11.18\(a\)](#); [TMEP §712](#).

If it appears that a petition (or a response accompanying a petition) was signed by an improper party, the staff attorney or paralegal reviewing the petition will follow the procedures in [TMEP §§611.05–611.05\(c\)](#) for processing documents signed by unauthorized parties.

See also [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed electronically.

1705.08 Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(j\)](#), if a petition is denied, the petitioner may request reconsideration by: (1) filing the request for reconsideration within two months of the issuance date of the decision denying the petition; and (2) paying a second petition fee under [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#).

If the petitioner presents new facts that warrant equitable relief, the request for reconsideration may be granted. Any request for reconsideration that merely reiterates or expands on arguments previously presented will be denied.

Since contested matters must be brought to a conclusion within a reasonable time, a second request for reconsideration of a decision on petition will be granted only in rare situations, when the petitioner presents significant facts or evidence not previously available. *In re Am. Nat'l Bank and Trust Co. of Chi.*, 33 USPQ2d 1535, 1537 (Comm'r Pats. 1993).

1705.09 Appeal to Federal Court

A registrant who is adversely affected by the Director's decision regarding a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, or §9 renewal application may appeal to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or commence a civil action for review of the decision on petition. [15 U.S.C. §§1071\(a\)\(1\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.145\(a\), \(c\)](#).

Other types of Director's decisions are not subject to appeal. See *In re Marriott-Hot Shoppes, Inc.*, 411 F.2d 1025, 1028, 162 USPQ 106, 109–110 (C.C.P.A. 1969).

The deadline for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action is 63 days from the issuance date of the decision. [15 U.S.C §1071\(a\)\(2\), \(b\)\(1\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.145\(d\)\(1\), \(d\)\(3\)](#).

1706 Standard of Review on Petition

The standard of review on petition depends on the particular section of the rules under which the petition is filed.

In review of an examining attorney's formal requirement under [37 C.F.R. §§2.63\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) and [2.146\(a\)\(1\)](#), the standard of review is whether the examining attorney's judgment was correct, the same standard that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board would use if it were considering the requirement on appeal. *In re Du Pont Merck Pharm. Co.*, 34 USPQ2d 1778, 1781 (Comm'r Pats. 1995); *In re Stenographic Machs., Inc.*, 199 USPQ 313, 316 (Comm'r Pats. 1978). However, in review of an examining attorney's action under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#), the Director will reverse the examining attorney only where there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion. *In re GTE Educ. Servs.*, 34 USPQ2d 1478, 1479–1480 (Comm'r Pats. 1994); *In re Direct Access Commc'ns (M.C.G.) Inc.*, 30 USPQ2d 1393, 1394 (Comm'r Pats. 1993). See [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(b\)](#) and [TMEP §1704](#) regarding petitionable subject matter.

The Director reviews the actions of the Post Registration staff on §8 affidavits, §71 affidavits, §9 renewal applications, and §7 amendments, to determine whether the judgment of the examiner was correct. See *In re Umax Data Sys., Inc.*, 40 USPQ2d 1539, 1541 (Comm'r Pats. 1996) (announcing change in standard of review of petitions to review Post Registration decisions on §7 amendments).

The Director will reverse an action of the Board on petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) only for clear error or abuse of discretion. *Riko Enterprises, Inc. v. Lindsley*, 198 USPQ 480, 482 (Comm'r Pats. 1977).

The Director reviews the denial of an application filing date to determine whether the denial was correct. See [TMEP §204.02](#).

1707 Director's Supervisory Authority Under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#)

Under [35 U.S.C. §2](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#), the Director may exercise supervisory authority on petition in appropriate circumstances. As noted in [TMEP §1706](#), the Director may review the actions of an examiner or paralegal under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) to determine whether there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion.

In some cases, the Director will exercise supervisory authority under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) even where there has been no clear error or abuse of discretion, if a petitioner can show that it has substantially complied with the requirements of the statute or rules. See *In re P.T. Polymindo Permata*, 109 USPQ2d 1256, 1257

(Dir USPTO 2013); *In re Carnicon Dev. Co.*, 34 USPQ2d 1541, 1543 (Comm'r Pats. 1992) (holding that an assertion of verified date of first use, coupled with statement of current method of use, interpreted as substantially in compliance with the minimum filing requirement for a statement of use for a verified statement that the “mark is in use in commerce.”); [TMEP §1713.01](#).

The Director may also exercise supervisory authority under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#) to make changes to USPTO practice. See, e.g., *In re L.G. Lavorazioni Grafite S.r.l.*, 61 USPQ2d 1063, 1064 (Dir. USPTO 2001); *In re Slack*, 54 USPQ2d 1504, 1506 (Comm'r Pats. 2000); *In re Moisture Jamzz, Inc.*, 47 USPQ2d 1762, 1763–1764 (Comm'r Pats. 1997); *In re El Taurino Rest., Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1220, 1222 (Comm'r Pats. 1996); *In re Monte Dei Maschi Di Siena*, 34 USPQ2d 1415, 1416 (Comm'r Pats. 1995).

1708 Waiver of Rules

Under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#), the Director may waive any provision of the rules that is not a provision of the statute, when: (1) an extraordinary situation exists; (2) justice requires; and (3) no other party is injured.

All three of the above conditions must be satisfied before a waiver will be granted, and the burden is on the petitioner to show that the situation is extraordinary. Disasters like fires, hurricanes, and snowstorms are considered to be extraordinary situations. Extraordinary circumstances have also been found in certain cases where a petitioner avers by affidavit or declaration that it did not receive an Office action issued regarding a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, or §9 renewal application. See [TMEP §§1604.16, 1606.12, 1613.16, 1712.02\(b\)](#).

On the other hand, oversights and inadvertent errors that could have been avoided with the exercise of reasonable care are not considered to be extraordinary situations. *In re Universal Card Grp., Inc.*, 25 USPQ2d 1157, 1158 (Comm'r Pats. 1992) (finding that a docketing error not extraordinary situation); *In re Merck & Co., Inc.*, 24 USPQ2d 1317, 1318 (Comm'r Pats. 1992) (holding that inadvertent misidentification of serial number in request for extension of time to oppose not extraordinary situation); *In re Tetrafluor Inc.*, 17 USPQ2d 1160, 1162 (Comm'r Pats. 1990) (finding that a typographical error not extraordinary situation).

A change of attorneys is not considered to be an extraordinary situation, *In re Unistar Radio Networks, Inc.*, 30 USPQ2d 1390, 1392 (Comm'r Pats. 1993), nor is a misunderstanding or lack of awareness of the requirements of the Trademark Rules of Practice considered extraordinary. *In re Buckhead Mktg. & Distribution, Inc.*, 71 USPQ2d 1620, 1622–1623 (Dir USPTO 2004) (holding that an applicant's lack of knowledge of application filing fee increase not extraordinary situation); *B & E Sales Co. Inc. v. Andrew Jergens Co.*, 7 USPQ2d 1906, 1907–1908 (Comm'r Pats. 1988); *Gustafson v. Strange*, 227 USPQ 174 (Comm'r Pats. 1985). Errors by attorneys are imputed to the client and the client is bound by the consequences. *In re Sotheby's Inc.*, 18 USPQ2d 1969, 1970 (Comm'r Pats. 1989).

Mail delays are not considered extraordinary, because the Trademark Rules of Practice provide procedures designed to avoid lateness due to mail delay. *In re Sportco, Inc.*, 209 USPQ 671, 672 (Comm'r Pats. 1980); *In re Chicago Historical Antique Auto. Museum, Inc.*, 197 USPQ 289, 292 (Comm'r Pats. 1978). See [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) regarding certificates of mailing.

A party will not be excused from compliance with the rules because the results in a particular case may be harsh. See *Buckhead*, 71 USPQ2d at 1623 (rejecting petitioner's argument that “justice requires” waiver of the filing date requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#) to prevent the loss of priority relative to a conflicting application).

The Director has no authority to waive or suspend the requirement of a rule that is also a requirement of the statute, such as the deadline for filing an affidavit or declaration under §8 or §71 ([15 U.S.C. §§1058](#), 1141k), or a renewal application under §9 (15 U.S.C. §1059). *See Checkers Drive-In Rest., Inc. v. Comm’r of Patents & Trademarks*, 51 F.3d 1078, 1085, 34 USPQ2d 1574, 1581 (D.C. Cir. 1995), cert. denied 516 U.S. 866 (1995) (“[I]n establishing cancellation as the penalty for failure to file the required affidavit, Congress made no exception for the innocent or the negligent. Thus, the Commissioner had no discretion to do other than cancel Checkers’s service mark registration in this case.”); *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 1018, 222 USPQ 273, 275 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (“Timeliness set by statute is not a minor technical defect which can be waived by the Commissioner.”). Therefore, a petition that requests a waiver of a statutory requirement will be dismissed, as the Director lacks authority to grant such a petition.

1709 Matters Delegated by Director

Pursuant to [35 U.S.C. §3\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#), the Director has delegated the authority to the Commissioner for Trademarks to decide trademark-related petitions filed under [37 C.F.R. §§2.66](#) and [2.146](#), and to exercise supervisory authority in trademark-related matters pursuant to [35 U.S.C. §2](#).

Under [35 U.S.C. §3\(b\)\(3\)\(B\)](#) and [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(h\)](#), the Commissioner for Trademarks may delegate this authority to the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy or the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Operations, who may further delegate the authority.

Authority to decide trademark-related petitions filed under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) has been delegated to the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy, who has further delegated authority to appropriate officials within the Office of Petitions.

1710 Petition to Make Special

The USPTO generally examines applications in the order in which they are received. A petition to make “special” is a request to advance the initial examination of an application out of its regular order.

A petition to make “special” must be accompanied by: (1) the fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#); (2) an explanation of why special action is requested; and (3) a statement of facts that shows that special action is justified. The statement of facts should be supported by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#).

The petition is reviewed in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. The applicant should first file the application via the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”) at <http://www.uspto.gov>. The applicant should then submit a petition to make special that includes the newly assigned serial number. To ensure proper routing and processing, the Office prefers that the petition also be filed electronically. In TEAS, the Petition to Make Special form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled “Petition Forms.”

Alternatively, the petition should be faxed to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy at the following fax number: 571-273-0032. If the petition is submitted by mail, it should be submitted *separately* from the application, marked to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

An application for registration of a mark that was the subject of a previous registration that was inadvertently cancelled or expired will be made “special” upon applicant’s request. No petition is required in this situation. See [TMEP §702.02](#) regarding the requirements and filing procedure for a Request to Make Special.

1710.01 Basis for Granting or Denying Petition

Invoking supervisory authority under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to make an application “special” is an extraordinary remedy that is granted only when very special circumstances exist, such as a *demonstrable* possibility of the loss of substantial rights. A petition to make “special” is denied when the circumstances would apply equally to a large number of other applicants.

The fact that the applicant is about to embark on an advertising campaign is *not* considered a circumstance that justifies advancement of an application out of the normal order of examination, because this situation applies to a substantial number of applicants.

The most common reasons for granting petitions to make “special” are the existence of actual or threatened infringement, pending litigation, or the need for a registration as a basis for securing a foreign registration.

1710.02 Processing Petition

Each petition to make “special,” together with the petition decision, is made part of the record. If the petition is granted, the prosecution history of the application in the Trademark database will reflect that the petition for “special” handling has been granted.

1711 Review of Denial of Filing Dates

If an application is denied a filing date and the applicant wants the filing date restored, the usual procedure is to file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#).

However, in the limited circumstances listed below, the applicant may request restoration of the filing date without a formal petition:

- (1) The USPTO has no record of receipt of the application, but the applicant presents proof that a complete application was filed through the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”), in the form of a copy of a TEAS “Success” page confirming receipt of the application (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(a\)](#)) or a copy of an e-mail confirmation issued by the USPTO that includes the date of receipt and a summary of the TEAS submission.
- (2) The USPTO has no record of receipt of the application, but the applicant presents proof of actual receipt in the form of evidence that a USPTO employee signed for or acknowledged the envelope containing the application (e.g., a certified mail receipt that bears a USPTO date stamp or label, or the signature of a USPTO employee), accompanied by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) attesting to the contents of the envelope.
- (3) A filing date was denied, but the application itself clearly shows on its face that the applicant met all relevant filing date requirements on the filing date being requested. If the application was filed on paper, the applicant must resubmit any returned documents showing the cancelled filing date.
- (4) A filing date was denied to a paper application due to the omission of an element, such as a drawing, but the element was in fact included in the application as originally submitted, *and* the applicant submits *all* of the following: (a) a return postcard indicating that the USPTO specifically acknowledged receipt of the element in question (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#)); (b) a substitute to replace the lost element; (c) the application documents that were returned; *and* (d) a copy of the Notice of Incomplete Trademark Application.
- (5) Applicant provides evidence that applicant attempted to file the application through TEAS, but TEAS was unavailable due to technical problems (e.g., a computer screen printout showing receipt

of a “Fatal Error - Access Denied” error message, or a copy of an e-mail message from the TEAS Help Desk stating that the TEAS application forms were temporarily unavailable). *See In re Henkel Loctite Corp.*, 69 USPQ2d 1638 (Dir USPTO 2003).

In the above situations, a staff attorney or paralegal in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy may restore the original filing date without a formal petition or a petition fee. In all other circumstances, the applicant must file a formal petition, including the petition fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#).

Procedure for Filing Request. In any request to restore an application filing date, the applicant should first refile the application, with the application filing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#). The USPTO prefers that the application be filed electronically via TEAS at <http://www.uspto.gov>. *The application filing fee must be included even if the applicant has not yet received a refund of the fee previously paid.*

After the applicant receives a new serial number, the applicant should submit a request to restore the original filing date. To ensure proper routing and processing, the Office prefers that the request also be filed electronically. In TEAS, the Request to Restore Filing Date form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled “Petition Forms” at <http://www.uspto.gov>. Alternatively, the request should be faxed to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy at 571-273-8950. The request should: (1) include the new serial number; (2) state the reason(s) why the applicant believes the filing date was denied in error; and (3) include a copy of any Notice of Incomplete Trademark Application received from the USPTO. *See* [TMEP §204.02](#).

Time for Filing Request. All requests to restore filing dates, whether made by formal petition or informal request, must be filed promptly. If the USPTO issues a notice advising the applicant of the denial or cancellation of the filing date, the request to restore the filing date must be filed within two months of the issuance date of the action, or it will be dismissed as untimely. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#). Although applicants have two months from the issuance date of this notice to file a request to restore the original filing date, it is recommended that an applicant promptly refile the application, and file the request to restore the filing date immediately upon receipt of the new serial number, to minimize the delay in receiving a filing date, and to reduce the impact on third parties who may rely on the current filing date information in the Trademark database.

Furthermore, applicants must exercise due diligence in monitoring the status of applications. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)](#); [TMEP §1705.05](#). To be considered diligent, an applicant must check the status of a pending application every six months between the filing date of the application and issuance of a registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)\(1\)](#).

Evidence of Missing Element Required. If the USPTO denies a filing date due to the omission of an element required by [37 C.F.R. §2.21](#), and the applicant declares that the missing element was in fact included with the application as filed, the Director will not grant a petition to restore or reinstate the filing date unless: (1) the applicant provides evidence that the element was received in the USPTO on the requested filing date; or (2) there is an image of the element in the USPTO’s Trademark Image Capture and Retrieval System (“TICRS”) database.

The USPTO scans images of applications almost immediately after they are received in the USPTO and uploads these scanned images into TICRS. Because very little time passes between receipt of the application and creation of the scanned image, it is highly likely that the TICRS file of an application will be an exact copy of what was received in the USPTO. Accordingly, if TICRS does not include an image of a missing

element that a petitioner declares was submitted with the application, the Director will not grant the petition unless there is evidence to corroborate the petitioner's declaration. An example of corroborating evidence is a postcard submitted with the original application that bears: (1) a USPTO date stamp; and (2) an itemized list of materials submitted that includes the missing element. *In re Group Falck A/S*, 62 USPQ2d 1797, 1798 (Dir USPTO 2002).

1712 Reinstatement of Applications and Registrations

1712.01 Reinstatement of Applications Abandoned Due to Office Error

If an applicant has proof that an application was inadvertently abandoned due to a USPTO error, an applicant may file a request to reinstate the application, instead of a formal petition to revive. There is no fee for a request for reinstatement. To ensure proper routing and processing, the Office prefers that the request be filed electronically. In TEAS, the Request for Reinstatement form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled "Petition Forms" at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

The following are examples of situations where the USPTO may reinstate an application that was held abandoned for failure to timely file a statement of use or response to an Office action or that was held abandoned in total after a partial refusal or requirement:

- (1) The applicant presents proof that a response to an Office action, statement of use, or request for extension of time to file a statement of use was timely filed through TEAS, in the form of a copy of a TEAS "Success" page confirming receipt of the application (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(a\)](#)) or a copy of an e-mail confirmation issued by the USPTO that includes the date of receipt and a summary of the TEAS submission.
- (2) There is an image of the timely filed response, statement of use, or extension request in TICRS.
- (3) The timely filed document is found in the USPTO.
- (4) The applicant supplies a copy of the document and proof that it was timely mailed to the USPTO in accordance with the certificate of mailing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) (for the specific requirements for providing proof, *see* [TMEP §305.02\(f\)](#)).
- (5) The applicant supplies a copy of the document and proof that it was timely transmitted to the USPTO by fax in accordance with the certificate of facsimile transmission requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) (for the specific requirements for providing proof, *see* [TMEP §306.05\(d\)](#)).
- (6) The applicant presents proof of actual receipt in the USPTO in the form of a return postcard showing a timely USPTO date stamp or label, on which the applicant specifically refers to the document at issue (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#)).
- (7) The applicant presents proof of actual receipt in the USPTO in the form of evidence that a USPTO employee signed for or acknowledged the envelope (e.g., a certified mail receipt that bears a USPTO date stamp or label, or the signature of a USPTO employee), accompanied by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) attesting to the contents of the envelope.
- (8) The document that became lost was accompanied by a fee, and there is proof that the USPTO processed the fee (e.g., a cancelled check). The request for reinstatement must include an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) that attests to the contents of the filing.
- (9) The USPTO sent an Office action or notice of allowance to the wrong address due to a USPTO error, i.e., the USPTO either entered the correspondence address incorrectly or failed to enter a proper notice of change of address filed *before* the issuance date of the action or notice. *See* [TMEP §609.03](#) regarding the applicant's duty to notify the USPTO when the correspondence address changes.

- (10) An application is abandoned in total for failure to respond to an Office action or for an incomplete response to a final Office action when the Office action states that the refusal or requirement applies to only certain goods, services, and/or classes. *See* [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).
- (11) An application is abandoned in total after a refusal or requirement that applies to only certain goods, services, and/or classes is upheld on appeal or when the applicant withdraws or fails to prosecute an appeal of a refusal or requirement that applies to only certain goods, services, and/or classes to the Board. *See* [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#).

A request for reinstatement must be filed within two months of the issuance date of the notice of abandonment or, if the applicant has not received a notice of abandonment, within two months of the date the applicant had actual knowledge that the application was abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#).

If the applicant did not receive a notice of abandonment, the applicant must have been duly diligent in monitoring the status of the application, or the request for reinstatement may be denied. To be duly diligent, the applicant must check the status of a pending application every six months between the filing date of the application and issuance of a registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(i\)\(1\)](#); [TMEP §1705.05](#).

When an application is reinstated, a computer-generated notice of reinstatement is sent to the correspondence address of record and the Trademark database is updated accordingly.

If the applicant is not entitled to reinstatement, a request for reinstatement may be considered as a petition to revive. Any petition to revive must meet all the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). *See* [TMEP §§1714–1714.01\(g\)](#).

1712.02 Reinstatement of Registrations Cancelled or Expired

1712.02(a) Request for Reinstatement Due to Office Error

A registrant may file a request to reinstate a cancelled or expired registration if the registrant has proof that a USPTO error caused a registration to be cancelled or expired due to failure to file a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, §9 renewal application, or a response to an examining attorney's Office action refusing to accept an affidavit or renewal application. There is no fee for a request for reinstatement. However, to ensure proper routing and processing, the USPTO prefers that the request be filed electronically using the “Petition to the Director under Trademark Rule 2.146” form, which can be accessed at http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/petition_forms.jsp. Although a petition fee is required in order to file the form, it will be refunded if USPTO error is found.

The following are examples of situations where the USPTO may reinstate a cancelled or expired registration:

- (1) The registrant presents proof that a proper affidavit or renewal application was timely filed through TEAS, in the form of a copy of a TEAS “Success” page confirming receipt of the document (*see* [TMEP §303.02\(a\)](#)) or a copy of an e-mail confirmation issued by the USPTO that includes the date of receipt and a summary of the TEAS submission.
- (2) There is an image of a timely filed affidavit, renewal application, or response to Office action in TICRS.
- (3) The timely filed affidavit, renewal application, or response to Office action is found in the USPTO.
- (4) The registrant supplies a copy of the affidavit, renewal application, or response to Office action, with proof that it was timely mailed to the USPTO in accordance with the certificate of mailing

- requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) (for the specific requirements for providing proof, see [TMEP §305.02\(f\)](#)).
- (5) The registrant supplies a copy of the affidavit, renewal application, or response to Office action, with proof that it was timely transmitted to the USPTO by fax in accordance with the certificate of transmission requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) (for the specific requirements for providing proof, see [TMEP §306.05\(d\)](#)).
 - (6) The registrant presents proof of actual receipt in the USPTO in the form of a return postcard showing a timely USPTO date stamp or label, on which the registrant specifically refers to the §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, §9 renewal application, or response (see [TMEP §303.02\(c\)](#)).
 - (7) The registrant presents proof of actual receipt in the USPTO in the form of evidence that a USPTO employee signed for or acknowledged the envelope (e.g., a certified mail receipt that bears a USPTO date stamp or label, or the signature of a USPTO employee), accompanied by an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) attesting to the contents of the envelope.
 - (8) The document that became lost was accompanied by a fee, and there is proof that the USPTO processed the fee (e.g., a cancelled check). The registrant must submit an affidavit or declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#) attesting to the contents of the original filing.
 - (9) The USPTO sent an Office action to the wrong address due to a USPTO error, i.e., the USPTO either entered the correspondence address incorrectly or failed to enter a proper notice of change of address filed *before* the issuance date of the action.

Generally, where there is proof that a registration was cancelled solely due to USPTO error, a request for reinstatement will not be denied solely because the registrant was not diligent in monitoring the status of the affidavit or renewal application.

The Director has no authority to waive a statutory requirement, such as the deadline for filing a proper renewal application under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#) or affidavit of use of a registered mark under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#).

Checkers Drive-In Rest's, Inc. v. Comm'r of Patents & Trademarks, 51 F.3d 1078, 1085, 34 USPQ2d 1574, 1581 (D.C. App. 1995), *cert. denied* 516 U.S. 866 (1995); *In re Holland Am. Wafer Co.*, 737 F.2d 1015, 1018, 222 USPQ 273, 275 (Fed. Cir. 1984). Therefore, if the registrant did not timely file a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, or §9 renewal application, a request to reinstate a cancelled or expired registration will be dismissed, regardless of the reason for the delay, as the Director lacks authority to grant such a petition.

1712.02(b) Formal Petition

If a registrant does not have the proof of USPTO error that would support a request for reinstatement, but failed to timely respond to an Office action refusing to accept a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, or §9 renewal application due to an extraordinary situation, the registrant may file a formal petition under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#) to accept a late response.

1712.02(b)(i) Time for Filing Petition

Pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#), the petition must be filed within two months of the issue date of the cancellation notice. If the registrant did not receive the cancellation notice, or no cancellation notice was issued, the petition must be filed within two months of the date the Trademark database was updated to indicate that the registration expired or was cancelled. See [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(d\)](#). See TMEP §§[1705.04](#) and [1705.05](#) regarding timeliness and diligence.

1712.02(b)(ii) Standard of Review

The unintentional delay standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does *not* apply to registered marks. [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(D\)](#). Under 37 C.F.R. §§[2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#), the Director may waive any provision of the rules that is not a provision of the statute, only when an extraordinary situation exists, justice requires, and no other party is injured. See [TMEP §1708](#) for further discussion of conditions for waiver of rules. The failure to receive an Office action is considered an extraordinary situation that justifies a waiver of a rule.

Therefore, if the registrant did not receive an Office action refusing to accept an affidavit or renewal application, but the registrant does not have proof that non-receipt was due to USPTO error (*see* [TMEP §1712.02\(a\)](#), paragraph 9), the registrant may file a formal petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). The petition should include a clear statement that the Office action was not received and either a complete response to the Office action, to expedite acceptance of the maintenance filing, or a request that the Office action be reissued.

If the petition does not include a clear statement that the Office action was not received and either a complete response or request to reissue the Office action, the USPTO will notify the petitioner that this information is required, and grant the petitioner 30 days to submit the information. If the petitioner does not submit this information within the time allowed, the petition will be denied because the petitioner did not meet the requirements for filing a petition and the registration will remain cancelled. See [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(c\)](#).

1712.02(b)(iii) No Authority to Waive Statutory Requirements

As noted in [TMEP §1708](#), the Director has no authority to waive a statutory requirement, such as the deadline for filing a proper renewal application under [15 U.S.C. §1059](#) or affidavit of use of a registered mark under [15 U.S.C. §1058](#). Therefore, if the registrant did not timely file a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, §9 renewal application, a petition to extend or waive the statutory deadline will be dismissed, regardless of the reason for the delay.

If a registrant contends that a proper affidavit or renewal application was timely filed, but the registrant does not have proof that the affidavit or renewal application was received in the USPTO before the due date, the Director will not grant a petition to accept the affidavit or renewal application.

Similarly, if a registrant files a premature affidavit or renewal application, and does not file a newly executed affidavit or renewal application within the statutory filing period (which includes the grace period), the Director will not grant a petition to accept the premature affidavit or renewal application. *See* [TMEP §§1604.04\(a\)](#) and [1606.03\(a\)](#).

1713 Petition to Reverse Holding of Abandonment for Incomplete Response

1713.01 Standard of Review

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#), an application may become abandoned when an applicant's response, although received within the six-month response period, is incomplete. See [TMEP §§718.03–718.03\(b\)](#) regarding incomplete responses.

When an examining attorney holds an application abandoned because the applicant's response is incomplete, the applicant may petition the Director to reverse the holding under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial abandonment for failure to respond completely to a final refusal or final requirement that

is expressly limited to only certain goods/services/class(es) and [TMEP §718.03\(a\)](#) for failure to respond completely in all other situations.

However, the Director will reverse the examining attorney's holding of abandonment only if there has been clear error or an abuse of discretion or, in rare cases, where a petitioner can show that it has substantially complied with the requirements of the statute or rules. *In re P.T. Polymindo Permata*, 109 USPQ2d 1256, 1257 (Dir USPTO 2013); *In re GTE Educ. Servs.*, 34 USPQ2d 1478, 1479-80 (Comm'r Pats. 1994); *In re Legendary, Inc.*, 26 USPQ2d 1478, 1479 (Comm'r Pats. 1992). *Note:* The "unintentional delay" standard for reviving abandoned applications pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(a\)](#) does *not* apply to applications held abandoned because a response was deemed incomplete under [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §1714.01\(f\)\(ii\)\(A\)](#).

1713.02 Failure to Respond to Notice of Incomplete Response or Denial of Request for Reconsideration with No Appeal Filed

If an examining attorney issues an "Examiner's Non-Responsive Amendment" action, "Examiner's Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter" (or, if appropriate, "SU – Examiner's Action Continuing a Final Refusal – 30 day Letter"), or a "Request for Reconsideration Denied – No Appeal Filed - Time Remaining" (or, if appropriate, "SU - Request for Reconsideration Denied No Appeal Filed - Time Remaining") action, and the applicant does not receive the action or fails to timely respond due to some extraordinary circumstance, the applicant may file a petition to the Director to waive [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(a\)](#) and permit a late response to be submitted under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#).

If the applicant submits the response with the petition and the petition is granted, the Director will instruct the examining attorney to review the response. If the applicant did not receive the action and does not submit a response with the petition and the petition is granted, the USPTO will re-issue the action and provide the applicant with a new 30-day period in which to respond.

However, if an examining attorney issues an Office action granting an applicant additional time to complete a response when it appears that a response is signed by an improper party, and the applicant fails to respond or to complete the response within the time granted or remaining, the examining attorney must issue an "Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response" action. See [TMEP §§ 715.03\(a\)\(ii\)\(E\), 718.03, 718.03\(b\)](#). If the applicant wishes to submit evidence that an authorized party signed the original response, the applicant may petition the Director to exercise supervisory authority and reverse the holding and reinstate the application under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#). If the evidence establishes that a proper party signed the response, the Director will grant the petition and instruct the examining attorney to review the response. If, however, the evidence establishes that the response was signed by an unauthorized party, the Director will find that (1) the application should have been abandoned for failure to respond, (2) the petition will be construed as a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), (3) revival based on unintentional delay is proper, and (4) a response signed by a proper party must be submitted. To expedite revival in this situation, a properly signed response should be submitted with the petition.

The granting of the petition does *not* extend the time for filing a notice of appeal or filing a petition to review the examining attorney's action under [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#), [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.142\(a\)](#). Therefore, in most circumstances, if the response does not overcome all outstanding refusals or satisfy all outstanding requirements, the application will again be abandoned and an "Abandoned Due to Incomplete Response" notice will issue (but see [TMEP § 1714.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#) regarding petition to revive for failure to respond to a final action).

1714 Petition to Revive Abandoned Application

37 CFR §2.66 Revival of abandoned applications.

(a) The applicant may file a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to an Office action or notice of allowance, if the delay was unintentional. The applicant must file the petition:

(1) Within two months of the date of issuance of the notice of abandonment; or

(2) Within two months of actual knowledge of the abandonment, if the applicant did not receive the notice of abandonment, and the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application every six months in accordance with §2.146(i).

(b) The requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to an Office action are:

(1) The petition fee required by §2.6;

(2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the response on or before the due date was unintentional; and

(3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the Office action, the proposed response.

(c) The requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned because the applicant did not timely respond to a notice of allowance are:

(1) The petition fee required by §2.6;

(2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the statement of use (or request for extension of time to file a statement of use) on or before the due date was unintentional;

(3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, the required fees for the number of requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use that the applicant should have filed under §2.89 if the application had never been abandoned;

(4) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, either a statement of use under §2.88 or a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use under §2.89; and

(5) Unless a statement of use is filed with or before the petition, or the applicant alleges that it did not receive the notice of allowance and requests cancellation of the notice of allowance, the applicant must file any further requests for extensions of time to file a statement of use under §2.89 that become due while the petition is pending, or file a statement of use under §2.88.

(d) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the Director will not grant the petition if this would permit the filing of a statement of use more than 36 months after the date of issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act.

(e) The Director will grant the petition to revive if the applicant complies with the requirements listed above and establishes that the delay in responding was unintentional.

(f) If the Director denies a petition, the applicant may request reconsideration, if the applicant:

(1) Files the request within two months of the date of issuance of the decision denying the petition; and

(2) Pays a second petition fee under §2.6.

Upon proper submission of a petition to revive, an abandoned application may be revived under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) if the delay in responding to an Office action or notice of allowance was unintentional. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(d\)\(4\)](#) and [1062\(b\)](#). Petitions filed under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) are handled by the paralegals in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. See [TMEP §1709](#) regarding the delegation of authority to decide petitions.

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that all petitions to revive be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/index.jsp>.

1714.01 Procedural Requirements for Filing Petition to Revive

The procedural requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to respond to an examining attorney's Office action are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §§1714.01\(a\)-\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

The procedural requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to timely

file a statement of use or request for extension of time to file a statement of use are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §§1714.01\(b\)-\(c\)](#).

When a petition does not meet the procedural requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), a paralegal in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy will notify the petitioner that the petition does not meet the requirements of the rule, and grant the petitioner 30 days to supplement the petition by submitting the missing element(s). If the petitioner does not submit the necessary information or fees within the time allowed, the petition will be denied.

If a petition to revive filed through TEAS is automatically granted by the electronic system and it is subsequently determined that the petition does not meet the procedural requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#), a paralegal in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy will notify the petitioner that the granting of the petition has been rescinded because the petition does not meet the requirements of the rule. The petitioner will be granted 30 days to supplement the petition by submitting the missing element(s). If the petitioner does not submit the necessary information or fee(s) within the time allowed, the petition will be denied.

1714.01(a) Failure to Timely Respond to an Examining Attorney’s Office Action

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that all petitions to revive be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/index.jsp>.

1714.01(a)(i) Response to Nonfinal Office Action

The procedural requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to respond to an examining attorney’s *nonfinal* Office action are listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(b\)](#). The petition must include all of the following:

- (1) The petition fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#);
- (2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the response on or before the due date was unintentional. The statement does not have to be verified; and
- (3) Unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the Office action, the applicant’s proposed response to the Office action.

If the petition states that applicant did not receive the Office action, and the petition is granted, the USPTO will issue a new Office action and provide the applicant with a new response period, or, if all issues previously raised remain the same, after reviving the application, the USPTO will send a notice to the applicant directing the applicant to view the previously issued Office action on the TSDR portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>, and provide the applicant with a new six-month period in which to file a response.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding a petition to revive a portion of an application that was partially abandoned. See [TMEP §1714.01](#) regarding situations in which a petition to revive fails to meet the procedural requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(b\)](#) (e.g., when there is no allegation that the applicant did not receive the Office action, but the petition does not include a proposed response).

1714.01(a)(ii) Response to Final Office Action

The procedural requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to respond to an examining attorney's *final* Office action are the same as listed in [TMEP §1714.01\(a\)\(i\)](#). See [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(b\)](#).

However, when a final action has issued, the petition must include a response, as defined in [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(1\)-\(2\)](#), unless the applicant alleges that it did not receive the final Office action. See [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(b\)\(3\)](#). Specifically, an applicant may respond to a final action by timely filing (1) a notice of appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (see [TMEP §§1501–1501.07](#)); (2) a request for reconsideration that seeks to overcome any substantive refusals to register and comply with any outstanding requirements; or (3) a petition to the Director under Trademark Rule 2.146 to review a requirement, if the subject matter of the requirement is procedural and thus appropriate for petition. [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(1\)-\(2\)](#); see [TMEP §715.01](#). In some cases, an amendment requesting registration on the Supplemental Register or registration under [15 U.S.C. §1052\(f\)](#) may also be an appropriate response to a final refusal of registration on the Principal Register. See [TMEP §714.05\(a\)\(i\)](#), [816.04](#), [TMEP §1212.02\(h\)](#)

If the petition states that applicant did not receive the final action, and the petition is granted, the USPTO will issue a new final action and provide the applicant with a new response period. If all issues previously raised remain the same, the USPTO will send a notice to the applicant directing the applicant to view the previously issued final action on the TSDR portal on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>, and provide the applicant with a new six-month period in which to file a response.

If the applicant received the Office action, and no response was filed within the statutory response period, a late notice of appeal may be submitted with the petition. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)\(2\)](#). However, if the applicant previously filed timely a request for reconsideration or a response to the Office action that does not overcome all outstanding refusals and satisfy all outstanding requirements, a late appeal will *not* be accepted on petition. That is because the filing of a request for reconsideration does not stay or extend the time for filing an appeal. [37 C.F.R. § 2.63\(b\)\(3\)](#); [TMEP §715.03](#).

If the petition does not include a response to the final action or claim that the final action was not received, the petition will be treated as incomplete. The applicant will be given an opportunity to perfect the petition by submitting the required response (e.g., a notice of appeal) or claim of non-receipt. If the applicant does not submit a proper response or claim of non-receipt within the time allowed, the petition will be denied.

See [TMEP §§1705.04](#) and [1714.01\(d\)](#) regarding petition timeliness, and [TMEP §1705.05](#) regarding due diligence in monitoring the status of an application.

1714.01(b) Failure to File a Statement of Use or Extension Request - Notice of Allowance Received

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that all petitions to revive be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

The procedural requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to respond to a notice of allowance are listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)](#). *If the applicant received the notice of allowance*, the petition must include all of the following:

- (1) The petition fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#);

- (2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in filing the statement of use (or request for extension of time to file a statement of use) on or before the due date was unintentional ([37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)\(2\)](#)). The statement does not have to be verified;
- (3) Either a statement of use under 37 C.F.R. §2.88 or a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use under [37 C.F.R. §2.89](#)([37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)\(4\)](#)); and
- (4) The required fees for the number of extension requests that the applicant should have filed if the application had never been abandoned ([37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)\(3\)](#)).

Example 1: If a notice of allowance was issued January 14, 2009, and the applicant did not file a statement of use or extension request by July 14, 2009, the application becomes abandoned. If a petition to revive is filed July 23, 2009, with a statement of use, the petition must include: (1) the fee for the statement of use; (2) the fee for the extension request that was due July 14, 2009; and (3) the petition fee.

Example 2: If a notice of allowance was issued January 14, 2009, and the applicant did not file a statement of use or extension request by July 14, 2009, the application becomes abandoned. If a petition to revive is filed January 23, 2010, without a statement of use, the petition must be accompanied by: (1) the second extension request that was due January 14, 2010, with the filing fee therefor; (2) the fee for the first extension request that was due July 14, 2009; and (3) the petition fee. If the petition is granted, a statement of use or third extension request will be due July 14, 2010.

Unless a statement of use is filed with or before the petition, the applicant must file any further requests for extension of time to file a statement of use that become due while the petition is pending, or file a statement of use ([37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)\(5\)](#)). See [TMEP §1714.01\(b\)\(i\)](#).

Example: If a notice of allowance was issued January 14, 2009, and the applicant did not file a statement of use or extension request by July 14, 2009, the application becomes abandoned. If a petition to revive is filed January 2, 2010, without a statement of use, the petition must include: (1) the first extension request that was due July 14, 2009, with the filing fee therefor; and (2) the petition fee. In addition, if the petition is pending, the applicant must submit by January 14, 2010 either: (1) a statement of use (with the required fee), or (2) a second extension request (with the required fee) before the petition can be granted.

The USPTO will *not* grant a petition to revive an intent-to-use application if granting the petition would extend the period for filing the statement of use beyond thirty-six months after the issuance date of the notice of allowance. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(d\)\(1\)](#) and [\(2\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(d\)](#). In these cases, the petition will be dismissed, and the petition fee will be refunded.

NOTE: Multiple Basis Applications. In a multiple-basis application, if in response to a notice of abandonment the applicant elects to delete the intent-to-use basis and only keep the basis or bases to which the notice of allowance does not pertain, then the applicant does not have to file a statement of use or extension request with the petition, or file any further extension requests while the petition is pending. Instead, applicant may submit with the petition a request to delete the intent-to-use basis and proceed to registration on the alternative basis for registration.

See TMEP §§ [1705.04](#) and [1714.01\(d\)](#) regarding petition timeliness, and [TMEP §1705.05](#) regarding due diligence in monitoring the status of an application.

1714.01(b)(i) Applicant Must File Statement of Use or Further Extension Requests During Pendency of a Petition

Filing a petition to revive does not stay the time for filing a statement of use or further request(s) for extension of time to file a statement of use. When a petition is granted, the term of the six-month extension that was the subject of the petition runs from the date of the expiration of the previously existing deadline for filing

a statement of use. [37 C.F.R. §2.89\(g\)](#). Thus, a petitioner must either file a statement of use or file additional extension requests as they become due during the pendency of a petition.

If the applicant fails to file a statement of use or further request(s) for extension of time to file the statement of use while the petition is pending, the USPTO will give the applicant an opportunity to perfect the petition by paying the fees for each missed extension request and filing a copy of the last extension request, or statement of use, that should have been filed. *In re Moisture Jamzz, Inc.*, 47 USPQ2d 1762, 1764 (Comm'r Pats. 1997).

Please note that an applicant may file a petition to revive and an extension request through TEAS. However, if the applicant files a statement of use with the petition to revive form in TEAS, the TEAS form will require submission of the fee(s) for the missing extension request(s). See [TMEP §§1108–1108.05](#) regarding extension requests, and [TMEP §§1109–1109.18](#) regarding statements of use.

1714.01(c) Notice of Allowance Not Received

To expedite processing, the USPTO recommends that all petitions to revive be filed through TEAS, at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

The procedural requirements for filing a petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to respond to a notice of allowance are listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(c\)](#). *If the applicant did not receive the notice of allowance*, the petition must include the following:

- (1) The petition fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#); and
- (2) A statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the applicant did not receive the notice of allowance, and that the delay in filing the statement of use (or request for extension of time to file a statement of use) on or before the due date was unintentional. The statement does not have to be verified.

If the applicant did not receive the notice of allowance, it is not necessary to file a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, or the fees for the number of extension requests that would have been due if the application had never been abandoned. [37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(c\)\(3\)](#) and [\(4\)](#). If the petition is granted, the USPTO will cancel the original notice of allowance and issue a new notice, giving the applicant a new six-month period in which to file a statement of use or extension request. However, if the petitioner files an extension request with a petition that alleges nonreceipt of the notice of allowance, the USPTO will presume that the applicant wants to maintain the issue date of the original notice of allowance and will process the extension request.

Similarly, if the petitioner files a statement of use and the required fees for any missing extension requests with a petition that alleges nonreceipt of the notice of allowance, the USPTO will presume that the applicant intends to maintain the issue date of the original notice of allowance and will process the statement of use.

If the petitioner files a statement of use with a petition that alleges nonreceipt of the notice of allowance but does not include the required fees for any missing extension requests, the USPTO will give the petitioner the option of: (1) having the notice of allowance cancelled and reissued, the statement of use not processed, and the filing fee for the statement of use refunded; or (2) paying the additional filing fees for the extension requests that would have been due if the application had never been abandoned, so that the statement of use can be processed. If the applicant files the statement of use with the petition to revive form in TEAS, the TEAS form will require submission of the fees for the missing extension requests.

1714.01(d) Timeliness and Diligence

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(a\)](#), a petition to revive an abandoned application must be filed: (1) within two months of the issuance date of the notice of abandonment; or (2) within two months of actual knowledge of the abandonment, if the applicant did not receive the notice of abandonment, *and* the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application. A petition to revive an application as to goods/services/classes deleted (abandoned) for failure to respond to a partial refusal or requirement must be filed: (1) within two months of the issuance date of the examiner's amendment setting forth the changes that will be made in the identification of goods/services; or (2) within two months of actual knowledge of the issuance of the examiner's amendment, provided the application has not registered, if the applicant did not receive the examiner's amendment *and* the applicant was diligent in checking the status of the application.

See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial abandonment, [§1705.04](#) regarding petition timeliness, and [TMEP §1705.05](#) regarding an applicant's duty to exercise due diligence in monitoring the status of an application.

If a petition is untimely, or if the applicant was not diligent, the USPTO will deny the petition and refund the petition fee. To be considered diligent, the applicant must check the status of a pending application every six months between the filing date of the application and issuance of a registration. [37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(a\)\(2\)](#) and [2.146\(i\)\(1\)](#).

The applicant may file a petition to revive before the applicant receives the notice of abandonment.

1714.01(e) Signed Statement that Delay Was Unintentional

Under [37 C.F.R. §§2.66\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.66\(c\)\(2\)](#), and [2.193\(e\)\(4\)](#), a petition to revive must include a statement, signed by someone with firsthand knowledge of the facts, that the delay in responding to the Office action or notice of allowance was unintentional. Generally, it is not necessary to explain the circumstances that caused the unintentional delay and the statement does not have to be verified.

However, if the applicant is alleging that non-receipt of an Office action or notice of allowance caused the unintentional delay, this should be stated; no further explanation is necessary.

The USPTO will generally not question the applicant's assertion that the delay in responding to an Office action or notice of allowance was unintentional unless there is information in the record indicating that the delay was in fact intentional. An example of an intentional delay is when an applicant intentionally decides not to file a response or intent-to-use document because it no longer wishes to pursue registration of the mark, but later changes its mind and decides that it does wish to pursue registration.

The person signing the statement must have firsthand knowledge of the facts, but it is not necessary to specifically state in the petition that the signatory has firsthand knowledge. Generally, the USPTO will not question the signatory's authority to sign the statement. However, any response to an Office action accompanying the petition (*see* [TMEP §1714.01\(a\)\(i\)-\(ii\)](#)) must be signed by a qualified practitioner, or by the individual applicant or someone with legal authority to bind a juristic applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership) if the applicant is not represented by a qualified practitioner. [37 C.F.R. §§2.62\(b\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(2\)](#), and [11.18\(a\)](#). See [TMEP §§ 611.03\(b\)](#) and [712-712.03](#) regarding signature of responses to Office actions, [TMEP §602](#) regarding persons authorized to represent a party before the USPTO, and [TMEP §§611.06-611.06\(h\)](#) for guidelines on persons with legal authority to bind various types of legal entities.

See also [TMEP §1705.07](#) regarding signature of petitions, and [TMEP §611.01\(c\)](#) regarding signature of documents filed through TEAS.

1714.01(f) Applicability of Unintentional Delay Standard

1714.01(f)(i) Situations Where the Unintentional Delay Standard Applies

The unintentional delay standard of Trademark Rule 2.66 applies only to the “failure” to respond to an examining attorney’s Office action or a notice of allowance. See [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(d\)\(4\)](#), [1062\(b\)](#). This includes the failure to meet minimum filing requirements for a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use.

The minimum filing requirements for a statement of use are listed in [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#): (1) the fee for at least a single class; (2) at least one specimen or facsimile of the mark as used in commerce; and (3) a verification or declaration signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant stating that the mark is in use in commerce.

For a trademark or service mark, the minimum filing requirements for a request for extension of time to file a statement of use are: (1) a verified statement, signed by the applicant or a person properly authorized to sign on behalf of the applicant, that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce; (2) an identification of the goods/services on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce; and (3) payment of the prescribed fee for at least one class of goods or services. *In re El Taurino Rest., Inc.*, 41 USPQ2d 1220, 1222 (Comm’r Pats. 1996); [TMEP §1108.04](#). See [TMEP §1108.04](#) for the minimum filing requirements for an extension request for a collective mark or certification mark.

An applicant who fails to meet the minimum filing requirements for a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use has, in effect, not filed the statement of use or extension request. Therefore, if the failure to meet the minimum filing requirements was unintentional, the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#).

An applicant may also file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) if the applicant timely files a notice of appeal from an examining attorney’s final refusal, but unintentionally fails to include the appeal fee required by [15 U.S.C. §1070](#).

1714.01(f)(ii) Situations Where the Unintentional Delay Standard Does Not Apply

The unintentional delay standard of Trademark Rule 2.66 applies only to the *failure* to respond to an examining attorney’s Office action or a notice of allowance. [15 U.S.C. §§1051\(d\)\(4\)](#) and [1062\(b\)](#).

1714.01(f)(ii)(A) Examining Attorney’s Holding of Abandonment for Failure to File Complete Response to Office Action

The unintentional delay standard of [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) does *not* apply to an application that is abandoned for filing an incomplete response to an examining attorney’s Office action. Incomplete responses to examining attorneys’ Office actions are governed by [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)-\(a\)\(2\)](#), which gives the examining attorney discretion to grant an applicant 30 days, or to the end of the six-month response period set forth in the previous Office action, whichever is longer, to perfect the response pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)\(2\)](#). If the examining attorney holds the application abandoned for failure to file a complete response to an Office

action, the applicant may file a petition to the Director to review the examining attorney's action under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). The Director will reverse the examining attorney's action only if there is clear error or an abuse of discretion. See [TMEP §1713](#).

A request for reconsideration of a final refusal (see [TMEP §§715.03–715.03\(c\)](#)) that does not meet all legal requirements and is not accompanied by a proper notice of appeal will be treated as an incomplete response to the final Office action. If the examining attorney denies the request for reconsideration, the time for filing a notice of appeal runs from the issuance date of the final action. [TMEP §715.03\(c\)](#). If the time for appeal has expired and the application is abandoned for an incomplete response, the applicant may not file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). The applicant may file a petition to the Director to review the examining attorney's action under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP §1713](#) regarding petitions to reverse a holding of abandonment for an incomplete response.

1714.01(f)(ii)(B) Examining Attorney's Refusal of Registration on Ground That Applicant Did Not Meet Statutory Requirements Before Expiration of Deadline for Filing Statement of Use

If the applicant unintentionally fails to meet the minimum requirements for *filing* a statement of use, as set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), the applicant may file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#). However, the applicant may not file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) if the applicant met the minimum filing requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(c\)](#), but the examining attorney later refuses registration on the ground that the applicant failed to satisfy the statutory requirements for a *complete* statement of use ([15 U.S.C. §1051\(d\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.88\(b\)](#)) on or before the statutory deadline (e.g., because the specimen is unacceptable or the dates of use are subsequent to the deadline for filing the statement of use). The applicant may appeal the examining attorney's refusal of registration to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. See [TMEP §1109.16\(a\)](#) regarding the requirements that must be met within the statutory period for filing the statement of use.

1714.01(f)(ii)(C) Goods/Services Omitted from Statement of Use or Request for Extension of Time to File a Statement of Use

If the applicant lists the goods/services/classes in a statement of use or request for an extension of time to file a statement of use, and omits any goods or services that were listed in the notice of allowance, the USPTO will presume these goods/services to be deleted. The applicant may not thereafter request that the goods/services be reinserted in the application. [37 C.F.R. §§2.88\(b\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#), [2.89\(f\)](#); [TMEP §§1108.02\(d\)](#), [1109.13](#). In these situations, the applicant may not file a petition under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) claiming unintentional delay in filing a statement of use or extension request for the omitted goods/services.

1714.01(f)(ii)(D) Registered Marks

Trademark Rule 2.66 applies only to abandoned applications, not to registered marks. If a registrant fails to timely respond to an Office action regarding a §8 affidavit, §71 affidavit, or §9 renewal application, the registrant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §§2.146\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [2.148](#) to waive a rule and accept a late response. However, the Director will waive a rule only in an extraordinary situation, where justice requires, and no other party is injured. The Director has no authority to waive a statutory requirement. See [TMEP §1708](#) regarding the waiver of rules. Failure to receive the post registration Office action may be considered an extraordinary situation.

See [TMEP §§1712.02–1712.02\(b\)](#) regarding requests to reinstate cancelled or expired registrations.

1714.01(f)(ii)(E) Dismissal of Appeal for Failure to File a Brief

An applicant cannot file a petition to revive under [37 C.F.R. §2.66](#) if an application is abandoned because the Board dismisses an appeal for failure to file a brief. In this situation, the applicant may file a motion with the Board to set aside the dismissal and accept a late-filed brief. See [TBMP §1203.02\(a\)](#). If the Board denies this motion, the applicant may file a petition to the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#), asking the Director to reverse the Board's order. The petition must be filed within thirty days of the issuance date of the Board's order. [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(e\)\(2\)](#). The Director will reverse the Board's action only if the Board clearly erred or abused its discretion.

1714.01(g) Request for Reconsideration of Denial of Petition to Revive

Under [37 C.F.R. §2.66\(f\)](#), if a petition to revive is denied, the applicant may request reconsideration by: (1) filing the request for reconsideration within two months of the issuance date of the decision denying the petition; and (2) paying a second petition fee under [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). See [TMEP §1705.08](#).

1715 Letters of Protest in Pending Applications

A letter of protest is an informal procedure created by and existing at the discretion of the USPTO, whereby third parties may bring to the attention of the USPTO evidence bearing on the registrability of a mark. The letter of protest procedure applies only to pending applications and is intended to aid in examination without causing undue delay and without compromising the integrity and objectivity of the ex parte examination process. See *In re BPJ Enter's., Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1375 (Comm'r Pats. 1988); *In re Pohn*, 3 USPQ2d 1700 (Comm'r Pats. 1987).

Letters of protest are reviewed in the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy ("Deputy Commissioner") to determine whether the submitted information should be given to the examining attorney for consideration. To preserve the integrity and objectivity of the ex parte examination process, the letter of protest never becomes part of the application file and the Deputy Commissioner acts on the letter of protest without consulting with the examining attorney. The Deputy Commissioner considers only the record in the application and the evidence submitted by the protestor. *BPJ Enter's.*, 7 USPQ2d at 1378.

If a third party attempts to contact an examining attorney regarding a letter of protest, the examining attorney will refer the third party to the Deputy Commissioner's Office. If an examining attorney receives a letter of protest, the letter will be referred to the Deputy Commissioner's Office for consideration. If the letter of protest is mistakenly entered in the record as a document received from the applicant, all evidence of that receipt will be expunged from the application record.

The Deputy Commissioner will accept a letter of protest filed before publication where it is determined that the evidence is relevant and supports any reasonable ground for refusal appropriate in ex parte examination. The Deputy Commissioner will accept a letter of protest filed after publication only if the protestor submits prima facie evidence supporting a refusal of registration, such that publication of the mark without consideration of the issue and evidence presented in the letter of protest was a clear error (see [TMEP §706.01](#)) by the USPTO. See [TMEP §§1715.02](#) and [1715.03–1715.03\(e\)](#).

1715.01 Appropriate and Inappropriate Subjects to Be Raised in Letter of Protest

Only issues and evidence relevant to a ground for refusing registration during the ex parte examination of an application are appropriate subjects for a letter of protest. It is inappropriate to use the letter of protest

procedure to delay registration or to present purely adversarial arguments. The USPTO denies letters of protest that merely present adversarial arguments that registration should be refused. Adversarial arguments in letters of protest are not sent to the examining attorney. These objections to registration should be made in an opposition proceeding after publication or, in the case of the Supplemental Register, a cancellation proceeding after registration. The letter of protest procedure may not be used to circumvent the requirements for filing an opposition. The USPTO also denies letters of protest that do not include factual, objective evidence.

1715.01(a) Issues Appropriate as Subjects of Letters of Protest

Appropriate subjects for letters of protest concern issues that the examining attorney has the authority and resources to pursue to a legal conclusion without further intervention by third parties. The following are examples of the most common areas of protest:

- (1) A third party files an objection to the registration of a term because it is allegedly generic or descriptive. The objection must be accompanied by *evidence* of genericness or descriptiveness. The evidence should be objective, independent, and factual evidence that the examining attorney may use to support the suggested refusal. Personal opinions are subjective and may be self-serving, and are not forwarded to the examining attorney. If the letter of protest is accepted, the examining attorney is informed that an objection to registration has been filed on the ground that the mark is generic or descriptive, and is given a copy of any factual evidence submitted with the letter of protest.
- (2) A third party notifies the USPTO of the existence of a federally registered mark or prior-pending application and alleges that there is a likelihood of confusion between this mark and the mark in the application that is the subject of the letter of protest. If the letter of protest is accepted, the examining attorney is notified that an objection to the registration of the mark has been made on the ground of an alleged likelihood of confusion with a registered mark or prior pending application, and is referred to the registration or application information as it appears in the automated records of the USPTO.
- (3) A third party files a request that prosecution of an application be suspended because of pending litigation claiming infringement based on the applicant's use of the applied-for mark. The litigation must be specifically identified and a copy of the relevant pleadings must be enclosed. The litigation must involve a federally registered mark or prior pending application of the protestor, and the protestor must allege that there is a likelihood of confusion between this mark and the mark in the application that is the subject of the letter of protest. Normally, a court proceeding is not considered relevant to the registrability of a mark unless the remedy requested in the proceeding is cancellation, abandonment, or amendment of the application that is the subject of the letter of protest. If the letter of protest is accepted, the examining attorney is informed that a request for suspension has been received based on an alleged likelihood of confusion with a registered mark or prior pending application that is the subject of pending litigation. Copies of the relevant pleadings are placed in the record.
- (4) A third party notifies the USPTO that registered marks are being used inappropriately in identifications of goods and services, mark descriptions, or other application data fields for particular applications. (*See* [TMEP §1402.09](#).)
- (5) A third party notifies the USPTO of the existence of a subsequently filed U.S. application and alleges that the application contains a proper claim of priority under §44(d) to which the third party is entitled and that there is a likelihood of confusion between its mark and the mark in a prior-filed application that is the subject of the letter of protest. *See* TMEP §§ [1003.05](#) and [1904.01\(e\)](#).
- (6) A third party notifies the USPTO of the serial number of an application filed under §66(a) with an earlier filing date or a priority claim to which the third party is entitled and that there is a likelihood of confusion between its mark and the mark in the application that is the subject of the letter of

protest, even if the §66(a) application was not entered into the Trademark database at the time the application that is the subject of the letter of protest was examined. See [TMEP §§1904.01\(b\)](#) and [1904.01\(e\)](#).

- (7) A third party notifies the USPTO that the foreign application relied upon as the basis for a claim of priority under §44(d) is not the first application filed in a treaty country and provides evidence of the existence of an earlier-filed foreign registration or pending foreign application. See [TMEP §1003.01](#).

1715.01(b) Issues Inappropriate as Subjects of Letters of Protest

The following are examples of issues that are *not* appropriate to raise in letters of protest:

- A third party claims earlier common-law use of a trademark but does not have a federal registration or previously filed pending application for that mark. The examining attorney can only consider registrations and prior-pending applications when determining likelihood of confusion. Earlier common-law use, state registrations, and other claims based on evidence other than federal registrations and prior-pending applications for federal registration are not appropriate for presentation to examining attorneys during ex parte examination.
- A third party claims that the applicant is not the proper owner of the mark. This issue requires proof that is beyond the scope of authority of an examining attorney to require during ex parte examination. *In re Apple Computer, Inc.*, 57 USPQ2d 1823 (Comm'r Pats. 1998).
- Numerous third parties set forth the opinion that the mark should not register, but do not offer any evidence or legal reason to support the refusal. The letter of protest procedure should not be used as a means for expressing public opinion about a particular mark. The trademark registration process is governed by statutory laws and federal regulations. Public opinion may not be used to influence the application process; therefore, mass mailings by special-interest groups will not be made part of the record. Letters of protest that raise the same objection to registration submitted by five or more different parties will be considered a mass mailing.
- A third party requests that prosecution of an application be suspended or refused because of pending litigation, but does not provide proof that the pending litigation includes grounds upon which the Office can suspend or refuse registration (e.g., the litigation does not involve a federally registered mark or prior-pending application of the protestor).
- A third party claims that the applicant has committed fraud against the USPTO.

1715.02 Letter of Protest Filed Before Publication

1715.02(a) Standard of Review for Letter of Protest Filed Before Publication

The Deputy Commissioner will accept a letter of protest filed before publication in all cases where it is determined that the evidence is relevant and supports any reasonable ground for refusal appropriate in ex parte examination. The letter of protest will be reviewed and decided upon even if the examining attorney has not yet taken a first action in the application that is the subject of the letter of protest. Upon acceptance of a letter of protest, the Deputy Commissioner will forward the relevant evidence (but not the letter of protest itself) to the examining attorney. Letters of protest filed before publication will be denied if they merely present purely adversarial arguments, or are otherwise inappropriate.

A letter of protest filed before publication but reviewed by the Deputy Commissioner after publication will be reviewed under the pre-publication standard. See [TMEP §1715.02\(b\)](#).

A letter of protest filed before publication will be dismissed as moot when the issue raised has already been considered by the examining attorney unless: (1) the evidence provided by the protestor is significant additional evidence not currently of record in the application; or (2) the examining attorney clearly erred in his or her consideration of the issue and such error would result in the issuance of a registration in violation of the Trademark Act or applicable rules. See [TMEP §706.01](#) regarding clear error.

1715.02(b) Action by Examining Attorney Before Publication

Under the standard for accepting a pre-publication letter of protest, the examining attorney is *not* required to issue a refusal as a result of the acceptance. The examining attorney is required only to consider the evidence and make an independent determination whether to issue the requirement or refusal requested in the letter of protest. The examining attorney need not inform the applicant that a letter of protest was accepted unless he or she is issuing a refusal based upon the information provided with the letter of protest. The prosecution history of the application will reflect the acceptance of a letter of protest and a memorandum accepting the letter of protest and all relevant evidence will become part of the official record. If the examining attorney decides against issuing the requirement or refusal, the prosecution history of the application in the Trademark database will be updated to indicate “LETTER OF PROTEST EVIDENCE REVIEWED.”

Letters of Protest Filed Before Publication but Accepted After Publication

In certain circumstances, a letter of protest filed before publication may not be reviewed by the Deputy Commissioner until after publication or during the period when the USPTO cannot withdraw the mark from publication. Such letters are reviewed under the pre-publication standard. If accepted and referred to the examining attorney after publication, the examining attorney is not required to issue a refusal or requirement as a result of the acceptance. However, the examining attorney must consult with his or her managing attorney to determine whether a refusal or requirement is warranted.

If it is determined that a refusal or requirement must be made after publication and prior to the filing of a notice of opposition or issuance of a notice of allowance, the examining attorney must request that the Director restore jurisdiction so that the examining attorney may take action on the application. See [TMEP §1504.04](#). If a notice of opposition has been filed, the examining attorney must request that the Board remand the application so that the examining attorney may take the specified action. See [TMEP §1504.05](#).

If the letter of protest concerns a mark in an intent-to-use application where a notice of allowance has issued, the examining attorney has jurisdiction over the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.84\(a\)](#). If the examining attorney determines, after consulting with his or her managing attorney, that a refusal or requirement must be made, and a statement of use has not been filed, before issuing an Office action, he or she must contact the ITU/Divisional Unit to cancel the notice of allowance and refund any fees paid for requests for an extension of time to file a statement of use. See [TMEP §1106.03](#).

If the letter of protest concerns a mark for which a statement of use has been filed, the examining attorney has jurisdiction over the application. If the examining attorney determines, after consulting with his or her managing attorney, that a refusal or requirement must be made, and no action has been taken on the statement of use, he or she must review the statement of use and include any issues relevant to the statement of use in the Office action resulting from the letter of protest. If an Office action regarding the statement of use has already issued, the examining attorney must issue a supplemental action regarding the refusal(s) or requirement(s) resulting from the letter of protest and incorporating by reference or restating any other outstanding refusal(s) or requirement(s).

1715.03 Letters of Protest Filed on the Date of Publication or After Publication

1715.03(a) Standard of Review for Letters of Protest Filed on the Date of Publication or After Publication

When a letter of protest is filed more than 30 days after the date of publication, the letter of protest will generally be denied as untimely. See [TMEP §1715.03\(b\)](#).

When a letter of protest is filed on the date of publication or within 30 days after the date of publication, the letter of protest will be accepted only where publication of the mark constituted clear error, because the evidence included with the letter of protest establishes a prima facie case for refusal of registration. *In re BPJ Enter's. Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1375, 1379 (Comm'r Pats. 1988). If evidence is not included, the letter of protest will be denied. The USPTO also denies letters of protest that merely present adversarial arguments that registration should be refused. See [TMEP §706.01](#) regarding clear error and [TMEP §1715.04](#) regarding the nature of relevant evidence.

Letters of protest regarding applications that will issue on the Supplemental Register must be submitted as soon as possible after the filing of the application. If the subject application enters the phase where it cannot be withdrawn from issue while consideration of the letter of protest is pending, the protest will be dismissed as untimely. The Office cannot consider a letter of protest after registration.

1715.03(b) Timely Filing of Letter of Protest

The most appropriate time for filing a letter of protest is before publication of a mark, because the purpose of the letter of protest is to assist the USPTO in the examination of an application for registration by bringing to its attention evidence that may support a refusal of registration. Letters of protest filed more than 30 days after publication are generally denied as untimely, because a letter of protest filed after publication may delay the registration process significantly. *In re BPJ Enter's. Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1375, 1378 (Comm'r Pats. 1988). This applies to all applications, including intent-to-use applications under [15 U.S.C. §1051\(b\)](#). *In re G. Heileman Brewing Co., Inc.*, 34 USPQ2d 1476, 1478 (Comm'r Pats. 1994).

Exceptions to the 30-day rule are made only in special circumstances. *In re Pohn*, 3 USPQ2d 1700, 1703 (Comm'r Pats. 1987). For example, where the protestor could not earlier have obtained the information provided, a letter of protest may be accepted. Special circumstances may be established upon a showing that all of the evidence provided in the letter of protest was not in existence prior to publication, but to justify accepting such a letter of protest, the evidence must establish a prima facie case for refusal. However, the fact that a specimen was not of record prior to publication would not by itself be considered a special circumstance that would support allowing a letter of protest more than 30 days after publication.

If a letter of protest is filed against an application that is the subject of a request for extension of protection of an international registration under Trademark Act §66(a), in addition to meeting the timeliness standards set forth above for all letters of protest, it must also satisfy the timeliness requirements for refusals under Trademark Act §68(c) and Article 5 of the Madrid Protocol. In essence, a letter of protest against a §66(a) application must be filed before the 18-month deadline after the application was transmitted to the USPTO from the IB. A letter of protest will be dismissed if it is more than 18 months from the date the IB transmitted the protested application to the USPTO. See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

Filing a request for extension of time to oppose does not extend the 30-day deadline for filing a letter of protest.

The letter of protest procedure applies *only* to pending applications. The Director has no authority to cancel a registration in order to consider a letter of protest. Therefore, a letter of protest will be denied as untimely if the mark registers before issuance of the decision on the letter. Once the mark has registered, the protestor's remedy is to file a petition to cancel with the Board.

1715.03(c) Jurisdiction of Application when a Letter of Protest Is Accepted After Publication

As a general rule, after publication, the examining attorney does not have jurisdiction to act on an application. [TMEP §1504.04](#). Therefore, upon acceptance of a letter of protest filed after publication and before issuance of the registration or notice of allowance, the Commissioner for Trademarks will restore jurisdiction of the application to the examining attorney. The Commissioner will also restore jurisdiction when a letter of protest is accepted and an extension of time to file an opposition has been filed. However, if an opposition has been instituted, the Board has jurisdiction over the application. [TMEP §1504.02](#). Therefore, upon request, the Board will generally restore jurisdiction and remand the application to the examining attorney. See [TBMP §215](#) for further information concerning the effect of a letter of protest when an opposition or request for extension of time to oppose has been filed.

If the letter of protest concerns a mark in an intent-to-use application where a notice of allowance has issued, the examining attorney has jurisdiction. [37 C.F.R. §2.84\(a\)](#). If the Deputy Commissioner determines that the letter of protest should be accepted and a statement of use has not been filed, the USPTO will cancel the notice of allowance and refund any fees paid for requests for an extension of time to file a statement of use.

Formal restoration of jurisdiction by the Commissioner is unnecessary. [TMEP §1106.03](#). Furthermore, if a statement of use has been filed, the examining attorney has jurisdiction and must review the statement of use and include any issues relevant to the statement of use in the Office action resulting from the letter of protest. If an Office action regarding the statement of use has already issued, the examining attorney must issue a supplemental action regarding the refusals or requirements resulting from the letter of protest and incorporating by reference or restating any other outstanding refusals or requirements.

1715.03(d) Action by Examining Attorney After Publication

If the USPTO accepts a letter of protest filed on the date of publication or after publication, the examining attorney must issue the refusal or requirement, except in unusual circumstances. The examining attorney must inform the applicant that a letter of protest was accepted. If the notice of allowance was cancelled, the examining attorney must so inform the applicant. Before issuing the Office action with the refusal or requirement, the examining attorney must have the action reviewed by his or her managing attorney.

However, the acceptance of the letter of protest is not a final determination by the USPTO that registration must be refused. In unusual circumstances, the examining attorney may discover additional evidence that would justify approval of the application for registration after acceptance of a letter of protest, or the applicant may overcome the refusal or satisfy the requirement. If a letter of protest is accepted after publication and the examining attorney later determines that the mark should be approved for issuance of a registration or notice of allowance, the examining attorney must obtain permission from the Administrator for Trademark Policy and Procedure ("Administrator") before approving the application for issue. After conferring with the Administrator, an appropriate Note to the File must be entered in the record.

1715.03(e) Letter of Protest Does Not Stay or Extend Opposition Period

Filing a letter of protest does not stay or extend the opposition period. Therefore, a party who files a letter of protest after publication should also file a timely request(s) for extension of time to oppose under [15](#)

[U.S.C. §1063](#) with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. See [TBMP §215](#) for further information. The Board will not suspend a potential opposer's time to file a notice of opposition because a letter of protest has been filed. See notice at [68 Fed. Reg. 55748, 55760](#) (Sept. 26, 2003).

1715.04 Information for Parties Filing Letter of Protest

Third parties who object to the registration of a mark in a pending application must never contact an examining attorney directly, either by telephone or in writing. Instead, they may submit a written request to the USPTO entitled "LETTER OF PROTEST." The letter of protest should include only a simple statement of the proposed legal grounds for refusing registration or issuing a requirement, with succinct, factual, objective evidence to support the refusal or requirement, and should not include arguments.

Because letters of protest are not part of the official application record, they must be properly designated and submitted to the USPTO. In order to ensure their proper routing and processing, the Office recommends that letters of protest be filed electronically via the Trademark Electronic Application System ("TEAS"). A separate letter of protest, including relevant evidence, must be filed for each individual application that is being protested. See [TMEP §1715.04\(a\), \(b\)](#) regarding the nature and format of evidence to be included with a Letter of Protest. In TEAS, the Letter of Protest form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled "Petition Forms" at <http://www.uspto.gov/trademarks/teas/>. Otherwise, letters of protest should be faxed to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy to the following fax number: 571-273-0032. This is the only fax number that may be used. Letters of protest may not be submitted by e-mail. Failure to submit the letter of protest properly may result in it being considered untimely.

Letters of protest with significant amounts of evidence may be sent via the United States Postal Service as first class mail, and addressed as follows:

Letter of Protest
ATTN: Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, VA 22314-5793

Duplicate copies of letters of protest regarding the same application should not be sent (e.g., once electronically and then by mail or fax). Submission of duplicate documents can delay processing.

Submissions relating to a letter of protest, including requests for copies of letters of protest (*see* [TMEP §1715.05](#)), should not include a request for a return receipt. If a protestor hand delivers the letter of protest or uses a private courier service, the letter of protest must be delivered to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy at the Trademark Assistance Center, James Madison Building - East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, and be clearly identified as a letter of protest.

A protestor will always receive a response from the Deputy Commissioner accepting, denying, or holding moot the letter of protest, and should generally receive the response within 60 days of filing the letter. The protestor should monitor the application status by checking the TSDR database at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine whether an action accepting the letter of protest has been taken. This information will be in the public record only if the letter of protest is accepted. If a protestor has not received a response within six months of submitting a letter of protest, the protestor should contact the Petitions Office to confirm receipt of the letter of protest.

Protestors should continue to monitor the status of the application being protested because the application may be approved for publication, republication, or issuance of a registration even after a letter of protest is accepted. Ongoing monitoring will ensure protestors the opportunity to take other action (such as filing a notice of opposition) if the refusal or requirement raised as a result of the evidence referred by the letter of protest procedure is successfully overcome by the applicant. A protestor may file a second letter of protest after publication only if a substantially different basis for filing the letter of protest is raised or significant additional evidence is provided that clearly establishes a prima facie case for refusal of registration.

1715.04(a) Types of Evidence Appropriate for Letter of Protest

If the letter of protest is accepted, only evidence relevant to examination of the mark, or the registration numbers or pending application serial numbers raised as potential bars to registration, are forwarded to the examining attorney. If such evidence is not included, the letter of protest will be denied. See [TMEP §1715.04\(b\)](#) regarding the amount and format of evidence for letters of protest.

Note that a letter of protest should not include information or evidence concerning prior use, actual confusion, or fraudulent activity. These are not appropriate grounds for refusing registration during ex parte examination and must be addressed in an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or a civil court.

The type of evidence relevant to the examination of the mark depends upon the nature of the objection raised. For example, if an objection is filed on the basis that a mark, or portion of a mark, is descriptive or generic, the protestor must submit factual, objective evidence, such as descriptive or generic use by others or excerpts from the dictionary showing the meaning of the mark. Merely submitting a list of web sites is not sufficient, and a letter of protest that only includes such a list will be denied. If third-party registrations are offered to show that the mark or a portion of the mark is descriptive, generic, or so commonly used that the public will look to other elements to distinguish the source of the goods or services, a mere list of the registrations or copy of a search report is not proper evidence of such registrations. Rather, copies of the registrations or the electronic equivalent thereof (i.e., printouts or electronic copies of the registrations taken from the electronic Trademark database of the USPTO) must be submitted. See [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#).

Generally, if an objection is based on a likelihood of confusion with existing federally registered marks or prior pending applications, and the goods and/or services are identical, third parties need only submit the relevant registration or application serial number(s). If the goods and/or services are not identical, evidence of the relatedness of the goods and/or services must be included or the letter of protest generally will be denied. Such evidence may include advertisements showing that the relevant goods/services are advertised together or sold by the same manufacturer or copies of registrations showing that such goods/services emanate from the same source. Note that a list of registration numbers, a chart containing the registration numbers and identified goods/services, or a copy of a search report is not proper evidence to show the relatedness of the goods or services in the registrations. Rather, copies of the registrations or the electronic equivalent thereof (i.e., printouts or electronic copies of the registrations taken from the electronic database of the USPTO) must be submitted. However, third-party registrations not based on use in commerce have little, if any, persuasive value and generally will not be forwarded to the examining attorney for consideration of the relatedness of the goods and services. See [TMEP §1207.01\(d\)\(iii\)](#). In addition, where a protestor wants to establish that its goods or services are related to those in the application(s) for which it is submitting the letter of protest, such evidence must pertain to the goods or services identified in the application. Evidence regarding how the protestor is using its mark for goods or services not identified in the registration or prior-pending application that form the basis for the letter of protest, or information regarding how the applicant is using or may use its mark in commerce in the future that varies from the scope of the identification in the application, is inappropriate and will not be forwarded to the examining attorney.

1715.04(b) Amount and Format of Evidence for Letter of Protest

The letter of protest process is intended to provide an opportunity for the protestor to efficiently and effectively point the Office to relevant evidence in support of the proposed legal grounds for refusing registration identified in the letter of protest. It is inappropriate for the protestor to “dump” evidence and leave it to the Office to figure out its possible relevance. Therefore, the evidence submitted with the letter of protest should be succinct, not duplicative, and culled down to the most relevant evidence. For example, where numerous examples of relevant third-party registrations or web pages exist, it is unnecessary to provide them all; generally the most relevant ten to fifteen examples should be submitted. More than fifteen examples generally will be considered duplicative and unnecessary and may result in the letter of protest being denied without further consideration on the merits.

If the protestor seeks to bring multiple registration or application serial numbers to the attention of the examining attorney, a chart listing the registration or serial numbers, the marks, and the goods and/or services must be included. Such a chart must be provided on plain paper (not letterhead) or a PDF file with a plain background. To maintain the integrity of the ex parte examination process, the chart must not identify the protestor or its representatives or contain any arguments or persuasive language.

It should be a rare situation in which more than 75 pages of evidence is necessary to support the proposed legal grounds for refusal, and a letter of protest accompanied by more than 75 pages of evidence will be denied without consideration on the merits unless it complies with the requirements described below. First, the letter of protest must contain a detailed explanation why more than 75 pages of evidence is necessary. Second, the letter of protest must be accompanied by a separate itemized index.

The index must be provided on plain paper (not letterhead), or a PDF file with a plain background, and contain a concise factual description of each category or form of evidence included. If any item of evidence attached to the letter of protest consists of multiple pages, the index must specifically identify the page on which the evidence appears and must highlight the relevant portion of the page. To maintain the integrity of the ex parte examination process, the index must not identify the protestor or its representatives or contain any arguments or persuasive language.

Although an index is required for evidentiary submissions exceeding 75 pages, the Office strongly encourages the use of an index in all letters of protest that contain multiple forms of evidence as it aids in the consideration of the details of all the evidence provided by the protestor.

1715.05 Requests for Copy of Letter of Protest

Any party who requests a copy of a letter of protest should mail the request to the Office of the Commissioner for Trademarks, P.O. Box 1451, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1451 or fax the request to 571-273-0032. All requests should be directed to the attention of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy.

Upon review of the letter of protest material, the Deputy Commissioner will usually forward a copy of the letter of protest and its attachment to the requester. The Deputy Commissioner will deny the request for a copy of the letter of protest only if the letter of protest itself or its attachments contain material that would potentially be exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act (“FOIA”). If, in the opinion of the Deputy Commissioner, any part of the letter of protest or its attachments should be exempt from disclosure under FOIA, the matter will be forwarded to the Office of General Counsel of the USPTO for further review.

1715.06 Recourse After Denial of Letter of Protest

If the Deputy Commissioner denies a letter of protest, the protestor may pursue remedies otherwise available, such as an opposition proceeding, if the protestor complies with all relevant requirements and deadlines. Filing a letter of protest does not stay or extend the time for filing a notice of opposition. [TMEP §1715.03\(b\)](#).

The protestor may not file a request for reconsideration of the denial of the letter of protest with the Deputy Commissioner, because the request would unduly delay final disposition of the application. *In re BPJ Enter's. Ltd.*, 7 USPQ2d 1375, 1378 (Comm'r Pats. 1988). However, the protestor may petition the Director to review the Deputy Commissioner's decision to deny the letter of protest under [37 C.F.R. §2.146\(a\)\(3\)](#).

The Deputy Commissioner has broad discretion in determining whether to accept a letter of protest. In any petition to review the denial of a letter of protest, the Deputy Commissioner's action will be reversed only where there has been a clear error or abuse of this broad discretion. *In re Pohn*, 3 USPQ2d 1700, 1702 (Comm'r Pats. 1987).

The protestor may not present additional evidence with the petition. On petition, the Director will consider only the evidence that was properly before the Deputy Commissioner in acting on the letter of protest. *BPJ Enter's.*, 7 USPQ2d at 1378.

Chapter 1800 Public Inquiries About Applications and Registrations

1801	Office Personnel May Not Express Opinion on Validity of Registered Trademark
1801.01	Office Personnel Cannot Testify
1802	Congressional and Other Official Inquiries
1803	Freedom of Information Act Requests
1804	Inquiries from Members of the Press
1805	General Inquiries from the Public
1806	Contacts with Third Parties Regarding Ex Parte Matters
1807	United States Patent and Trademark Office World Wide Web Page

1801 Office Personnel May Not Express Opinion on Validity of Registered Trademark

A certificate of registration of a mark on the Principal Register is prima facie evidence of the validity of the registration. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(b\)](#). Public policy demands that every employee of the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) refuse to express to any person any opinion as to the validity of any registered mark, except to the extent necessary to carry out inter partes proceedings at the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in cancellation and similar proceedings authorized by law.

The question of the validity of a registered mark is otherwise exclusively a matter to be determined by a court. Members of the Trademark Examining Operation are cautioned to be especially wary of any inquiry from any person outside the USPTO, including an employee of another Government agency, the answer to which might indicate that a particular registration should not have been published or issued.

An employee of the USPTO, particularly a trademark examining attorney who examined an application, should not discuss or answer inquiries from any person outside the USPTO as to whether a certain registration or particular evidence was considered during the examination of the application, or whether a mark would have been published or registered if the registration or other evidence had been considered during the examination. Likewise, employees should not answer any inquiry concerning any entry in a registration file, including the extent of the field of search. The record of the file of a registration or inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board must speak for itself.

Employees should refuse to discuss these matters with members of the public, and this refusal should not be considered discourteous. Practitioners should not make improper inquiries of members of the Trademark Examining Operation.

See [TMEP §1806](#) regarding contacts with third parties about ex parte matters.

1801.01 Office Personnel Cannot Testify

37 CFR Part 104

Subpart A--General Provisions

37 CFR §104.1 Definitions.

Demand means a request, order, or subpoena for testimony or documents for use in a legal proceeding.

Director means the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office (*see* §1.9(j)).

Document means any record, paper, and other property held by the Office, including without limitation, official letters, telegrams, memoranda, reports, studies, calendar and diary entries, maps, graphs, pamphlets, notes, charts, tabulations, analyses, statistical or informational accumulations, any kind of summaries of meetings and conversations, film impressions, magnetic tapes, and sound or mechanical reproductions.

Employee means any current or former officer or employee of the Office.

Legal proceeding means any pretrial, trial, and posttrial stages of existing or reasonably anticipated judicial or administrative actions, hearings, investigations, or similar proceedings before courts, commissions, boards or other tribunals, foreign or domestic. This phrase includes all phases of discovery as well as responses to formal or informal requests by attorneys or others involved in legal proceedings.

Office means the United States Patent and Trademark Office, including any operating unit in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, and its predecessors, the Patent Office and the Patent and Trademark Office.

Official business means the authorized business of the Office.

General Counsel means the General Counsel of the Office.

Testimony means a statement in any form, including personal appearances before a court or other legal tribunal, interviews, depositions, telephonic, televised, or videotaped statements or any responses given during discovery or similar proceedings, which response would involve more than the production of documents, including a declaration under [35 U.S.C. 25](#) or [28 U.S.C. 1746](#).

United States means the Federal Government, its departments and agencies, individuals acting on behalf of the Federal Government, and parties to the extent they are represented by the United States.

37 CFR §104.2 Address for mail and service; telephone number.

(a) Mail under this part should be addressed to General Counsel, United States Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, VA 22215.

(b) Service by hand should be made during business hours to the Office of the General Counsel, 10B20, Madison Building East, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia.

(c) The Office of the General Counsel may be reached by telephone at 571-272-7000 during business hours.

37 CFR §104.3 Waiver of rules.

In extraordinary situations, when the interest of justice requires, the General Counsel may waive or suspend the rules of this part, sua sponte or on petition of an interested party to the Director, subject to such requirements as the General Counsel may impose. Any petition must be accompanied by a petition fee of \$130.00.

37 CFR §104.4 Relationship of this Part to the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure.

Nothing in this part waives or limits any requirement under the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure.

Subpart B--Service of Process

37 CFR §104.11 Scope and purpose.

(a) This subpart sets forth the procedures to be followed when a summons and complaint is served on the Office or on the Director or an employee in his or her official capacity.

(b) This subpart is intended, and should be construed, to ensure the efficient administration of the Office and not to impede any legal proceeding.

(c) This subpart does not apply to subpoenas, the procedures for which are set out in subpart C.

(d) This subpart does not apply to service of process made on an employee personally on matters not related to official business of the Office or to the official responsibilities of the employee.

37 CFR §104.12 Acceptance of service of process.

(a) Any summons and complaint to be served in person or by registered or certified mail or as otherwise authorized by law on the Office, on the Director, or on an employee in his or her official capacity, shall be served as indicated in §104.2.

(b) Any employee of the Office served with a summons and complaint shall immediately notify, and shall deliver the summons and complaint to, the Office of the General Counsel.

(c) Any employee receiving a summons and complaint shall note on the summons and complaint the date, hour, and place of service and whether service was by hand or by mail.

(d) When a legal proceeding is brought to hold an employee personally liable in connection with an action taken in the conduct of official business, rather than liable in an official capacity, the employee by law is to be served personally with process. *See* Fed. R. Civ. P. 4(e). An employee sued personally for an action taken in the conduct of official business shall immediately notify and deliver a copy of the summons and complaint to the General Counsel.

(e) An employee sued personally in connection with official business may be represented by the Department of Justice at its discretion (28 CFR 50.15 and 50.16).

(f) The Office will only accept service of process for an employee in the employee's official capacity.

Subpart C--Employee Testimony and Production of Documents in Legal Proceedings**37 CFR §104.21 Scope and purpose.**

(a) This subpart sets forth the policies and procedures of the Office regarding the testimony of employees as witnesses in legal proceedings and the production or disclosure of information contained in Office documents for use in legal proceedings pursuant to a demand.

(b) Exceptions. This subpart does not apply to any legal proceeding in which:

(1) An employee is to testify regarding facts or events that are unrelated to official business; or

(2) A former employee is to testify as an expert in connection with a particular matter in which the former employee did not participate personally while at the Office.

37 CFR §104.22 Demand for testimony or production of documents.

(a) Whenever a demand for testimony or for the production of documents is made upon an employee, the employee shall immediately notify the Office of the General Counsel at the telephone number or addresses in §104.2 and make arrangements to send the subpoena to the General Counsel promptly.

(b) An employee may not give testimony, produce documents, or answer inquiries from a person not employed by the Office regarding testimony or documents subject to a demand or a potential demand under the provisions of this subpart without the approval of the General Counsel. The General Counsel may authorize the provision of certified copies not otherwise available under Part 1 of this title subject to payment of applicable fees under §1.19.

(c)(1) Demand for testimony or documents. A demand for the testimony of an employee under this subpart shall be addressed to the General Counsel as indicated in §104.2.

(2) Subpoenas. A subpoena for employee testimony or for a document shall be served in accordance with the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure or applicable state procedure, and a copy of the subpoena shall be sent to the General Counsel as indicated in §104.2.

(3) Affidavits. Except when the United States is a party, every demand shall be accompanied by an affidavit or declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746 or [35 U.S.C. 25\(b\)](#) setting forth the title of the legal proceeding, the forum, the requesting party's interest in the legal proceeding, the reason for the demand, a showing that the desired testimony or document is not reasonably available from any other source, and, if testimony is requested, the intended use of the testimony, a general summary of the desired testimony, and a showing that no document could be provided and used in lieu of testimony.

(d) Failure of the attorney to cooperate in good faith to enable the General Counsel to make an informed determination under this subpart may serve as a basis for a determination not to comply with the demand.

(e) A determination under this subpart to comply or not to comply with a demand is not a waiver or an assertion of any other ground for noncompliance, including privilege, lack of relevance, or technical deficiency.

(f) Noncompliance. If the General Counsel makes a determination not to comply, he or she will seek Department of Justice representation for the employee and will attempt to have the subpoena modified or quashed. If Department of Justice representation cannot be arranged, the employee should appear at the time and place set forth in the subpoena. In such a case, the employee should produce a copy of these rules and state that the General Counsel has advised the employee not to provide the requested testimony nor to produce the requested document. If a legal tribunal rules that the demand in the subpoena must be complied with, the employee shall respectfully decline to comply with the demand....

37 CFR §104.23 Expert or opinion testimony.

(a)(1) If the General Counsel authorizes an employee to give testimony in a legal proceeding not involving the United States, the testimony, if otherwise proper, shall be limited to facts within the personal knowledge of the employee. Employees, with or without compensation, shall not provide expert testimony in any legal proceedings regarding Office information, subjects, or activities except on behalf of the United States or a party represented by the United States Department of Justice.

(2) The General Counsel may authorize an employee to appear and give the expert or opinion testimony upon the requester showing, pursuant to §104.3 of this part, that exceptional circumstances warrant such testimony and that the anticipated testimony will not be adverse to the interest of the Office or the United States.

(b)(1) If, while testifying in any legal proceeding, an employee is asked for expert or opinion testimony regarding Office information, subjects, or activities, which testimony has not been approved in advance in writing in accordance with the regulations in this subpart, the witness shall:

- (i) Respectfully decline to answer on the grounds that such expert or opinion testimony is forbidden by this subpart;
- (ii) Request an opportunity to consult with the General Counsel before giving such testimony; and
- (iii) Explain that upon such consultation, approval for such testimony may be provided.

(2) If the tribunal conducting the proceeding then orders the employee to provide expert or opinion testimony regarding Office information, subjects, or activities without the opportunity to consult with the General Counsel, the employee shall respectfully refuse to provide such testimony...

(c) If an employee is unaware of the regulations in this subpart and provides expert or opinion testimony regarding Office information, subjects, or activities in a legal proceeding without the aforementioned consultation, the employee shall, as soon after testifying as possible, inform the General Counsel that such testimony was given and provide a written summary of the expert or opinion testimony provided.

(d) Proceeding where the United States is a party. In a proceeding in which the United States is a party or is representing a party, an employee may not testify as an expert or opinion witness for any party other than the United States.

37 CFR §104.24 Demands or requests in legal proceedings for records protected by confidentiality statutes.

Demands in legal proceedings for the production of records, or for the testimony of employees regarding information protected by the confidentiality provisions of the Patent Act (35 U.S.C. 122), the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a), the Trade Secrets Act (18 U.S.C. 1905), or any other confidentiality statute, must satisfy the requirements for disclosure set forth in those statutes and associated rules before the records may be provided or testimony given.

Subpart D--Employee Indemnification**37 CFR §104.31 Scope.**

The procedure in this subpart shall be followed if a civil action or proceeding is brought, in any court, against an employee (including the employee's estate) for personal injury, loss of property, or death, resulting from the employee's activities while acting within the scope of the employee's office or employment. When the employee is incapacitated or deceased, actions required of an employee should be performed by the employee's executor, administrator, or comparable legal representative.

37 CFR §104.32 Procedure for requesting indemnification.

(a) After being served with process or pleadings in such an action or proceeding, the employee shall within five (5) calendar days of receipt, deliver to the General Counsel all such process and pleadings or an attested true copy thereof, together with a fully detailed report of the circumstances of the incident giving rise to the court action or proceeding.

(b)(1) An employee may request indemnification to satisfy a verdict, judgment, or award entered against that employee only if the employee has timely satisfied the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) No request for indemnification will be considered unless the employee has submitted a written request through the employee's supervisory chain to the General Counsel with:

- (i) Appropriate documentation, including copies of the verdict, judgment, appeal bond, award, or settlement proposal;
- (ii) The employee's explanation of how the employee was acting within the scope of the employee's employment; and
- (iii) The employee's statement of whether the employee has insurance or any other source of indemnification.

Subpart E--Tort Claims

37 CFR §104.41 Procedure for filing claims.

Administrative claims against the Office filed pursuant to the administrative claims provision of the Federal Tort Claims Act (28 U.S.C. 2672) and the corresponding Department of Justice regulations (28 CFR Part 14) shall be filed with the General Counsel as indicated in §104.2.

37 CFR §104.42 Finality of settlement or denial of claims

Only a decision of the Director or the General Counsel regarding settlement or denial of any claim under this subpart may be considered final for the purpose of judicial review.

It is the policy of the USPTO that its employees, including trademark examining attorneys, will not appear as witnesses or give testimony in legal proceedings, except under the conditions specified in 37 C.F.R. Part 104. Any employee who testifies contrary to this policy will be dismissed or removed.

Whenever an employee of the USPTO, including a trademark examining attorney, is asked to testify or receives a subpoena, the employee shall immediately notify the Office of the General Counsel. Inquiries requesting testimony should also be referred immediately to the Office of the General Counsel.

Trademark examining attorneys and other USPTO employees who perform or assist in the performance of quasi-judicial functions, are forbidden to testify as experts or to express opinions as to the validity of any registration.

Any individual desiring the testimony of an employee of the USPTO, including the testimony of a trademark examining attorney or other quasi-judicial employee, must comply with the provisions of 37 C.F.R. Part 104.

A request for testimony of an employee of the USPTO should be made to the Office of the General Counsel at least ten working days prior to the date of the expected testimony.

If an employee is authorized to testify, the employee will be limited to testifying about facts within the employee's personal knowledge. Employees are prohibited from giving expert or opinion testimony.

Fischer & Porter Co. v. Corning Glass Works, 61 F.R.D. 321, 181 USPQ 329 (E.D. Pa. 1974). Likewise, employees are prohibited from answering hypothetical or speculative questions. *Shaffer Tool Works v. Joy Mfg. Co.*, 167 USPQ 170 (S.D. Tex. 1970) (deposition of examiner should be limited to matters of fact and must not go into hypothetical or speculative areas or the bases, reasons, mental processes, analyses, or conclusions of the examiner); *In re Mayewsky*, 162 USPQ 86, 89 (E.D. Va. 1969) (deposition of an examiner must be restricted to relevant matters of fact and must avoid any hypothetical or speculative questions or conclusions). Employees will not be permitted to give testimony with respect to subject matter that is privileged. Several court decisions limit testimony with respect to quasi-judicial functions performed by employees. *U.S. v. Morgan*, 313 U.S. 409, 422 (1941) (improper to inquire into mental processes of quasi-judicial officer or to examine the manner and extent to which the officer considered an administrative record); *Western Electric Co., Inc. v. Piezo Technology, Inc.*, 860 F.2d 428, 8 USPQ2d 1853 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (patent examiner may not be compelled to answer questions that probe the examiner's technical knowledge of the subject matter of a patent); *In re Nilssen*, 851 F.2d 1401, 7 USPQ2d 1500 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (technical or scientific qualifications of examiners-in-chief are not legally relevant in appeal under 35 U.S.C. §134 since board members need not be skilled in the art to render obviousness decision); *McCulloch Gas Processing Co. v. Department of Energy*, 650 F.2d 1216, 1229 (Temp. Emer. Ct. App. 1981) (discovery of degree of expertise of individuals performing governmental functions not permitted); *Lange v. Commissioner*,

352 F. Supp. 116, 176 USPQ 162 (D.D.C. 1972) (technical qualifications of examiners-in-chief not relevant in Sec. 145 action).

In view of the discussion above, if an employee is authorized to testify in connection with the employee's involvement or assistance in a quasi-judicial proceeding that took place before the USPTO, the employee will not be permitted to give testimony in response to questions that seek:

- (1) Information about that employee's:
 - (A) Background.
 - (B) Expertise.
 - (C) Qualifications to examine or otherwise consider a particular patent or trademark application.
 - (D) Usual practice or whether the employee followed a procedure set out in any USPTO manual of practice (including the MPEP or TMEP) in a particular case.
 - (E) Consultation with another USPTO employee.
 - (F) Understanding of:
 - (i) A patented invention, an invention sought to be patented, or patent application, patent, reexamination or interference file.
 - (ii) Prior art.
 - (iii) Registered subject matter, subject matter sought to be registered, or a trademark application, registration, opposition, cancellation, interference or concurrent use file.
 - (iv) Any USPTO manual of practice.
 - (v) USPTO regulations.
 - (vi) Patent, trademark, or other law.
 - (vii) The responsibilities of another USPTO employee.
 - (G) Reliance on particular facts or arguments.
- (2) To inquire into the manner in and extent to which the employee considered or studied material in performing the quasi-judicial function.
- (3) To inquire into the bases, reasons, mental processes, analyses, or conclusions of that USPTO employee in performing the quasi-judicial function.

Any request for testimony addressed or delivered to the Office of the General Counsel must comply with 37 C.F.R. §104.22(c). All requests must be in writing. The need for a subpoena may be obviated where the request complies with 37 C.F.R. §104.22(c) only if the party requesting the testimony meets the following conditions:

- (1) The party requesting the testimony identifies the civil action or other legal proceeding for which the testimony is being taken. The identification shall include:
 - (A) the style of the case,
 - (B) the civil action number,
 - (C) the district in which the civil action is pending,
 - (D) the judge assigned to the case, and
 - (E) the name, address, and telephone number of counsel for all parties in the civil action.
- (2) The party agrees not to ask questions seeking information that is precluded by 37 C.F.R. §104.23.

(3) The party must comply with applicable provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, including Rule 30, and give ten working days notice to the Office of the General Counsel prior to the date a deposition is desired. Fifteen working days notice is required for any deposition that is desired to be taken between November 15 and January 15.

(4) The party agrees to notice the deposition at a place convenient to the USPTO. The Conference Room in the Office of the General Counsel is deemed to be a place convenient to the USPTO.

(5) The party agrees to supply a copy of the transcript of the deposition to the USPTO for its records.

Absent a written agreement meeting the conditions specified in paragraphs (1) through (5), a party must comply with the specific terms of 37 C.F.R. § 104.22(c), and the USPTO will not permit a deposition without issuance of a subpoena.

See notice at 1099 TMOG 44 (February 28, 1989).

1802 Congressional and Other Official Inquiries

Correspondence and inquiries from the White House, Members of Congress, embassies, and heads of Executive departments and agencies normally are cleared by the USPTO's Office of Policy and International Affairs and/or the Office of Governmental Affairs.

Inquiries referred to in this section such as correspondence from embassies, the Office of the U.S. Trade Representative, and the Department of State must immediately be transmitted to the Administrator of the Office of Policy and International Affairs, and a staff member of that office must be notified by phone that such correspondence has been received at 571-272-9300. Inquiries referred to in this section such as correspondence from Congress or the White House must immediately be transmitted to the Director of the Office of Governmental Affairs, and a staff member of that office must be notified by phone that such correspondence has been received at 571-272-7300.

This procedure is used so that there will be uniformity in the handling of contacts from the indicated sources, and also so that compliance with directives of the Department of Commerce is attained.

1803 Freedom of Information Act Requests

Freedom of Information Act ("FOIA") requests should be sent by e-mail to efoia@uspto.gov, or by mail to the following address:

USPTO FOIA Officer
United States Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Such requests may be addressed to the attention of the Freedom of Information Act/Privacy Act Officer.

Copies of final agency decisions of the USPTO and our most frequently requested FOIA documents are available on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

1804 Inquiries from Members of the Press

Inquiries from members of the press should be directed to the Office of Public Affairs, at (571) 272-8400.

1805 General Inquiries from the Public

USPTO employees will gladly answer questions about the procedures for obtaining and maintaining a registration. For general information, callers may telephone the Trademark Assistance Center at (571) 272-9250 or (800) 786-9199. See [TMEP §108.02](#).

However, USPTO employees cannot:

Comment on the validity of registered marks (see [TMEP §1801](#));

Provide a legal opinion on whether a particular mark or type of mark is eligible for registration; or

Offer legal advice or opinions about common law rights in a mark, state registrations, or trademark infringement claims.

For a legal opinion about a trademark matter, a party must consult a private trademark attorney. The USPTO cannot aid in the selection of an attorney. [37 C.F.R. §2.11](#). Private trademark attorneys are generally listed in the yellow pages under the heading “Lawyers, Patent and Trademark,” or “Lawyers, Trademark.”

See [TMEP §104](#) regarding trademark searches.

See [TMEP §1806](#) regarding contacts with third parties about ex parte matters.

1806 Contacts with Third Parties Regarding Ex Parte Matters

An examining attorney or other USPTO employee may not discuss the merits of any particular application or registration with a third party. If a third party attempts to contact an examining attorney about an ex parte matter, either orally or in writing, the examining attorney should refer the third party to the Office of the Deputy Commissioner for Trademark Examination Policy. See [TMEP §§1715 et seq.](#) regarding letters of protest.

An examining attorney may contact those in the relevant trade to obtain generally available information about an industry and its marketing practices, but the inquiry must be limited to eliciting factual information.

It is inappropriate to discuss or request opinions about the registrability of a particular mark. See *In re Lutron Electronics Co. Inc.*, 8 USPQ2d 1701 (Comm'r Pats. 1988).

1807 United States Patent and Trademark Office World Wide Web Page

The USPTO has a website at www.uspto.gov that provides access to a wide variety of information about trademarks and offers electronic filing of trademark applications and other trademark documents. See [TMEP §102](#) for further information.

Chapter 1900 Madrid Protocol

1901	Overview of the Madrid System of International Registration
1902	International Application Originating from the United States
1902.01	Who Can File
1902.02	Minimum Requirements for Date of Receipt of International Application in USPTO
1902.02(a)	Form of International Application
1902.02(b)	Basic Application or Registration Number
1902.02(c)	Name and Address of Applicant
1902.02(d)	Reproduction (Drawing) of Mark
1902.02(e)	Color Claim
1902.02(f)	Identification of Goods/Services
1902.02(f)(i)	House Marks and “Full Line of ...”
1902.02(f)(ii)	Providing a Website/Online Portal
1902.02(g)	Classification in International Applications
1902.02(g)(i)	Reclassifying Goods/Services
1902.02(g)(ii)	United States Classes A, B, and 200
1902.02(g)(iii)	Kits and Gift Baskets
1902.02(h)	List of Contracting Parties
1902.02(i)	Fees
1902.02(j)	Statement of Entitlement
1902.02(k)	Description of Mark
1902.02(l)	Indication of Type of Mark
1902.02(m)	E-Mail Address
1902.03	Certification of International Application by USPTO
1902.03(a)	Petition to Review Refusal to Certify
1902.04	Date of International Registration
1902.05	IB Requirements for Complete International Application
1902.06	Examination of Application by IB
1902.07	Irregularities in International Application
1902.07(a)	Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by the USPTO
1902.07(b)	Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by the Applicant – Applicant Must Respond Directly to the IB
1902.07(b)(i)	Fee Irregularities
1902.07(c)	Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by the Applicant – Applicant Must Respond Through the USPTO
1902.07(c)(i)	Classification of Goods/Services
1902.07(c)(ii)	Identification (Indication) of Goods/Services
1902.07(d)	Other Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by Applicant – Applicant May Respond Directly to the IB or Through the USPTO
1902.07(e)	Filing Response Directly With the IB
1902.07(f)	Responding to Notice of Irregularity Through the USPTO
1902.08	Subsequent Designation - Request for Extension of Protection Subsequent to International Registration
1902.08(a)	USPTO Requirements
1902.08(b)	Form for Filing Subsequent Designation Through the USPTO
1902.08(c)	Fees for Subsequent Designation
1902.08(d)	IB Requirements for Subsequent Designation
1902.08(e)	Irregularities in Subsequent Designation
1902.09	Dependence and “Central Attack”: Restriction, Abandonment, Cancellation, or Expiration of Basic Application or Registration During First 5 Years
1902.10	Transformation When the USPTO Is the Office of Origin
1902.11	Representative

1902.12	USPTO Must Notify IB of Division or Merger of Basic Application or Registration
1903	Payment of Fees
1903.01	Payment of USPTO Fees
1903.02	Payment of International Fees
1904	Request for Extension of Protection of International Registration to the United States
1904.01	Filing Request for Extension of Protection to United States
1904.01(a)	Section 66(a) Basis
1904.01(b)	Filing Date
1904.01(c)	Declaration of Intent to Use Required
1904.01(d)	Use Not Required
1904.01(e)	Priority
1904.01(f)	Filing Fee
1904.01(g)	Constructive Use
1904.01(h)	May Not be Based on USPTO Basic Application or Registration
1904.02	Examination of Request for Extension of Protection to the United States
1904.02(a)	Examined as Regular Application
1904.02(b)	Examination of Classification of Goods/Services in §66(a) Applications
1904.02(c)	Examination of Identification of Goods/Services in §66(a) Applications
1904.02(c)(i)	Acceptable Identifications of Goods/Services
1904.02(c)(ii)	Indefinite Identification of Goods/Services with Acceptable Options Within the Scope of the Class
1904.02(c)(iii)	Indefinite Identification of Goods/Services that Does Not Include Any Goods/Services Within the Class
1904.02(c)(iv)	Examination of Proposed Amendments and Issuance of Final Requirements for an Acceptable Identification
1904.02(c)(v)	Effect of Indicated Classes – No Precedential Value on Later-Filed Applications
1904.02(d)	Examination Issues Specific to Certification and Collective Marks
1904.02(e)	Corrections and Limitations to the International Registration
1904.02(e)(i)	Corrections
1904.02(e)(ii)	Limitations
1904.02(e)(iii)	Limitations vs. Amendments
1904.02(f)	Mark Must Be Registrable on Principal Register
1904.02(g)	Refusal Must Be Made Within 18 Months
1904.02(h)	Office Actions and Responses
1904.02(i)	Correspondence Address
1904.02(j)	Mark May Not Be Amended
1904.02(k)	Drawings and Descriptions of the Mark
1904.02(l)	Jurisdiction
1904.03	Notice of Refusal
1904.03(a)	Notice Must Be Sent Within 18 Months
1904.03(b)	Requirements for Notice of Refusal
1904.03(c)	§66(a) Applicant Must Respond to Notification of Refusal
1904.03(d)	Refusal Pertaining to Less than All the Goods/Services
1904.03(e)	Confirmation or Withdrawal of Provisional Refusal
1904.03(f)	Notification of Correction in the International Register with Respect to a Pending Request for Extension of Protection
1904.03(g)	Notification of Limitation of the List of Goods/Services with Respect to a Pending Request for Extension of Protection
1904.04	Opposition

1904.05	Certificate of Extension of Protection
1904.06	Assignment of Extension of Protection to the United States
1904.07	Invalidation of Protection in United States
1904.07(a)	Invalidation Resulting From Cancellation Due to Third-Party Challenge
1904.07(b)	Invalidation Resulting From Cancellation for Failure to File §71 Affidavit or Declaration
1904.07(c)	Invalidation Resulting From Voluntary Surrender of Registered Extension of Protection
1904.07(d)	Issuance of Notice of Invalidation to the International Bureau
1904.08	Cancellation of International Registration by IB
1904.09	Transformation to Application Under §1 or §44
1904.09(a)	Requirements for Transformation
1904.09(b)	Examination of Transformed Application
1904.10	Affidavits of Use or Excusable Nonuse Required
1904.11	Incontestability
1904.12	Replacement
1904.13	Amendment and Correction of Registered Extension of Protection to the United States
1904.13(a)	Limited Amendments to Registered Extension of Protection
1904.13(b)	Corrections to Registered Extensions of Protection
1904.14	Notification of Correction in the International Register with Respect to Registered Extension of Protection
1904.15	Notification of Limitation of the List of Goods/Services with Respect to Registered Extension of Protection
1905	Renewal of International Registrations
1906	Communications with International Bureau Regarding International Registrations
1906.01	Recording Changes in International Register
1906.01(a)	Change in Ownership of International Registration
1906.01(a)(i)	Requirements for Submitting Changes in Ownership of International Registration Through the USPTO
1906.01(a)(ii)	International Fees for Recording Changes of Ownership of International Registration
1906.01(a)(iii)	Effect of Change of Ownership of International Registration
1906.01(a)(iv)	Dividing an International Registration After Change of Ownership with Respect to Some but Not All of the Goods/Services
1906.01(b)	Restriction of Holder's Rights of Disposal
1906.01(c)	Change of the Holder's Name or Address
1906.01(d)	Change of Name or Address of Representative
1906.01(e)	Limitation, Renunciation, or Cancellation of International Registration
1906.01(f)	Correction of Errors in International Registration
1906.01(g)	Merger of International Registrations
1906.01(h)	License
1906.01(i)	Changes that Cannot Be Made to International Registration

The Protocol Relating to the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks (“Madrid Protocol”) is an international treaty that allows a trademark owner to seek registration in any of the countries or intergovernmental organizations that have joined the Madrid Protocol by submitting a single application, called an international application. The international registration system is administered by the International Bureau (“IB”) of the World Intellectual Property Organization (“WIPO”), in Geneva, Switzerland.

The Madrid Protocol became effective in the United States on November 2, 2003. The Madrid Protocol Implementation Act of 2002, Pub. L. 107-273, 116 Stat. 1758, 1913-1921 (“MPIA”) amended the Trademark Act to provide that: (1) the owner of a United States application and/or registration may seek protection of its mark in any of the countries or intergovernmental organizations party to the Madrid Protocol by submitting a single international application to the IB through the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”); and (2) the holder of an international registration may request an extension of protection of the international registration to the United States. A notice of final rulemaking amending the Trademark Rules of Practice to incorporate the MPIA was published at 68 Fed. Reg. 55748 (Sept. 26, 2003).

The Madrid Protocol, *Common Regulations Under the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks and the Protocol Relating to That Agreement* (“Common Regs.”), *Guide to the International Registration of Marks under the Madrid Agreement and the Madrid Protocol* (“Guide to International Registration”), *Administrative Instructions for the Application of the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks and the Protocol Relating Thereto* (“Admin. Instrs.”) are available on the IB’s website, at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. The Common Regs. are the procedures agreed to by the parties to the Madrid Protocol regarding the administration of the Madrid Protocol, pursuant to Madrid Protocol Article (“Article”) 10(2)(iii).

References below to the Common Regs., *Guide to the International Registration*, and Admin. Instrs. refer to the September 2009 editions.

1901 Overview of the Madrid System of International Registration

The Madrid system of international registration is governed by two treaties: the Madrid Agreement Concerning the International Registration of Marks, which dates from 1891, and the Protocol Relating to the Madrid Agreement, which was adopted in 1989, entered into force on December 1, 1995, and came into operation on April 1, 1996. The United States is party only to the Protocol, not to the Agreement.

The Madrid system is administered by the IB. To apply for an international registration under the Madrid Protocol, an applicant must be a national of, be domiciled in, or have a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in one of the countries or intergovernmental organizations that are members of the Protocol (“Contracting Parties”). The application must be based on one or more trademark application(s) filed in, or registration(s) issued by, the trademark office of one of the Contracting Parties (“basic application(s)” or “basic registration(s)”). The international application must be for the same mark and include a list of goods/services that is identical to or narrower than the list of goods/services in the basic application and/or registration. The international application must designate one or more Contracting Parties in which an extension of protection of the international registration is sought.

The applicant must submit the international application through the trademark office of the Contracting Party in which the basic application and/or registration is held (“Office of Origin”). The Office of Origin must certify that the information in the international application corresponds with the information in the basic application and/or registration, and then forward the international application to the IB. If the IB receives the international application within two months of the date of receipt in the Office of Origin, the date of the international registration is the date of receipt in the Office of Origin. If the IB does not receive the international application within two months of the date it was received by the Office of Origin, the date of the international registration is the date on which the international application is received by the IB. See [TMEP §1902.04](#) for information regarding filing requirements that may affect the international registration date.

The international registration is dependent on the basic application and/or registration for five years from the international registration date. If the basic application and/or registration is abandoned, cancelled, or expired, in whole or in part, during this five-year period, the IB will cancel the international registration accordingly. See [TMEP §1902.09](#) for further information.

The holder of an international registration may request protection in additional Contracting Parties by submitting a subsequent designation. A subsequent designation is a request by the holder of an international registration for an extension of protection of the registration to additional Contracting Parties.

Each Contracting Party designated in an international application or subsequent designation will examine the request for extension of protection as a national trademark application under its domestic laws. Under Article 5 and Common Regs. 16 and 17, there are strict time limits (a maximum of 18 months) for the trademark office of a Contracting Party to refuse a request for extension of protection. If the Contracting Party does not notify the IB of a refusal within this time period, the mark is automatically protected. However, the extension of protection may be invalidated in accordance with the same procedures as for invalidating a national registration, e.g., by cancellation. See [TMEP §1904.07](#) for information about invalidation.

The Madrid Protocol may apply to the USPTO in three ways:

- *Office of Origin.* The USPTO is the Office of Origin if an international application and/or registration is based on an application pending in or a registration issued by the USPTO. Common Reg. 1(xxvi). See [TMEP §§1902 et seq.](#)
- *Office of a Designated Contracting Party.* The USPTO is the office of a designated Contracting Party if the holder of an international registration requests an extension of protection of that registration to the United States. Common Regs. 1(xvi) and (xxv). See [TMEP §§1904 et seq.](#)
- *Office of the Contracting Party of the Holder.* If the holder of an international registration is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States, the holder can file certain requests with the IB through the USPTO, such as requests to record changes of ownership (see [TMEP §1906.01\(a\)\(i\)](#)) and restrictions on the holder's right to dispose of an international registration (see [TMEP §1906.01\(b\)](#)). The expression "Contracting Party of the Holder" includes the "Office of Origin," as well as any other Contracting Party in which a holder is a national, is domiciled, or has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment. Common Reg. 1(xxvibis).

1902 International Application Originating from the United States

This section covers international applications and registrations *originating from* the United States, i.e., international registrations based on an application for registration on the Principal or Supplemental Register pending in the USPTO and/or a registration issued by the USPTO on the Principal or Supplemental Register. See [TMEP §§1904 et seq.](#) for information about requests for extension of protection *to* the United States by the holder of an international registration originating in another country. International applications originating from the United States are processed by the USPTO's Madrid Processing Unit ("MPU").

1902.01 Who Can File

Under [15 U.S.C. §1141a](#) and Article 2(1), a qualified owner of a basic application for registration on the Principal or Supplemental Register pending in the USPTO or a qualified owner of a basic registration issued by the USPTO on the Principal or Supplemental Register may file an application for international registration through the USPTO. To qualify, the international applicant must:

- (1) Be a national of the United States;
- (2) Be domiciled in the United States; or
- (3) Have a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States.

If joint applicants file, each applicant must meet at least one of these requirements. Common Reg. 8(2).

1902.02 Minimum Requirements for Date of Receipt of International Application in USPTO

The minimum requirements for accordance of a date of receipt of an international application in the USPTO are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §7.11](#).

37 CFR §7.11 Requirements for international application originating from the United States.

(a) *The Office will grant a date of receipt to an international application that is either filed through TEAS, or typed on the official paper form issued by the International Bureau. The international application must include all of the following:*

(1) *The filing date and serial number of the basic application and/or the registration date and registration number of the basic registration;*

(2) *The name and entity of the international applicant that is identical to the name and entity of the applicant or registrant in the basic application or basic registration, and the applicant's current address;*

(3) *A reproduction of the mark that is the same as the mark in the basic application and/or registration and that meets the requirements of §2.52 of this title.*

(i) *If the mark in the basic application and/or registration is depicted in black and white and the basic application or registration does not include a color claim, the reproduction of the mark in the international application must be black and white.*

(ii) *If the mark in the basic application or registration is depicted in black and white and includes a color claim, the international application must include both a black and white reproduction of the mark and a color reproduction of the mark.*

(iii) *If the mark in the basic application and/or registration is depicted in color, the reproduction of the mark in the international application must be in color.*

(iv) *If the international application is filed on paper, the mark must be no more than 3.15 inches (8 cm) high by 3.15 inches (8 cm) wide, and must appear in the box designated by the International Bureau on the International Bureau's official form;*

(4) *A color claim as set out in §7.12, if appropriate;*

(5) *A description of the mark that is the same as the description of the mark in the basic application or registration, as appropriate;*

(6) *An indication of the type of mark if the mark in the basic application and/or registration is a three-dimensional mark, a sound mark, a collective mark or a certification mark;*

(7) *A list of the goods and/or services that is identical to or narrower than the list of goods and/or services in each claimed basic application or registration and classified according to the Nice Agreement Concerning the International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks;*

(8) *A list of the designated Contracting Parties. If the goods and/or services in the international application are not the same for each designated Contracting Party, the application must list the goods and/or services in the international application that pertain to each designated Contracting Party;*

(9) *The certification fee required by §7.6;*

(10) *If the application is filed through TEAS, the international application fees for all classes, and the fees for all designated Contracting Parties identified in the international application (see §7.7);*

(11) *A statement that the applicant is entitled to file an international application in the Office, specifying that applicant: is a national of the United States; has a domicile in the United States; or has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States. Where an applicant's address is not in the United States, the applicant must provide the address of its U.S. domicile or establishment; and*

(12) *If the international application is filed through TEAS, an e-mail address for receipt of correspondence from the Office.*

(b) *For requirements for certification, see §7.13.*

1902.02(a) Form of International Application

Trademark Rule 7.11(a), [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)](#), requires that an international application be filed either through the Trademark Electronic Application System (“TEAS”), or on the official paper form issued by the IB.

TEAS Form

TEAS will require the applicant to select between two different forms, a prepopulated form or a free-text form. The applicant should use the prepopulated form if: (1) the international application is based on a single basic application or registration; and (2) applicant’s changes to the international application are limited to:

- Narrowing the list of goods or services;
- Changing the classification;
- Changing the applicant’s address; and/or
- Attaching a color reproduction of the mark where the mark in the basic application or registration is in black and white with a color claim (see [TMEP §§1902.02\(d\)](#) and [1902.02\(e\)](#)).

The prepopulated form will automatically display the exact information that is in the Trademark database for one specific U.S. serial number or registration number. However, if the international application is based on a newly filed application that has not yet been uploaded into the USPTO’s automated records, the TEAS form will instruct the applicant to either wait for the USPTO to upload the data or use the free-text form. It normally takes 48 to 72 hours for the USPTO to upload a newly filed application. To determine whether the basic application data has been entered, the applicant should check the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) database on the USPTO website at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/>.

The applicant should use the free-text form if the applicant wishes to change other data in the international application, or if the international application is based on more than one basic application and/or registration.

Paper Form

When filing on paper, applicants must submit the official international application form issued by the IB, the MM2 form, to the USPTO. This form is available on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>.

The IB will not accept paper applications that are not presented on the official IB form. Article 3(1); Common Regs. 9(2)(a) and 11(4)(a)(i); Madrid Admin. Instr. §2. The form cannot be handwritten. Madrid Admin. Instr. §6(a). The applicant should complete the MM2 form online, print the completed form, and submit it to the USPTO by mail.

The applicant may mail the completed paper application form to the following address, using the First Class Mail Service of the United States Postal Service (“USPS”):

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). Alternatively, the international applicant may deliver the application by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center (“TAC”), at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention: MPU. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#). TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

If an international application is mailed to the USPTO via the Priority Mail Express® Service of the USPS, the USPTO will deem that the application was received in the USPTO on the day it was deposited with the USPS, provided that the applicant complies with the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#) for correspondence sent by Priority Mail Express®. See [TMEP §305.03](#) regarding Priority Mail Express®. The certificate of mailing or transmission procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) do not apply to international applications. [37 C.F.R. §§2.197\(a\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#) and [7.4\(e\)](#).

The IB's *Guide to International Registration* contains instructions for completing the international application form.

The applicant should include a self-addressed, stamped postcard with the international application. Upon receipt of the international application, the USPTO will place a control number and a label indicating the receipt date on the documents and return the postcard to the applicant. The applicant should reference the control number whenever contacting the USPTO about the application.

International applications cannot be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(5\)](#) and [7.4\(d\)\(1\)](#).

1902.02(b) Basic Application or Registration Number

The international application must include the filing date and serial number of the basic application, or the registration date and registration number of the basic registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(1\)](#). The USPTO will not certify the international application if this information is incorrect or is omitted.

The international application must be based on an active application and/or registration. It cannot be based on an abandoned application, or on a cancelled or expired registration.

An international application may be based on multiple basic applications and/or basic registrations. The relevant dates and numbers of each application and/or registration must be included. The USPTO will not certify the international application if any of this information is incorrect or is omitted.

If a basic application and/or registration has been divided, each serial number and/or registration number must be identified. If, after the international application is filed, a basic application and/or registration has been divided, the USPTO will notify the IB of the serial number of the new child application and/or the registration number. See [TMEP §§1110 et seq.](#) regarding division of U.S. applications, [TMEP §§1615 et seq.](#) regarding division of U.S. registrations, and [TMEP §1902.12](#) regarding division or merger of basic application or registration.

1902.02(c) Name and Address of Applicant

Only the owner of the basic application and/or registration can file an international application. [15 U.S.C. §1141a\(a\)](#). The international application must include the name and current address of the applicant. The name and entity of the international applicant must be identical to the name and entity of the applicant/registrant in the basic application and/or registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(2\)](#).

On the prepopulated TEAS form, the applicant's name cannot be changed, so the international applicant's name will always be identical to the name of the owner of record for the basic application and/or registration.

When the applicant submits a paper form or a free-text TEAS form, an MPU trademark specialist will check the Trademark database to verify that the name of the international applicant is identical to the name of the owner of the basic application and/or registration.

If the names are not identical, the trademark specialist will check the Assignment Recordation Branch's database to determine whether an assignment or other document affecting title that is not reflected in the Trademark database has been recorded. If assignment records do not show a clear chain of title to the international applicant, the USPTO will notify the applicant that the application cannot be certified. If the records of the Assignment Recordation Branch do show a clear chain of title, the trademark specialist will update the "Ownership" field in the Trademark database.

Because a delay in certifying and forwarding an international application to the IB may affect the date of the international registration, any request to record a change in ownership of a U.S. basic application and/or registration should be filed well in advance of the filing of the international application, to allow sufficient processing time. The USPTO strongly recommends use of the Electronic Trademark Assignment System ("ETAS"), at <http://etas.uspto.gov>. Assignments filed electronically are recorded much faster than assignments filed on paper. If there is an unrecorded change in ownership, and the international applicant does not use ETAS to record the change, the USPTO may be unable to certify or forward the international application to the IB within two months after the application is received in the USPTO. In this situation, the date of the international registration will be the date of receipt of the application in the IB. See [TMEP §1902.04](#).

Applicants can search the Assignment Recordation Branch's database at <http://assignments.uspto.gov/assignments/?db=tm> to determine whether an assignment or other document of title has been recorded, and can search the TSDR database at <http://tsdr.uspto.gov/> to determine whether the ownership information in the Trademark databases has been updated. See [TMEP §§504](#) *et seq.* regarding automatic updating of ownership information in the Trademark database.

If an international applicant is relying on an assignment (or other document transferring title) that has recently been filed for recordation but has not yet been recorded by the Assignment Recordation Branch, the applicant should include a copy of the assignment with the international application.

If an international application is denied certification because the applicant is not the same party as the owner named in the basic application(s) and/or registration(s), the applicant may petition the Director to review the refusal to certify. See [TMEP §1902.03\(a\)](#) regarding petitions to review refusal to certify.

1902.02(d) Reproduction (Drawing) of Mark

An international application must include a reproduction of the mark that (1) is the same as the mark in the basic application and/or registration; and (2) meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#). [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(3\)](#).

For paper filers, the mark must appear no larger than 3.15 inches (8 cm) high by 3.15 inches (8 cm) wide and must be placed in the box designated by the IB on the MM2 form. [37 C.F.R. §§2.52\(d\)](#) and [2.54\(b\)](#); Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(v); *Guide to International Registration*, Paras. B.II.07.37 *et seq.* For international applications filed electronically, an image of the mark taken from the Trademark database will appear automatically on the prepopulated TEAS form. If an applicant uses the free-text TEAS form, the applicant must either type the mark in the appropriate field, or attach a digitized image of the mark that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.53\(c\)](#).

Standard Character Reproductions. If the mark in the basic application and/or registration is in standard characters, the reproduction of the mark in the international application must be in standard characters. To claim standard characters, an applicant must check the appropriate box on the IB's official application form MM2, or on the TEAS form. The applicant may not claim standard characters in the international application unless the mark in the basic application and/or registration is in standard character (or typed) format. See [TMEP §§807.03 et seq.](#) for information about standard character drawings in applications for registration of marks in the United States. The USPTO's standard character chart is posted on the USPTO website at <http://teas.uspto.gov/standardCharacterSet.html>.

Special Form Reproductions. If the mark in the basic application or registration is in special form, the reproduction of the mark in the international application must be in special form. See [TMEP §807.04\(a\)](#) for characteristics of special form drawings in applications for registration of marks in the United States.

Use of Color . If the mark in the basic application or registration is depicted in black and white and does not include a color claim, the reproduction of the mark in the international application must be black and white. See [TMEP §1902.02\(e\)](#) regarding color claims. If the mark in the basic application or registration is in color, the reproduction of the mark in the international application must be in color. If the mark in the basic application or registration is depicted in black and white, and the basic application or registration includes a color claim, the international application must include *both* a black-and-white reproduction of the mark *and* a color reproduction of the mark that meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#). [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(3\)](#); Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(vii). For example, if the basic application and/or registration includes a color claim and a black-and-white drawing that depicts the color by the use of color lining or by a statement describing the color (*see* Note in [TMEP §1902.02\(e\)](#) regarding color drawings in United States basic applications or registrations), the applicant must include *both* a color reproduction of the mark showing the claimed colors and a black-and-white reproduction of the mark that corresponds to the mark as it appears in the basic application and/or registration. See the note regarding color drawings in United States basic applications or registrations in [TMEP §1902.02\(e\)](#). If filing on paper, the applicant must place the drawings in the appropriate boxes designated by the IB on the MM2 form. If using the TEAS prepopulated form, the black-and-white drawing will automatically prepopulate the form, and the applicant must attach the color reproduction of the mark. For the TEAS free-text form, however, the applicant must attach a digitized image of *both* the black-and-white reproduction of the mark and the color reproduction of the mark. See [TMEP §§807 et seq.](#) for general information about the requirements for drawings in applications for registration of marks in the United States.

1902.02(e) Color Claim

If color is claimed as a feature of the mark in the basic application and/or registration, the international application must include a statement that color is claimed as a feature of the mark, and set forth the same name(s) of the color(s) claimed in the basic application and/or registration. [37 C.F.R. §§7.11\(a\)\(4\)](#) and [7.12\(a\)](#).

If the basic application and/or registration includes a black-and-white reproduction of the mark with a description of the mark indicating that color is used on the mark, or a reproduction that is lined for color (*see* Note below), the USPTO will presume that color is a feature of the mark, unless the basic application and/or registration includes a statement that “no claim is made to color” or “color is not a feature of the mark.” Thus, the basic application and/or registration will be presumed to have a color claim.

If color is not claimed as a feature of the mark in the basic application and/or registration, an applicant may not claim color as a feature of the mark in the international application. [37 C.F.R. §7.12\(b\)](#).

Note Regarding Color Drawings in United States Basic Applications or Registrations: Prior to November 2, 2003, the USPTO did not accept color drawings. An applicant who wanted to show color in a mark had to submit a black-and-white drawing, with a statement identifying the color(s) and describing where it/they appeared in the mark. Alternatively, the applicant could submit a black-and-white drawing that showed color by using a lining system that previously appeared in [37 C.F.R. §2.52](#) but was deleted from the rule effective October 30, 1999. See notice at [64 Fed. Reg. 48900](#), 48903 (Sept. 8, 1999) and 1226 TMOG 103, 106 (Sept. 28, 1999). It was presumed that color was claimed as a feature of the mark, unless the applicant specifically stated that no claim was made to color, or that color was not claimed as a feature of the mark. The USPTO began accepting color drawings on November 2, 2003. Effective November 2, 2003, the USPTO no longer accepts black-and-white drawings with a color claim, or drawings that show color by use of lining patterns. [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(1\)](#). See [TMEP §§807.07](#) et seq. regarding the current color requirements.

1902.02(f) Identification of Goods/Services

An international application must include a list of goods/services that is identical to or narrower than the goods/services in the basic application and/or registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(7\)](#). If the applicant lists any goods/services that are broader in scope than the goods/services in the basic application or registration, the USPTO will not certify the international application.

The prepopulated TEAS form will include the listing of goods/services in the USPTO's electronic records for the basic application or registration as of the time the form is generated. An applicant may edit the list of goods/services by either deleting particular goods/services or revising the wording in the identification. On the MM2 paper form and the free-text TEAS form, the applicant must enter the goods/services manually and may omit goods or services, or revise the wording in the identification.

In general, semicolons should be used to separate distinct categories of goods/services within a class. See [TMEP §1402.01\(a\)](#). For example, “cleaners, namely, glass cleaners, oven cleaners, and carpet cleaners; deodorizers for pets” is an acceptable identification in Class 3. In this example, the word “cleaners” names the category covering “glass cleaners, oven cleaners, and carpet cleaners.” The semicolon prior to “deodorizers for pets” indicates that the deodorizers are a separate category of goods from the cleaners.

Similarly, commas should be used to separate items within a particular category of goods/services. For example, “clothing, namely, hats, caps, sweaters, and jeans” is an acceptable identification of goods in Class 25 and shows proper use of commas.

Colons and periods should not be used as punctuation within the identification of goods and services.

If the list of goods/services in an international application is not identical to the list of goods/services in the basic application and/or registration at the time the international application is reviewed, the MPU trademark specialist must determine whether the applicant has identified any goods/services that are broader than the goods/services covered in the basic application and/or registration.

When the MPU trademark specialist reviews an international application based on a basic application and/or registration that has been amended during the course of its examination, the list of goods/services in the international application must be within the scope of the goods/services in the basic application and/or registration as amended, and not as set forth in the original basic application and/or registration.

The IB provides a database of properly classified terms, the Madrid Goods and Services Manager (MGSM), at <http://www.wipo.int>. Applicants may refer to the MGSM to review the classification assigned by the IB to more than 40,000 goods and services as well as the translation of such goods/services into several languages.

1902.02(f)(i) House Marks and “Full Line of ...”

It has been the practice in the United States to accept identifications of goods that include the wording “house mark for...” in certain limited circumstances. See [TMEP §1402.03\(b\)](#). Additionally, in rare circumstances, the USPTO may accept an identification of goods that refers to “a full line of” a genre of products. To qualify for the use of such terminology, the line of products must be in one class. See [TMEP §1402.03\(c\)](#).

If an international application includes the wording “house mark for” or “house mark for a full line of,” the IB will generally issue a notice of irregularity requiring the applicant to clarify or remove this wording. To avoid issuance of a notice of irregularity, an international applicant may set forth some or all of the goods following the wording “house mark” in the listing of goods in the international application. Removal of the wording “house mark” will not result in denial of certification of the international application.

1902.02(f)(ii) Providing a Website/Online Portal

Any activity consisting of a service that ordinarily falls in classes 35-37, 39, 41, 44, and 45 (e.g., real-estate agency services or banking services in Class 36 or dating services in Class 45), and that happens to be provided over the Internet, is classified in the class of the underlying service. See [TMEP §1402.11\(a\)](#). It is not classified in Class 42 merely because the services involve the use of a computer. Similarly, the service of providing information via the Internet is classified in the class of the subject matter of the information. See [TMEP §1402.11\(b\)](#). Entities that provide these services by computer are considered to be “content providers,” that is, they provide the informational or substantive content of websites, homepages, or online portals.

If an international applicant identifies services with the introductory language “providing a website ...” or “providing an on-line portal ...,” regardless of the subject activities that follow, the IB is likely to issue a notice of irregularity requiring the applicant to clarify the nature of the services and possibly suggesting “hosting of a website ...” and/or reclassification to Class 42. To avoid issuance of a notice of irregularity by the IB, an international applicant may wish to set forth its services with the principal activity first and then indicate that such services are “provided by means of a website” or “provided through an online portal.”

For example, if the identification in the underlying application or registration is “providing an Internet website portal in the field of music” in Class 41, the services in the international application may be listed as “providing information in the field of music by means of an Internet website portal.” Note that the list of services in the international application must remain within the scope of the services in the basic application and/or registration or the MPU trademark specialist will deny certification.

1902.02(g) Classification in International Applications

The goods/services should be classified according to the version of the *Nice Agreement Concerning the International Classification of Goods and Services for the Purposes of the Registration of Marks* (“Nice Agreement”) that is in effect as of the filing date of the international application. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(7\)](#). Both the prepopulated and the free-text TEAS forms will allow an applicant to change the classification of goods/services in an international application.

The MPU does not certify classification of the goods/services in an international application. Therefore, the owner of the United States application or registration need not classify the goods/services in the international application in the same class(es) in which they are classified in the United States basic application and/or registration. However, failure to properly classify goods or services in an international application according to the international classification system will result in issuance of a notice of irregularity from the IB. Because the final decision on the classification of the goods/services in an international application rests with the IB, the USPTO will not reclassify goods/services nor will USPTO employees give legal advice in response to specific inquiries regarding the reclassification of particular goods/services. The IB provides guidance on its website, at <http://www.wipo.int/classifications/en/>. See [TMEP §§1401.02](#) *et seq.* for further information about the international classes, and [TMEP §§1902.07](#) *et seq.* for further information about irregularities in the international application.

1902.02(g)(i) Reclassifying Goods/Services

If the goods or services in the basic application and/or registration are classified under the old U.S. classification system (*see* [TMEP §1401.02](#)), it is advisable to reclassify the goods/services into international classes in the international application, to avoid issuance of a notice of irregularity by the IB. Applicants using the prepopulated TEAS form must reclassify such goods/services into international classes because the form does not recognize U.S. class designations.

See [TMEP §1902.02\(g\)\(ii\)](#) regarding reclassification of goods/services in U.S. Classes A, B, or 200.

It is also advisable to reclassify the goods when the identification of goods in the basic application and/or registration comprises kits or gift baskets. See [TMEP §1902.02\(g\)\(iii\)](#) for further information.

The IB provides a database of properly classified terms, the Madrid Goods and Services Manager (MGSM), at <http://www.wipo.int>. Applicants may refer to the MGSM to review the classification assigned by the IB to more than 40,000 goods and services as well as the translation of such goods/services into several languages.

1902.02(g)(ii) United States Classes A, B, and 200

Classes A, B, and 200 are classes from the old United States classification system that are still used in the United States to classify certification marks for goods (Class A), certification marks for services (Class B), and collective membership marks (Class 200). These classes are not included in the international classes under the Nice Agreement. Therefore, an international application based on a U.S. application or registration in U.S. Classes A, B, or 200 should be reclassified based on the nature of the goods or services being certified or the area of activity of the members of the collective. If the applicant does not reclassify its goods or services into the proper international class, the IB will issue a notice of irregularity.

Amendment of the classification in the corresponding basic U.S. application and/or registration is not permitted.

United States Classes A and B

It has been the longstanding practice in the United States to accept identifications of goods or services for Classes A, B, and 200 that are broader than those that would be accepted in applications for goods/services in other classes. See [TMEP §§1304.02\(c\)](#) and [1306.02\(c\)](#). In many situations, it will be difficult to reclassify these broad identifications into appropriate international classes. For example, a goods certification mark in U.S. Class A for “remanufactured, refurbished and reconditioned electrical equipment” could include

goods in International Classes 7, 9, and/or 11, and possibly others. In such situations, the U.S. applicant should specify the type of electrical equipment that is being certified, and either apply and pay the fees for all appropriate classes, or limit the specification of “electric equipment” to cover goods in one class only.

In some certification mark applications/registrations, the goods/services will be easily classified in one class of the international classification system. For example, a services certification mark for “testing laboratory and calibration laboratory accreditation services” would be classified in International Class 42. However, it is important to be aware that multiple classes may be required when reclassifying goods/services from U.S. Classes A and B.

United States Class 200

Class 200 presents a similar problem and a similar solution. A broad identification of the subject organization in a collective membership mark application or registration is difficult to reclassify. For example, the wording “indicating membership in a conservative youth organization” is too broad and vague for classification in an international class. On the other hand, “indicating membership in an organization of consulting communications engineers” is easily classified in International Class 42. As with the certification marks, an applicant may have to clarify, specify, or narrow the description of the organization in the international application in order to classify the organization in an international class.

1902.02(g)(iii) Kits and Gift Baskets

The USPTO policy regarding the identification and classification of kits and gift baskets differs from the policy of the IB regarding the classification of these goods.

The USPTO permits registration of a kit or gift basket in a single international class, even if the identification of goods lists items that are classified in other classes. The IB and most foreign countries will not accept an identification of goods in a particular class that includes a reference to goods that are classified in other classes. If an international application includes kits and/or gift baskets, and the identification of goods refers to items classified in more than one class, the IB is likely to issue a notice of irregularity requiring the applicant to separate the goods into their respective classes and to pay additional fees for added classes. To avoid issuance of a notice of irregularity by the IB, an international applicant may wish to either narrow the identification to refer only to items in a single international class, or submit additional fees for multiple international classes.

1902.02(h) List of Contracting Parties

An international application must list at least one Contracting Party (i.e., country or intergovernmental organization party to the Madrid Protocol) to which the applicant seeks an extension of protection of the international registration. If the goods/services in the international application are not the same for all designated Contracting Parties, the application must include a list of the goods/services in the international application that pertain to each designated Contracting Party. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(8\)](#).

An international applicant designating the European Community for an extension of protection may claim seniority of one or more earlier registrations in or for a Member State of the European Community for the same mark covering the same goods or services in the international application. Common Reg. 9(5)(g)(i). See [TMEP §1902.05](#) for further information about “seniority.”

For international applications filed through TEAS, the online form enables applicants designating the European Community to claim seniority based upon registrations issued by Member States. The applicant must indicate: (1) the name of the Member State in or for which the earlier mark is registered; (2) the date from which the registration was effective; (3) the registration number; and (4) the goods and/or services covered by the earlier registration. Common Reg. 9(5)(g)(i).

For international applications filed on paper using form MM2, a claim of seniority must be presented on the IB's official form, MM17, and annexed to the international application. Common Reg. 9(5)(g)(i). The applicant must complete both the MM2 and the MM17 forms, and mail them to the USPTO.

An international applicant may not designate the United States as a Contracting Party. [15 U.S.C. §1141e\(b\)](#); Article 3 *bis*; [TMEP §1904.01\(h\)](#).

1902.02(i) Fees

USPTO Certification Fee . An international application must include the USPTO certification fee for each class of goods/services for which international registration is sought, or it will not be certified. The certification fee per class increases if the international application is based on more than one basic application or registration. [37 C.F.R. §§7.6\(a\)](#) and [7.11\(a\)\(9\)](#).

International Fees . If an international application is submitted through TEAS, the international fees for all classes and all designated Contracting Parties must be paid at the time of submission. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(10\)](#). International fees for paper applications must be paid directly to the IB, and may be paid either before or after the international application is submitted to the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.7\(c\)](#). However, international fees paid after the IB receives the international application could result in a notice of irregularity issued by the IB (*see* [TMEP §1902.07\(b\)\(i\)](#)).

See also [TMEP §1903.02](#) regarding payment of international fees.

1902.02(j) Statement of Entitlement

An international application must include a statement that the applicant is entitled to file an international application, specifying that the applicant: (1) is a national of the United States; (2) has a domicile in the United States; or (3) has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States.

Where an applicant's address is not in the United States, the applicant must provide the address of the United States domicile or establishment. [15 U.S.C. §1141a](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(11\)](#).

For joint applicants, the application must include a statement of entitlement for each applicant.

1902.02(k) Description of Mark

If the basic application or registration includes a description of the mark, an international application must include the same description. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(5\)](#). The applicant cannot include a description of the mark in the international application if the basic application or registration does not contain a description of the mark. *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.07.54.

If an international application is based on more than one basic application and/or registration, any description of the mark must be the same in each basic application and/or registration. If the descriptions are not the same, certification will be denied. [37 C.F.R. §§7.11\(a\)\(5\)](#) and [7.13\(a\)](#).

If the basic application or registration has been amended during the course of its examination, the description in the international application must be identical to the description in the basic application or registration as amended, not as set forth in the original basic application or registration.

1902.02(i) Indication of Type of Mark

If the mark in the basic application or registration is a three-dimensional mark, a sound mark, a collective mark, or a certification mark, the international application must include an indication of the type of mark. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(6\)](#). Such an indication may be given only if it appears in the basic application or registration. Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(viii)-(x).

1902.02(m) E-Mail Address

An international application must include an e-mail address for receipt of correspondence from the USPTO, if the international application is filed through TEAS. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(12\)](#). Applicants submitting international applications on paper are encouraged to include an e-mail address on the form.

1902.03 Certification of International Application by USPTO

If the information contained in an international application corresponds to the information in the basic application or basic registration, the USPTO will certify the international application and forward it to the IB. [15 U.S.C. §1141b](#).

If an applicant uses the prepopulated TEAS form without changing any of the information (*see* [TMEP §1902.02\(a\)](#)), the international application will be certified and forwarded to the IB without review by the MPU. In all other cases, an MPU trademark specialist must review the data in the international application to determine whether such data corresponds to the basic application or basic registration.

Under Article 3(1) and Common Reg. 9(5)(d), the USPTO must sign the international application and certify:

- The date on which the USPTO received the international application (Common Reg. 9(5)(d)(i));
- That the mark in the international application is the same as the mark in the basic application or registration (Common Reg. 9(5)(d)(iv));
- That the applicant is the same person or entity listed as the owner of the basic application or registration (Common Reg. 9(5)(d)(ii));
- That the goods/services identified in the international application are covered by the basic application or registration (Common Reg. 9(5)(d)(vi));
- That the applicant is qualified to file an international application under §61 of the Trademark Act and Article 2(1);
- That, if the international application includes a description of the mark, the description is consistent with the basic application or registration (Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(xi) and 9(5)(d)(iii));
- That, if the international application indicates that the mark consists of a color or combination of colors, this indication is consistent with the basic application or registration (Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(vii) and 9(5)(d)(iii));
- That, if color is claimed as a feature of the mark in the basic application or registration, the same claim is included in the international application (Common Reg. 9(5)(d)(v));
- That, if the international application indicates that the mark is three-dimensional, this indication is consistent with the basic application or registration (Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(viii) and 9(5)(d)(iii));

- That, if the international application indicates that the mark is a sound mark, this indication is consistent with the basic application or registration (Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(ix) and 9(5)(d)(iii));
- That, if the international application indicates that the mark is a collective or certification mark, this indication is consistent with the basic application or registration (Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(x) and 9(5)(d)(iii)).

If the international application meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)](#), the USPTO will certify the application and send it to the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.13\(a\)](#). The MPU will send a notice of certification to the applicant.

If the application does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)](#), the USPTO will not certify the application or forward it to the IB. The USPTO will notify the applicant of the reason(s) why the application cannot be certified. The USPTO will refund any international fees paid through TEAS. The USPTO certification fee will not be refunded. [37 C.F.R. §7.13\(b\)](#).

An applicant should periodically check the status of the international application online, using TSDR. If the applicant does not receive a notice of certification or refusal within two months of filing, the applicant should contact the MPU. However, once an international application is certified and forwarded to the IB, questions concerning the international application should be directed to the IB rather than the USPTO. See [TMEP §1906](#) for information on contacting the IB. The USPTO will update TSDR when the IB issues a certificate of international registration or a notice of irregularity concerning the international application. See [TMEP §1902.06](#) regarding the IB's examination of international registrations.

1902.03(a) Petition to Review Refusal to Certify

If an applicant believes that a refusal to certify an international application was erroneous, the applicant may file a petition to the Director to review the refusal. The petition should refer to the USPTO control number, and include the petition fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6](#). If the denial of certification was due to USPTO error, the USPTO will grant the petition and refund the petition fee. In all other cases, whether the petition is granted or denied, the petition fee is not refundable, unless the petition is withdrawn before a decision issues. The petition should be filed immediately. If the international application is not certified within two months of the date of receipt of the application in the USPTO, the date of international registration will be affected. Article 3(4); Common Reg. 15. See [TMEP §1902.04](#).

The petition should be mailed using the First Class Service of the USPS to:

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). If the applicant is paying the petition fee using a USPTO deposit account, the applicant may e-mail the request to madridpetitions@uspto.gov, with an authorization to charge the petition fee to a deposit account. See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) for further requirements for petitions to the Director.

Alternatively, the applicant may use a courier service or hand-deliver the petition to the Trademark Assistance Center at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention MPU. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#).

1902.04 Date of International Registration

If the IB receives an international application within two months of the date of receipt in the USPTO, the date of the international registration is the date of receipt in the USPTO. If the IB does not receive the international application within two months of the date of receipt in the USPTO, the date of the international registration is the date of receipt in the IB. Article 3(4); Common Reg. 15.

Common Reg. 15 sets forth the IB's minimum requirements that may affect the date of the international registration:

- Adequate identification of the applicant, with sufficient information to contact the applicant or the applicant's representative;
- Reproduction of the mark;
- Indication of the goods or services; and
- Designation of Contracting Party or Parties for which extension of protection is sought.

If any of these elements is omitted from the international application, the IB will notify both the applicant and the USPTO. If the missing element(s) is received in the IB within two months of the date of receipt of the international application in the USPTO, the international registration will bear the date of receipt of the international application in the USPTO. If the missing element(s) is not received in the IB within two months of the date of receipt of the international application in the USPTO, the date of the international registration is the date of receipt of the last of the missing elements in the IB. In either case, the missing element(s) must be received in the IB on or before the deadline specified in the notice of irregularity. Article 3(4); Common Reg. 15(1).

See [TMEP §§1902.07](#) *et seq.* for information about correcting irregularities in an international application.

1902.05 IB Requirements for Complete International Application

The requirements for an international application are set forth in Article 3 and Common Reg. 9. If the application meets the minimum requirements set forth in [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §§1902.02](#) *et seq.*), the USPTO will certify the application and send it to the IB. *The USPTO will not examine the international application to determine whether it is complete.* Only the IB will examine it for completeness. The requirements for a complete international application originating from the United States are:

- *Name and Address.* The name and address of the applicant;
- *Basic Application(s) or Registration(s).* The serial number(s) and filing date(s) of the basic application(s), and/or the registration number(s) and registration date(s) of the basic registration(s). The international application may be based on more than one basic application or registration;
- *Entitlement to File.* An indication that the applicant: (1) is a national of the United States; (2) is domiciled in the United States; or (3) has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States (Common Reg. 9(5)(b));
- *Fees.* The international application must include the basic filing fee charged by the IB; the supplementary fee for each class of goods or services beyond 3 classes; the complementary fee for designation of each country to which extension of the international registration is sought; and the transmittal fee that the USPTO charges to process the international application. Articles 8(1) and 8(2); Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(xiv), 10(2) and 34;

- *Goods/Services*. A list of the goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant seeks international registration (Article 3(2); Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(xiii));
- *Class(es)*. The international class(es) of goods or services, if known (Article 3(2); Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(xiii));
- *Contracting Parties*. The name(s) of the Contracting Party or Parties in which an applicant seeks protection (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(xv));
- *Declaration of Intent to Use*. A verified statement that applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services listed in the application, if any of the Contracting Parties designated in the international application require such a declaration (Common Reg. 9(5)(f)). Under Common Reg. 7(2), a Contracting Party may notify the IB that it requires a signed declaration of intention to use the mark;
- *Reproduction (Drawing) of Mark*. A clear reproduction of the mark that is no more than 8 cm high by 8 cm wide. Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(v). The mark must be the same as the mark in the basic application or registration. If the mark in the basic application or registration has color, the mark in the international application must be in color. If the mark in the basic application or registration is black and white, the mark in the international application must be in black and white. If the mark in the basic application or registration is depicted in black and white, but contains a claim of color as a feature of the mark (*see* Note in [TMEP §1902.02\(e\)](#) regarding color drawings in United States basic applications or registrations), the applicant must submit *both*: (1) a black-and-white image that is the same as the mark in the basic application or registration; and (2) a color reproduction depicting the color(s) claimed. Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(vii);
- *Color*. If color is claimed as a distinctive feature of the mark in the basic application or registration, the international application must include an indication to that effect, and must set forth the name of the color(s) (Article 3(3); Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(vii)). If the mark in the basic application or registration consists of a color or a combination of colors, the international application must include a statement to that effect (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(viii)) (*see* [TMEP §§1202.05 et seq.](#) regarding color as a mark);
- *Transliteration*. If the mark consists of or contains non-Latin characters or numerals other than Arabic or Roman numerals, a transliteration of that matter in Latin characters and Arabic numerals (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(xii));
- *Signature*. The USPTO must sign the international application. The IB does not require the applicant's signature (Common Reg. 9(2)(b)) (*Note*: Signature may be replaced with seal or other mode of identification determined by the IB (*see* Admin. Instr. §7);
- *Three-Dimensional Mark*. If the mark is three-dimensional, the indication "three-dimensional mark" (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(viii));
- *Sound Mark*. If the mark is a sound mark, the indication "sound mark" (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(ix));
- *Collective or Certification Mark*. If the mark is a collective mark or a certification mark, an indication to that effect (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(x));
- *Standard Characters*. If the mark is a standard character mark, an indication to that effect (Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(vi));
- *Description of Mark* . If there is a description of the mark in the basic application or registration, the international application must include the same description. [37 C.F.R. §7.11\(a\)\(5\)](#) and Common Reg. 9(4)(a)(xi);
- *Language* . International applications originating from the United States must be in English. [37 C.F.R. §7.3](#); Common Regs. 6(1) and 6(2)(iii);
- *Indication of Second Language*. If an applicant designates the European Community as a Contracting Party, applicant is required to indicate a second language, in addition to the language in the international application (Common Reg. 9(5)(g)(ii)).

Additional Elements That May Be Included in International Application

The following elements may also be included, but are not mandatory under the Common Regulations:

- *Translation.* If the mark consists of or contains non-English wording, an English translation (Common Reg. 9(4)(b)(iii));
- *Citizenship/State of Incorporation or Organization (Common Regs. 9(4)(b)(i) and (ii)).* The citizenship of the applicant(s); or if the applicant is a juristic person, the state or nation under the laws of which the applicant is organized;
- *Disclaimer.* If an applicant wishes to disclaim any element of the mark, the applicant may do so (Common Reg. 9(4)(b)(v));
- *Representative.* See [TMEP §1902.11](#);
- *Priority.* An international applicant may claim a right of priority within the meaning of Article 4 of the Paris Convention if: (1) the international application contains a claim of priority; and (2) the filing date of the application that forms the basis of the priority claim (within the meaning of Article 4 of the Paris Convention) was not more than six months before the date of the international registration. Article 4(2); Common Regs. 9(4)(a)(iv) and 14(2)(i). The applicant must specify the serial number (if available), filing date, and country of the earlier filing. If the earlier filing does not relate to all the goods/services listed in the international application, the applicant must set forth the goods/services to which it does relate. *NOTE: If the applicant is claiming priority based upon the basic application, the applicant must list the United States application serial number and filing date in both the “Basic Application” and the “Priority Claimed” sections of the form;*
- *Seniority.* An applicant designating the European Community may claim seniority of one or more earlier registrations in or for a Member State of the European Community for the same mark covering the same goods or services in the international application by indicating the following four elements: (1) each Member State in or for which the earlier mark is registered; (2) the date from which the registration was effective; (3) the registration number; and (4) the goods/services covered by the earlier registration (Common Reg. 9(5)(g)(i)). For international applications submitted on paper using the IB’s official form MM2, this information must be submitted on the IB’s official MM17 form. The MM17 form should be annexed to the international application form.

1902.06 Examination of Application by IB

Upon certification, the USPTO forwards the international application to the IB. If the international application meets the applicable requirements for a complete international application (see [TMEP §1902.05](#)), the IB will immediately register the mark and publish the registration in the *WIPO Gazette of International Marks*. The IB will send the certificate to the holder and notify the Office of Origin and the Offices of the designated Contracting Parties to which extension of the registration is sought. Article 3(4); Common Reg. 14(1). If an international application is unacceptable, the IB will notify both the applicant and the USPTO of the “irregularity” (see [TMEP §§1902.07 et seq.](#))

1902.07 Irregularities in International Application

If an international application is unacceptable, the IB will notify both the applicant and the USPTO of the “irregularity.” Some types of irregularities must be remedied by the USPTO, some must be remedied by the applicant, and some may be remedied by either the applicant or the USPTO. See [37 C.F.R. §7.14](#) and Common Reg. 11.

The MPU trademark specialists review all incoming notices of irregularities. If the irregularity is one that must be remedied by the USPTO (see [TMEP §1902.07\(a\)](#)), the trademark specialist will respond to the notice and send the applicant a copy of the response.

If the irregularity is not one that must be remedied by the USPTO, the USPTO will note receipt of the notice of irregularity in its automated records, but will not take any other action. The USPTO will not respond to the notice on behalf of the applicant. The USPTO will not send a copy of the notice to the applicant, because the IB has already notified the applicant of the irregularity. A copy of the notice will be placed in the electronic record of the international application. The notice can be reviewed using the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (“TSDR”) system on the USPTO website, by entering the control number assigned to the international application by the USPTO.

Applicants must file responses to irregularities in classification and identification of goods/services through the USPTO (*see* [TMEP §§1902.07\(c\) et seq.](#)). Fees for correcting irregularities in international applications must be paid directly to the IB in Swiss currency (*see* [TMEP §1902.07\(b\)\(i\)](#)). Responses to all other types of irregularities may be filed either directly at the IB or through the USPTO.

To be considered timely, responses to IB notices of irregularities must be received by the IB before the end of the response period set forth in the IB’s notice. Receipt of the response in the USPTO does not satisfy this requirement.

For responses to IB notices of irregularities that may be submitted through the USPTO, applicants may file the response either through TEAS or on paper. When correcting irregularities through the USPTO, the applicant should submit the response as soon as possible, and at least one month before the end of the response deadline set forth in the IB’s notice. The USPTO will not process any response filed after the IB response deadline. [37 C.F.R. §7.14\(e\)](#). See [TMEP §1902.07\(f\)](#) regarding responses to notices of irregularity submitted through the USPTO.

1902.07(a) Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by the USPTO

The following irregularities must be remedied by the USPTO within three months of the date of notification of the irregularity:

- Application is not presented on the official form or is not typed;
- Omission of reproduction of mark;
- Omission of list of goods/services;
- Omission of designation of Contracting Party or Parties;
- Insufficient identification of applicant;
- Irregularities relating to the entitlement of the applicant to file an international application (*see* [TMEP §1902.02\(j\)](#));
- Application not signed by USPTO (*Note*: Signature may be replaced with seal or other mode of identification determined by the IB. *See* Admin. Instr. §7);
- Certification by USPTO is defective;
- Omission of date and number of basic application or registration.

Common Regs. 11(4) and 15(1); *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.09.19.

If the USPTO does not cure the irregularity within three months, the international application is abandoned. Common Regs. 11(4)(b) and 11(5).

When responding to a notice of an irregularity that must be remedied by the USPTO, the MPU trademark specialist will send the applicant a copy of the response.

1902.07(b) Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by the Applicant – Applicant Must Respond Directly to the IB

1902.07(b)(i) Fee Irregularities

Where international fees for the international application are insufficient, the IB will notify both the applicant and the USPTO of the deficiency. The USPTO will not respond to the notice on behalf of applicant even if the international application fees were paid through TEAS.

Fees for correcting irregularities in an international application must be paid directly to the IB in Swiss currency, even if the applicant is filing a response to correct other irregularities through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.14\(c\)](#). If any fees for correcting irregularities are submitted to the USPTO, the USPTO will return the fees to the applicant. The USPTO will not forward the fees to the IB. If the fees are not received by the IB on or before the deadline set forth in the IB's notice of irregularity, the international application may be abandoned. See [TMEP §1903.02](#) for information about the payment of fees to the IB.

1902.07(c) Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by the Applicant – Applicant Must Respond Through the USPTO

1902.07(c)(i) Classification of Goods/Services

If the IB finds an irregularity in classification, it will make a proposal and send it to both the applicant and the USPTO. The notice will state whether any additional fees are due. Common Reg. 12(1). The USPTO will neither respond to the notice on behalf of applicant nor advise the applicant as to how to reclassify the goods/services.

If an irregularity notice indicates that the failure to resolve the irregularity will result in the abandonment of the international application, the applicant must respond and/or pay the necessary fees to avoid abandonment. If the irregularity notice merely indicates that “if no response, WIPO proceeds,” the applicant need not respond if applicant agrees to the proposal by WIPO.

The applicant cannot send its response directly to the IB. The applicant must submit the response through the USPTO. The IB must receive the response within 3 months of the date of the IB notification. [37 C.F.R. §7.14\(b\)](#); Common Reg. 12(2). See [TMEP §1902.07\(f\)](#) regarding responses to notices of irregularity submitted through the USPTO.

An MPU trademark specialist will review the applicant's response, but only to ensure that the response consists solely of an amendment to classification and that no amendments to the identification of the goods or services have been proposed. So long as the only proposed change is to classification, and such change in classification does not expand the listing of goods/services to exceed the scope of the underlying basic application or registration, the USPTO will forward it to the IB and notify the applicant accordingly. See [TMEP §1902.07\(c\)\(ii\)](#) regarding proposed amendments to the identification of goods/services.

If additional fees are due as a result of reclassification of goods/services, the applicant must pay the fees directly to the IB in Swiss currency. See [TMEP §1903.02](#) for further information about the payment of fees to the IB.

Under Article 3(2), the IB controls classification and has the final say on classification of goods/services. The IB may modify, withdraw, or maintain its proposal after reviewing the applicant's response. Common Reg. 12.

See also [TMEP §1401.03\(d\)](#).

1902.07(c)(ii) Identification (Indication) of Goods/Services

If the IB determines that the identification of goods/services, referred to as the "indication of goods/services" by the IB, is too vague or is incomprehensible or linguistically incorrect, it will notify both the applicant and the USPTO. Common Reg. 13. The IB may include a suggested amendment in the notification. The USPTO will not respond to the notice on behalf of applicant or advise the applicant as to how to identify the goods/services.

The applicant cannot send a response directly to the IB. Any response regarding the identification of goods/services must be sent through the USPTO. The IB must receive the response within 3 months of the date of the IB notification. [37 C.F.R. §§7.14\(a\)](#) and [7.14\(b\)](#); Common Reg. 13(2). See [TMEP §1902.07\(f\)](#) regarding responses to notices of irregularity submitted through the USPTO.

The applicant's response to the IB's notice should separately address each irregularity pertaining to the identification of goods/services, specifying which goods/services are to be deleted or amended, and providing any explanation or arguments deemed necessary. To avoid any misunderstanding by the examiners at the IB, the response should also include a separate final listing of the goods/services as it will appear in the international registration. If the applicant omits any goods/services from the final listing that were previously included in the identification of goods/services, the IB may remove such goods/services from the international registration.

An MPU trademark specialist will review the applicant's response to ensure that the goods/services identified in the response are within the scope of the identification in the basic application and/or registration at the time the response is filed. If an amendment to the goods/services in the basic application and/or registration has been entered into the Trademark database since the date the international application was submitted to the USPTO, the goods/services in the response to the IB notice must be within the scope of the amended goods/services. If the goods/services in the response exceed the scope of the goods/services in the basic application and/or registration as amended, the trademark specialist will notify the applicant that the proposed amendment to the goods/services does not conform to the goods/services as identified in the basic application and/or registration and that the response will not be forwarded to the IB. If there is time remaining in the IB response period, the applicant may submit a corrected response. If the goods/services in the corrected response do not exceed the scope of the goods/services in the basic application or registration as amended, and the IB response period has not expired, the MPU will forward the response to the IB.

If no proposal acceptable to the IB for remedying the irregularity is made within 3 months, and all other requirements have been met, the IB will either: (1) include the term in the international registration with an indication that the IB considers the term to be unacceptable, provided that the class of the vague term was specified in the application; or (2) if the class was not specified, delete the term and notify both the USPTO and the applicant accordingly. Common Reg. 13(2)(b).

1902.07(d) Other Irregularities that Must Be Remedied by Applicant – Applicant May Respond Directly to the IB or Through the USPTO

Other irregularities to be remedied by applicant include, but are not limited to, insufficient information about the applicant's representative; missing transliteration; insufficient information about a priority claim; unclear reproduction of the mark; and color claim with no color reproduction. The applicant must remedy any irregularities within three months of the date of the notification, or the international application may be abandoned. Common Reg. 11(2)(b). See *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.09.23, for further information.

An applicant may file the response to these irregularities either directly with the IB, or through the USPTO, either electronically or on paper. To be considered timely, responses to IB notices of irregularities must be received by the IB before the end of the response period set forth in the IB's notice. Receipt in the USPTO does not fulfill this requirement.

If the response is filed through the USPTO, the USPTO will not review the response to the irregularity but will forward the response to the IB, and notify the applicant accordingly. See [TMEP §1902.07\(f\)](#) for information about responding to a notice of irregularity through the USPTO.

1902.07(e) Filing Response Directly With the IB

Information about filing responses directly with the IB is available on the WIPO website, currently at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. An applicant may contact the IB by mail to 34 chemin des Colombettes, P.O. Box 18, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland; by telephone at 41 22 338 9111; by fax to 41 22 740 1429; or by e-mail to intreg.mail@wipo.int.

1902.07(f) Responding to Notice of Irregularity Through the USPTO

Under Trademark Rule 7.14(e), [37 C.F.R. §7.14\(e\)](#), an applicant may file a response to an IB notice of irregularity through the USPTO for forwarding to the IB before the IB's response deadline. The response may be filed electronically or on paper. **However, receipt in the USPTO does not fulfill the requirement that the response be received by the IB before the IB response deadline.** Therefore, applicants should submit responses to the USPTO as soon as possible, and at least one month before the end of the IB response period. The USPTO will not process any response received after the IB response deadline.

The IB does not have a form for responses to irregularity notices. Applicants are strongly encouraged to use the TEAS form for responses to notices of irregularity. Applicants submitting paper responses to the USPTO for forwarding to the IB should include with the response: (1) the USPTO control number (U.S. Reference No.) assigned to the international application; and (2) a copy of the IB's irregularity notice. The applicant may include a self-addressed, stamped postcard with the response. Upon receipt, the USPTO will place a label indicating the receipt date on the documents, and return the postcard to the applicant. However, to be considered timely, the response must be received by the IB before the end of the response period set forth in the IB's notice, and receipt in the USPTO does not fulfill the IB deadline requirement.

Applicants submitting responses on paper should mail the document to the following address, using the First Class Service of the USPS:

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). Alternatively, the response may be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center, at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention: MPU. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#). The certificate of mailing or transmission procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) and Priority Mail Express® provisions of [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#) do not apply to responses to notices of irregularity. [37 C.F.R. §§2.197\(a\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#), [7.4\(b\)\(2\)](#), and [7.4\(e\)](#).

Please note that fees for correcting irregularities in an international application must be paid directly to the IB in Swiss currency, even if the applicant is filing a response to correct irregularities through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.14\(c\)](#). See [TMEP §1903.02](#) for further information about the payment of fees to the IB.

Responses to notices of irregularity cannot be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(5\)](#) and [7.4\(d\)\(3\)](#).

The USPTO will not process any response filed after the IB response deadline. [37 C.F.R. §7.14\(e\)](#).

1902.08 Subsequent Designation - Request for Extension of Protection Subsequent to International Registration

A subsequent designation is a request by the holder of an international registration for an extension of protection of the international registration to additional Contracting Parties, made after the IB registers the mark. The requirements for a subsequent designation are set forth in Article 3 *ter* (2) and Common Reg. 24. The holder may file the subsequent designation directly with the IB. There is a form for filing a subsequent designation, the MM4 form, on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>.

A holder may file a subsequent designation through the USPTO if: (1) the international registration is based on a basic application filed with the USPTO and/or a basic registration issued by the USPTO; and (2) the holder is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a real and effective business or commercial establishment in the United States. [15 U.S.C. §1141d](#); [37 C.F.R. §§7.21\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#).

1902.08(a) USPTO Requirements

The minimum requirements for a date of receipt of a subsequent designation in the USPTO are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(b\)](#), and are reproduced below:

- The international registration number;
- The serial number of the U.S. application and/or the registration number of the U.S. registration that formed the basis of the international registration;
- The name and address of the holder of the international registration;
- A statement that the holder is entitled to file a subsequent designation through the USPTO, specifying that the holder: (1) is a national of the United States; (2) has a domicile in the United States; or (3) has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States. If a holder's address is not in the United States, the holder must provide the address of its United States domicile or establishment;
- A list of goods/services that is identical to or narrower than the goods/services in the international registration;
- A list of the Contracting Parties designated for an extension of protection;
- The USPTO transmittal fee;
- The international fees required by the IB, if the subsequent designation is filed through TEAS; and

- An e-mail address for receipt of correspondence from the USPTO, if the subsequent designation is filed through TEAS.

See [TMEP §1902.08\(b\)](#) regarding the form for filing a subsequent designation through the USPTO, and [TMEP §1902.08\(c\)](#) regarding the international fees for a subsequent designation.

The USPTO does not certify subsequent designations. If a subsequent designation meets the requirements set forth in [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(b\)](#), the USPTO will forward it to the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(c\)](#). If the subsequent designation does not meet these requirements, the USPTO will not forward the subsequent designation, and will notify the holder of the reasons. The USPTO transmittal fee is nonrefundable. [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(d\)](#).

If the subsequent designation meets the requirements of Common Reg. 24, the IB will record it and notify both the USPTO and the holder of the recordation. Common Reg. 24(8). The subsequent designation will bear the date of receipt in the USPTO, provided that the IB receives it within two months of that date. If the IB does not receive the subsequent designation within two months of the date of receipt in the USPTO, the subsequent designation will bear the date of receipt in the IB. Common Reg. 24(6)(b).

1902.08(b) Form for Filing Subsequent Designation Through the USPTO

The holder of an international registration submitting a subsequent designation through the USPTO may file either through TEAS or on the official paper form issued by the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(b\)](#).

When filing through TEAS, the holder must enter the required information in the data fields of the free-text TEAS form. Holders filing subsequent designations on paper through the USPTO should use the official IB form MM4 posted on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. The IB will not accept paper applications that are not presented on the official IB form. The form cannot be handwritten. Article 3 *ter*(2); Common Reg. 24(2)(b); Madrid Admin. Instrs. §§2 and 6(a). The holder should complete the MM4 form online, print the completed form, and submit it to the USPTO via mail, hand delivery or courier service.

The IB's *Guide to International Registration*, available on the IB's website at www.wipo.int/madrid/en, contains instructions for completing the subsequent designation form, at B.II.37.01–37.22.

The subsequent designation form may be mailed to the USPTO at the following address, using the First Class Service of the USPS.

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). Alternatively, subsequent designations may also be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center, at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention: MPU. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#).

If a subsequent designation is mailed to the USPTO via the Priority Mail Express® service of the USPS, the USPTO will deem that the subsequent designation was submitted on the day it was deposited as Priority Mail Express®, provided that the holder complies with the requirements for correspondence sent by Priority Mail Express® set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#). See [TMEP §305.03](#) regarding Priority Mail Express®. The certificate of mailing or transmission procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) do not apply to subsequent designations. [37 C.F.R. §§2.197\(a\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#) and [7.4\(e\)](#).

When submitting a paper subsequent designation, a holder should include a self-addressed, stamped postcard. Upon receipt of the subsequent designation, the USPTO will place a label indicating the receipt date on the documents, and return the postcard to the holder.

Subsequent designations cannot be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(5\)](#) and [7.4\(d\)\(2\)](#).

1902.08(c) Fees for Subsequent Designation

USPTO Transmittal Fee . The subsequent designation must include the USPTO transmittal fee, or the USPTO will not forward it to the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(a\)\(7\)](#).

International Fees . If the subsequent designation is filed through TEAS, all international fees for the subsequent designation must be paid at the time of submission. [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(b\)\(8\)](#). International fees for subsequent designations filed on paper must be paid directly to the IB in Swiss currency, either before or after submission of the subsequent designation. However, international fees paid after the IB receives the subsequent designation could result in a notice of irregularity issued by the IB.

See [TMEP §1903.02](#) regarding payment of international fees.

1902.08(d) IB Requirements for Subsequent Designation

The requirements for a subsequent designation are set forth in Article 3 *ter* and Common Reg. 24. If the subsequent designation meets the minimum requirements for a date of receipt set forth in [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(b\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §1902.08\(a\)](#)), the USPTO will forward the subsequent designation to the IB. *The USPTO will not examine it to determine whether it is complete.* The IB will examine it for completeness.

If the subsequent designation meets the applicable requirements, the IB will record it in the International Register and notify the holder and the Offices of the designated Contracting Parties. The IB will also notify the USPTO, if the subsequent designation was submitted through the USPTO. Common Reg. 24(8).

1902.08(e) Irregularities in Subsequent Designation

If a subsequent designation is sent to the IB through the USPTO, the IB will notify both the holder and the USPTO of any irregularity. Common Reg. 24(5)(a). Corrections of any irregularity in a subsequent designation must be sent directly to the IB, even if the subsequent designation was sent through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.21\(e\)](#). The USPTO will make note of receipt of the notice of irregularity in its automated records, but will not take any other action.

1902.09 Dependence and “Central Attack”: Restriction, Abandonment, Cancellation, or Expiration of Basic Application or Registration During First 5 Years

For a period of 5 years from the date of the international registration, the registration is dependent on the basic application or basic registration, including the child application or registration of a basic application or registration that has been divided or merged. Article 6(3); see [TMEP §1902.12](#) regarding division or merger of basic application or registration. Under §63 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141c](#), and Article 6(4), the USPTO must notify the IB if the basic application and/or registration is restricted, abandoned, cancelled, or expired with respect to some or all of the goods/services listed in the international registration:

- (1) Within five years after the international registration date; or
- (2) More than five years after the international registration date if the restriction, abandonment, or cancellation of the basic application or basic registration resulted from an action that began before the end of the five-year period.

The IB will cancel (or restrict) the international registration accordingly. Article 6(4); Common Reg. 22(2)(b). This is sometimes called “central attack.”

The USPTO must notify the IB if there is an appeal, opposition, or cancellation proceeding (or a court proceeding, if the USPTO is aware of the proceeding) pending at the end of the five-year period. The USPTO must notify the IB of the final decision once the proceeding is concluded. Common Regs. 22(1)(b) and (c). The IB will record this notice in the International Register and notify the holder and the designated Contracting Parties.

In view of the above notification requirements, applicants and registrants are encouraged to exercise diligence in monitoring the status of their basic application and/or basic registration (*see* [TMEP §1705.05](#)). Once the IB cancels or restricts an international registration, it cannot be reinstated. If a problem arises with the basic application and/or registration, or a status inquiry reveals that the basic application and/or registration has become improperly abandoned or cancelled, the applicant or registrant should promptly take corrective action. See [TMEP §§1712](#) *et seq.* for information regarding reinstatement of abandoned applications and cancelled registrations; and [TMEP §§1714](#) *et seq.* regarding petitions to revive abandoned applications.

1902.10 Transformation When the USPTO Is the Office of Origin

If the IB cancels an international registration as a result of the cancellation or restriction of the USPTO basic application and/or USPTO basic registration under Article 6(4) (*see* [TMEP §1902.09](#)), the holder may “transform” the international registration into national applications in the offices of the Contracting Parties that were designated for extension(s) of protection in the international registration. Transformation must be requested within three months from the date of cancellation of the international registration. Article 9 *quinquies*. The filing date for the new national application(s) that results from the transformation of an extension of protection will be the international registration date (or the date of recordal of the subsequent designation requesting an extension of protection to that Contracting Party).

The goods/services in the national application(s) must have been covered by the cancelled international registration. Transformation may be requested for some or all of the goods/services that are cancelled or restricted from an international registration. Transformation may not be requested for goods/services that exceed the scope of those cancelled or restricted from the international registration.

Transformation of an extension of protection may take place only if the IB cancels or restricts the international registration at the request of the USPTO, due to cancellation of the USPTO basic application or USPTO basic registration. It is not available if the international registration is cancelled at the request of the holder, or expires for failure to renew. Transformation is not available at the Office of Origin.

The request for transformation must be filed directly with the designated Contracting Party, and will be examined as a national application under the laws of that Contracting Party. The USPTO and the IB are not involved.

See [TMEP §§1904.09](#) *et seq.* regarding transformation of a request for extension of protection to the United States into an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act.

1902.11 Representative

An applicant for or holder of an international registration may appoint a representative to represent the applicant or holder before the IB by indicating the representative's name in the appropriate box on the international application or subsequent designation form. Common Reg. 3(2)(a). The applicant/holder may also appoint a representative in a subsequent communication submitted to the IB (*see* [TMEP §1906.01\(d\)](#)).

Common Reg. 3(2)(b). Form MM12, for appointing a representative, may be found on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>.

1902.12 USPTO Must Notify IB of Division or Merger of Basic Application or Registration

Under Common Reg. 23, an Office of Origin must notify the IB if the basic application or registration is divided into several applications or registrations, or if several applications or registrations are merged into a single application or registration, within 5 years after the date of the international registration. See [TMEP §§1110 et seq.](#) regarding division of a United States application and [TMEP §§1615 et seq.](#) regarding division of a United States registration.

1903 Payment of Fees

1903.01 Payment of USPTO Fees

The fees required by the USPTO for processing correspondence relating to international applications and registrations under the Madrid Protocol are set forth in [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#). The USPTO charges a fee for processing the following Madrid-related documents:

- International applications under [37 C.F.R. §7.11](#);
- Subsequent designations under [37 C.F.R. §7.21](#);
- Requests to record assignments, restrictions, or release of restrictions of an international registration under [37 C.F.R. §§7.23](#) and [7.24](#);
- Notices of replacement under [37 C.F.R. §7.28](#); and
- Affidavits under §71 of the Act (*see* [37 C.F.R. §7.36](#)).

These fees must be paid in United States dollars at the time of submission, regardless of whether the document is submitted electronically or on paper.

1903.02 Payment of International Fees

In addition to the fees required by the USPTO, there are international fees for processing international applications and registrations required by the IB. For international applications, subsequent designations, and requests to record changes of ownership of international registrations that are filed through TEAS, fees may be paid either directly to the IB or through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.7\(a\)](#). Applicants/holders filing on paper must pay all international fees directly to the IB in Swiss currency. [37 C.F.R. §7.7\(c\)](#); *see* Common Regs. 34 to 38 regarding payment of fees. There is a fee calculator and a schedule of fees on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>.

The IB will accept the following forms of payment:

- Debit to a current account established with the IB;

- Payment into the Swiss postal check account or to any of the specified bank accounts of the IB; and
- Credit card where, in the context of an electronic communication, an electronic interface for online payment has been made available by the IB.

See Guide to International Registration, Para. B.I.08.05. Admin. Instr. §19.

Effective January 1, 2008, the IB does not accept banker's checks as a mode of payment. *See Change in Practice Regarding Acceptance by USPTO of Bank Checks for Fees Payable to the International Bureau*, [1328 OG 199](#) (March 25, 2008). *See also* IB Information Notice No. 20/2007, on the IB website at http://www.wipo.int/edocs/madrdocs/en/2007/madrid_2007_20.doc.

The conditions for opening, using, and closing a current account with the IB are posted on the IB website at http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/guide/part_d/pdf/wipo_account.pdf. The IB has introduced an e-payment service on its website for payment of fees notified in irregularity notices and other WIPO communications concerning the Madrid System. Users are invited to make payments by credit card (American Express,® Mastercard, ® Visa®) or through a WIPO Current Account. See the WIPO website at <https://webaccess.wipo.int/epayment/> for further information about e-payment.

Questions concerning payment of international fees should be directed to the IB by mail to the World Intellectual Property Organization, 34 chemin des Colombettes, P.O. Box 18, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland; by telephone at 41 22 338 9111; by fax to 41 22 740 1429; or by e-mail to intreg.mail@wipo.int. The USPTO cannot assist applicants/holders in calculating the appropriate international fees or in selecting a method of payment of fees to the IB.

Failure to send a fee to the IB before the IB receives a form could result in issuance of a notice of irregularity by the IB. *See* TMEP §§ [1902.02\(i\)](#), [1902.08\(c\)](#), and [1906.01\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

1904 Request for Extension of Protection of International Registration to the United States

1904.01 Filing Request for Extension of Protection to United States

The holder of an international registration may file a request for extension of protection of that registration to the United States under §66(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(a\)](#). The request for extension of protection to the United States may be included in the international application, or in a subsequent designation made after the IB registers the mark. The IB will transmit the request for extension of protection to the United States to the USPTO electronically. The USPTO refers to a request for extension of protection to the United States as a “§66(a) application.” [37 C.F.R. §7.25\(b\)](#).

1904.01(a) Section 66(a) Basis

Section 66(a) of the Trademark Act provides a basis for filing in the United States. *See* [37 C.F.R. §§2.34\(a\)\(5\)](#), [2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#). A basis under §66(a) may not be combined with any other basis. [37 C.F.R. §2.34\(b\)](#), [2.44\(c\)](#), [2.45\(c\)](#). A §66(a) applicant may not change the basis unless the applicant meets the requirements for transformation under §70(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#). [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(a\)](#). *See* [TMEP §1904.09](#) regarding transformation.

Section 66(a) requires transmission of a request for extension of protection by the IB to the USPTO and cannot be added or substituted as a basis in an application originally filed under §1 or §44.

1904.01(b) Filing Date

If a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States is made in an international application, the filing date of the §66(a) application is the international registration date. If a request for extension of protection to the United States is made in a subsequent designation, the filing date of the §66(a) application is the date on which the subsequent designation was recorded by the IB. [15 U.S.C. §1141f\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.26](#).

1904.01(c) Declaration of Intent to Use Required

Section 66(a) of the Trademark Act requires that a request for extension of protection to the United States include a declaration of bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce. [15 U.S.C. §§1141f\(a\)](#). For a trademark or service mark application, such declaration must specify that the applicant/holder has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce that the U.S. Congress can regulate on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation. [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(e\)\(1\), 2.34\(a\)\(5\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1127, 1141\(5\)](#). This declaration must also include a statement that: the signatory is properly authorized to execute the declaration on behalf of the applicant/holder; the signatory believes the applicant/holder to be entitled to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services specified in the international application/subsequent designation; and to the best of his/her knowledge and belief, no other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity has the right to use the mark in commerce, either in the identical form thereof or in such near resemblance thereto as to be likely, when used on or in connection with the goods or services of such other person, firm, corporation, association, or other legal entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive. [37 C.F.R. §§2.33\(e\)\(2\)-\(4\), 2.34\(a\)\(5\)](#); *see* [15 U.S.C. §§1127, 1141\(5\)](#).

The declaration must be signed by: (1) a person with legal authority to bind the applicant; (2) a person with firsthand knowledge of the facts and actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant; or (3) an attorney authorized to practice before the USPTO under [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) who has an actual written or verbal power of attorney or an implied power of attorney from the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §2.193\(e\)\(1\)](#).

The USPTO has provided the IB a declaration of bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce for a trademark or service mark, which is part of the official IB form for international applications and subsequent designations in which the United States is designated for an extension of protection (IB Form MM18). Instructions as to who is a proper party to sign the declaration have also been provided to the IB.

The IB will ensure that the MM18 form is annexed to the international application or subsequent designation in which there is a request for extension of protection to the United States, that the wording of the declaration has not been altered, and that the document has been signed before forwarding the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. The IB does not send the verified statement to the USPTO.

The verified statement remains part of the international registration on file with the IB. [37 C.F.R. §2.33\(e\)](#). Accordingly, the examining attorney will not review the international registration to determine whether there is a proper declaration of intent to use, or issue any inquiry regarding the verification of a trademark or service mark application on file with the IB. In cases where the applicant voluntarily files a substitute declaration with the USPTO, the substitute declaration will be examined according to the same standards used for examining any other declaration.

See [TMEP §1904.02\(d\)](#) for information regarding the verified statement for a §66(a) application for a collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark.

See also [TMEP §804.05](#) for further information about declarations in §66(a) applications for trademarks and service marks, [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(v\)](#) and [1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for information about declarations in §66(a) applications for collective trademarks and collective service marks, [TMEP §§1304.02\(a\)\(v\)](#) and [1304.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for declarations in §66(a) applications for collective membership marks, and [TMEP §§1306.02\(a\)\(v\)](#) and [1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#) for declarations in §66(a) applications for certification marks.

1904.01(d) Use Not Required

Use in commerce prior to registration is not required. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(3\)](#). However, after registration, a holder is required to periodically file affidavits of use or excusable nonuse under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), to maintain a registered extension of protection. [37 C.F.R. §7.36\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §1613](#) for additional information about these affidavits.

1904.01(e) Priority

A holder may claim a right of priority within the meaning of Article 4 of the Paris Convention if:

- (1) The request for extension of protection contains a claim of priority;
- (2) The request for extension of protection specifies the filing date, serial number, and country of the application that forms the basis for the claim of priority; *and*
- (3) The date of international registration or the date of the recordal of the subsequent designation requesting an extension of protection to the United States is not later than 6 months after the date of the first regular national filing (within the meaning of Article 4(A)(3) of the Paris Convention) or a subsequent application (within the meaning of Article 4(C)(4) of the Paris Convention).

Section 67 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#); Article 4(2); *see also* Paris Convention Article 4(D).

To be eligible for a claim of priority in a §66(a) application, the holder must file the request for extension of protection to the United States within 6 months of the date of the filing that forms the basis of the priority claim. If the United States is designated for an extension of protection in an international application, the international registration date cannot be later than 6 months after the date of the filing that formed the basis of the priority claim. If a request for extension of protection to the United States is made in a subsequent designation, the date of recordal of the subsequent designation cannot be later than 6 months after the date of the filing that formed the basis of the priority claim. The USPTO's electronic systems use the dates provided in the international registration to automatically calculate whether an application receives the benefit of a priority claim. If the "Priority Claimed" field indicates "YES," the "Priority Claimed Date" is to be treated as the effective filing date. See [TMEP §206.02](#) for information on claiming priority under §67, [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#). If the "Priority Claimed" field indicates "NO," this means the priority claim is outside the 6-month filing date that forms the basis of the priority claim, even if priority information is included in the §66(a) application. If otherwise issuing an Office action, an advisory may be included to notify the applicant that their priority claim will not be honored. However, the advisory is not necessary if the application is in condition for publication upon initial examination.

In some cases, another U.S. application filed after the §66(a) applicant's priority date may proceed to publication or registration because the request for extension of protection for the §66(a) application was not yet of record in the United States when the examining attorney searched USPTO records for conflicting marks. If the USPTO learns that a §66(a) application is entitled to priority over another pending application before the other mark registers, the USPTO will take appropriate action to give the §66(a) application the priority to which it is entitled. The §66(a) applicant may bring the priority-date issue to the USPTO's attention

by submitting a letter of protest in the other pending application. See [TMEP §1715](#) regarding letters of protest.

If an examining attorney discovers a conflicting application entitled to priority under §66(a) after taking action in a case, the examining attorney must issue a supplemental action correcting the situation. If the mark has been published, the examining attorney must request jurisdiction before issuing the action. See [TMEP §§1504.01](#) and [1504.04\(a\)](#) regarding the examining attorney's jurisdiction.

However, if the conflicting mark has already registered, the USPTO does not act to cancel the registration *sua sponte*. The §66(a) applicant may seek to cancel the registration by filing a petition for cancellation with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

1904.01(f) Filing Fee

The filing fee for a §66(a) application will be sent to the USPTO by the IB. The examining attorney should not require additional filing fees during examination, except where the application is divided due to a change in ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods/services. See Article 8 and Common Regs. 34 through 38 regarding international fees, and [TMEP §1110.11](#) regarding dividing a §66(a) application.

1904.01(g) Constructive Use

Under §66(b) of the Trademark Act, unless extension of protection is refused, the filing of the request for extension of protection constitutes constructive use of the mark, conferring the same rights as those specified in §7(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057\(c\)](#), as of the earliest of the following:

- (1) The international registration date, if the request for extension of protection to the United States was filed in the international application;
- (2) The date of recordal of the subsequent designation requesting extension of protection, if the request for extension of protection to the United States was made after the international registration date;
- or
- (3) The date of priority claimed pursuant to §67 of the Trademark Act.

1904.01(h) May Not be Based on USPTO Basic Application or Registration

An international registration in which the United States is the Office of Origin (i.e., an international registration based on a basic application pending in the USPTO or a basic registration issued by the USPTO) may not be used to obtain an extension of protection to the United States. [15 U.S.C. §1141e\(b\)](#); Article 3 *bis*. The IB will not send a request for extension of protection to the United States if the international registration is based on a USPTO basic application and/or registration.

1904.02 Examination of Request for Extension of Protection to the United States

1904.02(a) Examined as Regular Application

Under §68(a)(1) of the Trademark Act, a request for extension of protection will be examined under the same standards as any other application for registration on the Principal Register. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(1\)](#).

It is unnecessary for the examining attorney to review the international registration on file at the IB, since the IB will forward all the necessary information with the request for extension of protection or in subsequent

notifications, such as notices of correction, limitation, or change to the name or address of the holder or holder's representative.

Except for 37 C.F.R. §§[2.21-2.23](#), [2.76](#), [2.88](#), [2.89](#), [2.130-2.131](#), [2.160-2.166](#), [2.168](#), [2.173](#), [2.175](#), [2.181-2.186](#), and [2.197](#), all rules in [37 C.F.R. Part 2](#) apply to a request for extension of protection of an international registration to the United States, including sections related to proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, unless stated otherwise. [37 C.F.R. §7.25\(a\)](#). All rules in [37 C.F.R. Part 11](#) relating to representation of others before the USPTO also apply to requests for extension of protection. *See id.*

See [TMEP §1904.02\(d\)](#) regarding specific examination issues relevant to a §66(a) application for a collective or certification mark.

1904.02(b) Examination of Classification of Goods/Services in §66(a) Applications

In a §66(a) application, the IB controls the classification. Article 3(2). The §66(a) application (and any resulting registration) remains part of the international registration, and a change of classification in the United States would have no effect on the international registration. Any classification change made during examination would ultimately be refused by the IB upon notification of the final grant of protection.

Therefore, in a §66(a) application, the following types of amendments are prohibited:

- Changing classification (unless such change is to agree with a notice of correction from the IB that specifically changes classification);
- Adding a class to the application that is not the subject of the request for extension of protection to the United States; or
- Transferring goods/services between classes in a multiple-class application.

[37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#); *see* [TMEP §1401.03\(d\)](#).

The only instance in which classification in a §66(a) application may be altered is upon the receipt of a correction from the IB. See [TMEP §1904.02\(e\)\(i\)](#) regarding IB corrections.

If the classification of a §66(a) application is inadvertently changed during examination, the USPTO will issue corrections to the holder and to the IB.

1904.02(c) Examination of Identification of Goods/Services in §66(a) Applications

Although the IB determines the *classification* of the goods/services, for purposes of *identification*, the examining attorney will examine the identification of goods/services in a §66(a) application according to the same standards of specificity used in examining applications under §§1 and 44 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1051](#), [1126](#). *See* [37 C.F.R. §7.25\(a\)](#). Specifically, the examining attorney must follow the procedures set forth in the TMEP and identify the goods/services in accordance with the USPTO's *Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual* ("USPTO ID Manual") whenever possible. However, with respect to requests for extension of protection to the U.S., the assigned classes define the scope of the goods/services for the purpose of determining the extent to which the identification may be amended in accordance with [37 C.F.R. §2.71](#).

When the IB is unable to determine if the classification assigned to particular goods/services by an applicant's Office of origin is correct, the IB will request clarification. If no clarification is provided, the IB will include

the unclear wording from the international application in the international registration and will indicate, in parentheses, that the wording is “considered too vague for classification,” “incomprehensible,” or “linguistically incorrect.” Although included in the listing of goods/services of the request for extension of protection, the parenthetical language is not part of the scope of the identification and must not be part of any application that is eventually approved for publication.

The language inside the parentheses should not be examined, but the goods/services preceding the parenthetical language should be examined and an acceptable amendment required that is definite and within the scope of the class assigned by the IB. For example, the §66(a) application identified the goods as “Accessories for domestic animals (in the opinion of the International Bureau, the terms are too vague for the purposes of classification - see Rule 13(2)(b) of the Common Regulations),” in Class 21. The wording “accessories for domestic animals” should be examined and an acceptable amendment within Class 21 suggested, such as “accessories for domestic animals, namely, bowls, trays, sponges, brushes, and cages.” The parenthetical wording “(in the opinion of the International Bureau, the terms are too vague for the purposes of classification - see Rule 13(2)(b) of the Common Regulations)” and the parentheses must not be part of any suggested amendment and must not appear in the final identification of goods/services.

If the wording preceding the parenthetical language is definite according to USPTO practice, the identification should be accepted. The parenthetical language “(in the opinion of the International Bureau, the terms are too vague for the purposes of classification - see Rule 13(2)(b) of the Common Regulations)” and the parentheses must be removed and must not appear in the final identification of goods/services. If it is otherwise necessary to issue an Office action, the action must include notice that the parenthetical language and the parentheses will be removed from the identification. If it is otherwise unnecessary to issue an Office action, a no-call examiner’s amendment must be issued to document the removal of the wording. A no-call examiner’s amendment is acceptable in this situation because the parenthetical language is provided to the USPTO for informational purposes only and documentation of the removal is for purposes of notice to the applicant only and does not “amend” the application.

If the initial identification of goods/services in the §66(a) application is definite, but misclassified under U.S. standards, the examining attorney must accept the identification, and cannot change the classification. If the initial identification of goods/services is not definite, the classification cannot be changed and the scope of the identification for purposes of permissible amendment is limited by the IB-assigned classification.

See TMEP §§ [1401.03\(d\)](#), [1402.01\(c\)](#), [1402.07\(a\)](#). Because the international registration is limited to those classes assigned by the IB, the identification includes only those products or services falling within the identified classes. To propose an amendment outside of the scope of the classes would result in the lack of a basis for registration of such goods/services under U.S. law.

If a §66(a) applicant wants to seek registration for goods, services, or class(es) which are included in the international registration but were not originally included in the request for extension of protection to the United States, the §66(a) applicant must file a subsequent designation with the IB. Article 3 *ter*(2); *Guide to International Registration*, B.II.32.03. To seek registration for good/services not within the scope of the international registration, the applicant may file a separate application for the same mark under §1 and/or §44.

The identification of goods/services must be specific, definite, clear, accurate, and concise. See [TMEP §1402.01](#) and cases cited therein. The USPTO has discretion to require the degree of particularity deemed necessary to clearly identify the goods or services covered by the mark. *In re Omega SA*, 494 F.3d 1363, 83 USPQ2d 1541 (Fed. Cir. 2007) (noting that the USPTO has discretion to require greater particularity than an entry in WIPO’s Alphabetical List of Goods and Services). Even if the IB characterizes terms as

“too vague,” “incomprehensible,” or “linguistically incorrect,” the USPTO has discretion to consider them *de novo* based on established policies regarding specificity within the context of the class assigned.

These examination procedures apply similarly to collective and certification marks. See [TMEP §1304.02\(c\)](#) regarding identifications in collective membership mark applications, [TMEP §1304.02\(d\)](#) regarding classification in §66(a) collective membership applications, [TMEP §1306.02\(c\)](#) regarding identifications in certification mark applications, and [TMEP §1306.02\(d\)](#) regarding classification in §66(a) certification mark applications.

Generally, there are three types of identifications: (1) acceptable identifications of goods/services; (2) indefinite identifications of goods/services with acceptable options within the scope of the class; and (3) indefinite identifications of goods/services that do not include any goods/services in the designated class.

1904.02(c)(i) Acceptable Identifications of Goods/Services

When the identification of goods/services is definite in accordance with USPTO policies, the identification is acceptable, regardless of the class assigned. If the goods/services are classified in accordance with the current edition of the Nice Agreement, no further requirements are necessary.

An international registration may encompass goods/services that were classified under an earlier version of the Nice Agreement. If the IB’s classification of goods/services in the §66(a) application is different from the classification currently set forth in the USPTO ID Manual, the examining attorney will not require amendment of the classification. However, the examining attorney should notify the Administrator for Trademark Classification Policy and Practice (“Administrator”) of the serial number, using the internal TM Madrid ID/Class mailbox. The goods/services cannot be moved to another class identified in the application. [37 C.F.R. §2.85\(d\)](#).

With respect to acceptable goods/services that appear to be misclassified, if the examining attorney determines that the class would be proper were the goods/services amended with further clarifying language, the examining attorney may require an amendment for further specificity to limit the identification to goods/services that are in the class indicated in the international registration.

Examples:

- The goods are identified as “footwear” in Class 25. The wording is definite and the IB has assigned the correct class. No action necessary.
- The services are identified as “legal services,” but the IB has assigned Class 42. The wording is definite, but the class is not consistent with the current edition of the Nice Agreement. No action is necessary. The examining attorney should notify the Administrator of the serial number.
- The goods are identified as “tobacco,” but the IB has assigned Class 35. The Alphabetical List of the Nice Agreement classifies such goods in Class 34. The examining attorney will accept the goods in the assigned class. The examining attorney should notify the Administrator of the serial number.
- The goods are identified as “pasta,” but the IB has assigned Class 3. The Alphabetical List of the Nice Agreement classifies such goods in Class 30. The examining attorney will accept the goods in the assigned class, and notify the Administrator of the serial number.
- The goods are identified as “nutritional supplements as included in this class,” but the IB has assigned Class 29. Even with the wording added to “nutritional supplements,” the identification of goods remains definite, but the class is not consistent with the USPTO Identification and Classification of

Goods and Services Manual. The examining attorney will accept the goods in the assigned class, and notify the Administrator of the serial number.

1904.02(c)(ii) Indefinite Identification of Goods/Services with Acceptable Options Within the Scope of the Class

When the identification of goods/services is unacceptable as indefinite, and more specific language that identifies goods/services in the class can be suggested, the examining attorney must require amendment of the wording and advise the applicant that any proposed amendment must be within the scope of the class of the international registration. The examining attorney should suggest acceptable identification(s) within the class. Any proposed amendment must *also* be within the scope of the wording of the identification as originally indicated ([37 C.F.R. §2.71\(a\)](#)).

Examples:

- The goods are identified as “headgear” in Class 25. A requirement for greater specificity is issued, offering suggestions for more narrowly identified goods in Class 25, such as “headgear, namely hats, beanies, bathing caps.” The examining attorney should not suggest items within the scope of “headgear” that are not in Class 25, such as “helmets” in Class 9 or “headgear for orthodontic appliances” in Class 10. The Office action must include an advisory that only goods within the scope of the IB-assigned class will be accepted.
- The services are identified as “consultation services” in Class 36. A requirement for more specificity is issued, offering suggestions for more narrowly recited services in Class 36, such as “banking consultation,” “credit consultation,” or “financial consultation.” The Office action must include an advisory that only services within the scope of the IB-assigned class will be accepted.
- The goods are identified as “video games” in Class 28. The examining attorney may suggest that the applicant adopt “hand held unit for playing video games,” “stand alone video game machines,” or “video game machines for use with televisions” in Class 28. A proposed amendment including goods in the nature of “video game software,” or “video game cartridges” (both of which are Class 9 items under the current edition of the Nice Agreement) would be outside of the scope of the goods covered by the international registration, and such an amendment must be refused. The Office action must include an advisory that amendments may only include goods within the scope of the class assigned by the IB.

1904.02(c)(iii) Indefinite Identification of Goods/Services that Does Not Include Any Goods/Services Within the Class

In the rare situation where the identification is indefinite, and there appear to be no goods/services that are within the scope of the identification as presently worded that are properly classified in the indicated class, the examining attorney must nevertheless require the applicant to submit an acceptably definite identification.

To be acceptable, any submitted amendment must be within the scope of the wording of the original goods/services.

The examining attorney should explain that he/she is unable to suggest substitute wording. The examining attorney may offer the applicant the option of deleting the unacceptable language from the application, but must not issue a requirement for the applicant to do so.

Examples:

- The services are identified as “food services” in Class 36. The identification is too broad to be acceptable, yet does not encompass any services that currently would be properly classified in Class 36, as restaurant services and other similar food and beverage services are in Class 43. The examining attorney need not make any suggestions as to acceptable wording, but must require the applicant to amend the recitation within the scope of services properly classified in Class 36 in accordance with the current edition of the Nice Agreement, and notify the Administrator of the serial number.
- The goods are identified as “engine pumps” in Class 12. The identification is too broad to be acceptable, yet does not encompass any goods that currently would be properly classified in Class 12, as water and oil pumps for land vehicle engines are in Class 7. The examining attorney need not make any suggestions as to acceptable wording, but must require the applicant to amend the identification within the scope of goods properly classified in Class 12 in accordance with the current edition of the Nice Agreement, and notify the Administrator of the serial number.

1904.02(c)(iv) Examination of Proposed Amendments and Issuance of Final Requirements for an Acceptable Identification

If, in response to the Office action, an applicant proposes an amendment that: (1) remains unacceptably indefinite; (2) is beyond the scope of the original wording; or (3) is beyond the scope of the class, the examining attorney must refuse to accept the amendment. If the proposed amendment raises no new issues and the application is otherwise in condition for a final action, the examining attorney must issue a final requirement for an acceptable identification.

The basis for refusing an unacceptably indefinite identification is the requirement for a list of “particular goods or services” in a complete application. [37 C.F.R. §2.32\(a\)\(6\)](#). Trademark Rule 2.71(a) provides the basis for refusal of a proposed amendment that exceeds the scope of the originally identified goods/services, including wording beyond the scope of the class of the international registration. The applicant is not bound by the scope of the language in the unacceptable amendment but, rather, by the language of the identification before the proposed amendment. See [TMEP §1402.07\(d\)](#). The examining attorney should also advise the applicant that the previous items listed in the existing identification (not the unacceptable substitute) remain operative for purposes of future amendment. Once an applicant amends the identification of goods/services in a manner that is acceptable to the examining attorney, the amendment replaces all previous identifications, and thus restricts the scope of goods/services to that amended language. See [TMEP §1402.07\(e\)](#).

The examining attorney may suggest – but must not require – that the applicant delete an unacceptable term or phrase or proposed goods/services entry that fall outside the scope of the class. If the application contains acceptable goods/services that can be approved for publication, and would otherwise be in condition for a partial abandonment advisory, the examining attorney should indicate that if an acceptable response is not received, the unacceptable goods/services will be abandoned and the application will proceed with the acceptable items only. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) regarding partial abandonment.

If deletion or abandonment of an unacceptable term or phrase would result in deletion of all goods/services from the §66(a) application, the examining attorney must not suggest that the applicant delete the unacceptable wording. Instead, the examining attorney must continue to require an acceptable amendment, making the requirement final if appropriate.

If it appears that there is an error in classification, the examining attorney may suggest the applicant contact the IB to request correction of or a limitation to the international registration. The USPTO will not suspend prosecution of the application unless the applicant requests suspension in a timely response to an Office action and supports the request with a copy of the request for correction filed with the IB. See TMEP §

[716.02\(g\)](#). The applicant may also appeal the final identification requirement to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or petition the Director under [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#) to review the requirement, if permitted by [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#). See [TMEP §1501.01](#) regarding appealable matter and [TMEP §1704](#) regarding petitionable subject matter.

1904.02(c)(v) Effect of Indicated Classes – No Precedential Value on Later-Filed Applications

Article 3 of the Madrid Protocol requires the goods and services of the international application to be classified according to the Nice Agreement. The IB uses the edition of the Nice Agreement in effect at the time international registration is sought to classify the goods and services. The opinion of the IB with respect to classification prevails over that of the applicant and the Office of origin in the event of disagreement. Article 3(2).

Because the IB, rather than the USPTO, determines classification assigned to goods and services encompassed by the international registration, and because registered extensions of protection may be based upon international registrations issued under previous editions of the Nice Agreement, the assigned classes in registered extensions of protection will not be considered as controlling in any later-filed U.S. applications to the extent such classification is contrary to USPTO policy. The classification of goods/services in registered extensions of protection and published applications under §66(a) is only relevant to the particular goods and services identified therein, and should not be relied upon in other applications to support classification or identification of goods or services that are otherwise unacceptable under current USPTO practice. See [TMEP §1402.14](#).

1904.02(d) Examination Issues Specific to Certification and Collective Marks

Clarification of Mark Type

A §66(a) application may indicate that the mark is a “Collective, Certificate or Guarantee Mark.” In such a case, the examining attorney must require the applicant to clarify the type of mark for which it seeks protection, unless it is already clear from the record.

Classification

If a §66(a) applicant indicates that the mark is a certification mark or collective membership mark, the USPTO **will not** reclassify it into U.S. Class A, B, or 200. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(3\)\(ii\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(3\)](#). United States Classes A, B, and 200 are classes from the prior U.S. classification system that are still used in the United States to classify certification marks for goods (Class A), certification marks for services (Class B), and collective membership marks (Class 200). [37 C.F.R. §§6.3](#), [6.4](#). These classes are not included in the international classification system under the Nice Agreement.

Verified Statement

The verified statement required for a §66(a) application, referenced in [TMEP §1904.01\(c\)](#), is *not* part of the international registration on file with the IB for a collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark; therefore, the examining attorney must require the verified statement during examination. [TMEP §§1303.01\(a\)\(v\)](#), [1303.01\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1304.02\(a\)\(v\)](#), [1304.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#), [1306.02\(a\)\(v\)](#), [1306.02\(b\)\(ii\)](#); see [37 C.F.R. §§2.44\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.45\(a\)\(4\)\(v\)\(B\)](#), [\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Additional Requirements

The examining attorney must also require the §66(a) applicant to comply with the additional requirements for the particular type of mark, i.e., collective trademark, collective service mark, collective membership mark, or certification mark. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.44, 2.45](#). See [TMEP §§1303–1303.02\(b\)](#) regarding the requirements for collective trademark and collective service mark applications, [TMEP §§1304–1304.03\(c\)](#) regarding the requirements for collective membership mark applications, and [TMEP §§1306–1306.06\(c\)](#) regarding the requirements for certification mark applications.

1904.02(e) Corrections and Limitations to the International Registration

1904.02(e)(i) Corrections

When the IB determines that there is an error concerning an international registration in the International Register, it corrects that error ex officio. Requests for correction may be submitted to the IB by the holder (i.e., a §66(a) applicant seeking protection in U.S.), the Office of Origin of the international application, or in some cases by the USPTO Administrator for Trademark Classification Policy and Practice.

Corrections that merely reclassify the originally identified goods/services may be accepted; however, any indefinite wording of the identification of such goods/services that was acceptably amended during the course of USPTO examination will remain as amended, that is, the amended wording is not affected or changed by the correction issued by the IB. When an applicant amends the identification of goods/services in a manner that is acceptable to the examining attorney, including voluntary deletion of goods/services, the amendment replaces all previous identifications, and thus restricts the scope of goods/services to that amended language. See [TMEP §1402.07\(e\)](#).

1904.02(e)(ii) Limitations

The holder of an international registration may record a limitation of the good/services, which may affect some or all of the designated Contracting Parties. Article 9 *bis*(iii). Upon recordation, the IB will notify the USPTO if the U.S. is affected by the limitation. The recording of a limitation does not remove the goods/services concerned from the international registration, but simply narrows the goods/services for which the holder seeks protection in the particular countries affected.

A limitation may set forth particular goods/services narrower in scope than the goods/services as identified in the international registration. For example, if the international registration covers “clothing,” the holder may limit the goods to “sweaters and pants” with respect to the U.S. Upon notification by the IB, if the examining attorney considers that the change requested is not in fact a limitation but an expansion of the list of goods/services, or is otherwise unacceptable, then the USPTO may declare that the limitation has no effect in the United States. Common Regs. 27(5)(a)-(c). For example, if the goods are identified as “clothing” in the international registration, and the limitation specifies “sweaters and hair bows,” the examining attorney must refuse to apply the “hair bows” portion of the limitation to the request for extension of protection to the United States because it expands, rather than limits, the scope of the goods of the international registration.

See [TMEP §1906.01\(e\)](#) regarding the filing of a request to record a limitation with the IB; [TMEP §1904.03\(g\)](#) regarding limitations in pending §66(a) applications; and [TMEP §1904.15](#) regarding limitations in registered extensions of protection to the United States.

1904.02(e)(iii) Limitations vs. Amendments

To the extent that an amendment of the identification in a §66(a) application narrows or restricts the goods/services, an amendment is comparable to a limitation affecting only the United States. A limitation filed at the IB by the applicant clarifying the nature of the goods/services may render the identification of goods/services in the §66(a) application sufficiently definite. Nevertheless, if the examining attorney has issued an Office action requiring amendment of the identification of goods/services, a proper response to the Office action must be received in the allowed time period. Simply recording a limitation with the IB is not a response to an Office action. The applicant must file a response with the USPTO within six months of the date on which the USPTO issued the Office action, stating that the applicant has recorded a limitation that will resolve the outstanding issue(s). See [37 C.F.R. §§2.62, 2.65\(a\)](#).

See [TMEP §1906.01\(e\)](#) regarding the filing of a request to record a limitation with the IB; [TMEP §1904.03\(g\)](#) regarding limitations in pending §66(a) applications; and [TMEP §1904.15](#) regarding limitations in registered extensions of protection to the United States.

1904.02(f) Mark Must Be Registrable on Principal Register

There is no provision in the Trademark Act for registration of a mark in a request for an extension of protection on the Supplemental Register. If the proposed mark is not registrable on the Principal Register, the extension of protection must be refused. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(4\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.47\(c\), 2.75\(c\)](#).

1904.02(g) Refusal Must Be Made Within 18 Months

Under §68(c) of the Trademark Act and Article 5 of the Protocol, the USPTO must notify the IB of any refusal entered in a §66(a) application within 18 months of the date the IB transmits the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. See [TMEP §1904.03\(a\)](#).

The Trademark database tracks the period of time within which the USPTO must notify the IB of a refusal of protection. This information appears in the §66(a) International Registration data field “Auto Protection Date.” If a refusal is not received by the IB as of this date, the mark receives automatic protection under Article 5(5) of the Protocol.

1904.02(h) Office Actions and Responses

The USPTO will send the first Office action in a §66(a) application to the IB. The first Office action is known as a provisional refusal and must be reviewed by the IB. If the provisional refusal meets the applicable requirements (see [TMEP §§1904.03 et seq.](#)), the IB will process the refusal and send it to the holder (i.e., the §66(a) applicant). The IB notifies the USPTO of the date on which it processed the refusal, and the USPTO updates the Trademark database with this information. A response to the Office action must be sent to the USPTO, not the IB, and is due in the USPTO within six months of the date on which the USPTO sent the action to the IB, *not* the date on which the refusal was processed by the IB. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.62\(a\)](#); [TMEP § 1904.03\(c\)](#). Failure to respond to the Office action within the time provided will result in abandonment of the application. [15 U.S.C. §1062\(b\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §2.65\(a\)](#). See [TMEP § 711](#) regarding the deadline for response to an Office action and [TMEP §§ 718.02](#) and [718.03-718.03\(a\)](#) regarding abandonment for failure to respond or incomplete response to an Office action.

A priority action or suspension notice may be issued as a first Office action in a §66(a) application. An examiner’s amendment or a combined examiner’s amendment/priority action (see [TMEP §§707 et seq.](#) ,

[708.05](#)) may not be issued as a first Office action because the IB will not accept such amendments. However, under certain circumstances, a no-call examiner's amendment may be issued in a first Office action to remove certain parenthetical wording from an identification of goods/services if the application is otherwise in condition for approval for publication. See [TMEP §1904.02\(c\)](#) regarding opinion language of the International Bureau. In addition, examiner's amendments and combined examiner's amendments/priority actions may be issued as second and subsequent actions if authorized by the applicant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a practitioner authorized to practice before the USPTO pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) ("qualified practitioner"). See [TMEP §§602 et seq.](#) regarding persons who are authorized to represent applicants, registrants, and parties to proceedings before the USPTO.

The USPTO will send second and subsequent Office actions directly to the applicant, at the correspondence address set forth in the request for extension of protection to the United States, or to the correspondence address provided in a subsequent communication filed in the USPTO. See [TMEP §§609.01\(a\)](#) and [1904.02\(i\)](#) regarding correspondence in §66(a) applications.

1904.02(i) Correspondence Address

The address of the international registration holder's designated representative is treated as the correspondence address, unless a change of correspondence address is filed in the USPTO.

The USPTO will send second and subsequent Office actions, and other notices, directly to the §66(a) applicant's correspondence address of record.

In a §66(a) application or a registered extension of protection, the USPTO will accept a notice of change of the correspondence address, signed by the applicant or registrant, someone with legal authority to bind the applicant/registrant (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner, and will send correspondence to the new address. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.18\(b\)\(2\)](#), [2.193\(e\)\(9\)](#) and [TMEP §§609 et seq.](#) regarding the procedures for establishing and changing the correspondence address in the USPTO.

A change of the correspondence address in the USPTO records will not affect the address of the holder's representative designated in the international registration, to which the IB sends correspondence. A request to record a change of the name or address of the representative designated in the international registration must be filed with the IB; it cannot be filed through the USPTO. See [TMEP §1906.01\(d\)](#). There are forms for changing the name or address of the representative on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. See also Common Reg. 36(i).

See [TMEP §§602.03 et seq.](#) regarding foreign attorneys and agents, [TMEP §609.01\(a\)](#) regarding correspondence in §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §609.04](#) regarding correspondence with parties not domiciled in the United States.

1904.02(j) Mark May Not Be Amended

The Madrid Protocol and the Common Regulations do not permit amendment of a mark in an international registration. If the holder of the international registration wants to change the mark in any way, even slightly, the holder must file a new international application. The IB's *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.72.02, provides as follows:

[T]here is no provision for a mark that is recorded in the International Register to be amended in any way, either on renewal or at any other time. If the holder wishes to protect the mark in a form which differs, even slightly, from the mark as recorded, he must file a new international application. This is true even if the mark has been allowed to be changed in the basic application, the registration resulting from the basic application or the basic registration, as the case may be

Accordingly, because an application under §66(a) is a request to extend protection of the mark in an international registration to the United States, the Trademark Rules of Practice make no provision for amendment of the mark in a §66(a) application, and the USPTO will not permit such amendments. *See* [37 C.F.R. §2.72](#); [TMEP §807.13\(b\)](#). Examples of such impermissible amendments include deletion of a color claim and deletion of entity designations or generic terms from the mark, even if otherwise immaterial. However, the applicant still must comply with U. S. requirements regarding drawings and descriptions of the mark. *See* [TMEP §1904.02\(k\)](#).

In limited circumstances, an applicant may amend a §66(a) application to add a standard character claim. *See* TMEP § [807.03\(g\)](#).

1904.02(k) Drawings and Descriptions of the Mark

Though the mark in a §66(a) application may not be amended, the applicant must comply with the United States requirements regarding drawings of the mark. [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §§2.52, 7.25\(a\)](#).

If the drawing does not meet U.S. requirements (e.g., due to the improper inclusion of the federal registration symbol ® or the unacceptable reproductive quality of the image), the examining attorney will require a substitute drawing. Furthermore, if the reproduction of the mark in the international registration consists of multiple renditions of a three-dimensional mark, the applicant will be required to either: (1) comply with the United States requirement to depict the mark in a single rendition, [37 C.F.R. §2.52\(b\)\(2\)](#); or (2) petition the Director to waive this requirement. *See* [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions, and [TMEP §807.10](#) regarding drawings of three-dimensional marks.

If the international registration contains no color claim, but there is a color drawing in the international registration, the applicant must either: (1) submit a claim of the color(s) featured in the mark and describe their location; or (2) state for the record that no claim of color is made with respect to the international registration, and submit a black-and-white reproduction of the same mark depicted in the international registration. *See* [TMEP §807.07\(b\)](#). If the international registration contains a color claim and/or color location statement, but it is incorrect, incomplete, or inconsistent with the color(s) shown on the drawing, the color claim and/or the color location statement must be corrected to conform to the color(s) depicted on the drawing. *See* [TMEP §§807.07\(a\)–\(a\)\(ii\)](#), [807.07\(c\)](#).

A §66(a) applicant must also comply with U.S. requirements regarding descriptions of the mark. [37 C.F.R. §§2.37, 2.52\(b\)\(5\), 7.25\(a\)](#).

With respect to sound marks and other non-visual marks, if the international registration contains a visual depiction of some kind, such as a musical staff corresponding to the notes of a sound mark, the applicant will be required to comply with the United States requirements for a detailed description of the mark. *See* [TMEP §807.09](#).

1904.02(i) Jurisdiction

The provisions with respect to requesting jurisdiction over published §66(a) applications are similar to those for applications under §§1(a) and 44 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §2.84](#). However, when deciding whether to grant a request to restore jurisdiction in a §66(a) application, the Director must also consider the time limits for notifying the IB of a refusal, set forth in Article 5(2) of the Protocol and §68(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)](#).

1904.03 Notice of Refusal

1904.03(a) Notice Must Be Sent Within 18 Months

Within 18 months of the date the IB forwards a request for extension of protection, the USPTO must transmit:

- (1) A notification of refusal based on examination;
- (2) A notification of refusal based on the filing of an opposition; or
- (3) A notification of the possibility that an opposition may be filed after expiration of the 18-month period. If the USPTO notifies the IB of the possibility of opposition, it must send the notification of refusal within 7 months after the beginning of the opposition period, or within one month after the end of opposition period, whichever is earlier.

Section 68(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)](#); Article 5.

If the USPTO does not send a notification of refusal of the request for extension of protection to the IB within 18 months, the request for extension of protection cannot be refused. Section 68(c)(4) of the Trademark Act; Article 5(5); Common Reg. 17(2)(iv). If the USPTO sends a notification of refusal, no grounds of refusal other than those set forth in the notice can be raised more than 18 months after the date on which the IB forwards the request for extension of protection to the USPTO. Section 68(c)(3) of the Trademark Act.

If upon re-examination the examining attorney determines a new ground of refusal exists, a second Office action raising this new ground may be issued only if time remains in the 18-month period. In such a case, the examining attorney must contact the MPU upon issuance of the Office action, so that a notification of the new ground of refusal can be sent to the IB.

1904.03(b) Requirements for Notice of Refusal

A final decision is not necessary; a provisional refusal is sufficient to meet the 18-month requirement. Under Common Reg. 17, a notice of provisional refusal must be dated and signed by the USPTO and must contain:

- The number of the international registration, preferably accompanied by an indication of the mark;
- All grounds of refusal;
- If there is a conflicting mark, the filing date, serial number, priority date (if any), registration date and number (if available), name and address of the owner, reproduction of the conflicting mark, and list of goods/services;
- A statement that the provisional refusal affects all the goods/services, or a list of the goods/services affected;

- The procedures and time limit for contesting the refusal, i.e., period for response or appeal of the refusal, and the authority with which an appeal can be filed;
- If the refusal is based on an opposition, the name and address of the opposer.

Common Reg. 17(2).

The IB will record the provisional refusal in the International Register and transmit it to the holder of the registration. Article 5(3); Common Reg. 17(4).

1904.03(c) §66(a) Applicant Must Respond to Notification of Refusal

A holder of an international registration who applies for an extension of protection to the United States will receive an initial notification of refusal through the IB. The holder must respond directly to the USPTO. The holder may be represented by an attorney, but only if such attorney meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) (*see* [TMEP §§602 et seq.](#)). Standard examination procedures are used to examine §66(a) applications. [15 U.S.C. §1141h](#).

A foreign attorney who does not meet the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §11.14](#) cannot represent the applicant before the USPTO or sign a response to an Office action on behalf of the applicant. [37 C.F.R. §11.5\(b\)\(2\)](#); *see* [TMEP §§ 602.03 et seq., 611.02, 712.01, 712.03](#).

1904.03(d) Refusal Pertaining to Less than All the Goods/Services

If a notification of refusal in a §66(a) application does not pertain to all the goods/services, the mark may be protected for the remaining goods/services, even if the holder does not respond to the notification of refusal. Sections 68(c) and 69(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §§1141h\(c\), 1141i\(a\)](#), provide that an application under §66(a) of the Trademark Act is automatically protected with respect to any goods or services for which the USPTO has not timely notified the IB of a refusal by either *ex officio* examination or opposition.

Accordingly, [37 C.F.R. §§2.65\(a\)](#) and [2.65\(a\)\(i\)](#) provide that if a refusal or requirement is expressly limited to only certain goods/services and the applicant fails to respond, or respond completely, to the refusal or requirement, the application shall be abandoned only as to those particular goods/services. See [TMEP §718.02\(a\)](#) for further information about partial abandonment.

1904.03(e) Confirmation or Withdrawal of Provisional Refusal

If the USPTO has sent a notice of provisional refusal, once the procedures regarding the refusal are complete, the USPTO must notify the IB that:

- (1) protection is refused for all goods/services;
- (2) the mark is protected for all goods/services; or
- (3) the mark is protected for some specified goods/services.

Common Reg. 17(5). The IB will record this notice and send it to the holder.

1904.03(f) Notification of Correction in the International Register with Respect to a Pending Request for Extension of Protection

When the IB determines that there is an error concerning an international registration in the International Register, it corrects that error *ex officio*. The IB will also correct an error at the request of the holder or the Office of Origin. Common Reg. 28(1). If the IB notifies the USPTO of a correction with regard to an international registration, the USPTO may declare in a notification to the IB that protection cannot, or can no longer, be granted to the international registration as corrected. Such a declaration must be sent to the IB within 18 months of notification of the correction. This may be done where there are grounds for refusal of the international registration as corrected which did not apply to the international registration as originally notified to the USPTO. Common Reg. 28(3).

Unlike limitations, which affect only the listing of goods and/or services, a correction can involve any element of the international registration, including the mark for which registration is sought, the effective filing date, or the claim of priority. Corrections are not to be treated as amendments from the applicant. They are also not responses to Office actions and do not toll the statutory response period.

If the MPU determines that a correction does have effect in the United States and does not require review by the examining attorney, the correction will be entered into the Trademark database. The MPU trademark specialist will update the prosecution history in the Trademark database to reflect that the processing of the correction has been completed.

If the MPU determines that review by the examining attorney is required, the MPU will notify the examining attorney of the correction and the examining attorney will determine whether the correction raises any new grounds for refusal or basis for a new requirement. If the examining attorney determines that the correction raises new issues, he or she must issue an Office action refusing registration or making the necessary requirements and indicating the reasons why, supported by evidence, where appropriate. The examining attorney must also notify the MPU that a new Office action has been issued, and the MPU will ensure that the IB is notified of the new grounds for refusal. The applicant may argue against the refusal or requirement, and, if such refusal or requirement is made final, file an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or petition to the Director pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#).

See also [TMEP §1904.14](#) regarding corrections to registered extensions of protection, and [TMEP §1906.01\(f\)](#) for information about filing requests for correction with the IB.

1904.03(g) Notification of Limitation of the List of Goods/Services with Respect to a Pending Request for Extension of Protection

Limitation Due to Partial Cancellation of International Registration

When the USPTO receives notification from the IB that the international registration has been cancelled in part due to the ceasing of effect of the basic registration, the USPTO will partially cancel the pending request for extension of protection by limiting or removing the cancelled goods and/or services from the USPTO's Trademark database. [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.30](#). The MPU trademark specialist will determine what, if any, goods and/or services remain extended to the United States and narrow the listing of goods and/or services accordingly.

Voluntary Limitation by Holder of International Registration

Upon receipt of notification from the IB that a voluntary limitation of the list of goods/services may affect an extension of protection to the United States, the USPTO may declare that the limitation has no effect. Such a declaration must be sent to the IB within 18 months of notification of the limitation. The USPTO will indicate the reasons why the limitation has no effect, the corresponding essential provisions of the law, and whether the declaration is subject to review or appeal. Common Regs. 27(5)(a)-(c).

If the MPU determines that a limitation does have effect in the U.S., the limitation shall be entered into the Trademark database with respect to the goods/services as identified at the time of receipt of the notification of limitation.

If the MPU determines that review by the examining attorney is required, the MPU will notify the examining attorney, and the examining attorney will determine whether the limited goods/services are within the scope of the identification of goods/services as originally identified in the §66(a) application. For example, if the request for extension of protection originally lists goods as “clothing” in International Class 25, and the applicant submits a response to an Office action proposing to amend such goods to “clothing, namely pants, shirts, and dresses,” and the USPTO later receives a voluntary limitation that lists the goods as “clothing for women,” the consideration of scope is against the original identification of “clothing.” If it is determined that the limitation is not an expansion of the scope of the original listing, the limited goods/services will then be considered in light of any interim amendments proposed by the applicant during prosecution of the application. In the example above, the proposed wording “clothing, namely, pants, shirts, and dresses” will be further limited to “clothing *for women*, namely, pants, shirts, and dresses.”

If the examining attorney determines that the limitation is not acceptable (e.g., because he or she determines that the change requested results in an extension rather than a limitation of the goods/services), he or she must issue an Office action refusing the limitation and indicating the reasons why the limitation is unacceptable. If the listing of goods/services is not an expansion of the original goods/services but is itself indefinite by USPTO standards (e.g., “clothing for women”), the examining attorney must issue a new requirement for a sufficiently definite identification and may supersede any previously issued requirement to the extent it remains outstanding at the time of examination of the limitation. If the examining attorney issues a new Office action relating to the limitation of goods/services, he/she must also notify the MPU, and the MPU will ensure that the IB is notified when a limitation is found to have no effect in the United States. The applicant may argue against the refusal of the limitation, and, if such refusal is made final, file an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or petition to the Director pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.63\(b\)\(2\)](#).

If an Office action requiring only that the identification be amended is outstanding, it is possible that a limitation notice processed before the end of the response period would resolve the issue. If the examining attorney determines that the identification proposed in the limitation is acceptable and puts the application in condition for approval for publication, the examining attorney may issue a no-call examiner’s amendment that acknowledges receipt of the limitation and states that the requirement for a more definite identification is satisfied and may then approve the application for publication.

If a limitation results in the deletion of all goods/services identified in the §66(a) application, the application will be abandoned.

See also [TMEP §1906.01\(e\)](#) for information about filing requests to record limitations with the IB, and [TMEP §1904.15](#) regarding limitations in the list of goods/services in registered extensions of protection.

1904.04 Opposition

Section 68(a)(2) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(a\)\(2\)](#), provides that a request for extension of protection is subject to opposition under §13 of the Trademark Act. As noted above, the USPTO must notify the IB within 18 months of the date the IB sends the request for extension of protection to the USPTO of: (1) a notification of refusal based on the filing of an opposition; or (2) a notification of the possibility that an opposition may be filed after expiration of the 18-month period.

The notice must state the dates on which the opposition period begins and ends, if known. If the dates are unknown, the USPTO must communicate them to the IB “at the latest at the same time as any notification of a provisional refusal based on an opposition.” Common Reg. 16(1)(b).

Any notification of refusal on the basis of opposition must be received by the IB within 7 months after the beginning of the opposition period or within one month after the end of the opposition period, whichever is earlier. 15 U.S.C. §1141h(c)(2); Article 5(2)(c)(ii).

An opposition to a §66(a) application must be filed through the Electronic System for Trademark Trials and Appeals (“ESTTA”) and may not be filed in paper form under any circumstances. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(b\)\(2\)](#); *In re Börlind Gesellschaft für kosmetische Erzeugnisse mbH*, 73 USPQ2d 2019 (TTAB 2005) . Once filed, an opposition to a §66(a) application may not be amended to add to the grounds for opposition, to add to the goods or services opposed, or to add a joint opposer. [37 C.F.R. §2.107\(b\)](#). The opposition is limited to those goods, services, grounds, and named opposers set forth in the ESTTA-generated opposition form cover sheet. 37 C.F.R. §§2.104(c), 2.107(b) (“The grounds for opposition, the goods or services opposed, and the named opposers are limited to those identified in the ESTTA cover sheet regardless of what is contained in any attached statement.”). *CSC Holdings LLC v. SAS Optimhome* , 99 USPQ2d 1959, 1962-63 (TTAB 2011); *Hunt Control Sys., Inc. v. Koninklijke Philips Elec. N.V.*, 98 USPQ2d 1558, 1561-62 (TTAB 2011) . The notice of opposition must also include all fees for each party opposer to oppose the registration in all classes specified in the opposition. [37 C.F.R. §2.101\(d\)\(2\)](#).

Request for Extension of Time to Oppose . A request for extension of time to oppose a §66(a) application must be filed through ESTTA. [37 C.F.R. §2.102\(a\)\(2\)](#).

No more than three requests to extend the time for filing an opposition may be filed. The time for filing an opposition may not be extended beyond 180 days from the date of publication. [37 C.F.R. §2.102\(c\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1503](#) *et seq.* for further information about oppositions.

1904.05 Certificate of Extension of Protection

If the mark in a §66(a) application is published for opposition and is not opposed, or survives all oppositions filed, the USPTO will issue a certificate of extension of protection and publish notice of such certificate in the *Official Gazette*. Section 69(a) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141i\(a\)](#). From the date of issuance of the certificate, the extension of protection has the same effect and validity as a registration on the Principal Register, and the holder of the international registration has the same rights and remedies as the owner of a registration on the Principal Register. [15 U.S.C. §1141i\(b\)](#). The certificate of registration will look the same as the certificate issued for registrations resulting from applications under §1 and §44 of the Trademark Act (*see* [TMEP §1601.01\(a\)](#)).

Upon registration, the USPTO will refer to an extension of protection to the United States as a “registration,” “registered extension of protection,” or a “§66(a) registration.” [37 C.F.R. §7.25\(c\)](#).

A registered extension of protection always remains part of and dependent upon the international registration.

In this respect, a registered extension of protection differs from a §44 registration, which is independent from the underlying foreign registration, pursuant to [15 U.S.C. §1126\(f\)](#).

See [TMEP §§1613](#) and [1904.10](#) regarding the requirement for an affidavit of use or excusable nonuse under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#); [TMEP §1905](#) regarding renewal and expiration of international registrations in general; and [TMEP §1614](#) for information about renewal of registered extensions of protection.

1904.06 Assignment of Extension of Protection to the United States

Under §72 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141 l](#), an extension of protection to the United States may be assigned, together with the goodwill associated with the mark, only to a person who is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment in a country that is either: (1) party to the Madrid Protocol, or (2) a member of an intergovernmental organization that is a party to the Madrid Protocol.

Because an extension of protection remains part of the international registration, assignments of extensions of protection to the United States must first be recorded at the IB. A holder or assignee cannot file an assignment (or other document transferring title) of an extension of protection to the United States directly with the Assignment Recordation Branch of the USPTO. The USPTO will record only those assignments (or other documents transferring title) that have been recorded with the IB. The IB will notify the USPTO of any changes in ownership recorded in the International Register, and the USPTO will automatically update the Trademark database and the Assignment database to reflect the change(s). See [TMEP §501.07](#).

See [TMEP §§1906.01](#) *et seq.* regarding requests to record a change of ownership in the International Register.

Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to §66(a) applications or registered extensions of protection. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

1904.07 Invalidation of Protection in United States

A registered extension of protection to the United States may be invalidated. See Common Reg. 19. “Invalidation” means a decision by a competent administrative or judicial authority of the United States, revoking or cancelling the effects, in the territory of the United States, of an international registration with regard to all or some of the goods/services covered by a registered extension of protection to the United States. Common Reg. 1(xix *bis*); see Article 5(6). In other words, a registration is invalidated when it is revoked or cancelled, in whole or in part, pursuant to a decision of the USPTO or by order of a federal court of the United States.

Generally, there are four reasons invalidation of a registered extension of protection to the United States may occur: (1) cancellation proceedings instituted by a third party before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (“TTAB”); (2) order of a federal court of the United States; (3) failure to file an acceptable §71 affidavit or declaration; or (4) holder’s voluntary surrender of the registered extension of protection. Each of these reasons is discussed below.

Invalidation may be in whole or in part, that is, it may be as to all or some of the goods/services covered by the registered extension of protection to the United States. See Common Reg. 19(1)(v). In the case of partial invalidation, the USPTO will not cancel the registered extension of protection but, instead, delete the relevant goods/services from the USPTO's electronic records for the registration. An updated registration certificate will not issue.

The holder has the same rights and remedies as the owner of a national registration issued on the Principal Register by the USPTO. [15 U.S.C. §1141i\(b\)\(2\)](#), [37 C.F.R. §7.25](#). Accordingly, the cancellation procedures mentioned above that result in an invalidation of a registered extension of protection are governed by the substantive and procedural law of the United States, and are the same as for national marks registered by the USPTO. See *Guide to International Registration*, B.II.91.01–.02.

1904.07(a) Invalidation Resulting From Cancellation Due to Third-Party Challenge

Invalidation may occur due to cancellation proceedings instituted by a third party before the TTAB, under §14 of the Trademark Act, because, for instance, the mark has become generic. See [15 U.S.C. §1064](#). If the third party is successful and the TTAB issues an order granting the cancellation of the registered extension of protection, the USPTO will cancel the registration in due course. See [TMEP §1607](#) and [TBMP §§303, 307–309](#) regarding cancellation of registration.

Invalidation may also occur pursuant to an order of a federal court of the United States cancelling the registered extension of protection, under §37 of the Trademark Act. See [15 U.S.C. §1119](#). Such order may result from, for example, infringement proceedings involving the holder and a third party, or the disposal of the holder's assets. The USPTO will cancel the registration pursuant to the court order. See [TMEP §1610](#) regarding a court order concerning a registration.

Regardless of whether by order of the TTAB or a federal court of the United States, after cancellation, the USPTO will notify the IB that the registered extension of protection to the United States has been invalidated. See [TMEP § 1904.07\(d\)](#) regarding the issuance of the notice of invalidation.

1904.07(b) Invalidation Resulting From Cancellation for Failure to File §71 Affidavit or Declaration

Invalidation may occur due to the holder's failure to timely file and meet the requirements of an affidavit or declaration under §71 of the Trademark Act, showing use of the registered mark in commerce in the United States. See [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.36–.40](#); [TMEP §§1613, 1613.04–1613.05, 1904.10](#). Failure to timely file the §71 affidavit or declaration is a statutory requirement, and the Director has no authority to waive the deadline for filing. See [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#); [TMEP §1613.04](#). The USPTO typically waits until about one month after the expiration of the grace period before automatically cancelling the registered extension of protection, in order to avoid inadvertent cancellation of a registration due to a delay in entering a timely filed §71 affidavit or declaration into the USPTO records.

If a timely filed §71 affidavit or declaration does not meet the requirements for filing and is found unacceptable, the USPTO will issue an Office action notifying the holder of the refusal and stating the reasons the affidavit or declaration is deficient. Failure to timely respond to the Office action or failure to timely correct the deficiencies stated in the Office action will result in cancellation of the registered extension of protection to the United States. [37 C.F.R. §7.39](#); [TMEP §1613.15–1613.17\(c\)](#).

Once the registration is cancelled, the USPTO will notify the IB that the registered extension of protection to the United States has been invalidated. See [TMEP § 1904.07\(d\)](#) regarding the issuance of the notice of invalidation.

In a registered extension of protection for which an acceptable §71 affidavit or declaration was not filed, if the holder seeks to expedite cancellation, the holder may request in writing that the USPTO expedite the processing of the cancellation of the registered extension of protection. The request should be signed by the holder, someone with legal authority to bind the holder (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner, and should specifically state that an acceptable §71 affidavit or declaration was not filed on or before the end of the grace period. Such a request should be directed to the Post Registration Section; if it is sent to the examining attorney, the examining attorney should forward it to the Supervisor of the Post Registration Section.

See [TMEP §§1613–1613.19](#) for detailed information about §71 affidavits or declarations.

1904.07(c) Invalidation Resulting From Voluntary Surrender of Registered Extension of Protection

Invalidation may occur when the holder of a registered extension of protection voluntarily surrenders the registration for cancellation under §7(e) of the Trademark Act. [15 U.S.C. §1057\(e\)](#). If the registered extension of protection is surrendered in its entirety, the registration will be cancelled in due course. If an acceptable §71 affidavit or declaration is filed for less than all the goods/services in the registered extension of protection, this is regarded as a surrender of the registration as to the good(s)/service(s) that are omitted. The relevant good(s)/service(s) will be deleted from the USPTO's electronic records for the registration. An updated registration certificate will not issue.

After cancellation, the USPTO will notify the IB that the registered extension of protection to the United States has been invalidated. See [TMEP § 1904.07\(d\)](#) regarding the issuance of the notice of invalidation. See [TMEP §1608](#) for information about surrender of registration for cancellation.

1904.07(d) Issuance of Notice of Invalidation to the International Bureau

Once the registered extension of protection has been cancelled by the USPTO, the Director shall issue to the IB a notice of invalidation of the registered extension of protection to the United States. *See* Article 5(6). The USPTO must notify the IB of the following information in the notice of invalidation: the administrative or judicial authority (i.e., the Director or federal court) that cancelled the registered extension of protection, the date on which the invalidation was pronounced and the effective date of the invalidation, and the fact that it is no longer subject to appeal; the number of the international registration and the name of the holder; and, if the invalidation does not concern all the goods/services, state those that are concerned (indicating either the goods/services that are no longer covered, or those that remain covered). Common Reg. 19(1).

If the holder seeks to expedite the issuance of the notice of invalidation to the IB, the holder may request in writing that the USPTO expedite the processing of the notice of invalidation of the registered extension of protection. The request should be signed by the holder, someone with legal authority to bind the holder (e.g., a corporate officer or general partner of a partnership), or a qualified practitioner. Such a request should be directed to the Madrid Processing Unit via e-mail at MPU@uspto.gov.

Upon receipt of the notice of invalidation from the USPTO, the IB will record the invalidation in the International Register, inform the holder, and inform the USPTO of the date on which the invalidation was recorded in the International Register. Common Reg. 19(2).

After a registered extension of protection to the United States has been cancelled and inscribed in the International Register as invalidated, the holder may submit a subsequent designation seeking protection in the United States of the same mark for all or some of the goods/services in the international registration. The IB will not process a subsequent designation until the notice of invalidation has been recorded in the International Register. The holder may submit a subsequent designation prior to the recordal of the invalidation and request that it take effect immediately after the recording of the invalidation in the International Register. Common Reg. 24(3)(c)(ii). Upon notification, the USPTO will examine the subsequent designation to determine if protection may be granted.

1904.08 Cancellation of International Registration by IB

If the IB notifies the USPTO that an international registration has been cancelled with respect to some or all of the goods/services, the USPTO will cancel the extension of protection of that international registration to the United States with respect to such goods/services as of the date on which the IB cancelled the international registration. [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.30](#).

See [TMEP §1905](#) regarding renewal of international registrations in general, and [TMEP §1614](#) for information about renewal of registered extensions of protection to the United States.

1904.09 Transformation to Application Under §1 or §44

An international registration is dependent on the basic application and/or basic registration for five years after the date of the international registration. Article 6(3). If the basic application or registration is restricted, abandoned, cancelled, or expired with respect to some or all of the goods or services listed in the international registration, the Office of Origin will notify the IB, and the IB will cancel, to the extent applicable, the international registration and notify the USPTO of the cancellation. Article 6(4). See [TMEP §1902.09](#).

Thus, an Article 6(4) cancellation is a cancellation, in whole or in part, of the international registration by the IB at the request of an Office of Origin. Thereafter, the USPTO will cancel in whole, or restrict in part, the corresponding §66(a) registered extension of protection, or abandon, in whole or in part, the corresponding §66(a) application.

In this situation, the holder of the international registration may “transform” the goods and/or services to which the cancellation applies in the corresponding pending or registered §66(a) extension of protection to the United States into an application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act for registration of the same mark for any or all of the cancelled, restricted, or abandoned goods/services that were covered by the extension of protection. The effective filing date of the new §1 or §44 application is the international registration date, the date of recordal of the extension of protection if based on subsequent designation, or the date of priority of the request for extension of protection with the IB, whichever is applicable. [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#); Article 9 *quinquies*.

A request for transformation must be filed within three months after the date on which the Article 6(4) cancellation was processed by the IB. [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#); Article 9 *quinquies*(i). The deadline for filing a request for transformation is a statutory requirement. The Director cannot extend, suspend, or waive this statutory requirement for any reason, even for an extraordinary situation. See *In re Mother Tucker's Food*

Experience (Can.) Inc., 925 F.2d 1402, 1405, 17 USPQ2d 1795, 1797-98 (Fed. Cir. 1991); *In re Media Cent. IP Corp.*, 65 USPQ2d 1637, 1639 (Dir USPTO 2002); [TMEP §§ 1604.04, 1708](#).

An extension of protection can be transformed only in the event of an Article 6(4) cancellation of the international registration, that is, at the request of the Office of Origin due to the cancellation of the basic application and/or registration. It is not available if the international registration expires for failure to renew, is cancelled, in whole or in part, at the request of the holder, or is cancelled, in whole or in part, for any other reason. [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.31](#); Article 9 *quinquies*. See [TMEP §1904.09\(a\)](#) for the requirements for transformation.

1904.09(a) Requirements for Transformation

A request for transformation must be filed within three months after the date on which the international registration was cancelled, in whole or in part. Article 9 *quinquies*(i); [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#). The request must include:

- (1) The serial number or registration number of the extension of protection to the United States (i.e., the §66(a) application or registered extension of protection);
- (2) The name and address of the holder of the international registration;
- (3) The goods and/or services to be transformed, if other than all the goods and/or services that have been cancelled;
- (4) The domestic application filing fee required by [37 C.F.R. §2.6\(a\)\(1\)](#) for at least one class of goods or services; and
- (5) An e-mail address for receipt of correspondence from the USPTO.

[37 C.F.R. §7.31\(a\)](#).

The holder must file the request for transformation directly with the USPTO, and the transformed application will be examined as a domestic application.

Under §70(c) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(c\)](#), and Article 9 *quinquies*, transformation may take place only if the international registration is cancelled or restricted *at the request of the Office of Origin under Article 6(4), due to the cancellation of the basic application and/or registration*. It is not available if the international registration expires for failure to renew, is cancelled or restricted at the request of the holder, or is cancelled or restricted for any other reason.

The USPTO prefers that a request for transformation be filed electronically. In TEAS, the transformation request form can be accessed by clicking on the link entitled "Madrid protocol forms" at <http://www.uspto.gov>.

Alternatively, the request may be mailed using the First Class Service of the USPS to the following address:

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). It may also be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center, at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention: MPU. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#). The certificate of mailing or transmission

procedures of [37 C.F.R. §2.197](#) and Priority Mail Express® provisions of [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#) do not apply to requests for transformation. [37 C.F.R. §§2.197\(a\)\(2\)\(ii\)](#), [7.4\(b\)\(2\)](#), and [7.4\(e\)](#).

Requests for transformation cannot be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(5\)](#) and [7.4\(d\)\(6\)](#).

1904.09(b) Examination of Transformed Application

A “transformed” application under §1 or §44 of the Trademark Act resulting from the transformation of a cancelled extension of protection must comply with all the requirements of the Trademark Act and Trademark Rules of Practice. [37 C.F.R. §7.31\(c\)](#). The USPTO will assign a new serial number, and will link the prosecution history of the cancelled extension of protection to the new “transformed” application. A notation of the serial number to which the cancelled extension of protection is transformed appears in the electronic record of the cancelled extension of protection, under “Other Information” in the Trademark database (in the “Transformed To” field). Similarly, a notation of the serial number of the cancelled request for extension of protection appears in the Trademark database for the new transformed application (in the “Transformed From” field).

The “transformed” application will have the same filing date as the cancelled extension of protection, that is: (1) the international registration date, if the request for extension of protection to the United States was made in the international application; or (2) the date of recordal of the subsequent designation with the IB, if the request for extension of protection to the United States was made in a subsequent designation. If the extension of protection was entitled to priority under §67 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141g](#), the new application is entitled to the same priority.

When a cancelled extension of protection is transformed into a new application under §1 or §44, the examining attorney must conduct a new search to determine whether any later-filed applications for conflicting marks were approved for publication or registration and place the search strategy in the record. If a later-filed application has been approved, the examining attorney should inform the examining attorney who approved the later-filed application of the transformed application, so that appropriate action may be taken. If the later-filed application has been published, the examining attorney handling that application should request jurisdiction (*see* [TMEP §1504.04\(a\)](#)) and suspend the application pending disposition of the transformed application. If a later-filed application for a conflicting mark has matured into registration, the examining attorney must refuse registration of the transformed application under §2(d), even though the application for the registered mark was filed after the transformed application.

The examining attorney must also require the applicant to submit a verified statement in support of the application that relates back to the filing date of the transformed application. See [TMEP §804.02](#) regarding the essential allegations required to verify an application for registration of a mark under §1 or §44, and [TMEP §804.04](#) regarding persons properly authorized to sign a verification on behalf of an applicant.

If it is unclear from the transformation request, the examining attorney must require the holder to clarify the goods/services to be transformed, if other than all the goods/services that were covered by the cancelled extension of protection. [37 C.F.R. §7.31\(a\)\(3\)](#).

Even if the mark in the extension of protection was already published or registered, republication will be required, due to the substitution of a new basis for registration. [37 C.F.R. §2.35\(b\)\(2\)](#).

Generally, in examining a “transformed” application where the extension of protection was published or registered, the USPTO will only issue requirements or refusals related to the new §1 or §44 basis. However,

in some cases, where a significant length of time has elapsed since the initial examination of the request for extension of protection, refusal of registration may be appropriate due to changed circumstances. For example, the mark may have become descriptive or generic as applied to the goods/services.

1904.10 Affidavits of Use or Excusable Nonuse Required

Under §71 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141k](#), a registered extension of protection to the United States will be cancelled if the holder of the international registration fails to periodically file affidavits of use in commerce or excusable nonuse. [37 C.F.R. §7.36\(b\)](#). See [TMEP §1613](#) for further information.

1904.11 Incontestability

Under §73 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141m](#), if a holder files an affidavit that meets the requirements of §15 of the Trademark Act, a registered extension of protection to the United States may become “incontestable”. The period of continuous use on which an affidavit of incontestability may be based may begin no earlier than the date of issuance of the registered extension of protection, unless the holder owns a prior U.S. registration of the same mark for the same goods/services/collective membership organization.

15 U.S.C. §1141m-n. See [TMEP §§1605](#) *et seq.* regarding the requirements for an affidavit of incontestability under §15 of the Trademark Act.

1904.12 Replacement

If a United States national registration and a subsequently issued certificate of extension of protection of an international registration to the United States are: (1) owned by the same person; (2) identify the same mark; and (3) list the same goods/services/collective membership organization, then the extension of protection shall have the same rights as those accrued to the U.S. national registration at the time the certificate of extension of protection issues. [15 U.S.C. §1141n](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.28\(a\)](#); Article 4 *bis*.

Legally, replacement takes place automatically, by operation of law. However, the USPTO will note the replacement in its records (and notify the IB accordingly) only if the holder of a registered extension of protection files a request that it do so. A request to note replacement of a U.S. national registration with a registered extension of protection must include:

- (1) The serial number or registration number of the extension of protection to the United States (i.e., the §66(a) application or registered extension of protection);
- (2) The registration number of the replaced U.S. registration; and
- (3) The fee required by [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#).

[37 C.F.R. §7.28\(b\)](#).

The holder cannot file the request to note replacement of the U.S. national registration until the registration based on the request for extension of protection issues. If the original U.S. national registration is active on the date the registration based on the request for extension of protection issues, the USPTO will accept a request to note replacement that is not filed until after the U.S. national registration is cancelled or expired. However, if the original U.S. national registration is in the grace period for filing an affidavit of continued use under Section 8 or a combined affidavit of continued use and renewal under Sections 8 and 9, [15 U.S.C. §§1058, 1059](#), at the time the registered extension of protection issues, the USPTO will not note replacement unless the required affidavit is filed and accepted.

“Replacement” does not invalidate the U.S. national registration. The U.S. national registration remains on the register, with all the rights attaching to such a registration, as long as the holder renews the registration under §9 of the Trademark Act and files the necessary affidavits of use or excusable nonuse under §8 of the Trademark Act. [37 C.F.R. §7.29](#). It is up to the holder to decide whether to maintain the replaced U.S. national registration.

1904.13 Amendment and Correction of Registered Extension of Protection to the United States

All requests to record changes to an international registration and associated extensions of protection must be filed at the IB. Accordingly, the holder of a registered extension of protection of an international registration to the United States may file a request for amendment or correction under §7 of the Trademark Act with the USPTO only in limited circumstances, where the change will affect only the extension of protection to the United States. See TMEP §§ [1609.01\(a\)](#), [1609.02](#), [1904.13\(a\)](#), and [1904.13\(b\)](#) for further information.

1904.13(a) Limited Amendments to Registered Extension of Protection

The holder of a registered extension of protection may request certain changes under §7 of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1057](#), that will affect only the extension of protection in the United States. For example, an applicant may request to amend the registered extension of protection to add a voluntary disclaimer, to amend the translation of the mark as provided during examination, or to limit or partially delete goods, services, or classes. [TMEP §1609.01\(a\)](#). If the USPTO grants the §7 request, the USPTO will notify the IB of the change to the extension of protection to the United States.

The USPTO will not accept an amendment of a registered extension of protection involving the holder’s name or address that has not been recorded with the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#); [TMEP §1906.01\(c\)](#).

The mark in a registered extension of protection cannot be amended. See [TMEP §§1609.02](#), [1906.01\(i\)](#).

See also [TMEP §§1906.01](#) *et seq.* regarding requests to record changes at the IB.

1904.13(b) Corrections to Registered Extensions of Protection

Generally, all requests to record changes to an international registration must be filed at the IB, because an extension of protection of an international registration remains part of the international registration even after registration in the United States. However, in the limited circumstance where the holder of an international registration makes a mistake in a document filed during prosecution in the USPTO that affects only the extension of protection to the United States, the registrant may request correction of the error pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.175](#). For example, if there was a minor typographical error in an amendment to the identification of goods in a §66(a) application, and the mark registered with such an error, the owner of the registration could request correction. If the USPTO grants the request, the USPTO will notify the IB of the change to the extension of protection to the United States.

If a clerical error occurred through the fault of the USPTO, which is apparent from a review of USPTO records, the USPTO will correct the error without charge. See [TMEP §1609.10\(a\)](#) for procedures for requesting correction of a USPTO error and [§ 1609.10\(b\)](#) regarding correction of a registrant’s error.

1904.14 Notification of Correction in the International Register with Respect to Registered Extension of Protection

When the IB determines that there is an error concerning an international registration in the International Register, it corrects that error *ex officio*. The IB will also correct errors at the request of the holder or the Office of Origin. Common Reg. 28(1). See [TMEP §1906.01\(f\)](#). If the IB notifies the USPTO of a correction of an international registration, the USPTO may declare in a notification to the IB that protection cannot, or can no longer, be granted to the international registration as corrected. This may be done where there are grounds for refusal of the international registration as corrected which did not apply to the international registration as originally notified to the USPTO. Common Reg. 28(3).

Upon receipt of a notification of correction in a registered extension of protection, the MPU shall determine whether the correction would require republication of the mark. If republication would not be required, the MPU will enter the correction in the Trademark database and ensure that a certificate of correction is issued to the holder.

When a notification of correction received from the IB prior to registration is not acted upon in sufficient time or is received too late to withdraw the application from issuance of a registration, the resulting registration generally will be treated as inadvertently issued. However, to the extent possible given the nature of the correction, the holder will be given the opportunity to keep the registration as issued and the USPTO will create a child application for any corrected goods/services/classes. The USPTO will notify the holder via the last correspondence address of record as to the receipt of the correction and the options for processing. To the extent a correction involves issues that cannot be handled by the creation of a child application, such as a material alteration of the mark, the registration will be cancelled as inadvertently issued and examined in accordance with Office policy and procedures.

When a notification of correction is received after the USPTO has issued a registered extension of protection, the correction will be reviewed in the MPU to determine if the registration may be corrected, as no republication would be required to implement the correction. When the correction would not trigger a requirement for republication, the MPU will make the correction and schedule the issuance of an updated registration certificate, as necessary.

If the MPU determines that entry of the correction would require further examination, the holder will be given the opportunity to keep the registration as issued and to divide any corrected goods, services, and/or classes affected into a child application pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.87](#). See [TMEP §§1110–1110.12](#). The holder may also request the entire file be restored to pendency and the application will be re-examined as corrected.

Upon receipt of a correction that would affect the rights deriving from the international registration, the USPTO is afforded a new period of 18 months within which to notify the IB of any newly arising grounds for refusal. To the extent any requirements or refusals are applicable to the corrected data, the examining attorney shall issue an Office action, which will be forwarded by the MPU to the IB, as required by Section 68(c)(1), [15 U.S.C. §1141h\(c\)\(1\)](#), and Rule 28(e) of the Common Regulations. The examining attorney must contact the MPU upon issuance of such an action so that it will be forwarded as required.

See also [TMEP §1904.03\(f\)](#) regarding corrections to pending §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §1906.01\(f\)](#) for information about filing a request for correction with the IB.

1904.15 Notification of Limitation of the List of Goods/Services with Respect to Registered Extension of Protection

Limitation Due to Partial Cancellation of International Registration

When the USPTO receives notification from the IB that the international registration has been cancelled in part due to the ceasing of effect of the basic registration, the USPTO will partially cancel the registered extension of protection by updating the USPTO's Trademark database and issuing an updated registration certificate. [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(a\)](#); [37 C.F.R. §7.30](#) The MPU will determine what, if any, goods and/or services remain extended to the United States and narrow the listing of goods and/or services accordingly.

Voluntary Limitation by Holder of International Registration

Upon receipt of notification from the IB that a voluntary limitation of the list of goods/services affects the United States, the USPTO may declare that the limitation has no effect. Such a declaration must be sent to the IB within 18 months of notification of the limitation. The USPTO will indicate the reasons for which the limitation has no effect, the corresponding essential provisions of the law, and whether the declaration is subject to review or appeal. Common Regs. 27(5)(a)-(c).

If the MPU trademark specialist determines that the limitation has no effect in the United States (e.g., because he or she determines that the change requested results in an extension rather than a limitation of the goods/services), the MPU will forward the case to the Post Registration division to issue a post-registration Office action refusing the limitation as an unacceptable amendment of the registered extension of protection under Section 7. [15 U.S.C. §1057](#). See [TMEP §1609.03](#) regarding amendment of the identification of goods or services in a registered extension of protection. Once issued, the MPU will forward a copy of the Office action declaring the limitation to have no effect to the IB within 18 months of the date of the IB's notification of the limitation.

If the MPU trademark specialist determines that the limitation does have effect in the United States, the MPU trademark specialist will enter the limitation into the Trademark database and ensure that an updated registration certificate is issued to the holder.

If a limitation results in the deletion of all goods/services identified in the registered extension of protection, the registration will be cancelled.

See also [TMEP §1904.03\(g\)](#) regarding limitations of the goods/services in pending §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §1906.01\(e\)](#) for information about filing a request to record a limitation with the IB.

1905 Renewal of International Registrations

The term of an international registration is ten years, and it may be renewed for ten years upon payment of the renewal fee. Articles 6(1) and 7(1). Renewal of international registrations must be made at the IB, in accordance with Article 7 and Common Regs. 29 - 31. There is a renewal form, form MM11, on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>.

The USPTO will not process a request to renew an international registration nor forward it to the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.41](#).

The USPTO does not issue inquiries to the owner of a §66(a) application or registered extension of protection as to whether an international registration has been renewed. Under §70(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1141j\(b\)](#), and Article 3 *ter*(2) of the Protocol, if the international registration is not renewed, the IB will notify the USPTO that the registration has expired. The USPTO will then cancel the registered extension of protection or abandon the §66(a) application as of the expiration date of the international registration.

See [TMEP §1614](#) regarding renewal of a registered extension of protection to the United States.

1906 Communications with International Bureau Regarding International Registrations

Information about communicating directly with the IB is available on the WIPO website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. The IB can be contacted by mail to 34 chemin des Colombettes, P.O. Box 18, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland; by telephone at 41 22 338 9111; by fax to 41 22 740 1429; or by e-mail to intreg.mail@wipo.int.

1906.01 Recording Changes in International Register

The IB will record changes and other matters concerning international registrations in the International Register. Such requests are governed by Articles 9 and 9 *bis* and Common Reg. 25. Some of the changes that can be recorded in the International Register are:

- Change in ownership of the registration;
- Change of holder's name and address;
- Change in name or address of holder's representative;
- Limitation, renunciation, or cancellation of international registration.

Most requests to record changes must be filed with the IB on the IB's forms, available on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. There are only two limited situations in which a request to record a change may be filed with the IB through the USPTO:

- (1) an assignment that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §7.23\(a\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §1906.01\(a\)\(i\)](#)); or
- (2) a security interest or other restriction of a holder's right to dispose of an international registration (or the release of such a restriction) that meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§7.24\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) (*see* [TMEP §1906.01\(b\)](#)).

[37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

1906.01(a) Change in Ownership of International Registration

The IB will record a change in ownership by assignment, merger, court decision, or operation of law at the request of the holder, the Contracting Party of the holder, or an interested person. Article 9; Common Reg. 25(1)(a)(i). The change may relate to some or all of the goods/services in some or all of the designated Contracting Parties. A fee is required.

Most requests to record changes of ownership must be filed directly with the IB. [37 C.F.R. §§7.22](#) and [7.23](#). Form MM5 is available on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/> for that purpose. The IB does not require copies of assignments or other supporting documents. See [TMEP §1906.01\(a\)\(i\)](#) regarding

the limited circumstances in which a request to record a change in ownership may be filed with the IB through the USPTO.

1906.01(a)(i) Requirements for Submitting Changes in Ownership of International Registration Through the USPTO

The USPTO will accept for submission and forward to the IB a request to record a change of ownership only if *all* of the following conditions have been met:

- (1) the assignee cannot obtain the assignor's signature on the request to record the change;
- (2) the assignee is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States; and
- (3) the assigned goods/services applies to the designation to the United States or an international registration that is based on a U.S. application or registration.

[37 C.F.R. §7.23.](#)

No other requests to record changes of ownership can be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §§7.22](#) and [7.23.](#)

A request to record a change of ownership filed through the USPTO must also include:

- The international registration number;
- The name and address of the holder of the international registration;
- The name and address of the assignee of the international registration;
- A statement that the assignee: (i) is a national of the United States; (ii) has a domicile in the United States; or (iii) has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States. Where an assignee's address is not in the United States, the assignee must provide the address of its United States domicile or establishment;
- A statement, signed and verified or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), that, for the request to record the assignment, either the assignee could not obtain the assignor's signature because the holder no longer exists, or after a good-faith effort, the assignee could not obtain the assignor's signature;
- An indication that the assignment applies to the designation to the United States or an international registration that is based on a U.S. application or registration;
- A statement that the assignment applies to all the goods/services in the international registration, or if less, a list of the goods/services in the international registration that have been assigned that pertain to the designation to the United States; and
- The USPTO transmittal fee required by [37 C.F.R. §7.6.](#)

[37 C.F.R. §7.23\(a\).](#)

The USPTO currently does not have a TEAS form available for requests to record a change of ownership of an international registration. A holder must use the official IB form MM5 available on the IB website at: <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en>. The IB will not accept paper requests that are not presented on the official IB form. The form cannot be handwritten. Comm Reg. 25(1)(a); Madrid Admin. Instr. §6(a). The holder should complete the form online, print the completed form and submit it to the USPTO by mail, hand delivery, or courier service.

The completed form submitted through the USPTO must be mailed using the First Class Service of the USPS to:

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). Alternatively, requests to record changes of ownership may be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention: MPU. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#).

Requests to record changes of ownership cannot be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(5\)](#) and [7.4\(d\)\(4\)](#).

If a request to record a change of ownership is mailed to the USPTO via the Priority Mail Express® service of the USPS, the USPTO will deem that the request to record was submitted on the day it was deposited as Priority Mail Express®, provided that the holder complies with the requirements for correspondence sent by Priority Mail Express® set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#). See [TMEP §305.03](#) regarding Priority Mail Express®.

The holder should include a self-addressed, stamped postcard with the paper-filed request to record a change of ownership. Upon receipt, the USPTO will place a label indicating the receipt date on the postcard and return it to the holder.

If the request meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §7.23\(a\)](#), the USPTO will forward it to the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.23\(b\)](#). If the request does not meet these requirements, the USPTO will not forward the request to the IB, and will notify the holder of the reasons. The USPTO will not refund the transmittal fee. [37 C.F.R. §7.23\(c\)](#).

If the IB determines that a request to record a change sent through the USPTO is irregular, the IB will notify both the USPTO and the holder. Common Reg. 26(1). The holder must file a response to any notice of irregularity with the IB; the response cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.23\(d\)](#).

Occasionally, extraordinary circumstances render the assignee of an international registration for which the USPTO was the Office of Origin unable to secure the signature of the holder of that registration. In that instance, the assignee may petition the Director to waive the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §§7.23\(a\)\(6\)](#) and [\(7\)](#), pursuant to [37 C.F.R. §2.146](#). See [TMEP Chapter 1700](#) regarding petitions to the Director.

Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to assignments of an international registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

1906.01(a)(ii) International Fees for Recording Changes of Ownership of International Registration

The international fee for a request to record a change of ownership must be paid directly to the IB in Swiss currency, and may be paid either before or after submission of the request to record. [37 C.F.R. §7.7\(c\)](#).

However, fees paid after the document is received by the IB could result in a notice of irregularity. See [TMEP §1903.02](#) regarding payment of international fees to the IB.

1906.01(a)(iii) Effect of Change of Ownership of International Registration

The validity of a change in ownership with respect to a particular Contracting Party is governed by the law of that Contracting Party. The office of a designated Contracting Party may declare that a change in ownership has no effect in its territory. The declaration must be sent to the IB within 18 months of the date of IB's notification of the change. Common Reg. 27(4).

1906.01(a)(iv) Dividing an International Registration After Change of Ownership with Respect to Some but Not All of the Goods/Services

When ownership of an international registration changes with respect to some but not all of the goods/services for all designated Contracting Parties, the IB will create a separate new international registration for the goods/services that have been transferred, and notify the USPTO accordingly. See the IB's *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.67.01.

When the IB notifies the USPTO of the division of an international registration resulting from a change of ownership with respect to some but not all of the goods or services, the USPTO will construe the IB's notice as a request to divide. See [37 C.F.R. §§2.87\(g\)](#) and [2.171\(b\)\(2\)](#).

See [TMEP §1110.11](#) regarding division of a pending §66(a) application after a partial change of ownership, [TMEP §1615.02](#) regarding division of a registered extension of protection after a partial change of ownership, and [TMEP §501.07](#) regarding assignment of extensions of protection.

1906.01(b) Restriction of Holder's Rights of Disposal

Under Common Reg. 20(1)(a), a holder of an international registration or a Contracting Party of the holder (i.e., a Contracting Party in which the holder is a national, is domiciled, or has a real and effective business or commercial establishment) may inform the IB that the holder's right to dispose of the international registration has been restricted in whole or in part. Also, under Common Reg. 20(1)(b), the office of any designated Contracting Party may inform the IB that the holder's right of disposal has been restricted in the territory of that Contracting Party. Examples of restrictions on the holder's right to dispose are security interests and court orders concerning the disposal of the assets of the holder.

The USPTO will accept for submission and forward to the IB a request to record a restriction of a holder's right to dispose of an international registration, or the release of such a restriction, *only if all of the following conditions have been met:*

- (1)(i) the restriction is the result of a court order; or (ii) the restriction is the result of an agreement between the holder of the international registration and the party restricting the holder's right of disposal, and the signature of the holder of the international registration cannot be obtained;
- (2) the party who obtained the restriction is a national of, is domiciled in, or has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States;
- (3) the restriction or release applies to the holder's right to dispose of the international registration in the United States; and
- (4) the restriction or release applies to the designation to the United States.

[37 C.F.R. §7.24\(a\)](#).

All other requests to record restrictions must be filed with the IB. [37 C.F.R. §§7.22](#) and [7.24\(a\)](#).

A request to record a restriction filed through the USPTO must include:

- The international registration number;
- The name and address of the holder of the international registration;
- The name and address of the party who obtained the restriction;
- A statement that the party who submitted the request: (i) is a national of the United States; (ii) has a domicile in the United States; or (iii) has a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in the United States. Where a party's address is not in the United States, the party must provide the address of its United States domicile or establishment;
- A statement that (i) the restriction is the result of a court order, or (ii) where the restriction is the result of an agreement between the holder of the international registration and the party restricting the holder's right of disposal, a statement, signed and verified or supported by a declaration under [37 C.F.R. §2.20](#), that, for the request to record the restriction, or release of the restriction, either the holder of the international registration could not obtain the signature of the party restricting the holder's right of disposal because the party restricting the holder's right of disposal no longer exists, or, after a good-faith effort, the holder of the international registration could not obtain the signature of the party restricting the holder's right of disposal;
- A summary of the main facts concerning the restriction;
- An indication that the restriction, or the release of the restriction, of the holder's right to dispose of the international registration applies to the designation to the United States or an international registration that is based on a U.S. application or registration; and
- The United States transmittal fee required by [37 C.F.R. §7.6](#).

[37 C.F.R. §7.24\(b\)](#).

A request to record a restriction or release submitted through the USPTO must be mailed using the First Class Service of the USPS to:

Madrid Processing Unit
600 Dulany Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-5793

[37 C.F.R. §§2.190\(e\)](#) and [7.4\(b\)](#). Alternatively, requests to record restrictions or releases may be delivered by hand or courier to the Trademark Assistance Center, at James Madison Building, East Wing, Concourse Level, 600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, Virginia, Attention: MPU. TAC is open 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time, Monday through Friday, except on Federal holidays within the District of Columbia. [37 C.F.R. §7.4\(c\)](#).

Requests to record restrictions or releases cannot be filed by fax. [37 C.F.R. §§2.195\(d\)\(5\)](#) and [7.4\(d\)\(5\)](#).

If a request to record a restriction or release is mailed to the USPTO via the Priority Mail Express® service of the USPS, the USPTO will deem that the request was submitted on the day it was deposited as Priority Mail Express®, provided that the holder complies with the requirements for correspondence sent by Priority Mail Express® set forth in [37 C.F.R. §2.198](#). See [TMEP §305.03](#) regarding Priority Mail Express®.

If the request meets the requirements of [37 C.F.R. §7.24\(b\)](#), the USPTO will forward it to the IB. [37 C.F.R. §7.24\(c\)](#). If the request does not meet these requirements, the USPTO will refuse to forward the request to

the IB, and will notify the holder of the reasons. The USPTO will not refund the transmittal fee. [37 C.F.R. §7.24\(d\)](#).

If the IB determines that a request to record a restriction sent through the USPTO is irregular, the IB will notify both the USPTO and the holder. Common Reg. 26(1). The holder must file a response to any notice of irregularity with the IB; the response cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.24\(e\)](#).

Section 10 of the Trademark Act and 37 C.F.R. Part 3 do not apply to restrictions of a holder's right to dispose of an international registration. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

1906.01(c) Change of the Holder's Name or Address

A request to record a change of the holder's name or address must be filed with the IB; it cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#). Form MM9 is available for this purpose on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. Article 9 *bis*; Common Reg. 25(2).

1906.01(d) Change of Name or Address of Representative

A request to record a change of the representative's name or address must be filed with the IB; it cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#). Form MM10 is available for such requests on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. *See also* Common Reg. 36(i).

See [TMEP §§609.01\(a\)](#) and [1904.02\(i\)](#) regarding the correspondence address in a request for extension of protection to the United States.

1906.01(e) Limitation, Renunciation, or Cancellation of International Registration

Requests to record a limitation, renunciation or cancellation of an international registration must be filed with the IB; they cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#). There are forms for such requests on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/forms>. Under Article 9 *bis*, a holder may record the following restrictions:

- Limitation of the list of goods/services with respect to some or all of the designated Contracting Parties (Common Reg. 25(1)(a)(ii));
- Cancellation of the international registration with respect to all the designated Contracting Parties for some or all of the goods/services (Common Reg. 25(1)(a)(v));
- Renunciation with respect to some but not all of the designated Contracting Parties for all the goods/services (Common Reg. 25(1)(a)(iii)).

The office of a designated Contracting Party may declare that a limitation has no effect in its territory, e.g., because it determines that the change requested results in an extension rather than a limitation. Such declaration must be sent to the IB within 18 months of the date of the IB's notification of the limitation. Common Reg. 27(5).

See [TMEP §1904.03\(g\)](#) regarding limitations in pending §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §1904.15](#) regarding limitations in registered extensions of protection to the United States. *See also* [TMEP §1904.02\(e\)\(ii\)](#).

1906.01(f) Correction of Errors in International Registration

The IB will correct errors in an international registration at the request of the holder or the Office of Origin. Common Reg. 28(1). Requests to correct errors in international registrations in which the USPTO was the Office of Origin must be filed directly with the IB, unless the error was made by the USPTO.

The office of a designated Contracting Party may declare in a notification of provisional refusal that protection can no longer be granted to an international registration as corrected. A new refusal period under Article 5 of the Protocol and Common Regs. 16-17 starts to run from the date of the correction, but only in respect to grounds that did not exist prior to the correction. Common Reg. 28(3).

See [TMEP §1904.03\(f\)](#) regarding corrections to §66(a) applications, and [TMEP §1904.14](#) regarding corrections to registered extensions of protection.

1906.01(g) Merger of International Registrations

Where the same party is the holder of two or more international registrations of the same mark due to a partial change in ownership, that party may request the IB to record a merger of the registrations. Common Reg. 27(3). The request must be filed with the IB; it cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#).

1906.01(h) License

Under Common Reg. 20 *bis* (1), a holder may file a request to record a license, a request for amendment of the recording of a license, or a request for cancellation of the recording of a license. Requests to record a license, or to cancel or amend the recording of a license, cannot be filed through the USPTO. [37 C.F.R. §7.22](#). There are forms for these requests on the IB website at <http://www.wipo.int/madrid/en/>. A designated Contracting Party may declare that the recording of a license has no effect in its territory. The declaration must be sent within 18 months of the IB's notification of recording of the license. Common Reg. 20 *bis*(5).

1906.01(i) Changes that Cannot Be Made to International Registration

Mark in International Registration Cannot Be Changed. There is no provision for a mark to be amended in any way, at any time, even if the mark in the basic application or basic registration changes. *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.72.02.

Goods/Services in International Registration Cannot be Expanded. It is not possible to expand the list of goods/services, even if the added goods/services were listed in the basic application or registration. *Guide to International Registration*, Para. B.II.72.03.

Appendix A

Examining Attorneys' Appeal Briefs

The following format should be used by examining attorneys when preparing an appeal brief in an appeal before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The purpose of this format is to promote uniformity in the manner in which appeal briefs are presented and to suggest content guidelines. The substance of the appeal brief is a matter of individual effort within this format.

If, at the time an application file is sent to an examining attorney for preparation of the appeal brief, the examining attorney determines that jurisdiction should be restored to him or her for further examination (e.g., to make a new refusal, to correct informalities, or to suspend), this request should be submitted in lieu of the appeal brief. The request would usually be entitled "Request for Remand to Examining Attorney" and should be a brief statement of the reason for the request and an explanation of what action the examining attorney intends to take. A request for remand to submit additional evidence must include a showing of good cause (which may take the form of a satisfactory explanation as to why the evidence was not filed prior to appeal), and be accompanied by the additional evidence sought to be introduced. [TBMP §1207.02](#). The filing of such a request should be approved by the managing attorney.

If the examining attorney's request is granted, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will stay further proceedings in connection with the appeal. If the request is denied, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will reset the time for submission of the examining attorney's appeal brief.

The brief may not exceed twenty-five (25) double-spaced pages. [TMEP §1501.02](#). When referring to the record, the examining attorney should include a citation to the Trademark Status and Document Retrieval database (TSDR). The citation format should be by date, description of filing, and page number, for example: November 4, 2013 Office Action, TSDR p. 2. *See* [37 C.F.R §2.142\(b\)\(3\)TBMP §1203.01](#).

Because the record must be complete prior to appeal, the Board will normally not consider evidence submitted with the applicant's or examining attorney's brief. If the applicant does submit such evidence, the examining attorney should specifically object to such evidence if he or she does not want it to be considered. If the examining attorney does not object to the evidence, and discusses it in his or her brief or elsewhere in the record, the Board may treat it as of record.

EXAMINING ATTORNEY'S APPEAL BRIEF

The first paragraph should be an introduction, similar to the "Question Presented" section in a memo, e.g.:

The applicant has appealed the trademark examining attorney's refusal to register the trademark _____ on the ground that it is merely descriptive within the meaning of §2(e)(1) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. §1052(e)(1).

FACTS

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

This section should be a brief recital of the facts, such as what mark and goods were applied for, what refusal was made and the basis for it, summary of any evidence submitted by either party, etc. Since the examining attorney is an advocate at this stage of the proceeding, the appeal brief should be written in a style that will make his or her position convincing to the Board.

ARGUMENT

The argument presented in this section should be complete. The examining attorney should clearly and concisely present each substantive argument in support of his or her position and address all of the applicant's arguments and distinguish any significant cases cited. Reference should not be made to earlier correspondence such as the final refusal. If appropriate, arguments that were made in earlier Office actions may be repeated in whole or in part in this section of the appeal brief.

The following format for organizing arguments under sub-headings is recommended:

- (1) A sub-heading or sub-headings should be used. If there is only one issue with one point, one sub-heading should be used, e.g.:

THE MARK IS MERELY DESCRIPTIVE BECAUSE IT DESCRIBES A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE GOODS.

- (2) If there is one issue with several points, use additional sub-headings, e.g.:

_____ IS LIKELY TO CAUSE CONFUSION WITH _____.

(A) _____ is visually similar to
_____.(argument)

(B) _____ is phonetically similar to
_____.(argument)

(C) ETC.

- (3) If there is more than one issue, each issue should head a separate section, and be identified by Roman numerals, e.g.: ARGUMENTS

I. _____ IS LIKELY TO CAUSE CONFUSION

(See (2) for example)

II. _____ IS PRIMARILY MERELY A SURNAME.

(argument)

CONCLUSION

Reiterate the main reasons, if necessary. If not, end with a sentence such as the following:

For the foregoing reasons, the refusal to register on the basis of §_____ of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. §_____, for the reason that _____, should be affirmed.

Respectfully submitted,

Trademark Examining Attorney (_____, Managing Attorney)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Law Office _____

(571) 272-_____

_____ @uspto.gov

Appendix B

Members of International Trademark Agreements

The following is a list of members of international trademark agreements to which the United States is also a party.

If there is a discrepancy between the expiration of a foreign registration as listed here and the date listed on the foreign registration, the date listed on the foreign registration will be controlling.

Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property

Under the Paris Convention, foreign applicants may seek U.S. registration, based on either (a) a valid registration, or (b) an application to register in any of the member countries listed below, with a right of priority if the United States application is filed within 6 months of the date of the first filing of the foreign application. For updates to the list below, see the World Intellectual Property Organization's home page at <http://www.wipo.int/treaties/en/ip/paris/index.html>.

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
ALBANIA	10 (from date of application)	10
ALGERIA	10 (from date of application)	10
ANDORRA	10 (from date of registration)	10
ANGOLA	10 (from date of application)	10
ANTIGUA and BARBUDA	10 (from date of application)	10
ARGENTINA	10 (from date of registration)	10
ARMENIA (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
ARUBA	10 (from date of application)	10
AUSTRALIA	10 (from date of application)	10
AUSTRIA	10 (from end of month in which mark is registered)	10
AZERBAIJAN (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
BAHAMAS	14 (from date of application)	14
BAHRAIN	10 (from date of application)	10
BANGLADESH	7 (from date of application)	15
BARBADOS	10 (from date of application)	10
BELARUS (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
BELGIUM (Benelux Nations)	10 (from date of application)	10
BELIZE	10 (from date of application)	10
BENIN (African Union Nations) (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
BHUTAN	10 (from date of application)	10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
BOLIVIA	10 (from date of registration)	10
BOSNIA and HERZEGOVINA	10 (from date of application)	10
BOTSWANA	10 (from date of application)	10
BRAZIL	10 (from date of registration)	10
BULGARIA	10 (from date of application)	10
BURKINA FASO (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
BURUNDI	Unlimited (from date of application)	
CAMBODIA	10 (from date of application)	10
CAMEROON (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
CANADA	15 (from date of registration)	15
CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
CHAD (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
CHILE	10 (from date of registration)	10
CHINA (PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC)	10 (from date of registration)	10
COLOMBIA	10 (from date of registration)	10
COMOROS		
CONGO, DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF	10 (from date of application)	10
CONGO (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
COSTA RICA	10 (from date of registration)	10
CÔTE D'IVOIRE (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
CROATIA	10 (from date of application)	10
CUBA	10 (from date of application)	10
CURAÇAO	10 (from date of application)	10
CYPRUS	7 (from date of application)	14
CZECH REPUBLIC	10 (from date of application)	10
DENMARK	10 (from date of registration)	10
DJIBOUTI	10 (from date of registration)	10
DOMINICA	14 (from date of application)	14
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC	10 (from date of registration)	10
ECUADOR	10 (from date of registration)	10
EGYPT	10 (from date of application)	10
EL SALVADOR	10 (from date of registration)	10
EQUATORIAL GUINEA (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
ESTONIA	10 (from date of application)	10
FINLAND	10 (from date of registration)	10
FRANCE	10 (from date of application)	10
GABON (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
GAMBIA	14 (from date of application)	14

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
GEORGIA	10 (from date of registration)	10
GERMANY	10 (starts on application date, ends after 10 years, on last day of the month of the application date)	10
GHANA	10 (from date of application)	10
GREECE	10 (from day following application date)	10
GRENADA	Term dependent on United Kingdom registration	Renewal dependent on United Kingdom registration
GUATEMALA	10 (from date of registration)	10
GUINEA (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
GUINEA-BISSAU (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
GUYANA	7 (from date of application)	14
HAITI	10 (from date of registration)	10
HOLY SEE (Italy)	10 (from date of application)	10
HONDURAS	10 (from date of registration)	10
HUNGARY	10 (from date of application)	10
ICELAND	10 (from date of application)	10
INDIA	10 (from date of application)	10
INDONESIA	10 (from date of application)	10
IRAN	10 (from date of application)	10
IRAQ	10 (from date of application)	10
IRELAND	10 (from date of application)	10
ISRAEL	7 (from date of application for marks applied for on or before August 6, 2003);10 (from date of application for marks applied for after August 6, 2003)	10
ITALY	10 (from date of application)	10
IVORY COAST	See CÔTE D'IVOIRE	
JAMAICA	10 (from date of application)	10
JAPAN	10 (from date of registration)	10
JORDAN	10 (from date of application)	10
KAZAKHSTAN (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
KENYA	7 (from date of application)	14
KOREA, NORTH (DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA)	10 (from date of application)	10
KOREA, SOUTH (REPUBLIC OF KOREA)	10 (from date of registration)	10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
KYRGYZSTAN (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
LAOS	10 (from date of application)	10
LATVIA	10 (from date of application)	10
LEBANON	15 (from date of application)	15
LESOTHO	10 (from date of application)	10
LIBERIA	15 (from date of registration)	15
LIBYA	10 (from date of application)	10
LIECHTENSTEIN	10 (from date of application)	10
LITHUANIA	10 (from date of application)	10
LUXEMBOURG (Benelux Nations)	10 (from date of application)	10
MADAGASCAR	10 (from date of application) [A new industrial property law covering patents, trademarks and designs was promulgated in Madagascar on July 31, 1989. Certain regulations have been promulgated, notably those covering the appointment of local trademark agents. In addition, due to Madagascar's prior involvement in OAPI, trademark owners can claim rights in OAPI registrations filed before December 31, 1976. December 9, 1994 was the cut-off date for filing Maintenance in Vigour applications. Because rights in Madagascar are acquired on a first-to-file basis, trademark registration applications should be filed as soon as is possible. Trademarks may be protected through publication of cautionary notices. Trademarks Throughout the World (Anne-Laure Covin, 5th ed. 2008).]	10
MALAWI	7 (from date of application)	14
MALAYSIA	10 (from date of application)	10
MALI (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
MALTA	10 (from date of registration)	10
MAURITANIA (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
MAURITIUS	7 (from date of application)	14
MEXICO	10 (from date of application)	10
MOLDOVA (REPUBLIC OF) (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
MONACO	10 (from date of application)	10
MONGOLIA	10 (from date of application)	10
MONTENEGRO	10 (from date of application)	10
MOROCCO	10 (from date of application)	10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
MOZAMBIQUE	10 (from date of application)	10
NAMIBIA	10 (from date of registration)	10
NEPAL	7 (from date of registration)	7
NETHERLANDS (Benelux Nations)	10 (from date of application)	10
NEW ZEALAND	10 (from date of registration)	10
NICARAGUA	10 (from date of registration)	10
NIGER (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
NIGERIA	7 (from date of application)	14
NORWAY	10 (from date of registration)	10
OMAN	10 (from date of application)	10
PAKISTAN	10 (from date of application)	10
PANAMA	10 (from date of application)	10
PAPUA NEW GUINEA	10 (from date of application)	10
PARAGUAY	10 (from date of registration)	10
PERU	10 (from date of registration)	10
PHILIPPINES	10 (from date of registration)	10
POLAND	10 (from date of application)	10
PORTUGAL	10 (from date of registration)	10
QATAR	10 (from date of application)	10
ROMANIA	10 (from date of application)	10
RUSSIAN FEDERATION	10 (from date of application)	10
RWANDA	Unlimited	
SAINT KITTS and NEVIS	10 (from date of application)	10
SAINT LUCIA	10 (from date of application)	10
SAINT VINCENT and the GRENADINES	10 (from date of application)	10
SAN MARINO	10 (from date of application) [San Marino has no trademark law. However, trademark protection obtained in Italy applies here by virtue of the Pact Of Amity And Good Neighborhood, dated March 31, 1939. Trademarks Throughout the World (Anne-Laure Covin, 5th ed. 2008).]	10
SAO TOME AND PRINCIPE	10 (from date of application)	10
SAUDI ARABIA	10 Hejira years, which is approximately 9 yr 8 mo (from date of application)	10 Hejira years
SENEGAL (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
SERBIA	10 (from date of application)	10
SEYCHELLES	7 (from date of application)	14
SIERRA LEONE	14 (from date of application)	14

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
SINGAPORE	10 (from date of application)	10
SINT MAARTEN	10 (from date of application)	10
SLOVAKIA	10 (from date of application)	10
SLOVENIA	10 (from date of application)	10
SOUTH AFRICA	10 (from date of application)	10
SPAIN	10 (from date of application)	10
SRI LANKA	10 (from date of application)	10
SUDAN	10 (from date of application)	10
SURINAME	10 (from date of registration)	10
SWAZILAND	10 (from date of registration)	10
SWEDEN	10 (from date of registration)	10
SWITZERLAND	10 (from date of application)	10
SYRIA	10 (beginning on filing date of application and ending the last day of the month in which the application had been filed)	10
TAJIKISTAN (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
TANZANIA (UNITED REPUBLIC OF) - TANGANYIKA	7 (from date of registration)	10
TANZANIA (UNITED REPUBLIC OF) - ZANZIBAR	14 (from date of application)	14
THAILAND	10 (from date of registration)	10
TOBAGO	See TRINIDAD and TOBAGO	
TOGO (OAPI)	10 (from date of application)	10
TONGA	Term dependent on United Kingdom registration	Renewal dependent on United Kingdom registration
TRINIDAD and TOBAGO	10 (from date of registration)	10
TUNISIA	10 (from date of application)	10
TURKEY	10 (from date of application)	10
TURKMENISTAN (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of registration)	10
UGANDA	7 (from date of application)	14
UKRAINE	10 (from date of application)	10
UNITED ARAB EMIRATES	10 (from date of application)	10
UNITED KINGDOM	10 (from date of application)	10
URUGUAY	10 (from date of registration)	10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
UZBEKISTAN (Russian Federation)	10 (from date of application)	10
VENEZUELA	10 (from date of registration)	10
VIETNAM	10 (from date of application)	10
YEMEN	10 (from date of application)	10
YUGOSLAV REPUBLIC OF MACEDONIA, FORMER	10 (from date of application)	10
ZAMBIA	7 (from date of application)	14
ZIMBABWE	10 (from date of application)	10

Inter-American Convention

Under the Inter-American Convention for Trademarks and Commercial Protection (also known as the “Pan-American Convention”), foreign applicants may seek U.S. registration, based on either (a) a valid registration, or (b) an application to register in any of the member countries listed below, with a right of priority if the United States application is filed within 6 months of the date of the first filing of the foreign application. See *Diaz v. Servicios De Franquicia Pardo’s S.A.C.*, 83 USPQ2d 1320 (TTAB 2007) ; *British-American Tobacco Co., Ltd. v. Phillip Morris, Inc.*, 55 USPQ2d 1585 (TTAB 2000).

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
COLOMBIA	10 (from date of registration)	10
CUBA	10 (from date of application)	10
GUATEMALA	10 (from date of registration)	10
HAITI	10 (from date of registration)	10
HONDURAS	10 (from date of registration)	10
NICARAGUA	10 (from date of registration)	10
PANAMA	10 (from date of application)	10
PARAGUAY	10 (from date of registration)	10
PERU	10 (from date of registration)	10

Buenos Aires Convention

Under the Buenos Aires Convention for the Protection of Trade Marks and Commercial Names, foreign applicants may seek registration based on a valid registration from a member country but *not* based on an application in the foreign country.

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
BOLIVIA	10 (from date of registration)	10
BRAZIL	10 (from date of registration)	10
COSTA RICA	10 (from date of registration)	10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
CUBA	10 (from date of application)	10
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC	10 (from date of registration)	10
ECUADOR	10 (from date of registration)	10
GUATEMALA	10 (from date of registration)	10
HAITI	10 (from date of registration)	10
HONDURAS	10 (from date of registration)	10
NICARAGUA	10 (from date of registration)	10
PARAGUAY	10 (from date of registration)	10
URUGUAY	10 (from date of registration)	10

European Union Trademark

On December 20, 1993, the European Council issued Regulation No. 40/94, establishing a single system of trademark registration, known as the Community Trade Mark (“CTM”), which is alternative to the various registration systems of each nation within the European Union (“EU”), formerly known as the European Community (EC) or European Economic Community (EEC). European Union countries include all countries which are members of the European Union namely; Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, and the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. For a complete, up-to-date listing of members of the EU, see the EU website at http://europa.eu/index_en.htm. For information on whether the scope of the CTM extends to certain territories associated with EU member states, and thus whether a CTM registration could serve as a valid registration from an applicant’s country of origin, see the document available at http://oami.europa.eu/en/mark/aspects/pdf/Geographical_scope_CTMR.pdf.

Effective March 23, 2016, OHIM was renamed the European Union Intellectual Property Office (“EUIPO”) and the CTM was renamed the European Union trademark (“EU trademark”), and all existing CTMs and CTM applications automatically became EU trademarks and EU trademark applications. See Regulation (EU) 2015/2424, of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 2015, 2015 O.J. (L 341) 21, available at https://oami.europa.eu/tunnel-websecure/webdav/guest/document_library/contentPdf/legal_reform/regulation_20152424_en.pdf; Press Release, OHIM, EU Intellectual Property Office – New Name for the EU’s Largest Intellectual Property Agency (Dec. 24, 2015), available at https://oami.europa.eu/tunnel-websecure/webdav/guest/document_library/contentPdf/legal_reform/pr_101516_en.pdf.

A foreign applicant may seek registration in the United States based on either (a) a valid EU trademark registration, or (b) a EU trademark application, with a right of priority if the United States application is filed within 6 months of the date of the first filing of the EU trademark application. An EU trademark is registered for a period of 10 years, running from the date of filing, and may be renewed for 10 years. For further information about the EU trademark, see EUIPO’s website at <http://oami.europa.eu>.

World Trade Organization

The World Trade Organization (“WTO”), established on January 1, 1995, is the embodiment of the results of the Uruguay Round trade negotiations and the successor to the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (“GATT”). Article 4 of the WTO Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (“TRIPs”) contains a most-favored-nation clause under which any advantage a member gives to the nationals of another member must normally be extended to the nationals of all members. Section 44(b) of the Trademark Act, [15 U.S.C. §1126\(b\)](#), provides that any person whose country of origin is a party to any convention or treaty to which the United States is a member is entitled to the benefits of §44. Accordingly, foreign applicants may seek U.S. registration, based on either (a) a valid registration, or (b) an application to register in any of the member countries listed below, with a right of priority if the United States application is filed within 6 months of the date of the first filing of the foreign application. The WTO Agreement entered into force in the United States on January 1, 1996. The benefits accorded to nationals under this agreement by the United States date from January 1, 1996. The following is a list of WTO members who are not currently members of the Paris Convention. WTO members who are also members of the Paris Convention are not set forth in the list below because nationals from these countries have been able to base their U.S. registration on their home country application or registration since the date of the country’s accession to the Paris Convention. For updates to the list of members below, see WTO’s home page at <http://www.wto.org>.

Country	Effective Date of Membership	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
BRUNEI DARUSSALAM	Jan. 1, 1995	10 (from date of application)	10
EUROPEAN UNION	Jan. 1, 1995	10 (from date of application)	10
FIJI	Jan. 14, 1996	14 (from date of application)	14
HONG KONG	Jan. 1, 1995	10 (from date of registration)	10
KUWAIT	Jan. 1, 1995	10 (from date of application)	10
MACAO	Jan. 1, 1995	7 (from date of application)	7
MALDIVES	May 31, 1995	[There is no trademark law in effect in the Republic of Maldives, whose closest financial ties are with India. The only means of obtaining protection is by publishing a cautionary note in the English section of a Maldives newspaper. Trademarks Throughout the World (Anne-Laure Covin, 5th ed. 2008).]	
MYANMAR	Jan. 1, 1995	Unlimited (from date of first use)	
SOLOMON ISLANDS	July 26, 1996	Term dependent on United Kingdom registration	Renewal dependent on United Kingdom registration

Memorandum of Understanding Between United States and Taiwan

On the basis of a Memorandum of Understanding signed on April 10, 1996, between the American Institute in Taiwan and the Taipei Economic and Cultural Representative Office in the United States, a foreign applicant may seek U.S. registration based on either (a) a valid registration, or (b) an application filed in Taiwan, and may claim a right of priority if the United States application is filed within 6 months of the date of the first filing of the application in Taiwan. See notice at 1186 TMOG 50 (May 7, 1996). A registration in Taiwan is valid for 10 years from the date of registration, and may be renewed for 10 years.

Other Countries Offering Reciprocal Registration Rights to United States Applicants

Applicants from countries that are not members of international trademark agreements to which the United States is also a party may register in the United States based upon their home country registration if their home country provides reciprocal registration rights to U.S. applicants. Following is a partial list of such countries. A claim of priority based on a foreign-filed application ([15 U.S.C. §1126\(d\)](#)) is not usually available to these applicants.

If the country is not on the following list, the examining attorney should require an English copy of the foreign trademark statute providing for reciprocal registration rights to U.S. applicants based on a U.S. registration.

Country	Term of Registration (in years)	Renewal Period (in years)
TUVALU	Term dependent on United Kingdom registration	Renewal dependent on United Kingdom registration

Additional Resources For Information About International Treaties and the Trademark Laws of Foreign Countries

For further information about the trademark laws of foreign countries, see *Trademarks Throughout the World* (Anne-Laure Covin, 5th ed. 2008) and *World Trademark Law and Practice* (Ethan Horwitz, 2nd ed. 2008).

The United States Department of State puts out a list of members of treaties currently in force, available at <http://www.state.gov/s/l/treaty/tif/index.htm>.

Information about the United Nations treaty collection is available at <http://treaties.un.org/>.

There is a directory of intellectual property offices on the World Intellectual Property Organization’s website at <http://www.wipo.int/directory/en/urls.jsp>.

There are links to websites of foreign countries at <http://www.uspto.gov/faq/other.jsp>.

Appendix C

Notes of Other Statutes

SOME SECTIONS OF THE UNITED STATES CODE PROTECTING SPECIFIC NAMES, TERMS, INITIALS, ACRONYMS, AND MARKS

This appendix provides a nonexhaustive list of names, terms, initials acronyms, and marks that are protected under the United States Code. Almost all of these sections protect symbols, emblems, seals, insignia, and badges, as well as the referenced name, term, initials, acronym, and mark, and some protect the names and/or designs of characters.

For information regarding other matter protected by statute, see the Index to the United States Code, especially under the terms “decorations, medals and badges,” “coats of arms,” “character,” “insignia,” “names,” “seals” and “symbols.” However, note that other sections also exist (e.g., District of Columbia Code) which are not indexed under these terms.

- 4-H Club or 4-H Clubs, 18 U.S.C. §707
- AmeriCorps, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- AMVETS [American Veterans], 36 U.S.C. §22706
- America Espirito Sport Fraternite [see also United States Olympic Committee], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- American Ex-Prisoners of War, 36 U.S.C. §20907
- American Legion, 36 U.S.C. §21705
- The American National Theater and Academy, 36 U.S.C. §21904
- American Symphony Orchestra League, 36 U.S.C. §22306
- American Veterans, 36 U.S.C. §22706
- American War Mothers, 36 U.S.C. §22505
- Big Brothers, 36 U.S.C. §30106
- Big Brothers – Big Sisters of America, 36 U.S.C. §30106
- The Big Brothers of America, Big Sisters International, Incorporated, 36 U.S.C. §30106
- Big Sisters, 36 U.S.C. §30106
- Blinded Veterans Association, 36 U.S.C. §30306
- Blue Star Mothers of America, Inc., 36 U.S.C. §30507
- Board for Fundamental Education, 36 U.S.C. §30706
- Boy Scouts of America, 36 U.S.C. §30905
- CIA [Central Intelligence Agency], 50 U.S.C. §403m
- CLF [Central Liquidity Facility], 18 U.S.C. §709
- CMS [Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Centennial of Flight Commission, 36 U.S.C. §143
- Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services [CMS], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Central Intelligence Agency [CIA], 50 U.S.C. §403m
- Central Liquidity Facility, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Citius Altius Fortius [see also United States Olympic Committee], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- Civil Air Patrol, 36 U.S.C. §40306
- Coast Guard [see United States Coast Guard], 14 U.S.C. §639
- Coast Guard Auxiliary [see United States Coast Guard Auxiliary], 14 U.S.C. §639
- Coast Guard Reserve [see United States Coast Guard Reserve], 14 U.S.C. §639

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- Commodity Credit Corporation, 15 U.S.C. §714m
- Corporation for National and Community Service, 42 U.S.C. §5065; 45 C.F.R. §2540.520
- DEA [Drug Enforcement Administration], 18 U.S.C. §709
- DHHS [Department of Health and Human Services], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- DIA [Defense Intelligence Agency], 10 U.S.C. §425
- DMA [Defense Mapping Agency], 10 U.S.C. §425
- DOT [Department of the Treasury], 31 U.S.C. §333
- Death Benefits Update, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Defense Intelligence Agency [DIA], 10 U.S.C. §425
- Defense Mapping Agency [DMA], 10 U.S.C. §425
- Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Department of Housing and Urban Development [HUD], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Department of the Treasury, 31 U.S.C. §333 [DOT]
- Deposit Insurance [when used “as part of the business or firm name of a person, corporation, partnership, business trust, association or other business entity engaged in the banking, loan, building and loan, brokerage, factorage, insurance, indemnity, savings or trust business”], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Disabled American Veterans, 36 U.S.C. §50305
- Drug Enforcement Administration [DEA], 18 U.S.C. §709
- F.B.I. [Federal Bureau of Investigation], 18 U.S.C. §709
- FFA [Future Farmers of America], 36 U.S.C. §70907
- FHA [Federal Housing Administration], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal [when used “as part of the business or firm name of a person, corporation, partnership, business trust, association or other business entity engaged in the banking, loan, building and loan, brokerage, factorage, insurance, indemnity, savings or trust business”], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal [when used “in the course of collecting or aiding in the collection of private debts or obligations, or being engaged in furnishing private police, investigation, or other private detective services”], 18 U.S.C. §712
- Federal Benefit Information, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Final Supplemental Plan, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- The Foundation of the Federal Bar Association, 36 U.S.C. §70506
- Funeral Expenses, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Federal Bureau of Investigation [F.B.I.], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal Deposit, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal Deposit Insurance, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal Home Loan Bank, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, 12 U.S.C. §1457
- Federal Housing Administration [FHA], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal intermediate credit bank, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Federal National Mortgage Association, 12 U.S.C. §1723a
- Foster Grandparents, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- Four-H Club or Four-H Clubs, 18 U.S.C. §707
- Future Farmers of America [FFA], 36 U.S.C. §70907
- Geneva Cross [also specific reference to the emblem of the Greek red cross on a white ground], 18 U.S.C. §706
- Girl Scouts of America, 36 U.S.C. §80305

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- Give a Hoot, Don't Pollute, 18 U.S.C. §711a, 16 U.S.C. §580p-4; 36 C.F.R. §261.22
- The Golden Eagle [also specific reference to insignia of an American Golden Eagle (colored gold) and a family group (colored midnight blue) enclosed within a circle (colored white with a midnight blue border)], 18 U.S.C. §715
- Government National Mortgage Association, 12 U.S.C. §1723a; 18 U.S.C. §709
- HHS [Health and Human Services], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- HUD [Department of Housing and Urban Development], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Health and Human Services [HHS], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Housing and Home Finance Agency, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Ladies of the Grand Army of the Republic, 36 U.S.C. §130106
- Last Best Place, Omnibus Appropriations Act, Pub. L. No. 111-8, §105, 123 Stat. 524 (2009)
- Learn and Serve America, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- Life Saving Service [see Coast Guard or United States Coast Guard], 14 U.S.C. §639
- Lighthouse Service [see Coast Guard or United States Coast Guard], 14 U.S.C. §639
- Little League or Little Leaguer, 36 U.S.C. §130506
- Marine Corps, 10 U.S.C. §7881
- Medicaid, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Medicare, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- The Military Chaplains Association of the United States of America, 36 U.S.C. §140304
- NASA [National Aeronautics and Space Administration; also flags, logo, seal], 51 U.S.C. §20141
- NCOA [Non Commissioned Officers Association of the United States of America], 36 U.S.C. §154707
- NCUA [National Credit Union Administration], 18 U.S.C. §709
- NCUSIF [National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund], 18 U.S.C. §709
- NGA [National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency], 10 U.S.C. §425
- NIMA [National Imagery and Mapping Agency], 10 U.S.C. §425
- NRO [National Reconnaissance Office], 10 U.S.C. §425
- NSA [National Security Agency], 50 U.S.C. §402
- National [when used “as part of the business or firm name of a person, corporation, partnership, business trust, association or other business entity engaged in the banking, loan, building and loan, brokerage, factorage, insurance, indemnity, savings or trust business”], 18 U.S.C. §709
- National [when used “in the course of collecting or aiding in the collection of private debts or obligations, or being engaged in furnishing private police, investigation, or other private detective services”], 18 U.S.C. §712
- National Aeronautics and Space Administration [NASA; also flags, logo, seal], 51 U.S.C. §20141
- National Civilian Community Corps, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- National Conference of State Societies, Washington, District of Columbia, 36 U.S.C. §150507
- National Conference on Citizenship, 36 U.S.C. §150707
- National Credit Union, 18 U.S.C. §709
- National Credit Union Administration [NCUA], 18 U.S.C. §709
- National Credit Union Board, 18 U.S.C. §709
- National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund [NCUSIF], 18 U.S.C. §709
- National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency [NGA], 10 U.S.C. §425

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- National Imagery and Mapping Agency [NIMA], 10 U.S.C. §425
- National Music Council, 36 U.S.C. §152306
- National Reconnaissance Office [NRO], 10 U.S.C. §425
- National Safety Council, 36 U.S.C. §152506
- National Society, Daughters of the American Colonists, 36 U.S.C. §152907
- National Society of the Daughters of the American Revolution, 36 U.S.C. §153104
- National Security Agency [NSA], 50 U.S.C. §402
- National Senior Service Corps, 42 U.S.C. §5065; 45 C.F.R. §2540.520
- National Tropical Botanical Garden, 36 U.S.C. §153506
- National Woman's Relief Corps, Auxiliary to the Grand Army of the Republic, 36 U.S.C. §153706
- Naval Sea Cadet Corps, 36 U.S.C. §154106,
- Non Commissioned Officers Association, 36 U.S.C. §154707
- Non Commissioned Officers Association of the United States of America [NCOA], 36 U.S.C. §154707
- ODNI [Office of the Director of National Intelligence], 50 U.S.C. §442b
- OPIC [Overseas Private Investment], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Office of the Director of National Intelligence [ODNI], 50 U.S.C. §442b
- Olympiad [see also United States Olympic Committee], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- Olympic [and other names;also United States Olympic Committee and specific reference to (1) the symbol of the International Olympic Committee, consisting of five interlocking rings, and (2) the emblem consisting of an escutcheon having a blue chief and vertically extending red and white bars on the base with five interlocked rings displayed on the chief], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- Overseas Private Investment [OPI], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Overseas Private Investment Corporation, 18 U.S.C. §709
- PHA [Public Housing Administration], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Pan-American [see also United States Olympic Committee], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- Paralympic [see also United States Olympic Committee], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- Paralympiad [see also United States Olympic Committee], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- Paralyzed Veterans of America, 36 U.S.C. §170105
- Pearl Harbor Survivors Association, 36 U.S.C. §170307
- Peace Corps, 22 U.S.C. §2518
- Postal Service, 18 U.S.C. §1729
- Presidio Trust, 16 U.S.C. §460bb
- Public Housing Administration [PHA], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Red Crescent [also Red Crescent emblem], 18 U.S.C. §706a
- Red Cross [also specific reference to the emblem of the Greek red cross on a white ground], 18 U.S.C. §706
- Reserve [when used “as part of the business or firm name of a person, corporation, partnership, business trust, association or other business entity engaged in the banking, loan, building and loan, brokerage, factorage, insurance, indemnity, savings or trust business”], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Reserve Officers Association of the United States, 36 U.S.C. §190106
- Retired and Senior Volunteer Program, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- Retired Enlisted Association, 36 U.S.C. §190307
- The Retired Enlisted Association, Incorporated [TREA], 36 U.S.C. §190307
- SSA [Social Security Administration], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- SSI [Supplemental Security Income Program], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Secret Service, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Secret Service Uniformed Division [U.D.], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Secretary of the Treasury [and title of any other officer or employee], 31 U.S.C. §333
- Senior Companion Program, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- Senior Corps, 42 U.S.C. § 5065; 45 C.F.R. 2540.500 Subpart E
- Share Insurance, 18 U.S.C. §709
- Smokey Bear, 18 U.S.C. §711; 16 U.S.C. §580p; 36 C.F.R. §261.22
- Social Security [and symbols and emblems], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Social Security Account, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Social Security Administration [SSA], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Social Security System, 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Sons of Union Veterans of the Civil War, 36 U.S.C. §200306
- Supplemental Security Income Program [SSI], 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10
- Swiss Confederation [with specific reference to the coat of arms, consisting of an upright white cross with equal arms and lines on a red ground], 18 U.S.C. §708
- TREA [The Retired Enlisted Association], 36 U.S.C. §190307
- Third Protocol Emblem, 18 U.S.C. §706a
- Treasurer of the United States [and title of any other officer or employee], 31 U.S.C. §333
- U.D. [Secret Service Uniformed Division], 18 U.S.C. §709
- USCG [United States Coast Guard], 14 U.S.C. §639
- USCGR [United States Coast Guard Reserve], 14 U.S.C. §639
- USHA [United States Housing Authority], 18 U.S.C. §709
- USMC or U.S.M.C. [United States Marine Corps; and seal, logo, emblem and others], 10 U.S.C. §7881
- U.S.M.S. [United States Marshals Service or U.S. Marshals Service; and logo or insignia], 18 U.S.C. §709
- USO [United Service Organizations, Incorporated], 36 U.S.C. §220106
- U.S.S.S. [United States Secret Service], 18 U.S.C. §709
- United Service Organizations, Incorporated [USO], 36 U.S.C. §220106
- United States or U.S. [when used “as part of the business or firm name of a person, corporation, partnership, business trust, association or other business entity engaged in the banking, loan, building and loan, brokerage, factorage, insurance, indemnity, savings or trust business”], 18 U.S.C. §709
- United States or U.S. [when used “in the course of collecting or aiding in the collection of private debts or obligations, or being engaged in furnishing private police, investigation, or other private detective services”], 18 U.S.C. §712
- United States Capitol Historical Society, 36 U.S.C. §220306
- United States Coast Guard [USCG], 14 U.S.C. §639
- United States Coast Guard Auxiliary, 14 U.S.C. §639
- United States Coast Guard Reserve [USCGR], 14 U.S.C. §639
- United States Housing Authority [USHA], 18 U.S.C. §709
- United States Marshal or U.S. Marshal, 18 U.S.C. §709
- United States Marshals Service or U.S. Marshals Service [U.S.M.S.; and logo or insignia], 18 U.S.C. §709
- United States Marine Corps [USMC; and seal, logo, emblem and others], 10 U.S.C. §7881
- United States Mint or U.S. Mint, 18 U.S.C. §709
- United States of America Korean War Commemoration, 10 U.S.C. §113

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- United States of America Vietnam War Commemoration, 10 U.S.C. §113
- United States Olympic Committee [USOC], 36 U.S.C. §220506
- United States Railway Association, 45 U.S.C. §711
- United States Savings Bond, 31 U.S.C. §333
- United States Secret Service [U.S.S.S.], 18 U.S.C. §709
- Valles Calder Trust, 16 U.S.C. §698v-4
- 369th Veterans' Association, 36 U.S.C. §210307
- Veterans of Foreign Wars of the United States, 36 U.S.C. §230105
- Veterans of World War I of the United States of America, Incorporated, 36 U.S.C. §230306
- Vietnam Veterans of America, 36 U.S.C. §230507
- Vietnam Veterans of America, Inc., 36 U.S.C. §230507
- VISTA, 42 U.S.C. §5065; 45 C.F.R. §2540.520
- White House Commission on the National Moment of Remembrance, 36 U.S.C. §116
- Woodsy Owl, 18 U.S.C. §711a, 16 U.S.C. §580p; 36 C.F.R. §261.22

SOME SECTIONS OF THE UNITED STATES CODE (USC) RELATING TO TRADEMARKS

(This is a partial list of sections relating to trademarks.)

- 7 U.S.C. §136, The Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act, relating to the requirements for labeling of economic poisons.
- 7 U.S.C. §§1551-1610, The Federal Seed Act, relating to requirements for labeling of seeds in interstate commerce.
- 15 U.S.C. §1, Sherman Act (Sec. 1), as amended by Miller-Tydings Act, relating to restraint of trade.
- 15 U.S.C. §45, relating to unfair methods of competition.
- 15 U.S.C. §52, relating to false advertisements.
- 15 U.S.C. §68, The Wool Products Labeling Act, relating to the labeling of wool products.
- 15 U.S.C. §69, The Fur Products Labeling Act, relating to the labeling of fur and fur products.
- 15 U.S.C. §70, the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, relating to the use of trademarks and names in the advertising or labeling of textile fiber products.
- 15 U.S.C. §297, relating to use of marks, trade names, words and labeling in connection with the importation, exportation or carriage in interstate commerce of merchandise made of gold or silver or their alloys.
- 15 U.S.C. §§1261-1273, relating to the labeling of hazardous substances.
- 15 U.S.C. §1511, relating to jurisdiction of Department of Commerce over Patent and Trademark Office.
- 15 U.S.C. §§5401 *et seq.*, relating to the recordation of insignia of manufacturers and private label distributors to ensure the traceability of a fastener to its manufacturer or private label distributor. (*See* notice at 1192 TMOG 19 (Nov. 5, 1996)).
- 18 U.S.C. §701, relating to use of any badge, identification card, or other insignia, or any colorable imitation thereof, of departments, agencies, and independent offices of the United States.
- 18 U.S.C. §704, relating to the unauthorized use of any badge, decoration, or medal, or any colorable imitation thereof, of the armed forces of the United States.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- 18 U.S.C. §705, relating to the unauthorized use on merchandise of any badge, medal, emblem, or other insignia, or any colorable imitation thereof, of any veteran's organization incorporated by enactment of Congress or of any organization formally recognized by any such veteran's organization as an auxiliary thereof.
- 18 U.S.C. §709, relating to false advertising or misuse of names to indicate federal agency. Also, prohibitions against using certain terms and initials within the financial, insurance, agricultural, housing, protection, investigatory and other fields.
- 18 U.S.C. §709, relating to use, manufacture, or sale of any cremation urn of a design approved by the Secretary of Defense for use to retain the cremated remains of deceased members of the armed forces or an urn which is a colorable imitation of the approved design, except when authorized under regulation made pursuant to law.
- 18 U.S.C. §712, relating to misuse by collecting agencies or private detective agencies of names, emblems, and insignia to indicate federal agency.
- 18 U.S.C. §713, relating to the use of likenesses of the great seal of the United States, and of the seals of the President and Vice President.
- 18 U.S.C. §1001, relating to statements, representations, writings or documents made to any department or agency of the United States.
- 18 U.S.C. §1158, relating to counterfeiting or imitating Government trademarks for Indian products.
- 18 U.S.C. §2320, relating to criminal penalties for trafficking in counterfeit goods and services.
- 19 U.S.C. §1337(a), Tariff Act of 1930, relating to unfair practices in import trade.
- 19 U.S.C. §1526(a), Tariff Act of 1930, barring importation into the United States of merchandise of foreign manufacture bearing a trademark registered in the Patent and Trademark Office by a person domiciled in the United States if copy of the registration certificate has been filed with the Secretary of the Treasury unless written consent of the trademark owner has been secured.
- 19 U.S.C. §2111 *et seq.*, providing authority for trade agreements and also annual reports to Congress on barriers to trade include the treatment of intellectual property rights among acts, policies, and practices that constitute barriers to trade.
- 19 U.S.C. §2411, relating to foreign countries' provision for adequate and effective protection of the intellectual property rights of U.S. nationals.
- 19 U.S.C. §2462(c), relating to the consideration of intellectual property rights as a factor for foreign countries to receive benefits under the Generalized System of Preferences (GSP).
- 21 U.S.C. §§603-623, The Meat Inspecting Act, relating to the inspection and labeling of meat and products.
- 21 U.S.C. §§301, 321-392, The Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, relating to the requirements for labeling of food, drugs, and cosmetics; avoiding trademarks in establishing official names.
- 21 U.S.C. §457, Poultry Products Inspection Act, relating to requirements for labeling of poultry products in interstate commerce.
- 27 U.S.C. §§201-219a, The Federal Alcohol Administration Act, relating to certificates of label approval of alcoholic beverages.
- 28 U.S.C. §1254, relating to review of cases by the Supreme Court.
- 28 U.S.C. §1295, relating to jurisdiction of United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.
- 28 U.S.C. §1338, relating to jurisdiction of District Courts in trademark suits.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

- 29 U.S.C. §§655, 657, 665, Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, relating to letters OSHA.
- 42 U.S.C. §1320b-10, relating to misuse of Social Security or Medicare names, symbols, emblems.
- 48 U.S.C. §734, Puerto Rico, relating to statutes applicable to.
- 48 U.S.C. §§1405(q), 1574(c) and 1643, Virgin Islands, relating to statutes applicable to, and to the non-applicability of certain provisions of the Trademark Act to the Virgin Islands.
- 48 U.S.C. §1421(c), Guam, relating to statutes applicable to (*see* also Public Law 87-845, October 18, 1962, 4-CZC-471, Canal Zone Code, relating to the application of U.S. patent, trademark and copyright laws in the Canal Zone.)
- 50 U.S.C. Appendix 43, Trading with the Enemy Act, amending, providing for disposition of vested trademarks.

District of Columbia Code

Section 22-3401, relating to use of District of Columbia and other related names and initials used in connection with investigatory or collection services. (Oct. 16, 1962, 76 Stat. 1071)

Appendix D

Foreign Entity Appendix

This table lists common abbreviations for entity designations used by various foreign countries to identify legal commercial entities. The appendix also includes a description of the foreign designation and, in some cases, the equivalent United States entity. See [TMEP §803.03\(i\)](#) for further information.

Note re Canada: Canadian entities may be organized under either national or provincial laws. Therefore, if the applicant is organized under the laws of a Canadian province, entity designations such as "corporation of Ontario," "corporation of Quebec," "company of British Columbia," etc. are acceptable. *Id.*

Abbr.	Country	Description
A. en P.	Mexico	<i>Asociación en Participación</i> . Joint venture.
AB	Sweden	<i>Aktiebolag</i> . Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
A.C.	Mexico	<i>Asociación Civil</i> . Civil Association of a non-commercial nature.
ACE	Portugal	<i>Agrupamento Complementar de Empresas</i> . Association of businesses.
AD	Bulgaria	<i>Aksionerno Druzhestvo</i> . Limited Liability Company.
AE	Greece	<i>Anonymos Etairia</i> . Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
AG	Austria	<i>Aktiengesellschaft</i> . Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
AG	Germany	<i>Aktiengesellschaft</i> . Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
AG	Switzerland	<i>Aktiengesellschaft</i> . Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
AL	Norway	<i>Andelslag</i> . Cooperative society.
AmbA	Denmark	<i>Andelsselskab</i> . Limited Liability Cooperative.
ANS	Norway	<i>Ansvarlig selskap</i> . Trading partnership.
Anstalt	Liechtenstein	<i>Anstalt</i> . Establishment having attributes of a trust and a corporation.
Apb	Sweden	<i>Publikt Aktiebolag</i> . Public Stock Corporation.
ApS	Denmark	<i>Anpartsselskab</i> . Private Limited Company.
ApS & Co. K/S	Denmark	Similar to a general partnership, but the entity with unlimited liability is a company (ApS) instead of an individual.
AS	Norway	<i>Aksjeselskap</i> . Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
A/S	Denmark	<i>Aktieselskab</i> . Public limited company.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
A.S.	Czech Republic	<i>Akciova Spolecnost.</i> Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
A.S.	Estonia	<i>Aktsiaselts.</i> Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
A.S.	Slovakia	<i>Akciova Spolecnost.</i> Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
A.S.	Turkey	<i>Anonim Sirketi.</i> Joint Stock Company, equivalent to a corporation.
ASA	Norway	<i>Allmennaksjeselskap.</i> Public stock corporation.
Association/ Associazione	Switzerland/France/Italy	<i>Association.</i>
AVV	Aruba	<i>Aruba Vrijgestelde Vennootschap.</i> Aruba Exempt Company.
BM or B.M.	Israel	<i>Be'eravon Mugbal.</i> Limited Company.
BK or CC	South Africa	<i>Beslote Korporasie.</i> Close Corporation.
Bt	Hungary	<i>Betiti társaság.</i> Limited Liability Partnership.
B.V.	Belgium	<i>Besloten Vennootschap.</i> Limited Liability Company.
B.V.	Netherlands	<i>Besloten Vennootschap.</i> Limited Liability Company.
B.V.	Netherlands Antilles	<i>Besloten Vennootschap.</i> Limited Liability Company.
BVBA	Belgium	<i>Besloten Vennootschap met Beperkte Aansprakelijkheid.</i> Flemish language equivalent of the SPRL -- means that the company is a private limited company.
CA	Ecuador	<i>Compania Anonima.</i> Public Limited Company.
c.c.c.	Wales	<i>Cwmni Cyfyngedig Cyhoeddus.</i> Public Limited Company, Welsh language equivalent to PLC.
Co.	Commonwealth countries	<i>Company.</i> Acceptable to identify entities that are equivalent or analogous to United States corporations or associations.
C.V.	Netherlands	<i>Commanditaire Vennootschap.</i> Limited Partnership.
CVA	Belgium	<i>Commanditaire Vennootschap op Aandelen.</i> Limited partnership, with shares. Flemish language equivalent to the French language SCA.
CVoA	Netherlands	<i>Commanditaire Vennootschap op Andelen.</i> Limited Partnership, with shares.
Cyf.	Wales	<i>Cyfyngedig.</i> Private Limited Company, Welsh language equivalent to Ltd.
DA	Norway	<i>Selskap med delt ansar.</i> Limited Partnership.
d.d.	Croatia	<i>Dionicko Drustvo.</i> Joint stock company.
d.d.	Slovenia	<i>Delniska Druzba.</i> Stock company

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
DI	Italy/Switzerland	<i>Ditta individuale</i> . Sole Proprietorship.
d.n.o.	Slovenia	<i>Druzba z neomejeno odgovornostjo</i> . Partnership, all partners have unlimited liability.
d.o.o.	Croatia	<i>Drustvo s Ogranicenom Odgovornoscu</i> . Limited Liability Company.
d.o.o.	Slovenia	<i>Druzba z Omejeno Odgovornostjo</i> . Limited Liability Company.
EE	Greece	<i>Eterorrythmos</i> . Limited liability partnership.
EEG	Austria	<i>Eingetragene Erwerbsgesellschaft</i> . Professional Partnership.
EIRL	Peru	<i>Empresa Individual de Responsabilidad Limitada</i> . Personal business with limited liability.
EG	Switzerland	<i>Einfache Gesellschaft</i> . Simple Partnership.
ELP	Bahamas	<i>Exempted Limited Partnership</i> . Has one or more limited partners, and one general partner, which must be a resident of the Bahamas or a company incorporated in the Bahamas.
EOOD	Bulgaria	<i>Ednolichno Druzhestvo s Ogranichena Otgovornost</i> . Limited liability company.
EPE	Greece	<i>Etairia periorismenis efthinis</i> . Limited liability company.
EURL	France	<i>Entreprise Unipersonnelle à Responsabilité Limitée</i> . Incorporated sole proprietorship with limited liability.
e.V.	Germany	<i>Eingetragener Verein</i> . Non-profit society/association.
Einzelfirma	Germany/Switzerland	<i>Einzelfirma</i> . Sole Proprietorship.
Fondation/ Fondazione	Switzerland/France/Italy	<i>Foundation</i> . Foundation having some attributes of a corporation.
GbR	Germany	<i>Gesellschaft burgerlichen Rechts</i> . Partnership without a legal name.
GCV	Belgium	<i>Gewone Commanditaire Vennootschap</i> . Limited Partnership. Flemish language equivalent to the French language SCS.
G.K.	Japan	<i>Godo kaisha</i> or <i>Godokaisha</i> . A variant of the American limited liability company.
Gen	Switzerland	<i>Genossenschaft</i> . Cooperative Society.
GesBR	Austria	<i>Bürgerlich rechtliche Erwerbsgesellschaft</i> . Joint venture.
GesmbH	Austria	<i>Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung</i> . Limited Liability Company. This abbreviation is only used in Austria (not Germany or Switzerland).
GIE	France	<i>Groupement d'intéret économique</i> . Economic Grouping of Interest. Two or more persons or

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
		entities form an alliance with the goal of facilitating or developing economic activity of the members.
GmbH & Co. KG	Germany	Limited partnership in which, typically, the sole general partner is a limited liability company.
GmbH	Austria	<i>Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung</i> . Limited Liability Company.
GmbH	Germany	<i>Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung</i> . Limited Liability Company.
GmbH	Switzerland	<i>Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung</i> . Limited Liability Company.
GMK	Japan	<i>Gomei Kaisha</i> . Similar to an American general partnership.
GSK	Japan	<i>Goshi Kaisha</i> or <i>Goshikaisha</i> . Similar to an American limited partnership.
HB	Sweden	<i>Handelsbolag</i> . Trading Partnership.
hf	Iceland	<i>Hlutafelag</i> . Limited liability company.
I/S	Denmark	<i>Interessentskab</i> . General partnership.
JSC	China (except Macau and Hong Kong)	Joint stock company or company limited by shares.
j.t.d.	Croatia	<i>Javno Trgovacko Društvo</i> . Unlimited liability company.
KA/S	Denmark	<i>Kommanditaktieselskab</i> . Limited partnership with share capital.
Kb	Sweden	<i>Kommanditbolag</i> . Limited partnership.
KD	Bulgaria	<i>Komanditno Drushetwo</i> . Partnership.
k.d.	Croatia	<i>Komanditno Društvo</i> . Limited Partnership.
k.d.	Slovenia	<i>Komanditna Družba</i> . Limited Partnership
KDA	Bulgaria	<i>Komanditno drushetwo s akzii</i> . Partnership with shares.
k.d.d.	Slovenia	<i>Komanditna delniska družba</i> . Limited Partnership with shares.
KEG	Austria	<i>Kommanditerwerbgesellschaft</i> . Limited Registered Partnership.
Kft	Hungary	<i>Korlátolt Felelősség Társaság</i> . Limited liability company.
KG	Austria	<i>Kommanditgesellschaft</i> . A limited partnership under a legal name whose entity survives even though the partners might change.
KG	Germany	<i>Kommanditgesellschaft</i> . A limited partnership under a legal name whose entity survives even though the partners might change.
KG	Switzerland	<i>Kommanditgesellschaft</i> . A limited partnership under a legal name whose entity survives even though the partners might change.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
KGaA	Germany	<i>Kommanditgesellschaft auf Aktien</i> . Limited partnership with shares.
K.K.	Japan	<i>Kabushiki Kaisha</i> . Joint Stock Company.
Kkt	Hungary	<i>Közkereseti Társaság</i> . General Partnership.
KoIG	Switzerland	<i>Kollektivgesellschaft</i> . General Partnership.
Kol. SrK	Turkey	<i>Kollektiv Sirket</i> . Unlimited liability partnership.
Kom. SrK	Turkey	<i>Komandit Sirket</i> . Limited liability partnership.
KommAG	Switzerland	<i>Kommanditaktiengesellschaft</i> . Partnership limited by shares.
k.s.	Czech Republic	<i>Komanditni Spolecnost</i> . Limited partnership.
K/S	Denmark	<i>Kommanditselskab</i> . Limited partnership.
KS	Norway	<i>Kommandittselskap</i> . Limited partnership.
Kv	Hungary	<i>Közös vállalat</i> . Joint Venture.
Ky	Finland	<i>Kommandiittiyhtiö</i> . Limited Partnership.
L.D.A.	China (Macau)	Limited liability company by quotas.
L.D.A.	Macau	Limited liability company by quotas.
Lda	Portugal	<i>Sociedade por Quotas Limitada</i> . Similar to an American Limited Liability Company.
LDC	Bahamas	<i>Limited Duration Company</i> . A company, but it has a life of 30 years or less.
Ltd.	Commonwealth countries; China (sometimes appears as Co., Ltd.); Republic of Korea (South Korea)	<i>Limited Company or Limited Liability Company</i> . A company in which the liability of the shareholders is limited.
Ltda	Brazil	<i>Sociedade por Quotas de Responsabilidade Limitada</i> . Similar to a limited liability company.
NV	Netherlands	<i>Naamloze Vennootschap</i> . Public limited liability company, equivalent to a corporation.
NV	Belgium	<i>Naamloze Vennootschap</i> . Public limited liability company, equivalent to a corporation.
NV	Netherlands Antilles	<i>Naamloze Vennootschap</i> . Public limited liability company, equivalent to a corporation.
NV	Suriname	<i>Naamloze Vennootschap</i> . Public limited liability company, equivalent to a corporation.
OE	Greece	<i>Omorrythmos</i> . Partnership.
OEG	Austria	<i>Offene Erwerbsgesellschaft</i> . Open Trading Partnership, General Registered Partnership or General Professional Partnership.
OHG	Austria	<i>Offene Handelsgesellschaft</i> . Partnership.
OHG	Germany	<i>Offene Handelsgesellschaft</i> . Partnership.
OOD	Bulgaria	<i>Druzhestvo s Ogranichena Otgovornost</i> . Limited Liability Company.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
OAD	Russian Federation	<i>Otkrytoe Aktsionernoje Obshchestvo</i> . Joint Stock Company.
OOO	Russian Federation	<i>Obshchestvo s ogranichennoy otveststvennostyu</i> . Limited Liability Company.
OÜ	Estonia	<i>Osaiühing</i> . Private limited liability company.
Oy	Finland	<i>Osakeyhtiö</i> . Private limited company.
Oyj	Finland	<i>Julkinen osakeyhtiö</i> . Public limited company.
P/L or Pty. Ltd.	Australia	Proprietary Limited Company.
PC Ltd	Australia	Public Company Limited by Shares.
PLC	UK & Ireland	Public Limited Company.
PMA	Indonesia	<i>Penanaman Modal Asing</i> . Foreign joint venture company.
PMDN	Indonesia	<i>Penanaman Modal Dalam Negeri</i> . Domestic Capital investment company.
PrC	Ireland	Private Company limited by shares.
Prp. Ltd.	Botswana	Private company limited by shares.
PT	Indonesia	<i>Perseroan Terbuka</i> . Limited company.
PT Tbk	Indonesia	<i>Perseroan Terbatas, Terbuka</i> . Stock corporation.
Pty.	Australia	Proprietary Company.
RI	Switzerland	<i>Raison individuelle</i> . Sole Proprietorship.
RAS	Estonia	<i>Riiklik Aktsiaselts</i> . State (owned) Joint Stock company.
Rt	Hungary	<i>Részvénytársaság</i> . Stock Company.
S. de R.L.	Mexico	<i>Sociedad de Responsabilidad Limitada</i> . Limited Liability Company.
S. en C.	Colombia & Peru	<i>Sociedad en Comandita</i> . Limited Partnership.
S. en N.C.	Mexico	<i>Sociedad en Nombre Colectivo</i> . General Partnership.
S/A	Brazil	<i>Sociedade Anônima</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Argentina	<i>Sociedad Anonima</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Belgium	<i>Société Anonyme</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
S.A.	China (Macau)	Limited liability company by shares.
SA	France	<i>Société Anonyme</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Ivory Coast	<i>Société Anonyme</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Luxembourg	<i>Société Anonyme</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
S.A.	Macau	Limited liability company by shares.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
SA	Mexico	<i>Sociedad Anónima</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Morocco	<i>Société Anonyme</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Poland	<i>Spółka Akcyjna</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Portugal	<i>Sociedad Anónima</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Romania	<i>Societate pe actiuni</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Spain	<i>Sociedad Anonima</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
SA	Switzerland	<i>Société anonyme</i> or <i>Società anonima</i> . Joint stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
S.A.	Brazil	<i>Sociedade por Ações</i> . Privately-held company.
SA de CV	Mexico	<i>Sociedad Anonima</i> . Joint stock company, with variable capital, equivalent to a corporation.
SAFI	Uruguay	<i>Sociedad Anonima Financiera de Inversion</i> . Offshore company.
Sagl	Switzerland	<i>Società a garanzia limitata</i> . Limited Liability Company.
S.A.I.C.A.	Venezuela	<i>Sociedad Anónima Inscrita de Capital Abierto</i> . Open Capital Company .
SAPa	Italy/Switzerland	<i>Società in Accomandita per Azioni</i> . Partnership limited by shares.
Sarl	France	<i>Société à responsabilité limitée</i> . Limited Liability Company.
Sarl	Luxembourg	<i>Société à Responsabilité Limitée</i> . Limited Liability Company.
Sàrl or SARL	Switzerland	<i>Société à responsabilité limitée</i> . Limited Liability Company.
SAS	France	<i>Société par Actions Simplifiée</i> . Simplified Joint Stock Company, similar to a limited liability company. Note that " <i>societe par actions</i> " by itself is not an official French entity designation.
SAS	Italy	<i>Società in Accomandita Semplice</i> . Limited Partnership.
S.C.	China (Macau)	Mixed liability company by shares.
SC	France/Switzerland	<i>Société en commandite</i> . Partnership with limited and general partners.
SC	France	<i>Société civile</i> . Partnership with full liability.
S.C.	Macau	Mixed liability company by shares.
SC	Poland	<i>Spółka prawa cywilnego</i> . Partnership with all partners having unlimited liability.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
SC	Italy/Switzerland	<i>Societa cooperativa</i> . Cooperative society. This type of entity may be incorporated with either limited or unlimited liability.
S.C.	Spain	<i>Sociedad en Comandita</i> . General Partnership.
SC par action	Switzerland	<i>Société en commandite par actions</i> . Partnership limited by shares.
S.C.A.	China (Macau)	Mixed liability company by shares.
SCA	France/Belgium/ Switzerland	<i>Société en commandite par actions</i> . Limited partnership with share capital, occupies a position between a limited partnership and a corporation.
S.C.A.	Macau	Mixed liability company by shares.
SCA	Romania	<i>Societate în comandită pe acțiuni</i> . Limited liability partnership with shares.
SCOP	France	<i>Société coopérative et participative</i> . Cooperative society. This type of entity may be incorporated with either limited or unlimited liability.
Scoop	Switzerland	<i>Société coopérative or Società cooperativa</i> . Cooperative society.
SCP	Brazil	<i>Sociedade em Conta de Participação</i> . Partnership where there is one partner assumed responsible for running the business.
SCS	Belgium & France	<i>Société en Commandite Simple</i> . A special partnership very similar to an American limited partnership
S.C.S.	Brazil	<i>Sociedade em Comandita Simples</i> . Limited Partnership.
SCS	Mexico	<i>Sociedad en Comandita Simple</i> . Limited Partnership.
SCS	Romania	<i>Societate în comandită simplă</i> . Limited liability partnership.
Sdn Bhd	Malaysia	<i>Sendirian Berhad</i> . Limited Liability Company.
SE	European Union	<i>Societas Europae</i> . European Company. A Public Limited Company, equivalent to a corporation.
SENC	Luxembourg	<i>Société en Nom Collectif</i> . General Partnership.
SGPS	Portugal	<i>Sociedade gestora de participações sociais</i> . Holding Enterprise.
SK	Poland	<i>Spółka komandytowa</i> . Limited liability partnership.
SL	Spain	<i>Sociedad de Responsabilidad Limitada</i> . Limited liability company, may be identified as a joint stock company with limited liability.
SLNE	Spain	<i>Sociedad Limitada Nueva Empresa</i> . Limited Liability New Business, a modified Limited Liability Company.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	Country	Description
SLU	Spain	<i>Sociedad Limitada Unipersonal</i> . Limited liability company with one shareholder.
S.N.C.	China (Macau)	Unlimited liability company with two or more owners.
SNC	France/Switzerland	<i>Société en nom collectif</i> . General Partnership.
SNC	Italy/Switzerland	<i>Società in Nome Collettivo</i> . General Partnership.
S.N.C.	Macau	Unlimited liability company with two or more owners.
SNC	Romania	<i>Societate in Nume Colectiv</i> . General Partnership.
SNC	Spain	<i>Sociedad en Nombre Colectivo</i> . General Partnership.
SOPARFI	Luxembourg	<i>Société de Participation Financière</i> . Holding company.
SP	France	<i>Société en participation</i> . Undisclosed partnership.
SpA	Italy	<i>Società per Azioni</i> . Limited share company, or joint-stock company, equivalent to a corporation.
spol s.r.o.	Czech Republic	<i>Společnost S Rucenim Omezenym</i> . Limited Liability Company.
SPRL	Belgium	<i>Société Privée à Responsabilité Limitée</i> . French language equivalent to a private limited liability company.
SRC	Spain	<i>Sociedad Regular Colectiva</i> . A regular collective company, similar to a partnership.
Sp. z.o.o.	Poland	<i>Spółka z ograniczona odpowiedzialnoscia</i> . Limited liability company, privately-held.
Srl	Chile	<i>Sociedad de responsabilidad limitada</i> . Limited Liability company.
Srl	Italy	<i>Società a Responsabilità Limitata</i> . Limited liability (joint stock) company.
Srl	Romania	<i>Societate cu Raspundere Limitata</i> . Limited-liability company, privately-held.
SS	Italy/Switzerland	<i>Società Semplice</i> . Simple Partnership.
SS	Switzerland	<i>Société Simple</i> . Simple Partnership
Stiftung	Germany/Switzerland	<i>Stiftung</i> . Foundation having some attributes of a corporation.
Stiftung	Liechtenstein	<i>Stiftung</i> . Trust.
td	Slovenia	<i>Tiha druzba</i> . Sole proprietorship.
TLS	Turkey	<i>Türk Limited irketi</i> . Private Limited Liability Company.
UG (haftungsbeschränkt)	Germany	<i>Unternehmergeellschaft (haftungsbeschränkt)</i> . Limited Liability Company.
Verein	Switzerland	<i>Verein</i> . Association.
VOF	Netherlands	<i>Vennootschap onder firma</i> . General partnership.
v.o.s.	Czech Rep	<i>Verejna Obchodni Spolecnost</i> . General partnership.

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Abbr.	<i>Country</i>	<i>Description</i>
YK	Japan	<i>Yugen Kaisha</i> . Limited company, similar to an American closely held corporation. Abolished in 2006 and replaced with the <i>Godo Kaisha</i> .
Yuhan Hoesa	Republic of Korea (South Korea)	<i>Yuhan Hoesa</i> . Equivalent to a limited liability company; may also be identified as a limited company or private limited company.

Appendix E

Countries That Have Standard Character Marks or the Equivalent

Purpose: The purpose of this appendix is to assist in determining for which countries it is unnecessary to inquire whether and/or confirm that the mark as registered in the foreign registration is in standard characters or the equivalent.

Explanation: The Office currently requires examining attorneys to inquire whether a mark in a foreign registration is in standard characters or the equivalent. [TMEP §807.03\(f\)](#). The following list is of countries that have been determined to register marks that are in standard characters or the equivalent. Please note that “country” refers to the country of the foreign registration upon which the applicant relies to obtain registration under §44(e). Thus, for countries on this list, provided that the drawing of the mark in the foreign registration is in block letters or other plain type font, the examining attorney need not inquire whether the registered mark in the foreign registration is in standard characters or the equivalent, unless the applicant has indicated that the mark is not standard characters or the equivalent.

If the applicant has indicated that the mark is *not in* standard characters or the equivalent, but the foreign registration is from a country on the list and the mark appears in block letters or other plain type font, the examining attorney must inquire about the discrepancy. In response to the inquiry, the applicant must either amend the application to claim standard characters, or confirm that the mark is not in standard characters or the equivalent. If a particular country is not on this list, the examiner must inquire as to whether the mark in the foreign registration is for a mark in standard characters or the equivalent.

COUNTRY LIST

ALBANIA

ARGENTINA

AUSTRALIA

AUSTRIA

BELGIUM (Benelux Nations)

BELIZE

BRAZIL

BURUNDI

CANADA

CHILE

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

CHINA (PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF)

COSTA RICA

CUBA

CZECH REPUBLIC

DENMARK

ECUADOR

EL SALVADOR

FINLAND

FRANCE (including Overseas Departments and Territories)

GERMANY

GUATEMALA

HONG KONG

HUNGARY

ICELAND

INDIA

IRELAND

JAPAN

KOREA, SOUTH (REPUBLIC OF KOREA)

LEBANON

LIECHTENSTEIN

LUXEMBOURG (Benelux Nations)

MEXICO

MONACO

NETHERLANDS (Benelux Nations)

NEW ZEALAND

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

NICARAGUA

NORWAY

PANAMA

PEOPLES REPUBLIC OF CHINA (PRC)

PERU

PORTUGAL

RUSSIAN FEDERATION

SAN MARINO

SINGAPORE

SOUTH AFRICA

SOUTH KOREA (REPUBLIC OF KOREA)

SPAIN

SWEDEN

SWITZERLAND

TAIWAN (REPUBLIC OF CHINA)(ROC)

UNITED KINGDOM

OTHER TYPES OF REGISTRATIONS THAT ARE FOR STANDARD CHARACTER MARKS OR EQUIVALENT

MADRID PROTOCOL (provided that the 79' series application indicates the mark is in standard characters)

COMMUNITY TRADEMARK (CTM)

INDEX

Abandonment of application — Act of 1920

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

A

Abandonment of application (See also: Petition to revive abandoned application) Reinstatement of inadvertently abandoned application)	
after ex parte appeal.....	718.05, 1714.01(f)(i)
after inter partes proceeding.....	718.06
defined.....	718
express.....	611.02, 718.01
granting additional time to avoid.....	718.03(b)
incomplete response resulting in.....	718 to 718.03(b), 1713.01, 1714.01(f)(ii)A
location of files.....	109.02
notice of, for failure to respond.....	718.04, 718.06
of multiple-basis application.....	806.02(d)
of multiple-class application.....	1403.05
ordering abandoned files.....	109.02
partial.....	718.02(a), 1402.13, 1403.05, 1904.03(d)
petition from examining attorney's holding of.....	1713.01
through failure to file statement of use.....	718.04
through failure to prosecute appeal.....	718.05
through failure to respond to Office action.....	718.02, 718.03
Abstracts of title.....	503.08(a)
Acceptable Identification of Goods and Services Manual.....	1402.04
Access by public to files	
electronic images.....	109.01
paper files.....	109.02
Accessibility	
of assignment records.....	503.08
of files held by Office personnel.....	109
Acquired distinctiveness (§2(f) claim).....	1212
allegation of use filed with amendment to.....	714.05(a)(i)
as to a portion of the mark.....	1212.02(f)(i), 1212.09(b)
as to particular goods/services/classes.....	1212.02(j)
based on five years' use.....	1212.05 to 1212.05(d)
based on ownership of prior registrations.....	1212.04 to 1212.04(e)
concession that matter is not inherently distinctive.....	1212.02(b)
disclaimers in applications claiming §2(f).....	1212.02(e)
establishing with actual evidence.....	1212.06 to 1212.06(e)(iv)
evidence submitted to establish.....	1212.06 to 1212.06(e)(iv)
first or only user.....	1212.06(e)(i)
five years of use as proof of.....	1212.05 to 1212.05(d)
in part.....	1212.02(f) to 1212.02(f)(ii)(B), 1212.09(b)
in the alternative.....	1212.02(c)
in §1(b) application.....	1212.09 to 1212.09(b)
in §44 application.....	1010, 1212.08
in §66(a) application.....	1212.08
printing of.....	817, 1212.10
prior registrations as proof of.....	1212.04 to 1212.04(e)
unnecessary.....	1212.02(d)
with respect to incapable matter.....	1212.02(i)
Act of 1881.....	1601.04, 1602.02
Act of 1905.....	1601.04, 1602.02
Act of 1920.....	1601.05, 1602.03

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Act of 1946 — Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8)

Act of 1946	(See Sec. No. also: Trademark Act of 1946)	Sec. No. of 1946
Action after issuance of notice of allowance and before filing of statement of use.....		806.03(j)(ii), 1107 to 1107.01
Action by affidavit/renewal examiner upon examination of renewal application.....		1606.11
upon examination of §8 affidavit.....		1604.15
Action by examining attorney (See also: Examination)		
after final refusal.....		715, 715.03(b)
after new search.....		206.04
all arguments by applicant to be addressed in.....		713.03
all outstanding refusals and requirements to be noted in.....		713.02
citation of decisions in.....		705.05
citation of registrations in.....		705.03
date of.....		705.07
evidence supporting refusal in.....		710.01 to 710.01(c)
form paragraphs in.....		705.01
incomplete response to.....	611.05(a) to (c), 718.03 to 718.03(b), 1713.01 to 1713.02, 1714.01(f)(ii)(A)	
language in.....		705.01
non-receipt of.....		717.02
piecemeal action to be avoided.....		704.01
raising new issues.....		706 to 706.01
returned.....		403, 717.01
review by supervisory examining attorney.....		705.06
“search clause” in.....		704.02
signature in.....		705.06
statutory language in.....		705.01
supplemental action.....		711.02
to be complete.....		704.01
Address		
changing address of owner of registration.....		1609.11
changing correspondence address.....		503.01(b), 609.02 to 609.02(f)
correspondence.....		609 to 609.04
for communications to the International Bureau.....		1906
for communications to U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”).....		305.01
for electronic mail communications.....		304
for filing documents to be recorded in Assignment Division.....		503.04
of applicant.....		803.05
of assignee.....		502.02(a) to (b)
Advisory statement cannot serve as foundation for final refusal.....		714.05(c)
Aesthetic functionality.....		1202.02(a)(vi)
Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8) (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§71))		
appeal to federal court.....		1604.18(d)
certification marks.....		1604.21 to 1604.21(d)
change from mark as registered.....		1604.13
character of use of mark.....		1604.10
collective marks.....		1604.20 to 1604.20(b)
combined with renewal application.....		1604.19, 1606.15
combined with §15 affidavit.....		1605.05
deficiencies, correction of.....		1604.06(b), 1604.17 to 1604.17(c)
domestic representative, designation of.....		1604.14
excusable nonuse.....		1604.11
execution of.....		1604.08 to 1604.08(d)

INDEX

Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8) — Amendment of application

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
extension of protection to the United States (§71).....		1613
fee for filing.....		1604.06 to 1604.06(c)
form for filing.....		1604.03
goods and services set forth in.....		1604.09
grace period.....		1604.04, 1604.06(b)
nonuse.....		1604.11
notice on registration certificate.....		1604.02
Office action upon examination of.....		1604.15
ownership.....		1604.07 to 1604.07(f)
petition to Director.....		1604.18 to 1604.18(c)
premature filing of.....		1604.04(a)
recourse after refusal.....		1604.18 to 1604.18(d)
registrations in 20-year terms.....		1604.04(b)
requirements for.....		1604.05
response to Office action.....		1604.16
signature.....		1604.08 to 1604.08(d)
specimen(s).....		1604.12 to 1604.12(c)
time for filing.....		1604.04, 1604.17(c)
untimely filing cannot be cured.....		1604.17(c), 1712.02(a)
use in commerce.....		1604.10
who may file.....		1604.07
Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§71) (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8)).....		1613
certification marks.....		1613.21 to 1613.21(d)
collective marks.....		1613.20 to 1613.20(b)
Affidavit of incontestability (§15).....		1605 to 1605.06
combined with §8 affidavit.....		1605.05
fee.....		1605.04
form for filing.....		1605.02
premature.....		1605.03
registered extension of protection of international registration.....		1605.01, 1904.11
requirements for.....		1605.04
substitute.....		1605.04
Supplemental Register registrations not eligible.....		1605.01
time for filing.....		1605.03
§14 limitation independent of.....		1605.06
Affidavit of use (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8)) Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§71)).....		1613
Affidavit under §8 (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8)).....		1613
Affidavit under §71 (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§71)).....		1613
Agents.....		602.03 to 602.03(c)
Agreement of drawing and foreign registration in §44 application.....		807.03(f), 807.12(b), 1011.01
Agreement of drawing and specimen.....		807.03(e), 807.12(a) to 807.12(a)(iii), 1215.02(c)
Allegations of use in §1(b) application (See also: Amendment to allege use) Statement of use).....		714.05(a)(i), 1103
Alphabetical List, International.....		1401.02(c)
Amendment	of	application
after decision on appeal.....		1501.06
after final action.....		715, 715.01, 715.02
after Notice of Allowance.....		1107
after publication.....		806.03(j) to (j)(ii), 1505 to 1505.02(g)
from Principal Register to Supplemental Register in §1(b) application.....		1102.03

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Amendment of application — Amendment to allege use

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
prohibited during period between issuance of notice of allowance and filing of statement of use, except to delete specified goods or services (§1(b) application).....		1107
to add or substitute a basis for registration.....	806.03 to 806.03(k)	
to change basis from §44 to §1(b).....	806.03(d)	
to change filing basis from §1(a) to §1(b).....	806.03(c)	
to change filing basis from §1(b) to §44.....	806.03(g), 806.03(j)(i) to 806.03(j)(iii)	
to claim priority.....	806.03(b)	
to delete §1(b) basis.....	806.04 to 806.04(a)	
to different register.....	816 to 816.05, 1014, 1102.03	
Amendment of dates of use		
after registration.....	1609.07	
to reflect a change, must be verified.....	903.04	
upon amendment of identification.....	903.08	
Amendment of mark in registration.....	1609.02 to 1609.02(g)	
drawing.....	1609.02(b)	
fee required.....	1609.02	
in registered extension of protection.....	1609.02, 1904.13	
material alteration of mark not permitted.....	1609.02(a)	
specimen.....	1609.02(c)	
who may request.....	1609.02	
Amendment of mark on drawing.....	807.15	
amendment to cure “internal inconsistency” not permitted.....	807.14(d)	
in marks comprising domain names.....	1215.08 to 1215.08(b)	
in registered extension of protection.....	1609.02, 1904.02(j), 1904.13, 1906.01(j)	
in registration based on §1 or §44 application.....	1609.02 to 1609.02(g)	
in request for extension of protection of international registration.....	807.13(b), 1609.02, 1904.02(j), 1904.13, 1906.01(j)	
in §44 application.....	1011.03	
may not result in material alteration.....	807.03(d), 807.14 to 807.14(e), 1609.02 to 1609.02(g)	
must be warranted by specimens or foreign registration.....	807.12(a) to 807.12(a)(iii), 807.12(b), 807.13	
not permitted in §66(a) application.....	807.13(b), 1609.02, 1904.02(j), 1906.01(j)	
procedures for.....	807.15, 807.16	
processing unacceptable amendments.....	807.17	
to color features.....	807.14(e) to 807.14(e)(iii)	
Amendment of registration (See also: Amendment of mark in registration).....	1609 to 1609.09	
certification statement.....	1609.12	
correction of mistake.....	1609.10 to 1609.10(b)	
dates of use.....	1609.07	
disclaimer.....	1609.05	
effect on limitation of grounds for cancellation.....	1609.08	
fee required.....	1609.02	
from Supplemental to Principal Register not permitted.....	1609.09	
of classification.....	1609.04	
of identification of goods/services.....	1609.03	
of mark.....	1609.02 to 1609.02(g)	
of owner's address.....	1609.11	
of registered extension of protection.....	1609.01, 1609.02, 1609.03, 1609.04, 1904.13, 1906.01 to 1906.01(j)	
of registrations with color claim.....	1609.02(e)	
territorial restrictions.....	1609.06	
who may request.....	1609.01(a), 1609.01(b)	
Amendment to allege use.....	1104 to 1104.11	
approval of.....	1104.11	

INDEX

Amendment to allege use — Applicant

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.				
blackout period.....		1103, 1104.03(b), 1104.03(c)				
dates of use.....		1104.10(b)(iv)				
drawing.....		1104.10(b)(vii)				
ex parte appeals.....		1104.07				
examination of, by examining attorney.....		1104.09 to 1104.10(a)				
execution of.....		1104.10(b)(ii)				
fee for filing.....		1104.10(b)(vii)				
filed in conjunction with application.....		1104.05				
filing during pendency of ex parte appeal.....		1104.07				
form of.....		1104.02				
identification of goods/services in.....		1104.10(b)(iii)				
located after publication.....		1104.04				
minimum requirements for.....		1104.01				
ownership.....		1104.10(b)(i)				
requirements for.....		1104.08				
review for compliance with minimum filing requirements.....		1104.01(a) to 1104.01(c)				
specimen.....		1104.10(b)(v)				
substantive refusals.....		1102.01				
time for filing.....		1104.03				
use in commerce.....		1104.10(b)(iv)				
use on all goods/services before filing.....		1104.03(a)				
withdrawal of.....		1104.11				
“America” or “American,” marks comprising.....		1209.03(n), 1210.02(b)(iv)				
American Viticultural Areas.....		1306.05(h)				
Apostille.....		804.01(a)(i)				
Appeal briefs, applicants’.....		1501, 1501.02(a)				
Appeal	briefs,	examining	attorneys’			
failure to file.....			1501, 1714.01(f)(ii)			
format for.....			1501.02(b), Appendix A			
preparation of.....			1501.02(b)			
Appeal	to	Trademark	Trial	and	Appeal	Board
amendment after decision on.....						1501.06
amendment during.....						1501.05
appealable matter.....						1501.01, 1704
application record must be complete prior to.....						710.01(c)
dismissal of.....						1501, 1714.01(f)(ii)
fee for.....						1501.04
in general.....						1501 to 1501.07
time period for.....						715.03(c), 1501
withdrawal of refusal during.....						1501.03
Appealable matter.....						1501.01
Applicant						
address of.....						803.05
application void if wrong party identified as.....						803.06, 1201.02(b)
association as.....						803.02(c), 803.03(c)
banking institution.....						803.03(g)
citizenship of.....						803.04
communication with applicant who is represented by attorney.....						601.02
companies.....						803.03(c)
corporation as.....						803.02(c), 803.03(c)
correcting mistake in name of.....						1201.02(c)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Applicant — Application for registration

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
eligible under §44.....		1002 to 1002.05
Federally recognized Indian tribe.....		803.03(j)
foreign.....		803.03(i) , Appendix D
government bodies and universities as.....		803.03(f)
individual as.....		803.02(a) , 803.03(a)
joint applicants as.....		803.03(d)
joint venture as.....		803.02(b) , 803.03(b)
limited liability companies as.....		803.03(h)
limited liability partnerships as.....		803.03(k)
may not be changed.....		803.06 , 1201.02(b)
minor.....		803.01
must be natural or juristic person.....		803.01
name of.....		803.02
operating divisions.....		1201.02(d)
partnership as.....		803.02(b) , 803.03(b)
properly identifying the applicant.....		1201.02(a)
sole proprietorship as.....		803.03(a)
trusts, conservatorships and estates as.....		803.03(e) to 803.03(e)(i)
verification of.....		804 to 804.05
who may apply.....		803.01
Applicant's name.....		803.02
Applicants, joint.....		611.06(a) , 803.03(d)
Application checklist.....		818
Application		files
electronic.....		109.01 , 402 to 402.01
new, processing of.....		401 to 401.04
preparation of, for publication or registration of mark.....		817
to remain in Office.....		109
Application	for	registration
abandoned (See also: Abandonment of application).....		718
“amended”.....		702.01
approved for publication.....		1502
basis	for	(See also: Filing basis)
classification.....		1401 to 1401.08
combined	(See also: Combined	application)
concurrent use	(See also: Concurrent	use registration)
dates of use.....		903.01 , 903.02
declaration in lieu of oath.....		804.01(b)
defective.....		204 to 204.03
establishing ownership of.....		502 to 502.03
filing	basis	(See also: Filing basis)
filing	date	(See also: Filing date (application))
form for filing.....		802
informal.....		204 to 204.03
intent-to-use	(See also: Intent-to-use	applications)
multiple-class	(See also: Combined	application)
persons who can sign verification.....		804.04
priority under §44(d).....		806.01(c) , 1003 to 1003.08
should specify register on which registration is sought.....		801.02(a)
signature.....		804 to 804.05
specimen.....		904 to 904.07(b) , 1301.04 to 1301.04(j)

INDEX

Application for registration — Assignment, recordation of

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
statutory averments.....		804.02
suspended (See also: Suspension of action by Office).....		716 to 716.06
TEAS Plus.....		819 to 819.04
types of.....		801 to 801.02(b)
use in commerce.....		806.01(a)
verification made in foreign country.....		804.01(a)(i)
verification with oath.....		804.01(a)
Application serial number.....		401.02
Applications for international registration (See also: International applications for registration)		
Article 6 <i>ter</i> of Paris Convention.....		1205.02
Artist, name of, on original work of art.....		1202.09(b)
Artists and authors, name of, as mark.....		1202.09 to 1202.09(b) , 1301.02(b)
Assignee		
entitled to prosecute application or registration.....		501.05 , 502.01
establishing ownership in name of.....		502 to 502.03
issuance of new registration certificate to.....		502.03
issuance of original registration certificate in name of.....		502.02(a) to (b)
not domiciled in United States.....		501.04
stands in place of applicant or registrant.....		501.05
Assignment (See also: Assignee)		
accessibility of records.....		503.08
conditional.....		503.01(e)
definition of.....		501.01
documents.....		503.02 , 503.03(a)
establishing ownership.....		502 to 502.03
examining attorney's action regarding.....		502.02(c)
failure to record.....		501.03
indexing against recorded document not permitted.....		503.07
of extension of protection of international registration.....		501.01(b) , 501.07 , 502.01 , 502.02(b) , 502.03 , 503.03(a) , 503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)
of intent-to-use application.....		501.01(a)
of marks in applications or registrations.....		501.01
of §1(b) application.....		501.01(a)
of §44 application.....		501.04 , 1006
of §66(a) application.....		501.01(b) , 501.07 , 502.01 , 502.02(b) , 502.03 , 503.03(a) , 503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)
partial.....		501.06 , 1110.11 , 1615
recordation of (See also: Assignment , recordation of)		
records open to public.....		503.08
searching.....		104 , 503.08
written assignment required.....		501.02
Assignment, recordation of		
address for submitting documents.....		503.04
automatic updating.....		504 to 504.04
correction of errors in.....		503.06 to 503.06(f)
correspondence address not changed by.....		503.01(b)
cover sheet.....		503.03(e) , 503.06(a) to 503.06(a)(ii)
date of.....		503.05
documents eligible for.....		503.02
effect of.....		503.01 to 503.01(e)
electronic filing.....		503.03(a) , 503.03(b) , 503.03(e)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Assignment, recordation of — “Bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment”

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
errors, correction of.....		503.06 to 503.06(f)
fee for.....		503.03(d)
indexing not permitted.....		503.07
not a determination of validity.....		503.01(c)
of extension of protection of international registration must be filed International Bureau.....		503.03(a) , 503.05 , 503.06 , 503.06(b) , 504.04 , 1904.06
of international registration.....		1906.01 to 1906.01(a)(iv)
original documents should not be filed.....		503.03(b)
petitions to correct or expunge assignment records.....		503.06(f)
procedure for.....		503.05
requirements for.....		503.03 to 503.03(e)
resubmission of documents for.....		503.05
searching may be done on USPTO website.....		104 , 503.08
Association		
name of.....		803.02(c)
state or country of organization of.....		803.03(c) , 803.04
Assumed business name.....		803.02 , 803.02(a) , 803.02(b)
Attorney		
appearance by.....		602 , 602.01
associate power of.....		605.03
Canadian.....		602.03(a)
change of.....		604.03 , 609.02 , 609.02(a) , 609.02(b)
communication with.....		601.02 , 604.03 , 608.01 , 609.01 , 609.02 , 707.01 , 708.02
communication with applicant who is represented by.....		601.02
correspondence sent to.....		604.03 , 609 , 609.01 , 609.02(a) , 609.02(b)
foreign.....		602 , 602.03 to 602.03(e)
Office may not aid in selection of.....		601.01
powers of (See also: Power of attorney).....		602.01 to 605.04
representation of owner of mark by.....		601 to 601.02
revocation of power of.....		606
signature of.....		611.01(a) , 611.02
standards of conduct.....		603
suspended.....		608.02
unauthorized practice.....		608
withdrawal of.....		607
Author, name of, as mark.....		1202.09(a) to 1202.09(a)(iii)
Averments, statutory.....		804.02

B

Background designs and shapes as mark.....		1202.11
Banking institution as applicant.....		803.03(g)
Basic Facts About Registering a Trademark.....		105
Basis for filing (See also: Filing basis).....		
Blackout period.....		504.04 , 1103 , 1104.03(b) to 1104.03(c)
Blinded Veterans Association.....		1205.01
“Bona fide and effective industrial or commercial establishment”.....		1002.04

INDEX

Bona fide intention to use mark in commerce — Certificate of mailing procedure

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Bona fide intention to use mark in commerce		
acceptable language for statement of.....		1101
application filing basis, under §1(b).....		806.01(b)
continued.....		1101, 1108.02
must be asserted in request for extension of time to file statement of use.....		1108.02(e)
must be asserted in written application.....		806.01(b) to 806.01(d), 1101
must be asserted in §44 application, even if use has commenced.....		1008
must be asserted in §66(a) application.....		804, 804.05, 1904.01(c)
not necessary to repeat in multiple-basis application.....		806.02(g)
Bona fide use in ordinary course of trade.....		901.02
<i>Bona fides</i> of applicant, in asserting intent to use mark in commerce, not inquired into by examining attorney....		1101
Buenos Aires Convention.....		Appendix B
Bulky specimens.....		904.02(b)
Business cards as specimens of service mark use.....		1301.04(h)(i)
Business trusts.....		803.03(e)(i)
Business with Office to be transacted in writing.....		708.03, 709.03, 709.04, 709.05

C

Canadian attorneys and agents.....		602.03(a)
Cancellation		
of inadvertently accorded filing date.....		204.01
of international registration.....		1904.07, 1904.08
of notice of allowance.....		1106.03
of registration for certification mark.....		1306.04(e), 1306.04(f)(i)
of registration for failure to file affidavit of continued use.....		1604, 1604.04
of registration under §8.....		1604, 1604.04
of registrations under §14 or §37.....		1607
of registrations under §71.....		1904.10
surrender of registration for.....		1608
Catalogs as trademark specimens.....		904.03(h)
Certificate of extension of protection of international registration.....		1904.05
Certificate of mailing procedure		
correspondence returned by U.S. Post Office.....		305.02(g)
date used to determine timeliness.....		305.02(e)
effect of.....		305.02(e)
eligible correspondence.....		305.02(a)
location of certificate.....		305.02(c)
mailing requirements and address.....		305.01
non-receipt of correspondence by PTO.....		305.02(f)
not available for filing international applications.....		305.02(a)
not available for filing requests for transformation.....		305.02(a)
not available for filing requests to record changes to an international registration.....		305.02(a)
not available for filing responses to IB notices of irregularities.....		305.02(a)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Certificate of mailing procedure — Certification mark

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
	not available for filing subsequent designations..... 305.02(a)
	not available for filing trademark applications..... 305.02(a)
	wording of certificate..... 305.02(d)
Certificate	of registration
extension of protection of international registration.....	1904.05
indication that mark is on Principal Register in.....	1601.07
indication that mark is on Supplemental Register in.....	1601.07
issuance in name of assignee.....	502.02(a) to (b)
new, upon change of ownership.....	502.03
Certificate of transmission (See also: Facsimile transmission, certificate of)	
Certification division of USPTO (See also: Document Services Branch)	
Certification	mark
amendment to different type of mark.....	1306.06(b)
amendment of certification mark statement in registration.....	1609.12
authority of applicant to control use of geographic term.....	1306.05(b)(ii)
based on foreign registration.....	1306.02(a)(iv) to 1306.02(a)(iv)(A)
cancellation of prior trademark registration as prerequisite to issuance of certification mark registration.....	1306.04(f)(i)
cancellation of registration for.....	1306.04(e)
certification statement.....	1306.03(a) , 1306.05(b)(i)
certification versus performance of services and sale of goods.....	1306.04(b)
characteristics of.....	1306.01(c) , 1306.04(c)
circumstances surrounding use of.....	1306.04(c)
classification of goods/services in application to register.....	1306.02(d) , 1401.03(d) , 1902.02(g)(ii) , 1904.02(b)
collective mark, distinguished from certification mark.....	1306.06(a)
dates of use.....	1306.02(a)(i)(A)
definition of.....	1306.01
distinguished from other types of marks.....	1306.01 , 1306.04(b)(ii) , 1306.06(a)
drawing requirements for.....	1306.04(a)
examination of application to register.....	1306.04 to 1306.04(f)(i)
exercise of control.....	1306.04(b)(i) , 1306.05(b)(ii)
extension of protection of international registration.....	1306.02(a)(v) , 1904.02(d)
foreign registration, basis for registration of certification mark.....	1306.02(a)(iv) to 1306.02(a)(iv)(A)
geographic term used to designate regional origin.....	1210.09 , 1306.05 to 1306.05(c)
geographically deceptive term not permitted.....	1306.05(e)
government as applicant for.....	1306.05(b)(ii)
grounds for cancellation under §14, applicability to examination.....	1306.04(e)
identification of goods or services.....	1306.02(c)
in §66(a) application.....	1306.02(a)(v) , 1904.02(d)
indication of regional origin versus description of goods.....	1306.02(c)
labor performed by specific group or individual, term used to certify that.....	1306.01
not registrable as trademark, service mark, or any other type of mark.....	1306.04(f) to 1306.04(f)(i)
ownership of.....	1306.04(b)
patent licenses, use of trademark or service mark by patent licensee distinguished from.....	1306.04(b)(iii)
purpose is to certify, not indicate source.....	1306.01(b)
quality control by owner not a requirement.....	1306.01(a)
related company use of trademark or service mark distinguished from.....	1306.04(b)(ii)
same mark not registrable as other type of mark.....	1306.04(f) to 1306.04(f)(i)
special elements of applications for.....	1306.03 to 1306.03(c)

INDEX

Certification mark — Classification of goods/services

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
specimens.....	1306.02(a)(i)(B) , 1306.04(c) , 1306.04(d) to 1306.04(d)(ii) , 1306.05(b)(iii)	
standards.....		1306.03(b)
statement of control over use of mark.....	1306.02(b)(i) to 1306.02(b)(ii) , 1306.04(b)(i)	
statement of what mark certifies.....		1306.03(a) , 1306.05(b)(i)
statement that applicant does not market/produce the goods/services.....		1306.03(c)
title or degree not a certification mark.....		1306.04(d)(ii)
uncertainty as to type of mark.....		1306.06
use is by others.....	1306.01(a) , 1306.02(a)(i)(A) , 1306.03(c)	
verification language in application to register.....	1306.02(b) to 1306.02(b)(ii)	
Certification or certified copy of foreign registration required for §44(e).....		1004.01
Chain of title.....		502.01 , 502.02(a) , 504.03
Change of attorney.....		604.03
Change of correspondence address.....	503.01(b) , 609.02 to 609.02(f)	
Change of filing date of application.....	204.03 , 205 , 206.01 , 206.04 , 1711	
Character or person, as mark.....	1202.09 to 1202.09(b) , 1202.10 to 1202.10(a) , 1301.02(b)	
Check,	returned	unpaid
affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8).....		405.06 , 1604.06(c)
amendment to allege use.....		405.06 , 1104.10(b)(vii)
application filing fee.....		202.03(a) , 405.06
extension of time to file statement of use.....		405.06 , 1108.02(c)
renewal fee.....		405.06 , 1606.05(c)
statement of use.....		405.06 , 1109.15(a)
Checklist, application.....		818
Checks, in general.....		405.02 to 405.02(a)
Citation of Decisions and USPTO Publications.....		705.05
Citizenship of applicant.....		803.04
Claim of priority (See also: Priority under §44(d))		
amendment to add.....		806.03(b) , 1003.02
form of.....		806.01(c) , 806.01(e) , 1003 , 1904.01(e)
in application for international registration.....		1902.05
in request for extension of protection of international registration.....		206.02 , 1904.01(e)
Claiming benefits of Act of 1946 under §12(c).....		1603 to 1603.03
Class headings.....		1401.02(a)
Classification of goods/services		
amendment after publication.....		707.02 , 1109.14 , 1505.02(b)
amendment after registration.....		1401.02 , 1609.04
amendment from U.S. to international classification system.....		1401.02 , 1601.06 , 1609.04
amendment not permitted in §66(a) application.....		1401.03(d) , 1505.02(b) , 1609.04 , 1904.02(b)
amendment of.....	707.02 , 1401.03 , 1401.03(b) , 1401.04(b) , 1403.02 , 1403.02(b)	
cannot be changed in §66(a) application.....	1306.02(d) , 1401.03(d) , 1505.02(b) , 1609.04 , 1904.02(b)	
certification mark.....	1306.02(d) , 1401.03(d) , 1902.02(g)(ii) , 1904.02(d)	
changes based on 8 th – 10 th Nice Agreements.....		1401.09 to 1401.12
collective mark.....		1303.01
collective membership mark.....	1304.02(d) , 1401.03(d) , 1902.02(g)(ii) , 1904.02(d)	
criteria for determining.....		1401.02(a) , 1401.05
designation by applicant normally accepted.....		1401.03(a)
designation by International Bureau in §66(a) application controls.....		1401.03(d) , 1904.02(b)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Classification of goods/services — Collective trademarks and service marks

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
designation by Office.....	1401.03(b)
in application for international registration.....	1902.02(g) to 1902.02(g)(iii)
in §66(a) application.....	1401.03(d) , 1505.02(b) , 1609.04 , 1904.02(b)
international system.....	1401.02 to 1401.02(c)
plurality of uses.....	1401.05(c)
republishing not required after amendment.....	1505.02(b)
services.....	1401.02(a) , 1402.11
short titles of classes.....	1401.02(b)
should be designated by applicant, if known.....	1401.03
specimens as related to.....	1401.06 , 1401.07
statutory authority for.....	1401.01
Clear error.....	706.01 , 1109.08 , 1706
Closings of USPTO, unscheduled.....	309
Coat of arms, refusal to register mark comprising.....	1204
Collateral estoppel.....	1217
Collective mark, in general (See also: Collective membership mark) Collective trademarks and service marks)	
definition of.....	1302
history of.....	1302.01
Collective membership mark	
application requirements.....	1304.02 to 1304.02(d)
classification.....	1304.02(d) , 1401.03(d) , 1902.02(g)(ii) , 1904.02(d)
control over use of.....	1304.02(a)(i) to 1304.02(a)(i)(A) , 1304.02(b)(i) to 1304.02(b)(ii)
definition.....	1302
distinguished from other types of marks.....	1302 , 1304.01 , 1306.06(a)
examination of application to register.....	1304.03 to 1304.03(c)
history of.....	1302.01
identifications.....	1304.02(c)
in §66(a) application.....	1904.02(d)
ownership of.....	1302.01 , 1304.03(a)
purpose of.....	1304.01
refusal to register.....	1304.03(b) to 1304.03(c)
specimens for.....	1304.02(a)(i)(C)
title or degree designations compared with.....	1304.03(b)(ii)
use is by members.....	1304.01 , 1304.02(a)(i) , 1304.02(a)(i)(B)
who may apply.....	1304.03(a)
Collective organization	
nature of collective organization.....	1302 to 1303
use of collective mark by members of.....	1302 , 1303.01(a)(i) to 1303.01(a)(ii)
use of trademark or service mark by.....	1305
Collective trademarks and service marks	
application requirements.....	1303.01
control over use of.....	1303.01(a)(i) to 1303.01(a)(i)(A) , 1303.01(a)(ii) to 1303.01(a)(v) , 1303.01(b)(i) to 1303.01(b)(ii) , 1303.02(a)
definition.....	1302
distinguished from other types of marks.....	1302 , 1303 , 1306.06(a)
examination of application to register.....	1303.02 to 1303.02(b)
manner of control.....	1303.01(a)(i)(A)
ownership of.....	1303.02(a)

INDEX

Collective trademarks and service marks — Component or ingredient, mark used to identify

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
specimens for.....		1303.01(a)(i)(C)
use is by members.....		1303.01(a)(i) , 1303.01(a)(i)(B)
Color		
amendment of color features of mark.....		807.14(e) to (e)(iii)
as a mark.....		1202.05 to 1202.05(i)
as a separable element of a mark.....		1202.05(c)
black, white or gray shown on drawing.....		807.07(d) to (f)
drawings of.....		807.07 to 807.07(e) , 1202.05(d) to 1202.05(d)(iv)
functional color marks not registrable.....		1202.05(b)
gray.....		807.07(d) to (f)
in the mark.....		807.07 to 807.07(e) , 1202.05 to 1202.05(i)
lining.....		807.07(g) , 808.01(b) , 1902.02(e)
location statement.....		807.07(a)(ii)
must be claimed as feature of the mark.....		807.07(a) , 807.07(a)(i)
special considerations for color marks.....		1202.05(g)
specimens for marks comprising.....		904.02(c)(ii) , 1202.05(f)
Color claim.....		807.07(a) to 807.07(f)
Columns or sections of publications, marks that identify.....		1202.07 to 1202.07(b)
Combined affidavit under §§8 and 15.....		1605.05
Combined application.....		1403 to 1403.07
abandonment of.....		718.02(a) , 1403.05
addition of class number(s) in.....		1403.02(c)
amendment of.....		1403.02
correction of class(es) in.....		1403.02(b)
deletion of class(es) from.....		1403.02(a)
division of (See also: Division of application).....		1403.03
filing fees for.....		810.01 , 1401.04 , 1403.06
refusal as to fewer than all classes in.....		1403.05
requirements for.....		1403.01
single certificate of registration issued, unless application divided.....		1403.01
specimens for.....		904.01(b)
Commerce		
bona fide use in ordinary course of trade.....		901.02
commerce that may be lawfully regulated by Congress.....		901.03
definition of.....		901.01
territorial.....		901.03
type of.....		901.03
use in (See also: Use in commerce)		
with the United States.....		901.03
Commercial name.....		1202.01
Commissioner, change of title.....		1701
Companion applications and registrations.....		702.03(a) to 702.03(a)(iv)
“Company”		
does not identify legal entity in the United States.....		803.03 , 803.03(c)
used in commonwealth countries to designate legal entity.....		803.03(i)
Company, related (See also: Related company)		
Compliance with other laws.....		907
Component or ingredient, mark used to identify.....		1402.05(a)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Composition material of goods — Correction of errors in cover sheet or recorded document

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

Composition material of goods.....	1402.05(b)
Computer programs	
identification of.....	1402.03(d)
specimens for.....	904.03(e)
Computer services, identification of.....	1402.11(a) to 1402.11(a)(xii)
Computer software as service mark.....	1301.02(f)
Computing period for response to action.....	310
Concurrent use registration.....	1207.04 to 1207.04(g)(i)
not permitted in §44 and §66(a) applications.....	1207.04(b)
Conditional assignment.....	503.01(e)
Configuration of goods or packaging.....	1202.02 to 1202.02(f)(ii)
Conflicting applications.....	702.03(b), 705.03, 718.07, 1207 to 1207.03, 1208 to 1208.02(f)
Conflicting marks.....	702.03(b), 1207 to 1207.03, 1208 to 1208.02(f)
Congressional inquiry.....	1802
Consent agreement.....	714.05(d), 715.03(b), 1207.01(d)(viii)
Consent to register by living individual.....	813 to 813.01(c), 1206 to 1206.05
Connection with goods or services.....	1206.02
Implicit consent.....	1206.04(d)
Must be personally signed.....	813, 1206.04(a) to 1206.04(b), 1206.04(b)
Must be written consent to registration.....	1206.04(a)
Name or likeness is that of living individual.....	813.01(a), 1206.01
Names and likenesses that do not identify particular living individual.....	813.01(b), 1206.05
Not required if consent of record in prior registration.....	1206.04(c)
Presumed from signature of application.....	1206.04(b)
Printing of statement.....	813.01(a) to 813.01(c)
Sample statements.....	813.01(a) to 813.01(b)
Statement required in TEAS Plus application.....	813, 819.01(c)
Updating TRAM database.....	813.01(a) to 813.01(c)
When inquiry required.....	1206.03
Written consent must be personally signed.....	813, 1206.04(a) to 1206.04(b)
Conservatorship as owner of mark.....	803.03(e)
Constructive use.....	201.02, 1904.01(g)
Control over nature and quality of goods/services.....	1201.01, 1201.03 to 1201.03(a)
Convention or treaty relating to trademarks.....	1001, 1002.01 to 1002.05, 1900, Appendix B
Copending (companion) applications.....	702.03(a) to 702.03(a)(iv)
Copies of documents, when acceptable for filing.....	302.01
Copies of materials in files, requests for.....	111
Copies of trademark applications and registrations, requests for.....	111
Copying materials in files.....	109.03
Corporation	
address of.....	803.05
name of.....	803.02 to 803.02(c)
non-profit.....	803.03(c)
signature on behalf of.....	611.06(d), 804.04
state or country of incorporation.....	803.04
tax-exempt.....	803.03(c)
Correction of drawing.....	807.13 to 807.16
Correction of errors in cover sheet or recorded document.....	503.06 to 503.06(f)

INDEX

Correction of errors in international registration — Dates of use

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Correction of errors in international registration.....	1906.01(f)
Correction of mistake in name of applicant.....	1201.02(c)
Correction of mistake in registration.....	1609.10 to 1609.10(b)
Correspondence address.....	609 to 609.04
applicant has duty to maintain current correspondence address.....	609.03
change of.....	609.02 to 609.02(f), 609.04
establishing.....	609.01
in §66(a) application.....	609.01(a)
signature of request to change.....	609.02(b), 611.02
Correspondence for trademark applications.....	302.03(a)
Correspondence for trademark registrations.....	302.03(b)
Correspondence with applicants not domiciled in United States.....	609.04
Correspondence, returned as undeliverable.....	403
Correspondence, with whom held.....	609 to 609.04
Country of origin.....	1002.04
Courier service, delivery of correspondence by.....	307
Court orders concerning registrations.....	1610
Cover sheet required for recording in Assignment Division.....	503.03(e)
Credit card.....	405.01, 405.06
Charges refused or charged back.....	202.03(a) to 202.03(a)(i), 405.06
Cultivar names.....	1202.12

D

Date	
of filing (See also: Filing date (application))“Office Date” label	
of first use in commerce.....	903.02
of first use of mark.....	903.01
of notarization of application.....	804.01(a)
of receipt stamped on hand-delivered papers.....	303.01, 303.02(b), 307
of signing of §2.20 declaration in application.....	804.01(a), 804.01(b), 804.03
Date stamp (See also: “Office Date” label)	
Dates of use (See also: Date of first use in commerce)Date of first use of mark	
amending.....	903.04, 1609.07
apparent discrepancies in.....	903.06(a)
in allegation of use, may be earlier than application filing date.....	903
in another form.....	903.07
indefinite.....	903.06
must be specified in amendment to allege use.....	903, 1104.10(b)(iv)
must be specified in statement of use.....	903, 1109.09(a)
must be specified in §1(a) application.....	806.01(a), 903
must be verified.....	903
pertain to at least one item in class.....	903.08
relation between.....	903.03

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

DBA designations — Description of mark

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

DBA designations.....	803.02 to 803.02(c)
<i>De facto</i> functionality.....	1202.02(a)(iii)(B)
<i>De jure</i> functionality.....	1202.02(a)(iii)(B)
Dead languages, translation of.....	809.01(b)(iii) , 1207.01(b)(vi) , 1207.01(b)(vi)(B) , 1209.03(g)
Deadline for response.....	711 to 711.02
Deadline for response, how to compute.....	310
Deceptive matter.....	1203 , 1203.02 to 1203.02(g) , 1210.05 to 1210.05(e)
amending identification of goods or services to overcome §2(a) refusal.....	1203.02(e)(ii) , 1203.02(f)(i) , 1203.02(g)
case references.....	1203.02(g)
determining materiality.....	1203.02(d)
distinction between marks comprising deceptive matter and deceptively misdescriptive marks.....	1203.02(c)
elements of §2(a) deceptiveness refusal.....	1203.02(b)
marks comprising deceptive matter are not registrable.....	1203.02 , 1203.02(f)(ii)
mere personal preference.....	1203.02(d)(ii)
objective criteria.....	1203.02(d)(i)
procedure for issuing §2(a) deceptive refusals.....	1203.02(e) to 1203.02(e)(ii)
types of deceptive marks.....	1203.02(a)
Deceptively misdescriptive geographic marks.....	1210 , 1210.01(b) , 1210.05(a) to 1210.06 , 1210.06(b)
basis for refusal.....	1210.05(a)
test.....	1210.01(b) to 1210.01(c)
Deceptively misdescriptive marks.....	1209.04
Declaration in lieu of oath.....	804.01(b)
Declaration under §8 (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8))	
Declaration under §71 (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§71))	
Defective application materials.....	204 to 204.03
Degrees or titles.....	1304.03(b)(ii) , 1306.04 , 1306.04(d)(ii)
Delay between execution and filing of papers.....	804.03 , 1104.10(b)(ii) , 1108.02(b) , 1109.11(c)
Deletion	
of items from identification.....	1104.10(b)(iii) , 1107 , 1108.02(d) , 1109.13 , 1402.06(a) , 1604.09(b) , 1613.09(b) , 1902.07(c)(ii)
of matter from mark on drawing.....	807.14(a)
Deposit accounts.....	405.03
Description	of mark
accurate but incomplete.....	808.03(c) to 808.03(c)(ii)
application submitted without.....	808.03(b)
examination procedure for.....	808.03 to 808.03(g)
guidelines for requiring.....	808.01
must be accurate and concise.....	808.02
of color in mark.....	807.07(a)(ii) , 1202.05(e)
of location of mark on goods.....	807.08 , 808.01 , 1202.02(c)(ii)
of mark comprising configuration.....	808.01 , 1202.02(c)(ii)
of mark in §66(a) application.....	808.01 , 1904.02(j) to 1904.02(k)
of sensory mark.....	807.09
of significant aspects of the mark.....	808.02
of three-dimensional mark.....	807.10 , 808.01
printed in <i>Official Gazette</i>	808.03
printed on registration certificate.....	808.03
printing of.....	808.03 , 817 , 1202.02(c)(ii)

INDEX

Descriptiveness, geographical — Disclaimer

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Descriptiveness, geographical.....		1210 to 1210.09
Descriptiveness, mere.....		1209, 1209.01 to 1209.03(u)
“America” or “American”.....		1209.03(n)
combined terms.....		1209.03(d)
design, picture, or illustration.....		1209.03(f)
domain names.....		1209.03(m), 1215.04, 1215.05
first user.....		1209.03(c)
foreign equivalents.....		1209.03(g)
function or purpose.....		1209.03(p)
incongruity.....		1209.01(a), 1209.03(d), 1213.05(d)
intended users.....		1209.03(i)
laudatory terms.....		1209.03(k)
more than one meaning.....		1209.03(e), 1213.05(c)
“National,” “International,” “Global” and “Worldwide”.....		1209.03(o)
no dictionary listing.....		1209.03(b)
phonetic equivalent.....		1209.03(j)
procedure for refusal.....		1209.02 to 1209.02(b)
punctuation.....		1209.03(u)
repetition of descriptive term.....		1209.03(t)
retail store and distributorship services.....		1209.03(r)
slogans.....		1202.04, 1209.03(s)
source or provider of goods/services.....		1209.03(q)
telephone numbers.....		1209.03(l)
test for genericness.....		1209.01(c)(i)
third party registrations.....		1209.03(a)
Destruction of paper files.....		109.02
Diligence (See also: Due diligence in monitoring status of pending matters)		
Director, statutory authority of.....		1701
Disclaimer		
alliteration.....		1213.05(e)
as to certain classes, or certain goods or services.....		1213
compound word marks.....		1213.05(a) to 1213.05(a)(ii)
display of mark.....		1213.05(f)
double entendre.....		1213.05(c)
form of.....		1213.08 to 1213.08(d)
history.....		1213.01
hyphens and other punctuation.....		1213.05(a)(ii)
in relation to likelihood of confusion.....		1213.09, 1213.10
incongruity.....		1209.01(a), 1213.05(d)
of domain name.....		1215.07
of entire mark not permitted.....		1213.06
of entity designations or the familial structure of an entity.....		1213.03(d)
of foreign words.....		1213.08(d)
of generic matter.....		1213.03(b)
of geographic terms.....		1210.06(a) to 1210.06(b)
of misspelled words.....		1213.08(c)
of pictorial representations of descriptive matter.....		1213.03(c)
of unregistrable matter in its entirety.....		1213.08(b)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Disclaimer — Domain names, marks comprising

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
piecemeal disclaimer not permitted.....		1213.08(b)
refusal to register because of failure to disclaim.....		1213.01(b)
removal rather than.....		1213.07
slogans		1213.05(b)(i)
sound patterns.....		1213.05(e)
standardized printing format for.....		1213.08(a)(i)
telescoped words.....		1213.05(a)(i)
trade names.....		1213.04
unitary mark not subject to.....		1213.05 to 1213.05(h)
voluntary.....		1213.01(c)
Disparagement.....		1203.03 to 1203.03(b)(ii)
Distinctiveness of product design.....		1202.02(b)(i)
Distinctiveness of product packaging.....		1202.02(b)(ii)
Distinctiveness of trade dress.....		1202.02(b) to 1202.02(b)(ii)
Distinctiveness under §2(f) (See also: Acquired distinctiveness (§2(f) claim)		
Division		
fee for.....		1110.02
of application.....		1110 to 1110.11(a)
of application subject to Board proceeding.....		1110.09
of application under §44.....		1110.10
of application under §66(a).....		1110.11 to 1110.11(a)
of international registration.....		1906.01(a)(iv)
of multiple class application.....		1403.03
of registration.....		1615 to 1615.02
time for filing.....		1110.03
when response to Office action is due.....		1110.08
when statement of use is due.....		1110.07
Divisions, operating or unincorporated.....		803.01, 1201.02(d)
Document Services Branch, Public Records Division.....		111
Documents not returned to filer.....		404
Documents that the Office will record.....		503.02
Domain names, marks comprising.....		1209.03(m), 1215 to 1215.10
adding or deleting TLDs.....		1215.08(a) to (b)
agreement of mark on drawing with mark on specimen.....		1215.02(c), 1215.08 to 1215.08(b)
combined with geographic matter.....		1215.06
combined with surname.....		1211.01(b)(vii), 1215.03
descriptiveness.....		1209.03(m), 1215.04, 1215.05
disclaimer of.....		1215.07
effect of incontestability in ex parte examination.....		1216.02
effect of prior applicant's registration.....		1216 to 1216.02
for domain name registry services.....		1215.02(d) to 1215.02(d)(iv)
generic refusals.....		1209.03(m), 1215.05
intent-to-use applications.....		1215.02(e)
likelihood of confusion.....		1215.09
material alteration.....		1215.08 to 1215.08(c)
phonetic equivalent of TLD.....		1215.10
Surnames.....		1215.03
use applications.....		1215.02(a)

INDEX

Domain names, marks comprising — Drawing(s)

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
use as a mark.....		1215.02 to 1215.02(e)
§44 and 66(a) applications.....		1215.02(f)
Domestic representative (of party not domiciled in United States) designation by applicant.....		610, 811, 1013
designation by assignee.....		501.04
designation by renewal applicant.....		1606.10
mailing of correspondence to.....		609.04
with respect to affidavits under §8.....		1604.14
with respect to proceedings before Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.....		610
Drawing(s) (See also: Special form drawing) Standard character drawing)		
agreement with foreign registration in §44 application.....		807, 807.03(f), 807.07(b), 807.07(d)(ii), 807.12(b), 807.12(d) to 807.12(e), 1011.01
agreement with specimens.....		807, 807.03(e), 807.12(a) to 807.12(a)(iii), 1215.02(c)
amendments (See also: Amendment of mark on drawing)		
broken lines on.....		807.08, 1202.02(c)(i) to 1202.02(c)(i)(C)
clear drawing of.....		202.01
code.....		807.18
color.....		807.07 to 807.07(d)(iii), 1202.05(d) to 1202.05(d)(iv)
color lining.....		807.07(g), 808.01(b), 1902.02(e)
deletion of matter from.....		807.14(a)
determining when special form exists.....		807.04 to 807.04(b)
dotted lines on.....		807.08, 1202.02(c)(i) to 1202.02(c)(i)(C)
electronically filed application.....		807.05 to 807.05(c)
examination of.....		1102.02, 1104.10(b)(vi), 1109.12
fax transmission not permitted.....		306.01
for sensory marks.....		807.09
gray tones in.....		807.07(d) to 807.07(d)(iii), 807.07(f) to 807.07(f)(ii)
in applications filed before November 2, 2003.....		807.03(i), 807.07(f)
in §44 application.....		807.03(f) to 807.03(h), 807.07(b), 807.07(d)(ii), 807.12(b), 807.12(d), 807.13(a), 1011 to 1011.04
in §66(a) application.....		807.03(b), 807.03(g) to 807.03(h), 807.07(b), 807.07(d)(iii), 807.07(f)(i), 807.12(c), 807.13(b), 1904.02(k)
ink (See also: Special form drawing)		
limited to mark.....		807.02
limited to one mark.....		202.01, 807.01, 1011.02
lining.....		807.07(g), 808.01(b), 1902.02(e)
long marks.....		807.05(a)(i), 807.06(b)
mark drawing code.....		807.18
mark entered in “Mark” field of TEAS application controls.....		202.01, 807.01, 807.14(d)
mark on separate drawing page controls.....		202.01, 807.01, 807.14(d)
motion, drawing of marks with.....		807.11
multiple marks.....		202.01, 807.01
multiple rendition of three dimensional mark.....		807.10
not required for sound, scent or non-visual mark.....		807.09
paper.....		807.06 to 807.06(c), 807.07(f)(ii)
punctuation, role of.....		807.12(a)(i) to 807.12(a)(iii), 807.14(c)
purpose of.....		807
required for marks other than sound, scent, and other non-visual marks.....		807

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Drawing(s) — Errors in cover sheet or recorded document, correction of

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

separate drawing page for paper-filed applications.....	807.06(c)
showing position of mark.....	807.08
size of, in paper-filed applications.....	807.06(a)
special form (See also: Special form drawing)	
standard character.....	807.03 to 807.03(i)
substitute.....	807.15
three-dimensional marks.....	807.10, 1202.02(c)(iv)
type of paper for.....	807.06(a)
typed (See also: Standard character drawing)	
Dual citizenship asserted by applicant.....	803.04
Due diligence in monitoring status of pending matters.....	108.03, 1705.05, 1712.01, 1714.01(d)
Duplicate registrations not issued.....	703
Duration of registration.....	1602 to 1602.04

E

Educational institution as owner of mark.....	803.03(f)
Effective date	
of Madrid Protocol Implementation Act.....	1900 (introductory text)
of Trademark Act of 1946.....	1601.02
of Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988.....	1602.01
of Trademark Law Treaty Implementation Act.....	1602.04
Effective filing date of application.....	206 to 206.03
Electronic filing through TEAS.....	301, 303.02(a)
confirmation of receipt of.....	303.02(a)
drawings.....	807.05 to 807.05(c)
signature.....	611.01(c)
specimens.....	904.02(a)
Electronic funds transfer.....	405.05
Electronic image files.....	109.01, 402
Electronic mail.....	304 to 304.03
attachments must be in .jpg or .pdf format.....	304.01
authorization of.....	304.03
cannot be used to respond to examining attorneys' Office actions.....	304.02, 709.05
communications that may be filed by.....	304.01, 304.02
outgoing.....	304.03, 403, 717.01
procedure.....	304.03, 709.04 to 709.05
Electronic signature.....	611.01(c)
English, application must be in.....	802
Enrollment and Discipline, Office of.....	602, 602.03 to 602.03(b), 604.01, 611.05(b), 720
Entity of foreign applicants, common terms designating.....	803.03(i), 803.04, Appendix D
Entity, legal.....	803.03 to 803.03(k), Appendix D
Equivalents, foreign.....	1207.01(b)(vi) to 1207.01(b)(vi)(C), 1209.03(g), 1211.01(a)(vii)
Errors in cover sheet or recorded document, correction of.....	503.06 to 503.06(f)

INDEX

Establishing ownership of applications or registrations — Extension of protection of international registration to the United ...

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Establishing ownership of applications or registrations.....		502 to 502.03
Estate as owner of mark.....		803.03(e)
European Union Trademark.....		Appendix B
Evidence with respect to refusal or requirement.....		710 to 710.03
from Internet.....		710.01(b)
from research database.....		710.01(a)
indicating no refusal or requirement necessary.....		710.02
of third party registration.....		710.03
record must be complete prior to appeal.....		710.01(c), 1501.02(b)
remand for introduction of new evidence.....		1504.05
Ex parte, contacts with third parties regarding ex parte matters.....		1806
Examination		
checklist.....		818
initial (See also: Intent-to-use applications, initial examination of).....		704 to 704.03, 1102 to 1102.04
of related applications.....		702.03 to 702.03(b)
of §66(a) application.....		1904.02 to 1904.09(b)
order of.....		702.01, 702.02, 702.03(a)(i) to 702.03(a)(ii)
procedure.....		704 to 704.03
search.....		704.02, 718.07
“second” examination (See also: Statement of use, examination of)		
“special” applications.....		702.02, 1710 to 1710.02
statutory authority for.....		701
suspended applications.....		716 to 716.06
Examiner's		amendment
approval of.....		707.01
combined with priority action.....		708.05
form of.....		707.03
may not be issued as first action in §66(a) application.....		707
objection to amendment of identification of goods/services.....		1402.07(e)
paralegal cannot authorize.....		608.01, 707.01
to charge fee.....		405.03, 810.01
to enter standard character claim.....		707.02
when appropriate.....		707 to 707.02
without prior authorization.....		707.02
Examining attorneys' appeal briefs (See also: Appeal briefs, examining attorneys')		
Express abandonment of application.....		608.01, 611.02, 718.01
Extension of protection of international registration to the United States (See also: Registered extension of protection) Section 66(a)		
affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse.....		1613, 1904.10
affidavit of incontestability.....		1605.01, 1904.11
amendment of identification of goods/services.....		1402.01(c), 1609.01, 1904.02(c) to (c)(v), 1906.01(j)
amendment of mark not permitted.....		807.13(b), 1609.02, 1904.02(j), 1906.01(j)
amendment to Supplemental Register not permitted.....		801.02(b), 815, 816.01, 816.04, 1904.02(f)
amendments to.....		1904.13(a)
assignability of.....		501.01(b)
assignee, issuance of registration certificate in name of.....		502.02(b), 502.03
assignment of.....		501.01(b), 501.07, 502.01, 502.02(b), 502.03, 503.03(a), 503.05, 1904.06, 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Extension of protection of international registration to the United ... — Extension of protection of international registration to the United ...

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

basis.....	806.01(e) , 806.03(k) , 1505.02(f) , 1904.01(a)
can be amended under §7 only in limited circumstances.....	1609.01(a)
cancellation of, by IB.....	1904.08
cannot be based on USPTO application.....	1904.01(h)
certificate of registration.....	1904.05
certificate of registration, issuance in name of new owner.....	502.02(b) , 502.03
claim of acquired distinctiveness.....	1212.08
classification of goods and services.....	1401.03(d) , 1403.02 , 1403.02(b) , 1403.02(c) , 1505.02(b) , 1609.04 , 1904.02(b) , 1904.02(c) to (c)(v)
concurrent use registration not permitted.....	1207.04(b)
constructive use.....	1904.01(g)
correction of errors.....	1904.02(e)(i) , 1904.03(f) , 1904.13 , 1904.13(b) , 1904.14 , 1906.01(f)
correspondence address.....	609.01(a) , 1904.02(i)
declaration of intent to use required.....	804.05 , 1904.01(c)
dividing.....	1110.11 , 1615.02
drawing.....	807.03(b) , 807.03(g) , 807.03(h) , 807.07(b) , 807.07(d)(iii) , 807.07(f)(i) , 807.12(c) , 807.13(b) , 1904.02(k)
establishing right to take action.....	502.01
examination of.....	1904.02 to 1904.02(l) , 1904.09(b)
express abandonment of.....	608.01 , 611.02 , 718.01
filing basis.....	806.01(e) , 806.03(k) , 1505.02(f) , 1904.01(a)
filing date.....	201 to 201.02 , 202 to 202.01 , 202.03 , 203 , 1904.01(b)
filing fee.....	202.03 , 810 to 810.01 , 810.01 , 1904.01(f)
filing receipt.....	401.01
identification of goods and services.....	1402.01(c) , 1609.01(a) , 1904.02(c) to (c)(v) , 1906.01(i)
incontestability, affidavit of.....	1605.01 , 1904.11
invalidation of.....	1904.07 to 1904.07(d)
issuance of registration certificate in name of new owner.....	502.02(b) , 502.03
jurisdiction.....	1504.04 , 1904.02(l)
limitation in list of goods/services.....	1904.02(e)(ii) , 1904.03(g) , 1904.15 , 1906.01(e)
mark cannot be amended.....	807.13(b) , 1609.02 , 1904.02(j) , 1906.01(i)
must be filed by holder of international registration.....	1201
notice of refusal.....	1904.03 to 1904.03(g) , 1904.04
Office actions, issuing.....	1904.02(h)
opposition.....	1503.01 to 1503.05 , 1504.02 to 1504.04(a) , 1904.04
ownership, change of.....	501.01(b) , 501.07 , 502.01 , 502.02(b) , 502.03 , 503.03(a) , 503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01 to 1906.01(a)(iv)
ownership, in general.....	501 to 501.07 , 502 , 1201 , 1904.06
priority claim.....	206.02 , 1904.01(e)
recording change of ownership.....	503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iv)
refusal of.....	711.02 , 714.05(b) , 1904.03 to 1904.03(g) , 1904.04
remains part of international registration.....	1904.05
remand.....	1504.02 , 1504.04 , 1504.05
renewal of.....	1602.01 , 1606.01(b) , 1614 , 1905
replacement.....	1616 , 1904.12
signature.....	804.04 , 804.05 , 1904.01(c)
Supplemental Register, amendment to not a new issue.....	714.05(a)(i)
Supplemental Register, not registrable on.....	801.02(b) , 815 , 816.01 , 816.04 , 1904.02(f)
transformation of.....	1904.09 to 1904.09(b)

INDEX

Extension of protection of international registration to the United ... — varietal and cultivar names

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

use not required.....	901, 1904.01(d)
verification.....	804, 804.04, 804.05, 1904.01(c), 1904.02(d)
Extension of time to file statement of use (See also: Request for extension of time to file statement of use)	
Extension of time to oppose.....	1503.04

F

Facsimile transmission, certificate of (See also: Facsimile transmission, filing of correspondence by)	
effect of.....	306.05(c)
eligible correspondence.....	306.01
non-receipt of correspondence by PTO.....	306.05(d)
not available for filing international applications.....	306.01
not available for filing requests for transformation.....	306.01
not available for filing requests to record changes to an international registration.....	306.01
not available for filing responses to IB notices of irregularities.....	306.01
not available for filing subsequent designations.....	306.01
not available for filing trademark applications.....	306.01
requirements for.....	306.05 to 306.05(c)
wording of certificate.....	306.05(b)
Facsimile transmission, filing of correspondence by (See also: Facsimile transmission, certificate of)	
documents excluded.....	306.01
documents included.....	306.01
effect of.....	306.03
not available for filing applications.....	306.01
procedure for.....	306.04, 306.05
Failure to Function.....	1202, 1301.02(a)
Background designs and shapes.....	1202.11
Color as a mark.....	1202.05 to 1202.05(a)
hashtag marks.....	1202.18 to 1202.18(b)
holograms.....	1202.14
inconsistent goods or services.....	1202.19(f) to 1202.19(f)(ii)
informational matter.....	1202.04
model grade designations.....	1202.16(a)
names of artists and authors.....	1202.09(a)
names and designs of characters in creative works.....	1202.10
ornamentation.....	1202.03
product design.....	1202.02(b)(i)
product packaging.....	1202.02(b)(ii)
repeating pattern marks, not inherently distinctive.....	1202.19(e) to 1202.19(e)(iii)
scent, fragrance, or flavor.....	1202.13
service marks.....	1301.02(a)
title of single creative work.....	1202.08
universal symbols.....	1202.17(c) to 1202.17(c)(iii)
varietal and cultivar names.....	1202.12

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

False suggestion of connection — Filing basis

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
False suggestion of connection.....		1203.03(c) to 1203.03(c)(iii)
Family of marks.....		1207.01(d)(xi)
Fax copies of documents, filing of.....		302.01
Fax transmission (See also: Facsimile transmission, filing of correspondence by)		
Federal holiday, response period ending on.....		308
Fee(s)		
electronic funds transfer.....		405.05
for correcting irregularities in international application.....		1902.07(b)(i)
for filing amendment to allege use.....		1104.10(b)(vii)
for filing application.....		202.03, 810 to 810.02, 1401.04, 1403.01
for filing ex parte appeal.....		1501.04
for filing international application.....		1902.02(i), 1903.02
for filing multiple-class application.....		810 to 810.01, 1401.04, 1403.01
for filing notice of opposition.....		1503.01
for filing petition to revive abandoned application.....		1714, 1714.01, 1714.01(a)(i), 1714.01(b), 1714.01(c)
for filing request for extension of time to file statement of use.....		1108.02(c)
for filing request for transformation.....		1904.09(a)
for filing request to record changes in ownership to an international registration.....		1906.01(a)(i)
for filing statement of use.....		1109.15
for filing subsequent designation.....		1902.08(c)
for recording document in Assignment Recordation Branch.....		503.03(d)
for request to divide.....		1110.02
international, payment of.....		1903.02
method of payment of.....		405 to 405.06
number of.....		810 to 810.01, 1401.04, 1403.01, 1403.06
refund of (See also: Refund of fees)		
refused by financial institution.....		202.03(a) to 202.03(a)(i), 405.06, 1104.01(b), 1104.10(b)(vii), 1108.02(c), 1109.15(a), 1604.06(c), 1606.05(c), 1613.06(c), 1705.02
returned check.....		202.03(a) to 202.03(a)(i), 405.06, 1104.01(b), 1104.10(b)(vii), 1108.02(c), 1109.15(a), 1604.06(c), 1606.05(c), 1613.06(c), 1705.02
Files, access to.....		109 to 109.03
Files, destruction of.....		109.02
Files, electronic.....		109.01, 109.03, 402 to 402.01
Filing		basis
abandonment of multiple-basis application.....		806.02(d)
amendment after publication.....		806.03(j) to 806.03(j)(iii), 1505.02(f)
amendment from §1(a) to §1(b).....		806.03(c)
amendment from §1(b) to §44.....		806.03(g)
amendment from §44 to §1(b).....		806.03(d)
amendment of §66(a) basis not permitted.....		806.03(k), 806.03(l), 1505.02(f), 1904.01(a)
amendment, effect on filing date.....		806.03(h), 806.04(b)
amendment, verification of.....		806.02(e), 806.03(i)
bona fide intention to use mark in commerce.....		806.01(b) to 806.01(e), 806.02(e)
changing.....		806.03 to 806.03(l)
changing after publication.....		806.03(j) to 806.03(j)(iii)
claim of priority under §44(d).....		806.01(c), 806.02(f), 806.03(b), 806.04(b), 1003
combining §1 and §44.....		806.02(a), 806.02(e) to 806.02(f), 806.03(d), 806.03(f), 806.04(b)
combining §1(a) and §1(b).....		806.02(a) to 806.02(b), 806.03(c)
deletion of §1(b) basis.....		806.04 to 806.04(a)

INDEX

Filing basis — Final refusal

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
deletion of, in general.....	806.04
extension of protection of international registration under §66(a).....	806.01(e), 1904.01(a)
foreign registration under §44(e).....	806.01(d), 806.02(e), 1004 to 1004.02
intent-to-use.....	806.01(b), 806.02(b), 806.03(c) to 806.03(e), 806.03(e), 806.03(g), 806.04(a)
multiple.....	806.02 to 806.02(g)
must be stated in written application.....	806
requirements for establishing.....	806.01 to 806.01(e)
review prior to publication or issue.....	806.05
specimen, deferral of examination in multiple-basis application.....	806.02(c)
use in commerce.....	806.01(a), 806.02(b), 806.03(c)
when basis can be changed.....	806.03(a)
Filing date label.....	303.02(b)
Filing date, application	
cancelled if minimum requirements not met.....	204.01
change of.....	204.03, 205, 1711
denial of.....	204 to 204.03, 1711
effective.....	206 to 206.04
in extension of protection of international registration.....	1904.01(b)
minimum requirements for.....	202 to 202.03(a)(i)
of §66(a) application.....	1904.01(b)
priority.....	206.02, 806.01(c), 1003 to 1003.02, 1003.05
request for restoration of.....	1711
requirements for receiving.....	202 to 202.03(a)(i)
restoration of.....	1711
review for compliance with minimum requirements.....	203
review of denial of.....	1711
section 66(a) application.....	1904.01(b)
what constitutes.....	201
Filing date, for correspondence (in general).....	205, 303.01
Filing fee, application.....	202.03, 810 to 810.02, 1403.01
in §66(a) application.....	202.03, 810 to 810.01, 1904.01(f)
varies depending on whether application filed on paper or through TEAS.....	202.03, 810, 1110.02, 1403.02(c)
Filing of correspondence with International Bureau.....	1906 to 1906.01(j)
Filing of correspondence with USPTO.....	305.01 to 305.04
by courier or delivery service.....	307
by “Priority Mail Express”.....	305.03
by fax (See also: Facsimile transmission, filing of correspondence by).....	307
by hand delivery.....	307
by mail.....	305 to 305.04
by unauthorized individual.....	608.01, 611.05 to 611.05(c)
certificate of mailing procedure for (See also: Certificate of mailing procedure).....	
certificate of transmission procedure for (See also: Facsimile transmission, certificate of).....	
time between execution and.....	804.03, 1104.10(b)(ii), 1108.02(b), 1109.11(c)
Filing receipt.....	401.01
Final refusal	
action after.....	715 to 715.04(b)
for failure to provide information requested by examining attorney.....	814
issuance of final refusal, after removal of application from suspension.....	1208.02(d)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Final refusal — Foreign registration, application based on ownership of

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

issuance of subsequent final refusal, after removal of application from suspension.....	716.06
new issues requiring issuance of nonfinal action.....	714.05 to 714.05(c), 714.05(f), 715.03(b)
not permissible on first action.....	714.01
not permissible on suspension.....	714.02
pertaining to identification.....	714.05(a)(ii)
pertaining to proposed amendment of drawing.....	714.05(a), 807.17
premature.....	714.06
proper response to.....	715.01
request for reconsideration after.....	715.03 to 715.04(b), 1714.01(a)(ii), 1714.01(f)(ii)(A)
statement of grounds of.....	714.04
time for appeal runs from date of.....	715.03(c)
when appropriate.....	714.03, 714.05 to 714.05(f)
with respect to amendment to Supplemental Register.....	714.05(a)(i)
with respect to submission of consent agreement.....	714.05(d)
with respect to submission of substitute specimen.....	714.05(e) to 714.05(f)
with respect to §2(f) claim.....	714.05(a)(i), 1212.02(h)
“Firm” – in regards to applicant’s name	803.02(b)
Flag, refusal to register mark comprising.....	1204 to 1204.01(e), 1204.03
Flavor as mark.....	904.03(m), 1202.13
Foreign	applicant
common terms designating entity of.....	803.03(i), Appendix D
signature on behalf of.....	611.06(e), 804.04 to 804.05
Foreign attorney (See also: Attorney, foreign)	
“Foreign” commerce.....	901.03
Foreign equivalents, doctrine of.....	1207.01(b)(vi) to 1207.01(b)(vi)(C), 1209.03(g), 1210.10, 1211.01(a)(vii)
Foreign priority (See also: Priority under §44(d), application claiming)	
Foreign registration, application based on ownership of.....	1005
assignment of home country application or registration.....	1006
based on registration issued by a “common office of several states”.....	1002.03
bona fide intention to use mark in commerce.....	806.01(d), 806.02(e), 806.02(g), 1004, 1008
certification or certified copy of foreign registration required.....	806.01(d), 1004.01
country of origin.....	1002.04
dividing.....	1110.10
drawing.....	807.03(f), 807.12(b), 1011 to 1011.04
establishing entitlement under a treaty.....	1002.01, 1002.03
from applicant’s country of origin.....	1002.04
identification of goods/services.....	1012, 1402.01(b)
international registration as basis for §44 application.....	1016
may not be filed before foreign registration has issued.....	1004
must be in force.....	1004.01(a)
one mark per registration.....	1011.02
ownership of foreign registration.....	1005
requirements for receiving a filing date.....	202 to 202.03(a)(i)
requirements for §44(e) basis.....	806.01(d), 1002.01, 1004
specimen not required.....	1009
standard character claim in.....	807.03(f), 1011.01
status of foreign registration.....	1004.01(a)
suspension pending receipt of copy of foreign registration not permitted except in extraordinary situation....	1004.01

INDEX

Foreign registration, application based on ownership of — Geographical marks, deceptive

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
translation of.....		1004.01(b)
use not required.....		1009
Form paragraphs.....		705 to 705.01
Forms, trademark.....		103, 301, 802
Fragrance as mark.....		807.09, 1202.13
Franchisees, use of mark by.....		1201.03(e)
Fraud.....		720, 906.04
Freedom of Information Act requests.....		1803
for copies of letters of protest.....		1715.05
Functionality.....		1202.02(a) to 1202.02(a)(viii)

G

General information booklet about trademarks.....		105
Generic terms.....		1209.01(c) to 1209.01(c)(iii), 1215.05
Geographic terms		
“America” and “American”.....		1210.02(b)(iv)
arbitrary use of.....		1210.04(d)
arbitrary, fanciful, or suggestive composite.....		1210.02(c)(iii)
as certification marks.....		1210.09, 1306.05 to 1306.05(j)
combined with additional matter.....		1210.02(c) to 1210.02(c)(iii), 1210.06 to 1210.06(b), 1215.06
combined with domain name.....		1215.06
disclaimer of.....		1210.06(a) to 1210.06(b)
geographic locations.....		1210.02(a)
goods/place association.....		1210.04, 1210.04(a)
misleading indication of origin of wines/spirits.....		1210.08 to 1210.08(a)
more than one location with same name.....		1210.02(b)(ii)
non-geographic characteristics.....		1210.02(b)(iii)
obscure or remote.....		1210.04(c)
origin of goods or services.....		1210.03
other meanings.....		1210.02(b)(i) to 1210.02(b)(i)(A)
primary geographic significance.....		1210.02 to 1210.02(c)(iii)
registrability on Supplemental Register.....		1210.07(a)
registrability under §2(f).....		1210.07(b)
registration of, under §2(f).....		1210.07(b)
services/place association.....		1210.04, 1210.04(b)
two geographic terms combined.....		1210.02(c)(i)
used as certification mark to designate regional origin.....		1306.05 to 1306.05(j)
with surname significance.....		1210.02(b)(i)(A)
Geographical indications used on wine or spirits.....		1210.08 to 1210.08(c)
Geographical marks, deceptive (See also: Geographically deceptively misdescriptive marks). 1203.02(a) , 1203.02(c) , 1203.02(e)(ii) , 1203.02(g) , 1210.01(b) to 1210.01(c) , 1210.05 to 1210.05(e) , 1210.10		
arbitrary use of geographic terms.....		1210.04(d)
basis for refusal.....		1210.05(a)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Geographical marks, deceptive — Greek cross

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

case references.....	1210.05(e)
disclaimer.....	1210.06(b)
elements of.....	1210.05(b)
goods/place or services/place association.....	1210.04 to 1210.04(b)
materiality of deception.....	1210.05(c) to 1210.05(c)(ii)
neither applicant nor goods/services come from the place named.....	1210.05(d)(i)
obscure or remove geographic marks.....	1210.04(c)
procedures for issuing refusal.....	1210.05(d) to 1210.05(d)(ii)
registrability on Supplemental Register.....	1210.07(a)
registrability under §2(f).....	1210.07(b)
test.....	1210.01(c)
unclear whether goods/services originate from the place named.....	1210.05(d)(ii)
used on wines and spirits.....	1210.08 to 1210.08(a)
Geographically deceptively misdescriptive marks (See also: Geographical marks, deceptive)..	1210.01(b) , 1210.05(a) to 1210.05(e) , 1210.06(b) , 1210.10
basis for refusal.....	1210.05(a)
disclaimer of geographic matter.....	1210.06(b)
materiality of deception.....	1210.05(c) to 1210.05(c)(ii)
registrability on Supplemental Register.....	1210.07(a)
registrability under §2(f).....	1210.07(b)
test.....	1210.01(b)
Geographically descriptive marks.....	1210 to 1210.01(a) , 1210.02 to 1210.04(d) , 1210.06 to 1210.06(a) , 1210.07 to 1210.10
combined with additional matter.....	1210.06 to 1210.06(a)
disclaimer of geographic matter.....	1210.06(a)
registrability on Supplemental Register.....	1210.07(a)
registrability under §2(f).....	1210.07(b)
test.....	1210.01(a)
Geometric shapes.....	1202.11
Gift baskets, identification and classification.....	1401.05(a) , 1902.02(g)(iii)
Good cause, showing of, in request for second or subsequent extension of time to file statement of use.....	1108.02(f) to 1108.02(h)
Goods (See also: Classification of goods/services)Identification of goods/services)	
Goods in trade.....	1202.06 to 1202.06(c)
Goods/place association.....	1210.04 to 1210.04(d)
Government agencies and instrumentalities.....	1203.03(a)(i) to 1203.03(a)(iii) , 1203.03(c)(ii) , 1205.01
Government insignia.....	1204 , 1204.02 , 1204.03
Governmental body as owner of mark.....	803.03(f)
Grade designations.....	1202.16 to 1202.16(c)(v)(B)
Gray tones in drawings.....	807.07(d) to 807.07(d)(iii)
Greek cross.....	1205.01 , 1205.01(c) to 1205.01(c)(iv)

H

INDEX

Hague convention — Identification of goods/services

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Hague convention.....		804.01(a)(i)
Hand delivery of correspondence to USPTO.....		307
Hand delivery of documents relating to Madrid applications.....		1902.08(b) , 1906.01(a)(i)
Hashtag marks.....		1202.18
Heading or caption for papers.....		302.03(a) , 302.03(b)
Holiday (See also: Federal holiday , response period ending on)		
Hologram.....		807.01 , 1202.14 , 1214.01
House mark.....		807.14(f) , 1402.03(b) , 1902.02(f)(i)

I

Identification of goods/services.....	1402
accuracy of.....	1402.05
advertising services.....	1402.11(i)
ambiguous.....	1402.07(b)
amendment of portion.....	1402.13
amendment permitted to clarify or limit.....	1402.06 to 1402.06(b)
amusement apparatus.....	1401.11(b)
association services.....	1402.11(c)
award programs.....	1402.11(j)
bonus programs.....	1402.11(h)
broad terms in.....	1402.03 , 1402.03(a)
certification mark.....	1306.02(c)
charitable services.....	1402.11(d)
clarification of.....	1402.06 to 1402.06(b)
classification.....	1401
collective membership mark application.....	1304.02(c)
components or ingredients.....	1402.05(a)
computer programs.....	1402.03(d)
computer services.....	1402.11(a)
consulting services.....	1402.11(e)
date of changes to USPTO ID manual.....	1401.13
deletion of items from.....	1104.10(b)(iii) , 1107 , 1108.02(d) , 1109.13 , 1402.06(a) , 1604.09(b) , 1609.03 , 1613.09(b)
dietetic substances.....	1401.11(d)
distribution of video tapes, audio tapes, and videodiscs.....	1402.11(f)
electric/electrothermic goods.....	1401.11(a)
entitlement to filing date with respect to.....	202.02 , 1402.02
final refusal pertaining to.....	714.05(a)(ii)
food additives.....	1401.05(e) , 1401.11(c)
“full line of”.....	1402.03(c) , 1902.02(f)(i)
game-playing apparatus.....	1401.11(b)
general guidelines.....	1402.01(a)
geographical indication terminology appearing in.....	1402.03(g)
gift baskets.....	1401.05(a) , 1902.02(g)(iii)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Identification of goods/services — Indexing against recorded document not permitted

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

house mark.....	1402.03(b) , 1902.02(f)(i)
identical language in more than one class not permitted.....	1401.05(c)
in amendment to allege use.....	1104.10(b)(iii)
in international application.....	1902.02(f) to 1902.02(f)(ii)
in request for extension of time to file statement of use.....	1108.02(d)
in response to IB notice of irregularity.....	1902.07(c)(ii)
in statement of use.....	1109.13
in §44 application may not exceed scope of those in foreign registration.....	1012 , 1402.01(b)
in §66(a) application.....	1402.01(c) , 1904.02(c) to (c)(v)
inappropriate in collective membership mark application.....	1304.02(c)
inclusive terminology in.....	1402.03(a)
industry terms.....	1402.03(f)
information services.....	1402.11(b)
kits.....	1401.05(a) , 1902.02(g)(iii)
limitation of list of goods/services in international registration.....	1904.02(e)(ii) , 1904.03(g) , 1904.15 , 1906.01 , 1906.01(e)
limiting by amendment	1402.06 to 1402.06(a)
location of.....	1402.01(d)
manual of acceptable identifications.....	1402.04
marketing services.....	1401.11(e) , 1402.11(j)
marketing and advertising.....	1402.11(i)
meal replacements.....	1401.11(d)
medical vs. non-medical goods.....	1401.05(b)
moving goods/services between companion applications.....	1402.08
negative language in.....	1402.06(a)
online publications.....	1402.11(a)(x)
“ordinary-meaning” test for determining scope of.....	1402.07(a)
parenthesis and brackets should not be used in.....	707.02 , 1402.12
printed publications.....	1402.03(e) , 1402.11(a)(x)
recorded entertainment services.....	1402.11(g)
registered marks appearing in.....	1402.09
scope of, for amendment purposes.....	1402.07 , 1402.07(d) , 1402.07(e)
services.....	1402.11
specificity of terms in.....	1402.01 , 1402.03 , 1402.03(d) , 1402.03(e)
systems.....	1401.05(d)
trademark protection system terminology appearing in.....	1402.03(g)
trademarks/service marks appearing in.....	1402.09
unacceptable amendments.....	1402.15
unambiguous.....	1402.07(c)
Immoral or scandalous matter.....	1203.01
Improper use of registration notice.....	906.02
Inadvertently issued registration.....	1109.15(a) , 1503.04 , 1609.10(a) , 1904.14
Incomplete application materials.....	204 to 204.03
Incomplete response to Office action.....	611.05(a) to 611.05(c) , 718.03 to 718.03(b) , 1713.01 to 1713.02 , 1714.01(f)(ii)(A)
Incontestability	
affidavit of (§15) (See also: Affidavit of incontestability)	
effect in examination.....	1216.02
Indexing against recorded document not permitted.....	503.07

INDEX

Individual as applicant — “Internal inconsistencies,” amendment of drawing to cure not ...

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Individual	as	applicant
citizenship of.....		803.04
doing business under assumed name.....		803.02 , 803.02(a)
name of.....		803.02 , 803.02(a)
Individual, living, name or likeness of (See also: Consent to register by living individual)		
Individuals who may practice before Office in trademark matters.....		602 to 602.03(e)
Informal application materials.....		204 to 204.03
Informal communications with examining attorney.....		304.01 , 709.04 , 709.05
Information, examining attorney’s request for.....		814
Informational		matter
as mark.....		1202.04 , 1301.02(a)
in drawing, deletion of.....		807.12(b) , 807.12(c) , 807.13(b) , 807.14(a)
Initial		examination
must be complete.....		704.01
of intent-to-use applications.....		1102 to 1102.04
Inquiry		
by examining attorney.....		814
from Congressional office.....		1802
from member of press.....		1804
from third party regarding ex parte matter.....		1806
general inquiries from public.....		1805
letter of, with respect to suspended application.....		716.05
regarding status of pending matters.....		108 to 108.03 , 1705.05
Insignia, refusal to register mark comprising.....		1204
Inspection of Office records.....		109 to 109.03 , 503.08
Institutions, defined for purposes of §2(a).....		1203.03(a)(ii)
“Insurance” extension of time to file statement of use.....		1108.03 to 1108.03(a) , 1109.16(c) to 1109.06(d)
Intent-to-use applications (See also: Amendment to allege use) Notice of allowance) Request for extension of time to file statement of use) Statement of use)		
allegation of use required prior to registration.....		1103
assignment of.....		501.01(a)
averments.....		804.02 , 806.01(b) , 1101
distinctiveness under §2(f).....		1212.09
initial	examination	of:
color marks.....		1202.05(h)
configuration.....		1202.02(d)
drawings.....		807.12(a) , 1102.02 , 1104.10(b)(vi) , 1109.12
for use as mark.....		704.01 , 1102 to 1102.01
identification of goods/services.....		1104.10(b)(iii) , 1108.02(d) , 1109.13
ornamentation.....		1202.03(e)
product design or packaging.....		1202.02(d)
publication of.....		1105
Supplemental Register.....		1102.03
trade dress.....		1202.02(d)
under §§1, 2(a), 2(b), 2(c), 2(d), 2(e).....		1102.01
Inter-American Convention.....		1001 , Appendix B
Interference, petition to declare.....		1208.03 to 1208.03(c) , 1507
“Internal inconsistencies,” amendment of drawing to cure not permitted.....		807.14(d)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

International Alphabetical List — Joint applicants

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

International Alphabetical List.....	1401.02(c)
International applications for registration.....	1902 to 1902.07(f)
certification by USPTO.....	1902.03
classification in.....	1902.02(g) to 1902.02(g)(iii)
color claim.....	1902.02(e)
description of mark.....	1902.02(k)
drawing.....	1902.02(d)
examination by IB.....	1902.06
fee for.....	1902.02(i)
form for filing.....	1902.02(a)
identification of goods and services.....	1902.02(f) to 1902.02(f)(ii)
irregularities in.....	1902.07 to 1902.07(f)
requirements for complete international application.....	1902.05
requirements for date of receipt in USPTO.....	1902.02
International Bureau.....	1900 (introductory text)
International fees.....	1903.02
International registrations.....	1901
application for.....	1902 to 1902.07(f)
as basis for §44 application.....	1016
cancellation of, by International Bureau.....	1904.08, 1906.01(e)
central attack.....	1902.09
changes to.....	1906.01 to 1906.01(i)
correction of.....	1904.03(f), 1904.14, 1906.01(f)
date of.....	1902.04
dividing.....	1906.01(a)(iv)
in general.....	1901
invalidation.....	1904.07
limitation in list of goods/services.....	1904.03(g), 1904.15, 1906.01(e)
renewal of.....	1905
restriction of holder's rights of disposal.....	1906.01(b)
who can file.....	1902.01
International trademark agreements.....	1001, Appendix B
Internet domain names, marks comprising.....	1209.03(m), 1215 to 1215.10
Internet evidence.....	710.01(b)
Interruption of U.S. Postal Service.....	303, 305.04
Interview with applicant or attorney.....	709 to 709.06

J

Joint	applicants
addresses of	803.05
application by.....	803.03(d)
application for international registration.....	1902.01, 1902.02(j)
citizenship.....	803.04

INDEX

Joint applicants — Legal entity of applicant set forth in application

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
examiner's amendments.....		707.01
licensing of mark by.....		1201.03(e)
signature by.....	302 , 605.01 , 606 , 609.02(b) , 610 , 611.02 , 611.03(b) , 611.03(c) , 611.03(h) , 611.03(i) , 611.06(a) , 712.01 , 804.04	
Joint		venture
name of.....		803.02(b)
setting forth names and citizenship of joint venturers.....		803.03(b) , 803.04
signature by.....		611.06(c) , 804.04
state or country of organization.....		803.03(b)
Jurisdiction over application.....		1504 to 1504.04(a) , 1715.03(c) , 1904.02(l)
Jurisdiction, request for.....		1504.04(a)
Juristic person.....		803.01 , 1203.03(a)(i)
as assignee.....		501.05
as domestic representative.....		610
as related company.....		1201.03
for purposes of §2(a)		1203.03(a)(i)

K

Kits, identification and classification.....		1401.05(a) , 1402.01(a) , 1902.02(g)(iii)
--	--	---

L

Lanham Act (See also: Trademark Act of 1946)		
Laudatory terms in marks.....		1209.03(k) , 1209.03(s)
as informational matter.....		1202.04
in likelihood-of confusion-analysis.....		1207.01(b)(vi)(C)
phrases or slogans.....		1213.05(b)(iv)
Legal advice, Office cannot render.....		104 , 108.02 , 709.06 , 1801 , 1805 , 1902.02(g)
Legal entity of applicant set forth in application.....		803.03 to 803.03(k) , 1303.01 , 1304.02 , 1306.02
association.....		803.03(c)
banking institution.....		803.03(g)
changes of.....		1604.07(d) , 1613.07(c)
conservatorship.....		803.03(e)
corporation.....		803.03(c)
estate.....		803.03(e)
foreign designations.....		803.03(j) , Appendix D
governmental body.....		803.03(f)
Indian tribe.....		803.03(j)
individual.....		803.03(a)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Legal entity of applicant set forth in application — Limited liability company

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

joint venture.....	803.03(b)
limited liability company.....	803.03(h)
limited liability partnership.....	803.03(k)
operating division.....	1201.02(d)
partnership.....	803.03(b)
sole proprietorship.....	803.03(a)
TEAS Plus filing requirements.....	819.01(c)
trusts.....	803.03(e) , 803.03(e)(i)
university.....	803.03(f)
Letter of protest in pending application (See also: Protest , Letter of	
Letterhead stationery as specimen of service mark use.....	1301.04(h)(i)
License agreements, recording of.....	503.02 , 1906.01(h)
Licensees, use of mark by.....	1201.03(e)
Likelihood of confusion	
actual confusion unnecessary.....	1207.01(d)(ii)
between collective and other marks.....	1303.02(b)
classification not relevant.....	1207.01(d)(v)
collateral attack on registration improper in ex parte.....	1207.01(d)(iv)
color marks.....	1207.01(b)(xi)
composite marks consisting of words and designs.....	1207.01(c)(ii)
compound word marks.....	1207.01(b)(viii)
conflicting marks owned by different parties.....	1207.01(d)(x)
consent between parties.....	1207.01(d)(viii)
descriptive marks.....	1207.01(b)(ix)
design marks.....	1207.01(c) to 1207.01(c)(iii)
doubt resolved in registrant's favor.....	1207.01(d)(i)
expansion of trade doctrine.....	1207.01(a)(v)
family of marks.....	1207.01(d)(xi)
famous mark.....	1207.01(d)(ix)
food/beverage products versus restaurant services.....	1207.01(a)(ii)(A)
foreign equivalents.....	1207.01(b)(vi) to 1207.01(b)(vi)(C)
legal equivalents.....	1207.01(c)(i)
meaning, similarity in.....	1207.01(b)(v)
no per se rule.....	1207.01(a)(iv)
parody marks.....	1207.01(b)(x)
past decisions of examining attorneys.....	1207.01(d)(vi) , 1216 to 1216.02
pharmaceuticals or medicinal products.....	1207.01(d)(xii)
related companies and.....	1201.07 to 1201.07(b)(iv)
relatedness of goods and/or services.....	1207.01(a) to 1207.01(a)(vi)
reliance on identification of goods/services in application/registration.....	1207.01(a)(iii)
similarity of marks.....	1207.01(b) to 1207.01(b)(xi)
sophisticated purchasers.....	1207.01(d)(vii)
sound, similarity in.....	1207.01(b)(iv)
third-party registrations.....	1207.01(d)(iii)
transposition of terms.....	1207.01(b)(vii)
unity of control.....	1201.07 to 1201.07(b)(iv)
weak marks.....	1207.01(b)(ix)
Limited liability company.....	803.03(h)

INDEX

Limited liability company — Multiple-class application

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

signature by.....	611.06(g)
Limited liability corporation.....	803.03(h)
Limited liability partnership.....	803.03(k)
signature by.....	611.06(h)
Lining statement.....	808.01(b)
Living individual, name or likeness of (See also: Consent to register by living individual)	
Lost documents.....	305.02(f) , 305.03 , 1711 , 1712.01 , 1712.02(a)

M

Madrid Protocol (See also: Extension of protection of international registration to the United States)Registered extension of protection)§66(a) application).....	1900
“Mail Room Date” label	303.02(b)
Mail sent to USPTO related to trademarks.....	302.03
Maintenance of registration.....	1602 to 1602.04
Manner of use of mark (See also: Method-of-use)	
Mark drawing code.....	807.18
Material alteration.....	807.03(d) , 807.14 to 807.14(f) , 1604.13 , 1609.02(a)
of color marks.....	1202.05(d)(iii)
of marks containing functional matter.....	1202.02(c)(i)(A)
of marks containing §2(b) matter.....	1204.04(b)
of marks containing TLDs.....	1215.08 to 1215.08(c)
of marks containing unregistrable symbols or designations.....	1205.01(a)(v) , 1205.01(c)(iv)
of repeating-pattern marks.....	1202.19(c)
Material difference between mark on drawing and mark in foreign registration.....	807.12(b) , 1011.01
Meaning of term in mark, inquiry as to.....	809.01(a) , 814
Membership mark (See also: Collective membership mark)	
Mere descriptiveness (See also: Descriptiveness, mere)	
Merger, documents of.....	503.02
Method-of-use.....	905 , 1109.09
Minor as applicant.....	803.01
Minor’s name or likeness appears in mark.....	1206.04(a)
“Misspelled” words.....	1209.03(j) , 1213.08(c)
Mistake in applicant’s name, correction of.....	1201.02(c)
Mistake in owner’s/holder’s name, correction of.....	1104.10(b)(i) , 1108.02(a) , 1109.10 , 1604.07(f) , 1613.07(e)
Mistake in registration, correction of.....	1609.10 to 1609.10(b)
Model or grade designation.....	1202.16 to 1202.16(c)(v)(B)
More than one mark.....	202.01 , 807.01 , 1202.19(g) to 1202.19(g)(ii) , 1214.01
Motion marks.....	807.11 , 904.03(l)
Moving goods/services between companion applications.....	1402.08
Multiple copies of papers should not be filed.....	302.02
Multiple drawings.....	202.01 , 807.01
Multiple filing bases.....	806.02 to 806.02(g)
Multiple-class application (See also: Combined application)	

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Musical performer/group names — Notice, registration

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

Musical performer/group names.....	1202.09, 1202.09(a), 1301.02(b)
“Mutilation” of mark.....	807.12(d)

N

NAFTA (See also: North American Free Trade Agreement)	
Name of applicant, correcting mistake in.....	1201.02(c)
Name of holder/owner, correcting mistake in.....	1104.10(b)(i), 1108.02(a), 1109.10, 1604.07(f), 1613.07(e)
Name, portrait or signature as mark (See also: Consent to register by living individual).....	1206 to 1206.05
Names of artists and authors as marks.....	1202.09 to 1202.09(b), 1206.01, 1301.02(b)
Names of characters as a mark.....	1202.10 to 1202.10(a), 1301.02(b)
National Archives and Records Administration.....	503.08
National symbols.....	1203.03, 1203.03(a)(iii), 1203.03(b) to 1203.03(c)(i), 1203.03(c)(i)
Negative identification language.....	1402.06(a)
New certificate of registration, issuance to assignee.....	502.03
Nice Agreement.....	1401.02(a), 1401.09 to 1401.12
Non-attorney may not represent parties in the USPTO.....	602.02, 608.01, 611.04, 707.01, 708.02
Non-English wording in mark, translation of.....	809 to 809.02
Non-Latin characters in mark, transliteration of.....	809 to 809.02
Non-lawyers.....	602.02, 608.01, 611.04, 707.01, 708.02
Non-profit corporation.....	803.03(c)
Non-receipt of examining attorney’s Office action.....	717.02
Non-receipt of notice of allowance.....	1714.01(c)
Non-registration.....	1205.02
Non-responsive communications.....	719
Nonuse of registered mark.....	1604.11
Non-visual marks.....	807.09, 1202.13, 1202.15
specimens for.....	904.03(f), 904.03(m)
North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA).....	1210, 1210.01(b), 1210.05(a), 1210.07(a), 1210.07(b), 1211, 1212, 1212.02(a)
Note to the File.....	709.04, 709.05
Notice of abandonment.....	718.04, 718.06
Notice of allowance.....	1106 to 1106.04
action after issuance of (but before filing of Statement of use).....	806.03(j)(ii), 1106.02, 1107
cancellation of.....	1106.03
correction of errors in.....	1106.04
information printed on.....	1106.01
issuance of.....	1106.01
non-receipt of.....	1714.01(c)
“Notice of incomplete trademark application”.....	204.01
Notice of irregularity of international application for registration, issued by the International Bureau.....	1902.07 to 1902.07(f)
Notice of publication.....	704.01
Notice, registration (See also: Registration notice)	

INDEX

Number of specimens — Ownership of mark

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Number of specimens.....		904.01
O		
Office action (See also: Action by examining attorney) Provisional refusal of 66(a) applications) Response to Office action)		
non-receipt of.....		717.02
preparation of.....		705 to 705.08
reissuing or remailing of.....		717
response period.....		310, 711 to 711.02
returned as undeliverable.....		403, 717.01
supplemental Office action.....		711.02
Office		personnel
not to express opinion on validity of registered mark.....		1801
not to give legal advice.....		108.02
not to testify.....		1801.01
Official Gazette (See also: Trademark Official Gazette).....		106, 1502, 1502.01
“Olympic” and other designations protected under Amateur Sports Act of 1978.....		1205.01, 1205.01(b) to 1205.01(b)(viii)
One mark, application limited to.....		202.01, 807.01, 1214.01
Operating divisions.....		803.01
Opinion on validity of registered mark, Office personnel not to express.....		1801
Opposition.....		1503 to 1503.05
extension of time to file.....		1503.04
to §66(a) application.....		1503.05
Order of examination.....		702.01
Order of work.....		702 to 702.02
Ordering abandoned application files.....		109.02
Original document, filing of.....		302.01
Ornamentation.....		1202.03 to 1202.03(g)
Other statutes protecting specific names, terms, initials, acronyms, and marks.....		Appendix C
Owner of mark is proper party to apply.....		803.01, 1201
Ownership of mark (See also: Applicant, Assignment and Related Company).....		1201 to 1201.07(b)(iv)
automatic updating.....		504 to 504.04
change in, after application filed.....		501 to 501.07, 1201.02(e)
establishing.....		502 to 502.03
inquiry by examining attorney with respect to.....		1201.04
recording change.....		503 to 503.08
refusal on basis of.....		1201.02(b)
related-company use.....		1201.01, 1201.03 to 1201.03(e)
requesting update of ownership information.....		505 to 505.02
§1 application.....		1201
§44 application.....		1201
§66(a) application.....		501.07, 502.02(b)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Papers not returnable — Petition to Director

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

P

Papers not returnable.....	404
Paralegal may not represent parties in the USPTO.....	602 , 608.01 , 611.02 , 707.01 , 708.02 , 712
Paris Convention.....	1001 , 1002.03 , 1205.01 , Appendix B
article 6 ^{ter}	1205.02
Partial abandonment.....	718.02(a) , 1402.13 , 1403.05 , 1904.03(d)
Partial assignment.....	501.06 , 1110.11 , 1615
Partners, setting forth names and citizenship of.....	803.03(b)
in TEAS Plus application.....	819.01(c)
Partnership	
address of.....	803.05
foreign.....	803.03(b) , 803.04
name of.....	803.02(b) , 803.03(b)
signature by.....	611.06(b) , 804.04
state or country of organization.....	803.03(b) , 803.04
Patent and Trademark Resource Centers.....	112
Patents, design and utility.....	1202.02(a)(v)(A)
Payment of fees relating to international applications and registrations under the Madrid Protocol.....	1903
international fees.....	1903.02
USPTO fees.....	1903.01
Payment refused or charged back by financial institution.....	202.03(a) to 202.03(a)(i) , 405.06
Performing artist, name of, as mark.....	1202.09 to 1202.09(a)(iii) , 1301.02(b)
Period	for response
computation of.....	310
ending on Saturday, Sunday or federal holiday.....	308
reset in examining attorney's letter correcting error.....	711.02
statutory.....	711
time may run from date of previous action.....	711.01
Person, defined for purposes of §2(a)	1203.03(a)(i)
Petition decisions available to public.....	110
Petition to cancel.....	1607
in response to §2(d) refusal	716.02(a)
Petition to Director.....	1702 , 1703 , 1704 , 1705 to 1705.09 , 1706 , 1707 , 1708
after refusal of renewal.....	1606.14 to 1606.14(c)
after refusal of §8 affidavit.....	1604.18 to 1604.18(c)
appeal to federal court from.....	1705.09
delegation of.....	1709
diligence.....	1705.05
evidence and proof of facts.....	1705.03
fee for.....	1705.02
petitionable matter.....	1704
procedure for.....	1705 to 1705.09
request for reconsideration of denial of.....	1705.08
signature of.....	1705.07
standard of review on.....	1706
standing.....	1705.01
stay of deadlines pending disposition of.....	1705.06

INDEX

Petition to Director — Previous examining attorney, examination approach of

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
supervisory authority.....		1707
timeliness.....		1705.04
to amend basis after publication.....		806.03(j) to 806.03(j)(iii)
to make special (See also: Petition to make "special")		
to reinstate abandoned applications.....		1712.01
to reinstate cancelled registrations.....		1712.02(a)
to reverse examining attorney's holding of abandonment for incomplete response.....		1713.01
to review denial of certification of international application.....		1902.03(a)
to review denial of filing date.....		1711
to revive (See also: Petition to revive abandoned application)		
to waive rules.....		1708
types of.....		1703
Petition to make "special".....		702.02, 1710
basis for granting or denying.....		1710.01
fee for.....		1710
handling of.....		1710.02
must state facts justifying special action.....		1710.
submission of.....		1710
Petition to revive abandoned application (See also: Unintentional delay)		
basis for granting.....		1714, 1714.01(e)
diligence with respect to.....		1705.05, 1714.01(d)
fee for.....		1714 to 1714.01(b)
request for reconsideration of denial of.....		1714.01(g)
requirements for filing.....		1714.01 to 1714.01(e)
time for filing of.....		1714.01(d)
unintentional delay, applicability of.....		1714.01(f) to 1714.01(f)(ii)(A)
unintentional delay, statement of.....		1714.01(e)
Petitionable subject matter.....		1704
"Phantom" elements in marks.....		1214 to 1214.04
Pharmaceuticals or medicinal products.....		1207.01(d)(xii), 1301.01(b)(vi)
Photocopies of documents, when acceptable for filing.....		302.01
Piecemeal action to be avoided.....		704.01
Portrait as mark (See also: Consent to register by living individual)		
Postal Service, U.S., interruptions of.....		305.04
Postcard, acknowledgment.....		303.02(c) to 303.02(c)(i)
Power of attorney.....		605.01 to 605.04, 606
associate.....		605.03
change of.....		604.03
filed after registration.....		605.04, 1612
relating to multiple applications or registrations.....		605.02
revocation.....		606
Practice before Office in trademark matters.....		602 to 602.03(e)
Predecessor in title, first use of mark by.....		903.05
Preparation of case for publication or registration.....		817
President of United States, deceased.....		1206 to 1206.01, 1206.04(a)
Press inquiries.....		1804
Press releases.....		904.04(b), 904.04(c), 1301.04(a)
Previous examining attorney, examination approach of.....		713.01

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Principal Register — Priority claim in §44(d) application

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Principal Register		
advantages of registration on.....		801.02(a)
applications for registration on.....		801.02(a)
registration on Supplemental Register may not be amended to.....		1609.09
Printing of information in <i>Official Gazette</i> and on registration certificate.....		817
Prior registrations of applicant		
effect of.....		1216 to 1216.02
identification of, in application.....		812
“incontestability”.....		1216.02
not controlling.....		1216.01
printing of claim of.....		812, 817
proving ownership of.....		812.01
refusal under §2(d) with respect to.....		812.01
Prior trademark acts (See also: Act of 1881 Act of 1905 Act of 1920)		
registrations issued under.....		1601.04, 1601.05, 1602.02, 1602.03
repeal of.....		1601.02
reregistration of marks registered under.....		1601.03
Priority action		
combined with examiner's amendment.....		708.05
defined.....		708.01
discussion of issues and agreements.....		708.02
elements of.....		708.01
evidence.....		708.01, 708.03, 708.04
form of.....		708.03
paralegal cannot authorize.....		608.01, 708.02
when appropriate.....		708.01, 708.02, 708.04
Priority claim in application for international registration.....		1902.05
Priority claim in request for protection of international registration to the United States.....		206.02, 1904.01(e)
Priority claim in §44(d) application		
abandonment of foreign application.....		1003.08
amendment of basis, priority filing date retained.....		806.03(h), 806.04(b)
assignment of §44(d) application.....		1006
basis for registration required.....		1003.03
bona fide intention to use mark in commerce must be asserted.....		806.01(c), 806.02(e), 1003, 1008
combined with other bases.....		806.02(f), 1003.04(b)
country of origin.....		1002.04
dividing.....		1110.10
drawing.....		1011 to 1011.04
effect of failing to file within six months.....		1003.02
effective filing date of.....		206.02, 1003.05
eligible applicants.....		1002.02
establishing entitlement under a treaty.....		1002.02, 1002.03, 1002.04
filing under both §44(d) and §44(e).....		1003.06
“first-filed” requirement.....		1003.01
identification of goods/services.....		1012, 1402.01(b)
in multiple-basis applications.....		1003.04(b)
inquiry as to status of foreign application.....		1003.04(c)
more than one foreign application.....		1003.07

INDEX

Priority claim in §44(d) application — Punctuation,

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
must be filed within six months of foreign filing.....	806.03(b) , 1003.02
not limited to country of origin.....	1002.04
one mark per application.....	1011.02
ownership of foreign application.....	1005
priority for publication of.....	201.01 , 1003.05
requirements for receiving a filing date.....	202
requirements for §44(d) filing basis.....	806.01(c)
retention of priority filing date without perfecting §44(e) basis.....	806.03(h) , 806.04(b)
suspension pending receipt of foreign registration.....	716.02(b) , 1003.04(a)
U.S. applicant.....	1002.05
use not required.....	1009
valid basis for registration required.....	1003.03
Priority for publication or issue based on effective filing date.....	201.01 , 1003.05 , 1208.01
“Priority Mail Express,” filing of correspondence by.....	305.03
Priority, constructive use.....	201.02
Process, system or method.....	1301.02(e)
Product design.....	1202.02(b)(i) , 1202.02(f)(i)
Product packaging.....	1202.02(b)(ii) , 1202.02(f)(ii)
Protest, Letter of.....	1715 to 1715.06
adversarial arguments inappropriate.....	1715.01
appropriate subjects to be raised.....	1715.01 to 1715.01(b)
approval of application for publication after acceptance of.....	1715.02(b)
does not extend opposition period.....	1715.03(b)
filed after publication.....	1715.03(a) to 1715.03(e)
filed after registration.....	1715.03(b)
filed before publication.....	1715.02(a) to 1715.02(b)
petition to review denial of.....	1715.06
post-publication standard of review.....	1715.03(a)
pre-publication standard of review.....	1715.02(a)
recourse after denial of.....	1715.06
requests for copies of.....	1715.05
timely filing of.....	1715.03(b)
Provisional refusal of 66(a) applications.....	1904.02(h) , 1904.03
PTRC (See also: Patent and Trademark Resource Centers)	
Public Records Division of USPTO (See also: Document Services Branch)	
Publication for opposition	
amendments after.....	806.03(j) to 806.03(j)(iii) , 1505 to 1505.02(g)
notice of.....	704.01
of mark in intent-to-use application.....	1105
Publications, marks for	
columns or sections, marks that identify.....	1202.07 to 1202.07(b)
identification of goods.....	1402.03(e)
specimens for.....	904.02(c)(iii)
Punctuation,	
addition or deletion of.....	807.14(c)
agreement of drawing and specimen.....	807.12(a)(i) to 807.12(a)(iii) , 807.14(c)
in determining whether a phrase or slogan is unitary.....	1213.05(b)(ii)(C)
in mere descriptiveness analysis.....	1209.03(u)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Punctuation, — Refusal of registration

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

list of standard characters.....[807.03\(b\)](#)

Q

(No

Entry)

R

Reasonable time between signing and filing papers.....	804.03, 1104.10(b)(ii), 1108.02(b), 1109.11(c)
Receipt date.....	303.01, 303.02(b)
Receipt, filing.....	401.01
Receipt of documents by Office.....	303 to 303.02(c)
Receipt, postcard.....	303.02(c)
Reciprocal registration rights.....	1002.03, Appendix B
Recognition as a Representative.....	604 to 604.02
Reconsideration after final action.....	715.03 to 715.04(b), 1501.02(a)
Reconsideration of Board decision, request for, by examining attorney.....	1501.07
Reconsideration of decision on petition.....	1705.08
Recordation date.....	503.05
Recorded documents (See also: Assignment, recordation of)	
automatic update of trademark database after recordation.....	504 to 504.04
correction of errors in.....	503.06 to 503.06(f)
effect of.....	503.01 to 503.01(e)
electronic submission of requests to record documents.....	503.04
indexing against, not permitted.....	503.07
notifying Trademark Operation of.....	505
original documents should not be submitted	503.03(b)
request to update ownership after recordation.....	505.01, 505.02
requests for copies of.....	503.08
requirements.....	503.03 to 503.03(e)
searching.....	104, 503.08
Red Crescent.....	1205.01, 1205.01(a) to 1205.01(a)(vi)
Red Cross.....	1205.01, 1205.01(c) to 1205.01(c)(iv)
Red Crystal.....	1205.01, 1205.01(a) to 1205.01(a)(vi)
Refund of fees.....	405.04, 810.02
for informal application.....	204.01
Refusal	of registration
absence of lawful use.....	907
amendment to Supplemental Register after.....	714.05(a)(i), 816.04, 1209.02(a)(i), 1202.19(e)(iii)
as to fewer than all classes in combined application.....	718.02(a), 1403.05

INDEX

Refusal of registration — Registered extension of protection of international registration to th...

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
characters in creative works.....		1202.10 to 1202.10(a)
coat of arms.....		1204 to 1204.05
compliance with other statutes.....		907
based on inadequate response to request for additional information.....		814
deceptive matter.....		1203.02 to 1203.02(g), 1210.05(a) to 1210.05(e), 1210.06(b)
descriptiveness.....		1209.01(b), 1209.02 to 1209.02(b)
disparagement.....		1203.03(b) to 1203.03(b)(ii)
duplicate registrations.....		703
failure to function as a mark.....		1202
false suggestion of a connection.....		1203.03(c) to 1203.03(c)(iii)
flag, coat of arms or insignia.....		1204 to 1204.05
functionality.....		1202.02(a) to 1202.02(a)(viii)
generic matter.....		1209.01(c) to 1209.01(c)(iii)
geographic descriptiveness.....		1210 to 1210.01(a), 1210.02 to 1210.04(d), 1210.06 to 1210.06(a), 1210.07 to 1210.10
geographic misdescriptiveness.....		1210.01(b), 1210.05(a) to 1210.05(e), 1210.06(b)
goods in trade.....		1202.06 to 1202.06(c)
grade designations.....		1202.16 to 1202.16(c)(v)(B)
immoral or scandalous matter.....		1203.01
in §66(a) application.....		711.02, 714.05(b), 1904.03(a) to 1904.03(e)
incapable matter.....		705.01, 815.04, 1202.03, 1202.04, 1202.17(e)(i), 1202.19(e)(ii)
informational matter.....		1202.04
language in examining attorney's letter.....		705.01
likelihood of confusion (See also: Likelihood of confusion).....		1207 to 1207.03
matter protected by statute or convention.....		1205 to 1205.02
model designations.....		1202.16 to 1202.16(c)(v)(A)
name of artist or author.....		1202.09 to 1202.09(b)
name, portrait or signature of living individual or deceased United States president without consent (See also: Consent to register by living individual).....		1206 to 1206.05
nondistinctive configuration.....		1202.02(b) to 1202.02(b)(ii)
of request for extension of protection of international registration.....		711.02, 714.05(b), 1904.03(a) to 1904.03(e)
ornamentation.....		1202.03 to 1202.03(g)
ownership (See also: Ownership of mark).....		
repeating-pattern marks.....		1202.19 to 1202.19(k)
res judicata.....		1217
specimen unacceptable.....		904.07 to 904.07(b)(i)
surname, primarily merely a.....		1211 to 1211.02(b)(vii)
title of a single creative work.....		1202.08 to 1202.08(f)
trade name.....		1202.01
universal symbols.....		1202.17 to 1202.17(e)(vi)
use as a service mark.....		1301.02 to 1301.02(f), 1301.04(g)(i) to 1301.04(g)(ii), 1301.04(j)
use as a trademark.....		1202 to 1202.19
varietal names.....		1202.12
Refusal, final (See also: Final refusal).....		
Register (See also: Principal Register) Supplemental Register).....		
Register indicated on certificate of registration.....		1601.07
Registered extension of protection of international registration to the United States (See also: Extension of protection of international registration to the United States) Section 66(a)).....		
affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse.....		1613 to 1613.21(d), 1904.07(b), 1904.10

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Registered extension of protection of international registration to th... — Registration notice

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

affidavit of incontestability.....	1605. to 1605.06 , 1904.11
amendment of identification of goods/services.....	1402.01(c) , 1609.01(a) , 1609.03 , 1904.02(c) to (c)(iv) , 1906.01(i)
amendment of mark not permitted.....	807.13(b) , 1609.02 , 1904.02(j) , 1906.01(i)
assignability of.....	501.01(b)
assignee, issuance of registration certificate in name of.....	502.02(b) , 502.03
assignment of.....	501.01(b) , 501.07 , 502.01 , 502.02(b) , 502.03 , 503.03(a) , 503.05 , 1904.06
basis.....	806.01(e) , 806.03(k) , 1505.02(f) , 1904.01(a)
can be amended under §7 only in limited circumstances.....	1609.01(a)
cancellation of, by IB.....	1904.08
certificate of registration.....	1904.05
certificate of registration, issuance in name of new owner.....	502.02(b) , 502.03
claim of acquired distinctiveness.....	1212.08
classification of goods and services.....	1304.02(d) , 1306.02(d) , 1401.03(d) , 1402.01(c) , 1403.02 , 1403.02(b) to 1403.02(c) , 1505.02(b) , 1609.04 , 1904.02(b) , 1904.02(c) to 1904.02(c)(v)
concurrent use registration not permitted.....	1207.04(b)
constructive use.....	1904.01(g)
correction of errors.....	1904.02(e)(i) , 1904.03(f) , 1904.13 , 1904.13(b) , 1904.14 , 1906.01(f)
dividing.....	1110.11 , 1403.03 , 1615.02
establishing right to take action.....	502.01
filing receipt.....	401.01
identification of goods and services.....	1304.02(c) , 1306.02(c) , 1402.01(c) , 1609.01(a) , 1609.03 , 1904.02(c) to 1904.02(c)(v) , 1906.01(i)
incontestability, affidavit of.....	1605.01 , 1904.11
invalidation	1904.07 to 1904.07(d)
issuance of registration certificate in name of new owner.....	502.02(b) , 502.03
jurisdiction.....	1504.04 , 1904.02(l)
limitation in list of goods/services.....	1904.02(e)(ii) , 1904.03(a) , 1904.15 , 1906.01(e)
mark cannot be amended.....	807.13(b) , 1609.01(a) , 1609.02 , 1904.02(j) , 1904.02(k) , 1904.14 , 1906.01(i)
ownership change of.....	501.01(b) , 501.07 , 502.01 , 502.02(b) , 502.03 , 503.03(a) , 503.05 , 504.04 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)
ownership, in general.....	501 to 501.07 , 502 to 502.03 , 1201 to 1201.07 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)
priority claim.....	206.02 , 806.01(e) , 1904.01(e) , 1904.09(b)
recording change of ownership.....	503.02 to 503.03(a) , 503.04 to 503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)
refusal	711.02 , 714.05 , 714.05(b) , 1904.03 to 1904.03(g) , 1904.04
remains part of international registration.....	1904.05
remand.....	1504.02 , 1504.04 , 1504.05
renewal	1602.01 , 1606.01(b) , 1614 , 1905
replacement.....	1616 , 1904.12
signature.....	804.04 , 804.05 , 1303.01(a)(v) , 1303.01(b)(ii) , 1304.02(a)(v) , 1304.02(b)(ii) , 1306.02(a)(v) , 1306.02(b)(ii) , 1904.01(c) , 1904.02(d)
Supplemental Register, not registrable on.....	801.02(b) , 815 , 816.01 , 816.04 , 1904.02(f)
transformation	1904.09 to 1904.09(b)
use not required.....	901 , 1904.01(d)
verification.....	804.04 , 804.05 , 1303.01(a)(v) , 1303.01(b)(ii) , 1304.02(a)(v) , 1304.02(b)(ii) , 1306.02(a)(v) , 1306.02(b)(ii) , 1904.01(c) , 1904.02(d)
Registration as correct type of mark.....	1306.06(c)
Registration certificate (See also: Certificate of registration)	
Registration notice	
improper use of.....	906.02

INDEX

Registration notice — Renewal, application for

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
provided for in 15 U.S.C. §1111	906
symbolizing foreign registration.....	906.01
Registration, amendment of mark in.....	1609.02 to 1609.02(g)
Registration, division of.....	1615 to 1615.02
Registration, reinstatement of registration cancelled or expired due to Office error.....	1712.02(a)
Reinstatement of inadvertently abandoned application due to Office error.....	1712.01
Reinstatement of registrations cancelled or expired due to Office error.....	1712.02(a)
Reissuing of Office action.....	717 to 717.02
Related applications (See also: Companion applications) Conflicting applications).....	702.03 to 702.03(b)
Related	company
common stockholders, directors, officers.....	1201.03(c)
control with respect to use by.....	1201.03
definition of.....	1201.03
distributor.....	1201.06(a)
first use of mark by.....	903.05
importer.....	1201.06(a)
licensees and franchisees.....	1201.03(e)
reference to, in §1(b) applicant.....	1201.03(a)
sister corporations.....	1201.03(d)
use by.....	903.05, 1201.03 to 1201.03(e)
use solely by.....	1201.03(a)
wholly owned.....	1201.03(b)
with respect to likelihood of confusion.....	1201.07 to 1201.07(b)(iv)
Remand to examining attorney from Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.....	1501, 1504.05
Renewal (See also: Renewal, application for)	
of international registrations.....	1602.01, 1606.01(b), 1614, 1905
of registered extension of protection.....	1602.01, 1606.01(b), 1614, 1905
of registrations issued under Act of 1920.....	1602.03, 1606 to 1606.15
of registrations issued under Act of 1946.....	1602.01, 1606 to 1606.15
of registrations issued under Acts of 1881 and 1905.....	1602.02, 1606 to 1606.15
Renewal, application for.....	1606 to 1606.15
appeal to federal court.....	1606.14(d)
by owner of international registration.....	1602.01, 1606.01(b), 1614, 1905
by registrant not domiciled in United States.....	1606.10
combined with §8 affidavit.....	1606.15
deficiencies, correction of.....	1606.05(b), 1606.13 to 1606.13(c)
domestic representative, designation of.....	1606.10
execution of.....	1606.07
fee for filing.....	1606.05 to 1606.05(c)
form for filing.....	1606.04
goods/services/classes set forth in.....	1606.08 to 1606.08(d)
grace period.....	1606.03, 1606.05(b)
Office action upon examination of.....	1606.11
ownership and who may file.....	1606.06
petition to Director.....	1606.14 to 1606.14(c)
premature filing of.....	1606.03(a)
recourse after refusal.....	1606.14 to 1606.14(c)
requirements for.....	1606.04

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Renewal, application for — Request to divide

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
response to Office action.....	1606.12
signature of.....	1606.07
specimen not required.....	1606.09
term of.....	1602 to 1602.03
time for filing.....	1606.03 to 1606.03(a)
untimely filing cannot be cured.....	1606.13(c) , 1712.02(a)
use, declaration of use not required.....	1606.09
who may file.....	1606.06
Repeal of prior trademark acts.....	1601.02
Repeating-pattern marks.....	1202.19 to 1202.19(k)
drawing requirements for.....	1202.19(a) to 1202.19(a)(iv)
failure to function.....	1202.19(e) to 1202.19(f)(ii)
functional.....	1202.19(i)
mark descriptions for.....	1202.19(b)
material alteration of.....	1202.19(c) to 1202.19(c)(v)
random patterns.....	1202.19(j)
refusals.....	1202.19(e) to 1202.19(h)
specimens for.....	1202.19(d)
swatch-type drawings for.....	1202.19(a)(iii)
Replacement.....	1616 , 1904.12
Reply brief in ex parte appeal.....	1501.02(c)
Representation by attorney or other authorized individual.....	602 to 602.03(e)
Reproduction of mark (See also: Drawings)	
Republication.....	1505.03 to 1505.03(b)
Request for extension of protection of international registration to the United States (See also: Extension of protection of international registration to the United States) Registered extension of protection of international registration to the United States)Section 66(a)	
Request for extension of time to file statement of use.....	1108 to 1108.05
bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.....	1101 , 1108.02(e)
fee for filing.....	1108.02(c)
filing in conjunction with or after statement of use.....	1108.03 to 1108.03(a)
form for filing.....	1108
good cause for.....	1108.02(f)
hand delivery of.....	1108
identification of goods/services in.....	1108.02(d)
“insurance” extension request.....	1108.03 to 1108.03(a)
minimum filing requirements.....	1108.04
ownership.....	1108.02(a)
recourse after denial.....	1108.04 , 1108.05
requirements for.....	1108.02 to 1108.02(h)
time for filing.....	1108.01
verification.....	1108.02(b)
Request for extension of time to oppose.....	1503.04
Request for information from applicant.....	814
Request to divide.....	1110 to 1110.12
division of application.....	1110 to 1110.11(a)
division of application subject to Board proceeding.....	1110.09
division of application under §44.....	1110.10

INDEX

Request to divide — Section 8 affidavit

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
division of application under §66(a).....	1110.11 to 1110.11(a)
division of multiple class application.....	1110.08, 1403.03
division of registration.....	1615 to 1615.02
fee for.....	1110.02
form and processing of.....	1110.04
outstanding deadlines apply to applications created by.....	1110.05
signature of.....	1110.06
time for filing.....	1110.03
when response to Office action is due.....	1110.05, 1110.08
when statement of use is due.....	1110.07
Requirements for receiving filing date for application.....	202 to 202.03(a)
Reregistration of marks registered under prior acts.....	1601.03
Res judicata.....	1217
Resignation of examining attorney.....	702.01
Response to IB notice of irregularity of international application for registration.....	1902.07 to 1902.07(f)
Response to Office action	
deadline for.....	310, 711 to 711.02
incomplete.....	611.05 to 611.05(c), 718.03 to 718.03(b), 1713.01 to 1713.02, 1714.01(f)(ii) to 1714.01(f)(ii)(A)
must be signed.....	712 to 712.03
persons who can sign.....	611.03(b), 611.06 to 611.06(h), 712.01
signed by unauthorized party.....	608.01, 611.05 to 611.05(c), 712.03
unsigned.....	712.02
Restoration of filing date.....	1711
Restriction of holder's right to dispose of international registration.....	1906.01(b)
Return of application materials not entitled to a filing date.....	204.01
Returned correspondence.....	403, 717.01
Revival (See also: Petition to revive abandoned application)	
Revived or reinstated application, examination of.....	718.07, 1208.01(d)
Revocation of power of attorney.....	606

S

Scandalous matter (See also: Immoral or scandalous matter)	
Scent as mark.....	807.09, 904.03(m), 1202.13
Scope of identification of goods and services for purposes of amendment.....	1402.07 to 1402.07(e)
“Search clause”.....	704.02
Search facility for public trademark.....	104
Search of trademark applications and registrations.....	104
Search room, trademark assignment.....	503.08
Search, by examining attorney.....	206.04, 704.02, 718.07, 1904.09(b)
Secondary meaning (See also: Acquired distinctiveness (§2(f)) claim)	
Secondary source.....	1202.03(c)
Section 2(f) claim (See also: Acquired distinctiveness (§2(f)) claim)	
Section 8 affidavit (See also: Affidavit of continued use or excusable nonuse (§8))	

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Section 15 affidavit — Section 66(a) application

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

Section 15 affidavit (See also: Affidavit of incontestability)	
Section 44 (See also: Foreign registration, application based on ownership of and Priority claim in §44(d) application)	
Priority under §44(d), application claiming	
applications for Supplemental Register under.....	1014
assignment of applications under.....	1006
claim of acquired distinctiveness in application under.....	1010
eligible applicants, under.....	1002 to 1002.05
international trademark agreements implemented by.....	1001
sections of publications, marks that identify.....	1202.07 to 1202.07(b)
Section 66(a) application (See also: Extension of protection of international registration to the United States)	
Registered extension of protection of international registration to the United States)	
amendment of identification of goods/services.....	1402.01(c), 1609.01(a), 1904.02(c) to 1904.02(c)(v), 1906.01(i)
amendment of mark not permitted.....	807.13(b), 1609.02, 1904.02(j), 1906.01(i)
amendment to Supplemental Register not permitted.....	801.02(b), 815, 816.01, 816.04, 1904.02(f)
assignability of.....	501.01(b)
assignee, issuance of registration certificate in name of.....	502.02(b)
assignment of.....	501.01(b), 501.07, 502.01, 502.02(b), 503.03(a), 503.05, 1904.06, 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)
basis.....	806.01(e), 806.03(k), 1505.02(f), 1904.01(a)
cancellation of, by IB.....	1904.08
cannot be based on USPTO application.....	1904.01(h)
certificate of registration.....	1904.05
certificate of registration, issuance in name of new owner.....	502.02(b), 502.03
certification and collective marks.....	1904.02(d)
claim of acquired distinctiveness.....	1212.08
classification of goods and services.....	1401.03(d), 1403.02, 1403.02(b) to 1403.02(c), 1505.02(b), 1609.04, 1904.02(b)
concurrent use registration not permitted.....	1207.04(b)
constructive use.....	1904.01(g)
correction of errors.....	1904.03(f), 1904.13, 1904.13(b), 1904.14, 1906.01(f)
correspondence address.....	609.01(a), 1904.02(i)
declaration of intent to use required.....	804.05, 1904.01(c), 1904.02(d)
description of mark.....	808.03(b), 1904.02(k)
dividing.....	1110.11 to 1110.11(a), 1615.02
drawing... 807.03(b) , 807.03(g) to 807.03(h) , 807.07(b) , 807.07(d)(iii) , 807.07(f)(i) , 807.12(c) , 807.13(b) , 1904.02(j) , 1904.02(k)	
establishing right to take action.....	502.01
examination of.....	1904.02 to 1904.09(b)
express abandonment of.....	718.01
filing basis.....	806.01(e), 806.03(k), 1303.01(a)(v), 1304.02(a)(v), 1306.02(a)(v), 1505.02(f), 1904.01(a)
filing date.....	201, 202 to 202.01, 203, 1904.01(b)
filing fee.....	202.03, 810 to 810.01, 1110.11(a), 1401.04, 1401.04(b), 1904.01(f)
filing receipt.....	401.01
identification of goods and services.....	1401.03(d), 1402.01(c), 1609.01(a), 1609.03, 1904.02(b), 1904.02(c) to 1904.02(c)(v) , 1906.01(i)
invalidation of.....	1904.07 to 1904.07(d)
issuance of registration certificate in name of new owner.....	502.02(b), 502.03
jurisdiction.....	1504.04 to 1504.04(a), 1904.02(l)
limitation in list of goods/services.....	1904.02(e)(ii), 1904.03(g), 1904.15, 1906.01(e)
mark cannot be amended.....	807.03(g) to 807.03(h), 807.13(b), 1904.02(j), 1906.01(i)
must be filed by holder of international registration.....	1201

INDEX

Section 66(a) application — Service, what is a

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
notice of refusal.....	711.02 , 714.05(b) , 1904.03 to 1904.03(g) , 1904.04	
Office actions, issuing.....	1904.02(h)	
opposition.....	1503.01 , 1503.04 to 1503.05 , 1504.02 , 1504.04 , 1504.05 , 1904.04	
ownership, change of.....	501.01(b) , 501.07 , 502.01 , 502.02(b) , 503.03(a) , 503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii) , 1906.01(c)	
ownership, in general.....	501 to 501.07 , 502 to 502.03 , 1201 to 1201.07(b)(iv) , 1904.06	
priority claim.....	206.02 , 1904.01(e)	
recording change of ownership.....	503.05 , 1904.06 , 1906.01(a) to 1906.01(a)(iii)	
refusal of.....	711.02 , 714.05(b) , 1904.03 to 1904.04	
remains part of international registration.....	1904.05	
remand.....	1504.02 , 1504.04 , 1504.05	
renewal of.....	1602.01 , 1606.01(b) , 1614 , 1905	
replacement.....	1616 , 1904.12	
signature.....	804.04 , 804.05 , 1303.01(a)(v) , 1303.01(b)(ii) , 1304.02(a)(v) , 1304.02(b)(ii) , 1306.02(a)(v) , 1306.02(b)(ii) , 1904.01(c)	
Supplemental Register, amendment to not a new issue.....	714.05(a)(i)	
Supplemental Register, not registrable on.....	801.02(b) , 815 , 816.01 , 816.04 , 1904.02(f)	
transformation of.....	1904.09 to 1904.09(b)	
use not required.....	901 , 1904.01(d)	
verification.....	804 , 804.04 , 804.05 , 1303.01(a)(v) , 1303.01(b) , 1303.01(b)(ii) , 1304.02(a)(v) , 1304.02(b)(ii) , 1306.02(a)(v) , 1306.02(b)(ii) , 1904.01(c) , 1904.02(d)	
Section 71 affidavit.....	1613 to 1613.21(d) , 1904.10	
Security interest agreements, recording of.....	503.02	
Serial number.....	401.02	
Series code.....	401.02	
Service		mark
character or personal name.....	1202.09(a) to 1202.10 , 1301.02(b)	
computer software.....	1301.02(f)	
definition of.....	1301 , 1301.02	
functional matter.....	1202.02(a)(vii)	
identification and classification of services.....	1301.05 , 1401 to 1401.13 , 1402.11 to 1402.11(k)	
informational matter.....	1301.02(a)	
matter that does not function as.....	1301.02(a)	
menu item for restaurant.....	1301.02(a)	
ornamental matter.....	1301.02(a)	
process, system or method.....	1301.02(e)	
product used in performing service.....	1301.02(a)	
radio and television program, title of.....	1301.02(d)	
specimens of use.....	1301.04 to 1301.04(j)	
system, process or method.....	1301.02(e)	
three-dimensional.....	1202.02(a)(vii) , 1202.02(b)(ii) , 1301.02(c)	
use in commerce.....	1301.03 to 1301.03(b)	
what is a.....	1301.02 to 1301.02(f)	
Service, what is a.....	1301.01 to 1301.01(b)(vi)	
contests and promotional activities.....	1301.01(b)(i)	
criteria for determining what constitutes.....	1301.01(a) to 1301.01(a)(iii)	
informational services ancillary to sale of goods.....	1301.01(b)(v)	
investment, soliciting.....	1301.01(b)(iv)	

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Service, what is a — “Single source” (related companies)

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
promotional services.....	1215.02(b) , 1301.01(a)(ii) , 1301.01(b)(i)	
publishing.....	1301.01(b)(iii)	
warranty or guarantee of repair.....	1301.01(b)(ii)	
Services		
classification of.....	1301.05 , 1401 to 1401.13	
identification of.....	1402.11 to 1402.11(k)	
Shape	as	mark
background designs and shapes as mark.....	1202.11	
product and container configurations.....	1202.02(a) to 1202.02(f)(ii)	
Signature	(See also: Verification of application)	
as certification.....	611.01(a)	
by association.....	611.06(f) , 804.04	
by corporation.....	611.06(d) , 804.04	
by foreign corporate-type entity.....	611.06(e) , 804.04	
by joint applicants.....	611.02 to 611.02(a) , 611.06(a) , 804.04	
by joint venture.....	611.06(c) , 804.04	
by limited liability company.....	611.06(g) , 803.03(h) , 804.04	
by limited liability partnership.....	611.036(h)	
by partnership.....	611.06(b) , 804.04	
by someone other than applicant or applicant's attorney.....	611.05 to 611.05(c)	
by unincorporated association.....	611.06(f)	
date of.....	804.03 , 1104.10(b)(ii) , 1108.02(b) , 1109.11(c)	
electronic.....	611.01(c)	
examples of authorized and unauthorized signatories.....	611.04	
must be personally signed.....	611.01(b) to 611.01(c) , 611.02 to 611.02(a) , 611.03 to 611.03(i) , 712 to 712.03 , 804.01(b) , 804.04	
of amendments and responses.....	611.02 to 611.02(a) , 611.03(b) , 611.05 to 611.05(c) , 712.01	
of applicant	(See also: Verification of application)	
of application for registration, persons who can sign.....	804.04	
of correction, amendment, or surrender of registration.....	611.03(f)	
of correspondence address change request in an application or registration.....	609.02(b) , 611.02 , 611.03(i)	
of documents filed in USPTO.....	611 to 611.05(c)	
of domestic representative designation and representation.....	610 , 611.03(h)	
of electronically filed documents.....	611.01(c)	
of letter of express abandonment.....	608.01 , 611.02 , 611.05 , 718.01	
of petition to Director.....	611.02 to 611.02(a) , 611.03(e) , 1705.07	
of petition to revive.....	611.03(d) , 1705.07 , 1714.01(e)	
of powers of attorney and revocations of powers of attorney.....	606 , 611.03(c)	
of renewal applications.....	611.03(g) , 1606.07	
of request to divide.....	611.02 to 611.02(a) , 611.03(b) , 1110.06	
of response to Office action.....	608.01 , 611.02 to 611.02(a) , 611.03(b) , 712 to 712.03	
of TEAS document.....	611.01(c) , 611.02(a)	
original.....	302.01	
persons who can sign verification on behalf of applicant.....	804.04	
persons who may sign response.....	712.01	
requirements for.....	611.01(b)	
Single creative work, title of.....	1202.08 to 1202.08(f) , 1301.02(d)	
“Single source” (related companies).....	1201.07 to 1201.07(b)(iv)	

INDEX

Size of mark on drawing — Specimens

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Size of mark on drawing.....		807.05(c) , 807.06(a)
Slogans		
disclaimers with respect to.....		1213.05(b)(i)
registrability of.....		1202.03(f)(i) , 1202.04 , 1301.02(a)
Sole proprietorship as applicant.....		803.03(a)
Sound marks.....		807.09 , 904.03(f) , 1202.15
“Special” applications (See also: Petition to make “special”).....		702.02
Special form drawing.....		807.04 to 807.04(b)
also referred to as “ink drawing”.....		807.04 to 807.04(b)
characteristics of.....		807.04(a)
correction of.....		807.15 to 807.16
mark drawing code.....		807.18
size limitations for.....		807.05(c) , 807.06(a)
when required.....		807.04(b)
Specimens		
affidavit of use of.....		904.05
agreement with mark on drawing.....		807.12 to 807.12(e) , 1215.02(c) , 1306.04(a)
beta versions.....		904.03(e) , 904.03(i)(D) , 1301.03(a)
bulky.....		904.02(b)
catalogs.....		904.03(h)
certification mark.....		1306.02(a)(i)(B) , 1306.05(b)(iii) , 1306.04(c) , 1306.04(d) to 1306.04(d)(ii) , 1306.05(b)(iii)
collective membership mark.....		1304.02(a)(i)(C) , 1304.03(b) to 1304.03(b)(ii)
collective trademark and collective service mark, confusion with trademark or service mark.....		1303.02(b)
commercial packaging.....		904.03(c)
deferral of examination in multiple-basis application.....		806.02(c)
displays associated with goods.....		904.03(g)
electronic and digital media attachments.....		904.03(d)
electronic displays.....		904.03(i) to 904.03(i)(D)
electronically filed.....		904.02(a) , 1104.10(b)(v) , 1109.09(b) , 1604.12(b)
facsimiles.....		904.02(b)
for amendment to allege use.....		1104.10(b)(v)
for color marks.....		904.02(c)(ii) , 1202.05(f)
for combined application (See also: Specimen, multiple-class application).....		
for computer programs, movies, videos, or audio recordings.....		904.03(e)
for downloadable computersoftware.....		904.03(e)
for flavor marks.....		904.03(m)
for motion marks.....		904.03(l)
for publications.....		904.02(c)(iii)
for scent marks.....		904.03(m)
for statement of use.....		1109.09(b)
impracticable to place mark on goods, packaging, or displays.....		904.03(k)
labels.....		904.03(a)
manuals.....		904.03(j)
multiple-class application.....		904.01 , 904.01(b) , 1402.03(c) , 1403.01 , 1403.02(b)
musical score.....		904.03(f) , 1202.15
number of.....		904.01 to 904.01(b)
other materials required for examination.....		904.02(c)(i)
package inserts.....		904.04(c)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Specimens — Statement of use

Sec. No.	Sec. No.
	904.02(b)
paper filed.....	1201.04
parties named on-Office no longer inquires as to relationship with applicant.....	904.02 to 904.02(b)
physical form of.....	1301.04 to 1301.04(j)
service mark.....	904.03(f)
sound marks.....	904.03(b)
stampings.....	904.07 to 904.07(b)(i), 1301.04(g) to 1301.04(g)(ii), 1304.03(b) to 1304.03(b)(ii), 1306.04(d) to 1306.04(d)(ii)
statutory refusals.....	
substitute (See also: Substitute specimens)	
tags.....	904.03
trademark.....	904.03 to 904.04(c)
translation of matter on.....	904.06
use, affidavit of.....	904.05
Standard character drawings.....	807.03 to 807.03(i)
and foreign registration.....	807.03(f), Appendix E
and specimen of use.....	807.03(e)
changing to or from special form may be material alteration.....	807.03(d), 807.14 to 807.14(f)
combined with other elements.....	807.03(c)
format unclear.....	807.03(h)
in §44 application.....	807.03(f)
in §66(a) application.....	807.03(b), 807.03(g) to 807.03(h)
list of.....	807.03(b)
mark drawing code.....	807.18
requirements for.....	807.03(a)
Standard character list.....	807.03(b)
Stare decisis.....	1217
Statement of use	
approval of.....	1109.18
black-out period.....	1103, 1104.03(b)
classification, amendment of.....	1109.14
clear-error standard in examining.....	706.01, 1109.08
correcting defects.....	1109.16 to 1109.16(e)
date of execution.....	1109.11(c)
dates of use.....	1109.09(a)
dates of use, amendment of.....	903.04, 1109.09(a)
discrepancies between dates of use and execution dates.....	903.06(a)
drawing.....	1109.12
examination of.....	1109.07 to 1109.08, 1109.16(b)
execution of.....	1109.11 to 1109.11(d)
extension of time to file (See also: Request for extension of time to file statement of use)	
failure to file within time permitted.....	718.04, 1109.04
fee for filing.....	1109.15 to 1109.15(a)
form of.....	1109.05
hand delivery of.....	1109.05
identification of goods/services in.....	1109.13
may not be withdrawn.....	1109.17
minimum requirements for.....	1109.01
minimum requirements, review for compliance with.....	1109.02

INDEX

Statement of use — Surname, primarily merely a

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
necessary elements of.....		1109.06
ownership.....		1109.10
petition to review refusal.....		1109.02(a)
recourse after refusal.....		1109.16(e)
requirements for.....		1109.06
response to Office action.....		1109.16(d)
signature of.....	804.04 , 1109.11 to 1109.11(d)	
specimens for.....		1109.09(b)
time for filing.....		1109.04
use in commerce.....		1109.09
use on all goods/services required before filing.....		1109.03
verification of.....	804.04 , 1109.11 to 1109.11(d)	
withdrawal prohibited.....		1109.17
Status inquiries.....	108 to 108.03 , 1705.05	
Internet information.....		108.01
personal telephone assistance.....		108.02
duty to monitor status.....		108.03 , 1705.05
Statutory authority for examination.....		701
Statutory averments in application for registration.....	804.02 , 804.05 , 1303.01(b) to 1303.01(b)(ii) , 1304.02(b) to 1304.02(b)(ii) , 1306.02(b) to 1306.02(b)(ii)	
Stippling on drawing.....		808.01(b)
Subpoena received by Office employee.....		1801.01
Subsequent designations.....	1902.08 to 1902.08(e)	
Substitute drawing.....		807.15 , 807.18
Substitute specimens		
affidavit supporting.....		904.05
for amendment to allege use.....		1104.10(b)(v)
for statement of use.....		1109.09(b)
in response to refusal for failure to show the applied-for mark functioning as a mark.....		714.05(f)
in response to refusal for failure to show use of the mark in commerce.....		714.05(e)
may require amendment of dates of use.....		904.05
requirements for substitute specimens and statutory refusals.....	904.07 to 904.07(b)(i)	
Supervisory authority of Director.....		1707
Supplemental Register		
allegation of use filed with amendment to.....	714.05(a)(i) , 1102.03	
amendment of application to.....	816 to 816.05	
applications for.....	815 to 815.04	
intent-to-use applications.....	206.01 , 714.05(a)(i) , 1102.03	
marks eligible for Principal Register not registrable on.....		815.01
not an admission that mark has not acquired distinctiveness.....		815.03
refusal of incapable matter.....		815.04
request for extension of protection of international registration, not eligible.....	801.02(b) , 815 , 816.01 , 816.04 , 1904.02(f)	
required elements.....		815.02
Surname, primarily merely a.....	1211 to 1211.02(b)(vii)	
combined with additional matter.....	1211.01(b) to 1211.01(b)(viii)	
combined with domain name.....	1211.01(b)(vii) , 1215.03	
combined with initials.....	1211.01(b)(iii)	

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Surname, primarily merely a — Swiss Confederation Coat of Arms & Swiss Flag

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

combined with legal or familial entity designation.....	1211.01(b)(viii)
combined with title.....	1211.01(b)(iv)
combined with wording.....	1211.01(b)(vi)
doctrine of foreign equivalents.....	1211.01(a)(vii)
double surname.....	1211.01(b)(i)
evidence supporting refusal.....	1211.02 to 1211.02(b)(vii)
fame of mark evidence.....	1211.02(b)(vii)
geographical significance.....	1211.01(a)(iii)
historical place or person.....	1211.01(a)(iv)
LexisNexis® research database evidence.....	1211.02(b)(ii)
“look and feel” of a surname.....	1211.01(a)(vi)
negative dictionary evidence.....	1211.01(a)(vii) , 1211.02(b)(vi)
non-surname significance.....	1211.01(a) to 1211.01(a)(vi)
ordinary language meaning.....	1211.01(a)(i)
person associated with application, surname of.....	1211.02(b)(iv)
phonetic equivalent.....	1211.01(a)(ii)
plural.....	1211.01(b)(v)
possessive.....	1211.01(b)(v)
rare.....	1211.01(a)(v)
specimens confirming surname significance of term.....	1211.02(b)(v)
stylization.....	1211.01(b)(ii)
telephone directory listings.....	1211.02(b)(i) to 1211.02(b)(iii)
U.S. census database evidence.....	1211.02(b)(iii)
Surrender of registration for cancellation.....	1608 , 1904.07(c)
Suspended cases checked by examining attorney.....	716.04
Suspension of action by Office	
after final action.....	716.06
circumstances where appropriate.....	716.02 to 716.02(i)
letter of inquiry regarding.....	716.05
notice of.....	716.01
pending cancellation or expiration of cited registration.....	716.02(e)
pending correction of or limitation to international registration.....	716.02(g)
pending decision on petition not permitted.....	716.02 , 1705.06
pending disposition of earlier-filed application.....	716.02(c)
pending disposition of request for correction filed with the IB.....	716.02(g)
pending expiration of “insurance” extension request.....	716.02(f)
pending inter partes or court proceeding.....	716.02(d)
pending receipt of foreign registration.....	716.02(b) , 1003.04(a)
pending receipt of proof of renewal of foreign registration.....	716.02(b) , 1004.01(a)
request to remove.....	716.03
Suspension of practitioner from practice before USPTO.....	608.02
Suspension, removal of application from.....	716.03 , 716.06
Swiss Confederation Coat of Arms & Swiss Flag.....	1205.01(d) to 1205.01(d)(iv)

INDEX

TAC (Trademark Assistance Center) — Trade dress

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

T

TAC (Trademark Assistance Center).....	108.02
Taiwan, understanding with the United States.....	Appendix B
Tax-exempt corporation.....	803.03(c)
TEAS (Trademark Electronic Application System) (See also: Electronic filing through TEAS).....	
TEAS Plus.....	819 to 819.04
Adding a class during examination.....	819.03
Application requirements.....	819.01 to 819.01(q)
Documents that must be filed through TEAS.....	819.02(b)
Identification of goods and services.....	1402.01(d), 1402.02
Payment of TEAS Plus processing fee.....	819.04
Receipt of communications by e-mail.....	819.02(a)
TEAS success page.....	303.02(a)
TEAS RF.....	820 to 820.04
Adding a class during examination.....	820.03
Application requirements.....	820.01
Documents that must be filed through TEAS.....	820.02 to 820.02(b)
Identification of goods and services.....	1402.01(d), 1402.02
Payment of TEAS Plus processing.....	820.04
Receipt of communication by e-mail.....	820.02(a)
TEAS success page.....	303.02(a)
Telephone communications.....	709.04
Telephone numbers.....	1209.03(l)
Telescoped words.....	1213.05(a)(i)
“Ten-year proviso” of §5 of Act of 1905.....	1601.04
Territorial commerce.....	901.03
TESS (Trademark Electronic Search System).....	104
Testimony, requests for, referred to Office of General Counsel.....	1801.01
Third parties, inquires from regarding ex parte matters.....	1806
Third party registrations	
evidence of.....	710.03
relevance in determining descriptiveness.....	1209.03(a)
relevance in determining likelihood of confusion.....	1207.01(d)(iii)
Third Protocol.....	1205.01(a) to 1205.01(a)(vi)
Three-dimensional marks.....	807.10, 1202.02 to 1202.02(f)(ii), 1301.02(c)
TICRS (Trademark Image Capture and Retrieval System).....	109.02, 402
Time between execution and filing.....	804.03, 1104.10(b)(ii), 1108.02(b), 1109.11(c)
Title of a single creative work.....	1202.08 to 1202.08(f), 1301.02(d)
Title or degree.....	1304.03(b)(ii), 1306.04(d)(ii)
Trade dress.....	1202.02 to 1202.02(f)(ii), 1202.03, 1202.03(f)(iii)
description of mark.....	1202.02(c), 1202.02(c)(ii), 1202.02(c)(iv)
disclaimer.....	1202.02(c)(iii)
drawing.....	807.10, 1202.02(c), 1202.02(c)(i), 1202.02(c)(iv)
identification of goods/services.....	1202.02(f) to 1202.02(f)(ii)
product design.....	1202.02(a) to 1202.02(a)(viii), 1202.02(b)(i), 1202.02(f)(i)
product packaging.....	1202.02(a) to 1202.02(a)(viii), 1202.02(b)(ii), 1202.02(f)(ii)
section 1(b), applications based on	1202.02(d)
sections 44 and 66(a), applications based on.....	1202.02(e)

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Trade name — TSDR (Trademark Status and Document Retrieval) database

	Sec. No.	Sec. No.
Trade name.....		1202.01
Trademark Act of 1946		
claiming benefits of, under §12(c).....		1603 to 1603.03
duration of registrations under.....		1602.01
effective date of.....		1601.02
Trademark assignment, searching.....		503.08 to 503.08(a)
Trademark Assistance Center (TAC).....		108.02
Trademark Electronic Application System (TEAS) (See also: Electronic filing through TEAS)		
Trademark Electronic Search System (TESS).....		104
Trademark forms.....		103
Trademark Image Capture and Retrieval System (TICRS).....		109.02, 402
Trademark Law Revision Act of 1988.....		816.02, 901.02, 1303.01(a)(i), 1602.01
Trademark Law Treaty Implementation Act, changes to requirements for maintaining a registration.....		1602.04
Trademark manuals.....		107
Trademark Official Gazette		
contents of.....		106
notification of clerical errors in.....		1502.01
publication in.....		1502
Trademark searching.....		104
Trademark Status and Document Retrieval (TSDR) database.....		109.01, 402
Trademark Trial and Appeal Board (TTAB)		
appeal to.....		1501 to 1501.04
concurrent proceedings.....		1506
interference.....		1507
jurisdiction of.....		1504.02
opposition proceedings before.....		1503 to 1503.05
Trademark website.....		102, 104, 108.01, 109.01
Trademark, definition of.....		1202
Transformation.....		1902.10, 1904.09 to 1904.09(b)
Translation		
doctrine of foreign equivalents.....		1207.01(b)(vi) to 1207.01(b)(vi)(C), 1209.03(g), 1211.01(a)(vii)
entry of.....		809.01(a)
equivalency in.....		809.02
exceptions to rules for translations.....		809.01(b) to 809.01(b)(iii)
of dead or obscure languages.....		809.01(b)(iii), 1207.01(b)(vi)(B), 1209.03(g)
of document submitted for recording in Assignment Division.....		503.03(c)
of foreign articles or prepositions combined with English terms.....		809.01(b)(ii)
of foreign registration.....		1004.01(b)
of idiomatic expressions.....		809.01(b)(i)
of matter on specimens.....		904.06
of non-English wording in mark.....		809 to 809.02
printing of.....		809.01 to 809.01(a), 809.03, 817
Transliteration of non-Latin characters in mark.....		809 to 809.02
Treaty or convention relating to trademarks.....		1001, 1002.03, Appendix B
TRIPs (Trade-Related Intellectual Property portions of General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade).....		1210.08 to 1210.08(a), Appendix B
Trust as owner of mark.....		803.03(e) to 803.03(e)(i)
TSDR (Trademark Status and Document Retrieval) database.....		108.01, 109.01, 402

INDEX

Type of commerce — Use of mark

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

Type of commerce.....	901.03
Type of mark, registration in correct category.....	1306.06(c)
Types of applications.....	801 to 801.02(b)
Types of marks.....	1202, 1300 to 1306.06(c)
Types of registrations.....	1601 to 1601.06

U

Unauthorized practice at PTO.....	608 to 608.02
Undeliverable correspondence, returned as.....	403
Unintentional delay	
petition based on.....	1714.01(e) to 1714.01(f)(ii)
statement of.....	1714.01(e)
where unintentional delay applies.....	1714.01(f) to 1714.01(f)(ii)
United States Patent and Trademark Office	
reorganization of.....	1701
Website.....	102, 104, 108.01, 109.01
Unity of control.....	714.05(d), 715.03(b), 1201.07 to 1201.07(b)(iv)
Universal symbols.....	1202.17 to 1202.17(e)(vi)
Unpublished decisions.....	705.05
Unscheduled closing of USPTO.....	309
Unsigned response to Office action.....	712.02
Uruguay Round Agreements.....	1210.08, Appendix B
U.S. Postal Service, interruptions of.....	305.04
Use dates (See also: Dates of use)	
Use in commerce	
assertion of.....	901
bona fide use in the ordinary course of trade.....	901.02
certification marks.....	1306.02(a)(i)
collective membership marks.....	1304.02(a)(i)
collective trademarks and service marks.....	1303.01(a)(i)
commerce that may be lawfully regulated by Congress.....	901.03
date of first.....	903.02
definition of.....	901.01
not required in §44 application.....	901, 1009
not required in §66(a) application.....	901, 1904.01(d)
service marks.....	1301.03 to 1301.03(b)
solely by related company.....	903.05, 1201.03(a)
Use of mark	
as a mark.....	1202, 1301, 1303, 1304.01, 1306.01
bona fide use in the ordinary course of trade.....	901.02
by applicant.....	1201.01
by licensee.....	1201.03(e)
by predecessor in title.....	903.05

TRADEMARK MANUAL OF EXAMINING PROCEDURE

Use of mark — World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO)

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

by related company.....	903.05, 1201.03 to 1201.03(e)
in commerce (See also: Use in commerce)	
solely as a trade name.....	1202.01
solely by related company.....	1201.03(a)

V

Varietal names.....	1202.12
Verification of application (See also: Signature).....	804 to 804.05
declaration in lieu of oath.....	804.01(b)
defective.....	804.01(a), 804.01(b), 804.02, 1303.01(b)(i), 1304.02(b)(i), 1306.02(b)(i)
electronic.....	611.01(c)
in a foreign country.....	804.01(a)(i)
must be personally signed.....	611.01(b) to 611.01(c), 611.02, 804.01(b), 804.04
not required for receipt of filing date.....	804
of TEAS document.....	611.01(c), 611.02(a)
of §1(a) or §44 application.....	804 to 804.03, 1303.01(b)(i), 1304.02(b)(i), 1306.02(b)(i)
of §66(a) application.....	804, 804.05, 1303.01(a)(v), 1303.01(b)(ii), 1304.02(a)(v), 1304.02(b)(ii), 1306.02(a)(v), 1306.02(b)(ii), 1904.01(c), 1904.02(d)
persons who can sign.....	611.03(a), 804.04
under 28 U.S.C. §1746.....	804.01(b)
with oath.....	804.01(a)

W

Waiver of rules, on petition.....	1708
Warehouse storage of paper files	
access by public to files in.....	109.02
of registration files.....	109.02
Who may practice before Office in trademark matters.....	602 to 602.03(e), 611.02
Wholly owned related companies.....	1201.03(b)
Wines/spirits, misleading indication of origin of.....	1210.08 to 1210.08(c)
Withdrawal of attorney.....	607
Withdrawal of authorization to represent.....	606
Withdrawal of prior amendment.....	714.05(a), 715.03(a)(ii)(A), 715.03(b), 715.04(a)
to amend identification of goods/services.....	714.05(a)(i)
to seek registration under §2f.....	714.05(a)(i)
to Supplemental Register.....	714.05(a)(i)
Withdrawal of refusal or requirement after appeal.....	1501.03
World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO).....	1401.02(a), 1900 (introductory text)

INDEX

World Trade Organization (WTO) — (No Entry)

Sec. No.

Sec. No.

World Trade Organization (WTO).....	Appendix B
Written application, form for filing.....	.802

(No X Entry)

(No Y Entry)

(No Z Entry)